



# Honda CRV Shop Manual

Introduction.....	00-3
Table Of Contents .....	00-6
Index .....	00-31

## SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)

The CR-V SRS includes a driver's airbag in the steering wheel hub, a passenger's airbag in the dashboard above the glove box, seat belt tensioners in the front seat belt retractors, seat belt buckle tensioners in the front seat belt buckles, and side airbags in the front seat-backs. Information necessary to safely service the SRS is included in this Service Manual. Items marked with an asterisk (\*) on the contents page include or are located near SRS components. Servicing, disassembling, or replacing these items will require special precautions and tools, and should be done only by an authorized Honda dealer.



### WARNING



- To avoid rendering the SRS inoperative, which could lead to personal injury or death in the event of a severe frontal collision, all SRS service work must be performed by an authorized Honda dealer.
- Improper service procedures, including incorrect removal and installation of the SRS could lead to personal injury caused by unintentional deployment of the airbags and side airbags.
- Do not bump the SRS unit. Otherwise, the system may fail in a collision, or the airbags may deploy when the ignition switch is ON (II).
- SRS electrical connectors are identified by yellow color coding. Related components are located in the steering column, front console, dashboard, dashboard lower panel, in the dashboard above the glove box, in the front seats, and around the floor. Do not use electrical test equipment on these circuits.



# Introduction

## How to Use This Manual

The 2002 CR-V Shop Manual is divided into 23 sections. The first page of each section is marked with a black tab that lines up with its corresponding thumb index tab on this page.

You can quickly find the first page of each section without looking through a full table of contents. The symbols printed at the top corner of each page can also be used as a quick reference system.

Each section includes:

1. A table of contents, or an exploded view index showing:
  - Parts disassembly sequence.
  - Bolt torques and thread sizes.
  - Page references to descriptions in text.
2. Disassembly/assembly procedures and tools.
3. Inspection.
4. Testing/troubleshooting.
5. Repair.
6. Adjustments.

## Safety Messages

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. To help you make informed decisions, we have provided safety messages, and other safety information throughout this manual. Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with servicing this vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find important safety information in a variety of forms including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol and one of the three signal words, DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION.

These signal words mean:

**DANGER**

You Will be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

**WARNING**

You CAN be Killed or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

**CAUTION**

You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Instructions** - how to service this vehicle correctly and safely

All information contained in this manual is based on the latest product information available at the time of printing. We reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher. This includes text, figures, and tables.

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a **NOTICE** symbol. The purpose of this message is to help prevent damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

First Edition 11/2001  
1,834 pages  
All Rights Reserved

HONDA MOTOR CO.,  
LTD.  
Service Publication Office

As sections with \* include SRS components;  
special precautions are required when servicing.

## General Info



## Specifications

specs

## Maintenance



## Engine Electrical



## Engine



## Cooling



## Fuel and Emissions



## \*Transaxle



## \*Steering



## Suspension



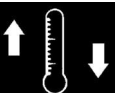
## \*Brakes (Including ABS)



## \*Body



## \*Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning



## \*Body Electrical



## \*Restraints



A Few Words About Safety

Service Information



The service and repair information contained in this manual is intended for use by qualified, professional technicians. Attempting service or repairs without the proper training, tools, and equipment could cause injury to you or others. It could also damage the vehicle or create an unsafe condition.

This manual describes the proper methods and procedures for performing service, maintenance, and repairs. Some procedures require the use of specially designed tools and dedicated equipment. Any person who intends to use a replacement part, service procedure or a tool that is not recommended by Honda, must determine the risks to their personal safety and the safe operation of the vehicle.

If you need to replace a part, use genuine Honda parts with the correct part number or an equivalent part. We strongly recommend that you do not use replacement parts of inferior quality.

FOR YOUR CUSTOMER'S SAFETY

Proper service and maintenance are essential to the customer's safety and the reliability of the vehicle. Any error or oversight while servicing a vehicle can result in faulty operation, damage to the vehicle, or injury to others.

**WARNING**

Improper service or repairs can create an unsafe condition that can cause your customer or others to be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow the procedures and precautions in this manual and other service materials carefully.

FOR YOUR SAFETY

Because this manual is intended for the professional service technician, we do not provide warnings about many basic shop safety practices (e.g., Hot parts - wear gloves). If you have not received shop safety training or do not feel confident about your knowledge of safe servicing practices, we recommend that you do not attempt to perform the procedures described in this manual.

**WARNING**

Failure to properly follow instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow the procedures and precautions in this manual carefully.

Some of the most important general service safety precautions are given below. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing service and repair procedures. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

## A Few Words About Safety

---

### IMPORTANT SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Make sure you have a clear understanding of all basic shop safety practices and that you are wearing appropriate clothing and using safety equipment. When performing any service task, be especially careful of the following:
  - Read all of the instructions before you begin, and make sure you have the tools, the replacement or repair parts, and the skills required to perform the tasks safely and completely.
  - Protect your eyes by using proper safety glasses, goggles or face shields any time you hammer, drill, grind, or work around pressurized air or liquids and springs or other stored-energy components. If there is any doubt, put on eye protection.
  - Use other protective wear when necessary, for example gloves or safety shoes. Handling hot or sharp parts can cause severe burns or cuts. Before you grab something that looks like it can hurt you, stop and put on gloves.
  - Protect yourself and others whenever you have the vehicle up in the air. Any time you lift the vehicle, either with a hoist or a jack, make sure that it is always securely supported. Use jack stands.
- Make sure the engine is off before you begin any servicing procedures, unless the instruction tells you to do otherwise. This will help eliminate several potential hazards:
  - Carbon monoxide poisoning from engine exhaust. Be sure there is adequate ventilation whenever you run the engine.
  - Burns from hot parts or coolant. Let the engine and exhaust system cool before working in those areas.
  - Injury from moving parts. If the instruction tells you to run the engine, be sure your hands, fingers, and clothing are out of the way.
- Gasoline vapors and hydrogen gases from batteries are explosive. To reduce the possibility of a fire or explosion, be careful when working around gasoline or batteries.
  - Use only a nonflammable solvent, not gasoline to clean parts.
  - Never drain or store gasoline in an open container.
  - Keep all cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel-related parts.

**Table Of Contents**

<b>Honda CRV Shop Manual .....</b>	<b>00-1</b>
<b>SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS) .....</b>	<b>00-2</b>
<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>00-3</b>
How to Use This Manual .....	00-3
Safety Messages .....	00-3
<b>A Few Words About Safety .....</b>	<b>00-4</b>
Service Information .....	00-4
FOR YOUR CUSTOMER'S SAFETY .....	00-4
FOR YOUR SAFETY .....	00-4
IMPORTANT SAFETY PRECAUTIONS .....	00-5
<b>Table Of Contents .....</b>	<b>00-6</b>
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>00-31</b>
<b>General Information .....</b>	<b>01-1</b>
<b>Chassis and Engine Numbers .....</b>	<b>01-2</b>
Vehicle Identification Number .....	01-2
Engine Number .....	01-2
Transmission Number .....	01-2
<b>Identification Number Locations .....</b>	<b>01-4</b>
<b>Warning/Caution Label Locations .....</b>	<b>01-5</b>
<b>Lift and Support Points .....</b>	<b>01-7</b>
Frame Hoist .....	01-7
Safety Stands .....	01-7
Floor Jack .....	01-7
<b>Towing .....</b>	<b>01-8</b>
<b>Service Precautions .....</b>	<b>01-9</b>
4WD model Information .....	01-9
Precautions on using free rollers: .....	01-9
Speedometer Testing Procedures .....	01-9
General .....	01-10
<b>Service Precautions (cont'd) .....</b>	<b>01-12</b>
Electrical Troubleshooting Information .....	01-12
Five-step Troubleshooting .....	01-15
Wire Color Codes .....	01-15
<b>Abbreviations .....</b>	<b>01-16</b>
<b>Specifications .....</b>	<b>02-1</b>
<b>Standards and Service Limits .....</b>	<b>02-2</b>
Engine Electrical .....	02-2
Engine Assembly .....	02-2

## Table Of Contents

---

Cylinder Head .....	02-3
Engine Block .....	02-4
Engine Lubrication .....	02-5
Cooling.....	02-6
Fuel and Emissions .....	02-6
Clutch.....	02-6
Manual Transmission and M/T Differential .....	02-7
Automatic Transmission and A/T Differential.....	02-9
Rear Differential.....	02-15
Steering .....	02-15
Suspension .....	02-15
Brakes.....	02-16
Air Conditioning .....	02-16
<b>Design Specifications .....</b>	<b>02-17</b>
<b>Body Specifications .....</b>	<b>02-21</b>
<b>Maintenance .....</b>	<b>03-1</b>
<b>Lubricants and Fluids .....</b>	<b>03-2</b>
<b>Maintenance Schedule for Normal Conditions .....</b>	<b>03-4</b>
Listed by Maintenance Item.....	03-4
<b>Maintenance Schedule for Severe Conditions .....</b>	<b>03-6</b>
Listed by Maintenance Item.....	03-6
<b>Maintenance Schedule for Normal Conditions .....</b>	<b>03-8</b>
Listed by Maintenance Item.....	03-8
<b>Maintenance Schedule for Severe Conditions .....</b>	<b>03-10</b>
Listed by Maintenance Item.....	03-10
<b>Maintenance Schedule .....</b>	<b>03-12</b>
Listed by Maintenance Item.....	03-12
<b>Engine Electrical .....</b>	<b>04-15</b>
<b>Special Tools .....</b>	<b>04-16</b>
<b>Starting System .....</b>	<b>04-17</b>
Component Location Index.....	04-17
Circuit Diagram .....	04-18
Starter Circuit Troubleshooting .....	04-19
Starter Solenoid Test .....	04-20
Starter Performance Test .....	04-21
Starter Replacement.....	04-23
Starter Overhaul .....	04-24
<b>Ignition System .....</b>	<b>04-32</b>
Component Location Index.....	04-32
Circuit Diagram .....	04-33
Ignition Timing Inspection .....	04-34
Ignition Coil Removal/Installation.....	04-35
Ignition Coil Troubleshooting .....	04-35

Spark Plug Inspection .....	04-37
<b>Charging System .....</b>	<b>04-38</b>
Component Location Index .....	04-38
Circuit Diagram .....	04-39
Charging Circuit Troubleshooting .....	04-40
Drive Belt Inspection .....	04-43
Drive Belt Replacement .....	04-44
Drive Belt Auto-tensioner Inspection.....	04-44
Drive Belt Auto-tensioner Replacement.....	04-45
Alternator Replacement .....	04-46
Alternator Overhaul.....	04-48
<b>Cruise Control .....</b>	<b>04-53</b>
Component Location Index .....	04-53
Circuit Diagram .....	04-54
Symptom Troubleshooting Index .....	04-55
Cruise Control Communication Circuit Troubleshooting .....	04-57
Control Unit Input Test .....	04-58
Main Switch Test/Replacement .....	04-60
Set/Resume/Cancel Switch Test/Replacement .....	04-60
Actuator Test.....	04-61
Actuator/Cable Replacement.....	04-62
Actuator Cable Adjustment .....	04-63
Clutch Pedal Position Switch Test .....	04-63
<b>Engine Mechanical .....</b>	<b>05-1</b>
<b>Engine Assembly .....</b>	<b>05-2</b>
Special Tools .....	05-2
Engine Removal.....	05-3
Engine Installation.....	05-10
<b>Engine Mechanical .....</b>	<b>06-1</b>
<b>Cylinder Head .....</b>	<b>06-2</b>
Special Tools .....	06-2
Component Location Index .....	06-3
Engine Compression Inspection .....	06-6
VTEC Rocker Arm Test .....	06-7
VTC Actuator Inspection .....	06-8
Valve Clearance Adjustment.....	06-9
Crankshaft Pulley Removal and Installation .....	06-11
Cam Chain Removal.....	06-12
Cam Chain Installation.....	06-15
Auto-Tensioner Removal/Installation .....	06-19
Chain Case Oil Seal Installation .....	06-21
Cam Chain Inspection.....	06-22
Cylinder Head Cover Removal .....	06-23
Cylinder Head Removal .....	06-24
VTC Actuator, Exhaust Camshaft Sprocket Replacement.....	06-25
Cylinder Head Inspection for Warpage .....	06-26

## Table Of Contents

---

Rocker Arm Assembly Removal .....	06-27
Rocker Arms and Shafts Disassembly/Reassembly .....	06-28
Rocker Arms and Shafts Inspection .....	06-29
Camshaft Inspection .....	06-30
Valves, Springs and Valve Seals Removal.....	06-32
Valve Inspection .....	06-33
Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance Inspection.....	06-33
Valve Guide Replacement .....	06-34
Valve Seat Reconditioning.....	06-36
Valves, Springs and Valve Seals Installation.....	06-38
Rocker Arm Assembly Installation .....	06-39
Cylinder Head Installation.....	06-40
Cylinder Head Cover Installation .....	06-42

## **Engine Mechanical .....07-1**

### **Engine Block ..... 07-2**

Special Tools .....	07-2
Component Location Index.....	07-3
Connecting Rod and Crankshaft End Play Inspection.....	07-5
Crankshaft Main Bearing Replacement .....	07-6
Connecting Rod Bearing Replacement .....	07-8
Oil Pan Removal .....	07-11
Crankshaft and Piston Removal .....	07-12
Crankshaft Inspection .....	07-14
Block and Piston Inspection.....	07-15
Cylinder Honing .....	07-17
Piston, Pin and Connecting Rod Replacement.....	07-18
Piston Ring Replacement .....	07-21
Piston Installation.....	07-23
Connecting Rod Bolt Inspection .....	07-24
Crankshaft Installation .....	07-24
Oil Pan Installation.....	07-27

## **Engine Mechanical .....08-1**

### **Engine Lubrication ..... 08-2**

Special Tools .....	08-2
Component Location Index.....	08-3
Oil Pressure Switch Test .....	08-4
Oil Pressure Test .....	08-4
Engine Oil Replacement .....	08-5
Engine Oil Filter Replacement .....	08-6
Oil Filter Holder Replacement.....	08-9
Oil Pump Overhaul .....	08-10
Oil Pressure Switch Replacement .....	08-18

## **Engine Mechanical .....09-1**

### **Intake Manifold and Exhaust System ..... 09-2**

Intake Manifold Removal and Installation .....	09-2
--	------

Exhaust Manifold Removal and Installation .....	09-8
Exhaust Pipe and Muffler Replacement.....	09-9
<b>Engine Cooling .....</b>	<b>10-1</b>
<b>Cooling System .....</b>	<b>10-2</b>
Component Location Index .....	10-2
Radiator Cap Test.....	10-3
Radiator Test .....	10-3
Fan Motor Test.....	10-4
Thermostat Test.....	10-4
Water Pump Inspection.....	10-5
Water Pump Replacement.....	10-5
Coolant Check .....	10-6
Coolant Replacement .....	10-6
Thermostat Replacement.....	10-8
Water Passage Installation .....	10-9
Water Outlet Installation.....	10-9
Radiator and Fans Replacement .....	10-10
<b>Fan Controls .....</b>	<b>10-11</b>
Component Location Index .....	10-11
Symptom Troubleshooting Index .....	10-12
Circuit Diagram .....	10-13
Radiator Fan Circuit Troubleshooting .....	10-14
Radiator Fan Switch Circuit Troubleshooting (Open) .....	10-16
Radiator Fan Switch Circuit Troubleshooting (Short).....	10-16
Radiator Fan Switch Test.....	10-17
Radiator Fan Switch Replacement .....	10-17
<b>Fuel and Emissions .....</b>	<b>11-1</b>
<b>Fuel and Emissions Systems .....</b>	<b>11-2</b>
Special Tools .....	11-2
General Troubleshooting Information .....	11-3
DTC Troubleshooting Index.....	11-6
Symptom Troubleshooting Index .....	11-8
System Descriptions .....	11-10
<b>PGM-FI System .....</b>	<b>11-59</b>
Component Location Index .....	11-59
DTC Troubleshooting.....	11-62
MIL Circuit Troubleshooting.....	11-102
DLC Circuit Troubleshooting.....	11-114
Injector Test .....	11-116
Injector Replacement .....	11-117
Primary HO2S Replacement.....	11-119
CKP Sensor Replacement.....	11-119
ECT Sensor Replacement .....	11-120
TDC Sensor Replacement.....	11-120
IAT Sensor Replacement.....	11-121
Knock Sensor Replacement .....	11-121



## Table Of Contents

---

Secondary HO2S Replacement.....	11-122
<b>VTEC/VTC .....</b>	<b>11-123</b>
Component Location Index.....	11-123
DTC Troubleshooting.....	11-124
VTC Oil Control Solenoid Valve Test.....	11-137
CMP Sensor Replacement .....	11-138
VTEC Solenoid Valve Removal/Inspection.....	11-138
<b>Idle Control System .....</b>	<b>11-139</b>
Component Location Index.....	11-139
DTC Troubleshooting.....	11-140
A/C Signal Circuit Troubleshooting .....	11-142
Alternator FR Signal Circuit Troubleshooting .....	11-143
PSP Switch Signal Circuit Troubleshooting .....	11-145
Brake Pedal Position Switch Signal Circuit Troubleshooting .....	11-146
Idle Speed Inspection .....	11-148
<b>Fuel Supply System .....</b>	<b>11-149</b>
Component Location Index.....	11-149
Fuel Pump Circuit Troubleshooting .....	11-151
Fuel Pressure Relieving.....	11-154
Fuel Pressure Test .....	11-154
Fuel Line Inspection.....	11-156
Fuel Tube/Quick-Connect Fittings Precaution .....	11-160
Fuel Tube/Quick-Connect Fittings Removal.....	11-161
Fuel Tube/Quick-Connect Fittings Installation .....	11-162
Fuel Pressure Regulator Replacement.....	11-165
Fuel Filter Replacement.....	11-166
Fuel Pump/Fuel Gauge Sending Unit Replacement.....	11-167
Fuel Tank Replacement.....	11-169
Fuel Gauge Sending Unit Test .....	11-173
Low Fuel Indicator Light Test.....	11-175
<b>Intake Air System .....</b>	<b>11-176</b>
Component Location Index.....	11-176
IMRC System Troubleshooting.....	11-177
Throttle Body Test .....	11-180
Intake Air Bypass Control Thermal Valve Test.....	11-181
Air Cleaner Replacement.....	11-182
Air Cleaner Element Replacement .....	11-182
Throttle Cable Adjustment .....	11-183
Throttle Cable Removal/Installation.....	11-184
Throttle Body Removal/Installation .....	11-185
Throttle Body Disassembly/Reassembly .....	11-186
IMRC Valve Replacement .....	11-187
<b>Catalytic Converter System .....</b>	<b>11-188</b>
DTC Troubleshooting.....	11-188
Catalytic Converter Inspection.....	11-188
Tailpipe Emissions Test.....	11-189
<b>PCV System .....</b>	<b>11-190</b>
PCV Valve Inspection and Test.....	11-190

---

<b>Evaporative Emission Control System .....</b>	<b>11-191</b>
Component Location Index .....	11-191
DTC Troubleshooting .....	11-193
Evaporative Emission (EVAP) System Troubleshooting.....	11-195
EVAP Two Way Valve Test .....	11-198
EVAP Canister Replacement.....	11-199
 <b>Clutch .....</b>	 <b>12-1</b>
<b>Special Tools .....</b>	<b>12-2</b>
<b>Component Location Index .....</b>	<b>12-3</b>
<b>Clutch Pedal and Clutch Pedal Position Switch Adjustment .....</b>	<b>12-4</b>
<b>Clutch Master Cylinder Replacement .....</b>	<b>12-5</b>
<b>Clutch Master Cylinder Overhaul .....</b>	<b>12-6</b>
Exploded view.....	12-6
<b>Slave Cylinder Replacement .....</b>	<b>12-8</b>
<b>Slave Cylinder Overhaul .....</b>	<b>12-10</b>
<b>Clutch Replacement .....</b>	<b>12-11</b>
 <b>M/T - M/T Differential .....</b>	 <b>13-1</b>
<b>Manual Transmission .....</b>	<b>13-2</b>
4WD (Four-wheel Drive) Model Precautions .....	13-2
Special Tools .....	13-3
Transmission Fluid Inspection and Replacement .....	13-4
Back-Up Light Switch Test.....	13-4
Transmission Removal .....	13-5
Transmission Installation .....	13-10
Transmission Disassembly .....	13-15
Reverse Shift Fork Clearance Inspection .....	13-21
Shift Lever Clearance Inspection .....	13-22
Change Lever Assembly Disassembly/Reassembly.....	13-23
Shift Forks Clearance Inspection .....	13-24
Shift Forks Disassembly/Reassembly.....	13-25
Mainshaft Assembly Clearance Inspection .....	13-26
Mainshaft Disassembly .....	13-28
Mainshaft Inspection .....	13-29
Mainshaft Reassembly.....	13-31
Countershaft Assembly Clearance Inspection .....	13-34
Countershaft Disassembly .....	13-36
Countershaft Inspection .....	13-37
Countershaft Reassembly.....	13-38
Synchro Sleeve and Hub Inspection and Reassembly .....	13-43
Synchro Ring and Gear Inspection .....	13-43
Mainshaft Bearing and Oil Seal Replacement .....	13-45
Countershaft Bearing Replacement.....	13-46
Mainshaft Thrust Clearance Adjustment.....	13-47
Transmission Reassembly.....	13-50

## Table Of Contents

---

Gearshift Mechanism Replacement.....	13-55
<b>M/T Differential .....</b>	<b>13-56</b>
Component Location Index.....	13-56
Backlash Inspection.....	13-58
Driven Gear/Carrier Replacement .....	13-58
Carrier Bearings Replacement .....	13-59
Oil Seal Replacement.....	13-60
Differential Thrust Clearance Adjustment .....	13-61
<b>Transfer Assembly .....</b>	<b>13-63</b>
Backlash Inspection on Car .....	13-63
Transfer Removal .....	13-64
Transfer Installation .....	13-64
Transfer Overhaul.....	13-65
Transfer Inspection .....	13-67
Transfer Disassembly.....	13-68
Transfer Holder Disassembly .....	13-70
Transfer Holder Tapered Roller Bearing Outer Race Replacement .....	13-71
Transfer Drive Gear Bearing Replacement .....	13-71
Transfer Driven Gear Bearing Replacement .....	13-72
Transfer Housing Bearing Outer Race Replacement .....	13-72
Transfer Reassembly.....	13-73
 <b>Automatic Transmission .....</b>	 <b>14-1</b>
 <b>A/T .....</b>	 <b>14-1</b>
 <b>Automatic Transmission .....</b>	 <b>14-2</b>
Service Precautions for 4WD Model.....	14-2
Special Tools .....	14-3
General Troubleshooting Information .....	14-4
DTC Troubleshooting Index.....	14-7
Symptom Troubleshooting Index .....	14-8
System Description.....	14-19
DTC Troubleshooting.....	14-66
Over-drive (O/D) Switch Circuit Troubleshooting.....	14-106
Road Test .....	14-107
Stall Speed Test .....	14-109
Pressure Tests.....	14-110
Shift Solenoid Valves Test.....	14-112
Shift Solenoid Valves Replacement.....	14-114
A/T Clutch Pressure Control Solenoid Valve A Test.....	14-116
A/T Clutch Pressure Control Solenoid Valve A Replacement .....	14-117
A/T Clutch Pressure Control Solenoid Valves B and C Test .....	14-118
A/T Clutch Pressure Control Solenoid Valves B and C Replacement .....	14-119
Mainshaft and Countershaft Speed Sensors Replacement.....	14-120
2nd Clutch Pressure Switch Replacement .....	14-121
3rd Clutch Pressure Switch Replacement .....	14-121
ATF Temperature Sensor Test/Replacement.....	14-122
O/D Switch Test/Replacement.....	14-124
ATF Level Check .....	14-130

ATF Replacement .....	14-131
Transfer Assembly Inspection .....	14-132
Transfer Assembly Removal .....	14-133
Transfer Assembly Installation .....	14-134
Transmission Removal .....	14-135
Transmission Installation .....	14-143
ATF Cooler Hoses Replacement .....	14-151
Shift Lever Removal .....	14-152
Shift Lever Installation .....	14-154
Shift Lever Disassembly/Reassembly .....	14-156
Shift Cable Replacement .....	14-157
Shift Cable Adjustment .....	14-162
<b>A/T Gear Position Indicator .....</b>	<b>14-165</b>
Component Location Index .....	14-165
Circuit Diagram .....	14-166
Indicator Input Test .....	14-167
Transmission Range Switch Test .....	14-168
Transmission Range Switch Replacement .....	14-169
Indicator Bulb Replacement .....	14-171
<b>A/T Interlock System .....</b>	<b>14-172</b>
Component Location Index .....	14-172
Circuit Diagram .....	14-173
Shift Lock System Circuit Troubleshooting .....	14-175
Reverse Lock System Circuit Troubleshooting .....	14-178
Key Interlock System Circuit Troubleshooting .....	14-179
Interlock Control Unit Input Test .....	14-180
Key Interlock Solenoid Test .....	14-181
Shift Lock Solenoid Test/Replacement .....	14-182
Park Pin Switch Test/Replacement .....	14-187
<b>Transmission End Cover .....</b>	<b>14-192</b>
End Cover Removal .....	14-192
Park Lever Stop Inspection and Adjustment .....	14-195
Idle Gear Shaft Bearing Replacement .....	14-196
Control Shaft Oil Seal Replacement .....	14-196
Control Shaft Bearing Replacement .....	14-197
ATF Feed Pipes Replacement .....	14-197
<b>Transmission Housing .....</b>	<b>14-198</b>
Housing and Shaft Assemblies Removal .....	14-198
Bearing Removal .....	14-202
Bearing Installation .....	14-203
Reverse Idle Gear Removal and Installation .....	14-204
<b>Valve Body .....</b>	<b>14-205</b>
Valve Bodies and ATF Strainer Removal .....	14-205
Valve Body Repair .....	14-207
Valve Body Valve Installation .....	14-208
Main Valve Body Disassembly, Inspection, and Reassembly .....	14-209
ATF Pump Inspection .....	14-210
Regulator Valve Body Disassembly, Inspection, and Reassembly .....	14-211
Servo Body Disassembly, Inspection, and Reassembly .....	14-212

## Table Of Contents

---

Shift Solenoid Valves Installation.....	14-213
<b>Torque Converter Housing .....</b>	<b>14-214</b>
Mainshaft Bearing and Oil Seal Replacement .....	14-214
Countershaft Bearing Replacement.....	14-215
Secondary Shaft Bearing Replacement.....	14-216
Control Shaft Oil Seal Replacement .....	14-217
<b>Shafts and Clutches .....</b>	<b>14-218</b>
Mainshaft Disassembly, Inspection and Reassembly.....	14-218
Mainshaft 3rd Gear Clearance Inspection .....	14-219
Countershaft Disassembly, Inspection and Reassembly.....	14-221
Selector Hub and 4th Gear Collar Removal .....	14-223
Selector Hub and 4th Gear Collar Installation .....	14-224
Reverse Selector Hub and 1st Gear Removal.....	14-225
Reverse Selector Hub and 1st Gear Installation.....	14-226
Secondary Shaft Disassembly, Inspection and Reassembly.....	14-227
Secondary Shaft Ball Bearing, Idler Gear Removal and Installation .....	14-228
Secondary Shaft 2nd Gear Clearance Inspection .....	14-229
Secondary Shaft 1st Gear Clearance Inspection.....	14-231
Idler Gear Shaft Removal and Installation .....	14-233
Idler Gear/Idler Gear Shaft Replacement .....	14-234
Clutch Disassembly .....	14-235
Clutch Inspection .....	14-240
Clutch Waved-plate Phase Difference Inspection .....	14-241
Clutch Clearance Inspection.....	14-242
Clutch Reassembly .....	14-247
<b>Valve Body .....</b>	<b>14-252</b>
Valve Bodies and ATF Strainer Installation .....	14-252
<b>Transmission Housing .....</b>	<b>14-254</b>
Shaft Assemblies and Housing Installation.....	14-254
<b>Transmission End Cover .....</b>	<b>14-259</b>
End Cover Installation.....	14-259
<b>A/T Differential .....</b>	<b>14-264</b>
Component Location Index.....	14-264
Backlash Inspection .....	14-265
Carrier Bearing Replacement .....	14-265
Differential Carrier/Final Driven Gear Replacement .....	14-266
Oil Seal Replacement .....	14-267
Carrier Bearing Outer Race Replacement.....	14-268
Carrier Bearing Preload Inspection.....	14-270
<b>Transfer Assembly .....</b>	<b>14-273</b>
Inspection .....	14-273
Disassembly .....	14-274
Transfer Holder Disassembly .....	14-277
Transfer Holder Roller Bearing Replacement.....	14-278
Transfer Holder Tapered Roller Bearing Outer Race Removal/Installation.....	14-278
Transfer Drive Gear Bearing Replacement .....	14-279
Transfer Driven Gear Bearing Removal/Installation .....	14-279

---

Transfer Housing Tapered Roller Bearing Outer Race Replacement.....	14-280
Reassembly .....	14-281
<b>Rear Differential .....</b>	<b>15-1</b>
<b>Special Tools .....</b>	<b>15-2</b>
<b>System Description .....</b>	<b>15-3</b>
<b>Dual Pump System Function Test .....</b>	<b>15-9</b>
Automatic Transmission.....	15-9
Manual Transmission.....	15-10
Automatic Transmission/Manual Transmission .....	15-11
<b>Symptom Troubleshooting Index .....</b>	<b>15-12</b>
<b>Differential Fluid Inspection and Replacement .....</b>	<b>15-13</b>
<b>Differential Removal .....</b>	<b>15-14</b>
<b>Differential Housing Assembly Removal and Installation .....</b>	<b>15-15</b>
<b>Oil Seal Replacement .....</b>	<b>15-16</b>
<b>Differential Disassembly .....</b>	<b>15-18</b>
<b>Differential Reassembly .....</b>	<b>15-21</b>
<b>Differential Installation .....</b>	<b>15-25</b>
<b>Differential Mount Replacement .....</b>	<b>15-27</b>
<b>Driveline/Axle .....</b>	<b>16-1</b>
<b>Special Tools .....</b>	<b>16-2</b>
<b>Driveshaft Inspection .....</b>	<b>16-3</b>
<b>Front Driveshafts Removal .....</b>	<b>16-3</b>
<b>Front Driveshafts Disassembly .....</b>	<b>16-5</b>
<b>Dynamic Damper Replacement .....</b>	<b>16-8</b>
<b>Front Driveshafts Reassembly .....</b>	<b>16-9</b>
<b>Front Driveshafts Installation .....</b>	<b>16-17</b>
<b>Intermediate Shaft Removal .....</b>	<b>16-19</b>
<b>Intermediate Shaft Disassembly .....</b>	<b>16-20</b>
<b>Intermediate Shaft Reassembly .....</b>	<b>16-21</b>
<b>Intermediate Shaft Installation .....</b>	<b>16-23</b>
<b>Rear Driveshafts Removal .....</b>	<b>16-24</b>
<b>Rear Driveshafts Disassembly .....</b>	<b>16-25</b>
<b>Rear Driveshafts Reassembly .....</b>	<b>16-27</b>
<b>Rear Driveshafts Installation .....</b>	<b>16-31</b>
<b>Propeller Shaft Inspection .....</b>	<b>16-32</b>
<b>Propeller Shaft Removal .....</b>	<b>16-33</b>

## Table Of Contents

---

<b>Propeller Shaft Installation .....</b>	<b>16-34</b>
<b>Steering .....</b>	<b>17-1</b>
<b>Power Steering .....</b>	<b>17-2</b>
Special Tools .....	17-2
Component Location Index.....	17-3
Symptom Troubleshooting Index.....	17-4
Hard Steering Troubleshooting.....	17-6
Steering Wheel Rotational Play Check.....	17-7
Power Assist Check.....	17-7
Steering Linkage and Gearbox Inspection.....	17-8
Pump Pressure Test.....	17-9
Fluid Leakage Inspection.....	17-10
Fluid Replacement.....	17-11
Hoses and Lines Replacement.....	17-12
Pump Replacement .....	17-13
Pump Overhaul.....	17-14
Steering Wheel Removal .....	17-21
Steering Wheel Disassembly/Reassembly .....	17-22
Steering Wheel Installation .....	17-23
Steering Column Removal and Installation.....	17-24
Steering Column Tilt Operation Check .....	17-25
Steering Column/Tilt Lever Inspection/Adjustment.....	17-26
Steering Lock Replacement.....	17-27
Rack Guide Adjustment .....	17-28
Steering Gearbox Removal .....	17-29
Steering Gearbox Overhaul .....	17-33
Steering Gearbox Installation .....	17-51
Tie-rod Ball Joint Boot Replacement .....	17-55
<b>Suspension .....</b>	<b>18-1</b>
<b>Front and Rear Suspension .....</b>	<b>18-2</b>
Special Tools .....	18-2
Component Location Index.....	18-3
Wheel Alignment.....	18-4
Wheel Bearing End Play Inspection .....	18-8
Wheel Runout Inspection.....	18-9
Ball Joint Removal .....	18-10
Damper Disposal .....	18-11
<b>Front Suspension .....</b>	<b>18-12</b>
Knuckle/Hub/Wheel Bearing Replacement.....	18-12
Ball Joint Boot Replacement.....	18-17
Stabilizer Link Replacement .....	18-18
Stabilizer Bar Replacement .....	18-19
Lower Arm Replacement .....	18-20
Damper/Spring Replacement .....	18-21
<b>Rear Suspension .....</b>	<b>18-27</b>
Knuckle/Hub/Wheel Bearing Replacement.....	18-27

Stabilizer Bar Replacement .....	18-32
Stabilizer Link Replacement .....	18-33
Upper Arm Replacement .....	18-34
Trailing Arm Replacement .....	18-35
Damper/Spring Replacement.....	18-36

## **Brakes ..... 19A-1**

### **Conventional Brake Components ..... 19A-2**

Special Tools .....	19A-2
Component Location Index .....	19A-3
Brake System Operation and Leakage Check.....	19A-4
Brake Pedal and Brake Pedal Position Switch Adjustment .....	19A-5
Parking Brake Check and Adjustment .....	19A-6
Brake System Bleeding.....	19A-9
Brake System Indicator Circuit Diagram .....	19A-10
Parking Brake Switch Test.....	19A-11
Brake Fluid Level Switch Test.....	19A-11
Front Brake Pads Inspection and Replacement .....	19A-12
Front Brake Disc Inspection.....	19A-18
Front Brake Caliper Overhaul .....	19A-19
Master Cylinder Replacement.....	19A-21
Master Cylinder Disassembly .....	19A-22
Master Cylinder Reassembly .....	19A-23
Brake Booster Pushrod Clearance Adjustment .....	19A-26
Brake Booster Inspection.....	19A-27
Brake Booster Replacement .....	19A-29
Rear Brake Pads Inspection and Replacement.....	19A-30
Rear Brake Disc Inspection .....	19A-32
Rear Brake Caliper Overhaul.....	19A-33
Parking Brake Drum Inspection .....	19A-34
Parking Brake Shoes Replacement.....	19A-36
Lining Surface Break-in.....	19A-39
Brake Hoses and Lines Inspection .....	19A-40
Brake Hose Replacement .....	19A-41
Parking Brake Cable Replacement.....	19A-42

## **Brakes ..... 19B-1**

### **ABS Components ..... 19B-2**

Special Tools .....	19B-2
Component Location Index .....	19B-3
General Troubleshooting Information .....	19B-4
DTC Troubleshooting Index.....	19B-10
Symptom Troubleshooting Index .....	19B-11
System Description .....	19B-12
Circuit Diagram .....	19B-20
System Connectors.....	19B-22
DTC Troubleshooting.....	19B-23
ABS Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting .....	19B-32
Brake System Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting.....	19B-34



## Table Of Contents

---

ABS Modulator-Control Unit Removal and Installation .....	19B-36
Wheel Sensor Inspection .....	19B-38
Wheel Sensor Replacement .....	19B-39
<b>Body .....</b>	<b>20-1</b>
<b>Doors .....</b>	<b>20-2</b>
Component Location Index - Front Door .....	20-2
Component Location Index - Rear Door .....	20-6
Front Door Panel Removal/Installation .....	20-9
Front Door Outer Handle Replacement .....	20-11
Front Door Latch Replacement .....	20-14
Front Door Glass and Regulator Replacement .....	20-16
Front Door Glass Outer Weatherstrip Replacement .....	20-17
Front Door Weatherstrip Replacement .....	20-18
Front Door Channel Tape Replacement .....	20-19
Rear Door Panel Removal/Installation .....	20-21
Rear Door Outer Handle Replacement .....	20-23
Rear Door Latch Replacement .....	20-25
Rear Door Glass and Regulator Replacement .....	20-27
Rear Door Glass Outer Weatherstrip Replacement .....	20-30
Rear Door Weatherstrip Replacement .....	20-30
Rear Door Center Pillar Seal Replacement .....	20-31
Rear Door Channel Tape Replacement .....	20-32
Front and Rear Door Glass Adjustment .....	20-34
Front and Rear Door Position Adjustment .....	20-36
Front and Rear Door Striker Adjustment .....	20-37
<b>Mirrors .....</b>	<b>20-38</b>
Component Location Index .....	20-38
Power Mirror Replacement .....	20-39
Mirror Holder Replacement .....	20-40
Side Under Mirror Replacement .....	20-40
Rearview Mirror Replacement .....	20-41
<b>Glass .....</b>	<b>20-43</b>
Component Location Index .....	20-43
Windshield Replacement .....	20-45
Windshield Side Trim Retainer Installation .....	20-50
Quarter Glass Replacement .....	20-50
Hatch Glass/Hatch Glass Support Strut Replacement .....	20-55
Hatch Glass Disassembly/Reassembly .....	20-57
Hatch Glass Adjustment .....	20-58
Rear Window Molding Replacement .....	20-59
High Mount Brake Light Bracket/Wire Harness Trim Replacement .....	20-61
Hatch Glass Weatherstrip Replacement .....	20-62
<b>Sunroof .....</b>	<b>20-63</b>
Component Location Index .....	20-63
Symptom Troubleshooting Index .....	20-64
Glass Height Adjustment .....	20-65
Glass Replacement .....	20-65
Drain Channel Replacement .....	20-66

---

Sunshade Replacement.....	20-67
Motor Replacement.....	20-68
Frame and Drain Tube Replacement.....	20-69
Drain Channel Slider and Cable Assembly Replacement.....	20-71
Position Switch Adjustment.....	20-73
Closing Force and Opening Drag Check .....	20-74
<b>Interior Trim .....</b>	<b>20-75</b>
Component Location Index .....	20-75
Trim Removal/Installation - Door Area .....	20-76
Trim Removal/Installation - Rear Side Area.....	20-77
Trim Removal/Installation - Rear Side Pillar Area.....	20-78
Trim Removal/Installation - Cargo Area .....	20-79
Trim Removal/Installation - Tailgate Area .....	20-80
Headliner Removal/Installation .....	20-81
Carpet Replacement .....	20-85
<b>Dashboard .....</b>	<b>20-87</b>
Instrument Panel Removal/Installation .....	20-87
Driver's Dashboard Lower Cover Removal/Installation.....	20-88
Driver's Dashboard Under Cover Removal/Installation.....	20-89
Dashboard Center Panel Removal/Installation .....	20-89
Dashboard Center Tray Removal/Installation .....	20-90
Heater Control Panel Removal/Installation .....	20-91
Dashboard Center Lower Cover Removal/Installation - A/T .....	20-91
Dashboard Center Lower Cover Removal/Installation - M/T .....	20-93
Passenger's Dashboard Under Cover Removal/Installation.....	20-95
Glove Box Removal/Installation .....	20-95
Dashboard Side Vent Removal/Installation .....	20-96
Dashboard Removal/Installation .....	20-96
Steering Hanger Beam Replacement .....	20-99
<b>Seats .....</b>	<b>20-102</b>
Component Location Index .....	20-102
Front Seat Removal/Installation.....	20-103
Front Seat Center Table Replacement .....	20-106
Front Seat Armrest Replacement .....	20-107
Front Seat Disassembly/Reassembly - With Manual Height Adjustable.....	20-108
Front Seat Disassembly/Reassembly - Without Manual Height Adjustable.....	20-109
Front Seat Cover Replacement .....	20-110
Rear Seat Removal/Installation .....	20-114
Rear Seat Armrest Replacement.....	20-115
Rear Seat Armrest Cover Replacement .....	20-116
Right Rear Seat Cover Replacement.....	20-117
Left Rear Seat Cover Replacement .....	20-123
Right Rear Seat-back Lock Control Cable Replacement.....	20-127
Rear Seat-back Latch Lever Replacement .....	20-128
<b>Bumpers .....</b>	<b>20-130</b>
Front Bumper Removal/Installation.....	20-130
Rear Bumper Removal/Installation .....	20-131
<b>Hood .....</b>	<b>20-132</b>
Adjustment.....	20-132

## Table Of Contents

---

Hood Seal Replacement.....	20-133
Hood Insulator Replacement .....	20-134
<b>Tailgate .....</b>	<b>20-135</b>
Tailgate Adjustment.....	20-135
Tailgate Striker Adjustment.....	20-136
Tailgate Wedge Adjustment.....	20-136
Tailgate Support Strut Replacement.....	20-137
Tailgate Weatherstrip Replacement .....	20-137
<b>Fuel Fill Door .....</b>	<b>20-138</b>
Adjustment.....	20-138
<b>Exterior Trim .....</b>	<b>20-139</b>
Front Grille Replacement.....	20-139
Cowl Covers Replacement .....	20-140
Windshield Side Trim Replacement.....	20-142
Roof Side Front Trim Replacement .....	20-142
Roof Side Rear Trim Replacement.....	20-144
Front Wheel Arch Protector Replacement .....	20-145
Rear Wheel Arch Protector Replacement.....	20-146
Door Moldings Replacement .....	20-147
Door Lower Trim Replacement.....	20-148
Side Sill Panel Replacement .....	20-149
Tailgate Lower Trim Replacement.....	20-150
Rear Window Wiper Lifter Replacement.....	20-151
Rear Window Wiper Protection Tape Replacement .....	20-152
Emblem/Sticker Replacement .....	20-153
<b>Fenderwell .....</b>	<b>20-155</b>
Front Inner Fender Replacement.....	20-155
Front Fender Fairing Replacement.....	20-156
Fuel Pipe Protector Replacement.....	20-157
Rear Air Outlet Replacement.....	20-157
<b>Openers .....</b>	<b>20-158</b>
Component Location Index.....	20-158
Hood Opener Cable Replacement.....	20-159
Fuel Fill Door Opener Cable Replacement.....	20-160
Hood Latch Replacement .....	20-162
Tailgate Handle Replacement .....	20-163
Tailgate Latch Replacement .....	20-164
Tailgate Stopper Assembly Replacement.....	20-165
Hatch Glass Latch Replacement .....	20-166
Hatch Glass Actuator Replacement.....	20-167
<b>Frame .....</b>	<b>20-168</b>
Sub-frame Replacement.....	20-168
Frame Stiffener Replacement.....	20-170
Frame Repair Chart .....	20-171
<b>HVAC .....</b>	<b>21-1</b>
Heating .....	21-2

---

Special Tools .....	21-2
SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS) (If HVAC maintenance is required).....	21-2
Component Location Index .....	21-3
General Troubleshooting Information .....	21-4
DTC Troubleshooting Index .....	21-5
Symptom Troubleshooting Index .....	21-6
System Description .....	21-7
Circuit Diagram .....	21-8
DTC Troubleshooting .....	21-9
Recirculation Control Motor Circuit Troubleshooting .....	21-18
Heater Control Power and Ground Circuits Troubleshooting.....	21-20
Air Mix Control Motor Test .....	21-21
Air Mix Control Motor Replacement .....	21-21
Mode Control Motor Test .....	21-22
Mode Control Motor Replacement .....	21-22
Recirculation Control Motor Test .....	21-23
Recirculation Control Motor Replacement .....	21-23
Power Transistor Test.....	21-24
Heater Control Panel Removal and Installation .....	21-24
Heater Control Panel Bulb Replacement .....	21-25
Dust and Pollen Filter Replacement (With Air Conditioning) .....	21-25
Blower Unit Removal and Installation .....	21-26
Blower Unit Components Replacement .....	21-27
Heater Unit/Core Replacement.....	21-28
Heater Valve Cable Adjustment.....	21-30
<b>Air Conditioning .....</b>	<b>21-31</b>
Component Location Index .....	21-31
A/C Service Tips and Precautions .....	21-33
A/C Refrigerant Oil Replacement.....	21-33
Symptom Troubleshooting Index .....	21-35
System Description .....	21-36
Circuit Diagram .....	21-37
Condenser Fan Circuit Troubleshooting .....	21-38
Radiator and Condenser Fans Common Circuit Troubleshooting .....	21-39
Compressor Clutch Circuit Troubleshooting .....	21-40
A/C Pressure Switch Circuit Troubleshooting .....	21-42
Evaporator Temperature Sensor Replacement .....	21-44
Evaporator Temperature Sensor Test .....	21-44
Evaporator Core Replacement .....	21-45
Compressor Replacement .....	21-46
Compressor Clutch Check.....	21-47
Compressor Clutch Overhaul.....	21-48
Compressor Thermal Protector Replacement .....	21-50
Compressor Relief Valve Replacement .....	21-50
Condenser Replacement .....	21-51
Receiver/Dryer Desiccant Replacement .....	21-52
Refrigerant Recovery .....	21-53
System Evacuation .....	21-54
System Charging .....	21-55
Refrigerant Leak Test .....	21-56
A/C System Tests .....	21-57

## Table Of Contents

---

<b>Climate Control .....</b>	<b>21-60</b>
Component Location Index.....	21-60
General Troubleshooting Information .....	21-63
DTC Troubleshooting Index.....	21-64
Symptom Troubleshooting Index.....	21-65
System Description.....	21-66
Circuit Diagram .....	21-67
DTC Troubleshooting.....	21-69
Recirculation Control Motor Circuit Troubleshooting .....	21-83
Climate Control Power and Ground Circuits Troubleshooting .....	21-85
A/C Pressure Switch Circuit Troubleshooting.....	21-86
ECT Sensor Circuit Troubleshooting .....	21-87
In-car Temperature Sensor Replacement .....	21-88
In-car Temperature Sensor Test.....	21-88
Outside Air Temperature Sensor Replacement.....	21-89
Outside Air Temperature Sensor Test .....	21-89
Sunlight Sensor Replacement .....	21-90
Sunlight Sensor Test .....	21-90
Climate Control Unit Removal and Installation .....	21-91
Climate Control Unit Bulb Replacement .....	21-91
 <b>Body Electrical .....</b>	 <b>22A-1</b>
<b>Special Tools .....</b>	<b>22A-2</b>
<b>General Troubleshooting Information .....</b>	<b>22A-3</b>
Tips and Precautions .....	22A-3
5-step Troubleshooting .....	22A-6
Wire Color Codes .....	22A-6
<b>Relay and Control Unit Locations .....</b>	<b>22A-7</b>
Engine Compartment.....	22A-7
Dashboard .....	22A-8
Rear .....	22A-11
Door .....	22A-12
Seat .....	22A-13
<b>Wire Harness and Ground Locations .....</b>	<b>22A-14</b>
Engine Compartment.....	22A-14
Dashoard .....	22A-19
Floor .....	22A-24
Door .....	22A-26
Roof .....	22A-28
Rear/Tailgate .....	22A-30
Seat .....	22A-32
Blower .....	22A-34
<b>Fuse/Relay Boxes .....</b>	<b>22A-35</b>
Connector to Fuse/Relay Box Index .....	22A-35
<b>Power Distribution .....</b>	<b>22A-37</b>
Fuse to Component Index .....	22A-37
Circuit Identification .....	22A-40

---

<b>Ground Distribution .....</b>	<b>22A-48</b>
Circuit Identification.....	22A-48
<b>Under-dash Fuse/Relay Box .....</b>	<b>22A-58</b>
Removal and Installation.....	22A-58
<b>Battery .....</b>	<b>22A-59</b>
Battery Test.....	22A-59
<b>Relays .....</b>	<b>22A-60</b>
Power Relay Test.....	22A-60
<b>Ignition Switch .....</b>	<b>22A-63</b>
Test .....	22A-63
<b>Gauges .....</b>	<b>22A-64</b>
Component Location Index .....	22A-64
Self-diagnostic Procedure .....	22A-66
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-68
Gauge Bulb Replacement .....	22A-73
Gauge Assembly Replacement .....	22A-74
Coolant Temperature Gauge Troubleshooting .....	22A-74
Vehicle Speed Signal Circuit Troubleshooting .....	22A-75
VSS Replacement .....	22A-77
Outside Air Temperature Indicator Test .....	22A-78
<b>Exterior Lights .....</b>	<b>22A-79</b>
Component Location Index .....	22A-79
Circuit Diagram - With Daytime Running Lights .....	22A-82
Circuit Diagram - Front/Rear Fog Lights .....	22A-84
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-86
Circuit Diagram - Front Fog Lights .....	22A-87
Circuit Diagram - Rear Fog Light .....	22A-88
Circuit Diagram - Headlights Adjuster .....	22A-89
Circuit Diagram - Brake Lights .....	22A-90
Circuit Diagram - Back-up Lights .....	22A-91
Combination Light Switch Test/Replacement .....	22A-92
Headlight Adjuster Unit Troubleshooting .....	22A-94
Headlight Adjuster Switch Test .....	22A-95
Headlight Replacement .....	22A-96
Headlight Adjustment .....	22A-96
Damaged Headlight Alignment Pin Procedure .....	22A-97
Taillight Replacement .....	22A-98
High Mount Brake Light Replacement .....	22A-98
License Plate Light Replacement .....	22A-99
Brake Pedal Position Switch Test .....	22A-99
Front Fog Lights Replacement .....	22A-100
Front Fog Lights Adjustment .....	22A-100
Side Turn Signal Lights Replacement .....	22A-101
<b>Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher .....</b>	<b>22A-102</b>
Component Location Index .....	22A-102
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-103
Turn Signal/Hazard Relay Input Test .....	22A-104

## Table Of Contents

---

Hazard Warning Switch Test .....	22A-105
<b>Interior Lights .....</b>	<b>22A-106</b>
Component Location Index.....	22A-106
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-107
Spotlights Test/Replacement .....	22A-108
Ceiling Light Test/Replacement .....	22A-109
Glove Box Light Test/Replacement .....	22A-109
Hatch Glass Latch Switch Test .....	22A-110
Tailgate Switch Test/Replacement .....	22A-110
<b>Entry Light Control System .....</b>	<b>22A-111</b>
Component Location Index.....	22A-111
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-112
Ignition Key Switch Test .....	22A-113
Ignition Key Light Test .....	22A-113
Control Unit Input Test .....	22A-114
<b>Stereo Sound System .....</b>	<b>22A-116</b>
Component Location Index.....	22A-116
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-117
Audio Unit Removal/Installation .....	22A-118
Audio Unit Connector Replacement .....	22A-119
Speaker Replacement .....	22A-120
Roof Antenna Replacement .....	22A-121
<b>Rear Window Defogger .....</b>	<b>22A-122</b>
Component Location Index.....	22A-122
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-123
Function Test .....	22A-124
Defogger Wire Repair .....	22A-124
Noise Condenser Capacity Test .....	22A-125
<b>Sunroof .....</b>	<b>22A-126</b>
Component Location Index.....	22A-126
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-127
Motor Test .....	22A-128
Switch Test/Replacement .....	22A-129
<b>Power Mirrors .....</b>	<b>22A-130</b>
Component Location Index.....	22A-130
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-131
Circuit Diagram - With Retract Power Mirror .....	22A-132
Function Test .....	22A-133
Power Mirror Switch Test/Replacement .....	22A-135
Power Mirror Actuator Test .....	22A-136
Power Mirror Actuator Replacement .....	22A-137
<b>Cigarette Lighter .....</b>	<b>22A-139</b>
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-139
Replacement.....	22A-139
<b>Horns .....</b>	<b>22A-140</b>
Component Location Index.....	22A-140
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-141

Horn Test/Replacement .....	22A-141
Horn Switch Test .....	22A-142
<b>Power Windows .....</b>	<b>22A-143</b>
Component Location Index .....	22A-143
Circuit Diagram - With UP-AUTO Function .....	22A-144
Circuit Diagram - Without UP-AUTO Function .....	22A-146
Master Switch Input Test - With UP-AUTO Function .....	22A-148
Master Switch Input Test - Without UP-AUTO Function .....	22A-150
Master Switch Test/Replacement .....	22A-152
Passenger's Window Switch Test/Replacement .....	22A-153
Driver's Window Motor Test - With UP-AUTO Function .....	22A-154
Driver's Window Motor Test - Without UP-AUTO Function .....	22A-155
Passenger's Window Motor Test .....	22A-156
Resetting the Power Window Control Unit .....	22A-157
<b>Keyless/Power Door Lock System .....</b>	<b>22A-158</b>
Component Location Index .....	22A-158
Circuit Diagram - With Super Locking .....	22A-160
Circuit Diagram - Without Super Locking .....	22A-163
Keyless Receiver Unit Input Test .....	22A-165
Control Unit Input Test - Without Super Locking .....	22A-166
Control Unit Input Test - With Super Locking .....	22A-169
Super Locking Control Unit Input Test .....	22A-172
Door Lock Actuator Test .....	22A-174
Transmitter Test .....	22A-176
Transmitter Programming .....	22A-176
Door Lock Switch Test .....	22A-177
Tailgate Lock Actuator Test .....	22A-178
Hatch Glass Opener Actuator Test .....	22A-178
<b>Hatch Glass Opener .....</b>	<b>22A-179</b>
Component Location Index .....	22A-179
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-180
Hatch Glass Latch Switch Test .....	22A-181
Hatch Glass Opener Switch Test/Replacement .....	22A-181
<b>Seat Heaters .....</b>	<b>22A-182</b>
Component Location Index .....	22A-182
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-183
Seat Heater Test .....	22A-184
Seat Heater Relay Test .....	22A-184
Seat Heater Switch Test/Replacement .....	22A-185
<b>Immobilizer System .....</b>	<b>22A-186</b>
Component Location Index .....	22A-186
System Description .....	22A-187
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-189
Troubleshooting .....	22A-190
Immobilizer Control Unit-Receiver Replacement .....	22A-191
<b>Security Alarm System .....</b>	<b>22A-192</b>
Component Location Index .....	22A-192
System Description .....	22A-195



## Table Of Contents

---

Circuit Diagram .....	22A-196
Security Control Unit Input Test .....	22A-199
Door Lock Knob Switch Test .....	22A-202
Hood Switch Test .....	22A-204
Door Key Cylinder Switch Test .....	22A-204
Tailgate Lock Knob Switch Test .....	22A-205
Security Horn Test .....	22A-205
<b>Wipers/Washers .....</b>	<b>22A-206</b>
Component Location Index.....	22A-206
System Description .....	22A-209
Circuit Diagram - Windshield .....	22A-210
Circuit Diagram - Headlight Washer .....	22A-211
Circuit Diagram - Rear Window .....	22A-212
Washer Motor Test .....	22A-213
Wiper/Washer Switch Test/Replacement .....	22A-214
Control Unit Input Test .....	22A-216
Headlight Washer Control Unit Input Test .....	22A-218
Rear Wiper Control Unit Input Test .....	22A-220
Wiper Motor Test .....	22A-222
Wiper Motor Replacement .....	22A-223
Washer Reservoir Replacement .....	22A-224
Washer Tubes Replacement .....	22A-225
<b>Multiplex Control System .....</b>	<b>22A-227</b>
Component Location Index.....	22A-227
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-228
System Description .....	22A-230
Troubleshooting .....	22A-231
Multiplex Control Unit Input Test .....	22A-235
<b>Accessory Power Socket .....</b>	<b>22A-238</b>
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-238
Test/Replacement .....	22A-239
<b>Navigation System .....</b>	<b>22B-1</b>
<b>Special Tools .....</b>	<b>22B-2</b>
<b>Component Location Index .....</b>	<b>22B-3</b>
<b>General Troubleshooting Information .....</b>	<b>22B-4</b>
General Operation .....	22B-4
Anti-theft Feature .....	22B-4
Symptom Diagnosis.....	22B-4
Self-Inertial Navigation Limitations .....	22B-4
Global Positioning System (GPS) Limitations.....	22B-4
LCD Display Unit Limitations .....	22B-5
Symptom Duplication .....	22B-5
Service Precautions.....	22B-5
<b>Symptom Troubleshooting Index .....</b>	<b>22B-6</b>
<b>System Description .....</b>	<b>22B-7</b>
Connector Locations.....	22B-7

AVN Unit Inputs and Outputs for Connector A (12P).....	22B-8
AVN Inputs and Outputs for GPS antenna 2P Connector .....	22B-9
Overview .....	22B-10
Navigation Function .....	22B-11
<b>Circuit Diagram .....</b>	<b>22B-15</b>
<b>Symptom Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>22B-16</b>
No picture is shown on the display .....	22B-16
The picture is missing a Red, Green or Blue color or tone .....	22B-17
Satellite mark in the GPS mark is not indicated.....	22B-18
Audio driving instructions cannot be heard .....	22B-18
Vehicle position does not move on the map .....	22B-19
<b>Picture Diagnosis Test .....</b>	<b>22B-20</b>
Start-up procedure .....	22B-20
Operation keys.....	22B-20
Diagnosis items:.....	22B-20
Cyclic Diag .....	22B-20
Vehicle Position .....	22B-20
Start demo mode .....	22B-20
In-line Diag.....	22B-20
System Links.....	22B-21
Monitor Check.....	22B-21
Unit Check .....	22B-23
Disp.....	22B-23
GPS .....	22B-23
Navi ECU .....	22B-23
System History.....	22B-23
Car Status.....	22B-24
Yaw Rate .....	22B-24
<b>Forced Starting of Display .....</b>	<b>22B-25</b>
<b>DVD-ROM Replacement .....</b>	<b>22B-25</b>
<b>AVN Unit Removal/Installation .....</b>	<b>22B-26</b>
<b>GPS Antenna Removal/Installation .....</b>	<b>22B-26</b>
<b>Clock Display Size and Location Adjustment .....</b>	<b>22B-27</b>
<b>Restraints .....</b>	<b>23-1</b>
<b>Restraints .....</b>	<b>23-2</b>
Special Tools .....	23-2
<b>Seat Belts .....</b>	<b>23-3</b>
Component Location Index.....	23-3
Front Seat Belt Replacement.....	23-4
Rear Seat Belt Replacement .....	23-8
Inspection.....	23-12
<b>SRS .....</b>	<b>23-14</b>
Component Location Index.....	23-14
Precautions and Procedures.....	23-16

## Table Of Contents

---

General Troubleshooting Information .....	23-25
DTC Troubleshooting Index .....	23-31
Symptom Troubleshooting Index .....	23-38
System Description .....	23-39
Circuit Diagram .....	23-41
Connectors .....	23-43
DTC Troubleshooting.....	23-45
SRS Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting.....	23-124
Component Replacement/Inspection After Deployment.....	23-134
Driver's Airbag Replacement .....	23-135
Front Passenger's Airbag Replacement .....	23-136
Side Airbag Replacement .....	23-137
Airbag Disposal.....	23-138
Cable Reel Replacement.....	23-141
SRS Unit Replacement.....	23-144
Side Impact Sensor Replacement .....	23-145
OPDS Unit Replacement .....	23-146
Front Sensor Replacement.....	23-147

## **Supplement .....77-1**

### **Fuel and Emissions Systems ..... 77-2**

Special Tools .....	77-2
General Troubleshooting Information .....	77-3
DTC Troubleshooting Index.....	77-5
DTC Troubleshooting.....	77-6
MIL Circuit Troubleshooting.....	77-33
Throttle Body Test .....	77-45

### **Automatic Transmission ..... 77-46**

DTC with [D] Indicator Light Troubleshooting Procedures.....	77-46
DTC Troubleshooting Index .....	77-47

## **Wiring diagrams .....78-1**

### **Starting System, Charging System, Ignition System ..... 78-2**

### **Gauge Assembly (Gauges, Indicator Lights, Dash Lights Brightness Control ..... 78-6**

### **Gauge Assembly (Indicator Lights, Warning Lights) ..... 78-10**

### **Gauge Assembly (A/T Gear Position Indicator), Cruise Control System ..... 78-14**

### **Exterior Lights (With Front Fog Lights, Without Front Fog Lights or Rear Fog Lights ..... 78-18**

### **Exterior Lights (With Rear Fog Lights) ..... 78-22**

### **Exterior Lights (With Front and Rear Fog Lights) ..... 78-26**

### **Exterior Lights (With Daytime Running Lights and Rear Fog Light) ..... 78-30**

### **Exterior Lights (Back-up Lights, Brake Lights, Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher) ..... 78-34**

### **Exterior Lights (Headlight Adjuster System), Interior Lights, Horns ..... 78-38**

### **Power Mirror ..... 78-42**

### **Sunroof, Power Windows ..... 78-46**

---

Power Window, Cigarette Lighter, Accessory Power Socket .....	78-50
Navigation System, Stereo Sound System .....	78-54
Seat Heater, Wipers/Washers (Headlight Washer) .....	78-58
Wipers/Washers (Windshield Rear) .....	78-62
Multiplex Control System (Fog Light Control, Immobilizer Control, Interlock Control, Intermittent Wiper Control, Entry Lights Control) .....	78-66
Keyless/Power Door Lock System (With Super locking System) .....	78-70
Keyless/Power Door Lock System (Without Super locking System) .....	78-74
Security Alarm System (With Super Locking System) .....	78-78
Security Alarm System (Without Super Locking System) .....	78-82
Interlock System, ABS .....	78-86
SRS .....	78-90
Fan Controls, HVAC .....	78-94
PGM-FI System, Immobilizer System .....	78-98
PGM-FI System .....	78-102
PGM-FI System (A/T) .....	78-106

## Index

### ***Numerics***

#### **2nd Clutch Pressure Switch**

Replacement ..... 14-121

#### **3rd Clutch Pressure Switch**

Replacement ..... 14-121

#### **3rd/4th Clutch Assembly**

Disassembly ..... 14-235

Inspection ..... 14-240

Reassembly ..... 14-247

## **A**

#### **A/C**

Circuit Diagram ..... 21-37

Component Location Index ..... 21-31

Description ..... 21-36

Test ..... 21-57

#### **A/C Compressor**

Replacement ..... 21-46

#### **A/C Compressor Clutch**

Inspection ..... 21-47

Overhaul ..... 21-48

#### **A/C Compressor Clutch Circuit**

Troubleshooting ..... 21-40

#### **A/C Compressor Relief Valve**

Replacement ..... 21-50

#### **A/C Compressor Thermal Protector**

Replacement ..... 21-50

#### **A/C Condenser**

Replacement ..... 21-51

#### **A/C Condenser Fan Circuit**

Troubleshooting ..... 21-38

#### **A/C Pressure Switch Circuit**

Troubleshooting ..... 21-42, 21-86

#### **A/C Signal Circuit**

Troubleshooting ..... 11-142

#### **A/T Assembly**

Installation ..... 14-143

Removal ..... 14-135

#### **A/T Clutch End Plate**

---

Inspection .....	14-242
<b>A/T Clutch Pressure Control Solenoid Valves</b>	
Replacement .....	14-117, 14-119
Test .....	14-116, 14-118
<b>A/T Clutch Waved-plate</b>	
Inspection .....	14-241
<b>A/T Countershaft Assembly</b>	
Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly .....	14-221
<b>A/T Differential</b>	
Component Location Index .....	14-264
<b>A/T Gear Position Indicator</b>	
Input Test .....	14-167
Replacement .....	14-171
<b>A/T Gear Position Indicator System</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	14-166
Component Location Index .....	14-165
<b>A/T Hydraulic Controls</b>	
Test .....	14-110
<b>A/T Mainshaft Assembly</b>	
Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly .....	14-218
<b>A/T Reverse Idler Gear</b>	
Removal/Installation .....	14-204
<b>A/T Secondary Shaft Assembly</b>	
Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly .....	14-227
<b>A/T Shift Cable</b>	
Adjustment .....	14-162
Replacement .....	14-157
<b>A/T Shift Lever</b>	
Disassembly/Reassembly .....	14-156
Installation .....	14-154
Removal .....	14-152
<b>ABS Indicator Circuit</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	19B-32
<b>ABS Modulator-Control Unit</b>	
Removal/Installation .....	19B-36
<b>ABS/TCS Components</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	19B-20
Component Location Index .....	19B-3
Description .....	19B-12
<b>Accessory Power Socket, Front</b>	
Test/Replacement .....	22A-239
<b>Accessory Power Sockets</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-238

## Index

---

<b>Air Cleaner</b>	
Replacement .....	11-182
<b>Air Cleaner Element</b>	
Replacement .....	11-182
<b>Air Mix Control Motor</b>	
Replacement .....	21-21
Test .....	21-21
<b>Airbag, Driver's</b>	
Repair .....	23-138
Replacement .....	23-135
<b>Airbag, Front Passenger's</b>	
Replacement .....	23-136
<b>Alternator</b>	
Overhaul .....	04-48
Replacement .....	04-46
<b>Alternator FR Signal Circuit</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	11-143
<b>Antenna</b>	
Replacement .....	22A-121
<b>ATF</b>	
Inspection .....	14-130
Replacement .....	14-131
<b>ATF Cooler Lines and Hoses</b>	
Replacement .....	14-151
<b>ATF Feed Pipes, End Cover</b>	
Replacement .....	14-197
<b>ATF Pump</b>	
Inspection .....	14-210
<b>ATF Temperature Sensor</b>	
Test/Replacement .....	14-122
<b>Audio Unit</b>	
Removal/Installation .....	22A-118
<b>Audio Unit Connector</b>	
Replacement .....	22A-119
<b>Audio/Entertainment</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-117
Component Location Index .....	22A-116
<b>Automatic Climate Control</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	21-67
Component Location Index .....	21-60
Description .....	21-66
<b>Automatic Transaxle</b>	
Description .....	14-19

Test .....	14-107
------------	--------

## B

### Back-Up Light Switch

Test .....	13-4
------------	------

### Back-up Lights

Circuit Diagram .....	22A-91
-----------------------	--------

### Ball Joints

Removal .....	18-10
---------------	-------

### Battery

Test .....	22A-59
------------	--------

### Blower Motor

Replacement .....	21-27
-------------------	-------

### Blower Power Transistor

Test .....	21-24
------------	-------

### Blower Unit

Removal/Installation .....	21-26
----------------------------	-------

### Brake Booster

Adjustment .....	19A-26
Inspection .....	19A-27
Replacement .....	19A-29

### Brake Calipers

Overhaul, Front .....	19A-19
Overhaul, Rear .....	19A-33

### Brake Discs

Inspection, Front .....	19A-18
Inspection, Rear .....	19A-32

### Brake Fluid Level Switch

Test .....	19A-11
------------	--------

### Brake Lights

Circuit Diagram .....	22A-90
-----------------------	--------

### Brake Lines and Hoses

Inspection .....	19A-40
Replacement .....	19A-41

### Brake Master Cylinder

Disassembly .....	19A-22
Reassembly .....	19A-23
Replacement .....	19A-21

### Brake Pads

Inspection/Replacement, Front .....	19A-12
Inspection/Replacement, Rear .....	19A-30

### Brake Pedal



## Index

---

Adjustment .....	19A-5
<b>Brake Pedal Position Switch</b>	
Test .....	22A-99
<b>Brake Pedal Position Switch Signal Circuit</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	11-146
<b>Brake System Indicator Circuit</b>	
Circuit Diagram Conventional Brake Components .....	19A-10
Troubleshooting ABS/TCS Components .....	19B-34
<b>Bulb, Gauge</b>	
Replacement .....	22A-73
<b>Bumper, Front</b>	
Removal/Installation .....	20-130
<b>Bumper, Rear</b>	
Removal/Installation .....	20-131
<b>C</b>	
<b>Cable Reel</b>	
Replacement .....	23-141
<b>Camshaft</b>	
Inspection .....	06-30
<b>Carpet</b>	
Replacement .....	20-85
<b>Catalytic Converter</b>	
Inspection .....	11-188
<b>Catalytic Converter System</b>	
Test .....	11-189
<b>Ceiling Light</b>	
Test/Replacement .....	22A-109
<b>Charging System</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	04-39
Component Location Index .....	04-38
Troubleshooting .....	04-40
<b>Cigarette Lighter</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-139
Replacement .....	22A-139
<b>CKP (Crankshaft Position) Sensor</b>	
Replacement .....	11-119
<b>Climate Control Power and Ground Circuits</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	21-85
<b>Climate Control Unit</b>	
Removal/Installation .....	21-91

Climate Control Unit Bulb

Replacement ..... 21-91

Clutch

Component Location Index ..... 12-3

Replacement ..... 12-11

Clutch Master Cylinder

Overhaul ..... 12-6

Replacement ..... 12-5

Clutch Pedal

Adjustment ..... 12-4

Clutch Slave Cylinder

Overhaul ..... 12-10

Replacement ..... 12-8

CMP (Camshaft Position) Sensor

Replacement ..... 11-138

Combination Light Switch

Test/Replacement ..... 22A-92

Connecting Rod Bearings

Replacement ..... 07-8

Connecting Rod Bolts

Inspection ..... 07-24

Connecting Rods

Inspection ..... 07-5

Connector and Wire Harness Indexes

Component Connectors (to harness) ..... 22A-14

Control Shaft Bearing

Replacement ..... 14-197

Control Shaft Oil Seal, End Cover

Replacement ..... 14-196

Control Shaft Oil Seal, Torque Converter Housing

Replacement ..... 14-217

Conventional Brake Components

Component Location Index ..... 19A-3

Inspection ..... 19A-4

Repair ..... 19A-9

Coolant

Inspection ..... 10-6

Replacement ..... 10-6

Coolant Temperature Gauge

Troubleshooting ..... 22A-74

Cooling System

Component Location Index ..... 10-2

## Index

---

### Countershaft Bearing, Torque Converter Housing

Replacement ..... 14-215

### Countershaft Bearings

Replacement ..... 13-46

### Countershaft Reverse Selector Hub

Installation ..... 14-224, 14-226

Removal ..... 14-223, 14-225

### Cowl Cover

Replacement ..... 20-140

### Crankshaft

Inspection ..... 07-14

Installation ..... 07-24

Removal ..... 07-12

### Crankshaft Main Bearings

Replacement ..... 07-6

### Crankshaft Pulley

Removal/Installation ..... 06-11

### Cruise Control Actuator

Replacement ..... 04-62

Test ..... 04-61

### Cruise Control Actuator Cable

Adjustment ..... 04-63

### Cruise Control Communication Circuit

Troubleshooting ..... 04-57

### Cruise Control Main Switch

Test/Replacement ..... 04-60

### Cruise Control Set/Resume/Cancel Switch

Test/Replacement ..... 04-60

### Cruise Control System

Circuit Diagram ..... 04-54

Component Location Index ..... 04-53

### Cruise Control Unit

Input Test ..... 04-58

### Cylinder Head Assembly

Component Location Index ..... 06-3

Inspection ..... 06-6

Installation ..... 06-40

Removal ..... 06-24

### Cylinder Head Cover

Installation ..... 06-42

Removal ..... 06-23

### Cylinder Head, Bare

Inspection ..... 06-26

**D****Dampers, Front**

Repair .....	18-11
Replacement .....	18-21

**Dampers, Rear**

Replacement .....	18-36
-------------------	-------

**Dash Vents**

Removal/Installation .....	20-96
----------------------------	-------

**Dashboard**

Removal/Installation .....	20-96
----------------------------	-------

**Dashboard Center Lower Cover**

A/T Removal/Installation .....	20-91
M/T Removal/Installation .....	20-93

**Dashboard Center Panel**

Removal/Installation .....	20-89
----------------------------	-------

**Dashboard Center Tray**

Removal/Installation .....	20-90
----------------------------	-------

**Dashboard Lower Cover**

Removal/Installation .....	20-88
----------------------------	-------

**Dashboard Under Cover**

Driver's Removal/Installation .....	20-89
Passenger's Removal/Installation .....	20-95

**Differential Carrier Bearing Outer Races, A/T**

Replacement .....	14-268
-------------------	--------

**Differential Carrier Bearings, A/T**

Inspection .....	14-270
Replacement .....	14-265

**Differential Carrier Bearings, M/T**

Replacement .....	13-59
-------------------	-------

**Differential Carrier, A/T**

Inspection .....	14-265
Replacement .....	14-266

**Differential Fluid, Rear**

Inspection/Replacement .....	15-13
------------------------------	-------

**Differential Housing, Rear**

Removal/Installation .....	15-15
----------------------------	-------

**Differential Mount, Rear**

Replacement .....	15-27
-------------------	-------

**Differential Oil Seal, Rear**

Replacement .....	15-16
-------------------	-------

**Differential Oil Seals, A/T**

## Index

---

Replacement .....	14-267
<b>Differential Oil Seals, M/T</b>	
Replacement .....	13-60
<b>Differential Pinion Gears, M/T</b>	
Inspection .....	13-58
<b>DLC Circuit</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	11-114
<b>Door Channel Tapes, Outer</b>	
Replacement Front Doors .....	20-19
Replacement Rear Doors .....	20-32
<b>Door Glass</b>	
Adjustment .....	20-34
Replacement Front Doors .....	20-16
Replacement Rear Doors .....	20-27
<b>Door Glass Weatherstrips</b>	
Replacement Front Doors .....	20-17
Replacement Rear Doors .....	20-30
<b>Door Key Cylinder Switches</b>	
Test .....	22A-204
<b>Door Latches</b>	
Replacement Front Doors .....	20-14
Replacement Rear Doors .....	20-25
<b>Door Lock Actuators</b>	
Test .....	22A-174
<b>Door Lock Knob Switches</b>	
Test .....	22A-202
<b>Door Lock Switches</b>	
Test .....	22A-177
<b>Door Lower Trim</b>	
Replacement .....	20-148
<b>Door Moldings</b>	
Replacement .....	20-147
<b>Door Outer Handles</b>	
Replacement Front Doors .....	20-11
Replacement Rear Doors .....	20-23
<b>Door Panels</b>	
Removal/Installation Front Doors .....	20-9
Removal/Installation Rear Doors .....	20-21
<b>Door Seals</b>	
Replacement .....	20-31
<b>Door Strikers</b>	
Adjustment .....	20-37

**Door Weatherstrips**

Replacement Front Doors .....	20-18
Replacement Rear Doors .....	20-30

**Drive Belt**

Inspection .....	04-43
Replacement .....	04-44

**Drive Belt Auto-tensioner**

Inspection .....	04-44
Replacement .....	04-45

**DTC Troubleshooting Indexes**

ABS/TCS Components .....	19B-10
Automatic Climate Control .....	21-64
Automatic Transaxle .....	14-7, 77-47
Fuel and Emissions .....	11-6, 77-5
Heating/Ventilation .....	21-5
SRS .....	23-31

**Dust and Pollen Filter**

Replacement .....	21-25
-------------------	-------

**E****ECM**

How-to Information .....	77-3
--------------------------	------

**ECT Sensor**

Replacement .....	11-120
-------------------	--------

**ECT Sensor Circuit**

Troubleshooting .....	21-87
-----------------------	-------

**Emblems**

Replacement .....	20-153
-------------------	--------

**End Cover, A/T**

Installation .....	14-259
Removal .....	14-192

**Engine Assembly**

Installation .....	05-10
Removal .....	05-3

**Engine Block Assembly**

Component Location Index .....	07-3
--------------------------------	------

**Engine Block, Bare**

Inspection .....	07-15
Repair .....	07-17

**Entry Light Control System**

Circuit Diagram .....	22A-112
Component Location Index .....	22A-111

**EVAP Canister**

Replacement .....	11-199
-------------------	--------

## Index

---

### EVAP Control System

Component Location Index .....	11-191
Troubleshooting .....	11-195

### EVAP Two Way Valve

Test .....	11-198
------------	--------

### Evaporator Temperature Sensor

Replacement .....	21-44
Test .....	21-44

### Exhaust Manifold

Removal/Installation .....	09-8
----------------------------	------

### Exhaust Pipe

Replacement .....	09-9
-------------------	------

## F

### Fan Controls

Circuit Diagram .....	10-13
Component Location Index .....	10-11

### Fender Fairing, Front

Replacement .....	20-156
-------------------	--------

### Fender Moldings

Replacement .....	20-145
-------------------	--------

### Final Driven Gear, M/T

Replacement .....	13-58
-------------------	-------

### Fog Lights

Adjustment .....	22A-100
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-84
Replacement .....	22A-100

### Frame

Repair Chart .....	20-171
--------------------	--------

### Frame Pipes

Replacement .....	20-170
-------------------	--------

### Front Corner Mirror

Replacement .....	20-40
-------------------	-------

### Front Doors

Adjustment .....	20-36
Component Location Index .....	20-2

### Front Driveshaft Assembly

Disassembly .....	16-5
Inspection .....	16-3
Installation .....	16-17
Reassembly .....	16-9
Removal .....	16-3

### Front Impact Sensors

Replacement .....	23-147
<b>Front Speakers</b>	
Replacement .....	22A-120
<b>Front Suspension</b>	
Component Location Index .....	18-3
<b>Fuel and Emissions</b>	
Description .....	11-10
<b>Fuel Fill Door</b>	
Adjustment .....	20-138
<b>Fuel Fill Door Opener Cable</b>	
Replacement .....	20-160
<b>Fuel Filter</b>	
Replacement .....	11-166
<b>Fuel Gauge Sending Unit</b>	
Test .....	11-173
<b>Fuel Injection System (PGM-FI)</b>	
Component Location Index .....	11-59
<b>Fuel Injectors</b>	
Replacement .....	11-117
Troubleshooting .....	11-116
<b>Fuel Lines and Hoses</b>	
Inspection .....	11-156
Installation .....	11-162
Removal .....	11-161
<b>Fuel Pipe Protector</b>	
Replacement .....	20-157
<b>Fuel Pressure Regulator</b>	
Replacement .....	11-165
<b>Fuel Pump</b>	
Replacement .....	11-167
<b>Fuel Pump Circuit</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	11-151
<b>Fuel Supply System</b>	
Adjustment .....	11-154
Component Location Index .....	11-149
Test .....	11-154
<b>Fuel Tank</b>	
Replacement .....	11-169
<b>Fuse/Relay Indexes</b>	
Power Distribution .....	22A-37
Under-dash Fuse/Relay Box .....	22A-36
Under-hood Fuse/Relay Box, Main .....	22A-35



## Index

---

### G

#### Gauge Assembly

Replacement ..... 22A-74

#### Gauges

Circuit Diagram ..... 22A-68

Component Location Index ..... 22A-64

How-to Information ..... 22A-66

**General Information Section** ..... 01-

#### Glove Box

Removal/Installation ..... 20-95

#### Glove Box Light

Test/Replacement ..... 22A-109

#### GPS Antenna

Removal/Installation ..... 22B-26

#### Grille

Replacement ..... 20-139

#### Ground Distribution

Circuit Diagram ..... 22A-48

### H

#### Hatch Glass

Adjustment ..... 20-58

Circuit Diagram ..... 22A-180

Component Location Index ..... 22A-179

Disassembly/Reassembly ..... 20-57

Replacement ..... 20-55

#### Hatch Glass Latch

Replacement ..... 20-166

#### Hatch Glass Latch Switch

Test, Hatch Glass ..... 22A-181

Test, Tailgate Light ..... 22A-110

#### Hatch Glass Opener Solenoid

Replacement Hatch Glass ..... 20-167

Test, Keyless Entry/Security Alarm System ..... 22A-178

#### Hatch Glass Opener Switch

Test/Replacement ..... 22A-181

#### Hatch Glass Weatherstrip

Replacement ..... 20-62

#### Hazard Warning Switch

Test ..... 22A-105

#### Headlight

Adjustment ..... 22A-96

---

How-to Information .....	22A-97
Replacement .....	22A-96
<b>Headlight Adjuster Switch</b>	
Test .....	22A-95
<b>Headlight Adjuster Unit</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	22A-94
<b>Headlight Washer Control Unit</b>	
Input Test .....	22A-218
<b>Headlights</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-82, 22A-86, 22A-89
<b>Headliner</b>	
Removal/Installation .....	20-81
<b>Heater Control Panel</b>	
Removal and Installation Heating/Ventilation .....	21-24
Removal/Installation Dashboard .....	20-91
<b>Heater Control Panel Bulb</b>	
Replacement .....	21-25
<b>Heater Control Power and Ground Circuits</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	21-20
<b>Heater Unit</b>	
Replacement .....	21-28
<b>Heater Valve Cable</b>	
Adjustment .....	21-30
<b>Heating/Ventilation</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	21-8
Component Location Index .....	21-3
Description .....	21-7
<b>High Mount Brake Light</b>	
Replacement .....	22A-98
<b>High Mount Brake Light Bracket</b>	
Replacement .....	20-61
<b>HO2S, Primary</b>	
Replacement .....	11-119
<b>HO2S, Secondary</b>	
Replacement .....	11-122
<b>Hood</b>	
Adjustment .....	20-132
<b>Hood Insulator</b>	
Replacement .....	20-134
<b>Hood Latch</b>	
Replacement .....	20-162

## Index

---

### Hood Opener Cable

Component Location Index .....	20-158
Replacement .....	20-159

### Hood Seal

Replacement .....	20-133
-------------------	--------

### Hood Switch

Test .....	22A-204
------------	---------

### Horn

Test/Replacement .....	22A-141
------------------------	---------

### Horn Switch

Test .....	22A-142
------------	---------

### Horns

Circuit Diagram .....	22A-141
Component Location Index .....	22A-140

## I

### IAT (Intake Air Temperature) Sensor

Replacement .....	11-121
-------------------	--------

### Idle Control System

Component Location Index .....	11-139
Inspection .....	11-148

### Idler Gear

Replacement .....	14-234
-------------------	--------

### Idler Gear Shaft

Removal/Installation .....	14-233
----------------------------	--------

### Idler Gear Shaft Bearing

Replacement .....	14-196
-------------------	--------

### Ignition Coil(s)

Removal/Installation .....	04-35
Troubleshooting .....	04-35

### Ignition Key Light

Test .....	22A-113
------------	---------

### Ignition Key Switch

Test .....	22A-113
------------	---------

### Ignition Switch

Test .....	22A-63
------------	--------

### Ignition System

Circuit Diagram .....	04-33
Component Location Index .....	04-32
Inspection .....	04-34

### Immobilizer Control Unit-Receiver

Replacement .....	22A-191
-------------------	---------

**Immobilizer System**

Circuit Diagram .....	22A-189
Component Location Index .....	22A-186
Description .....	22A-187
Troubleshooting .....	22A-190

**IMRC (Intake Manifold Runner Control) Valve**

Replacement .....	11-187
-------------------	--------

**In-car Temperature Sensor**

Replacement .....	21-88
Test .....	21-88

**Inner Fender, Front**

Replacement .....	20-155
-------------------	--------

**Inside Rearview Mirror**

Replacement .....	20-41
-------------------	-------

**Instrument Panel**

Removal/Installation .....	20-87
----------------------------	-------

**Intake Air Bypass Control Thermal Valve**

Test .....	11-181
------------	--------

**Intake Air System**

Component Location Index .....	11-176
Troubleshooting .....	11-177

**Intake Manifold**

Removal/Installation .....	09-2
----------------------------	------

**Interlock Control Unit**

Input Test .....	14-180
------------------	--------

**Interlock System**

Circuit Diagram .....	14-173
Component Location Index .....	14-172

**Intermediate Shaft Assembly**

Disassembly .....	16-20
Installation .....	16-23
Reassembly .....	16-21
Removal .....	16-19

**K****Key Interlock Solenoid**

Test .....	14-181
------------	--------

**Key Interlock System Circuit**

Troubleshooting .....	14-179
-----------------------	--------

**Keyless Entry Transmitter**

Repair .....	22A-176
Test .....	22A-176

**Keyless Entry/Security Alarm System**

## Index

---

Circuit Diagram .....	22A-196
Component Location Index .....	22A-158, 22A-192
Description .....	22A-195

### Keyless Receiver Unit

Input Test .....	22A-165
------------------	---------

### Knock Sensor

Replacement .....	11-121
-------------------	--------

### Knuckles

Replacement, Front Suspension .....	18-12
Replacement, Rear Suspension .....	18-27

## L

### License Plate Light

Replacement .....	22A-99
-------------------	--------

### Lights, Exterior

Component Location Index .....	22A-79
--------------------------------	--------

### Lights, Interior

Circuit Diagram .....	22A-107
Component Location Index .....	22A-106

### Low Fuel Indicator

Test .....	11-175
------------	--------

### Lower Arms

Replacement .....	18-20
-------------------	-------

### Lubrication System

Component Location Index .....	08-3
Test .....	08-4

## M

### M/T Assembly

Disassembly .....	13-15
Installation .....	13-10
Reassembly .....	13-50
Removal .....	13-5

### M/T Countershaft Assembly

Disassembly .....	13-36
Inspection .....	13-34
Reassembly .....	13-38

### M/T Differential

Adjustment .....	13-61
Component Location Index .....	13-56

### M/T Mainshaft Assembly

Adjustment .....	13-47
Disassembly .....	13-28
Inspection .....	13-26

---

Reassembly .....	13-31
<b>M/T Reverse Shift Fork</b>	
Inspection .....	13-21
<b>M/T Shift Lever</b>	
Disassembly/Reassembly .....	13-23
Inspection .....	13-22
Replacement .....	13-55
<b>Main Valve Body</b>	
Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly .....	14-209
Installation .....	14-208, 14-252
Removal .....	14-205
Repair .....	14-207
<b>Mainshaft 3rd Gear</b>	
Inspection .....	14-219
<b>Mainshaft Bearing, A/T Housing</b>	
Installation .....	14-203
Removal .....	14-202
<b>Mainshaft Bearing, Torque Converter Housing</b>	
Replacement .....	14-214
<b>Mainshaft Bearings</b>	
Replacement .....	13-45
<b>Mainshaft Speed Sensor</b>	
Replacement .....	14-120
<b>Maintenance section</b> .....	03-
<b>Map Light/Spotlight</b>	
Test/Replacement .....	22A-108
<b>MIL Circuit</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	11-102, 77-33
<b>Mirrors</b>	
Component Location Index .....	20-38
<b>Mode Control Motor</b>	
Replacement .....	21-22
Test .....	21-22
<b>Moonroof/Sunroof</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-127
Component Location Index .....	20-63, 22A-126
Test .....	20-74
<b>MTF</b>	
Inspection/Replacement .....	13-4
<b>Multiplex Control System</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-228
Component Location Index .....	22A-227
Description .....	22A-230
Troubleshooting .....	22A-231

## Index

---

### Multiplex Control Unit

Input Test, Entry Light Control System .....	22A-114
Input Test, Keyless Entry/Security Alarm System .....	22A-166, 22A-169
Input Test, Multiplex Control System .....	22A-235
Input Test, Wiper/Washer .....	22A-216

## N

### Navigation

Adjustment .....	22B-27
Circuit Diagram .....	22B-15
Component Location Index .....	22B-3
Description .....	22B-7
How-to Information .....	22B-4
Repair .....	22B-25
Test .....	22B-20
Troubleshooting .....	22B-16

### Navigation Display Unit

Removal/Installation .....	22B-26
----------------------------	--------

### Navigation Unit DVD-ROM

Replacement .....	22B-25
-------------------	--------

### Noise Reduction Condenser

Test .....	22A-125
------------	---------

## O

### O/D Switch

Test/Replacement .....	14-124
------------------------	--------

### O/D Switch Circuit

Troubleshooting .....	14-106
-----------------------	--------

### Oil Filter

Replacement .....	08-6
-------------------	------

### Oil Filter Feed Pipe

Replacement .....	08-9
-------------------	------

### Oil Pan

Installation .....	07-27
Removal .....	07-11

### Oil Pressure Switch

Replacement .....	08-18
Test .....	08-4

### Oil Pump, Engine

Overhaul .....	08-10
----------------	-------

### Oil, Engine

Replacement .....	08-5
-------------------	------

### OPDS Unit

Replacement .....	23-146
<b>Outside Air Temperature Display</b>	
Test .....	22A-78
<b>Outside Air Temperature Sensor</b>	
Replacement .....	21-89
Test .....	21-89
<b>Outside Mirror Holders</b>	
Replacement .....	20-40
<b>Outside Power Mirror Actuators</b>	
Replacement .....	22A-137
Test .....	22A-136
<b>Outside Power Mirror Switch</b>	
Test/Replacement .....	22A-135
<b>Outside Power Mirrors</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-131, 22A-132
Component Location Index .....	22A-130
Replacement .....	20-39
Test .....	22A-133

## P

<b>Park Lever Position Stop</b>	
Inspection/Adjustment .....	14-195
<b>Park Pin Switch</b>	
Test/Replacement .....	14-187
<b>Parking Brake</b>	
Inspection/Adjustment .....	19A-6
<b>Parking Brake Cable</b>	
Replacement .....	19A-42
<b>Parking Brake Drum</b>	
Inspection .....	19A-34
<b>Parking Brake Shoes</b>	
Repair .....	19A-39
Replacement .....	19A-36
<b>Parking Brake Switch</b>	
Test .....	19A-11
<b>PCM</b>	
How-to Information .....	77-46
<b>PCV Valve</b>	
Test .....	11-190
<b>Piston Rings</b>	
Replacement .....	07-21
<b>Pistons</b>	



## Index

---

Installation .....	07-23
Replacement .....	07-18
<b>Power Distribution</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-40
<b>Power Relay</b>	
Test .....	22A-60
<b>Power Steering Fluid</b>	
Replacement .....	17-11
<b>Power Steering Lines and Hoses</b>	
Replacement .....	17-12
<b>Power Steering Pump</b>	
Overhaul .....	17-14
Replacement .....	17-13
Test .....	17-9
<b>Power Window Motor, Driver's</b>	
Test .....	22A-154
<b>Power Window Motors, Passenger's</b>	
Test .....	22A-156
<b>Power Window Switch, Master</b>	
Input Test .....	22A-148, 22A-150
Repair .....	22A-157
<b>Power Window Switch, Passenger's</b>	
Test/Replacement .....	22A-153
<b>Power Window Switch, Master</b>	
Test/Replacement .....	22A-152
<b>Power Windows</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-144, 22A-146
Component Location Index .....	22A-143
<b>Propeller Shaft</b>	
Inspection .....	16-32
Installation .....	16-34
Removal .....	16-33
<b>PSP (Power Steering Pressure) Switch Signal Circuit</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	11-145

## Q

### Quarter Window Glass

Replacement .....	20-50
-------------------	-------

## R

### Radiator

Replacement .....	10-10
-------------------	-------

---

Test .....	10-3
<b>Radiator and Condenser Fans Common Circuit</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	21-39
<b>Radiator Cap</b>	
Test .....	10-3
<b>Radiator Fan Assembly</b>	
Test .....	10-4
<b>Radiator Fan Circuit</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	10-14
<b>Radiator Fan Switch</b>	
Replacement .....	10-17
Test .....	10-17
<b>Radiator Fan Switch Circuit</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	10-16
<b>Realtime 4WD System</b>	
Description .....	15-3
Test .....	15-9
<b>Rear Air Outlet</b>	
Replacement .....	20-157
<b>Rear Differential</b>	
Disassembly .....	15-18
Installation .....	15-25
Reassembly .....	15-21
Removal .....	15-14
<b>Rear Doors</b>	
Component Location Index .....	20-6
<b>Rear Driveshaft Assembly</b>	
Disassembly .....	16-25
Installation .....	16-31
Reassembly .....	16-27
Removal .....	16-24
<b>Rear Window Defogger</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-123
Component Location Index .....	22A-122
<b>Rear Window Defogger Wires</b>	
Repair .....	22A-124
Test .....	22A-124
<b>Rear Window Molding</b>	
Replacement .....	20-59
<b>Rear Window Wiper Control Unit</b>	
Input Test .....	22A-220
<b>Receiver/Dryer Desiccant</b>	
Replacement .....	21-52

## Index

---

### Recirculation Control Motor

Replacement .....	21-23
Test .....	21-23

### Recirculation Control Motor Circuit

Troubleshooting .....	21-18, 21-83
-----------------------	--------------

### Refrigerant

Replacement .....	21-53
Test .....	21-56

### Refrigerant Oil

Replacement .....	21-33
-------------------	-------

### Regulator Valve Body

Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly .....	14-211
---	--------

### Reverse Lock System Circuit

Troubleshooting .....	14-178
-----------------------	--------

### Rocker Arm Assembly

Disassembly/Reassembly .....	06-28
Installation .....	06-39
Removal .....	06-27

### Rocker Arms

Inspection .....	06-29
Test .....	06-7

### Roof Side Trim

Replacement Front .....	20-142
Replacement Rear .....	20-144

## S

### Seat Armrest Cover, Rear

Replacement .....	20-116
-------------------	--------

### Seat Armrest, Front

Replacement .....	20-107
-------------------	--------

### Seat Armrest, Rear

Replacement .....	20-115
-------------------	--------

### Seat Belts

Component Location Index .....	23-3
--------------------------------	------

### Seat Belts, Front

Inspection .....	23-12
Replacement .....	23-4

### Seat Belts, Rear

Replacement .....	23-8
-------------------	------

### Seat Center Table, Front

Replacement .....	20-106
-------------------	--------

### Seat Cover, Front

Replacement .....	20-110
<b>Seat Cover, Rear</b>	
Replacement Left .....	20-123
Replacement Right .....	20-117
<b>Seat Heater Elements</b>	
Test .....	22A-184
<b>Seat Heater Relay</b>	
Test .....	22A-184
<b>Seat Heater Switches</b>	
Test/Replacement .....	22A-185
<b>Seat Heaters</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	22A-183
Component Location Index .....	22A-182
<b>Seat, Front</b>	
Disassembly/Reassembly With Manual Height Adjustable .....	20-108
Disassembly/Reassembly Without Manual Height Adjustable .....	20-109
Removal/Installation .....	20-103
<b>Seat, Rear</b>	
Removal/Installation .....	20-114
<b>Seat-back Latch Lever, Rear</b>	
Replacement .....	20-128
<b>Seat-back Lock Control Cable, Rear</b>	
Replacement .....	20-127
<b>Seats</b>	
Component Location Index .....	20-102
<b>Secondary Shaft 1st Gear</b>	
Inspection .....	14-231
<b>Secondary Shaft 2nd Gear</b>	
Inspection .....	14-229
<b>Secondary Shaft Bearing, Torque Converter Housing</b>	
Replacement .....	14-216
<b>Secondary Shaft Bearings</b>	
Removal/Installation .....	14-228
<b>Security Control Unit</b>	
Input Test .....	22A-199
<b>Security Horn</b>	
Test .....	22A-205
<b>Servo Body</b>	
Disassembly/Inspection/Reassembly .....	14-212
<b>Shift Control Solenoid Valves</b>	
Installation A/T Electronic Control System .....	14-213
Replacement A/T Electronic Control System .....	14-114

## Index

---

Test A/T Electronic Control System .....	14-112
Test Torque Converter .....	14-109
<b>Shift Forks</b>	
Disassembly/Reassembly .....	13-25
Inspection .....	13-24
<b>Shift Lock Solenoid</b>	
Test/Replacement .....	14-
<b>Shift Lock System Circuit</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	14-175
<b>Side Airbag, Driver's</b>	
Replacement .....	23-137
<b>Side Impact Sensors</b>	
Replacement .....	23-145
<b>Side Sill Panels</b>	
Replacement .....	20-149
<b>Spark Plugs</b>	
Inspection .....	04-37
<b>Specifications section</b> .....	02-
<b>SRS</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	23-41
Component Location Index .....	23-14
Description .....	23-39
Inspection/Replacement .....	23-134
<b>SRS Indicator Circuit</b>	
Troubleshooting .....	23-124
<b>SRS Unit</b>	
Replacement .....	23-144
<b>Stabilizer Bar</b>	
Replacement, Front Suspension .....	18-19
Replacement, Rear Suspension .....	18-32
<b>Stabilizer Links</b>	
Replacement, Front Suspension .....	18-18
Replacement, Rear Suspension .....	18-33
<b>Starter</b>	
Overhaul .....	04-24
Replacement .....	04-23
Test .....	04-21
<b>Starter Solenoid</b>	
Test .....	04-20
<b>Starting System</b>	
Circuit Diagram .....	04-18
Component Location Index .....	04-17
Troubleshooting .....	04-19
<b>Steering</b>	

Component Location Index .....	17-3
Inspection .....	17-7
Troubleshooting .....	17-6
<b>Steering Column</b>	
Inspection .....	17-25
Inspection/Adjustment .....	17-26
Removal/Installation .....	17-24
<b>Steering Gearbox</b>	
Installation .....	17-51
Overhaul .....	17-33
Removal .....	17-29
<b>Steering Hanger Beam</b>	
Replacement .....	20-99
<b>Steering Linkage</b>	
Inspection .....	17-8
<b>Steering Lock</b>	
Replacement .....	17-27
<b>Steering Rack Guide</b>	
Adjustment .....	17-28
<b>Steering Wheel</b>	
Disassembly/Reassembly .....	17-22
Inspection .....	17-7
Installation .....	17-23
Removal .....	17-21
<b>Sub-frames</b>	
Replacement .....	20-168
<b>Sunlight Sensor</b>	
Replacement .....	21-90
Test .....	21-90
<b>Sunroof Drain Channel</b>	
Replacement .....	20-66
<b>Sunroof Drain Channel Slider</b>	
Replacement .....	20-71
<b>Sunroof Frame</b>	
Replacement .....	20-69
<b>Sunroof Glass</b>	
Adjustment .....	20-65
Replacement .....	20-65
<b>Sunroof Motor</b>	
Replacement .....	20-68
Test .....	22A-128
<b>Sunroof Position Switch</b>	
Adjustment .....	20-73
<b>Sunroof Sunshade</b>	

## Index

---

Replacement .....	20-67
<b>Sunroof Switch</b>	
Test/Replacement .....	22A-129
<b>Super Locking Control Unit</b>	
Input Test .....	22A-172
<b>Suspension</b>	
Adjustment .....	18-4
<b>Symptom Troubleshooting Indexes</b>	
A/C .....	21-35
ABS/TCS Components .....	19B-11
Automatic Climate Control .....	21-65
Automatic Transaxle .....	14-8
Cruise Control System .....	04-55
Fan Controls .....	10-12
Fuel and Emissions .....	11-8
Heating/Ventilation .....	21-6
Moonroof/Sunroof .....	20-64
Navigation .....	22B-6
Realtime 4WD System .....	15-12
SRS .....	23-38
Steering .....	17-4
<b>Synchro Ring, Dual-cone</b>	
Inspection .....	13-43
<b>Synchro Sleeve</b>	
Inspection/Reassembly .....	13-43
<b>T</b>	
<b>Tailgate</b>	
Adjustment .....	20-135
<b>Tailgate Actuator</b>	
Test .....	22A-178
<b>Tailgate Handle</b>	
Replacement .....	20-163
<b>Tailgate Latch</b>	
Replacement .....	20-164
<b>Tailgate Lock Knob Switch</b>	
Test .....	22A-205
<b>Tailgate Lock Linkage</b>	
Replacement .....	20-165
<b>Tailgate Lower Trim</b>	
Replacement .....	20-150
<b>Tailgate Striker</b>	
Adjustment .....	20-136
<b>Tailgate Support Struts</b>	

---

Replacement .....	20-137
<b>Tailgate Switch</b>	
Test/Replacement .....	22A-110
<b>Tailgate Weatherstrip</b>	
Replacement .....	20-137
<b>Tailgate Wedge</b>	
Adjustment .....	20-136
<b>Taillight</b>	
Replacement .....	22A-98
<b>TDC Sensors</b>	
Replacement .....	11-120
<b>Thermostat</b>	
Replacement .....	10-8
Test .....	10-4
<b>Throttle Body</b>	
Disassembly/Reassembly .....	11-186
Removal/Installation .....	11-185
Test .....	11-180, 77-45
<b>Throttle Cable</b>	
Adjustment .....	11-183
Removal/Installation .....	11-184
<b>Tie-rod Ball Joint Boots</b>	
Replacement .....	17-55
<b>Timing/Cam Chain</b>	
Inspection .....	06-22
Installation .....	06-15
Removal .....	06-12
<b>Timing/Cam Chain Auto-Tensioner</b>	
Removal/Installation .....	06-19
<b>Timing/Cam Chain Case Oil Seal</b>	
Installation .....	06-21
<b>Trailing Arms</b>	
Replacement .....	18-35
<b>Transfer Assembly</b>	
Disassembly Automatic Transaxle .....	14-274
Disassembly Manual Transaxle .....	13-68
Inspection Automatic Transaxle .....	14-132, 14-273
Inspection Manual Transaxle .....	13-63
Installation Automatic Transaxle .....	14-134
Installation Manual Transaxle .....	13-64
Overhaul Manual Transaxle .....	13-65
Reassembly Automatic Transaxle .....	14-281
Reassembly Manual Transaxle .....	13-73
Removal Automatic Transaxle .....	14-133
Removal Manual Transaxle .....	13-64



## Index

---

### Transfer Drive Gear

Inspection ..... 13-67

### Transfer Drive Gear Bearing

Replacement Transfer Assembly ..... 13-71, 14-279

### Transfer Driven Gear Bearing

Removal/Installation Transfer Assembly ..... 14-279

Replacement Transfer Assembly ..... 13-72

### Transfer Holder

Disassembly Transfer Assembly ..... 13-70, 14-277

### Transfer Holder Tapered Roller Bearing

Replacement ..... 14-278

### Transfer Holder Tapered Roller Bearing Outer Race

Removal/Installation Transfer Assembly ..... 14-278

Replacement Transfer Assembly ..... 13-71

### Transfer Housing Tapered Roller Bearing Outer Race

Replacement Transfer Assembly ..... 13-72, 14-280

### Transmission Housing

Installation ..... 14-254

Removal ..... 14-198

### Transmission Range Switch

Replacement ..... 14-169

Test ..... 14-168

### Trim

Component Location Index ..... 20-75

Removal/Installation ..... 20-76

### Turn Signal Light

Replacement ..... 22A-101

### Turn Signal/Hazard Relay

Input Test ..... 22A-104

### Turn Signal/Hazard Warning Lights

Circuit Diagram ..... 22A-103

Component Location Index ..... 22A-102

### Tweeters

Replacement ..... 22A-120

## U

### Under-dash Fuse/Relay Box

Removal/Installation ..... 22A-58

### Upper Arms

Replacement ..... 18-34

## V

### Valve Guides

Inspection .....	06-33
Replacement .....	06-34

### Valve Seats

Repair .....	06-36
--------------	-------

### Valves

Adjustment .....	06-9
Inspection .....	06-33
Installation .....	06-38
Removal .....	06-32

### Vehicle Speed Signal Circuit

Troubleshooting .....	22A-75
-----------------------	--------

### VSS

Replacement .....	22A-77
-------------------	--------

### VTC Actuator

Inspection .....	06-8
Replacement .....	06-25

### VTC Oil Control Solenoid Valve

Test .....	11-137
------------	--------

### VTEC Solenoid Valve

Removal .....	11-138
---------------	--------

### VTEC System

Component Location Index .....	11-123
--------------------------------	--------

## W

### Washer Fluid Reservoir

Replacement .....	22A-224
-------------------	---------

### Washer Motor, Windshield

Test .....	22A-213
------------	---------

### Washer Tube, Windshield

Replacement .....	22A-225
-------------------	---------

### Water Outlet

Installation .....	10-9
--------------------	------

### Water Passage

Installation .....	10-9
--------------------	------

### Water Pump

Inspection .....	10-5
Replacement .....	10-5

### Wheel Bearings

Inspection .....	18-8
------------------	------

## Index

---

### Wheel Speed Sensors

Inspection .....	19B-38
Replacement .....	19B-39

### Wheels and Tires

Inspection .....	18-9
------------------	------

### Windows

Component Location Index .....	20-43
--------------------------------	-------

### Windshield Glass

Replacement .....	20-45
-------------------	-------

### Windshield Side Trim

Replacement .....	20-142
-------------------	--------

### Windshield Side Trim Retainers

Installation .....	20-50
--------------------	-------

### Wiper Lifter, Rear Window

Replacement .....	20-151
-------------------	--------

### Wiper Motor, Rear Window

Replacement .....	22A-224
Test .....	22A-222

### Wiper Motor, Windshield

Replacement .....	22A-223
Test .....	22A-222

### Wiper Protection Tape, Rear Window

Installation .....	20-152
--------------------	--------

### Wiper/Washer

Circuit Diagram .....	22A-210, 22A-211, 22A-212
Component Location Index .....	22A-206
Description .....	22A-209

### Wiper/Washer Switch

Test/Replacement .....	22A-214
------------------------	---------

### Wiring Diagrams

Exterior Lights (Back-up Lights, Brake Lights, Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher) .....	78-34
Exterior Lights (Headlight Adjuster System), Interior Lights, Horns .....	78-38
Exterior Lights (With Daytime Running Lights and Rear Fog Light) .....	78-30
Exterior Lights (With Front and Rear Fog Lights) .....	78-26
Exterior Lights (With Front Fog Lights, Without Front Fog Lights or Rear Fog Lights) .....	78-18
Exterior Lights (With Rear Fog Lights) .....	78-22
Fan Controls, HVAC .....	78-94
Gauge Assembly (A/T Gear Position Indicator), Cruise Control System .....	78-14
Gauge Assembly (Gauges, Indicator Lights, Dash Lights Brightness Control) .....	78-6
Gauge Assembly (Indicator Lights, Warning Lights) .....	78-10
Interlock System, ABS .....	78-86
Keyless/Power Door Lock System (With Super locking System) .....	78-70
Keyless/Power Door Lock System (Without Super locking System) .....	78-74
Multiplex Control System (Fog Light Control, Immobilizer Control, Interlock Control, Intermittent Wiper Control, Entry Lights Control) .....	78-66
Navigation System, Stereo Sound System .....	78-54
PGM-FI System .....	78-102
PGM-FI System (A/T) .....	78-106

---

PGM-FI System, Immobilizer System .....	78-98
Power Mirror .....	78-42
Power Window, Cigarette Lighter, Accessory Power Socket .....	78-50
Seat Heater, Wipers/Washers (Headlight Washer) .....	78-58
Security Alarm System (With Super Locking System) .....	78-78
Security Alarm System (Without Super Locking System) .....	78-82
SRS .....	78-90
Starting System, Charging System, Ignition System .....	78-2
Sunroof, Power Windows .....	78-46
Wipers/Washers (Windshield Rear) .....	78-62
 <b>Wiring System</b>	
How-to Information .....	22A-3
Relay and Control Unit Locations .....	22A-7, 22A-8, 22A-11, 22A-12, 22A-13



# 01

## General Information

Chassis and Engine Numbers .....	01-2
Identification Number Locations .....	01-4
Warning/Caution Label Locations .....	01-5
Lift and Support Points.....	01-7
Towing .....	01-8
Service Precautions .....	01-9
Abbreviations .....	01-16

Chassis and Engine Numbers

Vehicle Identification Number

JHL RD5 7 4 0 2 C 200001

a b c d e f g h

a. Manufacturer, Make and Type of Vehicle

JHL: HONDA MOTOR CO., LTD.  
HONDA Passenger vehicle  
SHS: HONDA OF THE U.K.  
MANUFACTURING LTD.  
HONDA Passenger vehicle

b. Line, Body and Engine Type

RD5: CR-V/K20A4, K20A5  
RD7: CR-V/K24A1  
RD8: CR-V/K20A4

c. Body Type and Transmission Type

7: 4-door Stationwagon/5-speed Manual  
8: 4-door Stationwagon/4-speed Automatic

d. Vehicle Grade (Series)

1: ES  
2: ES, LS  
3: ES  
4: BASE, ES, LX, RV-i, SE  
5: RV-i, RV-iH, SES  
6: LS  
7: ES  
8: EX, RV-Si  
9: RV-Si, RV-SiH

e. Fixed Code or Check Digit

f. Model Year Code

2: 2002

g. Factory Code

C: Saitama Factory in Japan (Sayama)  
U: Honda of the U.K. Manufacturing (England)

h. Serial Number

Engine Number

K20A4 - 1900001

a b

a. Engine Type

K20A4: 2.0 / DOHC VTEC Sequential Multiport Fuel-injected engine with three way catalytic converter  
K20A5: 2.0 / DOHC VTEC Sequential Multiport Fuel-injected engine without three way catalytic converter  
K24A1: 2.4 / DOHC VTEC Sequential Multiport Fuel-injected engine with three way catalytic converter

b. Serial Number

Transmission Number

Z2M1 - 1000001

a b

a. Transmission Type

Z2M1: 5-speed manual  
Z2M3: 5-speed manual  
MCVA: 4-speed Automatic (2WD)  
MRVA: 4-speed Automatic (4WD)

b. Serial Number

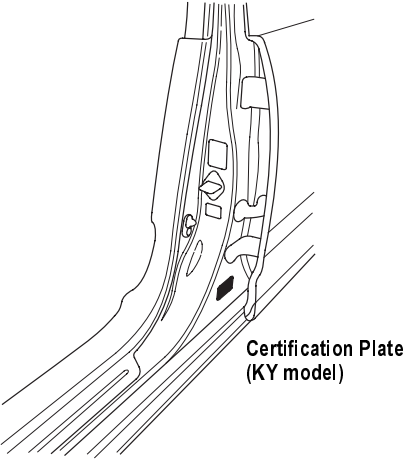
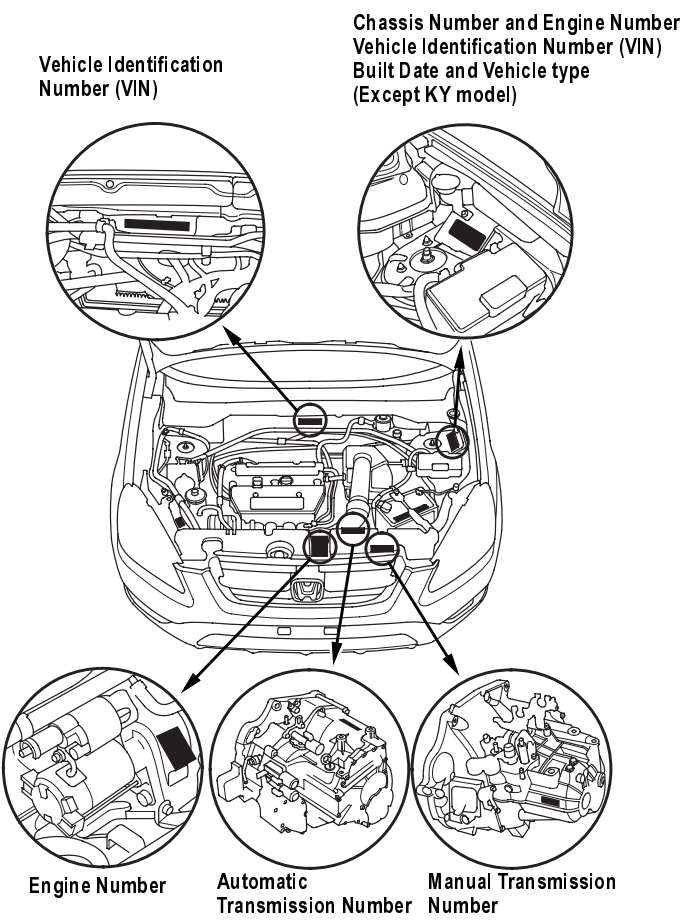


## Chassis and Engine Numbers (cont'd)

### Applicable Area Code/VIN/Engine Number/Transmission Number List

MODEL	APPLICABLE AREA CODE	GRADE NAME	TRANSMISSION TYPE	VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER	ENGINE NUMBER	TRANSMISSION NUMBER
CR-V	KE	SE	5MT	SHSRD87402U000001-	K20A4-1000001-	Z2M1-1500001-
			4AT	SHSRD88402U000001-	K20A4-1000001-	MRVA-1000001-
		SES	5MT	SHSRD87502U000001-	K20A4-1000001-	Z2M1-1500001-
			4AT	SHSRD88502U000001-	K20A4-1000001-	MRVA-1000001-
	KG	LS	5MT	SHSRD87602U000001-	K20A4-1000001-	Z2M1-1500001-
			4AT	SHSRD88602U000001-	K20A4-1000001-	MRVA-1000001-
		ES	5MT	SHSRD87702U000001-	K20A4-1000001-	Z2M1-1500001-
			4AT	SHSRD88702U000001-	K20A4-1000001-	MRVA-1000001-
	KR	LS	5MT	SHSRD87202U000001-	K20A4-1000001-	Z2M1-1500001-
			4AT	SHSRD88202U000001-	K20A4-1000001-	MRVA-1000001-
		ES	5MT	SHSRD87302U000001-	K20A4-1000001-	Z2M1-1500001-
			4AT	SHSRD88302U000001-	K20A4-1000001-	MRVA-1000001-
	KS	ES	5MT	SHSRD87102U000001-	K20A4-1000001-	Z2M1-1500001-
			4AT	SHSRD88202U000001-	K20A4-1000001-	MRVA-1000001-
	KQ	RV-i	5MT	JHLRD77402C200001-	K24A1-1400001-	Z2M3-1000001-
			4AT	JHLRD78402C200001-	K24A1-1400001-	MRVA-1000001-
		RV-Si	5MT	JHLRD77802C200001-	K24A1-1400001-	Z2M3-1000001-
			4AT	JHLRD78802C200001-	K24A1-1400001-	MRVA-1000001-
	KH	BASE	5MT	JHLRD57402C200001-	K20A4-1900001-	Z2M1-1000001-
			4AT	JHLRD58402C200001-	K20A4-1900001-	MRVA-1000001-
	KK	LX	5MT	JHLRD77402C200001-	K24A1-1900001-	Z2M3-1000001-
			4AT	JHLRD78402C200001-	K24A1-1900001-	MRVA-1000001-
		EX	5MT	JHLRD77802C200001-	K24A1-1900001-	Z2M3-1000001-
			4AT	JHLRD78802C200001-	K24A1-1900001-	MRVA-1000001-
		LX	4AT	JHLRD68402C200001-	K24A1-1900001-	MCVA-1000001-
	KM	RV-Si	5MT	JHLRD77802C200001-	K24A1-1900001-	Z2M3-1000001-
			4AT	JHLRD78802C200001-	K24A1-1900001-	MRVA-1000001-
	KN	RV-i	5MT	JHLRD57402C200001-	K20A4-1900001-	Z2M1-1000001-
			4AT	JHLRD58402C200001-	K20A4-1900001-	MRVA-1000001-
		RV-Si	5MT	JHLRD57802C200001-	K20A4-1900001-	Z2M1-1000001-
			4AT	JHLRD58802C200001-	K20A4-1900001-	MRVA-1000001-
	KP	RV-i	5MT	JHLRD57402C200001-	K20A5-1000001-	Z2M1-1000001-
			4AT	JHLRD58402C200001-	K20A5-1000001-	MRVA-1000001-
		RV-Si	5MT	JHLRD57802C200001-	K20A5-1000001-	Z2M1-1000001-
			4AT	JHLRD58802C200001-	K20A5-1000001-	MRVA-1000001-
	KT	BASE	5MT	JHLRD57402C200001-	K20A5-1000001-	Z2M1-1000001-
			4AT	JHLRD58402C200001-	K20A5-1000001-	MRVA-1000001-
	KU	RV-i	4AT	JHLRD58402C200001-	K20A4-1900001-	MRVA-1000001-
		RV-iH	4AT	JHLRD58502C200001-	K20A4-1900001-	MRVA-1000001-
		RV-Si	4AT	JHLRD58802C200001-	K20A4-1900001-	MRVA-1000001-
		RV-SiH	4AT	JHLRD58902C200001-	K20A4-1900001-	MRVA-1000001-
	KW	BASE	5MT	JHLRD57402C200001-	K20A5-1000001-	Z2M1-1000001-
			4AT	JHLRD58402C200001-	K20A5-1000001-	MRVA-1000001-
	KY	RV-i	5MT	JHLRD574*2C400001-	K20A4-1900001-	Z2M1-1000001-
				JHLRD575*2C400001-	K20A4-1900001-	Z2M1-1000001-
			4AT	JHLRD584*2C400001-	K20A4-1900001-	MRVA-1000001-
				JHLRD585*2C400001-	K20A4-1900001-	MRVA-1000001-
		RV-Si	5MT	JHLRD578*2C400001-	K20A4-1900001-	Z2M1-1000001-
				JHLRD579*2C400001-	K20A4-1900001-	Z2M1-1000001-
			4AT	JHLRD588*2C400001-	K20A4-1900001-	MRVA-1000001-
				JHLRD589*2C400001-	K20A4-1900001-	MRVA-1000001-

Identification Number Locations



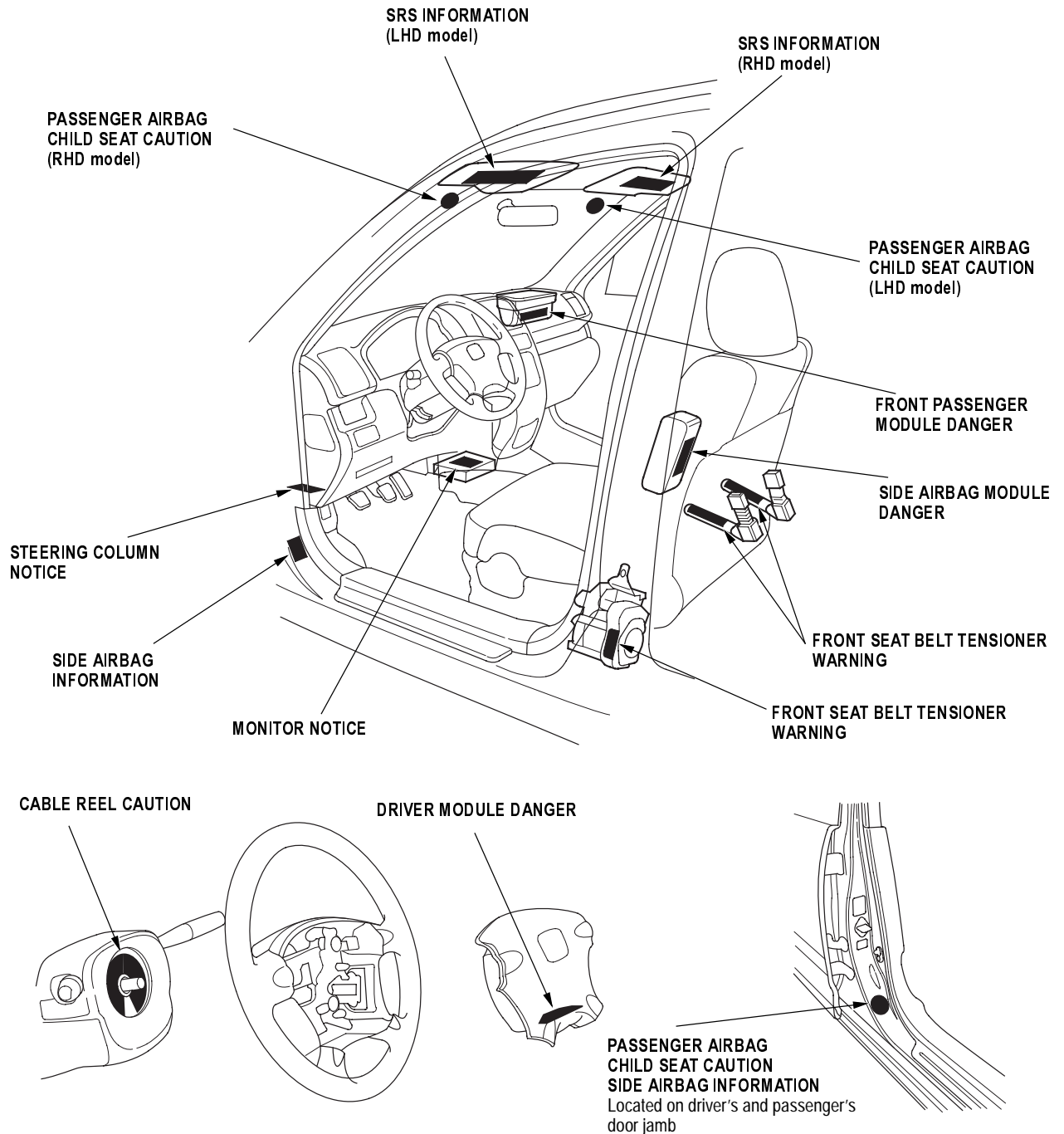




## Warning/Caution Label Locations

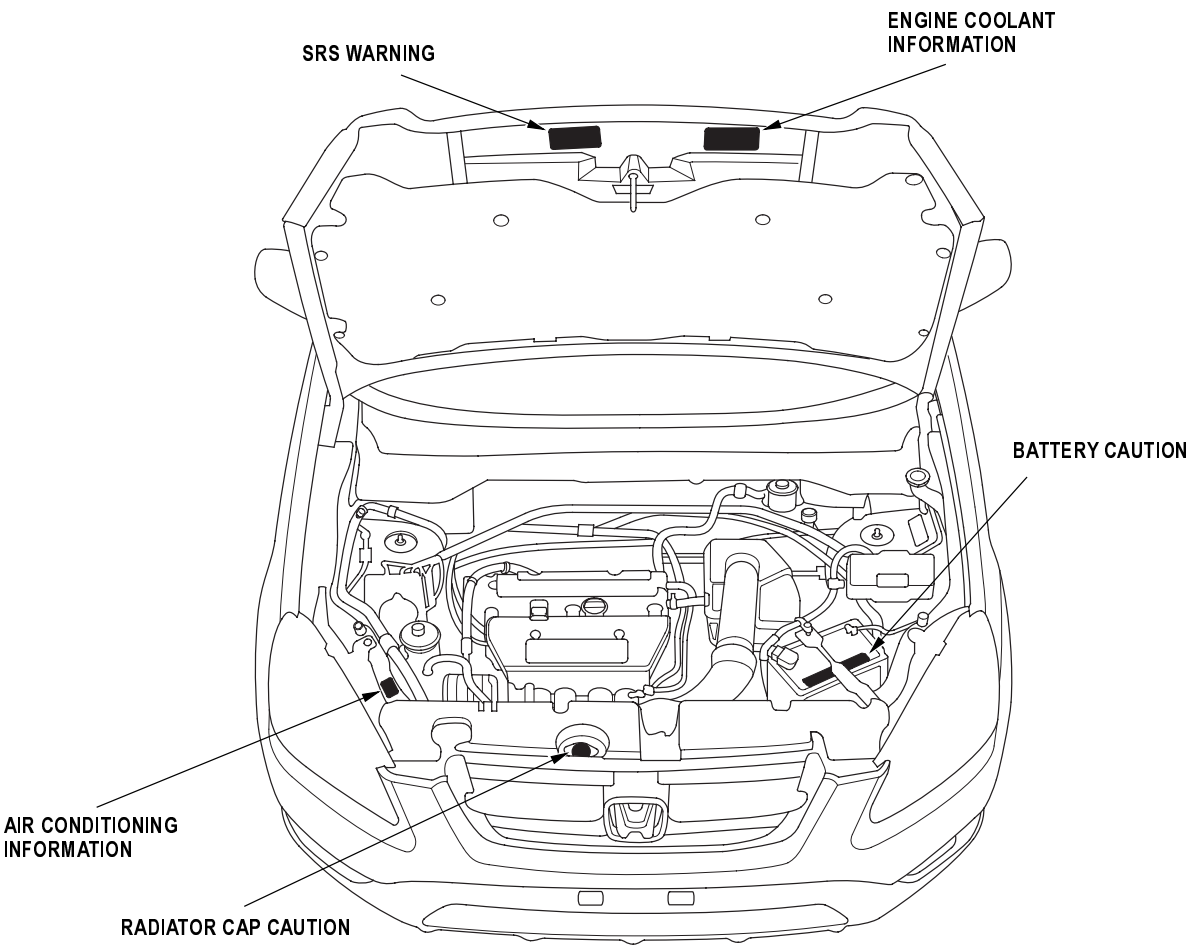
### NOTE:

- The illustration shows the LHD model; RHD is symmetrical.
- SIDE AIRBAG INFORMATION labels are located on the driver's and passenger's doorjamb.

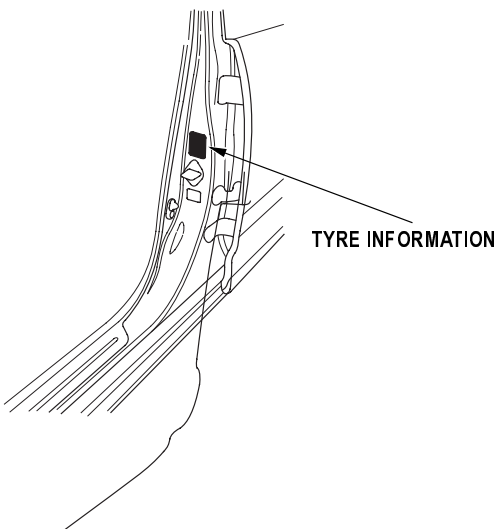


(cont'd)

Warning/Caution Label Locations (cont'd)



DRIVER'S DOORJAMB:



NOTE: The illustration shows the LHD model; RHD is symmetrical.

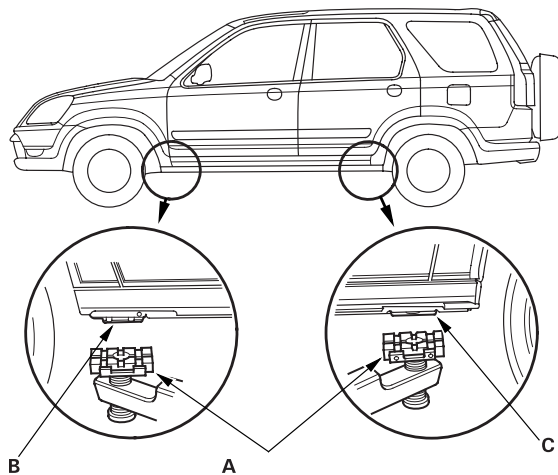


### Lift and Support Points

NOTE: If you are going to remove heavy components such as suspension or the fuel tank from the rear of the vehicle, first support the front of the vehicle with tall safety stands. When substantial weight is removed from the rear of the vehicle, the center of gravity can change and cause the vehicle to tip forward on the hoist.

#### Frame Hoist

1. Position the hoist lift blocks (A), or safety stands, under the vehicle's front support points (B) and rear support points (C).



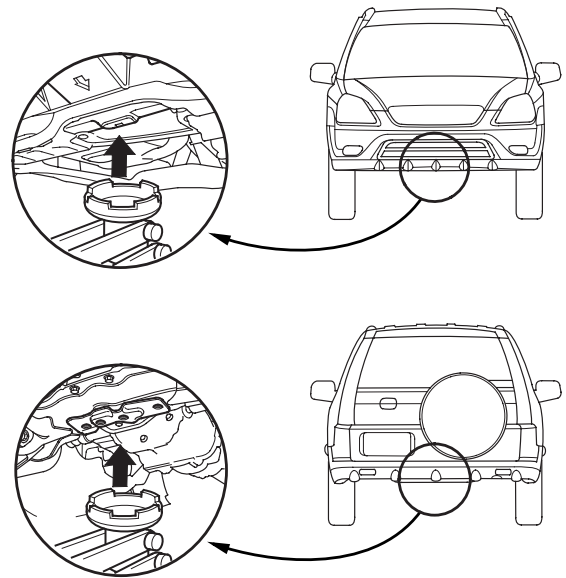
2. Raise the hoist a few inches, and rock the vehicle gently to be sure it is firmly supported.
3. Raise the hoist to full height, and inspect the lift points for solid contact with the lift blocks.

#### Safety Stands

To support the vehicle on safety stands, use the same support points (B and C) as for a frame hoist. Always use safety stands when working on or under any vehicle that is supported only by a jack.

#### Floor Jack

1. Block the rear wheels when raising the front of the vehicle; block the front wheels when raising the rear of the vehicle. Place the blocks behind and ahead of the wheels.
2. Raise the vehicle high enough to insert the safety stands.
3. Adjust and place the safety stands so the vehicle will be approximately level, then lower the vehicle onto them.



## Towing

If the vehicle needs to be towed, call a professional towing service. Never tow the vehicle behind another vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous.

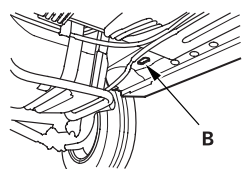
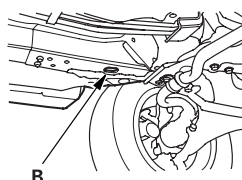
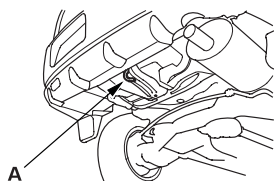
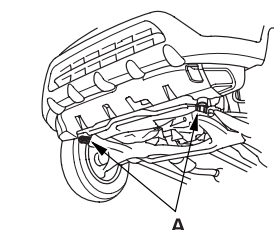
### Emergency Towing

There are three popular methods of towing a vehicle.

**Flat-bed Equipment-** The operator loads the vehicle on the back of a truck. This is the best way of transporting the vehicle.

To accommodate flat-bed equipment, the vehicle is equipped with towing hooks (A) and tie down hook slots (B).

The towing hooks can be used with a winch to pull the vehicle onto the truck, and the tie down hook slots can be used to secure the vehicle to the truck.



**Wheel Lift Equipment-** The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the tires (front or rear) and lift them off the ground. The other two wheels remain on the ground.

**Sling-type Equipment-** The tow truck uses metal cables with hooks on the ends. These hooks go around parts of the frame or suspension and the cables lift that end of the vehicle off the ground. The vehicle's suspension and body can be seriously damaged if this method of towing is attempted. This method of towing the CR-V is unacceptable.

The only recommended way of towing the CR-V is on a flat-bed truck.

Towing the 4WD CR-V with only two wheels on the ground will damage parts of the 4WD system.

The 2WD CR-V may also be towed with the front wheels off the ground, or with all four wheels on the ground.

If the 2WD CR-V cannot be transported by flat-bed, it should be towed with the front wheels off the ground. If due to damage, the vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground, or if the vehicle is towed with all four wheels on the ground, do the following:

### Manual Transmission

- Release the parking brake.
- Shift the transmission in Neutral.

### Automatic Transmission

- Release the parking brake.
- Start the engine.
- Shift to [D] position, then [N] position.
- Turn off the engine.

It is best to tow the vehicle no farther than 50 miles (80 km), and keep the speed below 35 mph (55 km/h).

### NOTICE

- Improper towing preparation will damage the transmission. Follow the above procedure exactly. If you cannot shift the transmission or start the engine (automatic transmission), the vehicle must be transported on a flat-bed.
- Trying to lift or tow the vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.



## Service Precautions

### 4WD model Information

The 4WD CR-V does not have the feature that mechanically switches between 4WD (four-wheel drive) and 2WD (front-wheel drive).

Do not drive the vehicle with rear wheels on the ground even though the front wheels are off the ground. The front wheel power is conveyed to the rear wheels, and the vehicle will start off.

Always lift the vehicle up so all four wheels are off the ground when troubleshooting, testing and inspecting the vehicle to rotate the wheels.

Use the free rollers under the rear wheels when performing test the vehicle with the speedometer tester.

### Precautions on using free rollers:

- Inspecting and testing using a chassis dynamometer is not feasible.
- Do not operate the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or steering wheel abruptly. It may cause the vehicle to roll and create a hazardous condition.
- The maximum testing speed should be 50 km/h (31 mph).
- The maximum continuous operating time should be 3 minutes.
- Make sure to tie down the vehicle securely with the side anchor wires. The free rollers are to be set under the rear wheels.



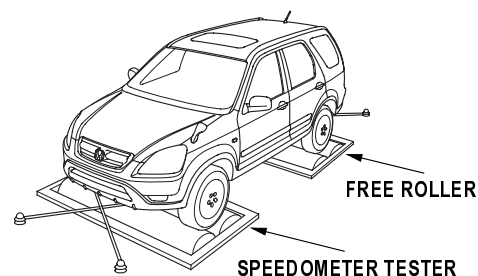
### CAUTION



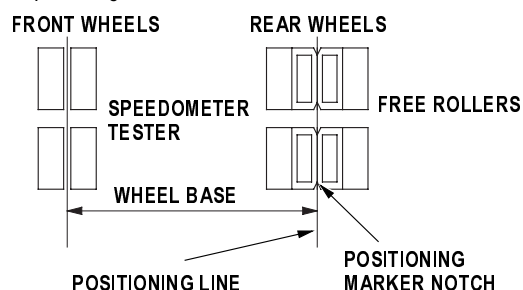
- Make sure to place the free rollers parallel to the roller of each speedometer tester.
- Putting the front and rear wheels on the speedometer testers and free rollers inappropriately may cause the vehicle to roll off or over the free rollers and create a hazardous condition.
- The side anchor wires must be appropriately tensioned. If the wires have too much slack, the expected tie-down efficiency cannot be obtained.
- When attaching the side anchor wires, make sure they are not interfering with the bumper and other parts of the vehicle body.
- Do not attach the wires to any place other than the designed areas.
- Do not operate the speedometer testers at a speed more than 50 km/h (31 mph) or for more than 3 minutes.

### Speedometer Testing Procedures

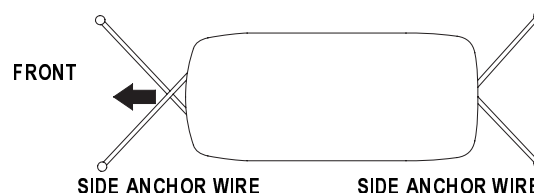
- Set the free rollers according to the wheel base and tread of the vehicle.



NOTE: Align the position marker notch to the positioning line.



- Move the vehicle to position the front wheels on the speedometer testers and the rear wheels on the free rollers. Make sure to align the center of the wheels to the center of the speedometer testers and the free rollers.



- Tie down the vehicle securely using the towing hooks to prevent the vehicle from rolling off or over the free rollers.
- Start the engine, shift the transmission to 3rd gear (manual transmission) or to [D] position (automatic transmission), accelerate the vehicle gradually, and measure the vehicle speed.
- After measurement, use the brake pedal to gradually decelerate and stop the vehicle.

(cont'd)

## Service Precautions (cont'd)

### General



### CAUTION



Observe all safety precautions and notes while working.

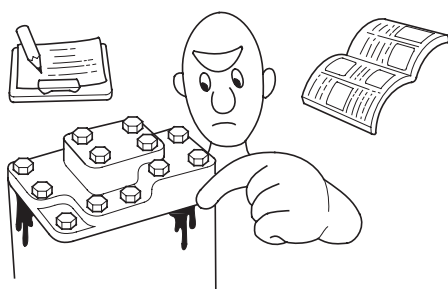
- Protect all painted surfaces and seats against dirt and scratches with a clean cloth or vinyl cover.



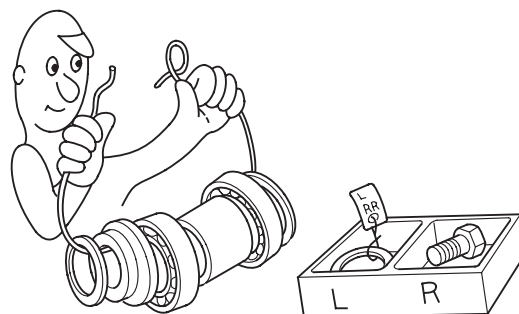
- Work safely and give your work your undivided attention. When either the front or rear wheels are to be raised, block the remaining wheels securely. Communicate as frequently as possible when work involves two or more workers. Do not run the engine unless the shop or working area is well ventilated.



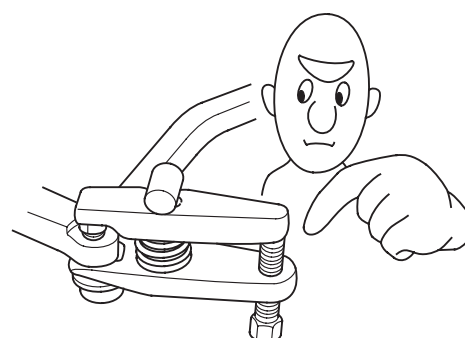
- Before removing or disassembling parts, they must be inspected carefully to isolate the cause for which service is necessary. Observe all safety notes and precautions and follow the proper procedures as described in this manual.



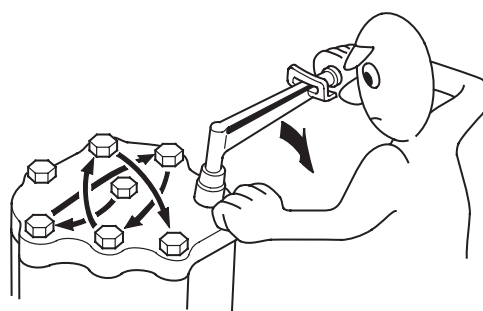
- Mark or place all removed parts in order in a parts rack so they can be reassembled in their original places.



- Use the special tool when use of such a tool is specified.



- Parts must be assembled with the proper torque according to the maintenance standards established.
- When tightening a series of bolts or nuts, begin with the center or large diameter bolts and tighten them in crisscross pattern in two or more steps.

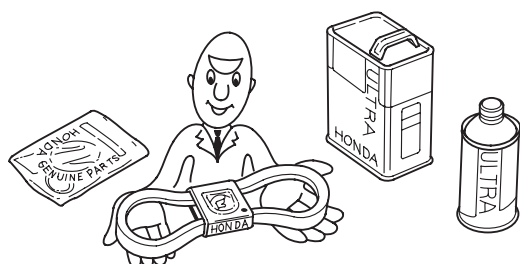




- Use new packings, gaskets, O-rings and cotter pins whenever reassembling.
- Do not reuse parts that must be required to replace. Always replace them.



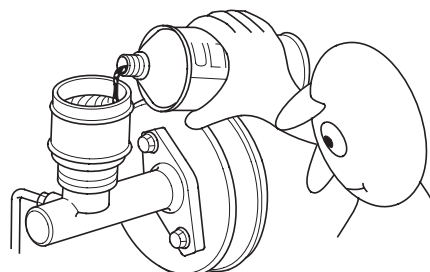
- Use genuine HONDA parts and lubricants or those equivalent. When parts are to be reused, they must be inspected carefully to make sure they are not damaged or deteriorated and are in good usable condition.



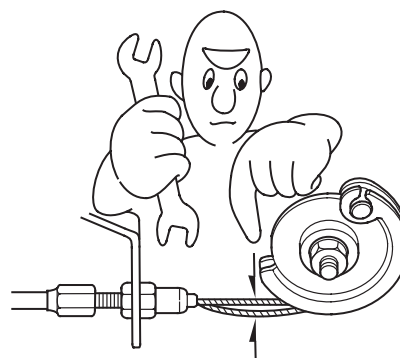
- Coat or fill parts with specified grease as specified ([see page 03-2](#)). Clean all removed parts with solvent upon disassembly.



- Brake fluid and hydraulic components
  - When replenishing the system, use extreme care to prevent dust and dirt from entering the system.
  - Do not mix different brands of fluid as they may not be compatible.
  - Do not reuse drained brake fluid.
  - Because brake fluid can cause damage to painted and resin surfaces, care should be taken not to spill it on such materials. If spilled accidentally, quickly rinse it with water or warm water from painted or resin surfaces.
  - After disconnecting brake hoses or pipes, be sure to plug the openings to prevent loss of brake fluid.
  - Clean all disassembled parts only in clean BRAKE FLUID. Blow open all holes and passages with compressed air.
  - Keep disassembled parts from air-borne dust and abrasives.
  - Check that parts are clean before assembly.



- Avoid oil or grease getting on rubber parts and tubes, unless specified.
- Upon assembling, check every part for proper installation and operation.



(cont'd)



## Service Precautions (cont'd)

### Electrical Troubleshooting Information

#### Before Troubleshooting

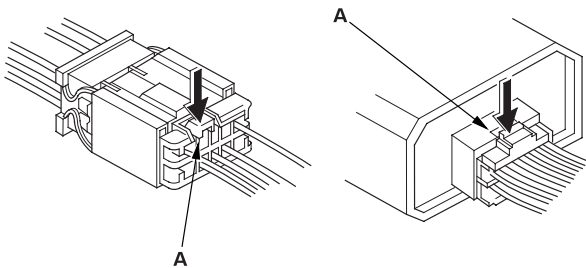
1. Check applicable fuses in the appropriate fuse/relay box.
2. Check the battery for damage, state of charge, and clean and tighten the connections.

#### NOTICE

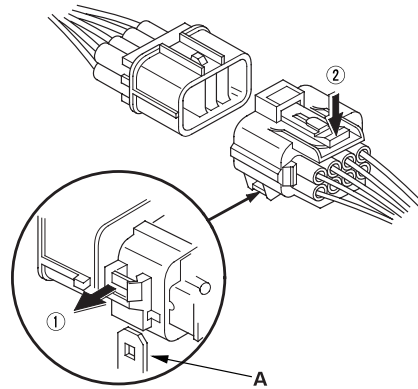
- Do not quick-charge a battery unless the battery ground cable has been disconnected, otherwise you will damage the alternator diodes.
  - Do not attempt to crank the engine with the battery ground cable loosely connected or you will severely damage the wiring.
3. Check the alternator belt tension.

#### Handling Connectors

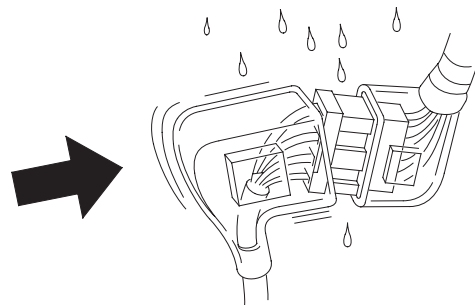
- Make sure the connectors are clean and have no loose wire terminals.
- Make sure multiple cavity connectors are packed with grease (except watertight connectors).
- All connectors have push-down release type locks (A).



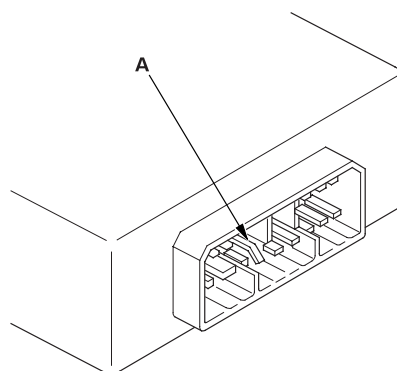
- Some connectors have a clip on their side used to attach them to a mounting bracket on the body or on another component. This clip has a pull type lock.
- Some mounted connectors cannot be disconnected unless you first release the lock and remove the connector from its mount bracket (A).



- Never try to disconnect connectors by pulling on their wires; pull on the connector halves instead.
- Always reinstall plastic covers.



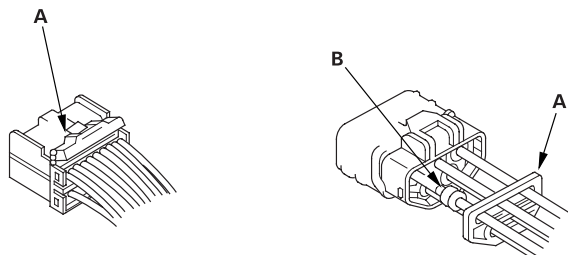
- Before connecting connectors, make sure the terminals (A) are in place and not bent.



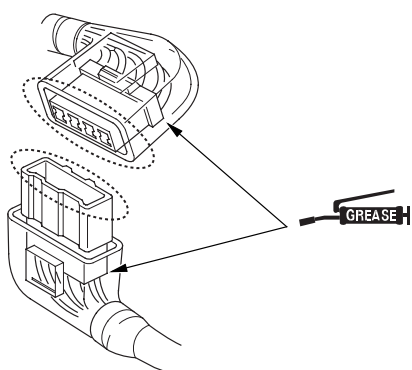




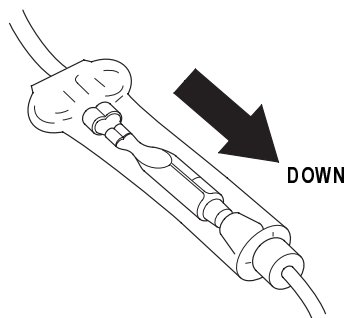
- Check for loose retainer (A) and rubber seals (B).



- The backs of some connectors are packed with grease. Add grease if necessary. If the grease is contaminated, replace it.

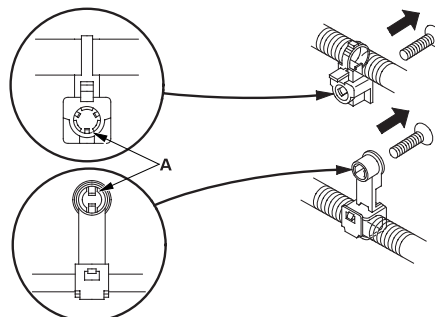


- Insert the connector all the way and make sure it is securely locked.
- Position wires so that the open end of the cover faces down.

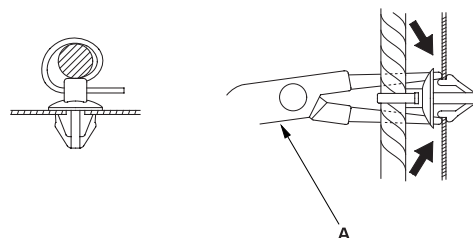


### Handling Wires and Harnesses

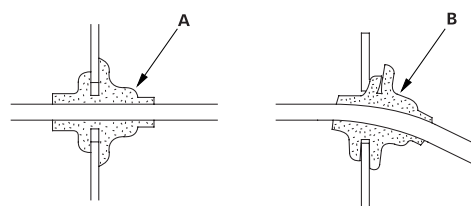
- Secure wires and wire harnesses to the frame with their respective wire ties at the designated locations.
- Remove clips carefully; don't damage their locks (A).



- Slip pliers (A) under the clip base and through the hole at an angle, then squeeze the expansion tabs to release the clip.



- After installing harness clips, make sure the harness doesn't interfere with any moving parts.
- Keep wire harnesses away from exhaust pipes and other hot parts, from sharp edges of brackets and holes, and from exposed screws and bolts.
- Seat grommets in their grooves properly (A). Do not leave grommets distorted (B).

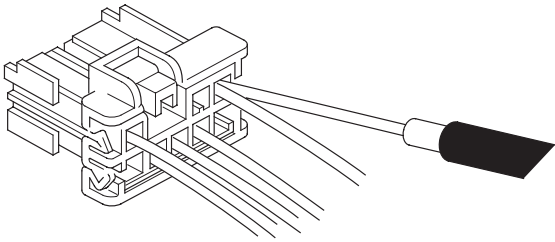


(cont'd)

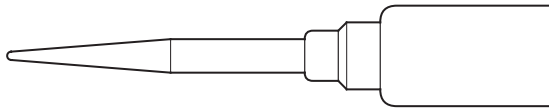
## Service Precautions (cont'd)

### Testing and Repairs

- Do not use wires or harnesses with broken insulation. Replace them or repair them by wrapping the break with electrical tape.
- After installing parts, make sure that no wires are pinched under them.
- When using electrical test equipment, follow the manufacturer's instructions and those described in this manual.
- If possible, insert the probe of the tester from the wire side (except waterproof connector).



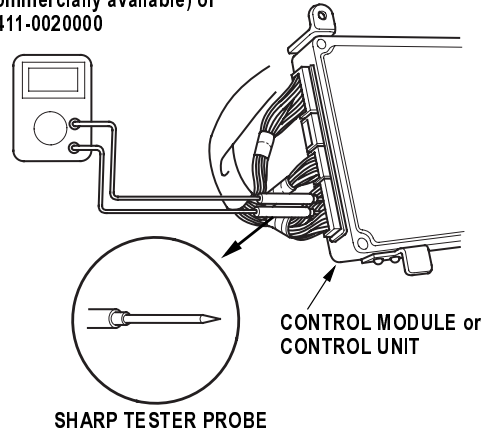
- Use a probe with a tapered tip.



- Refer to the instructions in the Honda Terminal Kit for identification and replacement of connector terminals.

When checking any control module(s) or unit(s) connector terminals, gently slide the sharp tester probe from the wire side into the connector until it comes in contact with the terminal end of the wire.

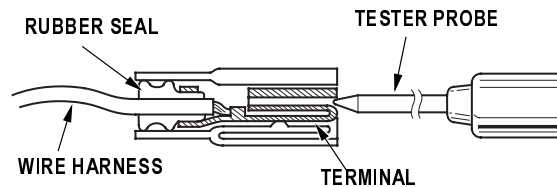
**DIGITAL CIRCUIT TESTER**  
(Commercially available) or  
07411-0020000



### CAUTION



- Puncturing the insulation on a wire can cause poor or intermittent electrical connections.
- For testing at connectors, bring the tester probe into contact with the terminal from the connector side of wire harness connectors in the engine compartment. For female connectors, just touch lightly with the tester probe and do not insert the probe.





## Five-step Troubleshooting

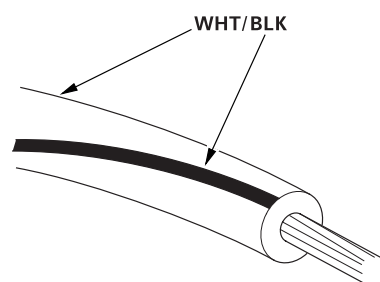
1. **Verify The Complaint**  
Turn on all the components in the problem circuit to verify the customer complaint. Note the symptoms. Do not begin disassembly or testing until you have narrowed down the problem area.
2. **Analyze The Schematic**  
Look up the schematic for the problem circuit. Determine how the circuit is supposed to work by tracing the current paths from the power feed through the circuit components to ground. If several circuits fail at the same time, the fuse or ground is a likely cause. Based on the symptoms and your understanding of the circuit operation, identify one or more possible causes of the problem.
3. **Isolate The Problem By Testing The Circuit**  
Make circuit tests to check the diagnosis you made in step 2. Keep in mind that a logical, simple procedure is the key to efficient troubleshooting. Test for the most likely cause of failure first. Try to make tests at points that are easily accessible.
4. **Fix The Problem**  
Once the specific problem is identified, make the repair. Be sure to use proper tools and safe procedures.
5. **Make Sure The Circuit Works**  
Turn on all components in the repaired circuit in all modes to make sure you've fixed the entire problem. If the problem was a blown fuse, be sure to test all of the circuits on the fuse. Make sure no new problems turn up and the original problem does not recur.

## Wire Color Codes

The following abbreviations are used to identify wire colors in the circuit schematics:

WHT	White
YEL	Yellow
BLK	Black
BLU	Blue
GRN	Green
RED	Red
ORN	Orange
PNK	Pink
BRN	Brown
GRY	Gray
PUR	Purple
LT BLU	Light Blue
LT GRN	Light Green

The wire insulation has one color or one color with another color stripe. The second color is the stripe.



## Abbreviations

List of automotive abbreviations which may be used in shop manual.

ABS	Anti-lock Brake System
A/C	Air Conditioning, Air Conditioner
ACL	Air Cleaner
A/F	Air Fuel Ratio
ALR	Automatic Locking Retractor
ALT	Alternator
AMP	Ampere(s)
ANT	Antenna
API	American Petroleum Institute
APPROX.	Approximately
ASSY	Assembly
A/T	Automatic Transmission
ATDC	After Top Dead Center
ATF	Automatic Transmission Fluid
ATT	Attachment
ATTS	Active Torque Transfer System
AUTO	Automatic
AUX	Auxiliary

BARO	Barometric
BAT	Battery
BDC	Bottom Dead Center
BTDC	Before Top Dead Center

CARB	Carburetor
CAT or CATA	Catalytic Converter
CHG	Charge
CKF	Crankshaft Speed Fluctuation
CKP	Crankshaft Position
CO	Carbon Monoxide
COMP	Complete
CPB	Clutch Pressure Back up
CPC	Clutch Pressure Control
CPU	Central Processing Unit
CVT	Continuously Variable Transmission
CYL	Cylinder
CYP	Cylinder Position

DI	Distributor Ignition
DIFF	Differential
DLC	Data Link Connector
DOHC	Double Overhead Camshaft
DPI	Dual Point Injection
DTC	Diagnostic Trouble Code

EBD	Electronic Brake Distribution
ECM	Engine Control Module
ECT	Engine Coolant Temperature
EGR	Exhaust Gas Recirculation
ELD	Electrical Load Detector

EPR	Evaporator Pressure Regulator
EPS	Electrical Power Steering
EVAP	Evaporative
EX	Exhaust
F	Front
FIA	Fuel Injection Air
FL	Front Left
FP	Fuel Pump
FR	Front Right
FSR.	Fail Safe Relay
FWD	Front Wheel Drive

GAL	Gallon
GND	Ground
GPS	Global Positioning System

H/B	Hatchback
HC	Hydrocarbons
HID	High Intensity Discharge
HO2S	Heated Oxygen Sensor

IAB	Intake Air Bypass
IAC	Idle Air Control
IACV	Idle Air Control Valve
IAR	Intake Air Resonator
IAT	Intake Air Temperature
ICM	Ignition Control Module
ID	Identification
ID or I.D.	Inside Diameter
IG or IGN	Ignition
IMA	Idle Mixture Adjustment
	Integrated Motor Assisted
IMMOBI.	Immobilizer (Immobiliser)
IN	Intake
INJ	Injection
INT	Intermittent

KS	Knock Sensor
----	--------------

L	Left
L/C	Lock-up Clutch
LCD	Liquid Crystal Display
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LEV	Low Emission Vehicle
LF	Left Front
LH	Left Handle
LHD	Left Hand Drive
LR	Left Rear
LSD	Limited Slip Differential
L-4	In-line Four Cylinder (engine)



MAP	Manifold Absolute Pressure	SPEC	Specification
MAX.	Maximum	S/R	Sun Roof
MBS	Mainshaft Brake System	SRS	Supplemental Restraint System
MCK	Motor Check	STD	Standard
MCU	Moment Control Unit	SW	Switch
MIL	Malfunction Indicator Lamp		
MIN.	Minimum	T	Torque
MPI	Multi Point Injection	TB	Throttle Body
M/S	Manual Steering	T/B	Timing Belt
M/T	Manual Transmission	TC	Torque Converter
		TCM	Transmission Control Module
N	Neutral	TCS	Traction Control System
NOx	Oxides of Nitrogen	TDC	Top Dead Center
		TFT	Thin Film Transistor
OBD	On-board Diagnostic	T/N	Tool Number
O2S	Oxygen Sensor	TP	Throttle Position
OD or O.D.	Outside Diameter	TWC	Three Way Catalytic Converter
P	Park	VC	Viscous Coupling
PAIR	Pulsed Secondary Air Injection	VIN	Vehicle Identification Number
PCM	Powertrain Control Module	VSS	Vehicle Speed Sensor
PCV	Positive Crankcase Ventilation Proportioning Control Valve	VTEC	Variable Valve Timing & Valve Lift Electronic Control
PDU	Power Drive Unit	VVIS	Variable Volume Intake System
PGM-FI	Programmed-fuel Injection		
PGM-IG	Programmed Ignition	W	With
PH	Pressure High	W/O	Without
PL	Pilot Light or Pressure Low	WOT	Wide Open Throttle
PMR	Pump Motor Relay		
P/N	Part Number	2WD	Two Wheel Drive
PRI	Primary	4WD	Four Wheel Drive
P/S	Power Steering	2WS	Two Wheel Steering
PSF	Power Steering Fluid	4AT	4-speed Automatic Transmission
PSP	Power Steering Pressure	5MT	5-speed Manual Transmission
PSW	Pressure Switch	6MT	6-speed Manual Transmission
		[P]	Park
Qty	Quantity	[R]	Reverse
		[N]	Neutral
R	Right	[D4]	Drive (1st through 4th gear)
REF	Reference	[D3]	Drive (1st through 3rd gear)
RGB	Red, Green, Black	[2]	Second
RH	Right Handle	[1]	First
RHD	Right Handle Drive	[D]	Drive
RL	Rear Left	[S]	Second
RON	Research Octane Number	[L]	Low
RR	Rear Right	O/D	Over Drive
		1ST	Low (gear)
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers	2ND	Second (gear)
SCS	Service Check Signal	3RD	Third (gear)
SEC	Second	4TH	Fourth (gear)
	Secondary	5TH	Fifth (gear)
SOHC	Single Overhead Camshaft	6TH	Sixth (gear)
SOL	Solenoid		



## Specifications

<b>Standards and Service Limits.....</b>	<b>02-2</b>
Engine Electrical .....	02-2
Engine Assembly .....	02-2
Cylinder Head .....	02-3
Engine Block .....	02-4
Engine Lubrication .....	02-5
Cooling .....	02-6
Fuel and Emissions .....	02-6
Clutch .....	02-6
Manual Transmission and M/T Differential .....	02-7
Automatic Transmission and A/T Differential .....	02-9
Rear Differential .....	02-15
Steering .....	02-15
Suspension .....	02-15
Brakes .....	02-16
Air Conditioning .....	02-16
<b>Design Specifications .....</b>	<b>02-17</b>
Dimensions .....	02-17
Weight .....	02-17
Engine .....	02-18
Starter .....	02-18
Clutch .....	02-18
Z2C1, Z2M1 Manual Transmission .....	02-18
Z2M3 Manual Transmission .....	02-19
Automatic Transmission .....	02-19
Steering .....	02-19
Suspension .....	02-19
Wheel Alignment .....	02-19
Brakes .....	02-19
Tyres .....	02-20
Air Condition-ing .....	02-20
Electrical Ratings .....	02-20
<b>Body Specifications .....</b>	<b>02-21</b>

## Standards and Service Limits

## Engine Electrical

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Ignition coil	Rated voltage		12 V	
	Firing order		1 - 3 - 4 - 2	
Spark plug	Type		NGK: ZFR6K-11 DENSO: KJ20DR-M11	
	Gap		1.0 - 1.1 mm (0.039 - 0.043 in.)	———
Ignition timing		At idle (check the <b>red</b> mark)	M/T (in neutral): $8 \pm 2^\circ$ BTDC at $650 \pm 50$ rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ )	
			A/T (in [N] or [P]): $8 \pm 2^\circ$ BTDC at $650 \pm 50$ rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ )	
Alternator	Output	At 13.5 V and normal engine temperature	90 A	
	Coil (rotor) resistance	at $20^\circ\text{C}$ ( $68^\circ\text{F}$ )	1.84 - 2.10 $\Omega$	
	Slip ring O.D.		22.7 mm (0.89 in.)	21.7 mm (0.85 in.)
	Brush length		19.0 mm (0.75 in.)	5.0 mm (0.20 in.)
	Brush spring tension		3.3 - 4.1 N (0.34 - 0.42 kgf, 0.7 - 0.9 lbs)	
Starter (MITSUBA)	Output		1.2 kW, 1.6 kW	
	Commutator mica depth		0.4 - 0.5 mm (0.016 - 0.020 in.)	0.15 mm (0.006 in.)
	Commutator runout		0.02 mm (0.001 in.) max.	0.05 mm (0.002 in.)
	Commutator O.D.		28.0 - 28.1 mm (1.102 - 1.106 in.)	27.5 mm (1.083 in.)
	Brush length		11.1 - 11.5 mm (0.44 - 0.45 in.)	4.3 mm (0.17 in.)
Starter (DENSO)	Output		1.0 kW, 1.1 kW	
	Commutator mica depth		0.50 - 0.80 mm (0.020 - 0.031 in.)	0.2 mm (0.008 in.)
	Commutator runout		0.02 mm (0.001 in.) max.	0.05 mm (0.002 in.)
	Commutator O.D.		28.0 mm (1.10 in.)	27.0 mm (1.06 in.)
	Brush length		14.0 - 14.5 mm (0.55 - 0.57 in.)	9.0 mm (0.35 in.)
	Brush spring tension		13.7 - 17.7 N (1.40 - 1.80 kgf, 3.09 - 3.98 lbs)	

## Engine Assembly

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Compression	Pressure check at 250 ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) rpm with wide open throttle. (See Design Specs for ratio)	Minimum	930 kPa (9.5 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 135 psi)	———
		Maximum variation	200 kPa (2.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 28 psi)	———



**Cylinder Head**

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Head	Warpage		————	0.05 mm (0.002 in.)
	Height		103.95 - 104.05 mm (4.093 - 4.096 in.)	————
Camshaft	End play		0.05 - 0.20 mm (0.002 - 0.008 in.)	0.4 mm (0.02 in.)
	Camshaft-to-holder oil clearance	No.1 journal	0.030 - 0.069 mm (0.001 - 0.003 in.)	0.15 mm (0.006 in.)
		No.2, 3, 4, 5 journals	0.060 - 0.099 mm (0.002 - 0.004 in.)	0.15 mm (0.006 in.)
	Total runout		0.03 mm (0.001 in.) max.	0.04 mm (0.002 in.)
	Cam lobe height	Intake, primary	33.925 mm (1.3356 in.)	————
		Intake, secondary	29.638 mm (1.1668 in.)	————
		Exhaust	34.092 mm (1.3422 in.)	————
Valves	Clearance (cold)	Intake	0.21 - 0.25 mm (0.008 - 0.010 in.)	————
		Exhaust	0.28 - 0.32 mm (0.011 - 0.013 in.)	————
	Stem O.D.	Intake	5.475 - 5.485 mm (0.2156 - 0.2159 in.)	5.445 mm (0.214 in.)
		Exhaust	5.450 - 5.460 mm (0.2146 - 0.2150 in.)	5.42 mm (0.213 in.)
	Stem-to-guide clearance	Intake	0.030 - 0.055 mm (0.0012 - 0.0022 in.)	0.08 mm (0.003 in.)
		Exhaust	0.055 - 0.080 mm (0.0022 - 0.0031 in.)	0.11 mm (0.004 in.)
Valve seats	Width	Intake	1.25 - 1.55 mm (0.049 - 0.061 in.)	2.00 mm (0.079 in.)
		Exhaust	1.25 - 1.55 mm (0.049 - 0.061 in.)	2.00 mm (0.079 in.)
	Stem installed height	Intake	40.8 - 41.0 mm (1.606 - 1.614 in.)	————
		Exhaust	54.6 - 54.8 mm (2.150 - 2.157 in.)	————
Valve springs	Free length	Intake	47.61 mm (1.874 in.)	————
		Exhaust	49.64 mm (1.954 in.) 49.63 mm (1.954 in.)	————
Valve guides	I.D.	Intake	5.515 - 5.530 mm (0.2171 - 0.2177 in.)	5.55 mm (0.219 in.)
		Exhaust	5.515 - 5.530 mm (0.2171 - 0.2177 in.)	5.55 mm (0.219 in.)
	Installed height	Intake	15.2 - 16.2 mm (0.598 - 0.638 in.)	————
		Exhaust	15.5 - 16.5 mm (0.610 - 0.650 in.)	————
Rocker arms	Arm-to-shaft clearance	Intake	0.025 - 0.052 mm (0.0010 - 0.0020 in.)	0.08 mm (0.003 in.)
		Exhaust	0.018 - 0.056 mm (0.0007 - 0.0022 in.)	0.08 mm (0.003 in.)

## Engine Block

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Block	Warpage of deck		0.07 mm (0.003 in.) max.	0.10 mm (0.004 in.)
	Bore diameter (K20A4, K20A5 engines)	A or I	86.010 - 86.020 mm (3.3862 - 3.3866 in.)	86.070 mm (3.3886 in.)
		B or II	86.000 - 86.010 mm (3.3858 - 3.3862 in.)	86.070 mm (3.3886 in.)
	Bore diameter (K24A1 engines)	A or I	87.010 - 87.020 mm (3.4256 - 3.4260 in.)	87.070 mm (3.4279 in.)
		B or II	87.000 - 87.010 mm (3.4252 - 3.4256 in.)	87.070 mm (3.4279 in.)
	Bore taper		————	0.05 mm (0.002 in.)
	Reboring limit		————	0.25 mm (0.01 in.)
Piston	Skirt O.D. at 11 mm (0.4 in.) from bottom of skirt (K20A4, K20A5 engines)	No letter or A	85.980 - 85.990 mm (3.3850 - 3.3854 in.)	85.930 mm (3.3831 in.)
		Letter B	85.970 - 85.980 mm (3.3846 - 3.3850 in.)	85.920 mm (3.3827 in.)
	Skirt O.D. at 13 mm (0.5 in.) from bottom of skirt (K24A1 engine)	No letter or A	86.980 - 86.990 mm (3.4244 - v3.4248 in.)	86.930 mm (3.4224 in.)
		Letter B	86.970 - 86.980 mm (3.4240 - 3.4244 in.)	86.920 mm (3.4220 in.)
	Clearance in cylinder		0.020 - 0.040 mm (0.0008 - 0.0016 in.)	0.05 mm (0.002 in.)
	Ring groove width	Top (K20A4, K20A5 engines)	1.220 - 1.230 mm (0.0481 - 0.0484 in.)	1.25 mm (0.049 in.)
		Top (K24A1 engine)	1.230 - 1.240 mm (0.0484 - 0.0488 in.)	1.26 mm (0.0450 in.)
		Second (K20A4, K20A5 engines)	1.220 - 1.230 mm (0.0481 - 0.0484 in.)	1.25 mm (0.049 in.)
		Second (K24A1 engine)	1.240 - 1.250 mm (0.0488 - 0.0492 in.)	1.270 mm (0.050 in.)
		Oil (K20A4, K24A1 engines)	2.005 - 2.025 mm (0.0789 - 0.0797 in.)	2.05 mm (0.081 in.)
		Oil (K20A5 engine)	2.805 - 2.825 mm (0.1104 - 0.1112 in.)	2.85 mm (0.112 in.)
Piston ring	Ring-to-groove clearance	Top (K20A4 engine)	0.035 - 0.060 mm (0.0014 - 0.0024 in.)	0.13 mm (0.005 in.)
		Top (K20A5 engine)	0.030 - 0.055 mm (0.0012 - 0.0022 in.)	0.13 mm (0.005 in.)
		Top (K24A1 engine)	0.045 - 0.070 mm (0.0018 - 0.0028 in.)	0.13 mm (0.005 in.)
		Second (K20A4, K20A5 engines)	0.030 - 0.055 mm (0.0012 - 0.0022 in.)	0.13 mm (0.005 in.)
		Second (K24A1 engine)	0.050 - 0.075 mm (0.0020 - 0.0030 in.)	0.13 mm (0.005 in.)
	Ring end gap	Top	0.20 - 0.35 mm (0.008 - 0.014 in.)	0.60 mm (0.024 in.)
		Second	0.40 - 0.55 mm (0.016 - 0.022 in.)	0.70 mm (0.028 in.)
		Oil (K20A4 (Except KY models) engine)	0.25 - 0.65 mm (0.010 - 0.026 in.)	0.75 mm (0.030 in.)
		Oil (K20A4 (KY model), K20A5, K24A1 engines)	0.20 - 0.70 mm (0.008 - 0.028 in.)	0.80 mm (0.031 in.)
Piston pin	O.D.		21.961 - 21.965 mm (0.8646 - 0.8648 in.)	21.953 mm (0.8643 in.)
	Pin-to-piston clearance		-0.005- +0.002 mm (-0.00020- + 0.00008 in.)	0.005 mm (0.0002 in.)
Connecting rod	Pin-to-rod clearance		0.005 - 0.015 mm (0.0002 - 0.0006 in.)	0.02 mm (0.0008 in.)
	Small-end bore diameter		21.970 - 21.976 mm (0.8650 - 0.8652 in.)	————
	Large-end bore diameter (Normal)	K20A4, K20A5 engines	48.0 mm (1.89 in.)	————
		K24A1 engine	51.0 mm (2.01 in.)	————
	End play installed on crankshaft		0.15 - 0.30 mm (0.006 - 0.012 in.)	0.40 mm (0.016 in.)

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Crankshaft	Main journal diameter	No. 1 journal No. 2 journal No. 4 journal No. 5 journal	54.984 - 55.008 mm (2.1648 - 2.1657 in.)	———
		No. 3 journal	54.976 - 55.000 mm (2.1644 - 2.1654 in.)	———
	Rod journal diameter	K20A4, K20A5 engines	44.976 - 45.000 mm (1.7707 - 1.7717 in.)	———
		K24A1 engine	47.976 - 48.000 mm (1.8888 - 1.8898 in.)	———
	Rod/main journal taper		0.005 mm (0.0002 in.) max.	0.010 mm (0.0004 in.)
	Rod/main journal out-of-round		0.005 mm (0.0002 in.) max.	0.010 mm (0.0004 in.)
	End play		0.10 - 0.35 mm (0.004 - 0.014 in.)	0.45 mm (0.018 in.)
	Runout		0.03 mm (0.0012 in.) max.	0.04 mm (0.0016 in.)
Crankshaft bearings	Main bearing-to-journal oil clearance	No. 1 journal No. 2 journal No. 4 journal No. 5 journal	0.017 - 0.041 mm (0.0007 - 0.0016 in.)	0.050 mm (0.0020 in.)
		No. 3 journal	0.025 - 0.049 mm (0.0010 - 0.0019 in.)	0.055 mm (0.0022 in.)
	Rod bearing clearance		0.021 - 0.049 mm (0.0008 - 0.0019 in.)	0.060 mm (0.0024 in.)

### Engine Lubrication

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Engine oil	Capacity		5.3 <i>l</i> (5.6 US qt, 4.7 Imp qt) for engine overhaul 4.2 <i>l</i> (4.4 US qt, 3.7 Imp qt) for oil change, including filter 4.0 <i>l</i> (4.2 US qt, 3.5 Imp qt) for oil change, without filter	
Oil pump	Inner-to-outer rotor clearance		0.02 - 0.16 mm (0.001 - 0.006 in.)	0.20 mm (0.008 in.)
	Pump housing-to-outer rotor clearance		0.15 - 0.21 mm (0.006 - 0.008 in.)	0.23 mm (0.009 in.)
	Pump housing-to-rotor axial clearance		0.02 - 0.07 mm (0.001 - 0.003 in.)	0.12 mm (0.005 in.)
	Balancer shafts, journal diameter	No. 1 journal, front shaft	19.938 - 19.950 mm (0.7850 - 0.7854 in.)	19.92 mm (0.784 in.)
		No. 1 journal, rear shaft	23.938 - 23.950 mm (0.9424 - 0.9429 in.)	23.92 mm (0.942 in.)
		No. 2 journal, front and rear shaft	32.949 - 32.961 mm (1.2972 - 1.2977 in.)	32.93 mm (1.296 in.)
	Balancer shafts, journal taper		0.005 mm (0.0002 in.) max.	———
	Balancer shafts, end play	Front	0.070 - 0.135 mm (0.0028 - 0.0053 in.)	0.15 mm (0.006 in.)
		Rear	0.070 - 0.135 mm (0.0028 - 0.0053 in.)	0.15 mm (0.006 in.)
	Balancer shafts, shaft-to-bearing clearance	No. 1 journal, front shaft	0.050 - 0.082 mm (0.0020 - 0.0032 in.)	0.10 mm (0.004 in.)
		No. 1 journal, rear shaft	0.050 - 0.082 mm (0.0020 - 0.0032 in.)	0.10 mm (0.004 in.)
		No. 2 journal, front and rear shaft	0.060 - 0.120 mm (0.0024 - 0.0047 in.)	0.15 mm (0.006 in.)
	Balancer shaft bearings, I.D.	No. 1 journal, front shaft	20.000 - 20.020 mm (0.7874 - 0.7882 in.)	20.03 mm (0.789 in.)
		No. 1 journal, rear shaft	24.000 - 24.020 mm (0.9449 - 0.9457 in.)	24.03 mm (0.946 in.)
		No. 2 journal, front and rear shaft	33.021 - 33.069 mm (1.3000 - 1.3019 in.)	33.09 mm (1.303 in.)
	Relief valve, oil pressure with oil temperature at 80 °C (176 z°F)	At idle	70 kPa (0.7 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 10 psi) min.	
		at 3,000 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> )	300 kPa (3.1 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 44 psi) min.	

## Cooling

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Radiator	Coolant capacity for K20A4 and K20A5 engines (including engine, heater, hoses, and reservoir)	M/T: engine overhaul	7.1 L (7.5 US qt, 6.2 Imp qt)	
		M/T: coolant change	5.4 L (5.7 US qt, 4.8 Imp qt)	
		A/T: engine overhaul	7.0 <i>l</i> (7.4 US qt, 6.2 Imp qt)	
		A/T: coolant change	5.3 <i>l</i> (5.6 US qt, 4.7 Imp qt)	
	Coolant capacity for K24A1 engine (includes engine, heater, hoses, and reservoir)	M/T at engine overhaul	7.2 L (7.6 US qt, 6.3 Imp qt)	
		M/T at coolant change	5.5 L (5.8 US qt, 4.8 Imp qt)	
		A/T at engine overhaul	7.1 L (7.5 US qt, 6.2 Imp qt)	
		A/T at coolant change	5.4 L (5.7 US qt, 4.8 Imp qt)	
Reservoir	Coolant capacity		0.55 L (0.58 US qt, 0.48 Imp qt)	
Radiator cap	Opening pressure		93 - 123 kPa (0.95 - 1.25 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 14 - 18 psi)	
Thermostat	Opening temperature	Begins to open	76 - 80°C (169 - 176°F)	
		Fully open	90°C (194°F)	
	Valve lift at fully open		8.0 mm (0.31 in.) min.	
Radiator fan switch	Switching temperature	Turns ON	91 - 95°C (196 - 203°F)	
		Turns OFF	Subtract 3 - 8 °C (5 - 15 °F) from actual ON temperature	

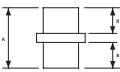
## Fuel and Emissions

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Fuel pressure regulator	Pressure with fuel pressure gauge connected		338 - 348 kPa (3.45 - 3.55 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 49 - 50 psi)	
Fuel tank	Capacity		58 L (15 US gal, 13 Imp gal)	
Engine idle	Idle speed without a load	M/T in neutral	650 ± 50 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> )	
		A/T in [N] or [P] position	650 ± 50 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> )	
	Fast idle	M/T in neutral	1,600 ± 200 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> )	
		A/T in [N] or [P] position	1,600 ± 200 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> )	
	Idle CO %		0.1 max.	

## Clutch

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Clutch pedal	Height from floor		200 mm (7.87 in.)	————
	Stroke		125 - 135 mm (4.92 - 5.31 in.)	————
	Play		6 - 17 mm (0.24 - 0.67 in.)	————
	Disengagement height from floor		112 mm (4.41 in.) min.	————
Flywheel	Runout on clutch mating surface		0.05 mm (0.002 in.) max.	0.15 mm (0.006 in.)
Clutch disc	Rivet head depth		1.65 - 2.25 mm (0.065 - 0.089 in.)	0.7 mm (0.03 in.)
	Thickness		8.7 - 9.3 mm (0.34 - 0.37 in.)	6.0 mm (0.24 in.)
Pressure plate	Warpage		0.03 mm (0.001 in.) max.	0.15 mm (0.006 in.)
	Height of diaphragm spring fingers measured with special tool and feeler gauge		0.6 mm (0.02 in.) max.	0.8 mm (0.03 in.)

## Manual Transmission and M/T Differential

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Transmission fluid	Capacity	4WD at fluid change	1.9 L (2.0 US qt, 1.7 Imp qt)	
		4WD at overhaul	2.3 L (2.4 US qt, 2.0 Imp qt)	
		2WD at fluid change	1.9 L (2.0 US qt, 1.7 Imp qt)	
		2WD at overhaul	2.1 L (2.2 US qt, 1.8 Imp qt)	
Mainshaft	End play		0.11 - 0.17 mm (0.004 - 0.007 in.)	Adjust
	Diameter of bushing surface		20.80 - 20.85 mm (0.8189 - 0.8209 in.)	20.75 mm (0.817 in.)
	Diameter of distance collar		31.984 - 32.000 mm (1.2594 - 1.2598 in.)	31.93 mm (1.257 in.)
	Diameter of ball bearing contact area (clutch housing side)		27.977 - 27.990 mm (1.1015 - 1.1020 in.)	27.94 mm (1.100 in.)
	Diameter of needle bearing contact area		38.984 - 39.000 mm (1.5348 - 1.5354 in.)	38.93 mm (1.533 in.)
	Diameter of ball bearing contact area (transmission housing side)		27.987 - 28.000 mm (1.1019 - 1.1024 in.)	27.94 mm (1.100 in.)
	Runout		0.02 mm (0.001 in.) max.	0.05 mm (0.002 in.)
Mainshaft 3rd, 4th and 5th gears	I.D.		44.009 - 44.025 mm (1.7326 - 1.7333 in.)	44.08 mm (1.735 in.)
	End play		0.06 - 0.16 mm (0.002 - 0.006 in.)	0.25 mm (0.010 in.)
	Thickness		23.92 - 23.97 mm (0.981 - 0.944 in.)	23.80 mm (0.937 in.)
Countershaft	Diameter of needle bearing contact area (clutch housing side) Diameter of distance collar contact area		35.000 - 35.015 mm (1.3780 - 1.3785 in.)	34.95 mm (1.376 in.)
			39.937 - 39.950 mm (1.5723 - 1.5728 in.)	39.88 mm (1.570 in.)
	Diameter of ball bearing contact area (transmission housing side)		30.020 - 30.033 mm (1.1819 - 1.1824 in.)	29.97 mm (1.180 in.)
	Run out		0.02 mm (0.001 in.) max.	0.05 mm (0.002 in.)
	35 mm shim-to-bearing inner race clearance		0.04 - 0.10 mm (0.0016 - 0.0039 in.)	Adjust
Countershaft 1st gear	I.D.		52.010 - 52.029 mm (2.0476 - 2.0484 in.)	52.08 mm (2.050 in.)
	End play		0.06 - 0.16 mm (0.002 - 0.006 in.)	0.25 mm (0.010 in.)
	Thickness		22.92 - 22.97 mm (0.902 - 0.904 in.)	22.87 mm (0.900 in.)
Countershaft 2nd gear	I.D.		52.010 - 52.029 mm (2.0476 - 2.0484 in.)	52.08 mm (2.050 in.)
	End play		0.06 - 0.16 mm (0.002 - 0.006 in.)	0.25 mm (0.010 in.)
	Thickness		27.92 - 27.97 mm (1.099 - 1.101 in.)	27.87 mm (1.097 in.)
Countershaft 1st gear distance collar	I.D.		39.95 - 39.96 mm (1.5728 - 1.5732 in.)	39.97 mm (1.574 in.)
	O.D.		46.989 - 47.000 mm (1.8499 - 1.8504 in.)	46.94 mm (1.848 in.)
	Length		23.03 - 23.08 mm (0.907 - 0.909 in.)	—
Countershaft 2nd gear distance collar	I.D.		39.95 - 39.96 mm (1.5728 - 1.5732 in.)	39.97 mm (1.574 in.)
	O.D.		46.989 - 47.000 mm (1.8499 - 1.8504 in.)	46.94 mm (1.848 in.)
	Length		28.03 - 28.08 mm (1.104 - 1.106 in.)	—
Mainshaft 4th and 5th gears distance collar	I.D.		32.00 - 32.01 mm (1.2598 - 1.2602 in.)	32.02 mm (1.261 in.)
	O.D.		38.989 - 39.000 mm (1.5350 - 1.5354 in.)	38.94 mm (1.533 in.)
	Length 	A	51.95 - 52.05 mm (2.045 - 2.049 in.)	—
		B	24.03 - 24.08 mm (0.946 - 0.947 in.)	—
MBS distance collar	I.D.		28.00 - 28.01 mm (1.102 - 1.103 in.)	28.02 mm (1.103 in.)
	Length		23.95 - 24.05 mm (0.943 - 0.947 in.)	—

(cont'd)

## Manual Transmission and M/T Differential (cont'd)

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Reverse idler gear	I.D.		20.016 - 20.043 mm (0.7880 - 0.7891 in.)	20.90 mm (0.832 in.)
	Gear-to-reverse gear shaft clearance		0.036 - 0.084 mm (0.0014 - 0.0033 in.)	0.16 mm (0.006 in.)
Synchro ring	Ring-to-gear clearance	Ring pushed against gear	0.70 - 1.49 mm (0.028 - 0.059 in.)	0.4 mm (0.016 in.)
Double cone synchro	Outer synchro ring-to-synchro cone clearance	Ring pushed against gear	0.70 - 1.19 mm (0.028 - 0.047 in.)	0.3 mm (0.012 in.)
	Synchro cone-to-gear clearance	Ring pushed against gear	0.50 - 1.04 mm (0.020 - 0.041 in.)	0.3 mm (0.012 in.)
	Outer synchro ring-to-gear cone clearance	Ring pushed against gear	0.95 - 1.68 mm (0.037 - 0.066 in.)	0.6 mm (0.024 in.)
Triple cone synchro	Outer synchro ring-to-synchro cone clearance	Ring pushed against gear	0.70 - 1.19 mm (0.028 - 0.047 in.)	0.3 mm (0.012 in.)
	Synchro cone-to-gear clearance	Ring pushed against gear	0.50 - 1.04 mm (0.020 - 0.041 in.)	0.3 mm (0.012 in.)
	Outer synchro ring-to-gear cone clearance	Ring pushed against gear	0.95 - 1.68 mm (0.037 - 0.066 in.)	0.6 mm (0.024 in.)
Shift fork	Finger thickness		7.4 - 7.6 mm (0.29 - 0.30 in.)	————
	Fork-to-synchro sleeve clearance		0.35 - 0.65 mm (0.014 - 0.026 in.)	1.0 mm (0.039 in.)
Reverse shift fork	Finger thickness		13.4 - 13.7 mm (0.527 - 0.539 in.)	————
	Fork-to-reverse idler gear clearance		0.20 - 0.59 mm (0.007 - 0.024 in.)	1.2 mm (0.047 in.)
Shift arm	I.D.		13.973 - 14.000 mm (0.5501 - 0.5512 in.)	————
	Shift fork diameter at contact area		16.9 - 17.0 mm (0.665 - 0.669 in.)	————
	Shift arm-to-shift lever clearance		0.2 - 0.5 mm (0.008 - 0.020 in.)	0.60 mm (0.023 in.)
Select lever	Finger width		14.85 - 14.95 mm (0.585 - 0.589 in.)	————
Shift lever	Shaft-to-select lever clearance		0.05 - 0.25 mm (0.002 - 0.010 in.)	0.50 mm (0.020 in.)
	Groove (to select lever)		15.00 - 15.10 mm (0.591 - 0.594 in.)	————
	Shaft-to-shift arm clearance		0.013 - 0.07 mm (0.0005 - 0.003 in.)	0.1 mm (0.004 in.)
M/T differential carrier	Pinion shaft contact area I.D.		18.010 - 18.028 mm (0.7091 - 0.7098 in.)	————
	Carrier-to-pinion shaft clearance		0.027 - 0.057 mm (0.0011 - 0.0022 in.)	0.1 mm (0.004 in.)
	Driveshaft contact area I.D.		28.025 - 28.045 mm (1.1033 - 1.1041 in.)	————
M/T differential pinion gear	Backlash		0.05 - 0.15 mm (0.002 - 0.006 in.)	————
	I.D.		18.042 - 18.066 mm (0.7103 - 0.7113 in.)	————
	Pinion gear-to-pinion shaft clearance		0.059 - 0.095 mm (0.0023 - 0.0037 in.)	0.15 mm (0.006 in.)
80 mm shim	80 mm shim-to-bearing outer race clearance in transmission housing		0 - 0.10 mm (0 - 0.0039 in.)	Adjust
Transfer	Diameter of tapered roller bearing contact area (transfer shaft)		24.975 - 24.990 mm (0.9833 - 0.9838 in.)	24.92 mm (0.9811 in.)
	Diameter of tapered roller bearing contact area (transfer drive gear)		40.002 - 40.018 mm (1.5749 - 1.5755 in.)	38.95 mm (1.5335 in.)
	Diameter of tapered roller bearing contact area (driven gear side)		35.002 - 35.018 mm (1.3780 - 1.3786 in.)	34.95 mm (1.3760 in.)
	Diameter of tapered roller bearing contact area (splined side)		26.975 - 26.988 mm (1.0620 - 1.0625 in.)	26.92 mm (1.0598 in.)
	Transfer gear backlash		0.06 - 0.16 mm (0.0024 - 0.0063 in.)	Adjust
	Total starting torque		2.24 - 3.71 N·m (22.0 - 36.4 kgf·cm, 19.1 - 31.6 lbf·in)	Adjust

## Automatic Transmission and A/T Differential

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
ATF (Automatic Transmission Fluid)	Capacity Use Genuine Honda ATF-Z1	4WD at fluid change	3.1 L (3.3 US qt, 2.7 Imp qt)	
		2WD at fluid change	2.9 L (3.1 US qt, 2.6 Imp qt)	
		4WD at overhaul	7.2 L (7.6 US qt, 6.3 Imp qt)	
		2WD at overhaul	6.5 L (6.9 US qt, 5.7 Imp qt)	
ATF pressure	Line pressure	at 2,000 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> ) in [P] or [N] position	900 - 960 kPa (9.2 - 9.8 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 130 - 140 psi)	850 kPa (8.7 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 120 psi)
	1st clutch pressure	at 2,000 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> ) in 1st gear in [1] position	890 - 970 kPa (9.1 - 9.9 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 130 - 140 psi)	840 kPa (8.6 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 120 psi)
	2nd clutch pressure	at 2,000 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> ) in 2nd gear in [2] position	890 - 970 kPa (9.1 - 9.9 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 130 - 140 psi)	840 kPa (8.6 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 120 psi)
	3rd clutch pressure	at 2,000 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> ) in 3rd gear in [D] position	890 - 970 kPa (9.1 - 9.9 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 130 - 140 psi)	840 kPa (8.6 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 120 psi)
	4th clutch pressure	at 2,000 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> ) in 4th gear in [D] position	890 - 970 kPa (9.1 - 9.9 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 130 - 140 psi)	840 kPa (8.6 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 120 psi)
Torque converter	Stall speed Check with vehicle on level ground		2,320 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> )	2,170 - 2,470 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> )
Clutch K20A4 and K20A5 engine models	Clutch end plate-to-top disc clearance	1st	———	1.23 - 1.43 mm (0.048 - 0.056 in.)
		2nd	———	0.75 - 0.95 mm (0.030 - 0.037 in.)
		3rd and 4th	———	0.73 - 0.93 mm (0.029 - 0.037 in.)
	Clutch return spring free length	1st and 2nd	50.8 mm (2.00 in.)	48.8 mm (1.92 in.)
		3rd and 4th	33.5 mm (1.32 in.)	31.5 mm (1.24 in.)
	Clutch disc thickness		1.94 mm (0.076 in.)	———
	Clutch plate thickness		2.00 mm (0.079 in.)	When discolored
	Clutch waved-plate phase difference		0.07 - 0.20 mm (0.003 - 0.008 in.)	0.05 mm (0.002 in.)
	1st Clutch end plate thickness	Mark 1	2.3 mm (0.091 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 2	2.4 mm (0.094 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 3	2.5 mm (0.098 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 4	2.6 mm (0.102 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 5	2.7 mm (0.106 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 6	2.8 mm (0.110 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 7	2.9 mm (0.114 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 8	3.0 mm (0.118 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 9	3.1 mm (0.122 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 10	3.2 mm (0.126 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 11	3.3 mm (0.130 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 12	3.4 mm (0.134 in.)	When discolored
	2nd clutch end plate thickness	Mark 1	2.6 mm (0.102 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 2	2.7 mm (0.106 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 3	2.8 mm (0.110 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 4	2.9 mm (0.114 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 5	3.0 mm (0.118 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 6	3.1 mm (0.122 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 7	3.2 mm (0.126 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 8	3.3 mm (0.130 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 9	3.4 mm (0.134 in.)	When discolored

(cont'd)

## Automatic Transmission and A/T Differential (cont'd)

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Clutch K20A4 and K20A5 engine models (cont'd)	3rd and 4th clutch end plate thickness	Mark 11	3.1 mm (0.122 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 12	3.2 mm (0.126 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 13	3.3 mm (0.130 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 14	3.4 mm (0.134 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 15	3.5 mm (0.138 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 16	3.6 mm (0.142 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 17	3.7 mm (0.146 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 18	3.8 mm (0.150 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 19	3.9 mm (0.154 in.)	When discolored
Clutch K24A1 engine model	Clutch end plate-to-top disc clearance	1st	———	1.28 - 1.48 mm (0.050 - 0.058 in.)
		2nd	———	0.85 - 1.05 mm (0.033 - 0.041 in.)
		3rd and 4th	———	0.73 - 0.93 mm (0.029 - 0.037 in.)
	Clutch return spring free length	1st and 2nd	50.8 mm (2.00 in.)	48.8 mm (1.92 in.)
		3rd and 4th	33.5 mm (1.32 in.)	31.5 mm (1.24 in.)
	Clutch disc thickness		1.94 mm (0.076 in.)	———
	Clutch plate thickness	1st	1.6 mm (0.063 in.)	When discolored
		2nd	2.0 mm (0.079 in.)	When discolored
		3rd and 4th	2.3 mm (0.091 in.)	When discolored
	Clutch waved-plate phase difference		0.07 - 0.20 mm (0.003 - 0.008 in.)	0.05 mm (0.002 in.)
	1st Clutch end plate thickness	Mark 1	2.6 mm (0.102 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 2	2.7 mm (0.106 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 3	2.8 mm (0.110 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 4	2.9 mm (0.114 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 5	3.0 mm (0.118 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 6	3.1 mm (0.122 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 7	3.2 mm (0.126 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 8	3.3 mm (0.130 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 9	3.4 mm (0.134 in.)	When discolored
	2nd clutch end plate thickness	Mark 1	2.6 mm (0.102 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 2	2.7 mm (0.106 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 3	2.8 mm (0.110 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 4	2.9 mm (0.114 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 5	3.0 mm (0.118 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 6	3.1 mm (0.122 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 7	3.2 mm (0.126 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 8	3.3 mm (0.130 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 9	3.4 mm (0.134 in.)	When discolored
	3rd and 4th clutch end plate thickness	Mark 1	2.1 mm (0.083 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 2	2.2 mm (0.087 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 3	2.3 mm (0.091 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 4	2.4 mm (0.094 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 5	2.5 mm (0.098 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 6	2.6 mm (0.102 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 7	2.7 mm (0.106 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 8	2.8 mm (0.110 in.)	When discolored
		Mark 9	2.9 mm (0.114 in.)	When discolored



Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Mainshaft	Diameter of needle bearing contact area	at stator shaft	22.984 - 23.000 mm (0.905 - 0.906 in.)	When worn or damaged
		at 3rd gear	51.975 - 51.991 mm (2.046 - 2.047 in.)	When worn or damaged
		at 4th gear collar	33.975 - 33.991 mm (1.3376 - 1.3382 in.)	When worn or damaged
	I.D. of gears	3rd gear	57.000 - 57.019 mm (2.2441 - 2.2448 in.)	When worn or damaged
		4th gear	40.000 - 40.016 mm (1.5748 - 1.5754 in.)	When worn or damaged
	End play of gears	3rd gear	0.03 - 0.31 mm (0.001 - 0.012 in.)	————
		4th gear	0.1 - 0.212 mm (0.004-0.008 in.)	————
	41 x 68 mm thrust washer thickness	No. 1	6.35 mm (0.250 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 2	6.40 mm (0.252 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 3	6.45 mm (0.254 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 4	6.50 mm (0.256 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 5	6.55 mm (0.258 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 6	6.60 mm (0.260 in.)	When worn or damaged
	4th gear collar length		66.3 - 66.4 mm (2.610 - 2.614 in.)	————
	Length of 4th gear collar flange from end		19.15 - 19.30 mm (0.754 - 0.760 in.)	When worn or damaged
	Sealing ring thickness		1.91 - 1.97 mm (0.0752 - 0.0776 in.)	1.86 (0.0732 in.)
	Width of sealing ring groove		2.025 - 2.060 mm (0.0797 - 0.0811 in.)	2.080 mm (0.0819 in.)
	Clutch feed pipe O.D.		7.97 - 7.98 mm (0.3138 - 0.3142 in.)	7.95 mm (0.313 in.)
	Clutch feed pipe bushing I.D.		8.000 - 8.015 mm (0.3150 - 0.3156 in.)	8.030 mm (0.3161 in.)
Countershaft	Diameter of needle bearing contact area	at torque converter housing	36.005-36.015 mm (1.4175 - 1.4179 in.)	When worn or damaged
		at 4th gear collar	37.982 - 37.996 mm (1.4954 - 1.4959 in.)	When worn or damaged
		at reverse gear collar	39.979 - 40.000 mm (1.5740 - 1.5748 in.)	When worn or damaged
	I.D. of gears	4th gear	43.000 - 43.016 mm (1.6929 - 1.6935 in.)	When worn or damaged
		Reverse gear	46.000 - 46.016 mm (1.8110 - 1.8116 in.)	When worn or damaged
	End play of gears	1st gear	0.10 - 0.42 mm (0.004 - 0.017 in.)	————
		2nd gear	0.10 - 0.42 mm (0.004 - 0.017 in.)	————
		3rd gear	0.10 - 0.42 mm (0.004 - 0.017 in.)	————
		4th gear	0.1 - 0.2 mm (0.004 - 0.008 in.)	————
		Reverse gear	0.10 - 0.25 mm (0.004 - 0.010 in.)	————
	4th gear collar length		24.00 - 24.05 mm (0.945 - 0.947 in.)	————
	Distance collar length		74.25 - 74.30 mm (2.923 - 2.925 in.)	————
	Reverse selector hub width		25.45 - 25.65 mm (1.002 - 1.010 in.)	————
	Reverse selector hub O.D.		55.87 - 55.90 mm (2.200 - 2.201 in.)	When worn or damaged

(cont'd)

## Automatic Transmission and A/T Differential (cont'd)

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Secondary shaft	Diameter of needle bearing contact area	at 1st gear	39.986 - 39.999 mm (1.5742 - 1.5748 in.)	When worn or damaged
		at 2nd gear	39.986 - 39.999 mm (1.5742 - 1.5748 in.)	When worn or damaged
	I.D. of gears	1st gear	47.000 - 47.016 mm (1.8504 - 1.8510 in.)	When worn or damaged
		2nd gear	46.000 - 46.016 mm (1.8110 - 1.8116 in.)	When worn or damaged
	End play of gears	1st gear	0.07 - 0.15 mm (0.003 - 0.006 in.)	————
		2nd gear	0.04 - 0.12 mm (0.002 - 0.005 in.)	————
	37 x 58 mm thrust washer thickness	No. 1	3.900 mm (0.154 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 2	3.925 mm (0.155 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 3	3.950 mm (0.156 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 4	3.975 mm (0.156 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 5	4.000 mm (0.157 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 6	4.025 mm (0.158 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 7	4.050 mm (0.159 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 8	4.075 mm (0.160 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 9	4.100 mm (0.161 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 10	4.125 mm (0.162 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 11	4.150 mm (0.163 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 12	4.175 mm (0.164 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 13	4.200 mm (0.165 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 14	4.225 mm (0.166 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 15	4.250 mm (0.167 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 16	4.275 mm (0.168 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 17	4.300 mm (0.169 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 18	4.325 mm (0.170 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 19	4.350 mm (0.171 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 20	4.375 mm (0.172 in.)	When worn or damaged
	40 x 51.5 mm thrust washer thickness	No. 1	4.80 mm (0.189 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 2	4.85 mm (0.191 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 3	4.90 mm (0.193 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 4	4.95 mm (0.195 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 5	5.00 mm (0.197 in.)	When worn or damaged
		No. 6	5.05 mm (0.199 in.)	When worn or damaged
	27 x 45 x 44 mm collar length		43.9 - 44.0 mm (1.728 - 1.732 in.)	————
	Sealing ring thickness		1.91 - 1.97 mm (0.0752 - 0.0776 in.)	1.86 (0.0732 in.)
	Width of sealing ring groove		2.025 - 2.060 mm (0.0797 - 0.0811 in.)	2.080 mm (0.0819 in.)
	Clutch feed pipe O.D.		7.97 - 7.98 mm (0.3138 - 0.3142 in.)	7.95 mm (0.3130 in.)
	Clutch feed pipe bushing O.D.		8.000 - 8.015 mm (0.3150 - 0.3156 in.)	8.030 mm (0.3161 in.)
	ATF guide of sealing ring contact I.D.		29.000 - 29.021 mm (1.1417 - 1.1426 in.)	29.05 mm (1.144 in.)

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Idler gear shaft	Diameter of needle bearing contact area	End cover side	32.003 - 32.013 mm (1.2600 - 1.2604 in.)	When worn or damaged
	Thickness of coters		1.39 - 1.42 mm (0.0547 - 0.0559 in.)	————
Reverse idler gear	Reverse idler gear shaft diameter at needle bearing contact area		14.99 - 15.00 mm (0.5902 - 0.5906 in.)	When worn or damaged
	I.D.		20.007 - 20.020 mm (0.7877 - 0.7882 in.)	When worn or damaged
	I.D. of reverse idler gear shaft contact area on transmission housing		14.800 - 14.818 mm (0.5827 - 0.5834 in.)	————
	I.D. of reverse idler gear shaft holder		14.800 - 14.824 mm (0.5827 - 0.5836 in.)	When worn or damaged
ATF pump	ATF pump thrust clearance		0.03 - 0.05 mm (0.001 - 0.002 in.)	0.07 mm (0.003 in.)
	ATF pump gear-to-body clearance	Drive gear	0.210 - 0.265 mm (0.08 - 0.010 in.)	————
		Driven gear	0.070 - 0.125 mm (0.003 - 0.005 in.)	————
	ATF pump driven gear I.D.		14.016 - 14.034 mm (0.5518 - 0.5525 in.)	When worn or damaged
	ATF pump driven gear shaft O.D.		13.980 - 13.990 mm (0.5504 - 0.5508 in.)	When worn or damaged
Stator shaft	Needle bearing contact I.D.	Torque converter side	27.000 - 27.021 mm (1.063 - 1.064 in.)	When worn or damaged
		ATF pump side	29.000 - 29.021 mm (1.1417 - 1.1426 in.)	————
	Sealing ring contact area I.D.		29.000 - 29.021 mm (1.1417 - 1.1426 in.)	29.05 mm (1.144 in.)
Reverse shift fork	Fork finger thickness		5.90 - 6.00 mm (0.232 - 0.236 in.)	5.40 mm (0.213 in.)
Park gear and pawl			————	When worn or damaged
Servo body	Shift fork shaft bore I.D.		14.000 - 14.010 mm (0.5512 - 0.5516 in.)	————
	Shift fork shaft valve bore I.D.		37.000 - 37.039 mm (1.4567 - 1.4582 in.)	37.045 mm (1.4585 in.)
Regulator valve body	Sealing ring contact I.D.		29.000 - 29.021 mm (1.1417 - 1.1426 in.)	29.05 mm (1.144 in.)

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New			
			Wire Diameter	O.D.	Free Length	No. of Coil
Main valve body springs (see page 14-209)	Shift valve A spring		0.8 mm (0.031 in.)	5.6 mm (0.220 in.)	28.1 mm (1.106 in.)	15.9
	Shift valve B spring		0.8 mm (0.031 in.)	5.6 mm (0.220 in.)	28.1 mm (1.106 in.)	15.9
	Shift valve C spring		0.8 mm (0.031 in.)	5.6 mm (0.220 in.)	28.1 mm (1.106 in.)	15.9
	Relief valve spring		1.0 mm (0.039 in.)	9.6 mm (0.378 in.)	34.1 mm (1.343 in.)	10.2
	Lock-up control valve spring		0.65 mm (0.026 in.)	7.1 mm (0.280 in.)	23.1 mm (0.909 in.)	12.7
	Cooler check valve spring		0.9 mm (0.035 in.)	6.6 mm (0.260 in.)	26.5 mm (1.043 in.)	12.6
	Servo control valve spring		0.7 mm (0.028 in.)	6.6 mm (0.260 in.)	35.7 mm (1.406 in.)	17.2
	Shift valve E spring		0.8 mm (0.031 in.)	5.6 mm (0.220 in.)	28.1 mm (1.106 in.)	15.9

(cont'd)

## Automatic Transmission and A/T Differential (cont'd)

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New			
			Wire Diameter	O.D.	Free Length	No. of Coil
Regulator valve body springs (see page 14-211)	Stator reaction spring		4.5 mm (0.177 in.)	35.4 mm (1.394 in.)	30.3 mm (1.193 in.)	1.92
	Regulator valve spring A		1.9 mm (0.075 in.)	14.7 mm (0.579 in.)	80.6 mm (3.173 in.)	16.1
	Regulator valve spring B		1.6 mm (0.063 in.)	9.2 mm (0.362 in.)	44.0 mm (1.732 in.)	12.5
	Torque converter check valve spring		1.2 mm (0.047 in.)	8.6 mm (0.339 in.)	33.8 mm (1.331 in.)	12.2
	Lock-up shift valve spring		1.0 mm (0.039 in.)	6.6 mm (0.260 in.)	35.5 mm (1.398 in.)	18.2
	3rd accumulator spring		2.5 mm (0.098 in.)	14.6 mm (0.575 in.)	29.9 mm (1.177 in.)	4.9
	1st accumulator spring A		2.4 mm (0.094 in.)	18.6 mm (0.732 in.)	49.0 mm (1.929 in.)	7.1
	1st accumulator spring B		2.3 mm (0.091 in.)	12.2 mm (0.480 in.)	31.5 mm (1.240 in.)	6.6
Servo body springs (see page 14-212)	CPB valve spring		0.7 mm (0.028 in.)	9.1 mm (0.358 in.)	32.3 mm (1.272 in.)	8.6
	4th accumulator spring B		2.3 mm (0.091 in.)	12.2 mm (0.480 in.)	31.5 mm (1.240 in.)	6.6
	4th accumulator spring A		2.4 mm (0.094 in.)	18.6 mm (0.732 in.)	49.0 mm (1.929 in.)	7.1
	2nd accumulator spring B		2.0 mm (0.079 in.)	10.6 mm (0.417 in.)	34.0 mm (1.339 in.)	8.0
	2nd accumulator spring A		2.2 mm (0.087 in.)	16.6 mm (0.654 in.)	48.2 mm (1.898 in.)	8.5
	3th accumulator spring		2.5 mm (0.098 in.)	14.6 mm (0.575 in.)	29.9 mm (1.177 in.)	4.9

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
A/T differential carrier	Pinion shaft contact area I.D.		18.000 - 18.025 mm (0.709 - 0.710 in.)	—
	Carrier-to-pinion shaft clearance		0.013 - 0.054 mm (0.001 - 0.002 in.)	0.1 mm (0.004 in.)
	Driveshaft contact area I.D.		28.015 - 28.045 mm (1.103 - 1.104 in.)	—
	Carrier-to-driveshaft clearance		0.035 - 0.086 mm (0.001 - 0.003 in.)	0.12 mm (0.005 in.)
	Intermediate shaft contact I.D.		28.015 - 28.045 mm (1.103 - 1.104 in.)	—
	Carrier-to-intermediate shaft clearance		0.065 - 0.111 mm (0.003 - 0.004 in.)	0.12 mm (0.005 in.)
	Carrier bearing starting torque (preload)	For new bearing	2.7 - 3.9 N·m (28 - 40 kgf·cm, 24 - 35 lbf·in)	Adjust
		For bearing reused	2.5 - 3.6 N·m (25 - 37 kgf·cm, 22 - 32 lbf·in)	Adjust
	Final driven gear backlash	(references)	0.087 - 0.146 mm (0.003 - 0.006 in.)	0.2 mm (0.008 in.)
A/T differential pinion gear	Backlash		0.05 - 0.15 mm (0.002 - 0.006 in.)	—
	I.D.		18.042 - 18.066 mm (0.7103 - 0.7113 in.)	—
	Pinion gear-to-pinion shaft clearance		0.055 - 0.095 mm (0.0022 - 0.0037 in.)	0.12 mm (0.005 in.)

**Automatic Transmission and A/T Differential (cont'd)**

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Transfer (4WD)	Diameter of transfer shaft on bearing contact area	at roller bearing	38.485 - 38.500 mm (1.5152 - 1.5157 in.)	38.43 mm (1.513 in.)
		at tapered roller bearing	24.975 - 24.990 mm (0.9833 - 0.9839 in.)	24.92 mm (0.9811 in.)
	Transfer drive gear diameter	at tapered roller bearing	40.002 - 40.018 mm (1.5749 - 1.5755 in.)	38.95 mm (1.533 in.)
	Diameter of transfer driven gear on tapered roller bearing contact area	at driven gear side	35.002 - 35.018 mm (1.3780 - 1.3787 in.)	34.95 mm (1.376 in.)
		at shaft splines side	26.975 - 26.988 mm (1.0620 - 1.0625 in.)	26.92 mm (1.060 in.)
	Transfer gear backlash		0.06 - 0.16 mm (0.002 - 0.006 in.)	Adjust
	Total starting torque (Preload)		2.16 - 3.57 N·m (22.0 - 36.4 kgf·cm, 19.2 - 31.6 lbf·in)	Adjust

**Rear Differential**

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Differential fluid	Capacity Use genuine Honda DPSF	at fluid change	1.0 L (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt)	
		at overhaul	1.2 L (1.3 US qt, 1.1 Imp qt)	

**Steering**

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Steering wheel	Rotational play measured at outside edge with engine running		0 - 10 mm (0 - 0.39 in.)	
	Starting load measured at outside edge with engine running		29 N (3.0 kgf, 6.6 lbs)	
Gearbox	Angle of rack guide screw loosened from locked position		20° Max.	
Pump	Output pressure with shut-off valve closed		6,900 - 7,500 kPa (70 - 77 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 1,000 - 1,100 psi)	
Power steering fluid	Capacity Use genuine Honda power steering fluid	Fluid change	0.2 L (0.21 US qt, 0.18 Imp qt)	
		System overhaul	0.72 L (0.74 US qt, 0.63 Imp qt)	
Drive belt			Auto adjust	

**Suspension**

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Wheel alignment	Camber	Front	0°00' ± 45'	
		Rear	- 1°00' ± 45'	
	Caster	Front	1°45' ± 1°	
	Total Toe	Front	0 ± 2 mm (0 ± 0.08 in.)	
		Rear	IN 2 <sup>+2</sup> <sub>-1</sub> mm (0.08 <sup>+0.08</sup> <sub>-0.04</sub> in.)	
	Front wheel turning angle	Inside wheel	39°45' ± 2°	
		Outside wheel	32°30' ± 1° (Reference)	
Wheel	Aluminum wheel runout	Axial	0 - 0.7 mm (0 - 0.03 in.)	2.0 mm (0.08 in.)
		Radial	0 - 0.7 mm (0 - 0.03 in.)	1.5 mm (0.06 in.)
	Steel wheel runout	Axial	0 - 1.0 mm (0 - 0.04 in.)	2.0 mm (0.08 in.)
		Radial	0 - 1.0 mm (0 - 0.04 in.)	1.5 mm (0.06 in.)
Wheel bearing	End play	Front	0 - 0.05 mm (0 - 0.002 in.)	
		Rear	0 - 0.05 mm (0 - 0.002 in.)	

## Brakes

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Parking brake lever	Distance travelled when lever pulled with 196 N (20 kgf, 44 lbs) of force		5 - 9 clicks	
Brake pedal	Pedal height (carpet removed)		173 mm (6 13/16 in.)	
	Free play		1 - 5 mm (0.04 - 0.2 in.)	
Master cylinder	Piston-to-pushrod clearance		0 - 0.4 mm (0 - 0.02 in.)	
Brake disc	Disc thickness	Front	23.0 mm (0.91 in.)	21.0 mm (0.83 in.)
		Rear	9.0 mm (0.35 in.)	7.0 mm (0.28 in.)
	Disc runout	Front and rear	—	0.10 mm (0.004 in.)
	Disc parallelism	Front and rear	—	0.015 mm (0.0006 in.)
	Pad thickness	Front	11.0 mm (0.43 in.)	1.6 mm (0.06 in.)
		Rear	9.0 mm (0.35 in.)	1.0 mm (0.04 in.)
Rear parking brake	Brake drum I.D. Brake shoe lining thickness		170 mm (6.69 in.)	171 mm (6.73 in.)
			3.2 mm (0.13 in.)	1.0 mm (0.04 in.)
Brake booster	Master cylinder fluid pressure with pressing brake pedal with 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbs)	at 0 kPa (0 mmHg, 0 in.Hg) of vacuum	1,040 kPa (10.8 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 151 psi)	
		at 40.0 kPa (300 mmHg, 11.8 in.Hg) of vacuum	7,129 kPa (72.7 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 1,030 psi)	
		at 66.7 kPa (500 mmHg, 19.7 in.Hg) of vacuum	11,248 kPa (114.7 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 1,631 psi)	

## Air Conditioning

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Standard or New	Service Limit
Refrigerant	Type		HFC-134 a (R-134 a)	
	Capacity of system		650 - 700 g (22.9 - 24.7 oz)	
Refrigerant oil	Type		ND-OIL8	
	Capacity of components	Condenser	50 mL (1 2/3 fl oz, 1.3 Imp oz)	
		Evaporator	40 mL (1 1/3 fl oz, 1.4 Imp oz)	
		Each line and hose	10 mL (1/3 fl oz, 0.4 Imp oz)	
		Compressor	160 - 175 mL (5 2/5 - 6 fl oz, 5.6 - 6.2 Imp oz)	
Compressor	Starter coil resistance	at 60°C (20°F)	3.9 - 4.3 Ω	
	Pulley-to-pressure plate clearance		0.35 - 0.6 mm (0.014 - 0.024 in.)	

## Design Specifications

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Specification
Dimensions	Overall length	European models	4,575 mm (180.1 in.)
		KQ (RVi)	4,535 mm (178.5 in.)
		KQ (RVSi)	4,565 mm (179.7 in.)
		KH (South America)	4,535 mm (178.5 in.)
		KH (China)	4,570 mm (179.9 in.)
		KK (LX)	4,535 mm (178.5 in.)
		KK (EX)	4,550 mm (179.1 in.)
		KM	4,550 mm (179.1 in.)
		KU	4,535 mm (178.5 in.)
		KY (RVi)	4,555 mm (179.3 in.)
		KY (RVSi)	4,570 mm (179.9 in.)
	Overall width		1,780 mm (70.1 in.)
	Overall height		1,710 mm (67.3 in.)
	Wheelbase		2,620 mm (103.1 in.)
Weight	Track	Front	1,535 mm (60.4 in.)
		Rear	1,540 mm (60.6 in.)
	Seating capacity		five (5)
	Curb Weight	European models	1,458 - 1,542 kg (3,214 - 3,399 lbs)
		KQ	1,475 - 1,515 kg (3,252 - 3,340 lbs)
		KH (China)	1,495 - 1,520 kg (3,296 - 3,351 lbs)
		KY	1,470 - 1,505 kg (3,241 - 3,318 lbs)
		KU	1,480 - 1,495 kg (3,263 - 3,296 lbs)
		KH (South America), KK, KM, KN, KP, KT, KW	1,440 - 1,510 kg (3,175 - 3,329 lbs)
	Max. permissible Weight	M/T	1,930 kg (4,255 lbs)
		A/T	1,960 kg (4,321 lbs)
	Max. Loaded Vehicle Weight (ADR)	M/T	1,910 kg (4,211 lbs)
		A/T	1,940 kg (4,277 lbs)

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Specification
Engine	Type		Water cooled, 4-stroke DOHC VTEC engine
	Cylinder arrangement		Inline 4-cylinder, transverse
	Bore and stroke	K20A4, K20A5 engines	86 X 86 mm (3.39 X 3.39 in.)
		K24A1 engine	87 X 99 mm (3.43 X 3.90 in.)
	Displacement	K20A4, K20A5 engines	1,998 cm <sup>3</sup> (122 cu in.)
		K24A1 engine	2,354 cm <sup>3</sup> (143 cu in.)
	Compression ratio	K20A4, K20A5 engines	9.8
		K24A1 engine	9.6
	Valve train		Chain drive, DOHC VTEC 4 valves per cylinder
	Lubrication system		Forced, wet sump, with trochoid pump
	Oil pump displacement	at 6,000 engine rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> )	54.3 / (57.4 US qt, 47.8 Imp qt)/minute
	Water pump displacement	at 6,000 engine rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> )	82 / (87 US qt, 72 Imp qt)/minute
	Fuel required	K20A4 engine European models	UNLEADED gasoline with 95 research octane number or higher
		K20A4 engine Except European models	UNLEADED gasoline with 91 research octane number or higher
		K20A5 engine KP, KT models	LEADED gasoline with 91 research octane number or higher
		K20A5 engine KW model	LEADED gasoline with 88 research octane number or higher
		K24A1 engine	UNLEADED gasoline with 91 research octane number or higher
Starter	Type		Gear reduction
	Normal output	K20A4 (KZ models) engine	1.0 kW
		K20A4 (KE, KG, KR, KS models) engine	1.1 kW
		K20A4 (Except KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models), K20A5 engines	1.2 kW
		K24A1 engine	1.6 kW
	Nominal voltage		12 V
	Hour rating		30 seconds
Clutch	Clutch type	M/T	Single plate dry, diaphragm spring
		A/T	3-element torque converter with lock-up clutch
	Clutch friction material surface area	M/T	174 cm <sup>2</sup> (26.97 sq in.)
Z2C1, Z2M1 Manual Transmission	Type		Synchronized, 5-speed forward, 1 reverse
	Primary reduction		Direct 1:1
	Gear ratio	1st	3.533
		2nd	1.769
		3rd	1.212
		4th	0.921
		5th	0.714
		Reverse	3.583
	Transfer gear	Type	Hypoid gear
		Gear ratio	0.904
	Differential final gear	Type	Single helical gear
		Gear ratio	5.062

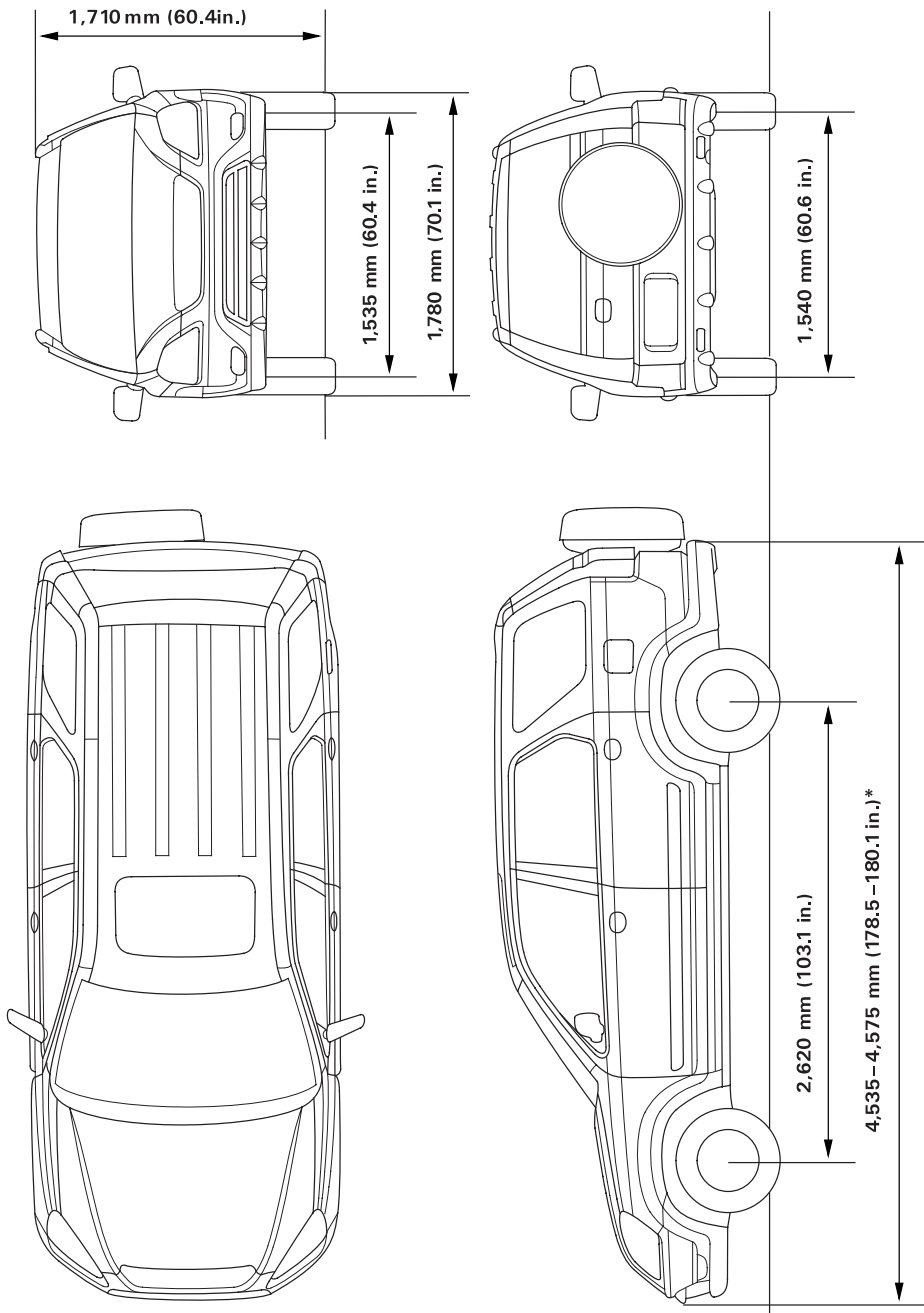


Item	Measurement	Qualification	Specification
Z2M3 Manual Transmission	Type		Synchronized, 5-speed forward, 1 reverse
	Primary reduction		Direct 1:1
	Gear ratio	1st	3.533
		2nd	1.880
		3rd	1.212
		4th	0.921
		5th	0.738
		Reverse	3.583
	Transfer gear	Type	Hypoid gear
		Gear ratio	0.904
	Differential final gear	Type	Single helical gear
		Gear ratio	4.764
Automatic Transmission	Type		Electronically controlled automatic, 4-speed forward, 1 reverse
	Primary reduction		Direct 1:1
	Gear ratio K20A4, K20A5 engine models	1st	2.684
		2nd	1.534
		3rd	1.081
		4th	0.695
		Reverse	2.000
	Gear ratio K24A1 engine model	1st	2.684
		2nd	1.534
		3rd	1.974
		4th	0.638
		Reverse	2.000
	Transfer gear	Type	Hypoid gear
		Gear ratio	0.904
	Differential final gear	Type	Single helical gear
		Gear ratio K20A4, K20A5 engine models	4.562
		Gear ratio K24A1 engine model	4.437
Steering	Type		Power-assisted rack and pinion
	Overall ratio		15.06
	Turns, lock-to-lock		2.64
	Steering wheel diameter		360 mm (14.2 in.)
Suspension	Type	Front	Independent strut with stabilizer, coil spring
		Rear	Double wishbone
	Shock absorber	Front	Telescopic, hydraulic, nitrogen gas-filled
		Rear	Telescopic, hydraulic, nitrogen gas-filled
Wheel Alignment	Camber	Front	0°
		Rear	-1°
	Caster	Front	1°45'
	Total toe	Front	0 mm (0 in.)
		Rear	In 2 mm (1/16 in.)
Brakes	Type of service brake	Front	Power-assisted self-adjusting ventilated disc
		Rear	Power-assisted self-adjusting solid disc
	Type of parking brake		Mechanical actuating, rear wheels
	Pad friction surface area	Front	42 cm <sup>2</sup> (6.5 sq in.) x 2
		Rear	21 cm <sup>2</sup> (3.3 sq in.) x 2
	Shoe friction surface area	Rear	49.0 cm <sup>2</sup> (7.60 sq in.) x 2

(cont'd)

Item	Measurement	Qualification	Specification
Tyres	Size of front and rear tires		205/70R15 95S
	Size of spare tire	Regular type	205/70R15 95S
		Compact type	T145/80 D16
Air Condition- ing	Compressor	Type	Scroll
		Number of cylinder	————
		Capacity	85.7 m/ (5.23 cu in.)/rev.
		Maximum speed	12,000 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> )
		Lubricant capacity	130 m/ (4 1/3 fl oz)
		Lubricant type	ND-OIL8
	Condenser	Type	Corrugated fin
	Evaporator	Type	Corrugated fin
	Blower	Type	Sirocco fan
		Motor type	220 W/12 V
		Speed control	Infinite variable
		Maximum capacity	480 m <sup>3</sup> (16.900 cu ft)/h
	Temperature control		Air-mix type
	Compressor clutch	Type	Dry, single plate, poly-V belt drive
		Electrical power consumption at 20 °C (68 °F)	42 W maximum at 12 V
	Refrigerant	Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
		Capacity	650 - 700 g (22.9 - 24.7 oz)
Electrical Ratings	Battery		12 V - 36 AH/5 HR, 12 V - 45 AH/20 HR
	Starter		12 V - 1.2 kW, 1.6 kW
	Alternator		12 V - 90A
	Fuses	Under-hood fuse relay box	100 A, 40 A, 30 A, 20 A, 15 A, 10 A
		Under-dash fuse relay box	30A, 20 A, 15 A, 10 A, 7.5 A
	Light bulbs	Headlight high beam	12 V - 60 W
		Headlight low beam	12 V - 55 W
		Front turn signal lights	12 V - 21 W
		Front side marker lights	12 V - 5 W
		Front parking lights	12 V - 5 W
		Rear turn signal lights	12 V - - 21 W
		Side turn signal lights	12 V - 5 W
		Brake/taillights	12 V - 21/5 W
		Taillights	12 V - 5 W (Except Taiwan model), 12 V - 3 CP (Taiwan model)
		Rear fog lights	12 V - 21 W
		Front fog lights	12 V - 51 W
		High mount brake light	12 V - 21 W
		Back-up lights	12 V - 21 W
		License plate light	12 V - 5 W
		Ceiling lights	12 V - 8 W
		Spotlights without roof console	12 V - 8 W
		Spotlights with roof console	12 V - 4 CP
		Gauge lights	12 V-1.4 W
		Indicator lights	LED, 12 V - 1.4 W

Body Specifications



\*:Overall length: Refer to Design Spec. (see page 02-17).



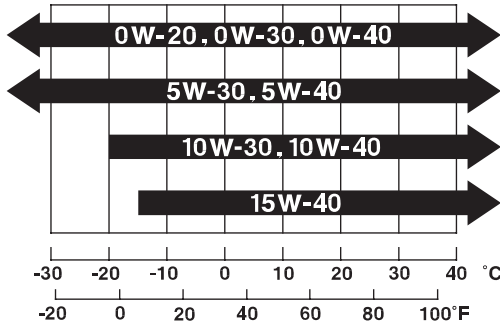


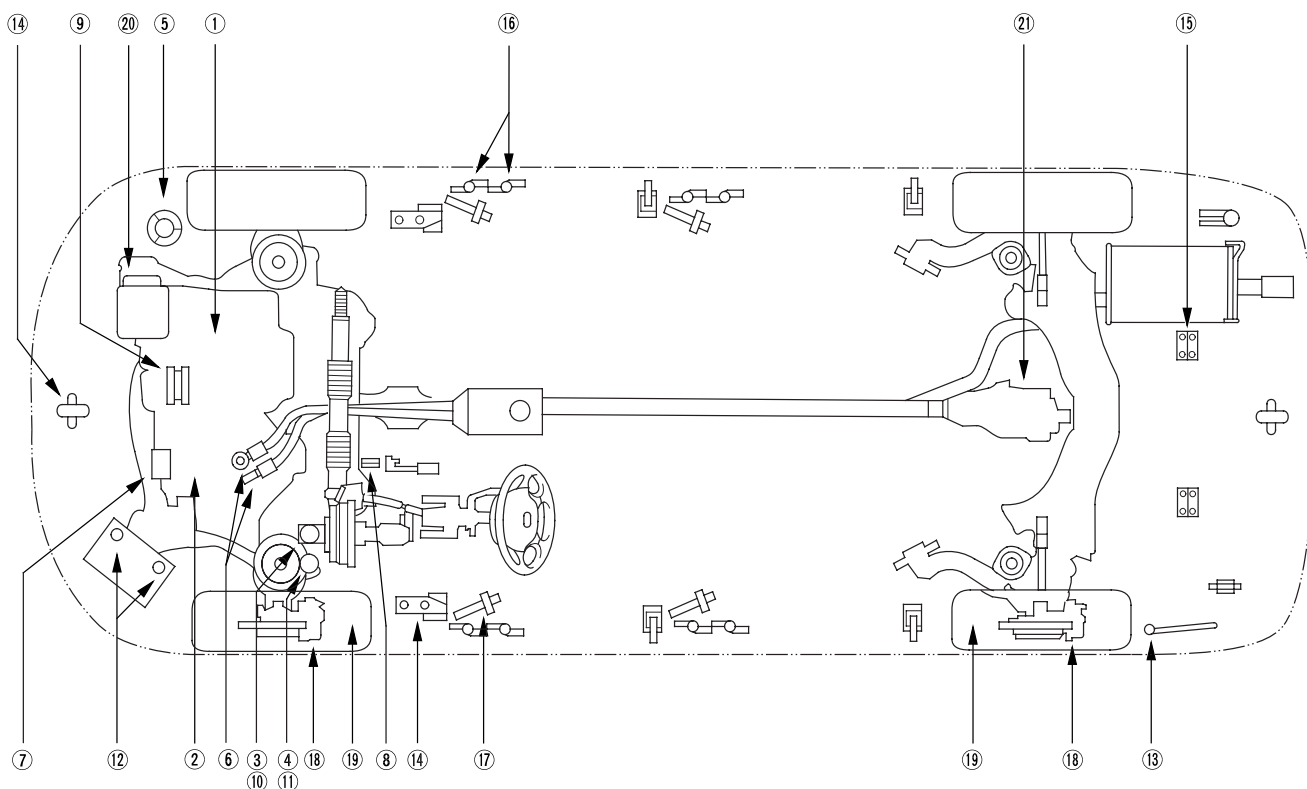
## Maintenance

<b>Lubricants and Fluids .....</b>	<b>03-2</b>
<b>Maintenance Schedule for Normal Conditions .....</b>	<b>03-4</b>
<b>(European Model)</b>	
Listed by Maintenance Item .....	03-4
<b>Maintenance Schedule for Severe Conditions .....</b>	<b>03-6</b>
<b>(European Model)</b>	
Listed by Maintenance Item .....	03-6
<b>Maintenance Schedule for Normal Conditions .....</b>	<b>03-8</b>
<b>(Australia and New Zealand Models)</b>	
Listed by Maintenance Item .....	03-8
<b>Maintenance Schedule for Severe Conditions .....</b>	<b>03-10</b>
<b>(Australia and New Zealand Models)</b>	
Listed by Maintenance Item .....	03-10
<b>Maintenance Schedule .....</b>	<b>03-12</b>
<b>(Except European, Australia and New Zealand Models)</b>	
Listed by Maintenance Item .....	03-12

## Lubricants and Fluids

For the details of lubrication points and type of lubricants to be applied, refer to the illustrated index and various work procedures (such as Assembly/Reassembly, Replacement, Overhaul, Installation, etc.) contained in each section.

NO.	LUBRICATION POINTS	LUBRICANT
1	Engine	<p>Always use fuel-efficient oil is that says "API service SG, SH or SJ"</p> <p><b>Recommended Engine Oil</b> Engine oil viscosity for ambient temperature ranges</p>  <p><b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Used engine oil may cause skin cancer if repeatedly left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods. Although this is unlikely unless you handle used oil on a daily basis, it is still advisable to thoroughly wash your hands with soap and water as soon as possible after handling used oil.</p>
2	Manual Transmission	Genuine Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF) Always use genuine Honda MTF. Using motor oil can cause stiffer shifting because it does contain the proper additives.
	Automatic Transmission	Genuine Honda ATF-Z1 Always use genuine Honda ATF-Z1. Using a non-Honda ATF can affect shift quality.
3	Brake system (includes ABS line)	Brake fluid DOT 3 or DOT 4 We recommend genuine Honda Brake Fluid. Using a non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the life of the system.
4	Clutch line (manual transmission)	Brake fluid DOT 3 or DOT 4
5	Power steering system	Honda Power steering Fluid (V or II) Always use Honda Power Steering Fluid. Using any other type of power steering fluid or automatic transmission fluid can cause increased wear and poor steering in cold weather.
6	Shift and select cable ends (manual transmission)	Super High Temp Urea Grease (P/N 08798-9002)
7	Release fork (manual transmission)	
8	Throttle cable end (dashboard lower panel hole)	
9	Throttle cable end (throttle link)	
10	Brake master cylinder pushrod	
11	Clutch master cylinder pushrod	Multi-purpose grease
12	Battery terminals	
13	Fuel fill lid	
14	Hood hinges and latch	
15	Tailgate hinges	Honda White Lithium Grease
16	Door hinges, upper and lower	
17	Door opening detent	
18	Brake caliper piston boot, caliper pins and boots	
19	Brake line joints (front and rear wheelhouse)	Rust preventives
20	Air conditioning compressor	Compressor oil: DENSO ND-OIL8 (P/N 38897-PR7-003 or 38899-PR7-A01) for refrigerant HFC-134a (R-134a)
21	Rear differential (4WD model)	Genuine Honda DPSF



### Maintenance Schedule for Normal Conditions (European Model)

#### Listed by Maintenance Item

Follow the Normal Conditions Maintenance Schedule if the severe driving conditions specified in the Severe Conditions Maintenance Schedule ([see page 03-6](#)) do not apply.

Service at the indicated distance or time whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil ( <a href="#">see page 08-5</a> )		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Replace engine oil filter ( <a href="#">see page 08-6</a> )		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Inspect front and rear brakes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the brake pad and disc thickness. Check for damage or cracks (<a href="#">see page 19A-12</a>), (<a href="#">see page 19A-18</a>), (<a href="#">see page 19A-30</a>), (<a href="#">see page 19A-32</a>).</li> <li>Check the brake linings for cracking, grazing, wear and contamination (<a href="#">see page 19A-39</a>).</li> <li>Check the calipers for damage, leaks, and tightness (<a href="#">see page 19A-3</a>).</li> </ul>		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check parking brake adjustment ( <a href="#">see page 19A-6</a> ).		●	●		●		●		●		●
Check lights alignment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the position of the headlights (<a href="#">see page 22A-96</a>).</li> </ul>		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Test drive (noise, stability dashboard operation) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check for road stability, noise, vibration and dashboard operation.</li> </ul>		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
<b>Visually inspect the following items:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check for correct installation and position, check for cracks, deterioration, rust, and leaks.</li> <li>Check tightness of screws, nuts, and joints. If necessary, retighten.</li> </ul>											
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check rack grease and steering linkage. Check the boot for damage and leaking grease (<a href="#">see page 17-8</a>).</li> </ul>		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Suspension components <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the bolts for tightness.</li> <li>Check all dust cover for deterioration and damage. (<a href="#">see page 18-2</a>).</li> </ul>											
Driveshaft boots <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the boot and boot band for cracks.</li> <li>Check rack grease.</li> <li>(<a href="#">see page 16-3</a>).</li> </ul>											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the master cylinder, proportioning control valve and ABS modulator and leakage (<a href="#">see page 19B-36</a>).</li> </ul>											
All fluid levels and condition of fluids <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check levels and check for leaks. If necessary, add engine coolant (<a href="#">see page 10-6</a>), MTF (<a href="#">see page 13-4</a>), ATF (<a href="#">see page 14-131</a>), DPSF (4WD) (<a href="#">see page 15-13</a>), brake fluid (<a href="#">see page 19A-9</a>), windshield fluid, and battery fluid.</li> </ul>											
Exhaust system <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the exhaust pipe and muffler for damage, leaks and tightness (<a href="#">see page 09-9</a>).</li> </ul>											
Fuel lines and connections <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check fuel lines for loose connections, cracks and deterioration. Retighten loose connections and replace any damaged parts (<a href="#">see page 11-156</a>).</li> </ul>											
Tyre condition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check for pressure, puncture, cuts, and irregular thread wear.</li> </ul>											





Service at the indicated distance or time whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace air cleaner element (see page 11-182).	Every 40,000 km (24,000 miles)										
Replace spark plugs (see page 04-23).											
Inspect valve clearance (see page 06-9).											
Inspect and adjust drive belts • Check for cracks, damage, deflection and tension (see page 04-29).		●		●		●		●		●	
Replace dust and pollen filter (see page 21-25).	Every 30,000 km (18,000 miles) or 1 year										
Replace fuel filter (see page 11-166).						●					
Inspect idle speed (see page 11-148).						●					
Replace manual transmission fluid • Use genuine Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF) (see page 13-4).	Every 120,000 km (72,000 miles) or 8 years										
Replace automatic transmission fluid • Use genuine Honda ATF-Z1 (see page 14-131).	At 120,000 km (72,000 miles) or 8 years, then replace every 80,000 km (48,000 miles) or 4 years										
Replace rear differential fluid (4WD model) • Use genuine Honda DPSF (see page 15-13).	At 120,000 km (72,000 miles) or 8 years, then replace every 60,000 km (36,000 miles) or 4 years										
Replace engine coolant • Use Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2 (see page 10-6).	At 200,000 km (120,000 miles) or 10 years, then replace every 100,000 km (60,000 miles) or 5 years										
Replace brake fluid • Use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid. We recommend Genuine Honda Brake Fluid. Check that brake fluid level between the upper and lower marks on the reservoir (see page 19A-9).	Every 3 years										

## Maintenance Schedule for Severe Conditions (European Model)

### Listed by Maintenance Item

Follow the Severe Conditions Maintenance Schedule if the customer's vehicle is driven MAINLY under one or more of the following conditions:

- Driving less than 8 km (5 miles) per trip or, in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km (10 miles) per trip.
- Driving in extremely hot over 35 °C (95 °F) conditions.
- Extensive idling, or long periods of stop-and-go-driving.
- Trailer towing, driving with a car-top carrier, or driving in mountainous conditions.
- Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

If the customer's vehicle is driven OCCASIONALLY under severe conditions, follow the Normal Conditions Maintenance Schedule ([see page 03-4](#)).

Service at the indicated distance or time whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil ( <a href="#">see page 08-5</a> )	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months										
Replace engine oil filter ( <a href="#">see page 08-6</a> )		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Inspect front and rear brakes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the brake pad and disc thickness. Check for damage or cracks (<a href="#">see page 19A-12</a>), (<a href="#">see page 19A-18</a>), (<a href="#">see page 19A-30</a>), (<a href="#">see page 19A-32</a>).</li> <li>• Check the brake linings for cracking, grazing, wear and contamination (<a href="#">see page 19A-39</a>).</li> <li>• Check the calipers for damage, leaks, and tightness. (<a href="#">see page 19A-3</a>)</li> </ul>	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months										
Check parking brake adjustment ( <a href="#">see page 19A-6</a> ).		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check lights alignment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the position of the headlights (<a href="#">see page 22A-96</a>).</li> </ul>		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Test drive (noise, stability dashboard operation) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check for road stability, noise, vibration and dashboard operation.</li> </ul>		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
<b>Visually inspect the following items:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check for correct installation and position, check for cracks, deterioration, rust, and leaks.</li> <li>• Check tightness of screws, nuts, and joints. If necessary, retighten.</li> </ul>											
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check rack grease and steering linkage. Check the boot for damage and leaking grease (<a href="#">see page 17-8</a>).</li> </ul>	Inspect every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months										
Suspension components ( <a href="#">see page 18-3</a> ). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the bolts for tightness.</li> <li>• Check all dust cover for deterioration and damage.</li> </ul>											
Driveshaft boots <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the boot and boot band for cracks (<a href="#">see page 16-3</a>).</li> <li>• Check rack grease.</li> </ul>											



Service at the indicated distance or time whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS) • Check the master cylinder, proportioning control valve and ABS modulator and leakage (see page 19B-36).		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
All fluid levels and condition of fluids • Check levels and check for leaks. If necessary, add engine coolant (see page 10-6), MTF (see page 13-4), ATF (see page 14-131), DPSF (4WD) (see page 15-13), brake fluid (see page 19A-9), windshield fluid, and battery fluid.											
Exhaust system • Check the exhaust pipe and muffler for damage, leaks and tightness (see page 09-9).											
Fuel lines and connections • Check fuel lines for loose connections, cracks and deterioration. Retighten loose connections and replace any damaged parts. (see page 11-156)											
Tyre condition • Check for pressure, puncture, cuts, and irregular thread wear.											
Clean (O) or replace (●) air cleaner element (see page 11-182).	Wet type	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
	Dry type	O	●	O	●	O	●	O	●	O	●
Replace spark plugs (see page 04-23).	Every 40,000 km (24,000 miles)										
Inspect valve clearance (see page 06-9).											
Inspect and adjust drive belts • Check for cracks, damage, deflection and tension (see page 04-29).			●		●		●		●		●
Replace dust and pollen filter (see page 21-25).	Every 30,000 km (18,000 miles) or 1 year										
Replace fuel filter (see page 11-166).							●				
Inspect idle speed (see page 11-148).							●				
Replace manual transmission fluid • Use genuine Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF) (see page 13-4).	Every 60,000 km (36,000 miles) or 4 years										
Replace automatic transmission fluid • Use genuine Honda ATF-Z1 (see page 14-131).	At 60,000 km (36,000 miles) or 4 years, then replace every 40,000 km (24,000 miles) or 2 years										
Replace rear differential fluid (4WD model) • Use genuine Honda DPSF (see page 15-13).	At 80,000 km (48,000 miles) or 5 years, then replace every 40,000 km (24,000 miles) or 3 years										
Replace engine Coolant • Use Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2 (see page 10-6).	At 200,000 km (120,000 miles) or 10 years, then replace every 100,000 km (60,000 miles) or 5 years										
Replace brake fluid • Use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid. We recommend genuine Honda Brake Fluid. Check that brake fluid level between the upper and lower marks on the reservoir (see page 19A-9).	Every 3 years										

## Maintenance Schedule for Normal Conditions (Australia and New Zealand Models)

### Listed by Maintenance Item

Follow the Normal Conditions Maintenance Schedule if the severe driving conditions specified in the Severe Conditions Maintenance Schedule ([see page 03-10](#)) do not apply.

Service at the indicated distance or time whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil ( <a href="#">see page 08-5</a> )	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year										
Replace engine oil filter ( <a href="#">see page 08-6</a> )		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Replace air cleaner element ( <a href="#">see page 11-182</a> )			●		●		●		●		●
Inspect valve clearance • Check valve clearance ( <a href="#">see page 06-9</a> )			●		●		●		●		●
Replace fuel filter ( <a href="#">see page 11-166</a> )			●		●		●		●		●
Replace spark plugs ( <a href="#">see page 04-23</a> )			●		●		●		●		●
Inspect and adjust drive belts • Check for cracks, damage, deflection and tension ( <a href="#">see page 04-29</a> )			●		●		●		●		●
Inspect idle speed ( <a href="#">see page 11-148</a> )						●					
Replace engine coolant • Use Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2 ( <a href="#">see page 10-6</a> )	At 200,000 km (120,000 miles) or 10 years, then replace every 100,000 km (60,000 miles) or 5 years										
Replace manual transmission fluid • Use genuine Honda manual Transmission Fluid (MTF) ( <a href="#">see page 13-4</a> ).							●				
Replace automatic transmission fluid • Use genuine Honda ATF-Z1 ( <a href="#">see page 14-131</a> ).	At 120,000 km (72,000 miles) or 6 years, then replace every 80,000 km (48,000 miles) or 4 years										
Replace rear differential fluid (4WD model) • Use genuine Honda DPSF ( <a href="#">see page 15-13</a> ).							●			●	
Inspect front and rear brakes • Check the brake pad and disc thickness. Check for damage or cracks. • Check the brake linings for cracking, grazing, wear, or contamination. • Check the calipers for damage, leaks, and tightness ( <a href="#">see page 15-13</a> ).		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Replace brake fluid • Use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid. We recommend Genuine Honda Brake Fluid. • Check that brake fluid level is between upper and lower marks on the reservoir. ( <a href="#">see page 19A-9</a> )	Every 3 years										
Check parking brake adjustment • Check the parking brake operation ( <a href="#">see page 19A-6</a> )		●	●		●		●		●		●
Check light alignment • Check the position of the headlight ( <a href="#">see page 22A-96</a> ).		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Test drive • Check for road stability, noise, vibrations and dashboard operation.		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●



Service at the indicated distance or time whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
<b>Visually inspect the following items:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check for correct installation and position, check for cracks, deterioration, rust, and leaks.</li> <li>Check tightness of screws, nuts, and joints. If necessary, retighten.</li> </ul>											
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check rack grease and steering linkage. Check the boot for damage and leaking grease. (<a href="#">see page 17-8</a>)</li> </ul>	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Suspension components <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the bolts for tightness.</li> <li>Check all dust cover for deterioration and damage. (<a href="#">see page 18-3</a>)</li> </ul>											
Driveshaft boots <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the boot and boot band for cracks.</li> <li>Check rack grease. (<a href="#">see page 16-3</a>)</li> </ul>											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the master cylinder, proportioning control valve and ABS modulator and leakage. (<a href="#">see page 19A-3</a>)</li> </ul>											
All fluid levels and condition of fluids <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check levels and check for leaks. If necessary, add engine coolant (<a href="#">see page 10-6</a>), MTF (<a href="#">see page 13-4</a>), ATF (<a href="#">see page 14-131</a>), DPSP (4WD) (<a href="#">see page 15-13</a>), brake fluid (<a href="#">see page 19A-9</a>), windshield fluid, and battery fluid.</li> </ul>											
Exhaust system <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the exhaust pipe and muffler for damage, leaks and tightness. (<a href="#">see page 09-9</a>)</li> </ul>											
Fuel lines and connections <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check fuel lines for loose connections, cracks and deterioration. Retighten loose connections and replace any damaged parts. (<a href="#">see page 11-156</a>)</li> </ul>											
Tyre connection <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check for pressure, puncture, cuts, and irregular thread wear.</li> </ul>											

## Maintenance Schedule for Severe Conditions (Australia and New Zealand Models)

### Listed by Maintenance Item

Follow the Severe Conditions schedule if the vehicle is driven MAINLY under one or more of the following conditions:

Driving less than 8 km (5 miles) per trip or, in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km (10 miles) per trip.

Driving in extremely hot over 35 °C (95 °F) conditions.

Extensive idling, or long periods of stop-and-go-driving.

Trailer towing, driving with a car-top carrier, or driving in mountainous conditions.

Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

NOTE: If the vehicle is driven OCCASIONALLY under severe conditions, follow the Normal Conditions Maintenance Schedule (see page 03-8).

Service at the indicated distance or time whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil (see page 08-5)	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year										
Replace engine oil filter (see page 08-6)		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Replace air cleaner element • Use normal schedule except in dusty conditions (see page 11-182)		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Inspect valve clearance • Check valve clearance (see page 06-9)			●		●		●		●		●
Replace fuel filter (see page 11-166)			●		●		●		●		●
Replace spark plugs (see page 04-23)			●		●		●		●		●
Inspect and adjust drive belts • Check for cracks, damage, deflection and tension (see page 04-29)			●		●		●		●		●
Inspect idle speed (see page 11-148)						●					
Replace engine coolant • Use Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2 (see page 10-6)	At 200,000 km (120,000 miles) or 10 years, then replace every 100,000 km (60,000 miles) or 5 years										
Replace manual transmission fluid • Use genuine Honda manual Transmission Fluid (MTF) (see page 13-4)				●			●			●	
Replace automatic transmission fluid • Use genuine Honda ATF-Z1 (see page 14-131).				●		●		●		●	
Replace rear differential fluid (4WD model) • Use genuine Honda DPSF (see page 15-13).					●		●		●		●
Inspect front and rear brakes • Check the brake pad and disc thickness. Check for damage or cracks. • Check the brake linings for cracking, grazing, wear, or contamination. • Check the calipers for damage, leaks, and tightness. (see page 19A-3)	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months										
Replace brake fluid • Use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid. We recommend Genuine Honda Brake Fluid. • Check that brake fluid level is between upper and lower marks on the reservoir. (see page 19A-9)	Every 3 years										
Check parking brake adjustment • Check the parking brake operation (see page 19A-6).		●	●		●		●		●		●



Service at the indicated distance or time whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Check lights alignment ( <a href="#">see page 22A-96</a> ). • Check for road stability, noise, vibrations and dashboard operation.		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Test drive • Check for road stability, noise, vibrations and dashboard operation.		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
<b>Visually inspect the following items:</b> • Check for correct installation and position, check for cracks, deterioration, rust, and leaks. • Check tightness of screws, nuts, and joints. If necessary, retighten.											
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots • Check rack grease and steering linkage. Check the boot for damage and leaking grease. ( <a href="#">see page 17-8</a> )	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months										
Suspension components • Check the bolts for tightness. • Check all dust cover for deterioration and damage. ( <a href="#">see page 18-3</a> )											
Driveshaft boots • Check the boot and boot band for cracks. • Check rack grease. ( <a href="#">see page 16-3</a> )											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS) • Check the master cylinder, proportioning control valve and ABS modulator and leakage. ( <a href="#">see page 19A-4</a> )											
All fluid levels and condition of fluids • Check levels and check for leaks. If necessary, add engine coolant ( <a href="#">see page 10-6</a> ), MTF ( <a href="#">see page 13-4</a> ), ATF ( <a href="#">see page 14-131</a> ), DSPF (4WD) ( <a href="#">see page 15-13</a> ), brake fluid ( <a href="#">see page 19A-9</a> ), windshield fluid, and battery fluid.	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Exhaust system • Check the exhaust pipe and muffler for damage, leaks and tightness. ( <a href="#">see page 09-9</a> )											
Fuel lines and connections • Check fuel lines for loose connections, cracks and deterioration. Retighten loose connections and replace any damaged parts. ( <a href="#">see page 11-156</a> )											
Tyre connection • Check for pressure, puncture, cuts, and irregular thread wear.											
Test drive • Check for road stability, noise, vibrations and dashboard operation.	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

## Maintenance Schedule (Except European, Australia and New Zealand Models)

### Listed by Maintenance Item

- For K20A5 engine model; replace engine oil and engine oil filter following the Severe Conditions Schedule.
- For K20A4 and K24A1 engine models; follow the Severe Conditions schedule for replacing engine oil and engine oil filter, if the vehicle is driven MAINLY under one or more of the following conditions:
  - Driving less than 8 km (5 miles) per trip or, in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km (10 miles) per trip.
  - Driving in extremely hot over 35 °C (95 °F) conditions.
  - Extensive idling, or long periods of stop-and-go-driving.
  - Trailer towing, driving with a car-top carrier, or driving in mountainous conditions.
  - Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

If the vehicle is driven OCCASIONALLY under severe conditions, replace engine oil and engine oil filter according to the normal conditions schedule.

- Follow the Severe Conditions schedule for replacing transmission fluid, if the vehicle is drive MAINLY under one or more of the following conditions:

Driving in extremely hot over 35 °C (95 °F) conditions  
Trailer towing, driving with a car-top carrier, or driving in mountainous conditions.

If the vehicle is driven OCCASIONALLY under severe conditions, replace transmission fluid according to the normal conditions schedule.

Service at the indicated distance or time whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil (see page 08-5)	Normal Conditions	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
	Severe Conditions	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter (see page 08-6)	Normal Conditions	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles) or 1 year									
	Severe Conditions	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months									
Replace air cleaner element (see page 11-182)		Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles)									
Inspect valve clearance • Check valve clearance (see page 06-9)	K20A4, K24A1 engine models	Every 40,000 km (24,000 miles)									
	K20A5 engine model	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles)									
Replace fuel filter (see page 11-166)			●		●		●		●		●
Replace spark plugs (see page 04-23).	K20A4, K24A1 engine models	Every 40,000 km (24,000 miles)									
	K20A5 engine model	Every 20,000 km (12,000 miles)									
Inspect and adjust drive belts • Check for cracks, damage, deflection and tension (see page 04-29)			●		●		●		●		●
Inspect idle speed (see page 11-148)	K20A4, K24A1 engine models						●				
	K24A5 engine model			●			●			●	
Replace engine coolant • Use Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2 (see page 10-6)		At 200,000 km (120,000 miles) or 10 years, then replace every 100,000 km (60,000 miles) or 5 years									
Replace manual transmission fluid • Use Genuine Honda MTF (see page 13-4)	Normal Conditions						●				
	Severe Conditions			●			●			●	
Replace automatic transmission fluid • Use Genuine Honda ATF-Z1 (see page 14-131)	Normal Conditions						●				
	Severe Conditions			●			●			●	
Replace rear differential fluid (4WD) • Use genuine Honda DPSF (see page 15-13).					●		●		●		●
Inspect front and rear brakes • Check the brake pad and disc thickness. Check for damage or cracks. • Check the brake linings for cracking, grazing, wear, or contamination. • Check the calipers for damage, leaks, and tightness. (see page 19A-3)		Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months									





Service at the indicated distance or time whichever comes first.	km x 1,000		20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	months		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace brake fluid <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid. We recommend Genuine Honda Brake Fluid.</li><li>• Check that brake fluid level is between upper and lower marks on the reservoir. (see page 19A-9)</li></ul>	Every 3 years											
Check parking brake adjustment <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check the parking brake operation (see page 19A-6)</li></ul>	●	●		●		●		●		●		●
Replace dust and pollen filter (see page 21-25).	Every 30,000 km (18,000 miles) or 12 months											
Rotate tyres, and check tyre inflation and condition at least per month <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The suggested rotation method is shown in the diagram of the Owner's Manual.</li></ul>	Rotate tyres every 10,000 km (6,000 miles)											
<b>Visually inspect the following items:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check for correct installation and position, check for cracks, deterioration, rust, and leaks.</li><li>• Check tightness of screws, nuts, and joints. If necessary, retighten.</li></ul>												
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check rack grease and steering linkage. Check the boot for damage and leaking grease. (see page 17-8)</li></ul>	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months											
Suspension components <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check the bolts for tightness.</li><li>• Check all dust cover for deterioration and damage. (see page 18-3)</li></ul>												
Driveshaft boots <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check the boot and boot band for cracks.</li><li>• Check rack grease. (see page 16-3)</li></ul>												
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS) <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check the master cylinder, proportioning control valve and ABS modulator and leakage. (see page 19A-3)</li></ul>	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
All fluid levels and condition of fluids <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check levels and check for leaks. If necessary, add engine coolant (see page 10-6), MTF (see page 13-4), ATF (see page 14-131), DPSF (4WD) (see page 15-13), brake fluid (see page 19A-9), windshield fluid, and battery fluid.</li></ul>												
Exhaust system <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check the exhaust pipe and muffler for damage, leaks and tightness. (see page 09-9)</li></ul>												
Fuel lines and connections <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check fuel lines for loose connections, cracks and deterioration. Retighten loose connections and replace any damaged parts. (see page 11-156)</li></ul>												



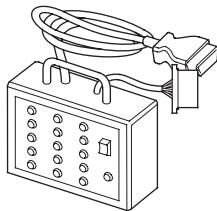
## Engine Electrical



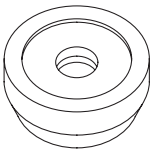
<b>Special Tools</b> .....	<b>04-2</b>
<b>Starting System</b> .....	<b>04-3</b>
Component Location Index .....	04-3
Circuit Diagram .....	04-4
Starter Circuit Troubleshooting .....	04-5
Starter Solenoid Test .....	04-6
Starter Performance Test .....	04-7
Starter Replacement .....	04-9
Starter Overhaul .....	04-10
<b>Ignition System</b> .....	<b>04-18</b>
Component Location Index .....	04-18
Circuit Diagram .....	04-19
Ignition Timing Inspection .....	04-20
Ignition Coil Removal/Installation .....	04-21
Ignition Coil Troubleshooting .....	04-21
Spark Plug Inspection .....	04-23
<b>Charging System</b> .....	<b>04-24</b>
Component Location Index .....	04-24
Circuit Diagram .....	04-25
Charging Circuit Troubleshooting .....	04-26
Drive Belt Inspection .....	04-29
Drive Belt Replacement .....	04-30
Drive Belt Auto-tensioner Inspection .....	04-30
Drive Belt Auto-tensioner Replacement .....	04-31
Alternator Replacement .....	04-32
Alternator Overhaul .....	04-34
<b>Cruise Control</b> .....	<b>04-39</b>
Component Location Index .....	04-39
Circuit Diagram .....	04-40
Symptom Troubleshooting Index .....	04-41
Cruise Control Communication Circuit Troubleshooting .....	04-43
Control Unit Input Test .....	04-44
Main Switch Test/Replacement .....	04-46
Set/Resume/Cancel Switch Test/Replacement .....	04-46
Actuator Test .....	04-47
Actuator/Cable Replacement .....	04-48
Actuator Cable Adjustment .....	04-49
Clutch Pedal Position Switch Test .....	04-49

Special Tools

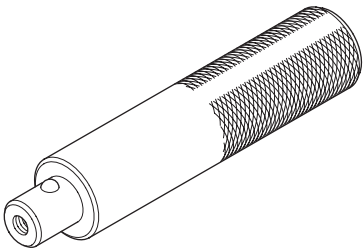
Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07WAJ-0010100	DLC Pin Box	1
2	07746-0010400	Driver Attachment, 52 x 55 mm	1
3	07749-0010000	Handle Driver	1



1



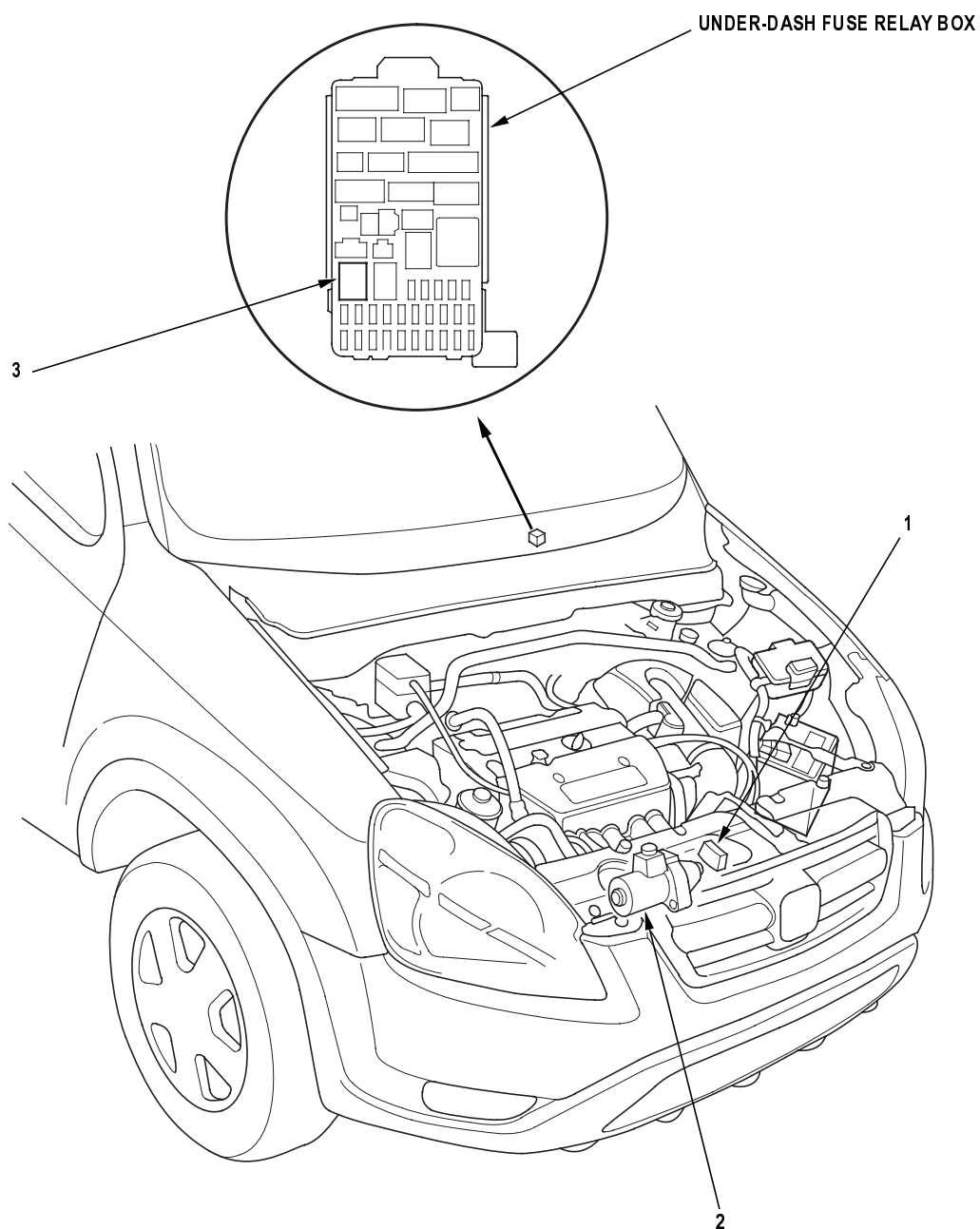
2



3

## Starting System

### Component Location Index

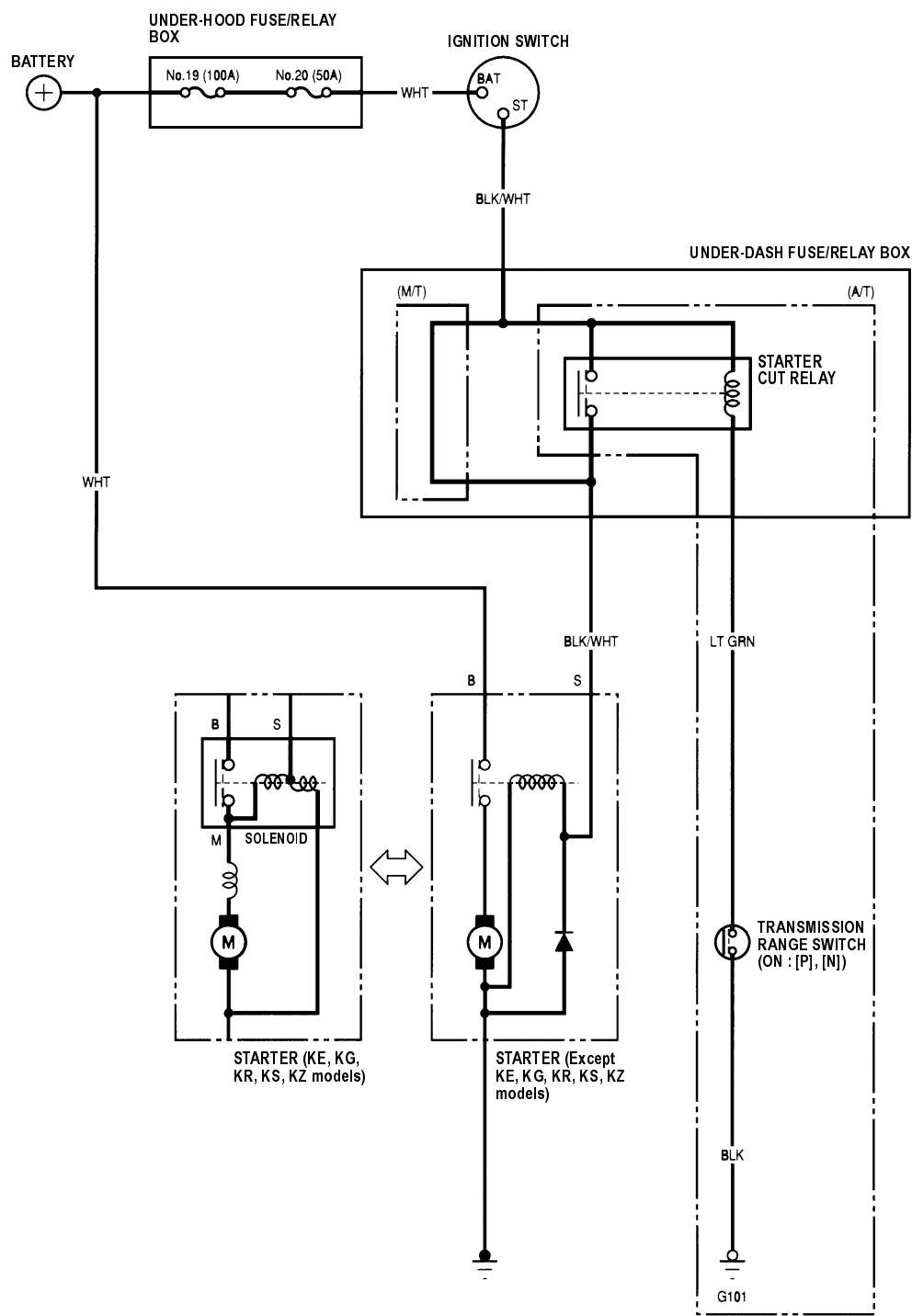


- 1 TRANSMISSION RANGE SWITCH (A/T)
- 2 STARTER
- 3 STARTER CUT RELAY (A/T)

Test, [page 14-168](#); Replacement, [page 14-169](#)

Starter Circuit Troubleshooting, [page 04-5](#); Solenoid Test, [page 04-6](#);  
Performance, [page 04-7](#); Replacement, [page 04-9](#); Overhaul, [page 04-10](#)  
Test, [page 22A-60](#)

Circuit Diagram



## Starter Circuit Troubleshooting

### NOTE:

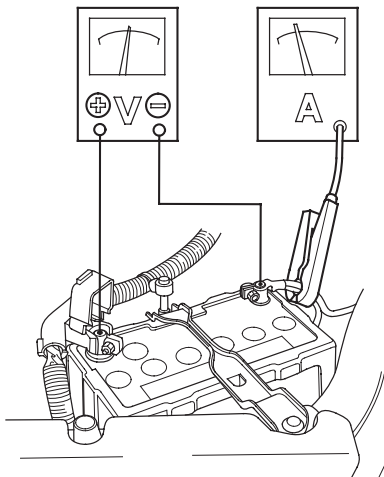
- Air temperature must be between 15° and 38°C (59° and 100°F) during this procedure.
- After this test, or any subsequent repair, reset the Engine Control Module (ECM)/Powertrain Control Module (PCM) to clear any Diagnostic Trouble Codes (DTCs) (see page 11-4).
- The battery must be in good condition and full charged (see page 22A-59).

### Recommended Procedure:

- Use a starter system tester.
- Connect and operate the equipment in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

### Alternate Procedure

- Hook up the following equipment:
  - Ammeter, 0 - 400 A
  - Voltmeter, 0 - 20 V (accurate within 0.1 volt)
  - Tachometer, 0 - 1200 rpm (min<sup>-1</sup>)



- Remove the No. 6 (15A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- With the shift lever in [N] or [P] (A/T), turn the ignition switch to start (III).

*Did the starter crank the engine normally?*

**Yes** The starting system is OK.■

**No** If starter will not crank the engine at all, go to step 4. If it cranks the engine erratically or too slowly, go to step 7. If it won't disengage from the flywheel or torque converter ring gear when you release the key, check for the following until you find the cause.

- Solenoid plunger and switch malfunction
- Dirty drive gear or damaged overrunning clutch

- Check the battery condition. Check electrical connections at the battery, the negative battery cable to body, the engine ground cables and the starter for looseness and corrosion. Then try starting the engine again.

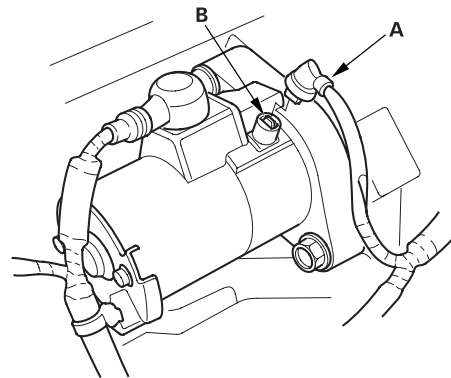
*Did the starter crank the engine?*

**Yes** Repairing the loose connection repaired the problem. The starting system is OK.■

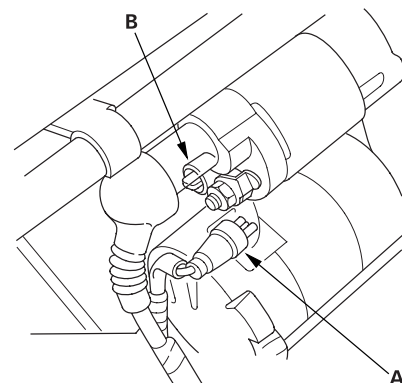
**No** Go to step 5.

- Make sure the transmission is in neutral, then disconnect the BLK/WHT wire (A) from the starter solenoid (B). Connect a jumper wire from the battery positive terminal to the solenoid terminal.

Except KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models:



KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models:



*Did the starter crank the engine?*

**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Remove the starter, and repair or replace as necessary.

(cont'd)

## Starter Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### Alternate Procedure (cont'd)

6. Check the following items in the order listed until you find the open circuit.
  - Check the BLK/WHT wire and connectors between the under-dash fuse/relay box and the ignition switch, and between the under-dash fuse/relay box and the starter.
  - Check the ignition switch (see page 11-3).
  - Check the transmission range switch and connector (A/T).
  - Check the starter cut relay (A/T).

7. Check the engine speed while cranking the engine.

*Is the engine speed above 100 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ )?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Replace the starter, or remove and disassemble it, and check for the following until you find the cause.

- Excessively worn starter brushes
- Open circuit in commutator brushes
- Dirty or damaged helical splines or drive gear
- Faulty drive gear clutch

8. Check the cranking voltage and current draw.

*Is cranking voltage greater than or equal to 8.5 V (Except KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models) /8.7 V (KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models) and current draw less than or equal to 350 A (K20A4 (Except KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models), K20A5 engines) /380 A (K24A1 engine) /230 A (K20A4 (KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models) engine) ?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Replace the starter, or remove and disassemble it, and check for the following until you find the cause.

- Open circuit in starter armature commutator segments
- Starter armature dragging
- Shorted armature winding
- Excessive drag in engine

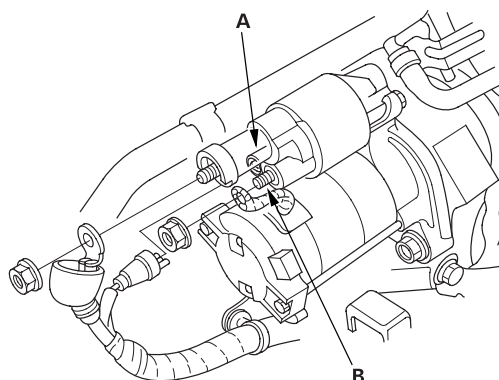
9. Remove the starter, and inspect its drive gear and the flywheel or torque converter ring gear for damage. Replace any damaged parts.■

## Starter Solenoid Test

### KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models

1. Check the hold-in coil for continuity between the S terminal (A) and the armature housing (ground). There should be continuity.

- If there is continuity, go to step 2.
- If there is no continuity, replace the solenoid.



2. Check the pull-in coil for continuity between the S terminal (A) and M terminal (B). There should be continuity.

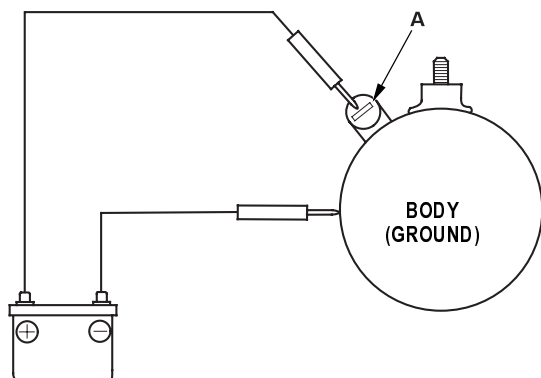
- If there is continuity, the solenoid is OK.
- If there is no continuity, replace the solenoid.



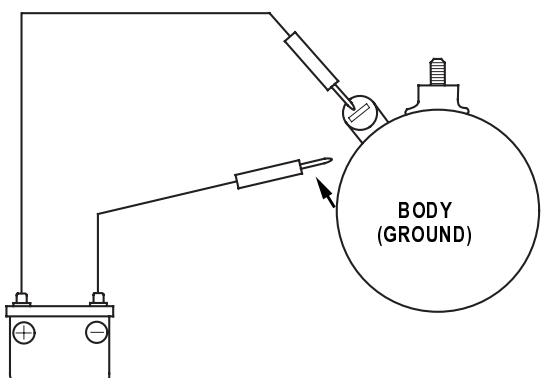
## Starter Performance Test

**Except KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models**

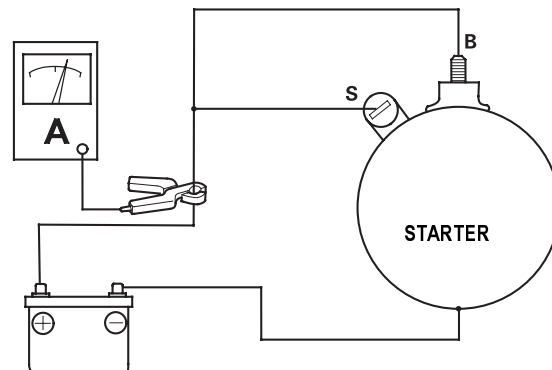
1. Disconnect the wire from the S terminal (A).
2. Make the connections as described below using as heavy a wire as possible (preferably equivalent to the wire used for the vehicle). To avoid damaging the starter, never leave the battery connected for more than 10 seconds.
3. Connect the battery as shown. If the starter pinion moves out, it is working properly.



4. Disconnect the battery from the body. If the pinion retracts immediately, it is working properly.



5. Clamp the starter firmly in a vise.
6. Connect the starter to the battery as described in the diagram below, and confirm that the motor starts and keeps rotating.



7. If the electric current and motor speed meet the specifications when the battery voltage is at 11.5 V, the starter is working properly.

**Specifications:**

**Electric current:** 80 A or less

**Motor speed:**

**K20A4, K20A5 engines:** 2,600 rpm (min<sup>-1</sup>) or more

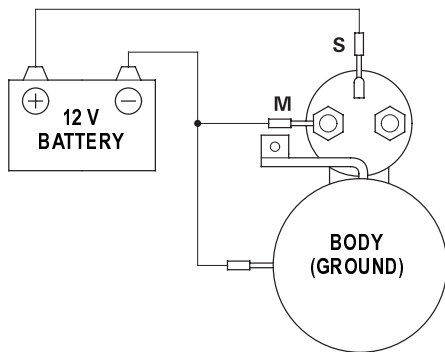
**K24A1 engine:** 2,300 rpm (min<sup>-1</sup>) or more

(cont'd)

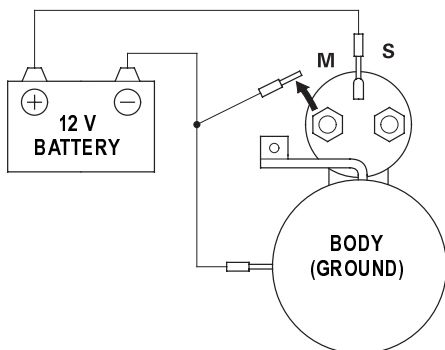
### Starter Performance Test (cont'd)

#### KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models

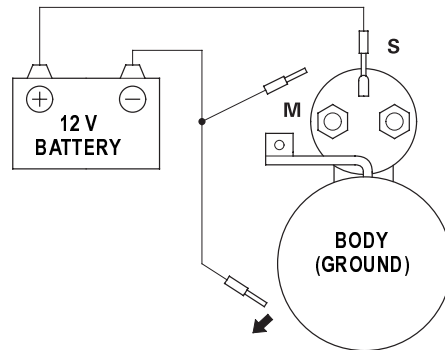
1. Disconnect the wires from the S terminal and the M terminal.
2. Make the connections as described below using as heavy a wire as possible (preferably equivalent to the wire used for the vehicle). To avoid damaging the starter, never leave the battery connected for more than 10 seconds.
3. Connect the battery as shown. If the starter pinion moves out, it is working properly.



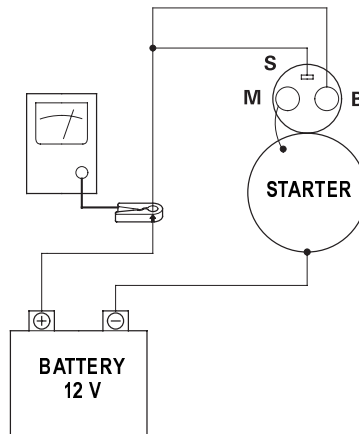
4. Disconnect the battery from the M terminal. If the pinion does not retract, the hold-in coil is working properly.



5. Disconnect the battery from the body. If the pinion retracts immediately, it is working properly.



6. Clamp the starter firmly in a vise.
7. Connect the starter to the battery as described in the diagram below, and confirm that the motor starts and keeps rotating.



8. If the electric current and motor speed meet the specifications when the battery voltage is at 11.5 V, the starter is working properly.

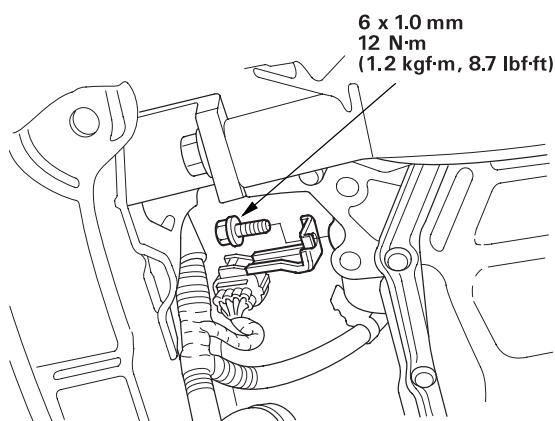
#### Specifications:

**Electric current:** 90 A or less

**Motor speed:** 3,000 rpm (min<sup>-1</sup>) or more

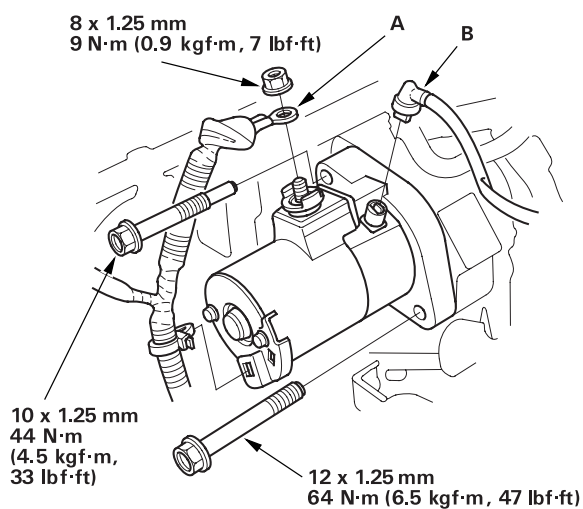
## Starter Replacement

1. Disconnect the battery negative cable, then disconnect the positive cable.
2. Disconnect the knock sensor connector.
3. Disconnect the bolt securing the harness bracket.

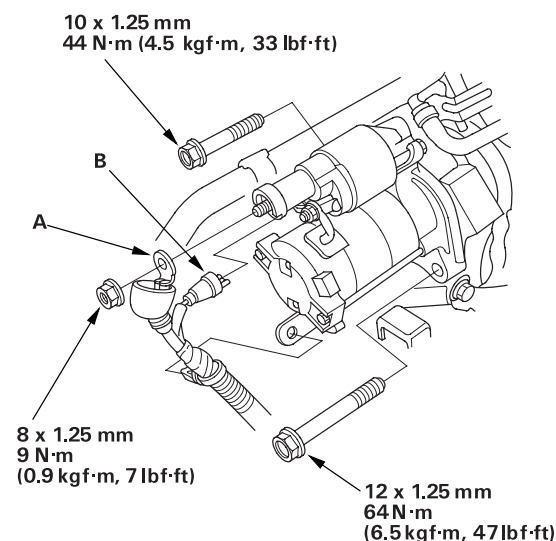


4. Disconnect the starter cable (A) from the B terminal on the solenoid, then disconnect the BLK/WHT wire (B) from the S terminal.

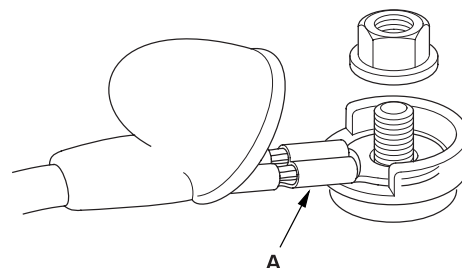
Except KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models:



KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models:



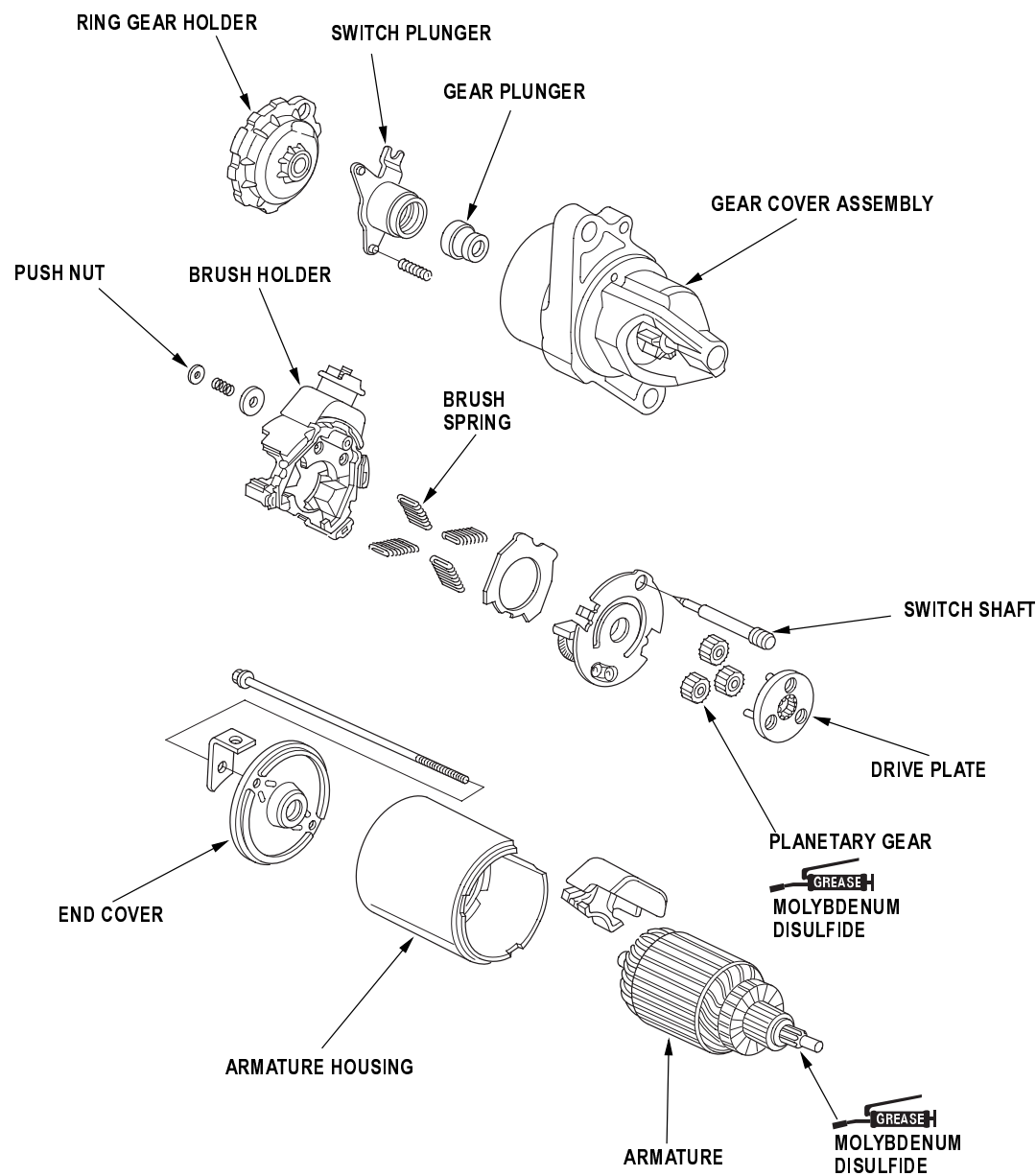
5. Remove the two bolts holding the starter, then remove the starter.
6. Install the starter in the reverse order of removal. Make sure the crimped side of the ring terminal (A) is facing out.



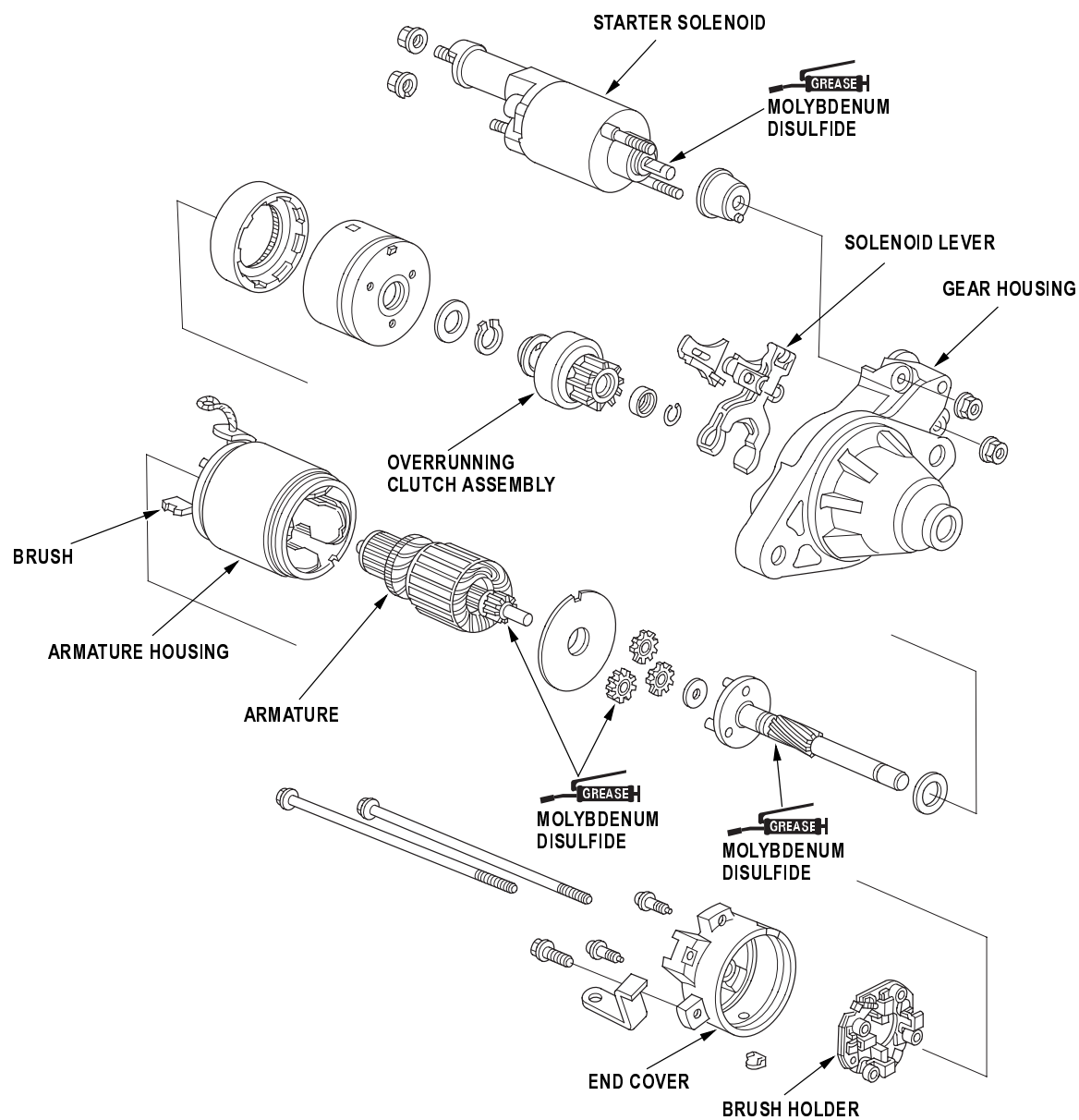
7. Connect the battery positive cable and negative cable to the battery.
8. Start the engine to make sure the starter operates properly.

Starter Overhaul

Disassembly/Reassembly-Except KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models



## Disassembly/Reassembly-KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models

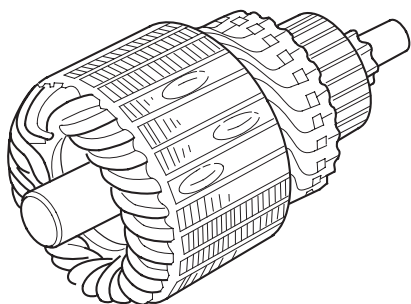


(cont'd)

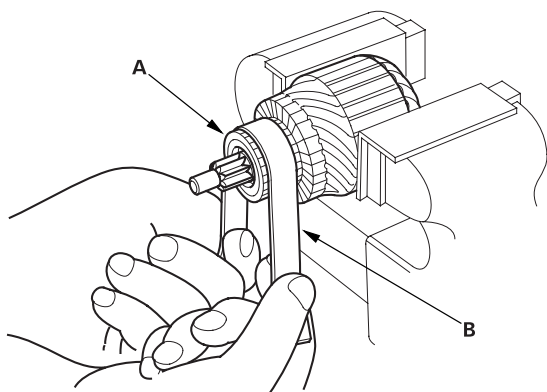
## Starter Overhaul (cont'd)

### Armature Inspection and Test

1. Remove the starter ([see page 04-9](#)).
2. Disassemble the starter as shown at the beginning of this procedure.
3. Inspect the armature for wear or damage from contact with the permanent magnet. If there is wear or damage, replace the armature.



4. Check the commutator (A) surface. If the surface is dirty or burnt, resurface with emery cloth or a lathe within the following specifications, or recondition with #500 or #600 sandpaper (B).



5. Check the commutator diameter. If the diameter is below the service limit, replace the armature.

#### Commutator Diameter:

Except KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models:

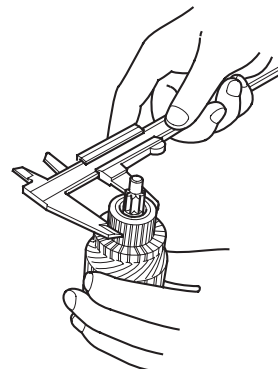
Standard (New): 28.0 - 28.1 mm  
(1.102 - 1.106 in.)

Service Limit: 27.5 mm (1.083 in.)

KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models:

Standard (New): 28.0 mm (1.10 in.)

Service Limit: 27.0 mm (1.06 in.)

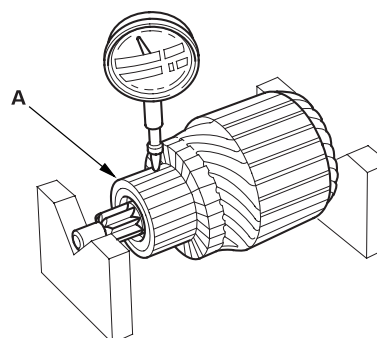


6. Measure the commutator (A) runout.
  - If the commutator runout is within the service limit, check the commutator for carbon dust or brass chips between the segments.
  - If the commutator runout is not within the service limit, replace the armature.

#### Commutator Runout

Standard (New): 0.02 mm (0.001 in.) max

Service Limit: 0.05 mm (0.002 in.)



7. Check the mica depth (A). If the mica is too high (B), undercut the mica with a hacksaw blade to the proper depth. Cut away all the mica (C) between the commutator segments. The undercut should not be too shallow, too narrow, or V-shaped (D).

## Commutator Mica Depth:

Except KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models:

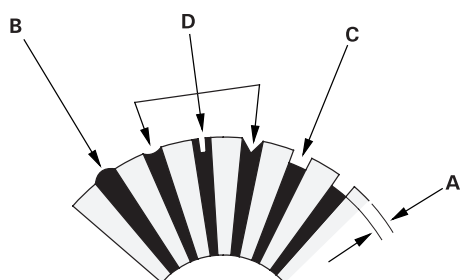
Standard (New): 0.40 - 0.50 mm (0.016 - 0.020 in.)

Service Limit: 0.15 mm (0.006 in.)

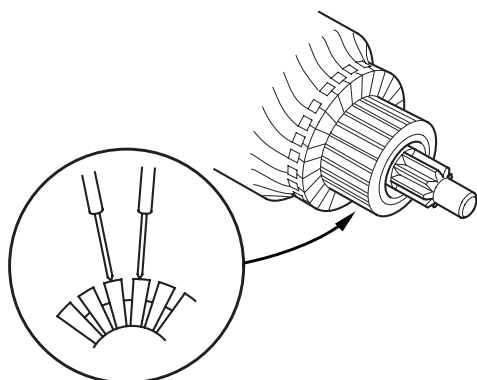
KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models:

Standard (New): 0.50 - 0.80 mm (0.020 - 0.031 in.)

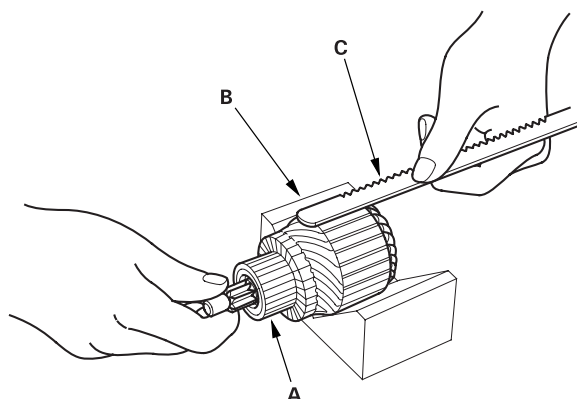
Service Limit: 0.20 mm (0.008 in.)



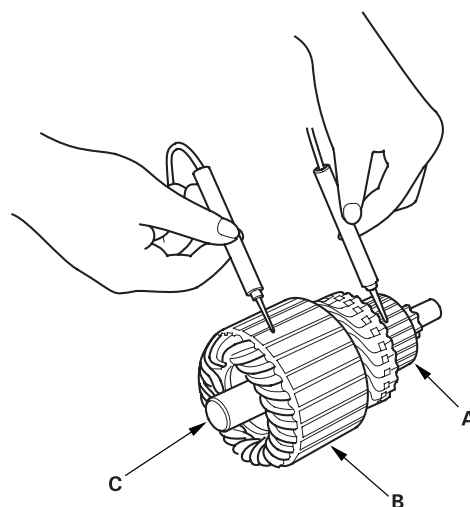
8. Check for continuity between the segments of the commutator. If an open circuit exists between any segments, replace the armature.



9. Place the armature (A) on an armature tester (B). Hold a hacksaw blade (C) on the armature core. If the blade is attracted to the core or vibrates while the core is turned, the armature is shorted. Replace the armature.



10. Check with an ohmmeter that no continuity exists between the commutator (A) and armature coil core (B), and between the commutator and armature shaft (C). If continuity exists, replace the armature.



(cont'd)

## Starter Overhaul (cont'd)

### Starter Brush Inspection

11. Measure the brush length. If it is not within the service limit, replace the brush holder assembly.

#### Brush Length

Except KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models:

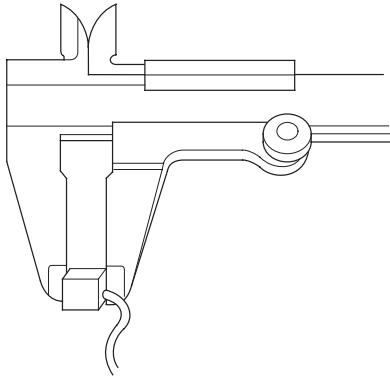
Standard (New): 11.1 - 11.5 mm (0.44 - 0.45 in.)

Service Limit: 4.3 mm (0.17 in.)

KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models:

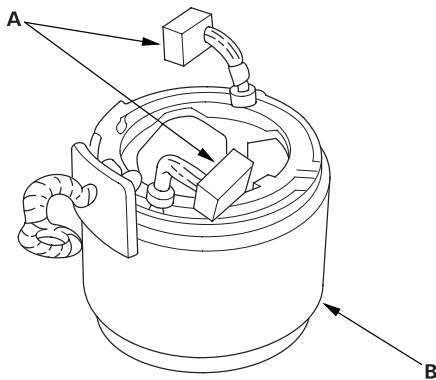
Standard (New): 14.0 - 14.5 mm (0.55 - 0.57 in.)

Service Limit: 9.0 mm (0.35 in.)



### Starter Field Winding Test (KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models)

12. Check for continuity between the brushes (A). If there is no continuity, replace the armature housing (B).

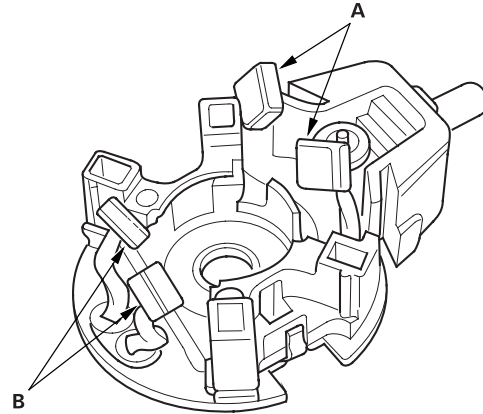


13. Check for continuity between each brush (A) and the armature housing (B). If there is continuity, replace the armature housing.

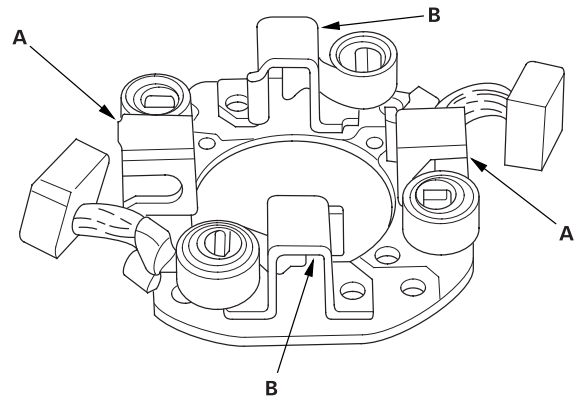
### Starter Brush Holder Test

14. Check that there is no continuity between the (+) brush holder (A) and (-) brush holder (B). If there is continuity, replace the brush holder assembly.

Except KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models:



KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models:

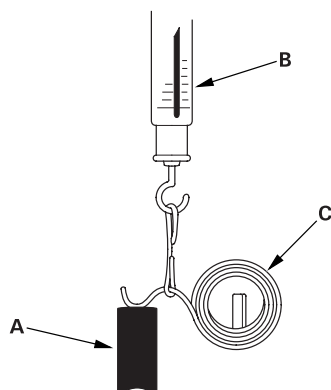




## Brush Spring Inspection (KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models)

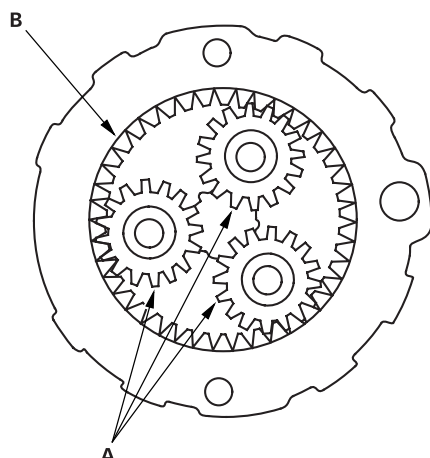
15. Insert the brush (A) into the brush holder, and bring the brush into contact with the commutator, then attach a spring scale (B) to the spring (C). Measure the spring tension at the moment the spring lifts off the brush. If the spring tension is not within specification, replace the spring.

**Spring Tension:** 13.7 - 17.7 N (1.40 - 1.80 kgf, 3.09 - 3.97 lbf)



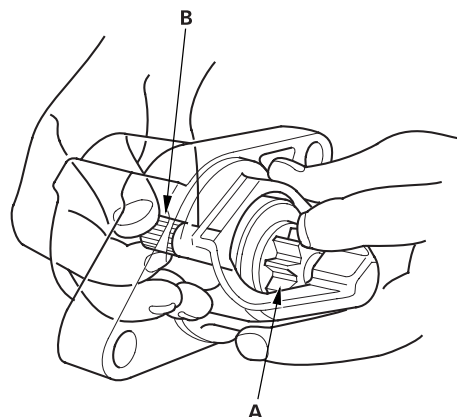
## Planetary Gear Inspection

16. Check the planetary gears (A) and ring gear (B). Replace them if they are worn or damaged.



## Overrunning Clutch Inspection (Except KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models)

17. Holding the drive gear (A), turn the gear shaft (B) clockwise. Check that the drive gear comes out to the other end. If the drive gear does not move smoothly, replace the gear cover assembly.



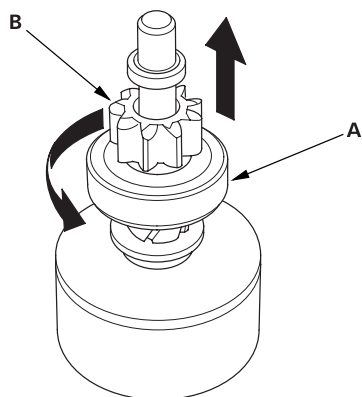
18. Holding the drive gear, turn the gear shaft counterclockwise. The gear shaft should rotate freely. If the gear shaft does not rotate smoothly, replace the gear cover assembly.
19. If the starter drive gear is worn or damaged, replace the overrunning clutch assembly; the gear is not available separately. Check the condition of the flywheel or torque converter ring gear. Replace it if the starter drive gear teeth are damaged.

(cont'd)

## Starter Overhaul (cont'd)

### Overrunning Clutch Inspection (KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models)

20. Slide the overrunning clutch along the shaft. Replace it, if it does not slide smoothly.
21. Rotate the overrunning clutch (A) both ways. Does it lock in one direction and rotate smoothly in reverse? If it does not lock in either direction or it locks in both directions, replace it.

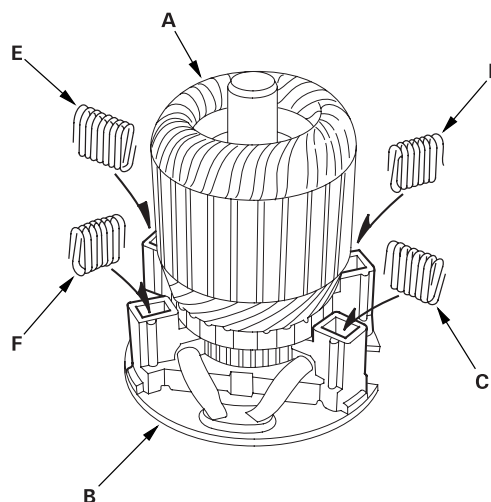


22. If the starter drive gear (B) is worn or damaged, replace the overrunning clutch assembly; the gear is not available separately. Check the condition of the flywheel ring gear. Replace it if the starter drive gear teeth are damaged.

### Starter Reassembly (Except KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models)

23. Install the brush into the brush holder, and set the armature (A) in the brush holder (B).

NOTE: To seat the new brushes, slip a strip of #500 or #600 sandpaper, with the grit side up, between the commutator and each brush, and smoothly rotate the armature. The contact surface of the brushes will be sanded to the same contour as the commutator.



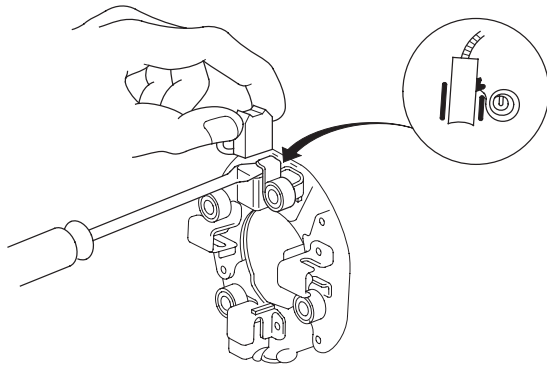
24. Squeezing a spring (C), insert it in the hole on the brush holder, and push it until it bottoms. Repeat this for the other three springs (D, E and F).
25. Install the armature and brush holder assembly into the housing.

NOTE: Make sure the armature stays in the holder.

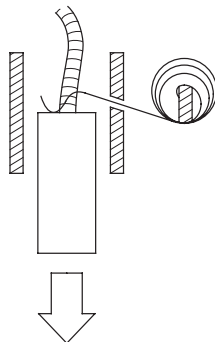
### Starter Reassembly (KE, KG, KR, KS, KZ models)

26. Pry back each brush spring with a screwdriver, then position the brush about halfway out of its holder, and release the spring to hold it there.

NOTE: To seat the new brushes, slip a strip of #500 or #600 sandpaper, with the grit side up, between the commutator and each brush, and smoothly rotate the armature. The contact surface of the brushes will be sanded to the same contour as the commutator.



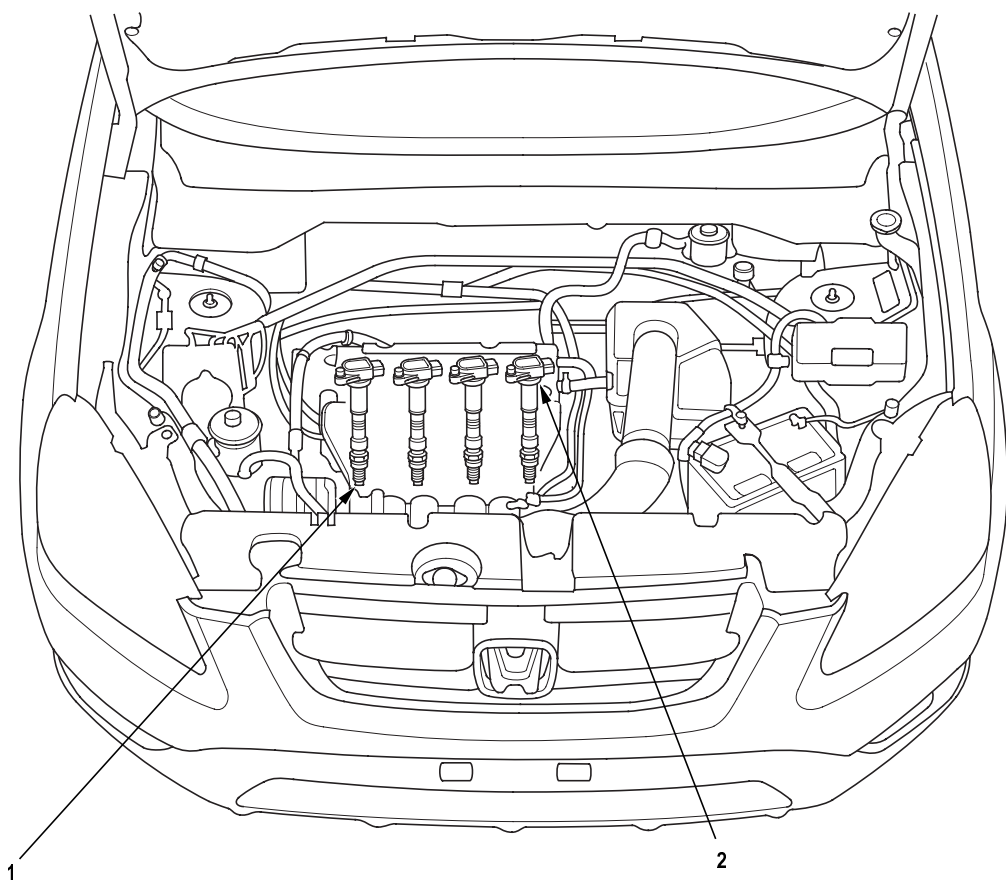
27. Install the armature in the housing, and install the brush holder. Next, pry back each brush spring again, and push the brush down until it seats against the commutator, then release the spring against the end of the brush.



28. Install the starter end cover to retain the brush holder.

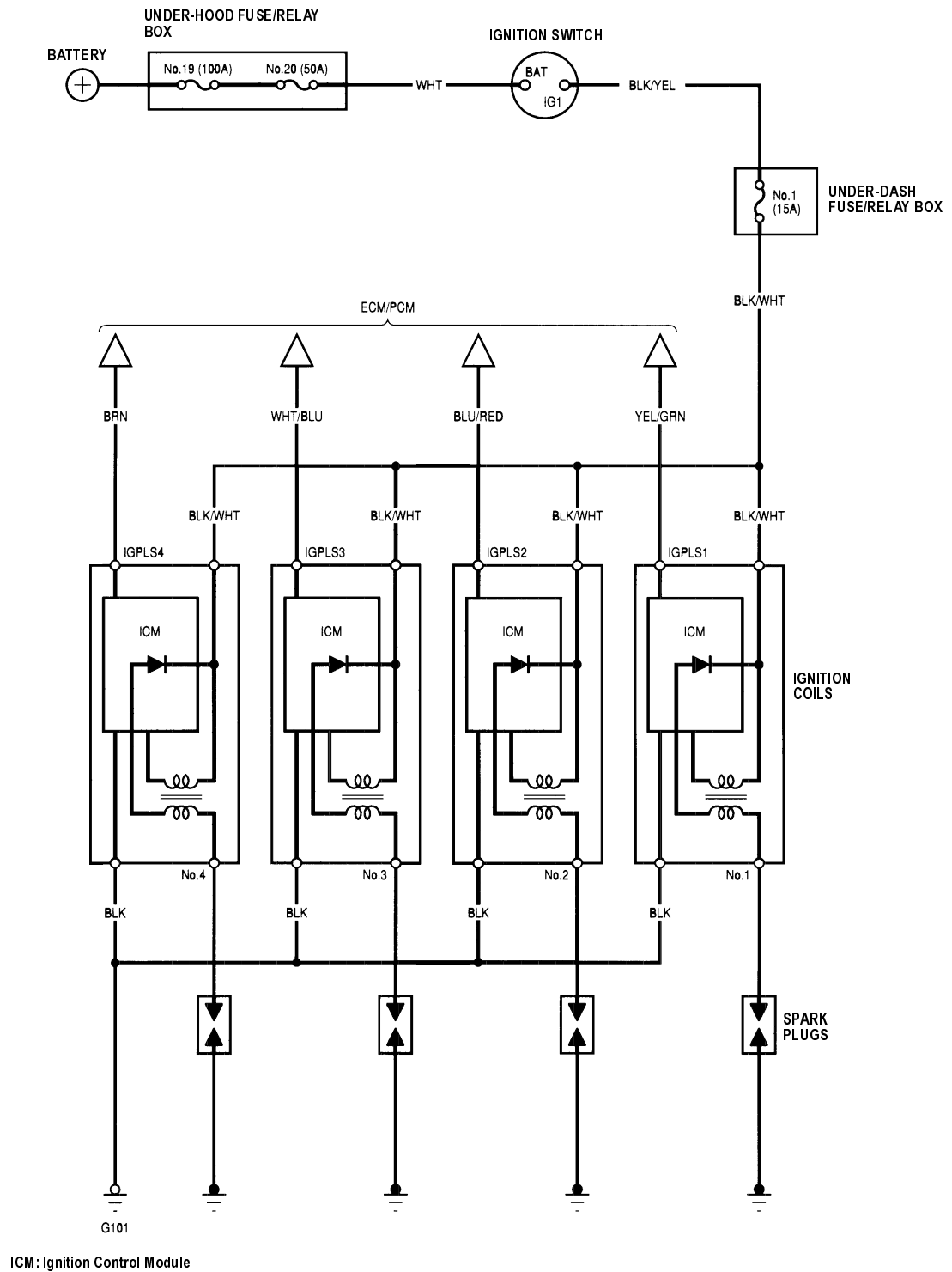
Ignition System

Component Location Index



- |   |               |   |
|---|---------------|---|
| 1 | SPARK PLUG    | Inspection, <a href="#">page 04-23</a>  |
| 2 | IGNITION COIL | Ignition Timing Inspection, <a href="#">page 04-20</a><br>Removal/Installation, <a href="#">page 04-21</a><br>Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 04-21</a> |

## Circuit Diagram

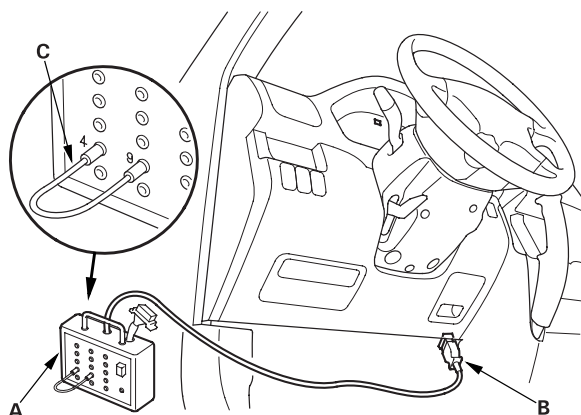


## Ignition Timing Inspection

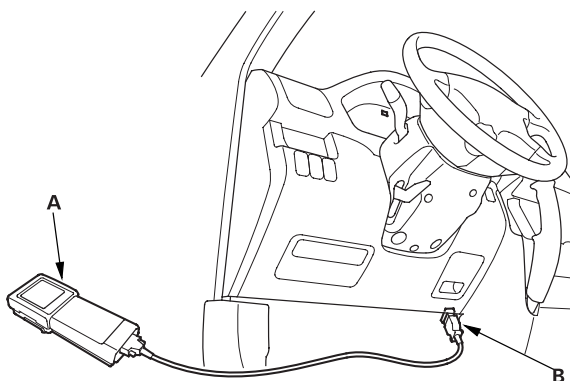
### Special Tools Required

DLC pin box 07WAJ-0010100

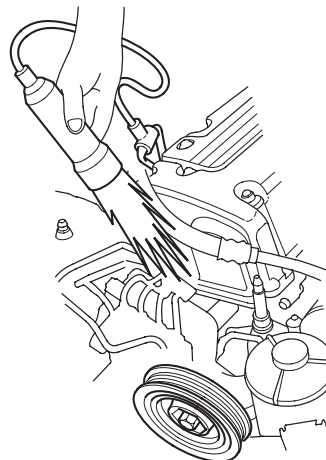
1. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or Neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.
2. Check the idle speed ([see page 11-148](#)).
3. Short the SCS terminal to ground by using the DLC pin box: Connect the DLC pin box (A) to the Data Link Connector (DLC) (16P) (B), then connect the No. 4 and No. 9 terminals on the DLC pin box with a jumper wire (C), and push the switch.



4. Short the SCS terminal to ground by using the Honda PGM Tester: Connect the Honda PGM tester (A) to the data link connector (16P) (B).



5. Connect the timing light to the service loop.

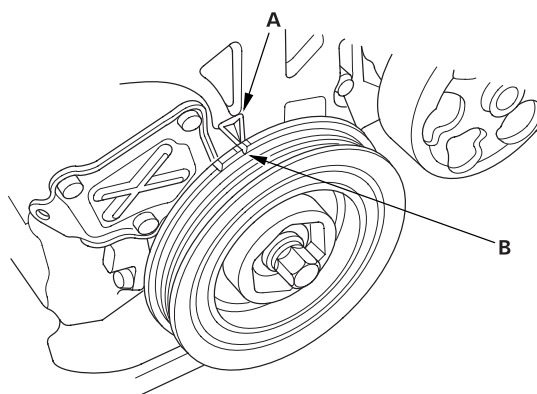


6. Point the light toward the pointers (A) on the chain case. Check the ignition timing under no load conditions: headlights, blower fan, rear window defogger, and air conditioner are not operating.

### Ignition Timing:

M/T:  $8^\circ \pm 2^\circ$  BTDC (RED mark (B)) during idling in neutral

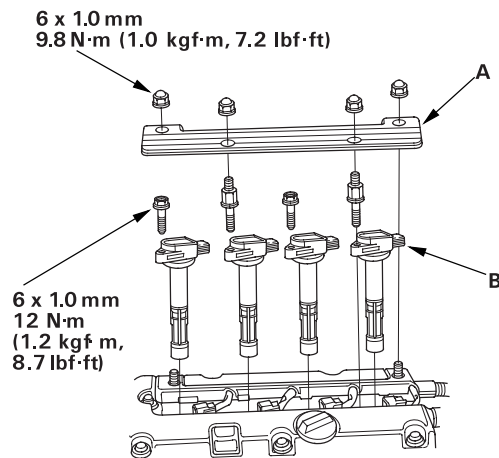
A/T:  $8^\circ \pm 2^\circ$  BTDC (RED mark (B)) during idling in [P] or [N]



7. If the ignition timing differs from the specification, replace the Engine Control Module (ECM)/ Powertrain Control Module (PCM) ([see page 11-4](#)).
8. Disconnect the special tool/Honda PGM Tester and the timing light.

## Ignition Coil Removal/Installation

1. Remove the ignition coil cover (A), then remove the ignition coils (B).

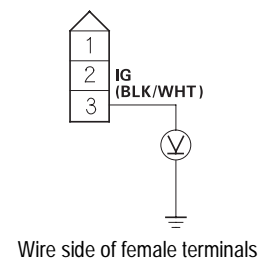


2. Install the ignition coils in the reverse order of removal.

## Ignition Coil Troubleshooting

1. Remove the four ignition coils ([see page 04-21](#)).
2. Remove the spark plugs from the cylinder head, and inspect the spark plug ([see page 04-23](#)).  
*Is the spark plug OK?*  
**Yes** Go to step 3.  
**No** Replace the spark plug.■
3. Disconnect the four injector connectors ([see page 11-117](#)).
4. Install the spark plugs on the ignition coils.
5. Connect the ignition coil connector, and connect the spark plug on the ground.
6. With the shift lever in [N] or [P] (A/T), turn the ignition switch to start (III), and check the spark.  
*Does the plug spark?*  
**Yes** Ignition coil is OK.■  
**No** Go to step 7.
7. Substitute a known-good ignition coil, and recheck the spark.  
*Does the plug spark?*  
**Yes** Replace the original ignition coil.■  
**No** Go to step 8.
8. Disconnect the ignition coil 3P connector.
9. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
10. Measure voltage between the ignition coil 3P connector terminal No. 3 and body ground.

### IGNITION COIL 3P CONNECTOR



*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 11.

**No** Repair open in the wire between ignition coil and No. 1 (15A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.■

(cont'd)

11. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
12. Check for continuity between the ignition coil 3P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.

*Is there continuity?*

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ignition coil and G101.■

**14. Disconnect Engine Control Module (ECM)/ Powertrain Control Module (PCM) connector A (31P).**

- A27 (No. 4 ignition coil)
- A28 (No. 3 ignition coil)
- A29 (No. 2 ignition coil)
- A30 (No. 1 ignition coil)

Diagram of the 32-pin connector for the 1000 Series. The connector is a 4x8 grid. Pins 1-7 are connected to IGPLS4 (BRN). Pins 8-9 are connected to IGPLS1 (YEL/GRN). Pins 10-16 are connected to IGPLS3 (WHT/BLU). Pins 17-21 are connected to IGPLS2 (BLU/RED). Pins 22-24 are not connected. Pins 25-26 are connected to IGPLS3 (WHT/BLU). Pins 27-30 are connected to IGPLS2 (BLU/RED). Pins 31-32 are not connected.

*Is there continuity?*

**No** Go to step 16.

- A27 (No. 4 ignition coil)
- A28 (No. 3 ignition coil)
- A29 (No. 2 ignition coil)
- A30 (No. 1 ignition coil)

Diagram illustrating the IGPLS connector pinout. The connector has 31 pins arranged in a 3x9 grid. The pins are numbered 1 through 31. The connections are as follows:

- IGPLS4 (BRN):** Pins 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7.
- IGPLS1 (YEL/GRN):** Pins 8, 9.
- IGPLS3 (WHT/BLU):** Pins 10, 11, 12, 15, 16, 18, 19, 22, 23, 24, 27, 28, 30.
- IGPLS2 (BLU/RED):** Pins 13, 14, 17, 20, 21, 25, 26, 29, 31.

*Is there continuity?*

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM and the ignition coil.■



## Spark Plug Inspection

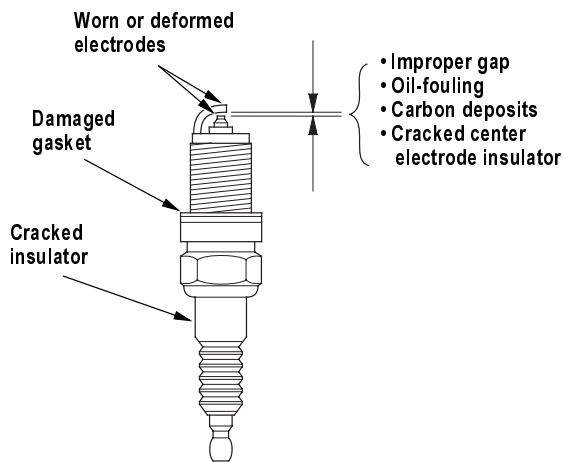
### 1. Inspect the electrodes and ceramic insulator.

Burned or worn electrodes may be caused by:

- Advanced ignition timing
- Loose spark plug
- Plug heat range too hot
- Insufficient cooling

Fouled plug may be caused by:

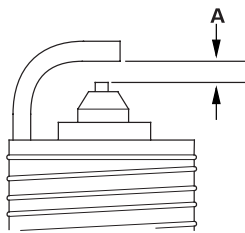
- Retarded ignition timing
- Oil in combustion chamber
- Incorrect spark plug gap
- Plug heat range too cold
- Excessive idling/low speed running
- Clogged air cleaner element
- Deteriorated ignition coils



### 2. Check the electrode gap (A). If the gap is over the standard, adjust the gap with suitable gapping tool.

**Electrode Gap:**

**Standard (New):** 1.0 - 1.1 mm  
(0.039 - 0.043 in.)

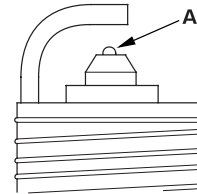


### 3. Replace the plug at the specified interval, or if the center electrode is rounded (A). Use only the spark plugs listed below.

**Spark Plugs:**

**ZFR6K-11 (NGK)**

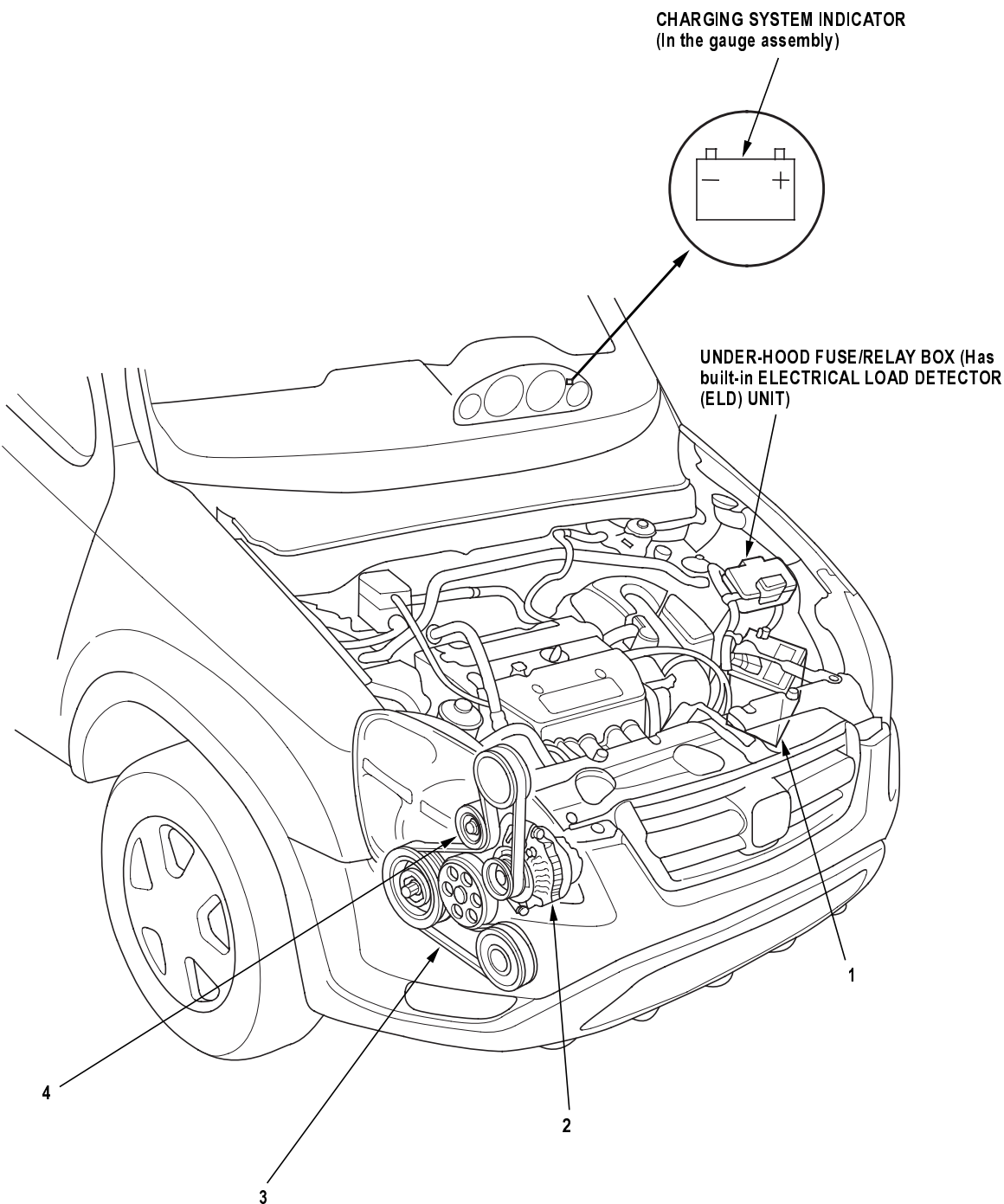
**KJ20DR-M11 (DENSO)**



### 4. Apply a small quantity of anti-seize compound to the plug threads, and screw the plugs into the cylinder head finger-tight. Then torque them to 18 N·m (1.8 kgf·m, 13 lbf·ft).

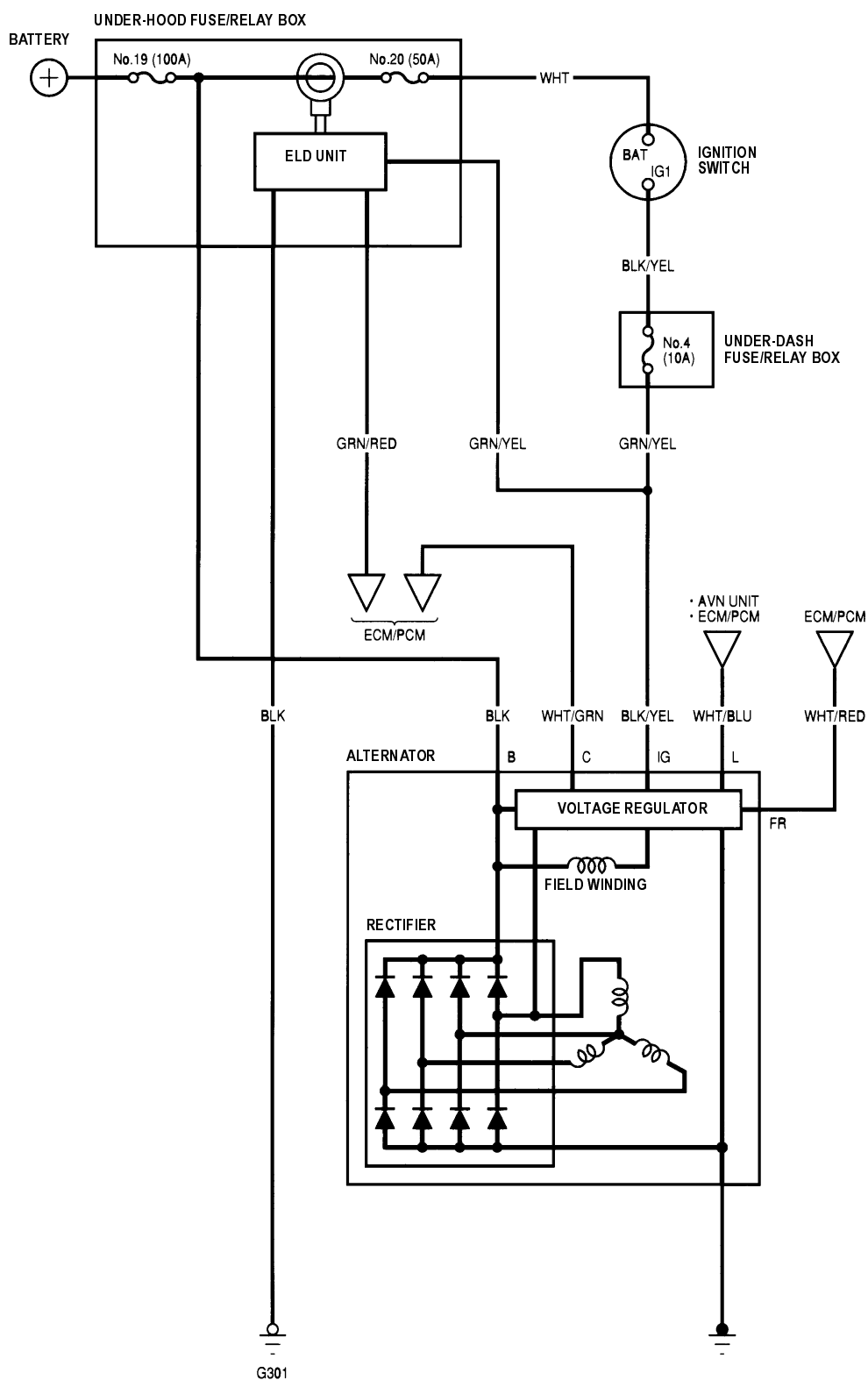
Charging System

Component Location Index



- |   |                |  |
|---|----------------|--|
| 1 | BATTERY        | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-59</a>  |
| 2 | ALTERNATOR     | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 04-26</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 04-32</a> ; Overhaul, <a href="#">page 04-34</a> |
| 3 | DRIVE BELT     | Inspection, <a href="#">page 04-29</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 04-30</a>   |
| 4 | AUTO-TENSIONER | Inspection, <a href="#">page 04-30</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 04-31</a>   |

## Circuit Diagram



## Charging Circuit Troubleshooting

If the charging system indicator does not come on or does not go off, or the battery is dead or low, test the following items in the order listed below:

Battery ([see page 22A-59](#))

Charging system indicator

Alternator and regulator circuit

Alternator control system

### Charging System Indicator Test

1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

*Does the charging system indicator come on?*

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Go to step 3.

2. Start the engine.

*Does the charging system indicator go off?*

**Yes** Charging system indicator circuit is OK.■

**No** Go to step 3.

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

4. Troubleshoot the multiplex control system ([see page 22A-231](#)).

*Is the multiplex control system OK?*

**Yes** Without navigation system. Go to step 7.

**Yes** With navigation system. Go to step 5.

**No** Check the multiplex control system as indicated by the Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) (see step 8 on [page 22A-232](#)).■

5. Disconnect the 12P connector from the AVN unit.

6. Start the engine.

*Does the charging system indicator go off?*

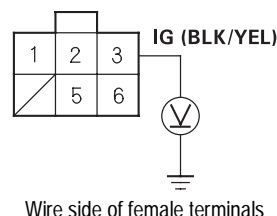
**Yes** Check that the terminals are firmly seated at the connectors. If OK, substitute a known-good AVN unit and recheck.■

**No** Go to step 7.

7. Disconnect the engine wire harness 6P connector from the starter sub-harness 6P connector.

8. Measure the voltage at the No. 3 terminal of the engine wire harness 6P connector with the ignition switch ON (II).

ENGINE WIRE HARNESS 6P CONNECTOR



*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

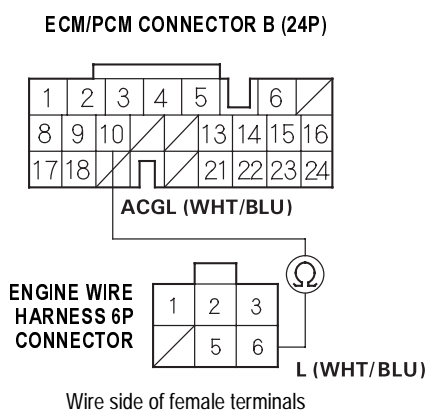
**No** Check for a blown No.4 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box. If the fuse is OK, repair open in the wire between the alternator and the under-dash fuse/relay box.■

9. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

10. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

11. Disconnect Engine Control Module (ECM)/ Powertrain Control Module (PCM) connector B (24P).

12. Check continuity between the ECM/PCM connector terminal B10 and engine wire harness 6P connector terminal No. 6.

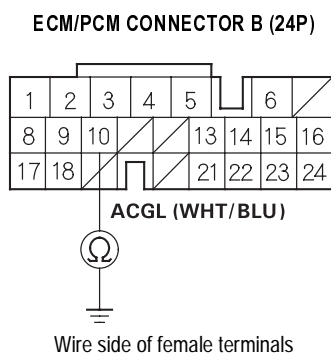


Is there continuity?

**Yes** Go to step 13.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the alternator and the ECM/PCM.■

13. Check continuity between the ECM/PCM connector terminal B10 and body ground.



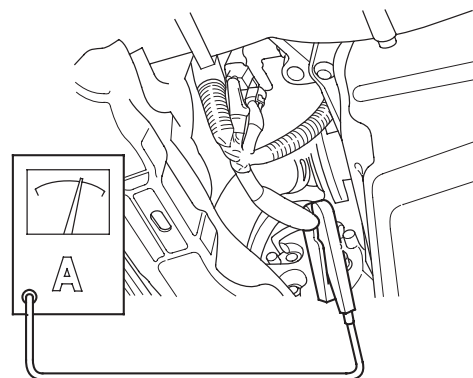
Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the alternator and the ECM/PCM.■

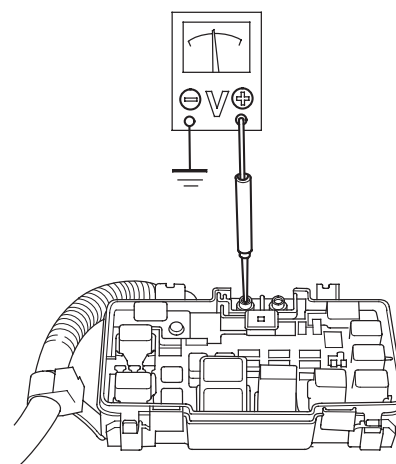
**No** Reconnect the negative cable to the battery, and go to alternator and regulator test.

## Alternator and Regulator Circuit Test

1. Be sure the battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition (see page 22A-59).
2. Raise the hoist to full height.
3. Hook up the ammeter, 0 - 400 A, to the starter sub-harness.



4. Lower the hoist.
5. Hook up the voltmeter, 0 - 20 V (accurate within 0.1 V), to T101.



(cont'd)

Charging Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

Alternator and Regulator Circuit Test (cont'd)

6.

Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm (min<sup>-1</sup>) with no load (in Park or Neutral) until the radiator fan comes on then let it idle.
7.

Raise the engine speed to 2,000 rpm (min<sup>-1</sup>) and hold it there.
8.

Turn the headlights (high beam) on, and measure voltage at the under-hood fuse/relay box terminal.  
*Is the voltage between 13.9 and 15.1 V?*  
**Yes** Go to step 9.  
**No** Repair or replace the alternator (see page 04-34).■
9.

Read the amperage at 13.5 V.  
NOTE: Adjust the voltage by turning the blower motor, rear window defogger, brake lights, etc. ON.  
*Is the amperage 60A or more?*  
**Yes** Alternator/regulator operation is OK.■  
**No** Repair or replace the alternator (see page 04-34).■

Alternator Control System Test

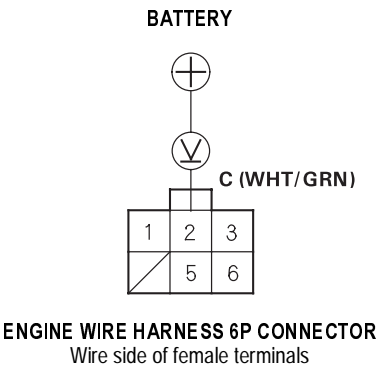
1.

Check for proper operation of the Electrical Load Detector (ELD) by checking the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) (see page 11-3).
2.

Disconnect the engine wire harness 6P connector from the starter sub-harness 6P connector.
3.

Start the engine, and turn the headlights (high beam) ON.
4.

Measure voltage between the engine wire harness 6P connector terminal No. 2 and the positive terminal of the battery.



- Is there 1 V or less?*
- Yes** Go to step 9.
- No** Go to step 5.
5.

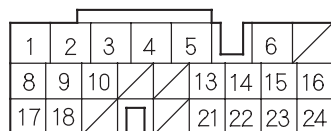
Turn the headlights and ignition switch OFF.
6.

Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
7.

Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).

8. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal B18 and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR B (24P)



ACGC (WHT/GRN)



Wire side of female terminals

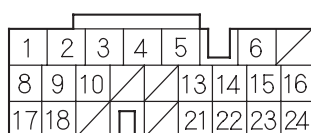
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the alternator and the ECM/PCM.■

**No** Check that the terminals are firmly seated at the connector. If OK, substitute a known-good ECM/PCM, and recheck (see page 11-5). If the prescribed voltage is now available, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

9. Turn the headlights and ignition switch OFF.
10. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
11. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).
12. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal B18 and engine wire harness 6P connector terminal No. 2.

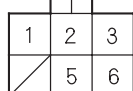
ECM/PCM CONNECTOR B (24P)



ACGC (WHT/GRN)



C (WHT/GRN)



ENGINE WIRE HARNESS 6P CONNECTOR

Wire side of female terminals

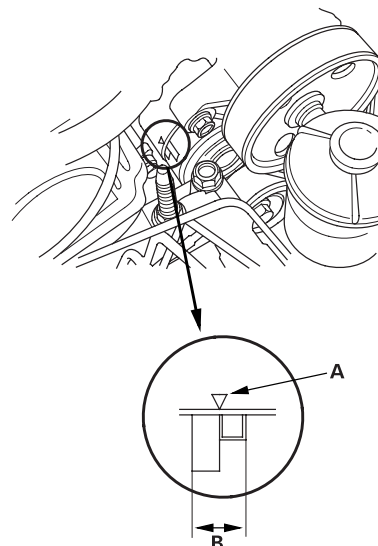
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair or replace the alternator (see page 04-34).■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the alternator and the ECM/PCM.■

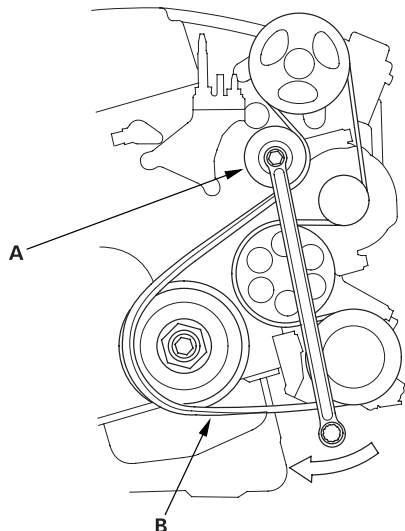
## Drive Belt Inspection

Check that the auto-tensioner indicator (A) is within the standard range (B) as shown. If it is out of the standard range, replace the drive belt (see page 04-30).



## Drive Belt Replacement

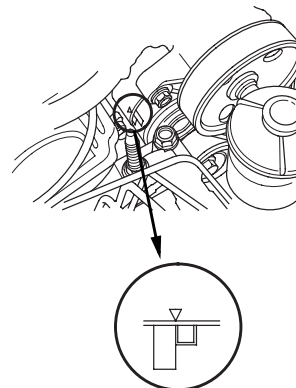
1. Remove the splash shield (see step 21 on [page 05-6](#)).
2. Move the auto-tensioner (A) to relieve tension from the drive belt (B), and remove the drive belt.



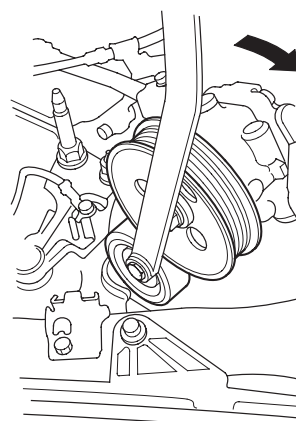
3. Install the new belt in the reverse order of removal.

## Drive Belt Auto-tensioner Inspection

1. Check whether there is a change in the position of the auto-tensioner indicator before starting the engine and after starting the engine. If there is a change in the position, replace the auto-tensioner.

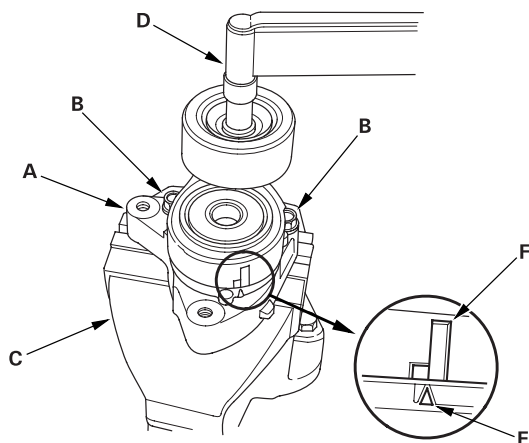


2. Check for abnormal noise from the tensioner pulley. If abnormal noise is heard, replace the tensioner pulley.
3. Remove the drive belt ([see page 04-30](#)).
4. Move the auto-tensioner within its limit with the belt tension release tool in the direction shown. Check that the tensioner moves smoothly and without any abnormal noise. If the tensioner does not move smoothly or there is abnormal noise, replace the auto-tensioner.





5. Remove the auto-tensioner (see page 04-31).
6. Install the tensioner pulley.
7. Clamp the auto-tensioner (A) by using two 8 mm bolts (B) and a vise (C) as shown. Do not clamp the auto-tensioner itself.



8. Set the torque wrench (D) on the pulley bolt.
9. Align the indicator (E) on the tensioner base with center mark (F) on the tensioner arm by using the torque wrench, and measure the torque. If the torque value is out of specification, replace the auto-tensioner.

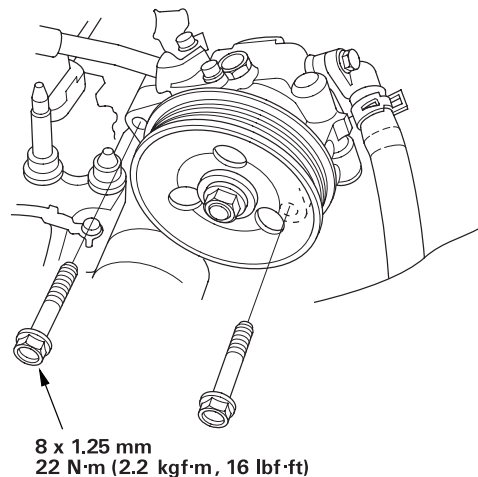
NOTE: If the indicator exceeds the center mark, recheck the torque.

**Auto-tensioner spring torque:**

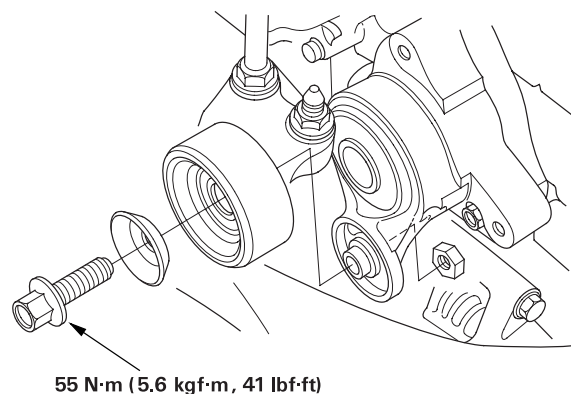
**26.5 - 36.3 N·m (2.7 - 3.7 kg·m, 19.5 - 26.8 lbf·ft)**

## Drive Belt Auto-tensioner Replacement

1. Remove the drive belt (see page 04-30).
2. Remove the Power Steering (P/S) pump without disconnecting the P/S hoses.



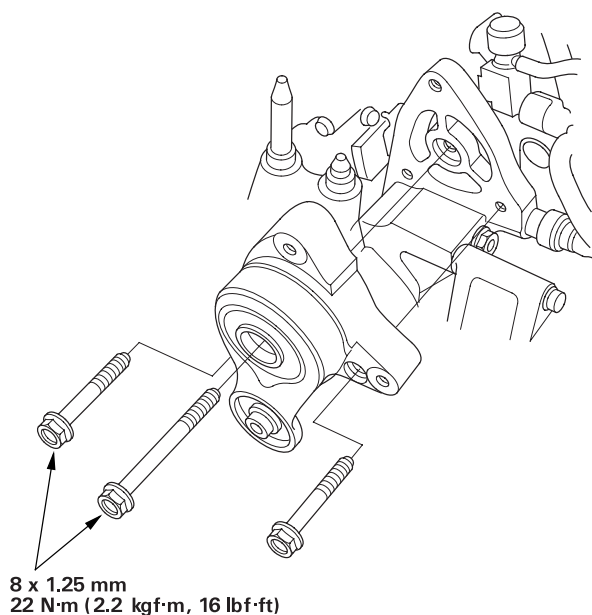
3. Remove the tensioner pulley.



(cont'd)

### Drive Belt Auto-tensioner Replacement (cont'd)

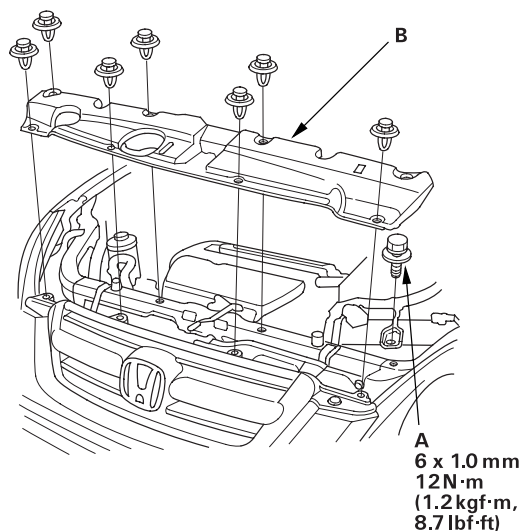
4. Remove the auto-tensioner.



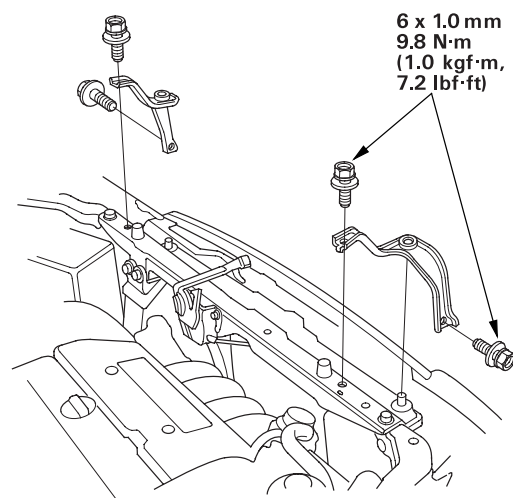
5. Install in the reverse order of removal.

### Alternator Replacement

1. Disconnect the battery negative cable, then disconnect the positive cable.
2. Remove the bolt (A) securing the battery clamp, then remove the bulkhead cover (B).

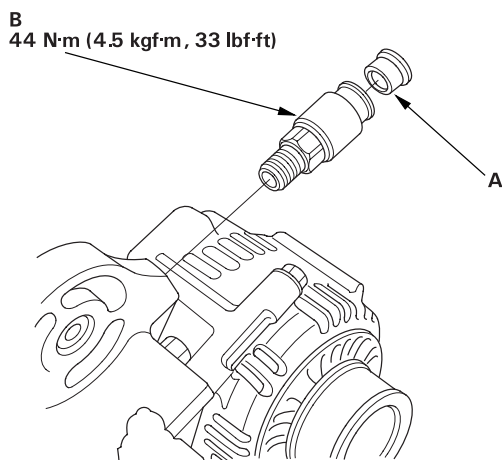


3. Remove the upper bracket and cushion.

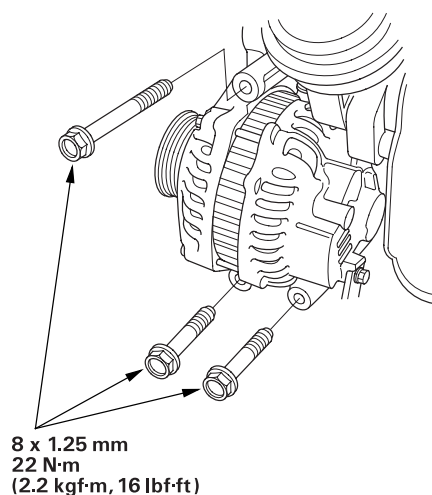


4. Remove the drive belt ([see page 04-30](#)).
5. Remove the auto-tensioner ([see page 04-31](#)).

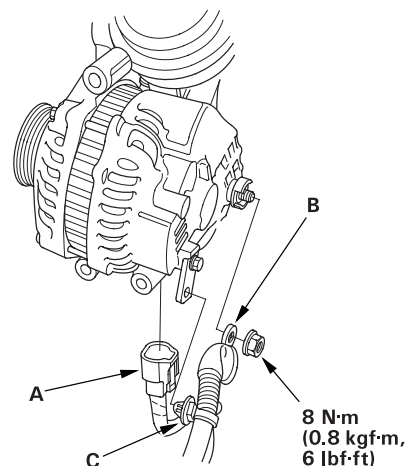
6. Remove the gasket (A), then remove the Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) valve holder (B) with a hex wrench.



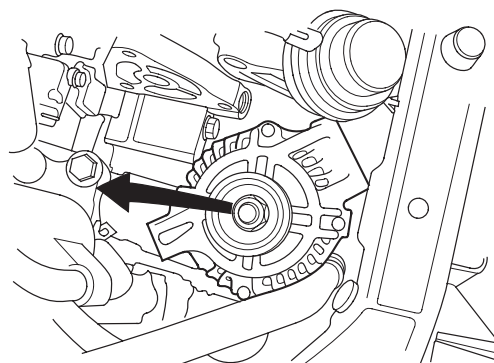
7. Remove the three bolts securing the alternator.



8. Disconnect the alternator connector (A), BLK wire (B) and harness clamp (C) from the alternator.



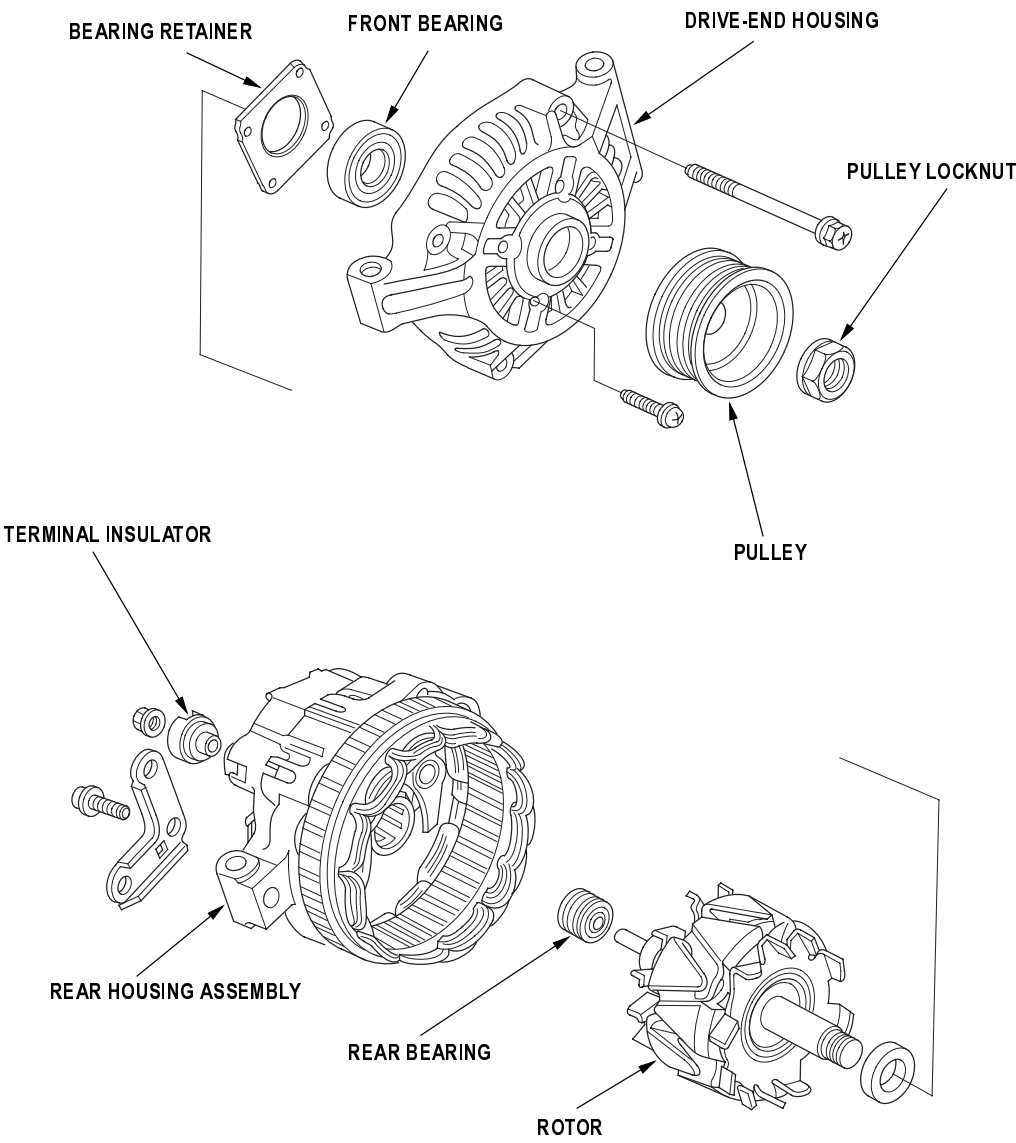
9. Remove the alternator.



10. Install the alternator and drive belt in the reverse order of removal.
11. Apply liquid gasket to the PCV valve holder threads, then install the PCV valve holder.
12. Install the upper bracket and cushion. Make sure they are set securely.
13. Connect the battery positive cable and negative cable to the battery.

Alternator Overhaul

Exploded View

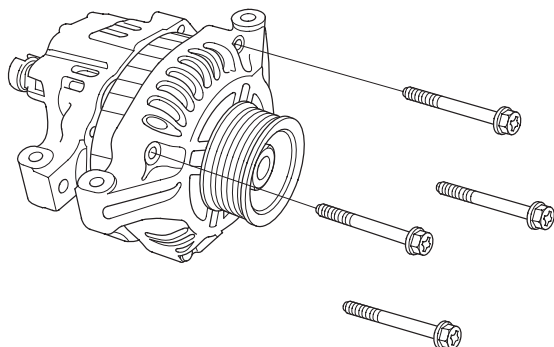


## Special Tools Required

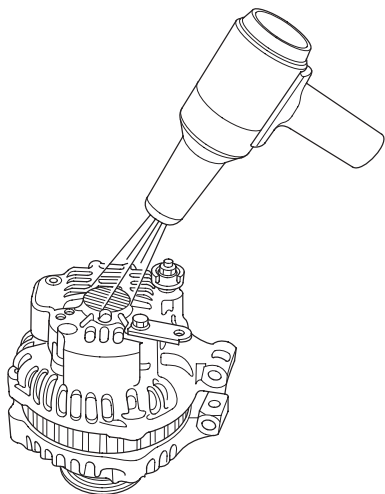
- Handle driver 07749-0010000
- Driver attachment, 52 x 55 mm 07746-0010400

NOTE: Refer to the Exploded View as needed during this procedure.

1. Test the alternator and regulator before you remove them (see page 04-26).
2. Remove the alternator (see page 04-32).
3. Remove the four through bolts.

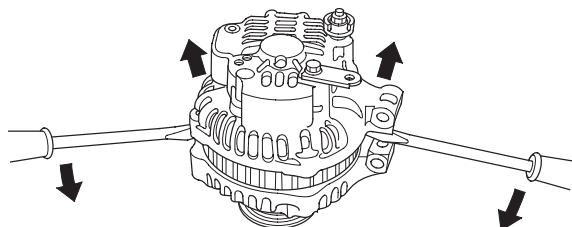


4. Heat the rear bearing seat with a 1,000 W hair drier for about 5 minutes (50 - 60°C, 129 - 140°F).

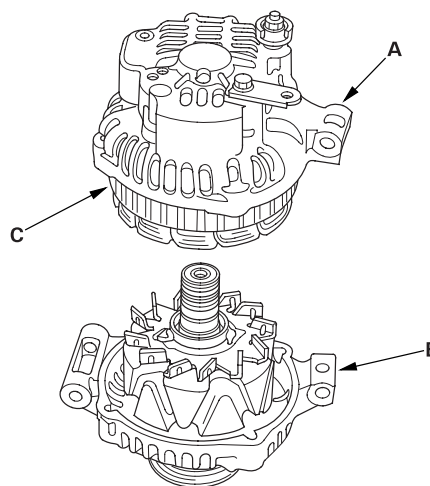


5. Separate the rear housing from the drive-end housing by inserting a flat tip screwdriver into the openings and prying them apart.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the stator with the tip of the screwdriver.



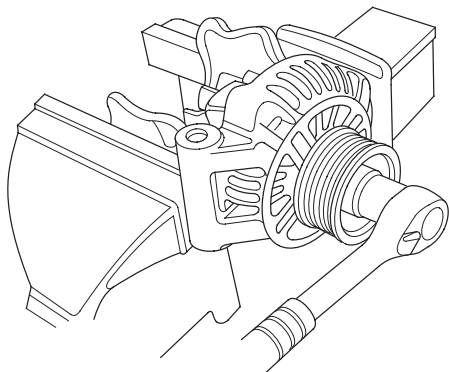
6. Separate the rear housing (A) and drive-end housing (B) with the stator (C) attached to the rear housing.



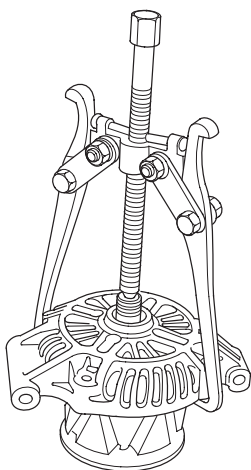
(cont'd)

## Alternator Overhaul (cont'd)

7. If you are not replacing the front bearing and/or rear bearing, go to step 15. Clamp the rotor in a soft-jawed vise, then remove the pulley locknut.

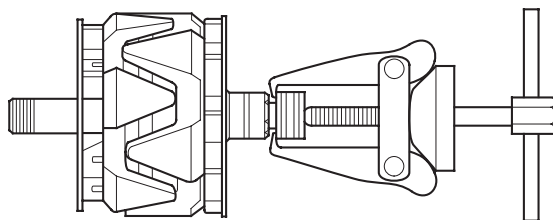


8. Remove the rotor using a puller as shown.

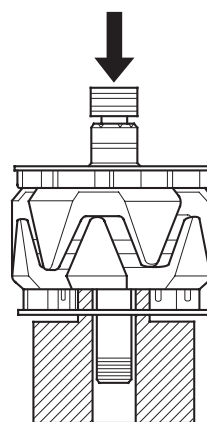


9. Inspect the rotor shaft for scoring, and inspect the bearing journal surface in the drive-end housing for seizure marks.
- If either the rotor or drive-end housing is damaged, replace the alternator.
  - If both the rotor and the drive-end housing are OK, go to step 10.

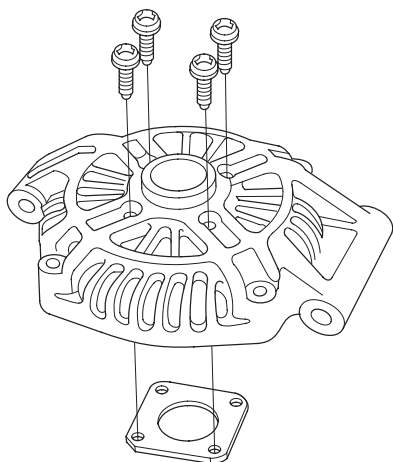
10. Remove the rear bearing using the puller as shown.



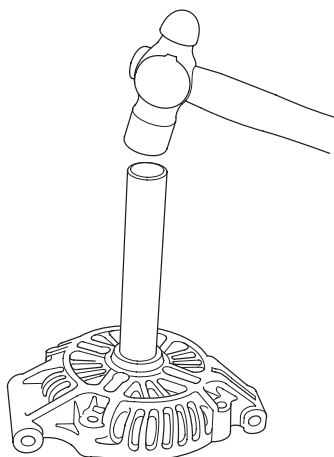
11. Use a hand press to install the new rear bearing. Apply pressure only on the inner race to avoid damaging the bearing.



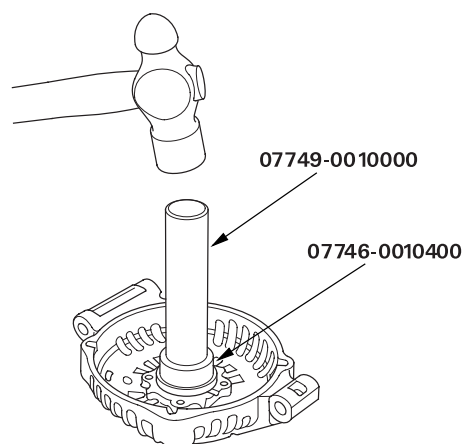
12. Remove the front bearing retainer plate.



13. Support the drive-end housing in a vise, and drive out the front bearing with a brass drift and hammer.



14. With a hammer and the special tools, install a new front bearing in the drive-end housing.



## Alternator Brush Inspection

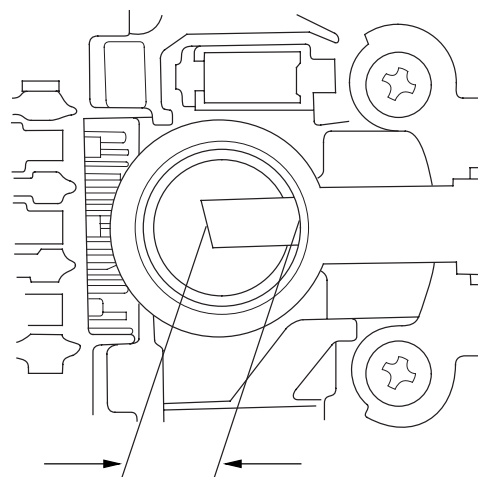
15. Measure the length of both brushes with a vernier caliper.

- If either brush is shorter than the service limit, replace the rear housing assembly.
- If brush length is OK, go to step 16.

### Alternator Brush Length:

Standard (New): 19.0 mm (0.75 in.)

Service Limit: 5.0 mm (0.2 in.)

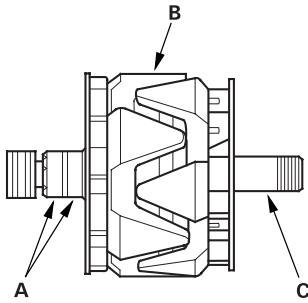


(cont'd)

## Alternator Overhaul (cont'd)

### Rotor Slip Ring Test

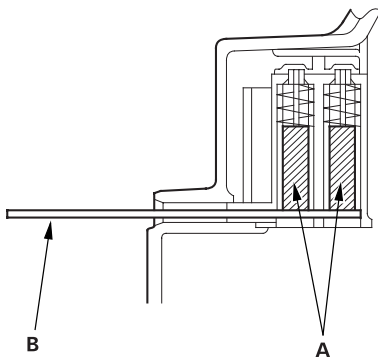
- 16.** Check that there is continuity between the slip rings (A).
- If there is continuity, go to step 17.
  - If there is no continuity, replace the rotor assembly.



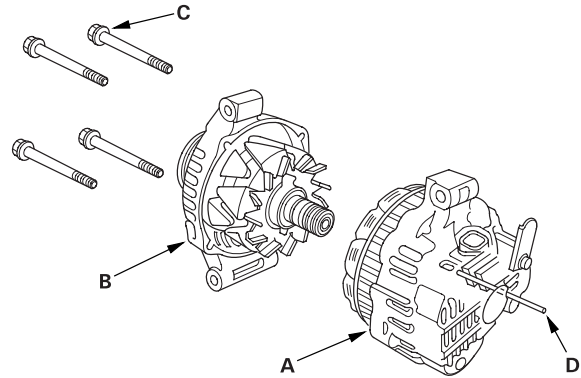
- 17.** Check that there is no continuity between each slip ring (A) and the rotor (B) and the rotor shaft (C).
- If there is no continuity, replace the rear housing assembly, go to step 18.
  - If there is continuity, replace the rotor assembly.

### Alternator Reassembly

- 18.** If you removed the pulley, put the rotor in the drive-end housing, then tighten its locknut to 111 N·m (11.3 kgf·m, 81.7 lbf·ft).
- 19.** Remove any grease or any oil from the slip rings.
- 20.** Push the brushes (A) in, then insert a pin or drill bit (B) (about 1.8 mm (0.77 in.) diameter) to hold them there.



- 21.** Heat the rear bearing seat with a 1,000 W hair drier for about 5 minutes (50 - 60°C, 129 - 140°F).
- 22.** Put the rear housing assembly (A) and drive-end housing/rotor assembly (B) together, tighten the four through bolts (C) and pull out the pin (D).

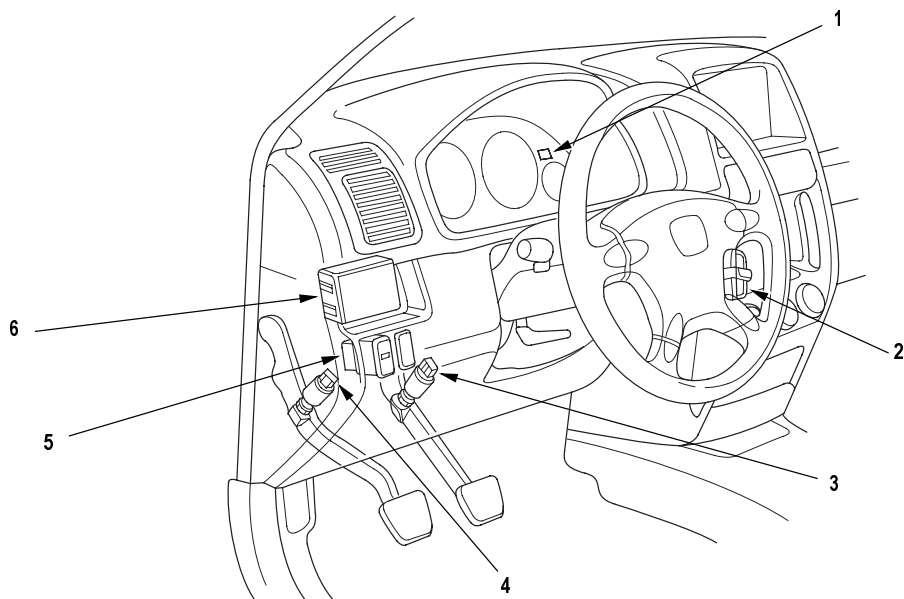


- 23.** After assembling the alternator, turn the pulley by hand to make sure the rotor rotates smoothly and without noise.
- 24.** Install the alternator and drive belt ([see page 04-32](#)).

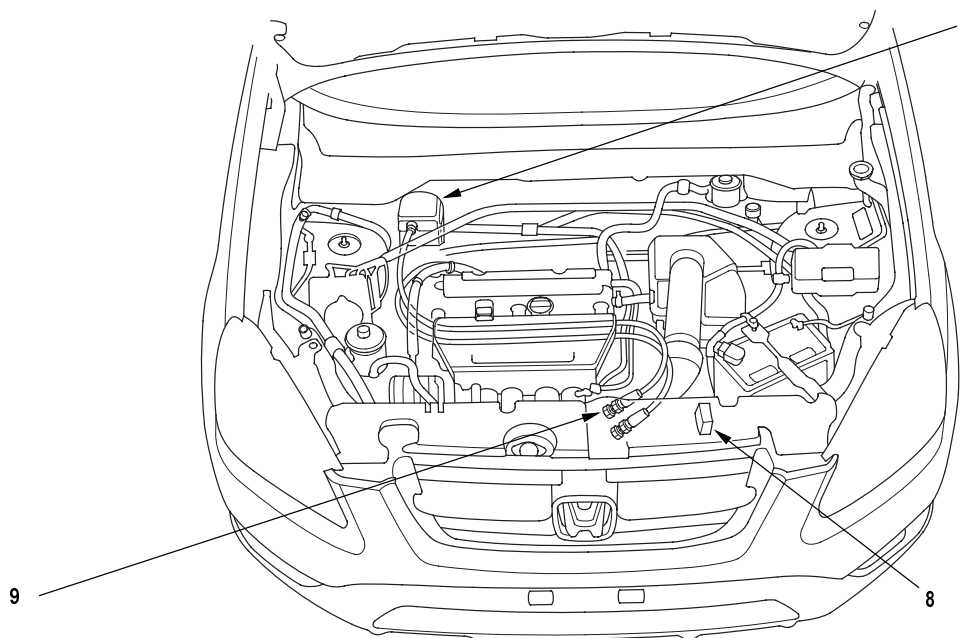


## Cruise Control

### Component Location Index

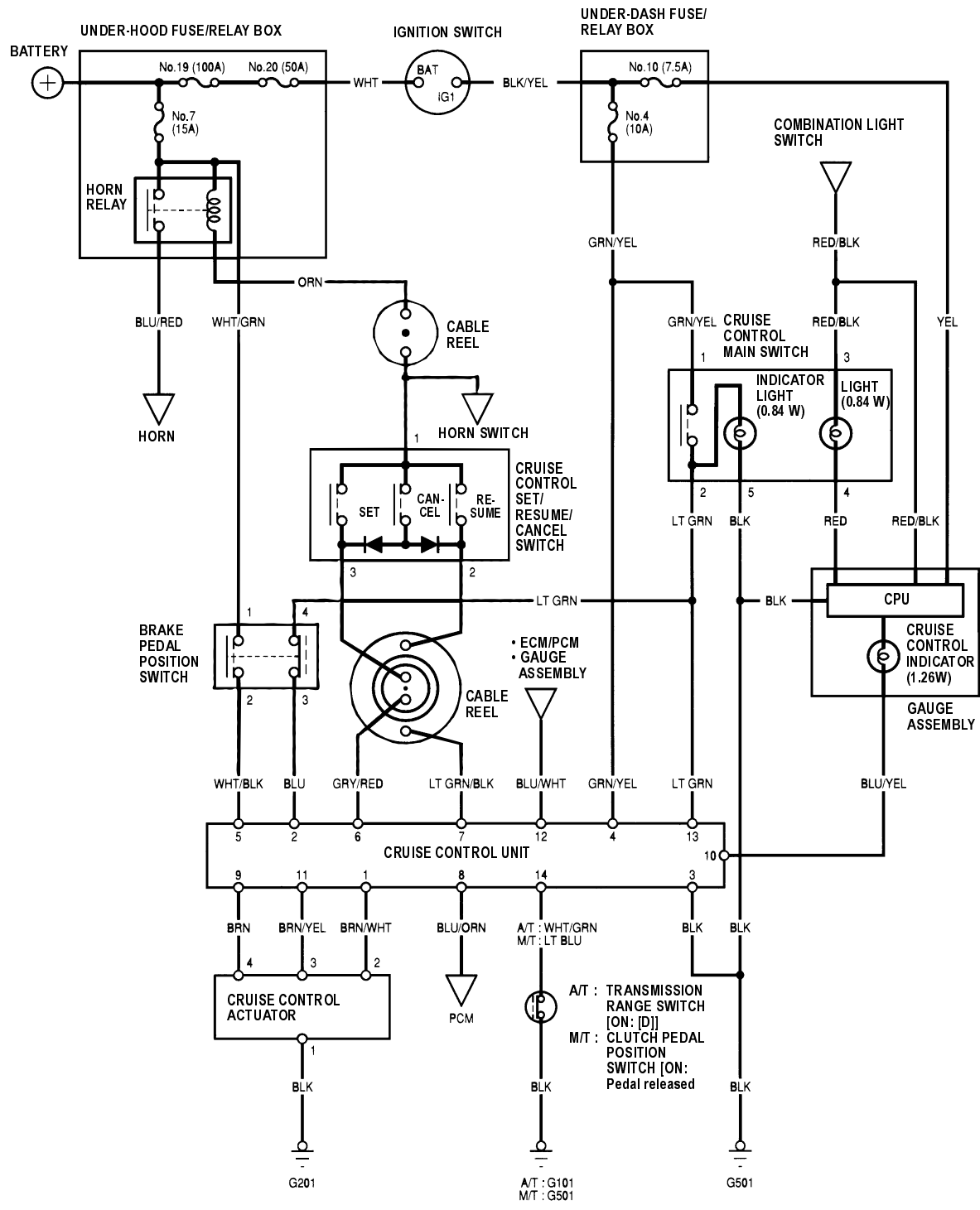


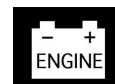
- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | CRUISE CONTROL INDICATOR (Built into gauge assembly) |   |
| 2 | CRUISE CONTROL SET/RESUME/CANCEL SWITCH              | Test/Replacement, <a href="#">page 04-46</a>  |
| 3 | BRAKE PEDAL POSITION SWITCH                          | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-99</a> ; Pedal Height Adjustment, <a href="#">page 19A-5</a> |
| 4 | CLUTCH PEDAL POSITION SWITCH (M/T)                   | Test, <a href="#">page 04-49</a> ; Clutch Pedal Adjustment, <a href="#">page 12-4</a>   |
| 5 | CRUISE CONTROL MAIN SWITCH                           | Test/Replacement, <a href="#">page 04-46</a>  |
| 6 | CRUISE CONTROL UNIT                                  | Input Test, <a href="#">page 04-44</a>  |



- |   |                                 |  |
|---|---------------------------------|--|
| 7 | CRUISE CONTROL ACTUATOR         | Test, <a href="#">page 04-47</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 04-48</a> |
| 8 | TRANSMISSION RANGE SWITCH (A/T) | Test, <a href="#">page 14-168</a>  |
| 9 | ACTUATOR CABLE                  | Adjustment, <a href="#">page 04-49</a>                                     |

Circuit Diagram





## Symptom Troubleshooting Index

### NOTE:

- The numbers in the table show the troubleshooting sequence.
- Before troubleshooting.
  - check the No. 10 (7.5A) and No. 4 (10A) fuses in the under-dash fuse/relay box, and the No. 7 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.
  - check that the horn sounds.
  - check the tachometer to see if it works properly.

Symptom	Diagnostic procedure	Also check for
Cruise control cannot be set	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check main switch (<a href="#">see page 04-46</a>)</li> <li>2. Check SET/RESUME/CANCEL switch (<a href="#">see page 04-46</a>)</li> <li>3. Test brake pedal position switch (<a href="#">see page 22A-99</a>) and check its adjustment (<a href="#">see page 19A-5</a>)</li> <li>4. Test clutch pedal position switch (<a href="#">see page 04-49</a>) and check its adjustment (M/T) (<a href="#">see page 12-4</a>)</li> <li>5. Check transmission range switch (A/T) (<a href="#">see page 14-168</a>)</li> <li>6. Check control unit (<a href="#">see page 04-44</a>)</li> </ol>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground: G101 (A/T), G501 (M/T)</li> <li>• Open circuit, loose or disconnected terminals: LT GRN, GRN/YEL, GRY/RED, BLU, WHT/GRN (A/T), LT BLU (M/T), BLU/WHT</li> </ul>
Cruise control can be set but indicator light does not go on	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check cruise control indicator bulb in gauge assembly (<a href="#">see page 22A-73</a>)</li> <li>2. Check control unit (<a href="#">see page 04-44</a>)</li> </ol>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground: G501</li> <li>• Open circuit, loose or disconnected terminals: YEL, BLU/YEL</li> </ul>
Cruise speed is noticeably higher or lower than what was set	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check Vehicle Speed Sensor (VSS) (<a href="#">see page 22A-75</a>)</li> <li>2. Check actuator (<a href="#">see page 04-47</a>)</li> <li>3. Check control unit (<a href="#">see page 04-44</a>)</li> </ol>	
Excessive overshooting or undershooting when trying to set speed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check actuator (<a href="#">see page 04-47</a>)</li> <li>2. Check Vehicle Speed Sensor (VSS) (<a href="#">see page 22A-75</a>)</li> <li>3. Check control unit (<a href="#">see page 04-44</a>)</li> </ol>	
Speed fluctuation on a flat road with cruise control set	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check Vehicle Speed Sensor (VSS) (<a href="#">see page 22A-75</a>)</li> <li>2. Check actuator (<a href="#">see page 04-47</a>)</li> <li>3. Check control unit (<a href="#">see page 04-44</a>)</li> </ol>	
Vehicle does not decelerate or accelerate accordingly when SET/RESUME/CANCEL button is pushed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check SET/RESUME/CANCEL switch (<a href="#">see page 04-46</a>)</li> <li>2. Check control unit (<a href="#">see page 04-44</a>)</li> </ol>	Open circuit, loose or disconnected terminals: GRY/RED, LT GRN/BLK
Set speed not cancelled (engine rpm stays high) when clutch pedal is pushed (M/T)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Test clutch pedal position switch (<a href="#">see page 04-49</a>) and check its adjustment (<a href="#">see page 12-4</a>)</li> <li>2. Check control unit (<a href="#">see page 04-44</a>)</li> </ol>	Short to ground in the LT BLU wire
Set speed not cancelled when shift lever is moved to Neutral position (A/T)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check transmission range switch (<a href="#">see page 14-168</a>)</li> <li>2. Check control unit (<a href="#">see page 04-44</a>)</li> </ol>	Short to ground in the WHT/GRN wire
Set speed not cancelled when brake pedal is pushed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Test brake pedal position switch (<a href="#">see page 22A-99</a>) and check its adjustment (<a href="#">see page 19A-5</a>)</li> <li>2. Check control unit (<a href="#">see page 04-44</a>)</li> </ol>	Open circuit, loose or disconnected terminals: WHT/BLK

(cont'd)

### Symptom Troubleshooting Index (cont'd)

Symptom	Diagnostic procedure	Also check for
Set speed, does not cancel when main switch is pushed OFF	1. Check main switch ( <a href="#">see page 04-46</a> ) 2. Check control unit ( <a href="#">see page 04-44</a> )	Short to power in the LT GRN wire.
Set speed, does not cancel when CANCEL button is pushed	1. Check SET/RESUME/CANCEL switch ( <a href="#">see page 04-46</a> ) 2. Check control unit ( <a href="#">see page 04-44</a> )	Open circuit, loose or disconnected terminals: GRY/RED, LT GRN/BLK
Set speed will not resume when RESUME button is pushed (with main switch on, when set speed is temporarily cancelled by pressing the brake pedal)	1. Check SET/RESUME/CANCEL switch ( <a href="#">see page 04-46</a> ) 2. Check control unit ( <a href="#">see page 04-44</a> )	Open circuit, loose or disconnected terminals: LT GRN/BLK
The transmission shifts down slower than normal when going up a hill with the cruise control on (A/T)	1. Troubleshoot the cruise control communication circuit ( <a href="#">see page 04-43</a> )	Open circuit, loose or disconnected terminals: BLU/ORN

## Cruise Control Communication Circuit Troubleshooting

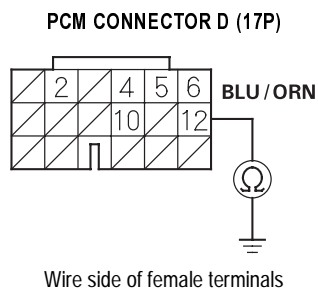
1. Start the engine.
2. Turn on the cruise control main switch, then drive the vehicle to speeds over 25 mph (40 km/h) with the cruise control.

*Does the cruise control operate?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Check the cruise control unit (see page 04-44) or cruise control actuator.■

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
5. Disconnect Powertrain Control Module (PCM) connector D (17P) and cruise control unit 14P connector.
6. Check for continuity between PCM connector terminal D12 and body ground.



*Is there continuity?*

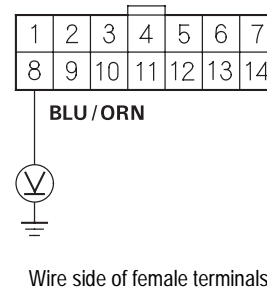
**Yes** Repair short to ground in the wire between PCM connector terminal D12 and the cruise control unit 14P connector terminal No. 8.■

**No** Go to step 7.

7. Reconnect PCM connector D (17P) and the cruise control unit 14P connector.
8. Connect the negative cable to the battery.

9. Connect a voltmeter between cruise control unit 14P connector terminal No. 8 and body ground. Test-drive the vehicle at speeds over 25 mph (40 km/h) with the cruise control set, and watch the voltmeter.

CRUISE CONTROL UNIT 14P CONNECTOR



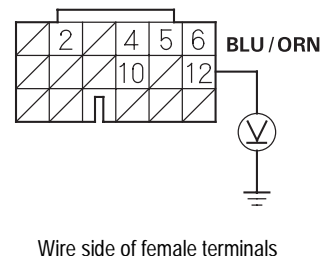
*Is there about 1 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 10.

**No** Substitute a known-good cruise control unit. If the system works properly, replace the cruise control unit.■

10. Connect a voltmeter between PCM connector terminal D12 and body ground. Drive the vehicle at speeds over 25 mph (40 km/h) with the cruise control set, and watch the voltmeter.

PCM CONNECTOR D (17P)



*Is there about 1 V?*

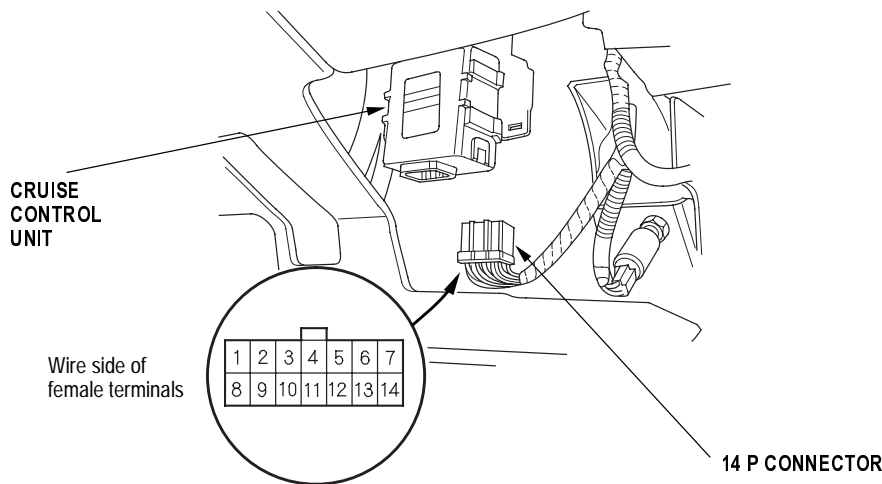
**Yes** Check for loose connectors of the BLU/ORN wire between the cruise control unit and the PCM. If necessary replace the PCM and recheck (see page 11-4).■

**No** Repair open in the wire between PCM connector terminal D12 and the control unit 14P connector terminal No. 8.■

Control Unit Input Test

SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations (see page 23-14) and precautions and procedures (see page 23-16) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

- 1. Disconnect the 14P connector from the control unit.
- 2. Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose, or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals look OK, go to step 3.



- 3. With the 14P connector disconnected, make these input tests.

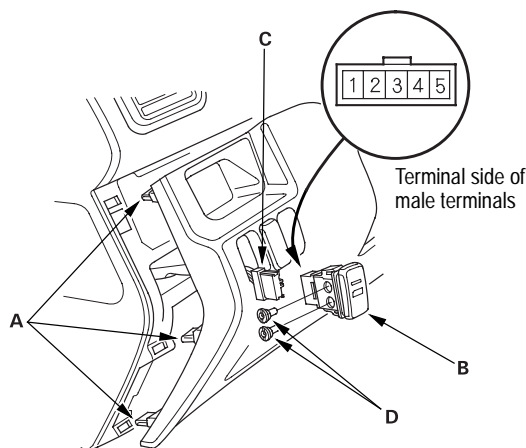
Cavity	Wire	Test Condition	Test: Desired Result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
1	BRN/WHT	Connect battery power	Check the operation of the magnetic clutch: Clutch should click and output link should be locked.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Faulty actuator</li><li>• Poor ground (G201)</li><li>• An open in the wire</li><li>• Short to ground</li></ul>
2	BLU	Ignition switch ON (II), main switch ON and brake pedal pressed, then released	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 0 V with the pedal pressed and battery voltage with the pedal released.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Faulty brake pedal position switch</li><li>• An open in the wire</li><li>• Open in cruise control main switch</li><li>• Blown No. 4 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li></ul>
3	BLK	Under all conditions	Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Poor ground (G501)</li><li>• An open in the wire</li></ul>
4	GRN/YEL	Ignition switch ON (II)	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Blown No. 4 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li><li>• An open in the wire</li></ul>
5	WHT/BLK	Brake pedal pressed, then released	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage with the pedal pressed, and 0 V with the pedal released.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Blown No. 7 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li><li>• Faulty brake pedal position switch</li><li>• An open in the wire</li></ul>

Cavity	Wire	Test Condition	Test: Desired Result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
6	GRY/RED	Set button pushed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. When testing terminal No. 6, there should be no voltage on terminal No. 7.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown No. 7 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>Faulty horn relay</li> <li>Faulty set/resume/cancel switch</li> <li>Faulty cable reel</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
7	LT GRN/BLK	Resume button pushed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. When testing terminal No. 7, there should be no voltage on terminal No. 6.	
9	BRN	Connect battery power to the BRN terminal and ground to the BRN/YEL terminal	Check the operation of the actuator motor: You should be able to hear the motor.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty actuator</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
11	BRN/YEL			
10	BLU/YEL	Ignition switch ON (II)	Attach to ground: Cruise indicator light in the gauge assembly should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown No. 10 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>Faulty gauge assembly</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
12	BLU/WHT	Ignition switch ON (II) and main switch ON; raise the front of the vehicle, and rotate one wheel slowly while holding the other wheel	Check for voltage between the BLU/WHT (+) and BLK (-) terminals: There should be 0 - 5 V or more repeatedly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty ECM/PCM</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> <li>Short to ground</li> </ul>
13	LT GRN	Ignition switch ON (II) and main switch ON	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown No. 4 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>Faulty main switch</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
14	WHT/GRN (A/T) LT BLU (M/T)	A/T: Shift lever in [D] or [D <sub>3</sub> ] M/T: Clutch pedal released	Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity. NOTE: There should be no continuity when the clutch pedal is pressed or when the shift lever is in other positions.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty transmission range switch</li> <li>Faulty clutch pedal position switch</li> <li>Poor ground (M/T: G501, A/T: G101)</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
8	BLU/ORN	Reconnect the cruise control unit 14P connector, start the engine, turn the main switch ON and drive the vehicle to speeds over 25 mph (40 km/h) with the cruise control set.	Check for voltage to ground: There should be about 1V	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Loose connection at the PCM</li> <li>Faulty cruise control unit</li> <li>Short to ground</li> </ul>

4. If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system. If all the input tests prove OK, the control unit may be faulty. Substitute a known-good control unit and retest. If the system works properly, replace the control unit.

Main Switch Test/Replacement

1. Detach the three clips (A), to create clearance between the dashboard and dashboard panel.

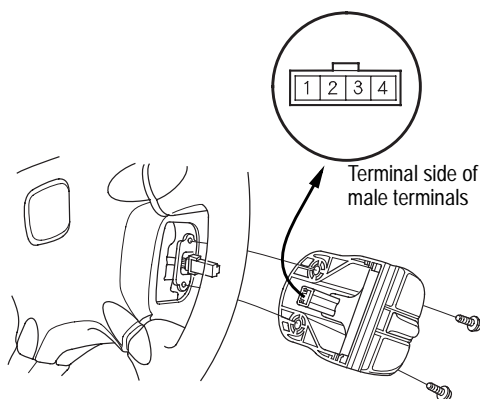


2. Release the clips of the main switch, and push the main switch (B) out of the panel, then disconnect the 5P connector (C) from the main switch.
3. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table. If there is no continuity, replace the illumination bulbs (D) or the switch.

Terminal								
Position	2		5	1	3		4	
OFF								
ON								

Set/Resume/Cancel Switch Test/Replacement

1. Remove the two screws, then remove the switch.



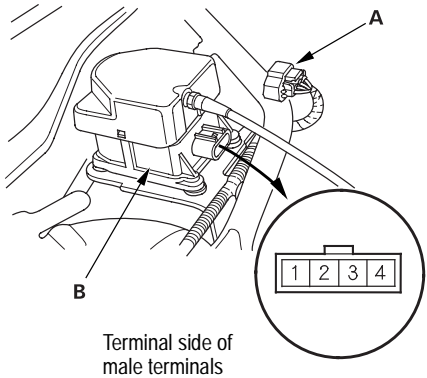
2. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.
- If there is continuity, and it matches the table, but switch failure occurred on the cruise control unit input test, check and repair the wire harness on the switch circuit.
  - If there is no continuity in one or both positions, replace the switch.

Terminal				
Position	1		2	3
SET (ON)				
RESUME (ON)				
CANCEL (ON)				

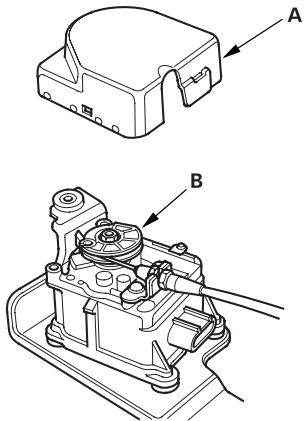


Actuator Test

1. Disconnect the 4P connector (A) from the actuator (B).



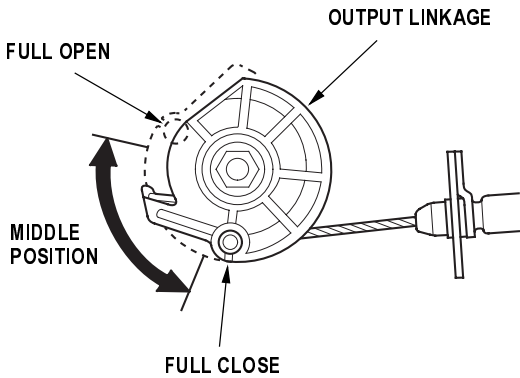
2. Remove the cover (A), and check the output linkage (B) for smooth movement.



3. Connect battery power to the No. 2 terminal and ground to the No. 1 terminal.
4. Check for a clicking sound from the magnetic clutch. The output linkage should be locked.
5. If the output linkage is not locked, replace the actuator assembly.

6. Check the operation of the actuator motor in each output linkage position according to the table. You should be able to hear the motor.

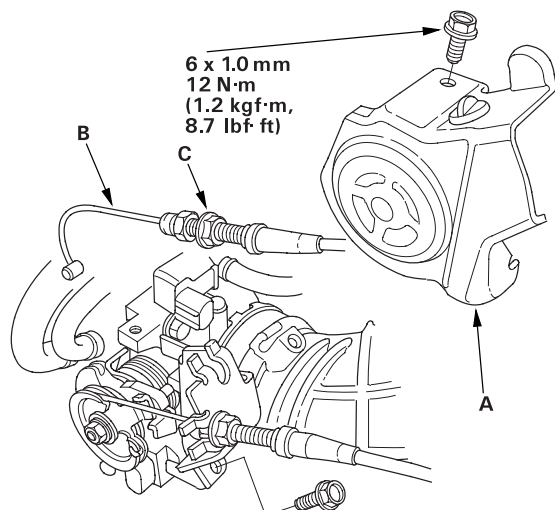
Battery power polarities		Output linkage position		
(+)	(-)	FULL CLOSE	MIDDLE POSITION	FULL OPEN
No. 4 Terminal	No. 3 Terminal	The motor runs.	The motor runs.	The motor stops.
No. 3 Terminal	No. 4 Terminal	The motor stops.	The motor runs.	The motor runs.



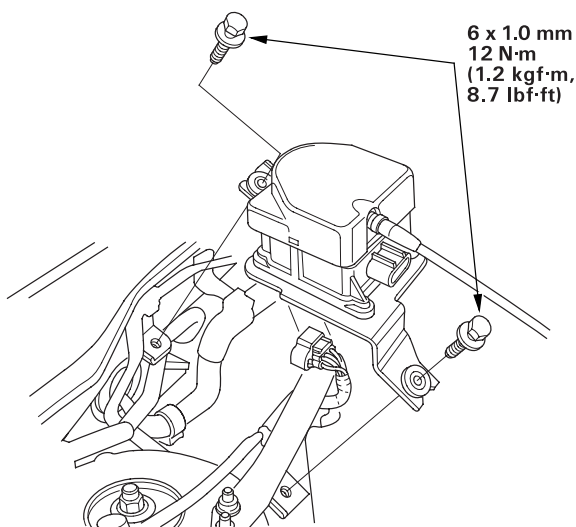
7. If the actuator motor does not operate as specified, replace the actuator assembly.

## Actuator/Cable Replacement

1. Remove the throttle cable cover (A), fully open the cruise control link by hand, then remove the cruise control cable (B) from link. Loosen the locknut (C), and remove the cable from the bracket.

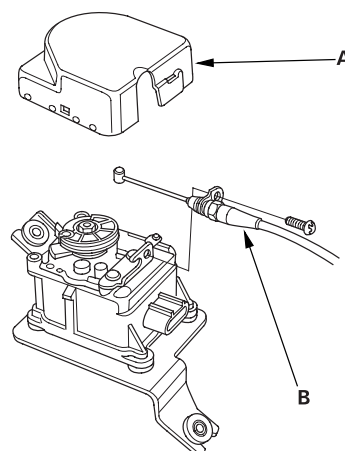


2. Disconnect the 4P connector, and remove the two bolts securing the actuator.

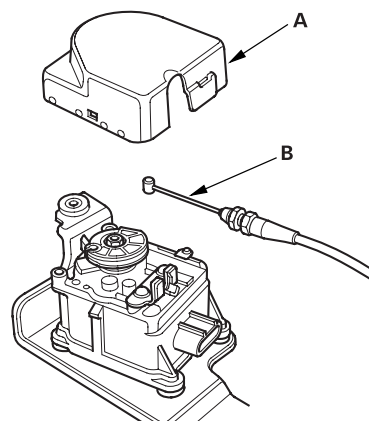


3. Remove the actuator cover (A), then remove the actuator cable (B) from the actuator.

LHD models:



RHD models:

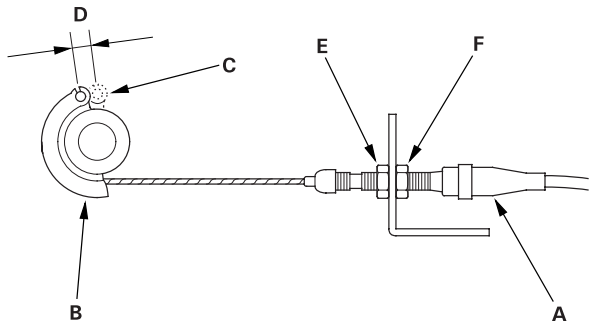


4. Install in the reverse order of removal, and adjust the free play at the throttle linkage after connecting the actuator cable.



Actuator Cable Adjustment

1. Check that the actuator cable (A) moves smoothly with no binding or sticking.



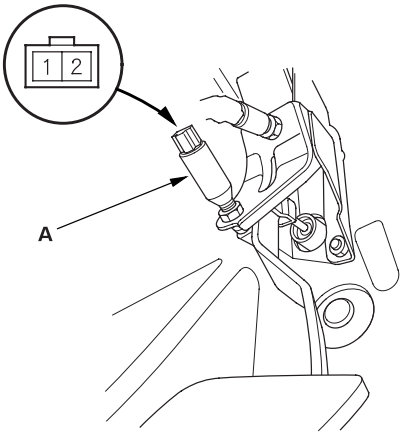
2. Measure the amount of movement of the output linkage (B) until the engine speed starts to increase. At first, the output linkage should be located at the fully closed position (C). The free play (D) should be  $3.75 \pm 0.5$  mm ( $0.15 \pm 0.02$  in.).
3. If the free play is not within specs, loosen the locknut (E), and turn the adjusting nut (F) until the free play is as specified, then retighten the locknut.

Clutch Pedal Position Switch Test

1. Disconnect the 2P connector from the clutch pedal position switch (A).

CLUTCH PEDAL POSITION SWITCH 2P CONNECTOR

Terminal side of male terminals



2. Remove the clutch pedal position switch.
3. Check for continuity between the terminals according to the table.
- If the continuity is not as specified, replace the clutch pedal position switch.
  - If OK, install the clutch pedal position switch and adjust the pedal height ([see page 12-4](#)).

Terminal	1	2
Clutch Pedal Position Switch		
PRESSED		
RELEASED	○	○



# 05

## Engine Mechanical

Engine Assembly ..... 05-2

Special Tools ..... 05-2

Engine Removal ..... 05-3

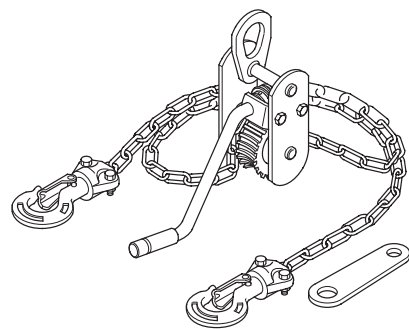
Engine Installation ..... 05-10



Engine Assembly

Special Tools

Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07KAK-SJ40101	Engine Tilt Hanger Set	1



1



## Engine Removal

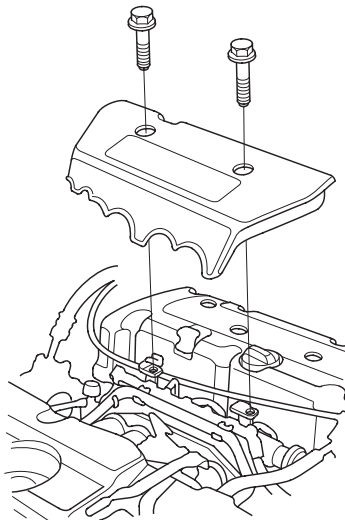
### Special Tools Required

- Engine tilt hanger set 07KAK-SJ40101

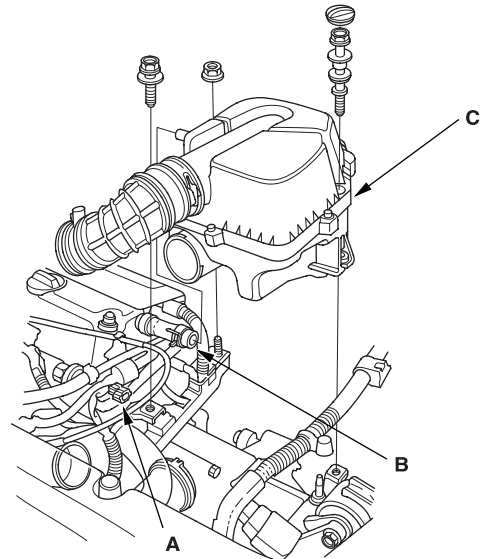
### NOTE:

- Use fender covers to avoid damaging painted surfaces.
- To avoid damage, unplug the wiring connectors carefully while holding the connector portion.
- Mark all wiring and hoses to avoid misconnection. Also, be sure that they do not contact other wiring or hoses, or interfere with other parts.

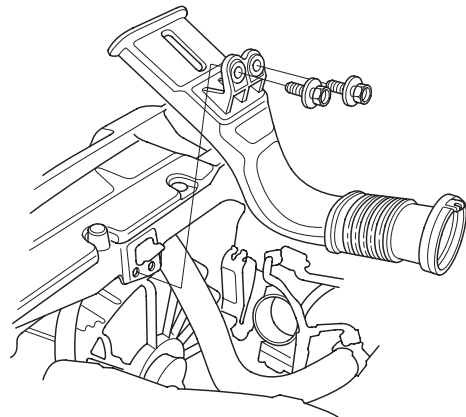
1. Secure the hood in the wide open position (support rod in the lower hole).
2. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery first, then the positive cable.
3. Remove the battery.
4. Remove the intake manifold cover.



5. Disconnect the Intake Air Temperature (IAT) sensor connector (A), and remove the breather hose (B), then remove the air cleaner housing (C).



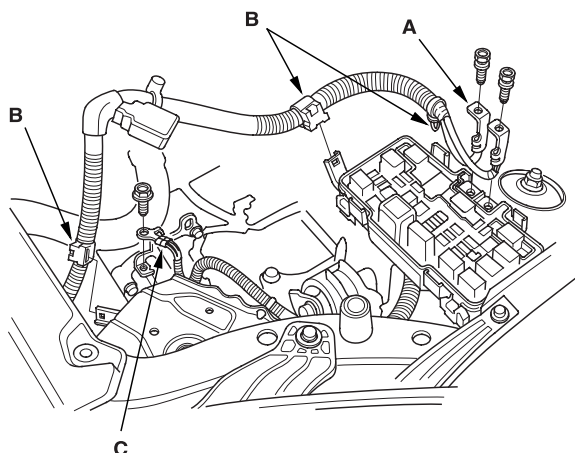
6. Remove the intake air duct.



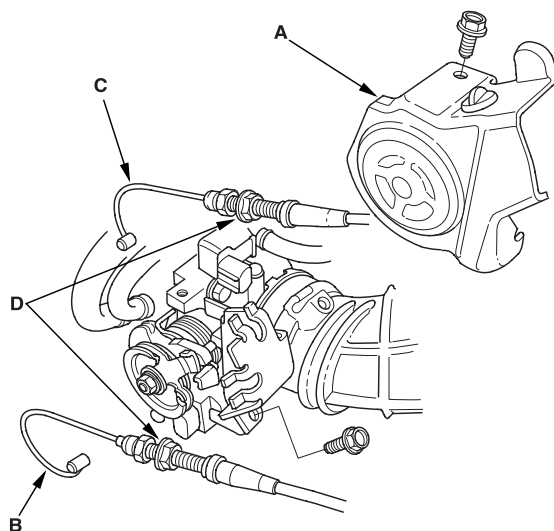
(cont'd)

## Engine Removal (cont'd)

7. Remove the battery cables (A) from the under-hood fuse/relay box, then remove the harness clamps (B) and ground cable (C).

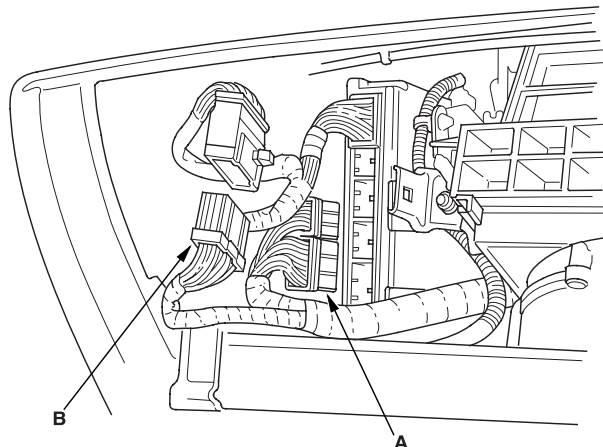


8. Remove the throttle cover (A). Fully open the throttle link and cruise control link by hand, then remove the throttle cable (B) and cruise control cable (C) from the links. Loosen the locknuts (D), and remove the cables from the bracket.

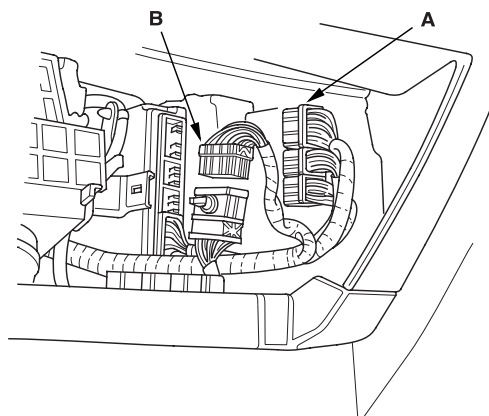


9. Disconnect the Engine Control Module (ECM)/ Powertrain Control Module (PCM) connectors (A) and main wire harness connector (B).

LHD models:



RHD models:

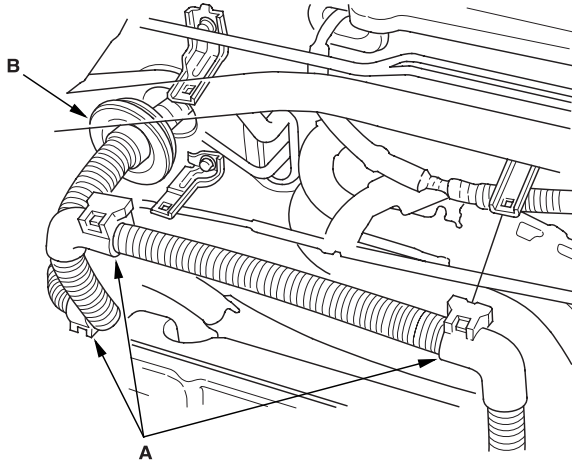




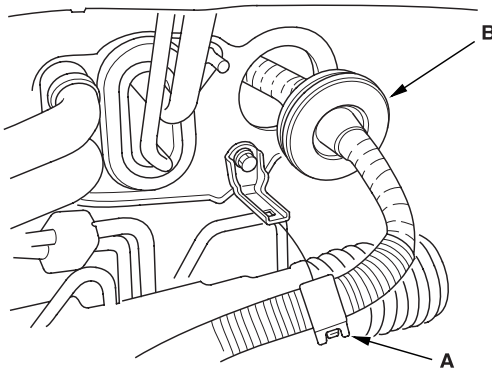


10. Remove the harness clamps (A) and grommet (B), then pull the engine wire harness through the bulkhead.

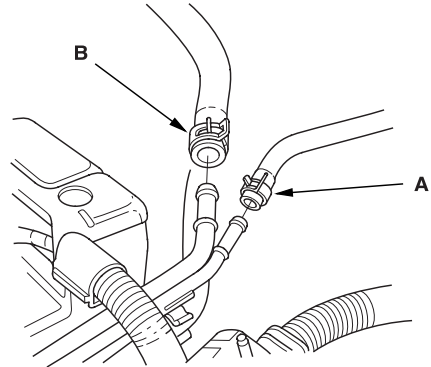
LHD models:



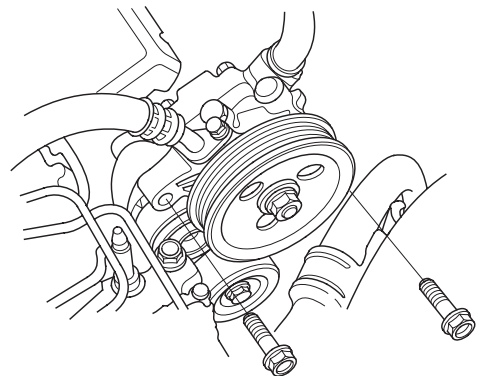
RHD models:



11. Relieve fuel pressure ([see page 11-154](#)).
12. Disconnect the fuel feed hose ([see page 11-161](#)).
13. Remove the Evaporative Emission (EVAP) canister hose (A) and brake booster vacuum hose (B).



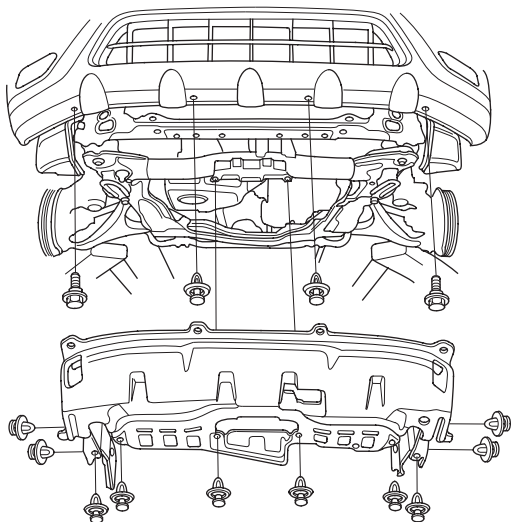
14. Remove the clutch slave cylinder and clutch line bracket (M/T) ([see page 12-6](#)).
15. Remove the shift cable and select cable (M/T) (see step 7 on [page 13-5](#)).
16. Remove the drive belt ([see page 04-30](#)).
17. Remove the Power Steering (P/S) pump without disconnecting the P/S hoses.



(cont'd)

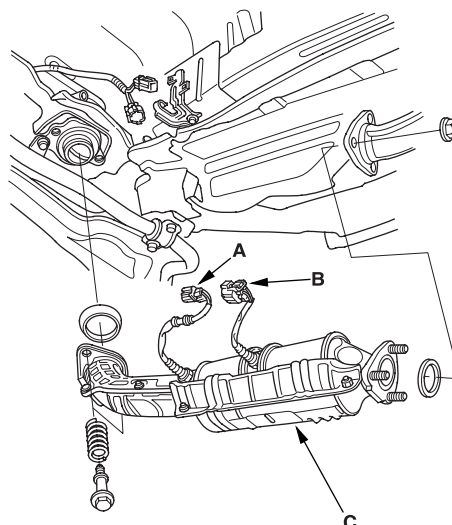
## Engine Removal (cont'd)

18. Remove the radiator cap.
19. Raise the hoist to full height.
20. Remove the front tires/wheels.
21. Remove the splash shield.



22. Loosen the drain plug in the radiator, drain the engine coolant ([see page 10-6](#)).
23. Drain the transmission fluid:
  - Manual transmission ([see page 13-4](#)).
  - Automatic transmission ([see page 14-131](#)).
24. Drain the engine oil ([see page 08-5](#)).

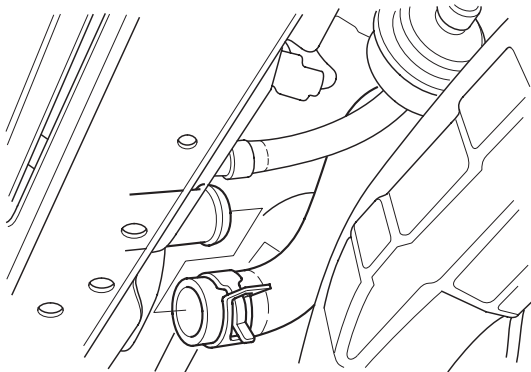
25. Disconnect the primary Heated Oxygen Sensor (primary HO2S) connector (A) (Except K20A5 engine).



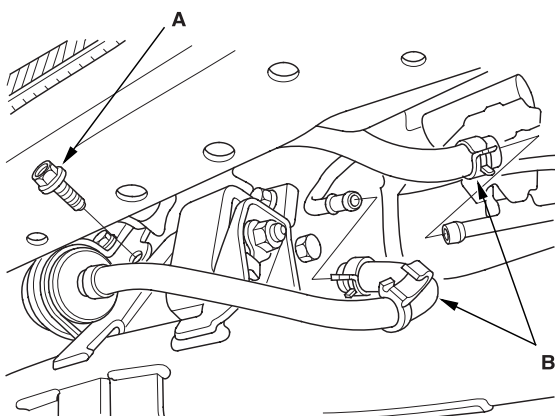
26. Disconnect the secondary Heated Oxygen Sensor (secondary HO2S) connector (B) (KE, KG, KS, KR, KU, KZ, KQ, FO models).
27. Remove the Three Way Catalytic Converter (TWC) assembly (C) (K20A4, K24A1 engines) or exhaust chamber (C) (K20A5 engine).
28. Separate the propeller shaft from the transfer (4WD models) ([see page 13-64](#)).
29. Disconnect the stabilizer links ([see page 18-18](#)).
30. Disconnect the suspension lower arm ball joints ([see page 18-20](#)).
31. Remove the driveshafts ([see page 16-3](#)). Coat all precision finished surfaces with clean engine oil. Tie plastic bags over the driveshaft ends.
32. Remove the shift cable (A/T) ([see page 14-157](#)).



33. Remove the lower hose.



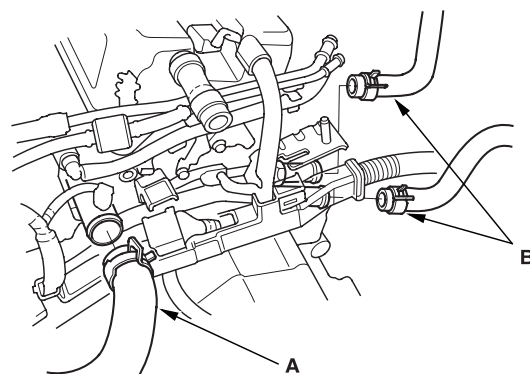
34. Remove the ATF filter mounting bolt (A) (A/T).



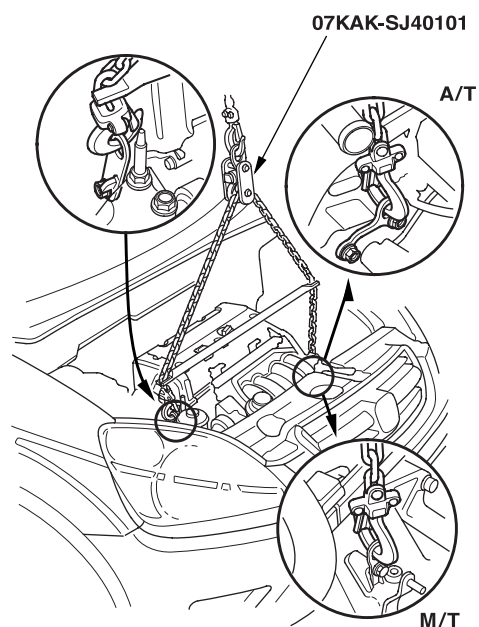
35. Remove the ATF cooler hoses (B), then plug the ATF cooler hoses and lines (A/T).

36. Lower the hoist.

37. Remove the upper hose (A) and heater hoses (B).



38. Attach the engine tilt hanger set (Commercially available tool for EU models) to the engine as shown.

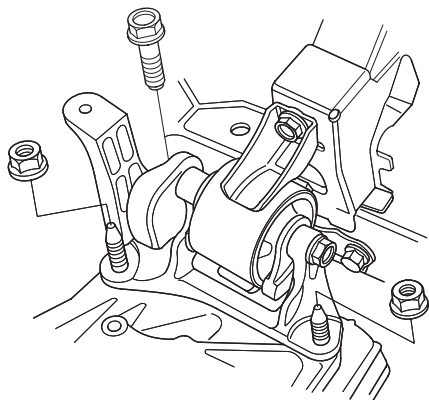


(cont'd)

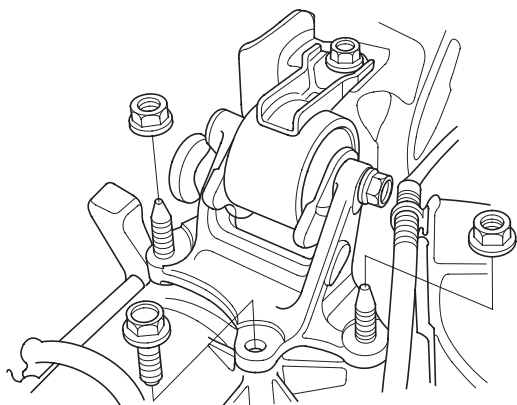
## Engine Removal (cont'd)

- 39.** Remove the transmission mount bracket support bolt/nuts.

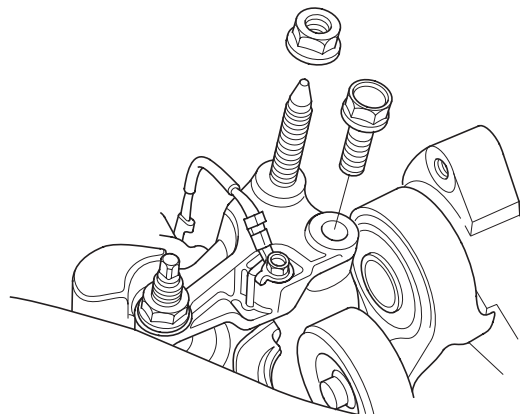
M/T:



A/T:

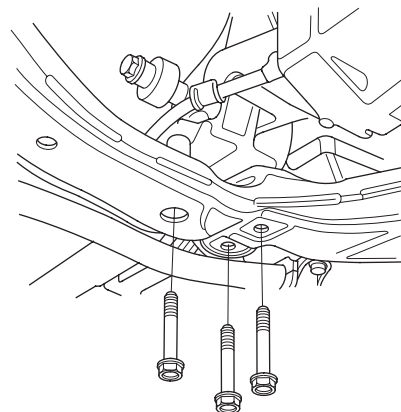


- 40.** Remove the upper bracket mounting bolt and nut.



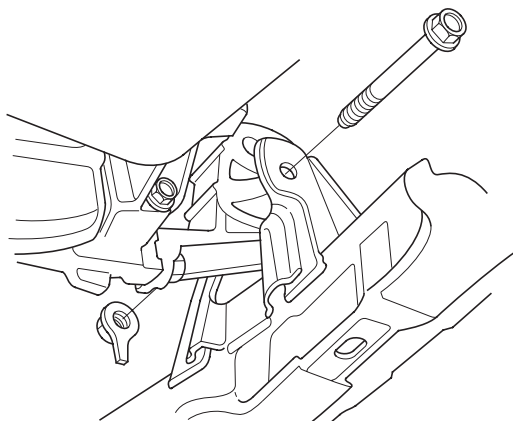
- 41.** Make sure the hoist brackets are positioned properly. Raise the hoist to full height.

- 42.** Remove the rear mount mounting bolts.

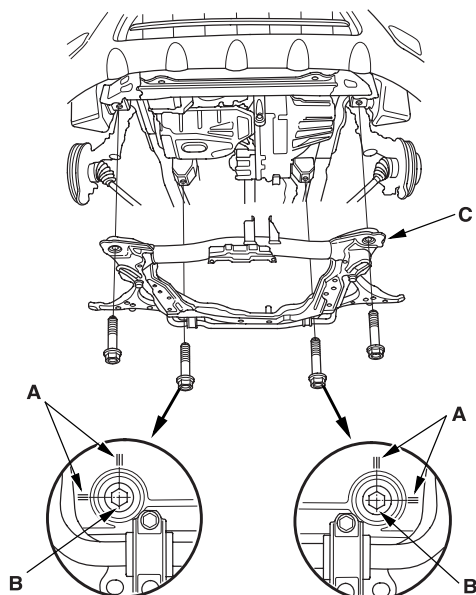




43. Remove the front mount mounting bolt.

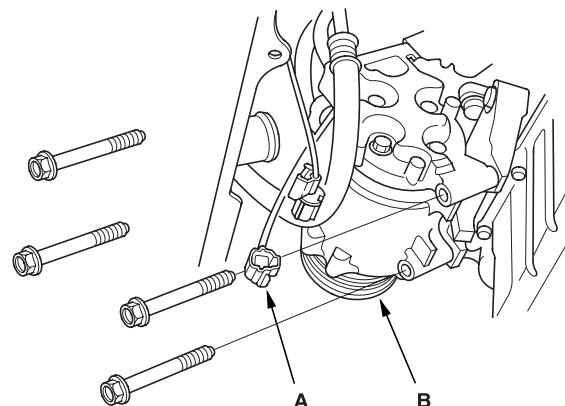


44. Use a marker to make alignment marks on the reference lines (A) that align with the centers of the rear sub-frame mounting bolts (B).



45. Remove the front sub-frame (C).

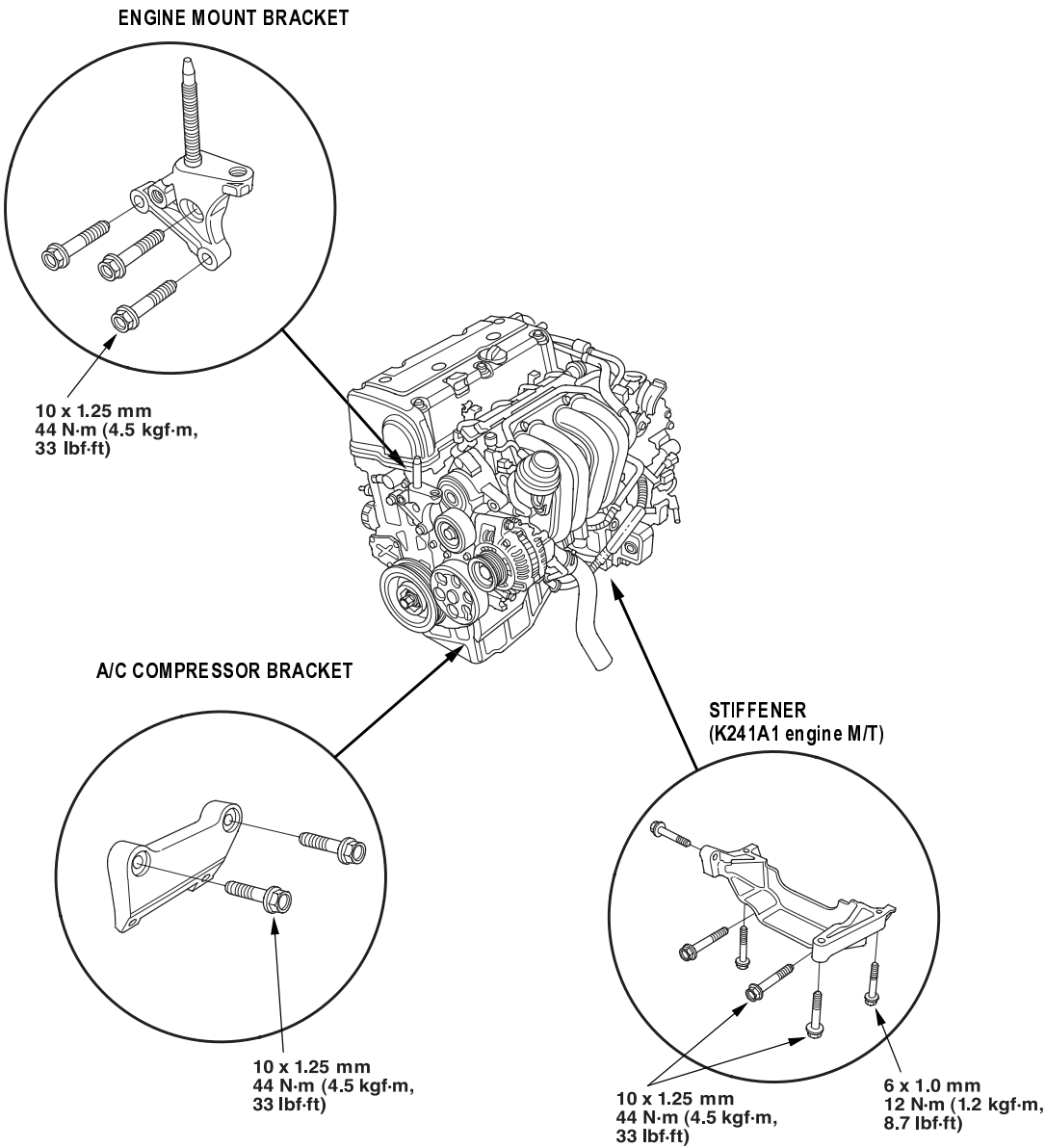
46. Disconnect the compressor clutch connector (A), then remove the A/C compressor (B) without disconnecting the A/C hoses.



47. Check that the engine/transmission is completely free of vacuum hoses, fuel and coolant hoses, and electrical wiring.
48. Slowly lower the engine about 150 mm (6 in.). Check once again that all hoses and wires are disconnected from the engine/transmission.
49. Lower the engine all the way. Remove the chain hoist from the engine.
50. Remove the engine from under the vehicle.

Engine Installation

- 1. Install the accessory brackets, and tighten their bolts and nuts to the specified torques.



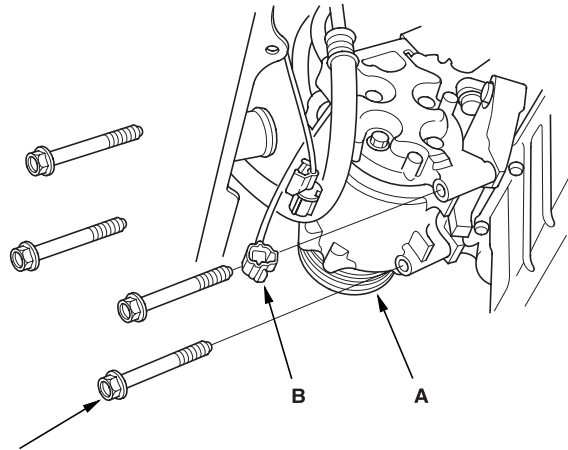


2. Position the engine under the vehicle. Attach the chain hoist to the engine, then lift the engine into position in the vehicle.

## NOTICE

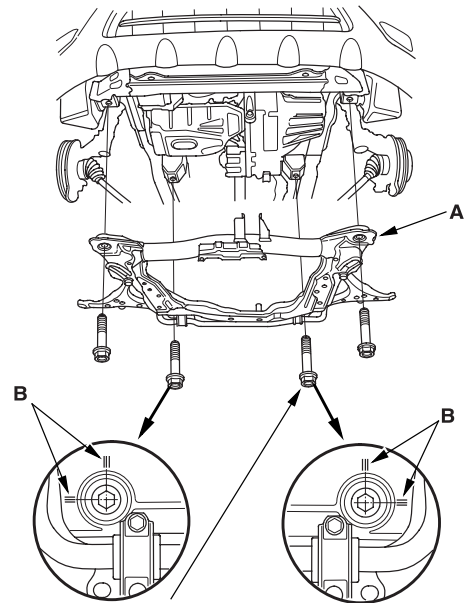
Reinstall the mounting bolts/support nuts in the sequence given. Failure to follow this sequence may cause excessive noise and vibration, and reduce bushing life.

3. Install the A/C compressor (A), and connect the compressor clutch connector (B).



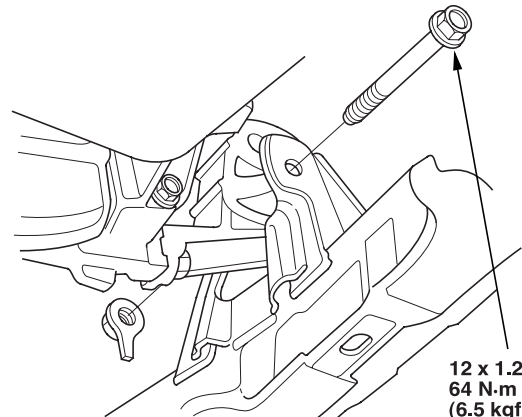
8 x 1.25 mm  
22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)

4. Install the sub-frame (A). Align the reference lines (B) on the sub-frame with the bolt head center, then tighten the bolts.



14 x 1.5 mm  
103 N·m (10.5 kgf·m, 76 lbf·ft)  
Replace.

5. Tighten the front mount mounting bolt.



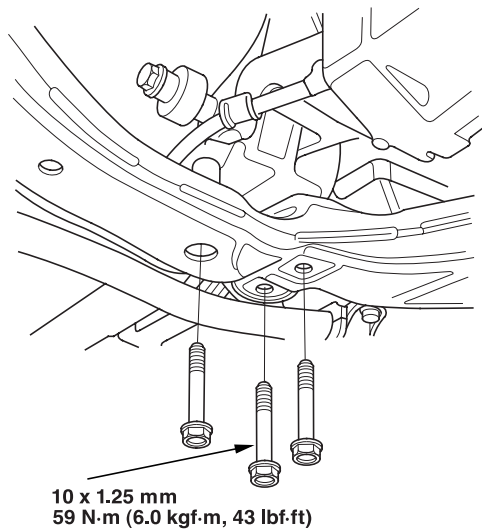
12 x 1.25 mm  
64 N·m  
(6.5 kgf·m, 47 lbf·ft)  
Replace.

(cont'd)

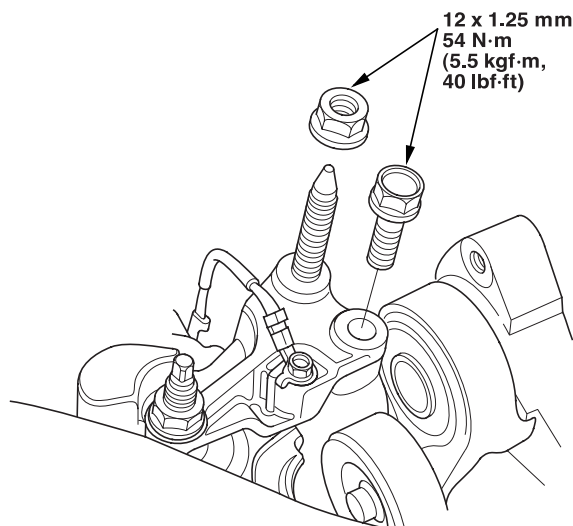


Engine Installation (cont'd)

6. Tighten the rear mount mounting bolts.



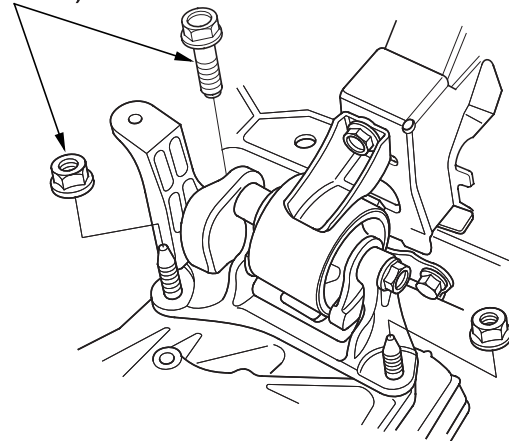
7. Lower the hoist.
8. Tighten the upper bracket mounting bolt and nut.



9. Tighten the transmission mount bracket support bolt/nuts.

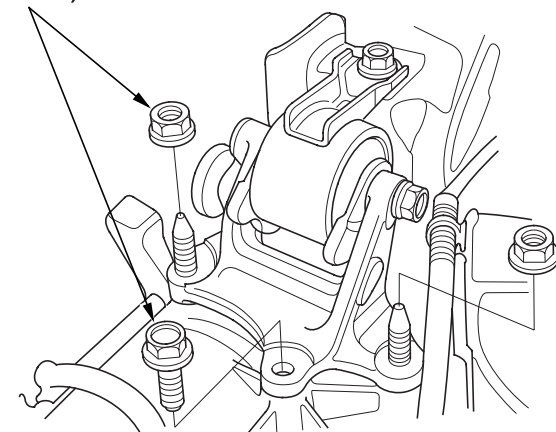
M/T:

12 x 1.25 mm  
54 N·m  
(5.5 kgf·m, 40 lbf·ft)



A/T:

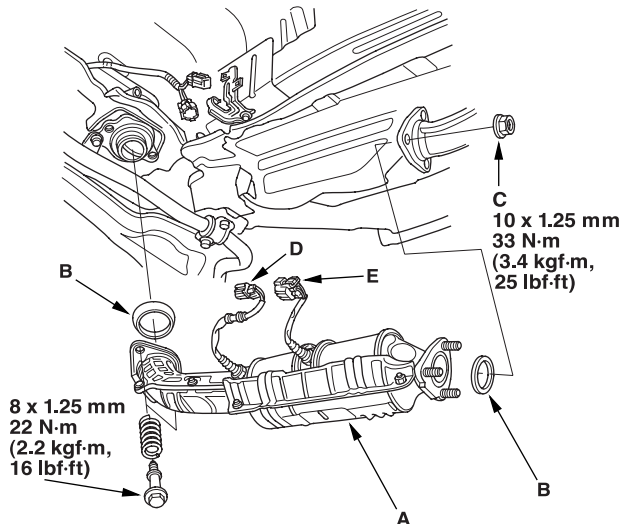
12 x 1.25 mm  
54 N·m  
(5.5 kgf·m, 40 lbf·ft)





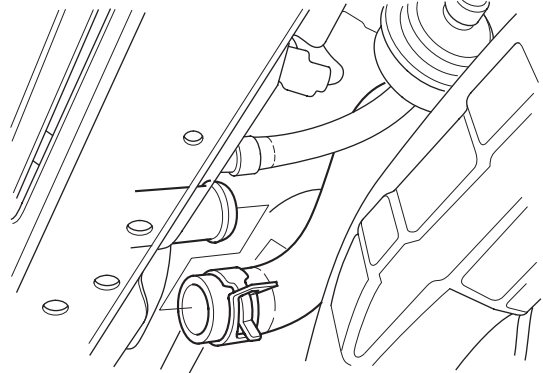


10. Remove the chain hoist from the engine.
11. Raise the hoist to full height.
12. Install a new set ring on the end of each driveshaft, then install the driveshafts. Make sure each ring "clicks" into place in the differential and intermediate shaft.
13. Connect the suspension lower arm ball joints (see page 18-20).
14. Connect the stabilizer links (see page 18-18).
15. Install the propeller shaft to the transfer (4WD) (see step 3 on (see page 13-64)).
16. Install the shift cable (A/T) (see page 14-157).
17. Install Three Way Catalytic Converter (TWC) assembly (A) (K20A4, K24A1 engines) or exhaust chamber (A) (K20A5 engine); use new gaskets (B) and new self locking nuts (C).

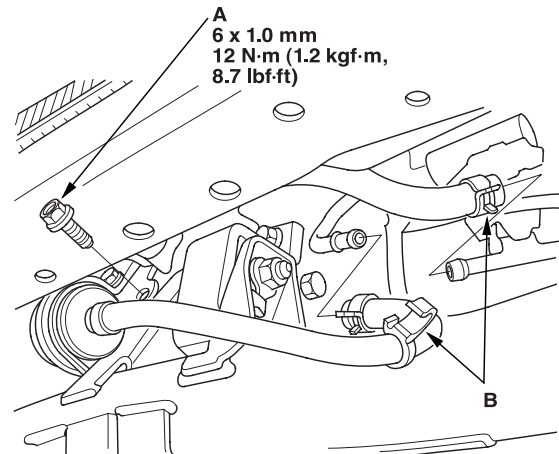


18. Connect the primary Heated Oxygen Sensor (primary HO2S) connector (D) (Except K20A5 engine).
19. Connect the secondary Heated Oxygen Sensor (secondary HO2S) connector (E) (KE, KG, KS, KR, KU, KZ, KQ, FO models)

20. Install the lower radiator hose.



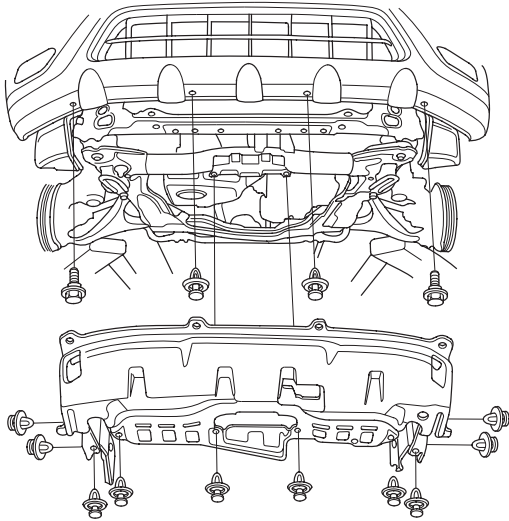
21. Tighten the Automatic Transmission Fluid (ATF) filter mounting bolt (A), and install the ATF cooler hoses (B) (A/T).



(cont'd)

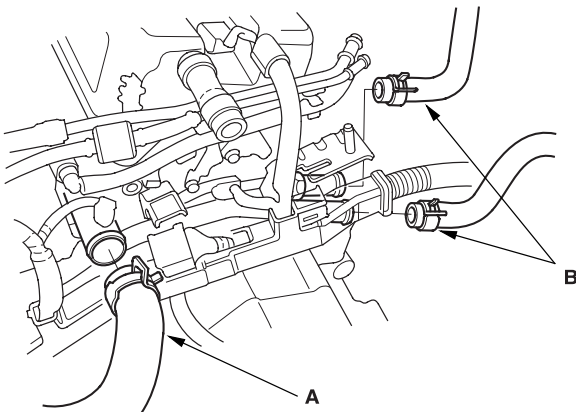
## Engine Installation (cont'd)

22. Install the splash shield.

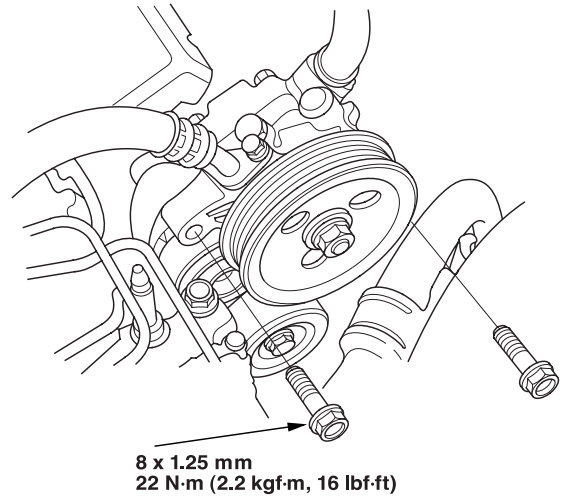


23. Lower the hoist.

24. Install the upper radiator hose (A) and heater hoses (B).



25. Install the Power Steering (P/S) pump.



26. Install the drive belt.

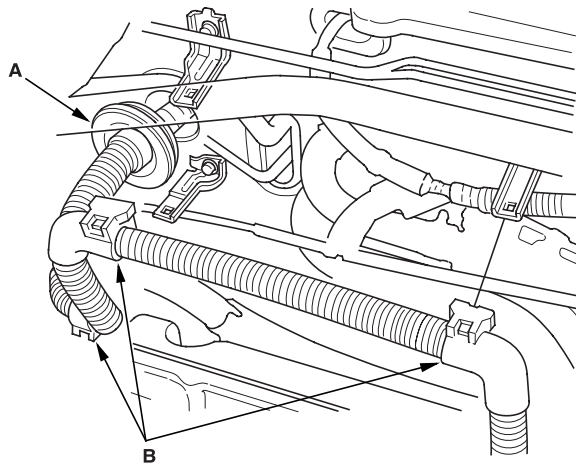
27. Install the throttle cable ([see page 11-184](#)), then adjust the cable ([see page 11-183](#)).

28. Install the cruise control cable, then adjust the cable ([see page 04-49](#)).

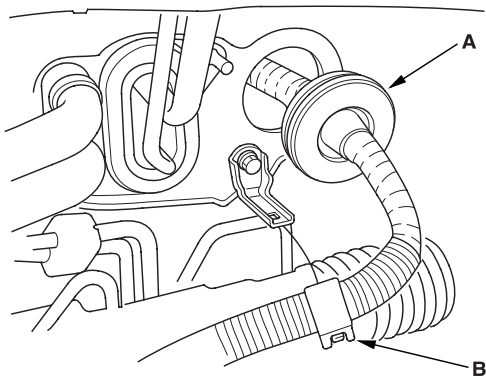


- 29.** Push the Engine Control Module (ECM)/Power train Control Module (PCM) connectors through the bulkhead, then install the grommet (A).

LHD models:



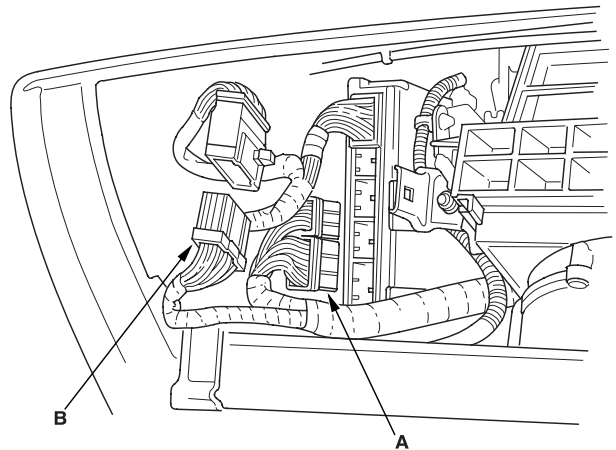
RHD models:



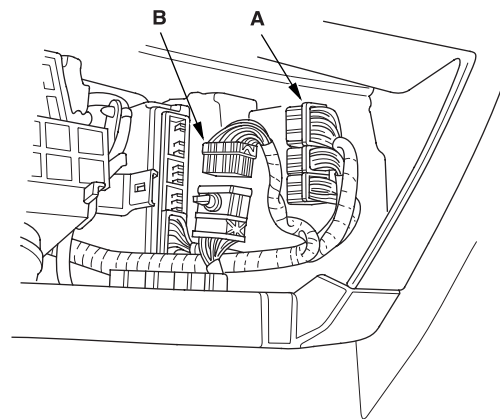
- 30.** Install the harness clamps (B).

- 31.** Connect the ECM/PCM connectors (A) and main wire harness connector (B).

LHD models:



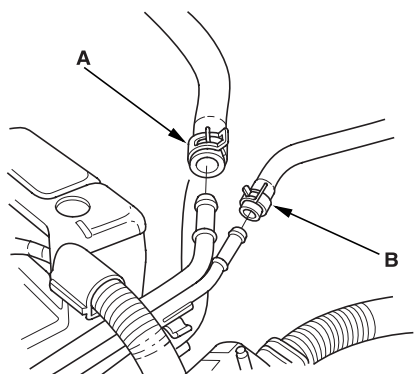
RHD models:



(cont'd)

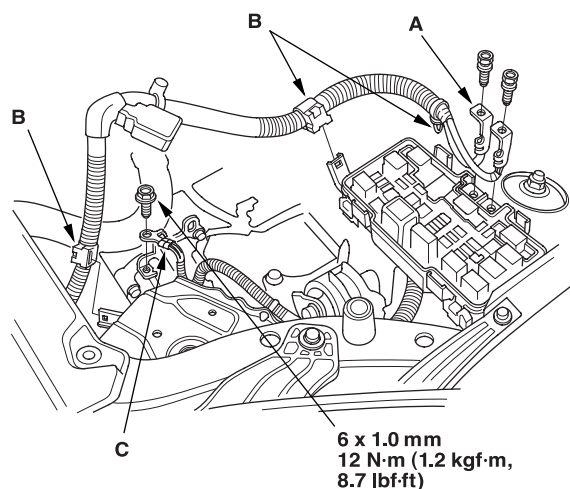
## Engine Installation (cont'd)

32. Install the brake booster vacuum hose (A) and the Evaporative Emission (EVAP) canister hose (B).

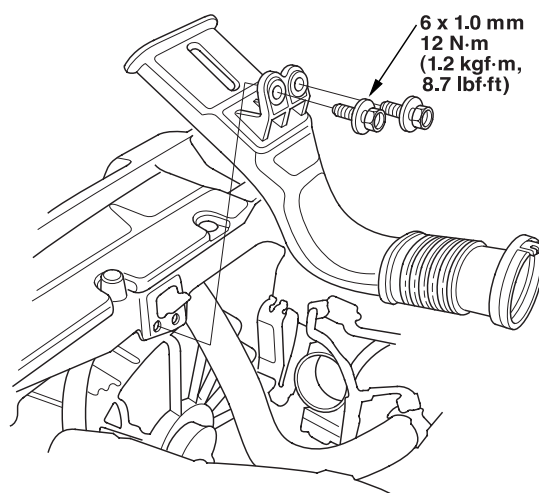


33. Connect the fuel feed hose (see page 11-162).
34. Install the select cable and shift cable (M/T) (see step 25 on page 13-14).
35. Install the clutch slave cylinder and clutch line bracket (M/T) (see step 24 on page 13-14).

36. Install the battery cables (A) on the under-hood fuse/relay box, then install the harness clamps (B).

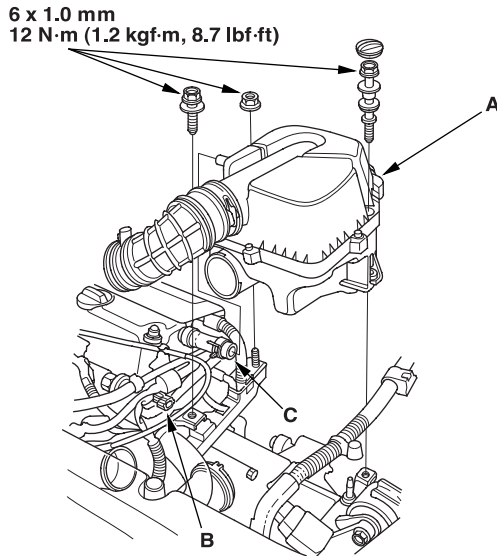


37. Install the ground cable (C).
38. Install the intake air duct.

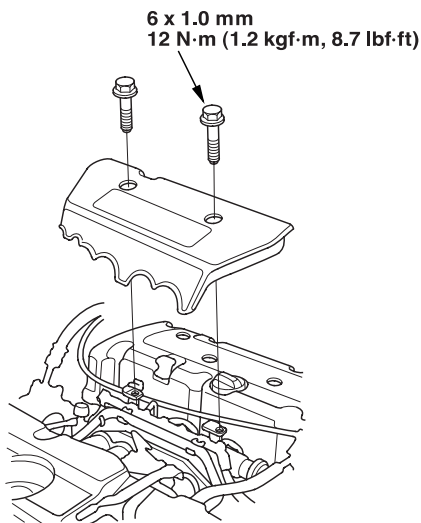




39. Install the air cleaner housing (A) and connect the Intake Air Temperature (IAT) sensor connector (B).



40. Install the breather hose (C).  
41. Install the intake manifold cover.



42. Install the battery. Clean the battery posts and cable terminals with sandpaper, then assemble them and apply grease to prevent corrosion.
43. Move the shift lever to each gear, and verify that the A/T gear position indicator follows the transmission range switch (A/T).
44. Check that the transmission shifts into gear smoothly (M/T).
45. Inspect for fuel leaks. Turn the ignition switch ON (II) (do not operate the starter) so that the fuel pump runs for about 2 seconds and pressurizes the fuel line. Repeat this operation two or three times, then check for fuel leakage at any point in the fuel line.
46. Refill the engine with engine oil ([see page 08-5](#)).
47. Refill the transmission with fluid:
- Manual transmission ([see page 13-4](#)).
  - Automatic transmission ([see page 14-131](#)).
48. Refill the radiator with engine coolant, and bleed air from the cooling system with the heater valve open ([see page 10-6](#)).
49. Inspect the idle speed ([see page 11-148](#)).
50. Inspect the ignition timing ([see page 04-20](#)).
51. Check the wheel alignment ([see page 18-4](#)).



## Engine Mechanical

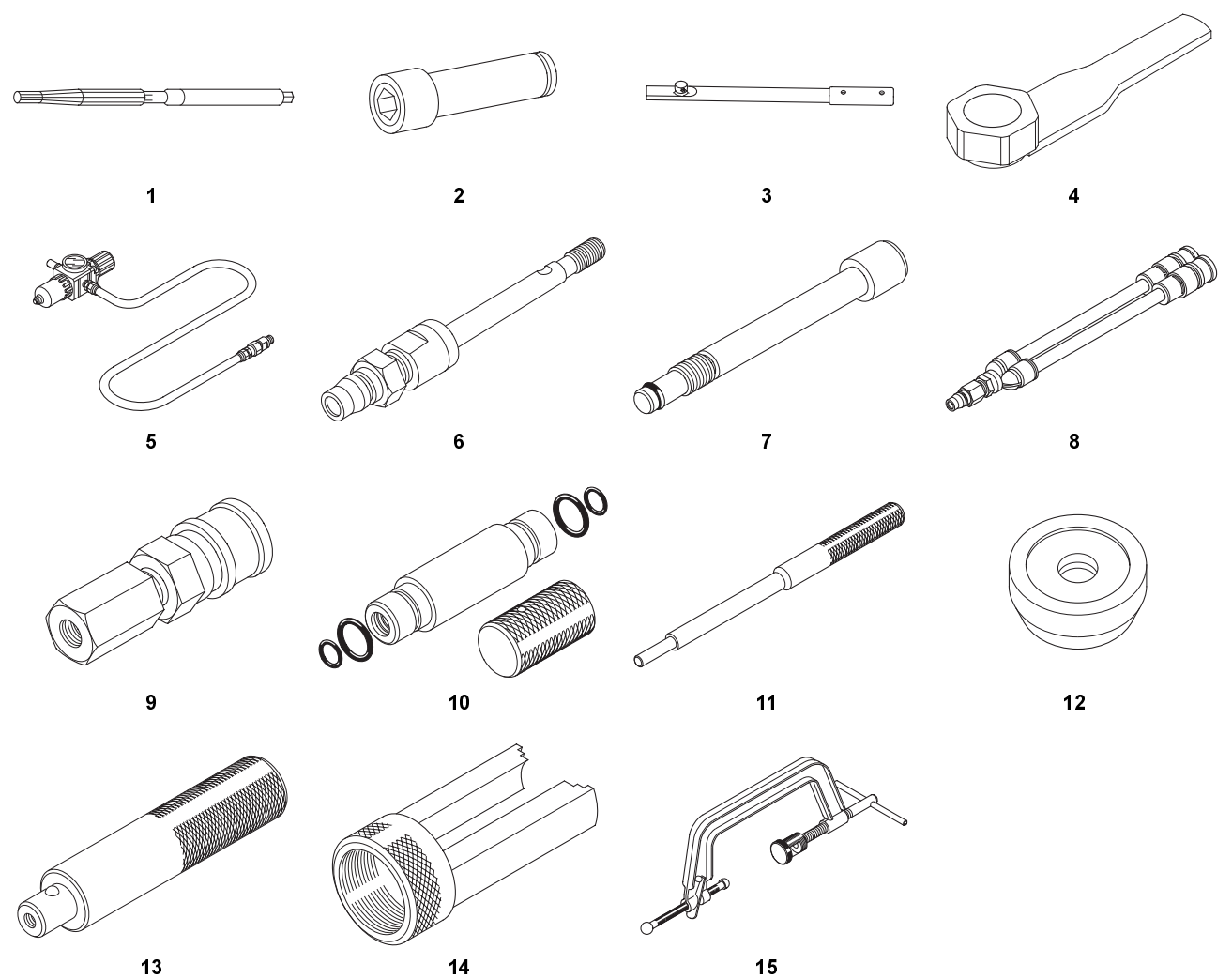
<b>Cylinder Head .....</b>	<b>06-2</b>
Special Tools .....	06-2
Component Location Index .....	06-3
Engine Compression Inspection .....	06-6
VTEC Rocker Arm Test .....	06-7
VTC Actuator Inspection .....	06-8
Valve Clearance Adjustment .....	06-9
Crankshaft Pulley Removal and Installation .....	06-11
Cam Chain Removal .....	06-12
Cam Chain Installation .....	06-15
Auto-Tensioner Removal/Installation .....	06-19
Chain Case Oil Seal Installation .....	06-21
Cam Chain Inspection .....	06-22
Cylinder Head Cover Removal .....	06-23
Cylinder Head Removal .....	06-24
VTC Actuator, Exhaust Camshaft Sprocket Replacement .....	06-25
Cylinder Head Inspection for Warpage .....	06-26
Rocker Arm Assembly Removal .....	06-27
Rocker Arms and Shafts Disassembly/Reassembly .....	06-28
Rocker Arms and Shafts Inspection .....	06-29
Camshaft Inspection .....	06-30
Valves, Springs and Valve Seals Removal .....	06-32
Valve Inspection .....	06-33
Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance Inspection .....	06-33
Valve Guide Replacement .....	06-34
Valve Seat Reconditioning .....	06-36
Valves, Springs and Valve Seals Installation .....	06-38
Rocker Arm Assembly Installation .....	06-39
Cylinder Head Installation .....	06-40
Cylinder Head Cover Installation .....	06-42



Cylinder Head

Special Tools

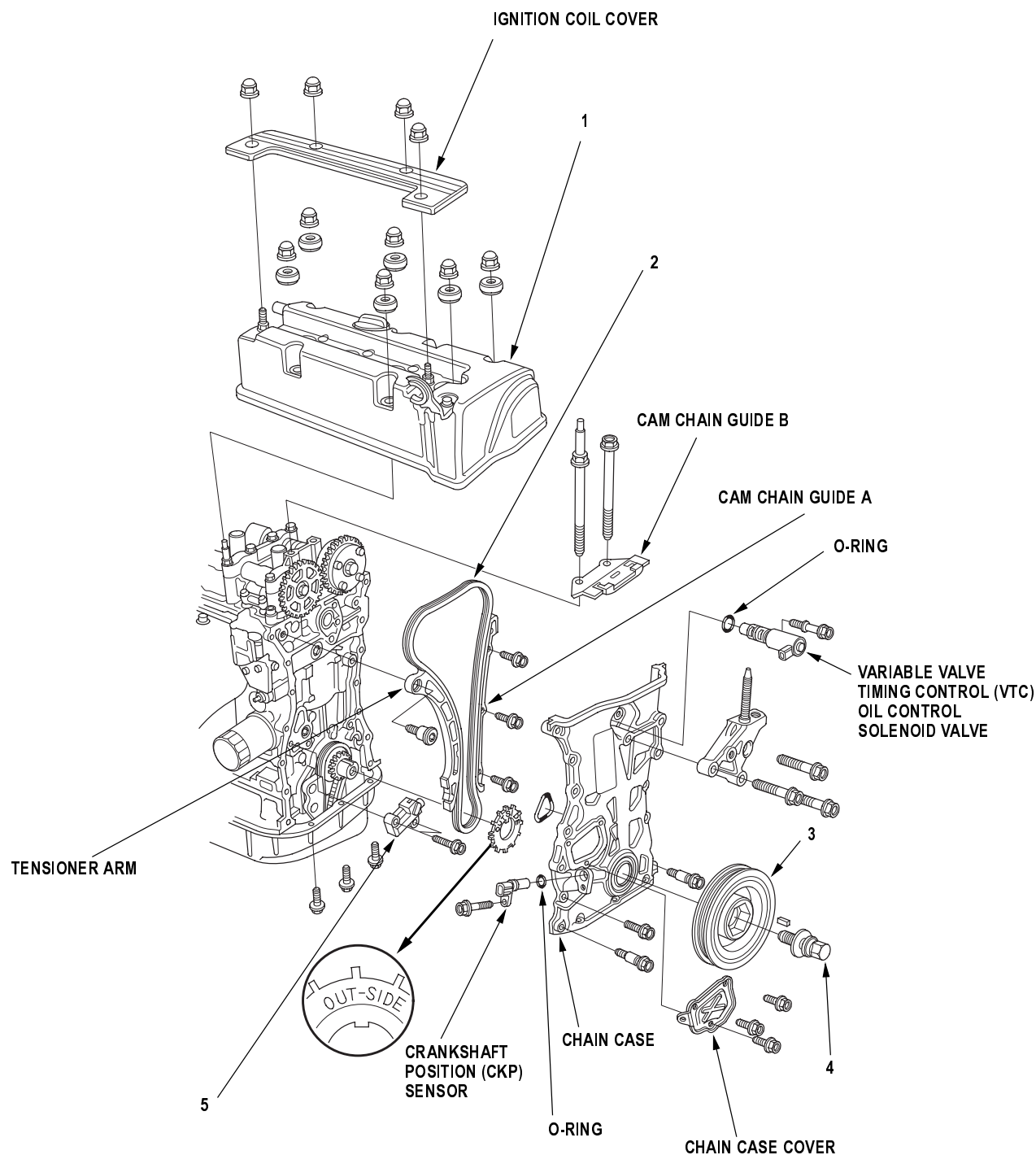
Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07HAH-PJ70100	Valve Guide Reamer, 5.525 mm	1
2	07JAA-0010200	Socket Wrench, 19 mm	1
3	07JAB-0010200	Handle	1
4	07JAB-0010400	Pulley Holder Attachment, HEX 50 mm	1
5	07LAJ-PR30101	Valve Inspection Set	1
6	07ZAJ-PNA0101	VTEC Air Adapter	2
7	07ZAJ-PNA0200	VTEC Air Stopper	1
8	07ZAJ-PNA0300	Air Joint Adapter	1
9	07ZAJ-PNA0400	Air Socket Adapter	1
10	07PAD-0010000	Stem Seal Driver	1
11	07742-0010100	Valve Guide Driver, 5.5 mm	1
12	07746-0010400	Driver Attachment, 52 x 55 mm	1
13	07749-0010000	Handle Driver	1
14	07757-PJ10100	Valve Spring Compressor Attachment	1
15	07757-0010000	Valve Spring Compressor	1







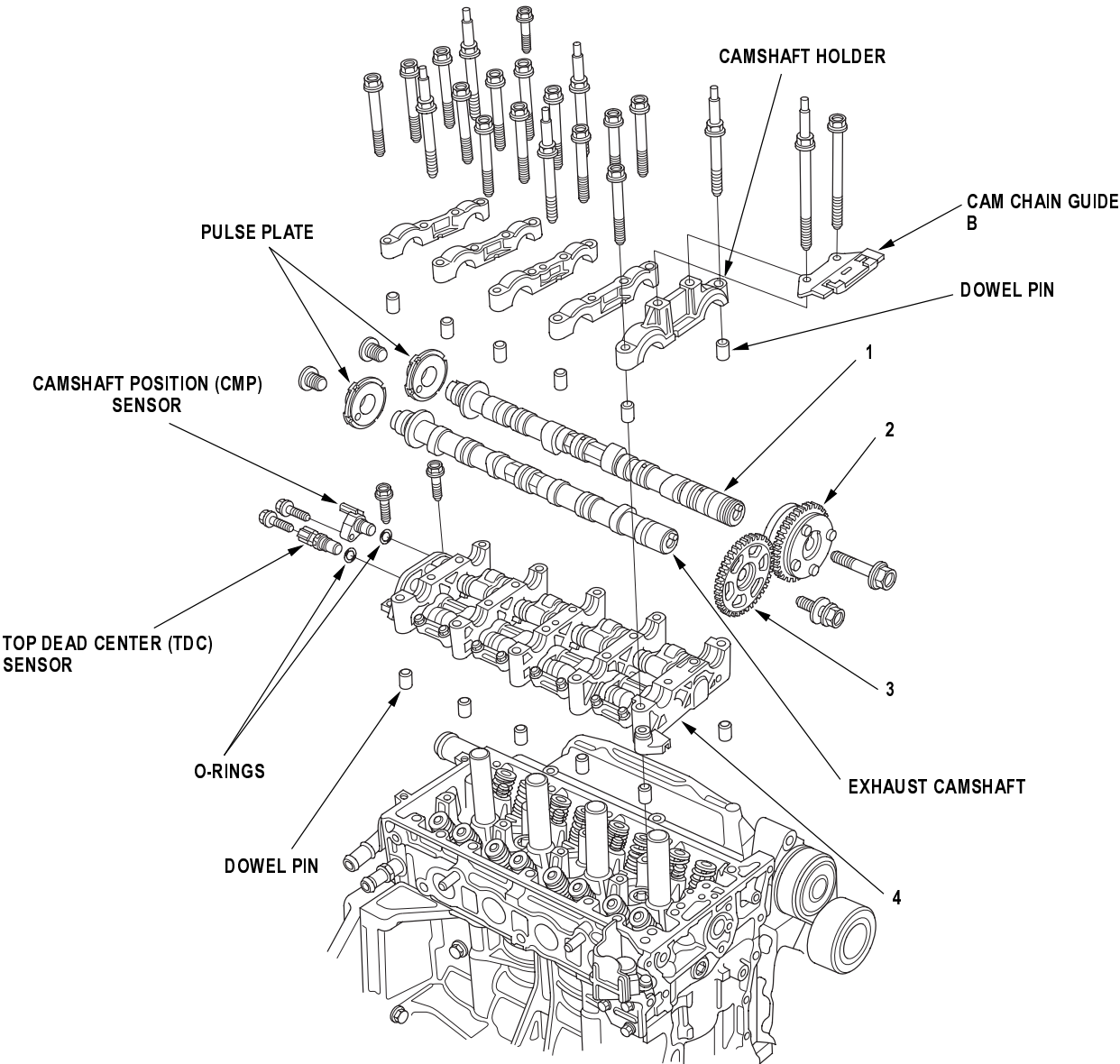
## Component Location Index



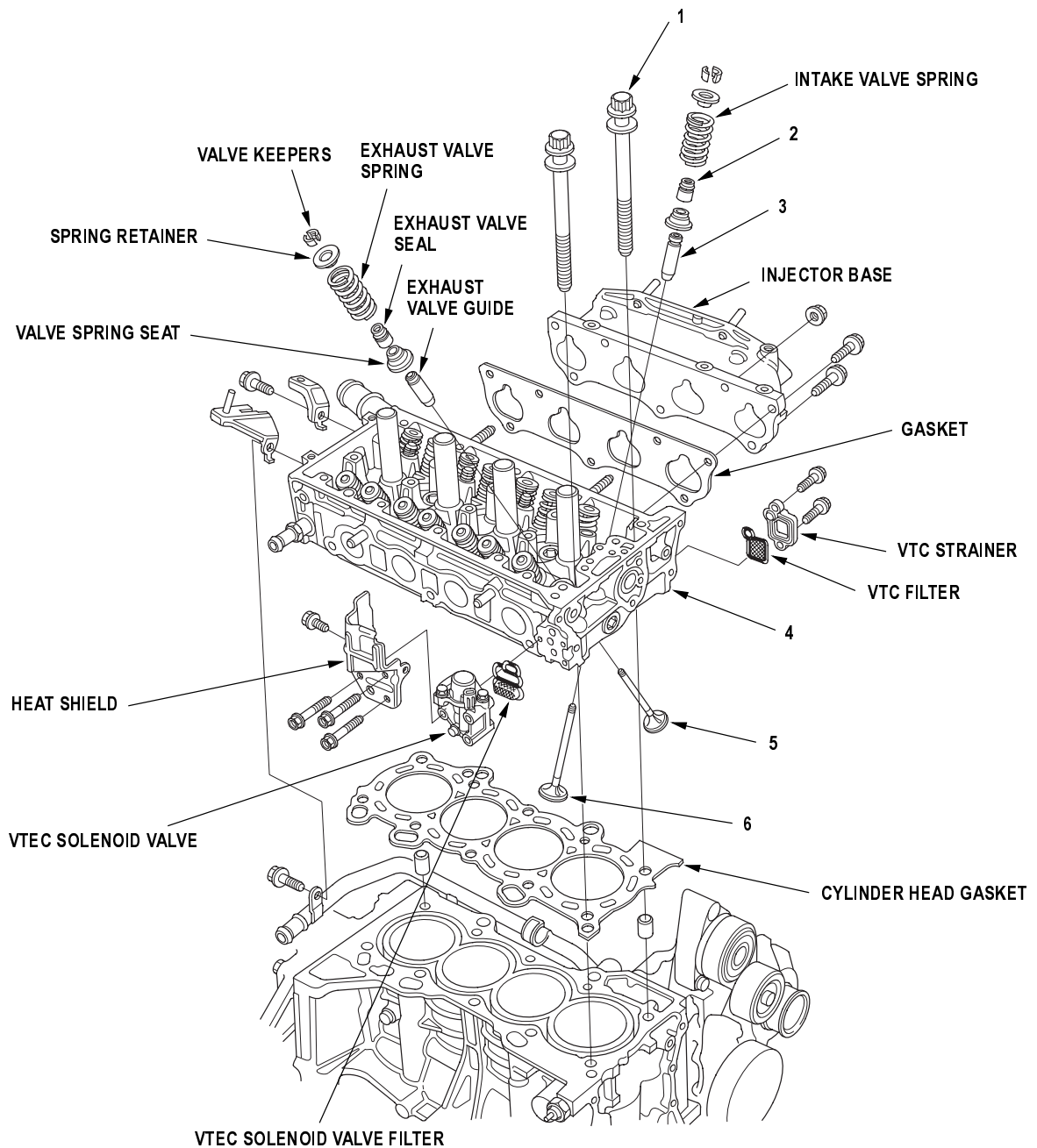
- |   |                        |   |
|---|------------------------|---|
| 1 | CYLINDER HEAD COVER    | Removal, <a href="#">page 06-23</a><br>Installation, <a href="#">page 06-42</a>   |
| 2 | CAM CHAIN              | Removal, <a href="#">page 06-12</a><br>Installation, <a href="#">page 06-15</a><br>Inspection, <a href="#">page 06-22</a> |
| 3 | CRANKSHAFT PULLEY      | Replacement, <a href="#">page 06-11</a>   |
| 4 | CRANKSHAFT PULLEY BOLT | Replacement, <a href="#">page 06-11</a>   |
| 5 | AUTO-TENSIONER         | Replacement, <a href="#">page 06-19</a>   |

(cont'd)

Component Location Index (cont'd)



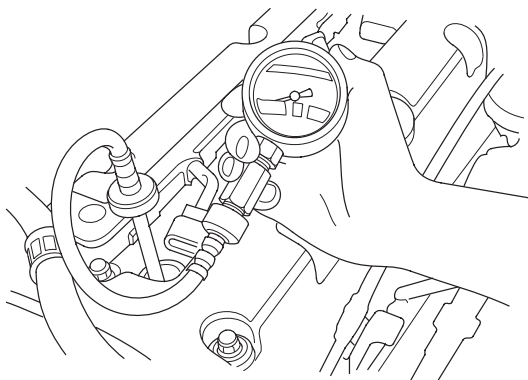
1	INTAKE CAMSHAFT	Inspection, <a href="#">page 06-30</a>
2	VTC ACTUATOR	Removal, <a href="#">page 06-25</a> Installation, <a href="#">page 06-26</a>
3	EXHAUST CAMSHAFT SPROCKET	Removal, <a href="#">page 06-25</a> Installation, <a href="#">page 06-26</a>
4	ROCKER ARM ASSEMBLY	Overhaul, <a href="#">page 06-28</a> Inspection, <a href="#">page 06-29</a>



1	CYLINDER HEAD BOLT	Inspection, <a href="#">page 06-40</a>
2	INTAKE VALVE SPRING	Replacement, <a href="#">page 06-32</a>
3	INTAKE VALVE GUIDE	Replacement, <a href="#">page 06-34</a>
4	CYLINDER HEAD	Removal, <a href="#">page 06-34</a> Inspection, <a href="#">page 06-26</a> Installation, <a href="#">page 06-40</a>
5	EXHAUST VALVE	Removal, <a href="#">page 06-32</a> Installation, <a href="#">page 06-38</a>
6	INTAKE VALVE	Removal, <a href="#">page 06-32</a> Installation, <a href="#">page 06-38</a>

### Engine Compression Inspection

1. Warm up the engine to normal operating temperature (cooling fan comes on).
2. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
3. Remove the intake manifold cover (see step 1 on [page 06-23](#)).
4. Disconnect all four injector connectors.
5. Start the engine, and let it run until it stalls.
6. Remove the four ignition coils ([see page 04-21](#)).
7. Remove the four spark plugs.
8. Attach the compression gauge to the spark plug hole.



9. Connect a tachometer.
10. Open the throttle fully, then crank the engine with the starter motor and measure the compression.  
**Compression Pressure:**  
**Above 930 kPa (9.5 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup> 135 psi)-250 rpm (min<sup>-1</sup>)**
11. Measure the compression on the remaining cylinders.  
**Maximum variation:**  
**Within 200 kPa (2.0 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 28 psi)**
12. If the compression is not within specifications, check the following items, then remeasure the compression.
  - Damaged or worn valves and seats
  - Damaged cylinder head gasket
  - Damaged or worn piston rings
  - Damaged or worn piston and cylinder bore

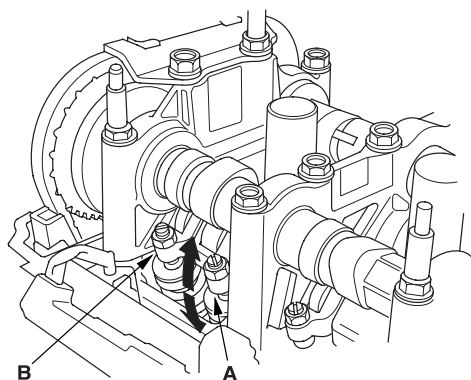


## VTEC Rocker Arm Test

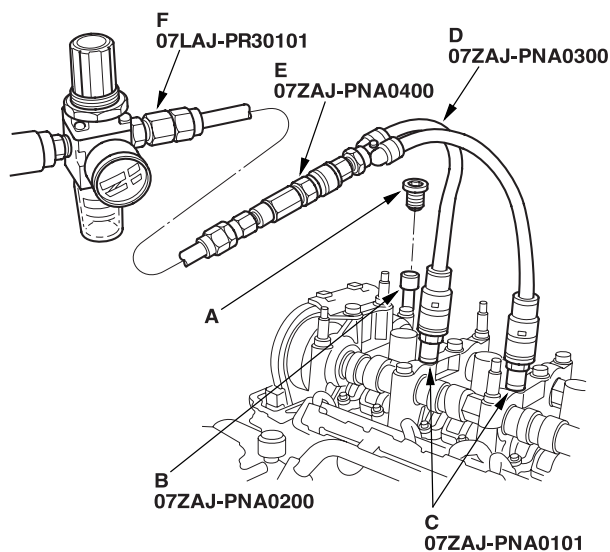
### Special Tools Required

- Valve inspection set 07LAJ-PR30101
- VTEC air adapter 07ZAJ-PNA0101
- VTEC air stopper 07ZAJ-PNA0200
- Air joint adapter 07ZAJ-PNA0300
- Air socket adapter 07ZAJ-PNA0400

1. Remove the cylinder head cover (see page 06-23).
2. Set the No. 1 piston at Top Dead Center (TDC), (see step 1 on page 06-12).
3. Verify that the intake primary rocker arm (A) moves independently of the intake secondary rocker arm (B).
  - If the intake primary rocker arm does not move, remove the primary and secondary rocker arms as an assembly and check that the pistons in the secondary and primary rocker arms move smoothly. If any rocker arm needs replacing, replace the primary and secondary rocker arms as an assembly, and test.
  - If the intake primary rocker arm moves freely, go to step 4.



4. Repeat step 3 on the remaining intake primary rocker arms with each piston at TDC. When all the primary rocker arms pass the test, go to step 5.
5. Check that the air pressure on the shop air compressor gauge indicates over 400 kPa (4 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 57 psi).
6. Inspect the valve clearance (see page 06-9).
7. Remove the sealing bolt (A) from the relief hole, and install the VTEC air stopper (B).



8. Remove the No. 2 and No. 3 camshaft holder bolts, and install the VTEC air adapters (C) finger-tight.
9. Connect the air joint adapter (D), air socket adapter (E), and valve inspection set (F).

(cont'd)

## VTEC Rocker Arm Test (cont'd)t

10. Loosen the valve on the regulator, and apply the specified air pressure.

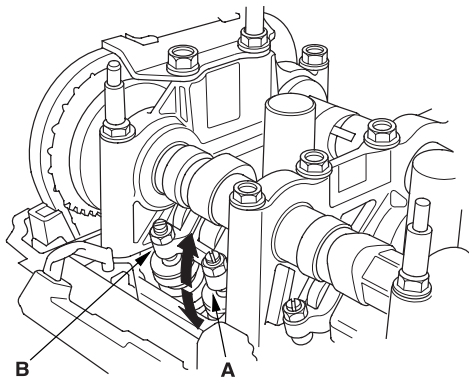
**Specified air pressure:**

**290 kPa (3.0m kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 42 psi)**

NOTE: If the synchronizing piston does not move after applying air pressure; move the primary or secondary rocker arm up and down manually by rotating the crankshaft clockwise.

11. With the specified air pressure applied, move the intake primary rocker arm (A) for the No. 1 cylinder. The primary rocker arm and secondary rocker arm (B) should move together.

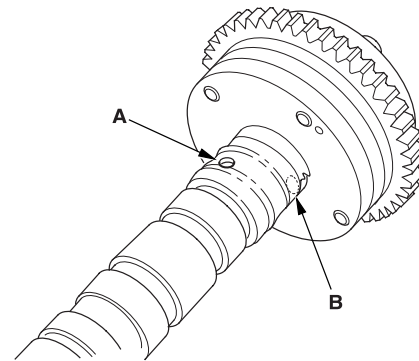
- If the intake secondary rocker arm does not move, remove the primary and secondary rocker arms as an assembly and check that the pistons in the primary and secondary rocker arms move smoothly. If any rocker arm needs replacing, replace the primary and secondary rocker arms as an assembly, and test.



12. Remove the special tools.
13. Tighten the camshaft holder mounting bolts to 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft).
14. Tighten the sealing bolt to 20 N·m (2.0 kgf·m, 14 lbf·ft).
15. Install the cylinder head cover (see page 06-42).

## VTC Actuator Inspection

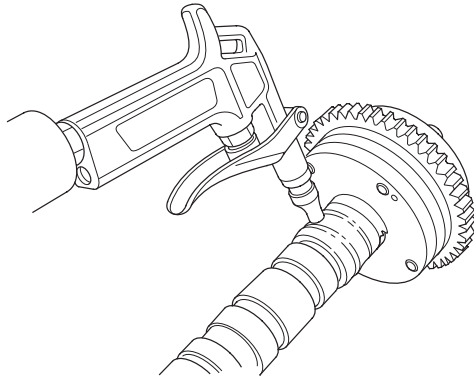
1. Remove the cylinder head cover (see page 06-23).
2. Remove the auto-tensioner (see page 06-19).
3. Loosen the rocker arm adjusting screws (see step 2 on page 06-27).
4. Remove the camshaft holder (see step 3 on page 06-27).
5. Remove the intake camshaft.
6. Check that the Variable Valve Timing Control (VTC) actuator is locked by turning the VTC actuator clockwise and counterclockwise. If the VTC actuator is not locked, replace the VTC actuator.
7. Seal the advance holes (A) and retard holes (B) in the No. 1 camshaft journal with the tape.



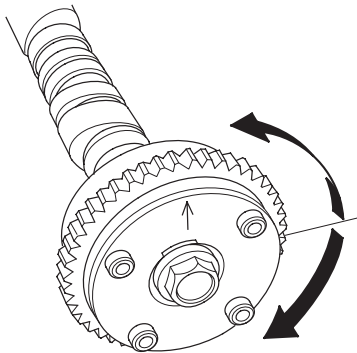
8. Punch a hole in the tape over one of the advance holes.



9. Apply air to the advance hole to release the lock.



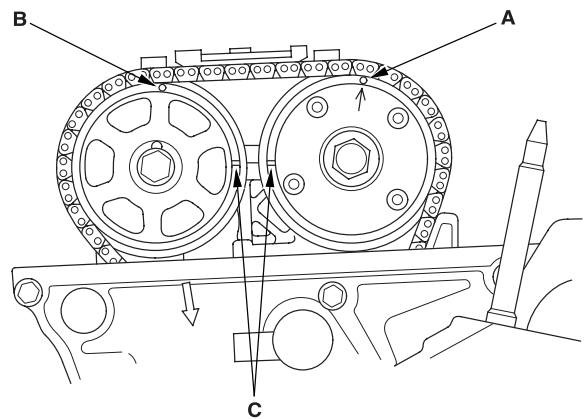
10. Check that the VTC actuator moves smoothly. If the VTC actuator does not move smoothly, replace the VTC actuator.



## Valve Clearance Adjustment

NOTE: Adjust the valves only when the cylinder head temperature is less than 38°C (100°F).

1. Remove the cylinder head cover (see page 06-23).
2. Set the No. 1 piston at Top Dead Center (TDC). The punch mark (A) marked with an arrow on the Variable Valve Timing Control (VTC) actuator and the punch mark (B) on the exhaust camshaft sprocket should be at the top. Align the TDC marks (C) on the VTC actuator and exhaust camshaft sprocket.



(cont'd)



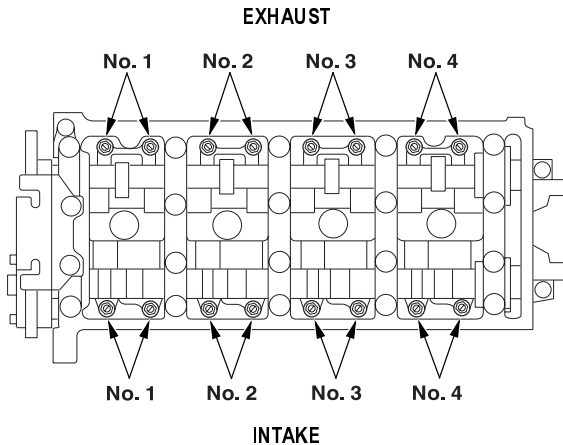
### Valve Clearance Adjustment (cont'd)

3. Select the correct thickness feeler gauge for the valves you're going to check.

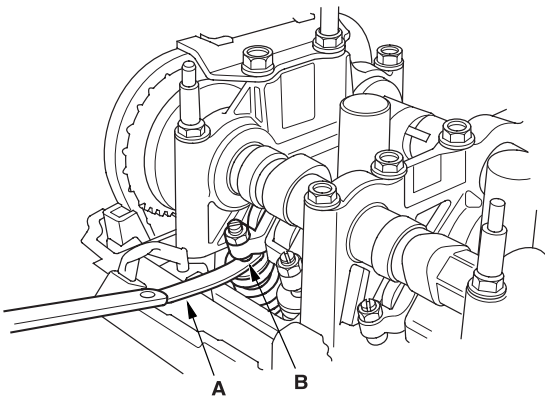
Intake: 0.21 - 0.25 mm (0.008 - 0.010 in.)

Exhaust: 0.28 - 0.32 mm (0.011 - 0.013 in.)

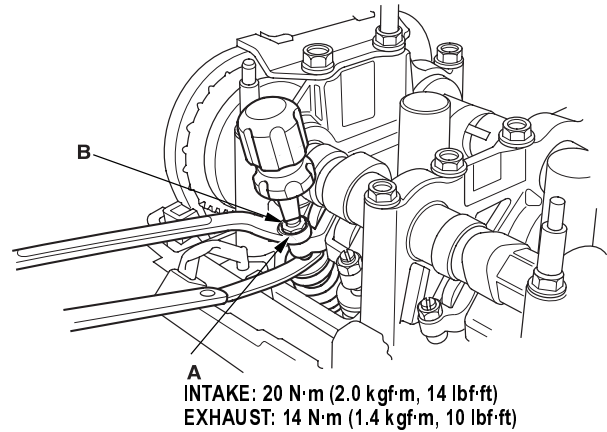
Adjusting screw locations:



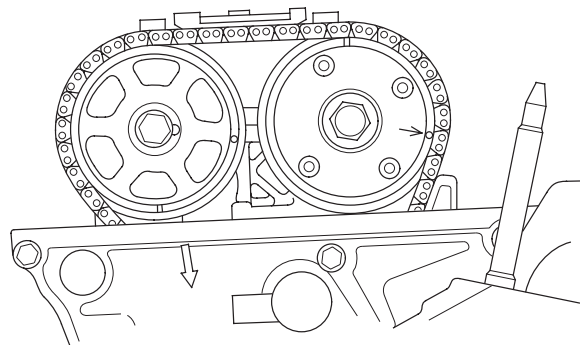
4. Insert the feeler gauge (A) between the adjusting screw (B) and the end of the valve stem and slide it back and forth; you should feel a slight amount of drag.



5. If you feel too much or too little drag, loosen the locknut (A), and turn the adjusting screw (B) until the drag on the feeler gauge is correct.



6. Tighten the locknut and recheck the clearance. Repeat the adjustment if necessary.
7. Rotate the crankshaft 180° clockwise (camshaft pulley turns 90°).

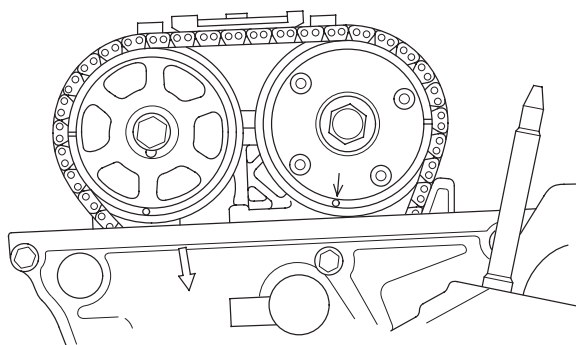


8. Check and, if necessary, adjust the valve clearance on No. 3 cylinder.

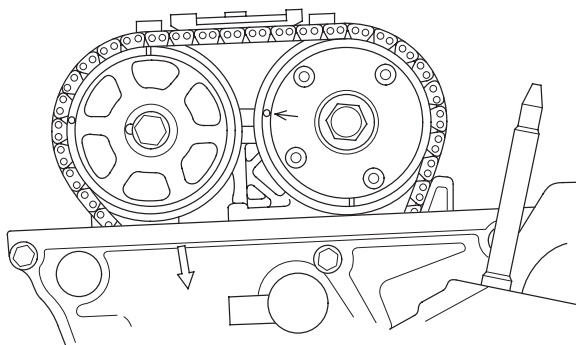




9. Rotate the crankshaft 180° clockwise (camshaft pulley turns 90°).



10. Check and, if necessary, adjust the valve clearance on No. 4 cylinder.
11. Rotate the crankshaft 180° clockwise (camshaft pulley turns 90°).



12. Check and, if necessary, adjust the valve clearance on No. 2 cylinder.
13. Install the cylinder head cover (see page 06-42).

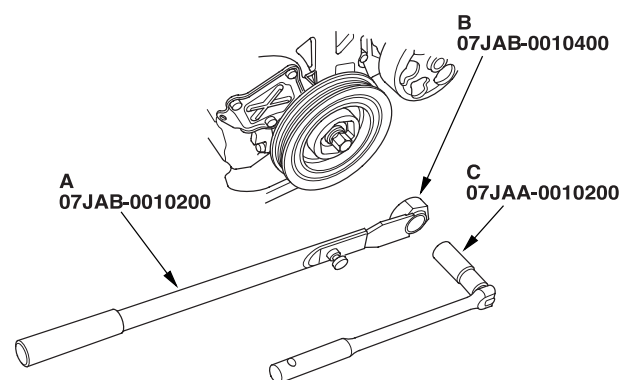
## Crankshaft Pulley Removal and Installation

### Special Tools Required

- Handle 07JAB-0010200
- Pulley holder attachment, HEX 50 mm 07JAB-0010400
- Socket wrench, 19 mm 07JAA-0010200

### Removal

1. Remove front tires/wheels.
2. Remove the splash shield (see step 3 on [page 06-12](#)).
3. Hold the pulley with handle (A) and holder attachment (B).



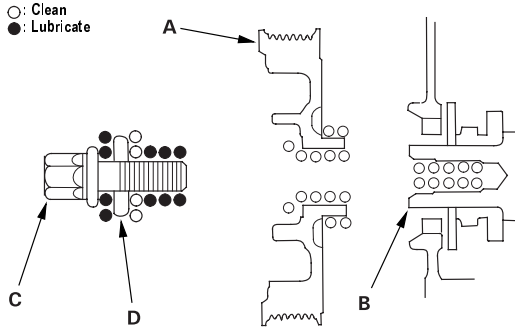
4. Remove the bolt with a 19 mm socket (C) and breaker bar.

(cont'd)

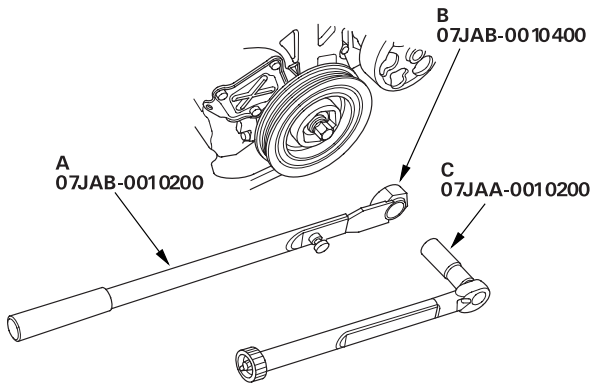
### Crankshaft Pulley Removal and Installation (cont'd)

#### Installation

1. Clean the crankshaft pulley (A), crankshaft (B), bolt (C), and washer (D). Lubricate as shown below.



2. Install the crankshaft pulley, and hold the pulley with handle (A) and holder attachment (B).

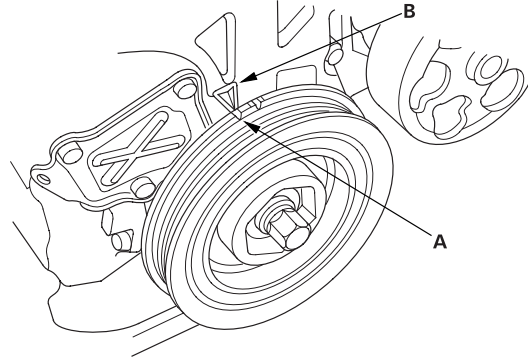


3. Tighten the bolt to 245 N·m (25.0 kgf·m, 181 lbf·ft) with a torque wrench and 19 mm socket (C). Do not use an impact wrench.
4. Install the splash shield (see step 24 on [page 06-19](#)).
5. Install front tires/wheels.

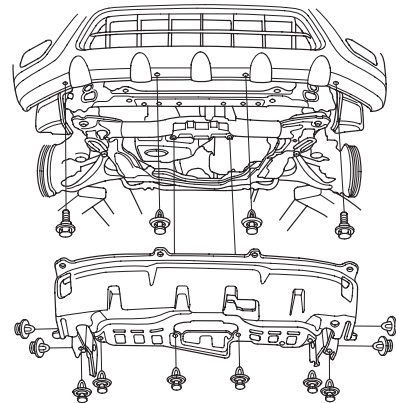
### Cam Chain Removal

NOTE: Keep the cam chain away from magnetic fields.

1. Turn the crankshaft pulley so its Top Dead Center (TDC) mark (A) lines up with the pointer (B).



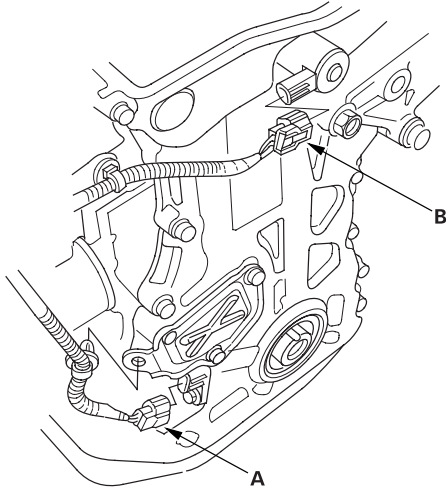
2. Remove the front tires/wheels.
3. Remove the splash shield.



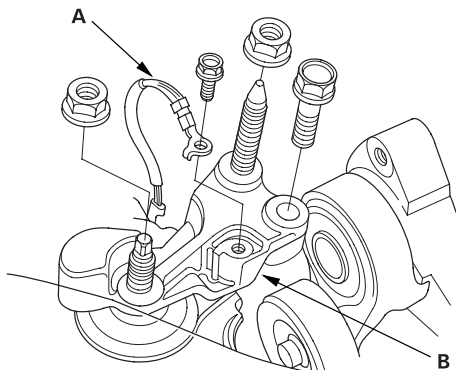
4. Remove the drive belt ([see page 04-29](#)).
5. Remove the cylinder head cover ([see page 06-23](#)).
6. Remove the crankshaft pulley ([see page 06-11](#)).



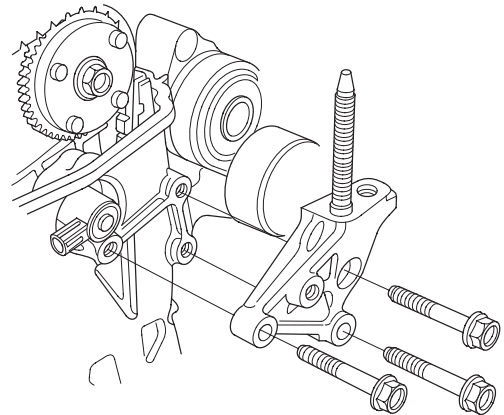
7. Disconnect the Crankshaft Position (CKP) sensor connector (A) and Variable Valve Timing Control (VTC) oil control solenoid valve connector (B).



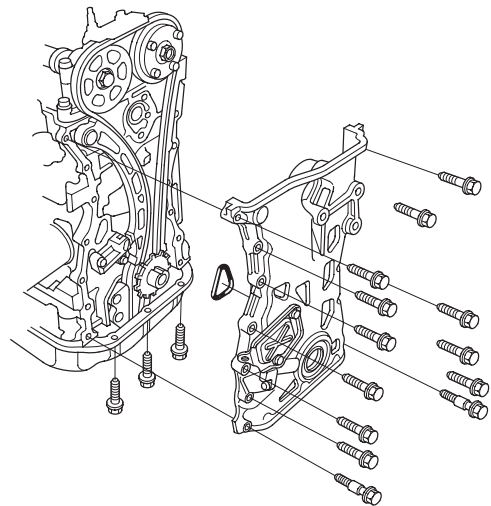
8. Remove the VTC oil control solenoid valve (see step 1 on [page 11-137](#)).
9. Support the engine with a jack and wood block under the oil pan.
10. Remove the ground cable (A), and remove the upper bracket (B).



11. Remove the side engine mount bracket.



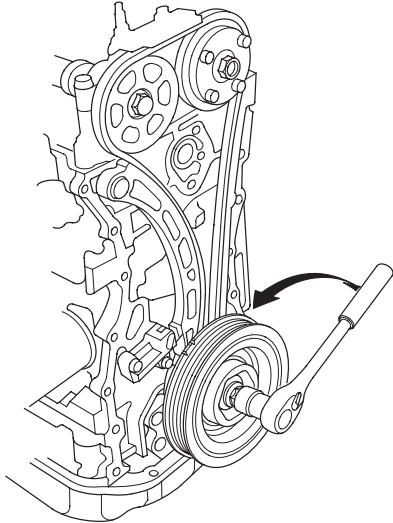
12. Remove the chain case.



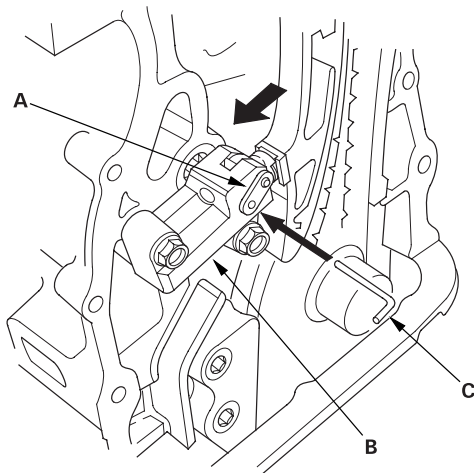
(cont'd)

### Cam Chain Removal (cont'd)

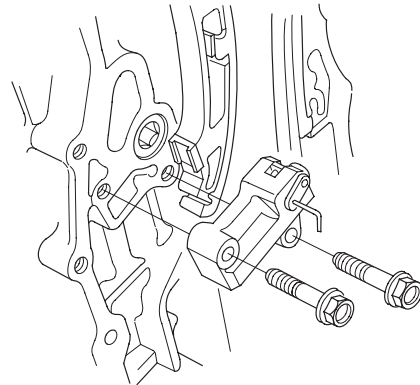
13. Loosely install the crankshaft pulley.
14. Turn the crankshaft counterclockwise to compress the auto-tensioner.



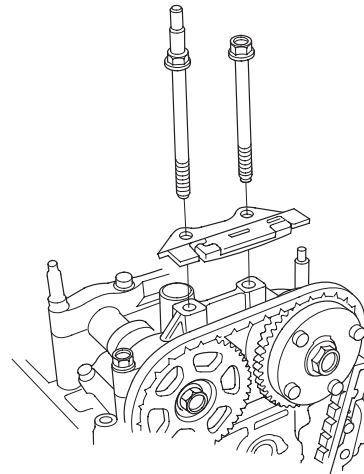
15. Align the holes on the lock (A) and the auto-tensioner (B), then insert a 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) diameter pin (C) into the holes. Turn the crankshaft clockwise to secure the pin.



16. Remove the auto-tensioner.

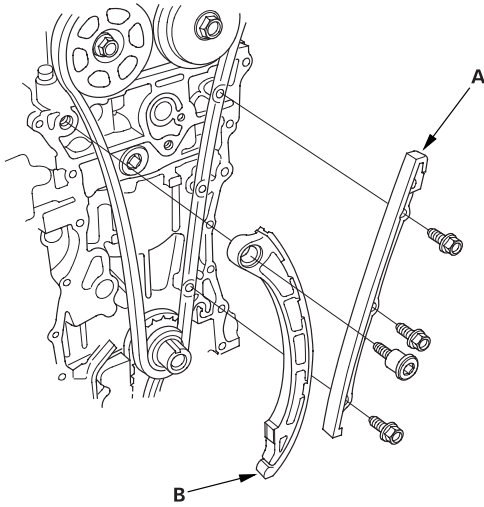


17. Remove the cam chain guide B.





18. Remove the cam chain guide A (A) and tensioner arm (B).

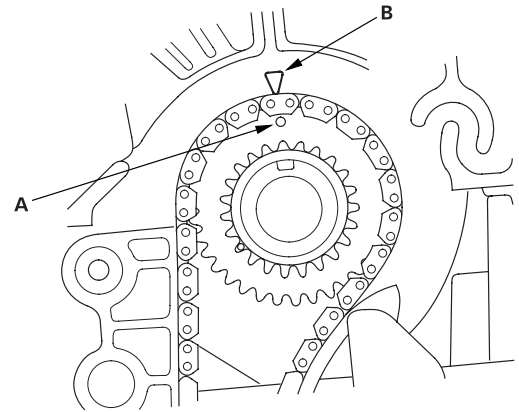


19. Remove the cam chain.

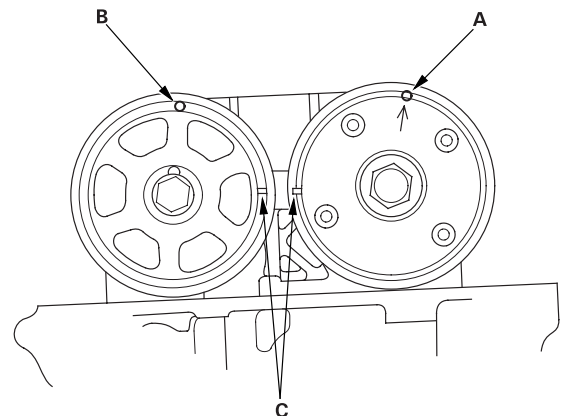
## Cam Chain Installation

NOTE: Keep the cam chain away from magnetic fields.

1. Set the crankshaft to Top Dead Center (TDC). Align the TDC mark (A) on the crankshaft sprocket with the pointer (B) on the cylinder block.



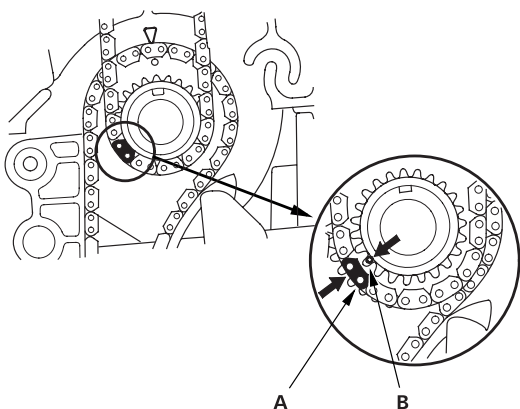
2. Set the camshafts to TDC. The punch mark (A) marked with an arrow on the Variable Valve Timing Control (VTC) actuator and the punch mark (B) on the exhaust camshaft sprocket should be at the top. Align the TDC marks (C) on the VTC actuator and exhaust camshaft sprocket.



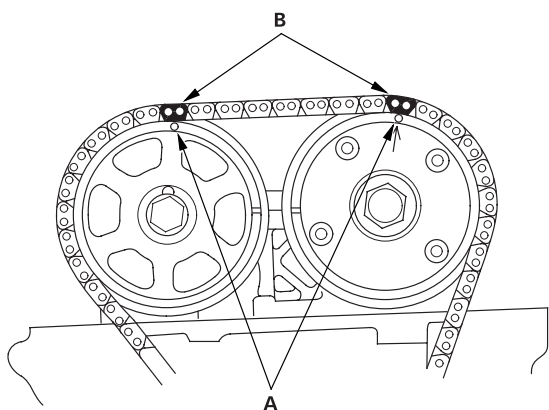
(cont'd)

### Cam Chain Installation (cont'd)

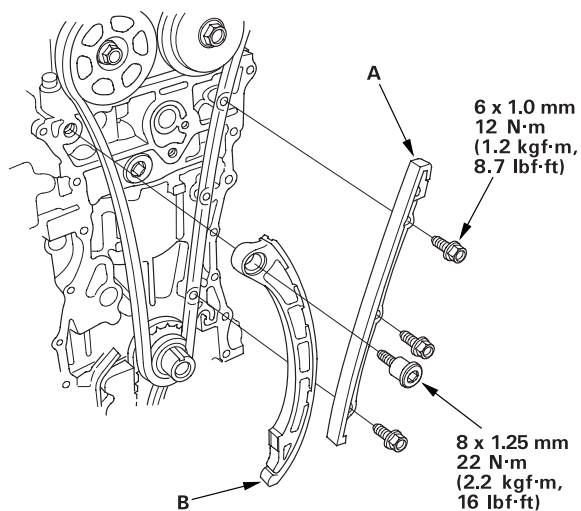
3. Install the cam chain on the crankshaft sprocket with the colored piece (A) aligned with the punch mark (B) on the crankshaft sprocket.



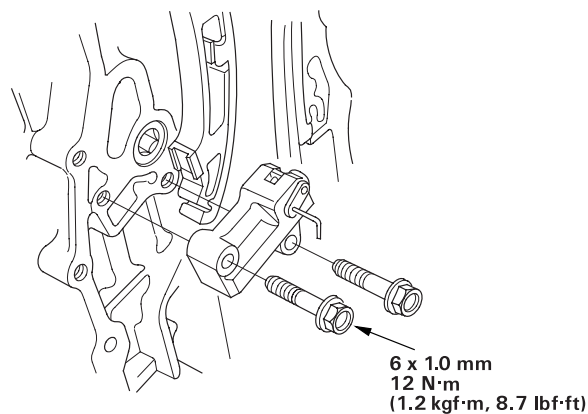
4. Install the cam chain on the VTC actuator and exhaust camshaft sprocket with the punch marks (A) aligned with the two colored pieces (B).



5. Install the cam chain guide A (A) and tensioner arm (B).

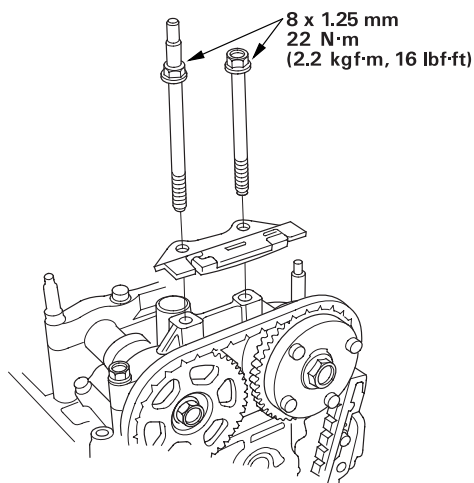


6. Install the auto-tensioner.

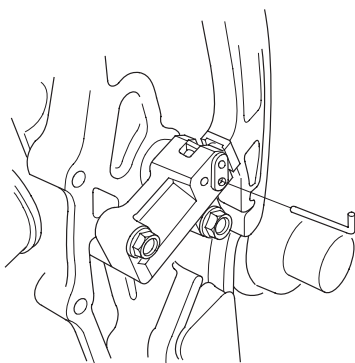




7. Install the cam chain guide B.

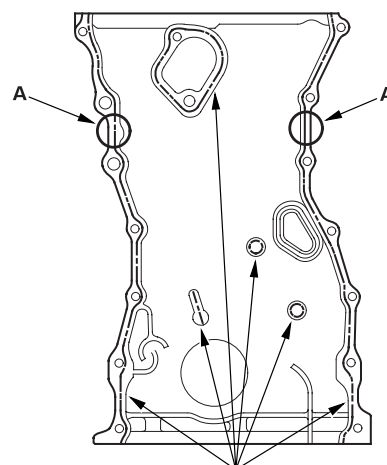


8. Remove the pin from the auto-tensioner.



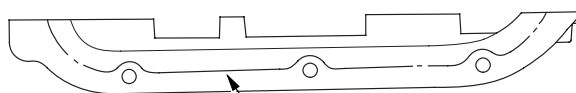
9. Check the chain case oil seal for damage. If the oil seal is damaged, replace the chain case oil seal (see page 06-21).

10. Remove old liquid gasket from the chain case mating surfaces, bolts, and bolt holes.
11. Clean and dry the chain case mating surfaces.
12. Apply liquid gasket, P/N 08C70-K0234M, 08C70-K0334M or 08C70-X0331S, evenly to the cylinder block mating surface of the chain case and to the inner threads of the holes.



Apply liquid gasket along the broken line.

13. Apply liquid gasket to the cylinder block upper surface contact areas (A) on the chain case.
  14. Apply liquid gasket, P/N 08C70-K0334M or 08C70-X0331S, evenly to the oil pan mating surface of the chain case and to the inner threads of the holes.
- NOTE: Do not install the parts if 5 minutes or more have elapsed since applying liquid gasket. Instead, reapply liquid gasket after removing old residue.



Apply liquid gasket along the broken line.

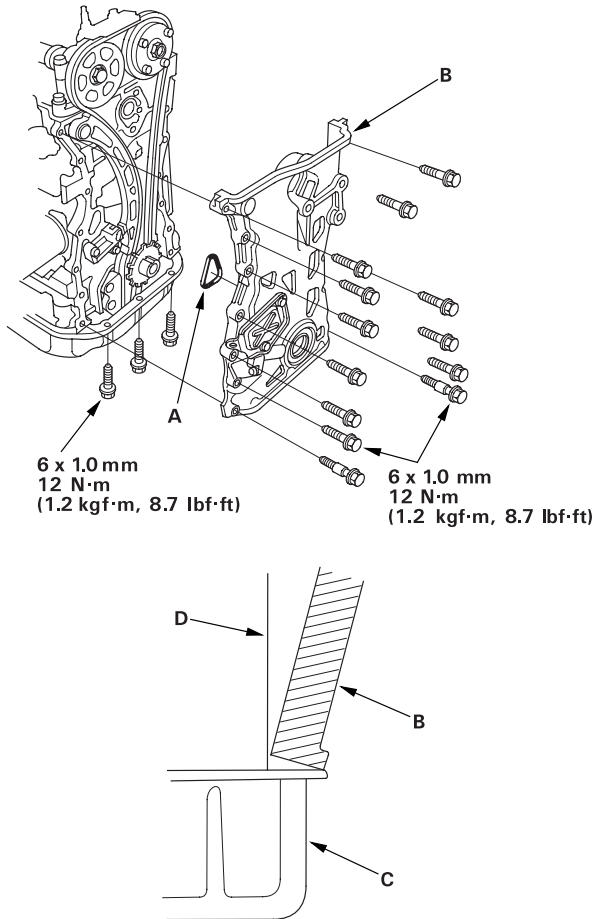
(cont'd)



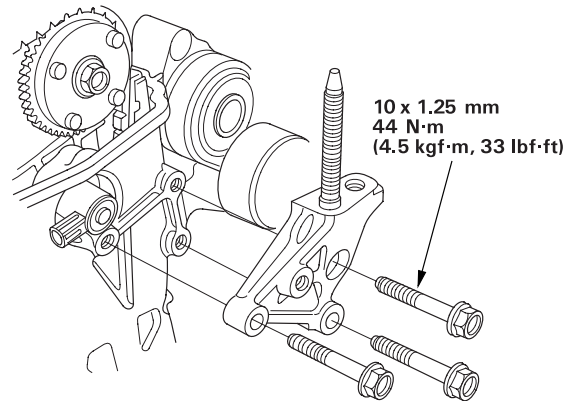
## Cam Chain Installation (cont'd)

15. Install the new O-ring (A) on the chain case. Set the edge of the chain case (B) to the edge of the oil pan (C), then install the chain case on the cylinder block (D).

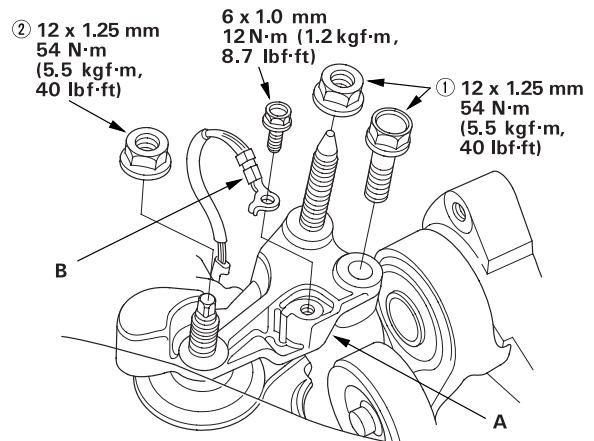
NOTE: When installing the chain case, do not slide the bottom surface on the oil pan mounting surface.



16. Install the side engine mount bracket.



17. Install the upper bracket (A), then tighten the bolt/nuts in the numbered sequence shown.

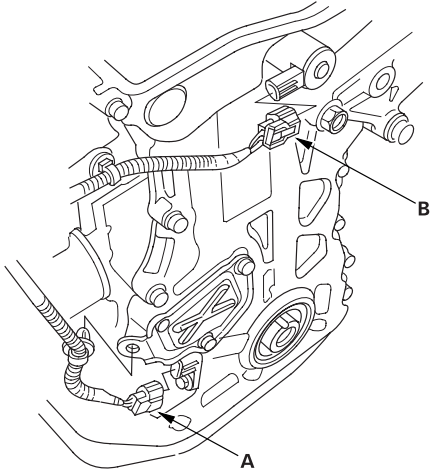


18. Install the ground cable (B).

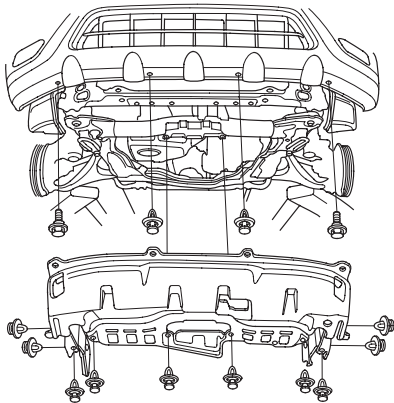




19. Install the VTC oil control solenoid valve (see step 1 on [page 11-137](#)).
20. Connect the Crankshaft Position (CKP) sensor connector (A) and VTC oil control solenoid valve connector (B).



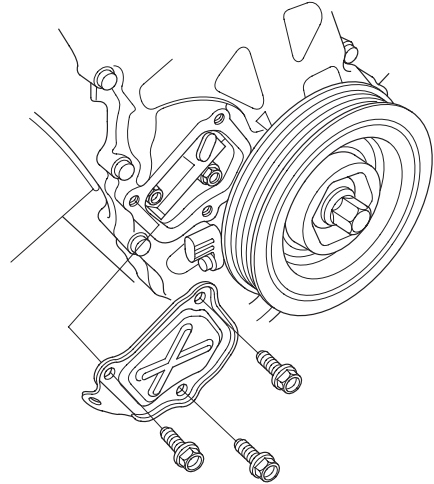
21. Install the crankshaft pulley ([see page 06-11](#)).
22. Install the cylinder head cover ([see page 06-42](#)).
23. Install the drive belt.
24. Install the splash shield.



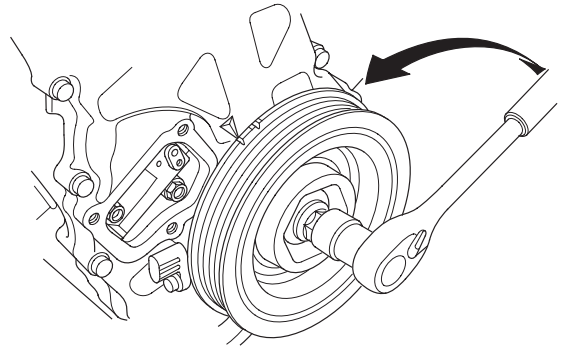
## Auto-Tensioner Removal/Installation

### Removal:

1. Remove the chain case cover.



2. Turn the crankshaft counterclockwise to compress the auto-tensioner.

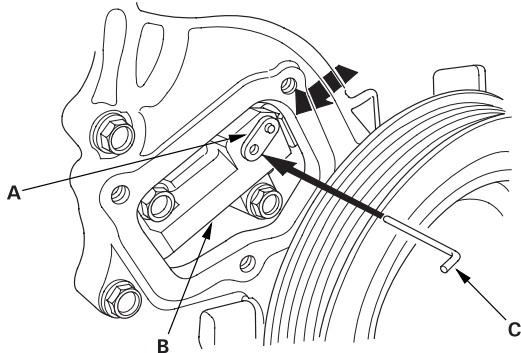


(cont'd)

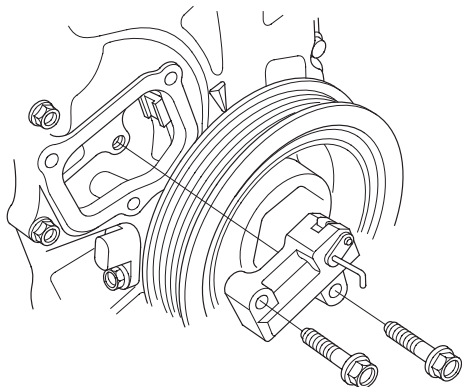
## Auto-Tensioner Removal/Installation (cont'd)

### Removal: (cont'd)

3. Align the holes on the lock (A) and the auto-tensioner (B), then insert a 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) diameter pin (C) into the holes. Turn the crankshaft clockwise to secure the pin.

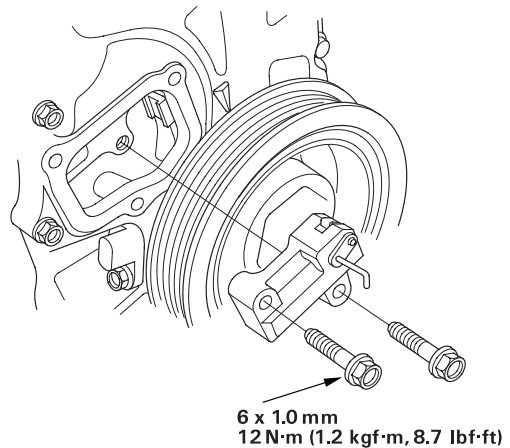


4. Remove the auto-tensioner.

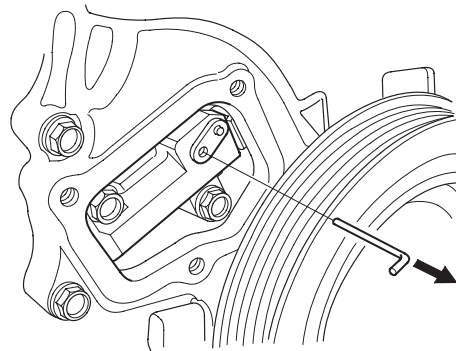


### Installation:

1. Install the auto-tensioner.



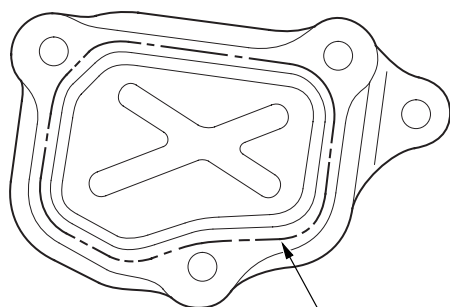
2. Remove the pin from the auto-tensioner.





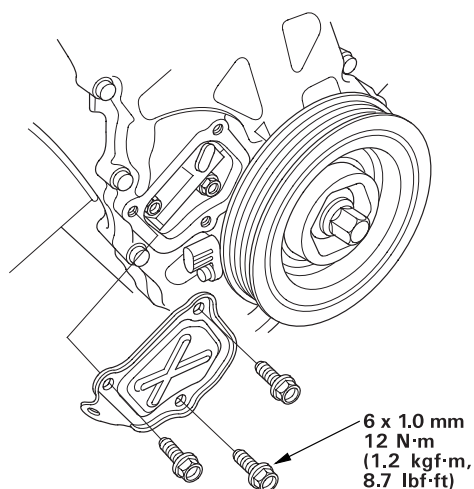
3. Remove old liquid gasket from the chain case cover mating surfaces, bolts and bolt holes.
4. Clean and dry the chain case cover mating surfaces.
5. Apply liquid gasket, P/N 08C70-K0234M, 08C70-K0334M or 08C70-X0331S, evenly to the chain case mating surface of the chain case cover and to the inner threads of the holes.

**NOTE:** Do not install the parts if 5 minutes or more have elapsed since applying liquid gasket. Instead, reapply liquid gasket after removing old residue.



Apply liquid gasket along the broken line.

6. Install the chain case cover.

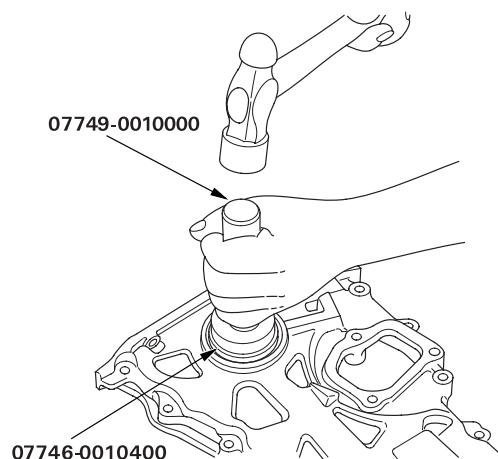


## Chain Case Oil Seal Installation

### Special Tools Required

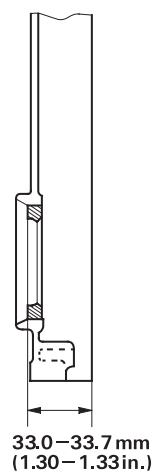
- Handle driver 07749-0010000
- Driver attachment, 52 x 55 mm 07746-0010400

1. Use the special tools to drive a new oil seal squarely into the chain case to the specified installed height.



2. Measure the distance between the chain case surface and oil seal.

**Oil Seal Installed Height:**  
33.0 - 33.7 mm (1.30 - 1.33 in.)

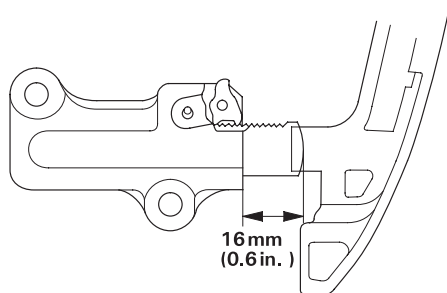


## Cam Chain Inspection

1. Remove the front tires/wheels.
2. Remove the splash shield (see step 3 on [page 06-12](#)).
3. Remove the drive belt ([see page 04-30](#)).
4. Remove the cylinder head cover ([see page 06-23](#)).
5. Remove the crankshaft pulley (see step 7 on [page 06-13](#)).
6. Disconnect the Crankshaft Position (CKP) sensor connector and Variable Valve Timing Control (VTC) oil control solenoid valve connector (see step 7 on [page 06-13](#)).
7. Remove the VTC oil control valve (see step 1 on [page 11-137](#)).
8. Support the engine with a jack and wood block under the oil pan.
9. Remove the ground cable, and remove the upper bracket (see step 10 on [page 06-13](#)).
10. Remove the side engine mount bracket (see step 11 on [page 06-13](#)).
11. Remove the chain case (see step 12 on [page 06-13](#)).
12. Measure the tensioner rod length. If the length is over the tolerance, replace the cam chain and oil pump chain.

### Tensioner Rod Length

**Service Limit:** 16 mm (0.6 in.)



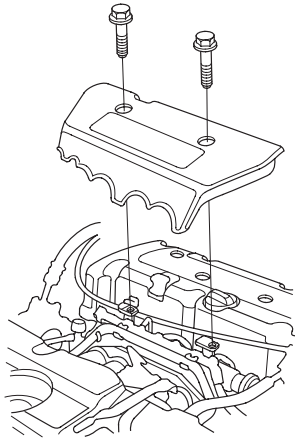
13. Check the chain case oil seal for damage. If the oil seal is damaged, replace the chain case oil seal ([see page 06-21](#)).

14. Remove old liquid gasket from the chain case mating surfaces, bolts and bolt holes.
15. Clean and dry the chain case mating surfaces.
16. Apply liquid gasket, P/N 08C70-K0234M, 08C70-K0334M or 08C70-X0331S, evenly to the cylinder block mating surface of the chain case and to the inner threads of the holes (see step 12 on [page 06-17](#)).
17. Apply liquid gasket to the cylinder block upper surface contact areas on the chain case (see step 13 on [page 06-17](#)).
18. Apply liquid gasket, P/N 08C70-K0334M or 08C70-X0331S, evenly to the oil pan mating surface of the chain case and to the inner threads of the holes (see step 14 on [page 06-17](#)).  
NOTE: Do not install the parts if 5 minutes or more have elapsed since applying liquid gasket. Instead, reapply liquid gasket after removing old residue.
19. Install the new O-ring on the chain case. Set the edge of the chain case to the edge of the oil pan, then install the chain case on the cylinder block (see step 15 on [page 06-18](#)).  
NOTE: When installing the chain case, do not slide the bottom surface on the oil pan mounting surface.
20. Install the side engine mount bracket (see step 16 on [page 06-18](#)).
21. Install the upper bracket and the ground cable (see step 17 on [page 06-18](#)).
22. Install the VTC oil control solenoid valve ([see page 11-137](#)).
23. Connect the CKP sensor connector and VTC oil control solenoid valve connector (see step 20 on [page 06-19](#)).
24. Install the crankshaft pulley ([see page 06-12](#)).
25. Install the cylinder head cover ([see page 06-42](#)).
26. Install the drive belt.
27. Install the splash shield (see step 24 on [page 06-19](#)).
28. Install the front tires/wheels.

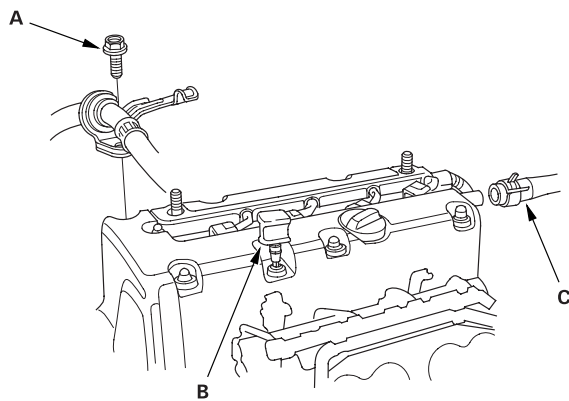


### Cylinder Head Cover Removal

1. Remove the intake manifold cover.

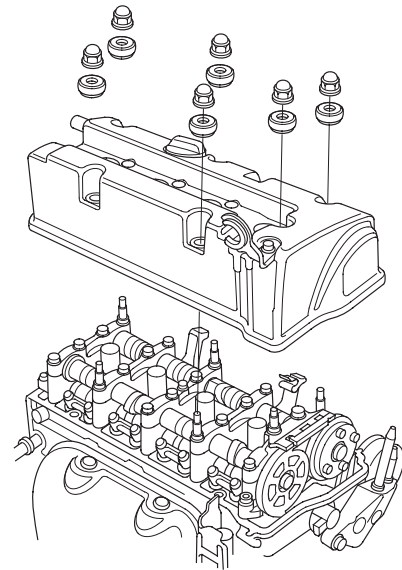


2. Remove the four ignition coils ([see page 04-21](#)).
3. Remove the bolt (A) securing the power steering hose bracket.



4. Remove the dipstick (B) and breather hose (C).

5. Remove the cylinder head cover.

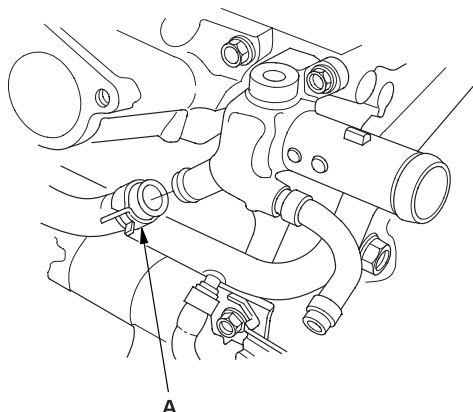


### Cylinder Head Removal

**NOTE:**

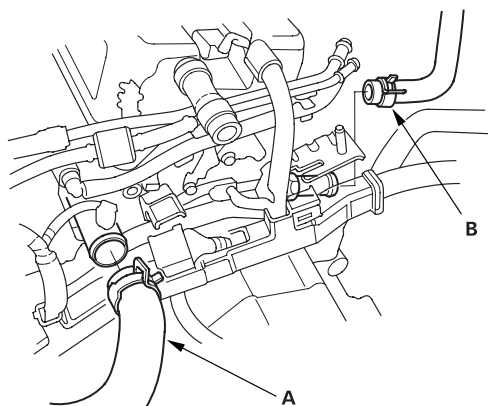
- Use fender covers to avoid damaging painted surfaces.
- To avoid damage, unplug the wiring connectors carefully while holding the connector portion.
- To avoid damaging the cylinder head, wait until the engine coolant temperature drops below 38°C (100°F) before loosening the cylinder head bolts.
- Mark all wiring and hoses to avoid misconnection. Also, be sure that they do not contact other wiring or hoses, or interfere with other parts.

1. Drain the engine coolant (see page 10-6).
2. Relieve fuel pressure (see page 11-154).
3. Disconnect the fuel feed hose (see page 11-156).
4. Remove the drive belt (see page 04-30).
5. Remove the intake manifold (see page 09-3).
6. Remove the water bypass hose (A).

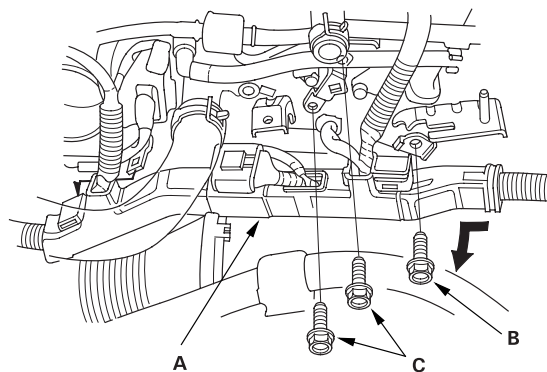


7. Remove the exhaust manifold (see page 09-8).
8. Remove the cam chain (see page 06-12).

9. Remove the engine wire harness connectors and wire harness clamps from the cylinder head.
  - Four injector connectors
  - Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) sensor connector
  - Top Dead Center (TDC) sensor connector
  - Camshaft Position (CMP) sensor connector
10. Remove the upper radiator hose (A) and heater hose (B).



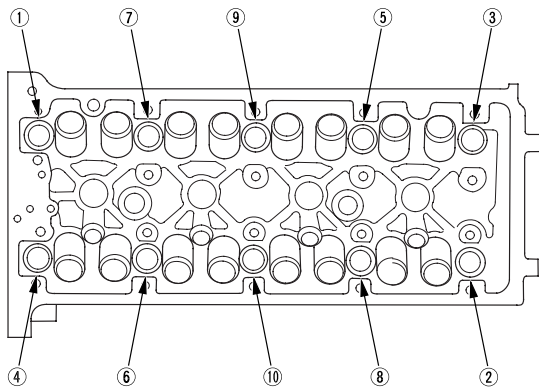
11. Remove the harness holder (A) from the bracket, then remove the connecting pipe mounting bolt (B) and brake booster vacuum line mounting bolts (C).





12. Remove the rocker arm assembly (see page 06-27).
13. Remove the cylinder head bolts. To prevent warpage, unscrew the bolts in sequence 1/3 turn at a time; repeat the sequence until all bolts are loosened.

### CYLINDER HEAD BOLTS LOOSENING SEQUENCE:

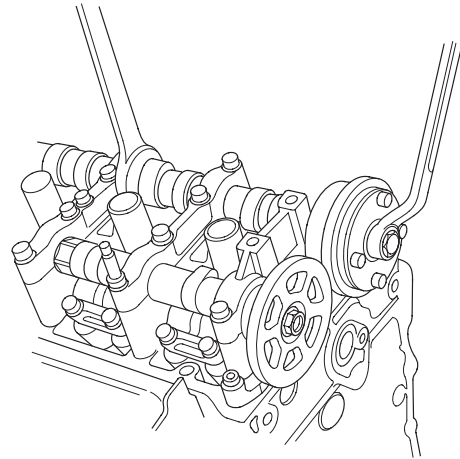


14. Remove the cylinder head.

## VTC Actuator, Exhaust Camshaft Sprocket Replacement

### Removal:

1. Remove the cam chain (see page 06-12).
2. Hold the camshaft with an open-end wrench, then loosen the Variable Valve Timing Control (VTC) actuator mounting bolt and exhaust camshaft sprocket mounting bolt.



3. Remove the VTC actuator and exhaust camshaft sprocket.

(cont'd)

### VTC Actuator, Exhaust Camshaft Sprocket Replacement (cont'd)

#### Installation:

1. Install the VTC actuator and exhaust camshaft sprocket.
2. Apply engine oil to the threads of the VTC actuator mounting bolt and exhaust camshaft mounting bolt, then install them.
3. Hold the camshaft with an open-end wrench, then tighten the bolts.

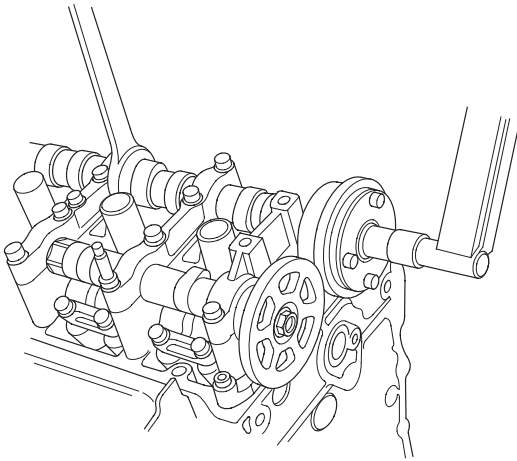
#### Specified torque:

VTC actuator mounting bolt:

113 N·m (11.5 kgf·m, 83 lbf·ft)

Exhaust camshaft sprocket mounting bolt:

72 N·m (7.3 kgf·m, 53 lbf·ft)



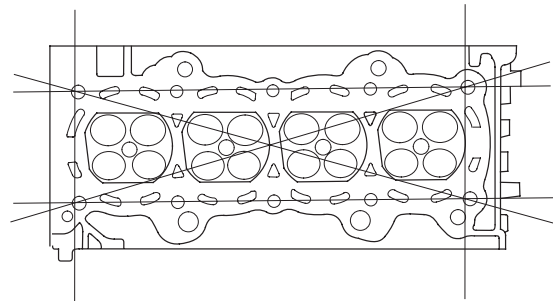
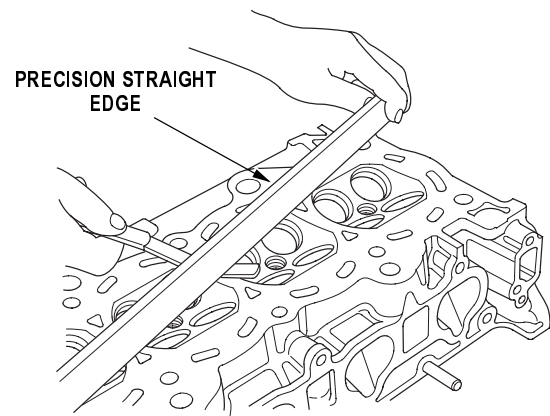
4. Install the cam chain (see page 06-15).

### Cylinder Head Inspection for Warpage

1. Remove the cylinder head (see page 06-24).
2. Inspect the camshaft (see page 06-30).
3. Check the cylinder head for warpage. Measure along the edges, and three ways across the center.
  - If warpage is less than 0.05 mm (0.002 in.) cylinder head resurfacing is not required.
  - If warpage is between 0.05 mm (0.002 in.) and 0.2 mm (0.008 in.), resurface the cylinder head.
  - Maximum resurface limit is 0.2 mm (0.008 in.) based on a height of 104 mm (4.09 in.).

#### Cylinder Head Height:

Standard (New): 103.95 - 104.05 mm  
(4.093 - 4.096 in.)

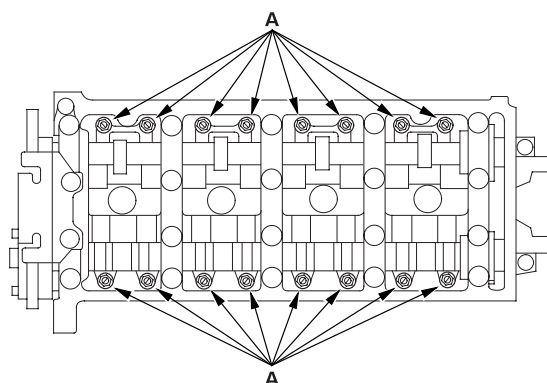






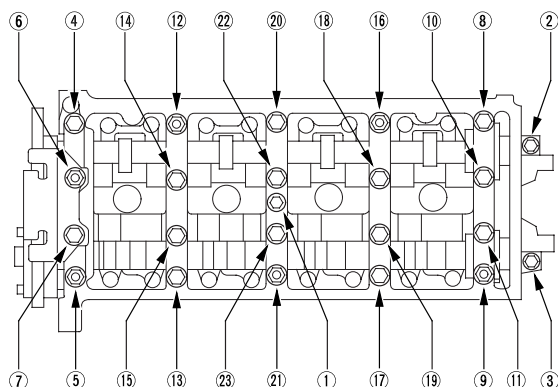
## Rocker Arm Assembly Removal

1. Remove the cam chain ([see page 06-12](#)).
2. Loosen the rocker arm adjusting screws (A).

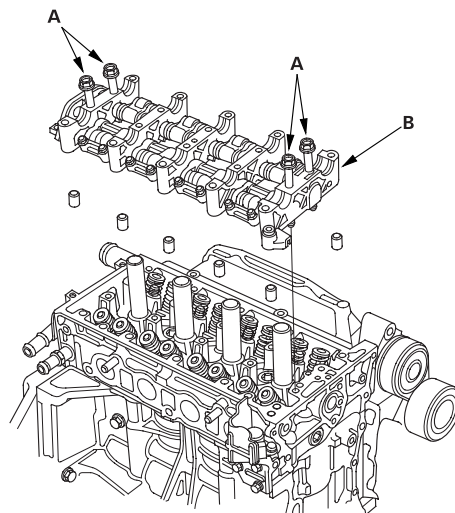


3. Remove the camshaft holder bolts. To prevent damaging the camshafts, unscrew the bolts two turns at a time, in a crisscross pattern.

### CAMSHAFT HOLDER BOLTS LOOSENING SEQUENCE:



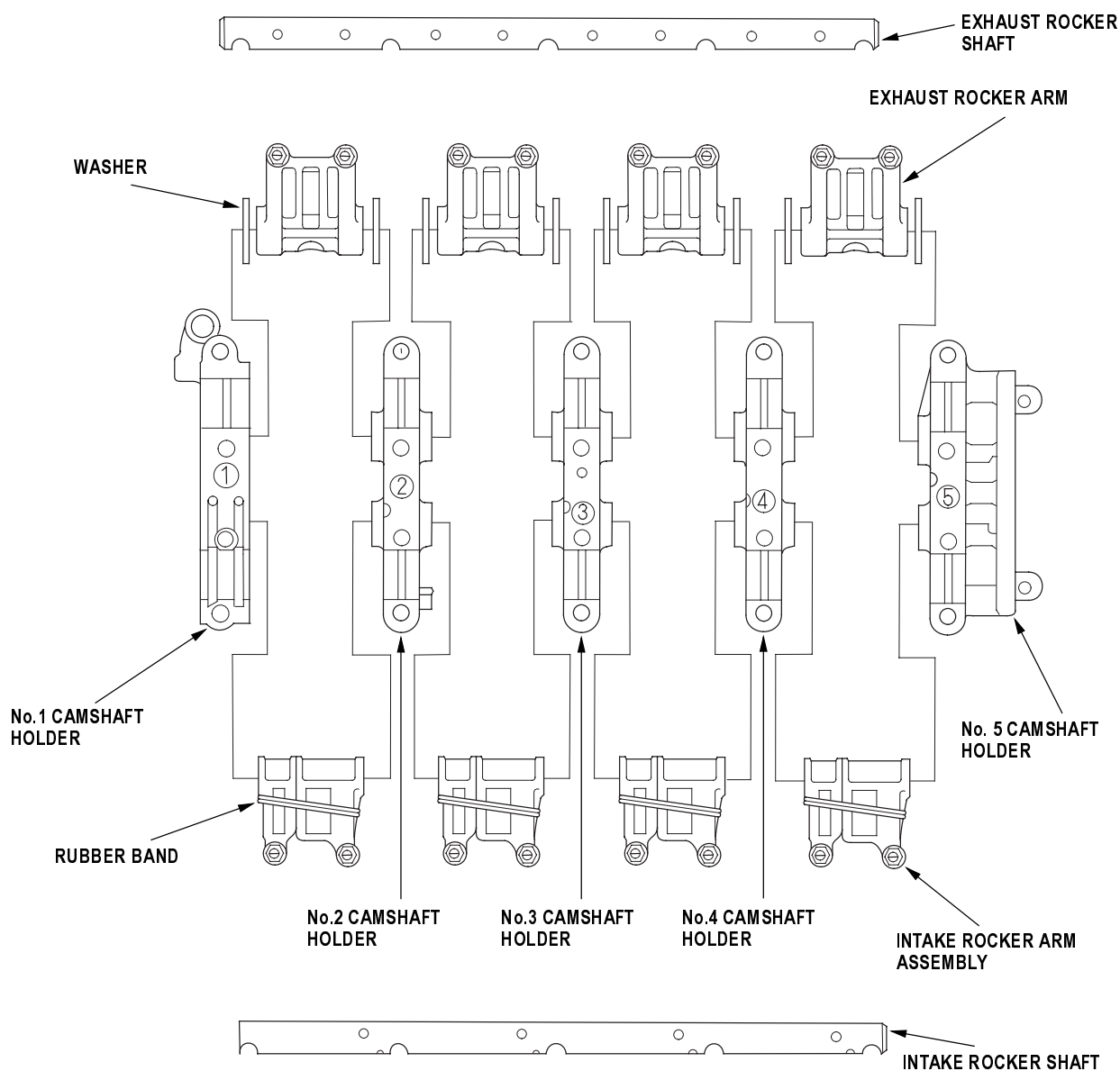
4. Remove the cam chain guide B, camshaft holders, and camshafts.
5. Insert the bolts (A) into the rocker shaft holder, then remove the rocker arm assembly (B).



## Rocker Arms and Shafts Disassembly/Reassembly

### NOTE:

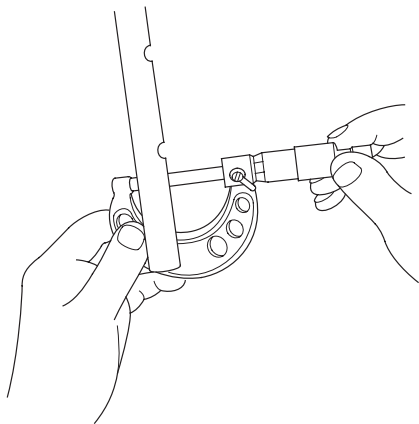
- Identify parts as they are removed to ensure reinstallation in original location.
- Inspect the rocker shafts and rocker arms ([see page 06-29](#)).
- The rocker arms must be installed in the same positions if reused.
- When removing or installing the rocker arm assembly, do not remove the camshaft holder bolts. The bolts will keep the holders, springs and rocker arms on the shaft.
- Prior to reassembling, clean all the parts in solvent, dry them, and apply lubricant to any contact points.
- Bundle the rocker arms with rubber bands to keep them together as a set.



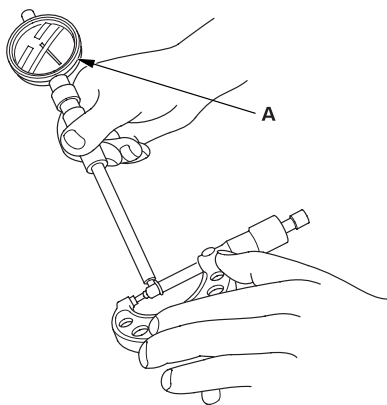


## Rocker Arms and Shafts Inspection

1. Remove the rocker arm assembly (see page 06-27).
2. Measure the diameter of the shaft at the first rocker location.



3. Zero the gauge (A) to the shaft diameter.



4. Measure the inside diameter of the rocker arm, and check it for an out-of-round condition.

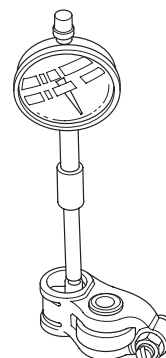
### Rocker Arm-to-Shaft Clearance:

#### Standard (New):

Intake: 0.025 - 0.052 mm  
(0.0010 - 0.0020 in.)

Exhaust: 0.018 - 0.056 mm  
(0.0007 - 0.0022 in.)

Service Limit: 0.08 mm (0.003 in.)



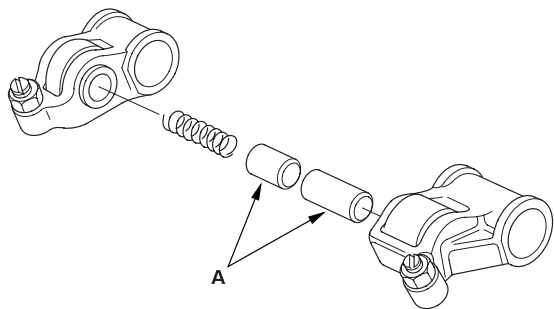
5. Repeat for all rocker arms and both shafts. If the clearance is over the limit, replace the rocker shaft and all overtolerance rocker arms. If any VTEC rocker arm needs replacement, replace rocker arms (primary and secondary) as a set.

(cont'd)

Rocker Arms and Shafts Inspection (cont'd)

6. Inspect the rocker arm pistons (A). Push each piston manually.  
If it does not move smoothly, replace the rocker arm set.

NOTE: Apply oil to the pistons when reassembling.

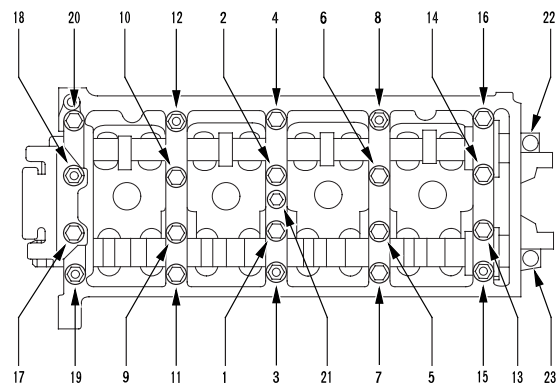


Camshaft Inspection

NOTE: Do not rotate the camshaft during inspection.

1. Remove the rocker arm assembly (see page 06-27).
2. Put the rocker shaft holders, camshaft and camshaft holders on the cylinder head, then tighten the bolts to the specified torque.

**Specified torque:**  
**8 mm bolts:**  
**22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)**  
**6 mm bolts:**  
**12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft)**  
**6 mm bolts: 21, 22, 23**



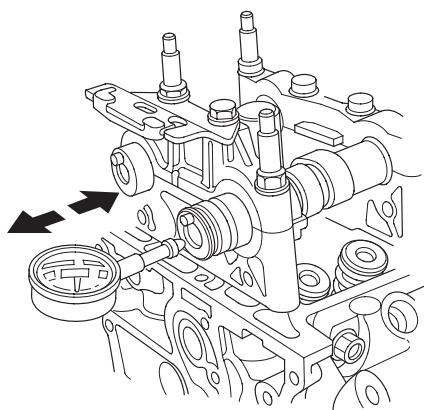


3. Seat the camshaft by pushing it away from the camshaft pulley end of the cylinder head.
4. Zero the dial indicator against the end of the camshaft, then push the camshaft back and forth and read the end play. If the end play is beyond the service limit, replace the cylinder head and recheck. If it is still beyond the service limit, replace the camshaft.

## Camshaft End Play:

**Standard (New):** 0.05 - 0.20 mm  
(0.002 - 0.008 in.)

**Service Limit:** 0.4 mm (0.02 in.)



5. Unscrew the camshaft holder bolts two turns at a time, in a crisscross pattern. Then remove the camshaft holders from the cylinder head.
6. Lift the camshafts out of the cylinder head, wipe them clean, then inspect the lift ramps. Replace the camshaft if any lobes are pitted, scored, or excessively worn.
7. Clean the camshaft journal surfaces in the cylinder head, then set the camshafts back in place. Place a plastigage strip across each journal.
8. Install the camshaft holders, then tighten the bolts to the specified torque as shown in step 2.
9. Remove the camshaft holders. Measure the widest portion of plastigage on each journal.
  - If the camshaft-to-holder clearance is within limits, go to step 11.
  - If the camshaft-to-holder clearance is beyond the service limit and the camshaft has been replaced, replace the cylinder head.
  - If the camshaft-to-holder clearance is beyond the service limit and the camshaft has not been replaced, go to step 10.

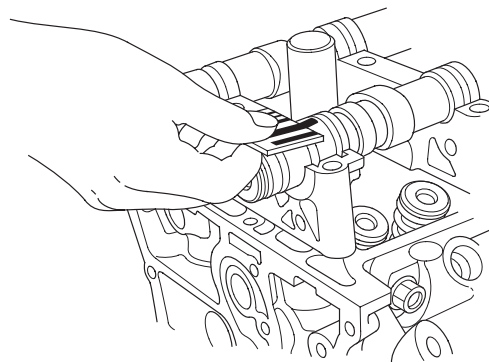
## Camshaft-to-Holder Oil Clearance:

### Standard (New):

**No. 1 Journal:** 0.030 - 0.069 mm  
(0.001 - 0.003 in.)

**No. 2, 3, 4, 5 Journals:** 0.060 - 0.099 mm  
(0.002 - 0.004 in.)

**Service Limit:** 0.15 mm (0.006 in.)

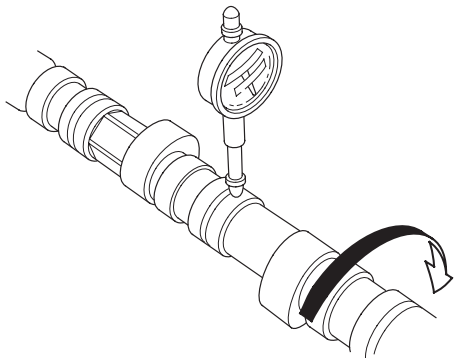


(cont'd)

Camshaft Inspection (cont'd)

10. Check the total runout with the camshaft supported on V-blocks.
- If the total runout of the camshaft is within the service limit, replace the cylinder head.
  - If the total runout is beyond the service limit, replace the camshaft and recheck the camshaft-to-holder oil clearance. If the oil clearance is still beyond the service limit, replace the cylinder head.

**Camshaft Total Runout:**  
**Standard (New):** 0.03 mm (0.001 in.) max.  
**Service Limit:** 0.04 mm (0.002 in.)



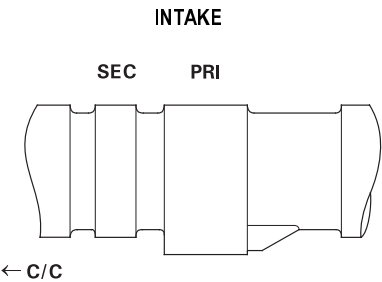
11. Measure cam lobe height.

Cam Lobe Height Standard (New):

	INTAKE	EXHAUST
PRI	33.925 mm (1.3356 in.)	34.092 mm (1.3422 in.)
SEC	29.638 mm (1.1668 in.)	

PRI: Primary

SEC: Secondary  
C/C: Cam Chain

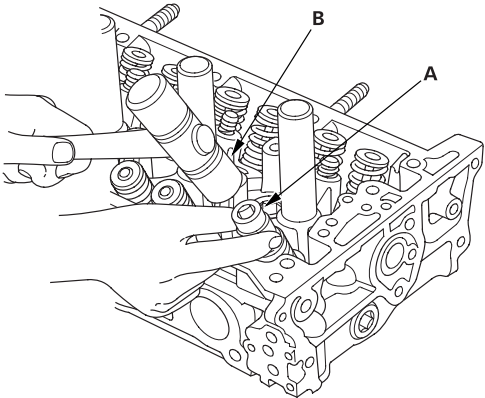


Valves, Springs and Valve Seals Removal

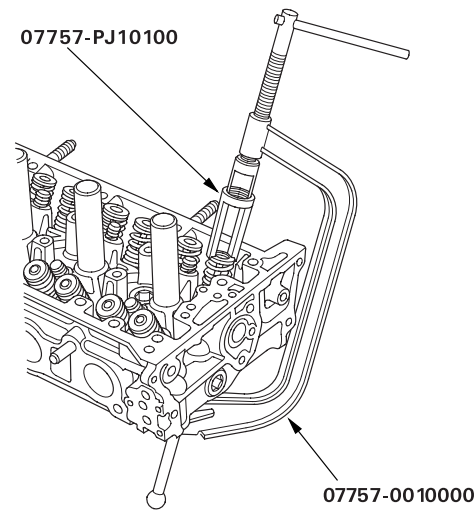
- Special Tools Required**
- Valve spring compressor attachment 07757-PJ10100
  - Valve spring compressor 07757-0010000

Identify the valves and valve springs as they are removed so that each item can be reinstalled in its original position.

1. Remove the cylinder head (see page 06-24).
2. Using an appropriate-sized socket (A) and plastic mallet (B), lightly tap the valve retainer to loosen the valve keepers.



3. Install the spring compressor. Compress the spring, and remove the valve keepers.





## Valve Inspection

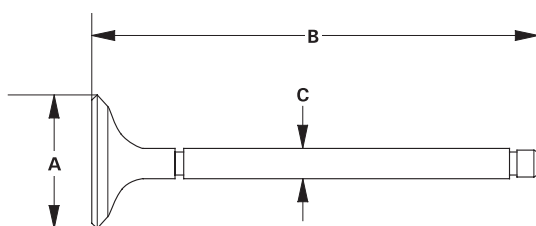
1. Remove the valves (see page 06-32).
2. Measure the valve in these areas.

### Intake Valve Dimensions:

<b>A Standard (New):</b>	<b>34.85 - 35.15 mm</b> (1.372 - 1.384 in.)
<b>B Standard (New):</b>	<b>108.7 - 109.5 mm</b> (4.280 - 4.311 in.)
<b>C Standard (New):</b>	<b>5.475 - 5.485 mm</b> (0.2156 - 0.2159 in.)
<b>C Service Limit:</b>	<b>5.445 mm (0.214 in.)</b>

### Exhaust Valve Dimensions:

<b>A Standard (New):</b>	<b>29.85 - 30.15 mm</b> (1.175 - 1.187 in.)
<b>B Standard (New):</b>	<b>108.3 - 109.1 mm</b> (4.264 - 4.295 in.)
<b>C Standard (New):</b>	<b>5.450 - 5.460 mm</b> (0.2146 - 0.2150 in.)
<b>C Service Limit:</b>	<b>5.42 mm (0.213 in.)</b>



## Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance Inspection

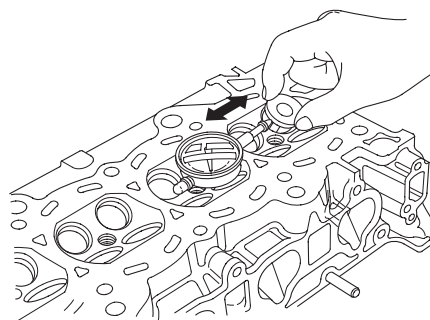
1. Remove the valves (see page 06-32).
2. Slide the valve out of its guide about 10 mm, then measure the guide-to-stem clearance with a dial indicator while rocking the stem in the direction of normal thrust (wobble method).
  - If the measurement exceeds the service limit, recheck it using a new valve.
  - If the measurement is now within the service limit, reassemble using a new valve.
  - If the measurement with a new valve still exceeds the service limit, go to step 3.

### Intake Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance:

<b>Standard (New):</b>	<b>0.06 - 0.11 mm</b> (0.002 - 0.004 in.)
<b>Service Limit:</b>	<b>0.16 mm (0.006 in.)</b>

### Exhaust Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance:

<b>Standard (New):</b>	<b>0.11 - 0.16 mm</b> (0.004 - 0.006 in.)
<b>Service Limit:</b>	<b>0.22 mm (0.009 in.)</b>



3. Subtract the O.D. of the valve stem, measured with a micrometer, from the I.D. of the valve guide, measured with an inside micrometer or ball gauge. Take the measurements in three places along the valve stem and three places inside the valve guide. The difference between the largest guide measurement and the smallest stem measurement should not exceed the service limit.

### Intake Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance:

<b>Standard (New):</b>	<b>0.030 - 0.055 mm</b> (0.0012 - 0.0022 in.)
<b>Service Limit:</b>	<b>0.08 mm (0.003 in.)</b>

### Exhaust Valve Stem-to-Guide Clearance:

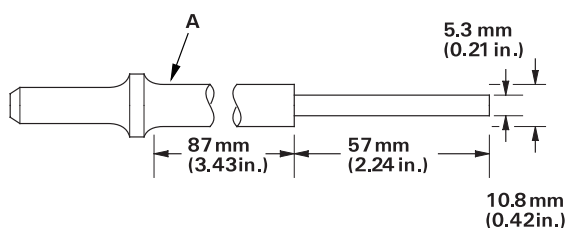
<b>Standard (New):</b>	<b>0.055 - 0.080 mm</b> (0.0022 - 0.0031 in.)
<b>Service Limit:</b>	<b>0.11 mm (0.004 in.)</b>

### Valve Guide Replacement

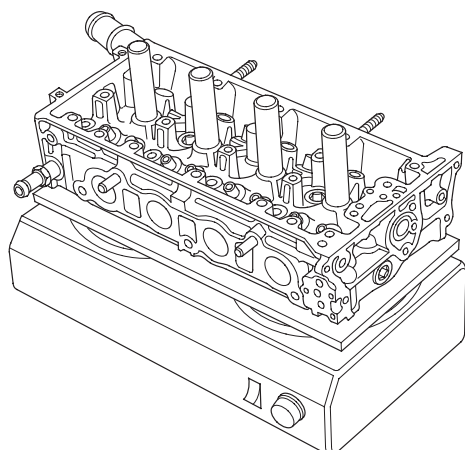
#### Special Tools Required

- Valve guide driver, 5.5 mm 07742-0010100
- Valve guide reamer, 5.525 mm 07HAH-PJ70100

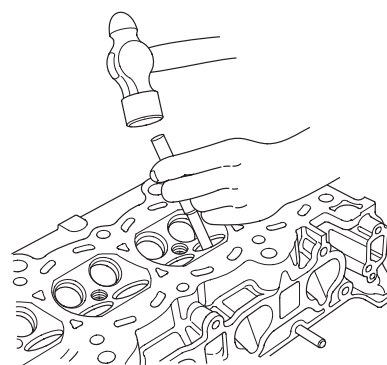
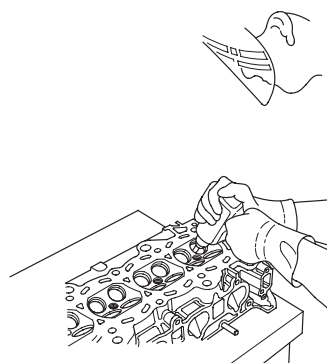
1. Inspect valve stem-to-guide clearance ([see page 06-33](#)).
2. As illustrated below, use a commercially available air-impact valve guide driver (A) modified to fit the diameter of the valve guides. In most cases, the same procedure can be done using the special tool and a conventional hammer.



3. Select the proper replacement guides, and chill them in the freezer section of a refrigerator for about an hour.
4. Use a hot plate or oven to evenly heat the cylinder head to 150°C (300°F). Monitor the temperature with a cooking thermometer. Do not get the head hotter than 150°C (300°F); excessive heat may loosen the valve seats.



5. Working from the camshaft side, use the driver and an air hammer to drive the guide about 2 mm (0.1 in.) towards the combustion chamber. This will knock off some of the carbon and make removal easier. Hold the air hammer directly in line with the valve guide to prevent damaging the driver.
6. Turn the head over, and drive the guide out toward the camshaft side of the head.



7. If a valve guide won't move, drill it out with a 8 mm (5/16 inch) bit, then try again. Drill guides only in extreme cases; you could damage the cylinder head if the guide breaks.
8. Remove the new guide(s) from the freezer, one at a time, as you need them.



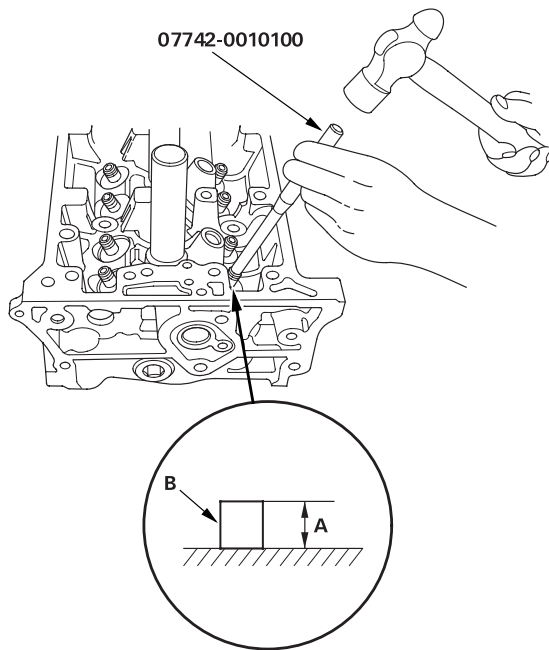


9. Apply a thin coat of clean engine oil to the outside of the new valve guide. Install the guide from the camshaft side of the head; use the special tool to drive the guide in to the specified installed height (A) of the guide (B). If you have all 16 guides to do, you may have to reheat the head.

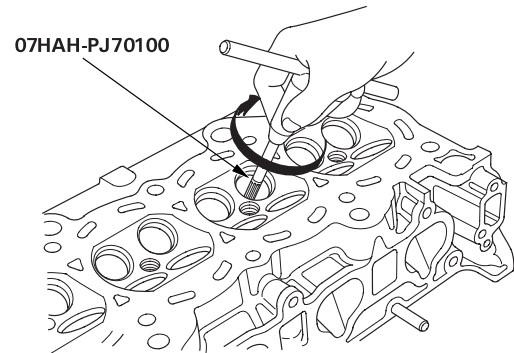
**Valve Guide Installed Height:**

**Intake:** 15.2 - 16.2 mm (0.598 - 0.638 in.)

**Exhaust:** 15.5 - 16.5 mm (0.610 - 0.650 in.)



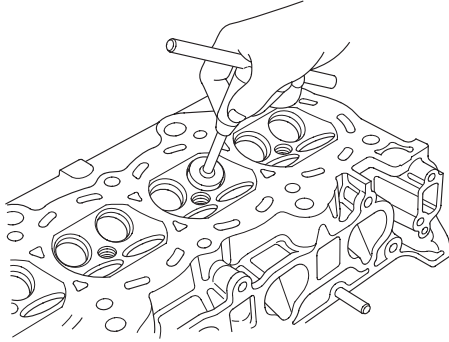
10. Coat both reamer and valve guide with cutting oil.
11. Rotate the reamer clockwise the full length of the valve guide bore.



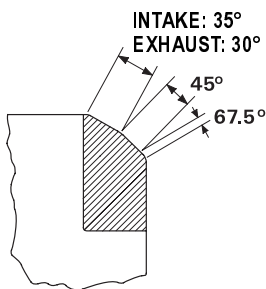
12. Continue to rotate the reamer clockwise while removing it from the bore.
13. Thoroughly wash the guide in detergent and water to remove any cutting residue.
14. Check the clearances with a valve ([see page 06-33](#)). Verify that a valve slides in the intake and exhaust valve guides without exerting pressure.

### Valve Seat Reconditioning

1. Inspect valve stem-to-guide clearance (see page 06-33). If the valve guides are worn, replace them (see page 06-34) before cutting the valve seats.
2. Renew the valve seats in the cylinder head using a valve seat cutter.



3. Carefully cut a 45° seat, removing only enough material to ensure a smooth and concentric seat.
4. Bevel the upper and lower edges at the angles shown in the illustration. Check the width of the seat and adjust accordingly.



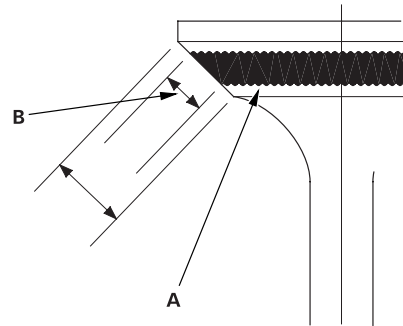
5. Make one more very light pass with the 45° cutter to remove any possible burrs caused by the other cutters.

#### Valve Seat Width:

**Standard (New):** 1.25 - 1.55 mm (0.049 - 0.061 in.)

**Service Limit:** 2.00 mm (0.079 in.)

6. After resurfacing the seat, inspect for even valve seating: Apply Prussian Blue compound (A) to the valve face. Insert the valve in its original location in the head, then lift it and snap it closed against the seat several times.



7. The actual valve seating surface (B), as shown by the blue compound, should be centered on the seat.
  - If it is too high (closer to the valve stem), you must make a second cut with the 67.5° cutter to move it down, then one more cut with the 45° cutter to restore seat width.
  - If it is too low (close to the valve edge), you must make a second cut with the 35° cutter (intake side) or the 30° cutter (exhaust side) to move it up, then make one more cut with the 45° cutter to restore seat width.

**NOTE:** The final cut should always be made with the 45° cutter.



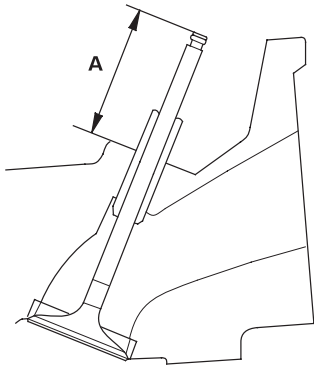
8. Insert the intake and exhaust valves in the head, and measure valve stem installed height (A).

**Intake Valve Stem Installed Height:**

**Standard (New):** 40.8 - 41.0 mm  
(1.606 - 1.614 in.)

**Exhaust Valve Stem Installed Height:**

**Standard (New):** 54.6 - 54.8 mm  
(2.150 - 2.157 in.)



9. If valve stem installed height is over the standard, replace the valve and recheck. If it is still over the standard, replace the cylinder head; the valve seat in the head is too deep.

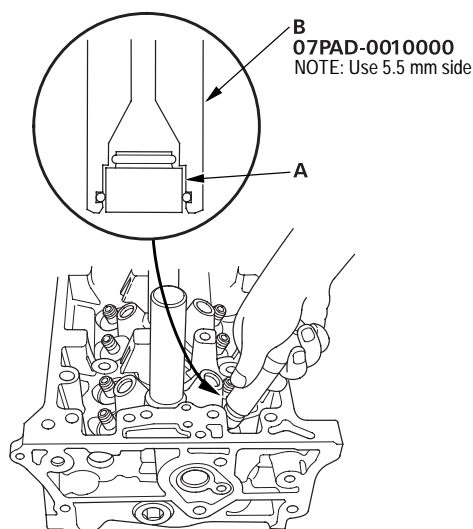
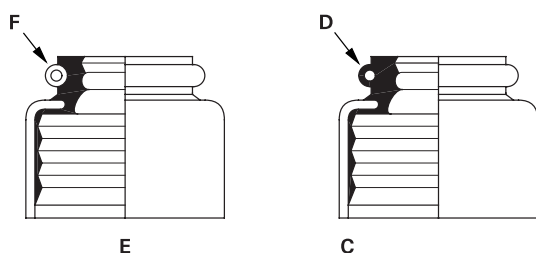
### Valves, Springs and Valve Seals Installation

#### Special Tools Required

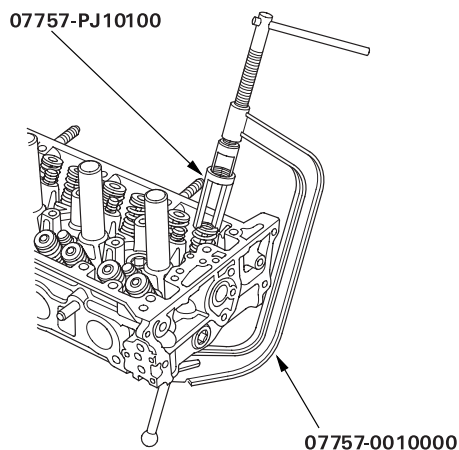
- Stem seal driver 07PAD-0010000
- Valve spring compressor attachment 07757-PJ10100
- Valve spring compressor 07757-0010000

1. Coat the valve stems with engine oil. Install the valves in the valve guides.
2. Check that the valves move up and down smoothly.
3. Install the spring seats on the cylinder head.
4. Install the new valve seals (A) using the valve guide seal installer (B).

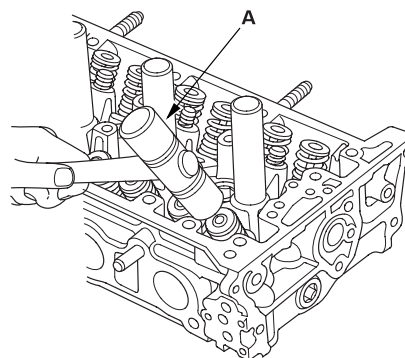
NOTE: The exhaust valve seal (C) has a black spring (D), and the intake valve seal (E) has a white spring (F). They are not interchangeable.



5. Install the valve spring. Place the end of the valve spring with closely wound coils toward the cylinder head.
6. Install the valve retainer.
7. Install the valve spring compressor. Compress the spring, and install the valve keepers.



8. Lightly tap the end of each valve stem two or three times with a plastic mallet (A) to ensure proper seating of the valve and valve keepers. Tap the valve stem only along its axis so you do not bend the stem.

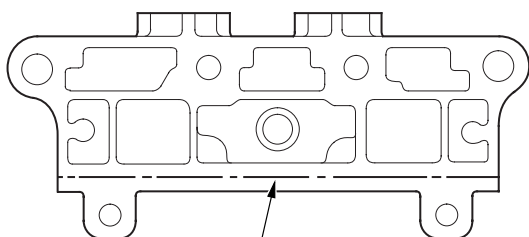




## Rocker Arm Assembly Installation

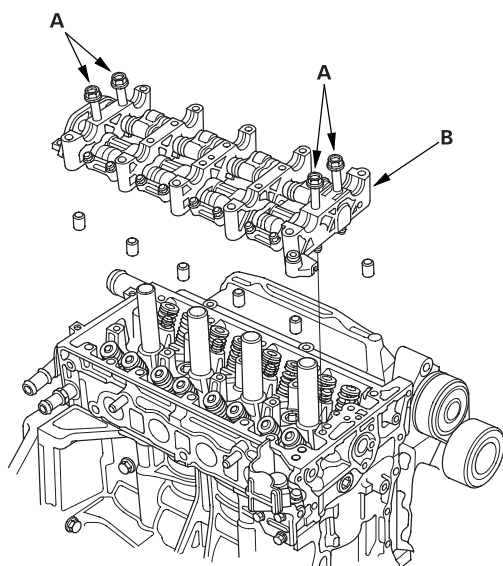
1. Clean and dry the No. 5 rocker shaft holder mating surface.
2. Apply liquid gasket, P/N 08C70-K0234M, 08C70-K0334M or 08C70-X0331S, evenly to the cylinder head mating surface of the No. 5 rocker shaft holder.

NOTE: Do not install the parts if 5 minutes or more have elapsed since applying liquid gasket. Instead, reapply liquid gasket after removing old residue.

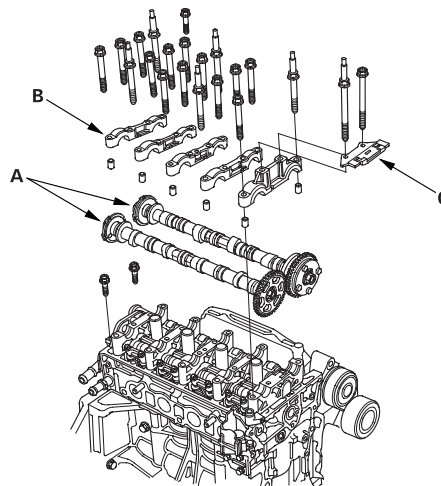


Apply liquid gasket along the broken line.

3. Reassembly the rocker arm assembly (see page 06-28).
4. Insert the bolts (A) into the rocker shaft holder, then install the rocker arm assembly (B) on the cylinder head.



5. Remove the bolts from the rocker shaft holder.
6. Punch marks on the Variable Valve Timing Control (VTC) actuator and exhaust camshaft sprocket are facing up, then set the camshafts (A) in the holder.



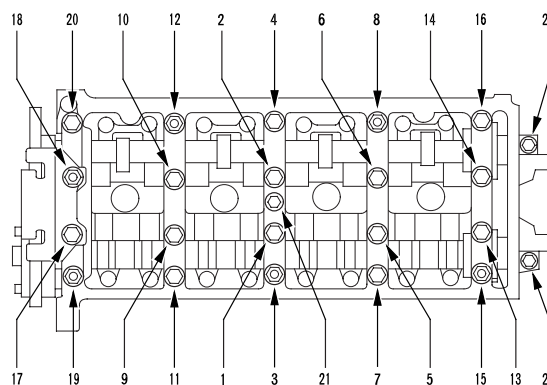
7. Set the camshaft holders (B) and cam chain guide B (C) in place.
8. Tighten the bolts to the specified torque.

Specified torque:

8 mm bolts: 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)

6 mm bolts: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft)

6 mm bolts: 21, 22, 23

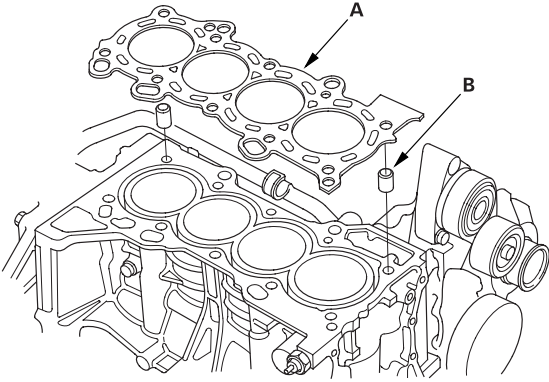


9. Install the cam chain (see page 06-15), and adjust the valve clearance (see page 06-9).

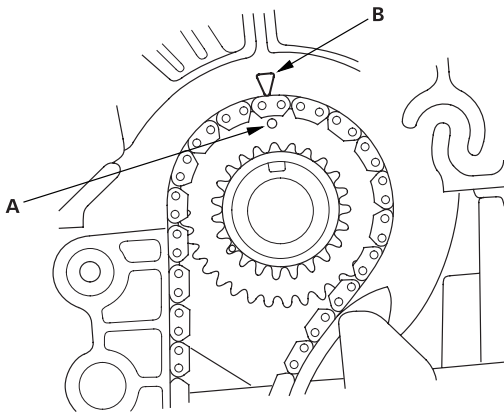
### Cylinder Head Installation

Install the cylinder head in the reverse order of removal:

1. Clean the cylinder head and block surface.
2. Install the new cylinder head gasket (A) and dowel pins (B) on the cylinder block. Always use a new cylinder head gasket.

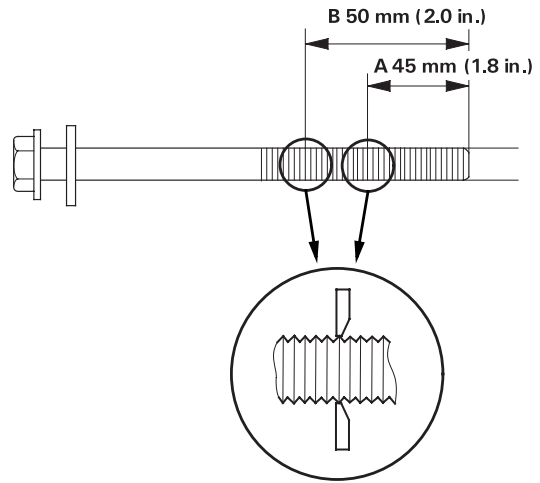


3. Set the crankshaft to Top Dead Center (TDC). Align the TDC mark (A) on the crankshaft sprocket with the pointer (B) on the cylinder block.



4. Install the cylinder head on the block.

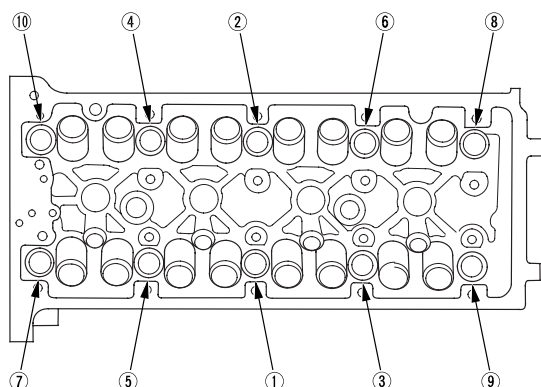
5. Measure the diameter of each cylinder head bolt at point A and point B.



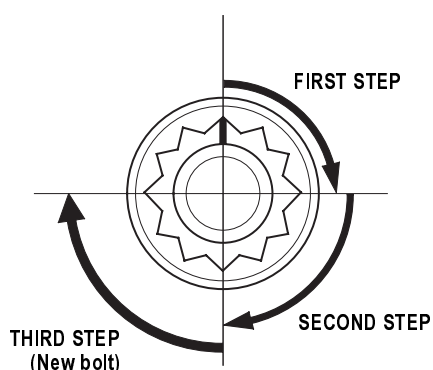
6. If either diameter is less than 10.6 mm (0.42 in.), replace the cylinder head bolt.



7. Apply engine oil to the bolt threads and under the bolt heads of all the cylinder head bolts.
8. Tighten the cylinder head bolts in sequence to 39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m, 29 lbf·ft). Use a beam-type torque wrench. When using a preset-type torque wrench, be sure to tighten slowly and do not overtighten. If a bolt makes any noise while you are torquing it, loosen the bolt and retighten it from the first step.

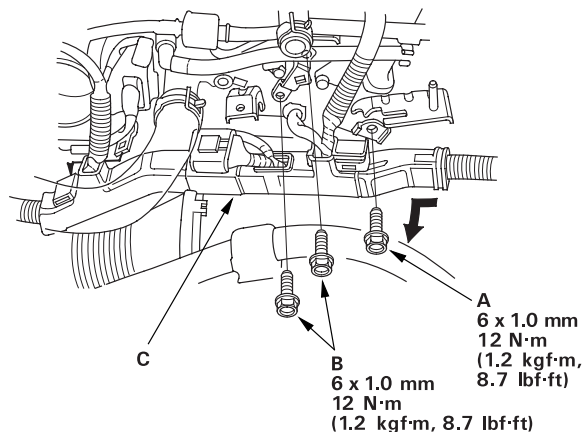


9. After torquing, tighten all cylinder head bolts in two steps (90° per step). If you are using a new cylinder head bolt, tighten the bolt an extra 90°.

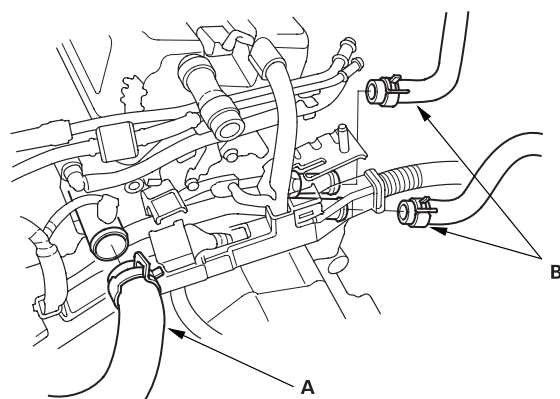


10. Install the rocker arm assembly (see page 06-39).

11. Tighten the connecting pipe mounting bolt (A) and brake booster vacuum line mounting bolts (B), then install the harness holder (C) on the bracket.



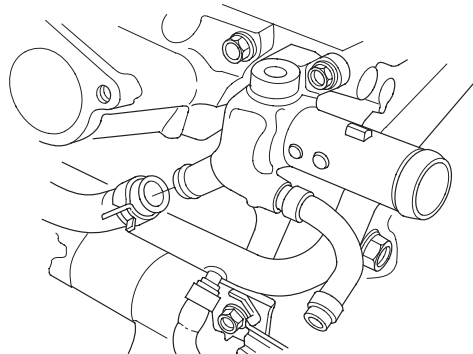
12. Install the upper radiator hose (A) and heater hose (B).



(cont'd)

### Cylinder Head Installation (cont'd)

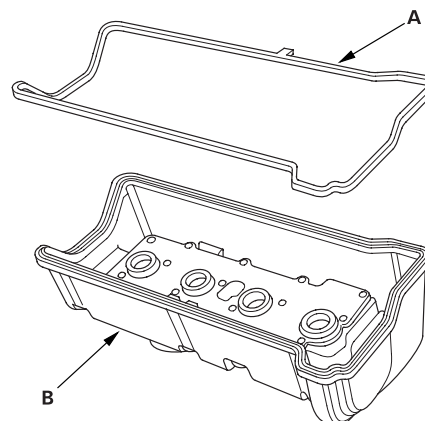
13. Install the water bypass hose.



14. Install the intake manifold (see page 09-5).
15. Install the exhaust manifold (see page 09-8).
16. Install the cam chain (see page 06-15).
17. Connect the fuel feed hose (see page 11-156).
18. Adjust the valve clearance (see page 06-9).
19. Install the drive belt (see page 04-30).
20. Clean the battery posts and cable terminals with sandpaper, then assemble them and apply grease to prevent corrosion.
21. After installation, check that all tubes, hoses and connectors are installed correctly.
22. Inspect for fuel leaks. Turn the ignition switch ON (II) (do not operate the starter) so that the fuel pump runs for about 2 seconds and pressurizes the fuel line. Repeat this operation two or three times, then check for fuel leakage at any point in the fuel line.
23. Refill the radiator with engine coolant, and bleed air from the cooling system with the heater valve open (see page 10-6).
24. Inspect the idle speed (see page 11-148).
25. Inspect the ignition timing (see page 04-20).

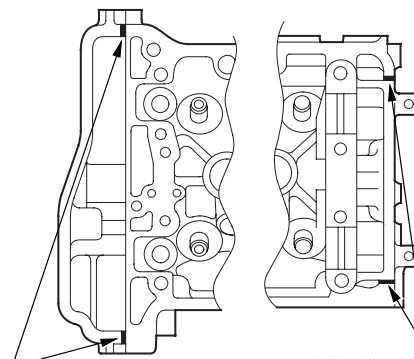
### Cylinder Head Cover Installation

1. Thoroughly clean the head cover gasket and the groove.
2. Install the head cover gasket (A) in the groove of the cylinder head cover (B).



3. Check that the mating surfaces are clean and dry.
4. Apply liquid gasket, P/N 08C70-K0234M, 08C70-K0334M or 08C70-X0331S on the chain case and the No. 5 rocker shaft holder mating areas.

NOTE: Do not install the parts if 5 minutes or more have elapsed since applying liquid gasket. Instead, reapply liquid gasket after removing old residue.



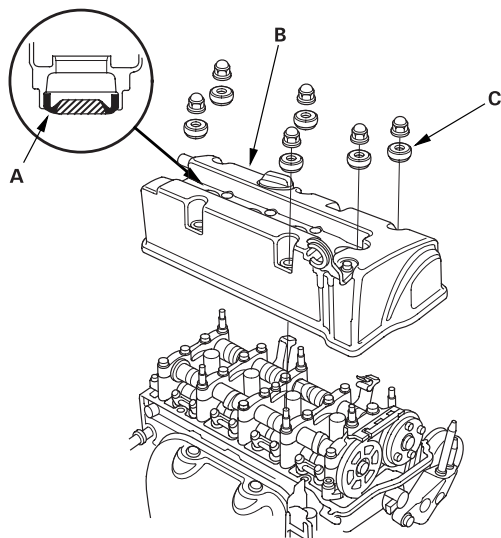
Apply liquid gasket to these points.

Apply liquid gasket to these points.



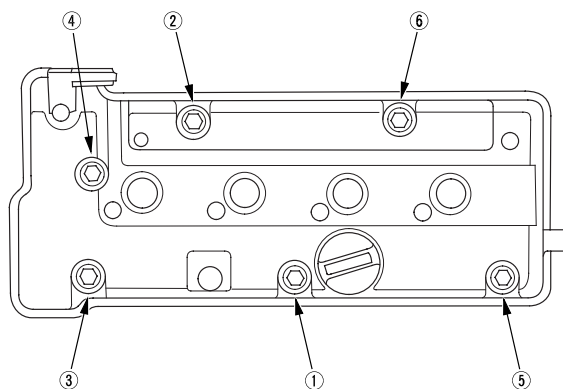


5. Set the spark plug seals (A) on the spark plug tubes. Once the cylinder head cover (B) is on the cylinder head, slide the cover slightly back and forth to seat the head cover gasket.



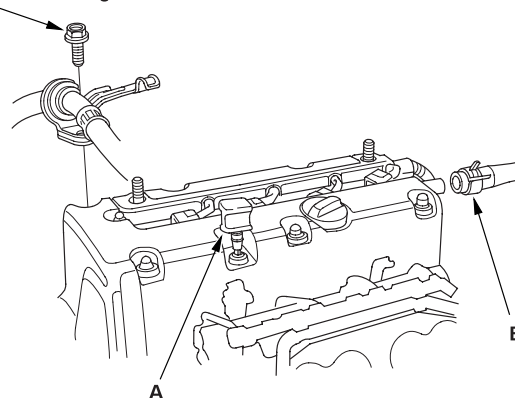
6. Inspect the cover washers (C). Replace any washer that is damaged or deteriorated.

7. Tighten the bolts in two or three steps. In the final step, tighten all bolts, in sequence, to 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft).



8. Install the dipstick (A) and breather hose (B).

C  
6 x 1.0 mm  
12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft)

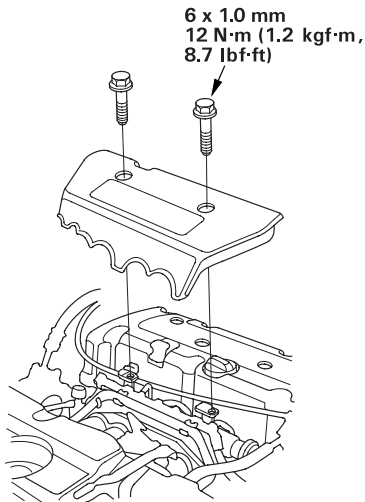


9. Tighten the bolt (C) securing the power steering hose bracket.

(cont'd)

### Cylinder Head Cover Installation (cont'd)

10. Install the four ignition coils ([see page 04-21](#)).
11. Check that all tubes, hoses, and connectors are installed correctly.
12. Install the intake manifold cover.



13. After assembly, wait at least 30 minutes before filling the engine with oil.

## Engine Mechanical

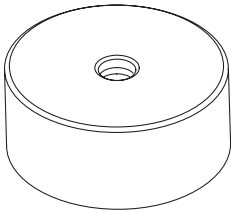
Engine Block.....	07-2
Special Tools .....	07-2
Component Location Index .....	07-3
Connecting Rod and Crankshaft End Play Inspection .....	07-5
Crankshaft Main Bearing Replacement .....	07-6
Connecting Rod Bearing Replacement.....	07-8
Oil Pan Removal .....	07-11
Crankshaft and Piston Removal.....	07-12
Crankshaft Inspection .....	07-14
Block and Piston Inspection .....	07-15
Cylinder Honing.....	07-17
Piston, Pin and Connecting Rod Replacement .....	07-18
Piston Ring Replacement.....	07-21
Piston Installation .....	07-23
Connecting Rod Bolt Inspection.....	07-24
Crankshaft Installation.....	07-24
Oil Pan Installation .....	07-27



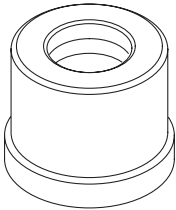
Engine Block

Special Tools

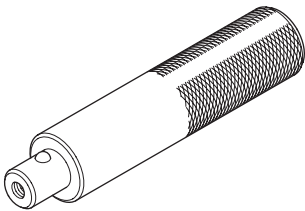
Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07ZAD-PNA0100	Oil Seal Driver Attachment 96	1
2	07746-0010700	Driver Attachment, 24 x 26 mm	1
3	07749-0010000	Handle Driver	1



1



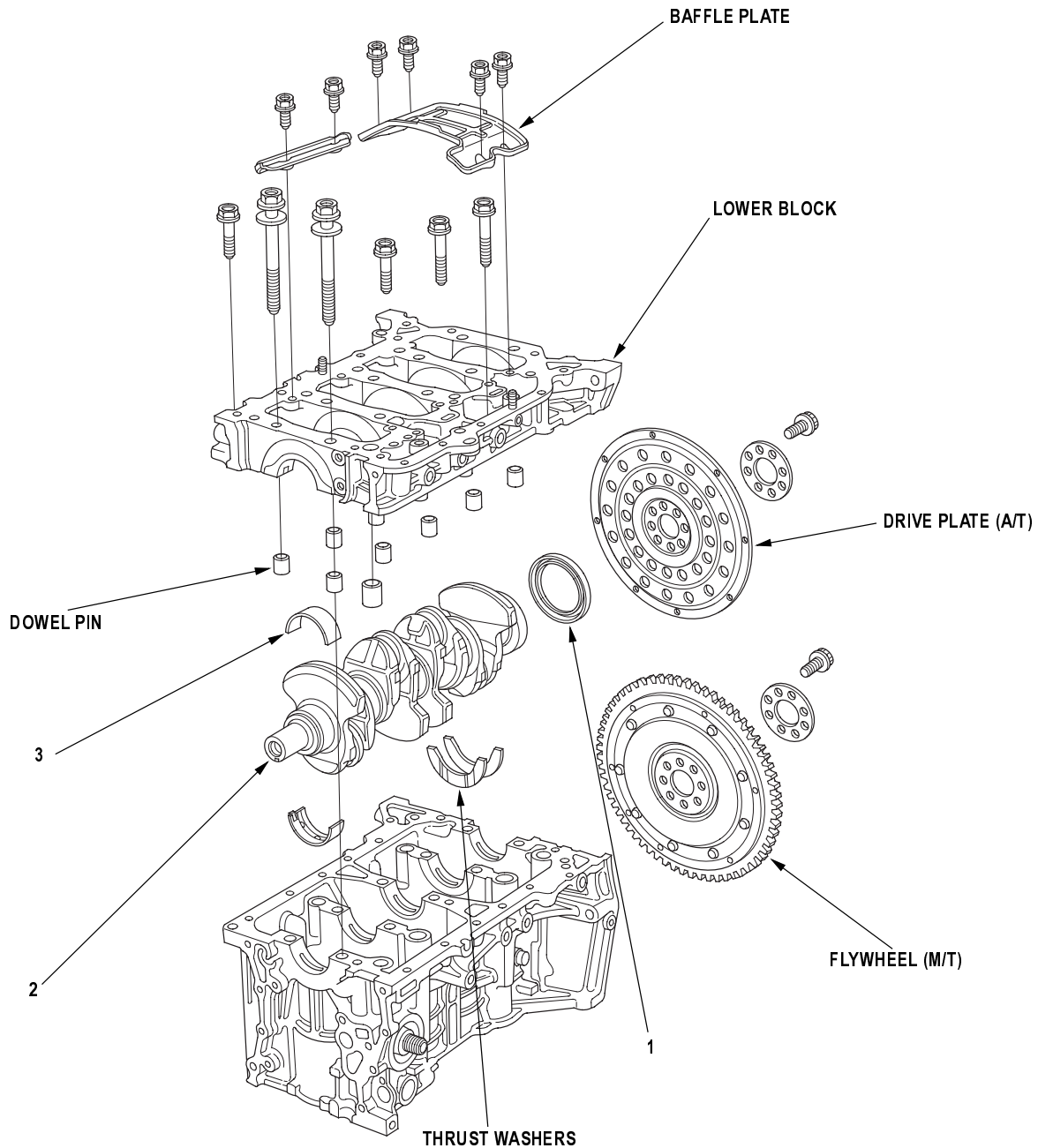
2



3



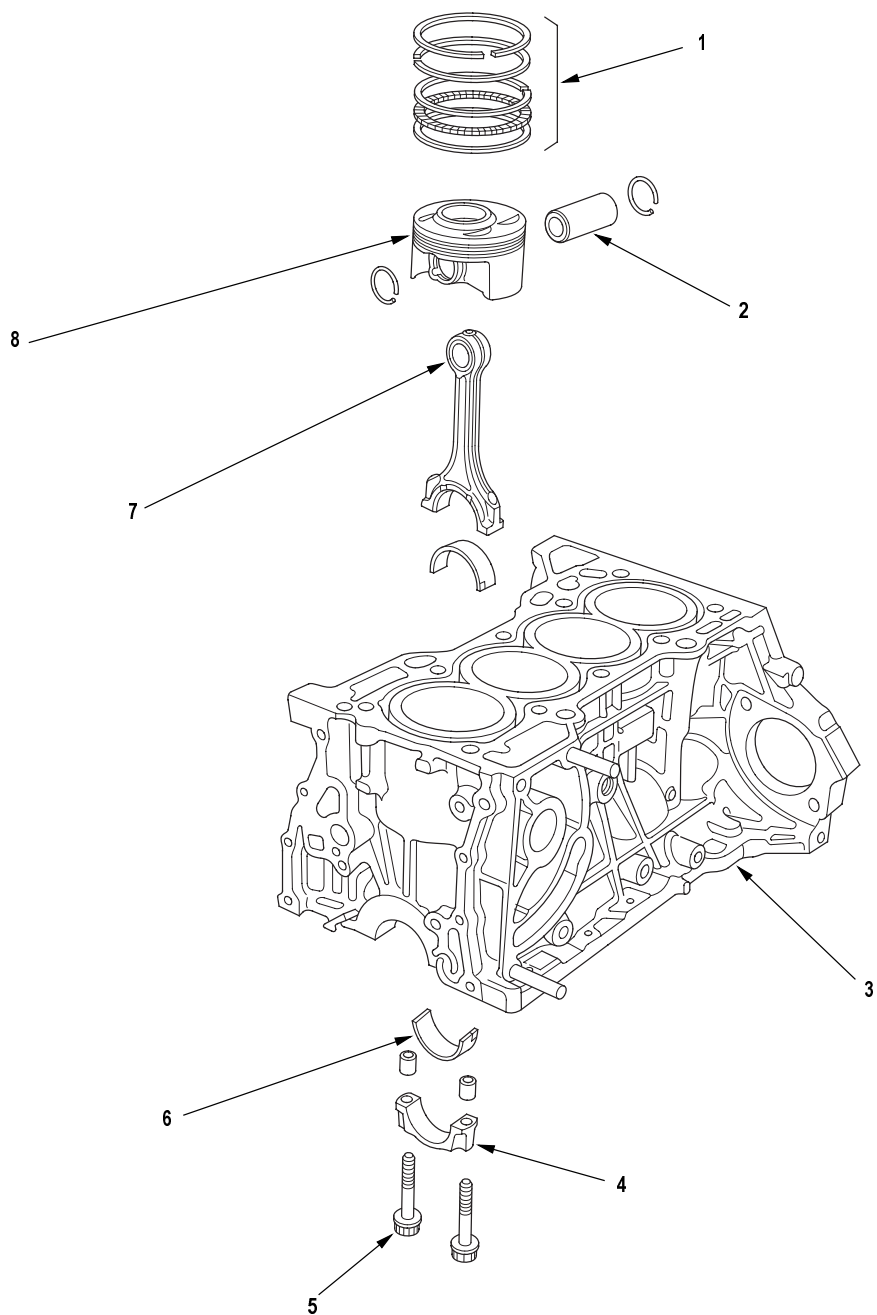
## Component Location Index



- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <b>CRANKSHAFT OIL SEAL, TRANSMISSION END</b> | Installation, step 21 on <a href="#">page 07-26</a>  |
| 2 | <b>CRANKSHAFT</b>                            | End play, <a href="#">page 07-5</a> ; Runout, <a href="#">page 07-14</a> ; Out-of-Round, <a href="#">page 07-14</a> ; Removal, <a href="#">page 07-12</a> ; Installation, <a href="#">page 07-24</a> |
| 3 | <b>MAIN BEARINGS</b>                         | Oil clearance, <a href="#">page 07-6</a> ; Selection, <a href="#">page 07-6</a>  |

(cont'd)

Component Location Index (cont'd)



- |   |                            |  |
|---|----------------------------|--|
| 1 | PISTON RINGS               | Replacement, <a href="#">page 07-21</a>  |
| 2 | PISTON PIN                 | Removal, <a href="#">page 07-18</a> ; Inspection, <a href="#">page 07-19</a> ; Installation, <a href="#">page 07-20</a>  |
| 3 | ENGINE BLOCK               | Cylinder bore inspection, <a href="#">page 07-15</a> ; Warp inspection, <a href="#">page 07-15</a> ; Cylinder bore honing, <a href="#">page 07-17</a> ; Ridge removal, step 13 on <a href="#">page 07-13</a> |
| 4 | CONNECTING ROD BEARING CAP |  |
| 5 | CONNECTING ROD BOLT        | Inspection, <a href="#">page 07-24</a>   |
| 6 | CONNECTING ROD BEARINGS    | Oil clearance, <a href="#">page 07-8</a> ; Selection, <a href="#">page 07-9</a>  |
| 7 | CONNECTING ROD             | End play, <a href="#">page 07-5</a> ; Small end measurement, <a href="#">page 07-19</a>  |
| 8 | PISTON                     | Removal, <a href="#">page 07-12</a> ; Measurement, <a href="#">page 07-15</a>  |



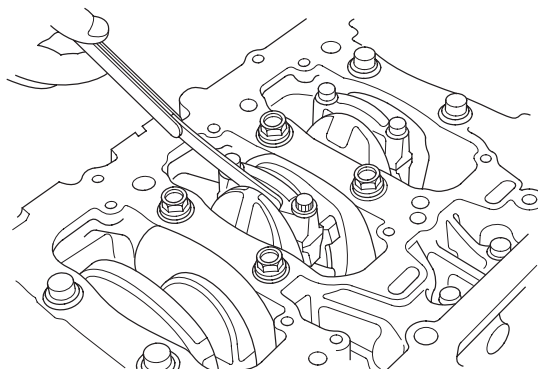
## Connecting Rod and Crankshaft End Play Inspection

1. Remove the oil pump (see page 08-11).
2. Remove the baffle plate (see step 6 on page 07-12).
3. Measure the connecting rod end play with a feeler gauge between the connecting rod and crankshaft.

### Connecting Rod End Play:

**Standard (New):** 0.15 - 0.30 mm  
(0.006 - 0.012 in.)

**Service Limit:** 0.40 mm (0.016 in.)



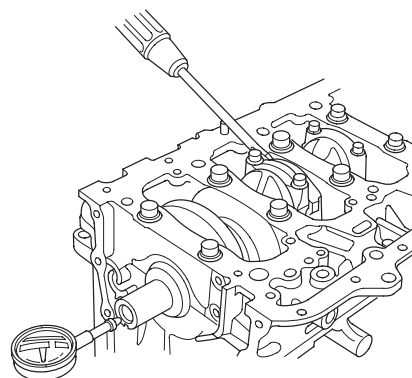
4. If the connecting rod end play is out-of-tolerance, install a new connecting rod, and recheck. If it is still out-of-tolerance; replace the crankshaft (see page 07-12).

5. Push the crankshaft firmly away from the dial indicator, and zero the dial against the end of the crankshaft. Then pull the crankshaft firmly back toward the indicator; the dial reading should not exceed the service limit.

### Crankshaft End Play:

**Standard (New):** 0.10 - 0.35 mm  
(0.004 - 0.014 in.)

**Service Limit:** 0.45 mm (0.018 in.)



6. If the end play is out-of-tolerance, replace the thrust washers and recheck, if it is still out-of-tolerance, replace the crankshaft.

## Crankshaft Main Bearing Replacement

### Main Bearing Clearance Inspection

1. To check main bearing-to-journal oil clearance, remove the lower block and bearing halves (see [page 07-12](#)).
2. Clean each main journal and bearing half with a clean shop towel.
3. Place one strip of plastigage across each main journal.
4. Reinstall the bearings and lower block, then torque the bolts to 29 N·m (3.0 kgf·m, 22 lbf·ft) + 56°.

NOTE: Do not rotate the crankshaft during inspection.

5. Remove the lower block and bearings again, and measure the widest part of the plastigage.

#### Main Bearing-to-Journal Oil Clearance:

No. 1, 2, 4, 5 Journals:

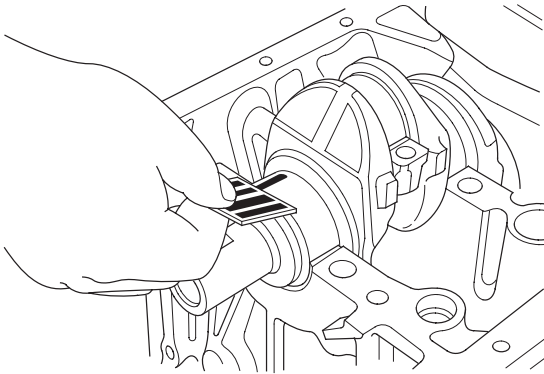
Standard (New): 0.017 - 0.041 mm  
(0.0007 - 0.0016 in.)

Service Limit: 0.050 mm (0.0020 in.)

No. 3 Journal:

Standard (New): 0.025 - 0.049 mm  
(0.0010 - 0.0019 in.)

Service Limit: 0.055 mm (0.0022 in.)



6. If the plastigage measures too wide or too narrow, remove the crankshaft, and remove the upper half of the bearing. Install a new, complete bearing with the same color code(s), and recheck the clearance. Do not file, shim, or scrape the bearings or the caps to adjust clearance.
7. If the plastigage shows the clearance is still incorrect, try the next larger or smaller bearing (the color listed above or below that one), and check again. If the proper clearance cannot be obtained by using the appropriate larger or smaller bearings, replace the crankshaft and start over.

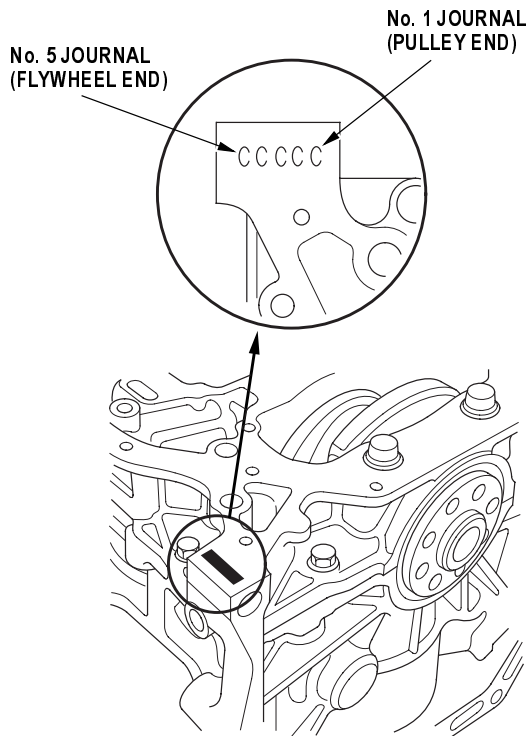




## Main Bearing Selection

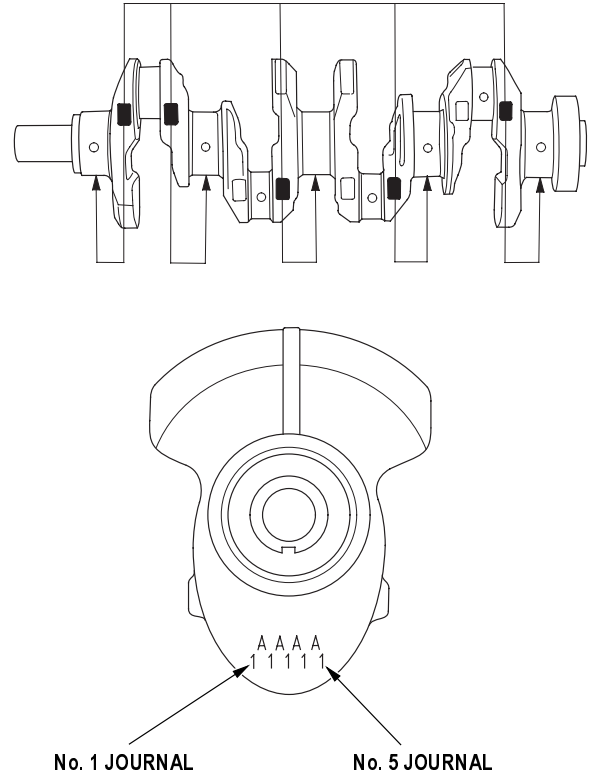
### Crankshaft Bore Code Location

1. Numbers or letters or bars have been stamped on the end of the block as a code for the size of each of the five main journal bores. Write down the crank bore codes.  
If you can't read the codes because of accumulated dirt and dust, do not scrub them with a wire brush or scraper. Clean them only with solvent or detergent.



## Main Journal Code Location

2. The main journal codes are stamped on the crankshaft.



(cont'd)

Crankshaft Main Bearing Replacement (cont'd)

Main Bearing Selection (cont'd)

3. Use the crank bore codes and crank journal codes to select the appropriate replacement bearings from the following table.

NOTE:

- Color code is on the edge of the bearing.
- When using bearing halves of different colors, it does not matter which color is used in the top or bottom.

Main journal code	Crank bore code	Larger crank bore			
		1 or A or I	2 or B or II	3 or C or III	4 or D or IIII
		Smaller bearing (Thicker)			
1		Pink	Pink/ Yellow	Yellow	Green
2		Pink/ Yellow	Yellow	Green	Green/ Brown
3		Yellow	Green	Green/ Brown	Brown
4		Green	Green/ Brown	Brown	Black
5		Green/ Brown	Brown	Black	Black/ Blue
6		Brown	Black	Black/ Blue	Blue
Smaller main journal	Smaller bearing (Thicker)				

Connecting Rod Bearing Replacement

Rod Bearing Clearance Inspection

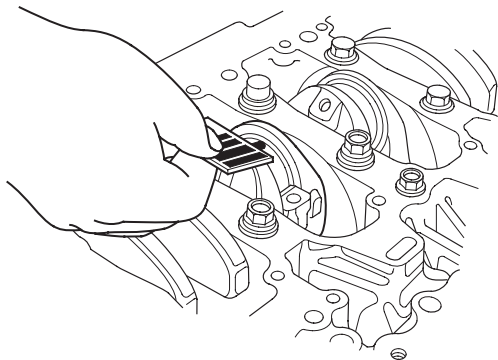
1. Remove the oil pump (see page 08-11).
2. Remove the baffle plate (see step 6 on page 07-12).
3. Remove the connecting rod cap and bearing half.
4. Clean the crankshaft rod journal and bearing half with a clean shop towel.
5. Place plastigage across the rod journal.
6. Reinstall the bearing half and cap, and torque the bolts to 20 N·m (2.0 kgf·m, 14 lbf·ft) + 90°.
7. Remove the rod cap and bearing half, and measure the widest part of the plastigage.

NOTE: Do not rotate the crankshaft during inspection.

Connecting Rod Bearing-to-Journal Oil Clearance:

Standard (New): 0.021 - 0.049 mm  
(0.0008 - 0.0019 in.)

Service Limit: 0.060 mm (0.0024 in.)





8. If the plastigage measures too wide or too narrow, remove the upper half of the bearing, install a new, complete bearing with the same color code(s), and recheck the clearance. Do not file, shim, or scrape the bearings or the caps to adjust clearance.
9. If the plastigage shows the clearance is still incorrect, try the next larger or smaller bearing (the color listed above or below that one), and check clearance again. If the proper clearance cannot be obtained by using the appropriate larger or smaller bearing, replace the crankshaft and start over.

### Rod Bearing Selection

1. Inspect each connecting rod for cracks and heat damage.

### Connecting Rod Big End Bore Code Locations

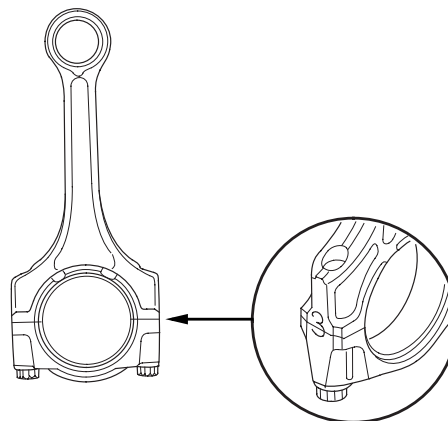
2. Each rod has a tolerance range from 0 to 0.024 mm (0.0009 in.), in 0.006 mm (0.0002 in.) increments, depending on the size of its big end bore. It's then stamped with a number or bar (1, 2, 3 or 4/I, II, III, or IIII) indicating the range. You may find any combination of numbers and bars in any engine, (Half the number or bar is stamped on the bearing cap, the other half on the rod.).

If you can't read the code because of an accumulation of oil and varnish, do not scrub it with a wire brush or scraper. Clean it only with solvent or detergent.

#### Normal Bore Size:

**K20A4, K20A5 engines:** 48.0 mm (1.89 in.)

**K24A1 engine:** 51.0 mm (2.01 in.)



(cont'd)

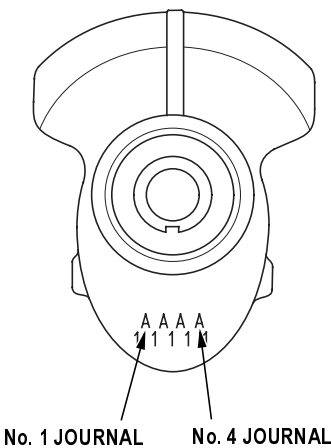
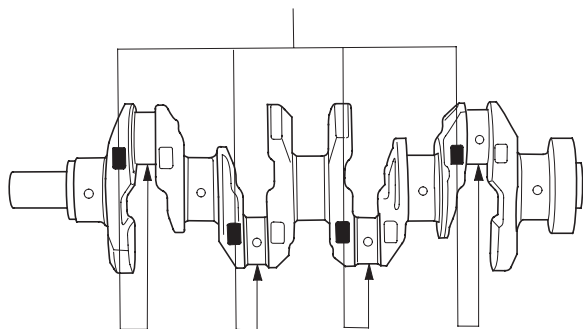
Connecting Rod Bearing Replacement (cont'd)

Rod Bearing Selection (cont'd)

Connecting Rod Journal Code Location

3. The connecting rod journal codes are stamped on the crankshaft.

Connecting Rod Journal Code Location (Letters or Bars)



4. Use the big end bore codes and rod journal codes to select appropriate replacement bearings from the following table.

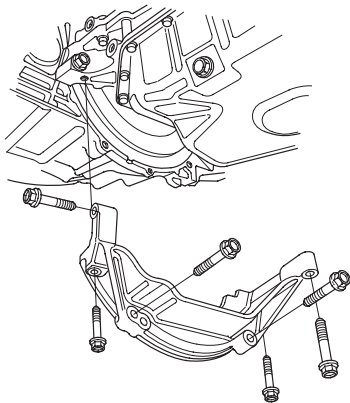
NOTE: Color code is on the edge of the bearing.

Big end bore code		Larger big end bore			
		1 or I	2 or II	3 or III	4 or IIII
		Smaller bearing (Thicker)			
Rod journal code	A	Red	Pink	Yellow	Green
	B	Pink	Yellow	Green	Brown
	C	Yellow	Green	Brown	Black
	D	Green	Brown	Black	Blue
Smaller rod journal		Smaller bearing (Thinner)			

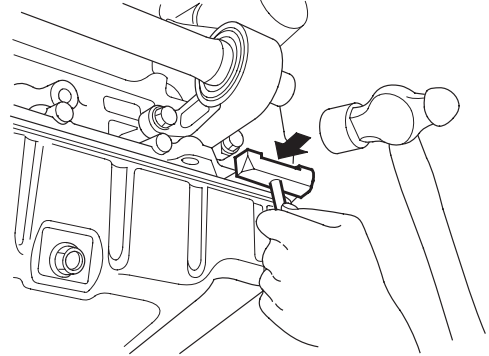


### Oil Pan Removal

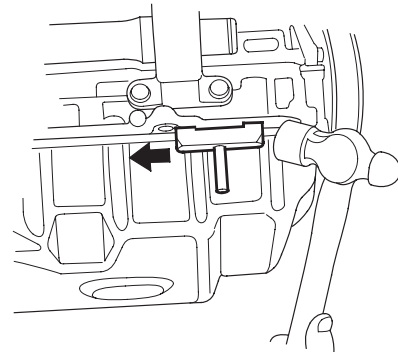
1. If the engine is still in the vehicle, remove the sub-frame.
  - 1 Drain the engine oil ([see page 08-5](#)).
  - 2 Attach the chain hoist to the engine (see step 38 on [page 05-7](#)).
  - 3 Disconnect the suspension lower arm ball joints ([see page 18-20](#)).
  - 4 Remove the rear mount mounting bolts (see step 42 on [page 05-8](#)).
  - 5 Remove the front mount mounting bolt (see step 43 on [page 05-9](#)).
  - 6 Remove the ATF filter mounting bolt (A/T) (see step 34 on [page 05-7](#)).
  - 7 Use a marker to make alignment marks on the reference lines that align with the centers of the rear sub-frame mounting bolts. Remove the front sub-frame (see step 44 on [page 05-9](#)).
2. Remove the stiffener (K24A1 engine M/T).



3. Remove the bolts/nuts securing the oil pan.
4. Drive an oil pan seal cutter between the oil pan and cylinder block.



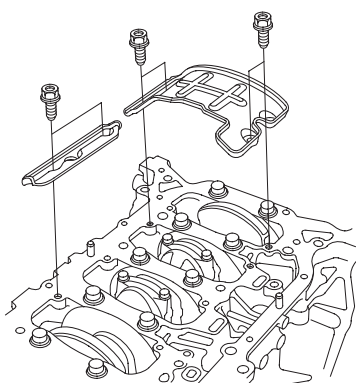
5. Cut the oil pan seal by striking the side of the cutter to slide the cutter along the oil pan.



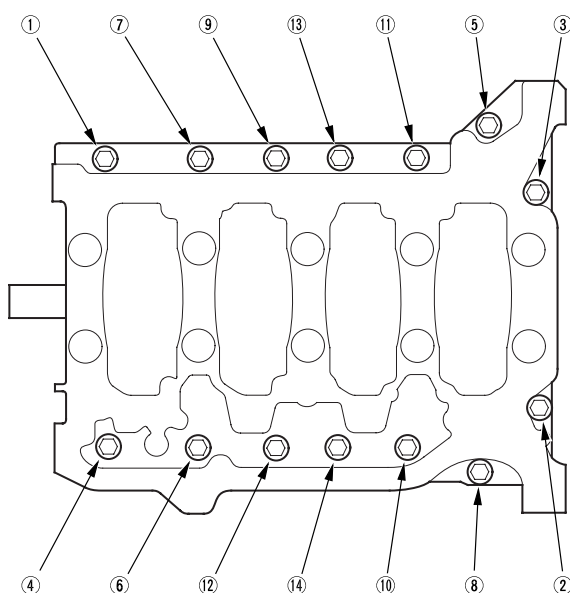
6. Remove the oil pan.

## Crankshaft and Piston Removal

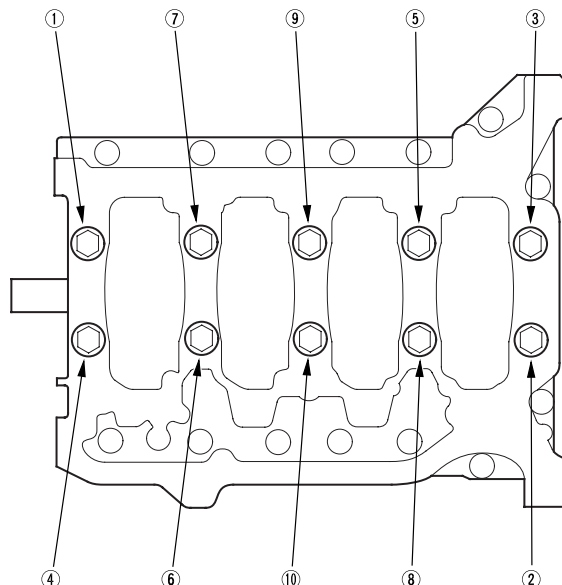
1. Remove the engine assembly (see page 05-3).
2. Remove the transmission:
  - Manual transmission (see page 13-5).
  - Automatic transmission (see page 14-135).
3. Remove the oil pan (see page 07-11).
4. Remove the oil pump (see page 08-11).
5. Remove the cylinder head (see page 06-24).
6. Remove the baffle plates.



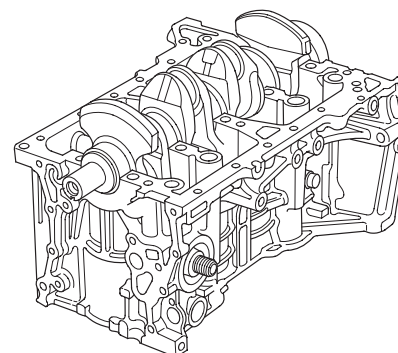
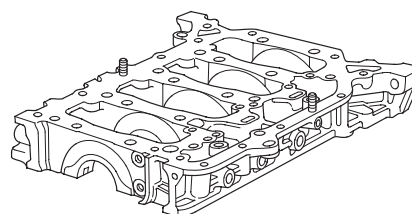
7. Remove the 8 mm bolts.



8. Remove the bearing cap bolts. To prevent warpage, unscrew the bolts in sequence 1/3 turn at a time: repeat the sequence until all bolts are loosened.

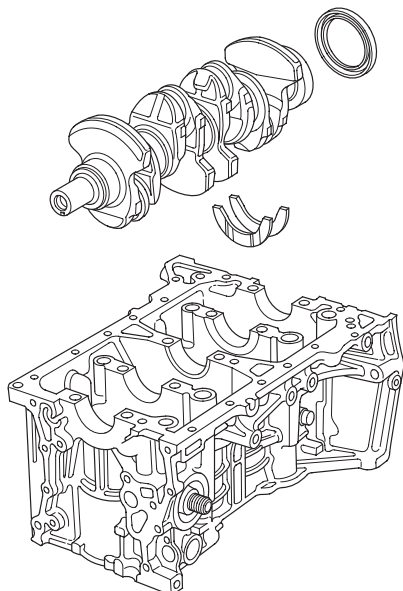


9. Remove the lower block and bearings. Keep all bearings in order.

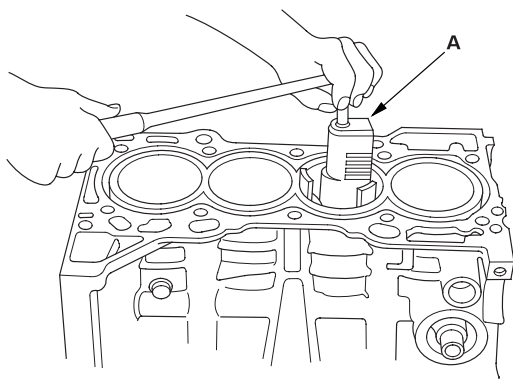




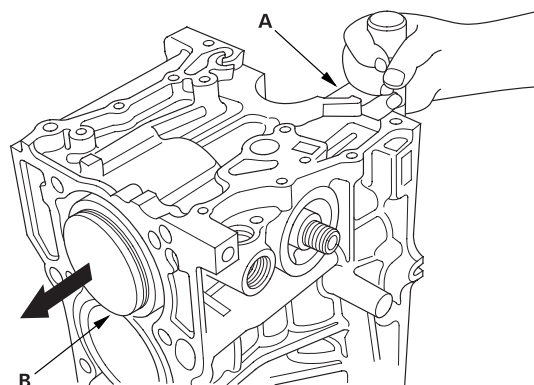
10. Remove the rod caps/bearings. Keep all caps/bearings in order.
11. Lift the crankshaft out of the engine, being careful not to damage the journals.



12. Remove the upper bearing halves from the connecting rods, and set them aside with their respective caps.
13. If you can feel a ridge of metal or hard carbon around the top of each cylinder, remove it with a ridge reamer (A). Follow the reamer manufacturer's instructions. If the ridge is not removed, it may damage the pistons as they are pushed out.



14. Use the wooden handle of a hammer (A) to drive out the pistons (B).



15. Reinstall the lower block and bearings on the engine in the proper order.
16. Reinstall the connecting rod bearings and caps after removing each piston/connecting rod assembly.
17. To avoid mixup on reassembly, mark each piston/connecting rod assembly with its cylinder number.  
NOTE: The existing number on the connecting rod does not indicate its position in the engine, it indicates the rod bore size.

## Crankshaft Inspection

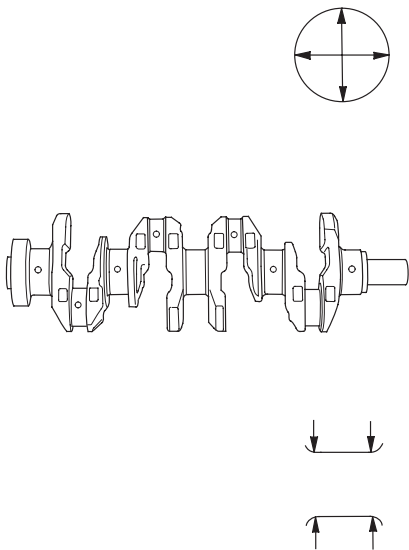
### Out-of-Round and Taper

1. Remove the crankshaft from the cylinder block (see [page 07-12](#)).
2. Clean the crankshaft oil passages with pipe cleaners or suitable brush.
3. Clean the keyway and threads.
4. Measure out-of-round at the middle of each rod and main journal in two places. The difference between measurements on each journal must not be more than the service limit.

#### Journal Out-of-Round:

**Standard (New):** 0.005 mm (0.0002 in.) max.

**Service Limit:** 0.010 mm (0.0004 in.)



5. Measure taper at the edges of each rod and main journal. The difference between measurement on each journal must not be more than the service limit.

#### Journal Taper:

**Standard (New):** 0.005 mm (0.0002 in.) max.

**Service Limit:** 0.010 mm (0.0004 in.)

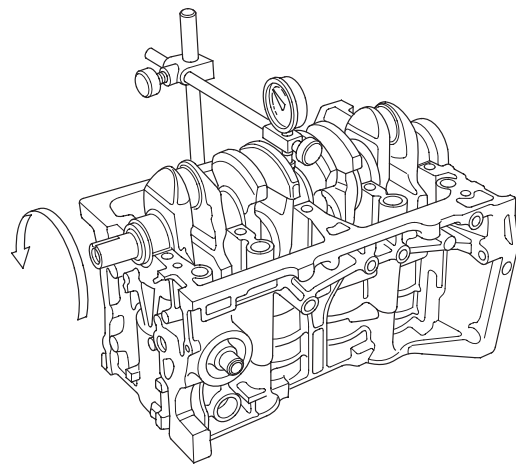
### Straightness

6. Place the cylinder block on the surface plate.
7. Clean and install the bearings on the No. 1 and No. 5 journal of the cylinder block.
8. Lower the crankshaft into the block.
9. Measure runout on all main journals. Rotate the crankshaft two complete revolutions. The difference between measurements on each journal must not be more than the service limit.

#### Crankshaft Total Runout:

**Standard (New):** 0.03 mm (0.0012 in.) max.

**Service Limit:** 0.04 mm (0.0016 in.)







## Block and Piston Inspection

1. Remove the crankshaft and pistons (see page 07-12).
2. Check the piston for distortion or cracks.
3. Measure the piston diameter at a point A from the bottom of the skirt. There are two standard-size pistons (No Letter or A, and B). The letter is stamped on the top of the piston. Letters are also stamped on the block as cylinder bore sizes.

### Point A:

#### K20A4, K20A5

engines: 11 mm (0.4 in.)

K24A1 engine: 13 mm (0.5 in.)

### Piston Diameter:

#### Standard (New):

#### K20A4, K20A5 engines:

No Letter (or A): 85.980 - 85.990 mm  
(3.3850 - 3.3854 in.)

B: 85.970 - 85.980 mm  
(3.3846 - 3.3850 in.)

#### K24A1, engine:

No Letter (or A): 86.980 - 86.990 mm  
(3.4244 - 3.4248 in.)

B: 86.970 - 86.980 mm  
(3.4240 - 3.4244 in.)

### Service Limit:

#### K20A4, K20A5 engines:

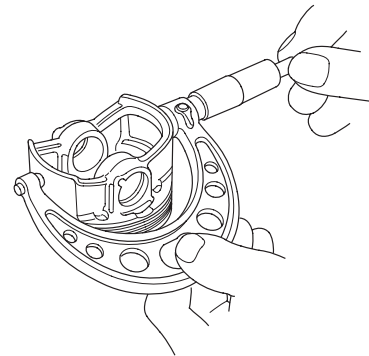
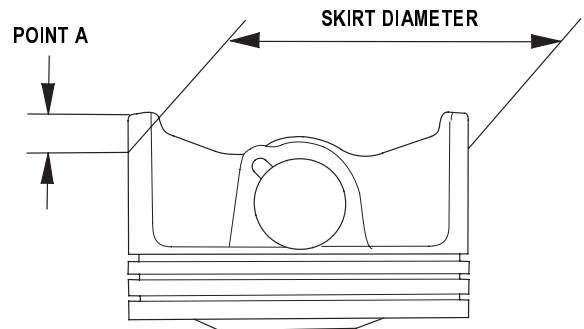
No Letter (or A): 85.930 mm (3.3831 in.)

B: 85.920 mm (3.3827 in.)

#### K24A1 engine:

No Letter (or A): 86.930 mm (3.4224 in.)

B: 86.920 mm (3.4220 in.)



### Oversize Piston Diameter:

#### K20A4, K20A5 engines:

0.25: 86.230 - 86.240 mm (3.3949 - 3.3953 in.)

#### K24A1 engine:

0.25: 87.230 - 87.240 mm (3.4342 - 3.4346 in.)

(cont'd)

## Block and Piston Inspection (cont'd)

- Measure wear and taper in direction X and Y at three levels in each cylinder as shown. If measurements in any cylinder are beyond the Oversize Bore Service Limit, replace the block. If the block is to be rebored, refer to step 7 after reboring.

### Cylinder Bore Size:

#### K20A4, K20A5 engines:

##### Standard (New):

A or I:	86.010 - 86.020 mm (3.3862 - 3.3866 in.)
B or II:	86.000 - 86.010 mm (3.3858 - 3.3862 in.)
Service Limit:	86.070 mm (3.3886 in.)

#### K24A1 engine:

##### Standard (New):

A or I:	87.010-87.020 mm (3.4256-3.4260 in.)
B or II:	87.000-87.010 mm (3.4252-3.4256 in.)
Service Limit:	87.070 mm (3.4279 in.)

### Oversize:

#### K20A4, K20A5 engines:

0.25: 86.250 - 86.260 mm (3.3957 - 3.3961 in.)

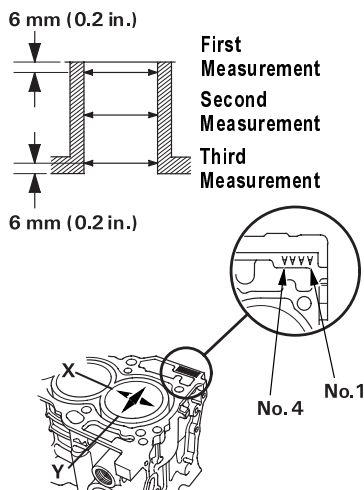
#### K24A1 engine:

0.25: 87.250-87.260 mm (3.4350-3.4354 in.)

Reboring limit: 0.25 mm (0.01 in.) max.

### Bore Taper:

Limit: (Difference between first and third measurement) 0.05 mm (0.002 in.)

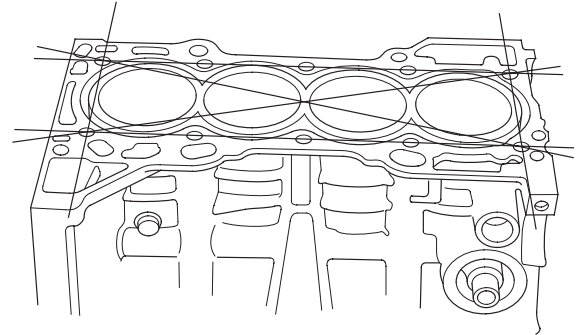


- Scored or scratched cylinder bores must be honed.
- Check the top of the block for warpage. Measure along the edges and across the center as shown.

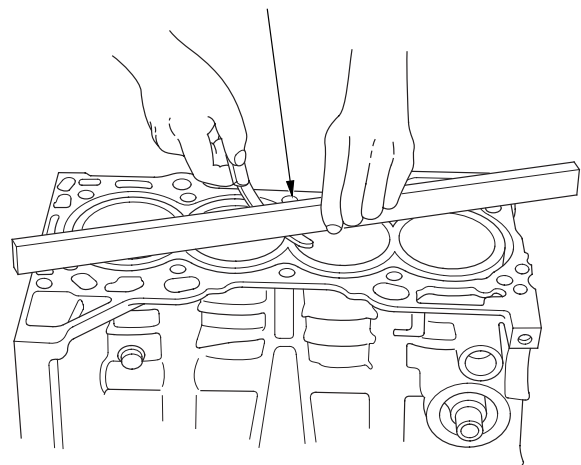
### Engine Block Warpage:

Standard (New): 0.07 mm (0.003 in.) max.

Service Limit: 0.10 mm (0.004 in.)



PRECISION STRAIGHT EDGE



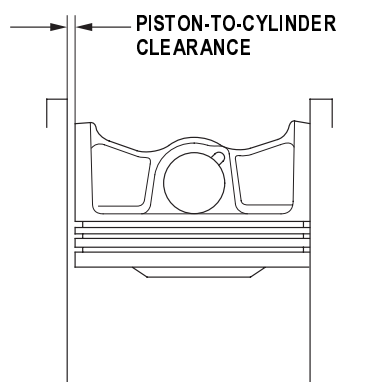


7. Calculate the difference between the cylinder bore diameter and the piston diameter. If the clearance is near or exceeds the service limit, inspect the piston and cylinder block for excessive wear.

**Piston-to-Cylinder Clearance:**

**Standard (New):** 0.020 - 0.040 mm  
(0.0008 - 0.0016 in.)

**Service Limit:** 0.05 mm (0.002 in.)



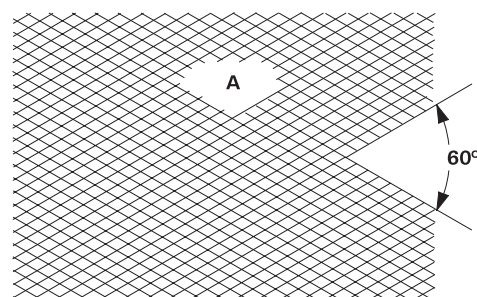
## Cylinder Honing

Only a scored or scratched cylinder bore must be honed.

1. Measure the cylinder bores (see step 4 on [page 07-16](#)).

If the block is to be reused, hone the cylinders and remeasure the bores.

2. Hone the cylinder bores with honing oil and a fine (400 grit) stone in a 60 degree cross-hatch pattern (A). Use only a rigid hone with 400 grit or finer stone such as Sunnen, Ammco, or equivalent. Do not use stones that are worn or broken.



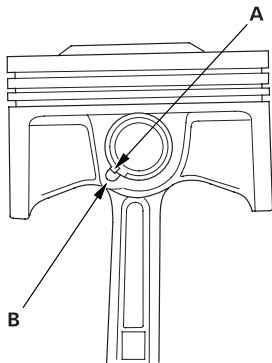
3. When honing is complete, thoroughly clean the engine block of all metal particles. Wash the cylinder bores with hot soapy water, then dry and oil them immediately to prevent rusting. Never use solvent, it will only redistribute the grit on the cylinder walls.
4. If scoring or scratches are still present in the cylinder bores after honing to the service limit, rebore the cylinder block. Some light vertical scoring and scratching is acceptable if it is not deep enough to catch your fingernail and does not run the full length of the bore.

## Piston, Pin and Connecting Rod Replacement

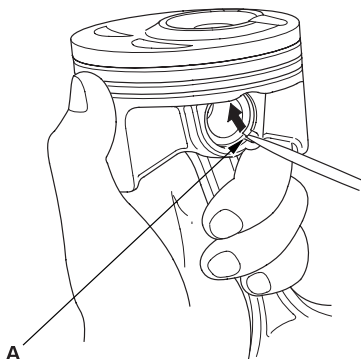
### Disassembly

1. Remove the piston from the cylinder block (see [page 07-12](#)).
2. Apply engine oil to the piston pin snap rings (A), and turn them in the ring grooves until the end gaps are lined up with the cutouts in the piston pin bores (B).

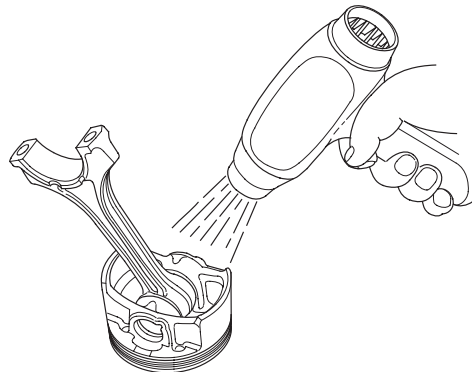
NOTE: Take care not to damage the ring grooves.



3. Remove both snap rings (A). Start at the cutout in the piston pin bore. Remove the snap rings carefully so they do not go flying or get lost. Wear eye protection.



4. Heat the piston and connecting rod assembly to about 70°C (158°F), then remove the piston pin.





## Inspection

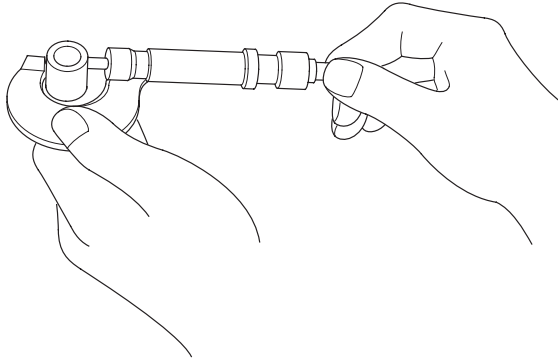
NOTE: Inspect the piston, piston pin, and connecting rod when they are at room temperature.

1. Measure the diameter of the piston pin.

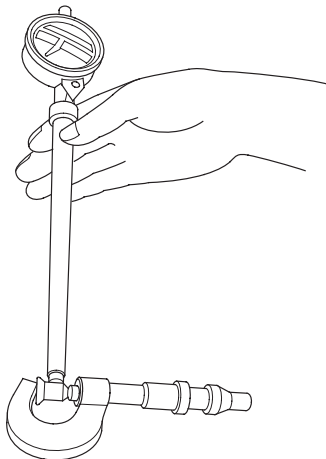
**Piston Pin Diameter:**

**Standard (New):** 21.961 - 21.965 mm  
(0.8646 - 0.8648 in.)

**Service Limit:** 21.953 mm (0.8643 in.)



2. Zero the dial indicator to the piston pin diameter.

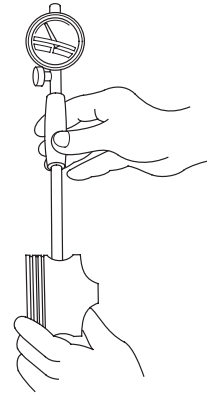


3. Check the difference between the piston pin diameter and piston pin hole diameter in the piston.

**Piston Pin-to-Piston Clearance:**

**Standard (New):** - 0.005 to +0.002 mm  
(- 0.00020 to +0.00008 in.)

**Service Limit:** 0.005 mm (0.0002 in.)

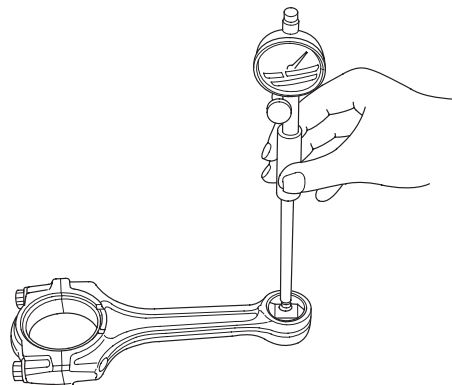


4. Measure the piston pin-to-connecting rod clearance.

**Piston Pin-to-Connecting Rod Clearance:**

**Standard (New):** 0.005 - 0.015 mm  
(0.0002 - 0.0006 in.)

**Service Limit:** 0.02 mm (0.0008 in.)

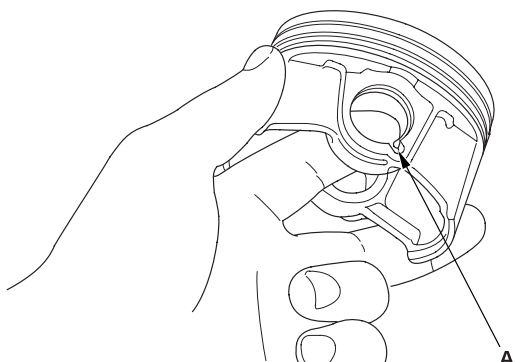


(cont'd)

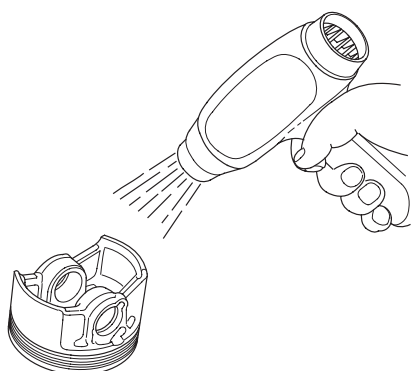
## Piston, Pin and Connecting Rod Replacement (cont'd)

### Reassembly

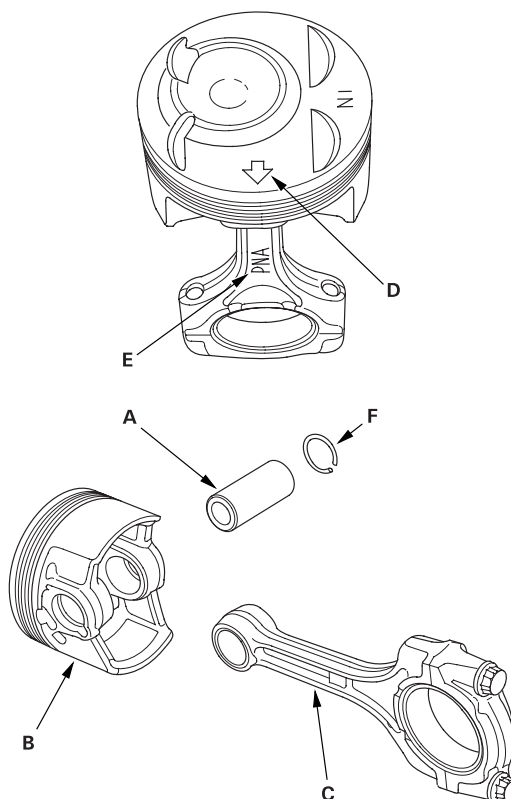
1. Install a piston pin snap ring (A).



2. Coat the piston pin bore in the piston, the bore in the connecting rod, and the piston pin with engine oil.
3. Heat the piston to about 70°C (158°F).



4. Install the piston pin (A). Assemble the piston (B) and connecting rod (C) with the arrow (D) and the embossed mark (E) on the same side.

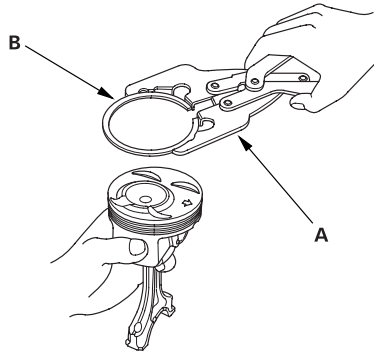


5. Install the remaining snap ring (F).
6. Turn the snap rings in the ring grooves until the end gaps are positioned at the bottom of the piston.



## Piston Ring Replacement

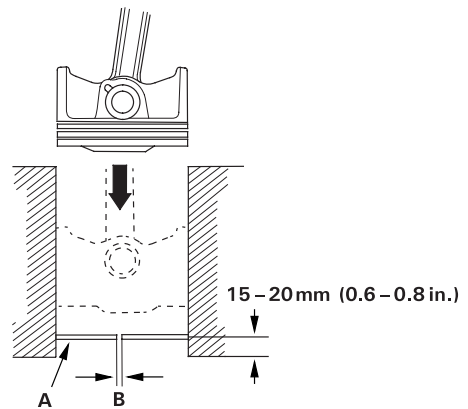
1. Remove the piston from the cylinder block (see [page 07-12](#)).
2. Using a ring expander (A), remove the old piston rings (B).



3. Clean all ring grooves thoroughly with a squared-off broken ring or ring groove cleaner with a blade to fit the piston grooves.  
The top and 2nd ring grooves are 1.2 mm (0.05 in.) wide. The oil ring groove is 2.0 mm (0.08 in.) wide (K20A4, K24A1 engines) or 2.8 mm (0.11 in.) wide (K20A5 engine).  
File down a blade if necessary.  
Do not use a wire brush to clean the ring grooves, or cut the ring grooves deeper with the cleaning tools.

NOTE: If the piston is to be separated from the connecting rod, do not install new rings yet.

4. Using a piston, push a new ring (A) into the cylinder bore 15 - 20 mm (0.6 - 0.8 in.) from the bottom.



5. Measure the piston ring end-gap (B) with a feeler gauge:
  - If the gap is too small, check to see if you have the proper rings for your engine.
  - If the gap is too large, recheck the cylinder bore diameter against the wear limits (see step 4 on [page 07-16](#)).

If the bore is over the service limit, the cylinder block must be rebored.

### Piston Ring End-Gap:

#### Top Ring

Standard (New):	0.20 - 0.35 mm (0.008 - 0.014 in.)
Service Limit:	0.60 mm (0.024 in.)

#### Second Ring

Standard (New):	0.40 - 0.55 mm (0.016 - 0.022 in.)
Service Limit:	0.70 mm (0.028 in.)

#### Oil Ring

##### K20A4 (Except KY models) engine

Standard (New):	0.25 - 0.65 mm (0.010 - 0.026 in.)
Service Limit:	0.75 mm (0.030 in.)

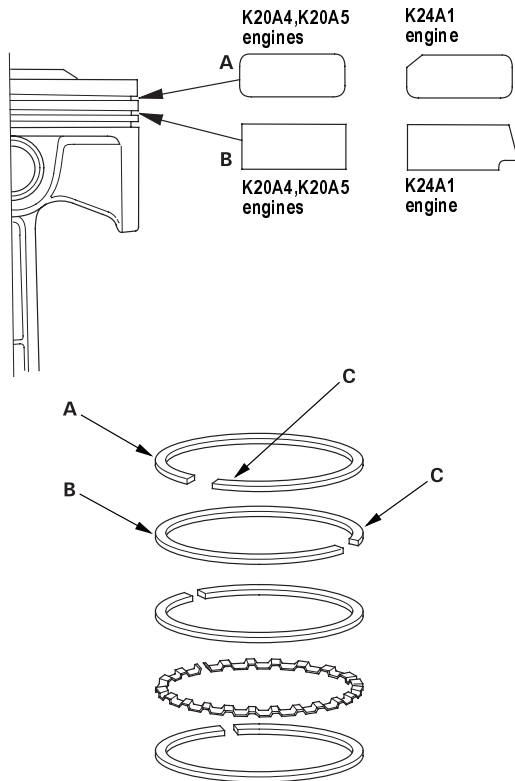
##### K20A4 (KY models), K20A5, K24A1 engines

Standard (New):	0.20 - 0.70 mm (0.008 - 0.028 in.)
Service Limit:	0.80 mm (0.031 in.)

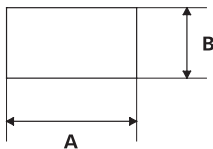
(cont'd)

## Piston Ring Replacement (cont'd)

6. Install the top ring and second ring as shown. The top ring (A) has a T or 1R mark and the second ring (B) has a 2T or 2R mark. The manufacturing marks (C) must be facing upward.



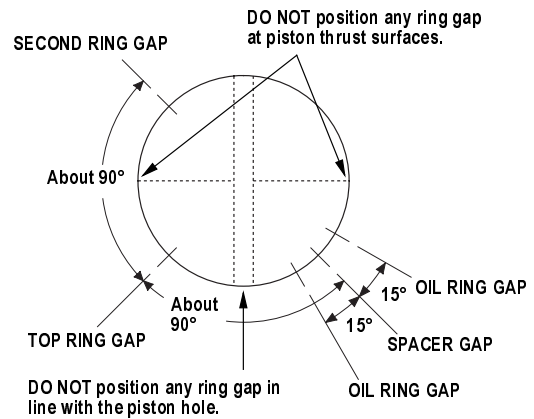
Piston ring dimensions



Top Ring (Standard):  
A: 3.1 mm (0.12 in.)  
B: 1.2 mm (0.05 in.)  
Second Ring (Standard):  
A: 3.4 mm (0.13 in.)  
B: 1.2 mm (0.05 in.)

7. Rotate the rings in their grooves to make sure they do not bind.

8. Position the ring end gaps as shown:



9. After installing a new set of rings, measure the ring-to-groove clearances:

### Top Ring Clearance

#### Standard (New):

K20A4 engine:

0.035-0.060 mm (0.0014-0.0024 in.)

K20A5 engine:

0.030-0.055 mm (0.0012-0.0022 in.)

K24A1 engine:

0.045-0.070 mm (0.0018-0.0028 in.)

Service Limit: 0.13 mm (0.005 in.)

### Second Ring Clearance

#### Standard (New):

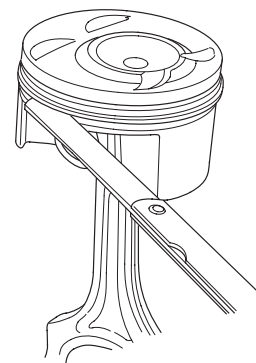
K20A4, K20A5 engine:

0.030-0.055 mm (0.0012-0.0022 in.)

K24A1 engine:

0.050-0.075 mm (0.0020-0.0030 in.)

Service Limit: 0.13 mm (0.005 in.)



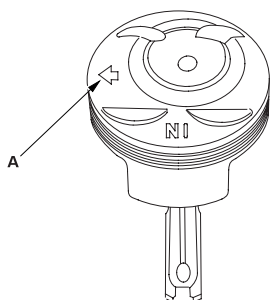




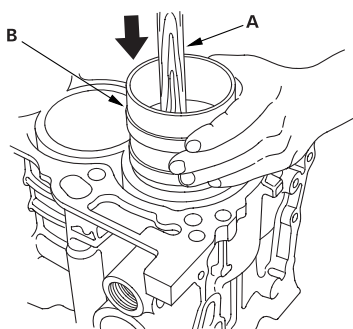
## Piston Installation

### If the crankshaft is already installed

1. Set the crankshaft to Bottom Dead Center (BDC) for each cylinder.
2. Remove the connecting rod caps, then install the ring compressor, and check that the bearing is securely in place.
3. Position the arrow (A) facing the timing chain side of the engine.



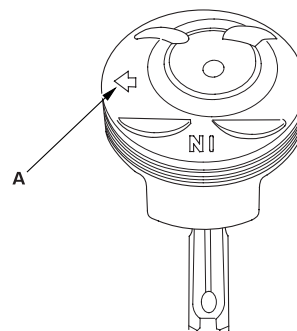
4. Position the piston in the cylinder, and tap it in using the wooden handle of a hammer (A). Maintain downward force on the ring compressor (B) to prevent the rings from expanding before entering the cylinder bore.



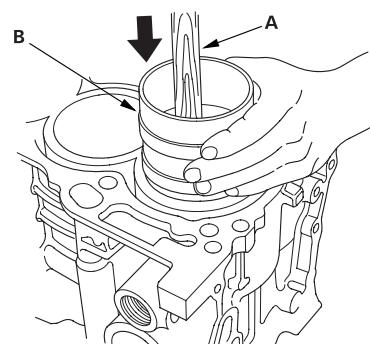
5. Stop after the ring compressor pops free, and check the connecting rod-to-crank journal alignment before pushing the piston into place.
6. Check the connecting rod bearing clearance with plastigage ([see page 07-8](#)).
7. Inspect the connecting rod bolts ([see page 07-24](#)).
8. Apply engine oil to the bolt threads, then install the rod caps with bearings. Torque the bolts to 20 N·m (2.0 kg·m, 14 lbf·ft) + 90°.

### If the crankshaft is not installed

1. Remove the connecting rod caps, then install the ring compressor, and check that the bearing is securely in place.
2. Position the arrow (A) facing the timing chain side of the engine.



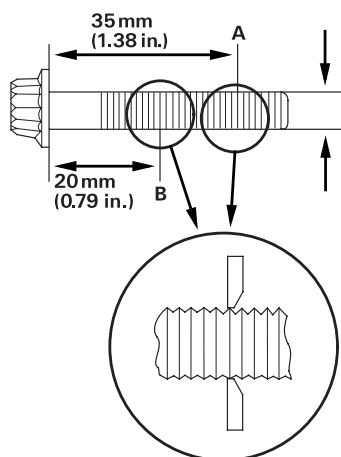
3. Position the piston in the cylinder, and tap it in using the wooden handle of a hammer (A). Maintain downward force on the ring compressor (B) to prevent the rings from expanding before entering the cylinder bore.



4. Position all pistons at top dead center.

## Connecting Rod Bolt Inspection

1. Measure the diameter of each connecting rod bolt at point A and point B.



2. Calculate the difference in diameter between point A and point B.

**Point A - Point B = Difference in Diameter**

**Difference in Diameter:**

**Specification: 0 - 0.1 mm (0 - 0.004 in.)**

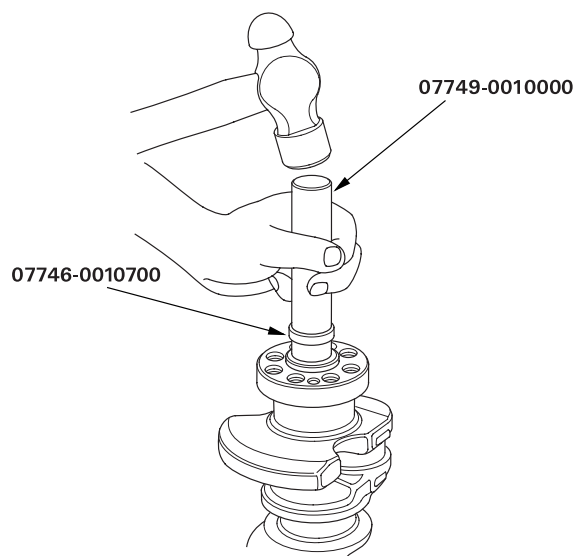
3. If the difference in diameter is out of tolerance, replace the connecting rod bolt.

## Crankshaft Installation

### Special Tools Required

- Handle driver 07749-0010000
- Driver attachment, 24 x 26 mm 07746-0010700
- Oil seal driver attachment 96 07ZAD-PNA0100

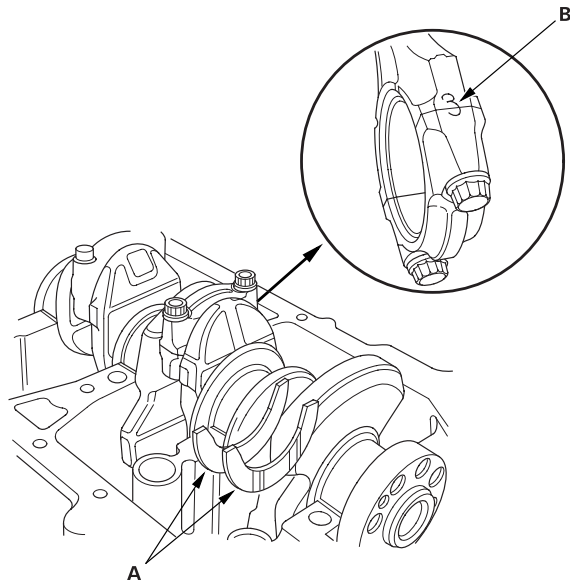
1. With a manual transmission, install the crankshaft end bushing when replacing the crankshaft.  
1 Using the special tools, drive in the crankshaft end bushing until the special tools bottom against the crankshaft.



2. Check the connecting rod bearing clearance with plastigage ([see page 07-8](#)).
3. Check the main bearing clearance with plastigage ([see page 07-6](#)).
4. Inspect the connecting rod bolts ([see page 07-24](#)).



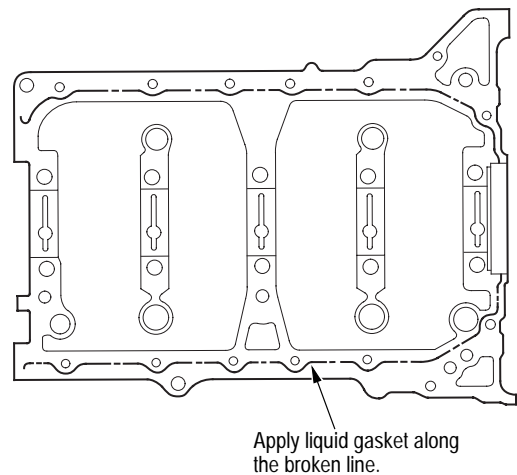
5. Install the bearing halves in the cylinder block and connecting rods.
6. Apply a coat of engine oil to the main bearings and rod bearings.
7. Hold the crankshaft so rod journal No. 2 and rod journal No. 3 are straight up, and lower the crankshaft into the block.
8. Install the thrust washers (A) in the No. 4 journal of the cylinder block.



9. Apply engine oil to the threads of the connecting rod bolts.
10. Seat the rod journals into connecting rod No. 1 and connecting rod No. 4. Line up the mark (B) on the connecting rod and cap, then install the caps and bolts finger-tight.
11. Rotate the crankshaft clockwise, and seat the journals into connecting rod No. 2 and connecting rod No. 3. Line up the mark on the connecting rod and cap, then install the caps and bolts finger-tight.

12. Tighten the connecting rod bolts to 20 N·m (2.0 kgf·m, 14 lbf·ft).
13. Tighten the connecting rod bolts an additional 90°.
14. Remove old liquid gasket from the lower block mating surfaces, bolts and bolt holes.
15. Clean and dry the lower block mating surfaces.
16. Apply liquid gasket, P/N 08C70-K0234M, 08C70-K0334M or 08C70-X0331S, evenly to the cylinder block mating surface of the lower block and to the inner threads of the bolt holes.

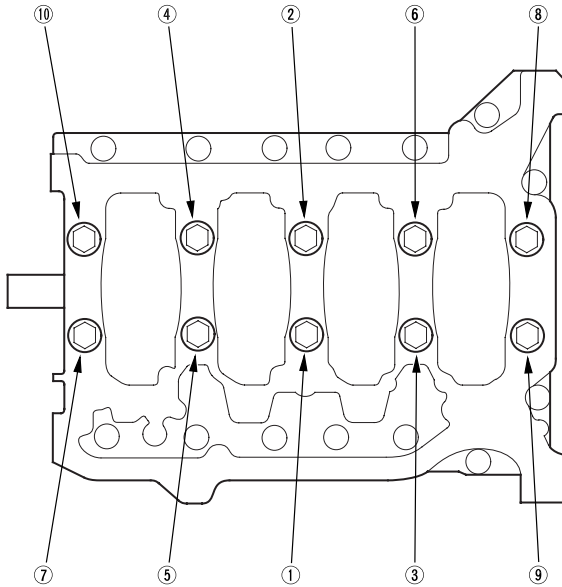
**NOTE:** Do not install the parts if 5 minutes or more have elapsed since applying liquid gasket. Instead, reapply liquid gasket after removing old residue.



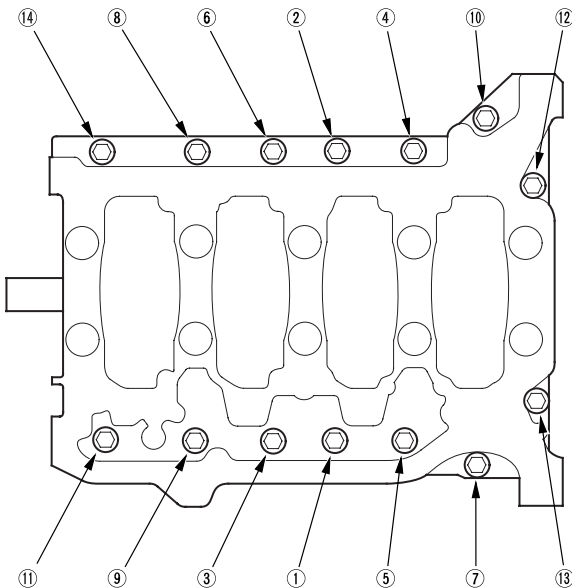
(cont'd)

## Crankshaft Installation (cont'd)

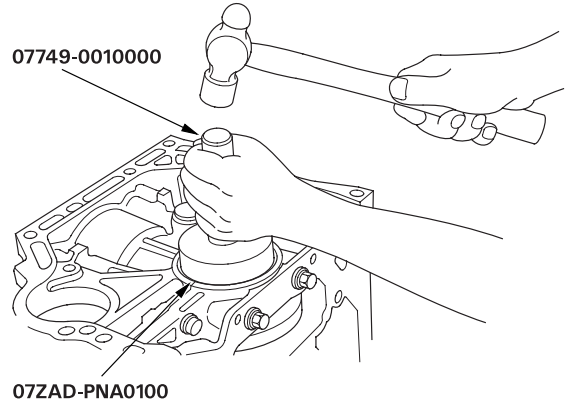
17. Put the lower block on the cylinder block.
18. Tighten the bearing cap bolts in sequence to 29 N·m (3.0 kgf·m, 22 lbf·ft).



19. Tighten the bearing cap bolts an additional 56°.
20. Tighten the 8 mm bolts in sequence to 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft).

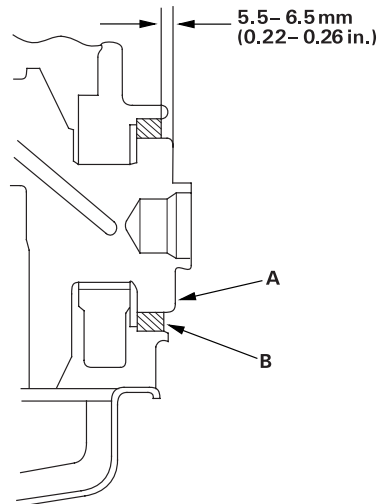


21. Use the special tools to drive a new oil seal squarely into the block to the specified installed height.



22. Measure the distance between the crankshaft (A) and oil seal (B).

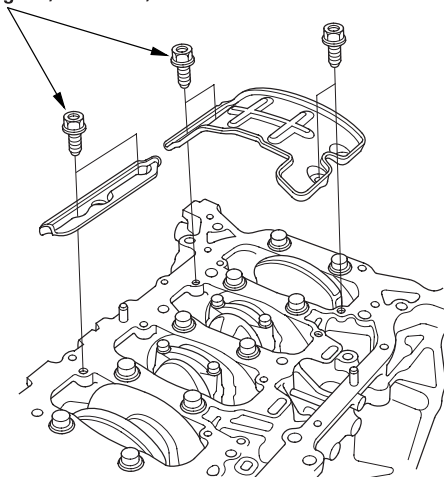
**Oil Seal Installed Height: 5.5 - 6.5 mm (0.22 - 0.26 in.)**





23. Install the baffle plates.

6 x 1.0 mm  
12 N·m  
(1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft)

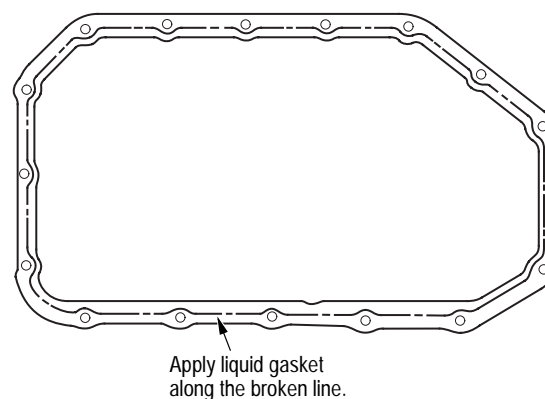


24. Install the oil pump (see page 08-16).  
25. Install the oil pan (see page 07-27).  
26. Install the cylinder head (see page 06-40).  
27. Install the transmission:  
• Manual transmission (see page 13-10).  
• Automatic transmission (see page 14-143).  
28. Install the engine assembly (see page 05-10).

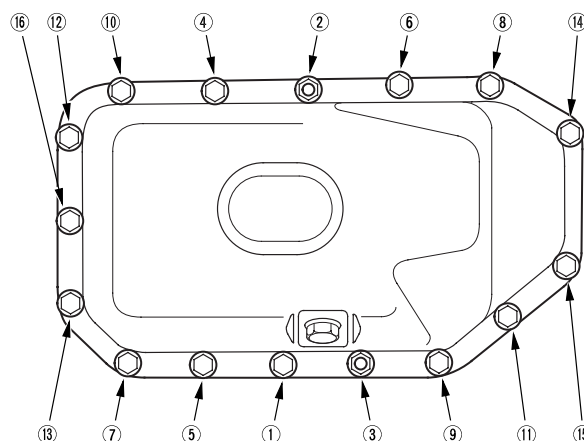
## Oil Pan Installation

1. Remove old liquid gasket from the oil pan mating surfaces, bolts, and bolt holes.
2. Clean and dry the oil pan mating surfaces.
3. Apply liquid gasket, P/N 08C70-K0334M or 08C70-X0331S, evenly to the cylinder block mating surface of the oil pan and to the inner threads of the bolt holes.

NOTE: Do not install the parts if 5 minutes or more have elapsed since applying liquid gasket. Instead, reapply liquid gasket after removing old residue.



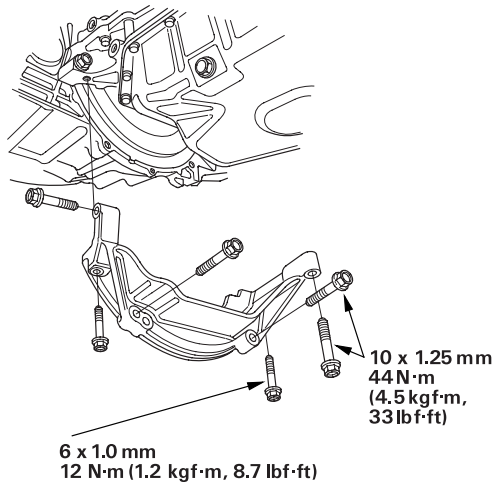
4. Install the oil pan.
5. Tighten the bolts in two or three steps. In the final step, tighten all bolts, in sequence, to 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft).



(cont'd)

### Oil Pan Installation (cont'd)

6. Install the stiffener (K24A1 engine M/T).



7. If the engine is still in the vehicle, install the sub-frame.
  - 1 Install the sub-frame. Align the reference lines on the sub-frame with the bolt head center, then tighten the bolts (see step 4 on [page 05-11](#)).
  - 2 Install the ATF filter mounting bolt (see step 21 on [page 05-13](#)).
  - 3 Tighten the front mounting bolt (see step 5 on [page 05-11](#)).
  - 4 Tighten the rear mount mounting bolts (see step 6 on [page 05-12](#)).
  - 5 Connect the suspension lower arm ball joints (see [page 18-20](#)).
8. After assembly, wait at least 30 minutes before filling the engine with oil.

## Engine Mechanical

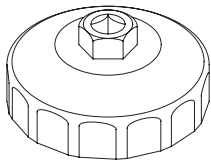
Engine Lubrication .....	08-2
Special Tools .....	08-2
Component Location Index .....	08-3
Oil Pressure Switch Test .....	08-4
Oil Pressure Test.....	08-4
Engine Oil Replacement .....	08-5
Engine Oil Filter Replacement .....	08-6
Oil Filter Holder Replacement .....	08-9
Oil Pump Overhaul.....	08-10
Oil Pressure Switch Replacement.....	08-18



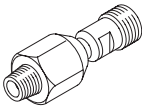
Engine Lubrication

Special Tools

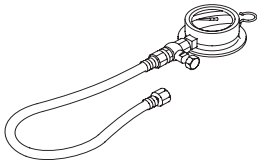
Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07HAA-PJ70100	Oil Filter Wrench	1
2	07406-0030000	Oil Pressure Gauge Attachment	1
3	07506-3000001	Oil Pressure Gauge	1
4	07744-0010500	Pin Driver, 6.0 mm	1
5	07912-6110001	Oil Filter Wrench	1



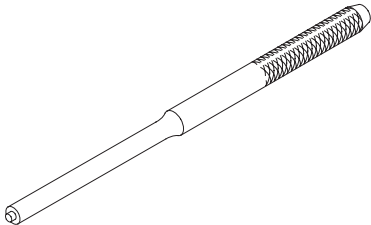
1



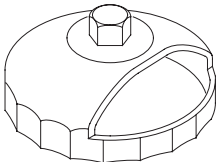
2



3



4

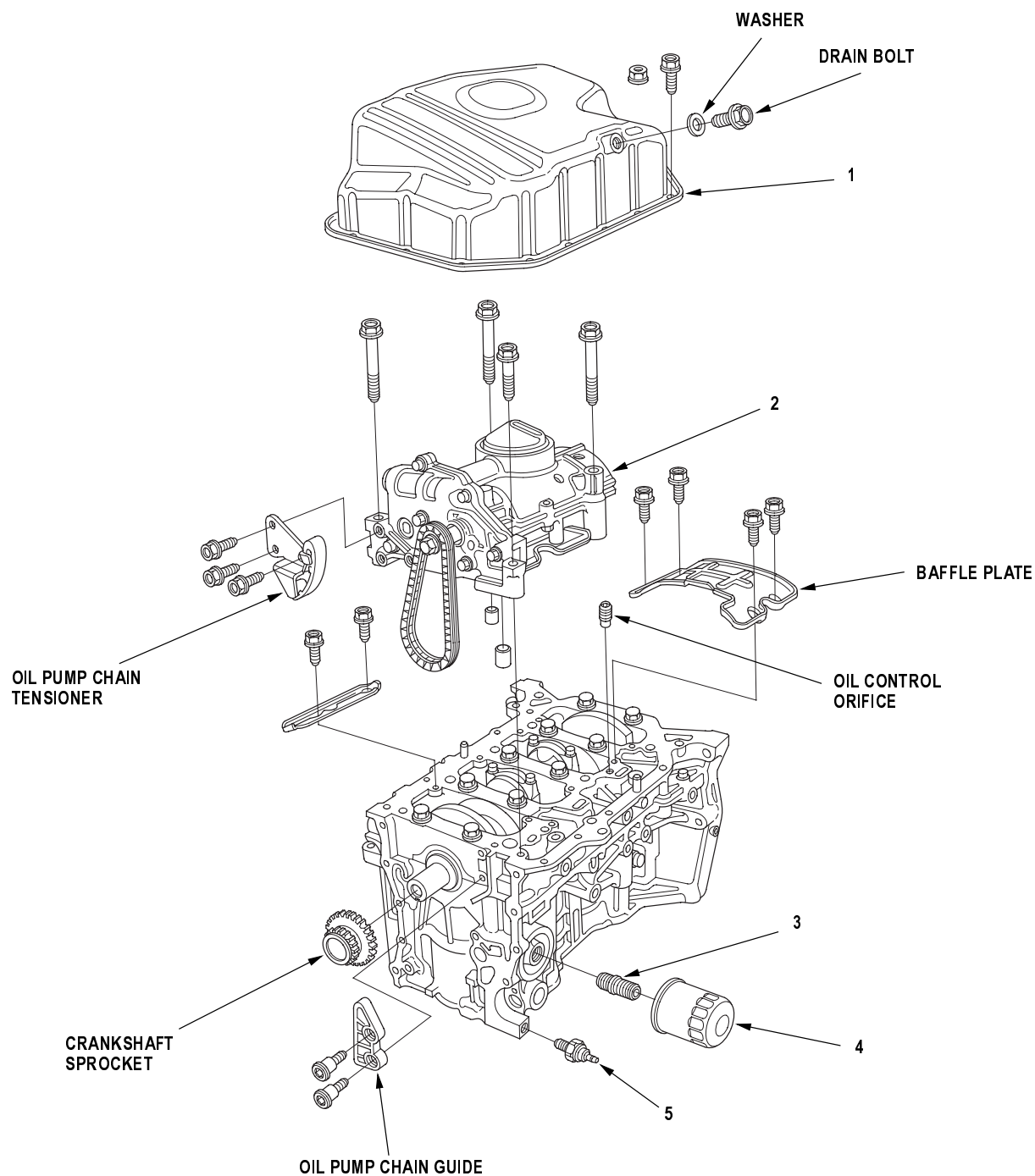


5





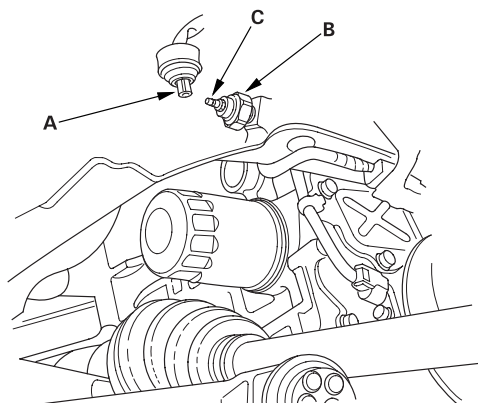
## Component Location Index



- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| 1 OIL PAN             | Removal, <a href="#">page 07-11</a> ; Installation, <a href="#">page 07-27</a>   |
| 2 OIL PUMP            | Overhaul, <a href="#">page 08-10</a>   |
| 3 OIL FILTER HOLDER   | Replacement, <a href="#">page 08-9</a>   |
| 4 OIL FILTER          | Replacement, <a href="#">page 08-6</a>   |
| 5 OIL PRESSURE SWITCH | Circuit Diagram, <a href="#">page 22A-68</a> ; Switch Test, <a href="#">page 08-4</a> ; Oil Pressure test, <a href="#">page 08-4</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 08-18</a> |

## Oil Pressure Switch Test

1. Remove the YEL/RED wire (A) from the engine oil pressure switch (B).



2. Check for continuity between the positive terminal (C) and the engine (ground). There should be continuity with the engine stopped. There should be no continuity with the engine running.
3. If the switch fails to operate, check the engine oil level. If the engine oil level is OK, check the engine oil pressure. If the oil pressure is OK, replace the oil pressure switch.

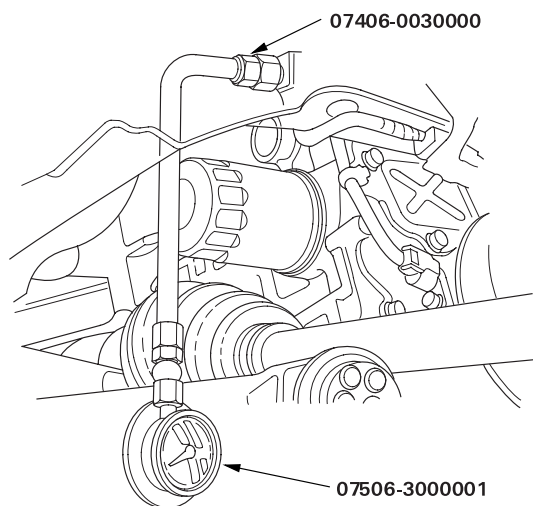
## Oil Pressure Test

### Special Tools Required

- Oil pressure gauge attachment 07406-0030000
- Oil pressure gauge 07506-3000001

If the oil pressure warning light stays on with the engine running, check the engine oil level. If the oil level is correct:

1. Connect a tachometer or a Honda PGM Tester.
2. Remove the engine oil pressure switch, and install an the special tools.



3. Start the engine. Shut it off immediately if the gauge registers no oil pressure. Repair the problem before continuing.
4. Allow the engine to reach operating temperature (fan comes on at least twice). The pressure should be:

**Engine Oil Temperature: 80°C (176°F)**

**Engine Oil Pressure:**

**At Idle:** 70 kPa (0.7 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 10 psi)  
minimum

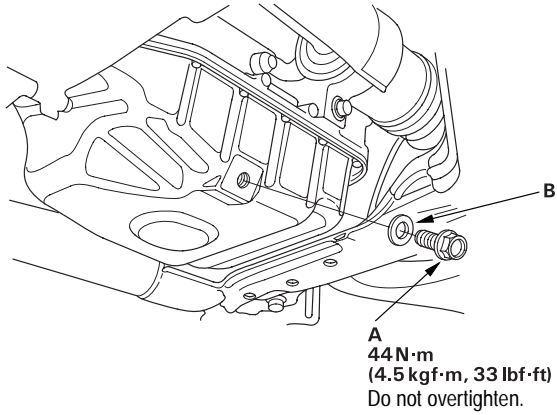
**At 3,000 rpm (min<sup>-1</sup>):** 340 kPa (3.5 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 50 psi)  
minimum

5. If the oil pressure is NOT within specifications, inspect these items.
  - Check the oil screen for clogging.
  - Check the oil pump ([see page 08-12](#)).



### Engine Oil Replacement

1. Warm up the engine.
2. Remove the drain bolt (A), and drain the engine oil.



3. Reinstall the drain bolt with a new washer (B).
4. Refill with the recommended oil ([see page 03-2](#)).

#### Capacity

- 4.0 / (4.2 US qt, 3.5 Imp qt) at oil change.
  - 4.2 / (4.4 US qt, 3.7 Imp qt) at oil change including filter.
  - 5.3 / (5.6 US qt, 4.7 Imp qt) after engine overhaul.
5. Run the engine for more than 3 minutes, then check for oil leakage.

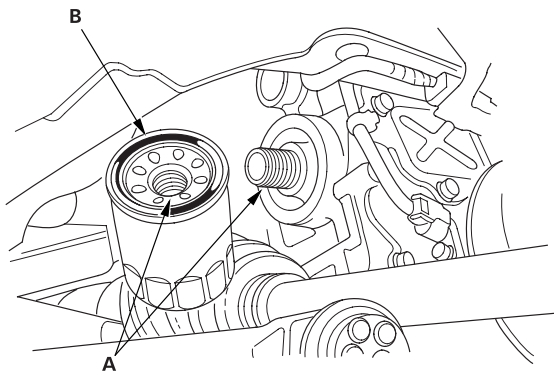
Engine Oil Filter Replacement

Special Tools Required

- Oil filter wrench 07HAA-PJ70100
- Oil filter wrench 07912-6110001

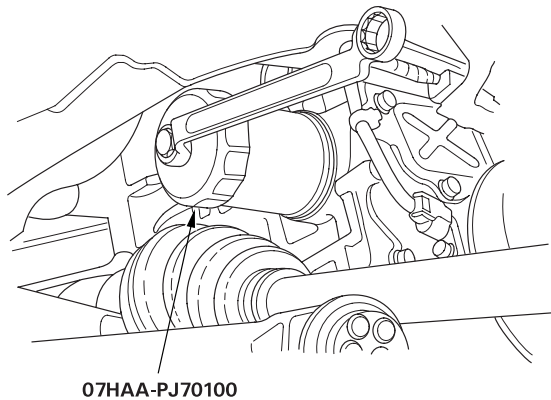
JAPAN-MADE Engine Oil Filter  
(3/4 - turn type)

1. Remove the oil filter with the special oil filter wrench.
2. Inspect the threads (A) and rubber seal (B) on the new filter. Wipe off the seat on the engine block, then apply a light coat of oil to the filter rubber seal. Use only filters with a built-in bypass system.

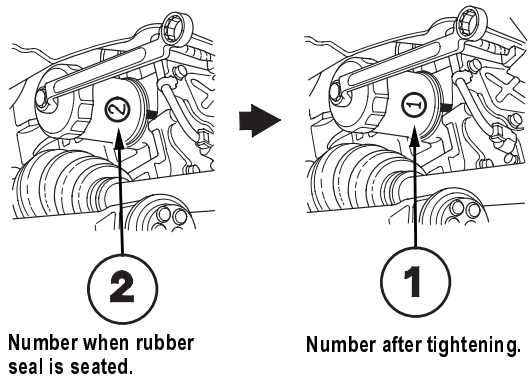


3. Install the oil filter by hand.
4. After the rubber seal seats, tighten the oil filter clockwise with the special tool.

Tighten: 3/4 turn clockwise.  
Tightening torque: 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft)



5. If 4 numbers or marks (1 to 4 or ▼ to ▼▼▼▼ ) are printed around the outside of the filter, use the following procedure to tighten the filter.
  - Spin the filter on until its seal lightly seats against the block, and note which number or mark is at the bottom.
  - Tighten the filter by turning it clockwise 3 numbers or marks from the one you noted. For example, if number 2 is at the bottom when the seal is seated, tighten the filter until the number 1 comes around the bottom.



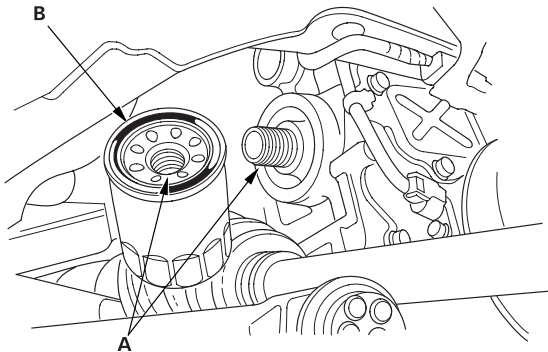
Number or Mark when rubber seal is seated	1 or ▼	2 or ▼▼	3 or ▼▼▼	4 or ▼▼▼▼
Number or Mark after tightening	4 or ▼▼▼▼	1 or ▼	2 or ▼▼	3 or ▼▼▼

6. After installation, fill the engine with oil up to the specified level, run the engine for more than 3 minutes, then check for oil leakage.



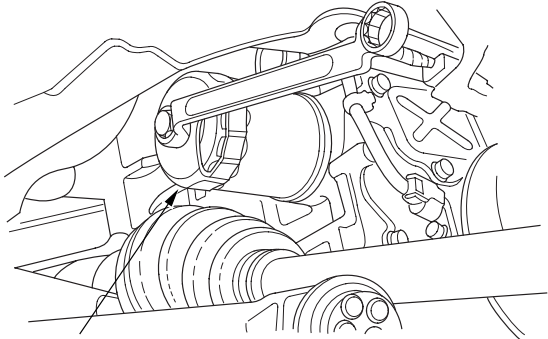
**JAPAN-MADE Engine Oil Filter  
(7/8 - turn type)**

1. Remove the oil filter with the special oil filter wrench.
2. Inspect the threads (A) and rubber seal (B) on the new filter. Wipe off the seat on the engine block, then apply a light coat of oil to the filter rubber seal. Use only filters with a built-in bypass system.



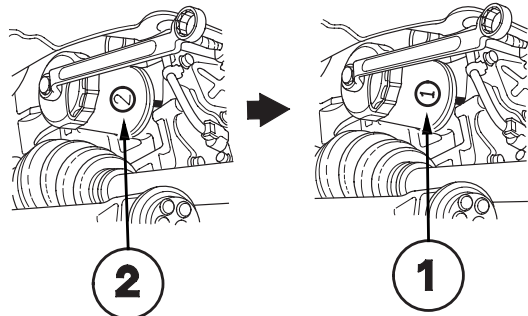
3. Install the oil filter by hand.
4. After the rubber seal seats, tighten the oil filter clockwise with the special tool.

**Tighten:** 7/8 turn clockwise.  
**Tightening torque:** 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)



07912-6110001

5. If 8 numbers (1 to 8) are printed around the outside of the filter, use the following procedure to tighten the filter.
  - Spin the filter on until its seal lightly seats against the block, and note which number is at the bottom.
  - Tighten the filter by turning it clockwise 7 numbers from the one you noted. For example, if number 2 is at the bottom when the seal is seated, tighten the filter until the number 1 comes around the bottom.



Number when rubber seal is seated	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Number after tightening	8	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

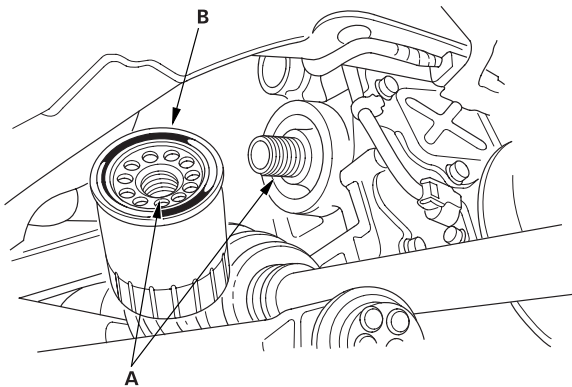
6. After installation, fill the engine with oil up to the specified level, run the engine for more than 3 minutes, then check for oil leakage.

(cont'd)

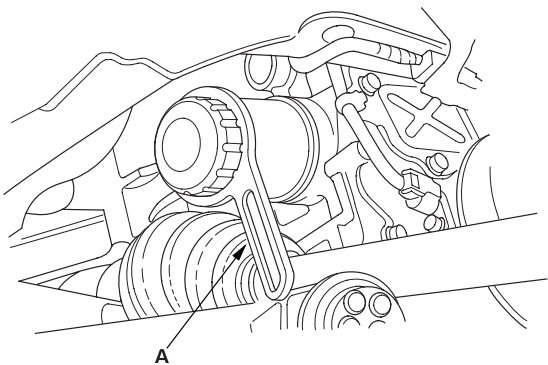
Engine Oil Filter Replacement (cont'd)

FRANCE-MADE Engine Oil Filter  
(3/4 - turn type)

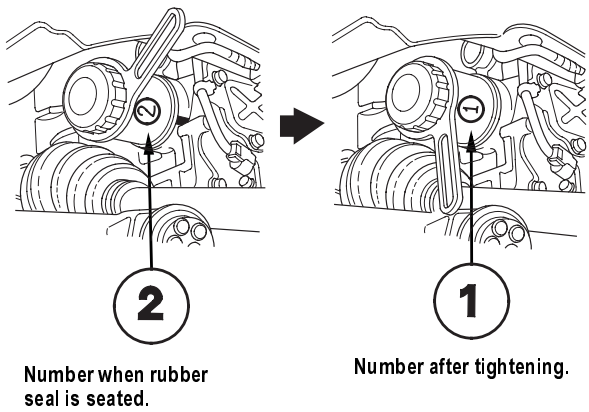
- 1. Remove the oil filter with the commercially available oil filter wrench (LABINAL-Purflux 76).
- 2. Inspect the threads (A) and rubber seal (B) on the new filter. Wipe off the seat on the engine block, then apply a light coat of oil to the filter rubber seal. Use only filters with a built-in bypass system.



- 3. Install the oil filter by hand.
  - 4. After the rubber seal seats, tighten the oil filter clockwise with the commercially available oil filter wrench (LABINAL-Purflux 76)(A).
- Tighten: 3/4 turn clockwise.  
Tightening torque: 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)



- 5. If 4 numbers (1 to 4) are printed around the outside of the filter, use the following procedure to tighten the filter.
  - Spin the filter on until its seal lightly seats against the block, and note which number is at the bottom.
  - Tighten the filter by turning it clockwise 3 numbers from the one you noted. For example, if number 2 is at the bottom when the seal is seated, tighten the filter until the number 1 comes around the bottom.



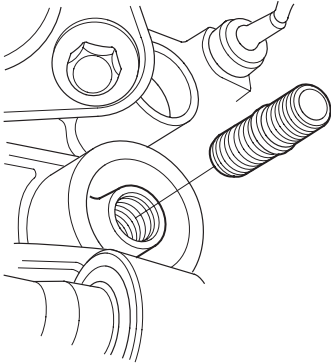
Number or Mark when rubber seal is seated	1	2	3	4
Number or Mark after tightening	4	1	2	3

- 6. After installation, fill the engine with oil up to the specified level, run the engine for more than 3 minutes, then check for oil leakage.



### Oil Filter Holder Replacement

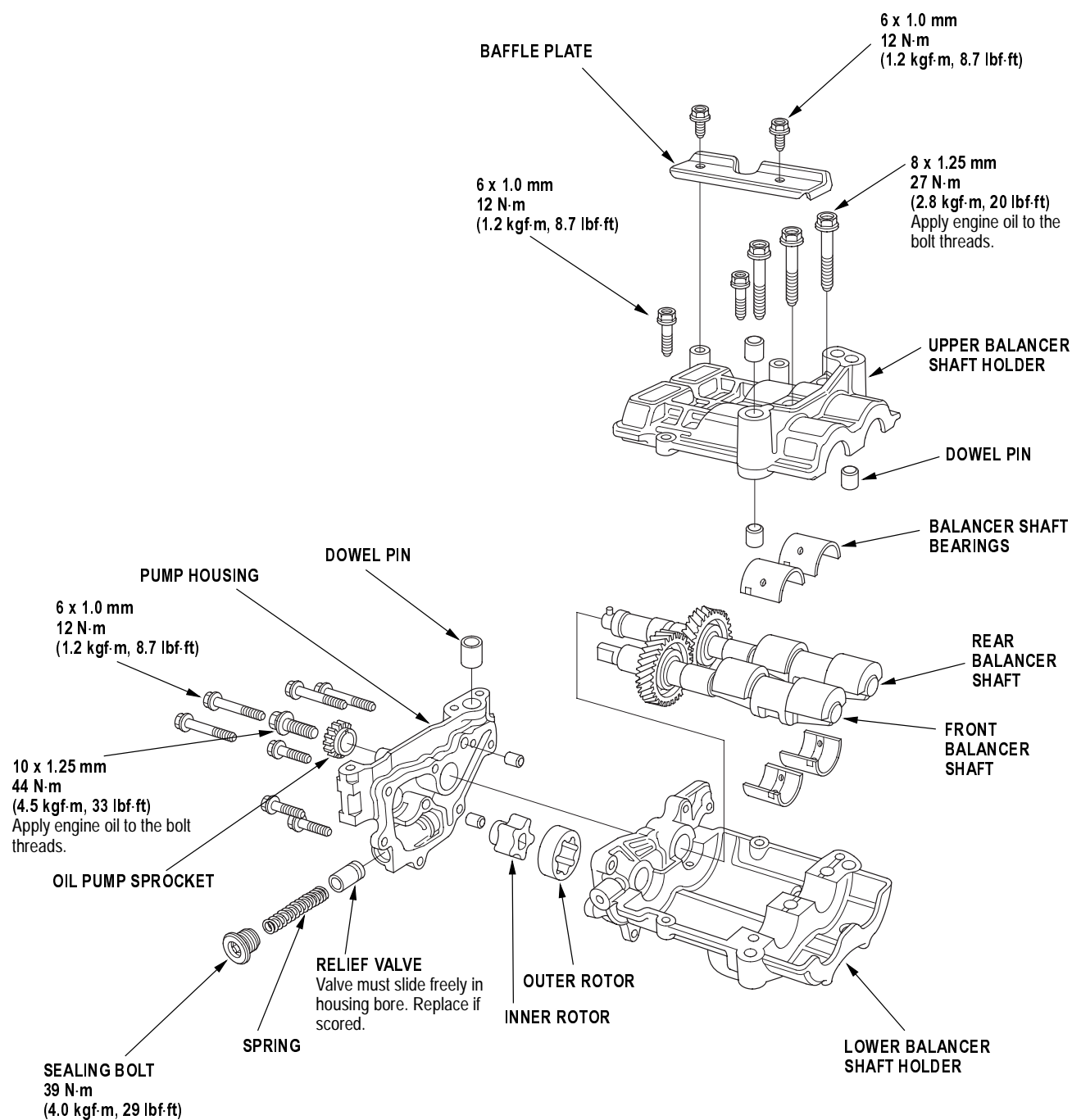
1. Remove the oil filter ([see page 08-6](#)).
2. Remove the oil filter holder.



3. Tighten the new oil filter holder to 49 N·m (5.0 kgf·m, 36 lbf·ft)

Oil Pump Overhaul

Exploded View





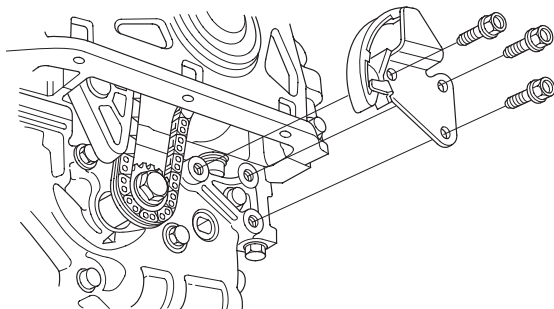


### Special Tools Required

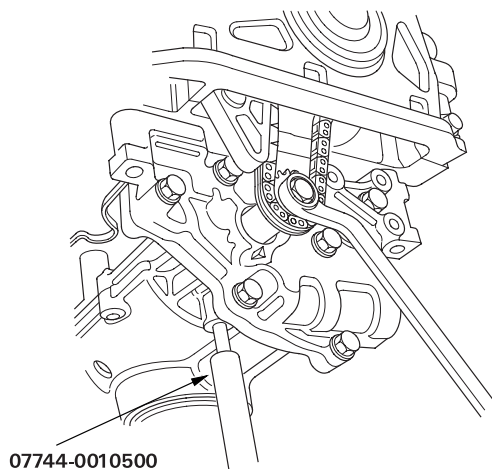
Pin driver, 6.0 mm 07744-0010500

### Oil Pump Removal

1. Set the No. 1 piston at Top Dead Center (TDC) (see step 1 on [page 06-12](#)).
2. Remove the oil pan ([see page 07-11](#)).
3. Remove the oil pump chain tensioner.

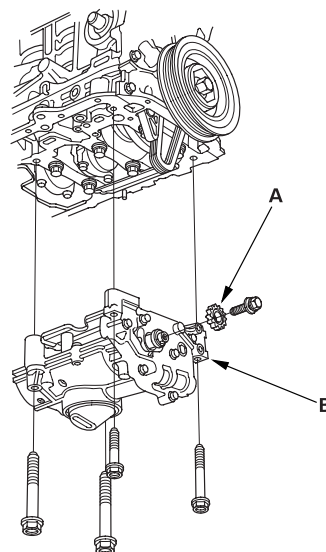


4. To hold the rear balancer shaft, insert a pin driver into the hole in the rear balancer shaft, through the maintenance hole on the lower balancer shaft holder.



5. Loosen the oil pump sprocket mounting bolt.

6. Remove the oil pump sprocket (A), then remove the oil pump (B).

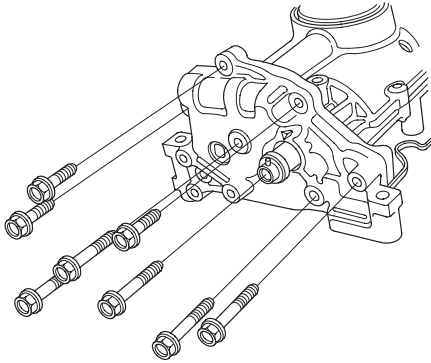


(cont'd)

## Oil Pump Overhaul (cont'd)

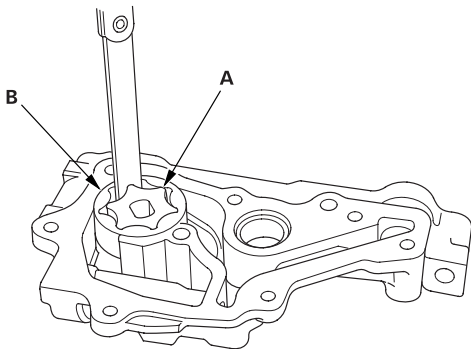
### Oil Pump Inspection

1. Remove the pump housing.



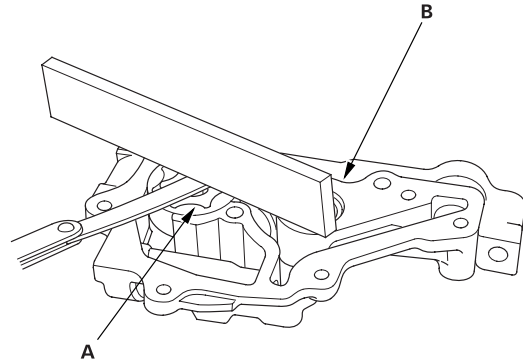
2. Check the inner-to-outer rotor radial clearance between the inner rotor (A) and outer rotor (B). If the inner-to-outer rotor radial clearance exceeds the service limit, replace the oil pump.

**Inner Rotor-to-Outer Rotor Radial Clearance**  
**Standard (New):** 0.02 - 0.16 mm (0.001 - 0.006 in.)  
**Service Limit:** 0.20 mm (0.008 in.)



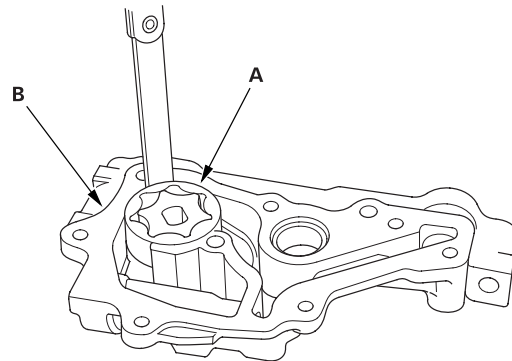
3. Check the housing-to-rotor axial clearance between the rotor (A) and pump housing (B). If the housing-to-rotor axial clearance exceeds the service limit, replace the oil pump.

**Housing-to-Rotor Axial Clearance**  
**Standard (New):** 0.02 - 0.07 mm (0.001 - 0.003 in.)  
**Service Limit:** 0.12 mm (0.005 in.)



4. Check the housing-to-outer rotor radial clearance between the outer rotor (A) and pump housing (B). If the housing-to-outer rotor radial clearance exceeds the service limit, replace the oil pump.

**Housing-to-Outer Rotor Radial Clearance**  
**Standard (New):** 0.15 - 0.21 mm (0.006 - 0.008 in.)  
**Service Limit:** 0.23 mm (0.009 in.)



5. Inspect both rotors and the pump housing for scoring or other damage. Replace parts if necessary.



### Balancer Shaft Inspection

1. Seat the balancer shaft by pushing it away from the oil pump sprocket end of the oil pump.
2. Zero the dial indicator against the end of the balancer shaft, then push the balancer shaft back and forth and read the end play.

#### Balancer Shaft End Play:

##### Front Balancer Shaft:

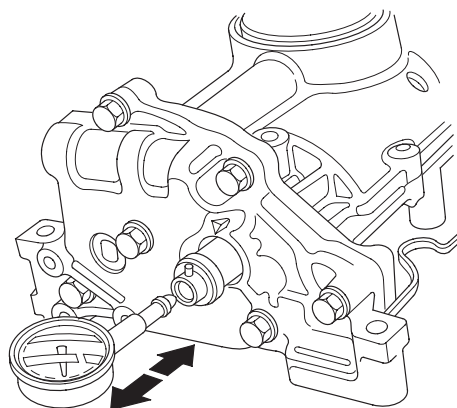
**Standard (New):** 0.070 - 0.135 mm  
(0.0028 - 0.0053 in.)

**Service Limit:** 0.15 mm (0.006 in.)

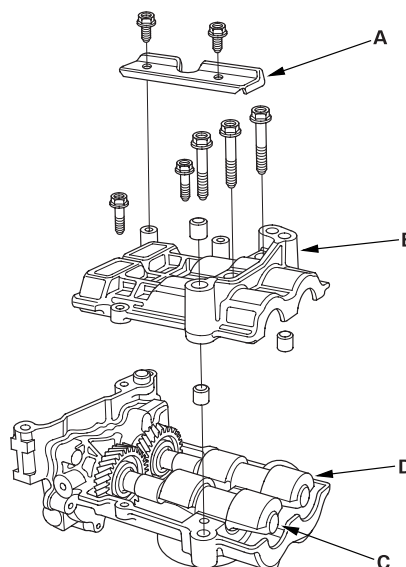
##### Rear Balancer Shaft:

**Standard (New):** 0.070 - 0.135 mm  
(0.0028 - 0.0053 in.)

**Service Limit:** 0.15 mm (0.006 in.)



3. Remove the baffle plate (A) and upper balancer shaft holder (B), then remove the front balancer shaft (C) and rear balancer shaft (D).



(cont'd)

Oil Pump Overhaul (cont'd)

4. Measure the inner diameter of the No. 1 bearing for the front balancer shaft hole and the rear balancer shaft hole.

Bearing Inner Diameter:

Front:

Standard (New): 20.000 - 20.020 mm  
(0.7874 - 0.7882 in.)

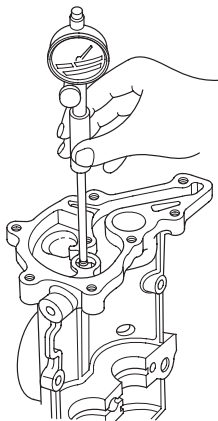
Service Limit: 20.03 mm (0.789 in.)

Rear:

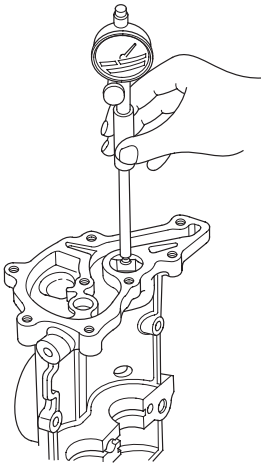
Standard (New): 24.000 - 24.020 mm  
(0.9449 - 0.9457 in.)

Service Limit: 24.03 mm (0.946 in.)

Front:



Rear:



5. Measure the diameters of the No. 1 journals on the front balancer shaft and rear balancer shaft.

Journal Diameter:

Front:

Standard (New): 19.938 - 19.950 mm  
(0.7850 - 0.7854 in.)

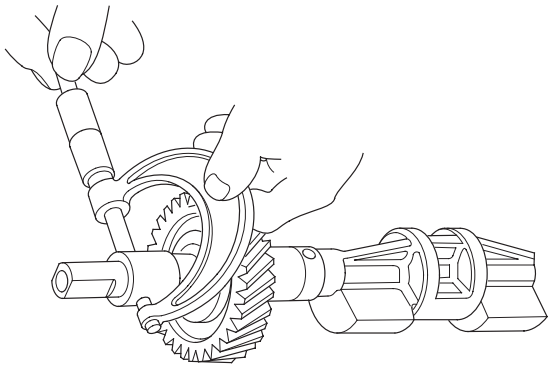
Service Limit: 19.92 mm (0.784 in.)

Rear:

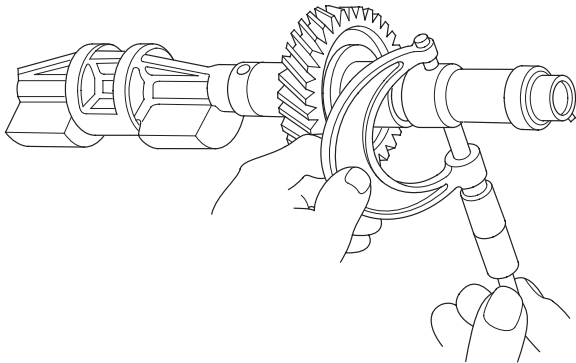
Standard (New): 23.938 - 23.950 mm  
(0.9424 - 0.9429 in.)

Service Limit: 23.92 mm (0.942 in.)

Front:



Rear:





6. Clean each balancer shaft No. 2 journals and bearings half with a clean shop towel.
7. Place one strip of plastigage across each journal.
8. Reinstall the bearings and upper balancer shaft holder, then torque the bolts.

NOTE: Do not rotate the balancer shaft during inspection.

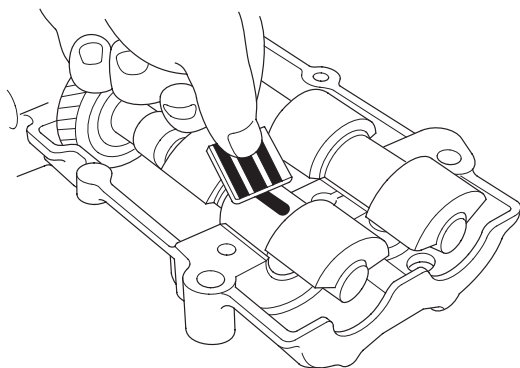
9. Remove the upper balancer shaft holder and bearings again, and measure the widest part of the plastigage.

If the balancer shaft No. 2 journal oil clearance is out-of-tolerance, install the new bearings, and recheck. If it is still out-of-tolerance; replace the balancer shafts.

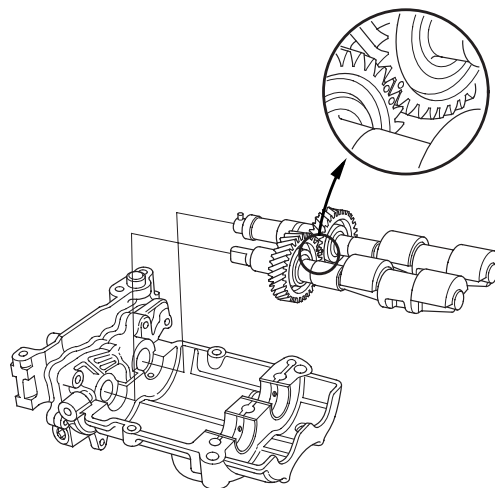
## No. 2 Journal Oil Clearance:

**Standard (New):** 0.060 - 0.120 mm  
(0.0024 - 0.0047 in.)

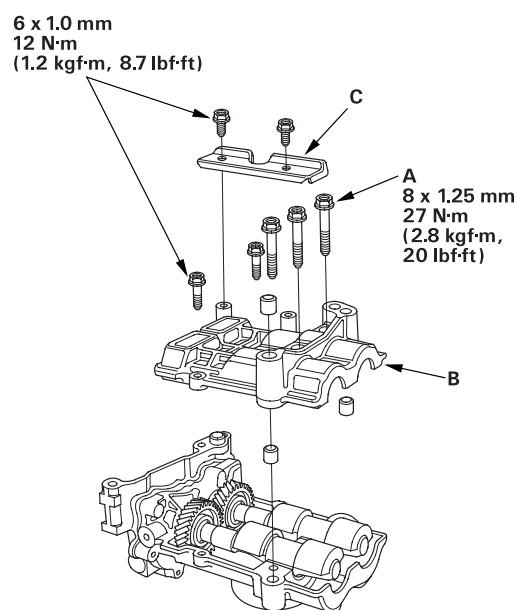
**Service Limit:** 0.15 mm (0.006 in.)



10. Align the punch mark on the rear balancer shaft with the center of the two punch marks on the front balancer shaft, then install the balancer shafts on the lower balancer shaft holder.



11. Apply engine oil to the threads of the 8 mm bolts (A).

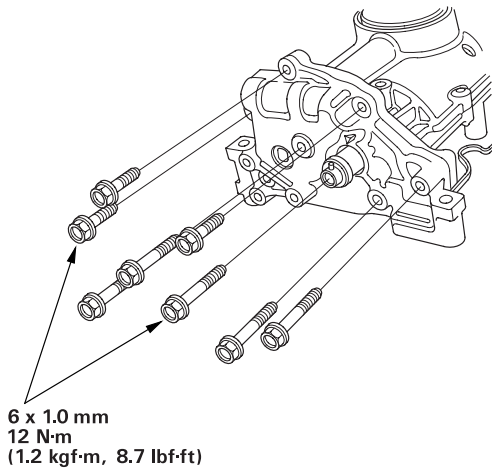


12. Install the upper balancer shaft holder (B) and baffle plate (C).

(cont'd)

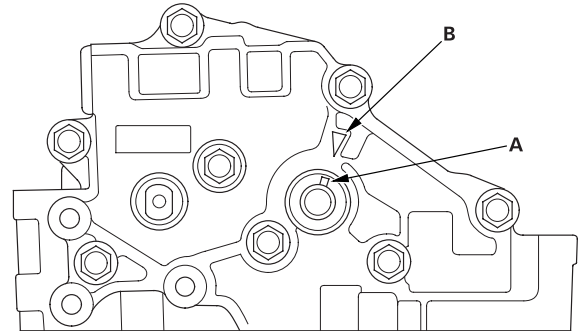
## Oil Pump Overhaul (cont'd)

13. Install the pump housing.

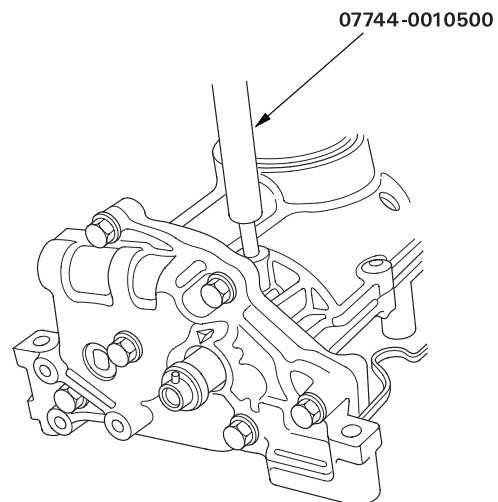


## Oil Pump Installation

1. Check the No. 1 piston at TDC (see step 1 on [page 06-12](#)).
2. Align the dowel pin (A) on the rear balancer shaft with the mark (B) on the oil pump.

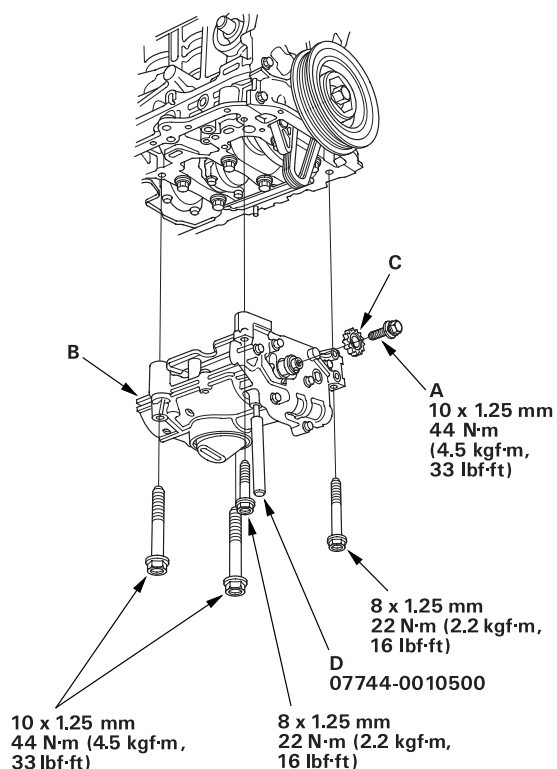


3. To hold the rear balancer shaft, insert a pin driver into the hole in the rear balancer shaft, through the maintenance hole on the lower balancer shaft holder.





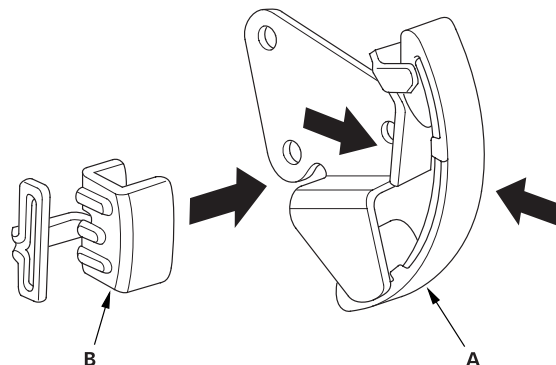
4. Apply engine oil to the threads of the oil pump sprocket mounting bolt (A).



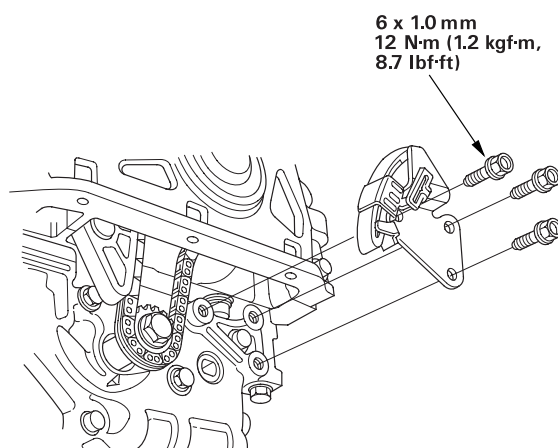
5. Loosely install the oil pump (B), then install the oil pump sprocket (C).
6. Remove the pin driver (D).
7. Tighten the oil pump mounting bolts.

8. Squeeze the new oil pump chain tensioner (A), then install the set clip (B) on it as shown.

NOTE: The set clip is supplied with the oil pump chain tensioner.



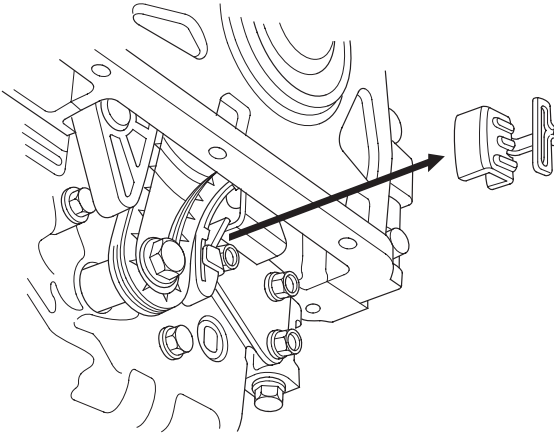
9. Install the oil pump chain tensioner.



(cont'd)

## Oil Pump Overhaul (cont'd)

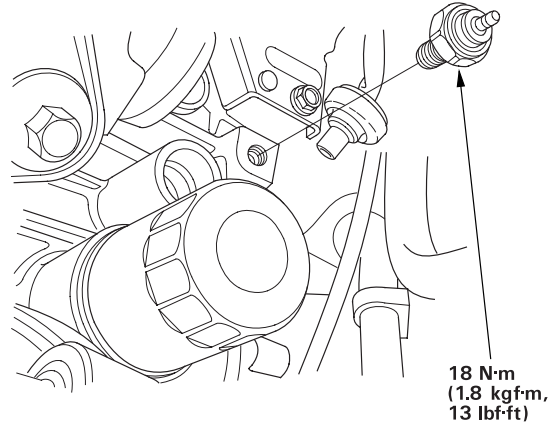
10. Remove the set clip from the oil pump chain tensioner.



11. Install the oil pan ([see page 07-27](#)).

## Oil Pressure Switch Replacement

1. Disconnect the oil pressure switch connector, then remove the oil pressure switch.



2. Apply liquid gasket to the oil pressure switch threads, then install the oil pressure switch.



Engine Mechanical

Intake Manifold and Exhaust System ..... 09-2

    Intake Manifold Removal and Installation..... 09-2

    Exhaust Manifold Removal and Installation ..... 09-8

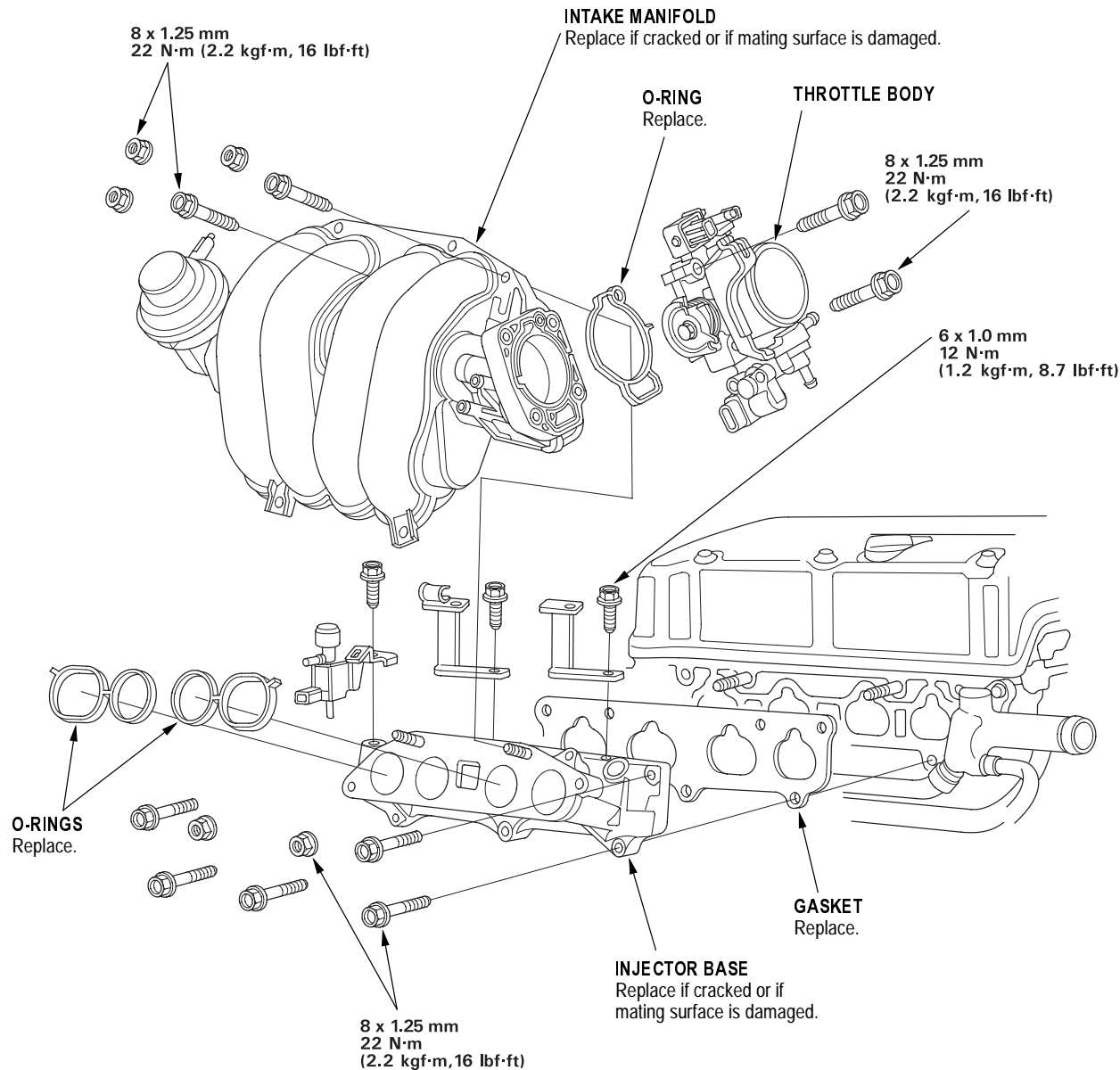
    Exhaust Pipe and Muffler Replacement..... 09-9



Intake Manifold and Exhaust System

Intake Manifold Removal and Installation

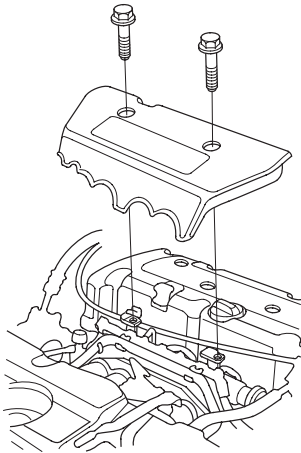
Exploded View



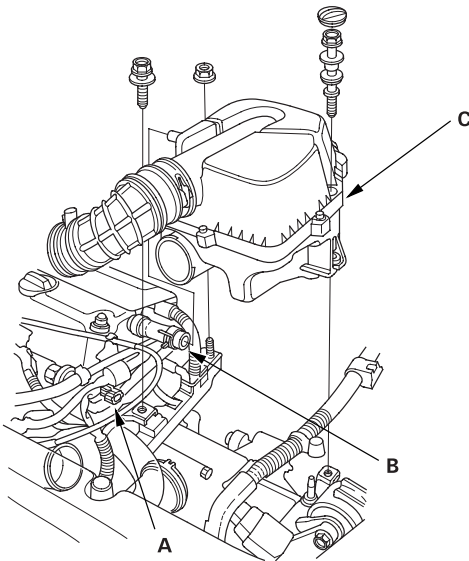


### Removal:

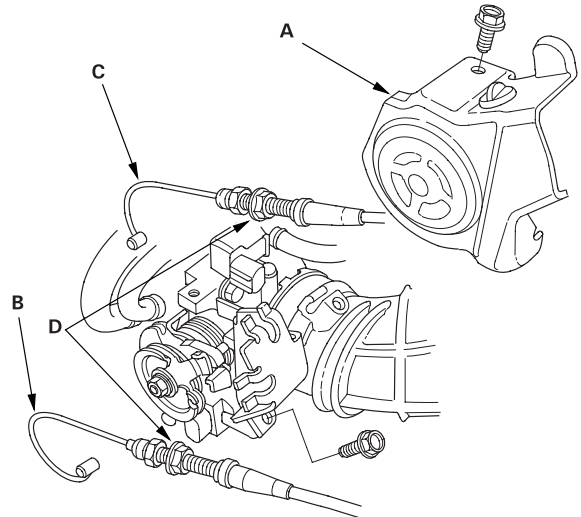
1. Remove the intake manifold cover.



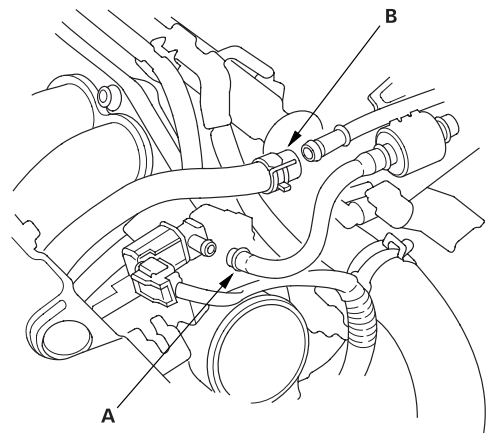
2. Disconnect the Intake Air Temperature (IAT) sensor connector (A), and remove the breather hose (B), then remove the air cleaner housing (C).



3. Remove the throttle cover (A). Fully open the throttle link and cruise control link by hand, then remove the throttle cable (B) and cruise control cable (C) from the links. Loosen the locknuts (D), and remove the cables from the bracket.



4. Remove the Evaporative Emission (EVAP) canister hose (A) and brake booster vacuum hose (B).

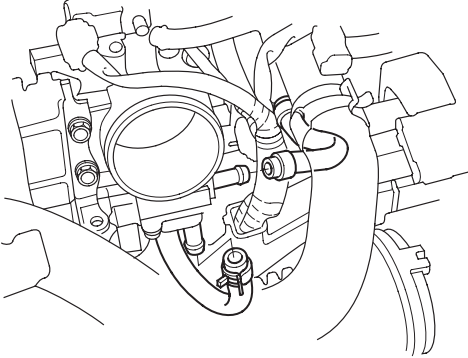


(cont'd)

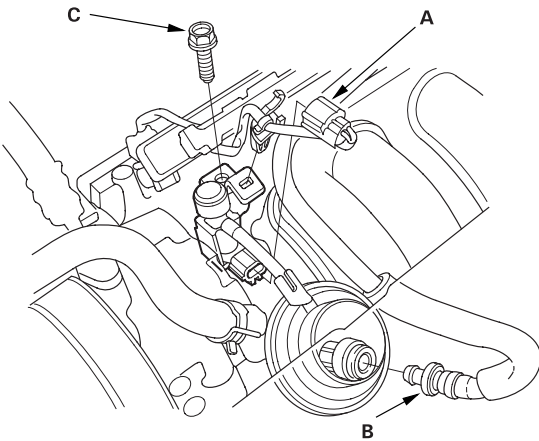
### Intake Manifold Removal and Installation (cont'd)

#### Removal: (cont'd)

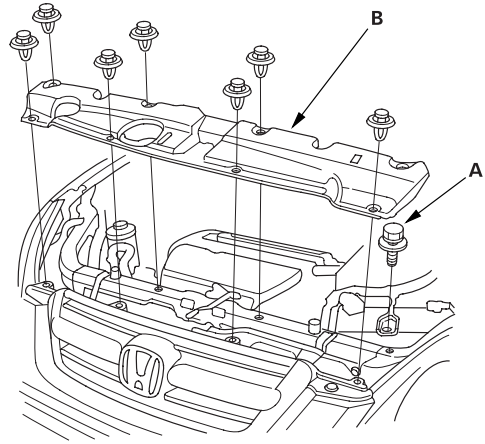
5. Remove the water bypass hoses, then plug the water bypass hoses.



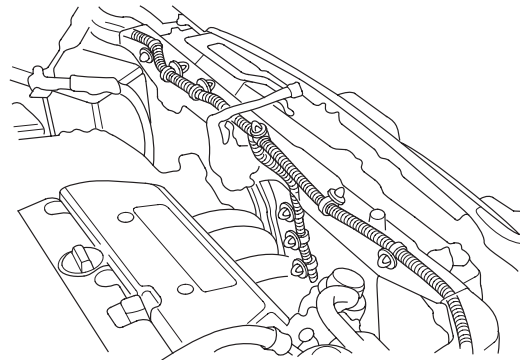
6. Disconnect the Intake Manifold Runner Control (IMRC) valve actuator control solenoid valve connector (A), then remove the Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) hose (B) and IMRC valve control solenoid valve mounting bolt (C).



7. Remove the bolt (A) securing the battery clamp, then remove the bulkhead cover (B).

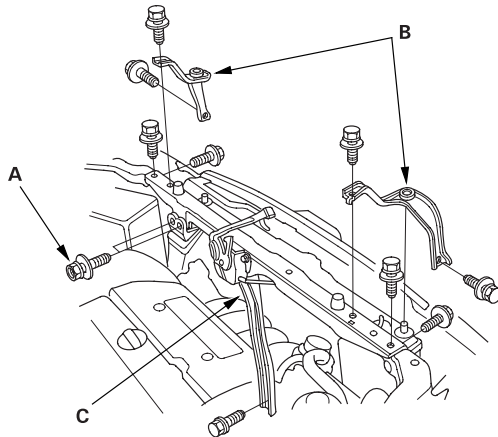


8. Remove the harness clamps.



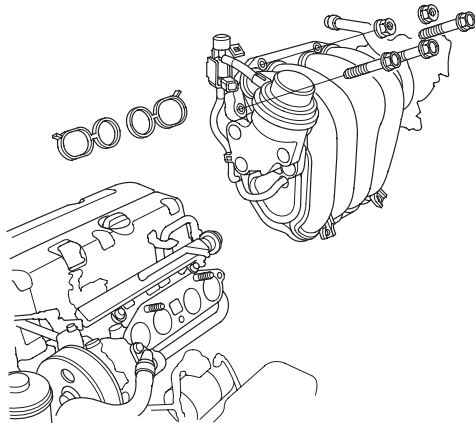


9. Remove the intake air duct mounting bolts (A) and upper bracket and cushion (B), then remove the bulkhead (C).



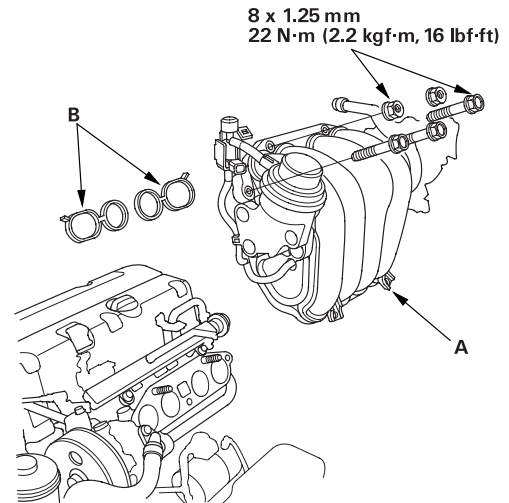
10. Remove the engine wire harness connectors and wire harness clamps from the intake manifold.
  - Idle Air Control (IAC) valve connector
  - Throttle Position (TP) sensor connector
  - Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) sensor connector
  - Evaporative Emission (EVAP) canister purge valve connector

11. Remove the intake manifold.

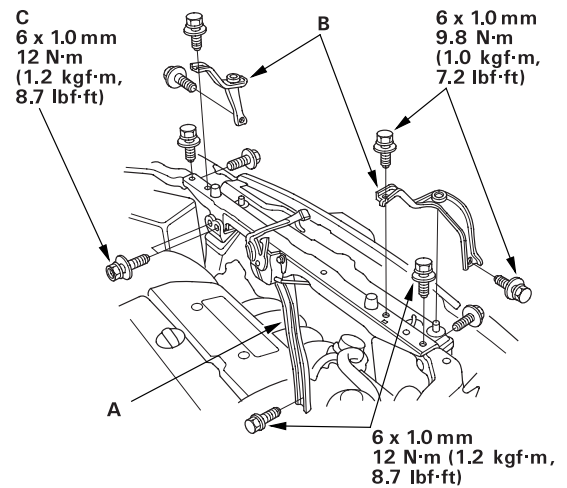


## Installation:

1. Install the intake manifold (A) and tighten the bolts/nuts in a crisscross pattern in two or three steps, beginning with the inner bolt. Using the new O-rings (B).



2. Install the bulkhead (A), then install the upper bracket and cushion (B) and intake air duct mounting bolts (C). Apply body paint to the bulkhead mounting bolts.

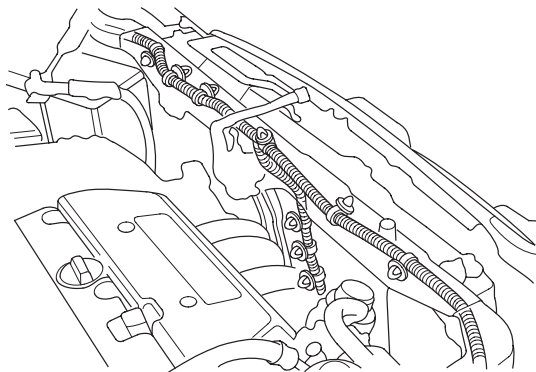


(cont'd)

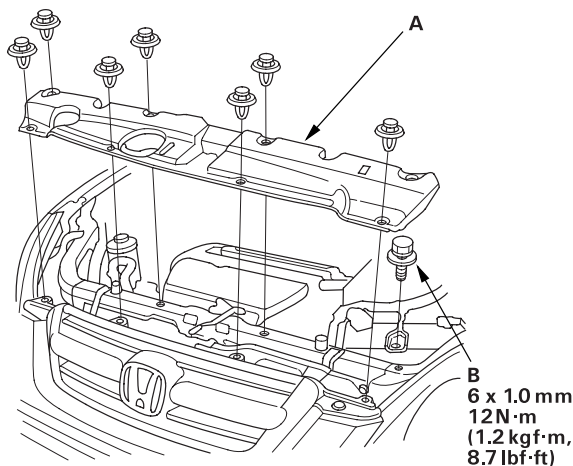
### Intake Manifold Removal and Installation (cond't)

#### Installation: (cont'd)

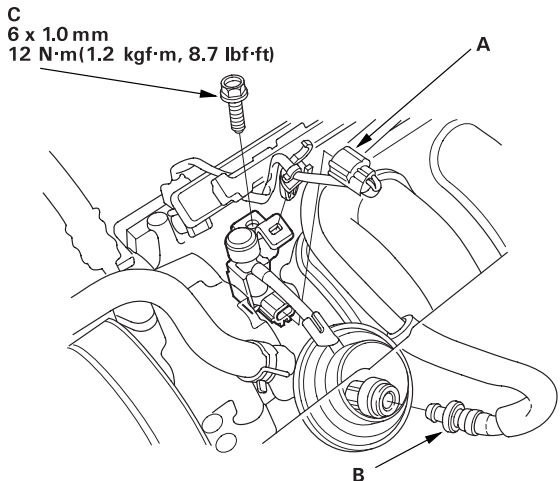
3. Connect the harness clamps.



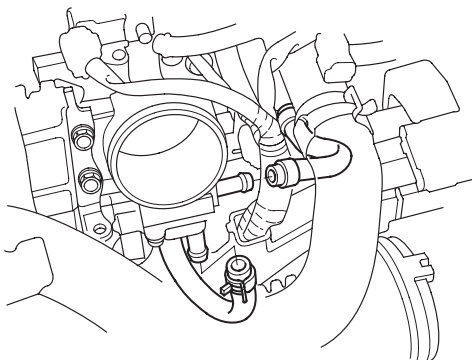
4. Install the bulkhead cover (A), then install the battery clamp bolt (B).



5. Connect the Intake Manifold Runner Control (IMRC) valve actuator control solenoid valve connector (A), then install the Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) hose (B) and IMRC valve actuator control solenoid valve mounting bolt (C).

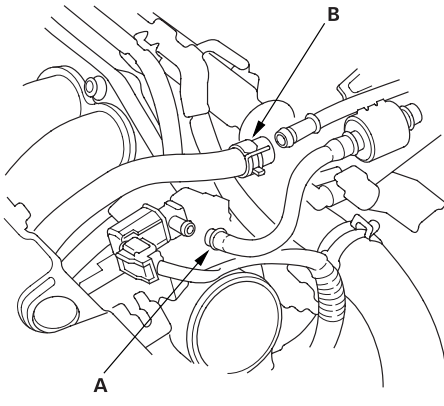


6. Install the water bypass hoses.

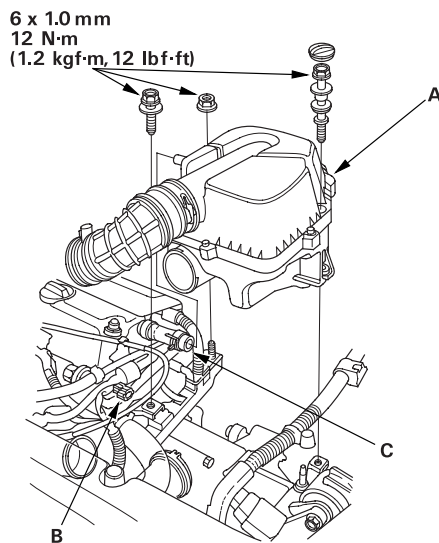




7. Install the Evaporative Emission (EVAP) canister hose (A) and brake booster vacuum hose (B).

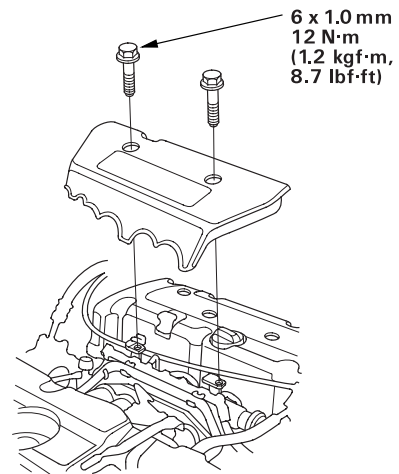


8. Install the throttle cable ([see page 11-184](#)), then adjust the cable ([see page 11-183](#)).
9. Install the cruise control cable, then adjust the cable ([see page 04-49](#)).
10. Install the air cleaner housing (A) and connect the Intake Air Temperature (IAT) sensor connector (B).



11. Install the breather hose (C).

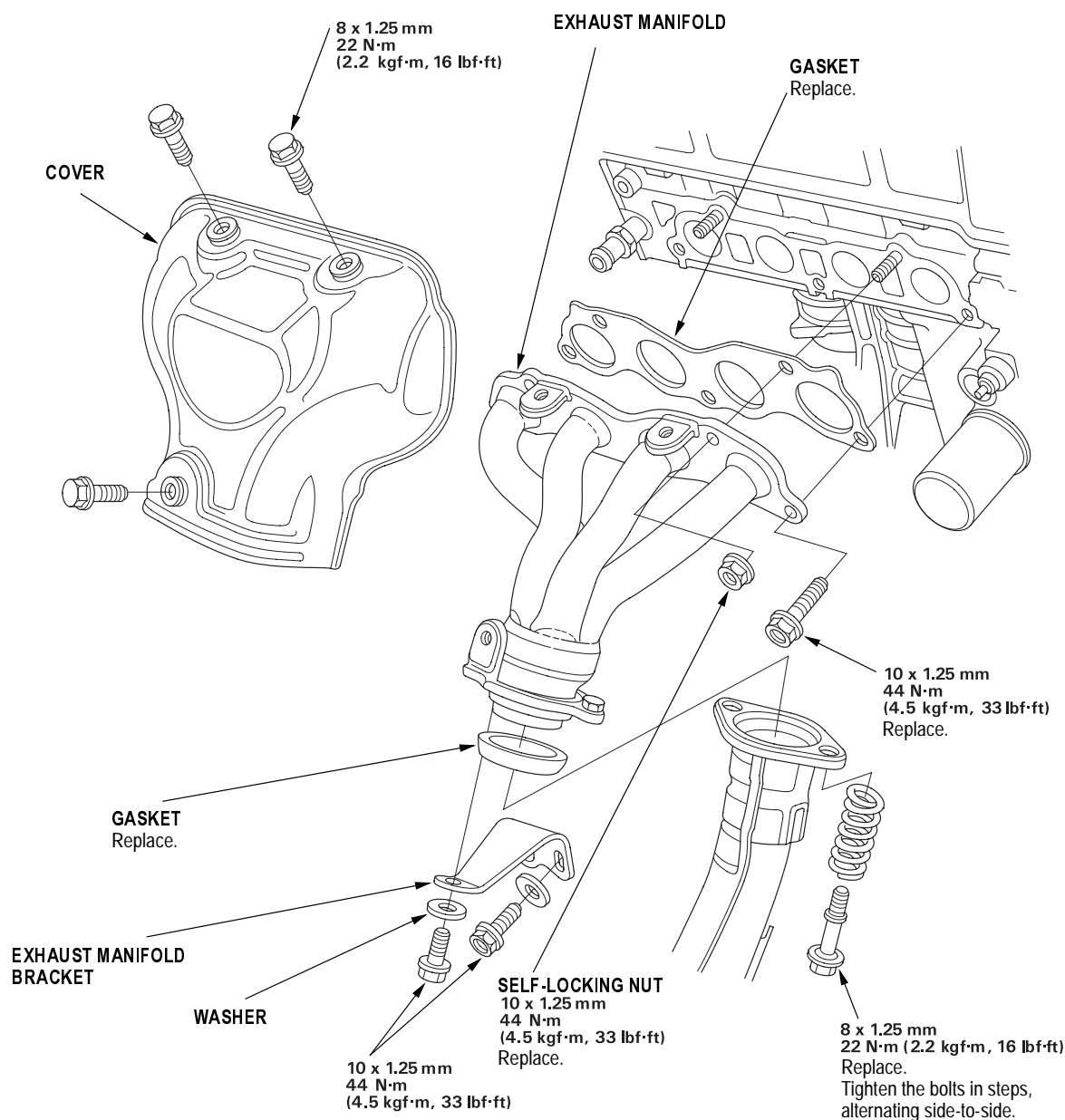
12. Install the intake manifold cover.



13. Clean up any spilled engine coolant.
14. After installation, check that all tubes, hoses and connectors are installed correctly.
15. Refill the radiator with engine coolant, and bleed air from the cooling system with the heater valve open ([see page 10-6](#)).

### Exhaust Manifold Removal and Installation

1. Remove the VTEC solenoid valve (see page 11-138).
2. Remove the driveshaft heat cover (see page 16-19).
3. Remove the cover and exhaust manifold bracket, then remove the exhaust manifold.



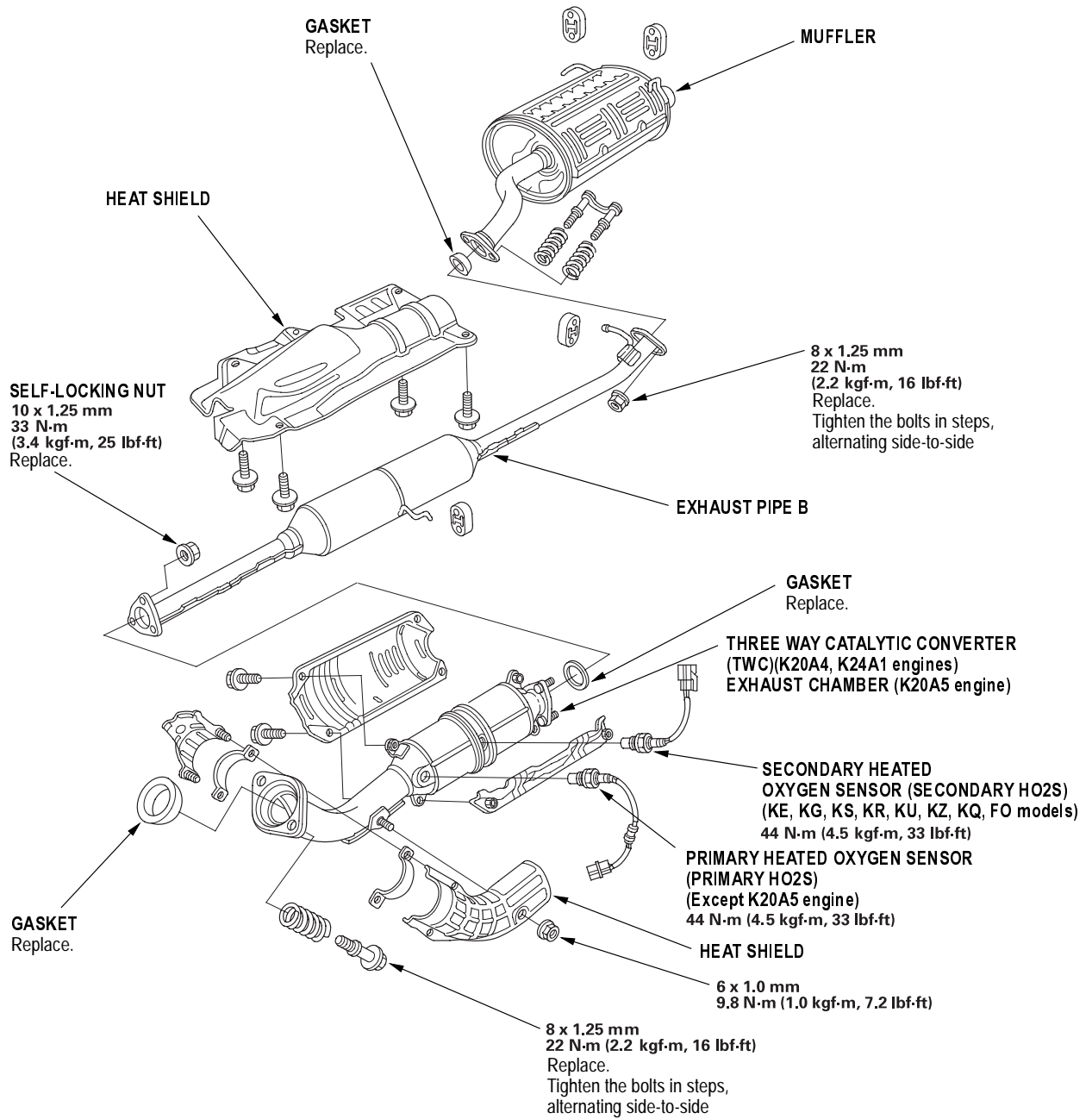
4. Install the exhaust manifold and tighten the bolts/nuts in a crisscross pattern in two or three steps, beginning with the inner bolt.
5. Install the other parts in the reverse order of removal.





## Exhaust Pipe and Muffler Replacement

NOTE: Use new gaskets and self-locking nuts when reassembling.





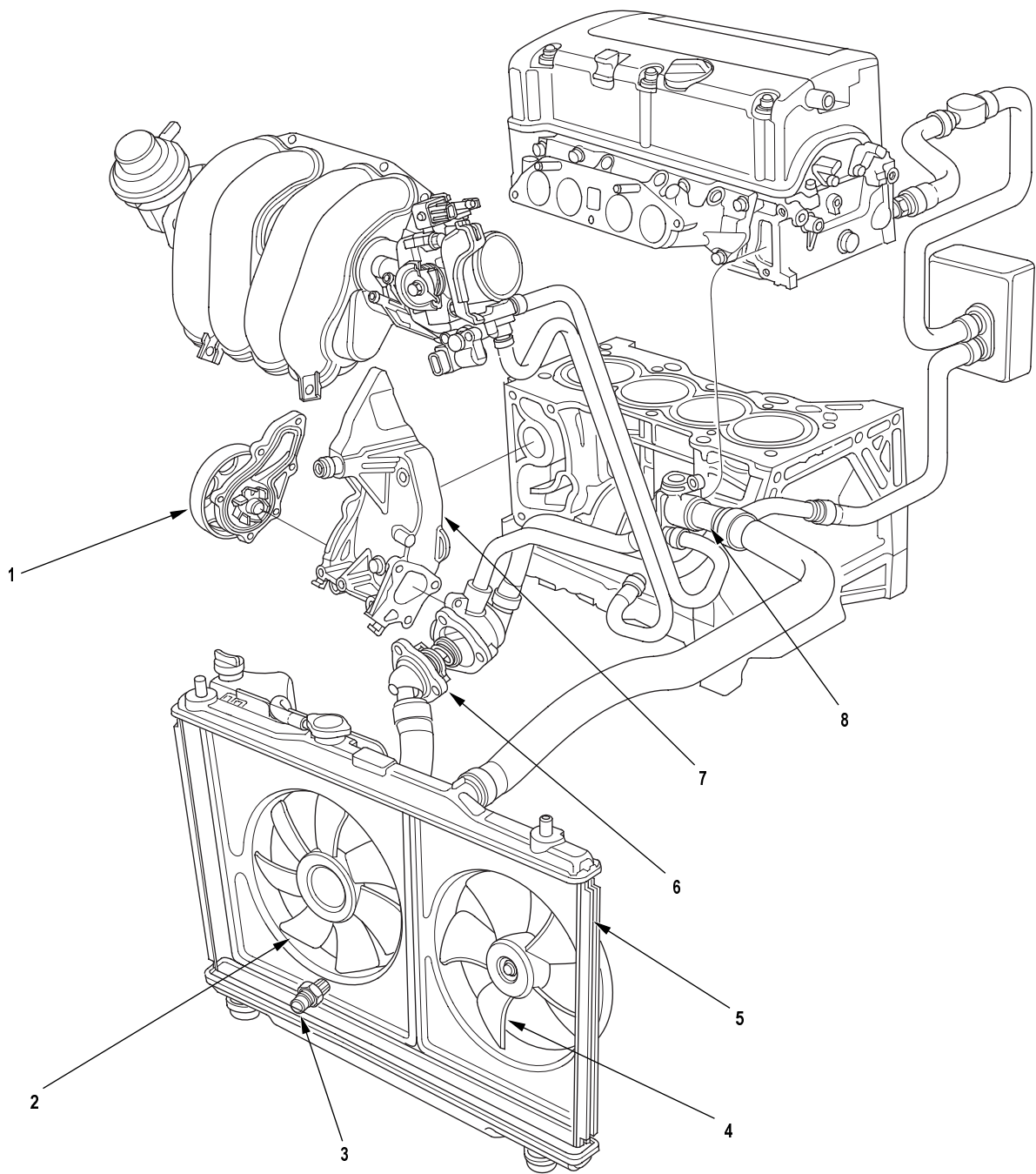
## Engine Cooling

<b>Cooling System</b> .....	<b>10-2</b>
Component Location Index .....	10-2
Radiator Cap Test .....	10-3
Radiator Test .....	10-3
Fan Motor Test .....	10-4
Thermostat Test .....	10-4
Water Pump Inspection .....	10-5
Water Pump Replacement .....	10-5
Coolant Check .....	10-6
Coolant Replacement .....	10-6
Thermostat Replacement .....	10-8
Water Passage Installation .....	10-9
Water Outlet Installation .....	10-9
Radiator and Fans Replacement .....	10-10
<b>Fan Controls</b> .....	<b>10-11</b>
Component Location Index .....	10-11
Symptom Troubleshooting Index .....	10-12
Circuit Diagram .....	10-13
Radiator Fan Circuit Troubleshooting .....	10-14
Radiator Fan Switch Circuit Troubleshooting (Open) .....	10-16
Radiator Fan Switch Circuit Troubleshooting (Short) .....	10-16
Radiator Fan Switch Test .....	10-17
Radiator Fan Switch Replacement .....	10-17



Cooling System

Component Location Index

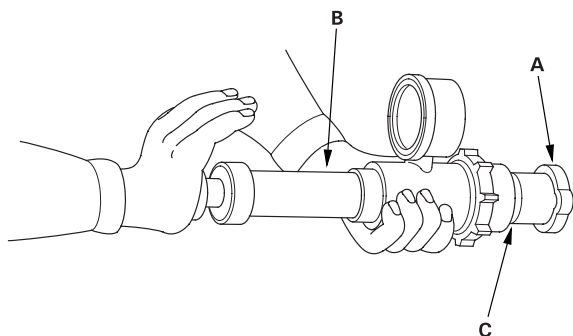


- |   |                            |   |
|---|----------------------------|---|
| 1 | WATER PUMP                 | Inspection, <a href="#">page 10-5</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 10-5</a>      |
| 2 | A/C CONDENSER FAN ASSEMBLY | Replacement, <a href="#">page 10-10</a> ; Fan Motor Test, <a href="#">page 10-4</a> |
| 3 | RADIATOR FAN SWITCH        | Test, <a href="#">page 10-17</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 10-17</a>          |
| 4 | RADIATOR FAN ASSEMBLY      | Replacement, <a href="#">page 10-10</a> ; Fan Motor Test, <a href="#">page 10-4</a> |
| 5 | RADIATOR                   | Replacement <a href="#">page 10-10</a>  |
| 6 | THERMOSTAT                 | Test, <a href="#">page 10-4</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 10-8</a>            |
| 7 | WATER PASSAGE              | Installation, <a href="#">page 10-9</a>   |
| 8 | WATER OUTLET               | Installation, <a href="#">page 10-9</a>   |



### Radiator Cap Test

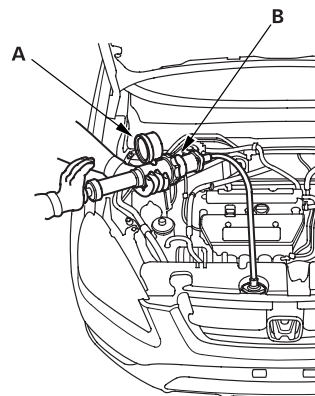
1. Remove the radiator cap (A), wet its seal with engine coolant, then install it on the pressure tester (B) (commercially available). Use a small adapter H-901122-09 (C) (commercially available) to install the radiator cap.



2. Apply a pressure of 93 - 123 kPa (0.95 - 1.25 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 14 - 18 psi).
3. Check for a drop in pressure.
4. If the pressure drops, replace the cap.

### Radiator Test

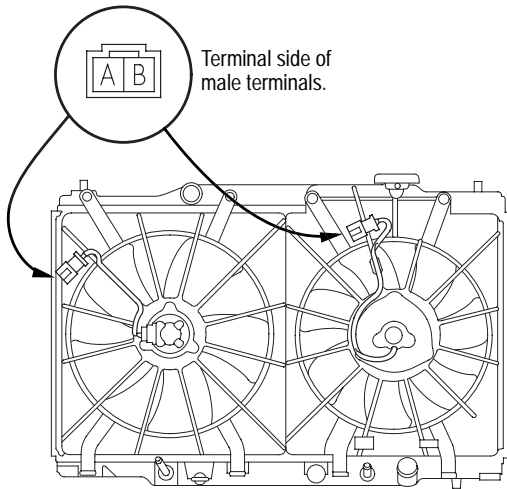
1. Wait until the engine is cool, then carefully remove the radiator cap and fill the radiator with engine coolant to the top of the filler neck.
2. Attach the pressure tester (A) (commercially available) to the radiator. Use a small adapter H-901122-09 (B) (commercially available) to attach the pressure tester.



3. Apply a pressure of 93 - 123 kPa (0.95 - 1.25 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 14 - 18 psi).
4. Inspect for engine coolant leaks and a drop in pressure.
5. Remove the tester, and reinstall the radiator cap.
6. Check for engine oil in the coolant and/or coolant in the engine oil.

### Fan Motor Test

1. Disconnect the 2P connectors from the radiator fan motor and condenser fan motor.



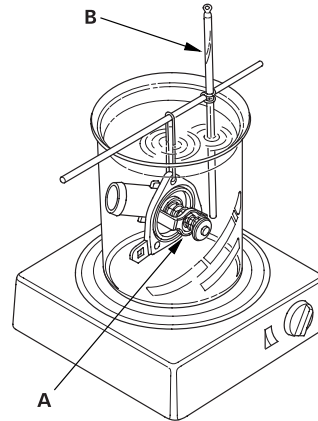
2. Test the motor by connecting battery power to the B terminal and ground to the A terminal.
3. If the motor fails to run or does not run smoothly, replace it.

### Thermostat Test

Replace the thermostat if it is open at room temperature.

To test a closed thermostat:

1. Suspend the thermostat (A) in a container of water. Do not let the thermometer (B) touch the bottom of the hot container.



2. Heat the water, and check the temperature with a thermometer. Check the temperature at which the thermostat first opens, and at which it is fully open.
3. Measure the lift height of the thermostat when it is fully open.

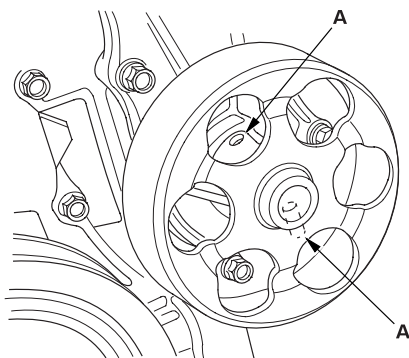
#### STANDARD THERMOSTAT

Lift height:       above 8.0 mm (0.31 in.)  
Starts opening:   76 - 80°C (169 - 176°F)  
Fully open:       90°C (194°F)



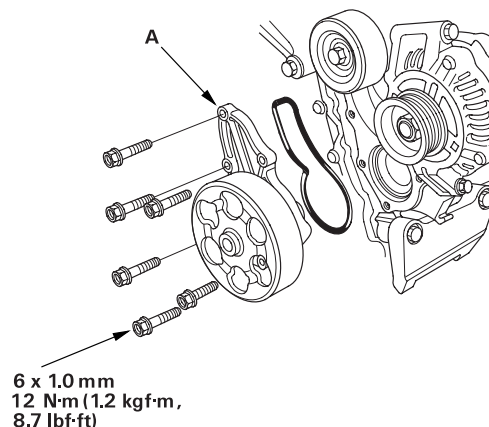
### Water Pump Inspection

1. Remove the drive belt ([see page 04-30](#)).
2. Turn the water pump pulley counterclockwise. Check that it turns freely.
3. Check for signs of seal leakage. A small amount of "weeping" from the bleed hole (A) is normal.



### Water Pump Replacement

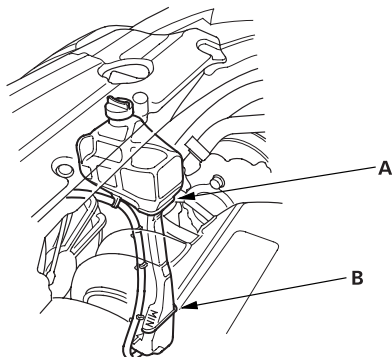
1. Remove the drive belt ([see page 04-30](#)).
2. Drain the engine coolant ([see page 10-6](#)).
3. Remove the crankshaft pulley ([see page 06-11](#)).
4. Remove the six bolts securing the water pump, then remove the water pump (A).



5. Inspect and clean the O-ring groove and mating surface with the water passage.
6. Install the water pump with new O-rings in the reverse order of removal.
7. Clean up any spilled engine coolant.
8. Install the crankshaft pulley ([see page 06-12](#)).
9. Refill the radiator with engine coolant, and bleed air from the cooling system with the heater valve open ([see page 10-6](#)).

### Coolant Check

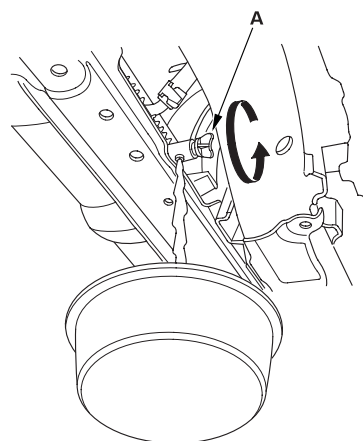
1. Look at the coolant level in the reserve tank. Make sure it is between the MAX mark (A) and MIN mark (B).



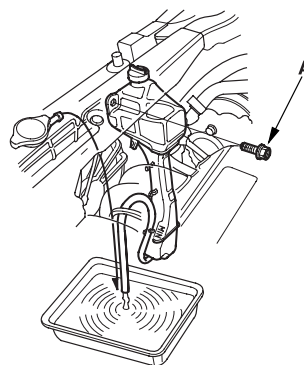
2. If the coolant level in the reserve tank is at or below the MIN mark, add coolant to bring it up to the MAX mark, and inspect the cooling system for leaks.

### Coolant Replacement

1. Start the engine. Set the heater temperature control dial to maximum heat, then turn off the ignition switch. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool to the touch.
2. Remove the bulkhead cover (see step 7 on [page 09-4](#)).
3. Remove the splash shield (see step 21 on [page 05-6](#)).
4. Remove the radiator cap.
5. Loosen the drain plug (A), and drain the coolant.



6. Remove the reserve tank mounting bolt (A), and remove the reserve tank.

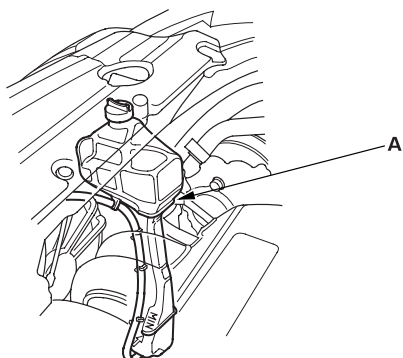


7. Remove the coolant tube from the radiator, then put the end of the coolant tube lower the reserve tank and drain the coolant in the tank.





8. After the coolant has drained, tighten the radiator drain plug, and reinstall the coolant tube and reserve tank.
9. Install the splash shield (see step 22 on [page 05-14](#)).
10. Install the bulkhead cover (see step 4 on [page 09-6](#)).
11. Fill the reserve tank to the MAX mark (A) with genuine Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2.



12. Pour genuine Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2 into the radiator up to the base of the filler neck.

**NOTE:**

- Always use genuine Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2. Using a non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail.
- Genuine Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2 is a mixture of 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Pre-mixing is not required.

**Engine Coolant Refill Capacity [including the reserve tank capacity of 0.55 l (0.58 US qt, 0.48 Imp qt)]:**

**K20A4, K20A5 engines:**

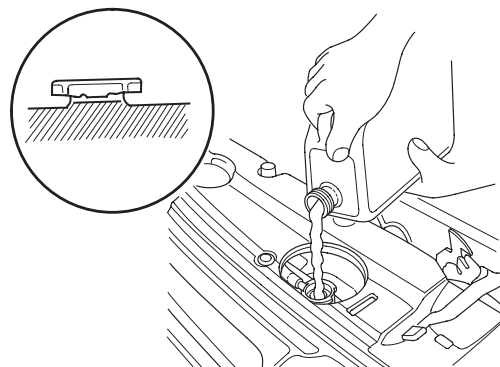
**M/T:** 5.4 l (5.7 US qt, 4.8 Imp qt)

**A/T:** 5.3 l (5.6 US qt, 4.7 Imp qt)

**K24A1 engine:**

**M/T:** 5.5 l (5.8 US qt, 4.8 Imp qt)

**A/T:** 5.4 l (5.7 US qt, 4.8 Imp qt)

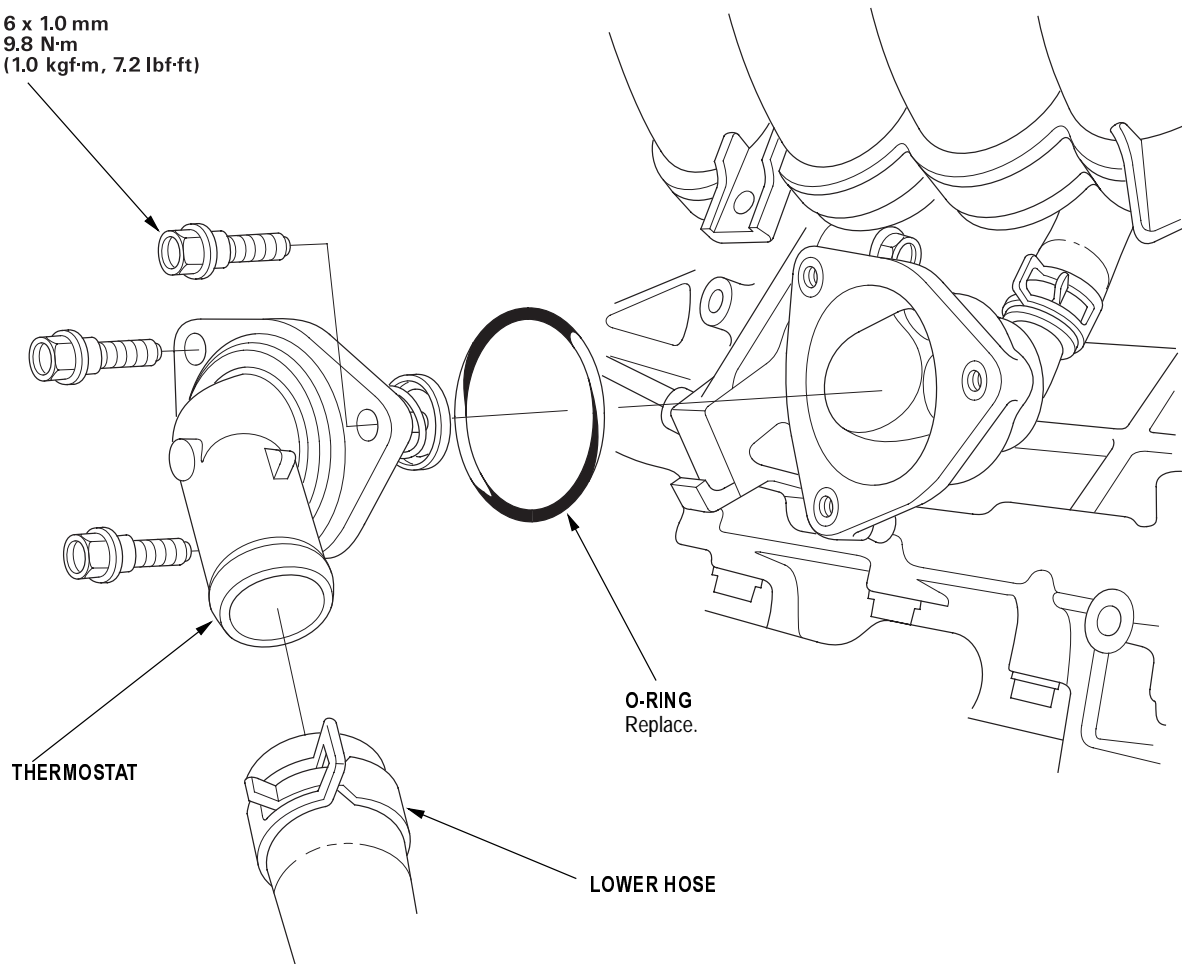


13. Install the radiator cap loosely.
14. Start the engine, and let it run until it warms up (the radiator fan comes on at least twice).
15. Turn off the engine. Check the level in the radiator and add genuine Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2 if needed.
16. Put the radiator cap on tightly, then run the engine again and check for leaks.

### Thermostat Replacement

1. Drain the engine coolant ([see page 10-6](#)).
2. Remove the splash shield (see step 21 on [page 05-6](#)).
3. Remove the lower hose, then remove the thermostat.

6 x 1.0 mm  
9.8 N·m  
(1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)



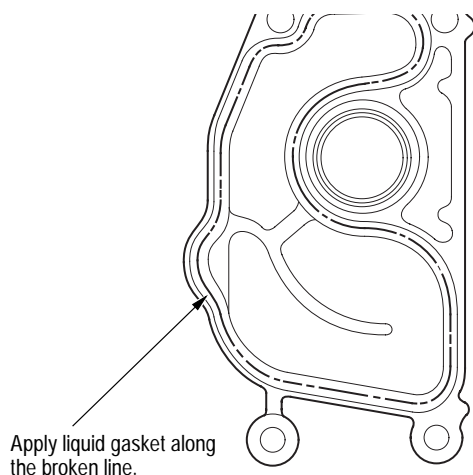
4. Install the thermostat with a new O-ring, then install the lower hose.
5. Install the splash shield (see step 22 on [page 05-14](#)).
6. Refill the radiator with engine coolant, and bleed air from the cooling system with the heater valve open ([see page 10-6](#)).



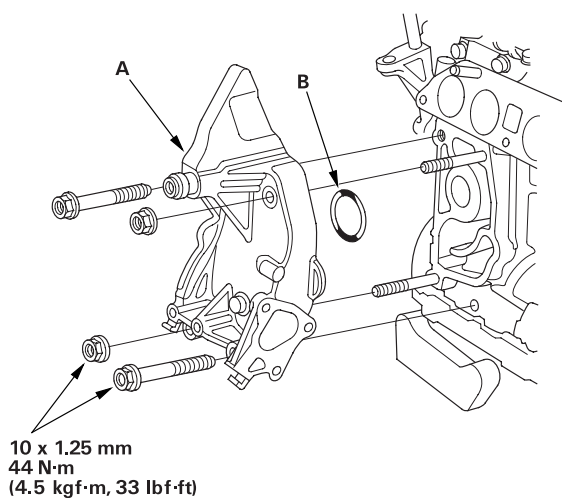
## Water Passage Installation

1. Clean and dry the water passage mating surfaces.
2. Apply liquid gasket, 08C70-K0234M, 08C70-K0334M or 08C70-X0331S, evenly to the cylinder block mating surface of the water passage and to the inner threads of the bolt holes.

NOTE: Do not install the parts if 5 minutes or more have elapsed since applying liquid gasket. Instead, reapply liquid gasket after removing old residue.



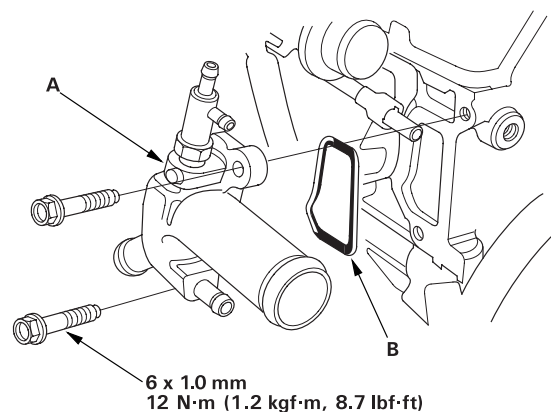
3. Install the water passage (A) with a new O-ring (B).



4. After assembly, wait at least 30 minutes before filling the engine with oil.

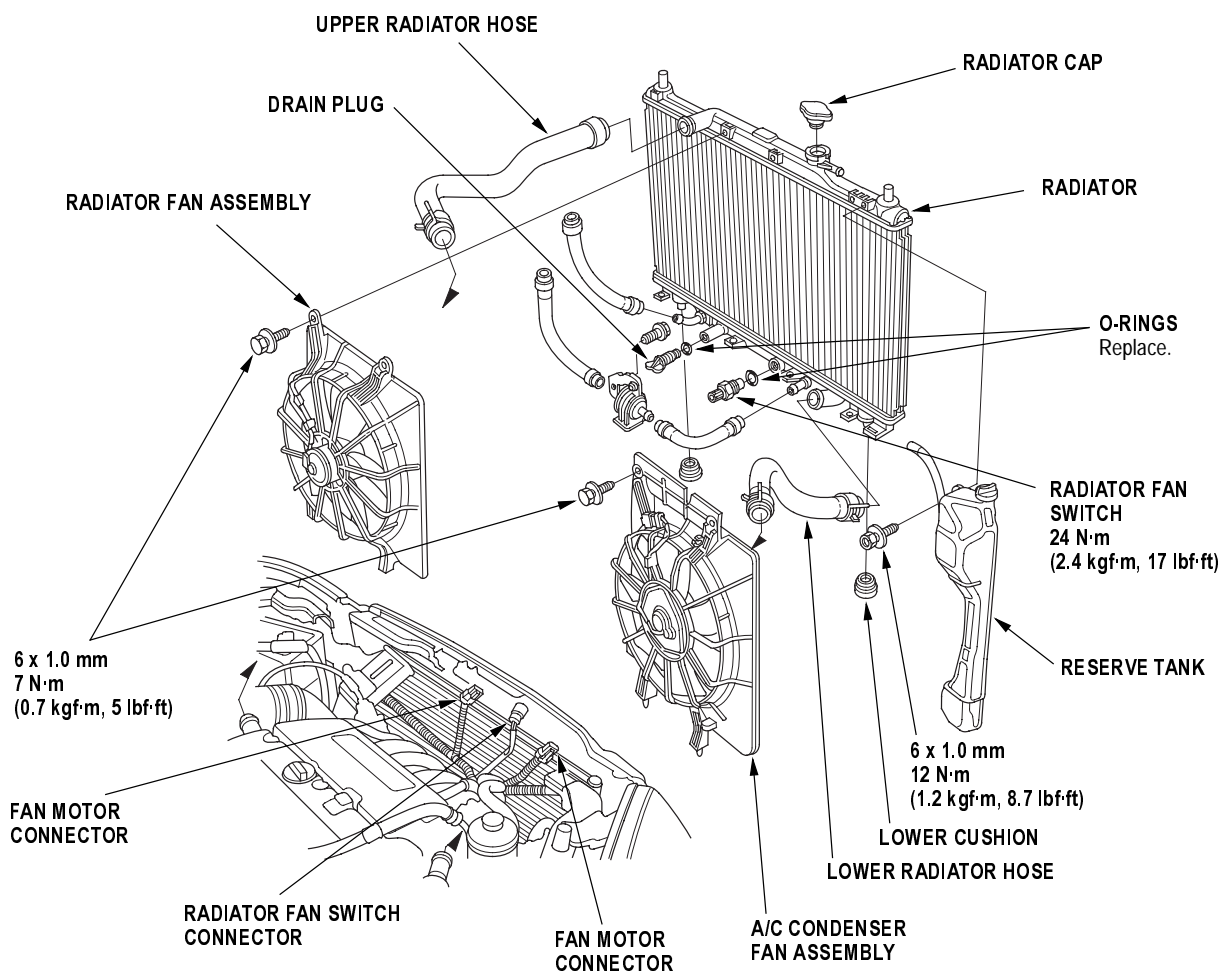
## Water Outlet Installation

Install the water outlet (A) with a new O-ring (B).



### Radiator and Fans Replacement

1. Drain the engine coolant ([see page 10-6](#)).
2. Remove the bulkhead cover (see step 7 on [page 09-4](#)).
3. Remove the upper bracket cushion, then remove the bulkhead (see step 9 on [page 09-5](#)).
4. Remove the upper radiator hose and lower radiator hose.

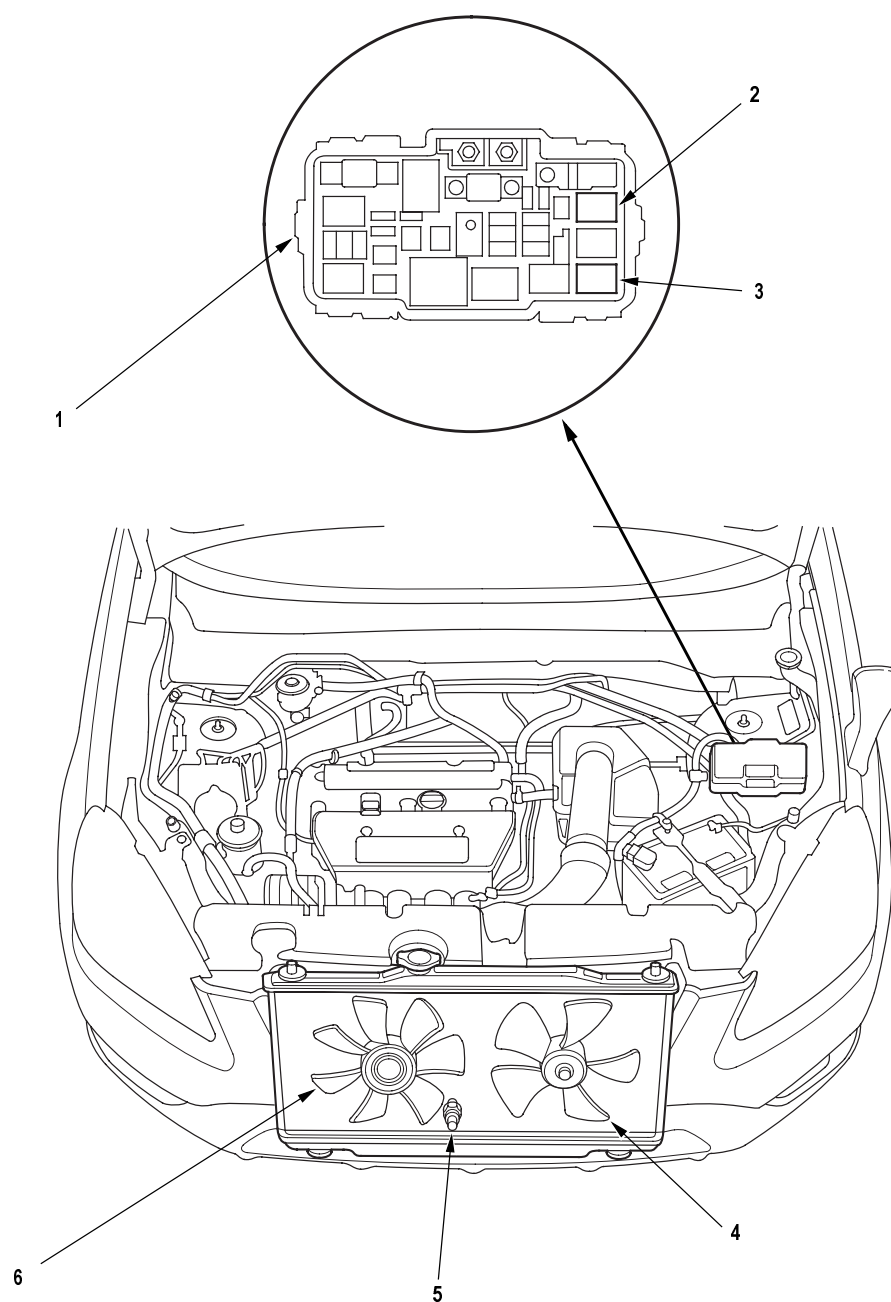


5. Disconnect the fan motor connectors and radiator fan switch connector, then pull up the radiator.
6. Remove the fan shroud assemblies and other parts from the radiator.
7. Install the radiator in the reverse order of removal. Make sure the upper and lower cushions are set securely.
8. Install the bulkhead in the reverse order of removal. Apply body paint to the bulkhead mounting bolts.
9. Fill the radiator with engine coolant and bleed the air ([see page 10-6](#)).



## Fan Controls

### Component Location Index



- |   |                           |  |
|---|---------------------------|--|
| 1 | UNDER-HOOD FUSE/RELAY BOX |  |
| 2 | CONDENSER FAN RELAY       | Test, <a href="#">page 21-38</a>   |
| 3 | RADIATOR FAN RELAY        | Test, <a href="#">page 10-14</a>   |
| 4 | CONDENSER FAN ASSEMBLY    | Motor Test, <a href="#">page 10-4</a>                                      |
| 5 | RADIATOR FAN SWITCH       | Test, <a href="#">page 10-17</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 10-17</a> |
| 6 | RADIATOR FAN ASSEMBLY     | Motor Test, <a href="#">page 10-4</a>                                      |

Symptom Troubleshooting Index

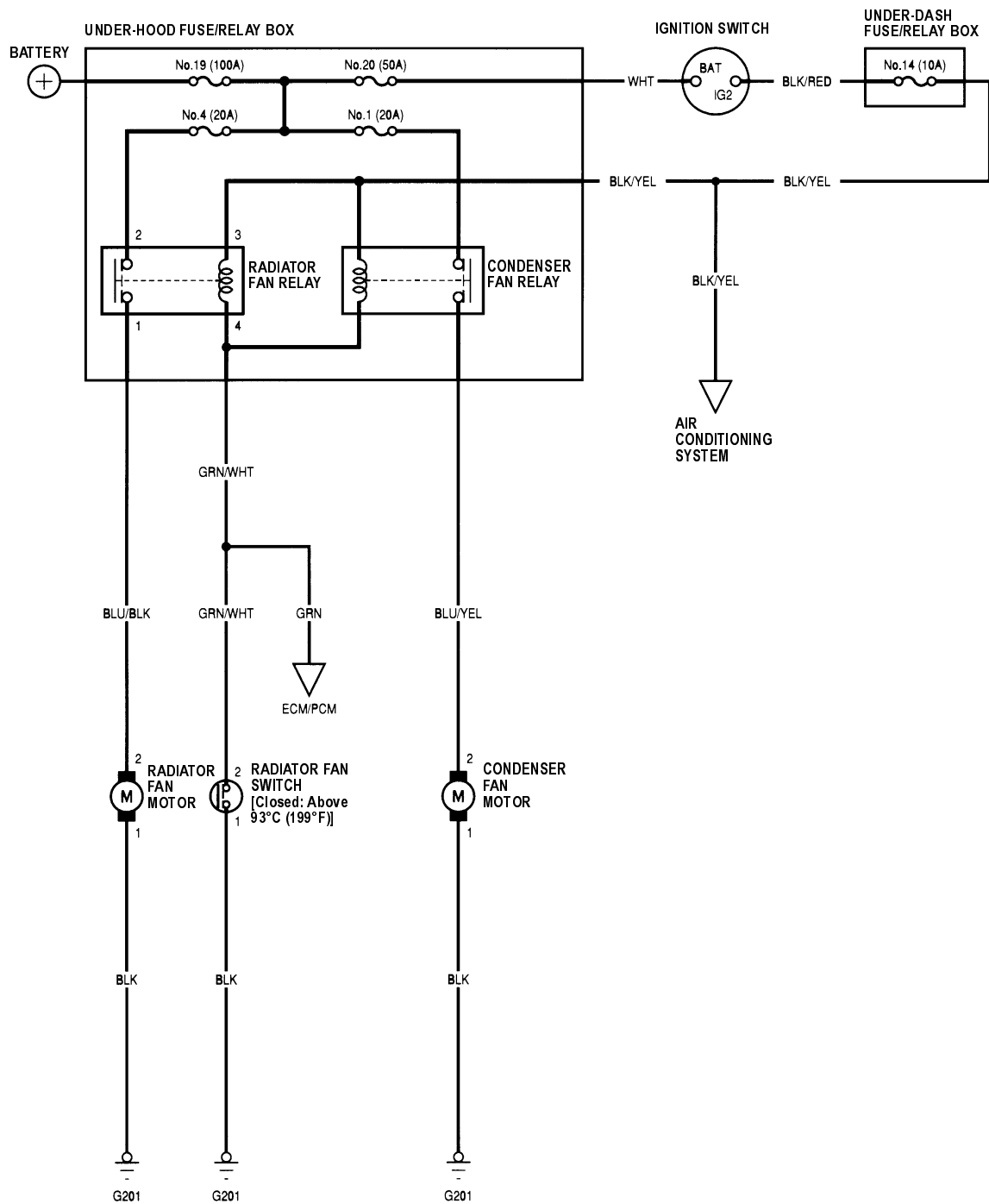
Before performing any troubleshooting procedures check:

- Fuses
- Grounds
- Cleanliness and tightness of all connectors

SYMPTOM	PROCEDURE
Radiator fan does not run at all	Radiator Fan Circuit Troubleshooting ( <a href="#">see page 10-14</a> ).
Radiator fan does not run for engine cooling, but it runs with A/C on	Radiator Fan Switch Circuit Troubleshooting (Open) ( <a href="#">see page 10-16</a> ).
Radiator fan runs with ignition switch ON (II), A/C off, and engine temperature below 93°C (199°F)	Radiator Fan Switch Circuit Troubleshooting (Short) ( <a href="#">see page 10-16</a> ).



## Circuit Diagram



Radiator Fan Circuit Troubleshooting

1. Check the No. 4 (20A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box, and the No. 14 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse (s) OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Replace the fuse (s) and recheck.■

2. Remove the radiator fan relay from the under-hood fuse/relay box, and test it ([see page 10-17](#)).

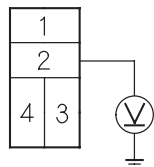
*Is the relay OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Replace the radiator fan relay.■

3. Measure the voltage between the No. 2 terminal of the radiator fan relay 4P socket and body ground.

RADIATOR FAN RELAY 4P SOCKET



Terminal side of female terminals

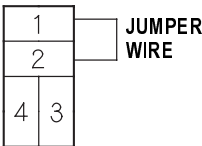
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Replace the under-hood fuse/relay box.■

4. Connect the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals of the radiator fan relay 4P socket with a jumper wire.

RADIATOR FAN RELAY 4P SOCKET



Terminal side of female terminals

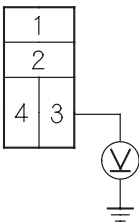
*Does the radiator fan run?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Go to step 6.

5. Disconnect the jumper, and turn the ignition switch ON (II). Check for voltage between the No. 3 terminal of the radiator fan relay 4P socket and body ground.

RADIATOR FAN RELAY 4P SOCKET



Terminal side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

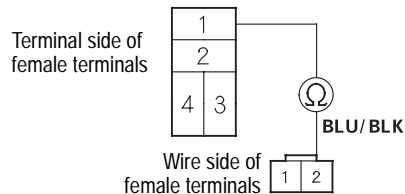
**No** Check for an open in the wire between the under-hood fuse/relay box and under-dash fuse/relay box.■





6. Disconnect the radiator fan motor 2P connector.
7. Check for continuity between the No. 1 terminal of the radiator fan relay 4P socket and the No. 2 terminal of the radiator fan motor 2P connector.

**RADIATOR FAN RELAY 4P SOCKET**



**RADIATOR FAN MOTOR 2P CONNECTOR**

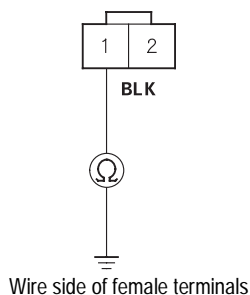
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the under-hood fuse/relay box and the radiator fan motor 2P connector terminal No. 2.■

8. Check for continuity between the No. 1 terminal of the radiator fan motor 2P connector and body ground.

**RADIATOR FAN MOTOR 2P CONNECTOR**



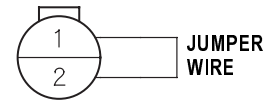
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Replace the radiator fan motor.■

**No** Check for an open in the wire between radiator fan motor 2P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground. If the wire is OK, check for a poor ground at G201.■

9. Reinstall the radiator fan relay.
10. Disconnect the radiator fan switch 2P connector.
11. Connect the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals, of the radiator fan switch 2P connector with a jumper wire.

**RADIATOR FAN SWITCH 2P CONNECTOR**



Wire side of female terminals

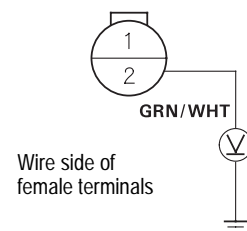
*Does the radiator fan run?*

**Yes** Replace the radiator fan switch.■

**No** Go to step 12.

12. Remove the jumper wire, and measure the voltage between the No. 2 terminal of the radiator fan switch connector and body ground.

**RADIATOR FAN SWITCH 2P CONNECTOR**



Wire side of female terminals

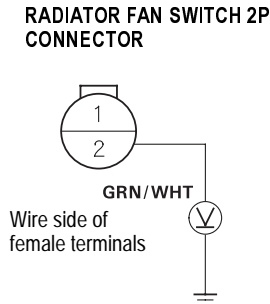
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Check for an open in the wire between radiator fan switch 2P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground. If the wire is OK, check for a poor ground at G201.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the radiator fan switch terminal No. 2 and the under-hood fuse/relay box.■

### Radiator Fan Switch Circuit Troubleshooting (Open)

1. Disconnect the radiator fan switch 2P connector.
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
3. Measure voltage between the No. 2 terminal of the radiator fan switch 2P connector and body ground.

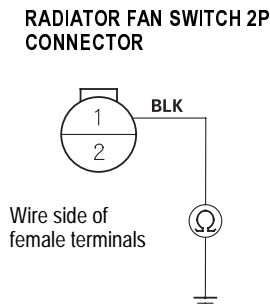


*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the radiator fan switch 2P connector terminal No. 2 and under-hood fuse/relay box.■

4. Turn the ignition switch OFF, and check for continuity between the No. 1 terminal of the radiator fan switch 2P connector and body ground.



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Replace the radiator fan switch.■

**No** Check for an open in the wire between the radiator fan switch 2P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground. If the wire is OK, check for a poor ground at G201.■

### Radiator Fan Switch Circuit Troubleshooting (Short)

1. Remove the radiator fan relay from the under-hood fuse/relay box, and test it ([see page 10-17](#)).

*Is the relay OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Replace the radiator fan relay.■

2. Remove the radiator fan switch, and test it ([see page 10-17](#)).

*Is the radiator fan switch OK?*

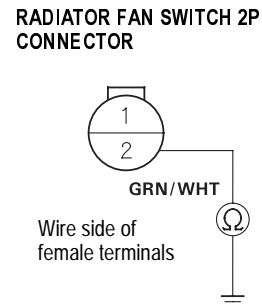
**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Replace the radiator fan switch.■

3. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

4. Disconnect Engine Control Module (ECM)/ Powertrain Control Module (PCM) connector B (24P) and the under-hood fuse relay box 14P connector.

5. Check for continuity between the No. 2 terminal of the radiator fan switch 2P connector and body ground.



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the radiator fan switch 2P connector terminal No. 2 and under-hood fuse/relay box.■

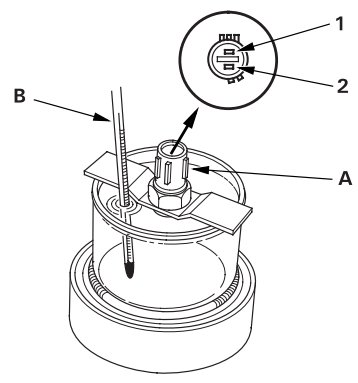
**No** Replace the under-hood fuse/relay box.■



Radiator Fan Switch Test

NOTE: Bleed air from the cooling system after installing the radiator fan switch (see page 10-6).

- 1. Remove the radiator fan switch from the radiator (see page 10-17).
- 2. Suspend the radiator fan switch (A) in a container of water as shown.

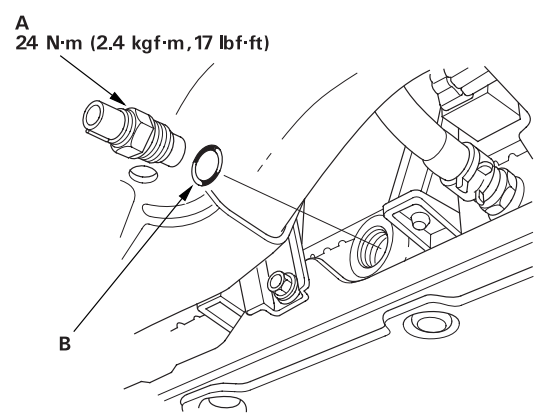


- 3. Heat the water, and check the temperature with a thermometer. Do not let the thermometer (B) touch the bottom of the hot container.
- 4. Measure the continuity between terminal No. 1 and terminal No. 2 according to the table.

Operation		Temperature	Terminal	
			1	2
SWITCH	ON	91 - 95°C (196 - 203°F)		
	OFF	3 - 8°C (5 - 15°F) lower than the temperature when it goes on		

Radiator Fan Switch Replacement

- 5. Disconnect the radiator fan switch connector, then remove the radiator fan switch (A).



- 6. Install the radiator fan switch with a new O-ring (B).



# 11

## Fuel and Emissions

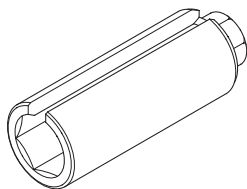
Fuel and Emissions Systems .....	11-2
PGM-FI System .....	11-59
VTEC/VTC .....	11-123
Idle Control System .....	11-139
Fuel Supply System .....	11-149
Intake Air System .....	11-176
Catalytic Converter System .....	11-188
PCV System .....	11-190
Evaporative Emission Control System .....	11-191



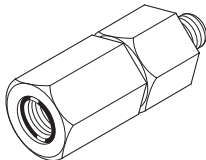
Fuel and Emissions Systems

Special Tools

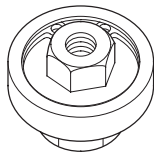
Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07LAA-PT50101	O <sub>2</sub> Sensor Socket Wrench	1
2	07NAJ-P070100	Oil Pressure Gauge Attachment	1
3	07VAJ-0040100	Fuel Pressure Gauge Attachment	1
4	07WAA-0010100	Adjustable Ring Wrench	1
5	07ZAJ-S5A0100	Fuel Pressure Gauge Set	1
6	07ZAJ-S7C0100	Fuel Hose Attachment	1
7	07ZAJ-S7C0200	Fuel Joint Attachment	1
8	07ZAJ-S5A0200	Hose, Oil Pressure	1
9	07406-0070001	Low Pressure Gauge	1
10	07406-0040002	Fuel Pressure Gauge	1



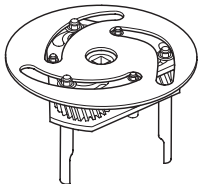
1



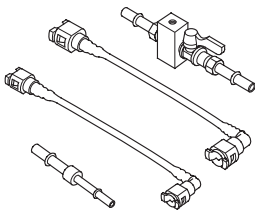
2



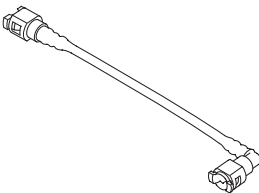
3



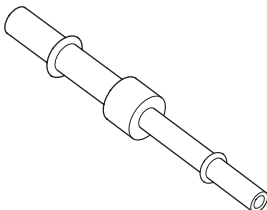
4



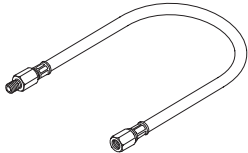
5



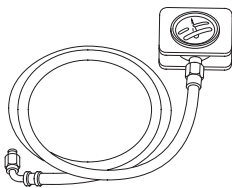
6



7



8



9



10



## General Troubleshooting Information

### Intermittent Failures

The term "intermittent failure" means a system may have had a failure, but it checks OK now. If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) on the dash does not come on, check for poor connections or loose wires at all connectors related to the circuit that you are troubleshooting.

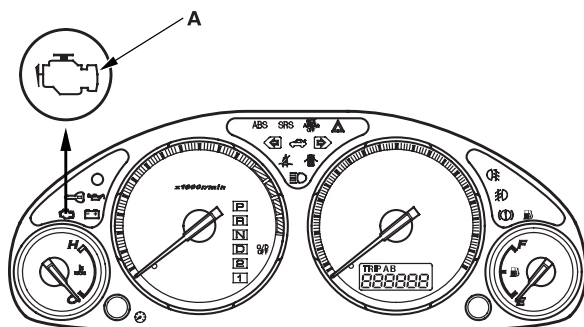
### Opens and Shorts

"Open" and "Short" are common electrical terms. An open is a break in a wire or at a connection. A short is an accidental connection of a wire to ground or to another wire. In simple electronics, this usually means something won't work at all. In complex electronics (like ECM's/PCM's) this can sometimes mean something works, but not the way it's supposed to.

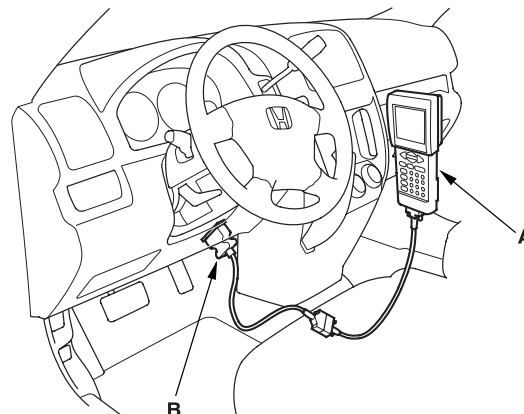
### How to Use the Honda PGM Tester or a Scan Tool

#### If the MIL has come on

1. Start the engine and check the MIL.



2. If the MIL stays on, connect the Honda PGM Tester (A) or a scan tool to the Data Link Connector (DLC) (B) located under the driver's side of the dashboard.



\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
4. Check the Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) and note it. Also check the freeze frame data. Refer to the DTC Troubleshooting Index and begin the appropriate troubleshooting procedure.

#### NOTE:

- Freeze frame data indicates the engine conditions when the first malfunction, misfire or fuel trim malfunction was detected.
- The scan tool and the Honda PGM Tester can read the DTC, freeze frame data, current data, and other Engine Control Module (ECM)/Powertrain Control Module (PCM) data.
- For specific operations, refer to the user's manual that came with the scan tool or Honda PGM Tester.

#### If the MIL did not come on

If the MIL did not come on but there is a driveability problem, refer to the Symptom Troubleshooting Index in this section ([see page 11-8](#)).

#### If you can't duplicate the DTC

Some of the troubleshooting in this section requires you to reset the ECM/PCM and try to duplicate the DTC. If the problem is intermittent and you can't duplicate the code, do not continue through the procedure. To do so will only result in confusion and, possibly, a needlessly replaced ECM/PCM.

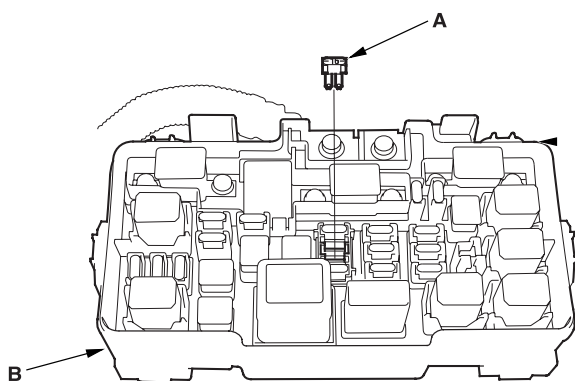
(cont'd)

## General Troubleshooting Information (cont'd)

### How to Reset the ECM/PCM

You can reset the ECM/PCM in either of 2 ways:

- Use the scan tool or Honda PGM Tester to clear the ECM's/PCM's memory.  
See the scan tool or Honda PGM Tester user's manuals for specific instructions.
- Turn the ignition switch OFF, and remove the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse (A) from the under-hood fuse/relay box (B) for 10 seconds.



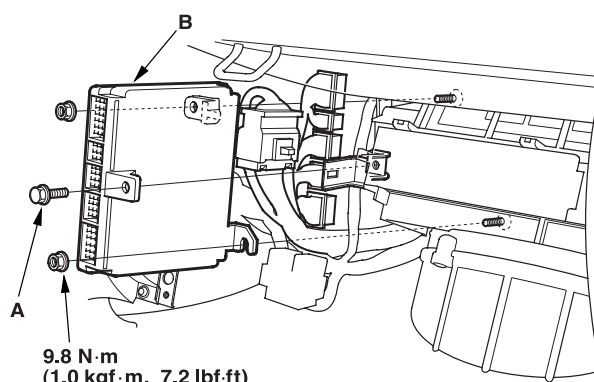
### How to End a Troubleshooting Session (required after any troubleshooting)

1. Reset the ECM/PCM as described above.
2. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
3. Disconnect the scan tool or Honda PGM Tester from the DLC.  
  
NOTE: The ECM/PCM is part of the immobilizer system. If you replace the ECM/PCM, it will have a different immobilizer code. In order for the engine to start, you must rewrite the immobilizer code with the Honda PGM Tester.

### How to Remove the ECM/PCM for Testing

If the inspection for a trouble code requires voltage or resistance checks at the ECM/PCM connectors, remove the ECM/PCM and test it:

1. Make sure you have the anti-theft code for the radio, then write down the radio station presets.
2. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
3. Remove the glove box ([see page 20-95](#)).
4. Remove the gray 20P ECM/PCM wire harness connector from the ECM/PCM mounting bracket. Remove the ECM/PCM mounting bolt (A) and the bracket.



\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

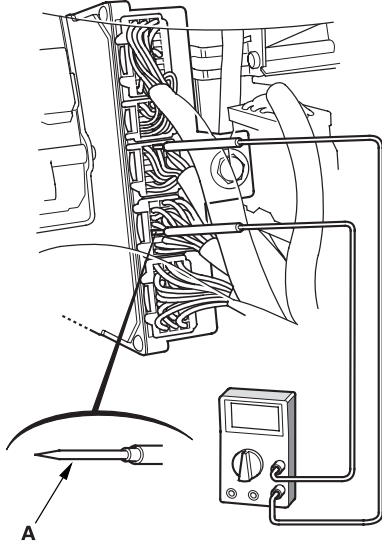
5. Remove the nuts, then remove the ECM/PCM (B).
6. Install the ECM/PCM in the reverse order of removal.
7. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
8. Enter the radio anti-theft code and the radio station preset then set the clock.





### How to Troubleshoot Circuits at the ECM/PCM

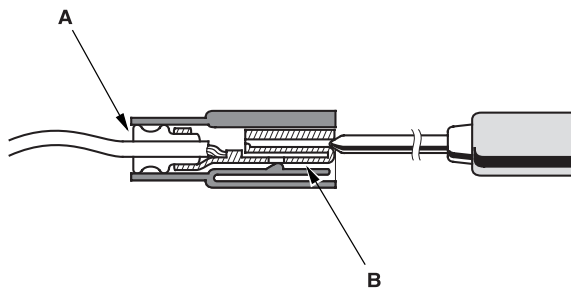
1. Gently slide the sharp tester probe (A) into the connector from wire side until it touches the end of the wire terminal.



2. If you cannot get to the wire side of the connector or the wire side is sealed (A), disconnect the connector and probe the terminals (B) from the terminal side. Do not force the probe into the connector.

#### **NOTICE**

Do not puncture the insulation on a wire. Punctures can cause poor or intermittent electrical connections.



### How to Substitute the ECM/PCM

1. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
2. Remove the ECM/PCM from the vehicle.
3. Install a known-good ECM/PCM in the vehicle.
4. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
5. Rewrite the immobilizer code with the ECM/PCM replacement procedure on the Honda PGM Tester. It allows you to start the engine.
6. After completing your tests, reinstall the original ECM/PCM and rewrite the immobilizer code with the ECM/PCM replacement procedure on the Honda PGM Tester again.

## DTC Troubleshooting Index

Scan tool DTC (Honda DTC)	Detection Item	Page
P0010 (56-1)	VTC Oil Control Solenoid Valve Malfunction	<a href="#">(see page 11-124)</a>
P0011 (56-2)	VTC System Malfunction	<a href="#">(see page 11-126)</a>
P0107 (3-1)	Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) Sensor Circuit Low Voltage	<a href="#">(see page 11-62)</a>
P0108 (3-2)	Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) Sensor Circuit High Voltage	<a href="#">(see page 11-63)</a>
P0112 (10-1)	Intake Air Temperature (IAT) Sensor Circuit Low Voltage	<a href="#">(see page 11-64)</a>
P0113 (10-2)	Intake Air Temperature (IAT) Sensor Circuit High Voltage	<a href="#">(see page 11-65)</a>
P0117 (6-1)	Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) Sensor Circuit Low Voltage	<a href="#">(see page 11-66)</a>
P0118 (6-2)	Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) Sensor Circuit High Voltage	<a href="#">(see page 11-67)</a>
P0122 (7-1)	Throttle Position (TP) Sensor Circuit Low Voltage	<a href="#">(see page 11-68)</a>
P0123 (7-2)	Throttle Position (TP) Sensor Circuit High Voltage	<a href="#">(see page 11-70)</a>
P0131 (1-1)* <sup>4</sup>	Primary Heated Oxygen Sensor (Primary HO2S) (Sensor 1) Circuit Low Voltage	<a href="#">(see page 11-71)</a>
P0132 (1-2)* <sup>4</sup>	Primary Heated Oxygen Sensor (Primary HO2S) (Sensor 1) Circuit High Voltage	<a href="#">(see page 11-72)</a>
P0133 (61-1)* <sup>3</sup> *	Primary Heated Oxygen Sensor (Primary HO2S) (Sensor 1) Slow Response	<a href="#">(see page 11-73)</a>
P0135 (41-2)* <sup>4</sup>	Primary Heated Oxygen Sensor (Primary HO2S) (Sensor 1) Heater Circuit Malfunction	<a href="#">(see page 11-74)</a>
P0137 (63-1)* <sup>5</sup> *	Secondary Heated Oxygen Sensor (Secondary HO2S) (Sensor 2) Circuit Low Voltage	<a href="#">(see page 11-76)</a>
P0138 (63-2)* <sup>5</sup> *	Secondary Heated Oxygen Sensor (Secondary HO2S) (Sensor 2) Circuit High Voltage	<a href="#">(see page 11-77)</a>
P0141 (65-2)* <sup>5</sup>	Secondary Heated Oxygen Sensor (Secondary HO2S) (Sensor 2) Heater Circuit Malfunction	<a href="#">(see page 11-78)</a>
P0171 (45-2)* <sup>3</sup> *	Fuel system Too Lean	<a href="#">(see page 11-80)</a>
P0172 (45-1)* <sup>3</sup> *	Fuel system Too Rich	<a href="#">(see page 11-80)</a>
P0300 (7x-1)* <sup>3</sup> *	Random Misfire	<a href="#">(see page 11-81)</a>
P0301 (71-1)* <sup>3</sup> *	No. 1 Cylinder Misfire	<a href="#">(see page 11-81)</a>
P0302 (72-1)* <sup>3</sup> *	No. 2 Cylinder Misfire	<a href="#">(see page 11-81)</a>
P0303 (73-1)* <sup>3</sup> *	No. 3 Cylinder Misfire	<a href="#">(see page 11-81)</a>
P0304 (74-1)* <sup>3</sup> *	No. 4 Cylinder Misfire	<a href="#">(see page 11-81)</a>

\* :These DTCs have Temporary DTC code.

\*1: A/T

\*2: M/T

\*3: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models

\*4: with TWC model

\*5: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ models

\*6: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

\*7: except KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models

\*8: without TWC model



Scan tool DTC (Honda DTC)	Detection Item	Page
P0325 (23-1)	Knock Sensor Circuit Malfunction	(see page 11-87)
P0335 (4-1)	Crankshaft Position (CKP) Sensor No Signal	(see page 11-88)
P0336 (4-2)	Crankshaft Position (CKP) Sensor Intermittent Interruption	(see page 11-88)
P0340 (57-1)	Camshaft Position (CMP) Sensor No Signal	(see page 11-128)
P0341 (57-3)	VTC Phase Gap	(see page 11-129)
P0344 (57-2)	Camshaft Position (CMP) Sensor Intermittent Interruption	(see page 11-128)
P0420 (67-1)* <sup>3</sup> *	Catalyst System Efficiency Below Threshold	(see page 11-188)
P0443 (92-4)* <sup>3</sup>	Evaporative Emission (EVAP) Canister Purge Valve Circuit Malfunction	(see page 11-193)
P0500 (17-1)* <sup>2</sup>	Vehicle Speed Sensor (VSS) Circuit Malfunction	(see page 11-90)
P0563 (34-2)	Engine Control Module (ECM)/Powertrain Control Module (PCM) Power Source Circuit Unexpected Voltage	(see page 11-91)
P0600 (39-1)	Serial Communication Link Malfunction	Refer to the Multiplex Control System Troubleshooting (see page 22A-231)
P07xx, P08xx* <sup>1</sup> (70-2, 70-3)* <sup>1</sup> *	Automatic Transaxle System Malfunction	Refer to the Automatic Transmission DTC Troubleshooting Index (see page 14-7)
P1107 (13-1)	Barometric Pressure (BARO) Sensor Circuit Low Voltage	(see page 11-93)
P1108 (13-2)	Barometric Pressure (BARO) Sensor Circuit High Voltage	(see page 11-93)
P1213 (11-1)* <sup>8</sup>	Idle Mixture Adjuster (IMA) Circuit Low Voltage	(see page 11-94)
P1214 (11-2)* <sup>8</sup>	Idle Mixture Adjuster (IMA) Circuit High Voltage	(see page 11-95)
P1253 (21-1)* <sup>7</sup>	VTEC System Malfunction	(see page 11-130)
P1259 (22-4)* <sup>3</sup>	VTEC System Malfunction	(see page 11-133)
P1297 (20-1)* <sup>6</sup>	Electrical Load Detector (ELD) Circuit Low Voltage	(see page 11-97)
P1298 (20-2)* <sup>6</sup>	Electrical Load Detector (ELD) Circuit High Voltage	(see page 11-98)
P1361 (8-2)	Top Dead Center (TDC) Sensor Intermittent Interruption	(see page 11-100)
P1362 (8-1)	Top Dead Center (TDC) Sensor No Signal	(see page 11-100)
P1519 (14-3)	Idle Air Control (IAC) Valve Circuit Malfunction	(see page 11-140)
P1607 (0-2)	Engine Control Module (ECM)/Powertrain Control Module (PCM) Internal Circuit Malfunction	(see page 11-101)
P17xx (70-2, 70-3)* <sup>1</sup> *	Automatic Transaxle System Malfunction	Refer to the Automatic Transmission DTC Troubleshooting Index (see page 14-7)

\* : These DTCs have Temporary DTC code.

\*1: A/T

\*2: M/T

\*3: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models

\*4: with TWC model

\*5: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ models

\*6: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

\*7: except KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models

\*8: without TWC model

## Symptom Troubleshooting Index

When the vehicle has one of these symptoms, check the Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) with the scan tool. If there is no DTC, do the diagnostic procedure for the symptom, in the sequence listed, until you find the cause.

Symptom	Diagnostic procedure	Also check for
Engine will not start (MIL works OK, no DTCs set)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Test the battery (<a href="#">see page 22A-59</a>).</li> <li>2. Test the starter (<a href="#">see page 04-5</a>).</li> <li>3. Troubleshoot the fuel pump circuit (<a href="#">see page 11-151</a>).</li> </ol>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Low compression</li> <li>• No ignition spark</li> <li>• Intake air leaks</li> <li>• Locked up engine</li> <li>• Slipped/ broken timing belt</li> <li>• Contaminated fuel</li> </ul>
Engine will not start (MIL comes on and stays on, or never comes on at all, no DTCs set)	Troubleshoot the MIL circuit ( <a href="#">see page 11-102</a> ).	
Engine will not start (immobilizer indicator light stays on or flashes)	Troubleshoot the immobilizer system ( <a href="#">see page 22A-190</a> ).	
Hard starting (MIL works OK, no DTCs set)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Test the battery (<a href="#">see page 22A-59</a>).</li> <li>2. Check the fuel pressure (<a href="#">see page 11-154</a>).</li> </ol>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Low compression</li> <li>• Intake air leaks</li> <li>• Contaminated fuel</li> <li>• Weak spark</li> </ul>
Cold fast idle too low (MIL works OK, no DTCs set)	Check the idle speed ( <a href="#">see page 11-148</a> ).	
Cold fast idle too high (MIL works OK, no DTCs set)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the idle speed (<a href="#">see page 11-148</a>).</li> <li>2. Inspect/adjust the throttle cable (<a href="#">see page 11-183</a>).</li> <li>3. Inspect and test the throttle body (<a href="#">see page 11-180</a>).</li> </ol>	
Idle speed fluctuates (MIL works OK, no DTCs set)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the idle speed (<a href="#">see page 11-148</a>).</li> <li>2. Inspect/adjust the throttle cable (<a href="#">see page 11-183</a>).</li> <li>3. Inspect and test the throttle body (<a href="#">see page 11-180</a>).</li> </ol>	Intake air leaks
After warming up idle speed is below specifications with no load (MIL works OK, no DTCs set)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Troubleshoot the ALT FR signal circuit (<a href="#">see page 11-143</a>).<sup>* 1</sup></li> <li>2. Inspect and test the throttle body (<a href="#">see page 11-180</a>).</li> </ol>	Vacuum hose clogged/ cracked/poor connection
After warming up idle speed is above specifications with no load <sup>*1</sup> (MIL works OK, no DTCs set)	Troubleshoot the ALT FR signal circuit ( <a href="#">see page 11-143</a> ).	
After warming up idle speed drops when steering wheel is turning (MIL works OK, no DTCs set)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Troubleshoot the PSP switch signal circuit (<a href="#">see page 11-145</a>).</li> <li>2. Inspect and test the throttle body (<a href="#">see page 11-180</a>).</li> </ol>	Power steering system
Idle speed fluctuates (MIL works OK, no DTCs set)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Test the fuel pressure (<a href="#">see page 11-154</a>).</li> <li>2. Test the injectors (<a href="#">see page 11-116</a>).<sup>* 2</sup></li> <li>3. Troubleshoot the ALT FR signal circuit (<a href="#">see page 11-143</a>).</li> <li>4. Inspect and test the PCV valve (<a href="#">see page 11-190</a>).</li> </ol>	Contaminated fuel



Symptom	Diagnostic procedure	Also check for
Misfire or rough running (MIL works OK, no DTCs set)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the spark plugs (see page 04-23).<sup>* 2</sup></li> <li>2. Test the fuel pressure (see page 11-154).</li> <li>3. Test the injectors (see page 11-116).<sup>* 2</sup></li> <li>4. Troubleshoot the fuel pump circuit (see page 11-151).</li> </ol>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Low compression</li> <li>• Valve clearance</li> <li>• Contaminated fuel</li> </ul>
Fails emission test <sup>* 2</sup> (MIL works OK, no DTCs set)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Inspect the three way catalytic converter (TWC) (see page 11-188).</li> <li>2. Check the spark plugs (see page 04-23).</li> <li>3. Test the fuel pressure (see page 11-154).</li> <li>4. Test the injectors (see page 11-116).</li> <li>5. Check the EVAP emission control system (see page 11-195).</li> </ol>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contaminated fuel</li> <li>• Low compression</li> <li>• Slipped/broken timing belt</li> </ul>
Low power (MIL works OK, no DTCs set)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Test the fuel pressure (see page 11-154).</li> <li>2. Check the air cleaner element (see page 11-182).</li> <li>3. Inspect/adjust the throttle cable (see page 11-183).</li> <li>4. Inspect and the test the throttle body (see page 11-180).</li> <li>5. Inspect the three way catalytic converter (TWC) (see page 11-188).<sup>* 2</sup></li> <li>6. Test the injectors (see page 11-116).<sup>* 2</sup></li> </ol>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contaminated fuel</li> <li>• Low compression</li> <li>• Camshaft timing</li> <li>• Engine oil level</li> </ul>
Engine stalls (MIL works OK, no DTCs)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Test the fuel pressure (see page 11-154).</li> <li>2. Check the idle speed (see page 11-148).</li> <li>3. Troubleshoot the brake pedal position switch signal circuit (see page 11-146).</li> <li>4. Check the spark plugs (see page 04-23).<sup>* 2</sup></li> </ol>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Intake air leaks</li> <li>• Faulty harness and sensor connections</li> </ul>

\*1: except KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

\*2: except KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models

### System Descriptions

#### Electronic Control System

The functions of the fuel and emission control systems are managed by the Engine Control Module (ECM) on vehicles with manual transmissions or the Powertrain Control Module (PCM) on vehicles with automatic transmissions.

#### Fail-safe Function

When an abnormality occurs in a signal from a sensor, the ECM/PCM ignores that signal and assumes a pre-programmed value for that sensor that allows the engine to continue to run.

#### Back-up Function

When an abnormality occurs in the ECM/PCM, the injectors are controlled by a back-up circuit independent of the system to permit minimal driving.

#### Self-diagnosis

When an abnormality occurs in the signal from a sensor, the ECM/PCM supplies ground for the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) and stores the Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) in erasable memory. When the ignition is first turned on, the ECM/PCM supplies ground for the MIL for 2 seconds to check the MIL bulb condition.

#### Two Driving Cycle Detection Method

To prevent false indications, the "two driving cycle detection method" is used for some self-diagnostic functions. When an abnormality occurs, the ECM/PCM stores it in its memory. When the same abnormality recurs after the ignition switch is turned OFF and ON (II) again, the ECM/PCM informs the driver by turning on the MIL.



## ECM/PCM Data

You can retrieve data from the ECM/PCM by connecting the scan tool or the Honda PGM Tester to the Data Link Connector (DLC). The items listed in the table below conform to SAE recommended practice. The Honda PGM Tester also reads data beyond that recommended by SAE so that this data may help you find the causes of intermittent problems.

### NOTE:

- The "operating values" listed are approximate and may vary depending on the environment and the individual vehicle.
- Unless noted otherwise, "at idle speed" means idling with the engine completely warmed up, A/T in Park or neutral, M/T in neutral position, and the A/C and all accessories turned off.

Data	Description	Operating Value	Freeze Data
Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC)	If the ECM/PCM detects a problem, it will store it as a code consisting of one letter and four numbers. Depending on the problem, an SAE-defined code (P0xxx) or a Honda-defined code (P1xxx) will be output to the tester.	If no problem is detected, there is no output.	YES
Engine Speed	The ECM/PCM computes engine speed from the signals sent from the Crankshaft Position (CKP) sensor. This data is used for determining the time and amount of injected fuel.	Nearly the same as tachometer indication At idle speed: 650±50 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> )	YES
Vehicle Speed	The ECM/PCM converts pulse signals from the Vehicle Speed Sensor (VSS).	Nearly the same as speedometer indication	YES
Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP)	The absolute pressure caused in the intake manifold by engine load and speed.	With engine stopped: Nearly the same as atmospheric pressure At idle speed: about 20 - 34 kPa (150 - 260 mmHg, 6 - 10 in.Hg), 0.7 - 1.1 V	YES
Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT)	The ECT sensor converts coolant temperature into voltage and signals the ECM/PCM. The sensor is a thermistor whose internal resistance changes with coolant temperature. The ECM/PCM uses the voltage signals from the ECT sensor to determine the amount of injected fuel.	With cold engine: Same as ambient temperature and IAT With engine warmed up: about 80 - 100°C (176 - 212°F), 0.5 - 0.8 V	YES
Heated Oxygen Sensor (HO2S), Secondary Heated Oxygen Sensor (Secondary HO2S) (Sensor 2)	The HO2S detects the oxygen content in the exhaust gas and sends voltage signals to the ECM/PCM. Based on these signals, the ECM/PCM controls the air fuel ratio. When the oxygen content is high (that is, when the ratio is leaner than the stoichiometric ratio), the voltage signal is lower. When the oxygen content is low (that is, when the ratio is richer than the stoichiometric ratio), the voltage signal is higher.	0.0 - 1.25 V At idle speed: about 0.1 - 0.9 V	NO

(cont'd)

## System Descriptions (cont'd)

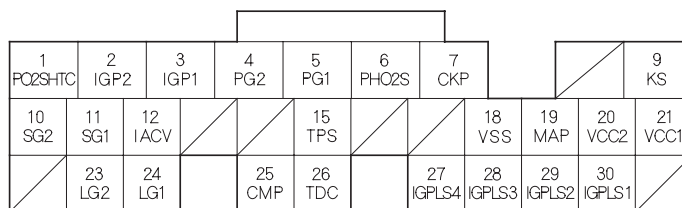
### ECM/PCM Data (cont'd)

Data	Description	Operating Value	Freeze Data
Fuel System Status	Fuel system status is indicated as "open" or "closed". Closed: Based on the HO2S output, the ECM/PCM determines the air/fuel ratio and controls the amount of injected fuel. Open: ignoring the HO2S output, the ECM/PCM refers to signals from the Throttle Position (TP), Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP), Intake Air Temperature (IAT), Barometric Pressure (BARO) and Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) sensors to control the amount of injected fuel.	At idle speed: closed	YES
Short Term Fuel Trim	The air/fuel ratio correction coefficient for correcting the amount of injected fuel when the Fuel System Status is "closed." When the ratio is leaner than the stoichiometric ratio, the ECM/PCM increases short term fuel trim gradually, and the amount of injected fuel increases. The air/fuel ratio gradually gets richer, causing a lower oxygen content in the exhaust gas. Consequently, the short term fuel trim is lowered, and the ECM/PCM reduces the amount of injected fuel. This cycle keeps the air/fuel ratio close to the stoichiometric ratio when in closed loop status.	0.73 - 1.47	YES
Long Term Fuel Trim	Long term fuel trim is computed from short term fuel trim and indicates changes occurring in the fuel supply system over a long period. If long term fuel trim is higher than 1.00, the amount of injected fuel must be increased. If it is lower than 1.00, the amount of injected fuel must be reduced.	0.82 - 1.47	YES
Intake Air Temperature (IAT)	The IAT sensor converts intake air temperature into voltage and signals the ECM/PCM. When intake air temperature is low, the internal resistance of the sensor increases, and the voltage signal is higher.	With cold engine: Same as ambient temperature and ECT	YES
Throttle Position	Based on the accelerator pedal position, the opening angle of the throttle valve is indicated.	At idle speed: about 10 %, 0.5 V	YES
Ignition Timing	Ignition timing is the ignition advance angle set by the ECM/PCM. The ECM/PCM matches ignition timing to the driving conditions.	At idle speed: $8^{\circ} \pm 2^{\circ}$ BTDC when the SCS service signal line is jumped with the Honda PGM tester	NO





## ECM/PCM Inputs and Outputs at Connector A (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

NOTE: Standard battery voltage is 12 V.

Terminal number	Wire color	Terminal name	Description	Signal
1* <sup>3</sup>	BLK/WHT	PO2SHTC (PRIMARY HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR HEATER CONTROL)	Drives Primary HO2S heater	With ignition switch ON (II): battery voltage With fully warmed up engine running: duty controlled
2	YEL/BLK	IGP2 (POWER SOURCE)	Power source for the ECM/PCM circuit	With the ignition switch ON (II): battery voltage With the ignition switch OFF: about 0 V
3	YEL/BLK	IGP1 (POWER SOURCE)	Power source for the ECM/PCM circuit	With the ignition switch ON (II): battery voltage With the ignition switch OFF: about 0 V
4	BLK	PG2 (POWER GROUND)	Ground for the ECM/PCM circuit	Less than 1.0 V at all times
5	BLK	PG1 (POWER GROUND)	Ground for the ECM/PCM circuit	Less than 1.0 V at all times
6* <sup>3</sup>	RED	PHO2S (PRIMARY HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR, Sensor 1)	Detects Primary HO2S sensor (Sensor 1) signal	With throttle fully opened from idle with fully warmed up engine: about 0.6 V With throttle quickly closed: below 0.4 V
7	BLU	CKP (CRANKSHAFT POSITION SENSOR)	Detects CKP sensor signal	With engine running: pulses
9	RED/BLU	KS (KNOCK SENSOR)	Detects knock sensor signal	With ignition ON (II): about 0 V With engine knocking: pulses
10	GRN/YEL	SG2 (SENSOR GROUND)	Sensor ground	Less than 1.0 V at all times
11	GRN/WHT	SG1 (SENSOR GROUND)	Sensor ground	Less than 1.0 V at all times
12	BLK/RED	IACV (IDLE AIR CONTROL (IAC) VALVE)	Drives IAC valve	With engine running: duty controlled
15	RED/BLK	TPS (THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR)	Detects TP sensor signal	With throttle fully open: about 4.8 V With throttle fully closed: about 0.5 V
18* <sup>2</sup>	WHT/GRN	VSS (VEHICLE SPEED SENSOR)	Detects VSS signal	With ignition switch ON (II) and front wheels rotating: cycles about 0 V-about 5 V or battery voltage
19	GRN/RED	MAP (MANIFOLD ABSOLUTE PRESSURE SENSOR)	Detects MAP sensor signal	With ignition switch ON (II): about 3 V At idle: about 1.0 V (depending on engine speed)
20	YEL/BLU	VCC2 (SENSOR VOLTAGE)	Provides sensor voltage	With ignition switch ON (II): about 5 V With ignition switch OFF: about 0 V
21	YEL/RED	VCC1 (SENSOR VOLTAGE)	Provides sensor voltage	With ignition switch ON (II): about 5 V With ignition switch OFF: about 0 V
23	BRN/YEL	LG2 (LOGIC GROUND)	Ground for the ECM/PCM circuit	Less than 1.0 V at all times
24	BRN/YEL	LG1 (LOGIC GROUND)	Ground for the ECM/PCM circuit	Less than 1.0 V at all times
25	BLU/WHT	CMP (CAMSHAFT POSITION SENSOR)	Detects CMP sensor signal	With engine running: pulses
26	GRN	TDC (TOP DEAD CENTER SENSOR)	Detects TDC sensor	With engine running: pulses
27	BRN	IGPLS4 (No.4 IGNITION COIL PULSE)	Drives No.4 ignition coil	With ignition switch ON (II): about 0 V With engine running: pulses
28	WHT/BLU	IGPLS3 (No.3 IGNITION COIL PULSE)	Drives No.3 ignition coil	
29	BLU/RED	IGPLS2 (No.2 IGNITION COIL PULSE)	Drives No.2 ignition coil	
30	YEL/GRN	IGPLS1 (No.1 IGNITION COIL PULSE)	Drives No.1 ignition coil	

\*1: A/T

\*2: M/T

\*3: with TWC model

\*4: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

\*5: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models

\*6: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ models

\*7: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KN, KH, KY, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

\*8: except KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KN, KH, KY, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

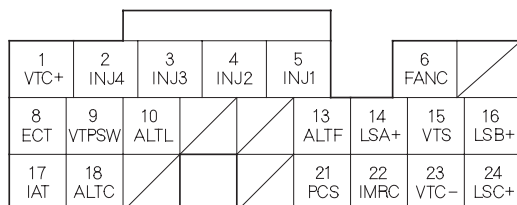
\*9: except TWC model

\*10: with cruise control

(cont'd)

## System Descriptions (cont'd)

### ECM/PCM Inputs and Outputs at Connector B (24P)



Wire side of female terminals

NOTE: Standard battery voltage is 12 V.

Terminal number	Wire color	Terminal name	Description	Signal
1	BLU/WHT	VTC+ (VTC OIL CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE +SIDE)	Drives VTC oil control solenoid valve	With ignition switch ON (II): 0 V
2	YEL	INJ4 (No. 4 INJECTOR)	Drives No. 4 injector	At idle: duty controlled With ignition switch ON (II): battery voltage
3	BLU	INJ3 (No. 3 INJECTOR)	Drives No. 3 injector	
4	RED	INJ2 (No. 2 INJECTOR)	Drives No. 2 injector	
5	BRN	INJ1 (No. 1 INJECTOR)	Drives No. 1 injector	
6	GRN	FANC (RADIATOR FAN CONTROL)	Drives radiator fan relay	With radiator fan running: about 0 V With radiator fan stopped: battery voltage
8	RED/WHT	ECT (ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE SENSOR)	Detects ECT sensor signal	With the ignition switch ON (II): about 0.1 - 4.8 V (depending on engine coolant temperature)
9* 5	BLU/BLK	VTPSW (VTEC OIL PRESSURE SWITCH)	Detects VTEC oil pressure switch signal	At idle: about 0 V
10	WHT/BLU	ALTL (ALTERNATOR L SIGNAL)	Detects alternator L signal	With ignition switch ON (II): about 0 V With engine running: battery voltage
13	WHT/RED	ALTF (ALTERNATOR FR SIGNAL)	Detects alternator FR signal	With engine running: about 0 V - 5 V (depending on electrical load)
14* 1	RED/BLK	LSA+ (A/T PRESSURE CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE A +SIDE)	Drives A/T pressure control solenoid valve A	With the ignition switch ON (II): duty controlled
15	GRN/YEL	VTS (VTEC SOLENOID VALVE)	Drives VTEC solenoid valve	At idle: about 0 V
16* 1	BRN/WHT	LSB+ (A/T PRESSURE CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE B +SIDE)	Drives A/T pressure control solenoid valve B	With the ignition switch ON (II): duty controlled
17	RED/YEL	IAT (INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR)	Detects IAT sensor signal	With ignition switch ON (II): about 0.1 V - 4.8 V (depending on intake air temperature)
18* 4	WHT/GRN	ALTC (ALTERNATOR CONTROL)	Sends alternator control signal	With engine running: about 0 V - 5 V (depending on electrical load)
21	YEL/BLU	PCS (EVAPORATIVE EMISSION CANISTER PURGE VALVE)	Drives EVAP canister purge valve	With engine running, engine coolant below 65°C (149°F): about 0 V With engine running, engine coolant above 65°C (149°F): duty controlled
22	RED/BLU	IMRC (INTAKE MANIFOLD RUNNER CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE)	Drives IMRC solenoid valve	With engine speed below 4,700 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> ) (K24A1 engine: 4,300 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> )): battery voltage With engine speed above 4,700 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> ) (K24A1 engine: 4,300 rpm (min <sup>-1</sup> )): 0 V
23	BLK/WHT	VTC- (VTC OIL CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE -SIDE)	Drives VTC oil control solenoid valve	With the ignition switch ON (II): 0 V
24* 1	BLU/YEL	LSC+ (A/T PRESSURE CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE C +SIDE)	Drives A/T pressure control solenoid valve C	With the ignition switch ON (II): duty controlled

\*1: A/T

\*2: M/T

\*3: with TWC model

\*4: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

\*5: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models

\*6: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ models

\*7: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KN, KH, KY, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

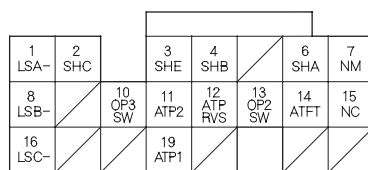
\*8: except KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KN, KH, KY, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

\*9: except TWC model

\*10: with cruise control



## PCM Inputs and Outputs at Connector C (22P)\* 1



Wire side of female terminals

NOTE: Standard battery voltage is 12 V.

Terminal number	Wire color	Terminal name	Description	Signal
1	WHT/BLK	LSA- (A/T PRESSURE CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE A -SIDE)	Ground for A/T pressure control solenoid valve A	
2	GRN	SHC (SHIFT SOLENOID VALVE C)	Drives shift solenoid valve C	With engine running in Neutral position, or in D, M position (in 1st, 3rd, 5th gears): battery voltage With engine running in Park, R position, or in D, M position (in 2nd, 4th gears): about 0 V
3	YEL	SHE (SHIFT SOLENOID VALVE E)	Drives shift solenoid valve E	With engine running in Park, R position: battery voltage With engine running in Neutral position, or in D, M position (in 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th gears): about 0 V
4	GRN/WHT	SHB (SHIFT SOLENOID VALVE B)	Drives shift solenoid valve B	With engine running in Park, R, Neutral position, or D, M position (in 1st, 2nd gears): battery voltage With engine running in D, M position (in 3rd, 4th, 5th gears): about 0 V
6	BLU/BLK	SHA (SHIFT SOLENOID VALVE A)	Drives shift solenoid valve A	With engine running in R position, or D, M position (in 1st, 4th, 5th gears): battery voltage With engine running in Park, Neutral position, or D, M position (in 2nd, 3rd gears): about 0V
7	WHT/RED	NM (MAINSHAFT SPEED SENSOR)	Detects mainshaft speed sensor signals	With engine running: pulses
8	BLK/RED	LSB- (A/T PRESSURE CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE B -SIDE)	Ground for A/T pressure control solenoid valve B	
10	BLU/WHT	OP3SW (3RD OIL PRESSURE SWITCH)	Detects 3rd oil pressure switch	With the ignition switch ON (II): about 5 V With engine running in 3rd gear: about 0 V
11	GRN/RED	ATP2 (TRANSMISSION RANGE SWITCH 2ND POSITION)	Detects transmission range switch 2nd position signal	In 2nd position: about 0 V In any other position: battery voltage
12	RED/WHT	ATPRVS (TRANSMISSION RANGE SWITCH R POSITION)	Detects transmission range switch R position signal	In R position: about 0 V In any other position: about 5 V or battery voltage
13	BLU/RED	OP2SW (2ND OIL PRESSURE SWITCH)	Detects 2nd oil pressure switch	With the ignition switch ON (II): about 5 V With engine running in 2nd gear: about 0 V
14	RED/YEL	ATFT (ATF TEMPERATURE SENSOR)	Detects ATF temperature sensor signal	With the ignition switch ON (II): about 0.1 V - 4.2 V (depending on ATF temperature)
15	BLU	NC (COUNTERSHAFT SPEED SENSOR)	Detects countershaft speed sensor signals	With ignition switch ON (II), and front wheels rotating: pulses
16	WHT/BLU	LSC- (A/T PRESSURE CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE C -SIDE)	Ground for A/T pressure control solenoid valve C	With the ignition switch ON (II): duty controlled
19	BRN	ATP1 (TRANSMISSION RANGE SWITCH 1ST POSITION)	Detects transmission range switch 1st position signal	In 1st position: about 0 V In any other position: battery voltage

\*1: A/T

\*2: M/T

\*3: with TWC model

\*4: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

\*5: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models

\*6: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ models

\*7: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KN, KH, KY, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

\*8: except KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KN, KH, KY, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

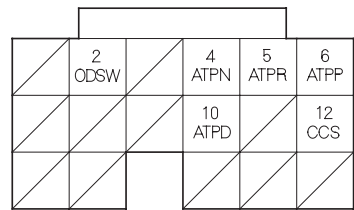
\*9: except TWC model

\*10: with cruise control

(cont'd)

System Descriptions (cont'd)

PCM Inputs and Outputs at Connector D (17P)



Wire side of female terminals

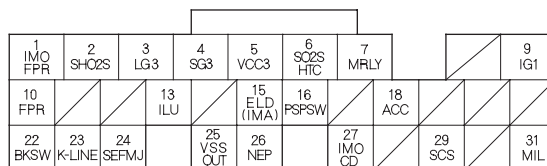
NOTE: Standard battery voltage is 12 V.

Terminal number	Wire color	Terminal name	Description	Signal
2	GRN	ODSW (OVER-DRIVE SWITCH)	Detects over-drive switch signal	With Over-Drive OFF (O/D OFF indicator light turned ON): about 0 V With Over-Drive ON (O/D OFF indicator light turned OFF): about 5 V
4	BLK/RED	ATPN (TRANSMISSION RANGE SWITCH NEUTRAL POSITION)	Detects transmission range switch Neutral position signal	In Neutral position: about 0 V In any other position: about 5 V or battery voltage
5	WHT	ATPR (TRANSMISSION RANGE SWITCH R POSITION)	Detects transmission range switch R position signal	In R position: about 0 V In any other position: about 5 V or battery voltage
6	BLU/BLK	ATPP (TRANSMISSION RANGE SWITCH PARK POSITION)	Detects transmission range switch Park position signal	In Park position: about 0 V In any other position: about 5 V or battery voltage
10	LT BLU	ATPD (TRANSMISSION RANGE SWITCH D POSITION)	Detects transmission range switch D position signal	In D position: about 0 V In any other position: about 5 V or battery voltage
12* <sup>10</sup>	BLU/ORN	CCS (CRUISE CONTROL SIGNAL)	Detects cruise control signal	With ignition switch ON (II): pulses

\*1: A/T  
\*2: M/T  
\*3: with TWC model  
\*4: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models  
\*5: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models  
\*6: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ models  
\*7: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KN, KH, KY, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models  
\*8: except KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KN, KH, KY, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models  
\*9: except TWC model  
\*10: with cruise control



## ECM/PCM Inputs and Outputs at Connector E (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

NOTE: Standard battery voltage is 12 V.

Terminal number	Wire color	Terminal name	Description	Signal
1* 7	GRN/YEL	IMO FPR (IMMOBILIZER FUEL PUMP RELAY)	Drives PGM-FI main relay 2	0 V for 2 seconds after turning ignition switch ON (II), then battery voltage
2* 6	WHT/RED	SHO2S (SECONDARY HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR, SENSOR 2)	Detects Secondary HO2S (sensor 2) signal	With throttle fully opened from idle with fully warmed up engine: above 0.6 V With throttle quickly closed: below 0.4 V
3	BRN/YEL	LG3 (LOGIC GROUND)	Ground for the ECM/PCM control circuit	Less than 1.0 V at all times
4	PNK	SG3 (SENSOR GROUND)	Sensor ground	Less than 1.0 V at all times
5	YEL/BLU	VCC3 (SENSOR VOLTAGE)	Provides sensor voltage	With ignition switch ON (II): about 5 V With ignition switch OFF: about 0 V
6* 6	BLK/WHT	SO2SHTC (SECONDARY HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR HEATER CONTROL)	Drives Secondary HO2S heater	With ignition switch ON (II): battery voltage With fully warmed up engine running: duty controlled
7	RED/YEL	MRLY (PGM-FI MAIN RELAY)	Drives PGM-FI main relay 1 Power source for the DTC memory	With ignition switch ON (II): battery voltage With ignition switch OFF: about 0 V
9	YEL/BLK	IG1 (IGNITION SIGNAL)	Detects ignition signal	With ignition switch ON (II): battery voltage With ignition switch OFF: about 0 V
10* 8	GRN/YEL	FPR (FUEL PUMP RELAY)	Drives PGM-FI main relay 2	0 V for 2 seconds after turning ignition switch ON (II), then battery voltage
13* 1	WHT/BLU	ILU (INTERLOCK CONTROL UNIT)	Drives interlock control unit	With ignition switch ON (II) and brake pedal depressed: about 8.5 V
15* 4	GRN/RED	ELD (ELECTRICAL LOAD DETECTOR)	Drives ELD signal	With ignition switch ON (II): about 0.1 V - 4.8 V (depending on electrical load)
15* 9	ORN	IMA (IDLE MIXTURE ADJUSTER (IMA))	Detects IMA signal	With ignition switch ON (II): about 0.5-4.5 V (depending on idle mixture)
16	LT GRN/BLK	PSPSW (POWER STEERING PRESSURE SWITCH SIGNAL)	Detects PSP switch signal	At idle steering wheel in straight ahead position: about 0 V At idle with steering wheel at full lock: battery voltage
18	RED	ACC (A/C CLUTCH RELAY)	Drives A/C clutch relay	With compressor ON: about 0 V With compressor OFF: battery voltage
22	WHT/BLK	BKSW (BRAKE PEDAL POSITION SWITCH)	Detects BPP switch signal	With brake pedal released: about 0 V With brake pedal pressed: battery voltage
23	LT BLU	K-LINE	Sends and receives scan tool signal	With ignition switch ON (II): pulses or battery voltage
24	YEL	SEFMJ	Communicates with multiplex control unit	With ignition switch ON (II): about 5 V With engine running with load: pulses
25* 1	BLU/WHT	VSSOUT (VEHICLE SPEED SENSOR OUTPUT SIGNAL)	Sends vehicle speed sensor signal	Depending on vehicle speed: pulses
26	BLU	NEP (ENGINE SPEED PULSE)	Outputs engine speed pulse	With engine running: pulses
27* 7	RED/BLU	IMOCOD (IMMOBILIZER CODE)	Detects immobilizer signal	
29	BRN	SCS (SERVICE CHECK SIGNAL)	Detects service check signal	With the service check signal shorted with the PGM Tester: about 0 V With the service check signal opened: about 5 V battery voltage
31	GRN/WHT	MIL (MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LAMP)	Drives MIL	With MIL turned ON: about 0 V With MIL turned OFF: battery voltage

1: A/T

\*2: M/T

\*3: with TWC model

\*4: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

\*5: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) model

\*6: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ models

\*7: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KN, KH, KY, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

\*8: except KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KN, KH, KY, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

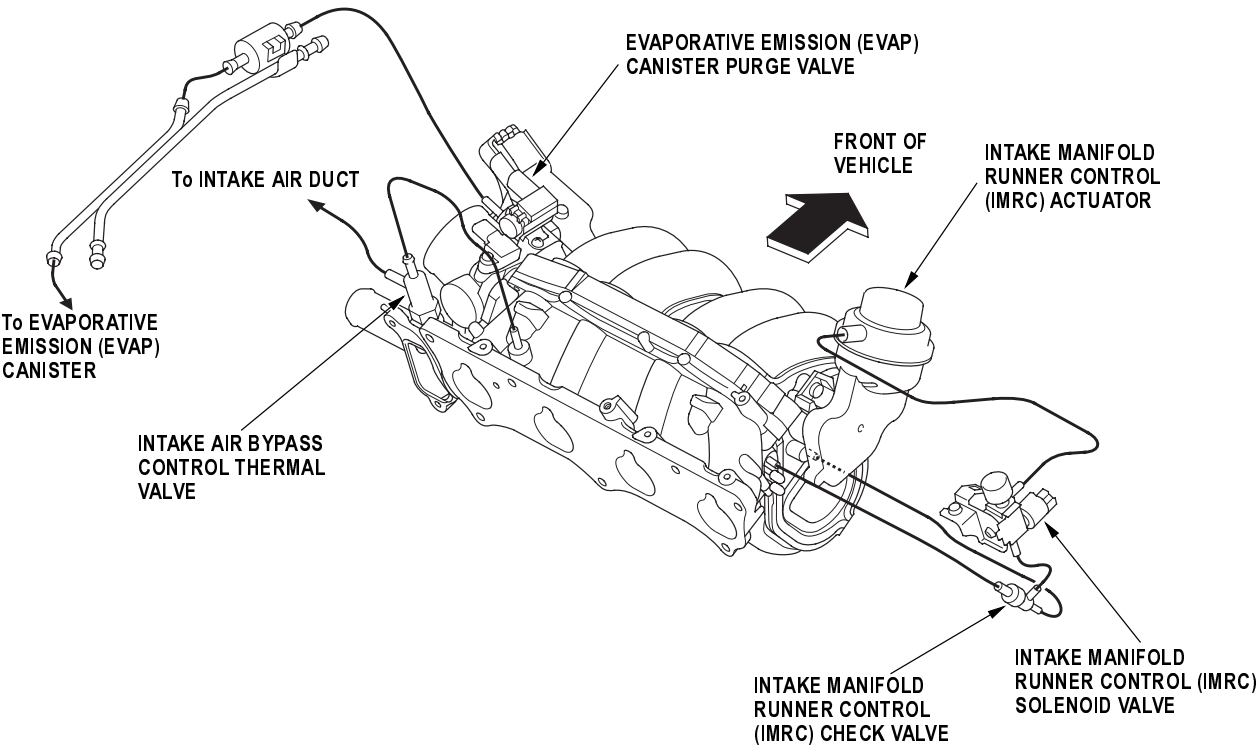
\*9: except TWC model

\*10: with cruise control

(cont'd)

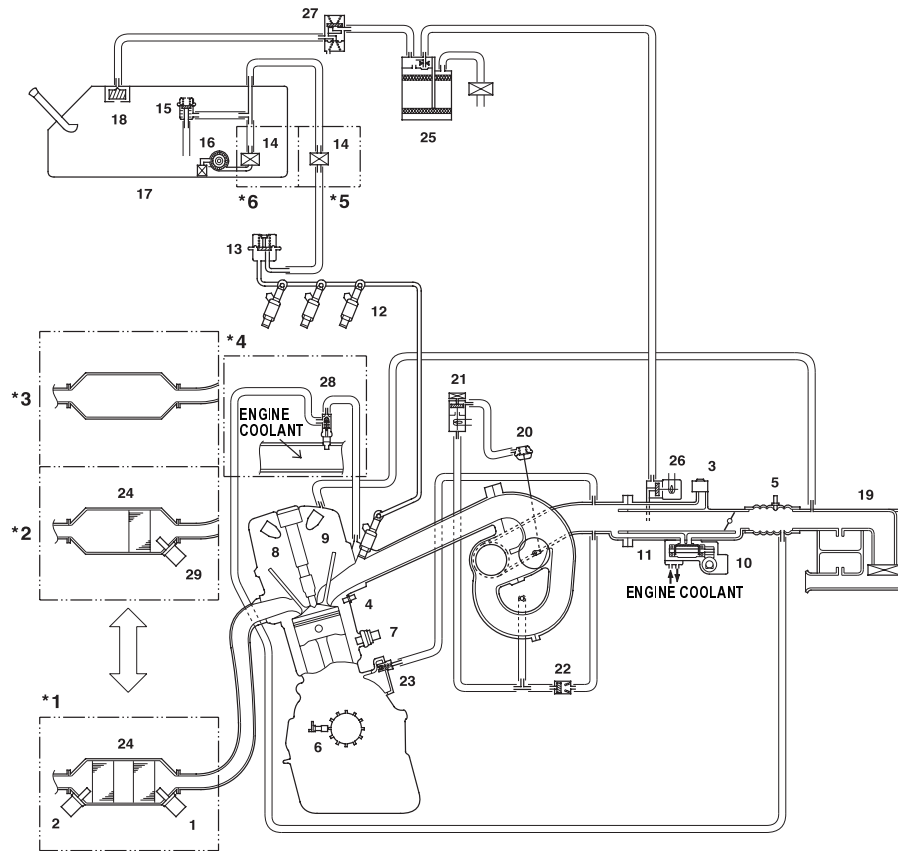
System Descriptions (cont'd)

Vacuum Hose Routing





## Vacuum Distribution



\*1: KG, Ks, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ models

\*2: KN, KM, KY, MA, PH, IN, KK models

\*3: without TWC model

\*4: with TWC model

\*5: except KZ, PH, FO, IN, MA models

\*6: KZ, PH, FO, IN, MA models

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 PRIMARY HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR (PRIMARY HO2S) (SENSOR 1)     | 15 FUEL PRESSURE REGULATOR                              |
| 2 SECONDARY HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR (SECONDARY HO2S) (SENSOR 2) | 16 FUEL PUMP  |
| 3 MANIFOLD ABSOLUTE PRESSURE (MAP) SENSOR                    | 17 FUEL TANK  |
| 4 ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE (ECT) SENSOR                    | 18 FUEL TANK VAPOR/LIQUID SEPARATION VALVE              |
| 5 INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE (IAT) SENSOR                        | 19 AIR CLEANER  |
| 6 CRANKSHAFT POSITION (CKP) SENSOR                           | 20 INTAKE MANIFOLD RUNNER CONTROL (IMRC) CONTROL VALVE  |
| 7 KNOCK SENSOR   | 21 INTAKE MANIFOLD RUNNER CONTROL (IMRC) SOLENOID VALVE |
| 8 TOP DEAD CENTER (TDC) SENSOR                               | 22 INTAKE MANIFOLD RUNNER CONTROL (IMRC) CHECK VALVE    |
| 9 CAMSHAFT POSITION (CMP) SENSOR                             | 23 POSITIVE CRANKCASE VENTILATION (PCV) VALVE           |
| 10 IDLE AIR CONTROL (IAC) VALVE                              | 24 THREE WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTER                        |
| 11 THROTTLE BODY   | 25 EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) CONTROL CANISTER         |
| 12 INJECTOR  | 26 EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) CANISTER PURGE VALVE     |
| 13 FUEL PULSATION DAMPER                                     | 27 EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) TWO WAY VALVE            |
| 14 FUEL FILTER   | 28 INTAKE AIR BYPASS CONTROL THERMAL VALVE              |
|  | 29 HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR (HO2S)                          |

(cont'd)

## System Descriptions (cont'd)

### PGM-FI System

The Programmed Fuel Injection (PGM-FI) system is a sequential multiport fuel injection system.

### Air Conditioning (A/C) Compressor Clutch Relay

When the ECM/PCM receives a demand for cooling from the A/C system, it delays the compressor from being energized, and enriches the mixture to assure smooth transition to the A/C mode.

### Alternator Control

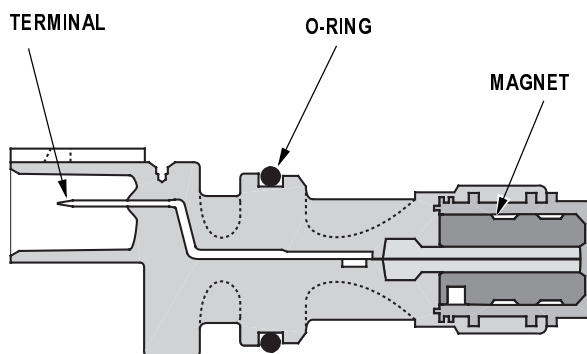
The alternator signals the Engine Control Module (ECM)/Powertrain Control Module (PCM) during charging.

### Barometric Pressure (BARO) Sensor

The BARO sensor is inside the ECM/PCM. It converts atmospheric pressure into a voltage signal that modifies the basic duration of the fuel injection discharge.

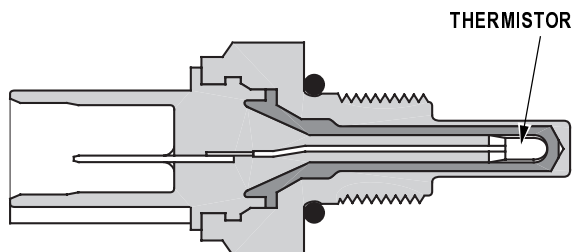
### Crankshaft Position (CKP) Sensor

The CKP sensor detects crankshaft speed and determines ignition timing and timing for fuel injection of each cylinder, as well as detecting engine misfire.



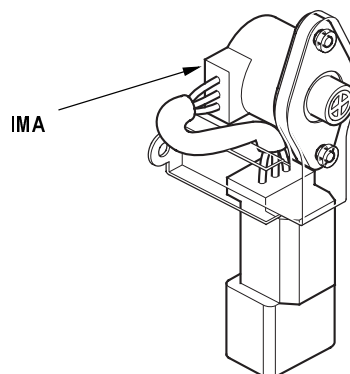
### Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) Sensor

The ECT sensor is a temperature dependent resistor (thermistor). The resistor of the thermistor decreases as the engine coolant temperature increases.



### Idle Mixture Adjuster (IMA) (without TWA model)

The idle mixture adjuster (IMA) is selected resistance device used to control idle mixture.



### Ignition Timing Control

The ECM/PCM contains the memory for basic ignition timing at various engine speeds and manifold absolute pressure. It also adjusts the timing according to engine coolant temperature.

### Injector Timing and Duration

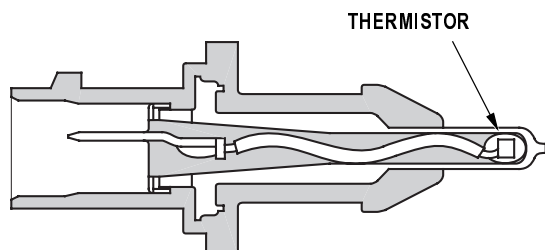
The ECM/PCM contains the memory for basic discharge duration at various engine speeds and manifold pressures. The basic discharge duration, after being read out from the memory, is further modified by signals sent from various sensors to obtain the final discharge duration. By monitoring long term fuel trim, the ECM/PCM detects long term malfunctions in the fuel system, and will set a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC).





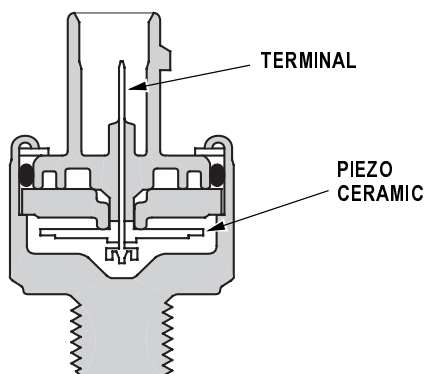
## Intake Air Temperature (IAT) Sensor

The IAT sensor is a temperature dependent resistor (thermistor). The resistance of the thermistor decreases as the intake air temperature increases.



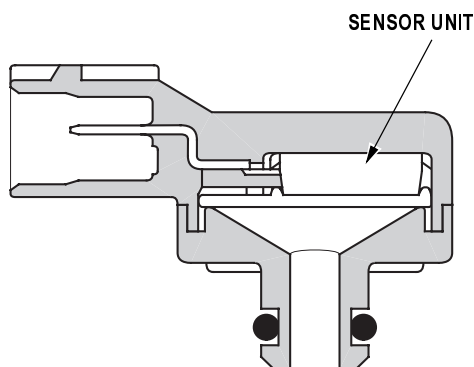
## Knock Sensor

The knock control system adjusts the ignition timing to minimize knock.



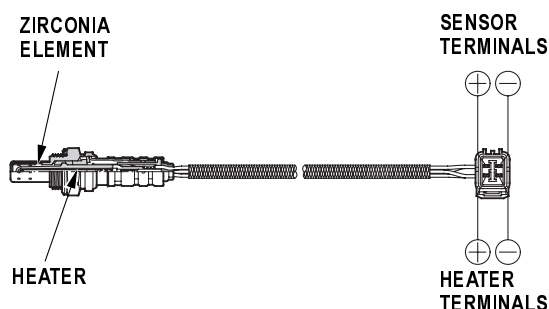
## Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) Sensor

The MAP sensor converts manifold absolute pressure into electrical signals to the ECM/PCM.



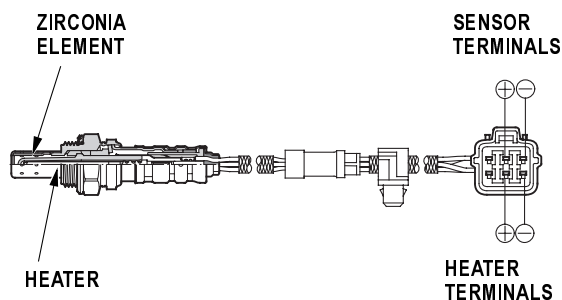
## Primary Heated Oxygen Sensor (Primary HO2S)

The primary HO2S detects the oxygen content in the exhaust gas and sends signals to the ECM/PCM which varies the duration of fuel injection accordingly. To stabilize its output, the sensor has an internal heater. The primary HO2S is installed in the Three Way Catalytic Converter (TWC). By controlling the air fuel ratio with primary HO2S and secondary HO2S, the deterioration of the primary HO2S can be evaluated by its feedback period. When the feedback period exceeds a certain value during stable driving conditions, the sensor is considered deteriorated and the ECM/PCM sets a DTC.



## Secondary Heated Oxygen Sensor (Secondary HO2S)

The secondary HO2S detects the oxygen content in the exhaust gas downstream of the Three Way Catalytic Converter (TWC) and sends signals to the ECM/PCM which varies the duration of fuel injection accordingly. To stabilize its output, the sensor has an internal heater. The secondary HO2S is installed in the TWC.



## Starting Control

When the engine is started, the ECM/PCM provides a rich mixture by increasing injector duration.

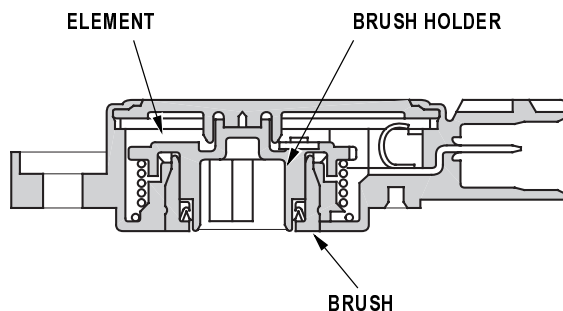
(cont'd)

## System Descriptions (cont'd)

### PGM-FI System (cont'd)

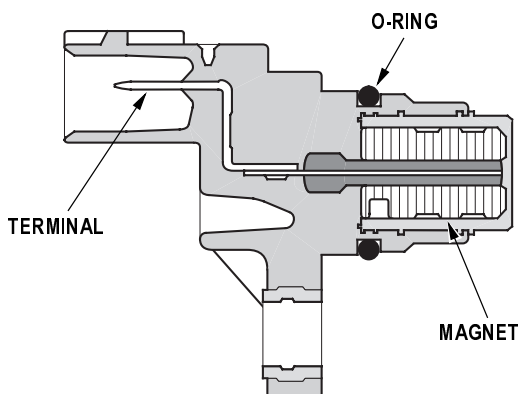
#### Throttle Position (TP) Sensor

The TP sensor is a potentiometer connected to the throttle valve shaft. As the throttle position changes, the sensor varies the signal voltage to the ECM/PCM. The TP sensor is not replaceable apart from the throttle body.



#### Top Dead Center (TDC) Sensor

The TDC sensor detects the position of the No. 1 cylinder as a reference for sequential fuel injection to each cylinder.



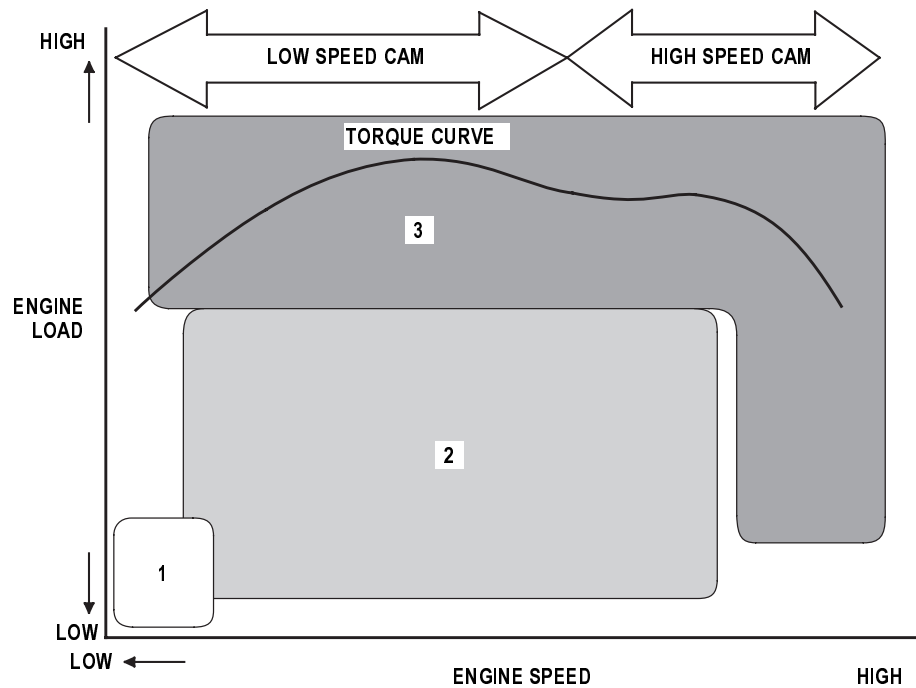
#### Vehicle Speed Sensor (VSS)

The VSS is driven by the differential. It generates a pulsed signal from an input of 5 volts. The number of pulses per minute increases/decreases with the speed of the vehicle.



## VTEC/VTC

- The i-VTEC has a VTC (Variable Valve Timing Control) mechanism on the intake camshaft in addition to the usual VTEC. This mechanism improves fuel efficiency and reduces exhaust emissions at all levels of engine speed, vehicle speed, and engine load.
- The VTEC mechanism changes the valve lift and timing by using more than one cam profile.
- The VTC changes the phase of the intake camshaft via oil pressure. It changes the intake valve timing continuously.



Driving Condition	VTC Control	Description
1 light-load	Base Position	Cam angle is retarded to reduce the entry of exhaust gas into the intake port and to achieve stable fuel consumption during lean burn.
2 medium/high-load	Advance Control	Cam angle is advanced for EGR effect and to reduce this pumping loss. The intake valve is closed quickly to help reduce the entry of air/fuel mixture into the intake port and improve the charging effect.
3 high speed	Advance-Base Position	Cam phase angle is controlled for optimum valve timing and maximum engine power.

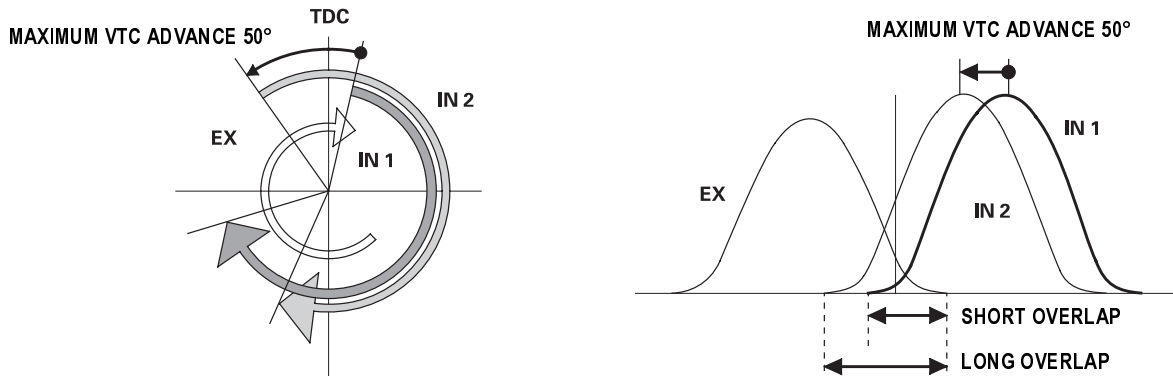
(cont'd)

## System Descriptions (cont'd)

### VTEC/VTC

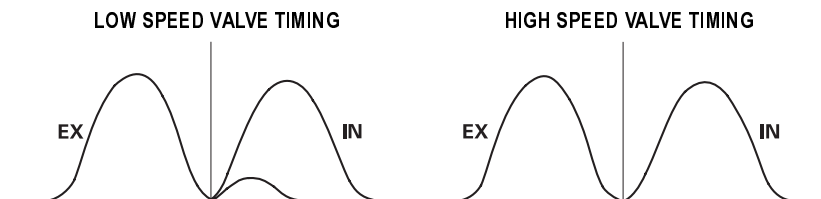
#### VTC system

- The VTC system makes continuous intake valve timing changes based on operating conditions.
- Intake valve timing to allow the engine to produce maximum power.
- Cam angle is advanced to obtain the EGR effect and reduce the pumping loss. The intake valve is closed quickly to reduce the entry of the air/fuel mixture into the intake port and improve the charging effect.
- Reduces the cam advance at idle, stabilizes combustion, and reduces engine speed.
- If a malfunction occurs, the VTC system control is disabled and the valve timing is fixed at the fully retarded position.



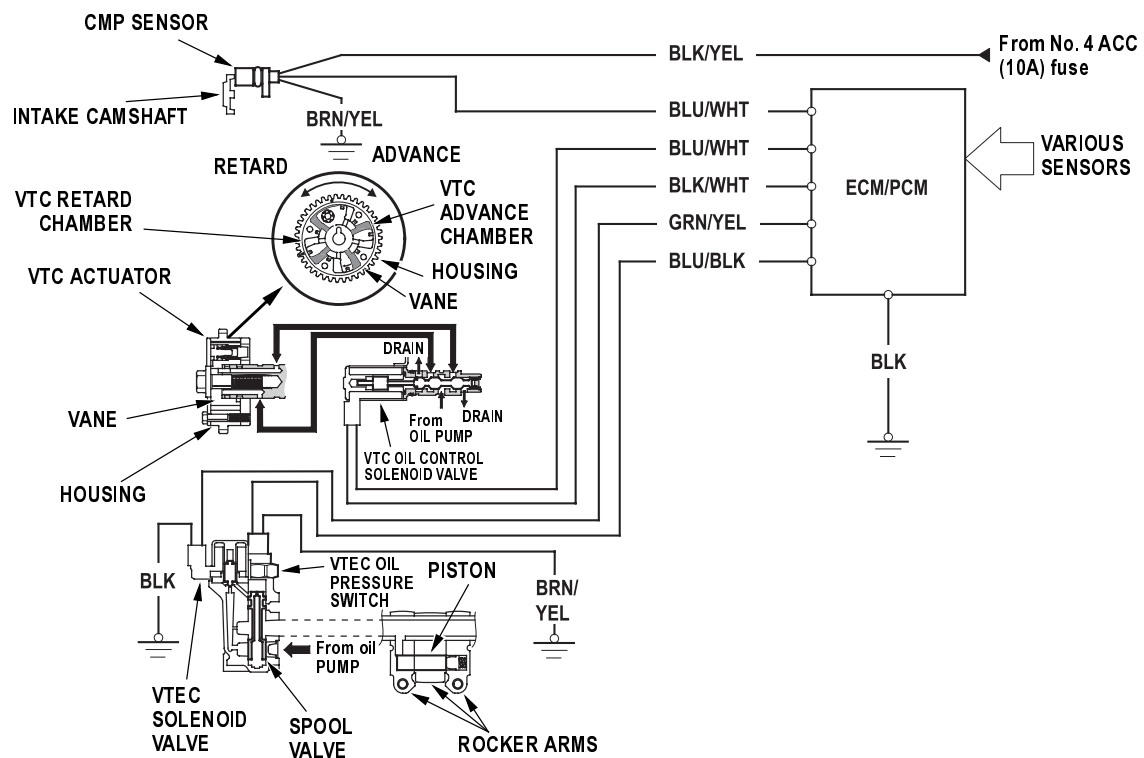
#### VTEC system

- The VTEC system changes the cam profile to correspond to the engine speed. It maximizes torque at low engine speed and output at high engine speed.
- The low lift cam is used at low engine speeds, and the high lift cam is used at high engine speeds.



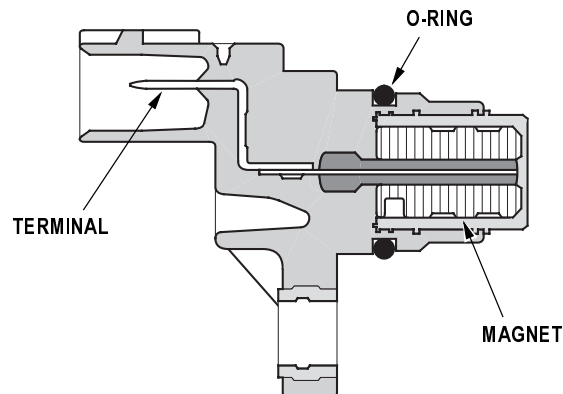


## System Diagram



### Camshaft Position (CMP) Sensor

The CMP sensor detects camshaft angle position for the VTC system.



(cont'd)

## System Descriptions (cont'd)

### Idle Control System

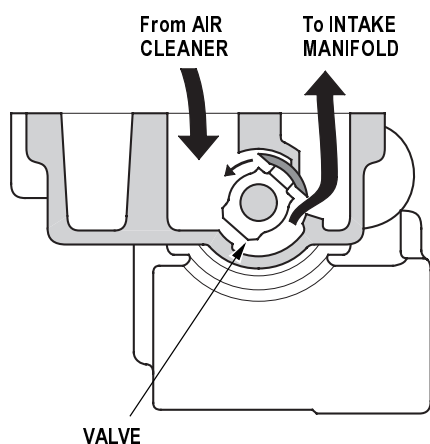
When the engine is cold, the A/C compressor is on, the transmission is in gear, the brake pedal is pressed, the power steering load is high, or the alternator is charging, the ECM/PCM controls current to the Idle Air Control (IAC) valve to maintain the correct idle speed. Refer to the System Diagram to see the functional layout of the system.

### Brake Pedal Position Switch

The brake pedal position switch signals the ECM/PCM when the brake pedal is pressed.

### Idle Air Control (IAC) Valve

To maintain the proper idle speed, the IAC valve changes the amount of air bypassing the throttle body in response to an electrical signal from the ECM/PCM.



### Power Steering Pressure (PSP) Switch

The PSP switch signals the ECM/PCM when the power steering load is high.

### Fuel Supply System

#### Fuel Cut-off Control

During deceleration with the throttle valve closed, current to the injectors is cut off to improve fuel economy at speeds over 850 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) (KY, KH, PH, KP, IN models: 900 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ )). Fuel cut-off action also occurs when engine speed exceeds 6,900 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) (K24A1 engine: 6,700 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ )), regardless of the position of the throttle valve, to protect the engine from over-revving. When the vehicle is stopped, the ECM/PCM cuts the fuel at engine speeds over 6,500 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) (A/T: 5,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ )).

#### Fuel Pump Control

When the ignition is turned on, the ECM/PCM grounds the PGM-FI main relay which feeds current to the fuel pump for 2 seconds to pressurize the fuel system. With the engine running, the ECM/PCM grounds the PGM-FI main relay and feeds current to the fuel pump. When the engine is not running and the ignition is on, the ECM/PCM cuts ground to the PGM-FI main relay which cuts current to the fuel pump.

#### PGM-FI Main Relay 1 and 2

The PGM-FI relay consists of two separate relays. PGM-FI main relay 1 is energized whenever the ignition switch is ON (II) which supplies battery voltage to the ECM/PCM, power to the injectors, and power for the PGM-FI main relay 2. PGM-FI main relay 2 is energized to supply power to the fuel pump for 2 seconds when the ignition switch is turned ON (II), and when the engine is running.

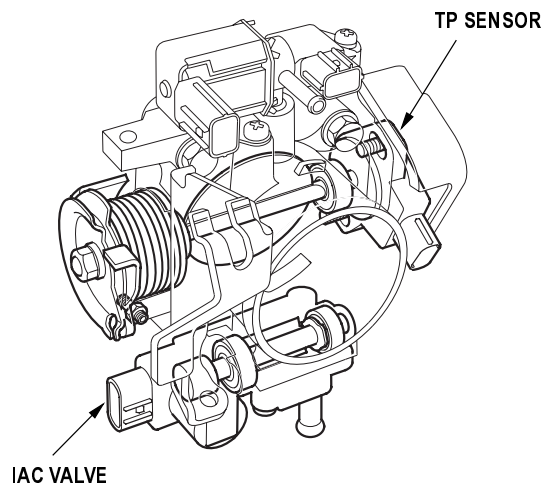


### Intake Air System

Refer to the System Diagram to see the functional layout of the system.

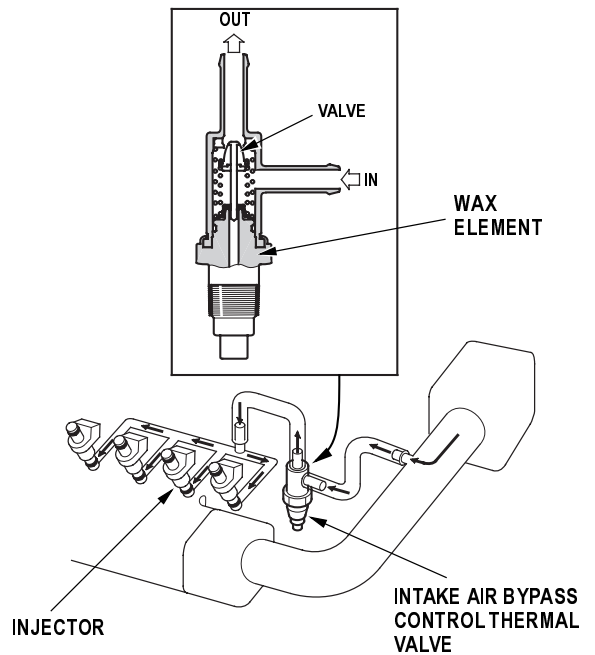
#### Throttle Body

The throttle body is a single-barrel side draft type. The lower portion of the IAC valve is heated by engine coolant from the cylinder head.



### Intake Air Bypass Control Thermal Valve

When the engine is running, the intake air bypass control thermal valve sends air to the injector.



(cont'd)

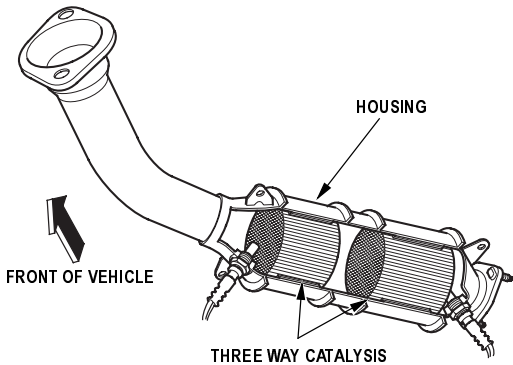
## System Descriptions (cont'd)

### Catalytic Converter System

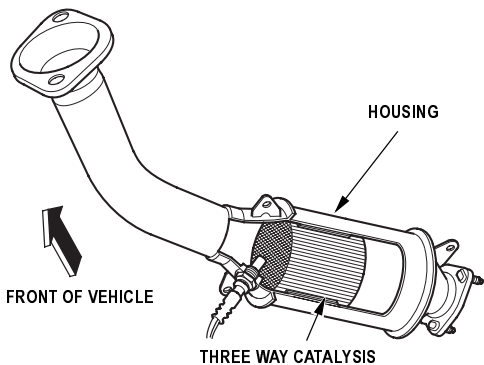
#### Three Way Catalytic Converter (TWC)

The TWC converts hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO), and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) in the exhaust gas to carbon dioxide (CO2), dinitrogen (N2), and water vapor.

KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ, models:

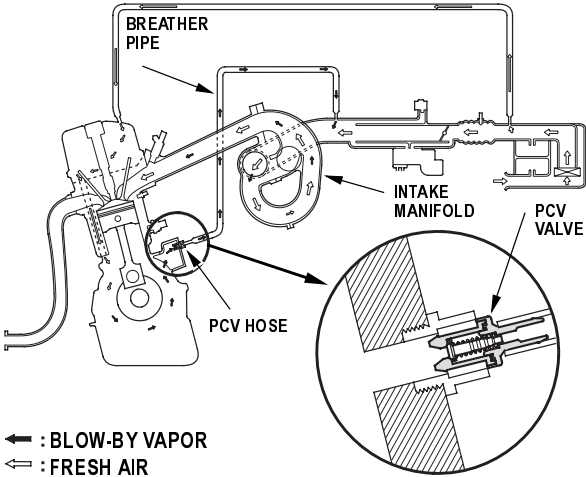


KN, KM, KY, MA, PH, IN, KK models:



### Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) System

The PCV valve prevents blow-by gasses from escaping into the atmosphere by venting them into the intake manifold.



### Evaporative Emission (EVAP) Control System

Refer to the System Diagram to see the functional layout of the system.

#### EVAP Canister

The EVAP canister temporarily stores fuel vapor from the fuel tank until it can be purged back into the engine and burned (refer to the System Diagram to see the functional layout of the system).

#### EVAP Canister Purge Valve

When the engine coolant temperature is below 65°C (149°F), the ECM/PCM turns off the EVAP canister purge valve which cuts vacuum to the EVAP canister.

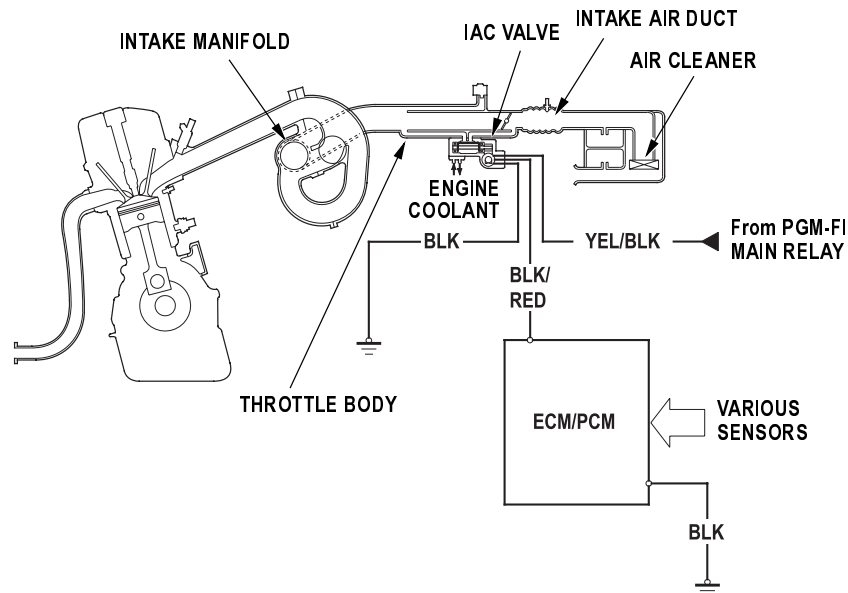




## Idle Control System Diagram

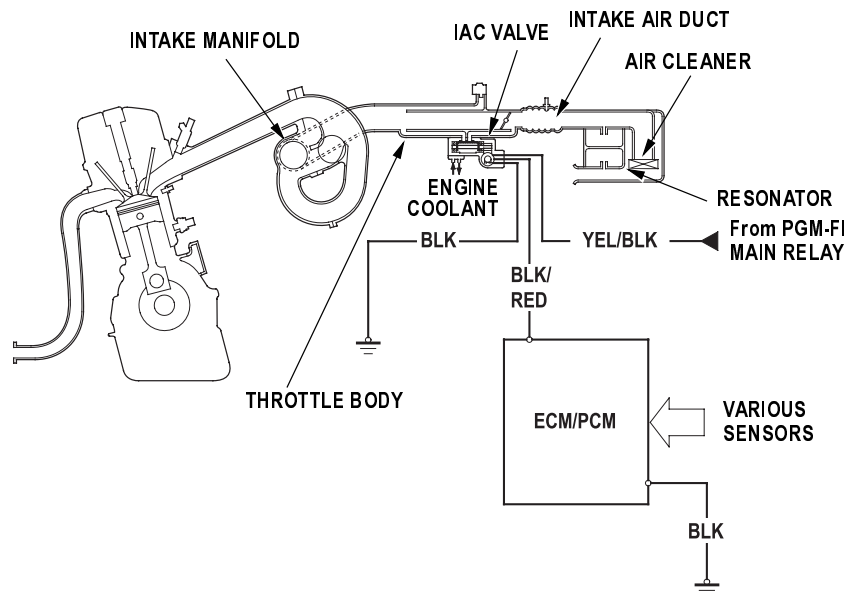
The idle speed of the engine is controlled by the Idle Air Control (IAC) valve:

- After the engine starts, the IAC valve opens for a certain amount of time. The amount of air is increased to raise the idle speed.
- When the engine coolant temperature is low, the IAC valve is opened to obtain the proper fast idle speed. The amount of bypassed air is thus controlled in relation to engine coolant temperature.



## Intake Air System Diagram

This system supplies air for engine needs. A resonator in the intake air pipe provides additional silencing as air is drawn into the system.

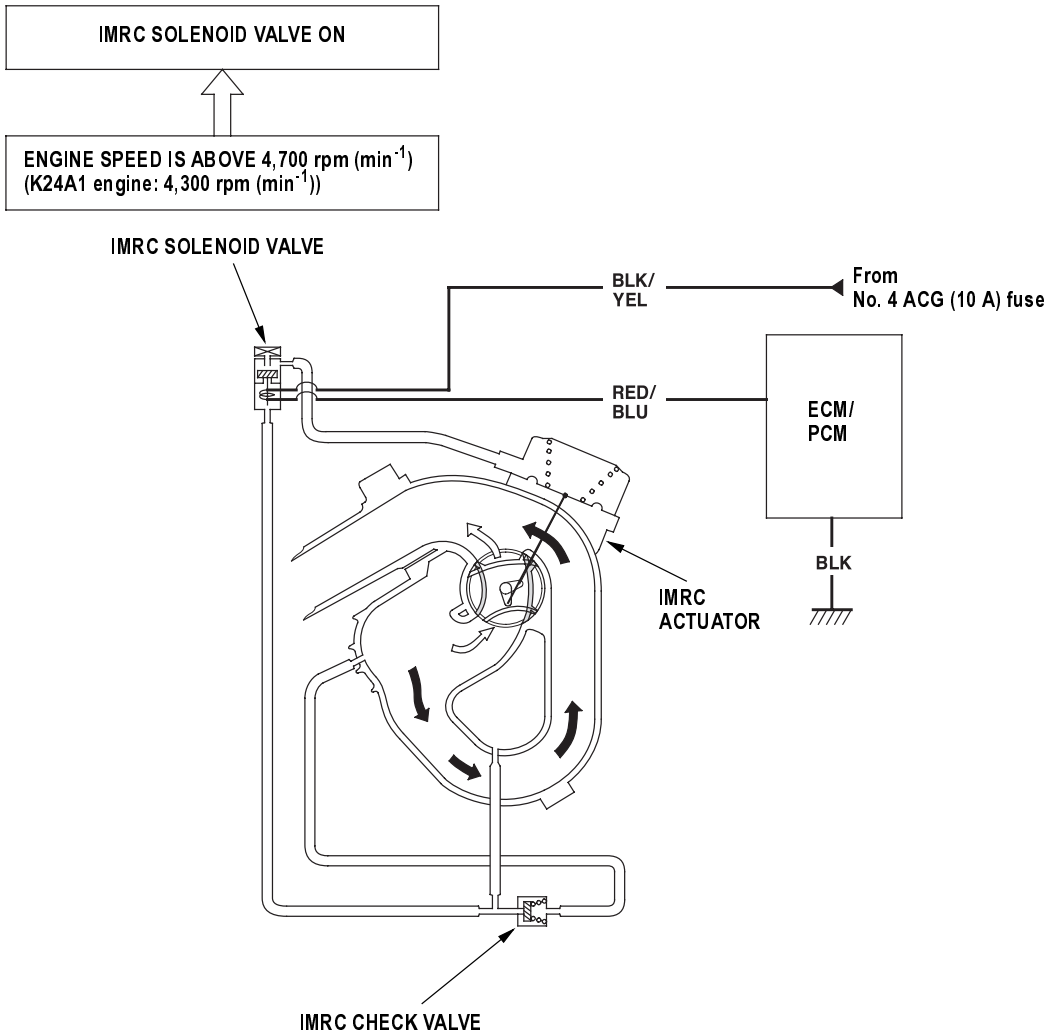


(cont'd)

System Descriptions (cont'd)

Intake Manifold Runner Control (IMRC) System

Satisfactory power performance is achieved by closing and opening the Intake Manifold Runner Control (IMRC) valve. High torque at low engine speed is achieved when the valve is closed, whereas high power at high engine is achieved when the valve is opened.

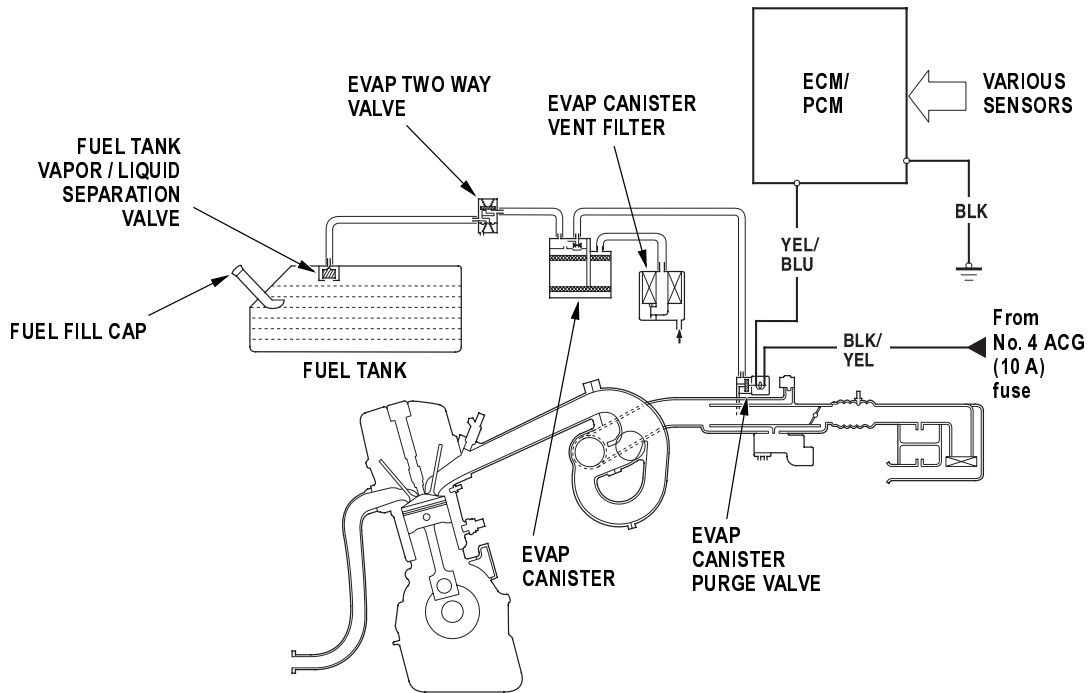




### Evaporative Emission (EVAP) Control Diagram

The EVAP controls minimize the amount of fuel vapor escaping to the atmosphere. Vapor from the fuel tank is temporarily stored in the EVAP canister until it can be purged from the EVAP canister into the engine and burned.

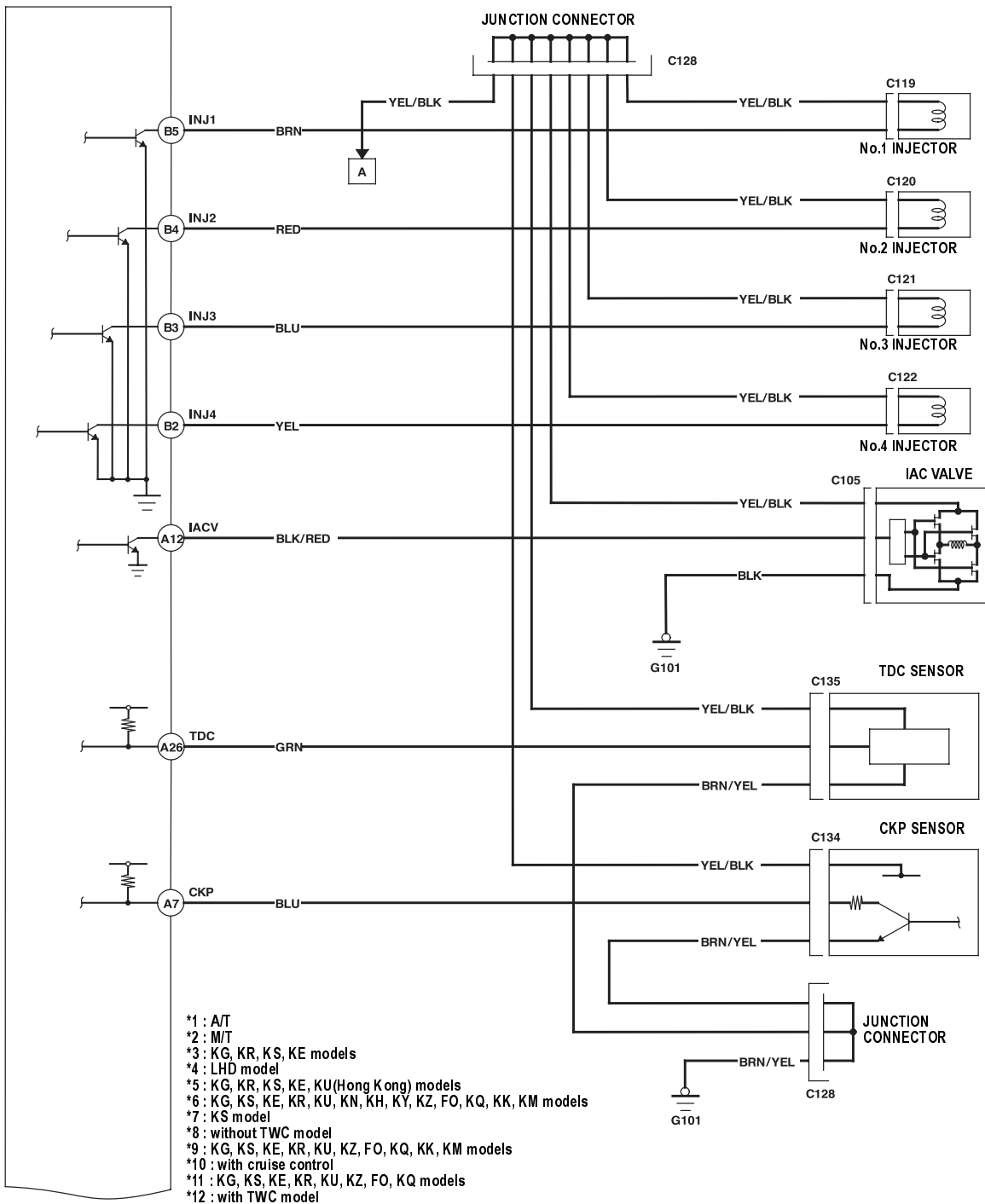
- The EVAP canister is purged by drawing fresh air through it and into a port on the intake manifold.
- The purging vacuum is controlled by the EVAP canister purge valve, which is open whenever engine coolant temperature is above 65°C (149°F).
- When vapor pressure in the fuel tank is higher than the set value of the EVAP two way valve, the valve opens and regulates the flow of fuel vapor to the EVAP canister.

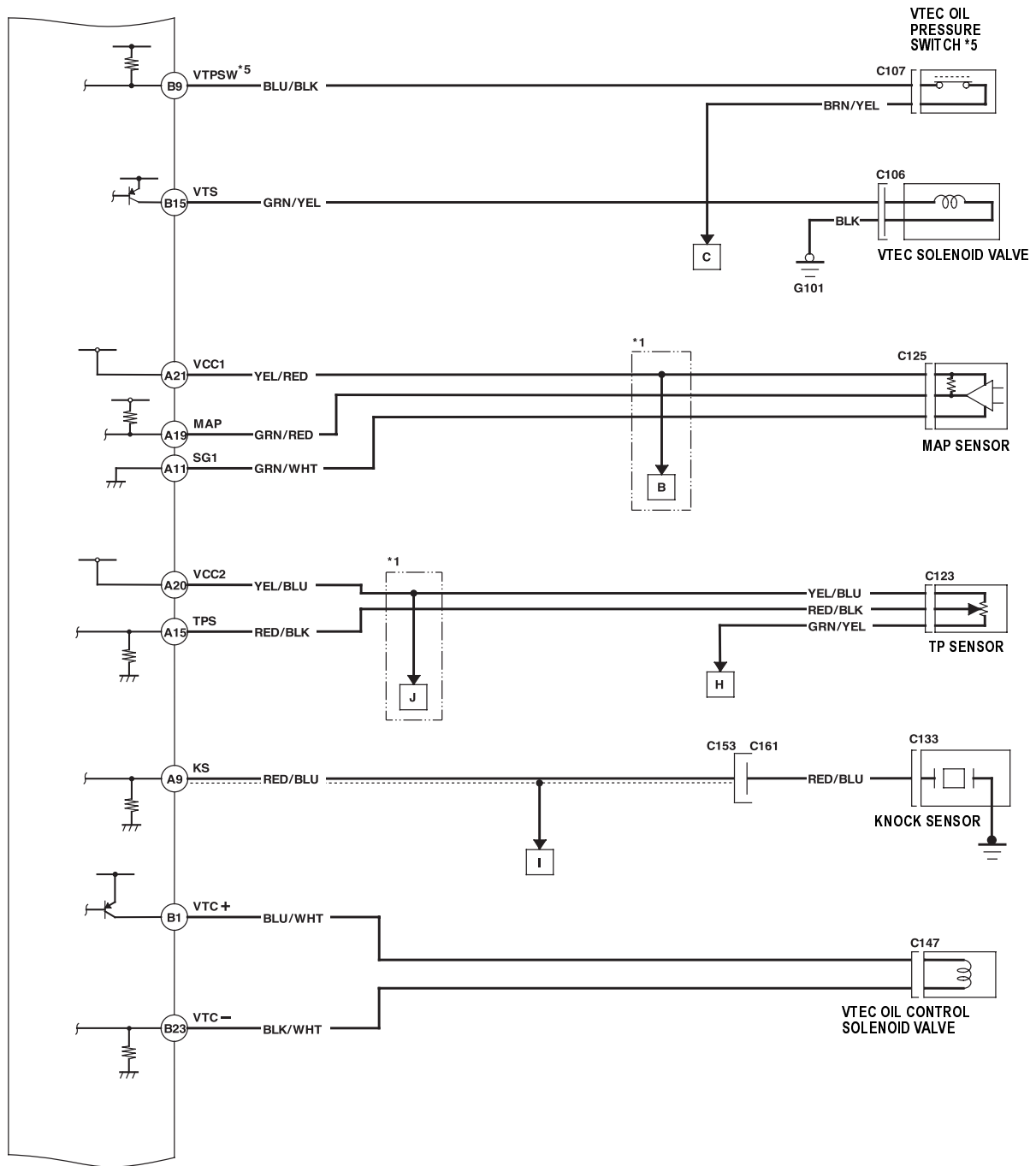


(cont'd)

## System Descriptions (cont'd)

### ECM/PCM Circuit Diagram

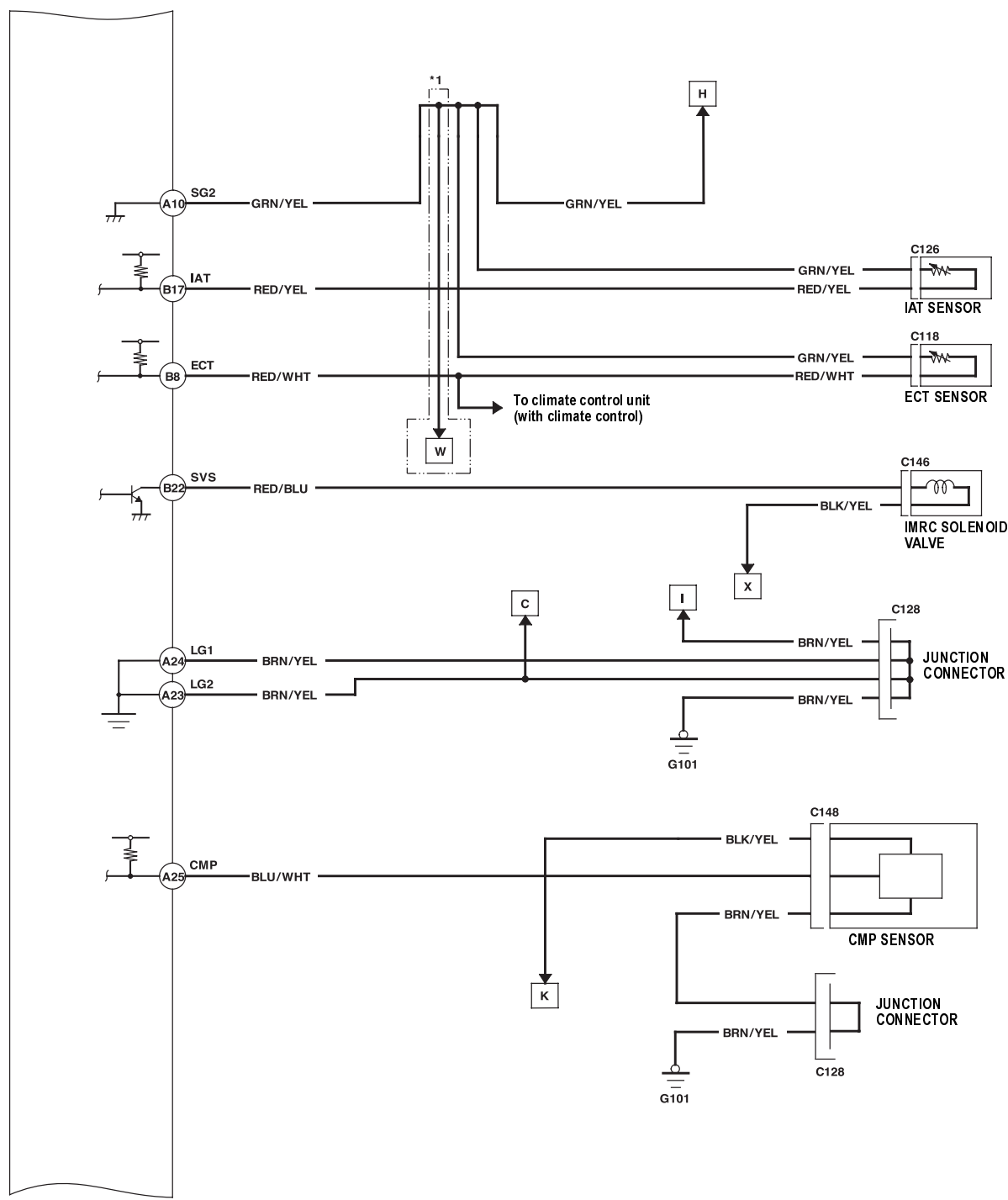


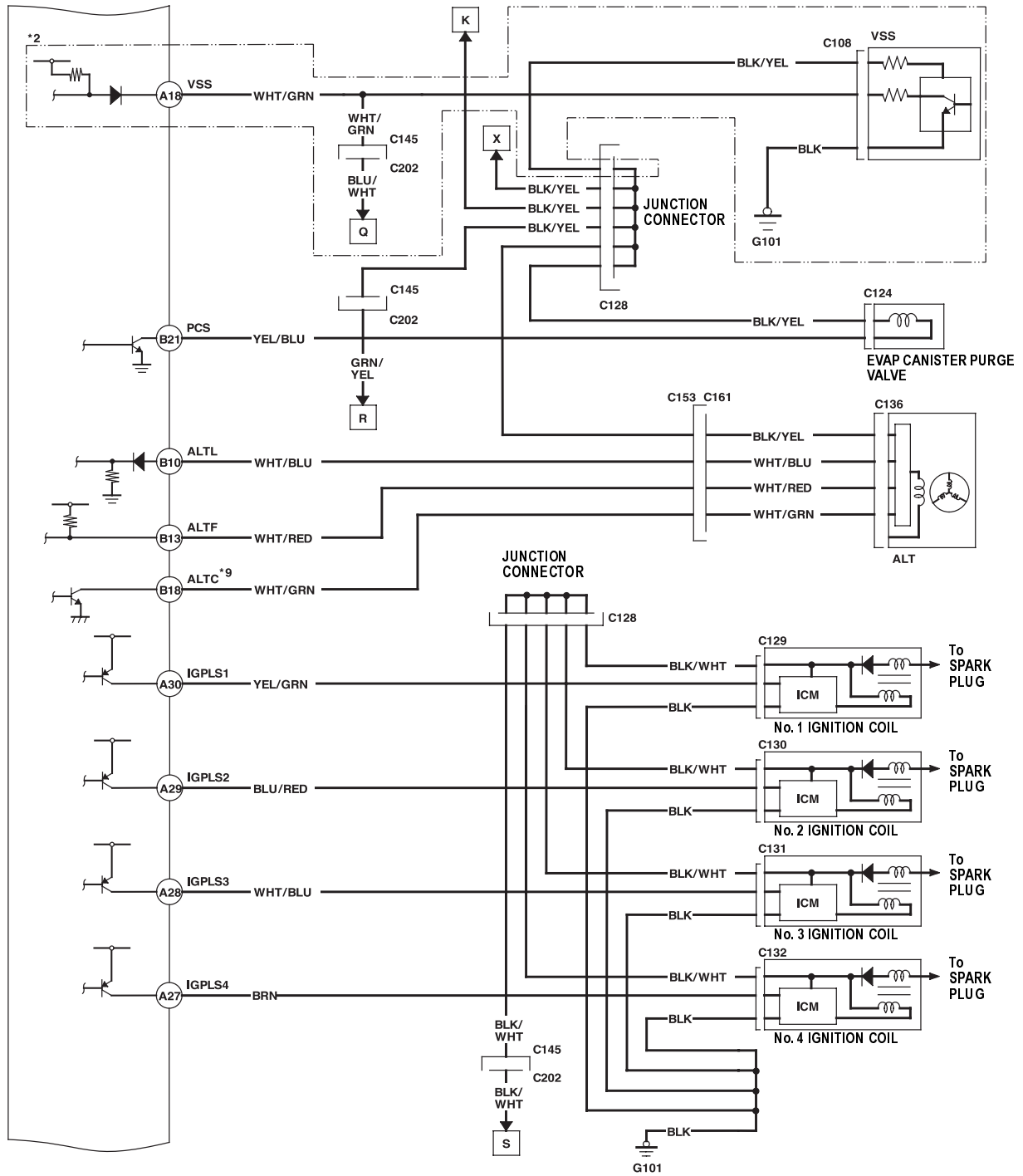


(cont'd)

System Descriptions (cont'd)

ECM/PCM Circuit Diagram (cont'd)

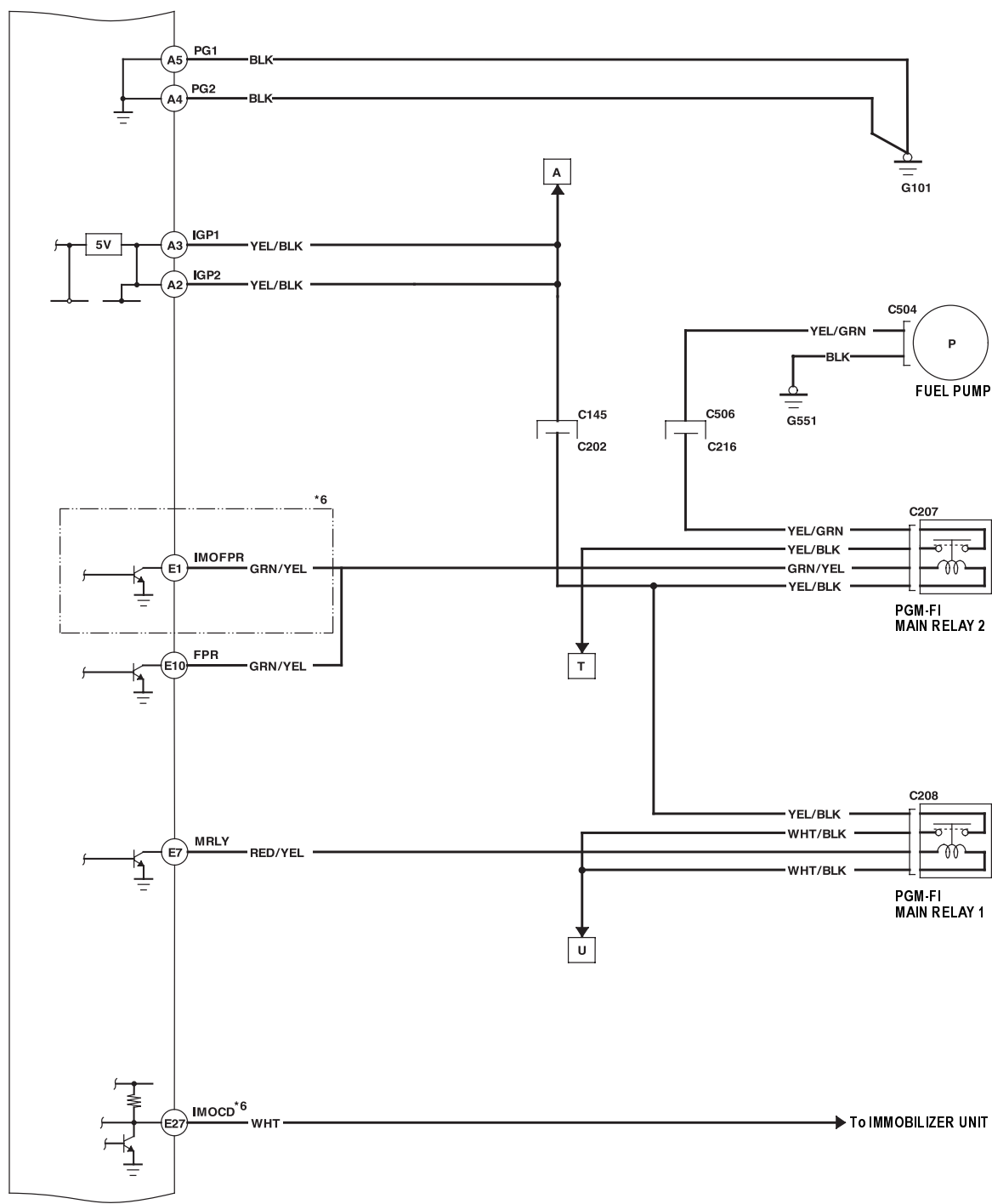




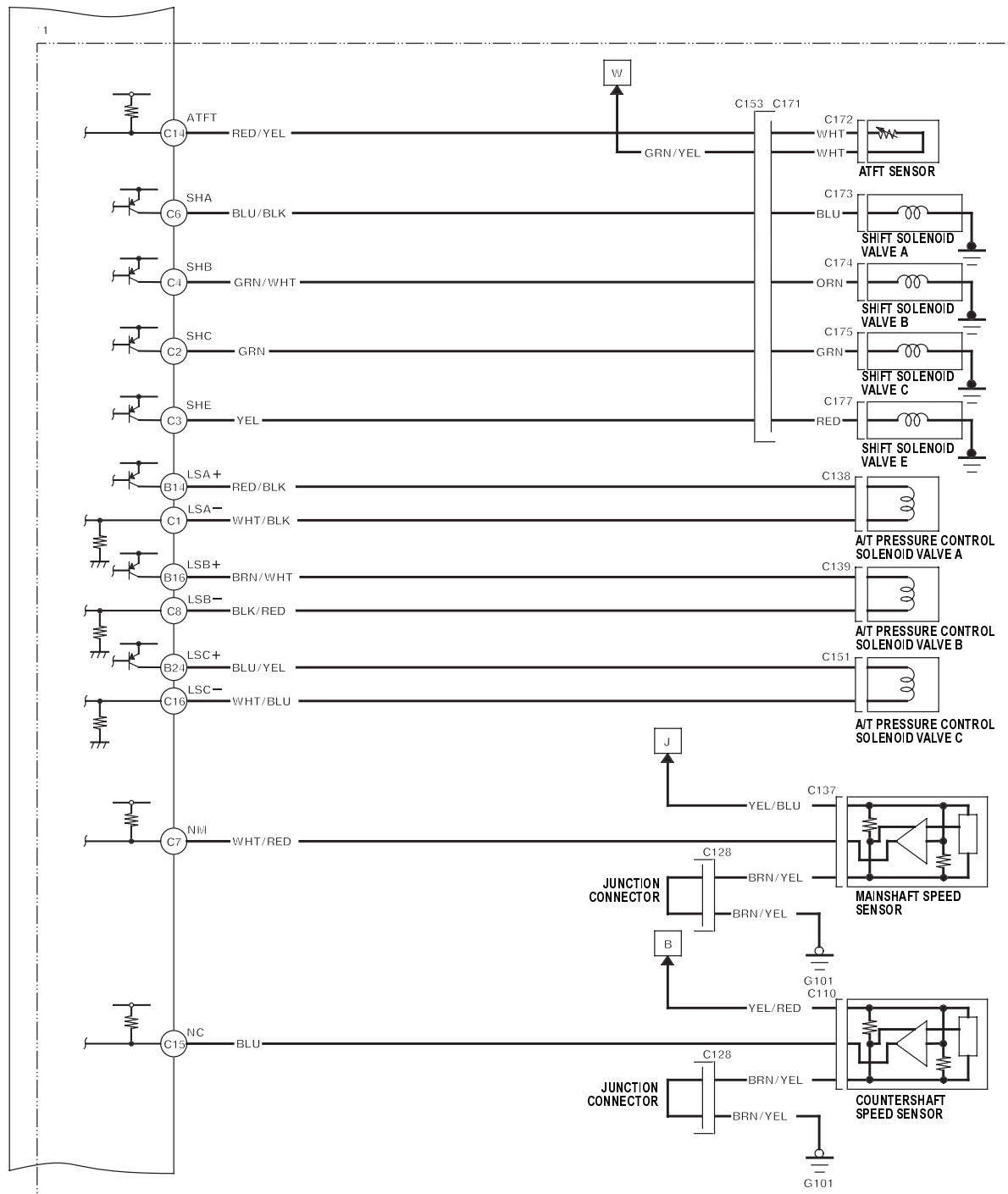
(cont'd)

System Descriptions (cont'd)

ECM/PCM Circuit Diagram (cont'd)



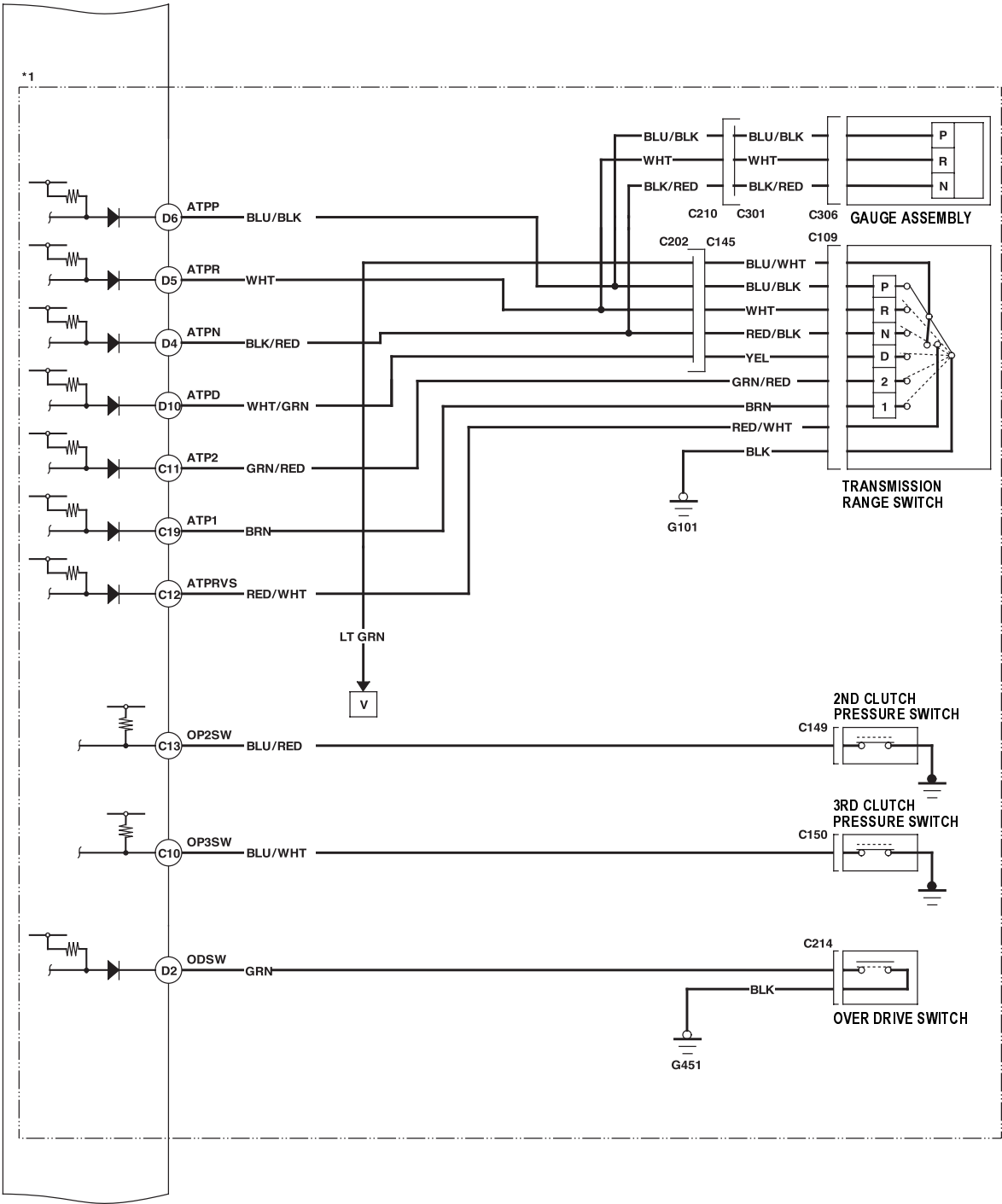


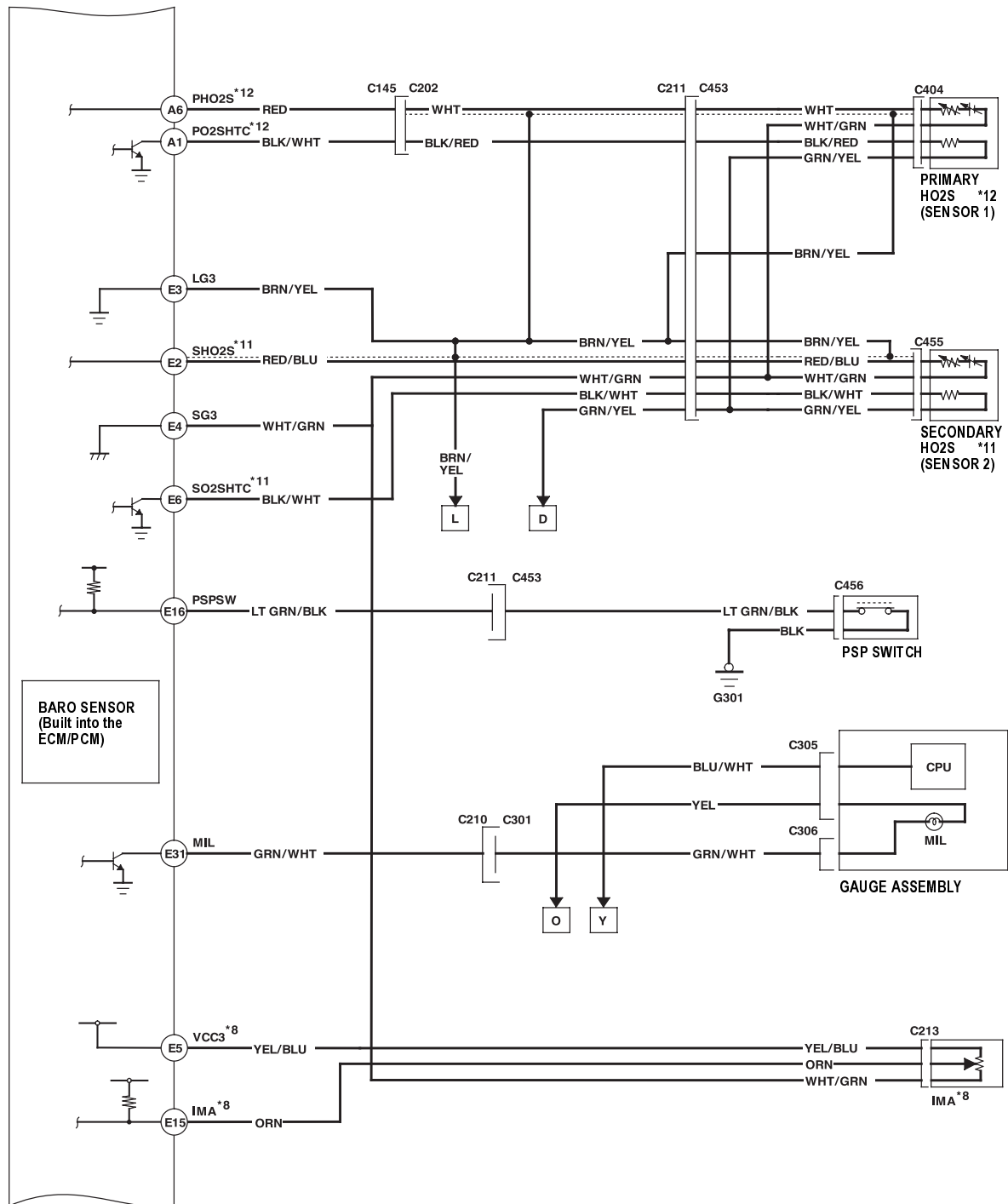


(cont'd)

System Descriptions (cont'd)

ECM/PCM Circuit Diagram (cont'd)

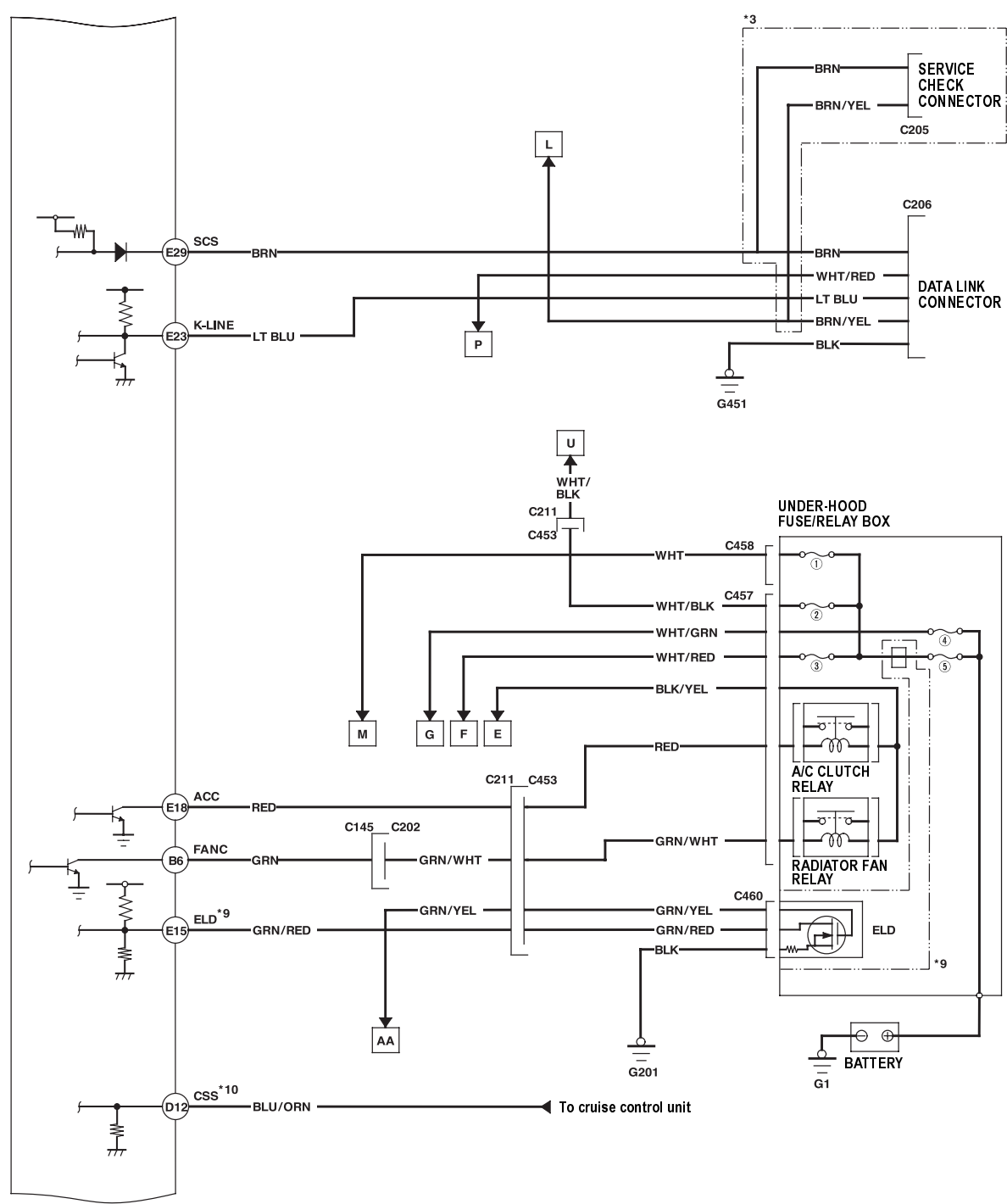


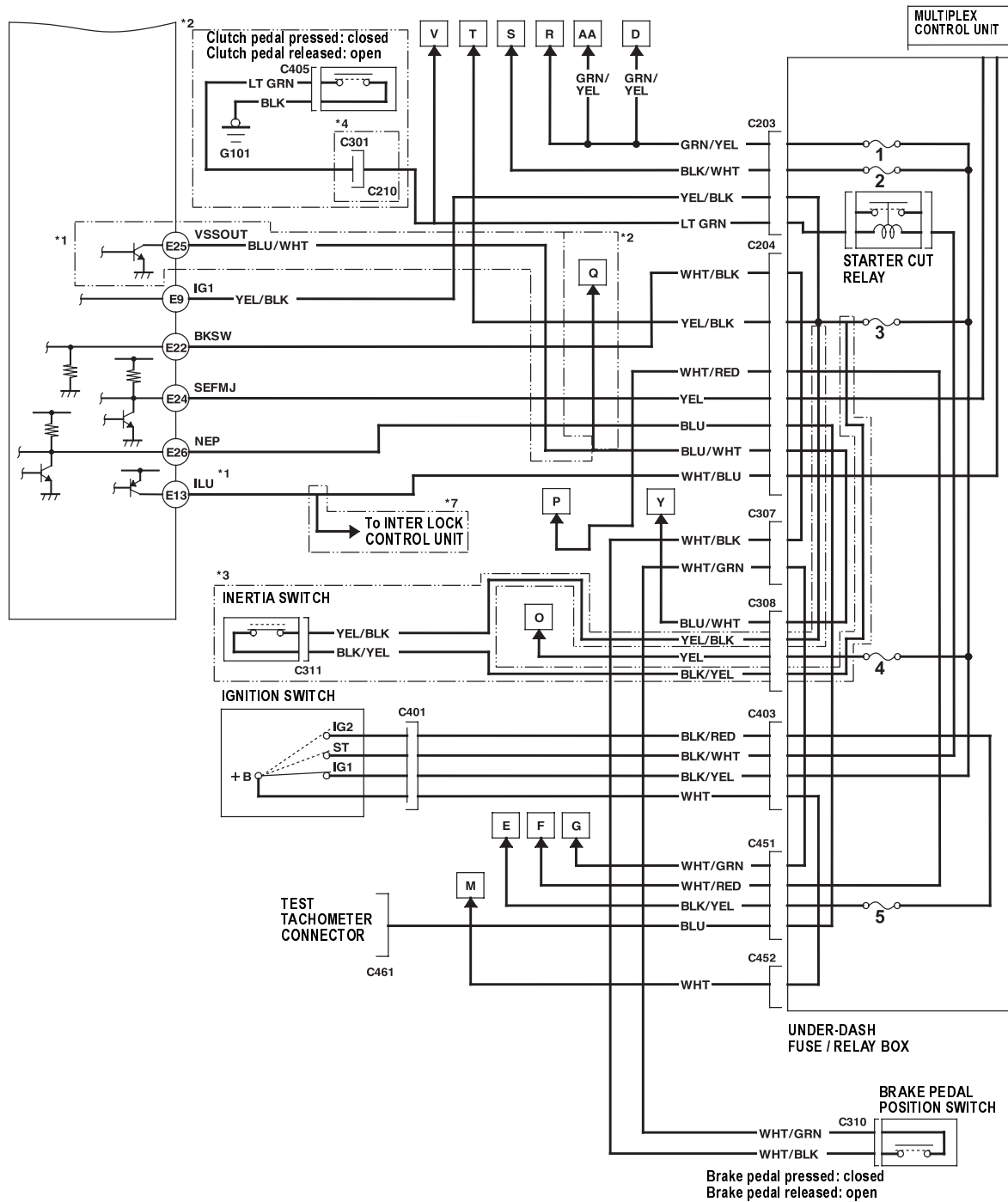


(cont'd)

System Descriptions (cont'd)

ECM/PCM Circuit Diagram (cont'd)





**UNDER-HOOD  
FUSE/RELAY BOX:**

- 1 No. 20 IG (50A)
- 2 No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A)
- 3 No. 9 BACK UP (10A)
- 4 No. 7 HORN, STOP (15A)
- 5 No. 19 BATTERY (100A)

**UNDER-DASH  
FUSE/RELAY BOX:**

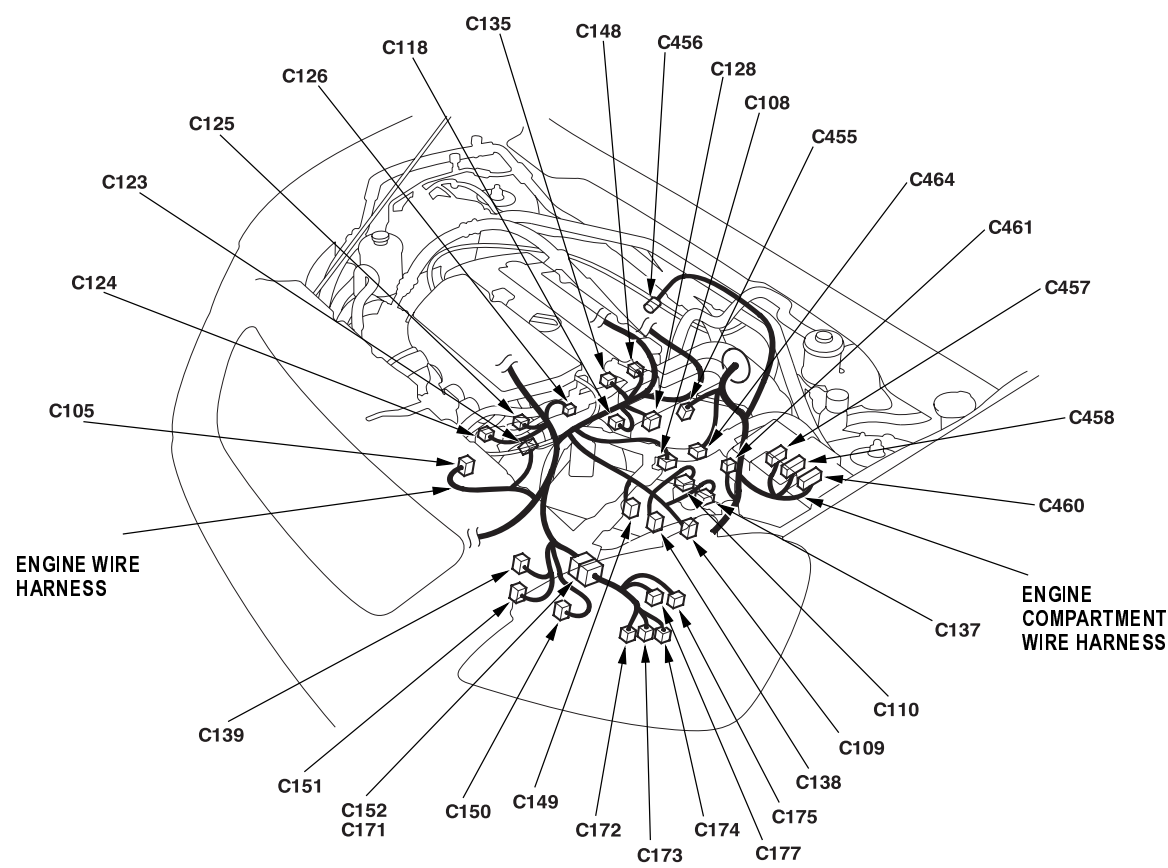
- 1 No. 4 ACG (10A)
- 2 No. 1 IGN COIL (15A)
- 3 No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A)
- 4 No. 10 METER (7.5A)
- 5 No. 14 A/C CLUTCH RELAY (10A)

(cont'd)

System Descriptions (cont'd)

ECM/PCM Circuit Diagram (cont'd)

LHD model:





①

BLK

②

YEL/BLK

③

BLK/RED

①

BLK

②

BLK/YEL

③

WHT/GRN

①

BLU/WHT

2

③

BLK

④

BRN

⑤

GRN/RED

⑥

RED/WHT

⑦

YEL

⑧

RED/BLK

⑨

WHT

⑩

BLU/BLK

①

YEL/RED

②

BLU

③

BRN/YEL

①

RED/WHT

②

GRN/YEL

①

YEL/BLU

②

RED/BLK

③

GRN/YEL

①

BLK/YEL

②

YEL/BLU

①

YEL/RED

②

GRN/RED

③

GRN/WHT

①

GRN/YEL

②

RED/YEL

①

BRN/YEL

②

BRN/YEL

③

BRN/YEL

④

BRN/YEL

⑤

BRN/YEL

⑥

BRN/YEL

⑦

BRN/YEL\*

⑧

BLK/YEL

⑨

BLK/YEL

⑩

BLK/YEL

⑪

BLK/YEL

⑫

BLK/YEL

⑬

BLK/YEL

⑭

BLK/YEL

⑮

BLK/YEL

⑯

BLK/YEL

⑰

BLK/YEL

⑱

BLK/YEL

⑲

BLK/YEL

⑳

BLK/YEL

㉑

BLK/WHT

㉒

YEL/BLK

㉓

YEL/BLK

㉔

YEL/BLK

㉕

YEL/BLK

㉖

YEL/BLK

㉗

YEL/BLK

㉘

YEL/BLK

㉙

YEL/BLK

㉚

YEL/BLK

㉛

YEL/BLK

㉜

YEL/BLK

㉝

YEL/BLK

㉞

YEL/BLK

㉟

YEL/BLK

㊱

YEL/BLK

㊲

YEL/BLK

㊳

YEL/BLK

㊴

YEL/BLK

㊵

YEL/BLK

㊶

YEL/BLK

㊷

YEL/BLK

㊸

YEL/BLK

㊹

YEL/BLK

㊺

YEL/BLK

㊻

YEL/BLK

㊼

YEL/BLK

㊽

YEL/BLK

㊾

YEL/BLK

㊿

YEL/BLK

㏀

YEL/BLK

㏁

YEL/BLK

㏂

YEL/BLK

㏃

YEL/BLK

㏄

YEL/BLK

㏅

YEL/BLK

㏆

YEL/BLK

㏇

YEL/BLK

㏈

YEL/BLK

㏉

YEL/BLK

㏊

YEL/BLK

㏋

YEL/BLK

㏌

YEL/BLK

㏍

YEL/BLK

㏎

YEL/BLK

㏏

YEL/BLK

㏐

YEL/BLK

㏑

YEL/BLK

㏒

YEL/BLK

㏓

YEL/BLK

㏔

YEL/BLK

㏕

YEL/BLK

㏖

YEL/BLK

㏗

YEL/BLK

㏘

YEL/BLK

㏙

YEL/BLK

㏚

YEL/BLK

㏛

YEL/BLK

㏜

YEL/BLK

㏝

YEL/BLK

㏞

YEL/BLK

㏟

YEL/BLK

㏠

YEL/BLK

㏡

YEL/BLK

㏢

YEL/BLK

㏣

YEL/BLK

㏤

YEL/BLK

㏥

YEL/BLK

㏦

YEL/BLK

㏧

YEL/BLK

㏨

YEL/BLK

㏩

YEL/BLK

㏪

YEL/BLK

㏫

YEL/BLK

㏬

YEL/BLK

㏭

YEL/BLK

㏮

YEL/BLK

㏯

YEL/BLK

㏰

YEL/BLK

㏱

YEL/BLK

㏲

YEL/BLK

㏳

YEL/BLK

㏴

YEL/BLK

㏵

YEL/BLK

㏶

YEL/BLK

㏷

YEL/BLK

㏸

YEL/BLK

㏹

YEL/BLK

㏺

YEL/BLK

㏻

YEL/BLK

㏼

YEL/BLK

㏽

YEL/BLK

㏾

YEL/BLK

㏿

YEL/BLK

㐀

YEL/BLK

㐁

YEL/BLK

㐂

YEL/BLK

㐃

YEL/BLK

㐄

YEL/BLK

㐅

YEL/BLK

㐆

YEL/BLK

㐇

YEL/BLK

㐈

YEL/BLK

㐉

YEL/BLK

㐊

YEL/BLK

㐋

YEL/BLK

㐌

YEL/BLK

㐍

YEL/BLK

㐎

YEL/BLK

㐏

YEL/BLK

㐐

YEL/BLK

㐑

YEL/BLK

㐒

YEL/BLK

㐓

YEL/BLK

㐔

YEL/BLK

㐕

YEL/BLK

㐖

YEL/BLK

㐗

YEL/BLK

㐘

YEL/BLK

㐙

YEL/BLK

㐚

YEL/BLK

㐛

YEL/BLK

㐜

YEL/BLK

㐝

YEL/BLK

㐞

YEL/BLK

㐟

YEL/BLK

㐠

YEL/BLK

㐡

YEL/BLK

㐢

YEL/BLK

㐣

YEL/BLK

㐤

YEL/BLK

㐥

YEL/BLK

㐦

YEL/BLK

㐧

YEL/BLK

㐨

YEL/BLK

㐩

YEL/BLK

㐪

YEL/BLK

㐫

YEL/BLK

㐬

YEL/BLK

㐭

YEL/BLK

㐮

YEL/BLK

㐯

YEL/BLK

㐰

YEL/BLK

㐱

YEL/BLK

㐲

YEL/BLK

㐳

YEL/BLK

㐴

YEL/BLK

㐵

YEL/BLK

㐶

YEL/BLK

㐷

YEL/BLK

㐸

YEL/BLK

㐹

YEL/BLK

㐺

YEL/BLK

㐻

YEL/BLK

㐼

YEL/BLK

㐽

YEL/BLK

㐾

YEL/BLK

㐿

YEL/BLK

㑀

YEL/BLK

㑁

YEL/BLK

㑂

YEL/BLK

㑃

YEL/BLK

㑄

YEL/BLK

㑅

YEL/BLK

㑆

YEL/BLK

㑇

YEL/BLK

㑈

YEL/BLK

㑉

YEL/BLK

㑊

YEL/BLK

㑋

YEL/BLK

㑌

YEL/BLK

㑍

YEL/BLK

㑎

YEL/BLK

㑏

YEL/BLK

㑐

YEL/BLK

㑑

YEL/BLK

㑒

YEL/BLK

㑓

YEL/BLK

㑔

YEL/BLK

㑕

YEL/BLK

㑖

YEL/BLK

㑗

YEL/BLK

㑘

YEL/BLK

㑙

YEL/BLK

㑚

YEL/BLK

㑛

YEL/BLK

㑜

YEL/BLK

㑝

YEL/BLK

㑞

YEL/BLK

㑟

YEL/BLK

㑠

YEL/BLK

㑡

YEL/BLK

㑢

YEL/BLK

㑣

YEL/BLK

㑤

YEL/BLK

㑥

YEL/BLK

㑦

YEL/BLK

㑧

YEL/BLK

㑨

YEL/BLK

㑩

YEL/BLK

㑪

YEL/BLK

㑫

YEL/BLK

㑬

YEL/BLK

㑭

YEL/BLK

㑮

YEL/BLK

㑯

YEL/BLK

㑰

YEL/BLK

㑱

YEL/BLK

㑲

YEL/BLK

㑳

YEL/BLK

㑴

YEL/BLK

㑵

YEL/BLK

㑶

YEL/BLK

㑷

YEL/BLK

㑸

YEL/BLK

㑹

YEL/BLK

㑺

YEL/BLK

㑻

YEL/BLK

㑼

YEL/BLK

㑽

YEL/BLK

㑾

YEL/BLK

㑿

YEL/BLK

㒀

YEL/BLK

㒁

YEL/BLK

㒂

YEL/BLK

㒃

YEL/BLK

㒄

YEL/BLK

㒅

YEL/BLK

㒆

YEL/BLK

㒇

YEL/BLK

㒈

YEL/BLK

㒉

YEL/BLK

㒊

YEL/BLK

㒋

YEL/BLK

㒌

YEL/BLK

㒍

YEL/BLK

㒎

YEL/BLK

㒏

YEL/BLK

㒐

YEL/BLK

㒑

YEL/BLK

㒒

YEL/BLK

㒓

YEL/BLK

㒔

YEL/BLK

㒕

YEL/BLK

㒖

YEL/BLK

㒗

YEL/BLK

㒘

YEL/BLK

㒙

YEL/BLK

㒚

YEL/BLK

㒛

YEL/BLK

㒜

YEL/BLK

㒝

YEL/BLK

㒞

YEL/BLK

㒟

YEL/BLK

㒠

YEL/BLK

㒡

YEL/BLK

㒢

YEL/BLK

㒣

YEL/BLK

㒤

YEL/BLK

㒥

YEL/BLK

㒦

YEL/BLK

㒧

YEL/BLK

㒨

YEL/BLK

㒩

YEL/BLK

㒪

YEL/BLK

㒫

YEL/BLK

㒬

YEL/BLK

㒭

YEL/BLK

㒮

YEL/BLK

㒯

YEL/BLK

㒰

YEL/BLK

㒱

YEL/BLK

㒲

YEL/BLK

㒳

YEL/BLK

㒴

YEL/BLK

㒵

YEL/BLK

㒶

YEL/BLK

㒷

YEL/BLK

㒸

YEL/BLK

㒹

YEL/BLK

㒺

YEL/BLK

㒻

YEL/BLK

㒼

YEL/BLK

㒽

YEL/BLK

㒾

YEL/BLK

㒿

YEL/BLK

㓀

YEL/BLK

㓁

YEL/BLK

㓂

YEL/BLK

㓃

YEL/BLK

㓄

YEL/BLK

㓅

YEL/BLK

㓆

YEL/BLK

㓇

YEL/BLK

㓈

YEL/BLK

㓉

YEL/BLK

㓊

YEL/BLK

㓋

YEL/BLK

㓌

YEL/BLK

㓍

YEL/BLK

㓎

YEL/BLK

㓏

YEL/BLK

㓐

YEL/BLK

㓑

YEL/BLK

㓒

YEL/BLK

㓓

YEL/BLK

㓔

YEL/BLK

㓕

YEL/BLK

㓖

YEL/BLK

㓗

YEL/BLK

㓘

YEL/BLK

㓙

YEL/BLK

㓚

YEL/BLK

㓛

YEL/BLK

㓜

YEL/BLK

㓝

YEL/BLK

㓞

YEL/BLK

㓟

YEL/BLK

㓠

YEL/BLK

㓡

YEL/BLK

㓢

YEL/BLK

㓣

YEL/BLK

㓤

YEL/BLK

㓥

YEL/BLK

㓦

YEL/BLK

㓧

YEL/BLK

㓨

YEL/BLK

㓩

YEL/BLK

㓪

YEL/BLK

㓫

YEL/BLK

㓬

YEL/BLK

㓭

YEL/BLK

㓮

YEL/BLK

㓯

YEL/BLK

㓰

YEL/BLK

㓱

YEL/BLK

㓲

YEL/BLK

㓳

YEL/BLK

㓴

YEL/BLK

㓵

YEL/BLK

㓶

YEL/BLK

㓷

YEL/BLK

㓸

YEL/BLK

㓹

YEL/BLK

㓺

YEL/BLK

㓻

YEL/BLK

㓼

YEL/BLK

㓽

YEL/BLK

㓾

YEL/BLK

㓿

YEL/BLK

㔀

YEL/BLK

㔁

YEL/BLK

㔂

YEL/BLK

㔃

YEL/BLK

㔄

YEL/BLK

㔅

YEL/BLK

㔆

YEL/BLK

㔇

YEL/BLK

㔈

YEL/BLK

㔉

YEL/BLK

㔊

YEL/BLK

㔋

YEL/BLK

㔌

YEL/BLK

㔍

YEL/BLK

㔎

YEL/BLK

㔏

YEL/BLK

㔐

YEL/BLK

㔑

YEL/BLK

㔒

YEL/BLK

㔓

YEL/BLK

㔔

YEL/BLK

㔕

YEL/BLK

㔖

YEL/BLK

㔗

YEL/BLK

㔘

YEL/BLK

㔙

YEL/BLK

㔚

YEL/BLK

㔛

YEL/BLK

㔜

YEL/BLK

㔝

YEL/BLK

㔞

YEL/BLK

㔟

YEL/BLK

㔠

YEL/BLK

㔡

YEL/BLK

㔢

YEL/BLK

㔣

YEL/BLK

㔤

YEL/BLK

㔥

YEL/BLK

㔦

YEL/BLK

㔧

YEL/BLK

㔨

YEL/BLK

㔩

YEL/BLK

㔪

YEL/BLK

㔫

YEL/BLK

㔬

YEL/BLK

㔭

YEL/BLK

㔮

YEL/BLK

㔯

YEL/BLK

㔰

YEL/BLK

㔱

YEL/BLK

㔲

YEL/BLK

㔳

YEL/BLK

㔴

YEL/BLK

㔵

YEL/BLK

㔶

YEL/BLK

㔷

YEL/BLK

㔸

YEL/BLK

㔹

YEL/BLK

㔺

YEL/BLK

㔻

YEL/BLK

㔼

YEL/BLK

㔽

YEL/BLK

㔾

YEL/BLK

㔿

YEL/BLK

㕀

YEL/BLK

㕁

YEL/BLK

㕂

YEL/BLK

㕃

YEL/BLK

㕄

YEL/BLK

㕅

YEL/BLK

㕆

YEL/BLK

㕇

YEL/BLK

㕈

YEL/BLK

㕉

YEL/BLK

㕊

YEL/BLK

㕋

YEL/BLK

㕌

YEL/BLK

㕍

YEL/BLK

㕎

YEL/BLK

㕏

YEL/BLK

㕐

YEL/BLK

㕑

YEL/BLK

㕒

YEL/BLK

㕓

YEL/BLK

㕔

YEL/BLK

㕕

YEL/BLK

㕖

YEL/BLK

㕗

YEL/BLK

㕘

YEL/BLK

㕙

YEL/BLK

㕚

YEL/BLK

㕛

YEL/BLK

㕜

YEL/BLK

㕝

YEL/BLK

㕞

YEL/BLK

㕟

YEL/BLK

㕠

YEL/BLK

㕡

YEL/BLK

㕢

YEL/BLK

㕣

YEL/BLK

㕤

YEL/BLK

㕥

YEL/BLK

㕦

YEL/BLK

㕧

YEL/BLK

㕨

YEL/BLK

㕩

YEL/BLK

㕪

YEL/BLK

㕫

YEL/BLK

㕬

YEL/BLK

㕭

YEL/BLK

㕮

YEL/BLK

㕯

YEL/BLK

㕰

YEL/BLK

㕱

YEL/BLK

㕲

YEL/BLK

㕳

YEL/BLK

㕴

YEL/BLK

㕵

YEL/BLK

㕶

YEL/BLK

㕷

YEL/BLK

㕸

YEL/BLK

㕹

YEL/BLK

㕺

YEL/BLK

㕻

YEL/BLK

㕼

YEL/BLK

㕽

YEL/BLK

㕾

YEL/BLK

㕿

YEL/BLK

㖀

YEL/BLK

㖁

YEL/BLK

㖂

YEL/BLK

㖃

YEL/BLK

㖄

YEL/BLK

㖅

YEL/BLK

㖆

YEL/BLK

㖇

YEL/BLK

㖈

YEL/BLK

㖉

YEL/BLK

㖊

YEL/BLK

</

Note:

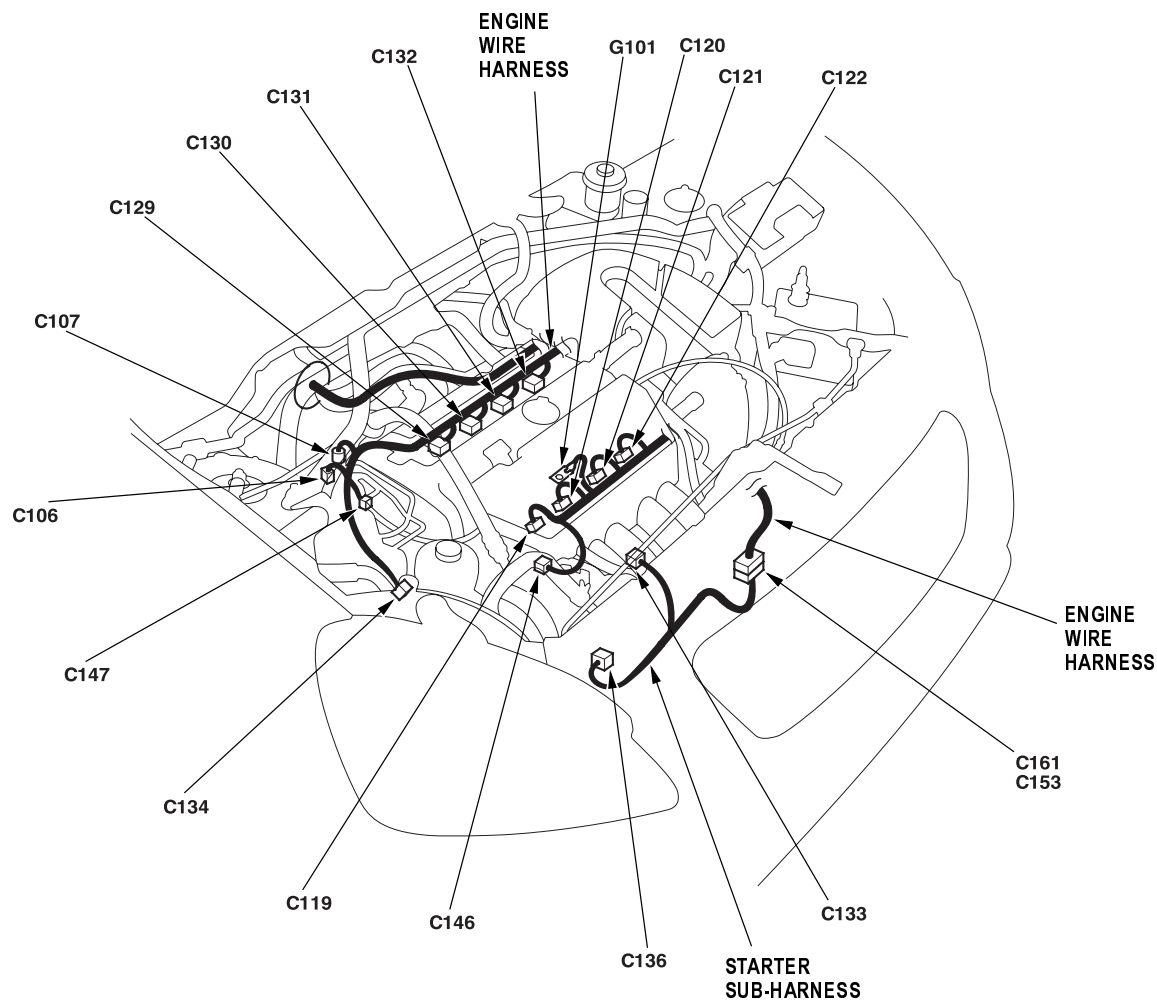
- Connector with male terminals (double outline): View from terminal side
- Connector with female terminals (single outline): View from wire side
- ○ : Related to ECM/PCM control

(cont'd)

System Descriptions (cont'd)

ECM/PCM Circuit Diagram (cont'd)

LHD model:







**C106**



①	BLK
②	GRN/YEL

**C107**



①	BLU/BLK
②	BRN/YEL

**C119**



①	YEL/BLK
②	BRN

**C120**



①	YEL/BLK
②	RED

**C121**



①	YEL/BLK
②	BLU

**C122**



①	YEL/BLK
②	YEL

**C129**



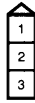
①	YEL/GRN
②	BLK
③	BLK/WHT

**C130**



①	BLU/RED
②	BLK
③	BLK/WHT

**C131**



①	WHT/BLU
②	BLK
③	BLK/WHT

**C132**



①	BRN
②	BLK
③	BLK/WHT

**C133**



①	RED/BLU
---	---------

**C134**



①	BLU
②	BRN/YEL
③	YEL/BLK

**C136**



①	BLK/YEL
②	WHT/GRN
③	WHT/BLU
④	WHT/RED

**C146**



①	BLK/YEL
②	RED/BLU

**C147**



①	BLK/WHT
②	BLU/WHT

**C153**



①	WHT/RED
②	WHT/GRN
③	RED/YEL
④	---
⑤	RED/BLU
⑥	WHT/BLU

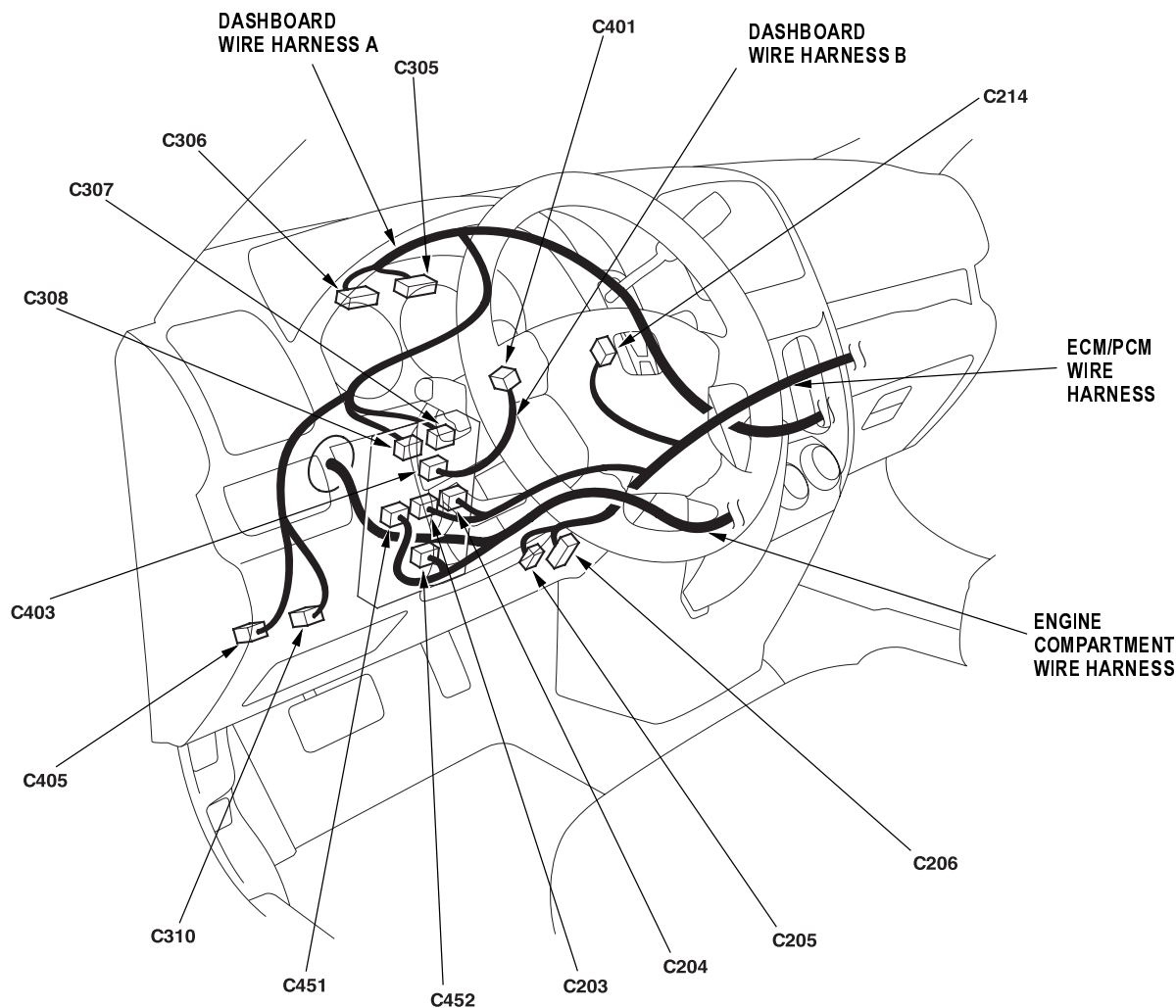
Note: · Connector with male terminals (double outline): View from terminal side  
 · Connector with female terminals (single outline): View from wire side  
 · ○ : Related to ECM/PCM control

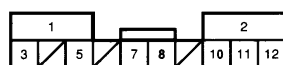
(cont'd)

System Descriptions (cont'd)

ECM/PCM Circuit Diagram (cont'd)

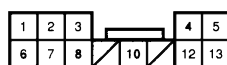
LHD model:




**C203**


1	BLK/WHT	7	LT GRN
2	GRN/WHT	8	GRN/BLK
3	GRN/YEL	9	
4		10	BLU/BLK *1
5	BLK/WHT	11	YEL
6		12	YEL/BLK

\*1: A/T

**C204**


1	GRY	8	WHT *2
2	YEL/RED *1	9	
3	WHT/BLK	10	YEL
4	BLU/WHT	11	
5	BLU	12	WHT/RED
6	YEL/BLK	13	WHT/BLU *1
7	BRN		

\*1: A/T

\*2: KG, KS, KR, KH, KY, FO, KK, KM models

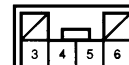
**C205**  
(KG, KR, KB, KS models)


1	BRN
2	BRN/YEL

**C206 \***


1		9	BRN *1
2		10	
3		11	
4	BLK	12	
5	BRN/YEL	13	
6		14	GRY
7	LT BLU	15	
8		16	WHT/RED

\*1: except KG, KR, KS models

**C214 (A/T)**


1	
2	
3	YEL/BLK
4	YEL/RED
5	BLK
6	GRN

**C305**


1	GRY/RED	9	WHT *2	16	
2	YEL/BLK	10		17	
3	BLK	11	RED/WHT *2	18	YEL
4	BLU/WHT	12	BLU/YEL	19	WHT/RED
5	BLU	13	BLU/YEL	20	PNK/BLU
6		14		21	WHT/BLU *3
7	PNK *1	15		22	WHT/BLK *3
8					

\*1: with outside air temperature sensor

\*2: with rear fog light

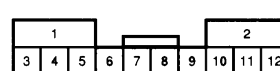
\*3: KK, KM, KP models

**C306**


1	RED/YEL	9	YEL/RED	17	
2	BLU/BLK *1	10	WHT/RED	18	
3	BLK/RED *1	11	GRN/RED	19	
4	WHT *1	12	GRN/YEL	20	GRN/WHT
5	LT GRN/BLK *1	13	BLU/RED	21	BLK/YEL
6	RED	14	RED/BLU	22	BLU/ORN *2
7	RED/BLK	15	BLK		
8		16	PNK		

\*1: A/T

\*2: KG, KS, KR, KH, KY, FO, KK, KM models

**C307**


1	RED/YEL *1	7	GRN/RED
2	GRN	8	RED/BLK
3	GRN/YEL *2	9	BLU/YEL *2
4	WHT/BLU	10	RED
5	WHT/BLK	11	BLU/WHT *2
6	YEL/GRN	12	WHT/GRN

\*1: with headlight washer

\*2: with cruise control

**C308**


1	BLU	10	GRY/RED
2	BLU/ORN	11	RED/BLK *2
3	WHT/RED	12	YEL/BLK *3
4	WHT/RED	13	WHT/RED
5	BLU/YEL *1	14	BLK/YEL *3
6	YEL	15	RED/WHT *4
7	YEL	16	
8	BLU/WHT	17	RED *5
9	BLU/WHT		

\*1: with cruise control

\*2: KG with NAVI

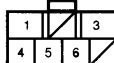
\*3: KG, KR, KS models

\*4: with rear fog light

\*5: with seat heater

**C310**


1	WHT/GRN
2	WHT/BLK
3	
4	

**C401**


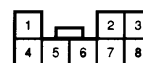
1	BLK/WHT
2	
3	WHT
4	BLK/RED
5	WHT/RED
6	BLK/YEL
7	

**C403**


1	WHT
2	WHT/RED
3	BLK/WHT
4	BLK/RED
5	BLK/YEL

**C405 (M/T)**


1	LT GRN
2	BLK

**C451**


1	BLK/YEL
2	WHT/RED
3	WHT/GRN
4	BLK
5	BLU
6	ORN
7	WHT
8	WHT/BLU

**C452**


1	WHT
2	WHT/RED
3	WHT/BLK

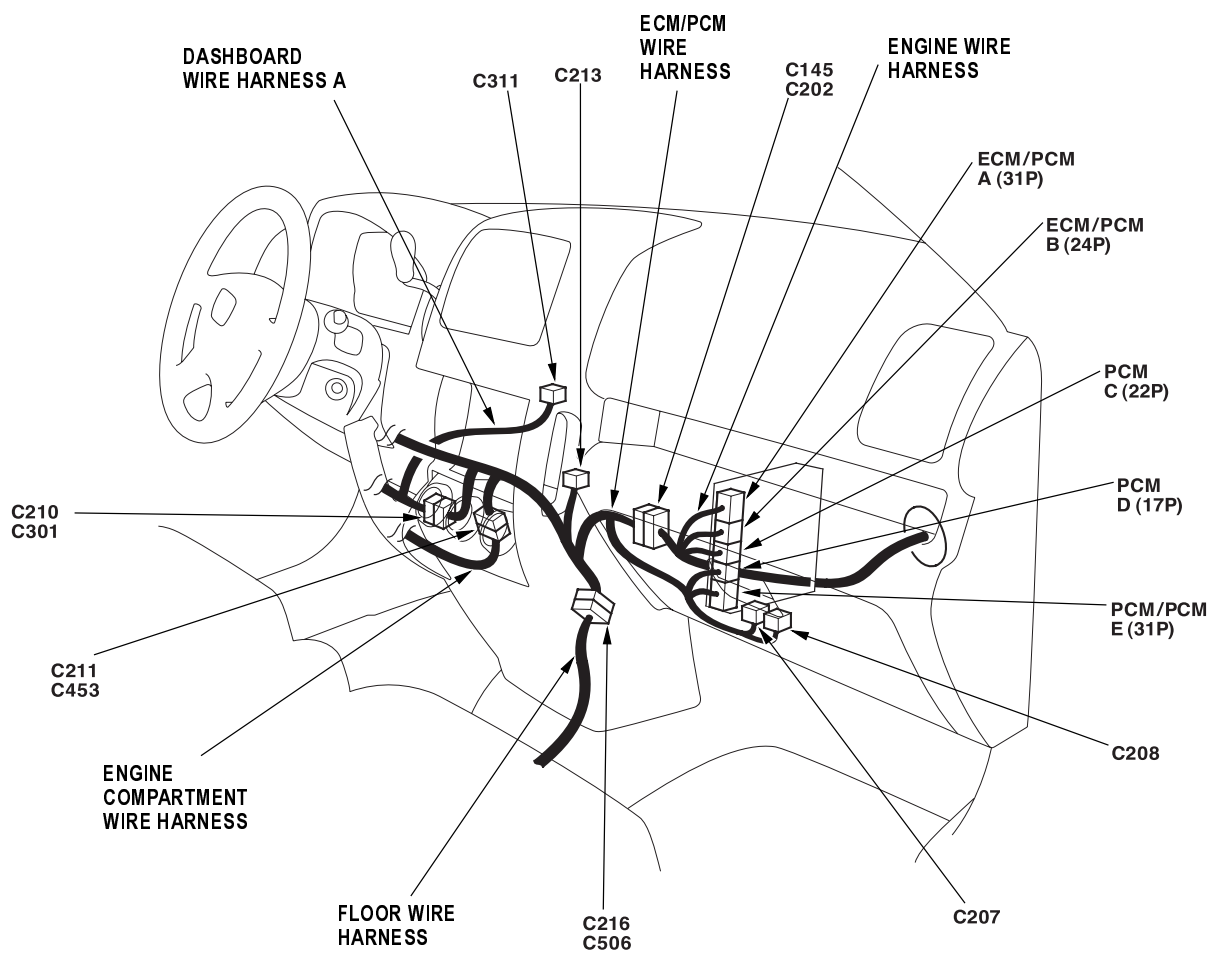
Note:   
 • Connector with male terminals (double outline): View from terminal side  
 • Connector with female terminals (single outline): View from wire side  
 • ○ : Related to ECM/PCM control  
 • \* : Terminal side of female terminals

(cont'd)

System Descriptions (cont'd)

ECM/PCM Circuit Diagram (cont'd)

LHD model:





**C145**

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20

① BLU/BLK *1	④ GRN/RED *1	⑩ BLK/WHT	16 BLK/WHT
1 GRN/WHT *2	⑤ BRN *1	⑪ WHT *1	17 RED/WHT *3
② RED/BLK *1	6	⑫ YEL *1	18 YEL/RED
2 YEL *2	⑦ GRN	13	⑬ WHT
③ BLU/WHT *1	8	⑭ YEL/BLK	⑮ BLK/WHT
⑥ WHT/GRN *2	⑨ BLK/YEL	15	

\*1: A/T  
\*2: M/T  
\*3: with climate control

**C207**

① YEL/BLK	① YEL/BLK
② YEL/GRN	② WHT/BLK
③ GRN/YEL	③ RED/YEL
④ YEL/BLK	④ WHT/BLK

**C208**

① YEL/BLK	① YEL/BLK
② YEL/GRN	② WHT/BLK
③ GRN/YEL	③ RED/YEL
④ YEL/BLK	④ WHT/BLK

**C213**  
(without TWC model)

① YEL/BLU
② ORN
③ WHT/GRN

**C301**

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20

1	8	RED/YEL *3	15	YEL/RED
2	9		⑩ GRN/WHT	
3	10		⑪ BLU/BLK *4	
4	WHT/GRN *1	11	18	LT GRN/BLK *4
5	BLU/ORN *1	12	19	LT GRN *4
6	BRN/YEL *2	⑬ BLK/RED *4	20	RED/WHT *5
7	YEL/BLK *2	⑭ WHT *4	21	

\*1: with cruise control  
\*2: KG, KS, KR, KH, KY, FO, KK, KM models  
\*3: KH, PH models  
\*4: A/T  
\*5: with climate control

**C311**  
(KG, KR, KS models)

① BLK/YEL
②
③ YEL/BLK

**C453**

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20

1	⑧ GRN/RED *4	⑬ WHT/GRN *5
② WHT *1	9	⑭ GRN/YEL *5
③ BRN/YEL *1	10	⑮ RED/BLU *5
4	BLK/YEL *2	⑯ BRN/YEL *5
5	YEL *3	⑰ BLK/WHT *5
⑥ LT GRN/BLK	⑱ RED	20
⑦ GRN/YEL *4	⑲ GRN/WHT	

\*1: with TWC model  
\*2: with seat heater  
\*3: with ABS  
\*4: KG, KS, KR, FO, KK, KM models  
\*5: KG, KS, KR, FO models

**C506**

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20

1	GRN/YEL	6	YEL/BLK
②	YEL/GRN	7	YEL
3	GRY *1	8	YEL/BLU
4	BLK/YEL	9	YEL/RED
5	GRN/RED	10	RED/BLK *1

\*1: with seat heater

**ECM/PCM A (31P)**

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
31									

① BLK/WHT	⑨ RED/BLU	17	⑳ BLU/WHT
② YEL/BLK	⑩ GRN/YEL	⑮ WHT/GRN *1	㉑ GRN
③ YEL/BLK	⑪ GRN/WHT	⑯ GRN/RED	㉒ BRN
④ BLK	⑫ BLK/RED	⑰ YEL/BLU	㉓ WHT/BLU
⑤ BLK	13	⑱ YEL/RED	㉔ BLU/RED
⑥ RED	14	22	㉕ YEL/GRN
⑦ BLU	⑮ RED/BLK	㉖ BRN/YEL	31
8	16	㉗ BRN/YEL	

\*1: M/T

**ECM/PCM B (24P)**

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24						

① BLU/WHT *2	⑨ BLU/BLK	⑰ RED/YEL
② YEL	⑩ WHT/BLU	⑱ WHT/GRN
③ BLU	11	19
④ RED	12	20
⑤ BRN	⑬ WHT/RED	⑲ YEL/BLU
⑥ GRN	⑭ RED/BLK *1	㉑ RED/BLU
7	⑮ GRN/YEL	㉒ BLK/WHT
⑧ RED/WHT	⑯ BRN/WHT *1	㉓ BLU/YEL *1

\*1: A/T  
\*2: KG model

**PCM C (22P) (A/T)**

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22								

① WHT/BLK	⑫ RED/WHT
② GRN	⑬ BLU/RED
③ YEL	⑭ RED/YEL
④ GRN/WHT	⑮ BLU
5	⑯ WHT/BLU
⑥ BLU/BLK	17
⑦ WHT/RED	18
⑧ BLK/RED	⑱ BRN
9	20
⑩ BLU/WHT	21
⑪ GRN/RED	22

**PCM D (17P) (A/T)**

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22								

1	⑩ WHT/GRN
② GRN	11
3	⑫ BLU/ORN
④ BLK/RED	⑬ BLU/WHT
⑤ WHT	⑭ BLU/YEL
⑥ BLU/BLK	15
7	16
8	17
9	

**ECM/PCM E (31P)**

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
31									

① GRN/YEL *1	⑨ YEL/BLK	⑰ LT GRN/BLK	㉑ YEL
② RED/BLU *2	⑩ GRN/YEL *4	17	㉒ BLU/WHT *5
③ BRN/YEL	11	⑱ RED	㉓ BLU
④ WHT/GRN	12	19	㉔ WHT *1
⑤ YEL/BLU *3	⑬ WHT/BLU *5	20	28
⑥ BLK/WHT *2	14	21	㉕ BRN
⑦ RED/YEL	⑮ GRN/RED *6	㉖ WHT/BLK	30
8	⑯ ORN *3	㉗ LT BLU	㉘ GRN/WHT

\*1: KG, KS, KR, KH, KY, FO, KK, KM models  
\*2: KG, KS, KR, FO models  
\*3: without TWC model  
\*4: except KG, KS, KR, KH, KY FO, KK, KM models  
\*5: A/T  
\*6: KG, KS, KR, FO, KK, KM models

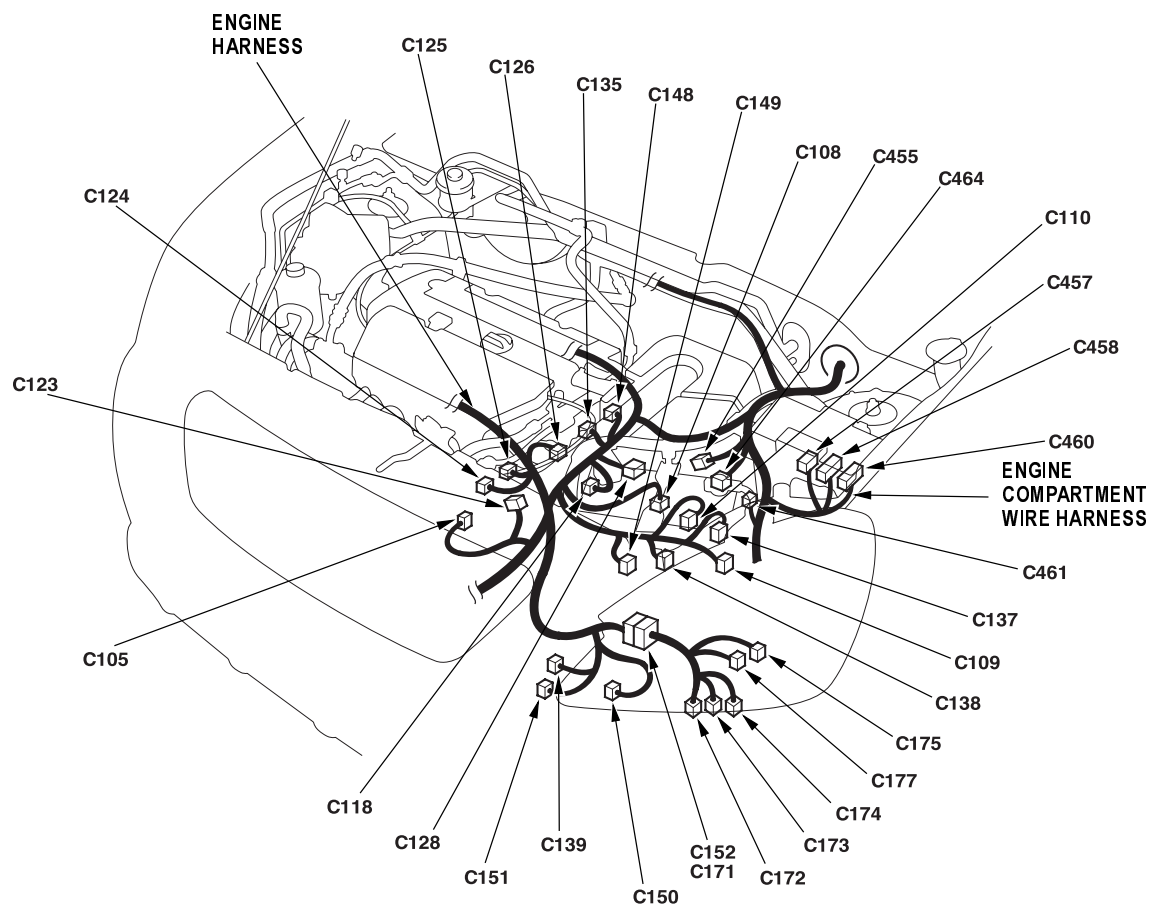
Note: • Connector with male terminals (double outline): View from terminal side  
• Connector with female terminals (single outline): View from wire side  
• ○ : Related to ECM/PCM control

(cont'd)

System Descriptions (cont'd)

ECM/PCM Circuit Diagram (cont'd)

RHD model:





**C105**



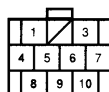
①	BLK
②	YEL/BLK
③	BLK/RED

**C108 (M/T)**



①	BLK
②	BLK/YEL
③	WHT/GRN

**C109 (A/T)**



①	BLU/WHT	⑥	RED/WHT
2	—	7	YEL
③	BLK	⑧	RED/BLK
④	BRN	⑨	WHT
⑤	GRN/RED	⑩	BLU/BLK

**C110 (A/T)**



①	YEL/RED
②	BLU
③	BRN/YEL

**C118**



①	RED/WHT
②	GRN/YEL

**C123**



①	YEL/BLU
②	RED/BLK
③	GRN/YEL

**C124**



①	BLK/YEL
②	YEL/BLU

**C125**



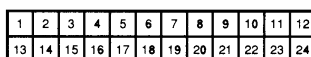
①	YEL/RED
②	GRN/RED
③	GRN/WHT

**C126**



①	GRN/YEL
②	RED/YEL

**C128**



①	BRN/YEL	⑨	BLK/YEL	⑰	BLK/WHT
②	BRN/YEL	⑩	BLK/YEL	⑱	YEL/BLK
③	BRN/YEL	⑪	BLK/YEL	⑲	YEL/BLK
④	BRN/YEL	⑫	BLK/YEL	⑳	YEL/BLK
⑤	BRN/YEL	⑬	BLK/WHT	㉑	YEL/BLK
⑥	BRN/YEL	⑭	BLK/WHT	㉒	YEL/BLK
⑦	BRN/YEL*	⑮	BLK/WHT	㉓	YEL/BLK
⑧	BLK/YEL	⑯	BLK/WHT	㉔	YEL/BLK
⑨	BLK/YEL				

\* : A/T

**C135**



①	GRN
②	BRN/YEL
③	YEL/BLK

**C137 (A/T)**



①	YEL/BLU
②	WHT/RED
③	BRN/YEL

**C138 (A/T)**



①	RED/BLK
②	WHT/BLK

**C139 (A/T)**



①	BRN/WHT
②	BLK/RED

**C148**



①	BLU/WHT
②	BRN/YEL
③	BLK/YEL

**C149 (A/T)**



①	BLU/RED
---	---------

**C150 (A/T)**



①	BLU/WHT
---	---------

**C151 (A/T)**



①	BLU/YEL
②	WHT/BLU

**C152 (A/T)**



①	GRN	⑤	BLU/BLK
②	GRN/WHT	⑥	RED/YEL
③	YEL	⑦	GRN/YEL
④	—	⑧	—

**C172 (A/T)**



①	WHT
②	WHT

**C173 (A/T)**



①	BLU
---	-----

**C174 (A/T)**



①	ORN
---	-----

**C175 (A/T)**



①	GRN
---	-----

**C177 (A/T)**



①	RED
---	-----

**C455**  
(KE, KU, KZ, KQ models)



①	WHT/GRN
②	RED/BLU
③	BLK/WHT
④	GRN/YEL

**C457**



1	ORN	⑧	BLK/YEL
2	BLU/RED	⑨	GRN/WHT
3	BLU/RED	⑩	RED
4	—	⑪	WHT/RED
5	WHT/BLU	12	—
⑥	WHT/BLK	13	BLK
⑦	WHT/GRN	14	WHT

**C458**



①	WHT
2	WHT/RED
3	BLU/WHT
4	—
5	BLK
6	WHT/BLK
7	YEL/BLK

**C460**  
(KE, KU, KZ, KQ models)



①	GRN/YEL
②	BLK
③	GRN/RED

**C461**



1	—
②	BLU

**C464**  
(with TWC model)



①	WHT
②	WHT/GRN
③	GRN/YEL
④	BLK/RED

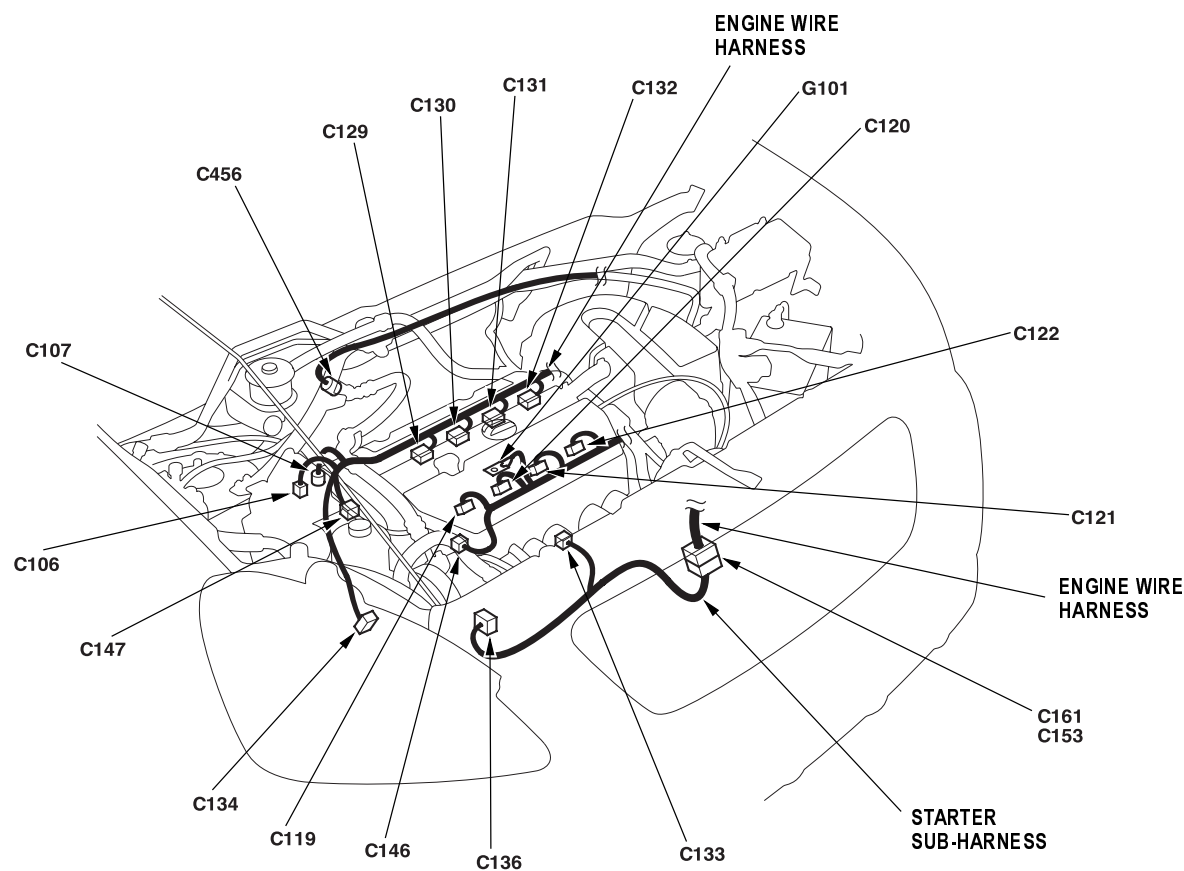
Note: · Connector with male terminals (double outline): View from terminal side  
· Connector with female terminals (single outline): View from wire side  
· ○ : Related to ECM/PCM control

(cont'd)

System Descriptions (cont'd)

ECM/PCM Circuit Diagram (cont'd)

RHD model:







**C106**



①	BLK
②	GRN/YEL

**C107**



①	BLU/BLK
②	BRN/YEL

**C119**



①	YEL/BLK
②	BRN

**C120**



①	YEL/BLK
②	RED

**C121**



①	YEL/BLK
②	BLU

**C122**



①	YEL/BLK
②	YEL

**C129**



①	YEL/GRN
②	BLK
③	BLK/WHT

**C130**



①	BLU/RED
②	BLK
③	BLK/WHT

**C131**



①	WHT/BLU
②	BLK
③	BLK/WHT

**C132**



①	BRN
②	BLK
③	BLK/WHT

**C133**



①	RED/BLU
---	---------

**C134**



①	BLU
②	BRN/YEL
③	YEL/BLK

**C136**



①	BLK/YEL
②	WHT/GRN
③	WHT/BLU
④	WHT/RED

**C146**



①	BLK/YEL
②	RED/BLU

**C147**



①	BLK/WHT
②	BLU/WHT

**C153**



①	WHT/RED
②	WHT/GRN
③	RED/YEL
④	
⑤	RED/BLU
⑥	WHT/BLU

**C456**



①	LT GRN/BLK
②	BLK

**Note:**

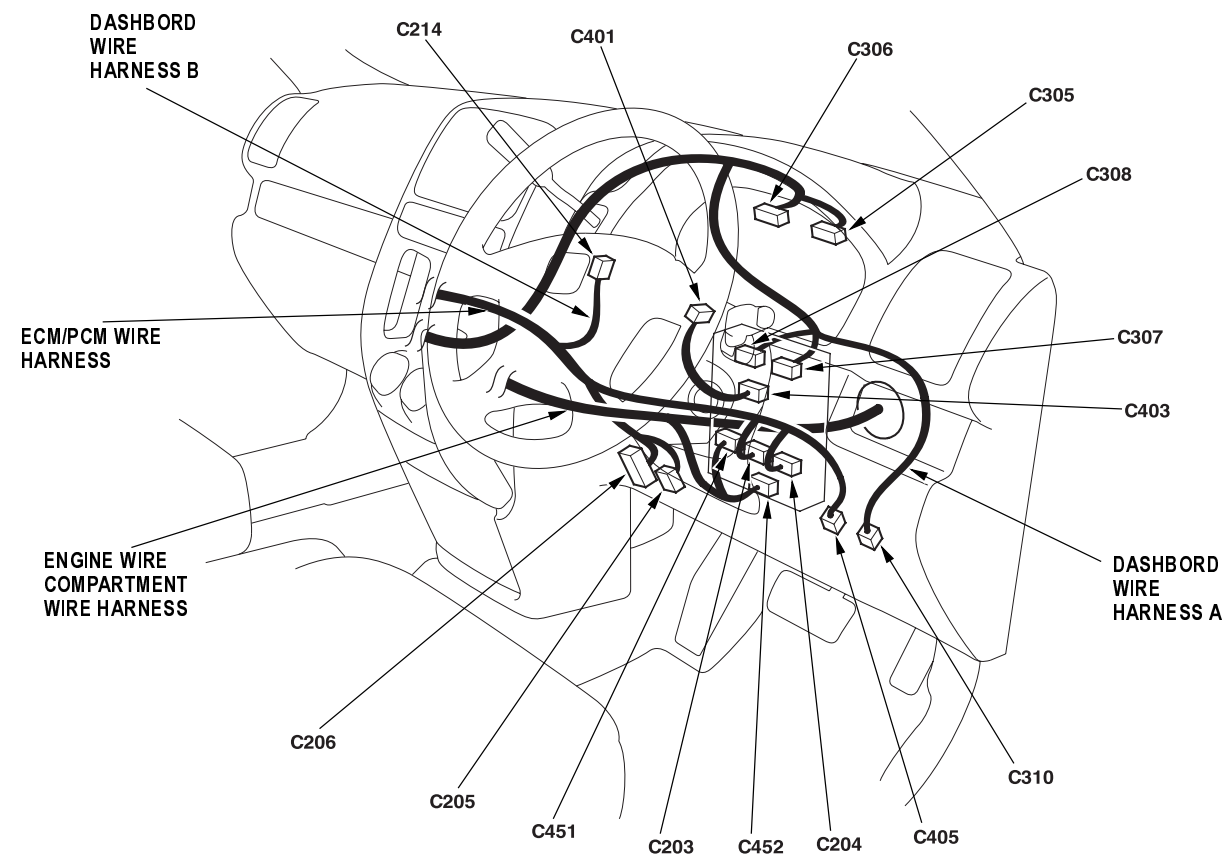
- Connector with male terminals (double outline): View from terminal side
- Connector with female terminals (single outline): View from wire side
- O : Related to ECM/PCM control

(cont'd)

System Descriptions (cont'd)

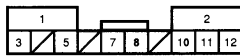
ECM/PCM Circuit Diagram (cont'd)

RHD model:



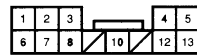


**C203**



1	BLK/WHT	7	LT GRN
2	GRN/WHT	8	GRN/BLK
3	GRN/YEL	9	
4		10	BLU/BLK *1
5	BLK/WHT	11	YEL
6		12	YEL/BLK

**C204**



1	GRY	8	WHT *2
2	YEL/RED *1	9	
3	WHT/BLK	10	YEL
4	BLU/WHT	11	
5	BLU	12	WHT/RED
6	YEL/BLK	13	WHT/BLU *1
7	BRN		

\*1: A/T

\*2: KE, KU, KN, KZ, KQ models

**C205**  
(KE models)



1	BRN
2	BRN/YEL

**C206 \***



1		9	BRN *1
2		10	
3		11	
4	BLK	12	
5	BRN/YEL	13	
6		14	GRY
7	LT BLU	15	
8		16	WHT/RED

\*1: except KE model

**C214 (A/T)**



1	
2	
3	YEL/BLK
4	YEL/RED
5	BLK
6	GRN

**C305**



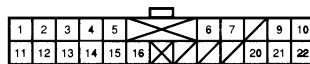
1	GRY/RED	9	WHT *2	16	
2	YEL/BLK	10		17	
3	BLK	11	RED/WHT *2	18	YEL
4	BLU/WHT	12	BLU/YEL	19	WHT/RED
5	BLU	13		20	PNK/BLU
6		14		21	
7	PNK *1	15		22	
8	GRY *3				

\*1: with outside air temperature sensor

\*2: with rear fog light

\*3: with climate control

**C306**

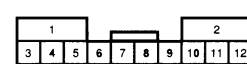


1	RED/YEL	9	YEL/RED	17	
2	BLU/BLK *1	10	WHT/RED	18	
3	BLK/RED *1	11	GRN/RED	19	
4	WHT *1	12	GRN/YEL	20	GRN/WHT
5	LT GRN/BLK *1	13	BLU/RED	21	BLK/YEL
6	RED	14	RED/BLU	22	BLU/ORN *2
7	RED/BLK	15	BLK		
8		16	PNK		

\*1: A/T

\*2: KE, KU, KN, KZ, KQ models

**C307**



1	RED/YEL *1	7	GRN/RED
2	GRN	8	RED/BLK
3	GRN/YEL *2	9	BLU/YEL *2
4	WHT/BLU	10	RED
5	WHT/BLK	11	BLU/WHT *2
6	YEL/GRN	12	WHT/GRN

\*1: with headlight washer

\*2: with cruise control

**C308**



1	BLU	10	GRY/RED
2	BLU/ORN	11	RED/BLK *2
3	WHT/RED	12	YEL/BLK *3
4	WHT/RED	13	WHT/RED
5	BLU/YEL *1	14	BLK/YEL *3
6	YEL	15	RED/WHT *4
7	YEL	16	
8	BLU/WHT	17	RED *5
9	BLU/WHT		

\*1: with cruise control

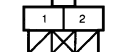
\*3: KE models

\*2: KE with NAVI

\*4: with rear fog light

\*5: with seat heater

**C310**



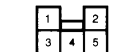
1	WHT/GRN
2	WHT/BLK
3	
4	

**C401**



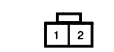
1	BLK/WHT
2	
3	WHT
4	BLK/RED
5	WHT/RED
6	BLK/YEL
7	

**C403**



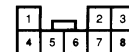
1	WHT
2	WHT/RED
3	BLK/WHT
4	BLK/RED
5	BLK/YEL

**C405 (M/T)**



1	LT GRN
2	BLK

**C451**



1	BLK/YEL
2	WHT/RED
3	WHT/GRN
4	BLK
5	BLU
6	ORN
7	WHT
8	WHT/BLU

**C452**



1	WHT
2	WHT/RED
3	WHT/BLK

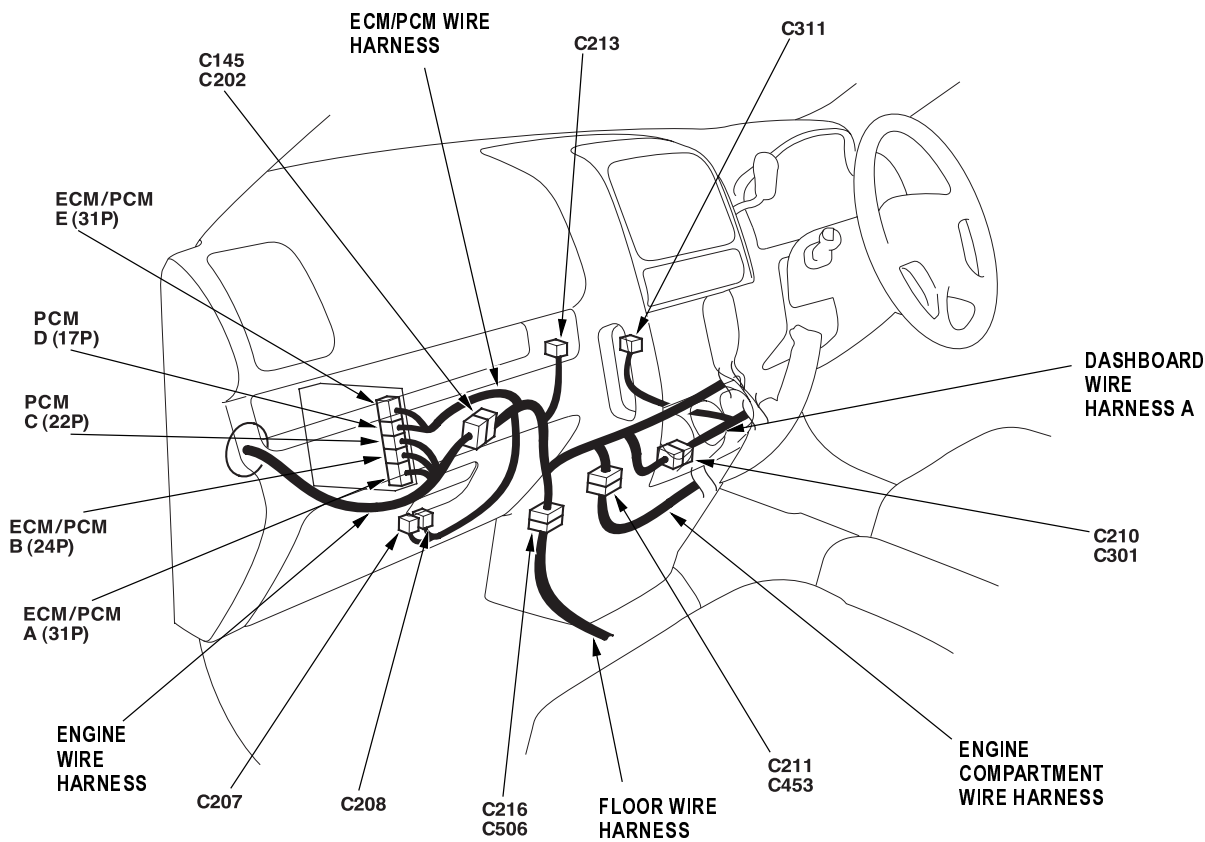
- Note:
- Connector with male terminals (double outline): View from terminal side
  - Connector with female terminals (single outline): View from wire side
  - : Related to ECM/PCM control
  - \* : Terminal side of female terminals

(cont'd)

System Descriptions (cont'd)

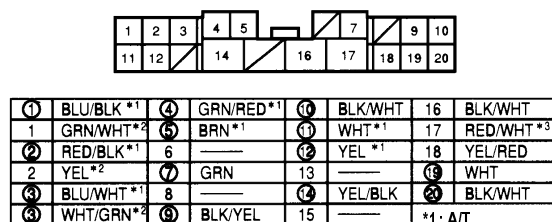
ECM/PCM Circuit Diagram (cont'd)

RHD model:



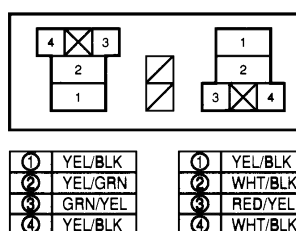


**C145**

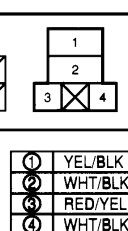


\*1: A/T  
\*2: M/T  
\*3: with climate control

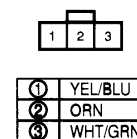
**C207**



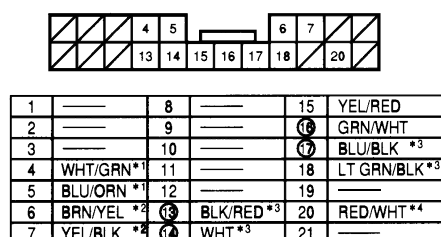
**C208**



**C213**  
(without TWC model)

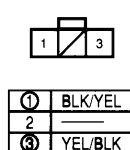


**C301**

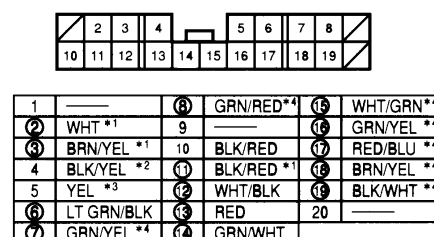


\*1: with cruise control  
\*2: KE, KU, KN, KZ, KQ models  
\*3: A/T  
\*4: with climate control

**C311 (KE model)**

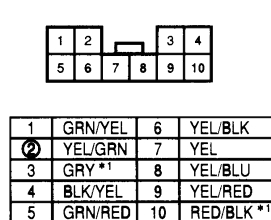


**C453**



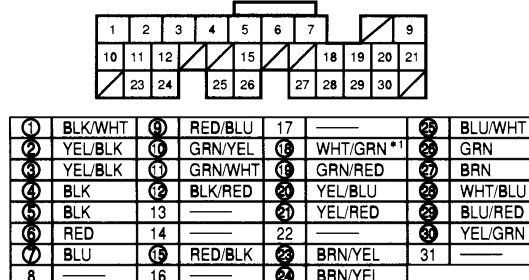
\*1: with TWC model  
\*2: with seat heater  
\*3: with ABS  
\*4: KE, KU, KZ, KQ models

**C506**



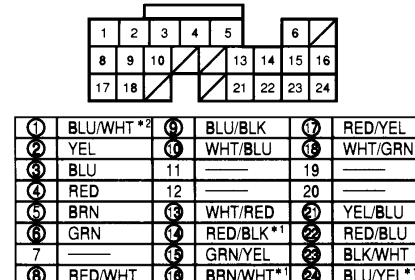
\*1: with seat heater

**ECM/PCM A (31P)**



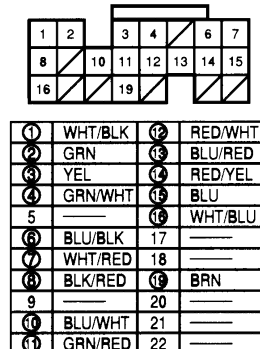
\*1: M/T

**ECM/PCM B (24P)**

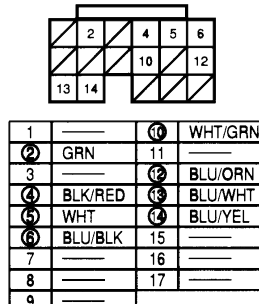


\*1: A/T  
\*2: KE model

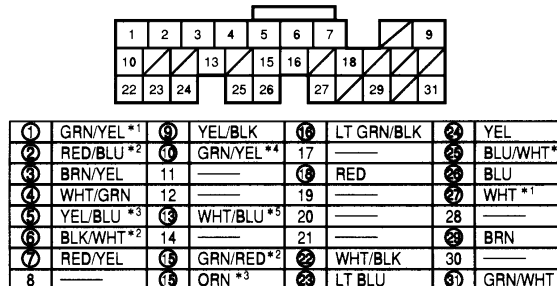
**PCM C (22P) (A/T)**



**PCM D (17P) (A/T)**



**ECM/PCM E (31P)**



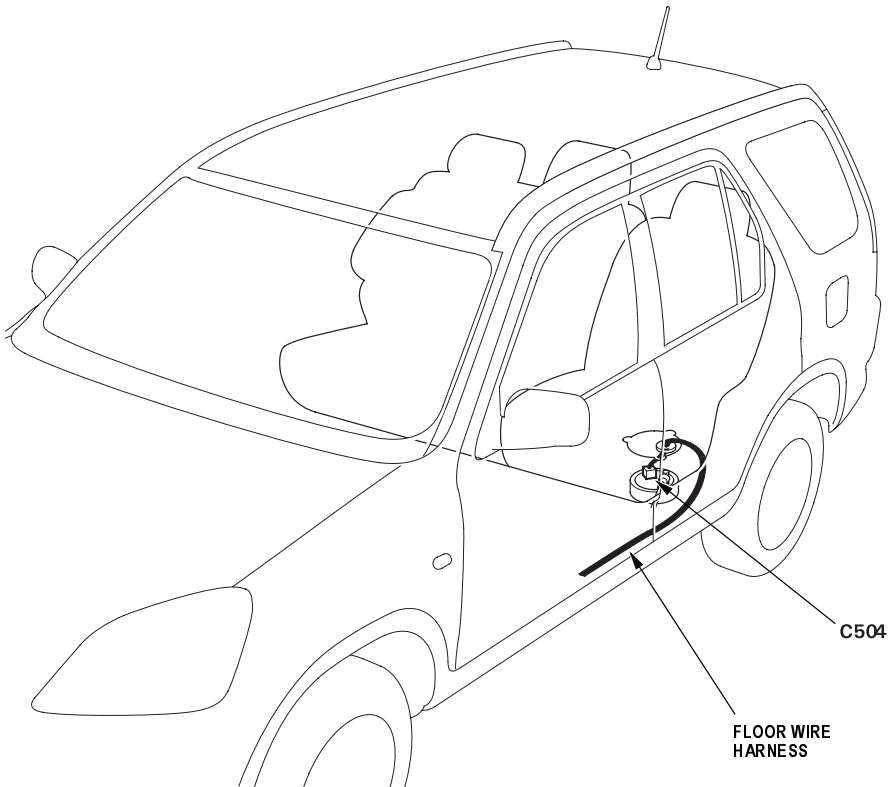
\*1: KE, KU, KN, KZ, KQ models  
\*2: KE, KU, KZ, KQ models  
\*3: without TWC model  
\*4: except KE, KU, KN, KZ, KQ models  
\*5: A/T

Note: • Connector with male terminals (double outline): View from terminal side  
• Connector with female terminals (single outline): View from wire side  
• O : Related to ECM/PCM control

(cont'd)

System Descriptions (cont'd)

ECM/PCM Circuit Diagram (cont'd)



C504



1	BLK
2	YEL/BLK
3	---
④	BLK
⑤	YEL/GRN

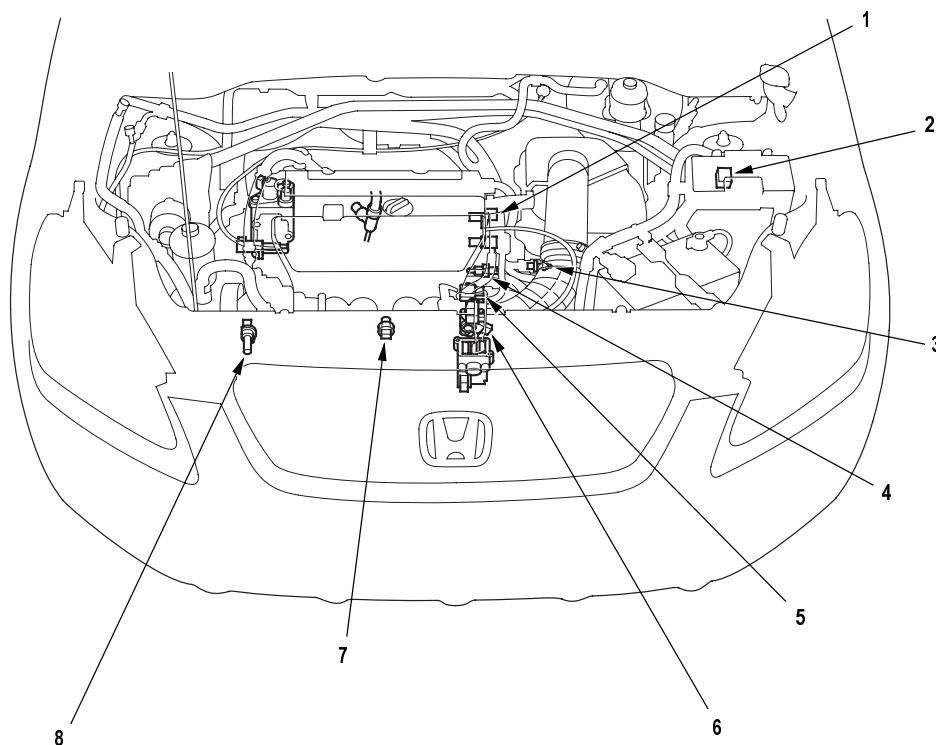
Note:

- Connector with male terminals (double outline): View from terminal side
- Connector with female terminals (single outline): View from wire side
- O : Related to ECM/PCM control



## PGM-FI System

### Component Location Index



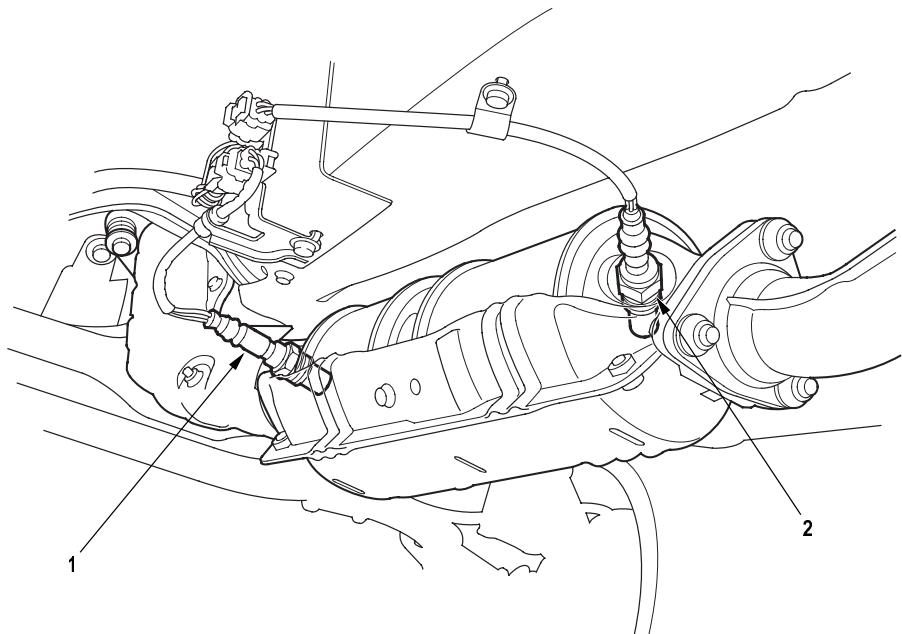
\*: The illustration shows LHD model

1	TOP DEAD CENTER (TDC) SENSOR	Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-100</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-120</a>
2	ELECTRICAL LOAD DETECTOR (ELD)	Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-97</a>
3	INTAKE AIR TEMPERATURE (IAT) SENSOR	Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-64</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-121</a>
4	ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE (ECT) SENSOR	Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-66</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-120</a>
5	MANIFOLD ABSOLUTE PRESSURE (MAP) SENSOR	Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-62</a>
6	THROTTLE POSITION (TP) SENSOR	Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-68</a>
7	KNOCK SENSOR	Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-87</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-121</a>
8	CRANKSHAFT POSITION (CKP) SENSOR	Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-88</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-119</a>

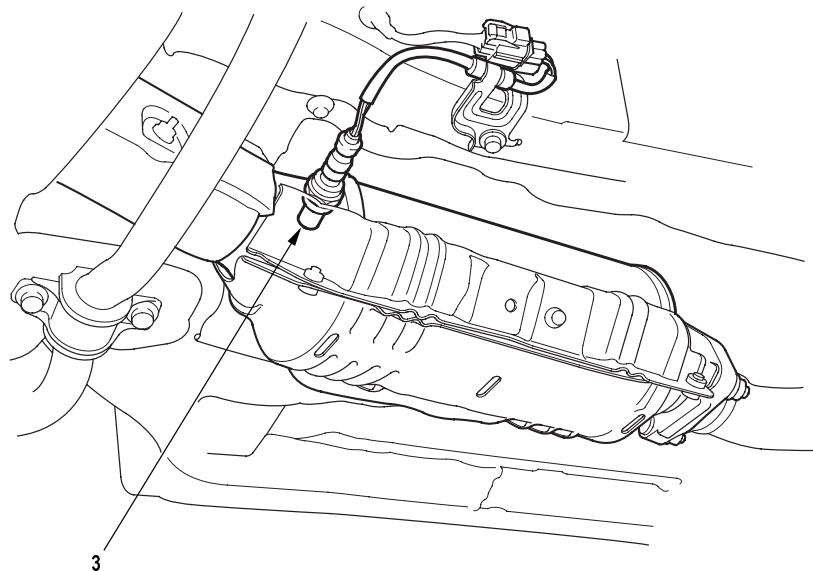
(cont'd)

Component Location Index (cont'd)

KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ models:

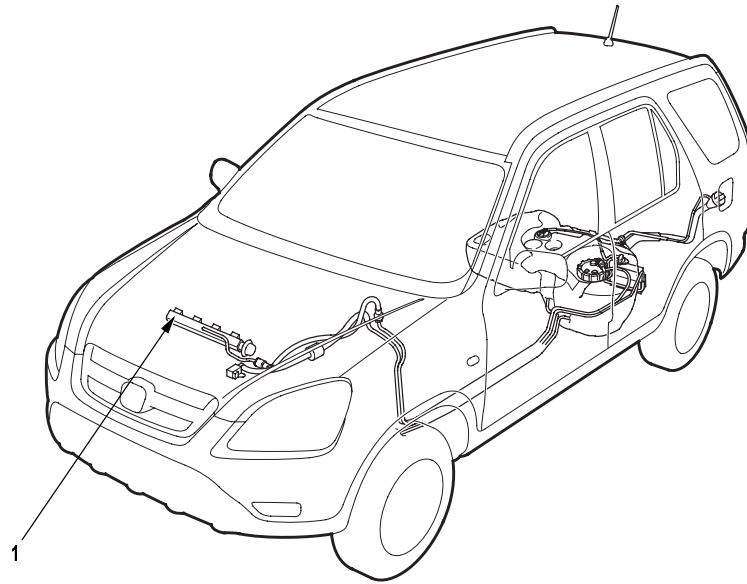


KN, KM, KY, MA, PH, IN, KK models:

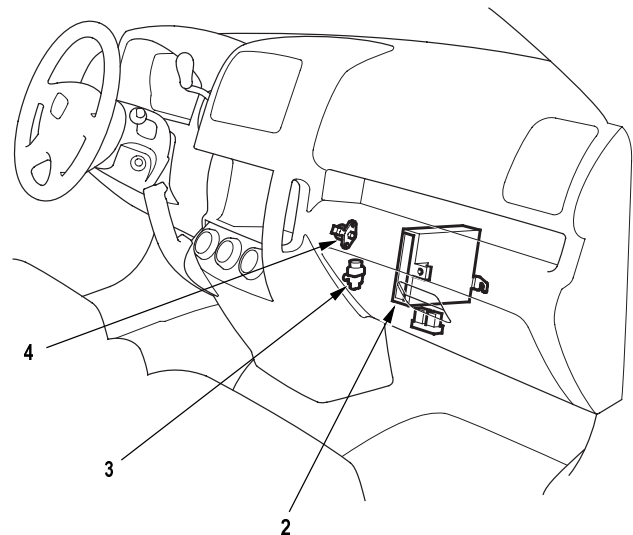
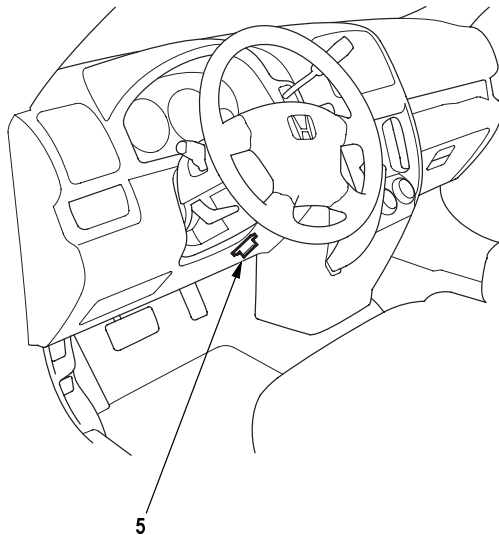


- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | PRIMARY HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR (PRIMARY HO2S) (SENSOR 1)     | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-71</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-119</a> |
| 2 | SECONDARY HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR (SECONDARY HO2S) (SENSOR 2) | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-76</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-122</a> |
| 3 | HEATED OXYGEN SENSOR (HO2S)                                | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-71</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-119</a> |





\*: The illustration shows KG, KS, KE, KR models.



\*: The illustration shows LHD model

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | INJECTORS  | Test, <a href="#">page 11-116</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-117</a>                                  |
| 2 | ENGINE CONTROL MODULE /<br>POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE (ECM/PCM) | General Troubleshooting Information, <a href="#">page 11-3</a> ; Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-101</a> |
| 3 | INERTIA SWITCH   | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-102</a>  |
| 4 | IDLE MIXTURE ADJUSTER (IMA)                                    | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-94</a>   |
| 5 | DATA LINK CONNECTOR (DLC)                                      | General Troubleshooting Information, <a href="#">page 11-3</a>  |

DTC Troubleshooting

DTC P0107(3-1): MAP Sensor Circuit Low Voltage

1.

Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
2.

Check the MAP with the scan tool.  
*Is about 101 kPa (760 mmHg, 30 in.Hg) or 2.9 V indicated?*  
**Yes** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the MAP sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■  
**No** Go to step 3.
3.

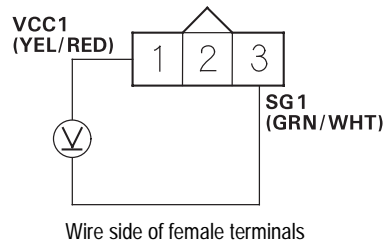
Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4.

Disconnect the MAP sensor 3P connector.
5.

Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
6.

Measure voltage between MAP sensor 3P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 3.

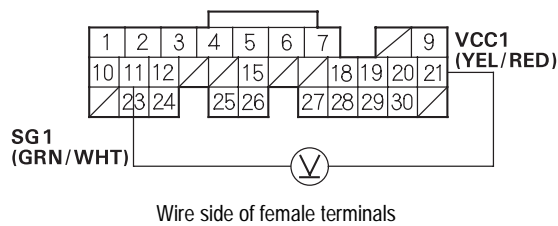
MAP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



- Is there about 5 V?*  
**Yes** Go to step 8.  
**No** Go to step 7.
7.

Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A11 and A21.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31 P)



- Is there about 5 V?*  
**Yes** Repair open in the wire between ECM/PCM (A21) and the MAP sensor.■  
**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■
8.

Check the MAP with the scan tool.  
*Is 2 kPa (15 mmHg, 0.6 in.Hg) or less or 0 V indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 9.  
**No** Replace the MAP sensor.■
9.

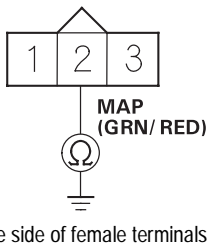
Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
10.

Turn the ignition switch OFF.
11.

Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).
12.

Check for continuity between MAP sensor connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.

MAP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



- Is there continuity?*  
**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A19) and the MAP sensor.■  
**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5) If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**DTC P0108 (3-2): MAP Sensor Circuit High Voltage**

1. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle with no load.

2. Check the MAP with the scan tool.

*Is about 101 kPa (760 mmHg, 30 in.Hg) or higher, or about 2.9 V or higher indicated?*

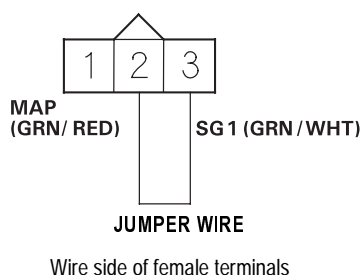
**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the MAP sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

4. Disconnect the MAP sensor 3P connector.

5. Connect MAP sensor 3P connector terminals No. 2 and No. 3 with a jumper wire.

**MAP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR**

6. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

7. Check the MAP with the scan tool.

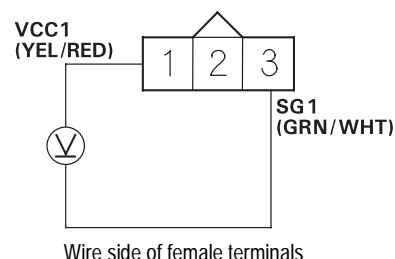
*Is about 101 kPa (760 mmHg, 30 in.Hg) or higher, or about 2.9 V or higher indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Replace the MAP sensor.■

8. Remove the jumper wire.

9. Measure voltage between MAP sensor 3P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 3.

**MAP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR**

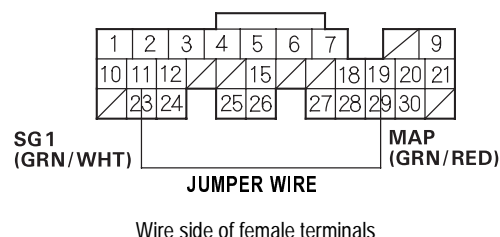
*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 10.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A11) and the MAP sensor.■

10. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

11. Connect ECM/PCM connector terminals A11 and A19 with a jumper wire.

**ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)**

12. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

13. Check the MAP with the scan tool.

*Is about 101 kPa (760 mmHg, 30 in.Hg) or higher, or about 2.9 V or higher indicated?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A19) and the MAP sensor.■

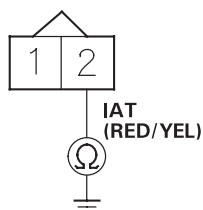
(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC P0112 (10-1): IAT Sensor Circuit Low Voltage

1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
2. Check the IAT with the scan tool.  
*Is 150°C (302°F) or higher (or H-Limit in Honda mode of PGM Tester) or 0 V indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 3.  
**No** Go to step 9.
3. Disconnect the IAT sensor 2P connector.
4. Check the IAT with the scan tool.  
*Is 150°C (302°F) or higher (or H-Limit in Honda mode of PGM Tester) or 0 V indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 5.  
**No** Replace the IAT sensor.■
5. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
6. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
7. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).
8. Check for continuity between IAT sensor 2P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.

IAT SENSOR 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

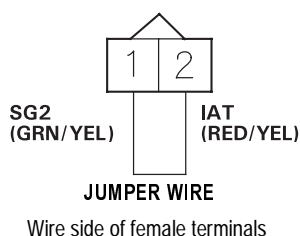
*Is there continuity?*

- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (B17) and the IAT sensor.■
- No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck ([see page 11-5](#)). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

9. Check the temperature reading on the scan tool. Be aware that if the engine is warm, the reading will be higher than ambient temperature. If the engine is cold, the IAT and ECT will have the same value.  
*Is the correct ambient temperature indicated?*  
**Yes** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the IAT sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■  
**No** Replace the IAT sensor.■

**DTC P0113 (10-2): IAT Sensor Circuit High Voltage**

1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
2. Check the IAT with the scan tool.  
*Is -20°C (-4°F) or less (or L-Limit in Honda mode of PGM Tester) or 5 V indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 3.  
**No** Intermitent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the IAT sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Disconnect the IAT sensor 2P connector.
5. Connect IAT sensor 2P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2 with a jumper wire.

**IAT SENSOR 2P CONNECTOR**

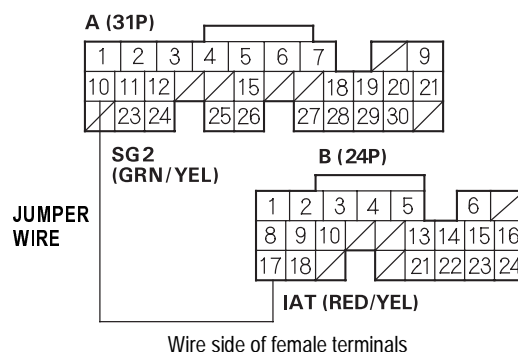
6. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

7. Check the IAT with the scan tool.  
*Is -20°C (-4°F) or less (or L-Limit in Honda mode of PGM Tester) or 5 V indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Replace the IAT sensor.■

8. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
9. Remove the jumper wire.
10. Connect ECM/PCM connector terminals A10 and B17 with a jumper wire.

**ECM/PCM CONNECTORS**

11. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
12. Check the IAT with the scan tool.  
*Is -20°C (-4°F) or less (or L-Limit in Honda mode of PGM Tester) or 5 V indicated?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A10, B17) and the IAT sensor.■

(cont'd)

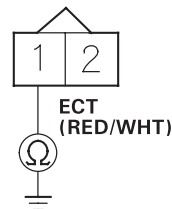
## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC P0117 (6-1): ECT Sensor Circuit Low Voltage

1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
2. Check the ECT with the scan tool.  
*Is 150°C (302°F) or higher (or H-Limit in Honda mode of PGM Tester) or 0 V indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 3.  
**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the ECT sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■
3. Disconnect the ECT sensor 2P connector.
4. Check the ECT with the scan tool.  
*Is 150°C (302°F) or higher (or H-Limit in Honda mode of PGM Tester) or 0 V indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 5.  
**No** Replace the ECT sensor.■
5. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
6. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
7. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).

8. Check for continuity between ECT sensor 2P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

ECT SENSOR 2P CONNECTOR



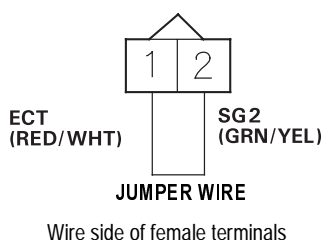
Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (B8) and the ECT sensor.■
- No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck ([see page 11-5](#)). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**DTC P0118 (6-2): ECT Sensor Circuit High Voltage**

1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
2. Check the ECT with the scan tool.  
*Is -20°C (-4°F) or less (or L-Limit in Honda mode of PGM Tester) or 5 V indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 3.  
**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the ECT sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Disconnect the ECT sensor 2P connector.
5. Connect ECT sensor 2P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2 with a jumper wire.

**ECT SENSOR 2P CONNECTOR**

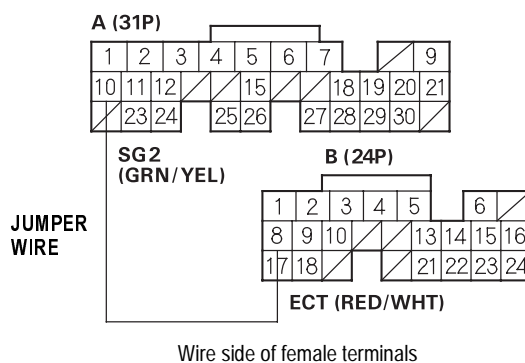
6. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

7. Check the ECT with the scan tool.  
*Is -20°C (-4°F) or less (or L-Limit in Honda mode of PGM Tester) or 5 V indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Replace the ECT sensor.■

8. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
9. Remove the jumper wire.
10. Connect ECM/PCM connector terminals A10 and B8 with a jumper wire.

**ECM/PCM CONNECTORS**

11. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
12. Check the ECT with the scan tool.  
*Is -20°C (-4°F) or less (or L-Limit in Honda mode of PGM Tester) or 5 V indicated?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

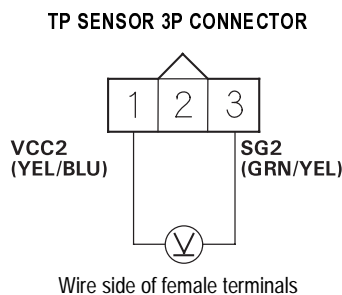
**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A10, B8) and the ECT sensor.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC P0122 (7-1): TP Sensor Circuit Low Voltage

1. Turn the ignition switch ON(II).
2. Check the throttle position with the scan tool.  
*Is there about 10% or 0.5 V when the throttle is fully closed and about 90% or 4.5 V when the throttle is fully opened?*
- Yes** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the TP sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■
- No** Go to step 3.
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Disconnect the TP sensor 3P connector.
5. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
6. Measure voltage between TP sensor 3P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 3.



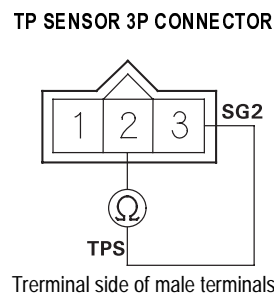
*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 7.

**No** Go to step 15.

7. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

8. At the sensor side, measure resistance between TP sensor 3P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 3 with the throttle fully closed.

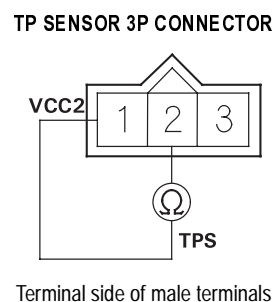


*Is there about 0.5 - 0.9 kΩ?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Replace the throttle body.■

9. Measure resistance between TP sensor 3P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2 with the throttle fully closed.



*Is there about 4.5 kΩ?*

**Yes** Go to step 10.

**No** Replace the throttle body (the TP sensor is not available separately).■

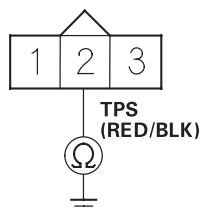
10. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
11. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).





12. At the wire harness side, check for continuity between TP sensor 3P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.

TP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

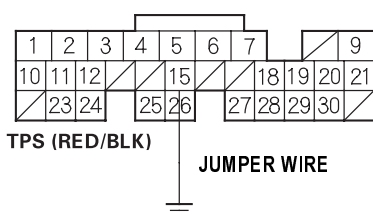
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A15) and the TP sensor.■

**No** Go to step 13.

13. Connect ECM/PCM connector terminal A15 and body ground with a jumper wire.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)



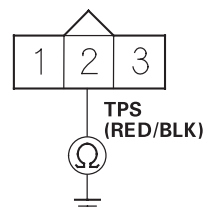
TPS (RED/BLK)

JUMPER WIRE

Wire side of female terminals

14. At the wire harness side, check for continuity between TP sensor 3P connector terminals No. 2 and body ground.

TP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

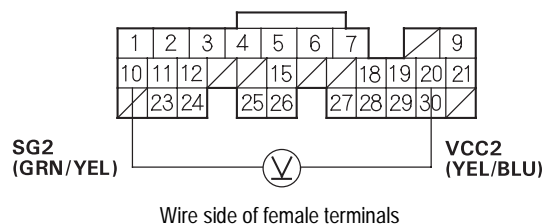
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A15) and the TP sensor.■

15. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A10 and A20.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A20) and the TP sensor.■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

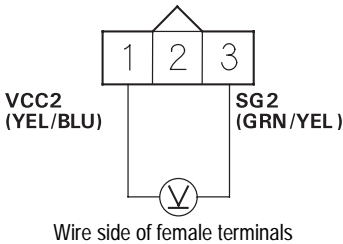
(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

DTC P0123 (7-2): TP Sensor Circuit High Voltage

- 1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
- 2. Check the throttle position with the scan tool.  
*Is there about 10% or 0.5 V when the throttle is fully closed and about 90% or 4.5 V when the throttle is fully opened?*  
**Yes** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the TP sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■  
**No** Go to step 3.
- 3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- 4. Disconnect the TP sensor 3P connector.
- 5. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
- 6. At the wire harness side, measure voltage between TP sensor 3P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 3.

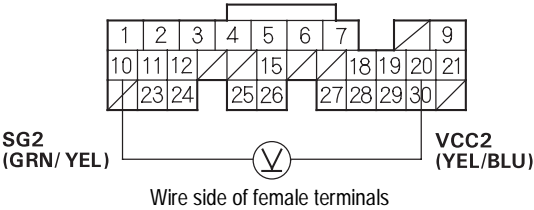
TP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



- Is there about 5 V?*
- Yes** Replace the throttle body (the TP sensor is not available separately).■
  - No** Go to step 7.

- 7. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A10 and A20.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)



- Is there about 5 V?*
- Yes** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A10) and the TP sensor.■
  - No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■


**DTC P0131 (1-1): Primary HO2S (Sensor 1) Circuit Low Voltage**

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4)
2. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on.
3. Check the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) output voltage with the scan tool during acceleration using wide open throttle.

*Does the voltage stay at 0.5 V or less?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) and at the ECM/PCM.■

4. Check the fuel pressure (see page 11-154).

*Is it normal?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Repair the fuel supply system.■

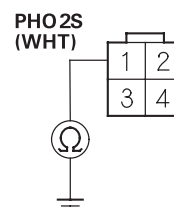
5. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
6. Disconnect the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) 4P connector.
7. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
8. Check the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) output voltage with the scan tool.

*Does it stay at 0.5 V or less?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Replace the primary HO2S (Sensor 1).■

9. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
10. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
11. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).
12. Check for continuity between primary HO2S (Sensor 1) 4P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

**PRIMARY HO2S (SENSOR 1) 4P CONNECTOR**


Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A6) and the primary HO2S (Sensor 1).■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC P0132 (1-2): Primary HO2S (Sensor 1) Circuit High Voltage

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on.
3. Check the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) output voltage with the scan tool.

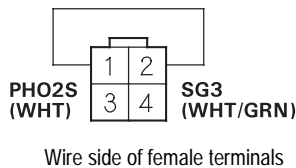
*Does the voltage stay at 0.9 V or more?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) and at the ECM/PCM.■

4. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
5. Disconnect the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) 4P connector.
6. Connect primary HO2S (Sensor 1) 4P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2 with a jumper wire.

PRIMARY HO2S (SENSOR 1) 4P CONNECTOR



7. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
8. Check the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) output voltage with the scan tool.

*Is there 0.9 V or more?*

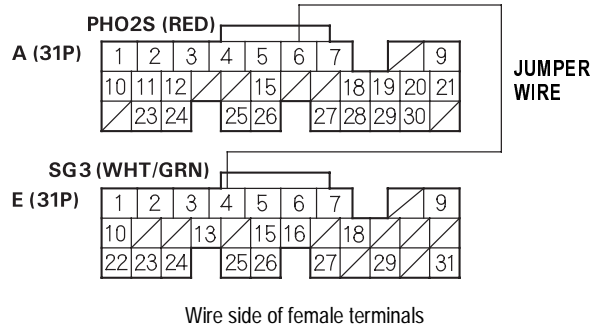
**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Replace the primary HO2S (Sensor 1).■

9. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

10. Connect ECM/PCM connector terminals A6 and E4 with a jumper wire.

ECM/PCM CONNECTORS



11. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
12. Check the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) output voltage with the scan tool.

*Is there 0.9 V or more?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A6, E4) and the primary HO2S (Sensor 1).■



## DTC P0133 (61-1): Primary HO2S (Sensor 1) Slow Response

NOTE: If DTC P0131, P0132 and/or P0135 are stored at the same time as DTC P0133, troubleshoot those DTCs first, then recheck for DTC P0133.

1. Reset the ECM/PCM ([see page 11-4](#)).
2. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on.
3. Test-drive under the following conditions:
  - 89 km/h (55 mph) steady speed
  - A/T in D position (M/T in 5th gear)
  - Until readiness code or Temporary DTC P0133 comes on
4. Check for a Temporary DTC with the scan tool.

*Is Temporary DTC P0133 indicated?*

**Yes** Replace the primary HO2S (Sensor 1).■

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) and the ECM/PCM.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC P0135 (41-2): Primary HO2S (Sensor 1) Heater Circuit Malfunction

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Start the engine.

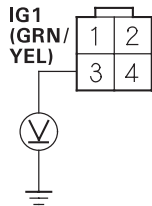
*Is DTC P0135 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) and at the ECM/PCM.■

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Disconnect the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) 4P connector.
5. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
6. Measure voltage between primary HO2S (Sensor 1) 4P connector terminal No. 3 and body ground.

PRIMARY HO2S (SENSOR 1) 4P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

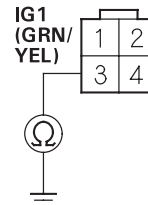
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Go to step 7.

7. Check for continuity between body ground and primary HO2S (Sensor 1) 4P connector terminals No. 3.

PRIMARY HO2S (SENSOR 1) 4P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

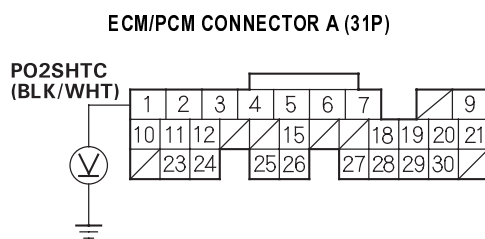
**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) and the No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse.■

**No** Check the No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box. If the fuse is OK, repair open in the wire between the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) and the No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse.■

8. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
9. Reconnect the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) 4P connector.
10. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
11. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).
12. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
13. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).



14. Measure voltage between between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal A1.

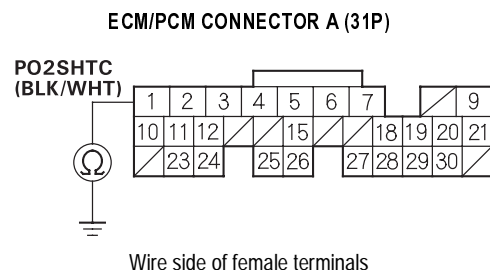


Is there battery voltage?

**Yes** Go to step 15.

**No** Repair open in the wire between ECM/PCM (A1) and primary HO2S (Sensor 1).■

15. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
16. Disconnect the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) 4P connector.
17. Check for continuity between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal A1.



Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A1) and primary HO2S (Sensor 1).■

**No** Go to step 18.

18. Substitute a known-good primary HO2S (Sensor 1) and recheck.

Is DTC P0135 indicated?

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away with a known-good ECM/PCM, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Replace the primary HO2S (Sensor 1).■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC P0137 (63-1): Secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) Circuit Low Voltage

1. Reset the ECM/PCM ([see page 11-4](#)).
2. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on.
3. Check the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) output voltage at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with the scan tool.  
*Does the voltage stay at 0.3 V or less?*

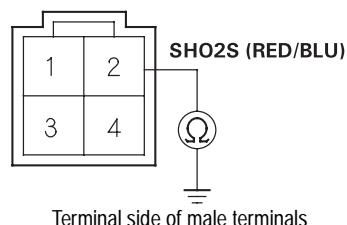
**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) and at the ECM/PCM.■

4. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
  5. Disconnect the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) 4P connector.
  6. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
  7. Check the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) output voltage with the scan tool.  
*Does the voltage stay at 0.3 V or less?*
- Yes** Go to step 8.
- No** Replace the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2).■
8. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
  9. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
  10. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).

11. Check for continuity between secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) 4P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.

#### SECONDARY HO2S (SENSOR 2) 4P CONNECTOR



*Is there continuity?*

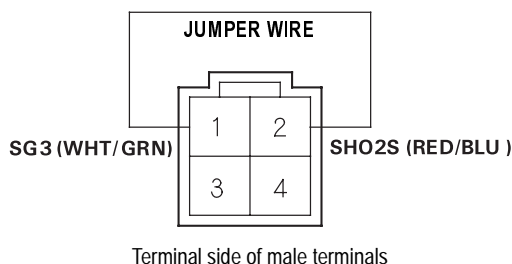
**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E2) and the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2).■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck ([see page 11-5](#)). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■




**DTC P0138 (63-2): Secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) Circuit High Voltage**

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on.
3. Check the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) output voltage at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with the scan tool.  
*Does the voltage stay at 1.0 V or more?*  
**Yes** Go to step 4.  
**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) and the at ECM/PCM.■
4. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
5. Disconnect the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) 6P connector.
6. Connect secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) 6P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2 with a jumper wire.

**SECONDARY HO2S (SENSOR 2) 4P CONNECTOR**


7. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

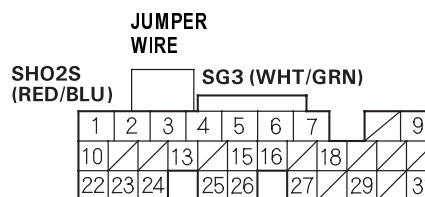
8. Check the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) output voltage with the scan tool.

*Is there 1.0 V or more?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Replace the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2).■

9. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
10. Connect ECM/PCM connector terminals E2 and E4 with a jumper wire.

**ECM/PCM CONNECTOR E (31P)**


11. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
12. Check the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) output voltage with the scan tool.

*Is there 1.0 V or more?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E2, E4) and the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2).■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC P0141 (65-2): Secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) Heater Circuit Malfunction

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).

2. Start the engine.

*Is DTC P0141 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

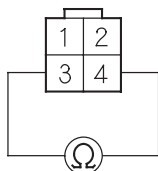
**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) and at the ECM/PCM.■

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

4. Disconnect the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) 4P connector.

5. At the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) side, measure resistance between the HO2S 4P connector terminals No. 3 and No. 4.

SECONDARY HO2S (SENSOR 2) 4P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

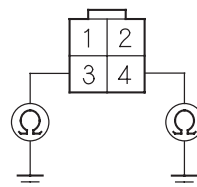
*Is there about 3.3 Ω?*

**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Replace the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2).■

6. Check continuity between body ground and secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) 4P connector terminals No. 3 and No. 4 individually.

SECONDARY HO2S (SENSOR 2) 4P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

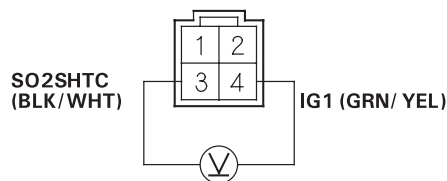
**Yes** Replace the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2).■

**No** Go to step 7.

7. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

8. Measure voltage between secondary HO2S 4P connector terminals No. 3 and No. 4.

SECONDARY HO2S (SENSOR 2) 4P CONNECTOR



Terminal side of male terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Go to step 14.

9. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

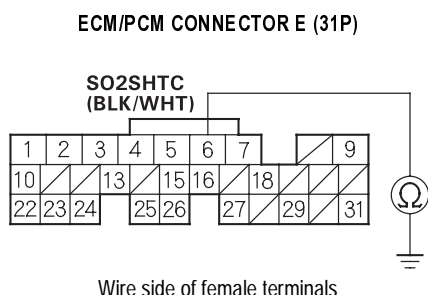
10. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

11. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).

12. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.



13. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal E6 and body ground.



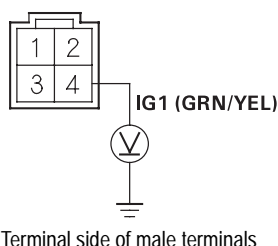
Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E6) and the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2).■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

14. Measure voltage between secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) 4P connector terminal No. 4 and body ground.

SECONDARY HO2S (SENSOR 2) 4P CONNECTOR



Is there battery voltage?

**Yes** Go to step 15.

**No** Check the No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box. If the fuse is OK, repair open in the wire between the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) and No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse.■

15. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

16. Reconnect the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) 4P connector.

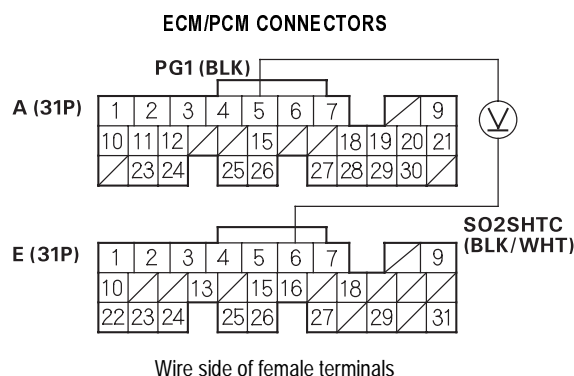
17. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

18. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).

19. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.

20. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

21. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal E6 and A5.



Is there 0.1 V or less?

**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E6) and the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2).■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC P0171 (45-2): Fuel System Too Lean

### DTC P0172 (45-1): Fuel System Too Rich

NOTE: If some of the DTCs listed below are stored at the same time as DTC P0171 and/or P0172, troubleshoot those DTCs first, then recheck for P0171 and/or P0172.

P0010, P0011: VTC System

P0107, P0108: Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) sensor

P0135: Primary Heated Oxygen Sensor (primary HO2S) (Sensor 1) heater

P0137, P0138: Secondary Heated Oxygen Sensor (secondary HO2S) (sensor 1)

P0141: Secondary Heated Oxygen Sensor (secondary HO2S) (sensor 2) heater

P0340, P0344: CMP Sensor

P1259: VTEC System

1. Check the fuel pressure ([see page 11-154](#)).

*Is fuel pressure OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Check these items:

- If the pressure is too high, replace the fuel pressure regulator ([see page 11-165](#)).■
- If the pressure is too low, check the fuel pump, the fuel feed pipe, the fuel filter, and replace the fuel pressure regulator ([see page 11-165](#)).■

2. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on.

3. Check the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) output with the scan tool.

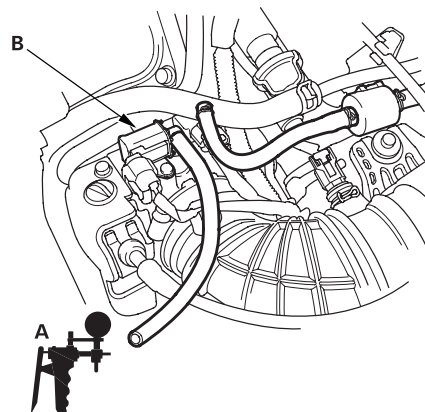
*Does it stay at less than 0.3 V or more than 0.6 V?*

**Yes** Replace the primary HO2S (Sensor 1).■

**No** Go to step 4.

4. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

5. With a vacuum pump (A), apply vacuum to the evaporative emission (EVAP) canister purge valve (B) from the evaporative emission (EVAP) canister side.



*Does it hold vacuum?*

**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Replace the EVAP canister purge valve.■

6. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

7. Check the manifold pressure with the scan tool.

*Does it indicate atmospheric pressure?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Replace the MAP sensor.■

8. Start the engine.

9. Check the MAP sensor with the scan tool.

*Is a MAP of 40.0 kPa (300 mmHg, 12.0 in.Hg) or less indicated within 1 second after starting the engine?*

**Yes** Check the valve clearance and adjust if necessary. If the valve clearance are OK, replace the injector.■

**No** Replace the MAP sensor.■

(cont'd)



**DTC P0300 (7x-1): Random misfire and any Combination of the Following:**

**DTC P0301 (71-1): No. 1 Cylinder Misfire**

**DTC P0302 (72-1): No. 2 Cylinder Misfire**

**DTC P0303 (73-1): No. 3 Cylinder Misfire**

**DTC P0304 (74-1): No. 4 Cylinder Misfire**

NOTE:

- If the misfiring is frequent enough to trigger detection of increased emissions during two consecutive driving cycles, the MIL will come on, and DTC P0300 (and some combination of P0301 through P0304) will be stored.
  - If the misfiring is frequent enough to damage the catalyst, the MIL will blink whenever the misfiring occurs, and DTC P0300 (and some combination of P0301 through P0304) will be stored. When the misfiring stops, the MIL will remain on.
1. Troubleshoot the following DTCs first if any of them were stored along with the random misfire DTC(s):  
 P0107, P0108: Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) sensor  
 P0131, P0132: Primary Heated Oxygen Sensor (primary HO2S) (Sensor 1)  
 P0171, P0172: Fuel system  
 P0335, P0336: Crankshaft Position (CKP) sensor  
 P1253: VTEC system  
 P1361, P1362: Top Dead Center (TDC) sensor  
 P1519: Idle Air Control (IAC) valve
  2. Test-drive the vehicle to verify the symptom.
  3. Find the symptom in the chart below, and do the related procedures in the order listed until you find the cause.

Symptom	Procedure(s)	Also check for:
Random misfire only at low engine speed and under load	Check fuel pressure ( <a href="#">see page 11-154</a> ).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Low compression</li> <li>• Contaminated fuel</li> <li>• Manifold vacuum problem</li> </ul>
Random misfire only during acceleration	Check fuel pressure ( <a href="#">see page 11-154</a> ).	Malfunction in the VTEC system ( <a href="#">see page 11-130</a> )
Random misfire at high engine speed, under load, or under random conditions	Check fuel pressure ( <a href="#">see page 11-154</a> ).	Correct valve clearance ( <a href="#">see page 06-9</a> )

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC P0301 (71-1): No. 1 Cylinder Misfire

### DTC P0302 (72-1): No. 2 Cylinder Misfire

### DTC P0303 (73-1): No. 3 Cylinder Misfire

### DTC P0304 (74-1): No. 4 Cylinder Misfire

1. After checking and recording the freeze data, reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4). If there is no freeze data of the misfire, just clear the DTC.

2. Start the engine, and listen for a clicking sound at the injector at the problem cylinder.

*Does it click?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Go to step 32.

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF, and reset the ECM/PCM.

4. Exchange the ignition coil from the problem cylinder with one from another cylinder.

5. Test-drive the vehicle several times in the range of the freeze data or under various conditions if there was no freeze data.

6. Check the DTC or the Temporary DTC with the scan tool.

*Is DTC or Temporary DTC P0301, P0302, P0303 or P0304 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 7.

**No** Intermittent misfire due to poor contact at the ignition coil connector (no misfire at this time).■

7. Determine which cylinder(s) had the misfire.

*Does the misfire occur in the other cylinder whose ignition coil was exchanged?*

**Yes** Replace the faulty ignition coil.■

**No** Go to step 8.

8. Turn the ignition switch OFF, and reset the ECM/PCM.

9. Exchange the spark plug from the problem cylinder with one from another cylinder.

10. Test-drive the vehicle several times in the range of the freeze data or under various conditions if there was no freeze data.

11. Check the DTC or the Temporary DTC with the scan Tool.

*Is DTC or Temporary DTC P0301, P0302, P0303 or P0304 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 12.

**No** Intermittent misfire due to spark plug fouling, etc. (no misfire at this time).■

12. Determine which cylinder(s) had the misfire.

*Does the misfire occur in the other cylinder whose spark plug was exchanged?*

**Yes** Replace the faulty spark plug.■

**No** Go to step 13.

13. Turn the ignition switch OFF, and reset the ECM/PCM.

14. Exchange the injector from the problem cylinder with one from the another cylinder.

15. Let the engine idle for 2 minutes.



16. Test-drive the vehicle several times in the range of the freeze data or under various conditions if there was no freeze data.

17. Check for a DTC or Temporary DTC with the scan Tool.

*Is DTC or Temporary DTC P0301, P0302, P0303 or P0304 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 18.

**No** Intermittent misfire due to bad contact at the injector connector (no misfire at this time).■

18. Determine which cylinder(s) had the misfire.

*Does the misfire occur in the other cylinder whose injector was exchanged?*

**Yes** Replace the faulty injector.■

**No** Go to step 19.

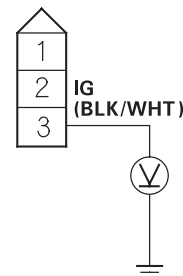
19. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

20. Disconnect the ignition coil 3P connector from the problem cylinder.

21. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

22. Measure voltage between ignition coil 3P connector terminal No. 3 and body ground.

IGNITION COIL 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

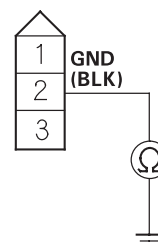
**Yes** Go to step 23.

**No** Repair open or short in the wire between the No. 1 IGN COIL (15A) fuse and the ignition coil.■

23. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

24. Check for continuity between ignition coil 3P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.

IGNITION COIL 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 25.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ignition coil and G101.■

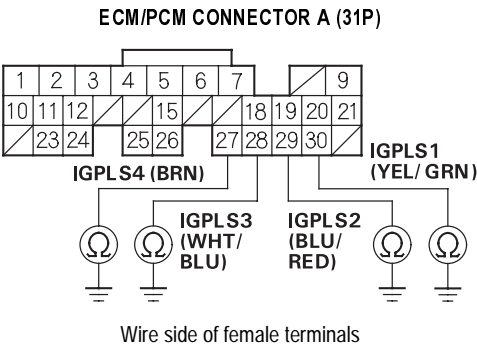
25. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

26. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

27. Check for continuity between body ground and the appropriate ECM/PCM connector terminal (see table).



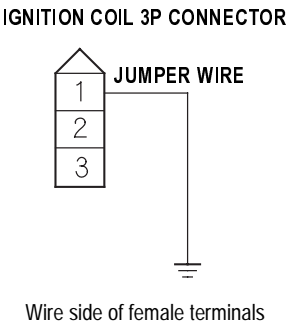
PROBLEM CYLINDER	DTC	ECM/PCM TERMINAL	WIRE COLOR
No. 1	P0301	A30	YEL/GRN
No. 2	P0302	A29	BLU/RED
No. 3	P0303	A28	WHT/BLU
No. 4	P0304	A27	BRN

Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM and the ignition coil.■

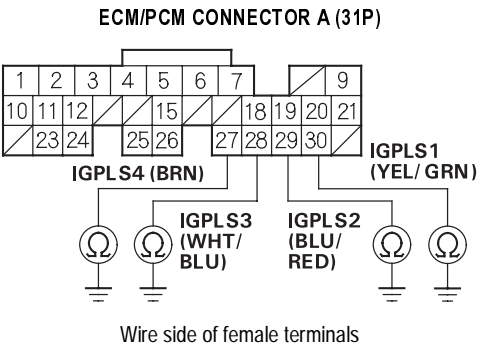
**No** Go to step 28.

28. Connect the appropriate ignition coil 3P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground with a jumper wire (see table).



PROBLEM CYLINDER	DTC	WIRE COLOR
No. 1	P0301	YEL/GRN
No. 2	P0302	BLU/RED
No. 3	P0303	WHT/BLU
No. 4	P0304	BRN

29. Check for continuity between body ground and the appropriate ECM/PCM connector terminal (see table).



PROBLEM CYLINDER	DTC	ECM/PCM TERMINAL	WIRE COLOR
No. 1	P0301	A30	YEL/GRN
No. 2	P0302	A29	BLU/RED
No. 3	P0303	A28	WHT/BLU
No. 4	P0304	A27	BRN

Is there continuity?

**Yes** Go to step 30.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM and the ignition coil.■

30. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.

31. Check the compression.

Is the engine compression OK?

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Repair the engine.■

32. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

33. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).

34. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.

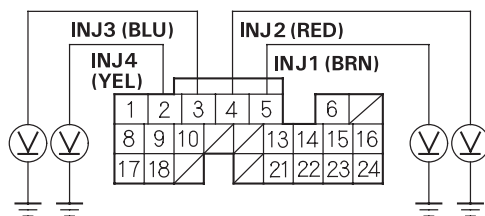
35. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).





36. Measure voltage between body ground and the appropriate ECM/PCM connector terminal (see table).

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR B (24P)



Wire side of female terminals

PROBLEM CYLINDER	DTC	ECM/PCM TERMINAL	WIRE COLOR
No. 1	P0301	B5	BRN
No. 2	P0302	B4	RED
No. 3	P0303	B3	BLU
No. 4	P0304	B2	YEL

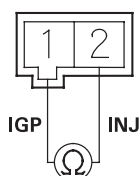
Is there battery voltage?

**Yes** Go to step 37.

**No** Go to step 45.

37. Turn the ignition switch OFF, and remove the engine cover.
38. Disconnect the injector 2P connector on the problem cylinder.
39. Measure the resistance between injector 2P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2.

INJECTOR 2P CONNECTOR



Terminal side of male terminals

Is there 10 Ω - 13 Ω?

**Yes** Go to step 40.

**No** Replace the injector (see page 11-117).■

40. Exchange the injector from the problem cylinder with one from another cylinder.

41. Let the engine idle for 2 minutes.

42. Test-drive the vehicle several times in the range of the freeze data or under various conditions if there was no freeze data.

43. Check for a DTC or Temporary DTC with a scan tool.

Is DTC or Temporary DTC P0301, P0302, P0303, or P0304 indicated?

**Yes** Go to step 44.

**No** Intermittent misfire due to injector malfunction etc.■

44. Determine which cylinder(s) had the misfire.

Does the misfire occur in the other cylinder whose injector was exchanged?

**Yes** Replace the faulty injector.■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

45. Turn the ignition switch OFF and remove the engine cover.

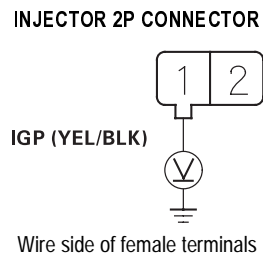
46. Disconnect the injector 2P connector on the problem cylinder.

47. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

48. Measure voltage between injector 2P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

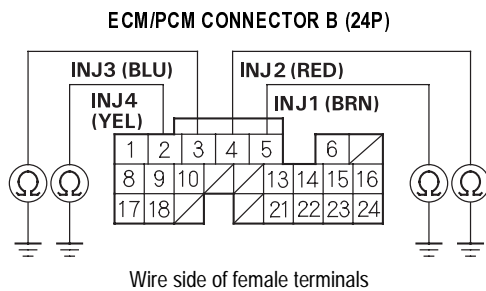


Is there battery voltage?

- Yes** Go to step 49.
- No** Repair open in the wire between the injector and the PGM-FI main relay.■

49. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

50. Check for continuity between body ground and the appropriate ECM/PCM connector terminal (see table).

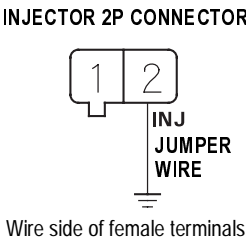


PROBLEM CYLINDER	DTC	ECM/PCM TERMINAL	WIRE COLOR
No. 1	P0301	B5	BRN
No. 2	P0302	B4	RED
No. 3	P0303	B3	BLU
No. 4	P0304	B2	YEL

Is there continuity?

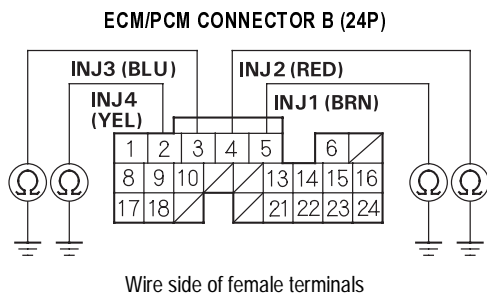
- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM and the injector.■
- No** Go to step 51.

51. Connect the appropriate injector 2P connector terminal No. 2 to body ground with a jumper wire (see table).



PROBLEM CYLINDER	DTC	WIRE COLOR
No. 1	P0301	BRN
No. 2	P0302	RED
No. 3	P0303	BLU
No. 4	P0304	YEL

52. Check for continuity between body ground and the appropriate ECM/PCM connector terminal (see table).



PROBLEM CYLINDER	DTC	ECM/PCM TERMINAL	WIRE COLOR
No. 1	P0301	B5	BRN
No. 2	P0302	B4	RED
No. 3	P0303	B3	BLU
No. 4	P0304	B2	YEL

Is there continuity?

- Yes** Replace the injector, then recheck.■
- No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM and the injector.■


**DTC P0325 (23-1): Malfunction in Knock Sensor Circuit**

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.
3. Hold the engine at 3,000 - 4,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) for at least 60 seconds.

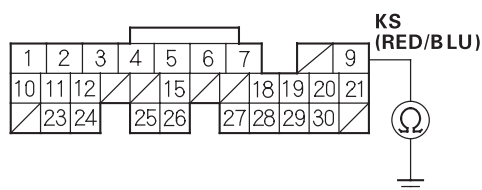
*Is DTC P0325 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the knock sensor and at the ECM/PCM.

4. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
5. Disconnect the starter sub-harness 6P connector.
6. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal A9 and body ground.

**ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)**



Wire side of female terminals

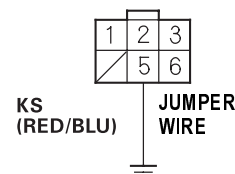
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A9) and the starter sub-harness 6P connector.■

**No** Go to step 7.

7. Connect starter sub-harness 6P connector terminal No. 5 to body ground with a jumper wire.

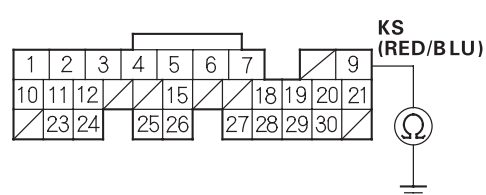
**STARTER SUB-HARNESS 6P CONNECTOR**



Wire side of female terminals

8. Check for continuity between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal A9.

**ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)**



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A9) and the starter sub-harness 6P connector.■

9. Check the starter sub-harness between 6P connector and the knock sensor for an open or short. If it's OK, substitute a known-good knock sensor and recheck.

*Is DTC P0325 indicated?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Replace the original knock sensor and/or starter sub-harness.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC P0335 (4-1): CKP Sensor No Signal

### DTC P0336 (4-2): CKP Sensor Intermittent Interruption

1. Reset the ECM/PCM ([see page 11-4](#)).

2. Start the engine.

*Is DTC P0335 and/or P0336 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the CKP sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■

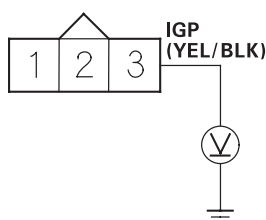
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

4. Disconnect the CKP sensor 3P connector.

5. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

6. Measure voltage between CKP sensor 3P connector terminal No. 3 and body ground.

CKP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

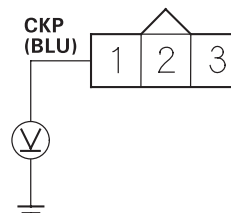
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 7.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the PGM-FI main relay 1 and the CKP sensor.■

7. Measure voltage between CKP sensor 3P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

CKP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

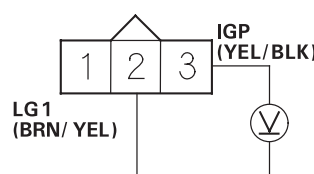
*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Go to step 10.

8. Measure voltage between CKP sensor 3P connector terminals No. 2 and No. 3.

CKP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Repair open in the BRN/YEL wire between the CKP sensor and G101.■

9. Substitute a known-good CKP sensor and recheck.

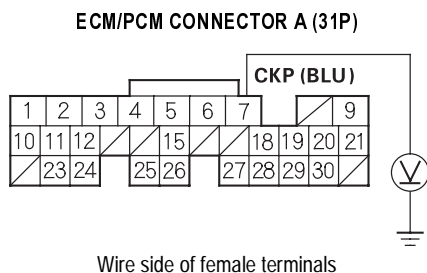
*Is DTC P0335 and/or P0336 indicated?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck ([see page 11-5](#)). If symptom/ indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Replace the original CKP sensor.■



10. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal A7 and body ground.

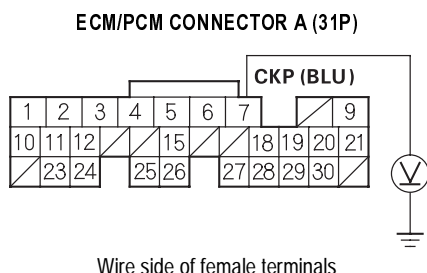


*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A7) and the CKP sensor.■

**No** Go to step 11.

11. Turn the ignition switch OFF.  
 12. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.  
 13. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).  
 14. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal A7 and body ground.



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A7) and the CKP sensor.■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

DTC P0500 (17-1): VSS Circuit Malfunction

DTC P0501 (17-2): VSS Range/Performance Problem

1. Test-drive the vehicle.

2. Check the vehicle speed with the scan tool.

Is the correct speed indicated?

Yes

Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the VSS and at the ECM.■

No

Go to step 3.

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

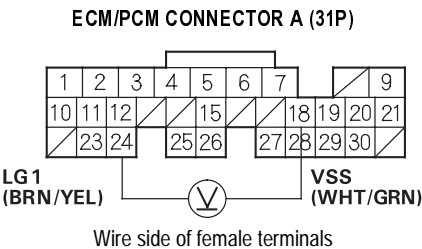
4. Block the rear wheels and set the parking brake.

5. Raise the front of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported.

6. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

7. Block the right front wheel, and slowly rotate the left front wheel.

8. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A18 and A24.



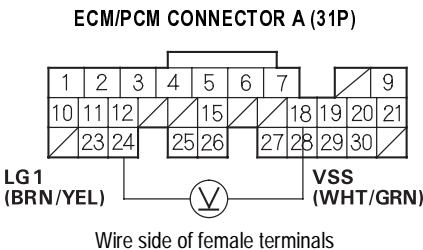
Does the voltage pulse between 0 V and 5 V or battery voltage?

- Yes

Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■
- No

Go to step 9.

9. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
10. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
11. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).
12. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
13. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
14. Block the right front wheel, and slowly rotate the left front wheel.
15. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A18 and A24.



Does the voltage pulse between 0 V and 5 V or battery voltage?

- Yes

Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■
- No

Check these items:
  - A short or an open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A18) and the VSS.
  - If the wire is OK, test the VSS (see page 22A-75).



## DTC P0563 (34-2): ECM/PCM Power Source Circuit Unexpected Voltage

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
3. Wait 5 seconds.
4. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

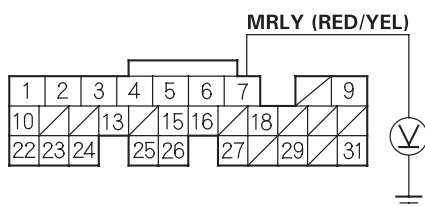
Is DTC P0563 indicated?

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box and at the ECM/PCM. ■

5. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
6. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
7. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).
8. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
9. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal E7 and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR E (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

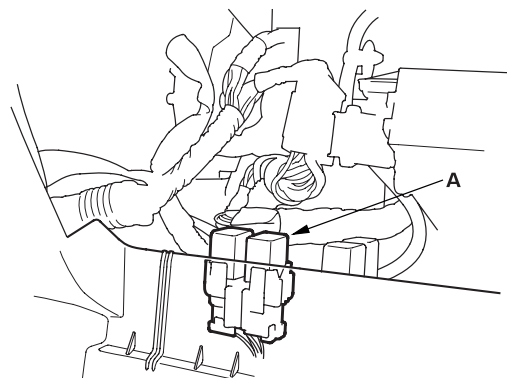
Is there battery voltage?

**Yes** Go to step 13.

**No** Go to step 10.

10. Remove the glove box (see page 20-95).

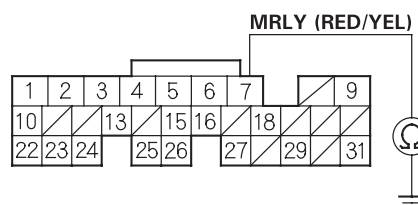
11. Remove the PGM-FI main relay 1 (A).



\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

12. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal E7 and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR E (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E7) and the PGM-FI main relay 1. ■

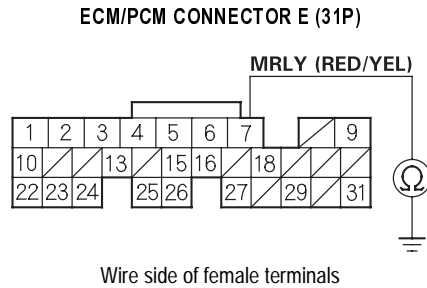
**No** Replace the PGM-FI main relay 1.

13. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
14. Reconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).
15. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

16. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal E7 and body ground.

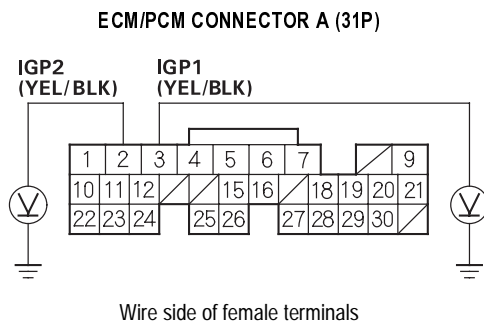


Is there battery voltage?

**Yes** Go to step 18.

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

17. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.  
 18. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).  
 19. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.  
 20. Measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminals A3 and A2 individually.

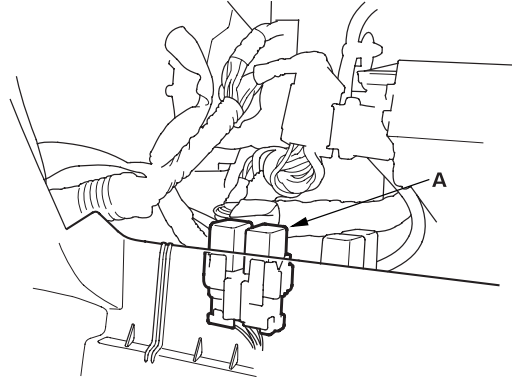


Is there battery voltage?

**Yes** Go to step 21.

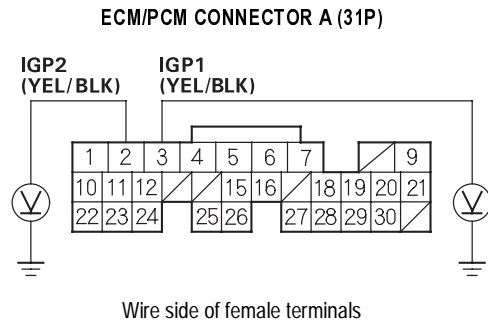
**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

21. Remove the glove box (see page 20-95).  
 22. Remove the PGM-FI main relay 1 (A).



\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

23. Measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminals A3 and A2 individually.



Is there battery voltage?

**Yes** Repair short to power in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A2, A3) and the PGM-FI main relay 1.■

**No** Replace the PGM-FI main relay 1.■





### DTC P1107 (13-1): BARO Sensor Circuit Low Voltage

### DTC P1108 (13-2): BARO Sensor Circuit High Voltage

1. Reset the ECM/PCM ([see page 11-4](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

*Is DTC P1107 or P1108 indicated?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck ([see page 11-5](#)). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

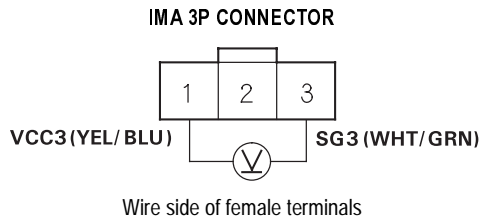
**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

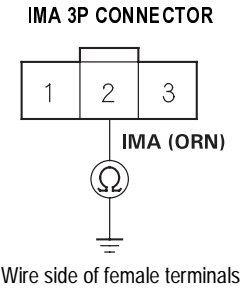
### DTC P1213 (11-1): IMA Circuit Low Voltage

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Start the engine, then let it idle for more than 5 seconds.  
*Is DTC P1213 indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 3.  
**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the IMA and at the ECM/PCM.■
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Disconnect the IMA 3P connector.
5. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
6. Measure voltage between IMA 3P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 3.



- Is there about 5 V?*
- Yes** Go to step 7.  
**No** Go to step 15.
7. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
  8. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
  9. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).

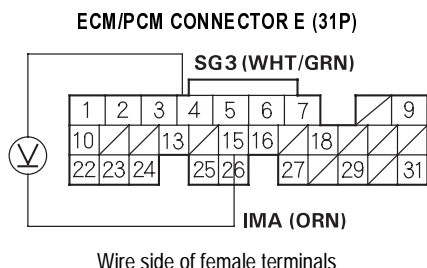
10. At the wire harness side, check for continuity between IMA 3P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.



- Is there continuity?*
- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E15) and the IMA.■  
**No** Go to step 11.
11. Reconnect the IMA 3P connector and ECM/PCM connector E (31P).
  12. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
  13. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).



14. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals E4 and E15.

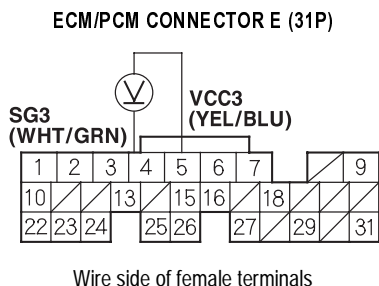


Is there about 0.5 - 4.5 V?

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away with a known-good ECM/PCM, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Replace the IMA.■

15. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals E4 and E5.



Is there about 5 V?

**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E5) and the IMA.■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away with a known-good ECM/PCM, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

#### DTC P1214 (11-2): IMA Circuit High Voltage

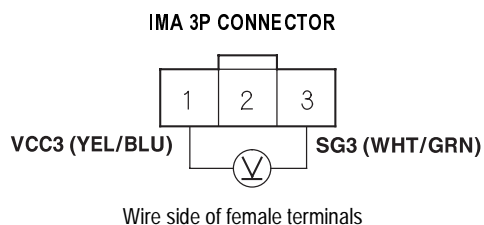
1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Start the engine, then let it idle for more than 5 seconds.

Is DTC P1214 indicated?

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the IMA and at the ECM/PCM.■

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Disconnect the IMA 3P connector.
5. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
6. Measure voltage between IMA 3P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 3.



Is there about 5 V?

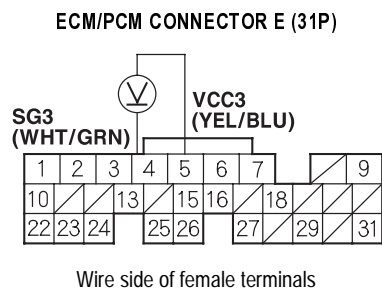
**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Go to step 7.

(cont'd)

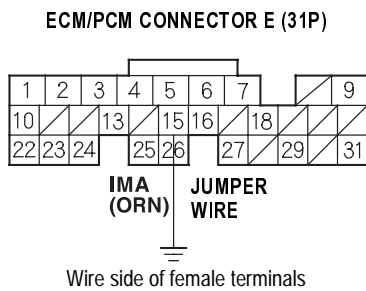
DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

7. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals E4 and E5.

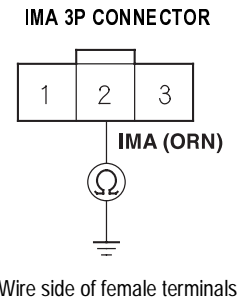


Is there about 5 V?

- Yes** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E4) and the IMA.■
- No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away with a known-good ECM/PCM, replace the original ECM/PCM.■
8. Connect ECM/PCM connector terminal E15 and body ground with a jumper wire.



9. At the wire harness side, check for continuity between IMA 3P connector terminals No. 2 and body ground.



Is there continuity?

- Yes** Replace the IMA.■
- No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E15) and the IMA.■



## DTC P1297 (20-1): ELD Circuit Low Voltage

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).

2. Start the engine.

3. Turn on the headlights.

*Is DTC P1297 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

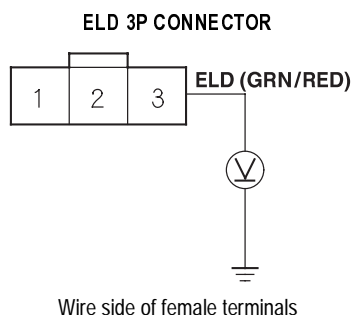
**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the ELD and at the ECM/PCM.■

4. Turn the ignition switch and the headlights OFF.

5. Disconnect the ELD 3P connector.

6. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

7. Measure voltage between body ground and ELD 3P connector terminal No. 3.



*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Replace the ELD.■

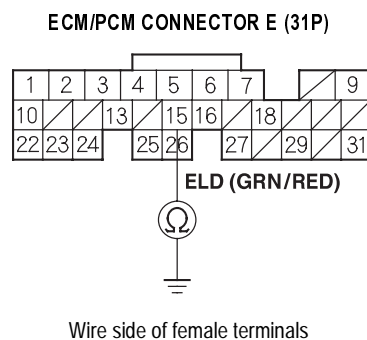
**No** Go to step 8.

8. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

9. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

10. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).

11. Check for continuity between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal E15.



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E15) and the ELD.■

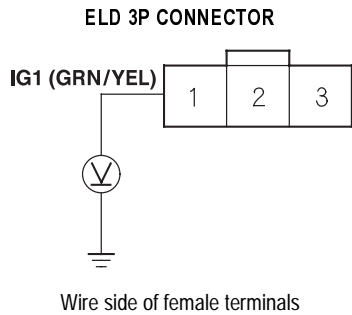
**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

DTC P1298 (20-2): ELD Circuit High Voltage

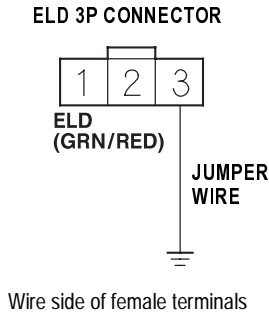
- 1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
- 2. Start the engine.
- 3. Turn on the headlights.  
*Is DTC P1298 indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 4.  
**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the ELD and at the ECM/PCM.■
- 4. Turn the ignition switch and headlights OFF.
- 5. Disconnect the ELD 3P connector.
- 6. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
- 7. Measure voltage between body ground and ELD 3P connector terminal No. 1.



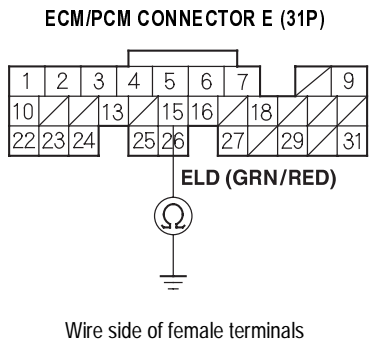
*Is there battery voltage?*

- Yes** Go to step 8.
- No** Check the No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box. If the fuse is OK, repair open in the wire between the No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse and the ELD.■

- 8. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- 9. Connect ELD 3P connector terminal No. 3 to body ground with a jumper wire.



- 10. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).
- 11. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
- 12. Check for continuity between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal E15.



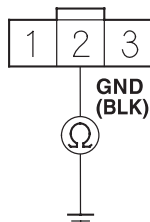
*Is there continuity?*

- Yes** Go to step 13.
- No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E15) and the ELD.



13. Check for continuity between ELD 3P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.

ELD 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

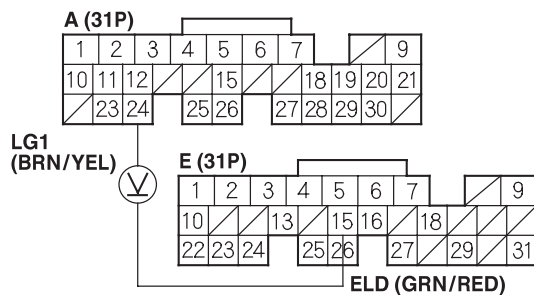
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 14.

**No** Repair open in the wire between ELD and G201.■

14. Reconnect the ELD 3P connector and ECM/PCM connector E (31P).
15. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
16. Start the engine and let it idle.
17. While measuring voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A24 and E15, turn the headlights on (high).

ECM/PCM CONNECTORS



Wire side of female terminals

*Does the voltage drop?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck ([see page 11-5](#)). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Replace the ELD.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC P1361 (8-2): TDC Sensor Intermittent Interruption

#### DTC P1362 (8-1): TDC Sensor No Signal

1. Reset the ECM/PCM ([see page 11-4](#)).

2. Start the engine.

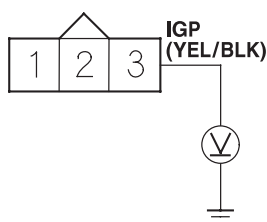
*Is DTC P1361 and/or P1362 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the TDC sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Disconnect the TDC sensor 3P connector.
5. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
6. Measure voltage between TDC sensor 3P connector terminal No. 3 and body ground.

TDC SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

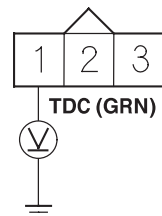
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 7.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the PGM-FI main relay 1 and the TDC sensor.■

7. Measure voltage between TDC sensor 3P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

TDC SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

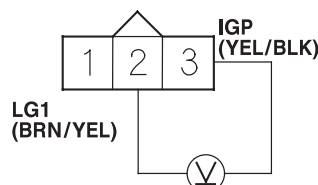
*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Go to step 10.

8. Measure voltage between TDC sensor 3P connector terminals No. 2 and No. 3.

TDC SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Repair open in the BRN/YEL wire between the TDC sensor and G101.■

9. Substitute a known-good TDC sensor and recheck.

*Is DTC P1361 and/or P1362 indicated?*

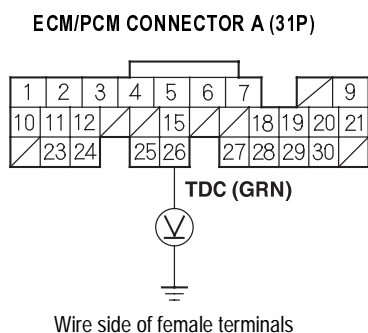
**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck ([see page 11-5](#)). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Replace the original TDC sensor.■





10. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal A26 and body ground.

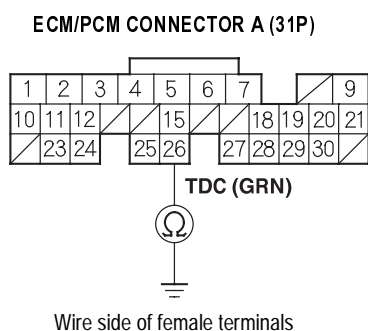


Is there about 5 V?

**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A26) and TDC sensor.■

**No** Go to step 11.

11. Turn the ignition switch OFF.  
 12. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.  
 13. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).  
 14. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal A26 and body ground.



Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A26) and the TDC sensor.■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

#### DTC P1607 (0-2): Malfunction in ECM/PCM Internal Circuit

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
3. Wait 40 seconds.

Is DTC P1607 indicated?

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time.■

## MIL Circuit Troubleshooting

1. Connect a scan tool/Honda PGM Tester ([see page 11-3](#)).

2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II) and read the scan tool/Honda PGM Tester.

*Does the the scan tool/Honda PGM Tester communicate with the ECM/PCM?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Go to troubleshooting "DLC circuit" ([see page 11-114](#)).

3. Check the scan tool/Honda PGM Tester for DTCs.  
*Are any DTCs indicated?*

**Yes** Go to the DTC Troubleshooting Index.

**No** Go to step 4.

4. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

5. Turn the ignition switch ON (II) and watch the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL).

*Does the MIL come on and stay on?*

**Yes** If the MIL always come on and stays on, go to step 77. But if the MIL sometimes works normally, first check for these problems:

- An intermittent short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E29) and the Data Link Connector (DLC).
- An intermittent short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E31) and the gauge assembly.

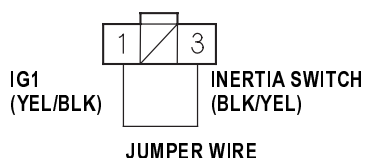
**No** If the MIL is always off, go to step 6. But if the MIL sometimes works normally, first check for these problems:

- A loose No. 10 METER (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.
- A loose No. 20 IG (50A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- A loose No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- A loose No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.
- A poor connection at ECM/PCM terminal E31.
- An intermittent open in the GRN/WHT wire between the ECM/PCM (E31) and the gauge assembly.
- An intermittent short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A21) and the manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor, countershaft speed sensor (A/T).
- An intermittent short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A20) and the throttle position (TP) sensor, mainshaft speed sensor (A/T).
- An intermittent short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E5) and the idle mixture adjuster (IMA) (without TWC).



6. KG, KS, KE, KR models:  
Turn the ignition switch OFF and press the inertia switch button.
7. KG, KS, KE, KR models:  
Turn the ignition switch ON (II).  
*Does the MIL come on for 2 seconds after the ignition switch is turned ON (II)?*  
**Yes** Intermittent failure system is OK at this time.■  
**No** Go to step 8.
8. KG, KS, KE, KR models:  
Turn the ignition switch OFF and disconnect the inertia switch 3P connector.
9. KG, KS, KE, KR models:  
Connect inertia switch 3P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 3 with a jumper wire.

INERTIA SWITCH 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

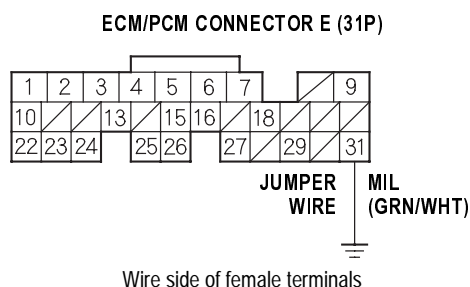
10. KG, KS, KE, KR models:  
Turn the ignition switch ON(II).  
*Does the MIL come on for 2 seconds after the ignition switch is turned ON (II)?*  
**Yes** Replace the inertia switch.■  
**No** Go to step 11.

11. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
12. Turn the ignition switch ON(II).  
*Is the low oil pressure light on?*  
**Yes** Go to step 15.  
**No** Go to step 13.
13. Inspect the No. 10 METER (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.  
*Is the fuse OK?*  
**Yes** Go to step 14.  
**No** Repair short in the wire between No. 10 METER (7.5A) fuse and the gauge assembly. Also replace the No. 10 METER (7.5A) fuse.■
14. Inspect the No. 20 IG1 (50A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.  
*Is the fuse OK?*  
**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the No. 20 IG (50A) fuse and the gauge assembly. If the wires are OK, test the ignition switch ([see page 22A-63](#)).■  
**No** Repair short in the wire between the No. 20 IG (50A) fuse and the under-hood fuse/relay box. Also replace the No. 20 IG (50A) fuse.■
15. Try to start the engine.  
*Does the engine start?*  
**Yes** Go to step 16.  
**No** Go to step 18.

(cont'd)

## MIL Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

16. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Connect ECM/PCM connector terminal E31 to body ground with a jumper wire.



17. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

*Is the MIL on?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Check for an open in the wires between the ECM/PCM (E31) and the gauge assembly. Also check for a blown MIL bulb. If the wires and the bulb are OK, replace the gauge assembly.■

18. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

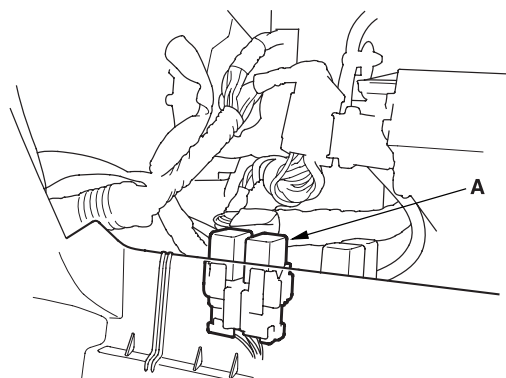
19. Remove and inspect the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 25.

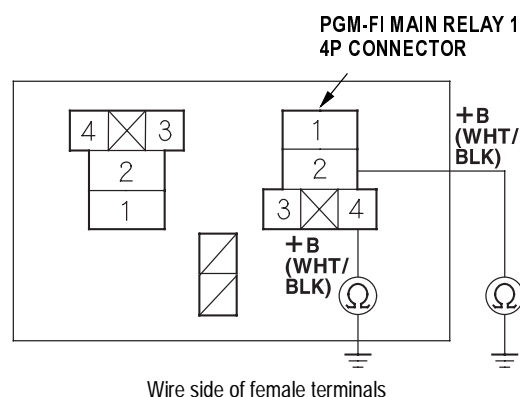
**No** Go to step 20.

20. Remove the glove box (see page 20-95), PGM-FI main relay 1 (A).



\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

21. Check for continuity between body ground and PGM-FI main relay 1 4P connector terminals No. 2 and No. 4 individually.



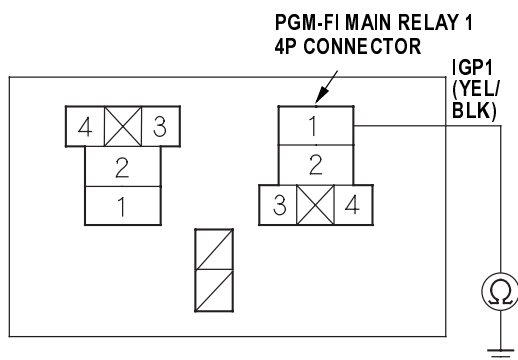
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse and the PGM-FI main relay 1. Also replace the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse.■

**No** Go to step 22.

- 22.** Disconnect each of the component or the connector sensors below, one at a time, and check for continuity between the PGM-FI main relay 1 4P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

- PGM-FI main relay 2
- ECM/PCM connector A (31P)
- Each injector 2P connector
- Idle air control (IAC) valve 3P connector
- Top dead center (TDC) sensor 2P connector
- Crankshaft position (CKP) sensor 3P connector



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

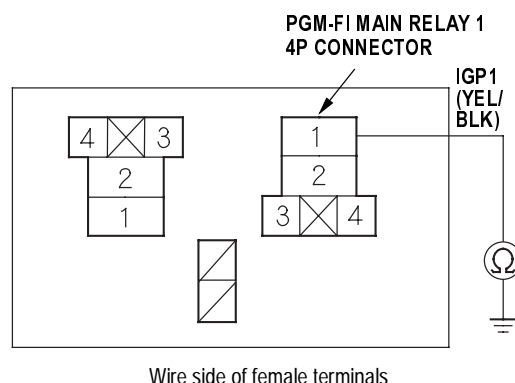
**Yes** Go to step 23.

**No** Replace the item that made continuity to body ground go away when disconnected. If the item is the ECM/PCM, substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM. Also replace the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse.■

- 23.** Disconnect the connectors of all following items.

- PGM-FI main relay 2
- ECM/PCM connector A (31P)
- Injectors
- Idle air control (IAC) valve
- Top dead center (TDC) sensor
- Crankshaft position (CKP) sensor

- 24.** Check for continuity between PGM-FI main relay 1 4P connector terminals No. 1 and body ground.



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between PGM-FI main relay 1 and each item. Also replace the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse.■

**No** Replace the PGM-FI main relay 1. Also replace the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse.■

- 25.** Remove and inspect the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 36.

**No** Go to step 26.

- 26.** Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

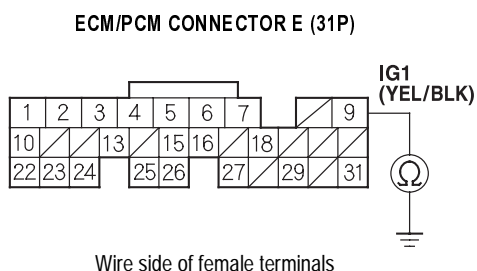
- 27.** Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).

(cont'd)



## MIL Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

28. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal E9 and body ground.

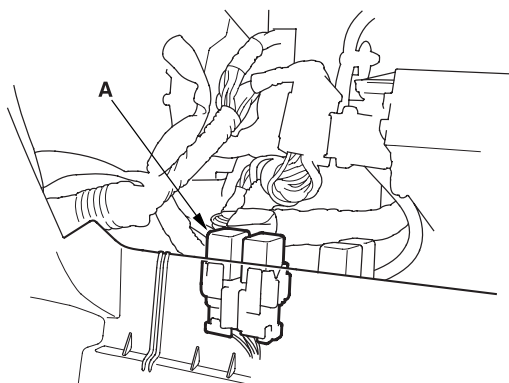


*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 29.

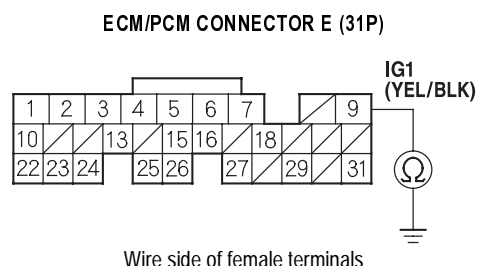
**No** Replace the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse, and substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

29. Remove the glove box (see page 20-95), PGM-FI main relay 2 (A).



\*: The illustration shows LHD model

30. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal E9 and body ground.



*Is there continuity?*

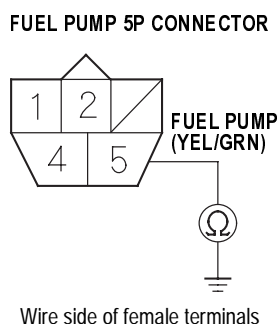
**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse and the ECM/PCM (E9), or the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse and the PGM-FI main relay 2. Also replace the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse.■

**No** Go to step 31.

31. Fold the rear seats forward, and pull back the carpet to expose the access panel.
32. Remove the access panel from the floor. Disconnect the fuel pump 5P connector.



33. Check for continuity between fuel pump 5P connector terminal No. 5 and body ground.

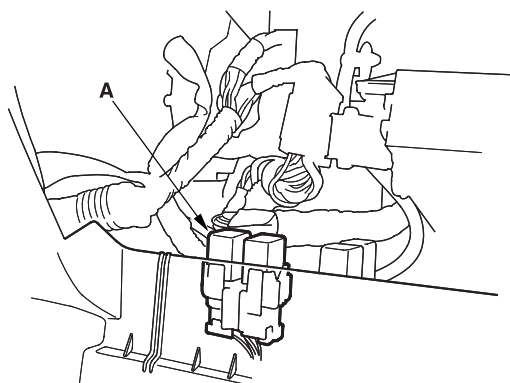


*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the fuel pump and the PGM-FI main relay 2. Also replace the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse.■

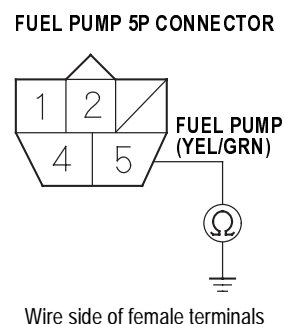
**No** Go to step 34.

34. Reinstall PGM-FI main relay 2 (A).



\*: The illustration shows LHD model

35. Check for continuity between fuel pump 5P connector terminal No. 5 and body ground.



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Replace PGM-FI main relay 2. Also replace the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse.■

**No** Check the fuel pump, and replace it if necessary. Also replace the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse.■

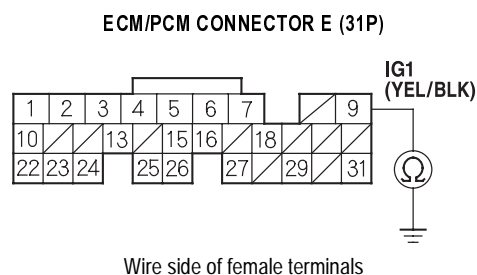
36. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

37. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).

38. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.

39. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

40. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals E9 and body ground.



*Is there battery voltage?*

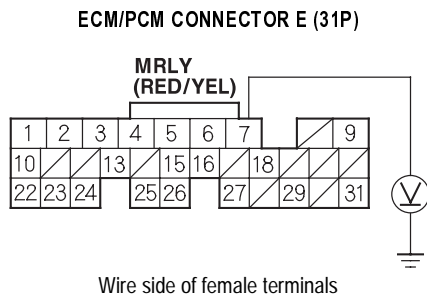
**Yes** Go to step 41.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse and the ECM/PCM (E9).■

(cont'd)

## MIL Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

41. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal E7 and body ground.

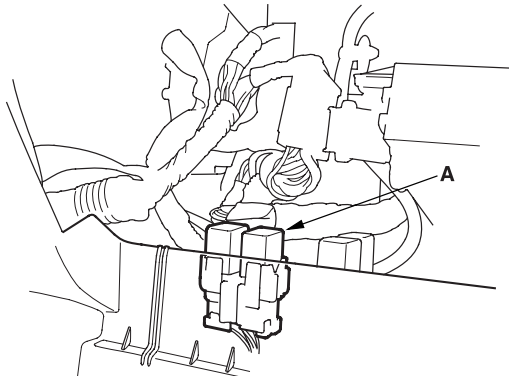


Is there battery voltage?

**Yes** Go to step 45.

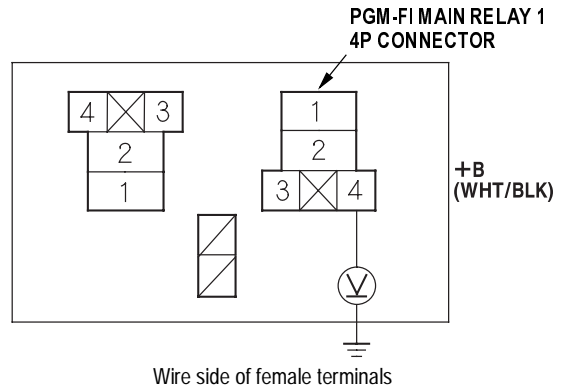
**No** Go to step 42.

42. Turn the ignition switch OFF and remove PGM-FI main relay 1 (A).



\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

43. Measure voltage between PGM-FI main relay 1 4P connector terminal No. 4 and body ground.

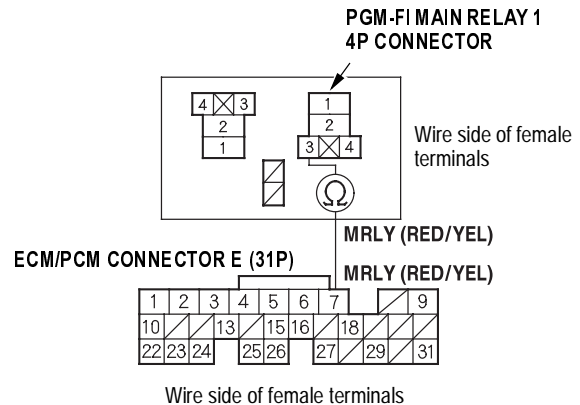


Is there battery voltage?

**Yes** Go to step 44.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse and PGM-FI main relay 1.■

44. Check for continuity between PGM-FI main relay 1 4P connector terminal No. 3 and ECM/PCM connector terminal E7.



Is there continuity?

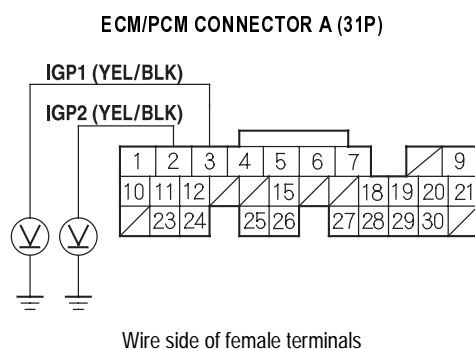
**Yes** Test PGM-FI main relay 1 (see page 22A-60). If the relay is OK, substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between PGM-FI main relay 1 and the ECM/PCM (E7).■





45. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
46. Reconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).
47. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
48. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
49. Measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminals A2 and A3 individually.

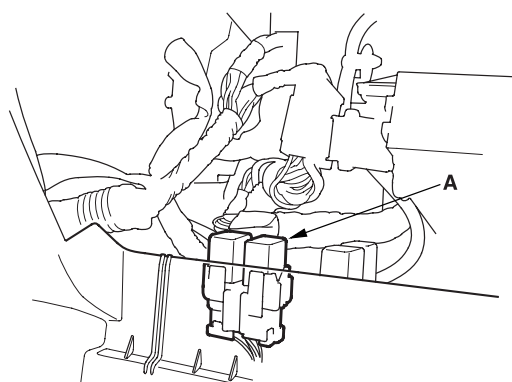


*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 55.

**No** Go to step 50.

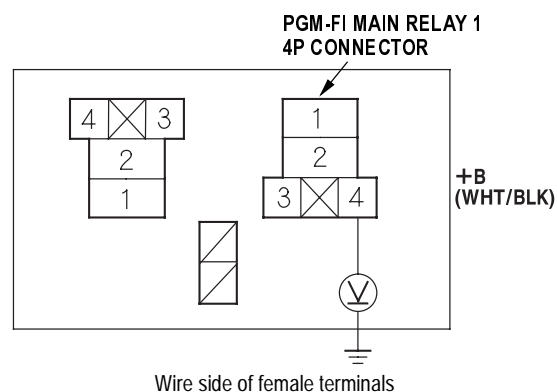
50. Turn the ignition switch OFF and remove PGM-FI main relay 1 (A).



\*: The illustration shows LHD model

51. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

52. Measure voltage between PGM-FI main relay 1 4P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.



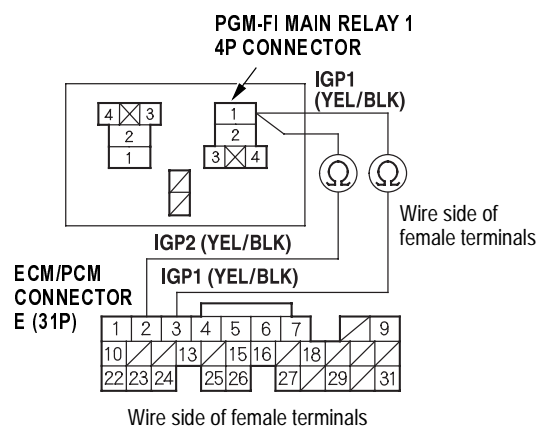
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 53.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse and PGM-FI main relay 1.■

53. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

54. Check for continuity between PGM-FI main relay 1 4P connector terminal No. 1 and ECM/PCM connector terminals A2 and A3 individually.



*Is there continuity?*

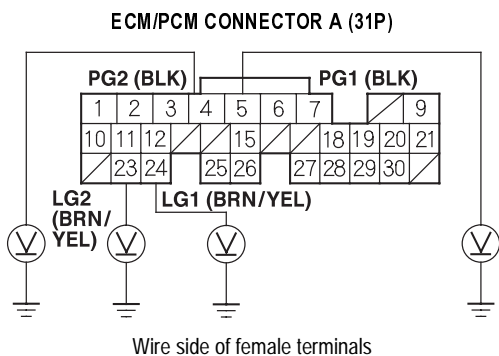
**Yes** Replace the PGM-FI main relay 1.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between PGM-FI main relay 1 and the ECM/PCM (A2, A3).■

(cont'd)

MIL Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

55. Measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminals A4, A5, A23 and A24 individually.

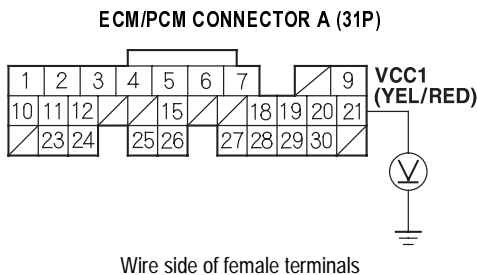


Is there less than 0.2 V?

**Yes** Repair open in the wire(s) that had more than 0.2 V between G101 and ECM/PCM (A4, A5, A23, A24).■

**No** Go to step 56.

56. Measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminals A21.



Is there about 5 V?

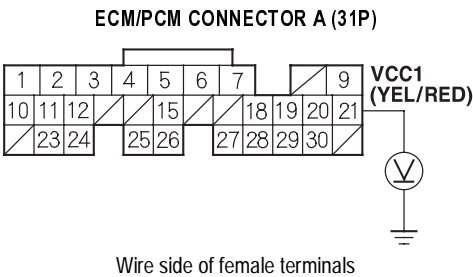
**Yes** Go to step 63.

**No** Go to step 57.

57. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

58. Disconnect the 3P connector from each of these sensors, one at a time, and measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal A21 with the ignition switch ON (II).

- Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor
- Countershaft speed sensor (A/T)



Is there about 5 V?

**Yes** Replace the sensor that restored 5 V when disconnected.■

**No** Go to step 59.

59. Turn the ignition switch OFF and disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

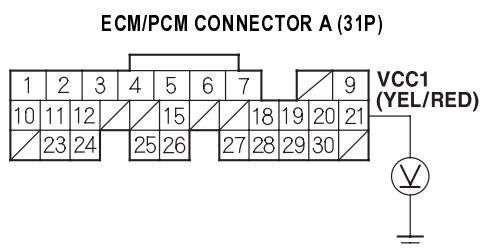
60. Disconnect the 3P connectors from the following sensors.

- Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor
- Countershaft speed sensor (A/T)

61. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).



62. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal A21 and body ground.

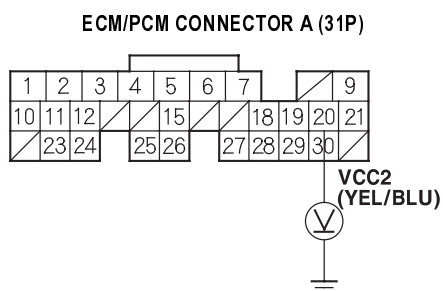


*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between ECM/PCM (A21) and the MAP sensor, countershaft speed sensor (A/T).■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

63. Measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminals A20.



*Is there about 5 V?*

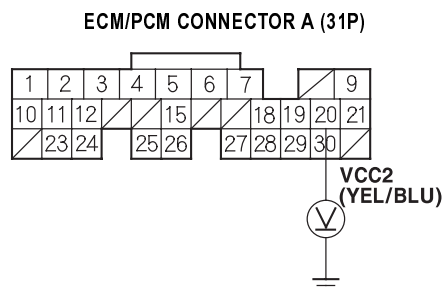
**Yes** Go to step 70.

**No** Go to step 64.

64. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

65. Disconnect the 3P connector from each of these sensors, one at a time, and measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal A20 with the ignition switch ON (II).

- Throttle position (TP) sensor
- Mainshaft speed sensor (A/T)



*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Replace the sensor that restored 5 V when disconnected.■

**No** Go to step 66.

66. Turn the ignition switch OFF and disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

67. Disconnect the 3P connector from the following sensors.

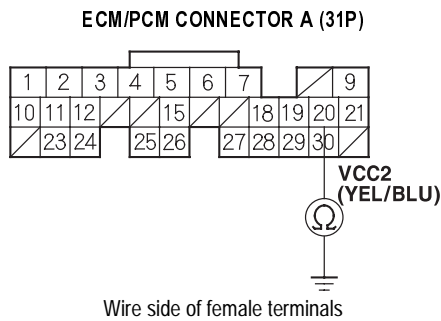
- Throttle position (TP) sensor
- Mainshaft speed sensor (A/T)

68. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).

(cont'd)

## MIL Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

69. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal A20 and body ground.

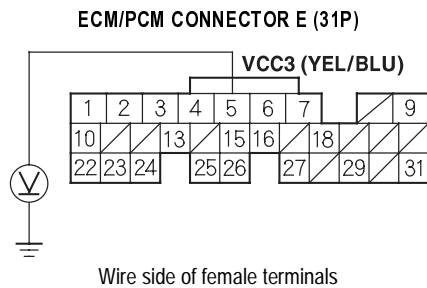


Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A20) and the TP sensor, mainshaft speed sensor (A/T).■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

70. Measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminals E5.



Is there about 5 V?

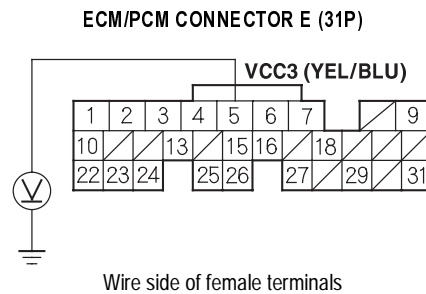
**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Go to step 71.

71. Turn the ignition switch OFF and disconnect the idle mixture adjuster (IMA) 3P connector.

72. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

73. Measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal E5.



Is there about 5 V?

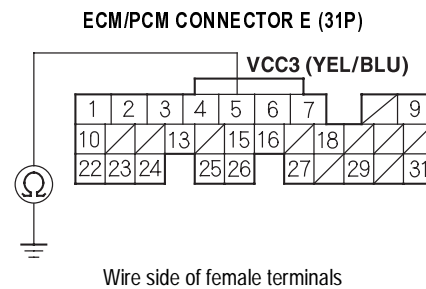
**Yes** Replace the IMA.■

**No** Go to step 74.

74. Turn the ignition switch OFF and disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

75. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).

76. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal E5 and body ground.



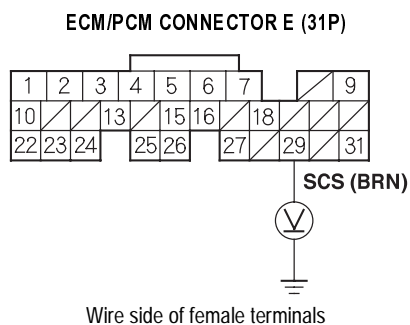
Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between ECM/PCM (E5) and the IMA.■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■



77. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
78. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
79. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal E29 and body ground.



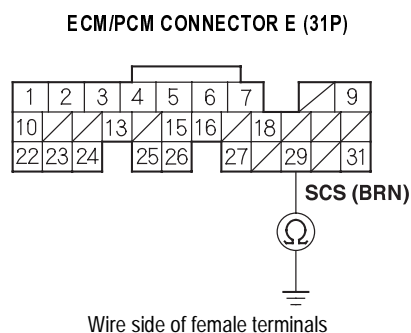
*Is there about 5 V (or battery voltage)?*

**Yes** Go to step 83.

**No** Go to step 80.

80. Turn the ignition switch OFF and disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
81. Disconnect the ECM/PCM connector E (31P).

82. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal E29 and body ground.



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the data link connector and the ECM/PCM (E29).■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck ([see page 11-5](#)). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

83. Turn the ignition switch OFF and disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
84. Disconnect the ECM/PCM connector E (31P).
85. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
86. Turn the ignition ON (II).

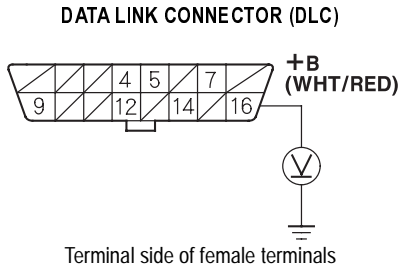
*Is the MIL ON?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the gauge assembly and the ECM/PCM (E31). If the wires are OK, replace the gauge assembly.■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck ([see page 11-5](#)). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

## DLC Circuit Troubleshooting

1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
2. Measure voltage between data link connector (DLC) terminal No. 16 and body ground.

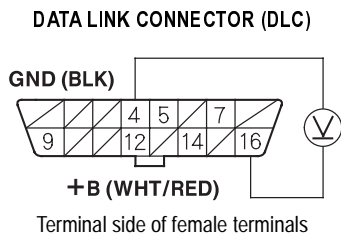


*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Repair open in the wire between DLC terminal No. 16 and the No. 9 BACK UP (10A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.■

3. Measure voltage between DLC terminals No. 4 and No. 16.

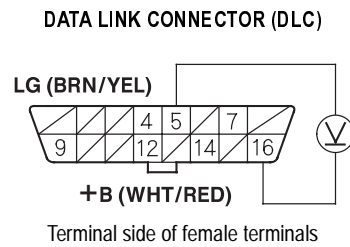


*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Repair open in the wire between DLC terminal No. 4 and body ground.■

4. Measure voltage between DLC terminals No. 5 and No. 16.

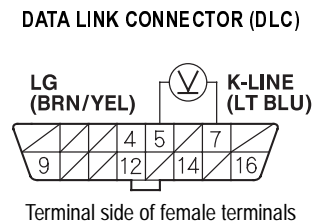


*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Repair open in the wire between DLC terminal No. 5 and the ECM/PCM (E3).■

5. Measure voltage between DLC terminals No. 5 and No. 7.



*Is there 8.5 V or more?*

**Yes** Go to step 11.

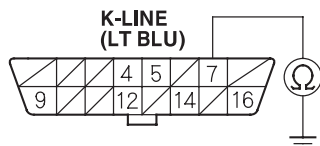
**No** Go to step 6.

6. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
7. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.



8. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P). Make sure the Honda PGM Tester is disconnected from the DLC.
9. Check for continuity between DLC terminal No. 7 and body ground.

DATA LINK CONNECTOR (DLC)



Terminal side of female terminals

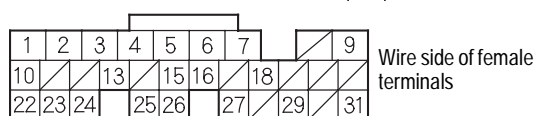
Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short to ground in the wire between DLC terminal No. 7 and the ECM/PCM (E23).■

**No** Go to step 10.

10. Check for continuity between DLC terminal No. 7 and ECM/PCM terminal E23.

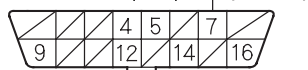
ECM/PCM CONNECTOR E (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

K-LINE (LT BLU)

DATA LINK CONNECTOR (DLC)



Terminal side of female terminals

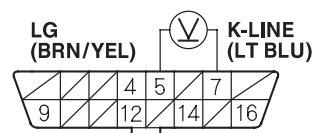
Is there continuity?

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM, and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away with a known-good ECM/PCM, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between DLC terminal No. 7 and the ECM/PCM (E23).■

11. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
12. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
13. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P). Make sure the Honda PGM Tester is disconnected from the DLC.
14. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
15. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
16. Measure voltage between DLC terminals No. 5 and No. 7.

DATA LINK CONNECTOR (DLC)



Terminal side of female terminals

Is there 0 V?

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM, and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away with a known-good ECM/PCM, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Repair short to power in the wire between the DLC terminal No. 7 and the ECM/PCM (E23).■

## Injector Test

NOTE: Check the following items before testing: idle speed, ignition timing and idle CO%.

1. Try to start the engine.

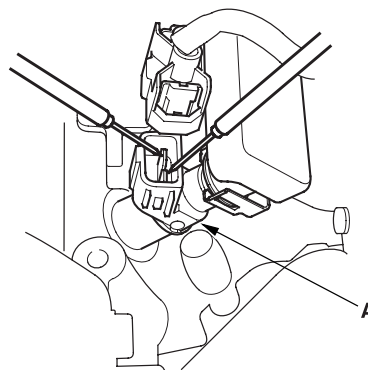
*Does the engine start?*

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Go to step 6.

2. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Remove the engine cover.
3. Disconnect each injector connector individually.
4. Inspect the change in the idle speed.
  - If the idle speed drop is almost the same for each cylinder, the fuel injectors are normal.
  - If the idle speed or quality remains the same when you disconnect a particular injector, replace the injector and retest ([see page 11-117](#)).
5. Check the clicking sound of each injector by means of a stethoscope when the engine is idling.
  - If any fuel injector fails to make the typical clicking sound, check the sound again after replacing the injector ([see page 11-117](#)).
  - If clicking sound is still absent, check the following.
    - Whether there is wire breakage or poor connection in the YEL/BLK wire between the PGM-FI main relay and the junction connector.
    - Whether the junction connector is open or corroded.
    - Whether there is wire breakage or poor connection in the YEL/BLK wire between the junction connector and the injector.
    - Whether there is any short-circuiting, wire breakage or poor connection in the wire between the injector and the ECM/PCM.
  - If all is OK, the test is complete.

6. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
7. Remove the engine cover.
8. Remove the injector connector.
9. Measure the resistance between injector (A) terminals No. 1 and No. 2.



*Is there 10 - 13  $\Omega$ ?*

**Yes** Go to step 10.

**No** Replace the injector ([see page 11-117](#)).■

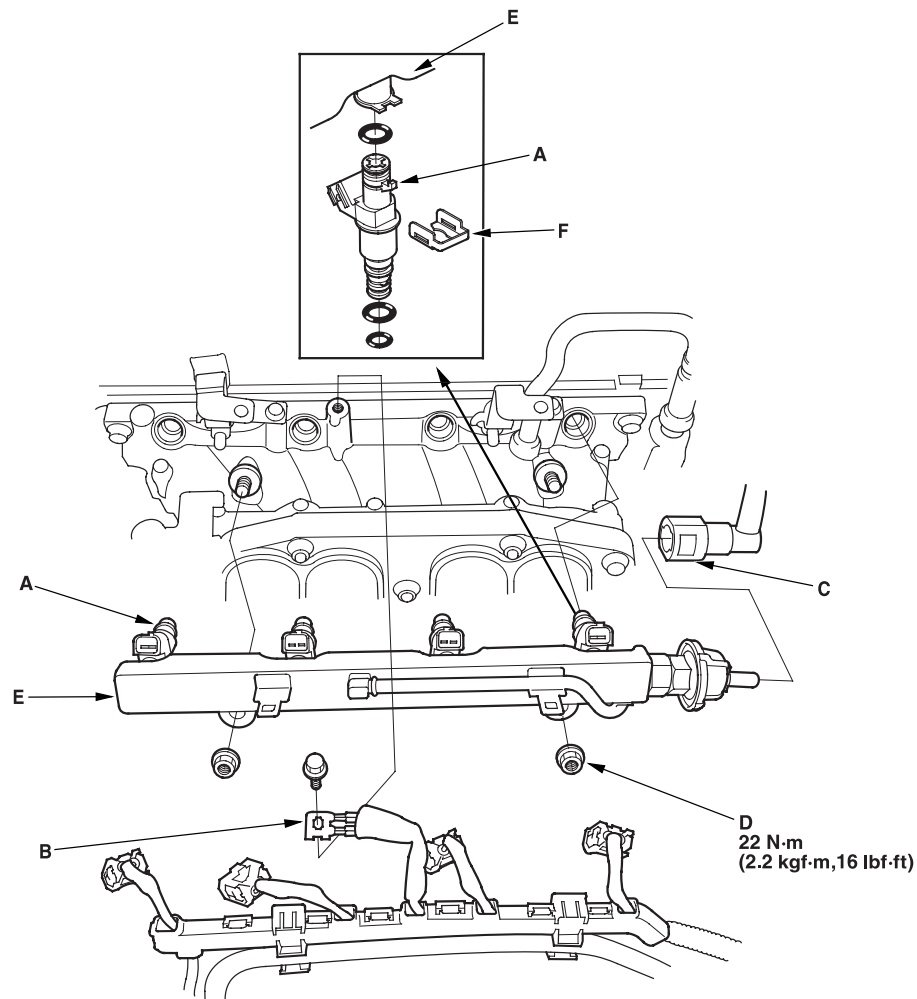
10. Check the fuel pressure ([see page 11-154](#)).
  - If the fuel pressure is as specified, check the following:
    - Whether there is wire breakage, or poor connection in the YEL/BLK wire between the PGM-FI main relay and the junction connector.
    - Whether the junction connector is open or corroded.
    - Whether there is wire breakage, or poor connection in the YEL/BLK wire between the junction connector and the injector.
    - Whether there is any short-circuiting, wire breakage or poor connection in the wire between the injector and the ECM/PCM.
  - If the fuel pressure is not as specified, recheck the fuel pressure ([see page 11-154](#)).





## Injector Replacement

1. Relieve fuel pressure ([see page 11-154](#)).
2. Disconnect the connectors from the injectors (A), ground cable (B).

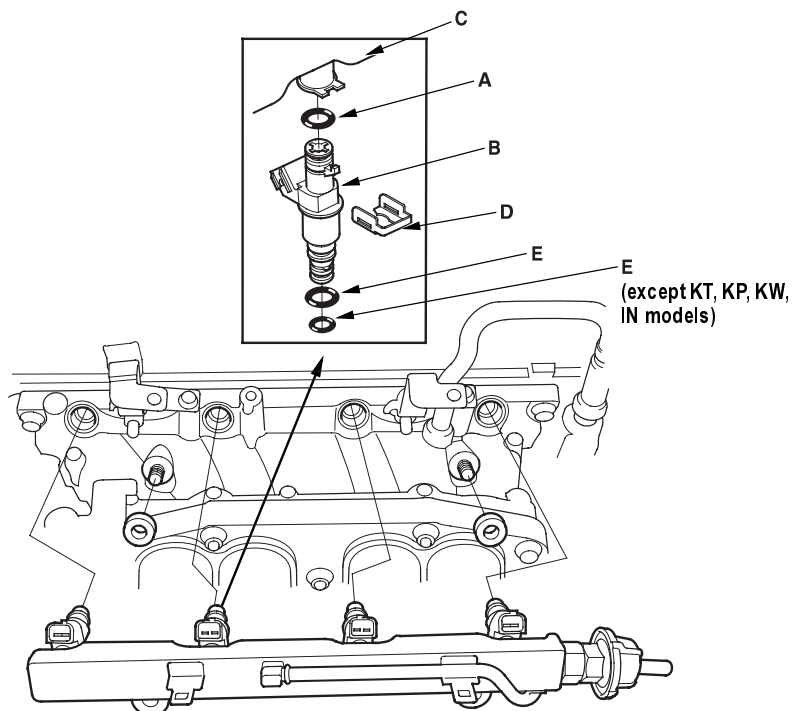


3. Disconnect the quick-connect fittings (C).
4. Remove the fuel rail mounting nuts (D) from the fuel rail (E).
5. Remove the injector clip (F) from the injector.
6. Remove the injector from the fuel rail.

(cont'd)

## Injector Replacement (cont'd)

7. Coat the new O-rings (A) with clean engine oil, and insert the injectors (B) into the fuel rail (C).



8. Install the injector clip (D).
9. Coat the injector O-ring (E) with clean engine oil.
10. To prevent damage to the O-rings, install the injectors in the fuel rail first, then install them in the injector base (F).
11. Install the fuel rail mounting nuts and ground cable.
12. Connect the connectors on the injectors.
13. Connect the quick-connect fittings.
14. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), but do not operate the starter. After the fuel pump runs for approximately 2 seconds, the fuel pressure in the fuel line rises. Repeat this two or three times, then check for fuel leakage.



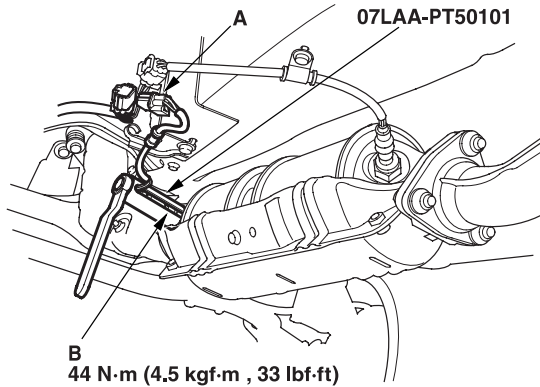
## Primary HO2S Replacement

### Special Tools Required

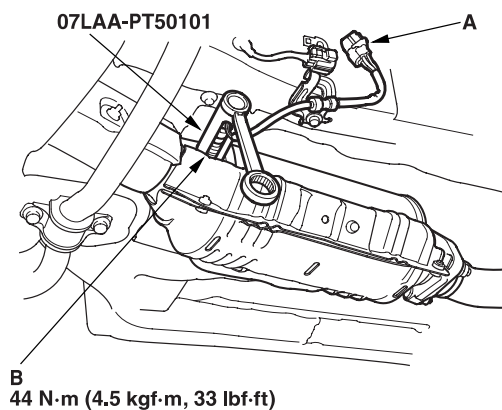
O2 sensor wrench 07LAA-PT50101

1. Disconnect the primary HO2S 4P connector (A), then remove the primary HO2S (B).

**KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ models:**



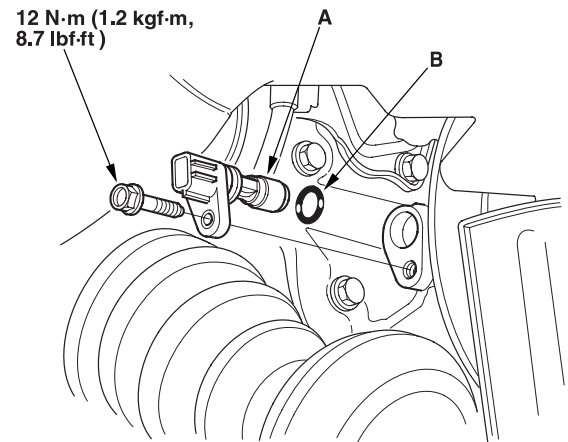
**KN, KM, KY, MA, PH, IN, KK models.**



2. Install the primary HO2S in the reverse order of removal.

## CKP Sensor Replacement

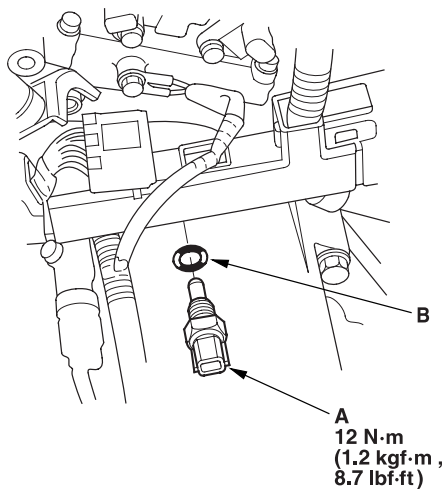
1. Disconnect the CKP 3P connector.
2. Remove the CKP sensor (A).



3. Install the part in the reverse order of removal with a new O-ring (B).

## ECT Sensor Replacement

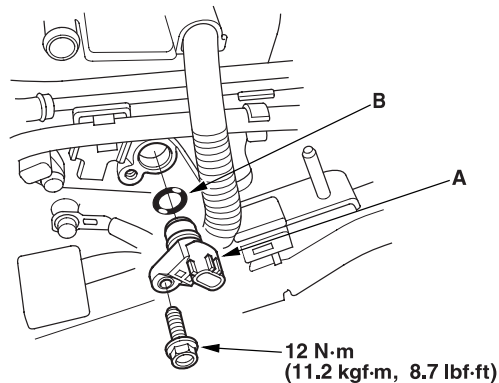
1. Remove the air cleaner ([see page 11-182](#)).
2. Disconnect the ECT sensor 2P connector.
3. Remove the ECT sensor (A).



4. Install the part in the reverse order of removal with a new O-ring (B).

## TDC Sensor Replacement

1. Remove the air cleaner ([see page 11-182](#)).
2. Disconnect the TDC sensor 3P connector.
3. Remove the TDC sensor (A).

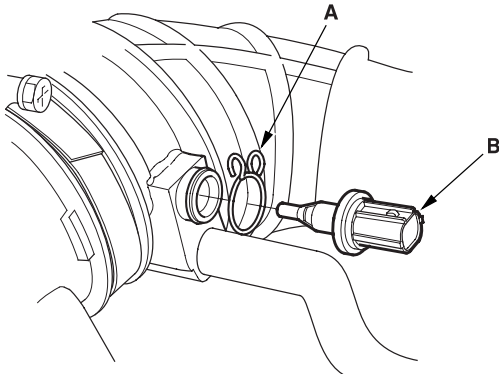


4. Install the part in the reverse order of removal with a new O-ring (B).



### IAT Sensor Replacement

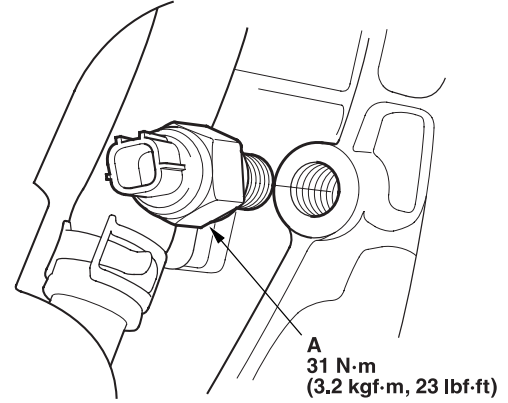
1. Disconnect the IAT sensor 2P connector.
2. Remove the clip (A) and the IAT sensor (B).



3. Install the part in the reverse order of removal.

### Knock Sensor Replacement

1. Remove the splash shield.
2. Disconnect the knock sensor 1P connector.
3. Remove the knock sensor (A).



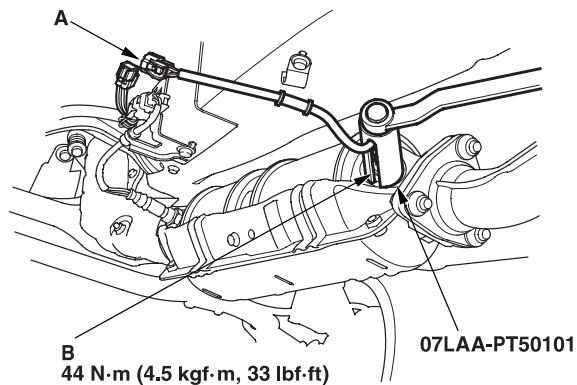
4. Install the part in the reverse order of removal.

## Secondary HO2S Replacement

### Special Tools Required

O2 sensor wrench 07LAA-PT50101

1. Disconnect the secondary HO2S 4P connector (A), then remove the secondary HO2S (B).

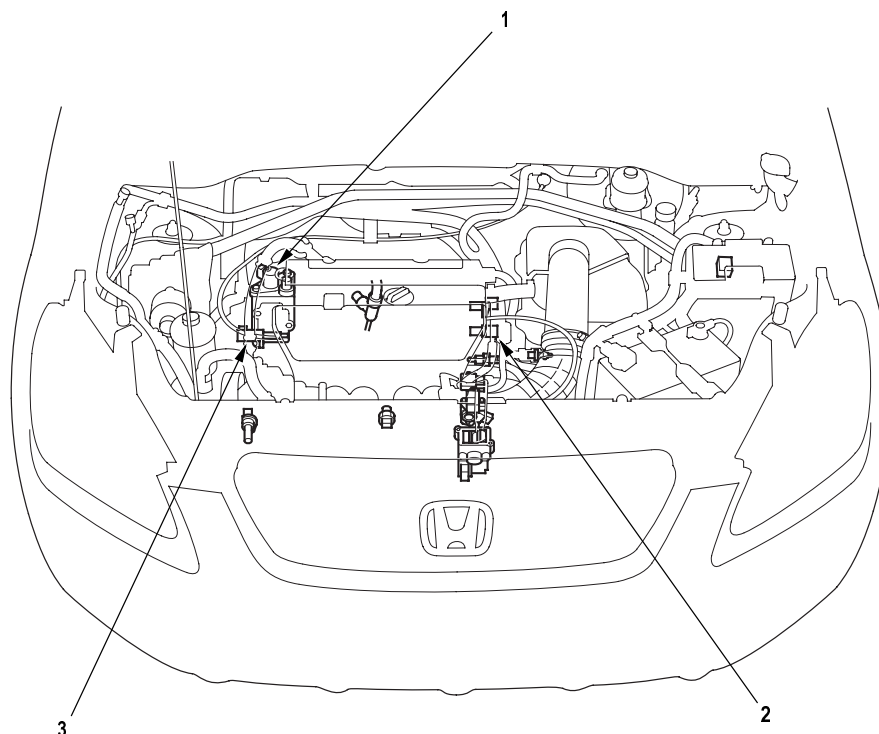


2. Install the secondary HO2S in the reverse order of removal.



## VTEC/VTC

### Component Location Index



- |   |                                |  |
|---|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 | VTEC SOLENOID VALVE            | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-130</a> ; Removal/Inspection, <a href="#">page 11-138</a> |
| 2 | CAMSHAFT POSITION (CMP) SENSOR | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-128</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-138</a>        |
| 3 | VTC OIL CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-124</a> ; Test, <a href="#">page 11-137</a>               |

\*: The illustration shows LHD model

DTC Troubleshooting

DTC P0010 (56-1): VTC Oil Control Solenoid Valve Malfunction

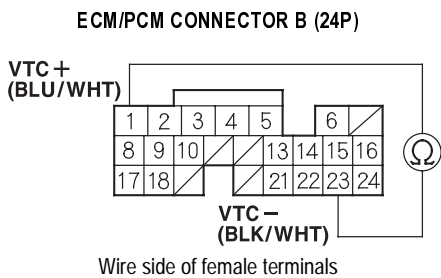
- 1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
- 2. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm with no load (in park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.
- 3. Test-drive at a steady speed between 30-60 km/h (20-40 mph) for 10 minutes.

Is DTC P0010 indicated?

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the VTC oil control solenoid valve and at the ECM/PCM.■

- 4. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- 5. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
- 6. Disconnect the ECM/PCM connector B (24P).
- 7. Measure resistance between ECM/PCM connector terminal B1 and B23.



Is there 6.75 - 8.25 Ω?

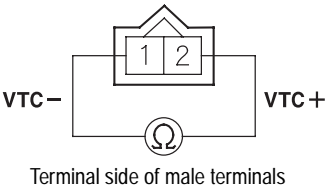
**Yes** Go to step 12.

**No** Go to step 8.

- 8. Disconnect the VTC oil control solenoid valve 2P connector.

- 9. Measure resistance between VTC oil control solenoid valve 2P terminal No. 1 and No. 2.

VTC OIL CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE 2P CONNECTOR



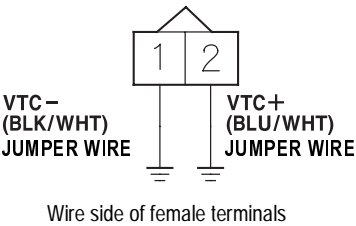
Is there 6.75 - 8.25 Ω?

**Yes** Go to step 10.

**No** Replace the VTC oil control solenoid valve (see page 11-137).■

- 10. Connect VTC oil control solenoid valve 2P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2 to body ground with a jumper wire individually.

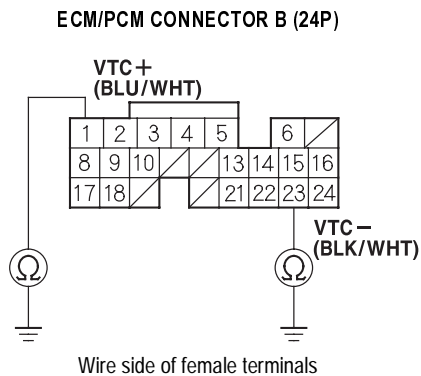
VTC OIL CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE 2P CONNECTOR







11. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminals B1, B23, and body ground.

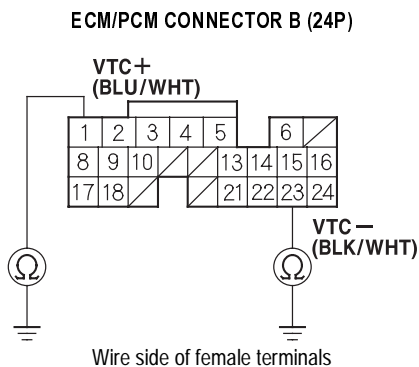


*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 12.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (B1, B23) and the VTC oil control solenoid valve.■

12. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminals B1 and B23 and body ground individually.



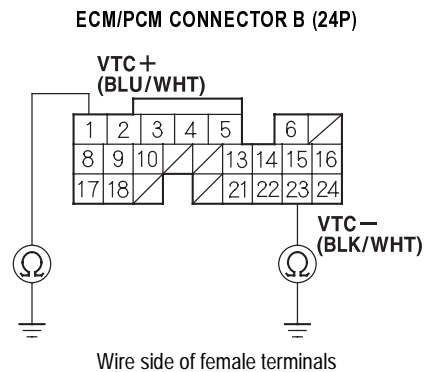
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 13.

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away with a known-good ECM/PCM, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

13. Disconnect the VTC oil control solenoid valve 2P connector.

14. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminals B1 and B23 and body ground individually.



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (B1, B23) and the VTC oil control solenoid valve.■

**No** Replace the VTC oil control solenoid valve (see page 11-137).■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC P0011 (56-2): VTC System Malfunction

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on.
3. Test-drive at a steady speed between 30 - 60 km/h (20 - 40 mph) for 10 minutes.
4. Check for Temporary DTC with the scan tool.  
*Is Temporary DTC P0011 indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 5.  
**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the VTC oil control solenoid valve and at the ECM/PCM.■
5. Watch the low oil pressure light.  
*Is the low oil pressure light on?*  
**Yes** Check the oil pressure (see page 08-4).■  
**No** Go to step 6.
6. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
7. Remove the auto-tensioner (see page 04-31).
8. Remove the VTC strainer. Check the VTC strainer for clogging.  
*Is the strainer OK?*  
**Yes** Go to step 9.  
**No** Clean the VTC strainer, then replace the engine oil filter and the engine oil.

9. Check the VTC oil control solenoid valve (see page 11-137).

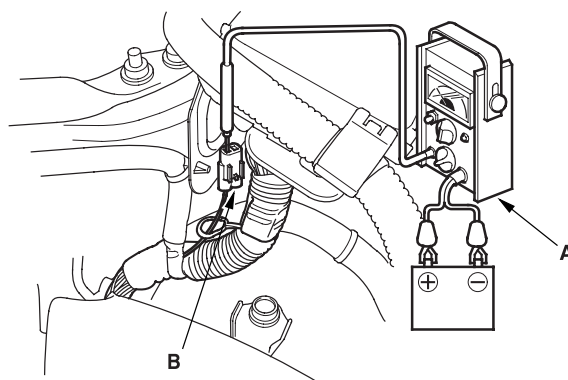
*Is the VTC oil control solenoid valve OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 10.

**No** Clean the ports of the VTC oil control solenoid valve, or replace the VTC oil control solenoid valve.■

10. Install the VTC oil control solenoid valve.

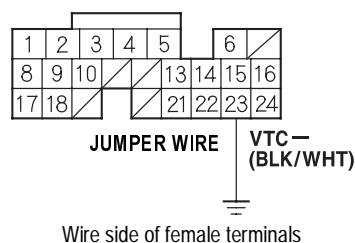
11. Connect a tachometer (A) to the test tachometer connector (B).



12. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 700 - 1,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ).

13. Connect the ECM/PCM connector terminal B23 to body ground with a jumper wire.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR B (24P)

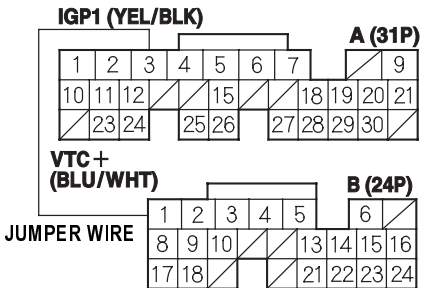




14. Connect the ECM/PCM connector terminal A3 and B1 with a jumper wire for below 1 minute.

NOTE: Do not jump for above 1 minute.

ECM/PCM CONNECTORS



Wire side of female terminals

Did the engine stall or run rough?

**Yes** Test-drive at a steady speed between 30 - 60 km/h (19 - 37 mph) for 10 minutes. If temporary DTC P0011 is indicated, substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5), replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Go to step 15.

15. Check the VTC actuator (see page 06-8).

Is the VTC actuator OK?

**Yes** Remove the auto-tensioner (see page 04-31) and replace the VTC oil filter. Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Replace the VTC actuator.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC P0340 (57-1): CMP Sensor No Signal

### DTC P0344 (57-2): CMP Sensor Intermittent Interruption

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).

2. Start the engine.

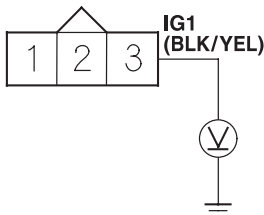
*Is DTC P0340 and/or P0344 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the CMP sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Disconnect the CMP sensor 3P connector.
5. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
6. Measure voltage between CMP sensor 3P connector terminal No. 3 and body ground.

CMP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

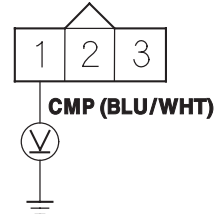
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 7.

**No** Check the No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box. If the fuse is OK, repair open in the wire between the CMP sensor and No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse.

7. Measure voltage between CMP sensor 3P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

CMP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

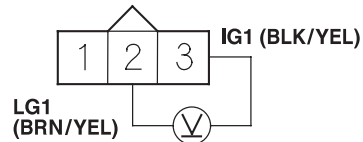
*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Go to step 10.

8. Measure voltage between CMP sensor 3P connector terminals No. 2 and No. 3.

CMP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the CMP sensor and G101.■

9. Substitute a known-good CMP sensor and recheck.

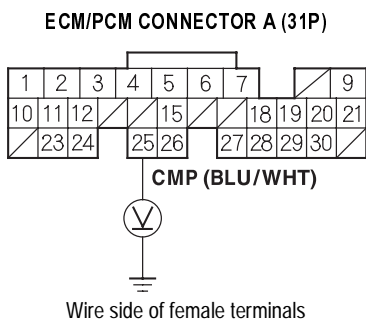
*Is DTC P0340 and/or P0344 indicated?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Replace the original CMP sensor.■



10. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal A25 and body ground.

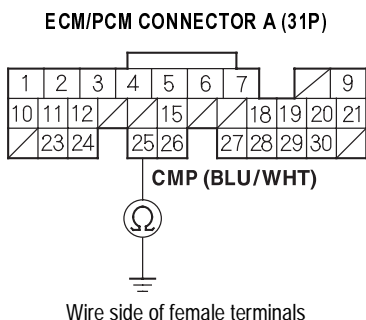


Is there about 5 V?

**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A25) and CMP sensor.■

**No** Go to step 11.

11. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
12. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
13. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).
14. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal A25 and body ground.



Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A25) and the CMP sensor.■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

### DTC P0341 (57-3): VTC Phase Gap

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).

2. Start the engine.

Is DTC P0341 indicated?

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the CMP sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■

3. Check the VTC oil control solenoid valve (see page 11-137).

Is the VTC oil control solenoid valve OK?

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Clean the VTC oil control solenoid valve, or replace the VTC oil control solenoid valve.■

4. Remove the head cover and check the cam chain (see page 06-15).

Is the cam chain OK?

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Repair or replace the cam chain.■

5. Check the slack in the cam chain (see page 06-22).

Is the cam chain OK?

**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Repair or replace the cam chain.

6. Check the VTC actuator (see page 06-8).

Is the VTC actuator OK?

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Replace the VTC actuator.■

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

DTC P1253 (21-1): VTEC System Malfunction

Special Tools Required

- Oil Pressure gauge attachment 07NAJ-P070100
- Low pressure gauge 07406-0070001
- Hose oil pressure 07ZAJ-S5A0200

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Check the engine oil level, and refill if necessary. Check for external damage to the oil pan.
3. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm (min<sup>-1</sup>) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on.
4. Road test the vehicle:  
Accelerate in MT, A/T: 2nd gear to an engine speed over 4,000 rpm (min<sup>-1</sup>). Hold that engine speed for at least 2 seconds. If DTC P1253 is not repeated during the first road test, repeat this test 2 more times.

Is DTC P1253 indicated?

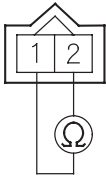
**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check the oil consumption if oil was added in step 2. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the VTEC solenoid valve and at the ECM/PCM.■

5. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

6. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
7. Disconnect the VTEC solenoid valve 2P connector.
8. Check for resistance between VTEC solenoid valve 2P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2.

VTEC SOLENOID VALVE 2P CONNECTOR



Terminal side of male terminals

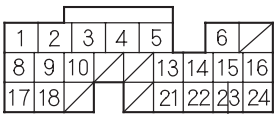
Is there 14 - 30 Ω?

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Replace the VTEC solenoid valve.■

9. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
10. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).
11. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal B15 and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR B (24P)



VTS (GRN/YEL)



Wire side of female terminals

Is there continuity?

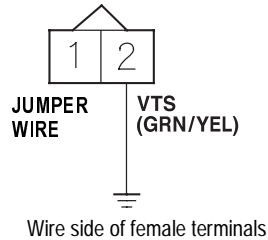
**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the VTEC solenoid valve and the ECM/PCM (B15).■

**No** Go to step 12.



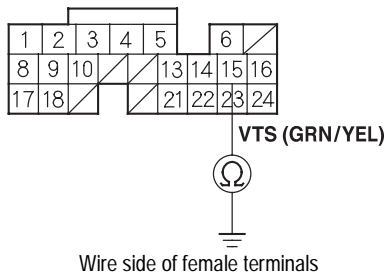
12. Connect VTEC solenoid valve 2P connector terminal No. 2 to body ground with a jumper wire.

VTEC SOLENOID VALVE 2P CONNECTOR



13. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal B15 and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR B (24P)

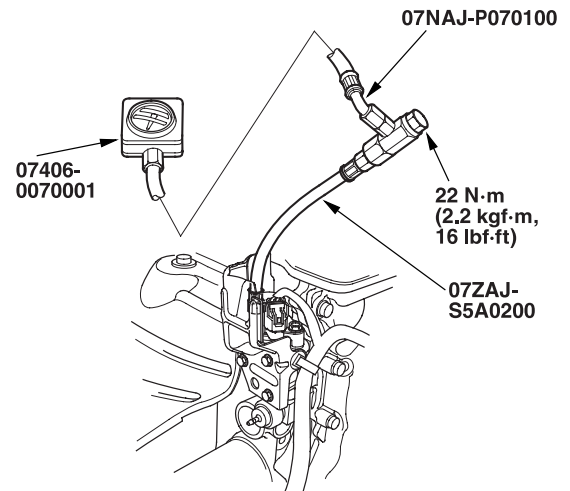


*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 14.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the VTEC solenoid valve and the ECM/PCM (B15).■

14. Install the special tools as shown.



15. Reconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P) and the VTEC solenoid valve connector.
16. Connect a tachometer.
17. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
18. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on.
19. Check oil pressure at engine speeds of 1,000 and 2,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ). Keep measuring time as short as possible because the engine is running with no load (less than 1 minute).

*Is pressure below 49 kPa (0.5 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 7 psi)?*

**Yes** Go to step 20.

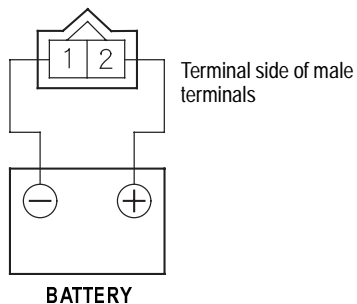
**No** Inspect the VTEC solenoid valve ([see page 11-138](#)).■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

20. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
21. Disconnect the VTEC solenoid valve 2P connector.
22. Attach the battery positive terminal to VTEC solenoid valve 2P connector terminal No. 2.

VTEC SOLENOID VALVE 2P CONNECTOR



23. Start the engine, then connect the battery negative to terminal No. 1 and check oil pressure at an engine speed of 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ).

*Is pressure above 390 kPa (4.0 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 57 psi)?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck ([see page 11-5](#)). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Inspect the VTEC solenoid valve ([see page 11-138](#)).■



**DTC P1259 (22-4): VTEC System Malfunction****Special Tools Required**

- Oil Pressure gauge attachment 07NAJ-P070100
- Low pressure gauge 07406-0070001
- Hose oil pressure 07ZAJ-S5A0200

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Check the engine oil level, and refill if necessary.
3. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on.

4. Road test the vehicle:  
Accelerate in 1st gear to an engine speed over 4,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ). Hold that engine speed for at least 2 seconds. If DTC P1259 is not repeated during the first road test, repeat this test 2 more times.

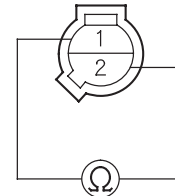
*Is DTC P1259 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the VTEC solenoid valve and at the ECM/PCM.■

5. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

6. Disconnect the VTEC oil pressure switch 2P connector.
7. Check for continuity on VTEC oil pressure switch between the VTEC oil pressure switch 2P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2.

**VTEC OIL PRESSURE SWITCH 2P CONNECTOR**

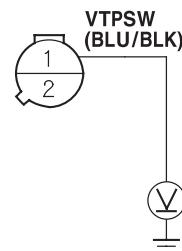
Terminal side of male terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Replace the VTEC oil pressure switch.■

8. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
9. Measure voltage between VTEC oil pressure switch 2P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

**VTEC OIL PRESSURE SWITCH HARNESS 2P CONNECTOR**

Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

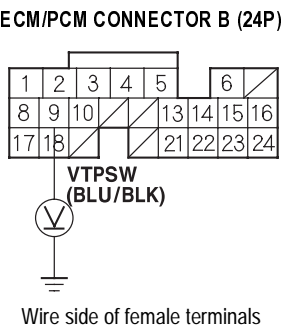
**Yes** Go to step 15.

**No** Go to step 10.

(cont'd)

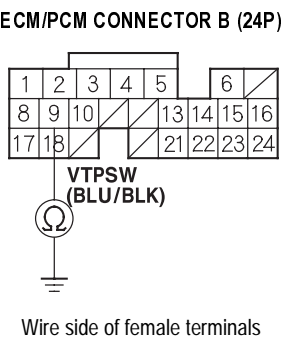
DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

10. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal B9 and body ground.



Is there battery voltage?

- Yes** Repair open in the wire between the VTEC oil pressure switch and the ECM/PCM (B9).■
- No** Go to step 11.
11. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
12. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
13. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).
14. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal B9 and body ground.

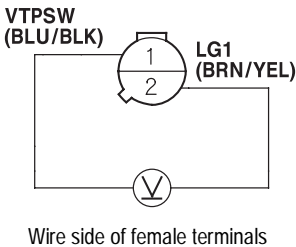


Is there continuity?

- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the VTEC oil pressure switch and the ECM/PCM (B9).■
- No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

15. Measure voltage between VTEC oil pressure switch 2P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2.

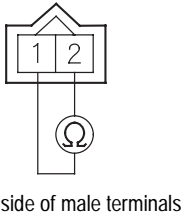
VTEC OIL PRESSURE SWITCH HARNESS 2P CONNECTOR



Is there battery voltage?

- Yes** Go to step 16.
- No** Repair open in the wire between the VTEC oil pressure switch and G101.■
16. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
17. Disconnect the VTEC solenoid valve 1P connector.
18. Check for resistance between VTEC solenoid valve 2P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2.

VTEC SOLENOID VALVE 2P CONNECTOR

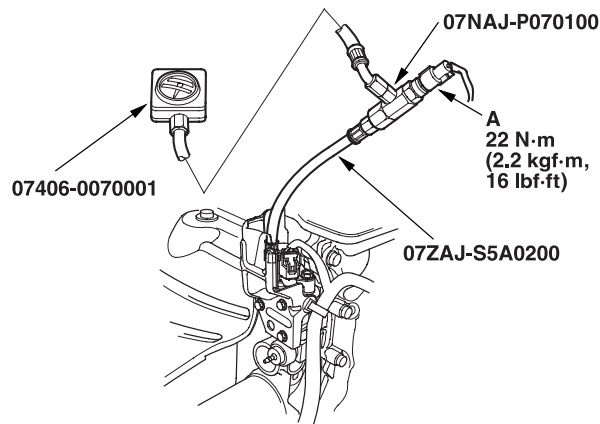


Is there 14 - 30 Ω?

- Yes** Go to step 19.
- No** Replace the VTEC solenoid valve.■



19. Remove the VTEC oil pressure switch (A) and install the special tools as shown, then reinstall the VTEC oil pressure switch.



20. Reconnect the VTEC solenoid valve 2P connector and VTEC oil pressure switch 2P connector.
21. Connect a tachometer.
22. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on.
23. Check oil pressure at engine speeds of 1,000 and 2,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ). Keep measuring time as short as possible because the engine is running with no load (less than 1 minute).

*Is pressure below 49 kPa (0.5 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 7 psi)?*

**Yes** Go to step 24.

**No** Inspect the VTEC solenoid valve (see page 11-138).■

24. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
25. Disconnect the VTEC solenoid valve 2P connector.
26. Attach the battery positive terminal to the VTEC solenoid valve 2P connector terminal No. 2.
27. Start the engine, then connect the battery negative to terminal No. 1 and check oil pressure at an engine speed of 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ).

*Is pressure above 390 kPa (4.0 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 57 psi)?*

**Yes** Go to step 28.

**No** Inspect the VTEC solenoid valve (see page 11-138).■

28. With the battery terminal still connected to the VTEC solenoid valve, measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal B9 and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR B (24P)

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----

VTPSW  
(BLU/BLK)



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage above 4,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ )?*

**Yes** Go to step 29.

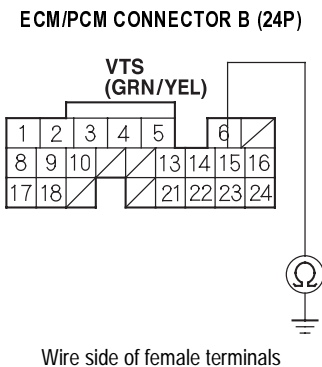
**No** Replace the VTEC oil pressure switch.■

29. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
30. Disconnect the battery terminal from the VTEC solenoid valve terminal.

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

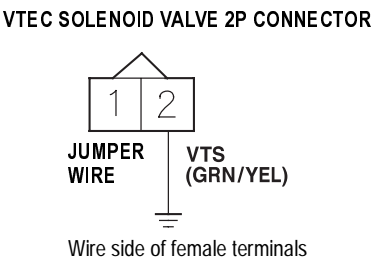
- 31. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
- 32. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).
- 33. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal B15 and body ground.



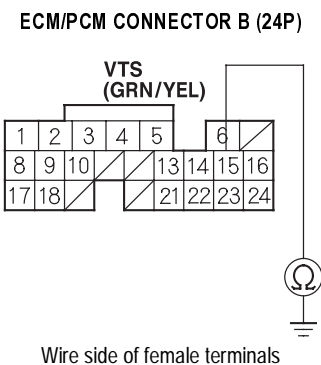
Is there continuity?

- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the VTEC solenoid valve and the ECM/PCM (B15).■
- No** Go to step 34.

- 34. Connect VTEC solenoid valve 2P connector terminal No. 2 to body ground with a jumper wire.



- 35. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal B15 and body ground.



Is there continuity?

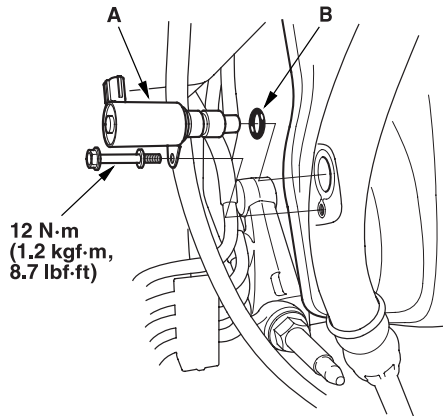
- Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/ indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■
- No** Repair short in the wire between the VTEC solenoid valve and the ECM/PCM (B15).■



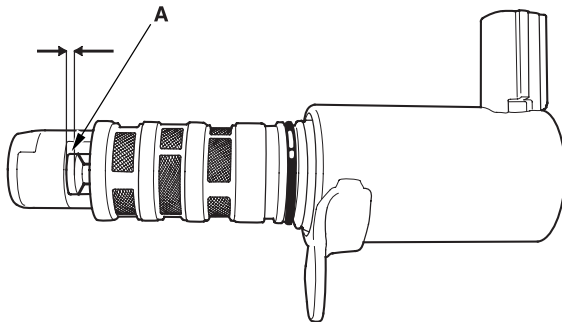
## VTC Oil Control Solenoid Valve Test

1. Remove the VTC oil control solenoid valve (A).  
NOTE: Install the part in the reverse order of removal with a new O-ring (B), then check these items:

- Clean and dry the VTC oil control solenoid valve mating surface.
- Coat O-ring with engine oil.
- Do not install the VTC oil control solenoid valve while wearing fibrous gloves.
- Be careful not to contaminate the cylinder head opening.

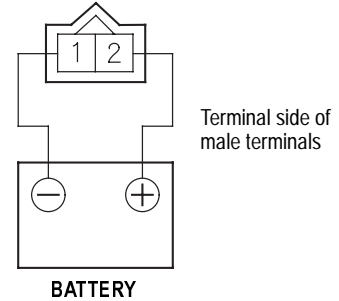


2. Check the VTC oil control solenoid valve filter for clogging. If it is clogged, replace the VTC oil control solenoid valve.
3. Check the clearance between the port (advance side) and the valve. Clearance (A) should be above 2.8 mm (1/8 in.).

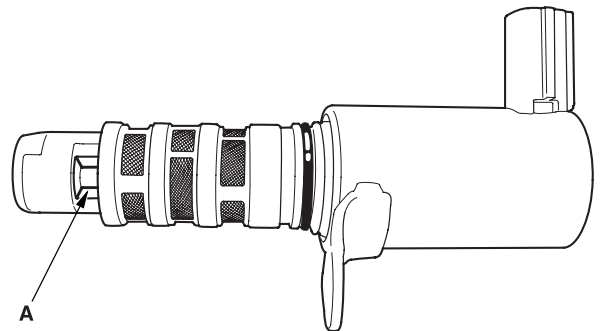


4. Connect the battery positive terminal to the VTC oil control solenoid valve 2P connector terminal No. 2.

### VTC OIL CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE 2P CONNECTOR

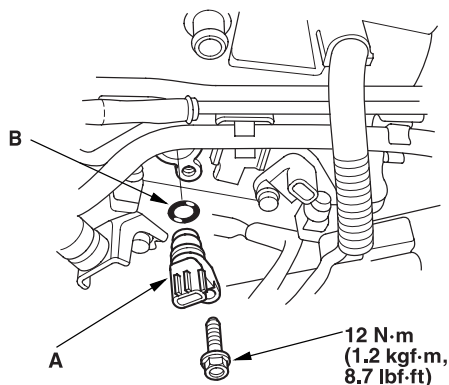


5. Connect the battery negative terminal to the VTC oil control solenoid valve 2P connector terminal No. 1, then make sure the valve (A) opens fully.



## CMP Sensor Replacement

1. Remove the air cleaner (see page 11-182).
2. Disconnect the CMP sensor 3P connector.
3. Remove the CMP sensor (A).

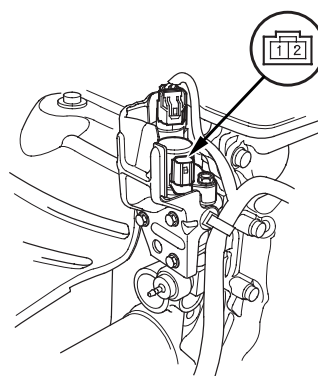


4. Install the part in the reverse order of removal with a new O-ring (B).

## VTEC Solenoid Valve Removal/Inspection

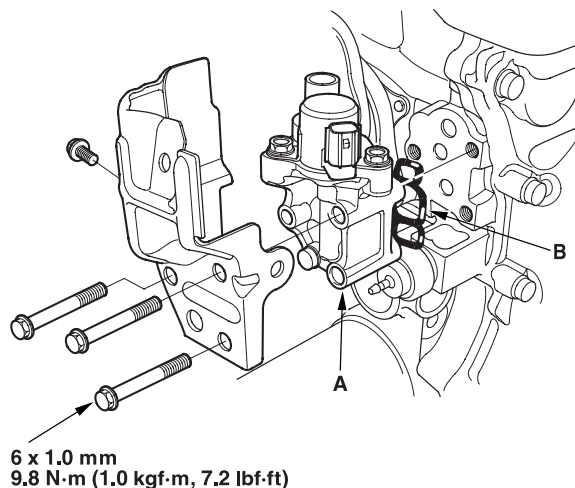
1. Disconnect the VTEC solenoid valve 2P connector.
2. KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models:  
Disconnect the VTEC oil pressure switch 2P connector.
3. Measure resistance between the VTEC solenoid valve connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2.

Resistance: 14 - 30  $\Omega$



\*: The illustration shows KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models.

4. If the resistance is within specifications, remove the VTEC solenoid valve assembly (A) from the cylinder head, and check the VTEC solenoid valve filter (B) for clogging. If it is clogged, replace the solenoid valve filter, the engine oil filter, and the engine oil.

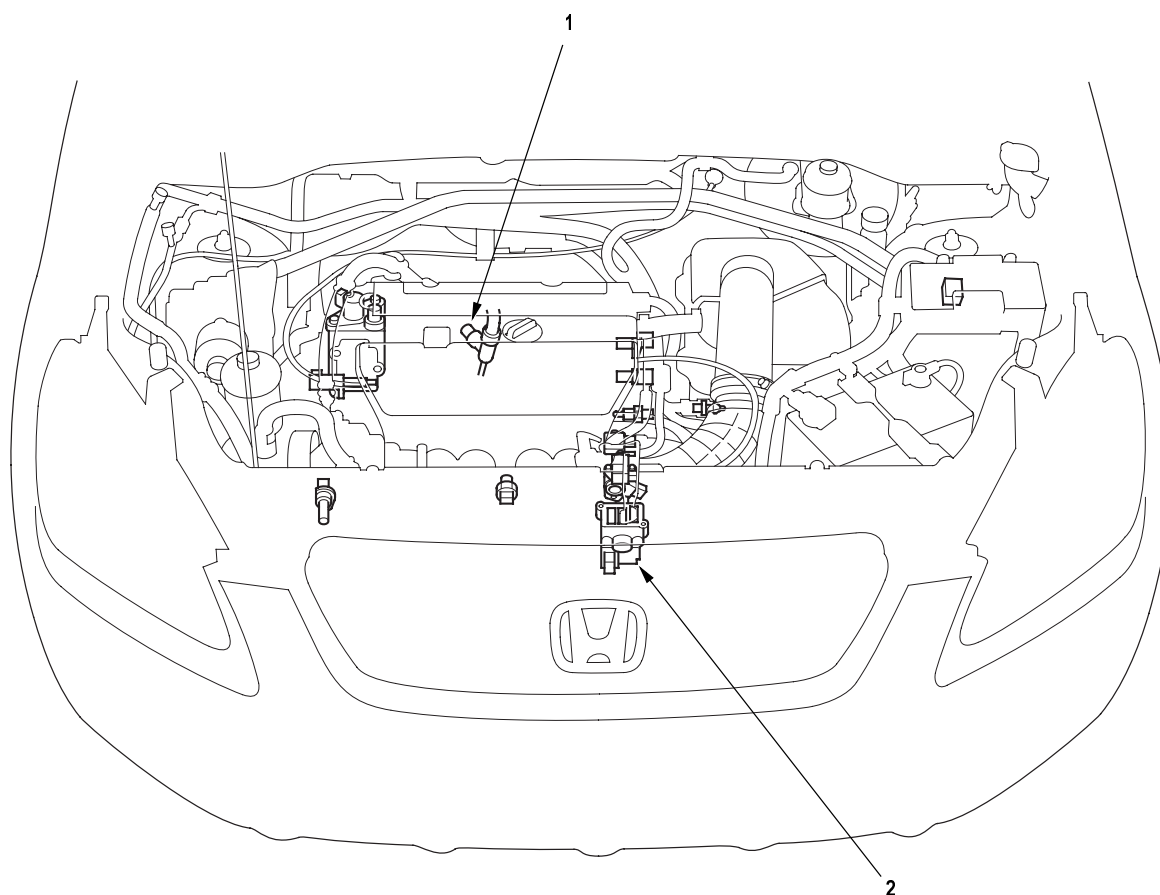


\*: The illustration shows KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models



### Idle Control System

#### Component Location Index



\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

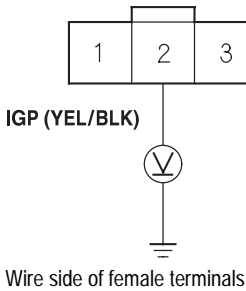
- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | <b>POWER STEERING PRESSURE (PSP) SWITCH</b> | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-145</a> |
| 2 | <b>IDLE AIR CONTROL (IAC) VALVE</b>         | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-140</a> |

DTC Troubleshooting

DTC P1519 (14-3): IAC Valve Circuit Malfunction

- 1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
- 2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).  
*Is DTC P1519 indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 3.  
**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the IAC valve and at the ECM/PCM.■
- 3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- 4. Disconnect the IAC valve 3P connector.
- 5. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
- 6. Measure voltage between IAC valve 3P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.

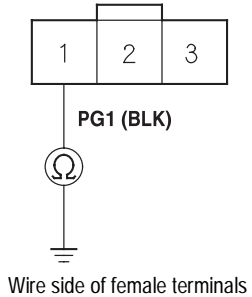
IAC VALVE 3P CONNECTOR



- Is there battery voltage?*
- Yes** Go to step 7.
  - No** Repair open in the wire between the IAC valve and the PGM-FI main relay.■
7. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

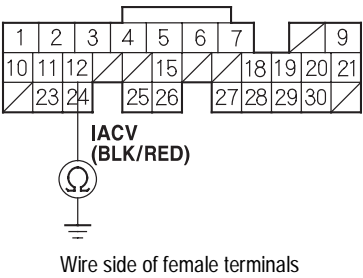
8. Check for continuity between body ground and IAC valve 3P connector terminal No. 1.

IAC VALVE 3P CONNECTOR



- Is there continuity?*
- Yes** Go to step 9.
  - No** Repair open in the wire between the IAC valve and G101.■
9. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
10. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).
11. Check for continuity between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal A12.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)

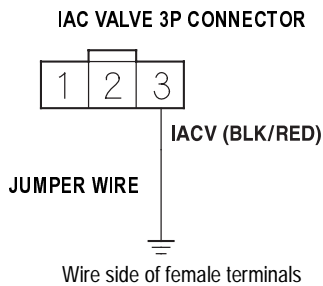


- Is there continuity?*
- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the IAC valve and the ECM/PCM (A12).■
  - No** Go to step 12.

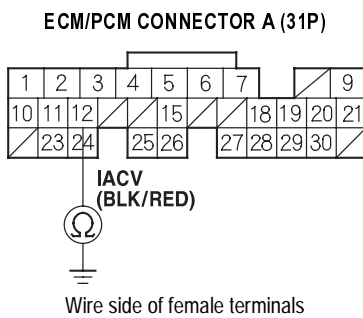




12. Connect IAC valve 3P connector terminal No. 3 and body ground with a jumper wire.



13. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal A12 and body ground.



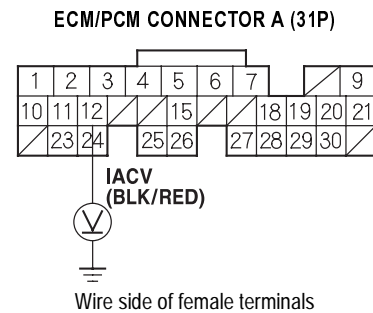
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 14.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the IAC valve and the ECM/PCM (A12).■

14. Reconnect the IAC valve 3P connector.
15. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
16. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

17. Measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal A12.



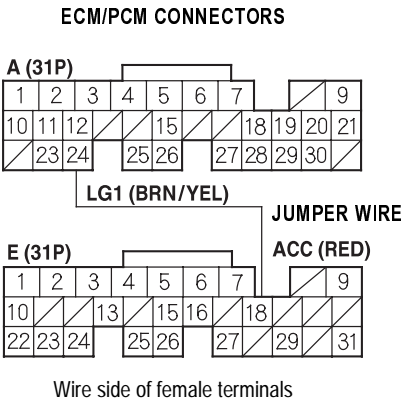
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Replace the IAC valve.■

A/C Signal Circuit Troubleshooting

- 1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
- 2. Momentarily connect ECM/PCM connector terminals A24 and E18 with a jumper wire several times.



Is there a clicking noise from the A/C compressor clutch?

Yes Go to step 3.

No Go to step 6.

- 3. Start the engine.
- 4. Turn the blower switch ON.
- 5. Turn the A/C switch ON.

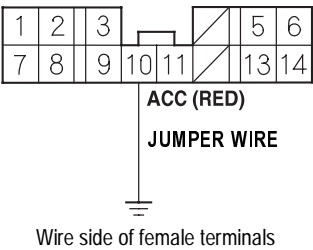
Does the A/C operate?

Yes The air conditioning signal is OK.■

No Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

- 6. Momentarily connect the under-hood fuse/relay box 14P connector terminal No. 10 to body ground with a jumper wire several times.

UNDER-HOOD FUSE/RELAY BOX 14P CONNECTOR



Is there clicking noise from the A/C compressor clutch?

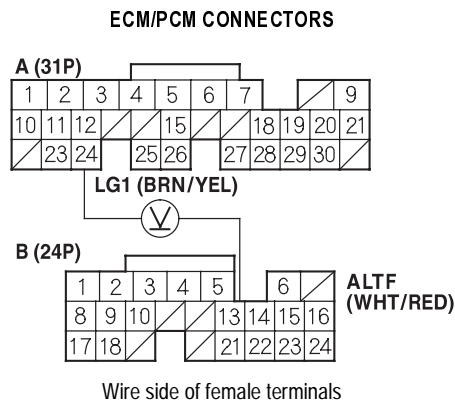
Yes Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E18) and the A/C clutch relay.■

No Check the A/C system for other symptoms.■



## Alternator FR Signal Circuit Troubleshooting

1. Disconnect the alternator 4P connector.
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
3. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A24 and B13.



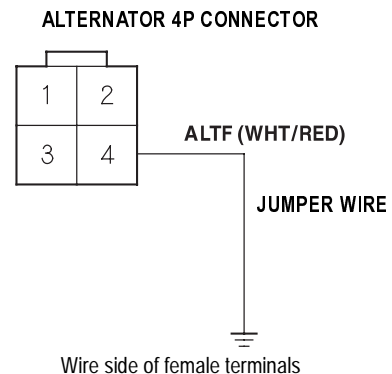
*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

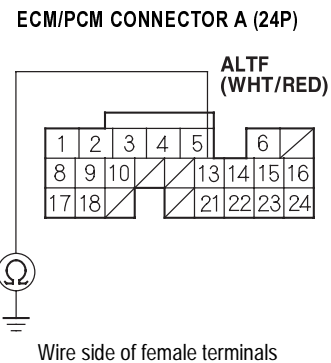
**No** Go to step 14.

4. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
5. Reconnect the alternator 4P connector.
6. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.
7. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A24 and B13.  
*Does the voltage decrease when the headlights and rear window defogger are turned on?*  
**Yes** The alternator FR signal is OK.■  
**No** Go to step 8.
8. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
9. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
10. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).
11. Disconnect the alternator 4P connector.

12. Connect alternator 4P connector terminal No. 4 and body ground with a jumper wire.



13. Check for continuity between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal B13.



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Test the alternator ([see page 04-27](#)).■

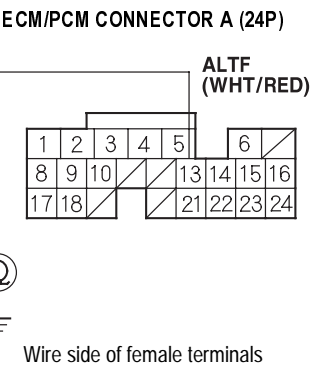
**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (B13) and the alternator.■

14. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
15. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
16. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).

(cont'd)

Alternator FR Signal Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

17. Check for continuity between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal B13.



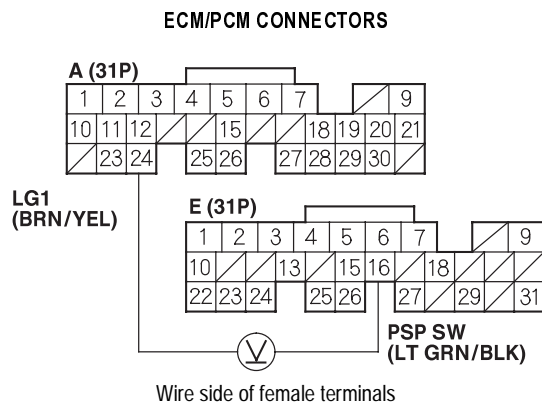
Is there continuity?

- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (B13) and the alternator.■
- No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■



## PSP Switch Signal Circuit Troubleshooting

1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
2. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A24 and E16.



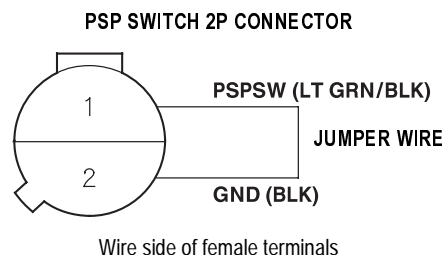
*Is there less than 1.0 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Go to step 6.

3. Start the engine.
4. Turn the steering wheel to the full lock position.
5. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A24 and E16.  
*Is there battery voltage?*  
**Yes** The PSP switch signal is OK.■  
**No** Go to step 13.
6. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
7. Disconnect the PSP switch 2P connector.
8. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

9. At the harness side, connect PSP switch 2P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2 with a jumper wire.



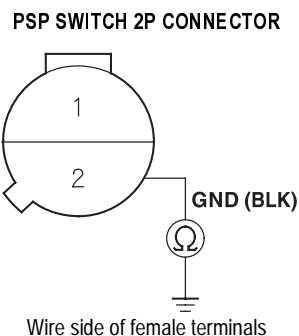
10. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A24 and E16.

*Is there less than 1.0 V?*

**Yes** Replace the PSP switch.■

**No** Go to step 11.

11. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
12. Check for continuity between PSP switch 2P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the PSP switch and ECM/PCM (E16).■

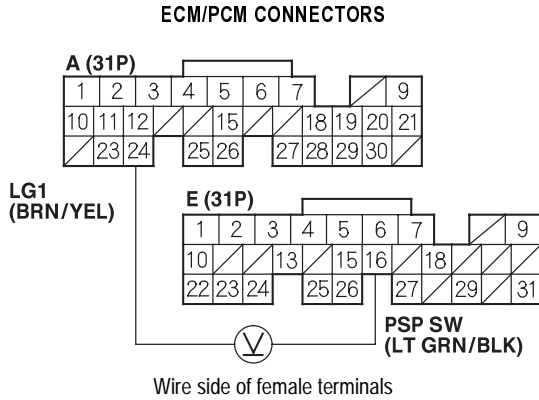
**No** Repair open in the wire between the PSP switch and G301.■

13. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
14. Disconnect the PSP switch 2P connector.
15. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

(cont'd)

## PSP Switch Signal Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

16. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A24 and E16.

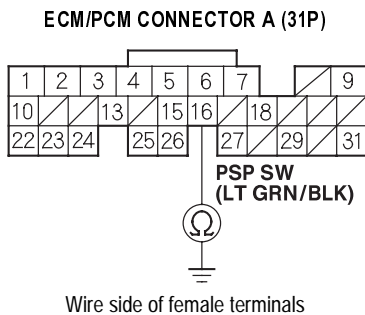


*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Replace the PSP switch.■

**No** Go to step 17.

17. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
18. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
19. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).
20. Check for continuity between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal E16.



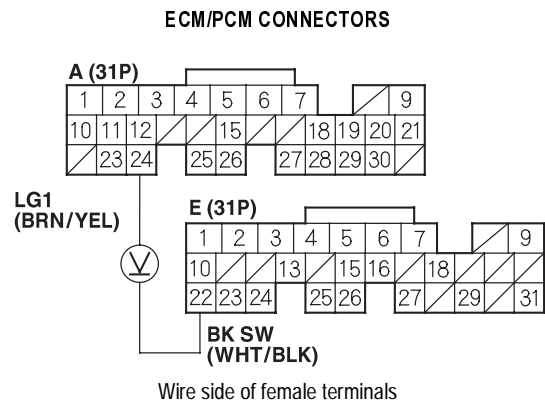
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between ECM/PCM (E16) and the PSP switch.

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

## Brake Pedal Position Switch Signal Circuit Troubleshooting

1. Check the brake lights.  
*Are the brake lights on without pressing the brake pedal?*  
**Yes** Inspect the brake pedal position switch (see page 19A-5).■  
**No** Go to step 2.
2. Press the brake pedal.  
*Do the brake lights come on?*  
**Yes** Go to step 3.  
**No** Go to step 4.
3. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A24 and E22 with the brake pedal pressed.



*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** The brake pedal position switch signal is OK.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E22) and the brake pedal position switch.■



4. Inspect the No. 7 HORN, STOP (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.

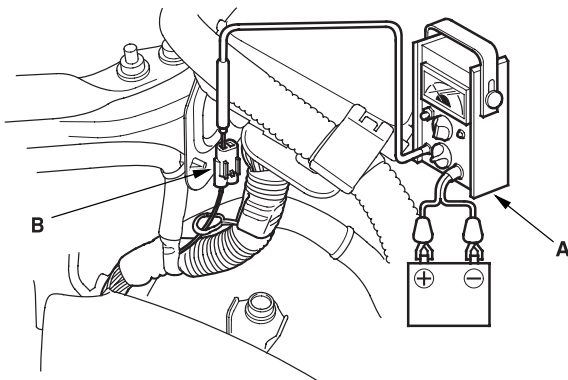
*Is the fuse OK?*

- Yes** Repair open in the wire between the brake pedal position switch and the No. 7 HORN, STOP (15A) fuse. Inspect the brake pedal position switch ([see page 19A-5](#)).■
- No** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E22) and the No. 7 HORN, STOP (15A) fuse. Replace the No. 7 HORN, STOP (15A) fuse.■

Idle Speed Inspection

NOTE:

- Leave the Idle Air Control (IAC) valve connected.
  - Before checking the idle speed, check these items:
    - The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) has not been reported on.
    - Ignition timing
    - Spark plugs
    - Air cleaner
    - PCV system
1. Disconnect the Evaporative Emission (EVAP) canister purge valve 2P connector.
  2. Connect a tachometer (A) to the test tachometer connector (B).



3. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.

4. Check the idle speed with no-load conditions: headlights, blower fan, rear defogger, radiator fan, and air conditioner are not operating.

Idle speed should be:

M/T	$650 \pm 50 \text{ rpm (min}^{-1}\text{)}$
A/T	$650 \pm 50 \text{ rpm (min}^{-1}\text{)}$ (in Park or neutral)

5. Idle the engine for 1 minute with heater fan switch on HI and air conditioner on, then check the idle speed.

Idle speed should be:

M/T	$700 \pm 50 \text{ rpm (min}^{-1}\text{)}$
A/T	$700 \pm 50 \text{ rpm (min}^{-1}\text{)}$ (in Park or neutral)

NOTE: If the idle speed is not within specification, go to the Symptom Troubleshooting Index.

6. Reconnect the EVAP canister purge valve 2P connector.

NOTE: You can use the scan tool or Honda PGM Tester to inspect idle speed.

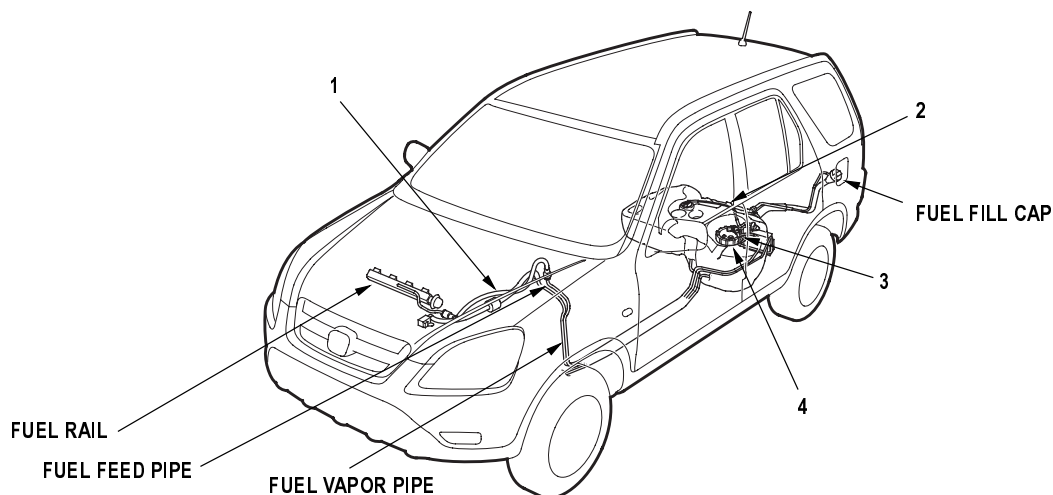




## Fuel Supply System

### Component Location Index

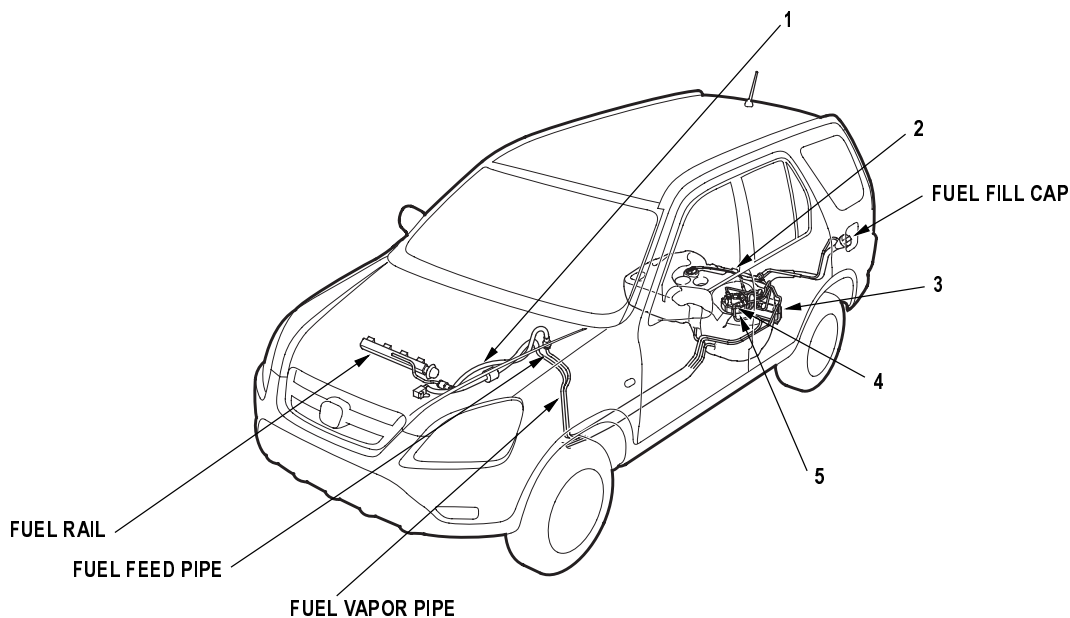
KG, KS, KE, KR models:



- 1 FUEL TUBE/QUICK-CONNECT FITTINGS
- 2 FUEL TANK
- 3 FUEL TUBE/QUICK-CONNECT FITTINGS
- 4 FUEL PUMP
- FUEL FILTER
- FUEL GAUGE SENDING UNIT
- FUEL PRESSURE REGULATOR

Precautions, [page 11-160](#); Removal, [page 11-161](#); Installation, [page 11-162](#)  
 Replacement, [page 11-169](#)  
 Precautions, [page 11-160](#); Removal, [page 11-161](#); Installation, [page 11-162](#)  
 Troubleshooting, [page 11-151](#); Replacement, [page 11-167](#)  
 Replacement, [page 11-166](#)  
 Test, [page 11-173](#)  
 Replacement, [page 11-165](#)

Except KG, KS, KE, KR, KZ models:



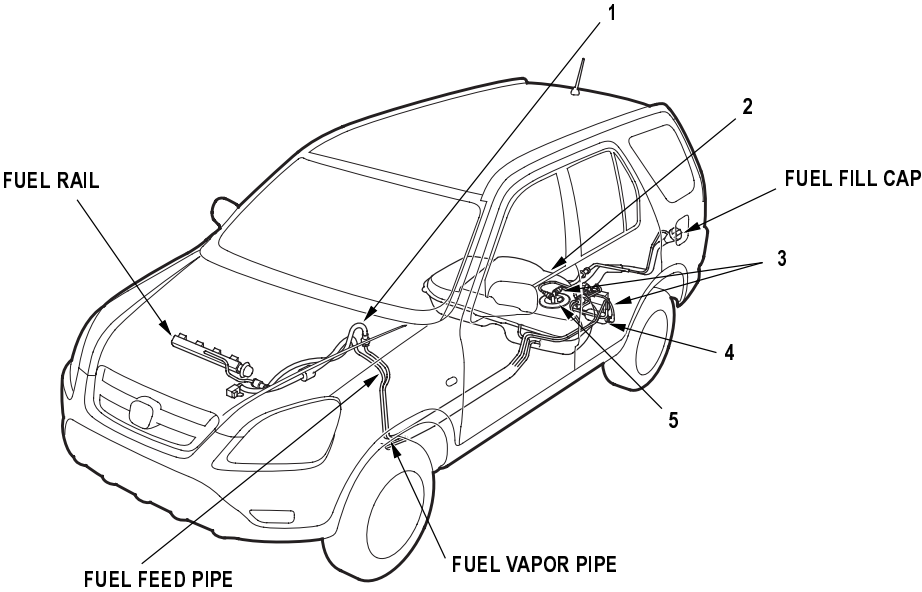
- 1 FUEL TUBE/QUICK-CONNECT FITTINGS
- 2 FUEL TANK
- 3 FUEL FILTER
- 4 FUEL TUBE/QUICK-CONNECT FITTINGS
- 5 FUEL PUMP
- FUEL GAUGE SENDING UNIT
- FUEL PRESSURE REGULATOR

Precautions, [page 11-160](#); Removal, [page 11-161](#); Installation, [page 11-162](#)  
 Replacement, [page 11-169](#)  
 Replacement, [page 11-166](#)  
 Precautions, [page 11-160](#); Removal, [page 11-161](#); Installation, [page 11-162](#)  
 Troubleshooting, [page 11-151](#); Replacement, [page 11-167](#)  
 Test, [page 11-173](#)  
 Replacement, [page 11-165](#)

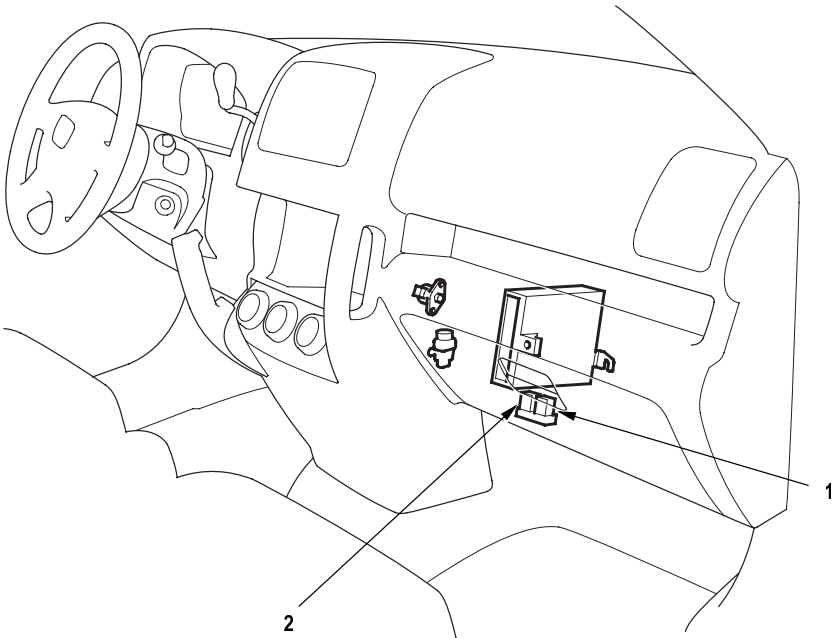
(cont'd)

Component Location Index (cont'd)

KZ model:



- |   |                                  |   |
|---|----------------------------------|---|
| 1 | FUEL TUBE/QUICK-CONNECT FITTINGS | Precautions, <a href="#">page 11-160</a> ; Removal, <a href="#">page 11-161</a> ; Installation, <a href="#">page 11-162</a> |
| 2 | FUEL TANK                        | Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-169</a>  |
| 3 | FUEL TUBE/QUICK-CONNECT FITTINGS | Precautions, <a href="#">page 11-160</a> ; Removal, <a href="#">page 11-161</a> ; Installation, <a href="#">page 11-162</a> |
| 4 | FUEL FILTER                      | Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-166</a>  |
| 5 | FUEL PUMP                        | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-151</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-167</a>                                     |
|   | FUEL GAUGE SENDING UNIT          | Test, <a href="#">page 11-173</a>   |
|   | FUEL PRESSURE REGULATOR          | Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-165</a>  |



\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

- |   |                     |  |
|---|---------------------|--|
| 1 | PGM-FI MAIN RELAY 1 | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-102</a> |
| 2 | PGM-FI MAIN RELAY 2 | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-151</a> |

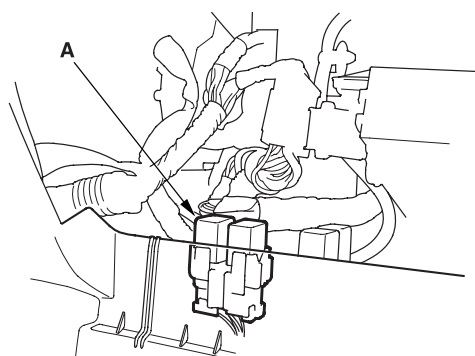


## Fuel Pump Circuit Troubleshooting

If you suspect a problem with the fuel pump, check that the fuel pump actually runs; when it is on, you will hear some noise if you listen to the fuel fill port with the fuel fill cap removed. The fuel pump should run for 2 seconds when the ignition switch is first turned on. If the fuel pump does not make noise, check as follows:

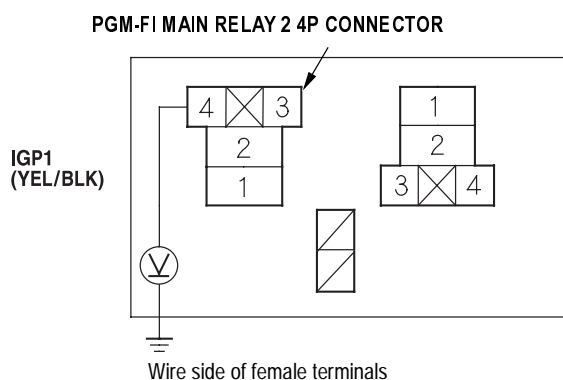
NOTE: Information marked with an asterisk (\*) applies to except KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KN, KH, KY, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models.

1. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
2. Remove the glove box (see page 20-95), PGM-FI main relay 2 (A).



\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
4. Measure voltage between PGM-FI main relay 2 4P connector terminal No. 4 and body ground.

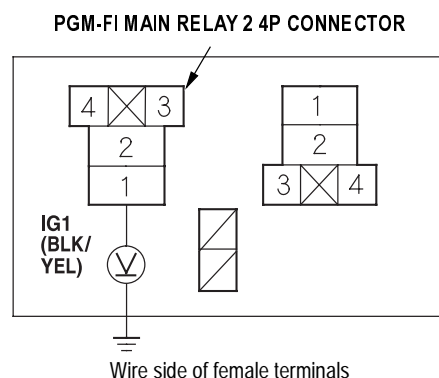


Is there battery voltage?

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the PGM-FI main relay 1 and the PGM-FI main relay 2.■

5. Measure voltage between PGM-FI main relay 2 4P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

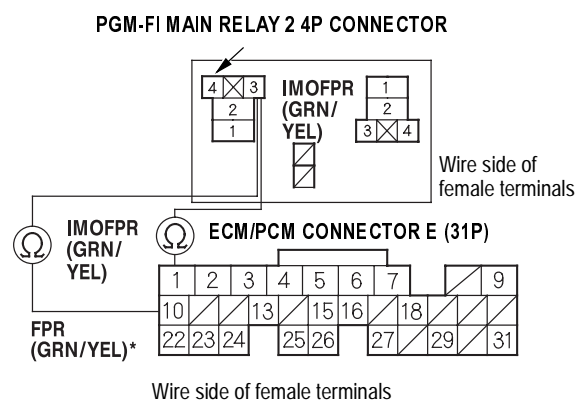


Is there battery voltage?

**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the under-dash fuse/relay box and PGM-FI main relay 2.■

6. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
7. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
8. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).
9. Check for continuity between PGM-FI main relay 2 4P connector terminal No. 3 and ECM/PCM connector terminal E1 (E10)\*.



Is there continuity?

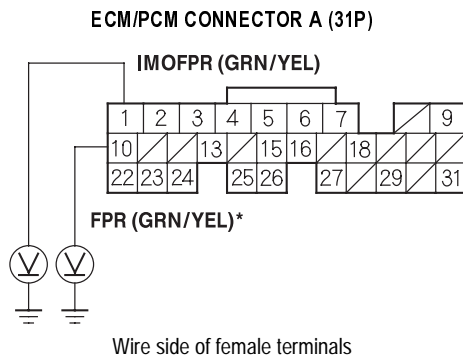
**Yes** Go to step 10.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the PGM-FI main relay 2 and the ECM/PCM (E1, E10\*).■

(cont'd)

## Fuel Pump Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

10. Reinstall the PGM-FI main relay 2.
11. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
12. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
13. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal E1 (E10)\* and body ground.

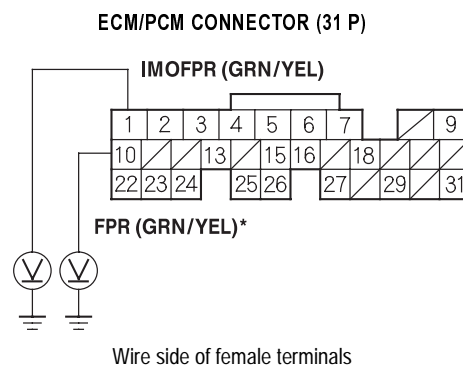


*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 14.

**No** Replace the PGM-FI main relay 2.■

14. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
15. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
16. Reconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).
17. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
18. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal E1 (E10)\* and body ground within the first 2 seconds after the ignition switch was turned ON (II).

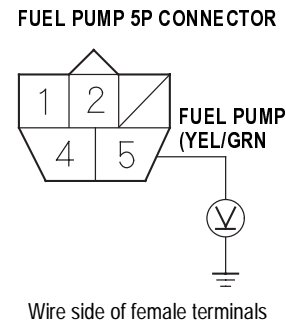


*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Go to step 19.

19. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
20. Fold the rear seats forward, and pull back the carpet to expose the access panel.
21. Remove the access panel from the floor.
22. Measure voltage between fuel pump 5P connector terminal No. 5 and body ground within the first 2 seconds after the ignition switch was turned ON (II).



*Is there battery voltage?*

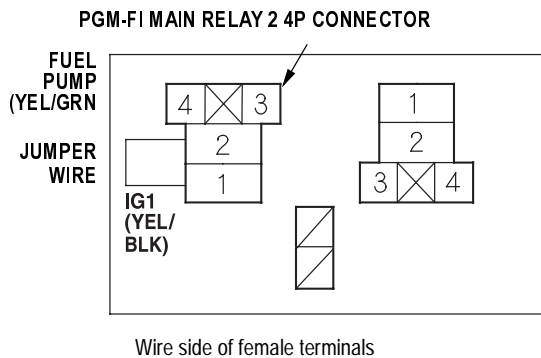
**Yes** Go to step 28.

**No** Go to step 23.

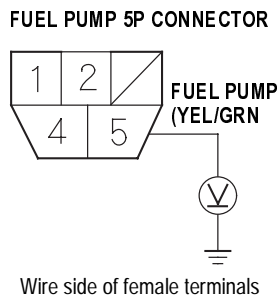
23. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
24. Remove the PGM-FI main relay 2.



25. Connect PGM-FI main relay 2 4P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2 with a jumper wire.



26. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
27. Measure voltage between fuel pump 5P connector terminal No. 5 and body ground within the first 2 seconds after the ignition switch was turned ON (II).



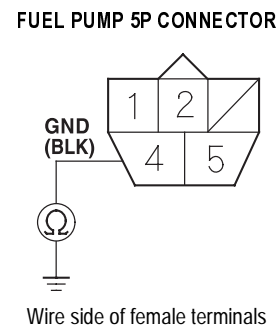
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Replace the PGM-FI main relay 2.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the PGM-FI main relay 2 and the fuel pump 5P connector.■

28. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

29. Check for continuity between fuel pump 5P connector terminal No. 4 and body ground.



*Is there continuity?*

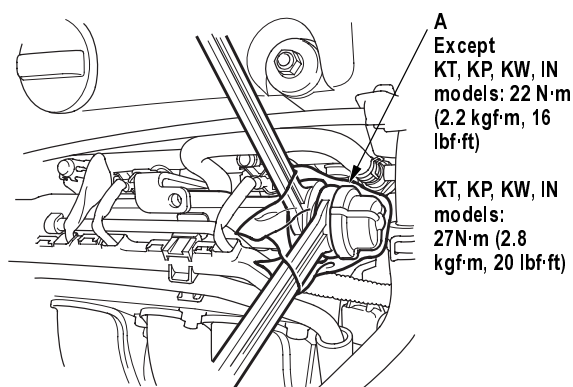
**Yes** Replace the fuel pump.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the fuel pump 5P connector and G551.■

## Fuel Pressure Relieving

Before disconnecting fuel lines or hoses, release pressure from the system by loosening the fuel pulsation damper on top of the fuel rail.

1. Make sure you have the anti-theft code for the radio, then write down the frequencies for the radio's preset buttons.
2. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
3. Remove the fuel fill cap and the engine cover.
4. Use a wrench on the fuel pulsation damper (A).



5. Place a rag or shop towel (B) over the fuel pulsation damper.
6. Slowly loosen the fuel pulsation damper one complete turn.

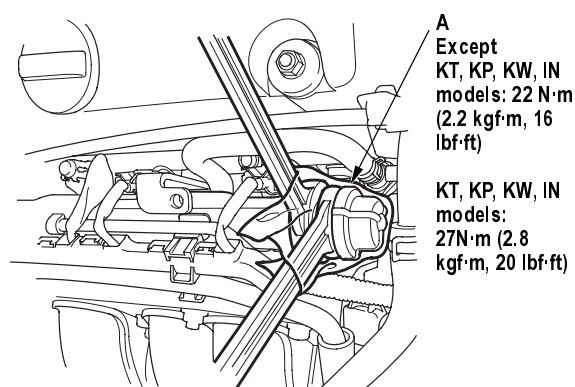
NOTE: Replace all washers whenever the fuel pulsation damper is loosened or removed.

## Fuel Pressure Test

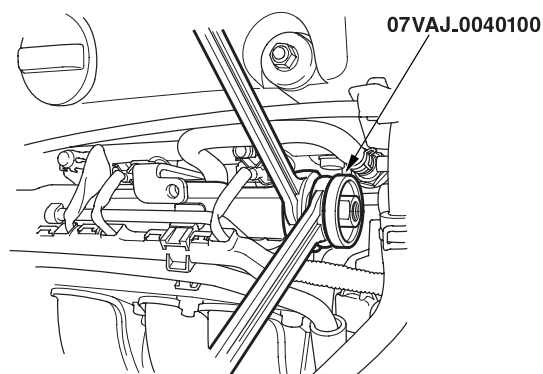
### Special Tools Required

- Fuel pressure gauge 07406-0040002
- Fuel pressure gauge attachment 07VAJ-0040100
- Fuel pressure gauge set 07ZAJ-S5A0100

1. Make sure you have the anti-theft code for the radio, then write down the frequencies for the radio's preset buttons.
2. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
3. Remove the fuel fill cap and the engine cover.
4. Use a wrench on the fuel pulsation damper (A) at the fuel rail.

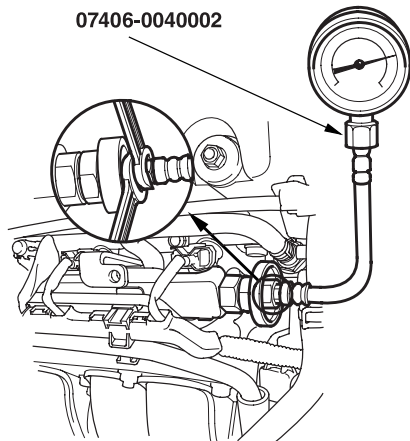


5. Place a rag or shop towel (B) over the fuel pulsation damper.
6. Slowly loosen the fuel pulsation damper one complete turn.
7. Remove the fuel pulsation damper from its fitting, and attach the fuel pressure gauge attachment.





8. Attach the fuel pressure gauge.



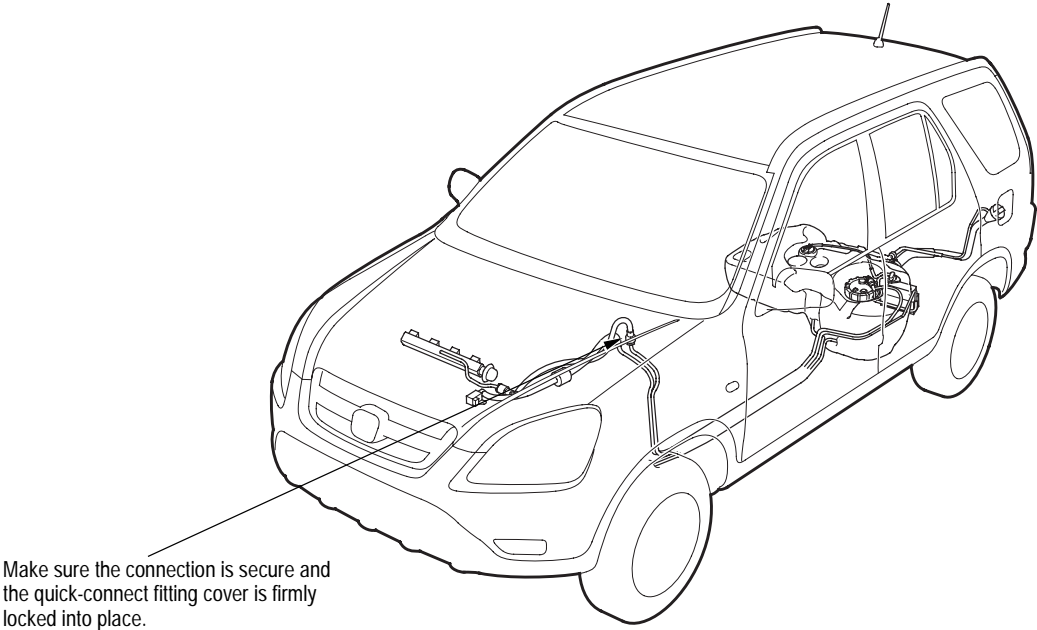
9. Start the engine and let it idle.
- If the engine starts, go to step 11.
  - If the engine does not start, go to step 10.
10. Check to see if the fuel pump is running: listen to the fuel fill port with the fuel fill cap removed. The fuel pump should run for 2 seconds when the ignition switch is first turned ON (II).
- If the pump runs, go to step 11.
  - If the pump does not run, perform the fuel pump circuit troubleshooting ([see page 11-151](#)).
11. Read the pressure gauge. The pressure should be 330 - 380 kpa (3.4 - 3.9 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 48 - 55 psi) (KZ model: 320 - 370 kpa (3.3 - 3.8 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 47 - 54 psi)).
- If the pressure is OK, the test is complete.
  - If the pressure is out of specification, replace the fuel pressure regulator ([see page 11-165](#)) and the fuel filter ([see page 11-166](#)), then repeat the test.
12. Remove the pressure gauge, and reinstall the fuel pulsation damper with a new washer. Tighten the fuel pulsation damper to 22 N·m (2.2kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft) [KT, KP, KW, IN models: 27 N·m (2.8 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft)].

NOTE: Disassemble and clean the fuel pressure gauge attachment thoroughly after use.

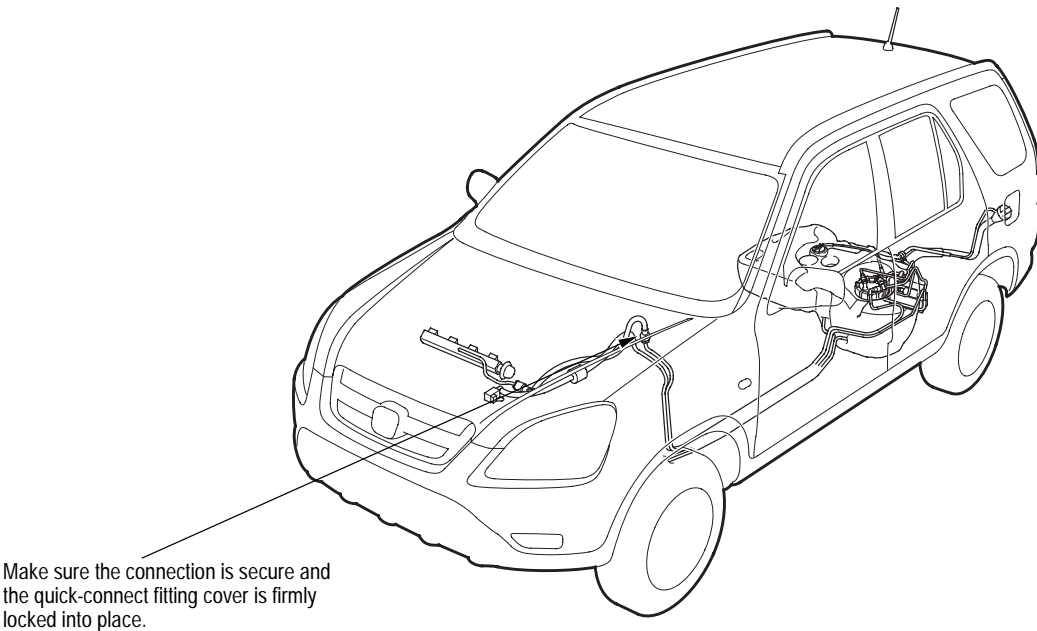
Fuel Line Inspection

Check the fuel system lines, hoses, and fuel filter for damage, leaks, and deterioration. Replace any damaged parts.

KG, KS, KE, KR models:



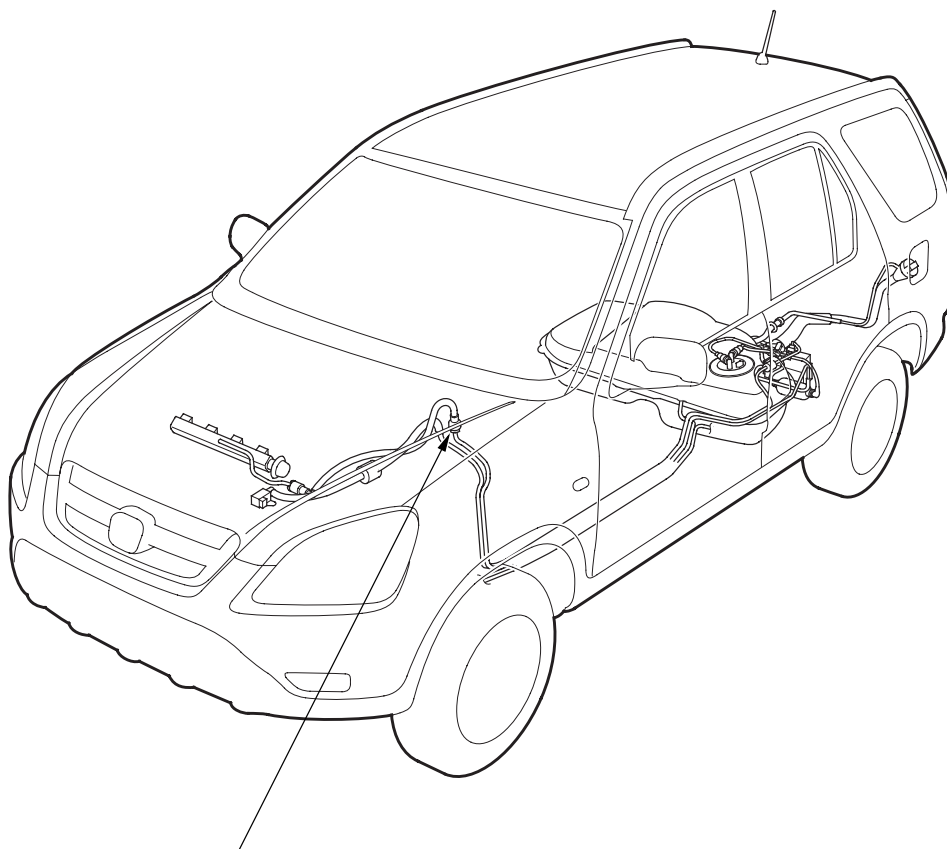
Except KG, KS, KE, KR, KZ models:







KZ model:



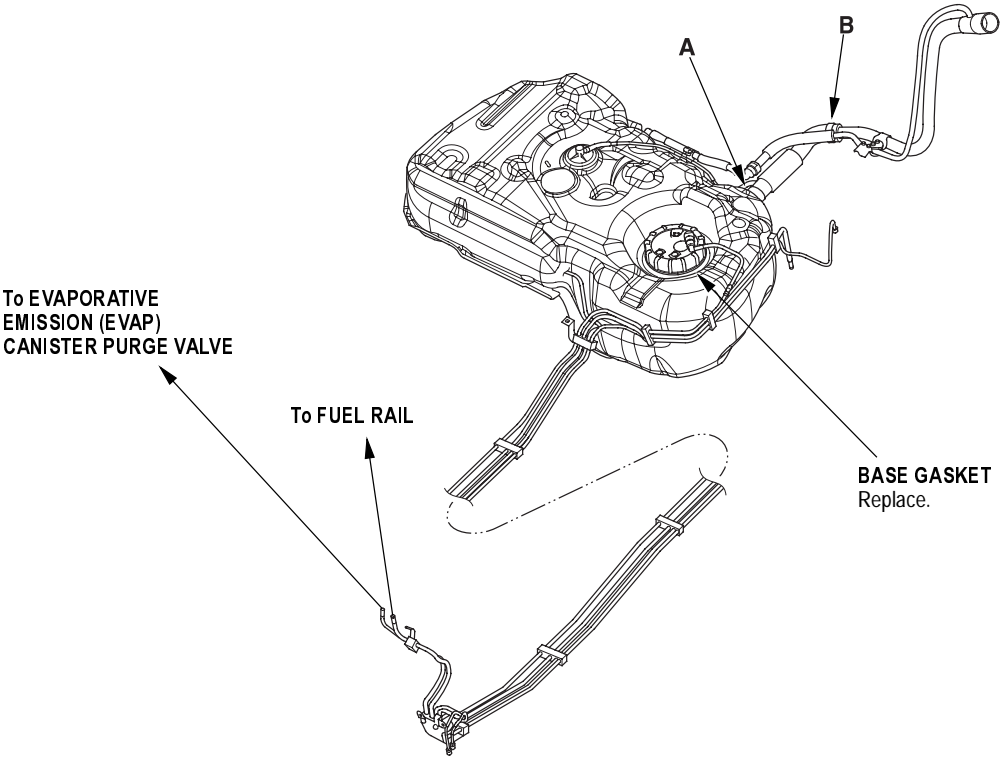
Make sure the connection is secure and the quick-connect fitting cover is firmly locked into place.

(cont'd)

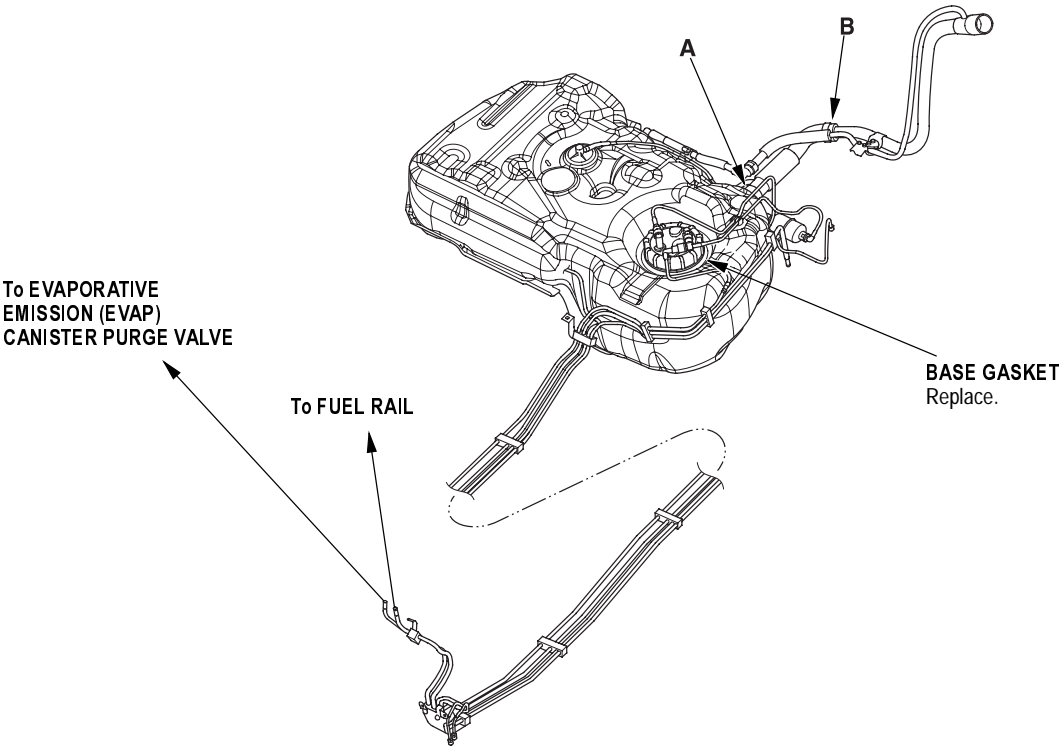
Fuel Line Inspection (cont'd)

Check all clamps and retighten if necessary.  
▲: Do not disconnect the hose from the pipe at these joints.

KG, KS, KE, KR models:

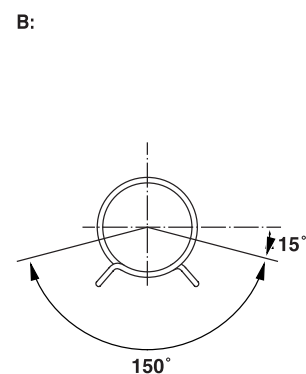
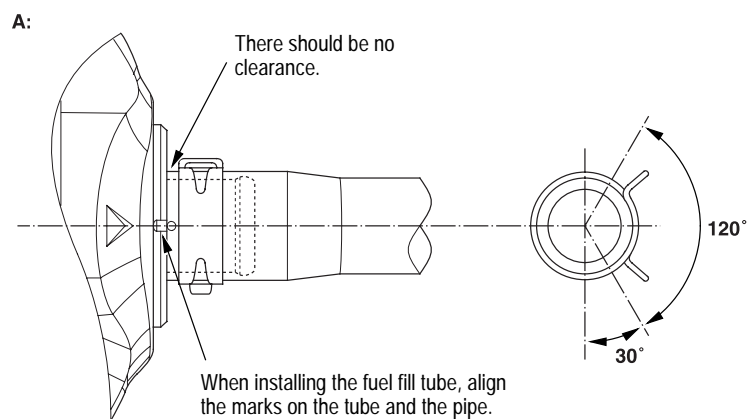
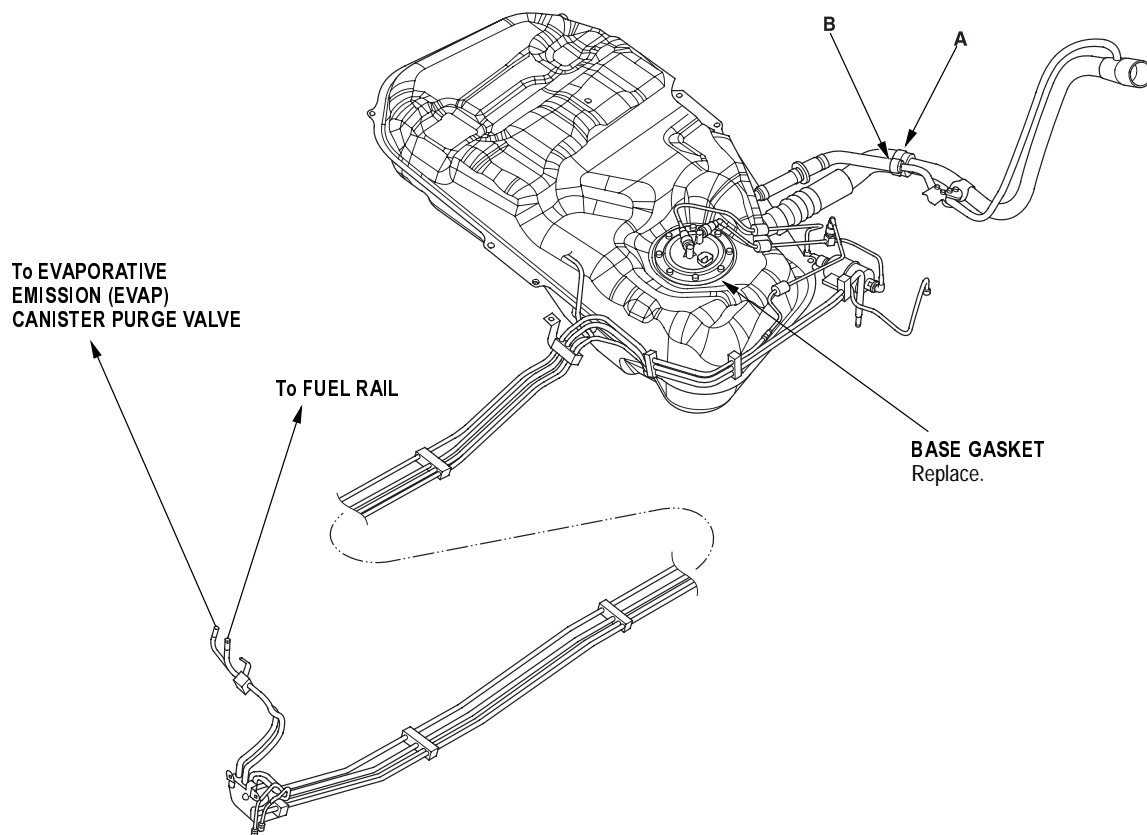


Except KG, KS, KE, KR, KZ models:





KZ model:

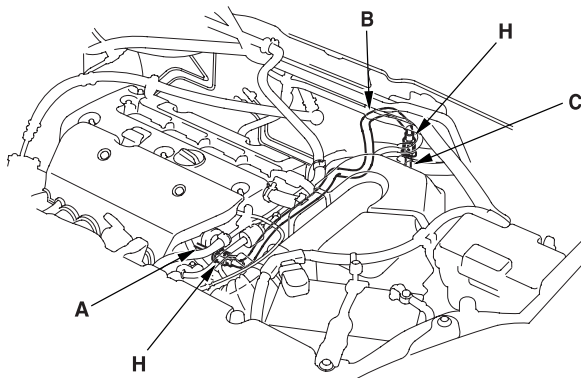


### Fuel Tube/Quick-Connect Fittings Precaution

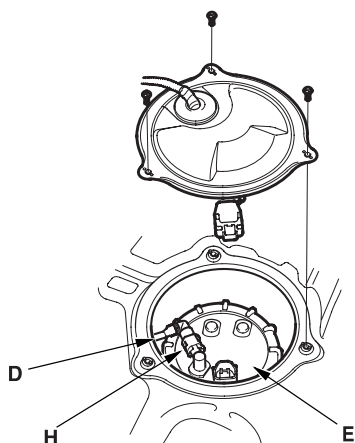
The fuel tube/quick-connect fittings connect the fuel rail (A) to fuel feed hose (B), the fuel feed hose (B) to the fuel line (C), and the fuel tube (D) to the fuel tank unit (E) and fuel tube (F) to the fuel filter (G). When removing or installing the fuel feed hose, fuel tank unit, or fuel tank, it is necessary to disconnect or connect the quick-connect fittings.

Pay attention to the following:

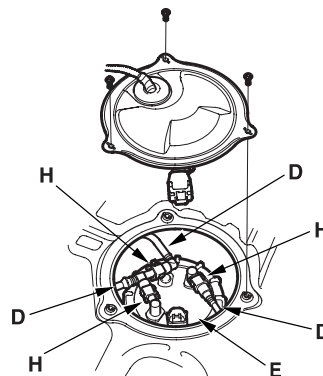
- The fuel feed hose (B), fuel tube (D) and quick-connect fittings (H) are not heat-resistant; be careful not to damage them during welding or other heat-generating procedures.
- The fuel feed hose (B), fuel tube (D) and quick-connect fittings (H) are not acid-proof; do not touch them with a shop towel which was used for wiping battery electrolyte. Replace them if they came into contact with electrolyte or something similar.
- When connecting or disconnecting the fuel feed hose (B), fuel tube (D), and quick-connect fittings (H), be careful not to bend or twist them excessively. Replace them if damaged.



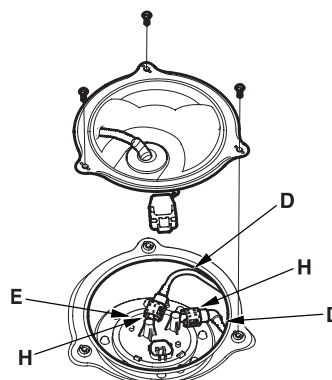
**KG, KS, KE, KR models:**



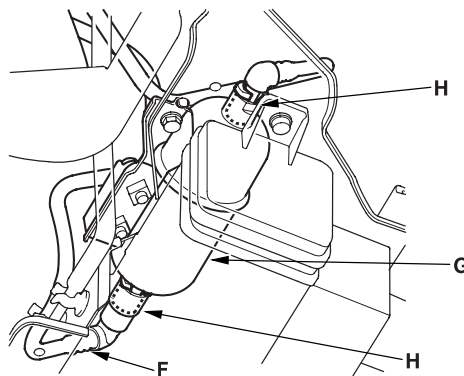
**Except KG, KS, KE, KR, KZ models:**



**KZ model:**

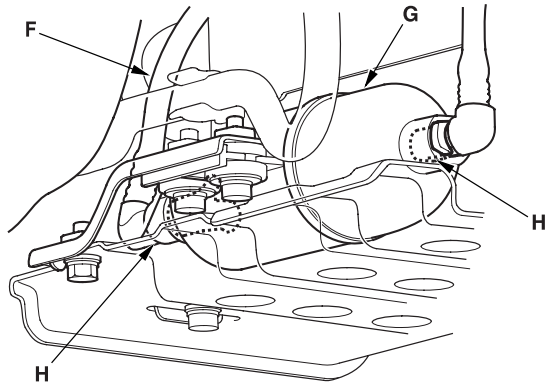


**PH, FO, IN, MA models:**





## KZ model:



A disconnected quick-connect fitting can be reconnected, but the retainer on the mating pipe cannot be reused once it has been removed from the pipe. Replace the retainer when

- replacing the fuel rail.
- replacing the fuel pipe.
- replacing the fuel pump.
- replacing the fuel filter.
- replacing the fuel gauge sending unit.
- it has been removed from the pipe.
- it is damaged.

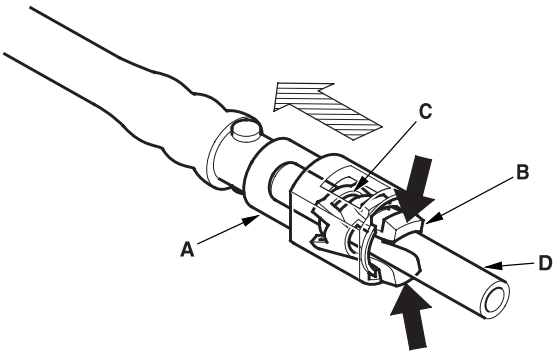
PART	MANUFACTURER	RETAINER COLOR
ENGINE COMPARTMENT (FUEL FEED HOSE: FUEL RAIL SIDE)	TOKAI	BLU
ENGINE COMPARTMENT (FUEL FEED HOSE: FUEL FEED PIPE SIDE)	TOKAI	GREEN
FUEL TANK UNIT FUEL FILTER	SANOH	WHITE
FUEL FILTER (FLOW SIDE)	MOD SIGNAL	NATURAL

## Fuel Tube/Quick-Connect Fittings Removal

1. Relieve the fuel pressure ([see page 11-154](#)).
2. Check the fuel quick-connect fitting for dirt, and clean if necessary.
3. Hold the connector (A) with one hand and squeeze the retainer tabs (B) with the other hand to release them from the locking pawls (C). Pull the connector off.

### NOTE:

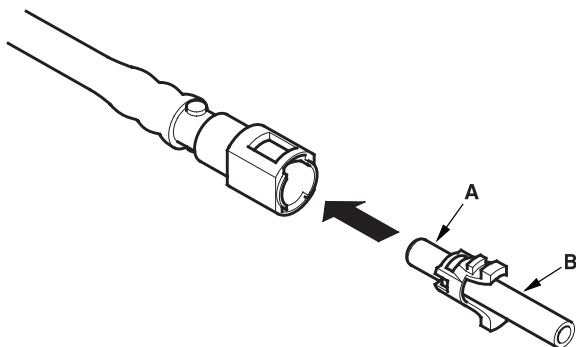
- Be careful not to damage the pipe (D) or other parts. Do not use tools.
- If the connector does not move, keep the retainer tabs pressed down, and alternately pull and push the connector until it comes off easily.
- Do not remove the retainer from the pipe; once removed, the retainer must be replaced with a new one.



(cont'd)

## Fuel Tube/Quick-Connect Fittings Removal (cont'd)

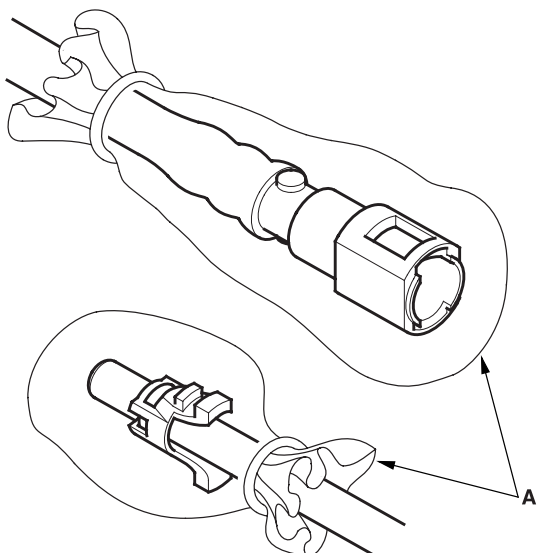
4. Check the contact area (A) of the pipe (B) for dirt and damage.
  - If the surface is dirty, clean it.
  - If the surface is rusty or damaged, replace the fuel pump, fuel filter, or fuel feed pipe.



5. To prevent damage and keep foreign matter out, cover the disconnected connector and pipe end with plastic bags (A).

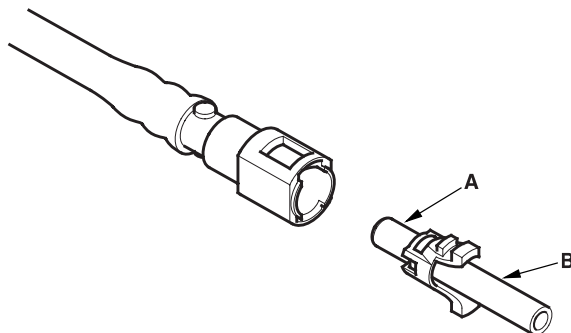
### NOTE:

- The retainer cannot be reused once it has been removed from the pipe.
- Replace the retainer when
- replacing the fuel rail.
  - replacing the fuel feed pipe.
  - replacing the fuel pump.
  - replacing the fuel filter.
  - replacing the fuel gauge sending unit.
  - it has been removed from the pipe.
  - it is damaged.

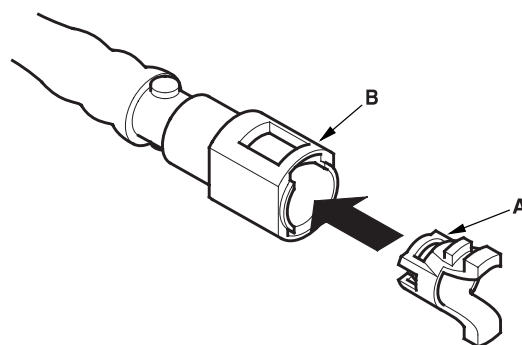


## Fuel Tube/Quick-Connect Fittings Installation

1. Check the contact area (A) of the pipe (B) for dirt and damage, and clean if necessary.

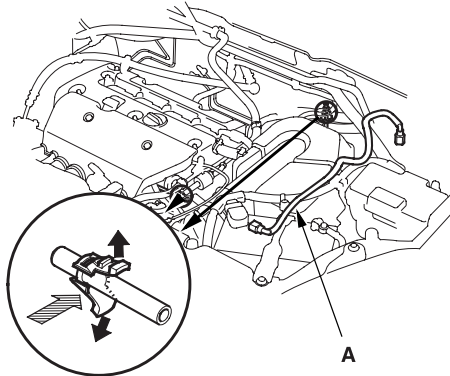


2. Insert a new retainer (A) into the connector (B) if the retainer is damaged, or after
  - replacing the fuel rail.
  - replacing the fuel feed pipe.
  - replacing the fuel pump.
  - replacing the fuel filter.
  - replacing the fuel gauge sending unit.
  - removing the retainer from the pipe.

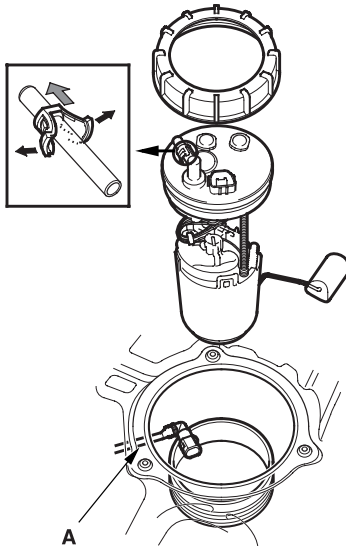




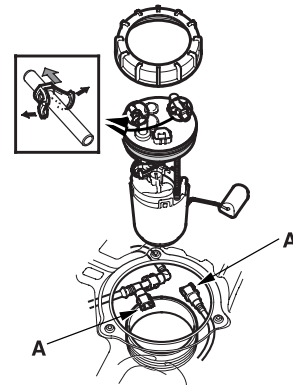
- Before connecting a new fuel tube/quick-connect fitting assembly (A), remove the old retainer (B) from the mating pipe.



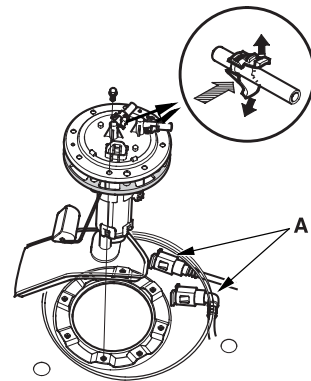
**KG, KS, KE, KR models:**



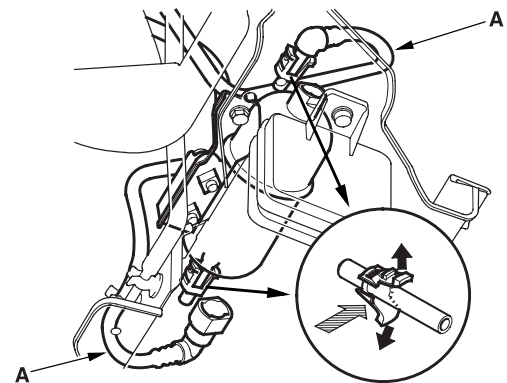
**Except KG, KS, KE, KR KZ models:**



**KZ model:**



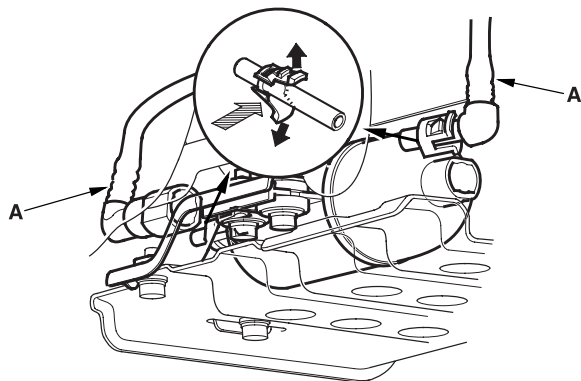
**PH, FO, IN, MA models:**



(cont'd)

## Fuel Tube/Quick-Connect Fittings Installation (cont'd)

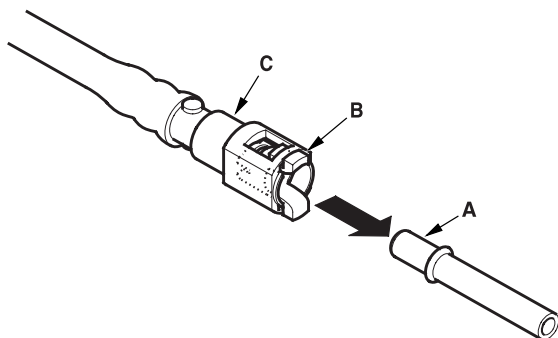
**KZ model:**



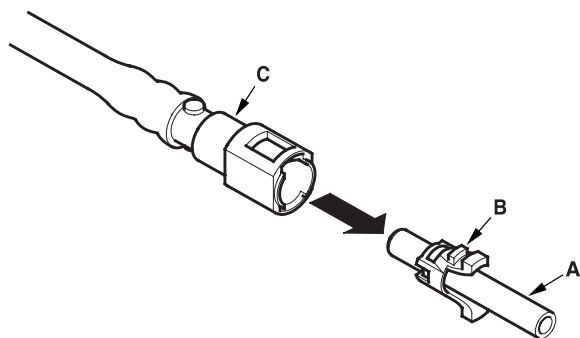
4. Align the quick-connect fittings with the pipe (A), and align the retainer (B) locking pawls with the connector (C) grooves. Then press the quick-connect fittings onto the pipe until both retainer pawls lock with a clicking sound.

NOTE: If it is hard to connect, put a small amount of new engine oil on the pipe end.

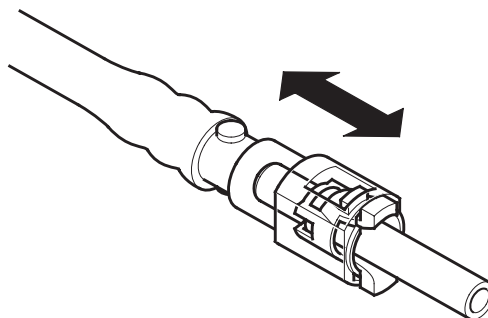
**Connection with new retainer:**



**Reconnection to existing retainer:**



5. Make sure the connection is secure and that the pawls are firmly locked into place; check visually and by pulling the connector.



6. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery, and turn the ignition switch ON (II). The fuel pump will run for about 2 seconds, and fuel pressure will rise. Repeat two or three times, and check that there is no leakage in the fuel supply system.

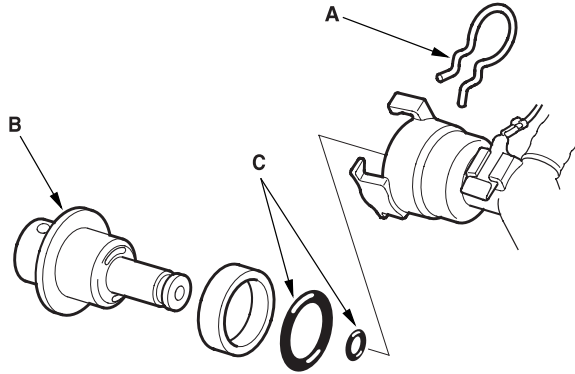




### Fuel Pressure Regulator Replacement

#### Except KZ model:

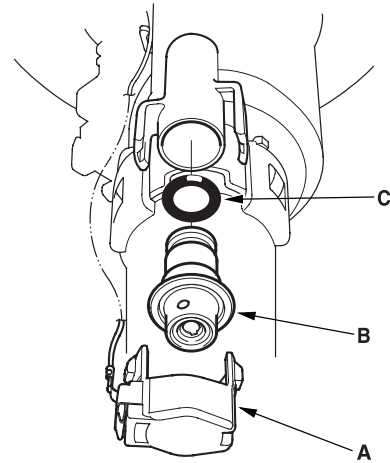
1. Remove the fuel pump ([see page 11-167](#)).
2. Remove the clip (A).



3. Remove the fuel pressure regulator (B).
4. Install the part in the reverse order of removal with new O-rings (C).

#### KZ model:

1. Remove the fuel pump ([see page 11-167](#)).
2. Remove the bracket (A).



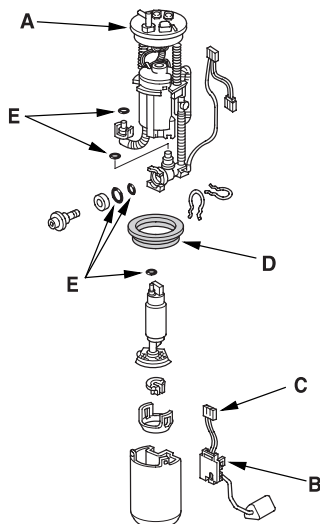
3. Remove the fuel pressure regulator (B).
4. Install the part in the reverse order of removal with a new O-ring (C).

## Fuel Filter Replacement

The fuel filter should be replaced whenever the fuel pressure drops below the specified value (330 - 380 kPa (3.4 - 3.9 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 48 - 55 psi), KZ model: 320 - 370 kPa, (3.3 - 3.8 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 47 - 54 psi)) after making sure that the fuel pump and the fuel pressure regulator are OK.

### KG, KS, KE, KR models:

1. Remove the fuel pump (see page 11-167).
2. Remove the fuel filter (A).

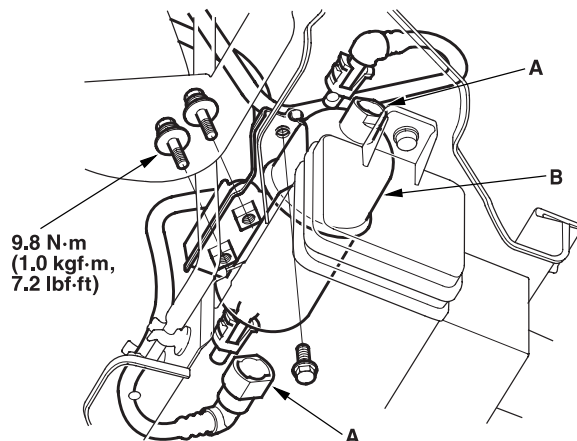


3. Install the part in the reverse order of removal with a new base gasket (D) and new O-rings (E), then check these items:
  - When connecting the wire harness, make sure the connection is secure and the terminal (B) is firmly locked into place.
  - When installing the fuel gauge sending unit (C), make sure the connection is secure and the connector is firmly locked into place. Be careful not to bend or twist it excessively.

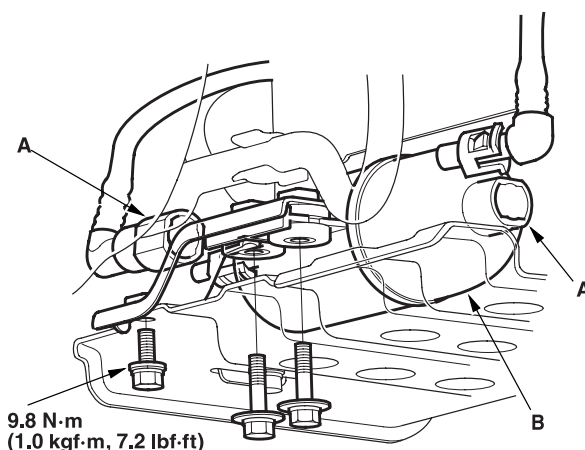
### Except KG, KS, KE, KR models:

1. Relieve fuel pressure (see page 11-154).
2. Disconnect the hose and quick-connect fittings (A) (see page 11-161).

### Except KZ model:



### KZ model:



3. Remove the fuel filter (B).
4. Install the part in the reverse order of removal.



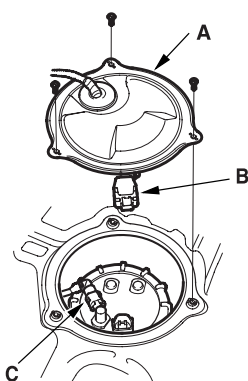
## Fuel Pump/Fuel Gauge Sending Unit Replacement

### Special Tools Required

Adjustable ring wrench 07WAA-0010100

### Except KZ model:

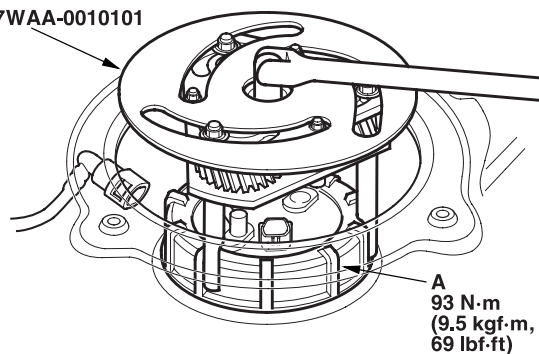
1. Relieve the fuel pressure ([see page 11-154](#)).
2. Remove the fuel fill cap.
3. Fold the rear seats forward, and pull back the carpet to expose the access panel.
4. Remove the access panel (A) from the floor.



\*: The illustration shows KG, KS, KE, KR models.

5. Disconnect the fuel pump 5P connector (B).
6. Disconnect the quick-connect fitting (C) from the fuel tank unit.
7. Using the tool, loosen the fuel tank unit locknut (A).

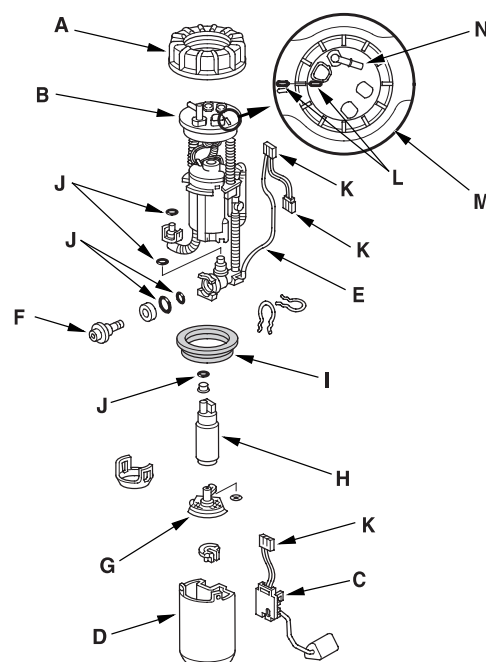
07WAA-0010101



A  
93 N·m  
(9.5 kgf·m,  
69 lbf·ft)

\*: The illustration shows KG, KS, KE, KR models.

8. Remove the locknut (A) and the fuel pump assembly.



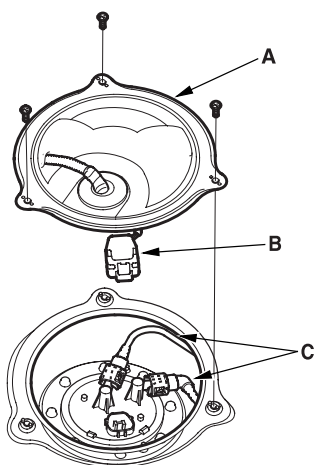
9. Remove the strainer case (B), the fuel gauge sending unit (C), the case (D), the wire harness (E), and the fuel pressure regulator (F).
10. When connecting the fuel pump assembly, make sure the connection is secure and the suction filter (G) is firmly connected to the fuel pump (H).
11. Install the fuel pump assembly in the reverse order of removal with a new base gasket (I) and new O-rings (J), then check these items:
  - When connecting the wire harness, make sure the connection is secure and the connector (K) is firmly locked into the place.
  - When installing the fuel gauge sending unit, make sure the connection is secure and the connector is firmly locked into place. Be careful not to bend or twist it excessively.
  - When installing the fuel pump assembly align, the marks (L) on the fuel tank (M) and the fuel pump assembly (N).

(cont'd)

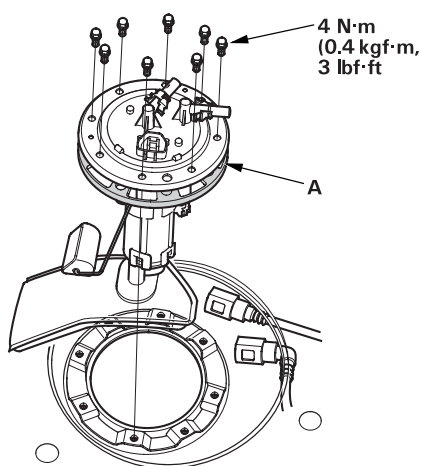
## Fuel Pump/Fuel Gauge Sending Unit Replacement (cont'd)

### KZ model:

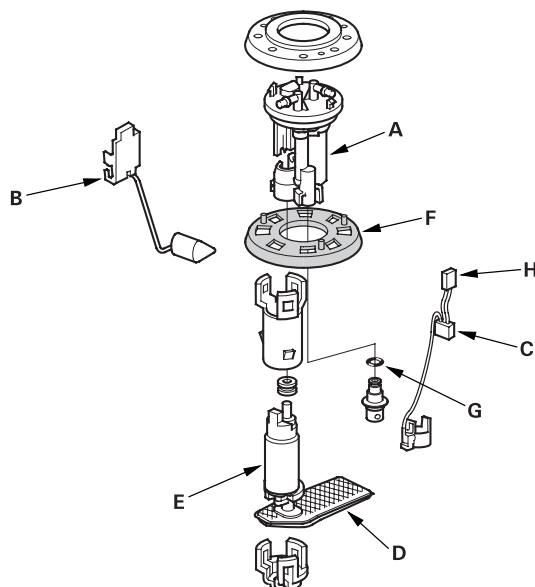
1. Relieve the fuel pressure ([see page 11-154](#)).
2. Remove the fuel fill cap.
3. Fold the rear seats forward, and pull back the carpet to expose the access panel.
4. Remove the access panel (A) from the floor.



5. Disconnect the fuel pump 5P connector (B).
6. Disconnect the quick-connect fittings (C) from the fuel tank unit.
7. Remove the fuel tank unit (A).



8. Remove the strainer case (A), the fuel gauge sending unit (B), the wire harness (C).



9. When connecting the fuel tank unit, make sure the connection is secure and the suction filter (D) is firmly connected to the fuel pump (E).
10. Install the part in the reverse order of removal with a new base gasket (F) and new O-rings (G), then check these items:
  - When connecting the wire harness, make sure the connection is secure and the connector (H) is firmly locked into the place.
  - When installing the fuel gauge sending unit, make sure the connection is secure and the connector is firmly locked into place. Be careful not to bend or twist it excessively.

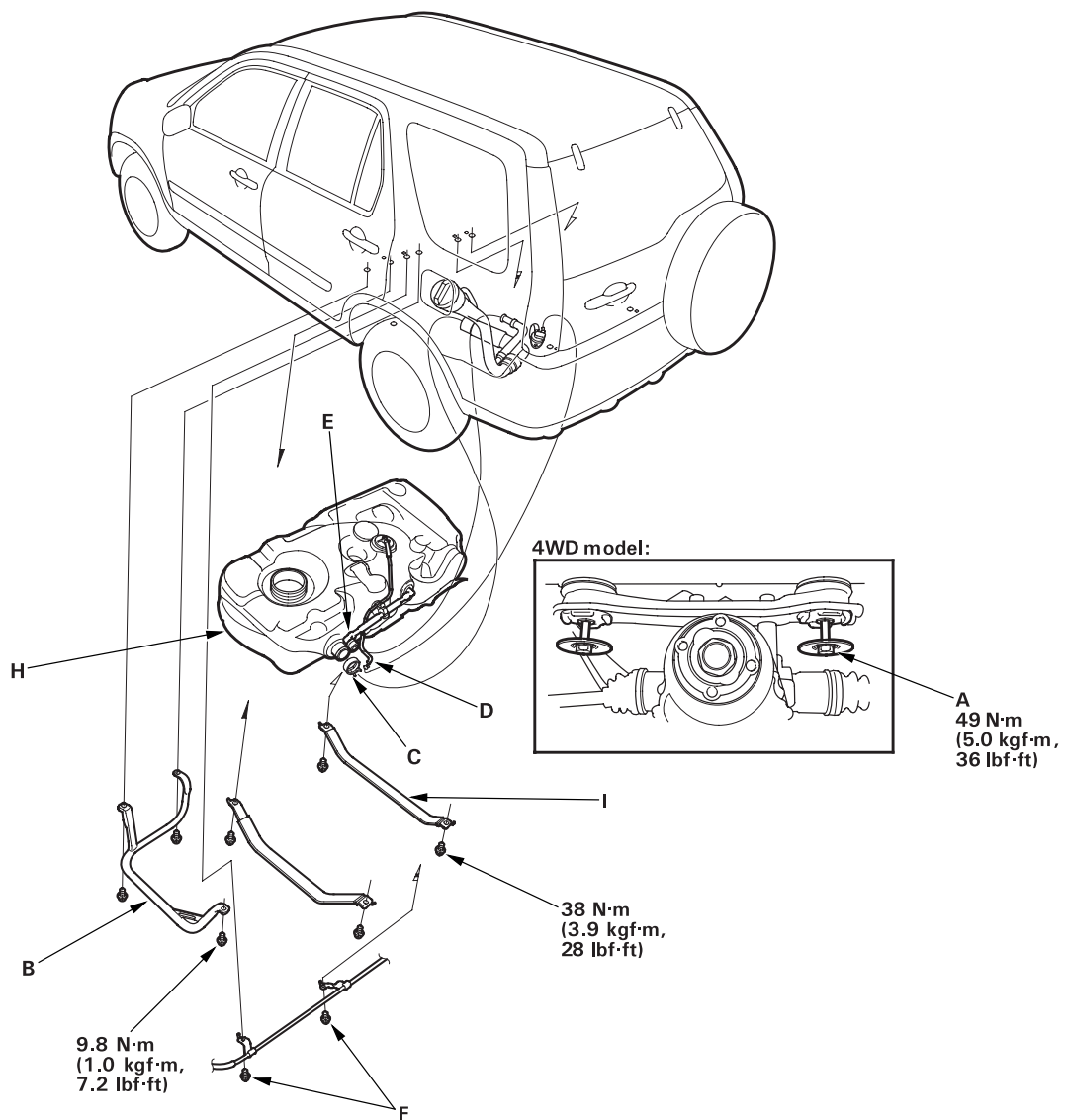


### Fuel Tank Replacement

#### Except KZ model:

1. Drain the fuel tank: Remove the fuel pump assembly ([see page 11-167](#)). Using a hand pump, hose and container suitable for gasoline, draw the fuel from the fuel tank.
2. Jack up the vehicle, and support it with jackstands.
3. 4WD model:  
Remove the propeller shaft ([see page 16-33](#)). Remove the rear differential mounting bolt (A), then support it with jackstands.

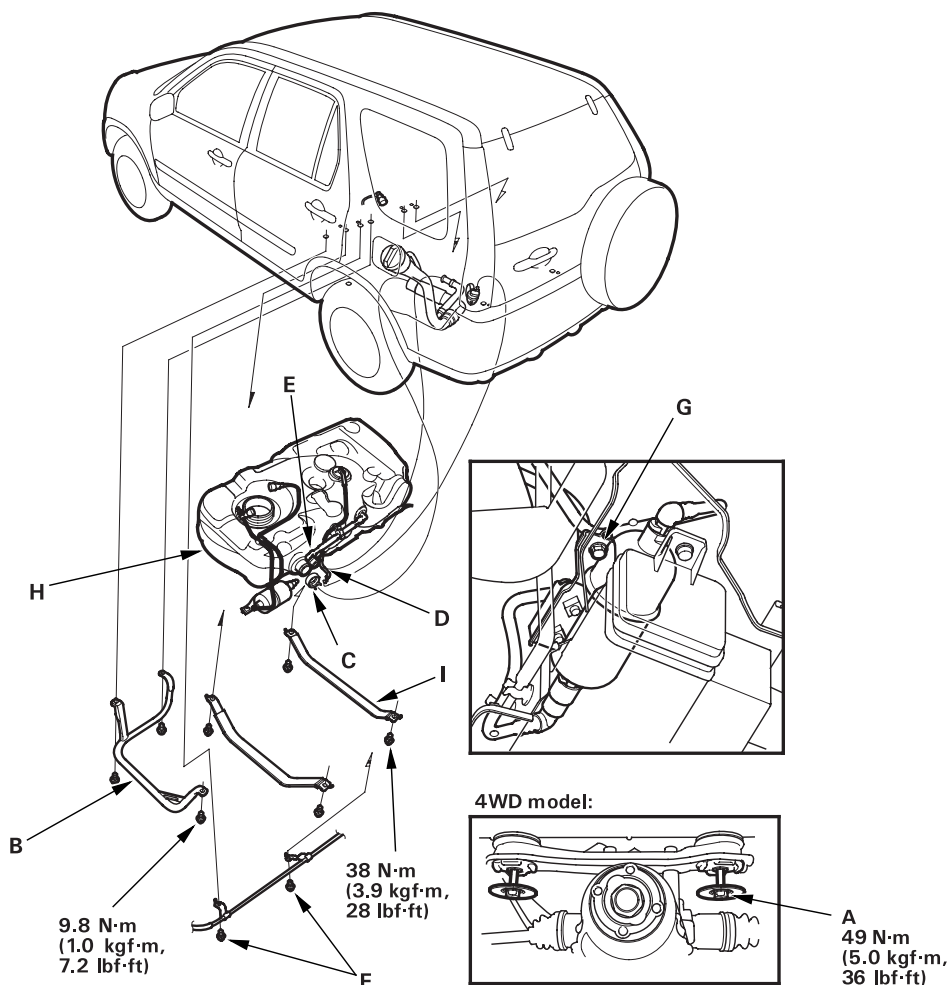
#### KG, KS, KE, KR models:



(cont'd)

## Fuel Tank Replacement (cont'd)

Except KG, KS, KE, KR models:

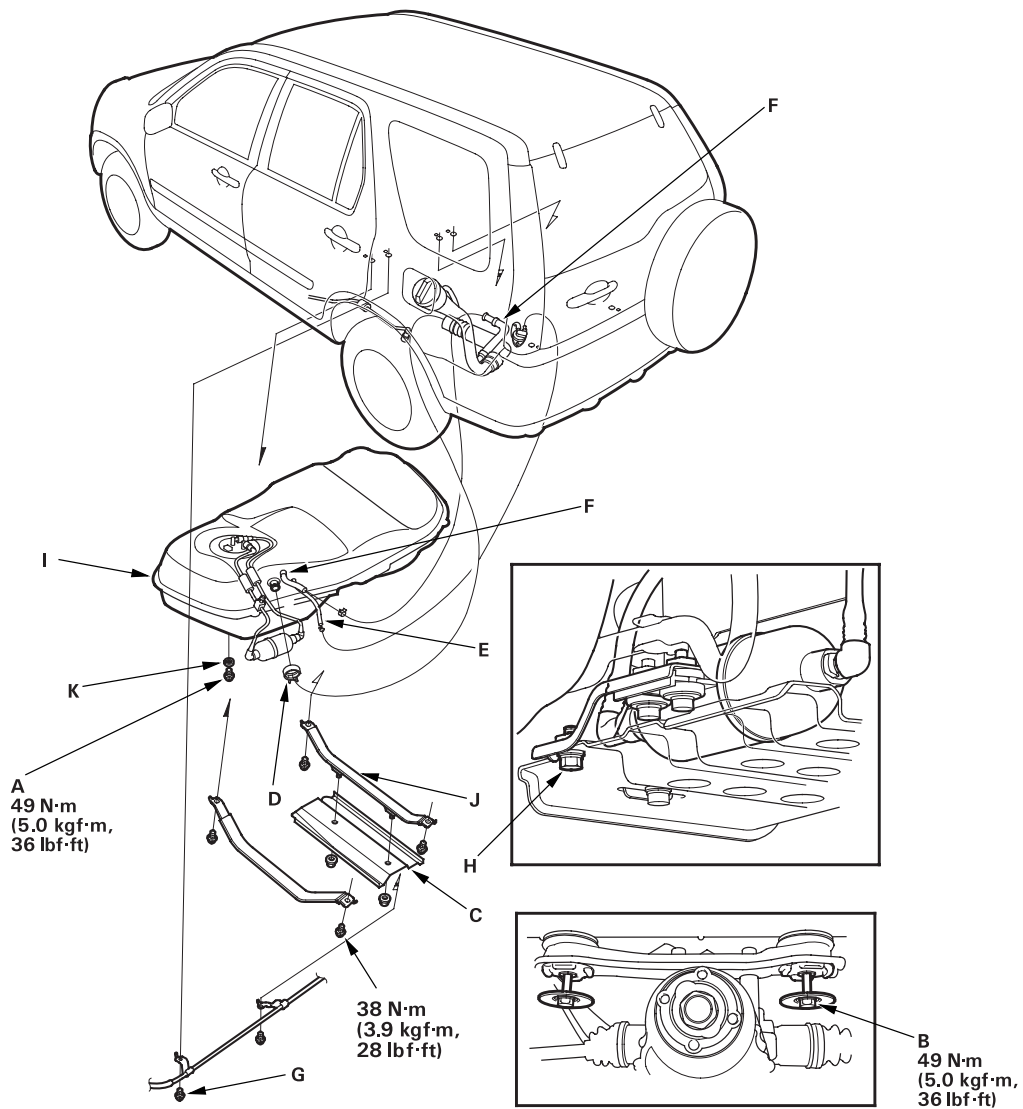


4. Loosen the Evaporative Emission (EVAP) canister bracket bolt.
5. Remove the fuel tank guard (B).
6. Loosen the clamp (C).
7. Disconnect the fuel vapor hose (D), hoses (E) and wire stay bolts (F). Slide back the clamps, then twist the hoses as you pull to avoid damaging them.
8. Except KG, KS, KE, KR models:  
Remove the fuel filter bracket bolt (G).
9. Place a jack, or other support, under the fuel tank (H).
10. Remove the strap bolts, and the strap (I).
11. Remove the fuel tank.
12. Install the remaining parts in the reverse order of removal.



## KZ model:

1. Relieve the fuel pressure ([see page 11-154](#)).
2. Fold the rear seats forward, and pull back the carpet to expose the access panel.
3. Remove the access panel, disconnect the quick connect fittings from the fuel pump.
4. Jack up the vehicle, and support it with jackstands.
5. Remove the drain bolt (A), and drain the fuel into an approved container.
6. Remove the propeller shaft ([see page 16-33](#)). Remove the rear differential mounting bolt (B), then support it with jackstands.



(cont'd)

### Fuel Tank Replacement (cont'd)

7. Loosen the Evaporative Emission (EVAP) canister bracket bolt.
8. Remove the fuel tank guard (C).
9. Loosen the clamp (D).
10. Disconnect the fuel vapor hose (E) and hoses (F) and wire stay bolts (G). Slide back the clamps, then twist the hoses as you pull to avoid damaging them.
11. Remove the fuel filter bracket (H).
12. Place a jack, or other support, under the fuel tank (I).
13. Remove the strap bolts, and the strap (J).
14. Remove the fuel tank.
15. Install the drain bolt with a new washer (K), then coat the drain bolt with Noxrust 124B or equivalent. Allow the Noxrust or equivalent to dry for 20 minutes.
16. Install the remaining parts in the reverse order of removal.





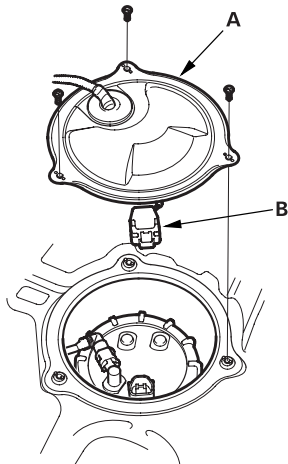
## Fuel Gauge Sending Unit Test

### Special Tools Required

Adjustable ring wrench 07WAA-0010100

NOTE: For the fuel gauge system circuit diagram, refer to the Gauges Circuit Diagram (see page 22A-68).

1. Check the No. 10 METER (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box before testing.
2. Do the gauge drive circuit check (see page 22A-67).
  - If the fuel gauge needle sweeps from the minimum to maximum position and then returns to the minimum position, the gauge is OK. Go to step 3.
  - If the fuel gauge needle does not sweep correctly, replace the gauge assembly and retest.
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Remove the rear seat cushion (see page 20-114).
5. Remove the access panel (A) from the floor.



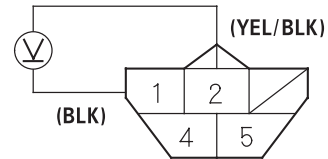
\*: The illustration shows KG, KS, KE, KR, KZ models.

6. Disconnect the fuel pump 5P connector (B).

7. Measure voltage between the fuel pump 5P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2 with the ignition switch ON (II). There should be battery voltage.

- If the voltage is OK, go to step 8.
- If the voltage is not as specified, check for:
  - a short YEL/BLK to ground.
  - an open in the YEL/BLK or BLK wire.
  - poor ground (G551).

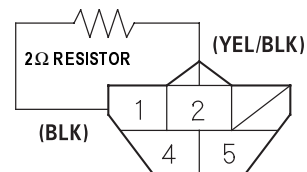
FUEL PUMP 5P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

8. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Remove the No. 9 BACK UP (10A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box for at least 30 seconds, then reinstall it.
9. Install a 12  $\Omega$  resistor between the fuel pump 5P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2, then turn the ignition switch ON (II).

FUEL PUMP 5P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

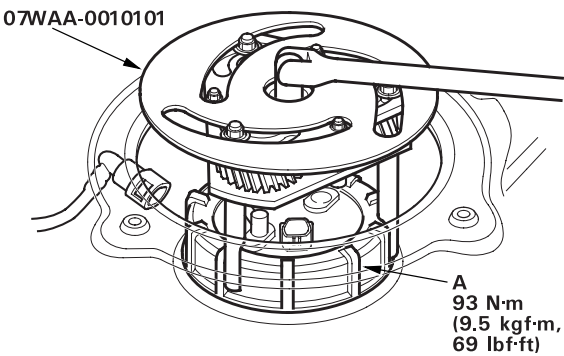
(cont'd)

Fuel Gauge Sending Unit Test (cont'd)

10. Check that the pointer of the fuel gauge indicates "F".
- If the pointer of the fuel gauge does not indicate "F", replace the gauge.
  - If the gauge is OK, inspect the fuel gauge sending unit.

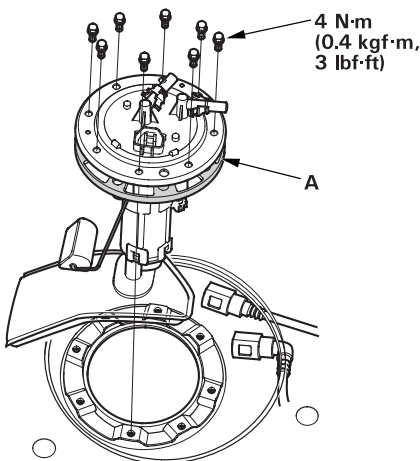
NOTE: The pointer of the fuel gauge returns to the bottom of the gauge dial when the ignition switch is OFF, regardless of the fuel level.

11. Relieve the fuel pressure (see page 11-154).
12. Remove the fuel fill cap.
13. Disconnect the quick-connect fittings from the fuel pump.
14. Except KZ model:  
Using the tool, loosen the locknut (A), and remove the fuel pump assembly from the fuel tank.



\*: The illustration shows KG, KS, KE, KR model.

15. KZ model:  
Remove the fuel pump assembly.



16. Measure the resistance between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals with the float at E (EMPTY), 1/2 (HALF FULL), and F (FULL) positions. If you do not get the following readings, replace the fuel gauge sending unit (see page 11-167).

Except KZ model:

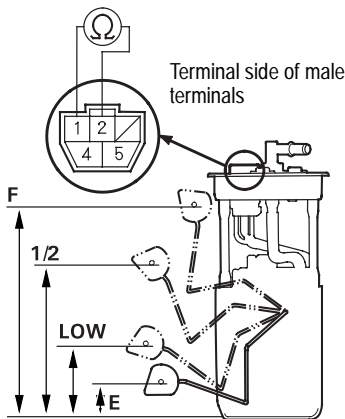
Float Position	F	1/2	LOW	E
Resistance (Ω)	11 -13	67.6 -73.6	113.5 -121.2	130 -132

KZ model:

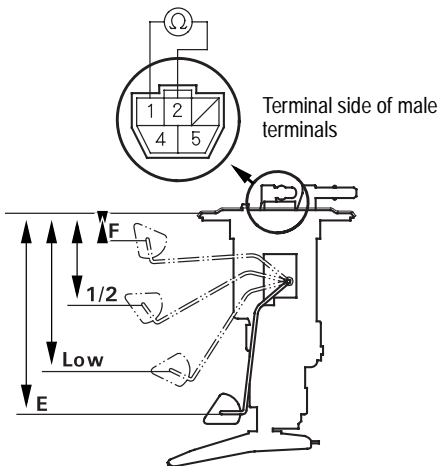
Float Position	F	1/2	LOW	E
Resistance (Ω)	11 -13	67.6 -73.6	110.8 -116.8	130 -132

NOTE: Remove the No. 9 BACK UP (10A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box for at least 10 seconds after completing troubleshooting otherwise it may take up to 20 minutes for the fuel gauge to indicate the correct fuel level.

Except KZ model:



KZ model:



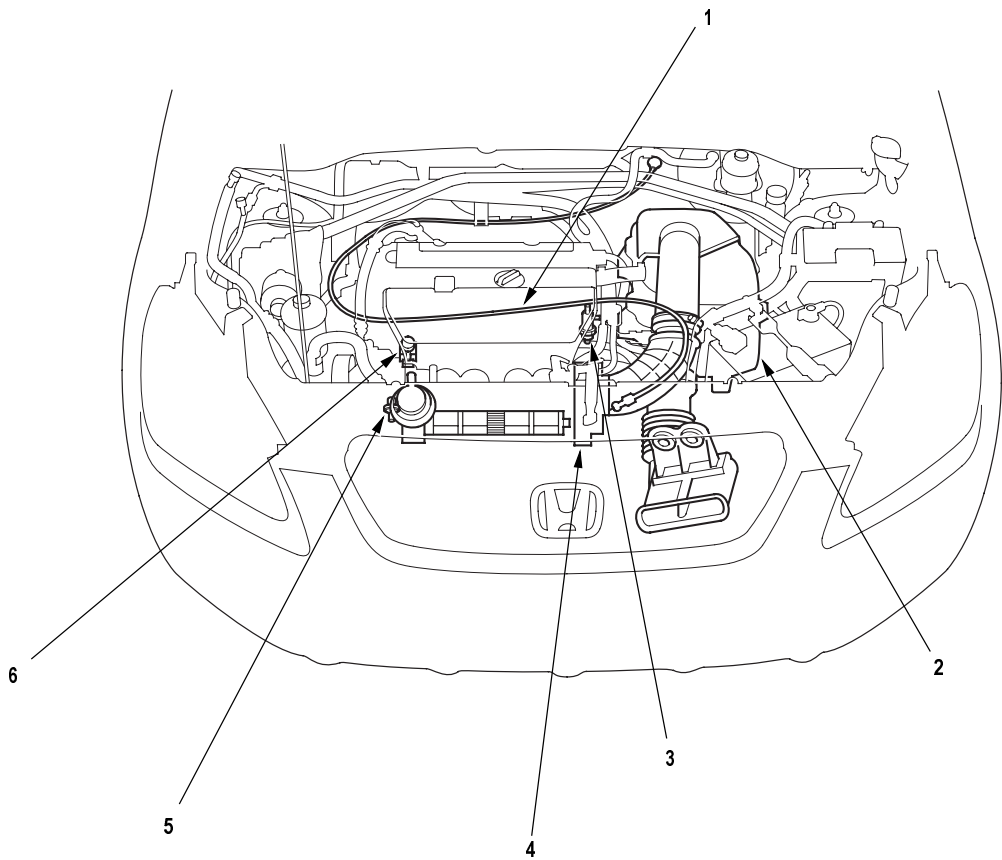


### Low Fuel Indicator Light Test

1. Do the fuel gauge sending unit test ([see page 11-173](#)).
  - If the system is OK, go to step 2.
  - If the system has any malfunction, repair it.
2. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Remove the No. 9 BACK UP (10A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box for at least 30 seconds, then reinstall it.
3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II) with the float at the E (EMPTY) position.
  - If the low fuel indicator light is on, go to step 3.
  - If the low fuel indicator light is not on, refer to the low fuel indicator Circuit Diagram ([see page 22A-69](#)) and check the circuit.
4. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Remove the No. 9 BACK UP (10A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box for at least 30 seconds, then reinstall it.
5. Lift the float above the 1/2 position.
  - If the low fuel indicator light goes off, the system is OK.
  - If the low fuel indicator light is still on, refer to the low fuel indicator Circuit Diagram ([see page 22A-69](#)) and check the circuit.

Intake Air System

Component Location Index



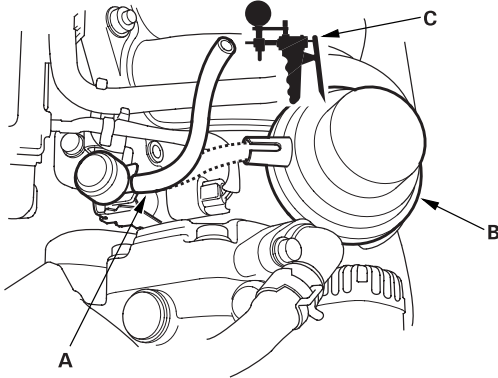
\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

1	THROTTLE CABLE	Adjustment, <a href="#">page 11-183</a> ; Removal/Installation, <a href="#">page 11-184</a>
2	AIR CLEANER	Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-182</a>
	AIR CLEANER ELEMENT	Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-182</a>
3	INTAKE AIR BYPASS CONTROL THERMAL VALVE	Test, <a href="#">page 11-181</a>
4	THROTTLE BODY	Test, <a href="#">page 11-180</a> ; Removal/Installation, <a href="#">page 11-185</a> ; Disassembly/Reassembly, <a href="#">page 11-186</a>
5	INTAKE MANIFOLD RUNNER CONTROL (IMRC) ACTUATOR	Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-177</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-187</a>
6	INTAKE MANIFOLD RUNNER CONTROL (IMRC) SOLENOID VALVE	Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 11-177</a>



## IMRC System Troubleshooting

1. Start the engine and allow it to idle.
2. Disconnect the vacuum hose (A) from Intake Manifold Runner Control (IMRC) actuator (B), and connect the vacuum pump/gauge (C) to the hose.



*Is there vacuum?*

**Yes** Go to step 10.

**No** Go to step 3.

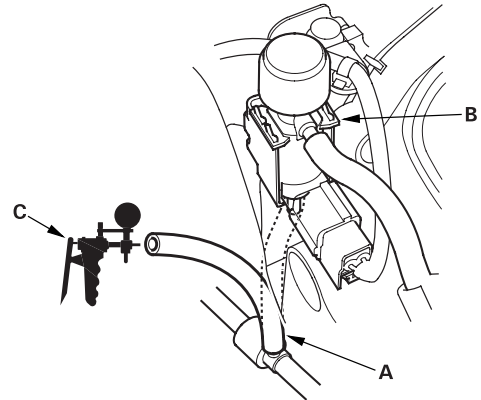
3. Check the vacuum hose between IMRC actuator and IMRC solenoid valve.

*Is there vacuum hose OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Repair the blockage or vacuum leak between the IMRC actuator and IMRC solenoid valve.■

4. Disconnect the lower vacuum hose (A) from IMRC solenoid valve (B), and connect the vacuum pump/gauge (C) to the hose.



*Is there vacuum?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Repair the blockage or vacuum leak between the intake manifold and IMRC solenoid valve.■

5. Reconnect the lower vacuum hose to the IMRC solenoid valve, and connect the vacuum pump/gauge to the vacuum hose (actuator side).
6. Disconnect the IMRC solenoid valve 2P connector.

*Is there vacuum?*

**Yes** Go to step 7.

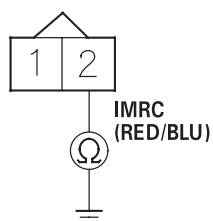
**No** Replace the IMRC solenoid valve.■

(cont'd)

## IMRC System Troubleshooting (cont'd)

7. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
8. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
9. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).
10. Check for continuity between IMRC solenoid valve 2P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.

IMRC SOLENOID VALVE 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (B22) and the IMRC solenoid valve.■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

11. Raise engine speed to 5,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ).
12. Check for vacuum.
 

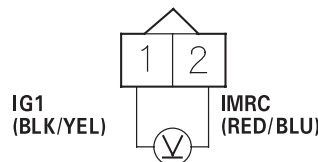
*Is there vacuum?*

**Yes** Go to step 13.

**No** Go to step 23.
13. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
14. Disconnect the IMRC solenoid valve 2P connector.
15. Start the engine.

16. Raise engine speed to 5,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ), then measure voltage between IMRC solenoid valve 2P connector terminal No. 1 and No. 2.

IMRC SOLENOID VALVE 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

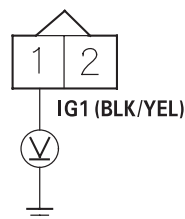
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Replace the IMRC solenoid valve.■

**No** Go to step 17.

17. Measure voltage between IMRC solenoid valve 2P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

IMRC SOLENOID VALVE 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

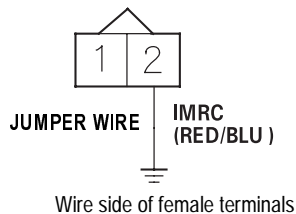
**Yes** Go to step 18.

**No** Check the No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box. If the fuse OK, repair open in the wire between the IMRC solenoid valve and No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse.



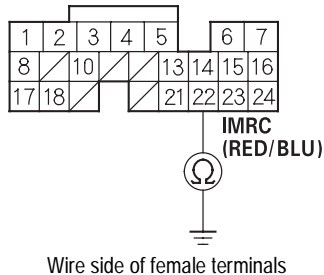
18. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
19. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
20. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).
21. Connect IMRC solenoid valve 2P connector terminal No. 2 to body ground with a jumper wire.

IMRC SOLENOID VALVE 2P CONNECTOR



22. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal B22 and body ground.

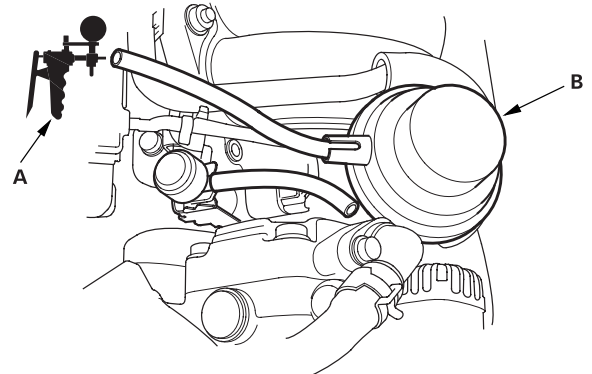
ECM/PCM CONNECTOR B (24P)



*Is there continuity?*

- Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■
- No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (B22) and the IMRC solenoid valve.■

23. Connect the vacuum pump/gauge (A) to the IMRC actuator (B), then apply vacuum.

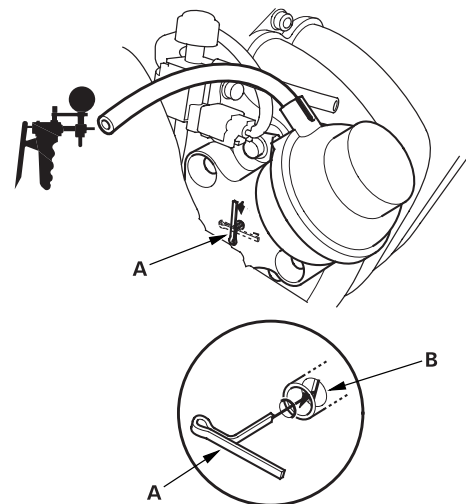


*Does the IMRC actuator hold vacuum?*

**Yes** Go to step 24.

**No** Replace the IMRC valve assembly.■

24. Install the cotter pin (A) to the IMRC actuator shaft (B).



25. Apply vacuum to the IMRC actuator, then check the cotter pin movement.

*Does the cotter pin move?*

**Yes** IMRC system is OK.■

**No** Replace the IMRC valve assembly.■

## Throttle Body Test

With using a scan tool/Honda PGM Tester:

NOTE:

- Do not adjust the throttle stop screw. It is preset at the factory.
  - If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) has been reported on, check for Diagnostic Trouble Codes (DLC) ([see page 11-3](#)).
1. With the engine off, check the throttle cable operation. The cable should operate without binding or sticking.
    - If the cable operates OK, go to step 2.
    - If the cable binds or sticks, check it and its routing. If the cable is faulty, reroute it or replace it, and adjust it ([see page 11-183](#)), then go to step 2.
  2. Operate the throttle lever by hand to see if the throttle valve and/or shaft are too loose or too tight.
    - If there is excessive play in the throttle valve shaft, or any binding in the throttle valve at the fully closed position or fully open, replace the throttle body.
    - If the throttle valve and shaft are OK, go to step 3.
  3. Connect the scan tool/Honda PGM Tester to the Data Link Connector (DLC).
  4. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
  5. Check the throttle position with the scan tool. The reading should be about 10% when the throttle is fully closed and about 90% when the throttle is fully opened.
    - If the throttle position is correct, the throttle body is OK.
    - If the throttle position is not correct, replace the throttle body.



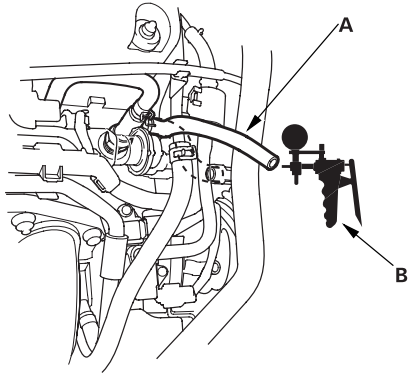


### Intake Air Bypass Control Thermal Valve Test

1. Start the engine. Then let it idle.

NOTE: The engine coolant temperature must be below 65°C (149°F).

2. Remove the vacuum hose (A) from the intake air duct, and connect a vacuum pump/gauge (B) to the hose.



3. Raise and lower the engine speed, and make sure the vacuum gauge reading changes as the engine speed changes.

If the vacuum reading does not change, check for these problems:

- Misrouted, leaking, broken, or clogged intake air bypass control system vacuum lines.
- A cracked or damage intake air bypass control thermal valve.

4. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.

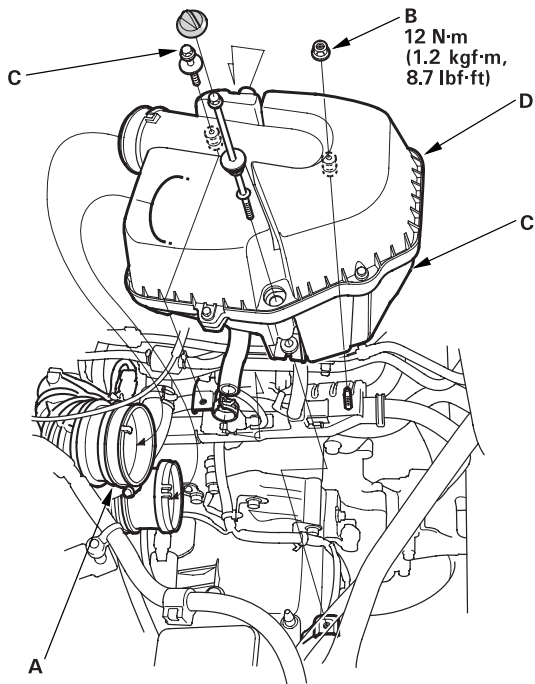
5. Raise and lower the engine speed, and make sure the vacuum gauge reading does not change as the rpm changes.

If the vacuum reading changes, check for these problems:

- Misrouted, leaking, broken, or clogged intake air bypass control system vacuum lines.
- A cracked or damaged intake air bypass control thermal valve.

## Air Cleaner Replacement

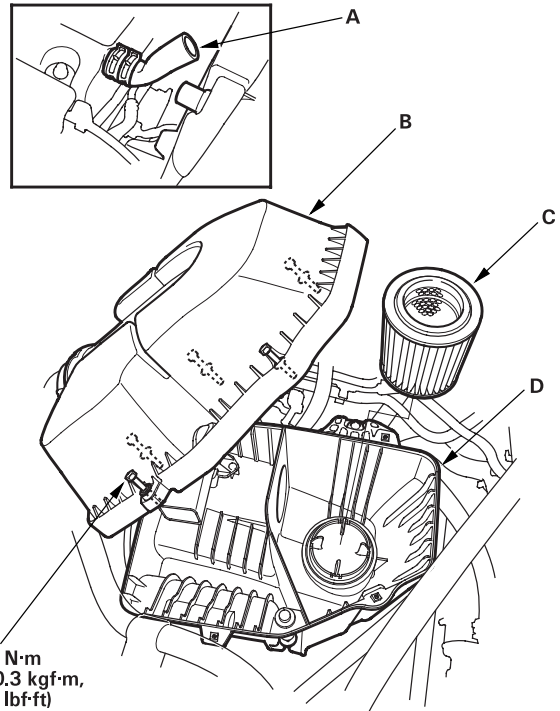
1. Remove the clamp (A), the nuts (B), and the bolts (C).



2. Remove the air cleaner (D).
3. Install the parts in the reverse order of removal.

## Air Cleaner Element Replacement

1. Disconnect the PCV hose (A). Open the air cleaner housing cover (B).

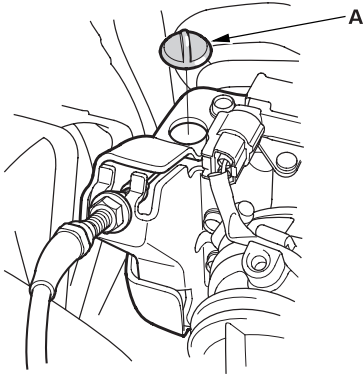


2. Remove the air cleaner (C) from the air clenaer housing (D).
3. Install the parts in the reverse order of removal.

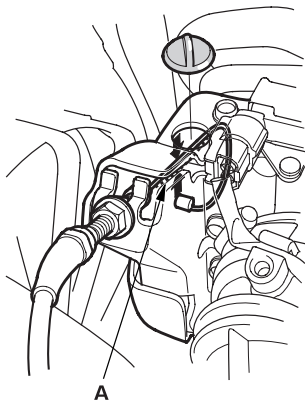


### Throttle Cable Adjustment

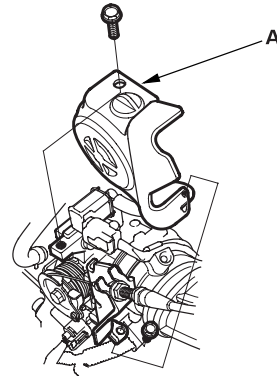
1. Remove the throttle linkage cover grommet (A).



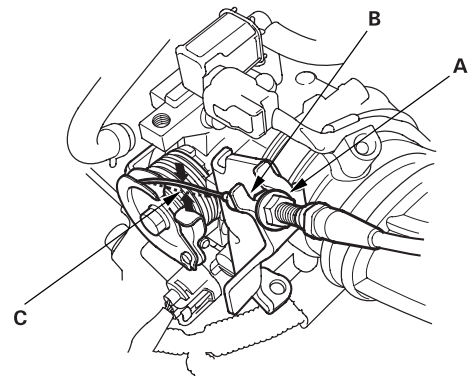
2. Check cable free play at the throttle linkage. Cable deflection (A) should be 10 - 12 mm (3/8 - 1/2 in.).



3. If the deflection is not within spec (10 - 12 mm, 3/8 - 1/2 in.), remove the throttle linkage cover (A).



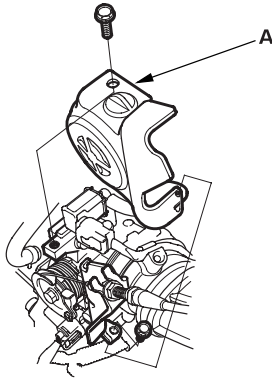
4. Loosen the locknut (A), turn the adjusting nut (B) until the deflection (C) is as specified, then retighten the locknut.



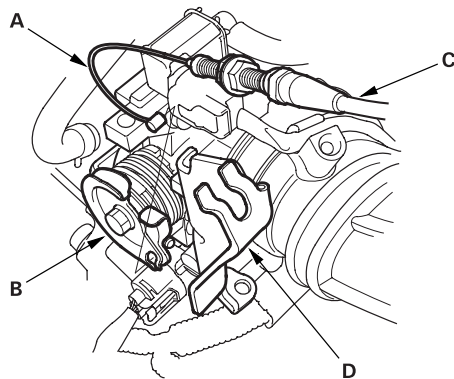
5. With the cable properly adjusted, check the throttle valve to be sure it opens fully when you push the accelerator pedal to the floor. Also check the throttle valve to be sure it returns to the idle position whenever you release the accelerator pedal.

## Throttle Cable Removal/Installation

1. Remove the throttle linkage cover (A).

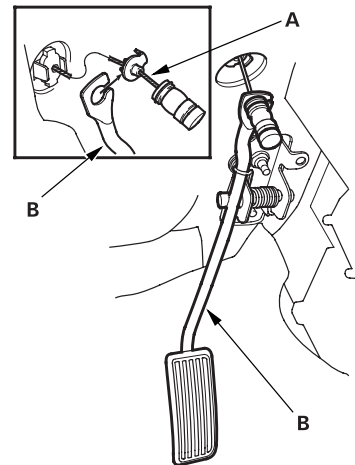


2. Fully open the throttle valve, then remove the throttle cable (A) from the throttle link (B).

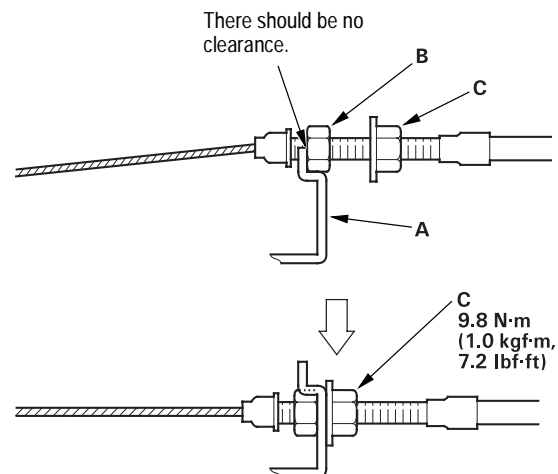


3. Remove the cable housing (C) from the cable bracket (D).

4. Remove the throttle cable (A) from the accelerator pedal (B).



5. Install in the reverse order of removal.
6. After installing, start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.
7. Hold the cable, removing all slack from it.
8. Set the locknut on the cable bracket (A). Adjust the adjusting nut (B) so that its free play is 0 mm.



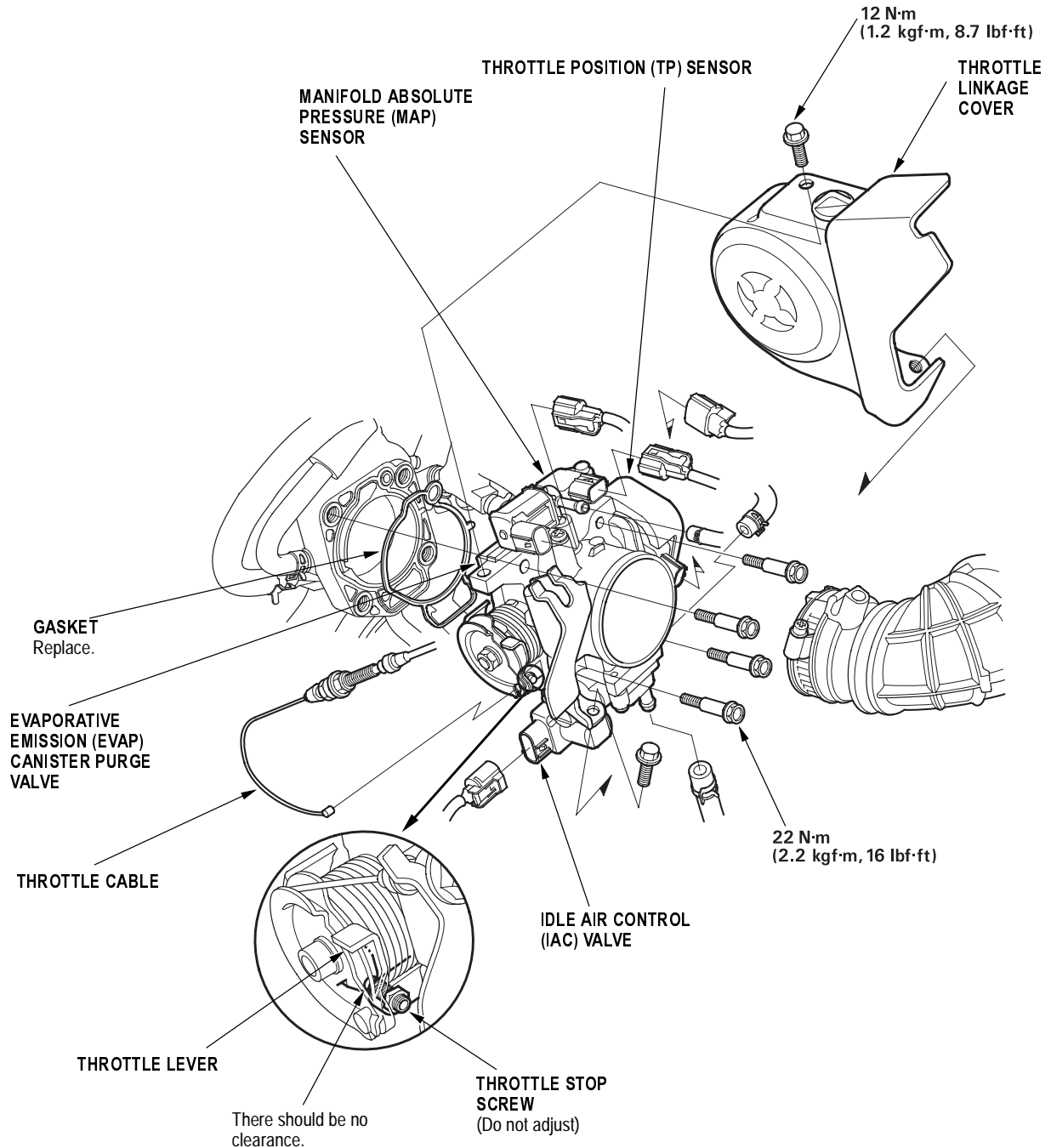
9. Remove the cable from the throttle bracket (A). Reset the adjusting nut (B) and tighten the locknut (C).
10. With the cable properly adjusted, check the throttle valve to be sure it opens fully when you push the accelerator pedal to the floor. Also check the throttle valve to be sure it returns to the idle position whenever you release the accelerator pedal.



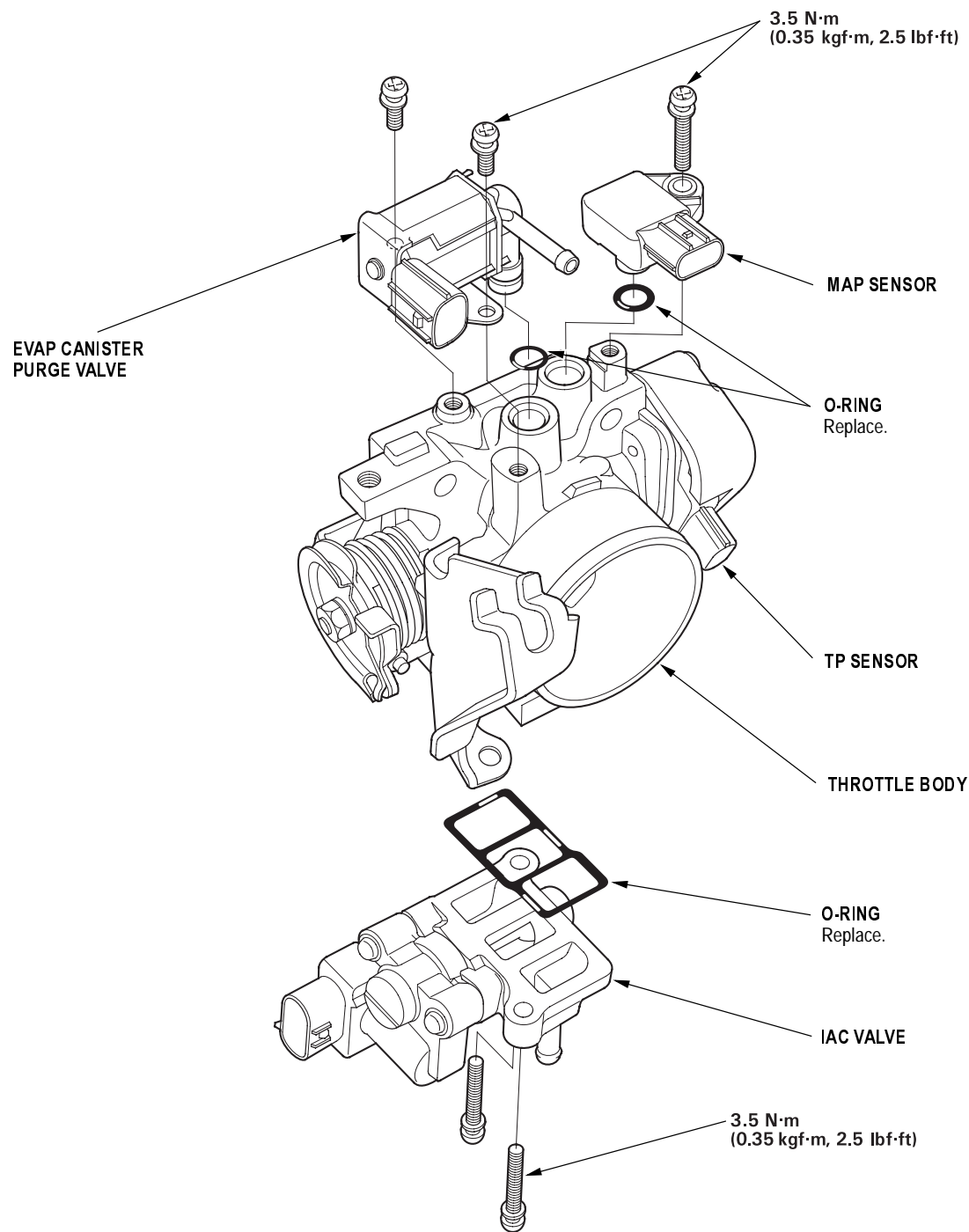
## Throttle Body Removal/Installation

### NOTE:

- Do not adjust the throttle stop screw.
- After reassembly, adjust the throttle cable ([see page 11-183](#)).
- The Throttle Position (TP) sensor is not removable.



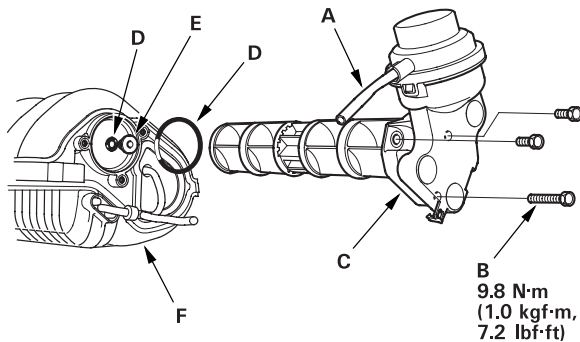
Throttle Body Disassembly/Reassembly



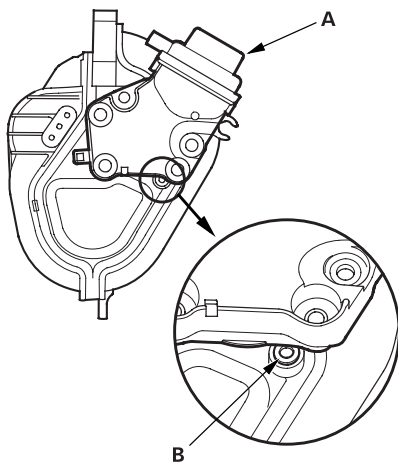


## IMRC Valve Replacement

1. Remove the intake manifold (see page 09-2).
2. Disconnect the vacuum hose (A).

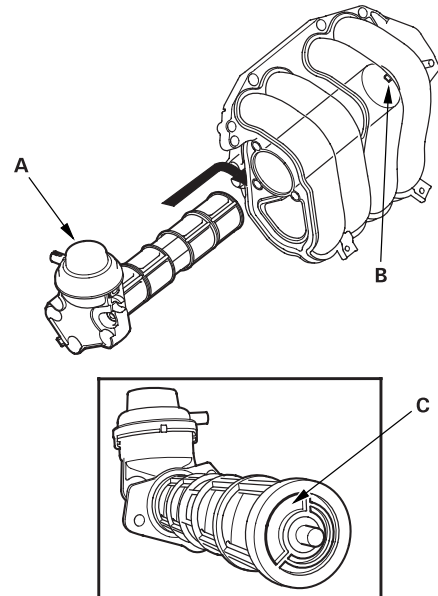


3. Remove the bolts (B).
  4. Remove the IMRC actuator assembly (C).
- NOTE:**
- When installing the IMRC actuator, make sure the bearing (E) is firmly secure into place if necessary.
  - Do not the IMRC assembly interfere with the intake manifold (F).
  - When installing the IMRC actuator, replace the new O-rings (D).
5. Install the IMRC actuator assembly (A), then check the hole (B) appears.



6. Turn the IMRC actuator assembly (A), and set the bolt holes.

**NOTE:** When turning the IMRC actuator assembly, make sure the stopper (B) and groove (C) are fit.



## Catalytic Converter System

### DTC Troubleshooting

#### DTC P0420 (67-1): Catalytic System Efficiency Below Threshold

NOTE: If some of the DTCs listed below are stored at the same time as DTC P0420, troubleshoot those DTCs first, then recheck for DTC P0420.

P0137, P0138: Secondary Heated Oxygen Sensor (secondary HO2S) (Sensor 2)

P0141: Secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) heater

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4), then continue to step 2 through 5 to reset the readiness code.
2. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on.
3. Drive for about 10 minutes without stopping on a highway or freeway. Your speed can vary.
4. With the A/T in D position, M/T in 5th gear, drive at a steady speed between 80 - 100 km/h (50 - 62 mph) for 30 seconds.
5. Repeat step 4 three times. Between each repetition, close the throttle completely for 1 - 2 seconds. If the engine is stopped during this part of the procedure, go to step 3 and do the procedure again.
6. Check for a Temporary DTC with the scan tool.  
*Does the scan tool indicate Temporary DTC P0420?*  
**Yes** Check the TWC. If necessary, replace the TWC.■  
**No** Check for readiness code completion. If the readiness is complete, it was a intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. If the readiness is incomplete, repeat steps 2 through 5.■

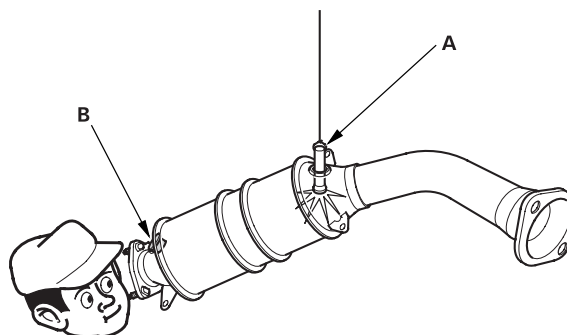
### Catalytic Converter Inspection

If excessive exhaust system back-pressure is suspected, remove the TWC from the vehicle.

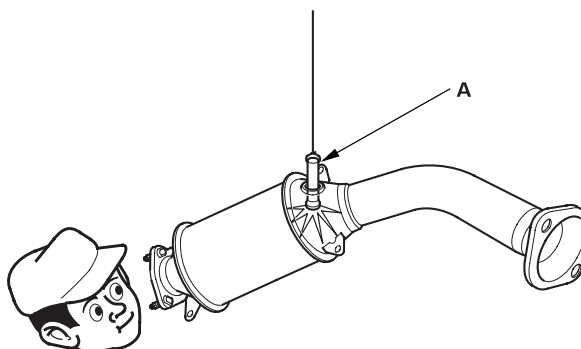
Using a flashlight (A) and plug (B) (KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ models) make a visual check for plugging, melting or cracking of the catalyst.

Replace the TWC if any of the visible area is damaged or plugged.

KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ models:



KN, KM, KY, MA, PH, IN, KK models:







### Tailpipe Emissions Test

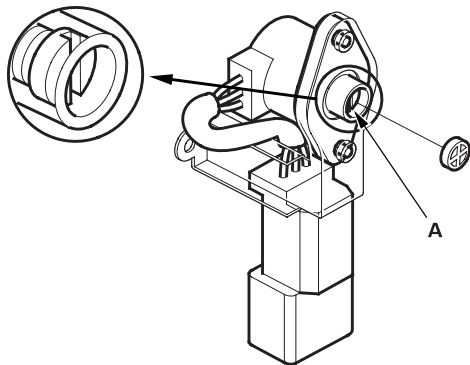
1. Connect a tachometer.
2. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.
3. Check the idle speed ([see page 11-148](#)).
4. Warm up and calibrate the CO meter according to the meter manufacturer's instructions.
5. Check idle CO with the headlights, heater blower, rear window defogger, cooling fan, and air conditioner off.

#### Specified CO%:

**For cars with TWC model: 0.1 % maximum**

**For cars without TWC model:  $1.0 \pm 1.0$  %**

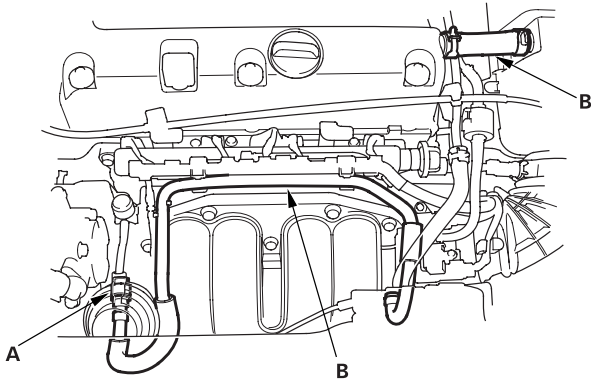
- If unable to obtain this reading:  
Without TWC model, adjust by turning the adjusting screw (A) of the IMA.  
With TWC model, see DTC troubleshooting index.
- If unable to obtain a CO reading of specified % by this procedure, check the tune-up condition.



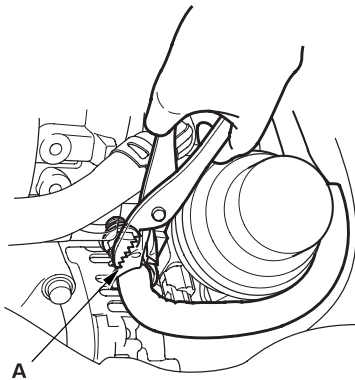
### PCV System

#### PCV Valve Inspection and Test

1. Check the PCV valve (A), hoses (B) and connections for leaks or restrictions.



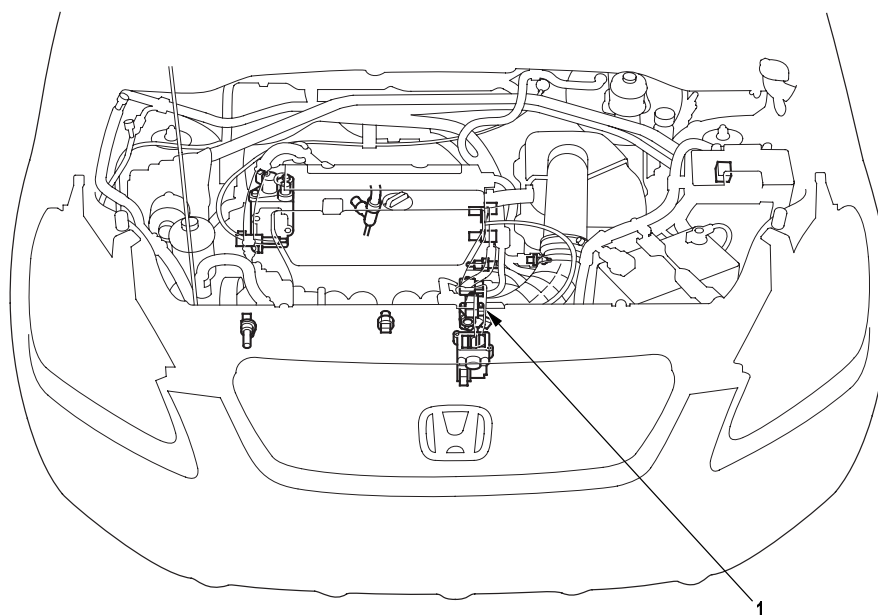
2. At idle, make sure there is a clicking sound from the PCV valve when the hose between the PCV valve and intake manifold is lightly pinched (A) with your fingers or pliers.  
If there is no clicking sound, check the PCV valve grommet for cracks or damage. If the grommet is OK, replace the PCV valve and recheck.





## Evaporative Emission Control System

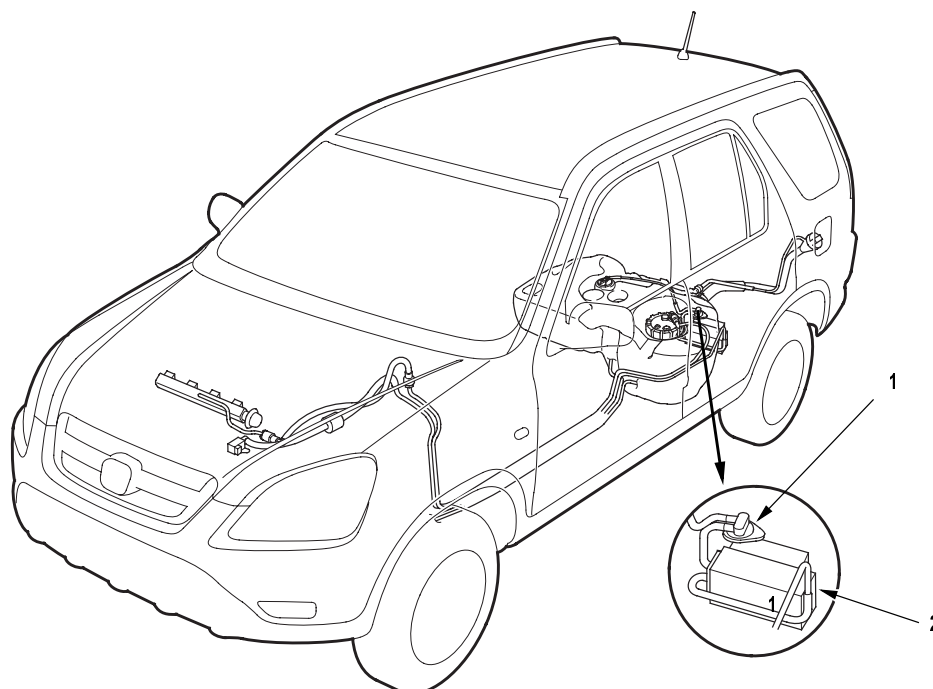
### Component Location Index



\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

- 1 EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) CANISTER PURGE VALVE Troubleshooting, ([see page 11-193](#))

**KG, KS, KE, KR models:**



- 1 EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) TWO WAY VALVE  
2 EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) CANISTER

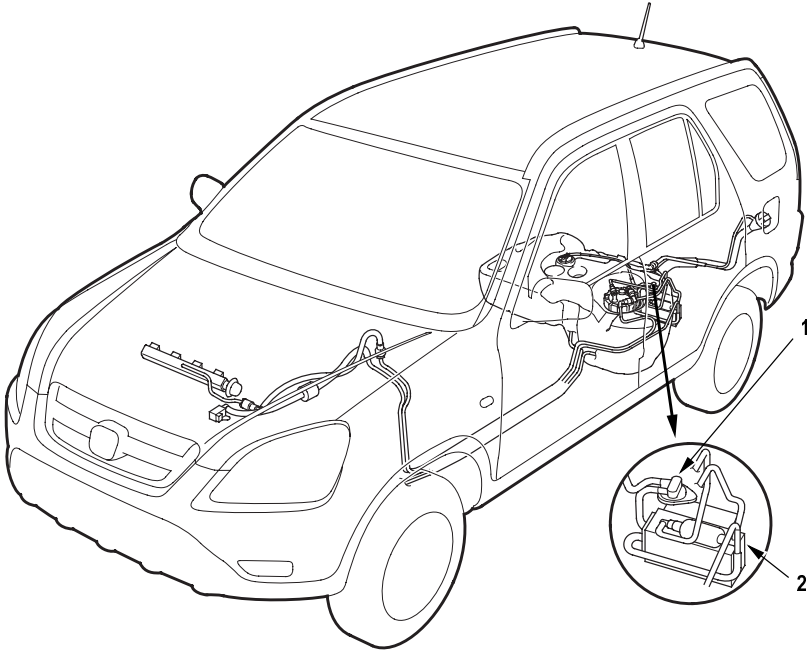
Test, [page 11-198](#)

Troubleshooting, [page 11-195](#); Replacement, [page 11-199](#)

(cont'd)

## Component Location Index (cont'd)

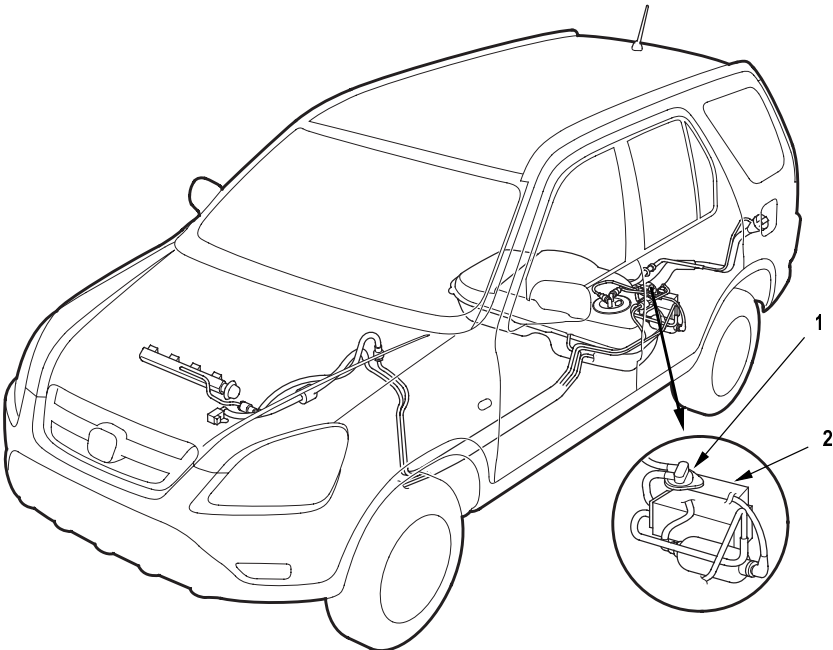
Except KG, KS, KE, KR, KZ models:



- 1 EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) TWO WAY VALVE
- 2 EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) CANISTER

Test, [page 11-198](#)  
Troubleshooting, [page 11-195](#); Replacement, [page 11-199](#)

KZ model:



- 1 EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) TWO WAY VALVE
- 2 EVAPORATIVE EMISSION (EVAP) CANISTER

Test, [page 11-198](#)  
Troubleshooting, [page 11-195](#); Replacement, [page 11-199](#)



## DTC Troubleshooting

### DTC P0443 (92-4): A electrical problem in the EVAP Canister Purge Valve circuit

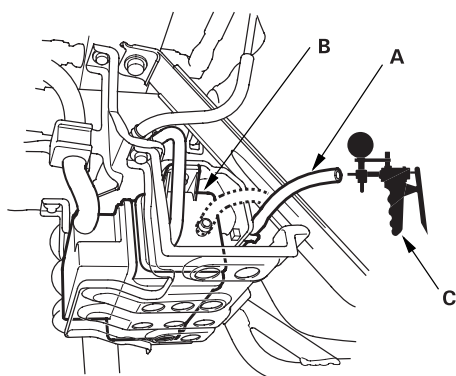
1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

Is the DTC P0443 indicated?

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires between the EVAP canister purge valve and at the ECM/PCM.■

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Disconnect the vacuum hose (A) from the EVAP canister (B) and connect a vacuum pump/gauge (C) to the hose.



\*: The illustration shows KG, KS, KE, KR models.

5. Start the engine and let it idle.

Is there vacuum?

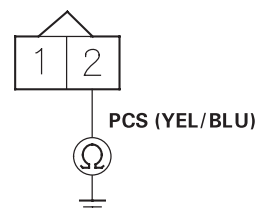
**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Go to step 11.

6. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
7. Disconnect the EVAP canister purge valve 2P connector.

8. Check for continuity between EVAP canister purge valve 2P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.

#### EVAP CANISTER PURGE VALVE 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

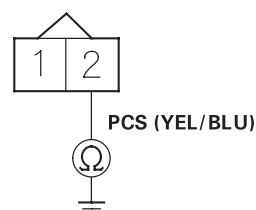
Is there continuity?

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Replace the EVAP canister purge valve.■

9. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
10. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).
11. Check for continuity between EVAP canister purge valve 2P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.

#### EVAP CANISTER PURGE VALVE 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the EVAP canister purge valve and the ECM/PCM (B21).■

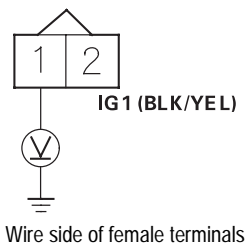
**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

- 12. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- 13. Disconnect the EVAP canister purge valve 2P connector.
- 14. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
- 15. At the harness side, measure voltage between EVAP canister purge valve 2P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

EVAP CANISTER PURGE VALVE 2P CONNECTOR

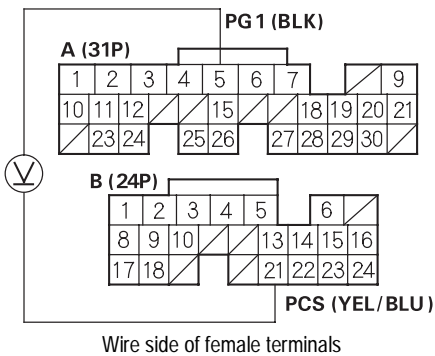


Is there battery voltage?

- Yes** Go to step 16.
- No** Repair open in the wire between No. 4 ACG (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box and the EVAP canister purge valve.■
- 16. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- 17. Reconnect the EVAP canister purge valve 2P connector.
- 18. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

- 19. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A5 and B21.

ECM/PCM CONNECTORS



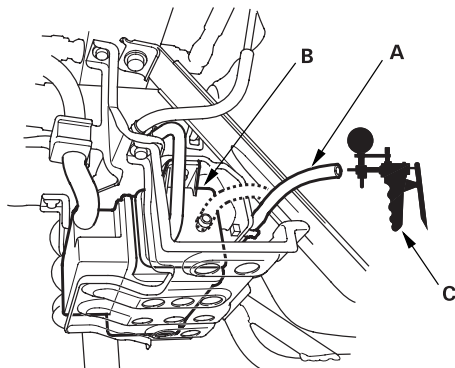
Is there battery voltage?

- Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/ indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■
- No** Repair open in the wire between the EVAP canister purge valve and the ECM/PCM (B21). If wire is OK, replace the EVAP canister purge valve.■



## Evaporative Emission (EVAP) System Troubleshooting

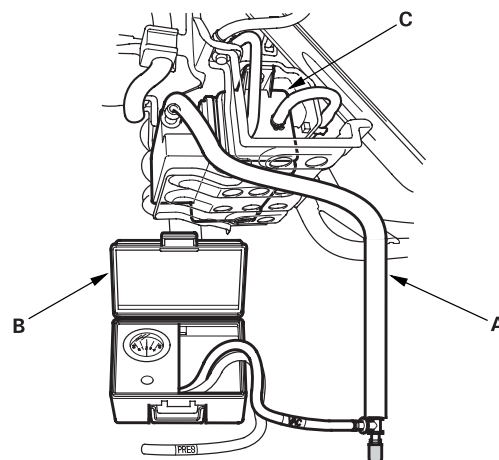
1. Disconnect the vacuum hose (A) from the EVAP canister (B) and connect a vacuum pump/gauge (C) to the hose.



\*: The illustration shows KG, KS, KE, KR models

2. Start the engine and let it idle.  
NOTE: Engine coolant temperature must be below 65°C (149°F).  
*Is there vacuum?*  
**Yes** Inspect vacuum hose routing. If OK, replace the EVAP canister purge valve.■  
**No** Go to step 3.
3. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then raise the engine speed to 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ).  
*Is there vacuum?*  
**Yes** Go to step 4.  
**No** Inspect vacuum hose routing. If OK, replace the EVAP canister purge valve.■
4. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
5. Reconnect the vacuum hose to the EVAP canister.
6. Remove the fuel fill cap.

7. Disconnect the purge air hose (A) from the EVAP canister and connect a vacuum pressure gauge 0 - 100 mmHg (0 - 4 in.Hg) (B) to EVAP canister (C).



\*: The illustration shows KG, KS, KE, KR models.

8. Start the engine and raise speed to 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ).  
*Does vacuum appear on gauge within 1 minute?*  
**Yes** See EVAP two way valve test to complete.  
Evaporative emission controls are OK.■  
**No** Replace the EVAP canister.■

(cont'd)

## Evaporative Emission (EVAP) System Troubleshooting (cont'd)

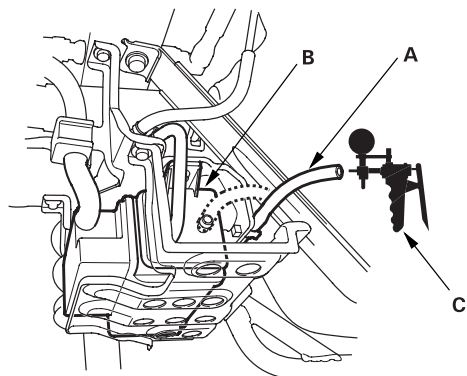
1. Inspect the No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

*Is fuse OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Replace the fuse, and recheck.■

2. Disconnect the vacuum hose (A) from the EVAP canister (B) and connect a vacuum pump/gauge (C) to the hose.



3. Start the engine and let it idle.  
NOTE: Engine coolant temperature must be below 65°C (149°F).

4. Quickly raise the engine speed to 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ).

*Is there vacuum?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Go to step 11.

5. Disconnect the EVAP canister purge valve 2P connector.

6. Quickly raise the engine speed to 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ).

*Is there vacuum?*

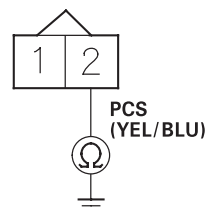
**Yes** Inspect vacuum hose routing. If OK, replace the EVAP canister purge valve.■

**No** Go to step 7.

7. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
8. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
9. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).

10. Check for continuity between EVAP canister purge valve 2P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.

EVAP CANISTER PURGE VALVE 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the EVAP canister purge valve and the ECM/PCM (B21).■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

11. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.

12. Check for vacuum at the vacuum hose after the starting the engine.

13. Quickly raise the engine speed to 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ).

*Is there vacuum?*

**Yes** Go to step 24.

**No** Go to step 14.

14. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

15. Inspect the vacuum hose routing.

*Is the vacuum hose OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 16.

**No** Repair the vacuum hose.■

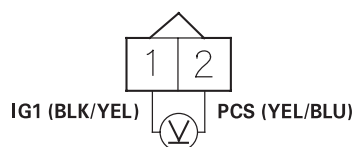
16. Disconnect the EVAP canister purge valve 2P connector.





17. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
18. At the harness side, measure voltage between EVAP canister purge valve 2P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2.

EVAP CANISTER PURGE VALVE 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

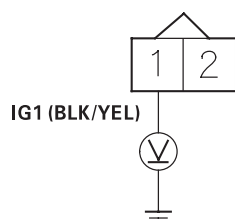
*Is there any voltage?*

**Yes** Replace the EVAP canister purge valve.■

**No** Go to step 19.

19. At the harness side, measure voltage between EVAP canister purge valve 2P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

EVAP CANISTER PURGE VALVE 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

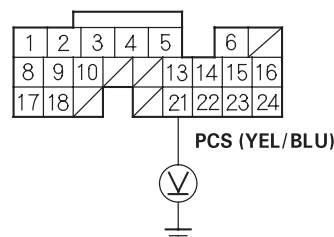
**Yes** Go to step 20.

**No** Repair open in the wire between No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box and the EVAP canister purge valve.■

20. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
21. Reconnect the EVAP canister purge valve 2P connector.
22. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

23. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal B21 and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR B (24P)



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

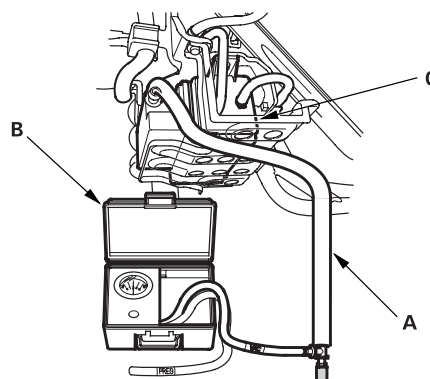
**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the EVAP canister purge valve and the ECM/PCM (B21).■

24. Reconnect the vacuum hose to the EVAP control canister.

25. Remove the fuel fill cap.

26. Disconnect the purge air hose (A) from the EVAP canister and connect a vacuum/pressure gauge 0 - 100 mm Hg (0 - 4 in. Hg) (B) to EVAP canister (C).



27. Start the engine and raise speed to 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ).

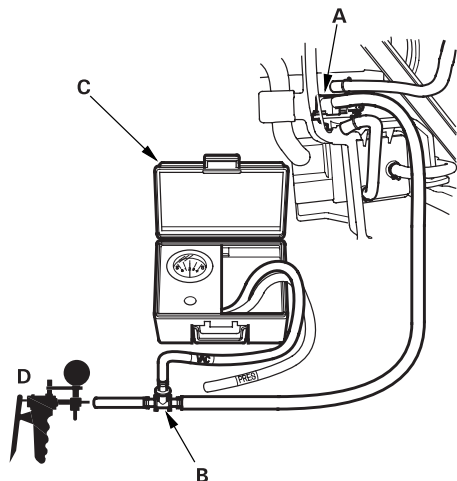
*Does vacuum appear on gauge within 2 minute?*

**Yes** When vacuum is appear, evaporative emission controls are OK. Check the EVAP two way valve test (see page 11-198).■

**No** Replace the EVAP canister.■

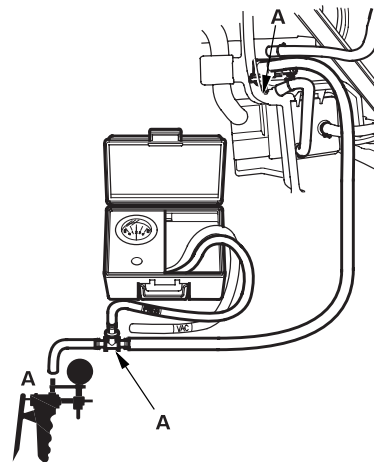
## EVAP Two Way Valve Test

1. Remove the fuel cap.
2. Disconnect the vapor line from the EVAP two way valve (A). Connect it to a T-fitting (B) from the vacuum gauge (C) and the vacuum pump (D) as shown.



3. Apply vacuum slowly and continuously while watching the gauge.  
The vacuum should stabilize momentarily at 0.8 - 2.1 kPa (6 - 16 mmHg, 0.2 - 0.6 in.Hg).  
If the vacuum stabilizes (valve opens) below 0.8 kPa (6 in.Hg), or above 2.1 kPa (16 mmHg, 0.6 in.Hg), install a new valve and retest.

4. Move the vacuum pump hose from the vacuum fitting to the pressure fitting, and move the vacuum gauge hose from the vacuum side to the pressure side (A) as shown.



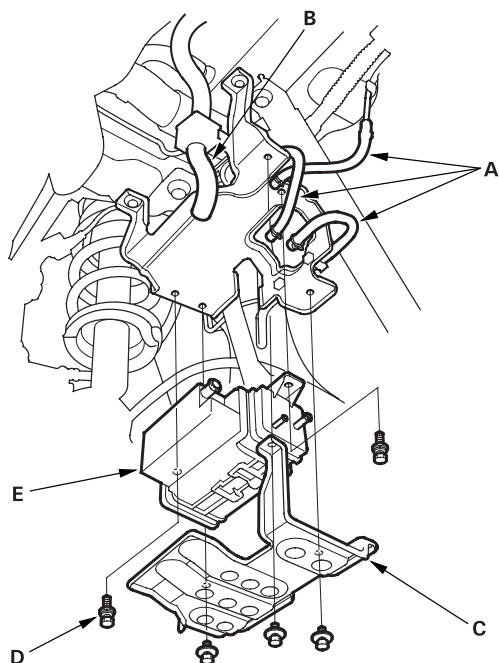
5. Slowly pressurize the vapor line while watching the gauge. The pressure should stabilize momentarily above 1.0 kPa (8 mmHg, 0.3 in.Hg).
  - If the pressure momentarily stabilizes (valve opens) above 1.0 kPa (8 mmHg, 0.3 in.Hg), the valve is OK.
  - If the pressure stabilizes below 1.0 kPa (8 mmHg, 0.3 in.Hg), install a new valve and retest.



### EVAP Canister Replacement

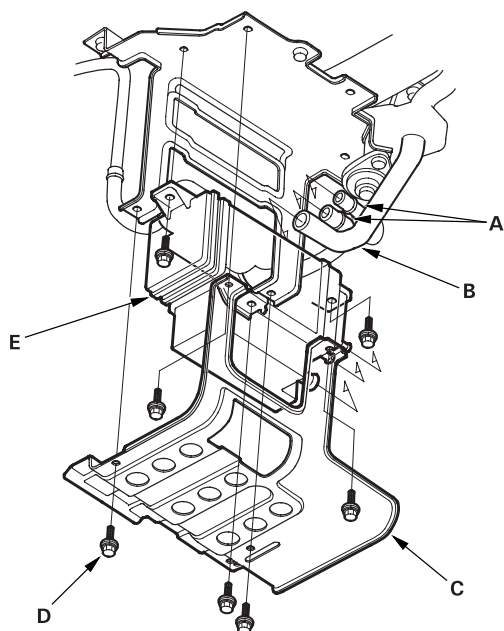
1. Remove the vacuum hoses (A) and drain hose (B).
2. Remove the cover (C).

Except KZ model:



3. Remove the bolt (D).
4. Remove the EVAP canister (E).
5. Install the parts in the reverse order of removal.

KZ model:





# 12

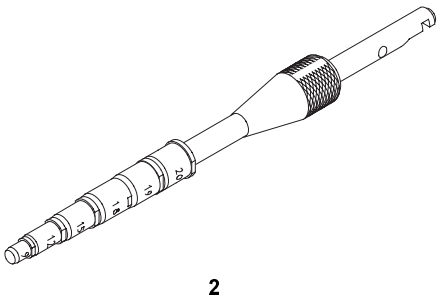
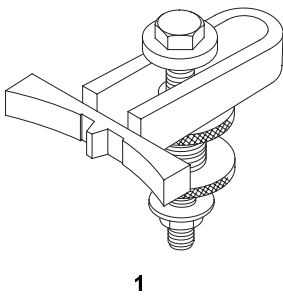
## Clutch

Special Tools .....	12-2
Component Location Index .....	12-3
Clutch Pedal and Clutch Pedal Position Switch Adjustment .....	12-4
Clutch Master Cylinder Replacement .....	12-5
Clutch Master Cylinder Overhaul .....	12-6
Slave Cylinder Replacement .....	12-8
Slave Cylinder Overhaul .....	12-10
Clutch Replacement .....	12-11



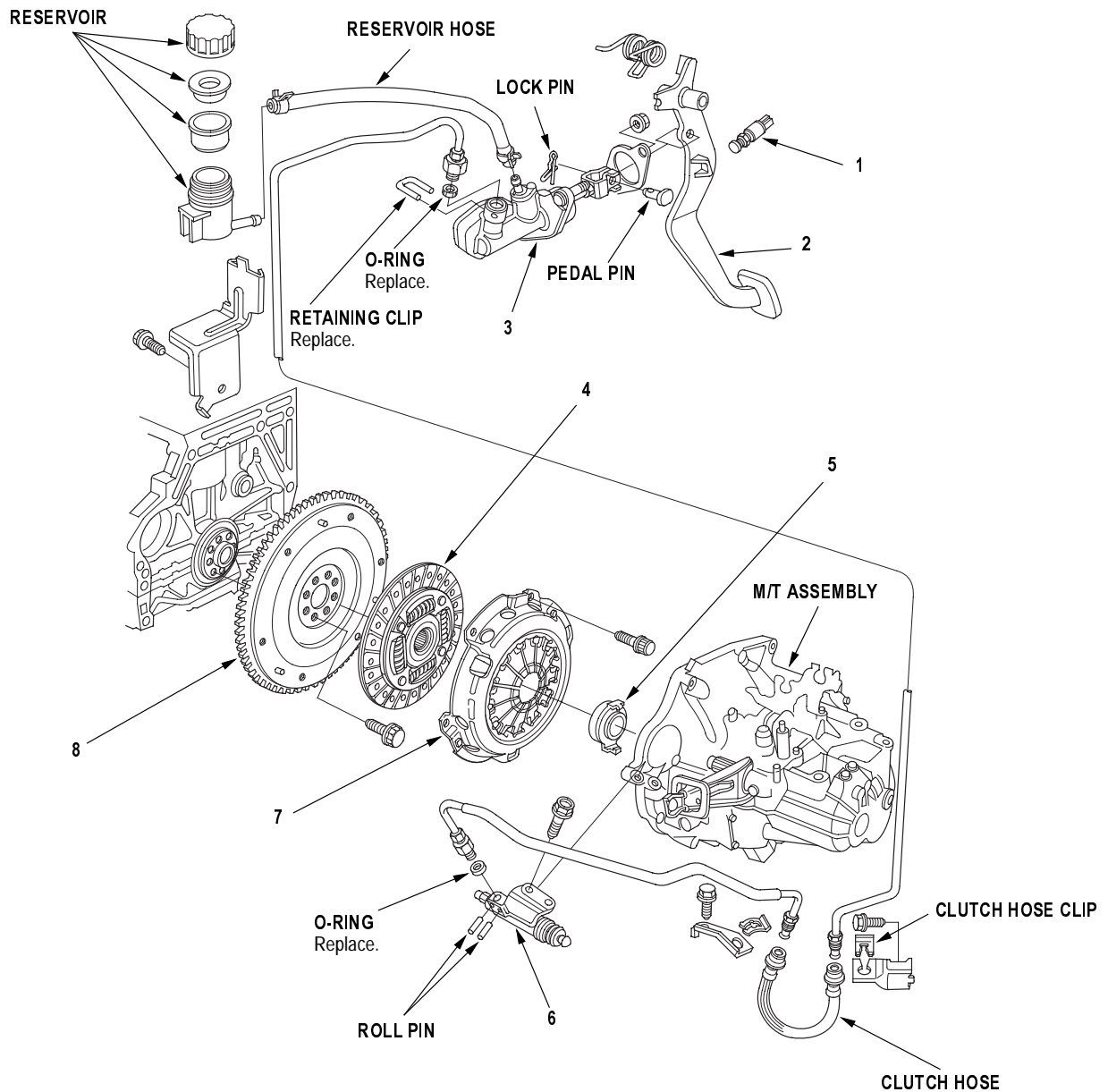
Special Tools

Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07LAB-PV00100 or 07924-PD20003	Ring Gear Holder	1
2	07PAF-0020000	Clutch Alignment Tool Set	1





## Component Location Index



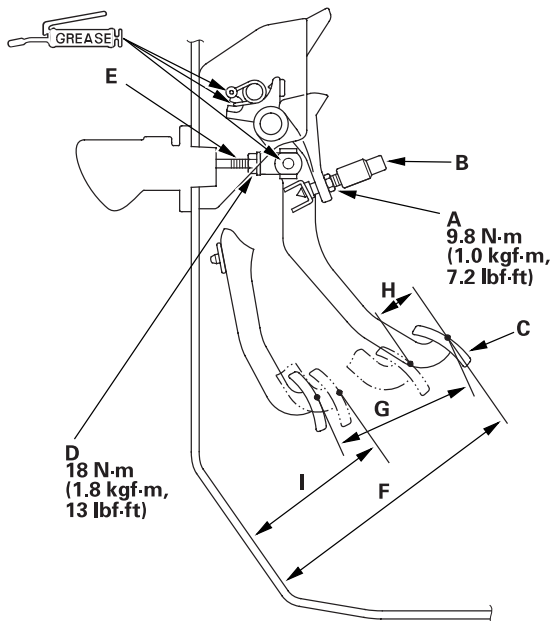
- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 CLUTCH PEDAL POSITION SWITCH | Adjustment, <a href="#">page 12-4</a>  |
| 2 CLUTCH PEDAL                 | Adjustment, <a href="#">page 12-4</a>  |
| 3 CLUTCH MASTER CYLINDER       | Replacement, <a href="#">page 12-5</a> ; Overhaul, <a href="#">page 12-6</a>     |
| 4 CLUTCH DISC                  | Removal, <a href="#">page 12-11</a> ; Installation, <a href="#">page 12-14</a>   |
| 5 RELEASE BEARING              | Replacement, <a href="#">page 12-15</a>  |
| 6 SLAVE CYLINDER               | Replacement, <a href="#">page 12-8</a> ; Overhaul, <a href="#">page 12-10</a>    |
| 7 PRESSURE PLATE               | Removal, <a href="#">page 12-11</a> ; Installation, <a href="#">page 12-14</a>   |
| 8 FLYWHEEL                     | Inspection, <a href="#">page 12-13</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 12-13</a> |

### Clutch Pedal and Clutch Pedal Position Switch Adjustment

**NOTE:**

- To check the clutch pedal position switch (see page 04-49).
- Remove the driver's side floor mat before adjusting the clutch pedal.
- The clutch is self-adjusting to compensate for wear.
- If there is no clearance between the master cylinder piston and push rod, the release bearing will be held against the diaphragm spring, which can result in clutch slippage or other clutch problems.

1. Loosen locknut (A), and back off the clutch pedal position switch or clutch pedal adjusting bolt (B) until it no longer touches the clutch pedal (C).



2. Loosen locknut (D), and turn the push rod (E) in or out to get the specified height (F), stroke (G), free play (H) and disengagement height (I) at the clutch pedal.

Clutch Pedal Stroke: 125 - 135 mm (4.92 - 5.31 in.)  
 Clutch Pedal  
 Free Play: 6 - 17 mm (0.24 - 0.67 in.)  
 Clutch pedal Height: 200 mm (7.87 in.)  
 Clutch pedal Disengagement  
 Height: 112 mm (4.41 in.)

3. Tighten locknut (D).
4. With the clutch pedal released, turn the clutch pedal position switch or clutch pedal adjusting bolt (B) in until it contacts the clutch pedal (C).
5. Turn the clutch pedal position switch or clutch pedal adjusting bolt (B) in an additional 3/4 to 1 turn.
6. Tighten locknut (A).
7. Press the clutch pedal to the floor.
8. Release the clutch pedal 10 - 16 mm (0.39 - 0.63 in.) from the fully depressed position, and hold it there. Adjust the position of the clutch interlock switch (K) so that the engine will start with the clutch pedal in this position.
9. Tighten locknut (J).

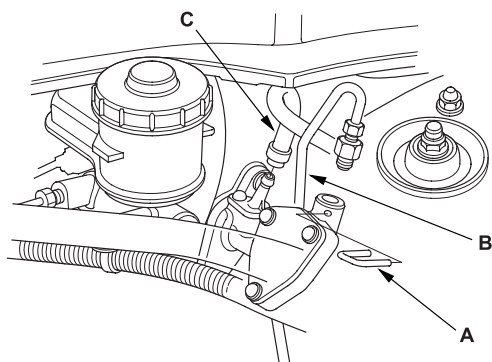




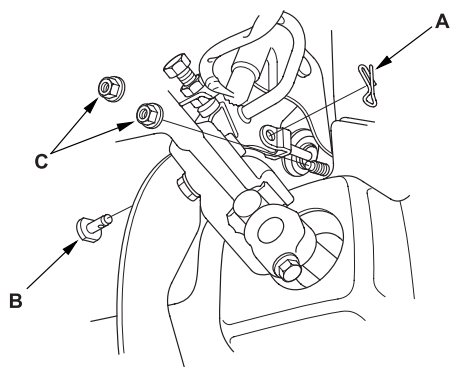
## Clutch Master Cylinder Replacement

**NOTE:** Do not spill brake fluid on the vehicle; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.

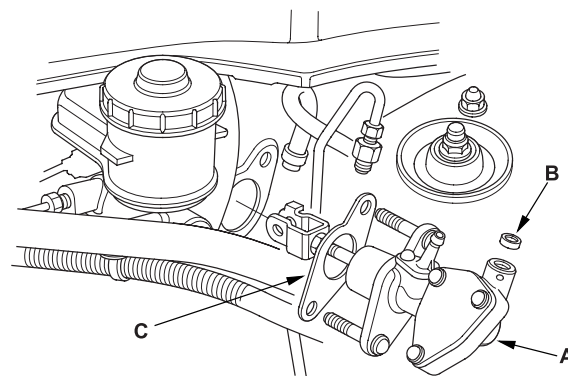
1. Remove the brake fluid from the clutch master cylinder reservoir with a syringe.
2. Remove the retaining clip (A). Disconnect the clutch line (B). Plug the end of the clutch line with a shop towel to prevent brake fluid from coming out.



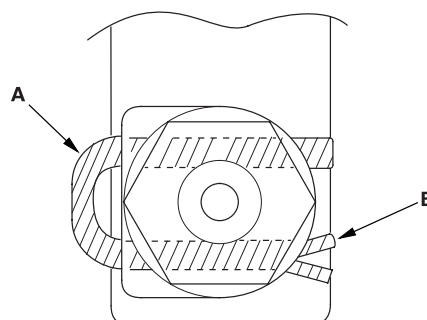
3. Disconnect the reservoir hose (C) from the clutch master cylinder reservoir. Plug the end of the reservoir hose with a shop towel to prevent brake fluid from coming out.
4. Pry out the lock pin (A), and pull the pedal pin (B) out of the yoke. Remove the master cylinder mounting nuts (C).



5. Remove the clutch master cylinder (A).



6. Remove the O-ring (B) and the clutch master cylinder seal (C) from the master cylinder.
7. Install the clutch master cylinder in the reverse order of removal. Install a new O-ring. Tighten the master cylinder mounting nuts to 13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m, 9.4 lbf·ft). Make sure the tabs on the master cylinder hose clamps are pointed in the directions shown.
8. To prevent the retaining clip (A) from coming off, pry to open the tip of the retaining clip (B) with a screwdriver.



9. Bleed the clutch master hydraulic system (see step 11 on [page 12-9](#)).

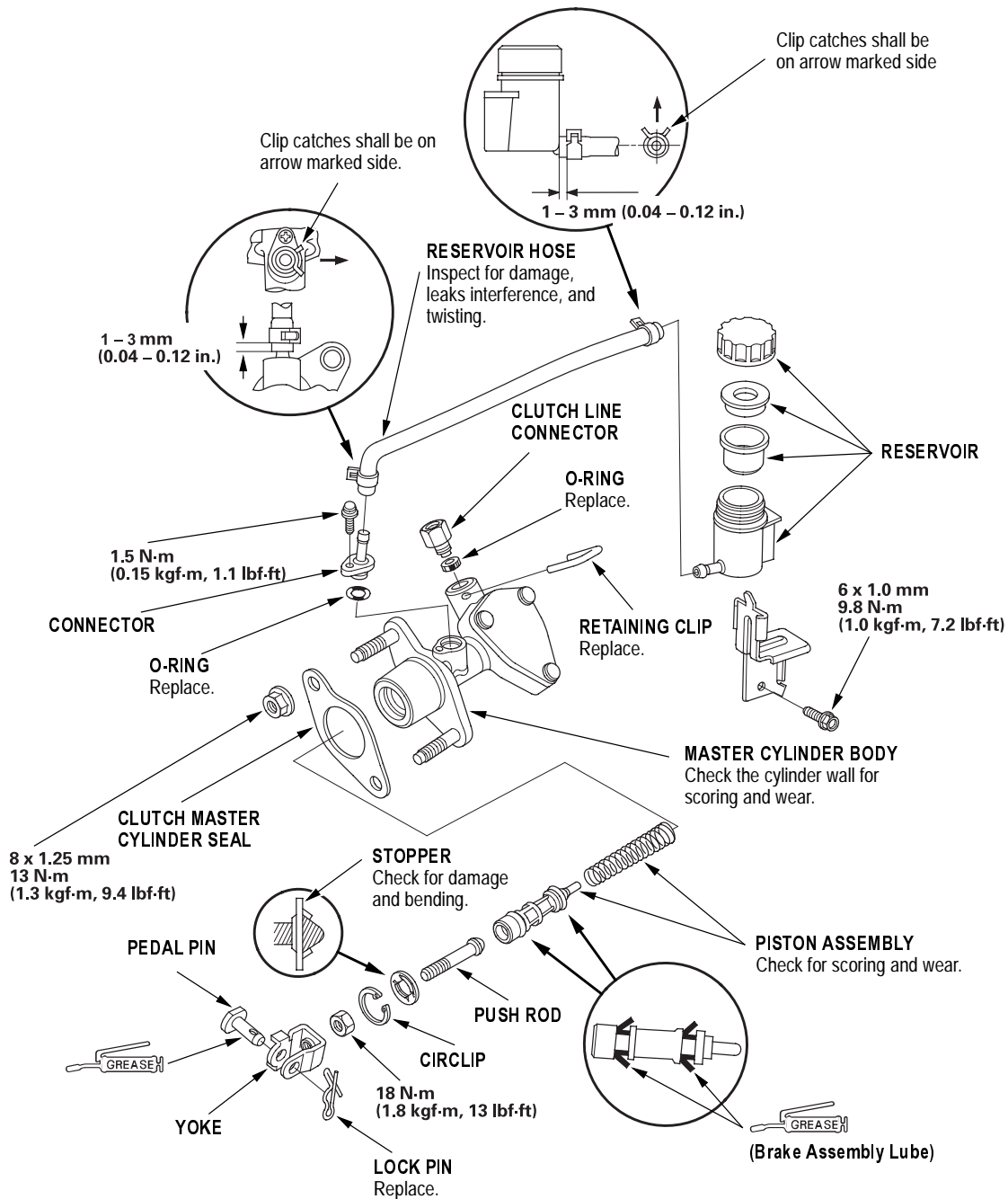
**NOTE:** The reservoir filling is covered in the bleeding procedure.

## Clutch Master Cylinder Overhaul

### Exploded view

#### NOTE:

- When attaching the reservoir hose, align the yellow mark on the hose to the rib on reservoir connection area.
- When attaching the reservoir hose, align the blue mark on the hose to rip on the clutch master cylinder connection area.

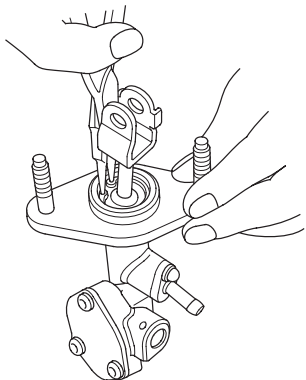




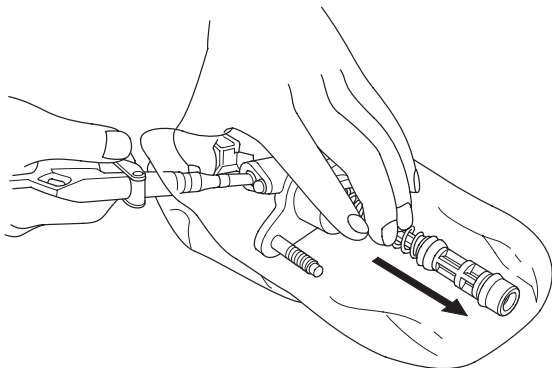
**NOTE:**

- Refer to the Exploded View, as needed during this procedure.
- Do not spill brake fluid on the vehicle; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- Clean all parts in brake fluid and air dry; blow out all passages with compressed air.
- Before reassembling, check that all parts are free of dust and other foreign particles.
- Replace parts with new ones whenever specified to do so.
- Make sure no dirt or other foreign matter is allowed to contaminate the brake fluid.
- Do not mix different brands of brake fluid as they may not be compatible.
- Do not reuse the drained fluid. Use only clean DOT 3 or 4 brake fluid.

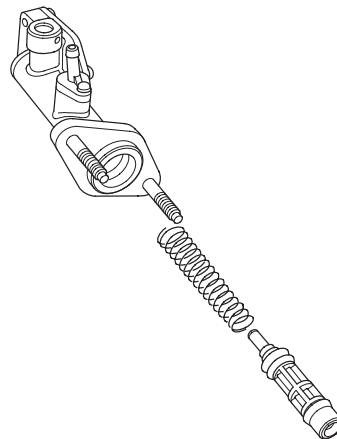
1. Pry the circlip off the clutch master cylinder.



2. Carefully remove the piston by applying air pressure through the clutch line hole.



3. Slide the piston assembly into the clutch master cylinder.



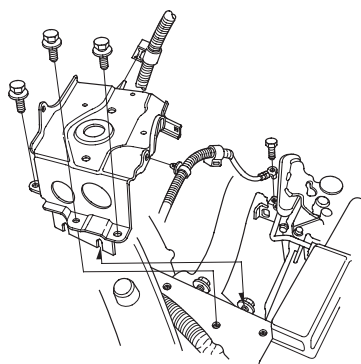
4. Install the circlip in the groove of the clutch master cylinder.

## Slave Cylinder Replacement

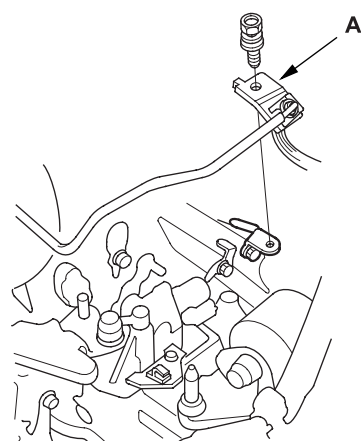
### NOTE:

- Use fender covers to avoid damaging painted surfaces.
- Do not spill brake fluid on the vehicle; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.

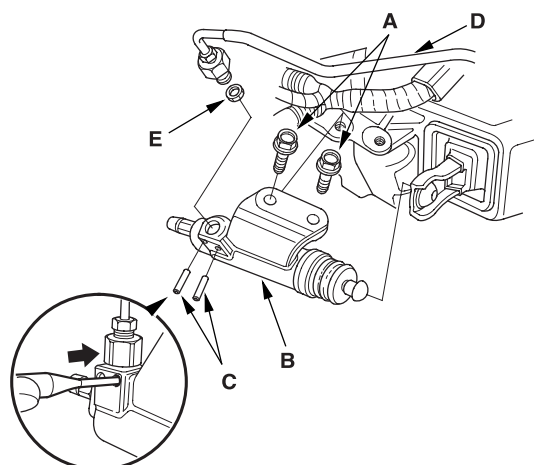
1. Write down the frequencies for the radio's preset buttons. Disconnect the negative (-) cable first, then the positive (+) cable from the battery. Remove the battery.
2. Remove the air cleaner housing (see step 5 on [page 05-3](#)).
3. Remove the intake air duct (see step 6 on [page 05-3](#)).
4. Remove the battery tray.



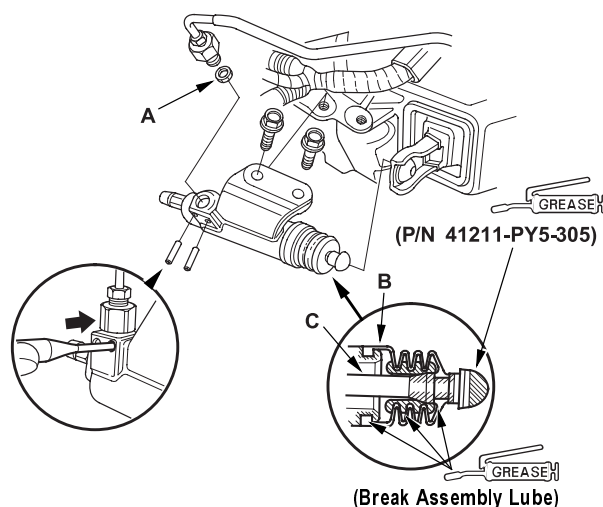
5. Remove the clutch line bracket (A).



6. Remove the mounting bolts (A) and the slave cylinder (B).



7. Remove the roll pins (C). Disconnect the clutch line (D), and remove the O-ring (E). Plug the end of the clutch line with a shop towel to prevent brake fluid from coming out.
8. Install the slave cylinder in the reverse order of removal. Install a new O-ring (A).

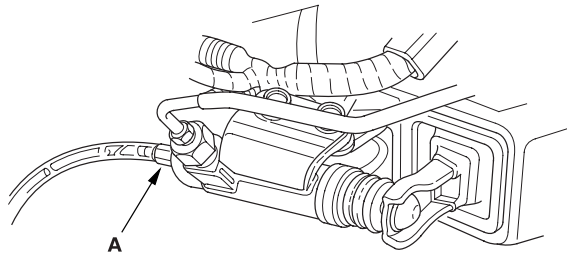


9. Pull the boot (B) back, and apply brake assembly lube to the boot and slave cylinder rod (C). Reinstall the boot.
10. Apply Urea Grease UM264 (P/N 41211-PY5-305) to the push rod of the slave cylinder. Tighten the slave cylinder mounting bolts to 22 N•m (2.2 kgf•m, 16 lbf•ft).



### 11. Bleed the clutch hydraulic system.

- Attach a hose to the bleeder screw (A), and suspended the hose in a container of brake fluid.
- Make sure there is an adequate supply of fluid at the clutch master cylinder, then slowly pump the clutch pedal until no more bubbles appear at the bleeder hose.
- Tighten the bleed screw to 8 N•m (0.8 kgf•m, 6 lbf•ft); do not overtighten it.
- Refill the clutch master cylinder with fluid when done.
- Always use only Genuine Honda DOT 3 or 4 brake fluid.

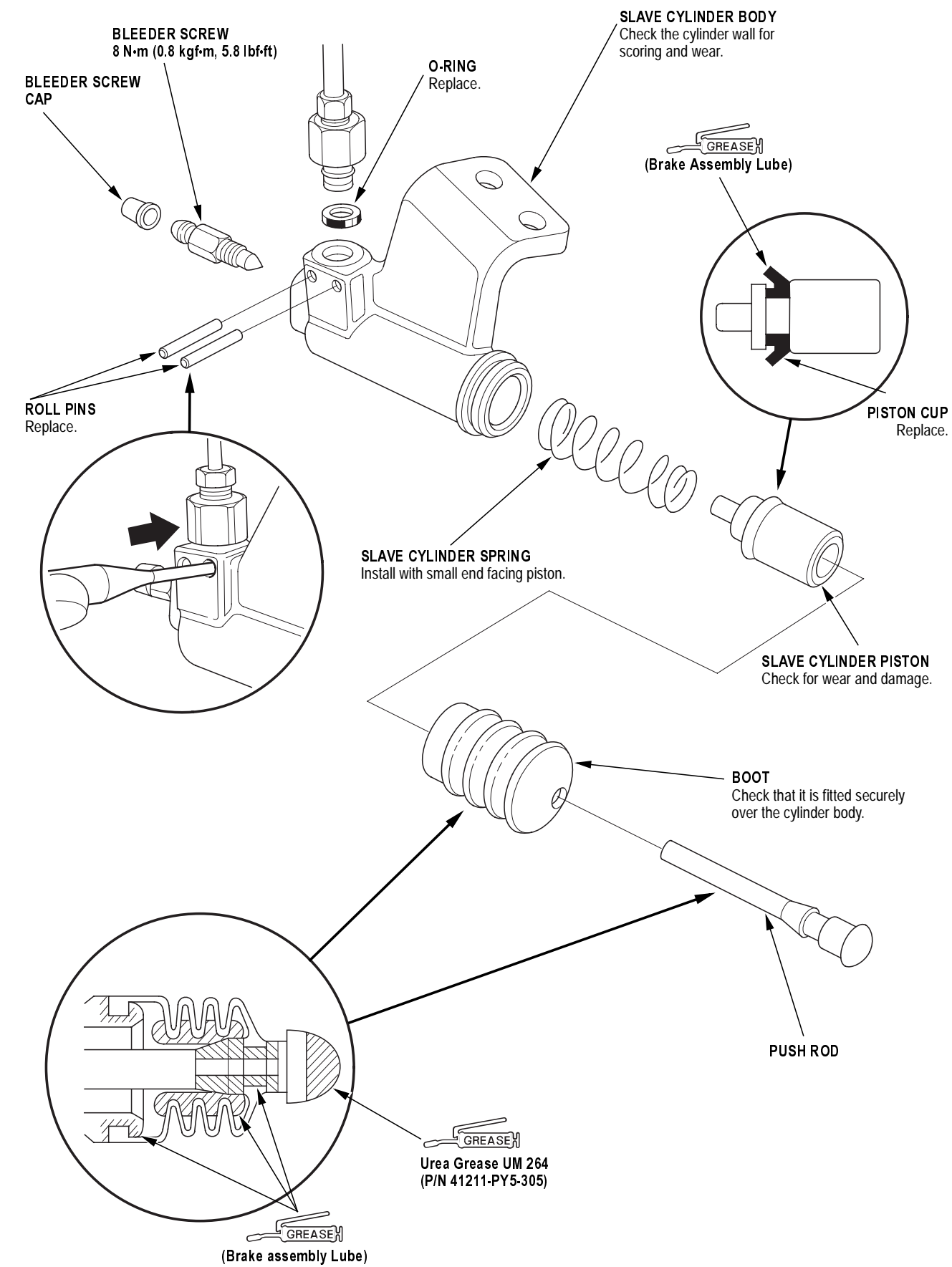


### 12. Install the clutch line bracket and battery tray.

### 13. Install the intake air duct (see step 38 on [page 05-16](#)).

### 14. Install the air cleaner housing (see step 39 on [page 05-17](#)).

Slave Cylinder Overhaul





## Clutch Replacement

### Special Tools Required

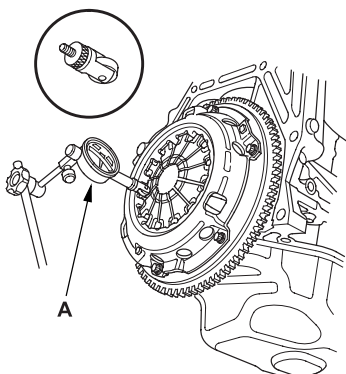
- Clutch alignment tool set 07PAF-0020000
- Ring gear holder 07LAB-PV00100 or 07924-PD20003

### Pressure Plate and Clutch Disc Removal

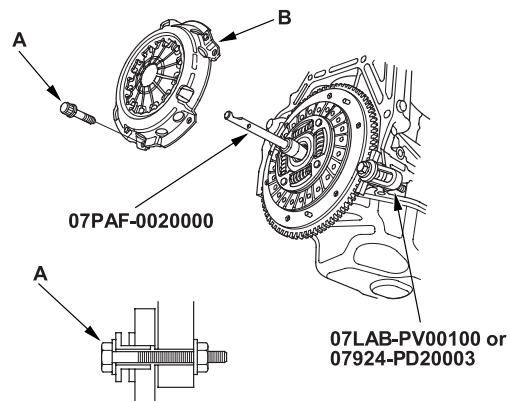
1. Check the diaphragm spring fingers for height using the dial indicator (A). If the height is more than the service limit, replace the pressure plate.

**Standard (New):** 0.6 mm (0.02 in.) max.

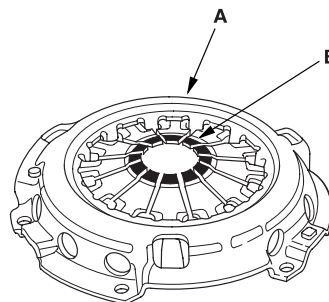
**Service Limit:** 0.8 mm (0.03 in.)



2. Install the special tools.



3. To prevent warping, unscrew the pressure plate mounting bolts (A) in a crisscross pattern in several steps, then remove the pressure plate (B).
4. Inspect the pressure plate (A) surface for wear, cracks, and burning.



5. Inspect the fingers of the diaphragm spring (B) for wear at the release bearing contact area.

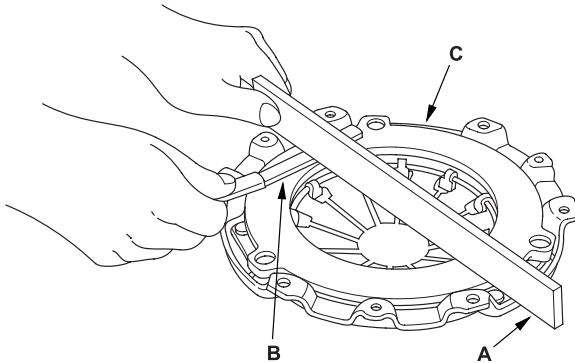
(cont'd)

## Clutch Replacement (cont'd)

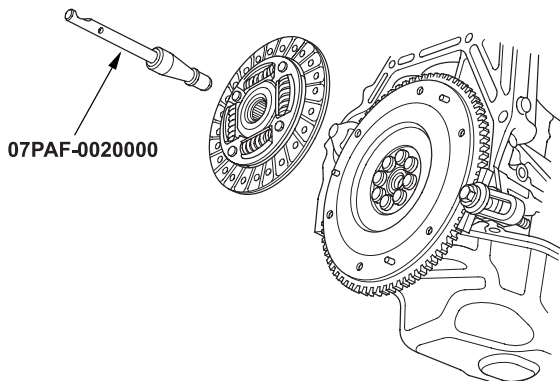
### Pressure Plate and Clutch Disc Removal (cont'd)

6. Inspect for warpage using a straight edge (A) and feeler gauge (B). Measure across the pressure plate (C). If the warpage is more than the service limit, replace the pressure plate.

**Standard (New):** 0.03 mm (0.001 in.) max.  
**Service Limit:** 0.15 mm (0.006 in.)



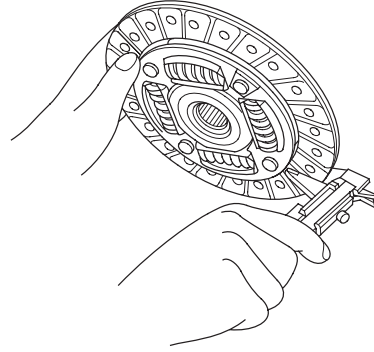
7. Remove the clutch disc and special tools.



8. Inspect the lining of the clutch disc for signs of slipping or oil. If the clutch disc is burned black or oil soaked, replace it.

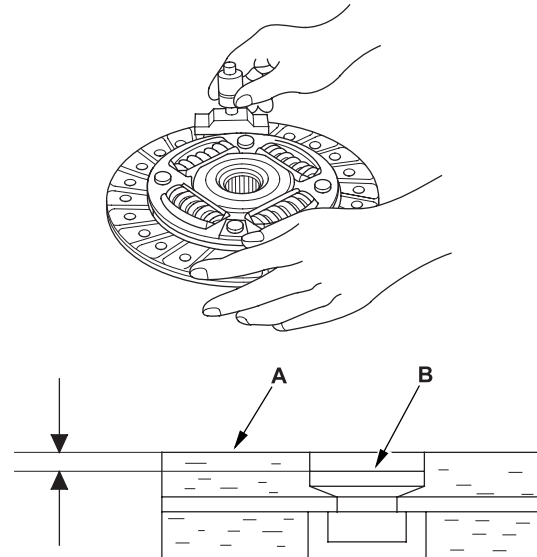
9. Measure the clutch disc thickness. If the thickness is less than the service limit, replace the clutch disc.

**Standard (New):** 8.7 - 9.3 mm  
 (0.343 - 0.366 in.) max.  
**Service Limit:** 6.0 mm (0.24 in.)



10. Measure the rivet depth from the clutch disc lining surface (A) to the rivets (B) on both sides. If the rivet depth is less than the service limit, replace the clutch disc.

**Standard (New):** 1.65 - 2.25 mm  
 (0.065 - 0.089 in.) max.  
**Service Limit:** 0.7 mm (0.03 in.)





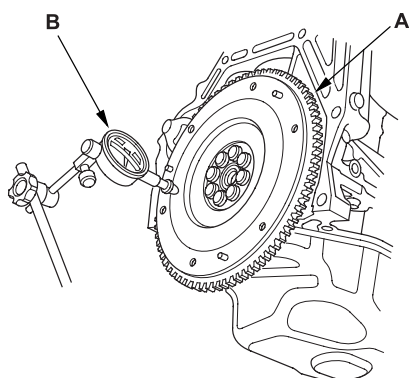


## Flywheel Inspection

1. Inspect the ring gear teeth for wear and damage.
2. Inspect the clutch disc mating surface on the flywheel for wear, cracks and burning.
3. Measure the flywheel (A) runout using a dial indicator (B) through at least two full turns with the engine installed. Push against the flywheel each time you turn it to take up the crankshaft thrust washer clearance. If the runout is more than the service limit, replace the flywheel and recheck the runout. Resurfacing the flywheel is not recommended.

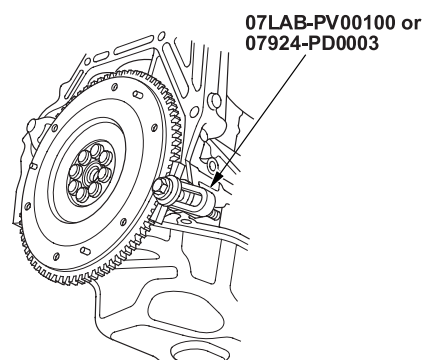
**Standard (New):** 0.05 mm (0.002 in.) max.

**Service Limit:** 0.15 mm (0.006 in.)

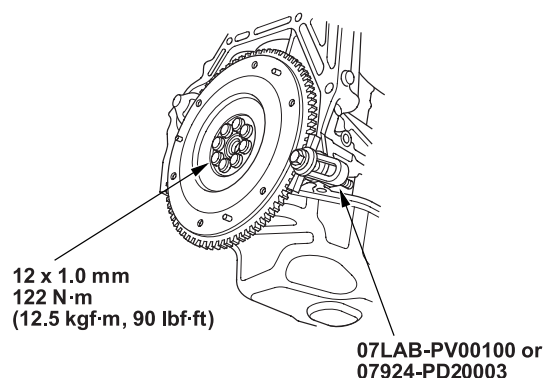


## Flywheel Replacement

1. Install the special tool.



2. Remove the flywheel mounting bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps, then remove the flywheel.
3. Install the flywheel on the crankshaft, and install the mounting bolts finger-tight.
4. Install the special tool, then torque the flywheel mounting bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps.

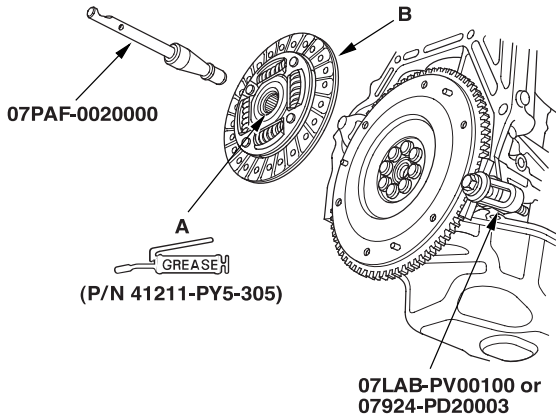


(cont'd)

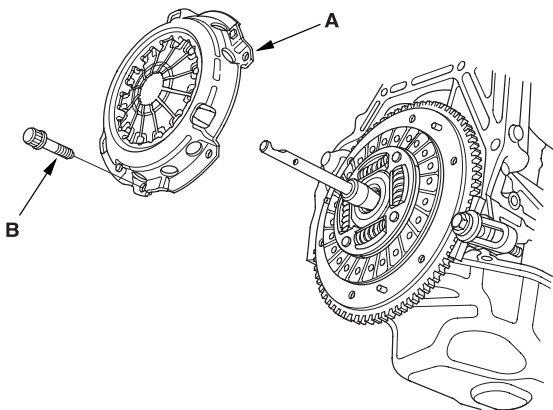
## Clutch Replacement (cont'd)

### Clutch Disc and Pressure Plate Installation

1. Install the ring gear holder.

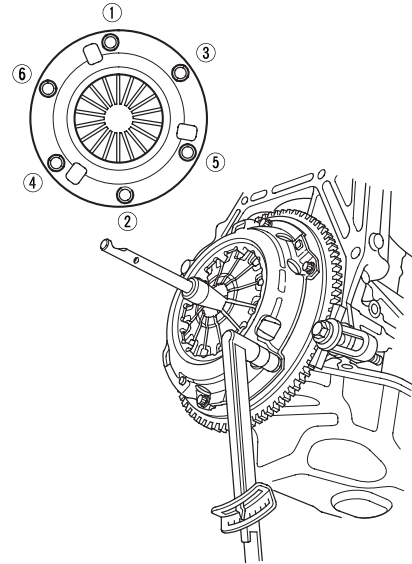


2. Apply Urea Grease UM264 (P/N 41211-PY5-305) to the splines (A) of the clutch disc (B), then install the clutch disc using the special tools.
3. Install the pressure plate (A) and the mounting bolts (B) finger-tight.



4. Torque the mounting bolts in a crisscross pattern. Tighten the bolts in several steps to prevent warping the diaphragm spring.

**PRESSURE PLATE MOUNTING BOLT TORQUE:**  
25 N•m (2.6 kgf•m, 19 lbf•ft)

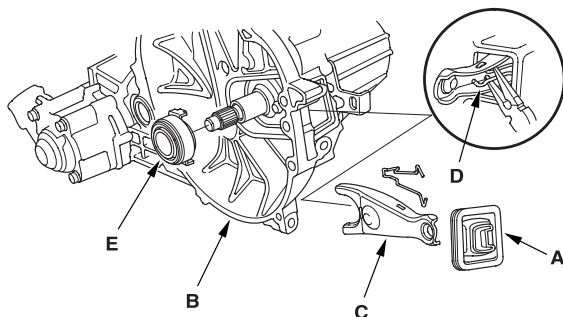


5. Remove the special tools.
6. Make sure the diaphragm spring fingers are all the same height.



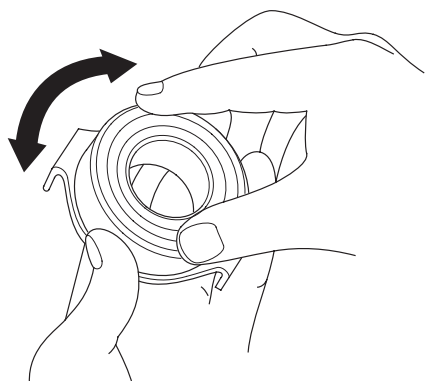
## Release Bearing Replacement

1. Remove the release fork boot (A) from the clutch housing (B).

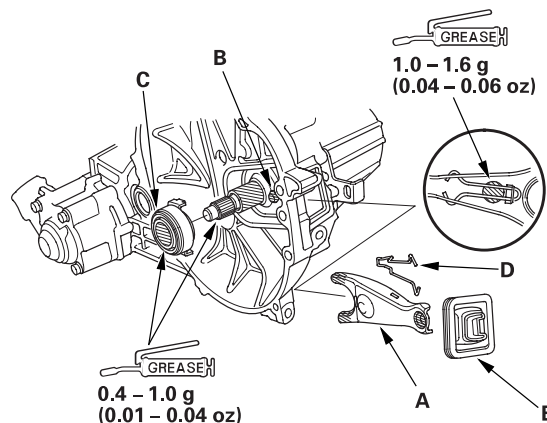


2. Remove the release fork (C) from the clutch housing (B) by squeezing the release fork set spring (D) with pliers. Remove the release bearing (E).
3. Check the release bearing for play by spinning it by hand. If there is excessive play, replace the release bearing with a new one.

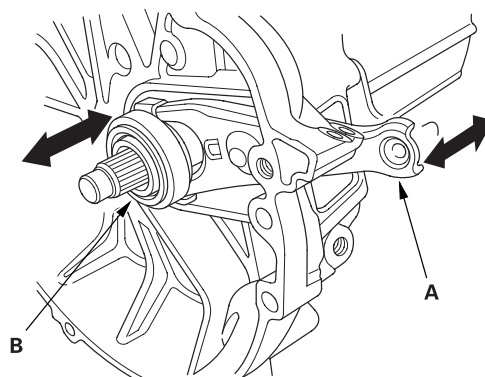
NOTE: The release bearing is packed with grease. Do not wash it in solvent.



4. Apply Urea Grease UM264 (P/N 41211-PY5-305) to the release fork (A), the release fork bolt (B), the release bearing (C), and the release bearing guide (D) in the shaded areas.



5. With the release fork slid between the release bearing pawls, install the release bearing on the mainshaft while inserting the release fork through the hole in the clutch housing.
6. Align the detent of the release fork with the release fork bolt, then press the release fork over the release fork bolt squarely.
7. Install the release fork boot (E), make sure the boot seals around the release fork and clutch housing.
8. Move the release fork (A) right and left to make sure that it fits properly against the release bearing (B), and that the release bearing slides smoothly.





## M/T - M/T Differential

<b>Manual Transmission</b> .....	<b>13-2</b>
4WD (Four-wheel Drive) Model Precautions.....	13-2
Special Tools .....	13-3
Transmission Fluid Inspection and Replacement.....	13-4
Back-Up Light Switch Test .....	13-4
Transmission Removal.....	13-5
Transmission Installation.....	13-10
Transmission Disassembly.....	13-15
Reverse Shift Fork Clearance Inspection.....	13-21
Shift Lever Clearance Inspection .....	13-22
Change Lever Assembly Disassembly/Reassembly .....	13-23
Shift Forks Clearance Inspection .....	13-24
Shift Forks Disassembly/Reassembly.....	13-25
Mainshaft Assembly Clearance Inspection .....	13-26
Mainshaft Disassembly .....	13-28
Mainshaft Inspection .....	13-29
Mainshaft Reassembly .....	13-31
Countershaft Assembly Clearance Inspection .....	13-34
Countershaft Disassembly .....	13-36
Countershaft Inspection .....	13-37
Countershaft Reassembly.....	13-38
Synchro Sleeve and Hub Inspection and Reassembly .....	13-43
Synchro Ring and Gear Inspection .....	13-43
Mainshaft Bearing and Oil Seal Replacement .....	13-45
Countershaft Bearing Replacement.....	13-46
Mainshaft Thrust Clearance Adjustment .....	13-47
Transmission Reassembly .....	13-50
Gearshift Mechanism Replacement.....	13-55
<b>M/T Differential</b> .....	<b>13-56</b>
Component Location Index .....	13-56
Backlash Inspection .....	13-58
Driven Gear/Carrier Replacement.....	13-58
Carrier Bearings Replacement.....	13-59
Oil Seal Replacement .....	13-60
Differential Thrust Clearance Adjustment.....	13-61
<b>Transfer Assembly</b> .....	<b>13-63</b>
Backlash Inspection on Car .....	13-63
Transfer Removal.....	13-64
Transfer Installation.....	13-64
Transfer Overhaul .....	13-65
Transfer Inspection.....	13-67
Transfer Disassembly.....	13-68
Transfer Holder Disassembly .....	13-70
Transfer Holder Tapered Roller Bearing Outer Race Replacement.....	13-71
Transfer Drive Gear Bearing Replacement .....	13-71
Transfer Driven Gear Bearing Replacement.....	13-72
Transfer Housing Bearing Outer Race Replacement.....	13-72
Transfer Reassembly .....	13-73



Manual Transmission

4WD (Four-wheel Drive) Model Precautions

This 4WD model does not have the feature that mechanically switches between 4WD and 2WD (front-wheel drive). Therefore, speedometer testing should be conducted using simplified free rollers under the rear wheels.

Precautions on using free rollers:

- Inspecting and testing using a chassis dynamometer is not feasible.
- Do not operate the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or steering wheel abruptly. It may cause the vehicle to roll and create a hazardous condition.
- The maximum testing speed should be 50 km/h (31 mph).
- The maximum continuous operating time should be three minutes.
- Make sure to tie down the vehicle securely with the side anchor wires and center tie down wire. The free rollers are to be set under the rear wheels.

⚠

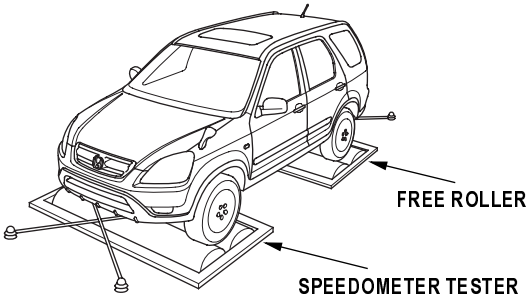
CAUTION

⚠

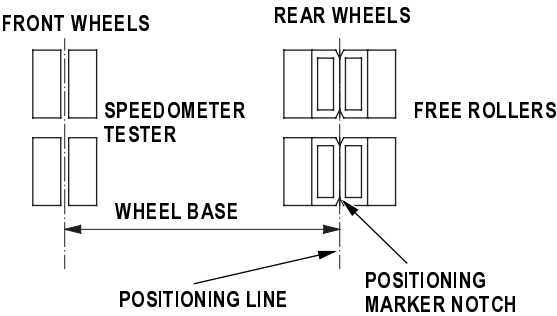
- Make sure to place the free rollers parallel to the roller of each speedometer tester.
- Putting the front and rear wheels on the speedometer testers and free rollers inappropriately may cause the vehicle to roll off or over the free rollers and create a hazardous condition.
- The side anchor wires and certain tie-down wire must be appropriately tensioned. If the wires have too much slack, the expected tie-down efficiency cannot be obtained.
- When attaching the side anchor wires and center tie-down wire, make sure they are not interfering with the bumper and other parts of the vehicle body.
- Do not attach the wires to any place other than the designed areas.
- Do not operate the speedometer testers at a speed more than 50 km/h (31 mph) or for more than three minutes.

Testing Procedures

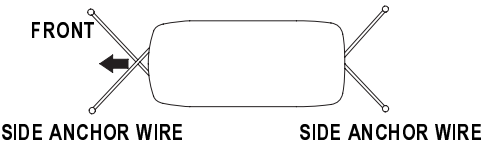
1. Set the free rollers according to the wheel base and tread of the vehicle.



NOTE: Align the position marker notch to the positioning line.



2. Move the vehicle to position the front wheels on the speedometer testers and the rear wheels on the free rollers. Make sure to align the center of the wheels to the center of the speedometer testers and the free rollers.



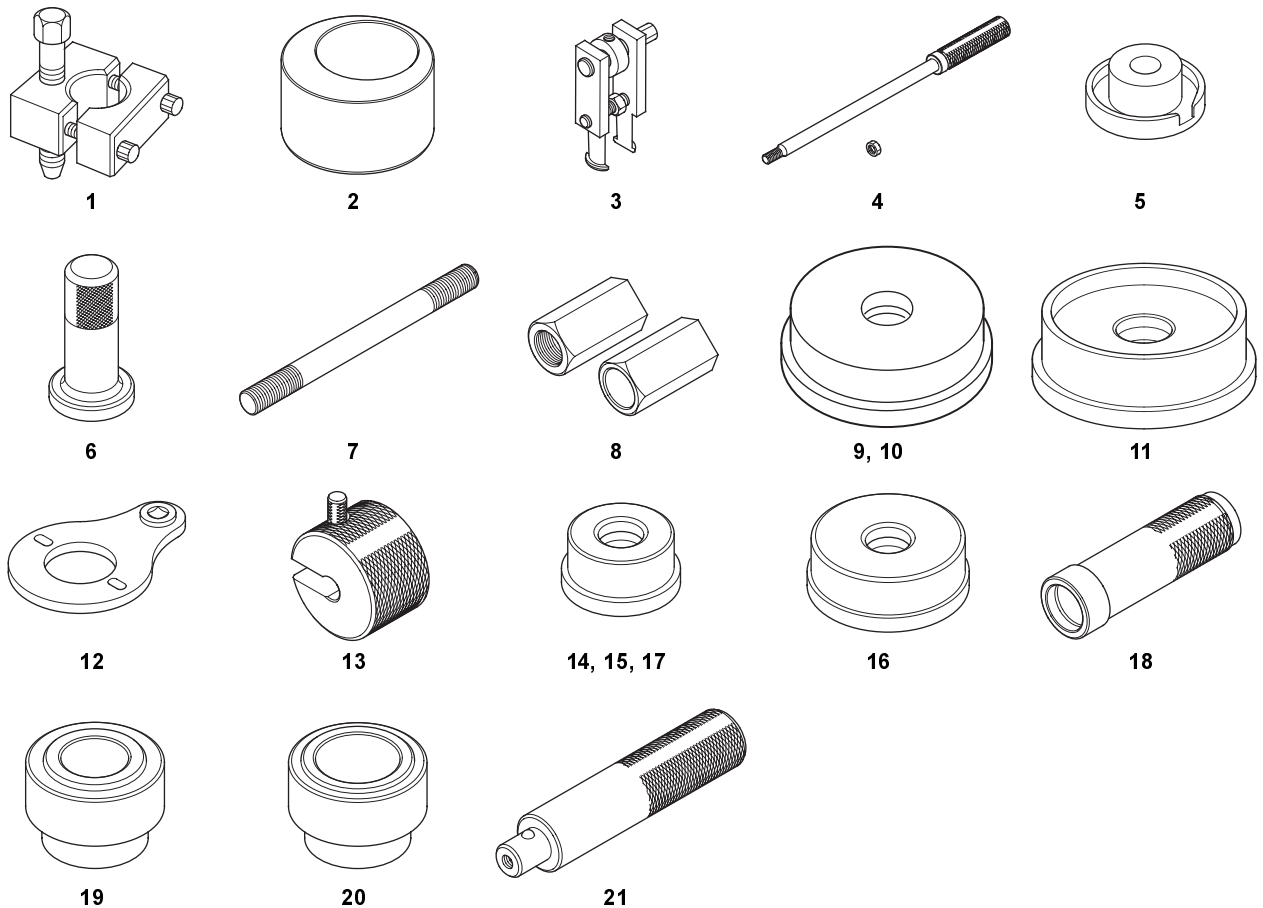
3. Tie down the vehicle securely using the towing hook and the rear tie-down hook bracket to prevent the vehicle from rolling off or over the free rollers.
4. Start the engine, shift the transmission to 3rd gear, accelerate the vehicle gradually, and measure the vehicle speed.
5. After measurement, use the brake pedal to gradually decelerate and stop the vehicle.



## Special Tools

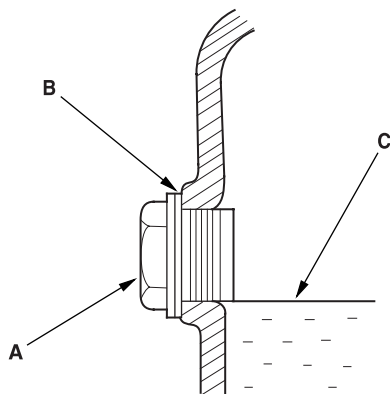
Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
*1	07GAJ-PG20110	Mainshaft Holder	1
*2	07GAJ-PG20130	Mainshaft Base	1
3	07JAC-PH80100	Adjustable Bearing Puller, 20 - 40 mm	1
4	07JAC-PH80200	Bearing Remover Shaft	1
5	07JAD-PH80101	Oil Seal Driver Attachment	1
6	07JAD-PL90100	Oil Seal Driver	1
7	07JAF-SJ80110	Installer Shaft 14 x 165 mm	1
8	07JAF-SJ80120	Installer Nut 14 mm	1
9	07KAF-PS30120	Bearing Installer Attachment	1
10	07LAF-PZ70110	Bearing Installer Attachment	1
11	07NAD-P200100	Oil Seal Driver Attachment	1
12	07PAB-0020000	Companion Flange Holder	1
13	07741-0010201	Slide Hammer	1
14	07746-0010200	Attachment, 37 x 40 mm	1
15	07746-0010300	Attachment, 42 x 47 mm	1
16	07746-0010400	Attachment, 52 x 55 mm	1
17	07746-0010600	Attachment, 72 x 75 mm	1
18	07746-0030100	Driver, 40 mm I.D.	1
19	07746-0030300	Driver, 30 mm I.D.	1
20	07746-0030400	Attachment, 35 mm I.D.	1
21	07749-0010000	Driver	1

\* Part of Mainshaft Inspection Tool Set, 07GAJ-PG20102.

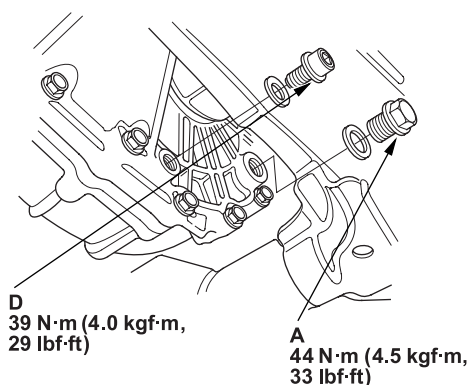


## Transmission Fluid Inspection and Replacement

1. Park the vehicle on level ground, and turn the engine OFF.
2. Remove the oil filler plug (A) and washer (B), check the condition of the fluid, and make sure the fluid is at the proper level (C).



3. If the transmission fluid is dirty, remove the drain plug (D) and drain the fluid.



4. Reinstall the drain plug with a new washer, and refill the transmission fluid to the proper level.

### Oil Capacity

#### 2WD model:

- 1.9 / (1.9 US qt, 1.6 Imp qt) at fluid change
- 2.1 / (2.2 US qt, 1.8 Imp qt) at overhaul

#### 4WD model:

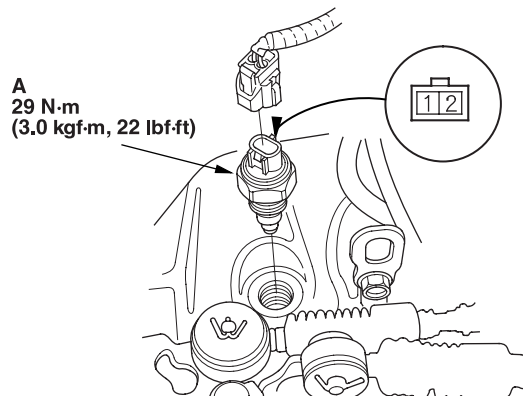
- 1.9 / (2.0 US qt, 1.7 Imp qt) at fluid change
- 2.3 / (2.4 US qt, 2.0 Imp qt) at overhaul

Always use Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF). Using motor oil can cause stiffer shifting because it does not contain the proper additives.

5. Reinstall the oil filler plug with a new washer.

## Back-Up Light Switch Test

1. Disconnect the back-up light switch (A) connector.



2. Check for continuity between the back-up light switch 2P connector No. 1 and No. 2 terminals. There should be continuity when the shift lever is in reverse.
3. If necessary, replace the back-up light switch. Apply liquid gasket (P/N 08C70-K0234M), and install it on the transmission housing.

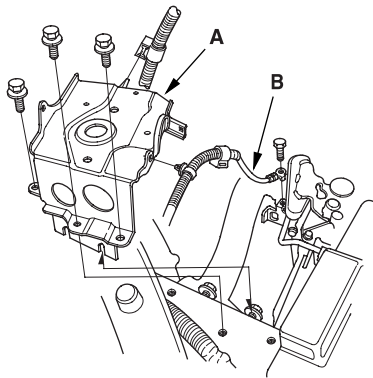




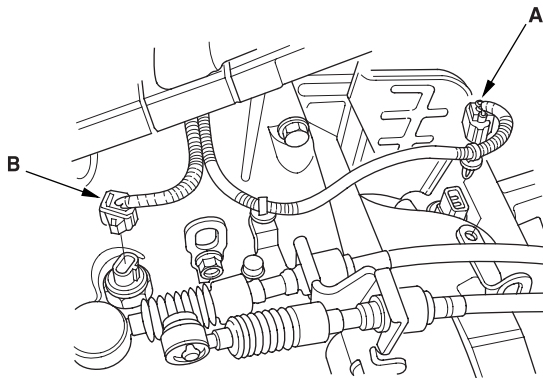
## Transmission Removal

NOTE: Use fender covers to avoid damaging painted surfaces.

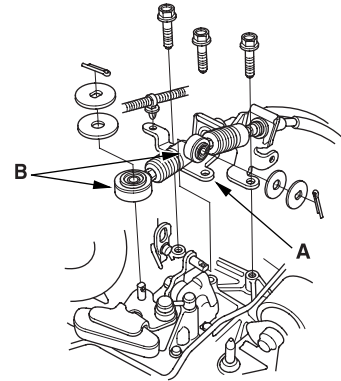
1. Write down the frequencies for the radio's preset buttons. Disconnect the negative (-) cable first, then the positive (+) cable from the battery. Remove the battery.
2. Remove the air cleaner housing (see step 5 on [page 05-3](#)).
3. Remove the intake duct (see step 6 on [page 05-3](#)).
4. Remove the battery tray (A).
5. Disconnect the transmission ground cable (B).



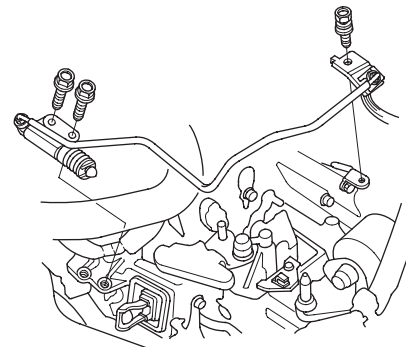
6. Disconnect the vehicle speed sensor (A) and the back-up light switch connector (B).



7. Remove the cable bracket (A), then disconnect the cables (B) from the top of the transmission housing. Carefully remove both cables and the bracket together so as not to bend the cables.



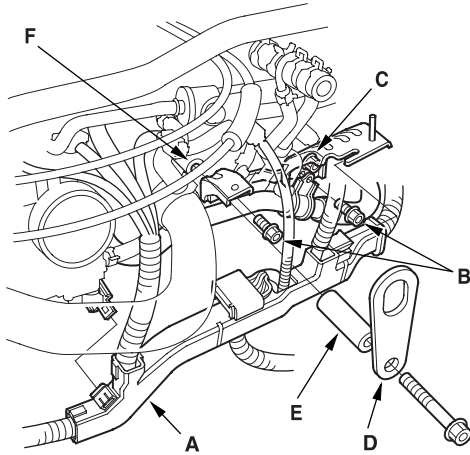
8. Carefully remove the slave cylinder so as not to bend the clutch line. Do not operate the clutch pedal once the slave cylinder has been removed.



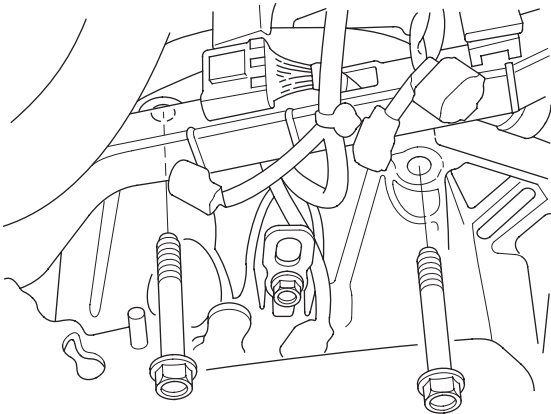
(cont'd)

## Transmission Removal (cont'd)

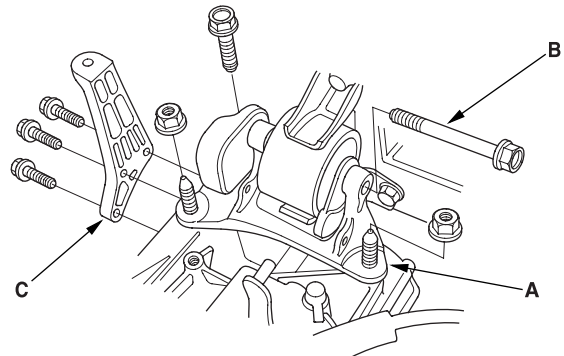
9. Remove the harness cover (A), water pipe mounting bolts (B), and loosen the air cleaner housing mounting bracket bolt (C). Lower the water pipe slightly.



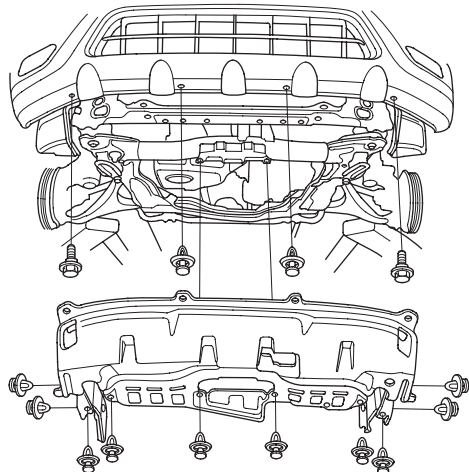
10. Attach an engine hanger (D) with a collar (E) to the bolt hole (F) on the engine cylinder block.
11. Remove the two upper transmission mounting bolts.



12. Remove the transmission mount bracket (A) and transmission mounting bolt (B).

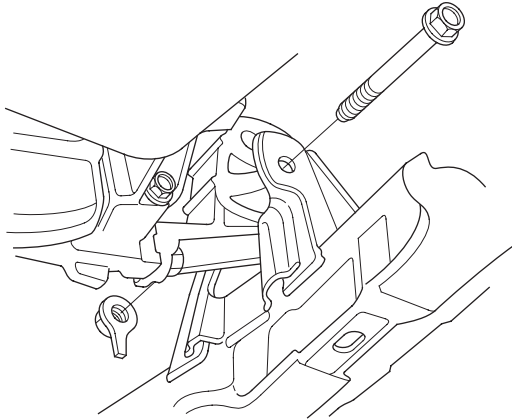


13. Remove the air cleaner bracket (C).
14. Raise vehicle and make sure it is securely supported.
15. Drain the transmission fluid. Reinstall the drain bolt using a new washer ([see page 13-4](#)).
16. Remove the splash shield.

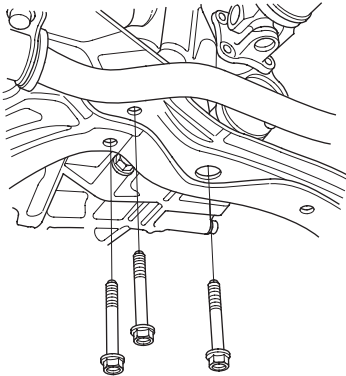




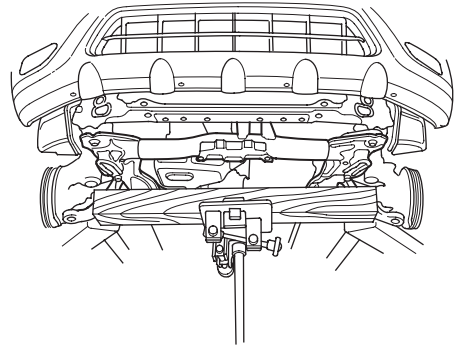
17. Remove the driveshafts (see page 16-3).
18. Remove the intermediate shaft (see page 16-19).
19. For 4WD models, remove the propeller shaft (see page 16-33).
20. Remove the front engine mount bracket mounting bolt.



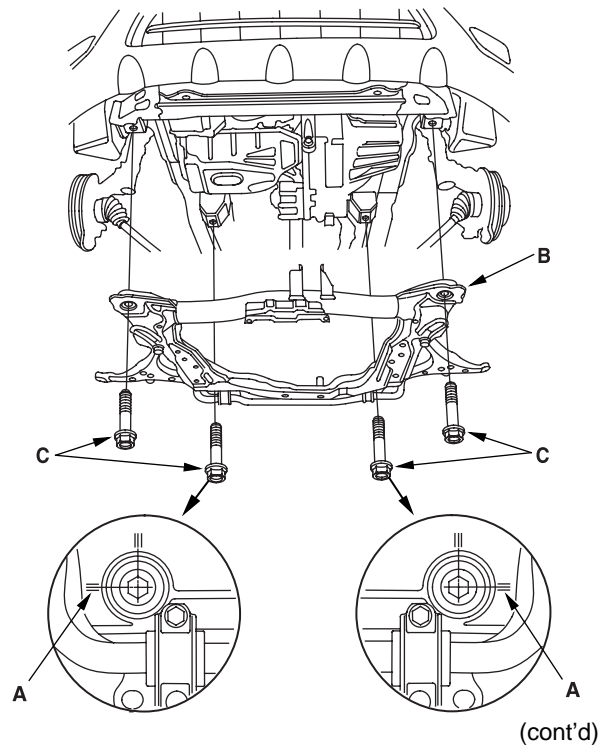
21. Remove the three bolts securing the transmission rear mount.



22. Support the subframe with a 4 x 4 x 40 in. piece of wood and a jack.



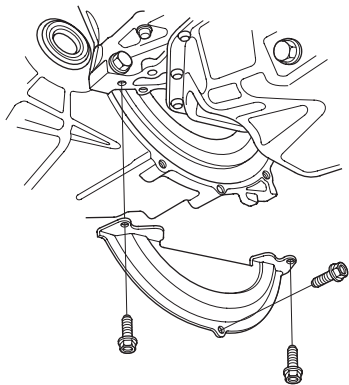
23. Make reference marks (A) on the front suspension subframe (B) and mounting bolts (C), then remove the front suspension subframe.



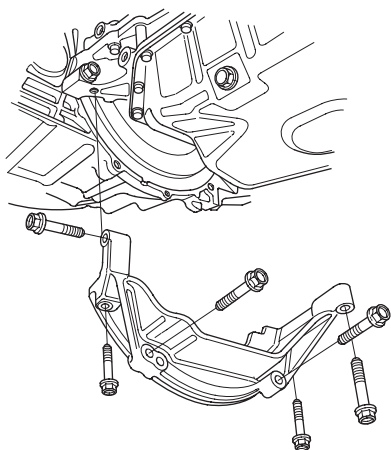
## Transmission Removal (cont'd)

24. Remove the clutch cover.

2.0 / model:

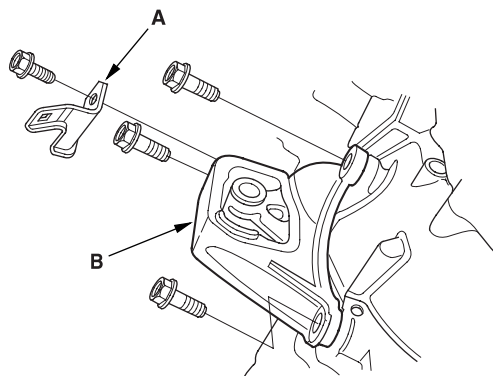


2.4 / model:

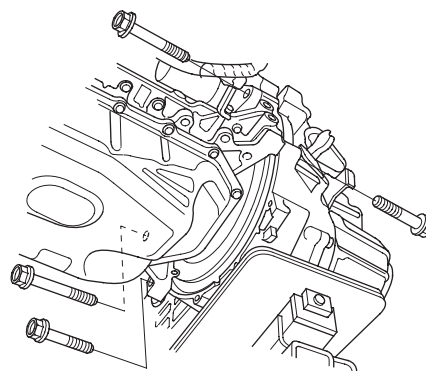


25. Remove the harness clamp (A).

26. Remove the front engine mount (B).

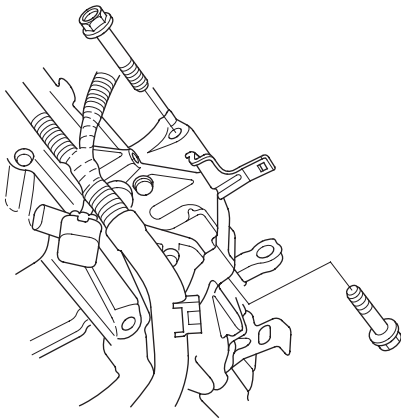


27. Place the transmission jack under the transmission and remove the four lower transmission mounting bolts.

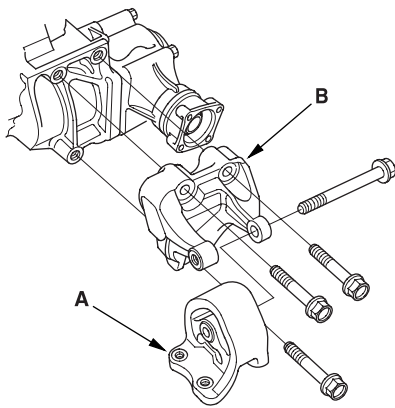




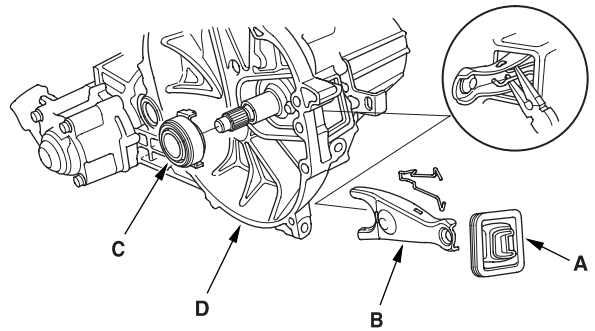
- 28.** Remove the two lower transmission mounting bolts.



- 29.** Pull the transmission away from the engine until the transmission mainshaft clears the clutch pressure plate, then lower the transmission on the transmission jack.
- 30.** Remove the transmission rear mount (A) and the transmission rear mount bracket (B).

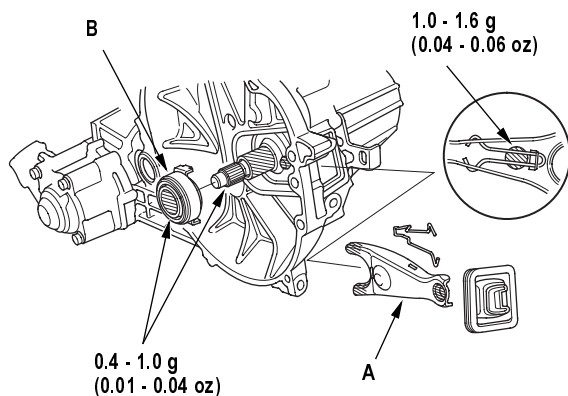


- 31.** Remove the boot (A), the release fork (B), and the release bearing (C) from the transmission (D).

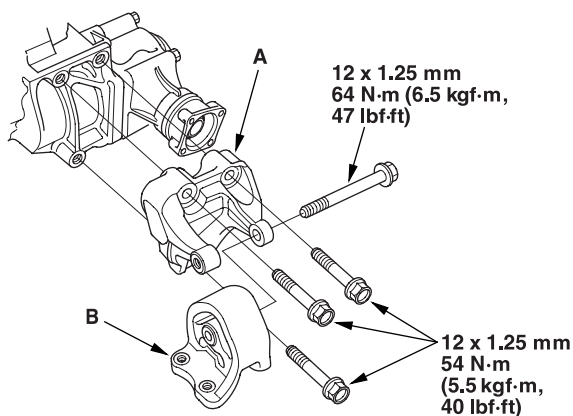


## Transmission Installation

1. Check the two dowel pins are installed in the clutch housing.
2. Apply Urea Grease UM264 (P/N 41211-PY5-305) to the release fork (A) and the release bearing (B). Install the release fork and the release bearing.

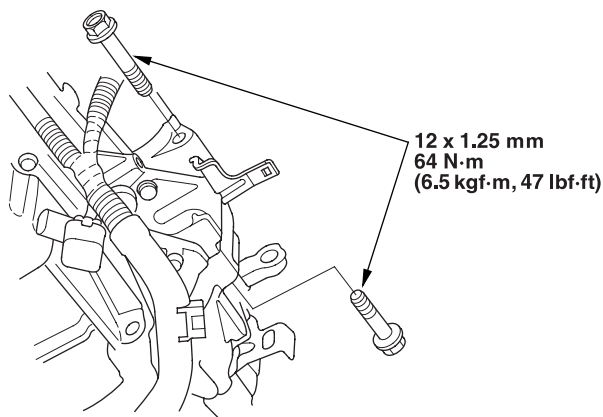


3. Install the transmission rear mount bracket (A) and the transmission rear mount (B).

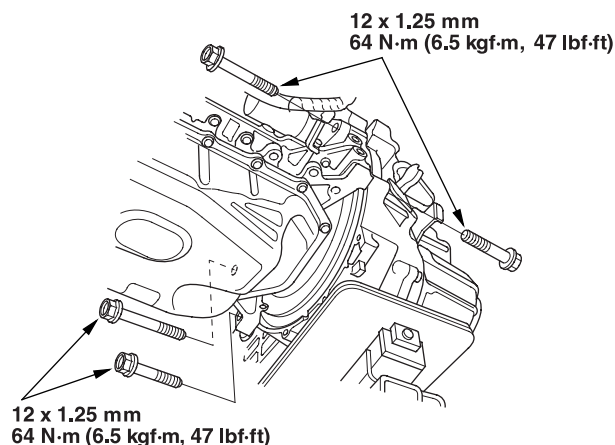


4. Place the transmission on the transmission jack, and raise it to the engine level.

5. Install the two lower transmission mounting bolts.

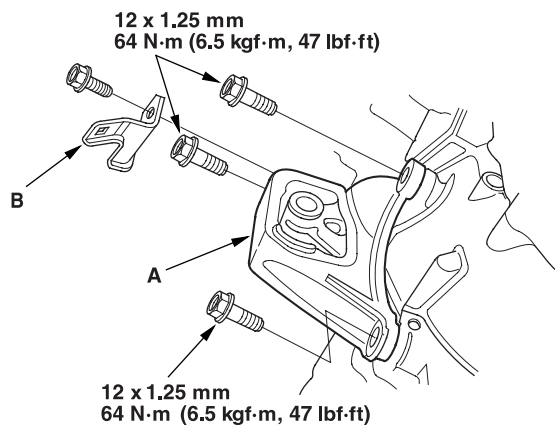


6. Install the four lower transmission mounting bolts.



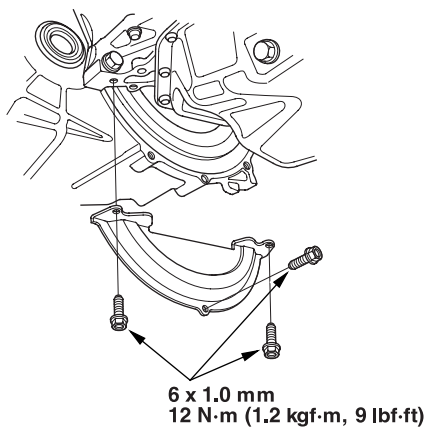


7. Install the front engine mount (A).

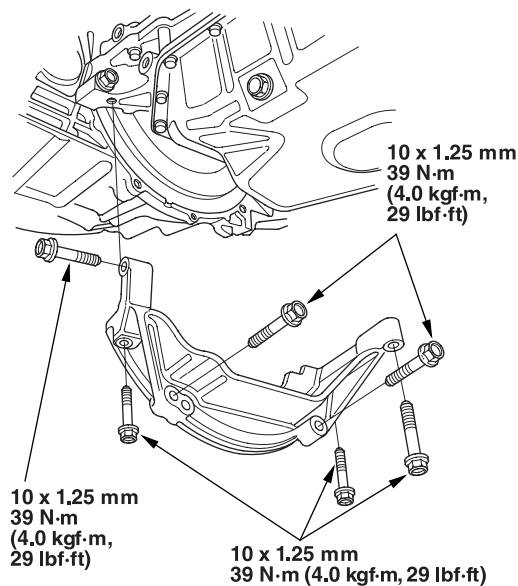


8. Install the harness clamp (B).
9. Install the clutch cover.

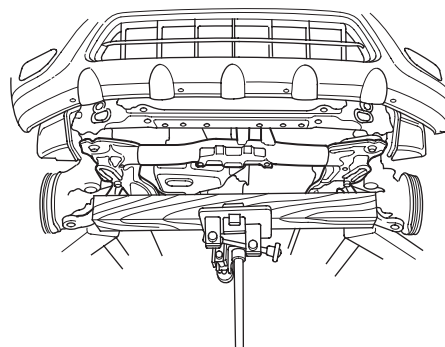
2.0 / model:



2.4 / model:



10. Support the subframe with a 4 x 4 x 40 in. piece of wood and a jack.

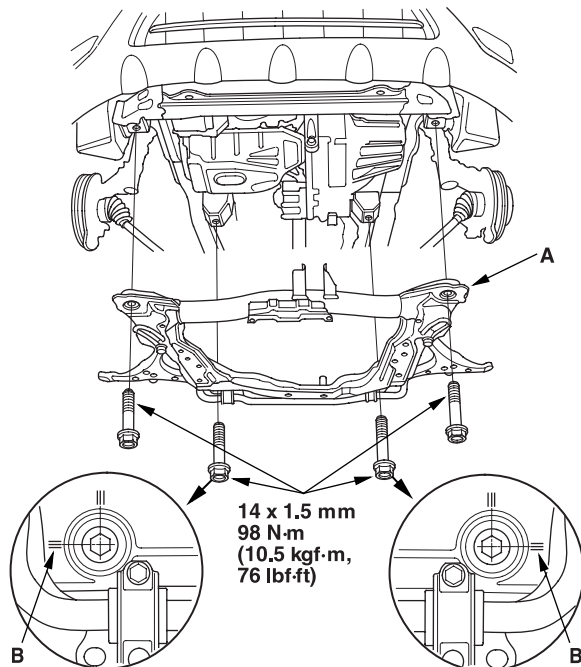


(cont'd)

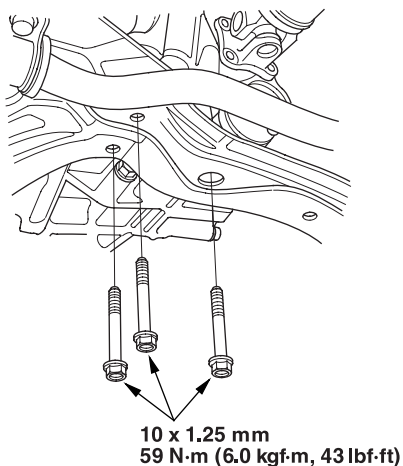


## Transmission Installation (cont'd)

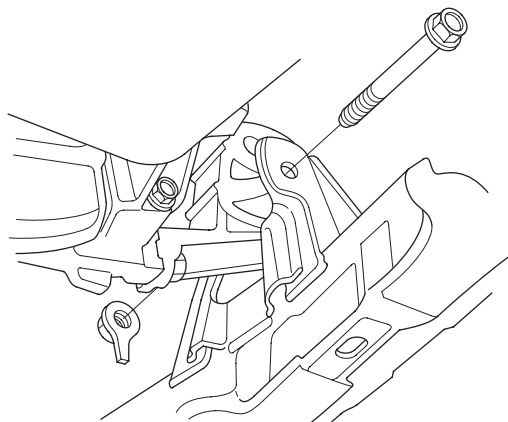
11. Install the front suspension subframe (A) in its original position by aligning the marks (B) you made in the removal procedure.



12. Install the three rear mounting bolts for the transmission rear mount.



13. Loosely tighten the front engine mount bracket mounting bolt.

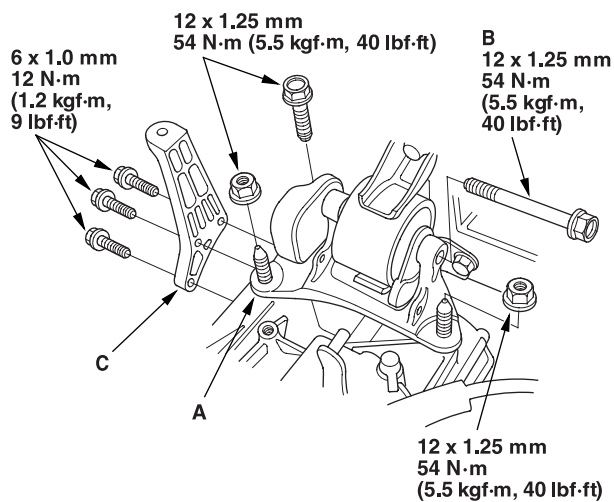


14. Install the intermediate shaft (see page 16-23).

15. Install the driveshafts (see page 16-17).

16. For 4WD models, Install the propeller shaft (see page 16-34).

17. Install the transmission mount bracket (A) and the transmission mounting bolt (B).

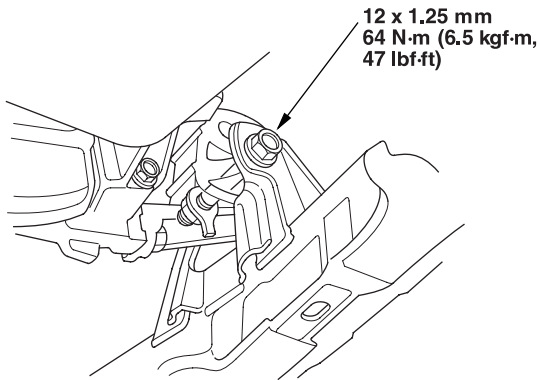


18. Install the air cleaner bracket (C).

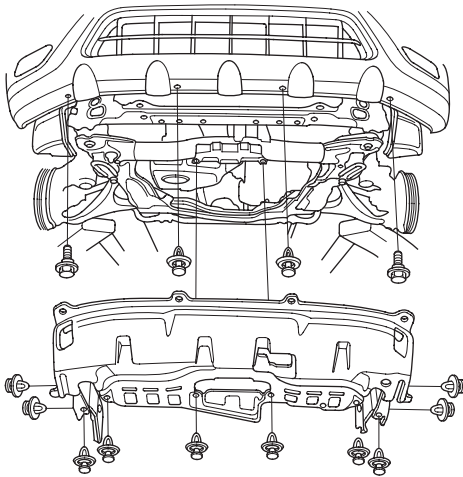




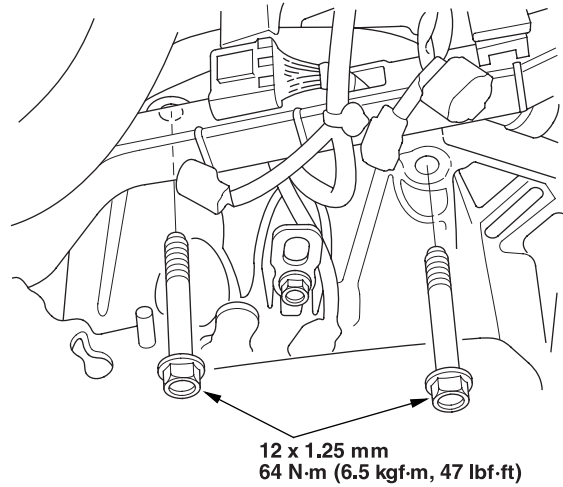
19. Loosen the front engine mount bracket mounting bolt, then tighten the front engine mount bracket mounting bolt.



20. Install the splash shield.

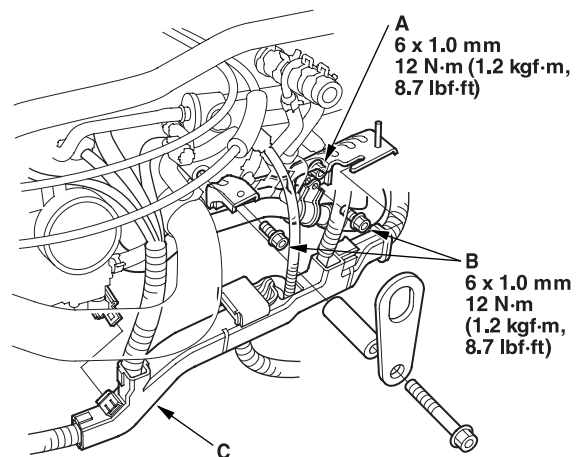


21. Install the two upper transmission mounting bolts.



22. Remove the chain hoist.

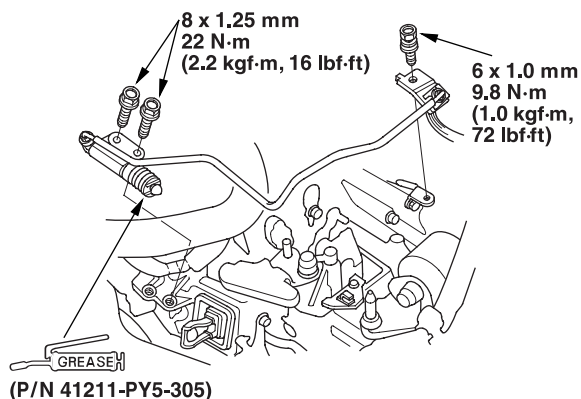
23. Install the air cleaner housing mounting bracket bolt (A), water pipe mounting bolts (B), harness cover (C).



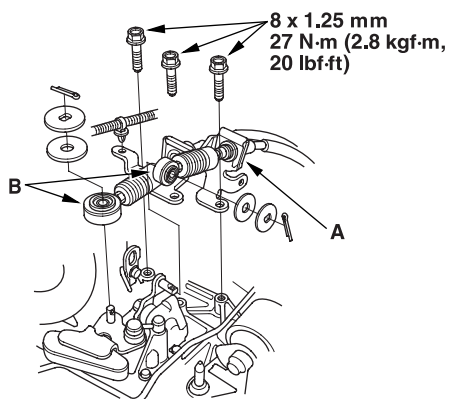
(cont'd)

## Transmission Installation (cont'd)

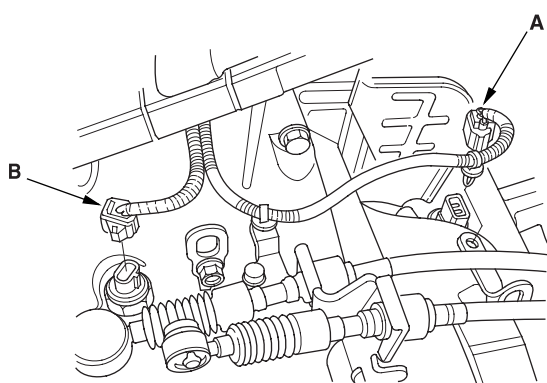
24. Apply Urea Grease UM264 (P/N 41211-PY5-305) to the end of the cylinder rod. Install the slave cylinder. Take care not to bend the clutch line.



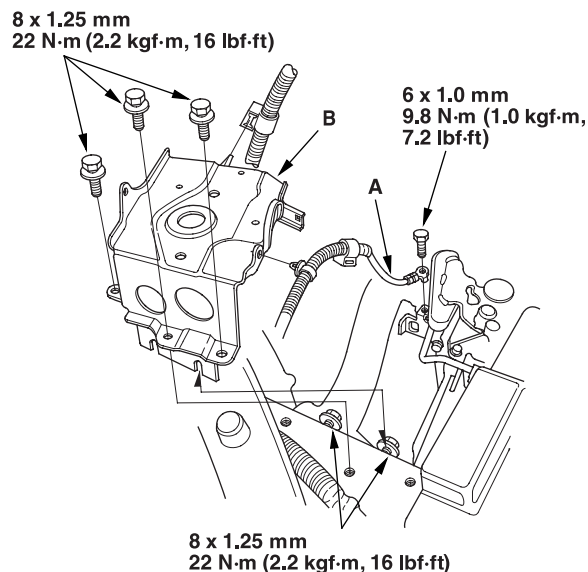
25. Install the cable bracket (A) and cables (B).



26. Connect the vehicle speed sensor (A) and the back-up light switch connector (B).



27. Install the transmission ground cable (A).



28. Install the battery tray (B).

29. Install the intake duct (see step 38 on [page 05-16](#)).

30. Install the air cleaner housing (see step 39 on [page 05-17](#)).

31. Install the battery. Connect the positive (+) cable first, then the negative (-) cable to the battery.

32. Refill the transmission fluid ([see page 13-4](#)).

33. Test-drive the vehicle.

34. Check the clutch operation.

35. Check the front wheel alignment ([see page 18-4](#)).

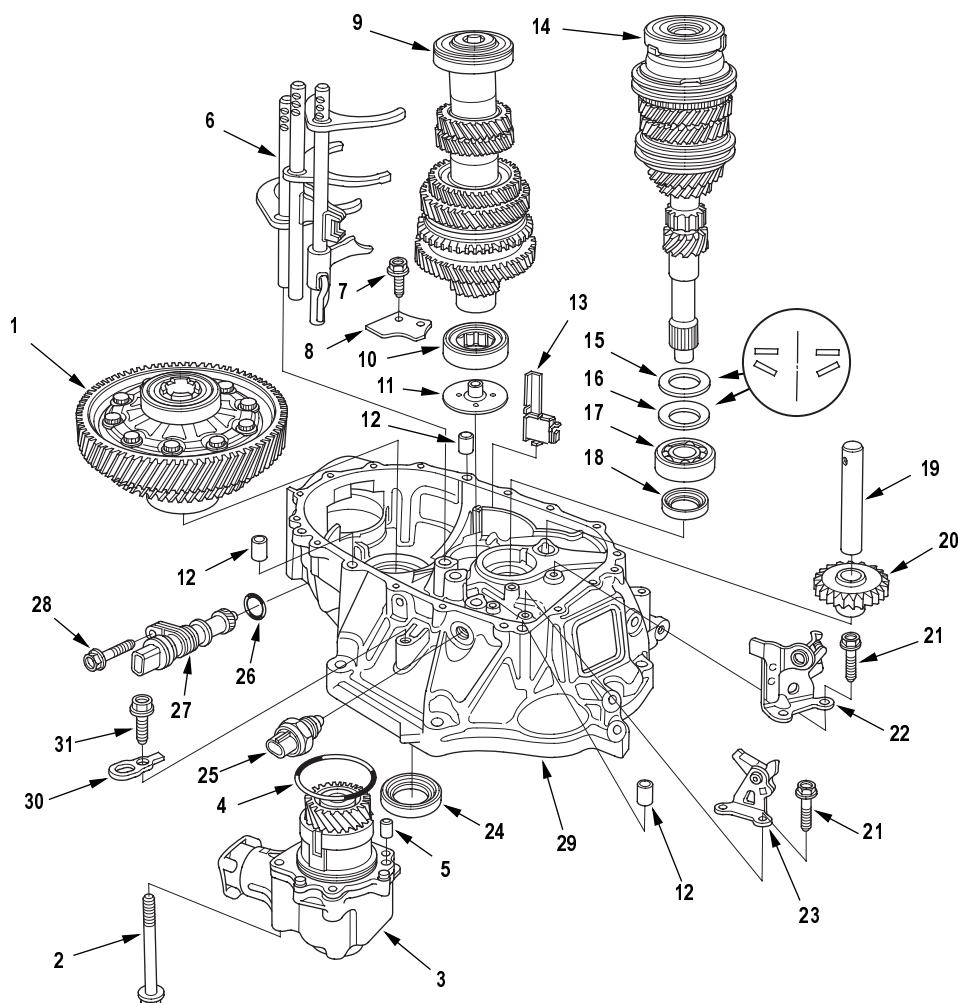
36. Enter the anti-theft code for the radio, then enter the customer's radio station presets.



## Transmission Disassembly

### Exploded View-Clutch Housing

4WD model



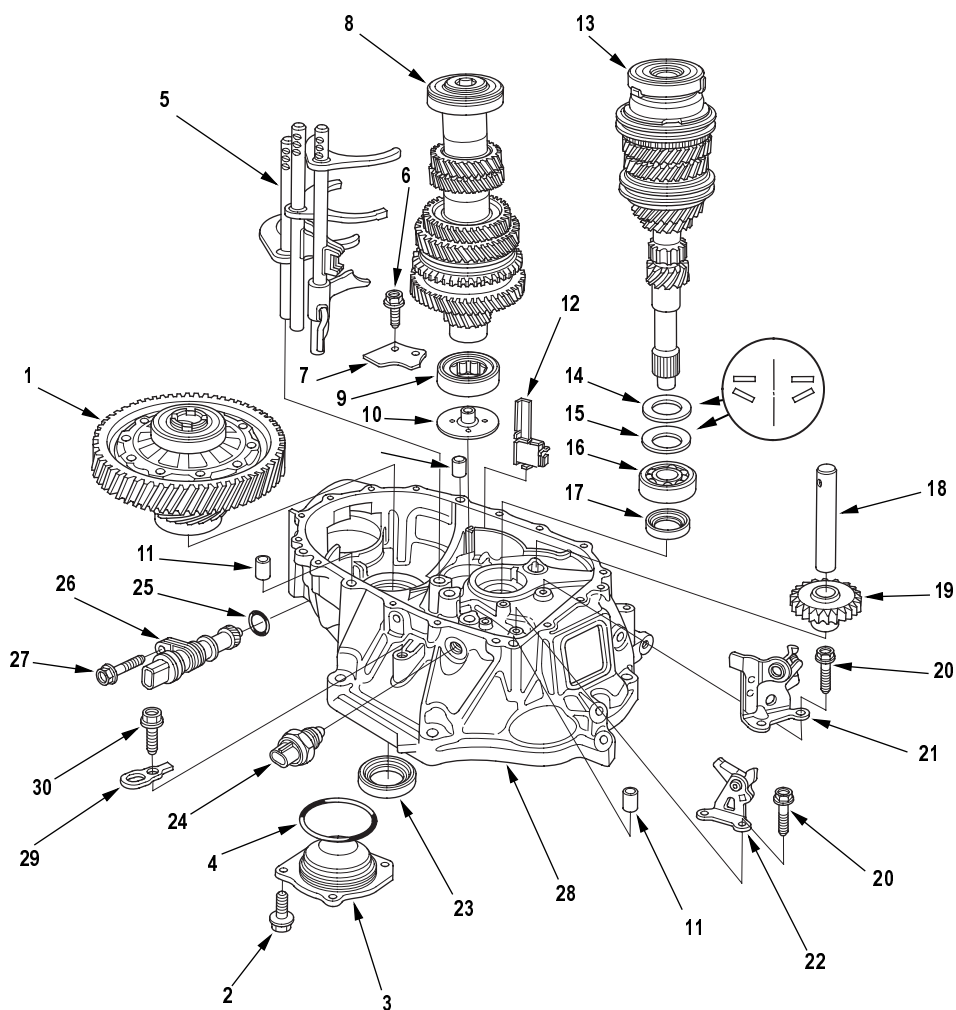
- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| 1 DIFFERENTIAL ASSEMBLY                                  | 12 14 x 20 mm DOWEL PIN                               | 23 REVERSE LOCK CAM                                      |
| 2 10 mm FLANGE BOLT<br>44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft)     | 13 MAGNET   | 24 35 x 58 x 8 mm OIL SEAL<br>Replace.                   |
| 3 TRANSFER ASSEMBLY                                      | 14 MAINSHAFT ASSEMBLY                                 | 25 BACK-UP LIGHT SWITCH<br>29 N·m (3.0 kgf·m, 22 lbf·ft) |
| 4 O-RING<br>Replace.                                     | 15 28 mm WASHER                                       | 26 O-RING<br>Replace.                                    |
| 5 10 x 20 mm DOWEL PIN                                   | 16 28 mm SPRING WASHER                                | 27 VEHICLE SPEED SENSOR (VSS)                            |
| 6 SHIFT FORK ASSEMBLY                                    | 17 BALL BEARING                                       | 28 8 mm FLANGE BOLT<br>22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)     |
| 7 6 x 1.0 mm FLANGE BOLT<br>12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft) | 18 28 x 43 x 7 mm OIL SEAL<br>Replace.                | 29 CLUTCH HOUSING  |
| 8 BEARING SET PLATE                                      | 19 REVERSE GEAR SHAFT                                 | 30 TRANSMISSION HANGER                                   |
| 9 COUNTERSHAFT ASSEMBLY                                  | 20 REVERSE IDLER GEAR                                 | 31 10 mm FLANGE BOLT<br>44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft)    |
| 10 NEEDLE BEARING  | 21 6 mm SPECIAL BOLT<br>15 N·m (1.5 kgf·m, 11 lbf·ft) |  |
| 11 OIL GUIDE PLATE C                                     | 22 REVERSE SHIFT FORK                                 |  |

(cont'd)

## Transmission Disassembly (cont'd)

## Exploded View-Clutch Housing (cont'd)

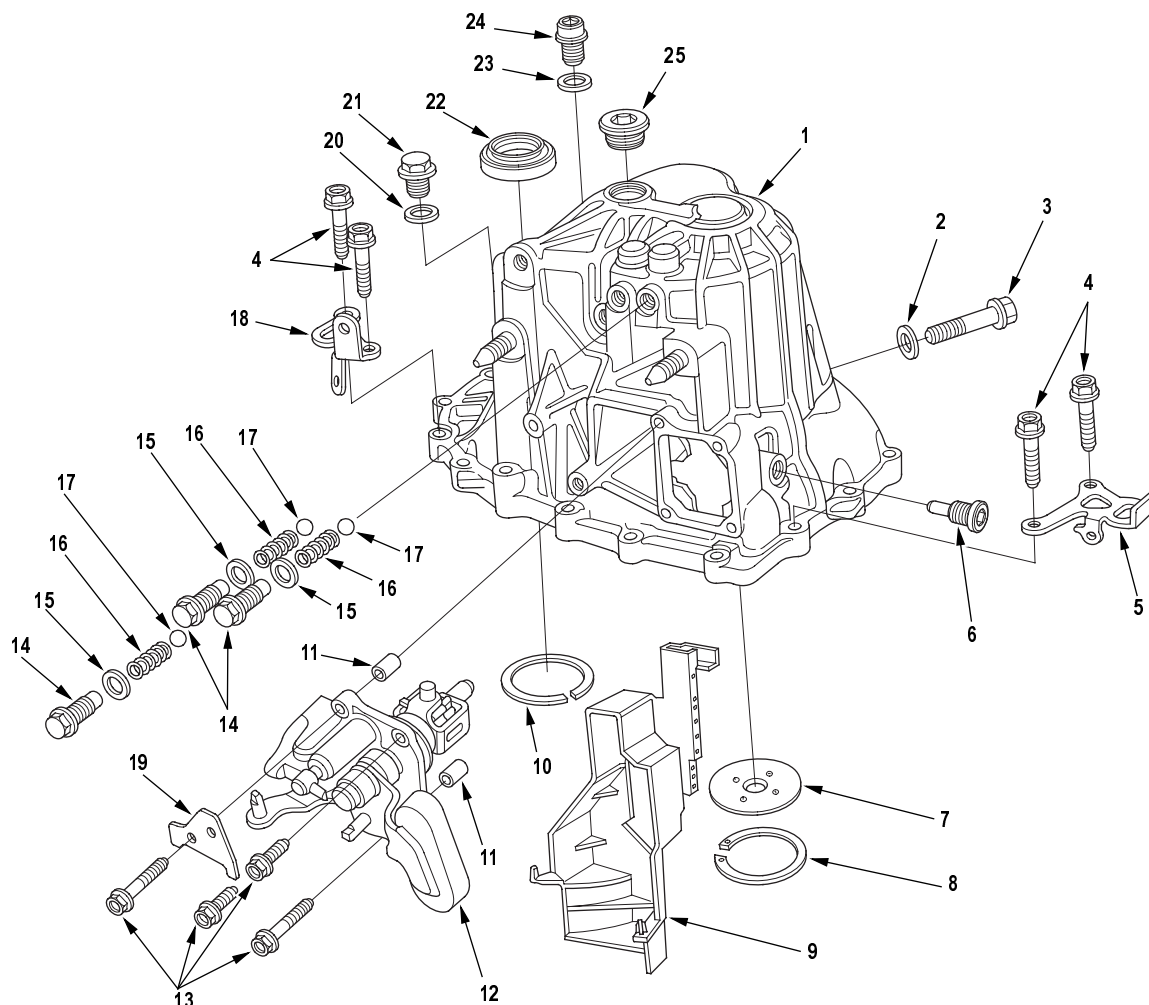
2WD model



- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| 1 DIFFERENTIAL ASSEMBLY                              | 11 14 x 20 mm DOWEL PIN                               | 21 REVERSE SHAFT FORK                                    |
| 2 10 mm FLANGE BOLT<br>44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft) | 12 MAGNET   | 22 REVERSE LOCK CAM                                      |
| 3 SIDE COVER   | 13 MAINSHAFT ASSEMBLY                                 | 23 35 x 58 x 8 mm OIL SEAL<br>Replace.                   |
| 4 O-RING<br>Replace.                                 | 14 28 mm WASHER                                       | 24 BACK-UP LIGHT SWITCH<br>29 N·m (3.0 kgf·m, 22 lbf·ft) |
| 5 SHIFT FORK ASSEMBLY                                | 15 28 mm SPRING WASHER                                | 25 O-RING<br>Replace.                                    |
| 6 6 mm FLANGE BOLT<br>12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft)   | 16 BALL BEARING                                       | 26 VEHICLE SPEED SENSOR (VSS)                            |
| 7 BEARING SET PLATE                                  | 17 28 x 43 x 7 mm OIL SEAL<br>Replace.                | 27 8 mm SPECIAL BOLT<br>22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)    |
| 8 COUNTERSHAFT ASSEMBLY                              | 18 REVERSE GEAR SHAFT                                 | 28 CLUTCH HOUSING  |
| 9 NEEDLE BEARING                                     | 19 REVERSE IDLER GEAR                                 | 29 TRANSMISSION HANGER                                   |
| 10 OIL GUIDE PLATE C                                 | 20 6 mm SPECIAL BOLT<br>15 N·m (1.5 kgf·m, 11 lbf·ft) | 30 10 mm FLANGE BOLT<br>44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft)    |



## Exploded View-Transmission Housing



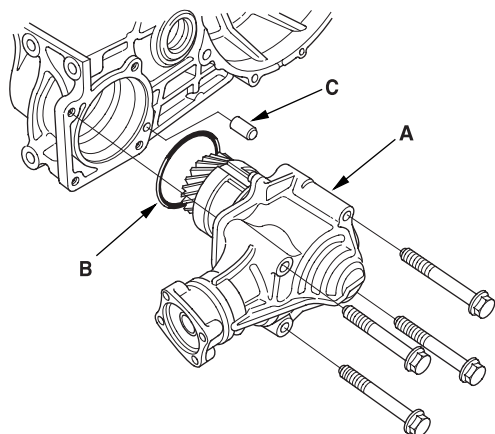
- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| 1 TRANSMISSION HOUSING                                      | 10 80 mm SHIM   | 19 CLUTCH LINE CLIP BRACKET                           |
| 2 10 mm WASHER<br>Replace.                                  | 11 8 x 14 mm DOWEL PIN                                    | 20 20 mm WASHER<br>Replace.                           |
| 3 10 x 1.25 mm FLANGE BOLT<br>44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft) | 12 CHANGE LEVER ASSEMBLY                                  | 21 FILLER PLUG<br>44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft)       |
| 4 8 x 1.25 mm FLANGE BOLT<br>27 N·m (2.8 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft)  | 13 6 x 1.0 mm FLANGE BOLT<br>12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 9 lbf·ft) | 22 40 x 56 x mm OIL SEAL<br>Replace.                  |
| 5 TRANSMISSION HANGER A                                     | 14 DETENT BOLT<br>22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)           | 23 14 mm WASHER<br>Replace.                           |
| 6 INTERLOCK BOLT<br>39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m, 29 lbf·ft)           | 15 12 mm WASHES<br>Replace.                               | 24 DRAIN PLUG<br>39 N·m (4.0 kgf·m, 29 lbf·ft)        |
| 7 OIL GUIDE PLATE M   | 16 SPRING   | 25 32 mm SEALING CAP<br>34 N·m (3.5 kgf·m, 25 lbf·ft) |
| 8 72 mm SHIM  | 17 STEEL BALL   |   |
| 9 OIL GUTTER PLATE  | 18 TRANSMISSION HANGER B                                  |   |

(cont'd)

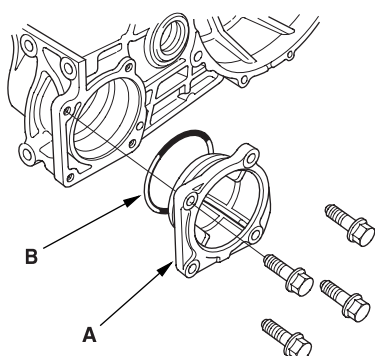
## Transmission Disassembly (cont'd)

NOTE: Place the clutch housing on two pieces of wood thick enough to keep the mainshaft from hitting the workbench.

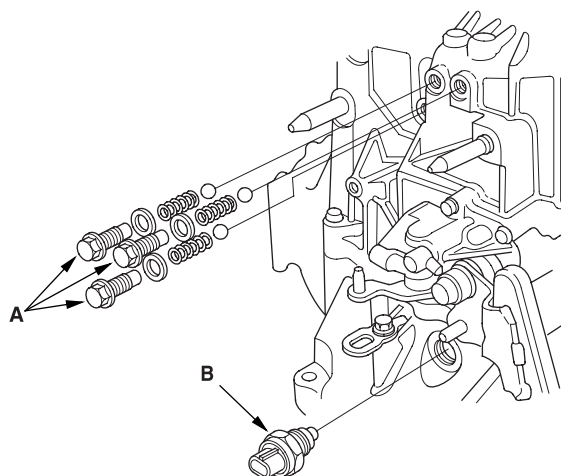
1. Remove the transfer assembly (A), O-ring (B) and 10 x 20 mm dowel pin (C). (4WD model)



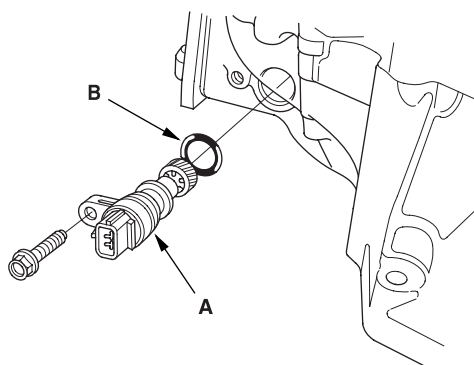
2. Remove the side cover (A) and O-ring (B). (2WD model)



3. Remove the detent bolts (A), springs, steel balls and back-up light switch (B).



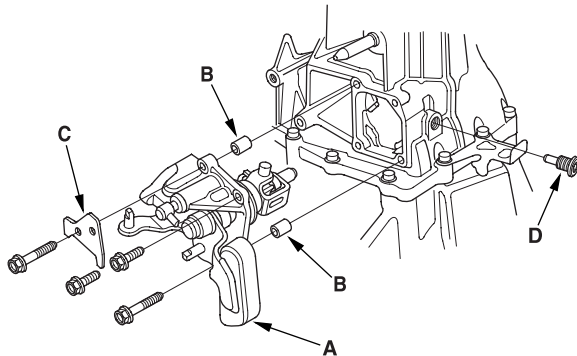
4. Remove the vehicle speed sensor (VSS)(A) and O-ring (B).



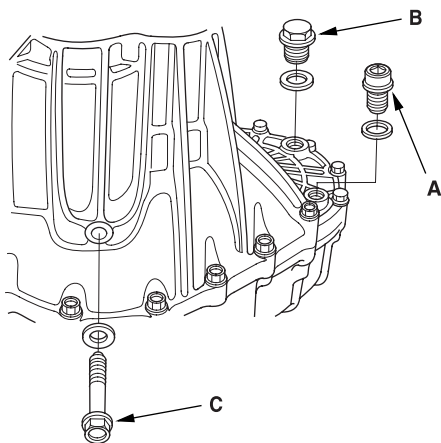




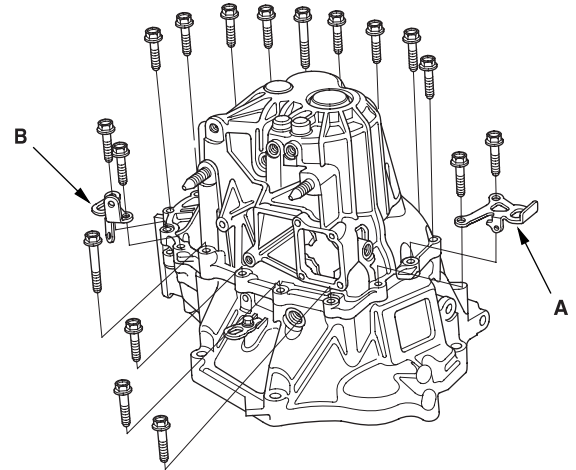
5. Remove the change lever assembly (A), 8 x 14 mm dowel pins (B), clutch line clip bracket (C) and interlock bolt (D).



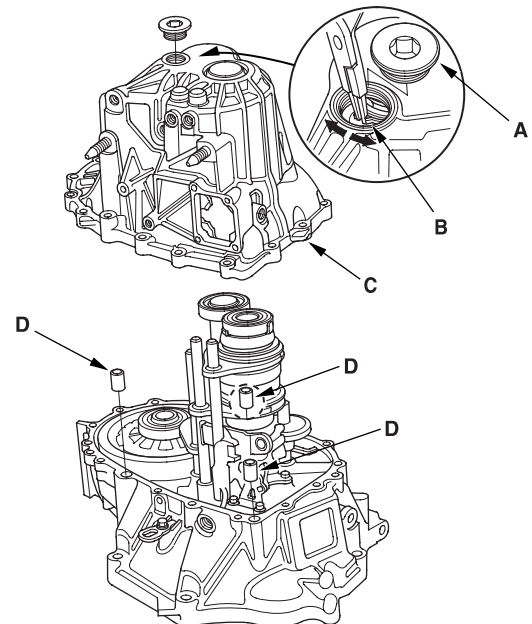
6. Remove the drain plug (A), filler plug (B) and 10 mm flange bolt (C).



7. Remove the 8 mm flange bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps.
8. Remove the transmission hanger A and transmission hanger B.



9. Remove the 32 mm sealing cap (A).

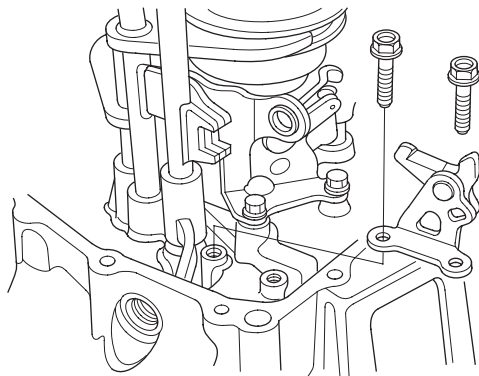


10. Expand the 72 mm snap ring (B) on the countershaft ball bearing, and remove it from the groove using a pair of snap ring pliers.
11. Remove the transmission housing (C) and 14 x 20 mm dowel pins (D).

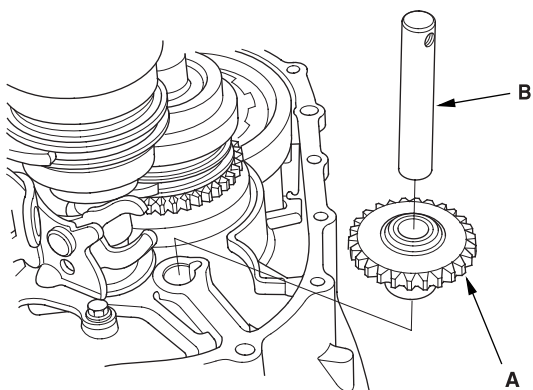
(cont'd)

## Transmission Disassembly (cont'd)

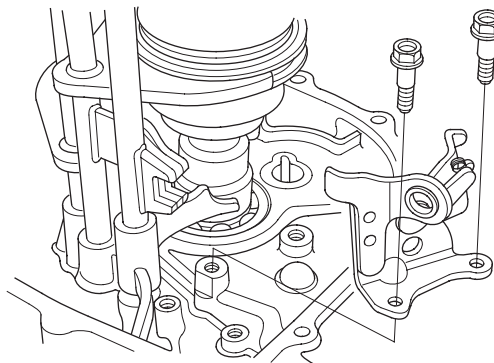
12. Remove the reverse lock cam.



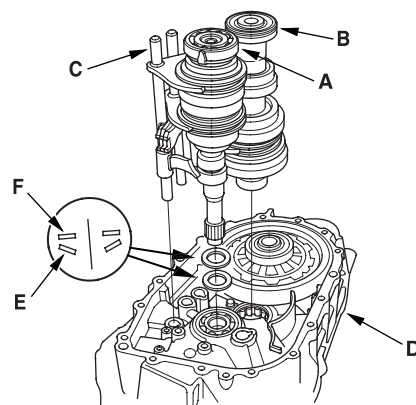
13. Remove the reverse idler gear (A) and reverse gear shaft (B).



14. Remove the reverse shift fork.



15. Apply tape to the mainshaft splines to protect the seal, then remove the mainshaft assembly (A) and countershaft assembly (B) with the shift forks (C) from the clutch housing (D).

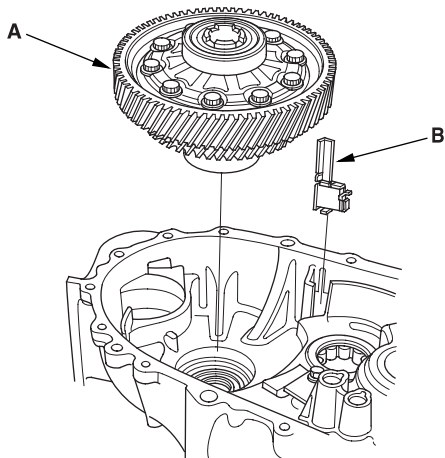


16. Remove the 28 mm spring washer (E) and 28 mm washer (F).

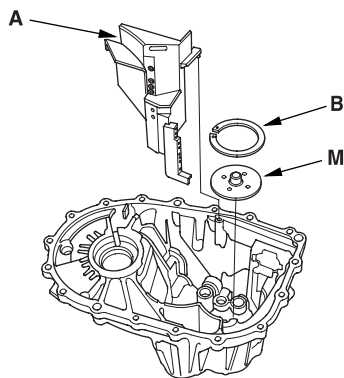




17. Remove the differential assembly (A) and magnet (B).



18. Remove the oil gutter plate (A), 72 mm shim (B) and oil guide plate M.

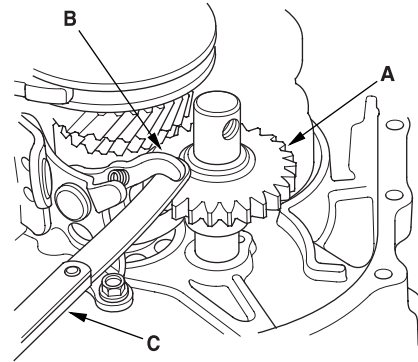


## Reverse Shift Fork Clearance Inspection

1. Measure the clearance between the reverse idler gear (A) and the reverse shift fork (B) with a feeler gauge (C). If the clearance is more than the service limit, go to step 2.

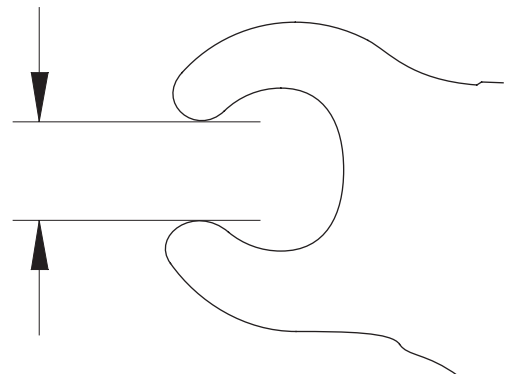
**Standard:** 0.20 - 0.59 mm (0.007 - 0.023 in.)

**Service Limit:** 1.2 mm (0.047 in.)



2. Measure the width of the reverse shift fork.
- If distance is not within the standard, replace the reverse shift fork with a new one.
  - If distance is within the standard, replace the reverse gear with a new one.

**Standard:** 13.4 - 13.7 mm (0.527 - 0.539 in.)

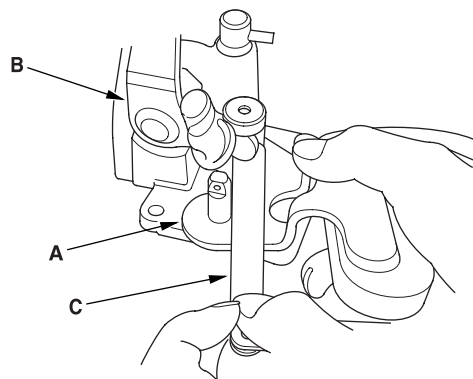


**Shift Lever Clearance Inspection**

1. Measure the clearance between shift lever (A) and the select lever (B) with a feeler gauge (C). If the clearance is more than the service limit, go to step 2.

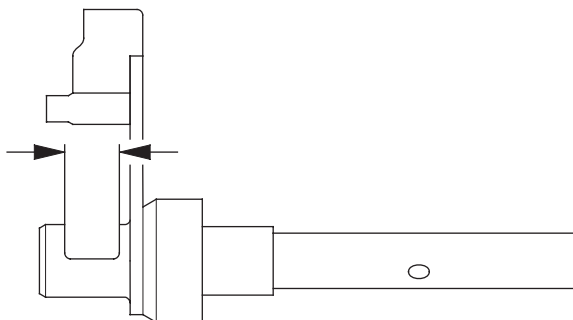
**Standard:** 0.05 - 0.25 mm (0.002 - 0.010 in.)

**Service Limit:** 0.50 mm (0.020 in.)



2. Measure the groove of the shift lever.
  - If distance is not within the standard, replace the shift lever with a new one.
  - If distance is within the standard, replace the select lever with a new one.

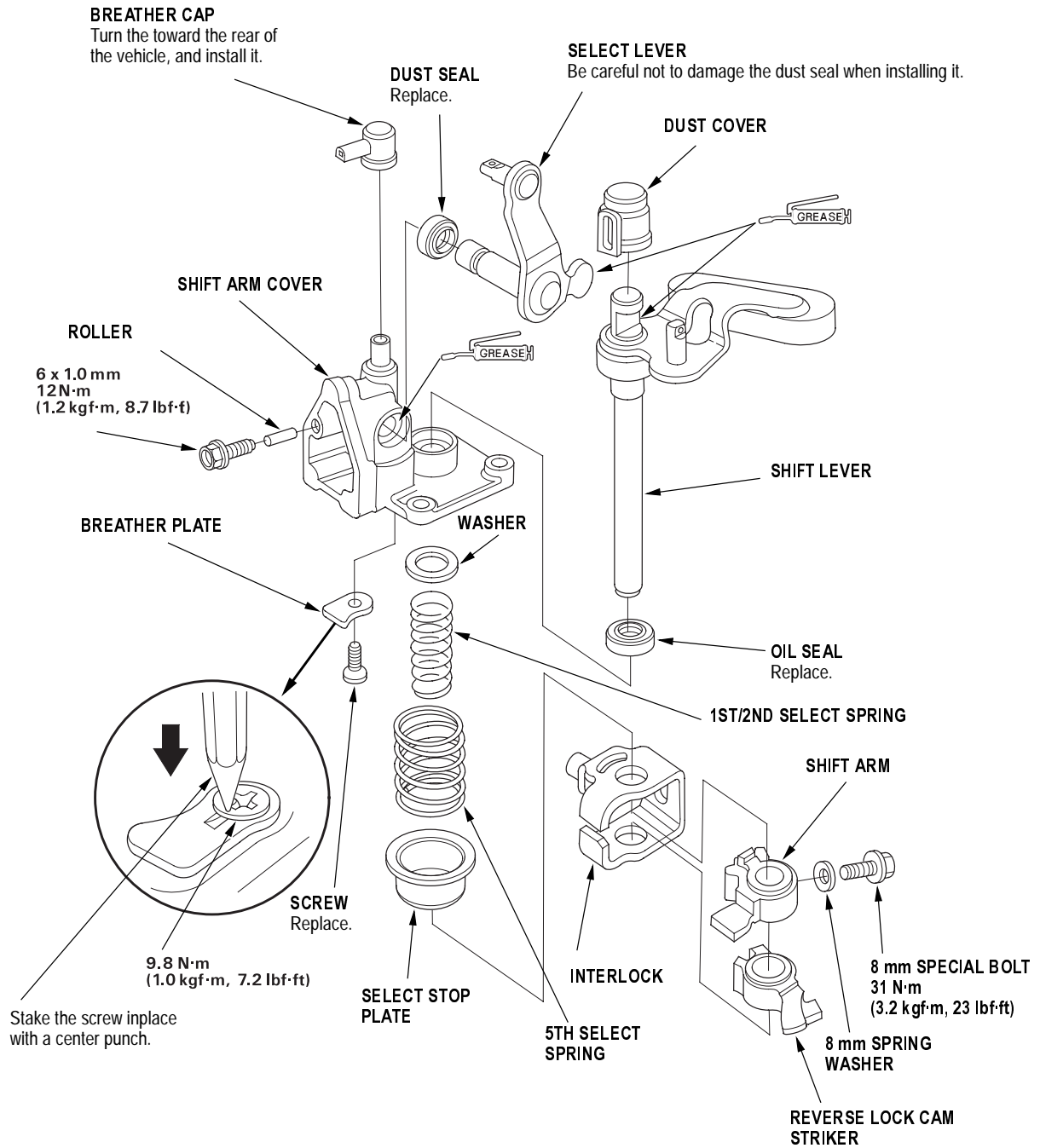
**Standard:** 15.00 - 15.10 mm (0.591 - 0.594 in.)





## Change Lever Assembly Disassembly/Reassembly

Prior to reassembling, clean all the parts in solvent, dry them, and apply lubricate to any contact surface.

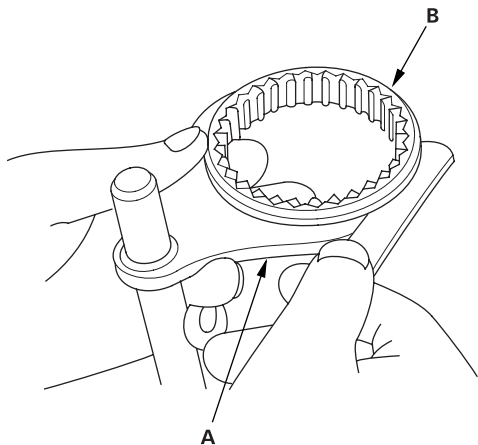


Shift Forks Clearance Inspection

NOTE: The synchro sleeve and synchro hub should be replaced as a set.

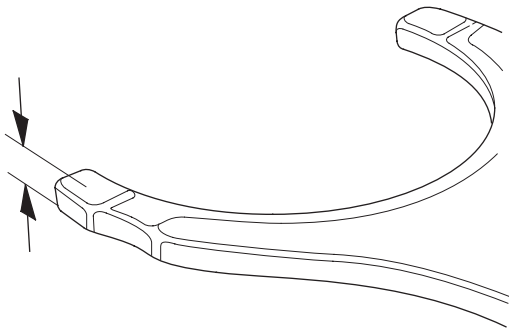
1. Measure the clearance between each shift fork (A) and its matching synchro sleeve (B). If the clearance exceeds the service limit, go to step 2.

**Standard:** 0.35 - 0.65 mm (0.014 - 0.026 in.)  
**Service Limit:** 1.0 mm (0.039 in.)



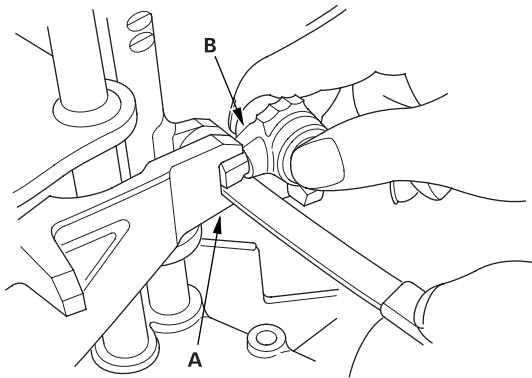
2. Measure the thickness of the shift fork fingers.
- If the thickness of the shift fork finger is not within the standard, replace the shift fork with a new one.
  - If the thickness of the shift fork finger is within the standard, replace the synchro sleeve with a new one.

**Standard:** 7.4 - 7.6 mm (0.29 - 0.30 in.)



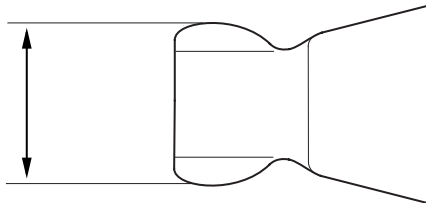
3. Measure the clearance between the shift fork (A) and the shift arm (B). If the clearance exceeds the service limit, go to step 4.

**Standard:** 0.2 - .5 mm (0.008 - 0.020 in.)  
**Service Limit:** 0.60 mm (0.023 in.)



4. Measure the width of the shift arm.
- If the width of the shift arm is not within the standard, replace the shift arm with a new one.
  - If the width of the shift arm is within the standard, replace the shift fork or shift piece with a new one.

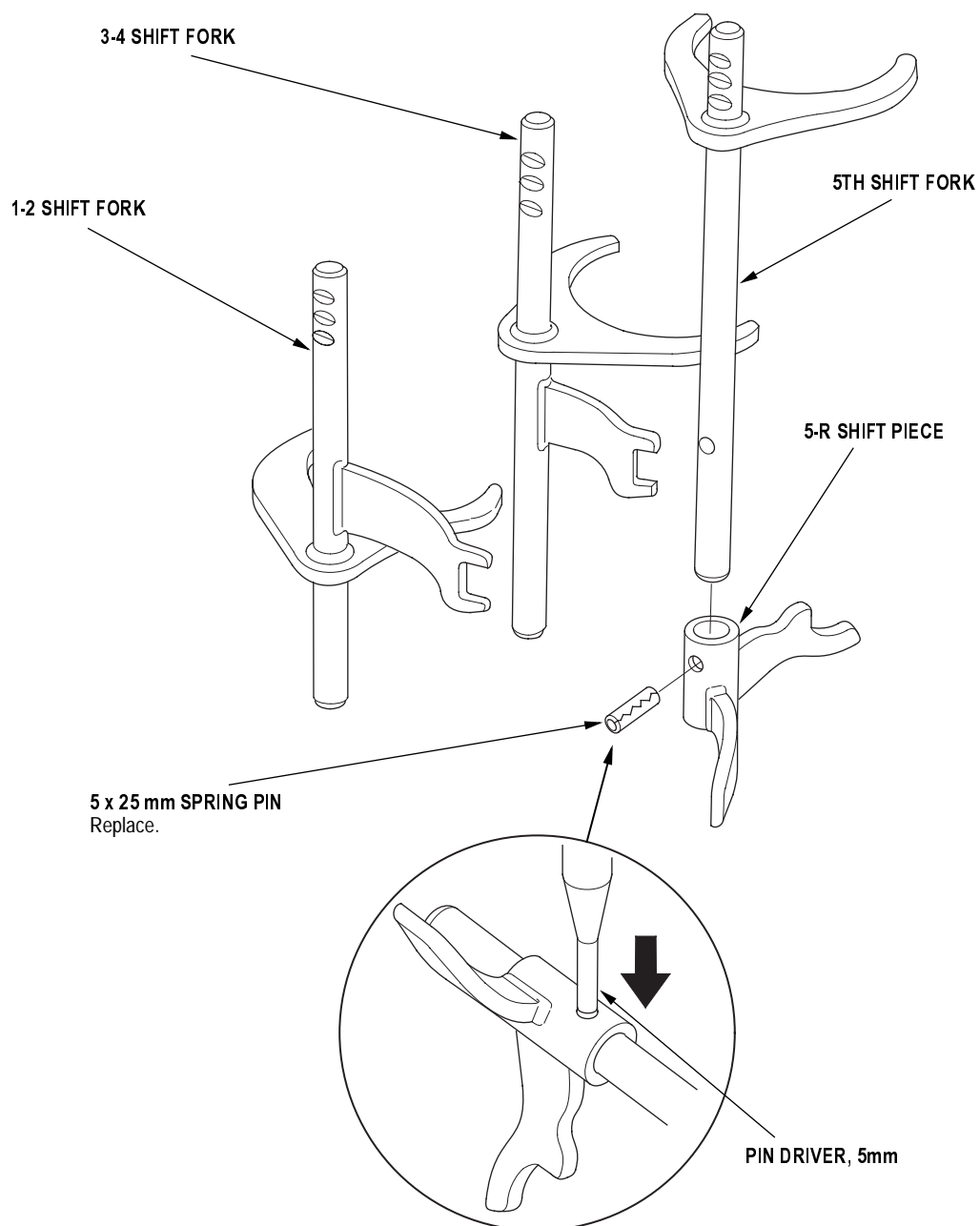
**Standard:** 16.9 - 17.0 mm (0.665 - 0.669 in.)





## Shift Forks Disassembly/Reassembly

Prior to reassembling, clean all the parts in solvent, dry them, and apply lubricant to any contact parts.

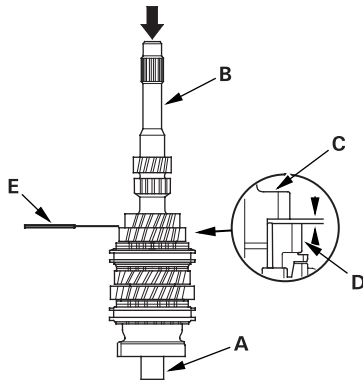


### Mainshaft Assembly Clearance Inspection

NOTE: If replacement is required, always replace the synchro sleeve and hub as a set.

1. Support the bearing inner race with an appropriate sized socket (A), and push down on the mainshaft (B).

**Standard:** 0.06 - 0.16 mm  
(0.002 - 0.006 in.)  
**Service Limit:** 0.25 mm (0.010 in.)

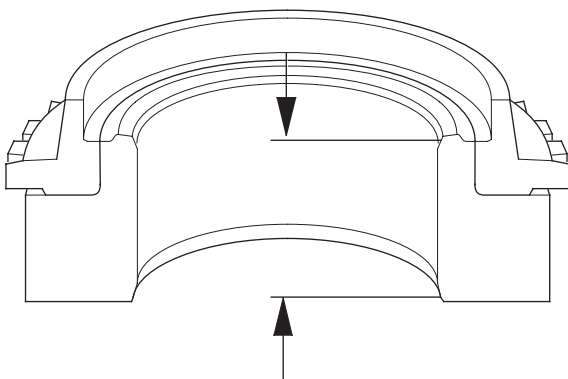


2. Measure the clearance between 2nd (C) and 3rd (D) gears with a feeler gauge (E).
  - If the clearance is more than the service limit, go to step 3.
  - If the clearance is within the service limit, go to step 4.

3. Measure the thickness of 3rd gear.

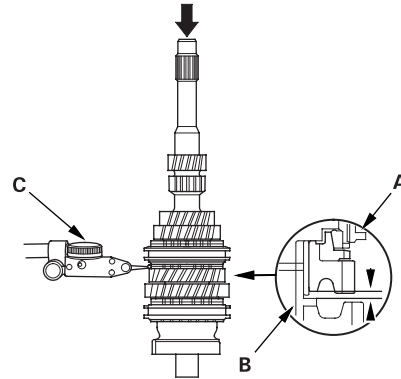
- If the thickness of 3rd gear is less than the service limit, replace 3rd gear with a new one.
- If the thickness of 3rd gear is within the service limit, replace the 3rd/4th synchro hub with a new one.

**Standard:** 23.92 - 23.97 mm  
(0.981 - 0.944 in.)  
**Service Limit:** 23.80 mm (0.937 in.)



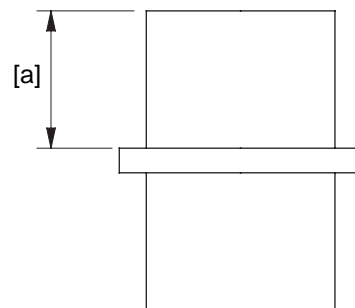
4. Measure the clearance between 4th gear (A) and the spacer collar (B) with a dial indicator (C). If the clearance is more than the service limit, go to step 5.

**Standard:** 0.06 - 0.16 mm  
(0.002 - 0.006 in.)  
**Service Limit:** 0.25 mm (0.010 in.)



5. Measure distance [a] on the distance collar.
  - If distance a is not within the standard, replace the distance collar with a new one.
  - If distance [a] is within the standard, go to step 6.

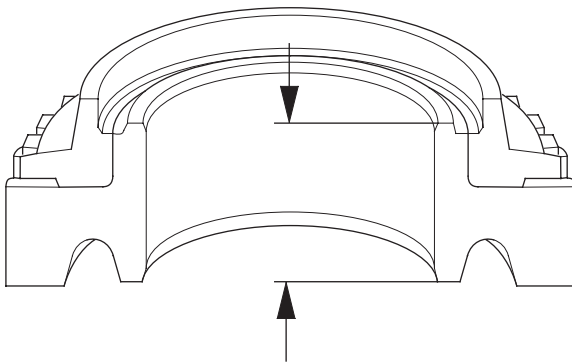
**Standard:** 24.03 - 24.08 mm  
(0.946 - 0.947 in.)





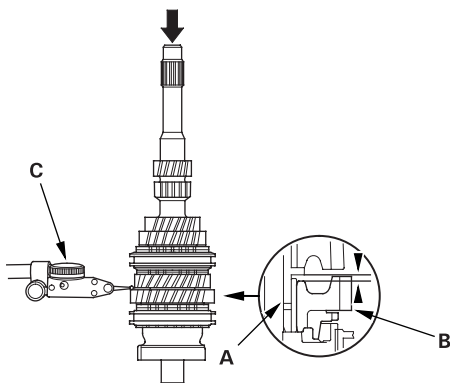
6. Measure the thickness of 4th gear.
- If the thickness of 4th gear is less than the service limit, replace 4th gear with a new one.
  - If the thickness of 4th gear is within the service limit, replace the 3rd/4th synchro hub with a new one.

**Standard:** 23.92 - 23.97 mm  
(0.981 - 0.944 in.)  
**Service Limit:** 23.80 mm (0.937 in.)



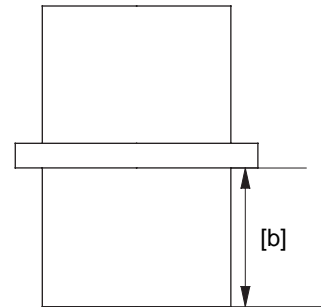
7. Measure the clearance between the distance collar (A) and 5th gear (B) with a dial indicator (C). If the clearance is more than the service limit, go to step 8.

**Standard:** 0.06 - 0.16 mm  
(0.002 - 0.006 in.)  
**Service Limit:** 0.25 mm (0.010 in.)



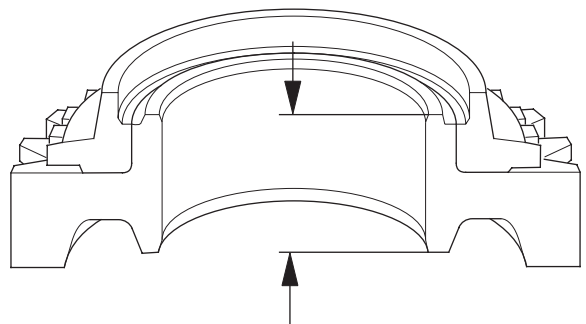
8. Measure distance b on the distance collar.
- If distance [b] is not within the standard, replace the distance collar with a new one.
  - If distance [b] is within the standard, go to step 9.

**Standard:** 24.03 - 24.08 mm  
(0.946 - 0.947 in.)



9. Measure the thickness of 5th gear.
- If the thickness of 5th gear is less than the service limit, replace 5th gear with a new one.
  - If the thickness of 5th gear is within the service limit, replace the 5th synchro hub with a new one.

**Standard:** 23.92 - 23.97 mm  
(0.981 - 0.944 in.)  
**Service Limit:** 23.80 mm (0.937 in.)

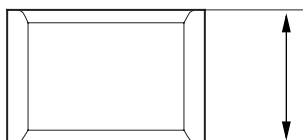


(cont'd)

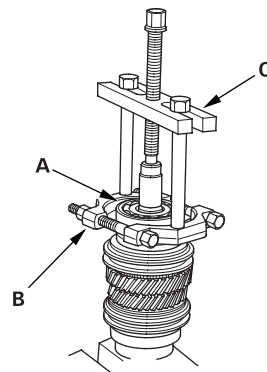
**Mainshaft Assembly Clearance Inspection  
(cont'd)****10. Measure the thickness of the MBS distance collar.**

- If the thickness of MBS distance collar is not within standard, replace the MBS distance collar with a new one.

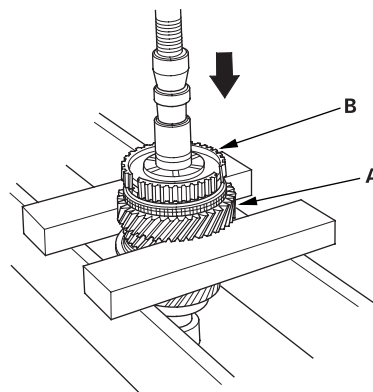
**Standard:** 23.95 - 24.05 mm  
(0.943 - 0.947 in.)

**Mainshaft Disassembly**

1. Remove the angular ball bearing (A) and the tapered cone ring using a commercially available bearing separator (B) and a commercially available bearing puller (C). Be sure the bearing separator is under the tapered cone ring.



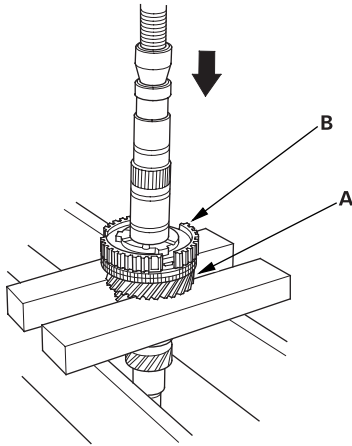
2. Support 5th gear (A) on steel blocks, and press the mainshaft out of the 5th synchro hub (B). Use of a jaw-type puller can damage the gear teeth.







3. Support the 3rd gear (A) on steel blocks, and press the mainshaft out of the 3rd/4th synchro hub (B). Use of a jaw-type puller can damage the gear teeth.



## Mainshaft Inspection

1. Inspect the gear surface and bearing surface for wear and damage, then measure the mainshaft at points A, B, and C. If any part of the mainshaft is less than the service limit, replace it with a new one.

### Standard:

**A Ball bearing surface (transmission housing side):**  
27.987 - 28.000 mm (1.1019-1.1024 in.)

**B Distance collar surface:**  
31.984 - 32.000 mm (1.2594 - 1.2598 in.)

**C Needle bearing surface:**  
38.984 - 39.000 mm (1.5348 - 1.5354 in.)

**D Ball bearing surface (clutch housing side):**  
27.977 - 27.990 mm (1.1015 - 1.1020 in.)

**E Bush surface:**  
20.80 - 20.85 mm (0.8189 - s0.8209 in.)

### Service Limit:

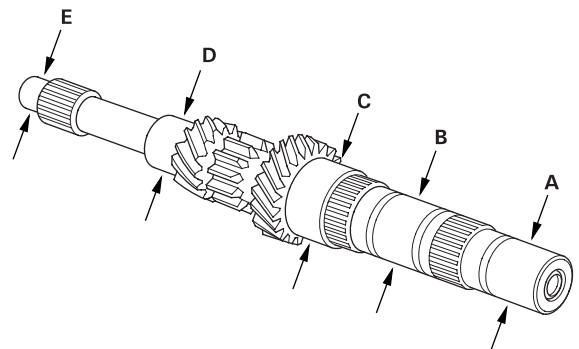
**A:** 27.94 mm (1.100 in.)

**B:** 31.93 mm (1.257 in.)

**C:** 38.93 mm (1.533 in.)

**D:** 27.94 mm (1.100 in.)

**E:** 20.75 mm (0.817 in.)



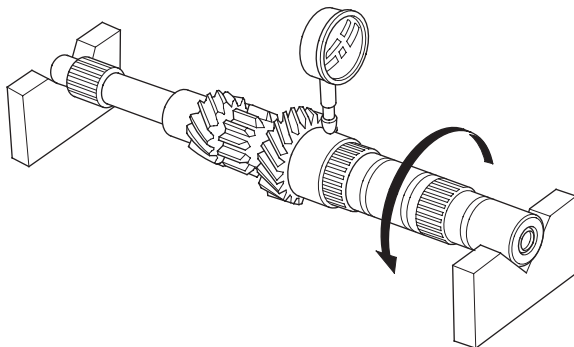
(cont'd)

## Mainshaft Inspection (cont'd)

2. Inspect the runout by supporting both ends of the mainshaft. Rotate the mainshaft two complete revolutions when measuring the runout. If the runout is more than the service limit, replace the mainshaft with a new one.

**Standard:** 0.02 mm (0.001 in.) max.

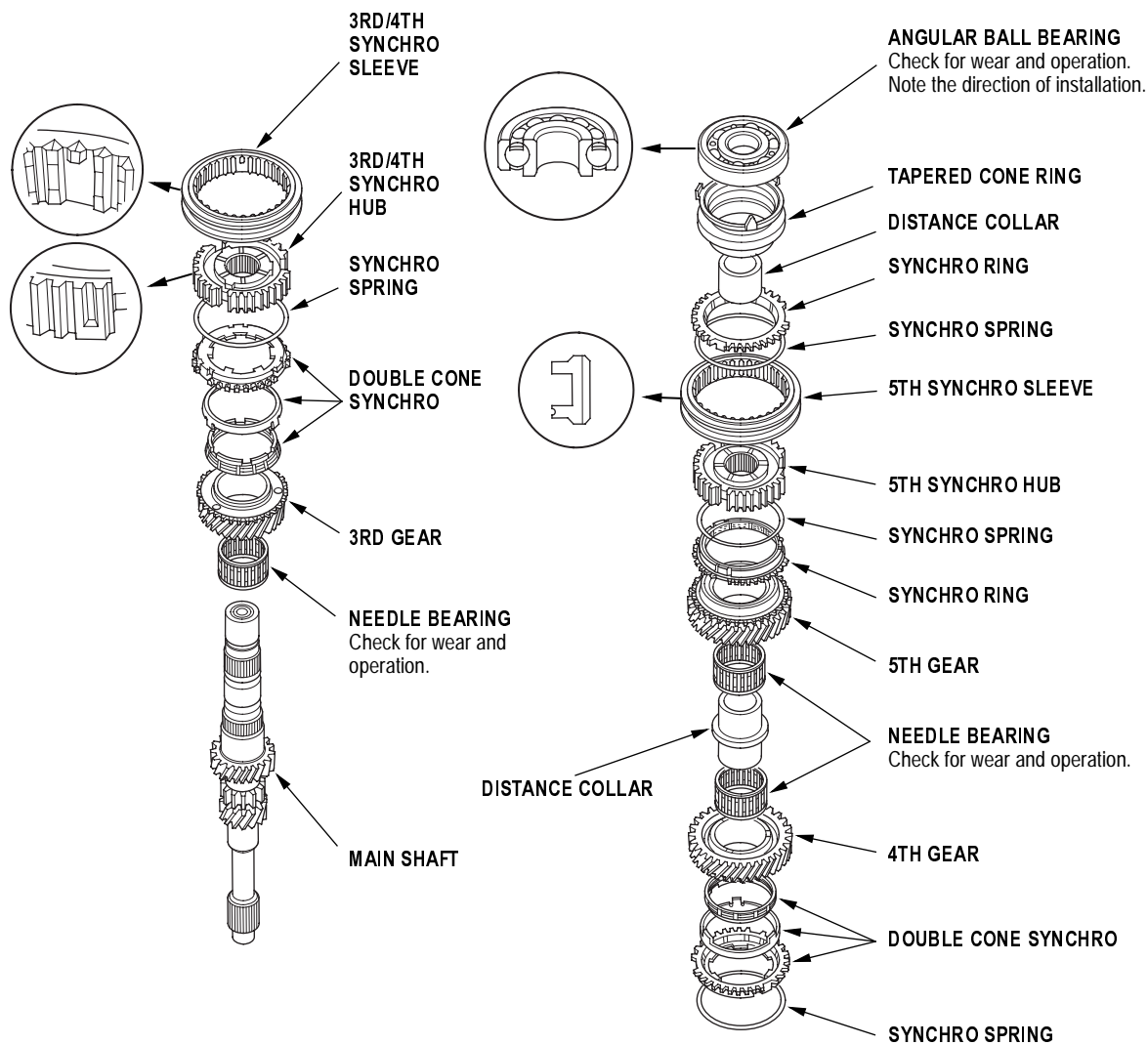
**Service Limit:** 0.05 mm (0.002 in.)





## Mainshaft Reassembly

### Exploded View



(cont'd)

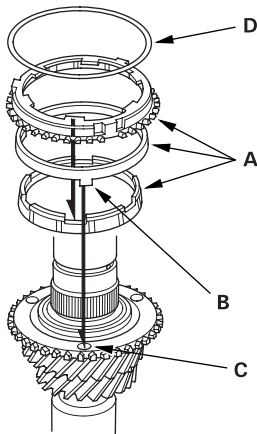
**Mainshaft Reassembly (cont'd)****Special Tools Required**

- Driver, 40 mm I.D. 07746-0030100
- Attachment, 30 mm I.D. 07746-0030300

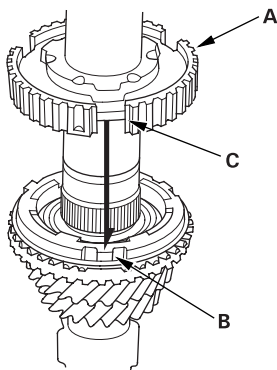
**NOTE:**

- Refer to the Exploded View as needed during this procedure.

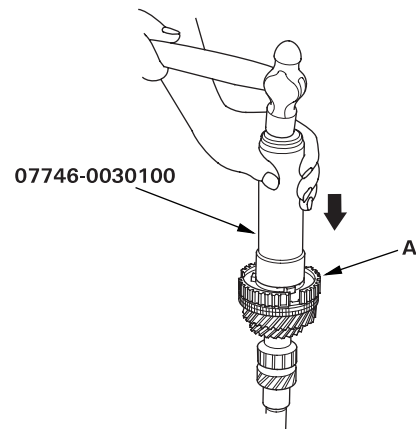
1. Clean all the parts in solvent, dry them, and apply lubricant to all contact surfaces except the 3rd/4th and 5th synchro hubs.
2. Install the needle bearing and 3rd gear on the mainshaft.
3. Install the double cone synchro assembly (A) by aligning the synchro cone fingers (B) with the holes in 3rd gear (C), then install the synchro spring (D).



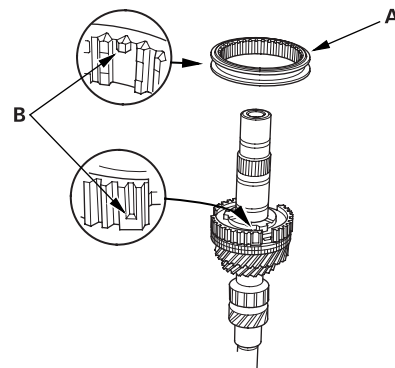
4. Install the 3rd/4th synchro hub (A) by aligning the synchro cone fingers (B) with the grooves in 3rd/4th synchro hub (C).



5. Install the 3rd/4th synchro hub (A) using the special tool.

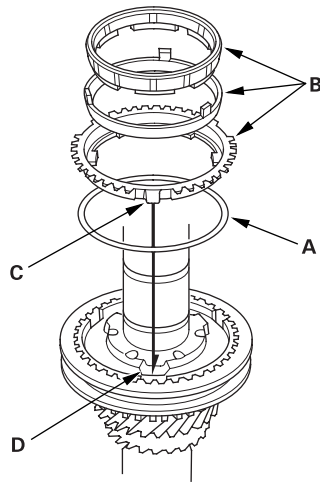


6. Install the 3rd/4th synchro sleeve (A) by aligning the stops (B) with the 3rd/4th synchro sleeve and hub. After installing, check the operation of the 3rd/4th synchro hub set.

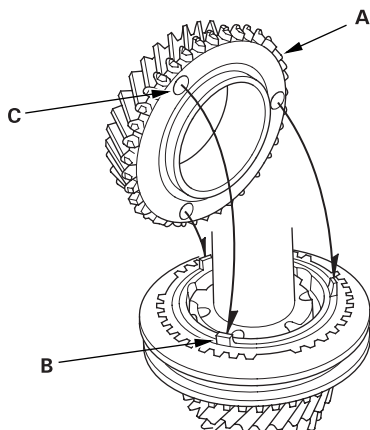




7. Install the synchro spring (A).

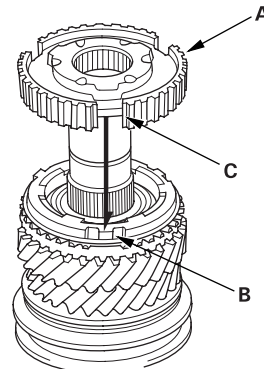


8. Install the double cone synchro assembly (B) by aligning the synchro cone fingers (C) with the grooves in 3rd/4th synchro hub (D).
9. Install the 4th gear (A) by aligning the synchro cone fingers (B) with holes in 4th gear (C).

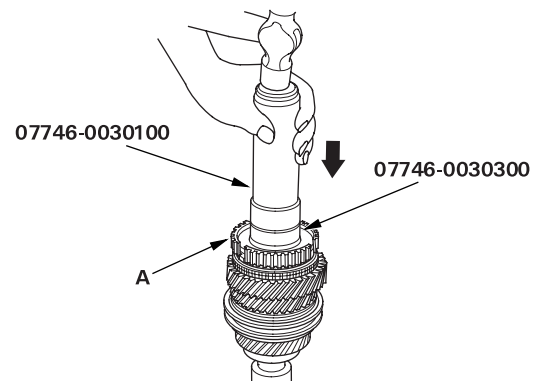


10. Install the needle bearings, distance collar, 5th gear, and 5th gear synchro spring and ring.

11. Install the 5th synchro hub (A) by aligning the synchro cone fingers (B) with the grooves in 5th/6th synchro hub (C).



12. Install the 5th synchro hub (A) using the special tools.

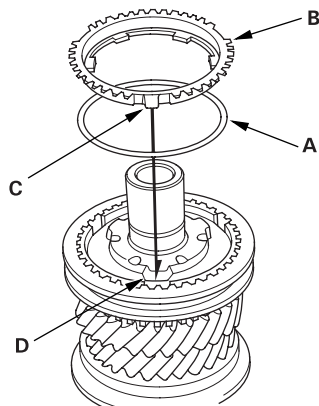


13. Install the 5th synchro sleeve.

(cont'd)

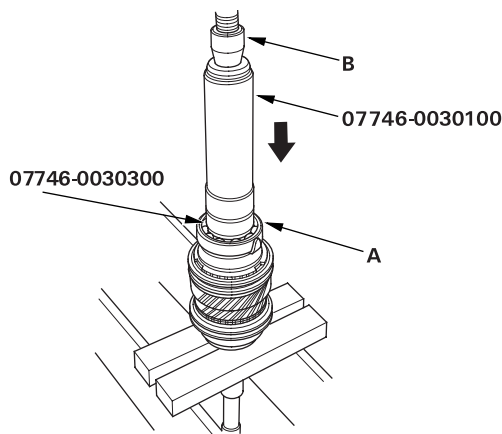
Mainshaft Reassembly (cont'd)

14. Install the synchro spring (A).



15. Install the synchro ring (B) by aligning the synchro cone fingers (C) with the grooves in 5th synchro hub (D).

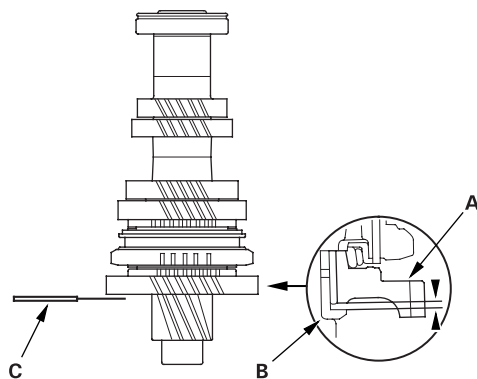
16. Install the new ball bearing (A) using the special tools and press (B).



Countershaft Assembly Clearance Inspection

1. Measure the clearance between the 1st gear (A) and the distance collar (B) with a feeler gauge (C). If the clearance is more than the service limit, go to step 2.

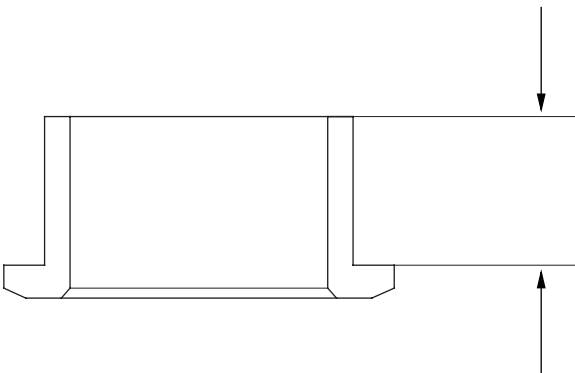
Standard: 0.06 - 0.16 mm (0.002 - 0.006 in.)  
Service Limit: 0.25 mm (0.010 in.)



2. Measure the thickness of the distance collar.

- If the thickness is not within the standard, replace the distance collar with a new one.
- If the thickness is within the standard, go to step 3.

Standard: 23.03 - 23.08 mm (0.907 - 0.909 in.)



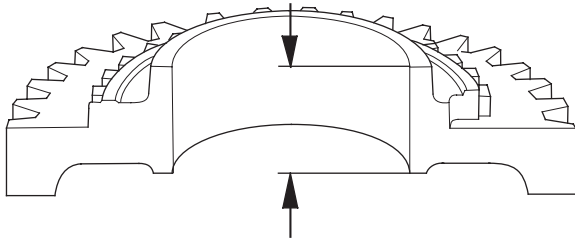


**3. Measure the thickness of the 1st gear.**

- If the thickness of 1st gear is less than the service limit, replace 1st gear with a new one.
- If the thickness of 1st gear is within the service limit, replace the 1st/2nd synchro hub with a new one.

**Standard:** 22.92 - 22.97 mm (0.902 - 0.904 in.)

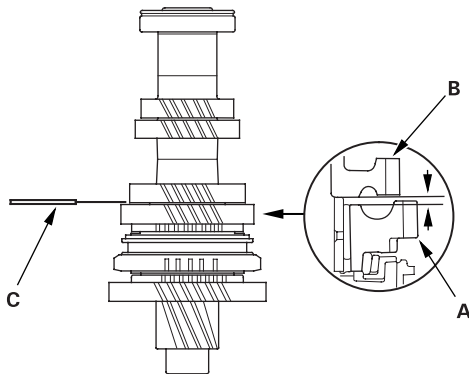
**Service Limit:** 22.87 mm (0.900 in.)



**4. Measure the clearance between the 2nd gear (A) and 3rd gear (B) with a feeler gauge (C). If the clearance is more than the service limit, go to step 5.**

**Standard:** 0.06 - 0.16 mm (0.002 - 0.006 in.)

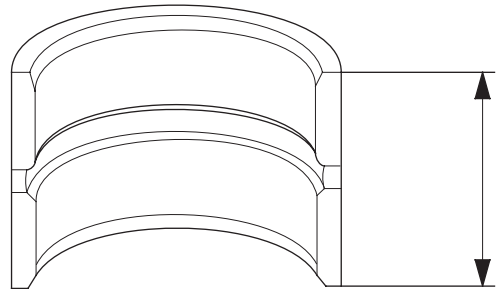
**Service Limit:** 0.25 mm (0.010 in.)



**5. Measure the thickness of the distance collar.**

- If the thickness is not within the standard, replace the distance collar with a new one.
- If the thickness is within the standard, go to step 6.

**Standard:** 28.03 - 28.08 mm (1.104 - 1.106 in.)

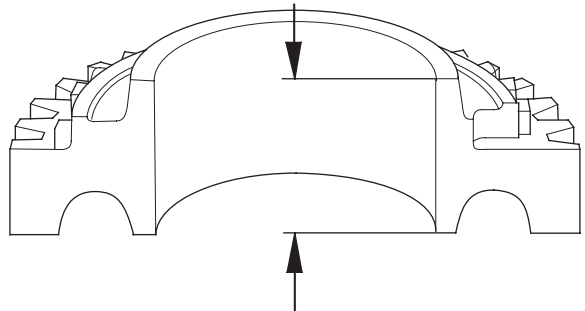


**6. Measure the thickness of the 2nd gear.**

- If the thickness of 2nd gear is less than the service limit, replace 2nd gear with new one.
- If the thickness of 1st gear is within the service limit, replace the 1st/2nd synchro hub with a new one.

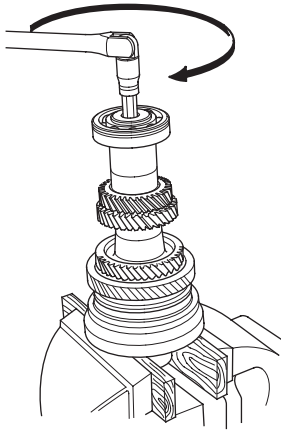
**Standard:** 27.92 - 27.97 mm (1.099 - 1.101 in.)

**Service Limit:** 27.87 mm (1.097 in.)

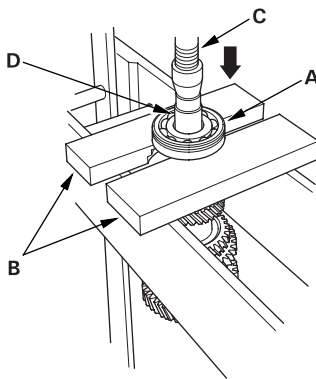


## Countershaft Disassembly

1. Securely clamp the countershaft assembly in a bench vise with wood blocks.

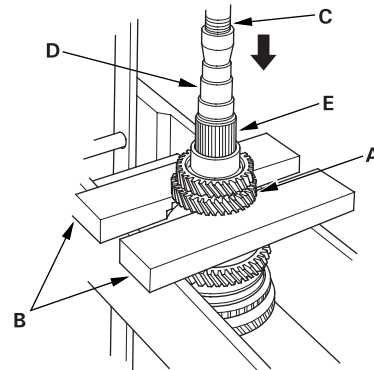


2. Remove the special bolt (left-hand threads).
3. Support ball bearing (A) on steel blocks (B), then use a press (C) and an attachment (D) to press the countershaft out of the ball bearing.

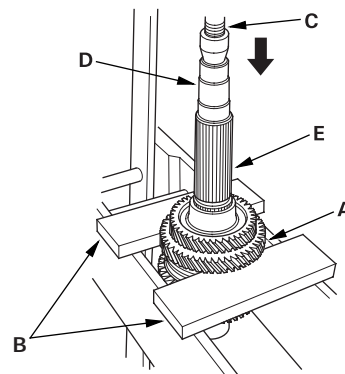


4. Remove the 35 mm shim and distance collar.

5. Support 4th gear (A) on steel blocks (B), then use a press (C) and an attachment (D) to press the countershaft (E) out of the 5th gear.



6. Support 2nd gear (A) on steel blocks (B), then use a press (C) and an attachment (D) to press the countershaft (E) out of the 3rd gear.







## Countershaft Inspection

1. Inspect the gear surface and bearing surface for wear and damage, then measure the countershaft at points A, B, and C. If any part of the countershaft is less than the service limit, replace it with a new one.

### Standard:

**A** Ball bearing surface (transmission housing side):

30.020 - 30.033 mm (1.1819 - 1.1824 in.)

**B** Distance collar surface:

39.937 - 39.950 mm (1.5723 - 1.5728 in.)

**C** Needle bearing surface (clutch housing side):

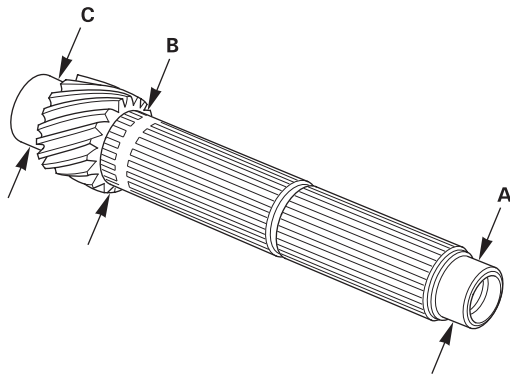
35.000 - 35.015 mm (1.3780 - 1.3785 in.)

### Service Limit:

**A:** 29.97 mm (1.180 in.)

**B:** 39.88 mm (1.570 in.)

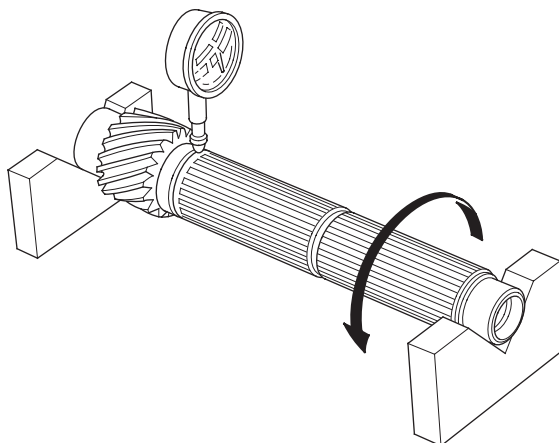
**C:** 34.95 mm (1.376 in.)



2. Inspect the runout by supporting both ends of the countershaft, Rotate the countershaft two complete revolutions when measuring the runout. If the runout exceeds the service limit, replace the countershaft with a new one.

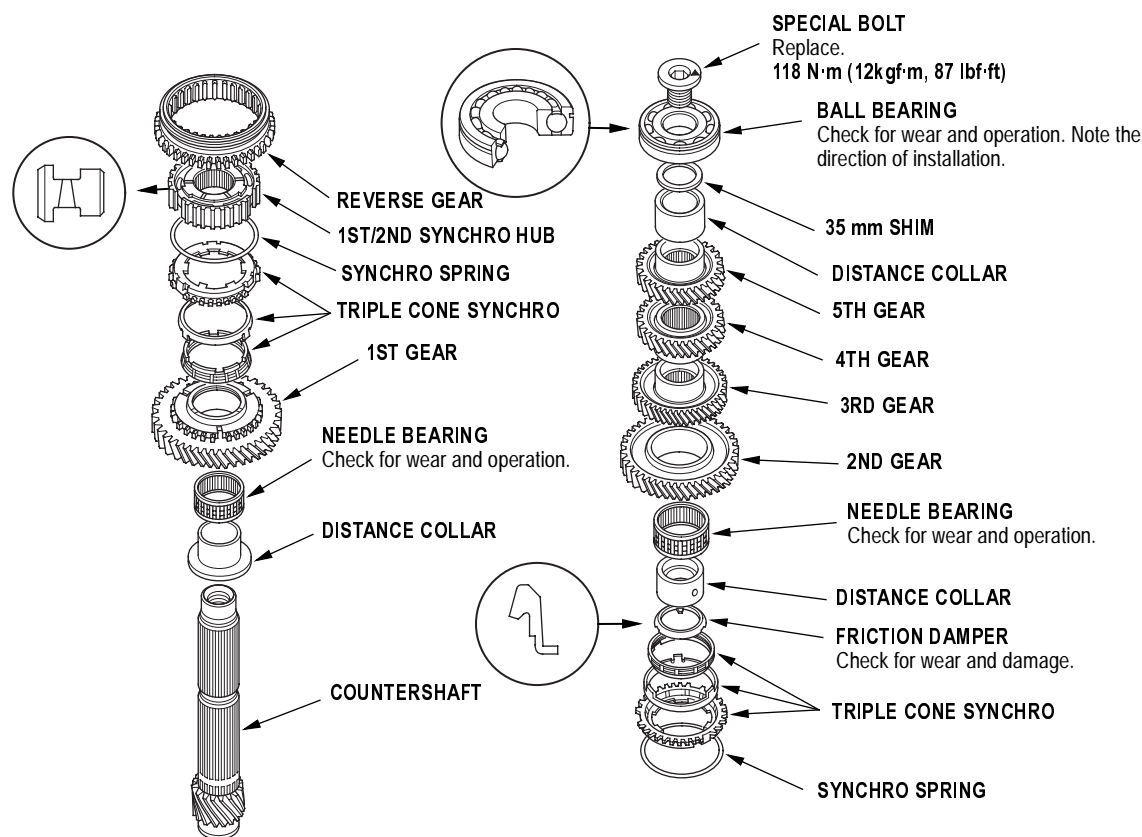
**Standard:** 0.02 mm (0.001 in.) max.

**Service Limit:** 0.05 mm (0.002 in.)



Countershaft Reassembly

Exploded View



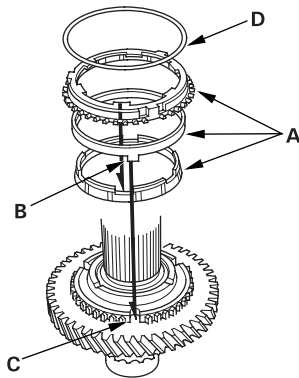


## Special Tools Required

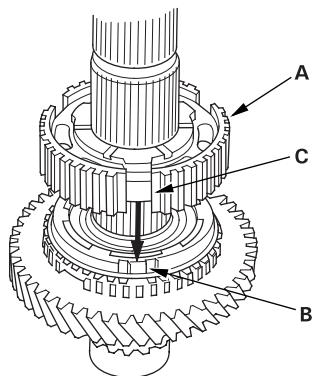
- Attachment, 42 x 47 mm 07746-0010300
- Driver, 40 mm I.D. 07746-0030100
- Attachment, 30 mm 07746-0030300
- Driver 07749-0010000

NOTE: Refer to the Exploded View as needed during this procedure.

1. Clean all parts in solvent, dry them, and apply lubricant to all contact surfaces.
2. Install the distance collar and needle bearing onto the countershaft.
3. Install the triple cone synchro assembly (A) by aligning the synchro cone fingers (B) with 1st gear grooves (C), then install the synchro spring (D).

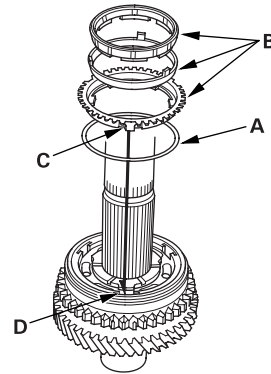


4. Install the 1st/2nd synchro hub (A) by aligning the synchro cone fingers (B) with 1st/2nd synchro hub grooves (C).

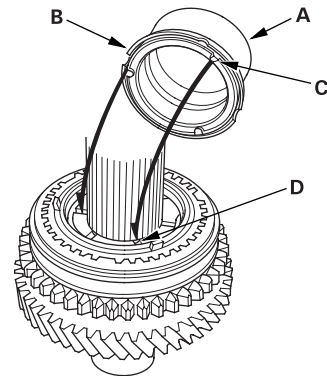


5. Install the reverse gear.

6. Install the synchro spring (A).



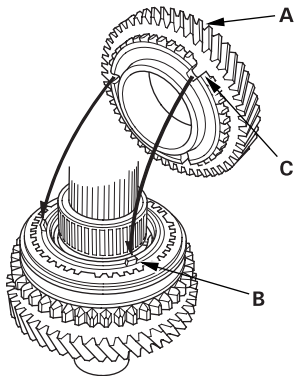
7. Install the triple cone synchro assembly (B) by aligning the synchro cone fingers (C) with 1st/2nd synchro hub grooves (D).
8. Install the distance collar (A) and friction damper (B) by aligning the friction damper fingers (C) with 1st/2nd synchro hub grooves (D).



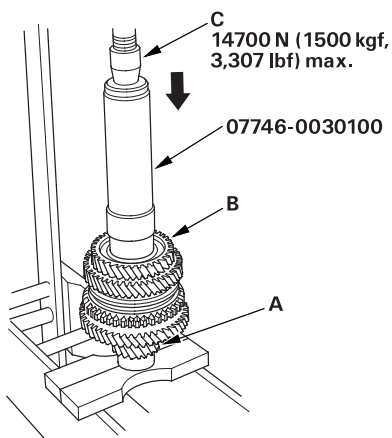
(cont'd)

## Countershaft Reassembly (cont'd)

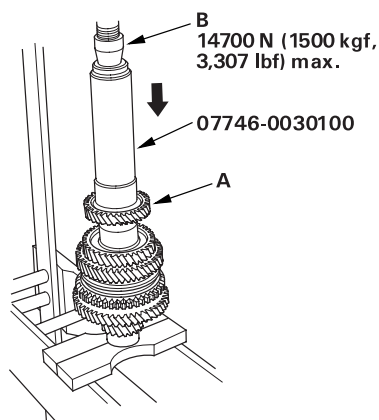
9. Install the needle bearing.
10. Install the 2nd gear (A) by aligning the synchro cone fingers (B) with 2nd gear grooves (C).



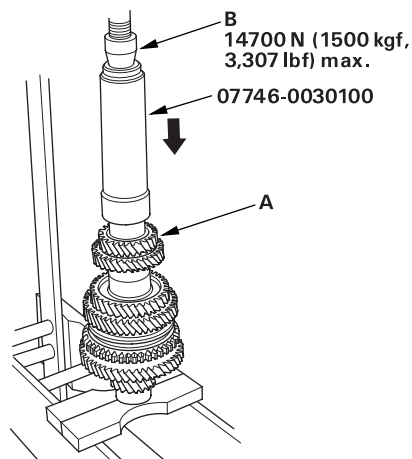
11. Support the countershaft (A) on the steel blocks, then install the 3rd gear (B) using the special tool and a press (C). Do not exceed the maximum pressure.



12. Install the 4th gear (A) using the special tool and a press (B). Do not exceed the maximum pressure.

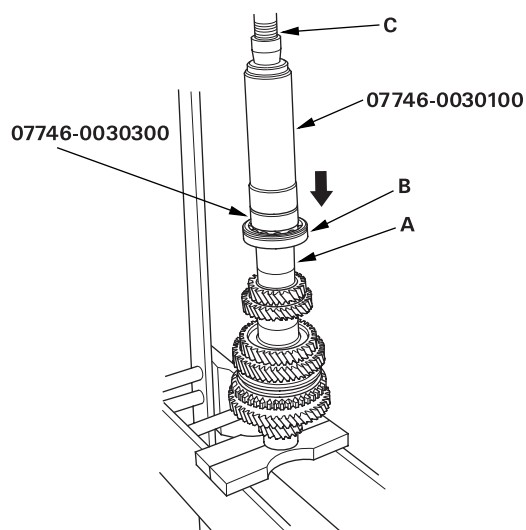


13. Install the 5th gear (A) using the special tool and a press (B). Do not exceed the maximum pressure.



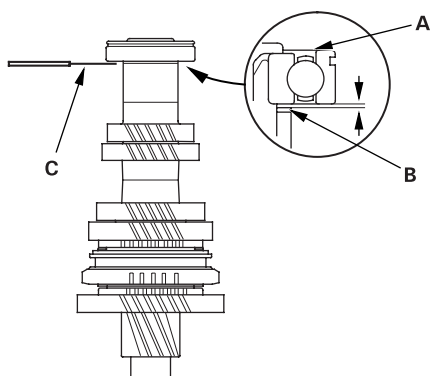


14. Install the distance collar (A), 35 mm shim, and old ball bearing (B) using a special tools and a press (C).



15. Measure the clearance between the old bearing (A) and the 35 mm shim (B) with a feeler gauge (C).

**Standard: 0.04 - 0.10 mm (0.002 - 0.004 in.)**



16. If the clearance is more than the standard, select a new shim from the following table. If the clearance measured in step 15 is within the standard, replace the new ball bearing.

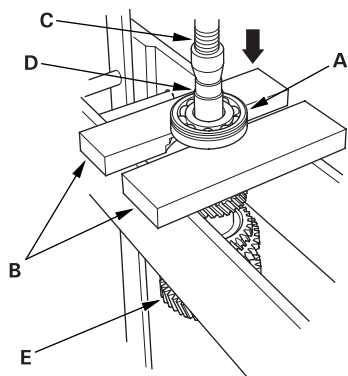
## 35 mm Shim

	Part Number	Thickness
A	23981-PPP-000	0.87 mm (0.0343 in.)
B	23981-PPP-900	0.91 mm (0.0358 in.)
C	23982-PPP-000	0.95 mm (0.0374 in.)
D	23982-PPP-900	0.99 mm (0.0390 in.)
E	23983-PPP-000	1.03 mm (0.0406 in.)
F	23983-PPP-900	1.07 mm (0.0421 in.)
G	23984-PPP-000	1.11 mm (0.0437 in.)
H	23984-PPP-900	1.15 mm (0.0453 in.)
J	23985-PPP-000	1.19 mm (0.0469 in.)
K	23985-PPP-900	1.23 mm (0.0484 in.)
L	23986-PPP-000	1.27 mm (0.0500 in.)
M	23986-PPP-900	1.31 mm (0.0516 in.)
N	23987-PPP-000	1.35 mm (0.0531 in.)
P	23987-PPP-900	1.39 mm (0.0547 in.)
Q	23988-PPP-000	1.43 mm (0.0563 in.)
R	23988-PPP-900	1.47 mm (0.0579 in.)
S	23989-PPP-000	1.51 mm (0.0594 in.)
T	23989-PPP-900	1.55 mm (0.0610 in.)
U	23990-PPP-000	1.59 mm (0.0626 in.)
W	23990-PPP-900	1.63 mm (0.0642 in.)
X	23991-PPP-000	1.67 mm (0.0657 in.)
Y	23991-PPP-900	1.71 mm (0.0673 in.)
Z	23992-PPP-000	1.75 mm (0.0689 in.)
AA	23992-PPP-900	1.79 mm (0.0705 in.)
AB	23993-PPP-000	1.83 mm (0.0720 in.)
AC	23993-PPP-900	1.87 mm (0.0736 in.)
AD	23994-PPP-000	1.91 mm (0.0752 in.)
AE	23994-PPP-900	1.95 mm (0.0768 in.)
AF	23995-PPP-000	1.99 mm (0.0783 in.)

(cont'd)

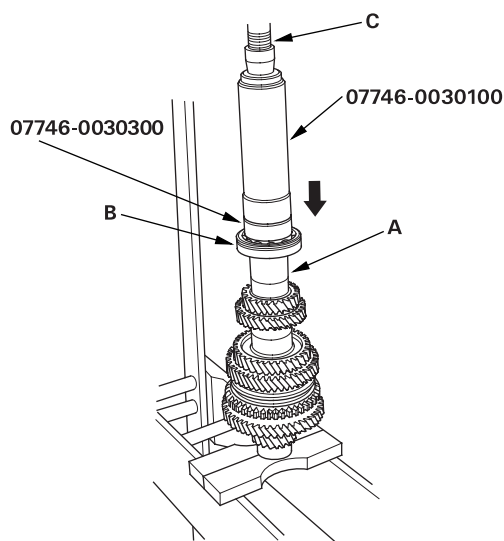
## Countershaft Reassembly (cont'd)

17. Support ball bearing (A) on steel blocks (B), then use a press (C) and an attachment (D) to press the countershaft (E) out of the ball bearing.

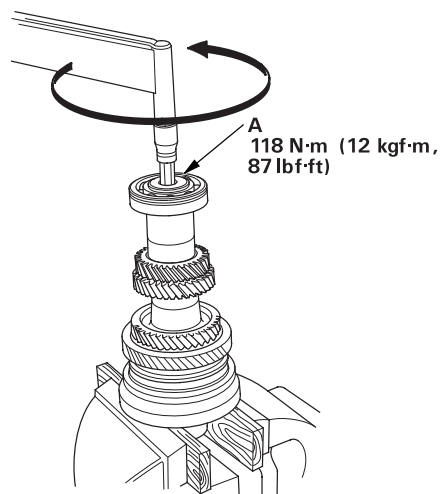


18. Replace the 35 mm shim selected in step 16, then recheck the clearance.

19. Install the distance collar (A) 35 mm shim, and new ball bearing (B) using a special tools and a press (C).



20. Tighten the new special bolt (A) (left-hand threads).

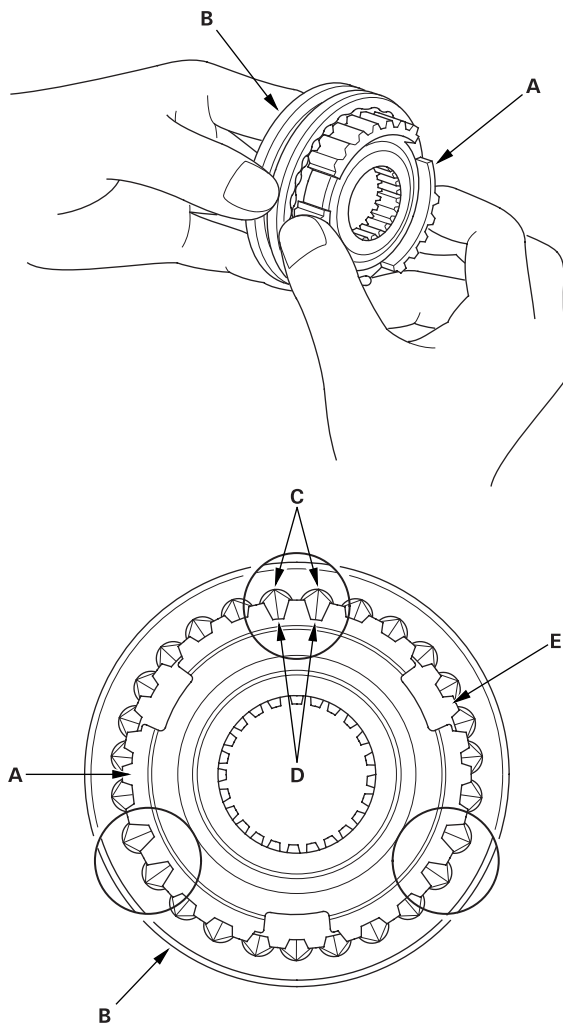




## Synchro Sleeve and Hub Inspection and Reassembly

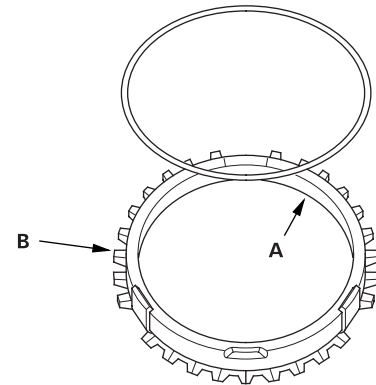
1. Inspect gear teeth on all synchro hubs and synchro sleeves for rounded off corners, which indicate wear.
2. Install each synchro hub (A) in its mating synchro sleeve (B), and check for freedom of movement. Be sure to match the 3 sets of longer teeth (C) (120 degrees apart) on the synchro sleeve with the 3 sets of deeper grooves (D) in the synchro hub. Do not install the synchro sleeve with its longer teeth in the 1st/2nd synchro hub slots (E) because it will damage the spring ring.

NOTE: If replacement is required, always replace the synchro sleeve and synchro hub as a set.

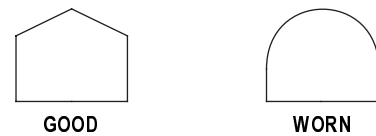


## Synchro Ring and Gear Inspection

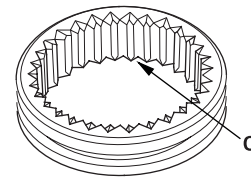
1. Inspect the inside of each synchro ring (A) for wear. Inspect the teeth (B) on each synchro ring for wear (rounded off).



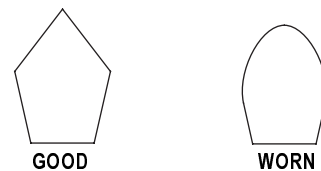
Example of synchro ring teeth



2. Inspect the teeth (C) on each synchro sleeve and matching teeth on each gear for wear (rounded off).



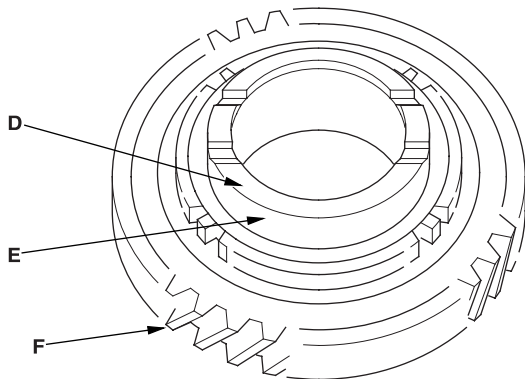
Example of synchro sleeve teeth and gear teeth



(cont'd)

## Synchro Ring and Gear Inspection (cont'd)

3. Inspect the thrust surface (D) on each gear hub for wear.



4. Inspect the cone surface (E) on each gear hub for wear and roughness.
5. Inspect the teeth on all gears (F) for uneven wear, scoring, galling, and cracks.
6. Coat the cone surface of each gear (E) with oil, and place its synchro ring on it. Rotate the synchro ring, making sure that it does not slip.

7. Measure the clearance between each gear (A) and its synchro ring (B) all the way around. Hold the synchro ring against the gear evenly while measuring the clearance. If the clearance is less than the service limit, replace the synchro ring and gear.

**Synchro Ring-to-Gear Clearance**

**Standard:** 0.70 - 1.49 mm (0.028 - 0.059 in.)

**Service Limit:** 0.4 mm (0.016 in.)

**Double cone synchro and triple cone synchro-to-Gear Clearance****Standard:**

[a]: Outer Synchro Ring (B) to Synchro Cone (C)  
0.70 - 1.19 mm (0.028 - 0.047 in.)

[b]: Synchro Cone (C) to Gear (A)  
0.50 - 1.04 mm (0.020 - 0.041 in.)

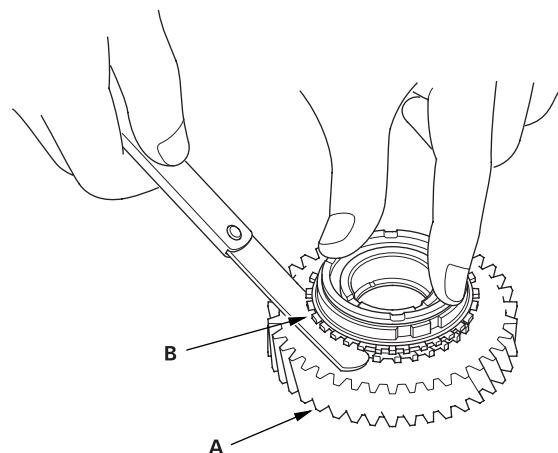
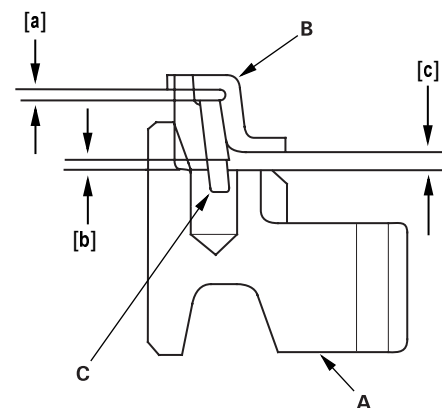
[c]: Outer Synchro Ring (B) to Gear (A)  
0.95 - 1.68 mm (0.037 - 0.066 in.)

**Service Limit:**

[a]: 0.3 mm (0.012 in.)

[b]: 0.3 mm (0.012 in.)

[c]: 0.6 mm (0.024 in.)





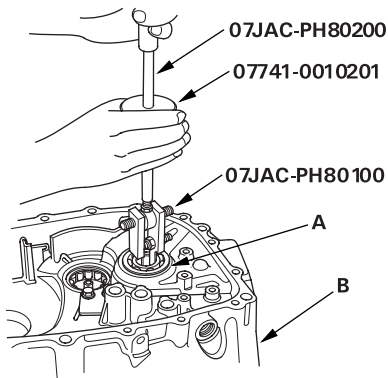


## Mainshaft Bearing and Oil Seal Replacement

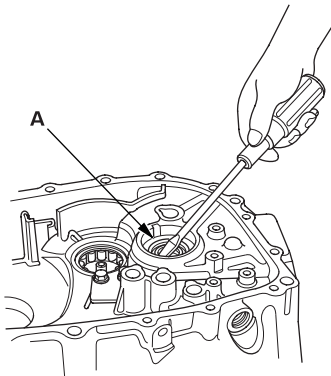
### Special Tools Required

- Adjustable bearing puller, 25 - 40 mm 07JAC-PH80100
- Bearing remover shaft 07JAC-PH80200
- Oil seal driver 07JAD-PL90100
- Slide hammer 07741-0010201
- Driver 07749-0010000
- Attachment, 42 x 47 mm 07746-0010300

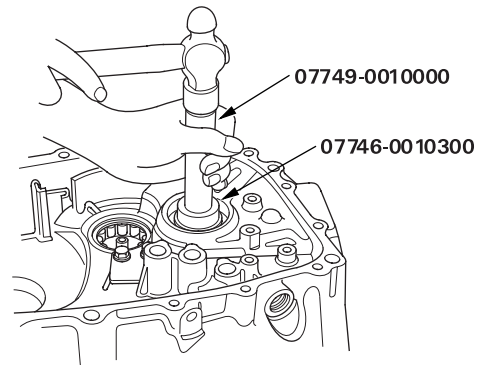
1. Remove the differential assembly.
2. Remove the ball bearing (A) from the clutch housing (B) using the special tools.



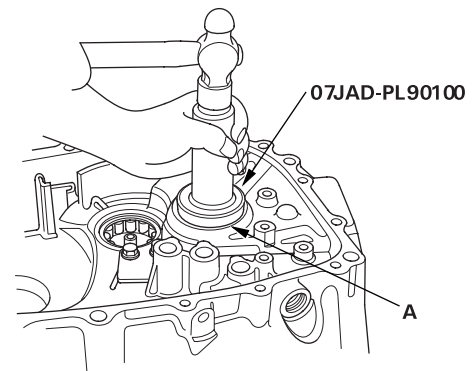
3. Remove the oil seal (A) from the clutch side.



4. Drive the new oil seal in from the transmission side using the special tools.



5. Drive the new ball bearing (A) in from the transmission side using the special tools.

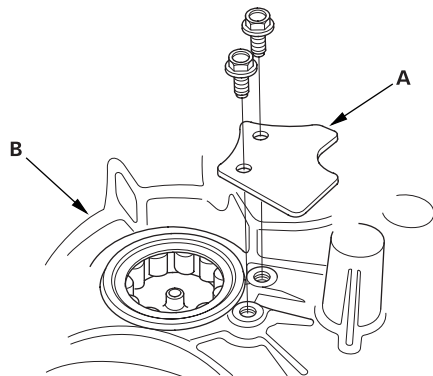


## Countershaft Bearing Replacement

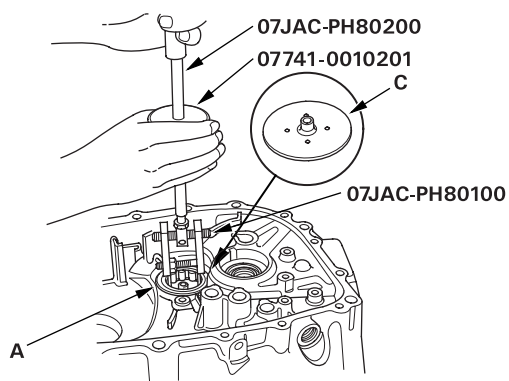
### Special Tools Required

- Adjustable bearing puller, 25 - 40 mm 07JAC-PH80100
- Bearing remover shaft 07JAC-PH80200
- Slide hammer 07741-0010201
- Oil seal driver 07JAD-PL90100

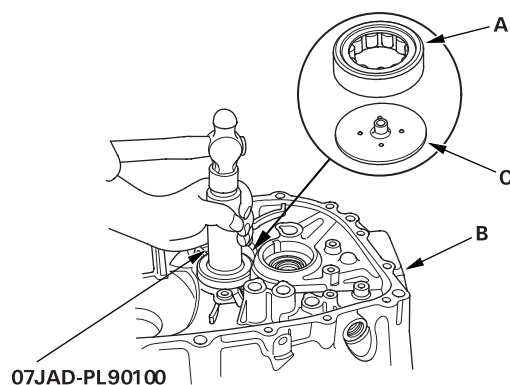
1. Remove the bearing set plate (A) from the clutch housing (B).



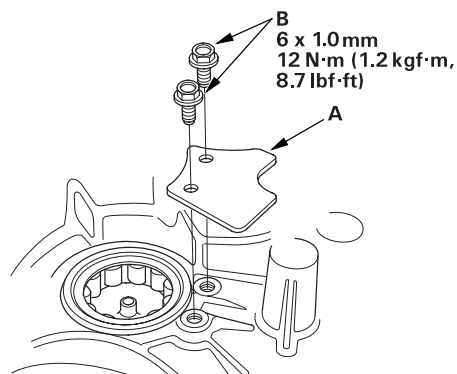
2. Remove the needle bearing (A) using the special tools, then remove the oil guide plate C.



3. Position the oil guide plate C and new needle bearing (A) in the bore of the clutch housing (B).



4. Install the needle bearing using the special tools.
5. Install the bearing set plate (A) with bolts (B).



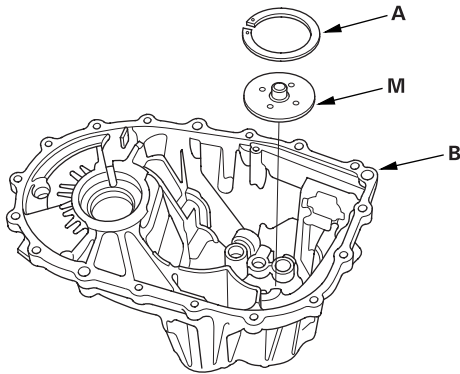


## Mainshaft Thrust Clearance Adjustment

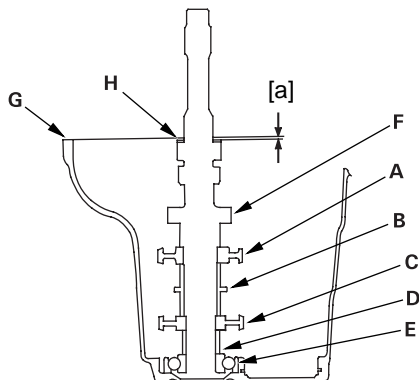
### Special Tools Required

- Mainshaft base 07GAJ-PG20130
- Mainshaft holder 07GAJ-PG20110

1. Remove the 72 mm shim (A) and oil guide plate M from the transmission housing (B).

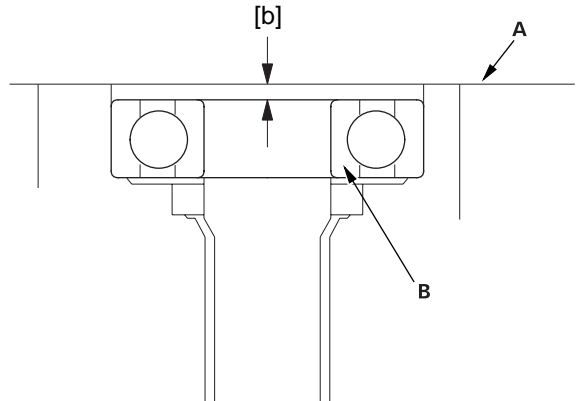


2. Install the 3rd/4th synchro hub (A), the distance collar (B), the 5th synchro hub (C), distance collar (D), and ball bearing (E) on the mainshaft (F), then install the assembled mainshaft in the transmission housing (G).



3. Install the washer (H) on the mainshaft.
4. Measure distance [a] between the end of the transmission housing and washer with a straight edge and vernier caliper. Measure at three locations and average the reading.

5. Measure distance [b] between the end of the clutch housing (A) and bearing inner race (B) with a straight edge and depth gauge. Measure at three locations and average the readings.



### Shim Selection Formula:

6. Select the proper 72 mm shim from the chart. Follow the example below, and use the measurements you made in steps 4 and 5:

(Basic Formula)

$[a] + [b] - (0.8 + 0.11) = \text{shim thickness (maximum)}$

$[a] + [b] - (0.8 + 0.17) = \text{shim thickness (minimum)}$

- Add distance [b] (step 5) to distance [a] (step 4).
- 0.8 mm (0.031 in): Spring washer, a dimension in the installation.
- 0.11 mm (0.004 in): Minimum thrust clearance.
- 0.17 mm (0.007 in): Maximum thrust clearance.

(For example)

$2.32 + 0.15 - (0.8 + 0.11) = 1.56 \text{ mm (0.061 in.)}$

$2.32 + 0.15 - (0.8 + 0.17) = 1.50 \text{ mm (0.059 in.)}$

Take the middle value of the minimum value and the maximum value, and select shim of 1.53 mm (0.060 in.).

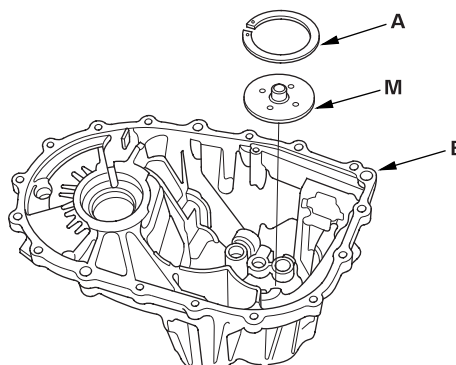
(cont'd)

## Mainshaft Thrust Clearance Adjustment (cont'd)

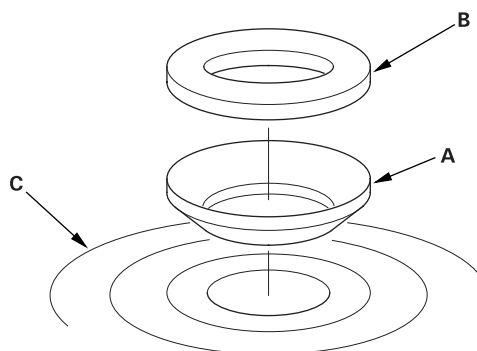
72 mm Shim

	Part Number	Thickness
A	23931-P21-000	0.60 mm (0.0236 in.)
B	23932-P21-000	0.63 mm (0.0248 in.)
C	23933-P21-000	0.66 mm (0.0260 in.)
D	23934-P21-000	0.69 mm (0.0271 in.)
E	23935-P21-000	0.72 mm (0.0283 in.)
F	23936-P21-000	0.75 mm (0.0295 in.)
G	23937-P21-000	0.78 mm (0.0307 in.)
H	23938-P21-000	0.81 mm (0.0319 in.)
I	23939-P21-000	0.84 mm (0.0331 in.)
J	23940-P21-000	0.87 mm (0.0343 in.)
K	23941-P21-000	0.90 mm (0.0354 in.)
L	23942-P21-000	0.93 mm (0.0366 in.)
M	23943-P21-000	0.96 mm (0.0378 in.)
N	23944-P21-000	0.99 mm (0.0390 in.)
O	23945-P21-000	1.02 mm (0.0402 in.)
P	23946-P21-000	1.05 mm (0.0413 in.)
Q	23947-P21-000	1.08 mm (0.0425 in.)
R	23948-P21-000	1.11 mm (0.0437 in.)
S	23949-P21-000	1.14 mm (0.0449 in.)
T	23950-P21-000	1.17 mm (0.0461 in.)
U	23951-P21-000	1.20 mm (0.0472 in.)
V	23952-P21-000	1.23 mm (0.0484 in.)
W	23953-P21-000	1.26 mm (0.0496 in.)
X	23954-P21-000	1.29 mm (0.0508 in.)
Y	23955-P21-000	1.32 mm (0.0520 in.)
Z	23956-P21-000	1.35 mm (0.0531 in.)
AA	23957-P21-000	1.38 mm (0.0543 in.)
AB	23958-P21-000	1.41 mm (0.0555 in.)
AC	23959-P21-000	1.44 mm (0.0567 in.)
AD	23960-P21-000	1.47 mm (0.0579 in.)
AE	23961-P21-000	1.50 mm (0.0591 in.)
AF	23962-P21-000	1.53 mm (0.0602 in.)
AG	23963-P21-000	1.56 mm (0.0614 in.)
AH	23964-P21-000	1.59 mm (0.0626 in.)
AI	23965-P21-000	1.62 mm (0.0638 in.)
AJ	23966-P21-000	1.65 mm (0.0650 in.)
AK	23967-P21-000	1.68 mm (0.0661 in.)
AL	23968-P21-000	1.71 mm (0.0673 in.)
AM	23969-P21-000	1.74 mm (0.0685 in.)
AN	23970-P21-000	1.77 mm (0.0697 in.)
AO	23971-P21-000	1.80 mm (0.0709 in.)

7. Install the 72 mm shim (A) selected and oil guide plate M in the transmission housing (B).



8. Thoroughly clean the spring washer (A) and washer (B) before installing them on the clutch housing side ball bearing (C). Note the installation direction of the spring washer.

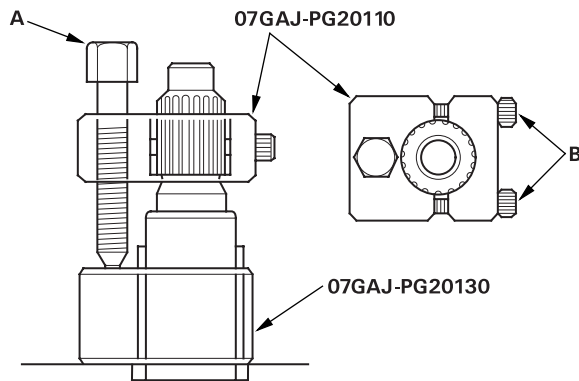


9. Install the mainshaft in the clutch housing.
10. Place the transmission housing over the mainshaft and onto the clutch housing.
11. Tighten the clutch and transmission housings with several 8 mm bolts.
- NOTE: It is not necessary to use sealing agent between the housings.
12. Tap the mainshaft with a plastic hammer.



**13. Attach the special tool to the mainshaft as follows:**

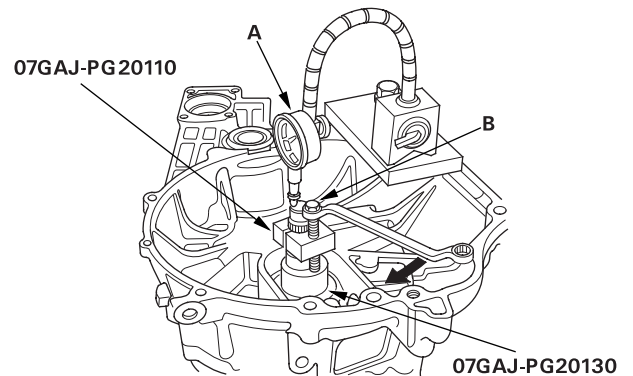
- Back-out the mainshaft holder bolt (A) and loosen the two hex bolts (B).
- Fit the holder over the mainshaft so its lip is towards the transmission.
- Align the mainshaft holder's lip around the groove at the inside of the mainshaft splines, then tighten the hex bolts.



**14. Seat the mainshaft fully by tapping its end with a plastic hammer.**

**15. Thread the mainshaft holder bolt in until it just contacts the wide surface of the mainshaft base.**

**16. Zero a dial gauge (A) on the end of the mainshaft.**



**17. Turn the mainshaft holder bolt (B) clockwise; stop turning when the dial gauge (A) has reached its maximum movement. The reading on the dial gauge is the amount of mainshaft end play.**

Do not turn the mainshaft holder bolt more than 60 degrees after the needle of the dial gauge stops moving, this may damage the transmission.

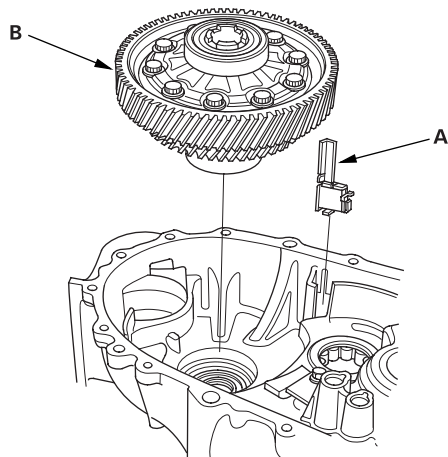
**18. If the reading is within the standard, the clearance is correct. If the reading is not within the standard, recheck the shim thickness.**

**Standard: 0.11 - 0.17 mm (0.004 - 0.007 in.)**

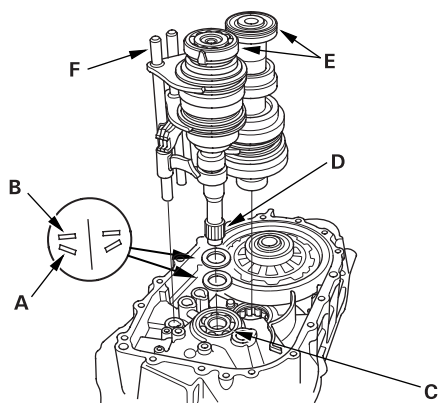
## Transmission Reassembly

NOTE: Prior to reassembling, clean all the parts in solvent, dry them, and apply lubricant to any contact surfaces.

1. Install the magnet (A) and differential assembly (B).

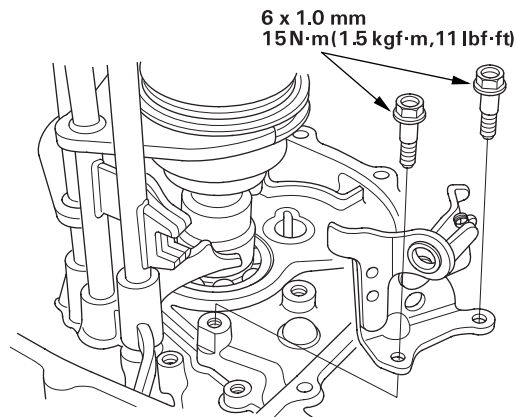


2. Install the 28 mm spring washer (A) and 28 mm washer (B) over the ball bearing (C). Note the installation direction of the spring washer (A).

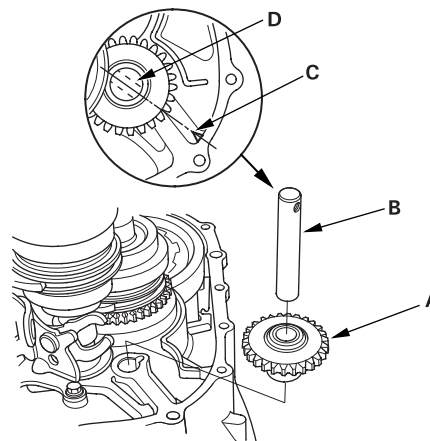


3. Apply vinyl tape the mainshaft splines (D) to protect the seal. Install the mainshaft and countershaft (E) into the shift forks (F), and install them as an assembly.

4. Install the reverse shift fork.

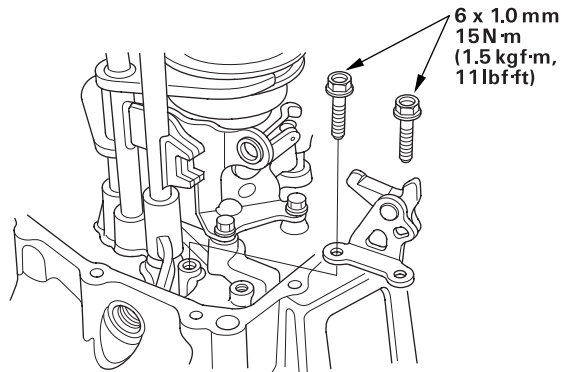


5. Install the reverse idler gear (A) and reverse gear shaft (B) by aligning the mark (C) with reverse gear shaft hole (D).

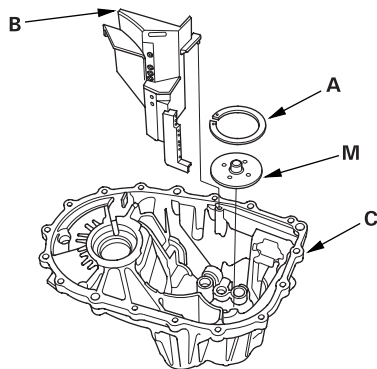




6. Install the reverse lock cam.

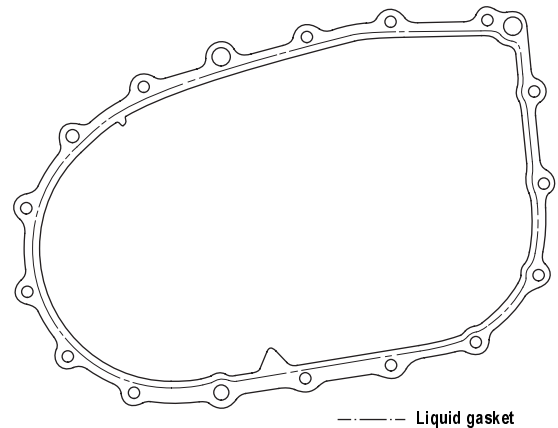


7. Select the proper size 72 mm shim (A) according to the measurements made during the Mainshaft Thrust Clearance Adjustment ([see page 13-47](#)). Install the oil gutter plate (B), oil guide plate M, and 72 mm shim into the transmission housing (C).



8. Remove the dirt and oil from the transmission housing sealing surface. Apply liquid gasket (P/N 08C70-K0234M) to the sealing surface. Be sure to seal the entire circumference of the bolt holes to prevent oil leakage.

NOTE: If 5 minutes have passed after applying liquid gasket, reapply it and assemble the housings. Allow it to cure at least 20 minutes after assembly before filling the transmission with oil.

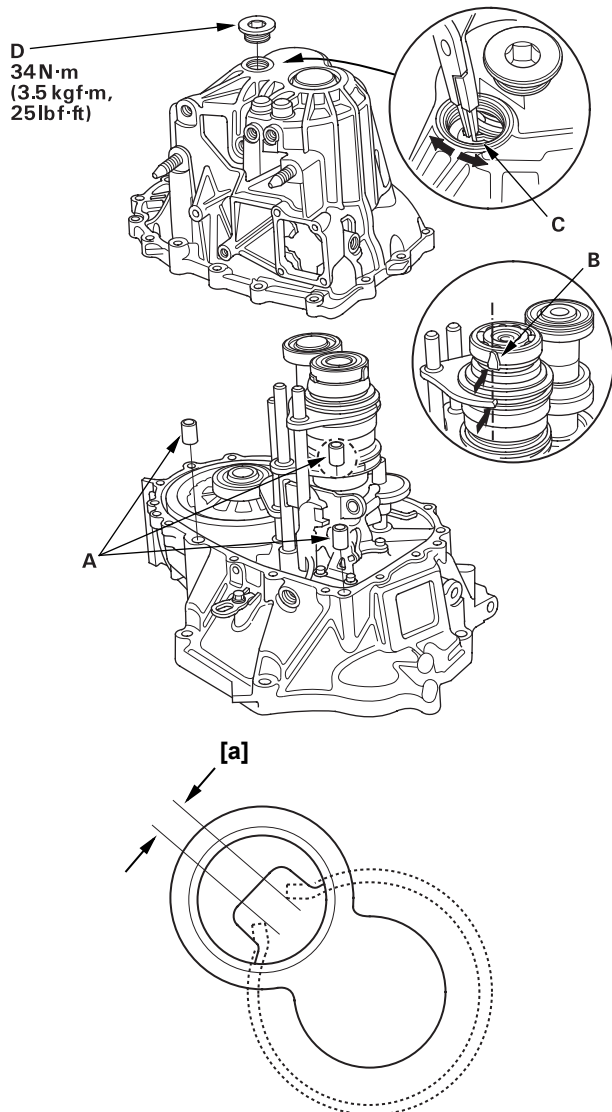


(cont'd)



# Transmission Reassembly (cont'd)

9. Install the 14 x 20 mm dowel pins (A).



10. Set the tapered cone ring (B) as shown. Place the transmission housing over the clutch housing, being careful to line up the shafts.

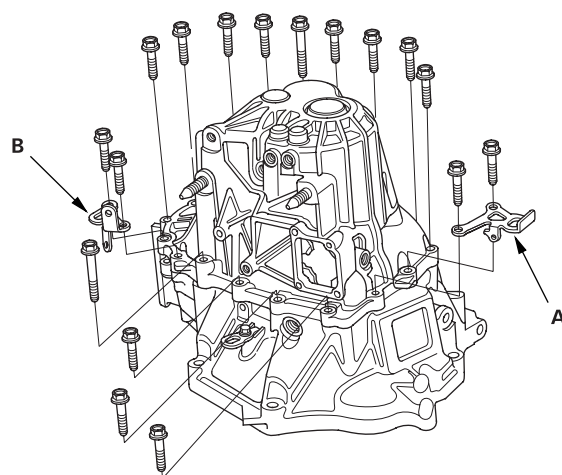
11. Lower the transmission housing the rest of the way as you expand the 72 mm snap ring (C). Release the snap ring so it seats in the groove of the countershaft bearing.

12. Check that the 52 mm snap ring is securely seated in the groove of the countershaft bearing.

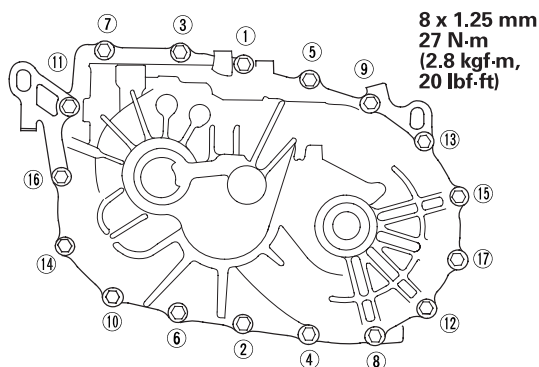
Dimension [a] as installed: 3.3 - 6.0 mm  
(0.13 - 0.24 in.)

13. Apply liquid gasket (P/N 08C70-K023M) to the threads of the 32 mm sealing cap (D), and install it on the transmission housing.

14. Install the transmission hangers A, B, and the 8 mm flange bolts finger-tight.



15. Tighten the 8 mm flange bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps.

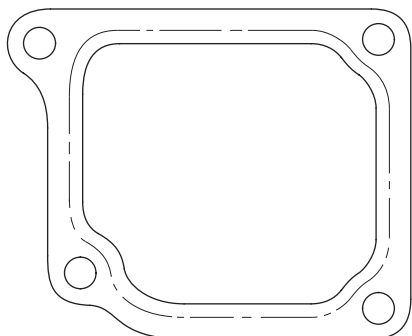






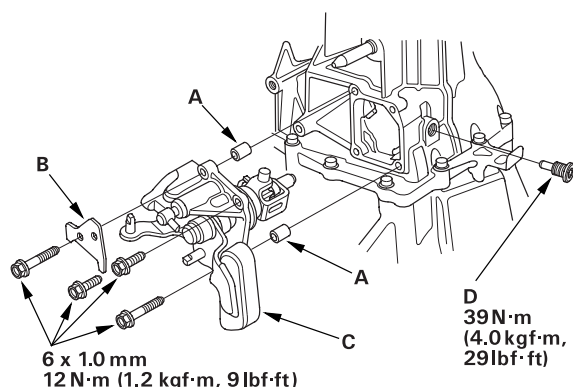
16. Remove the dirt and oil from the shift lever cover sealing surface. Apply liquid gasket (P/N 08C70-K0234M) to the sealing surface.

NOTE: If 5 minutes have passed after applying liquid gasket, reapply it and assemble the housings. Allow it to cure at least 20 minutes after assembly before filling the transmission with oil.



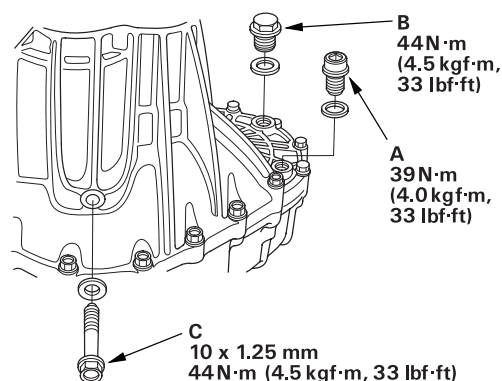
----- Liquid gasket

17. Install the 8 x 14 mm dowel pins (A) clutch line clip bracket (B), and change lever assembly (C).

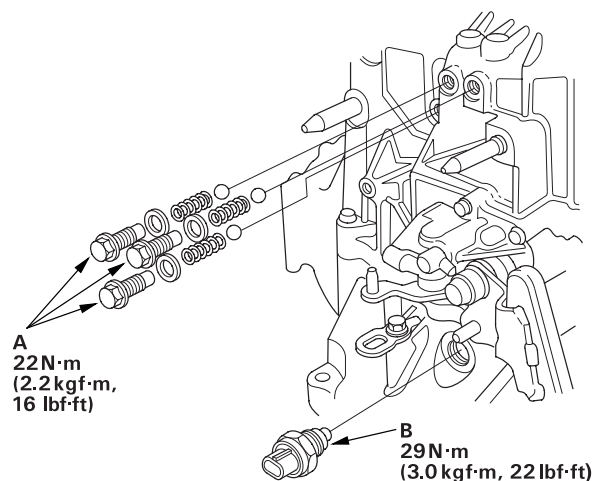


18. Apply liquid gasket (P/N 08C70-K0234M) to the threads of the interlock bolt (D), and install it on the transmission housing.

19. Install the drain plug (A), filler plug (B) and 10 mm flange bolt (C) with new washers.



20. Install the detent bolts (A), spring, steel balls, with new washers.

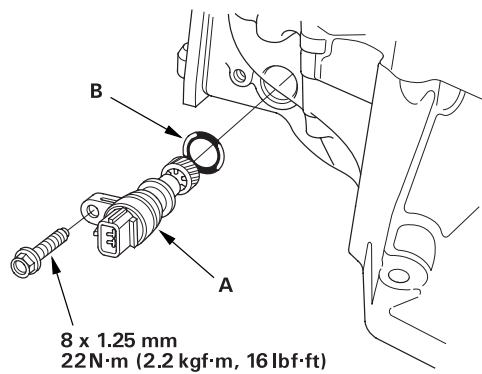


21. Apply liquid gasket (P/N 08C70-K0234M) to the threads of the back-up light switch (B), and install it on the transmission housing.

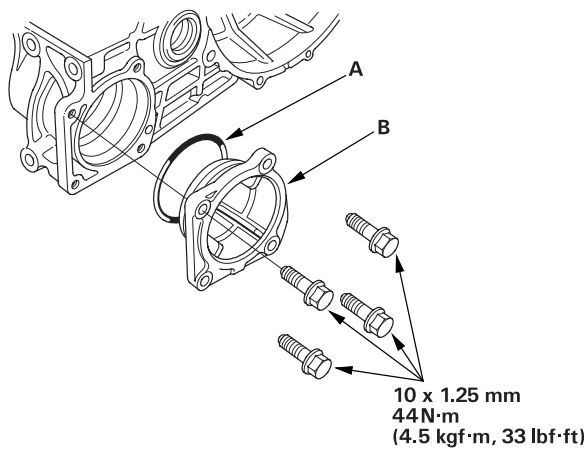
(cont'd)

Transmission Reassembly (cont'd)

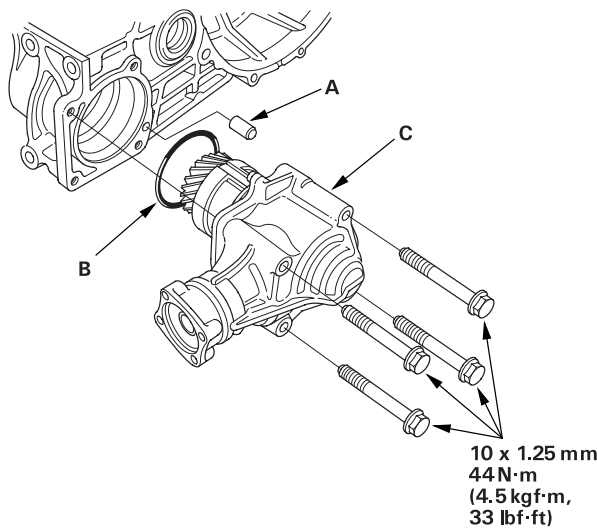
22. Install the vehicle speed sensor (VSS) (A) and O-ring (B).



23. Install the O-ring (A) and side cover (B). (2WD model)

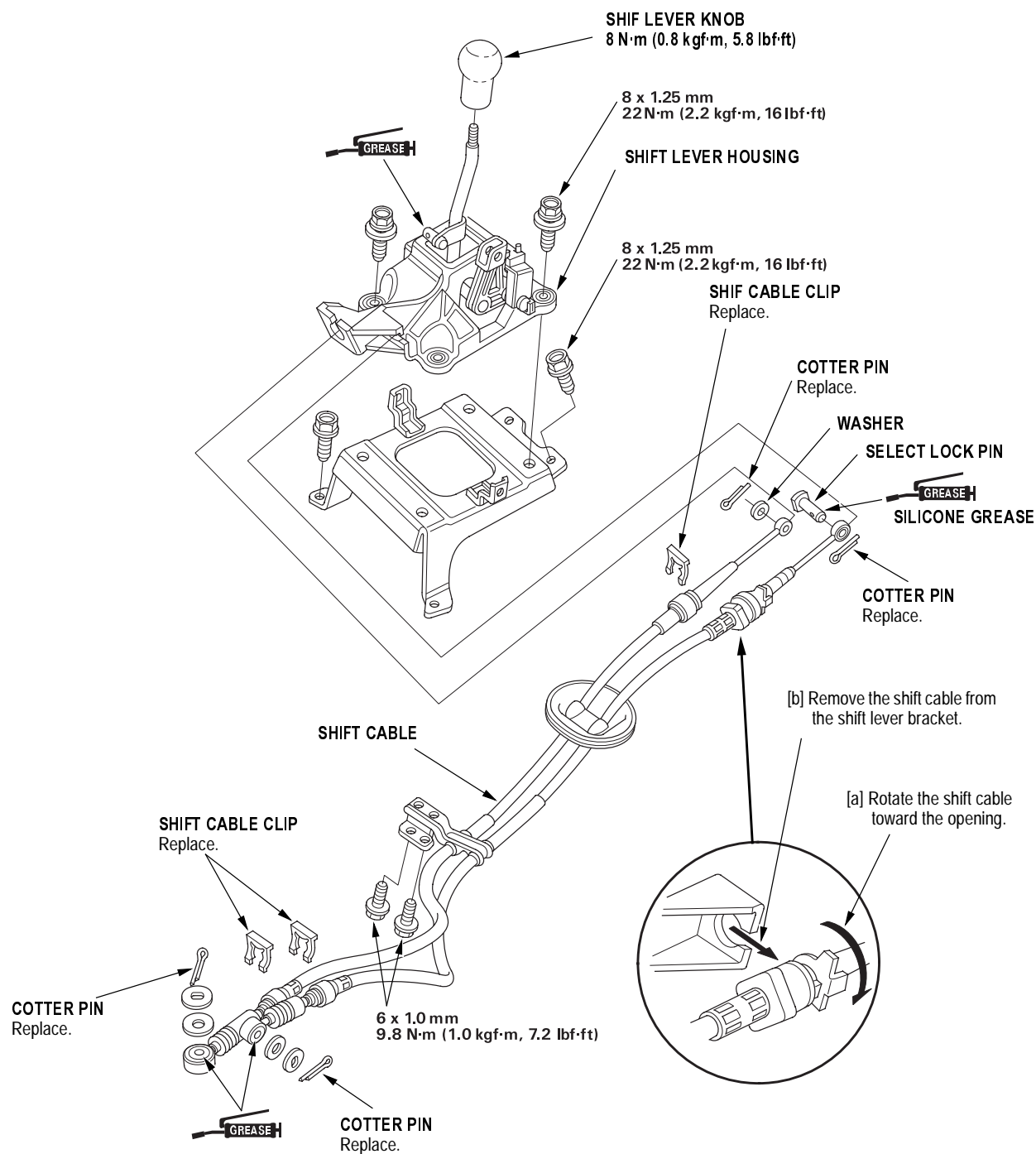


24. Install the 10 x 20 mm dowel pin (A), O-ring (B), and transfer assembly (C). (4WD model)





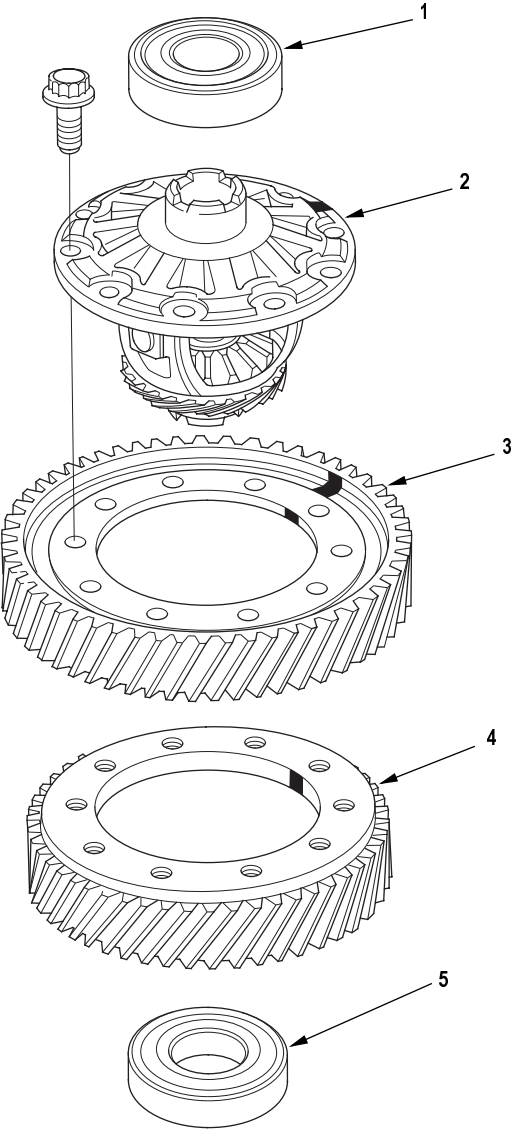
## Gearshift Mechanism Replacement



M/T Differential

Component Location Index

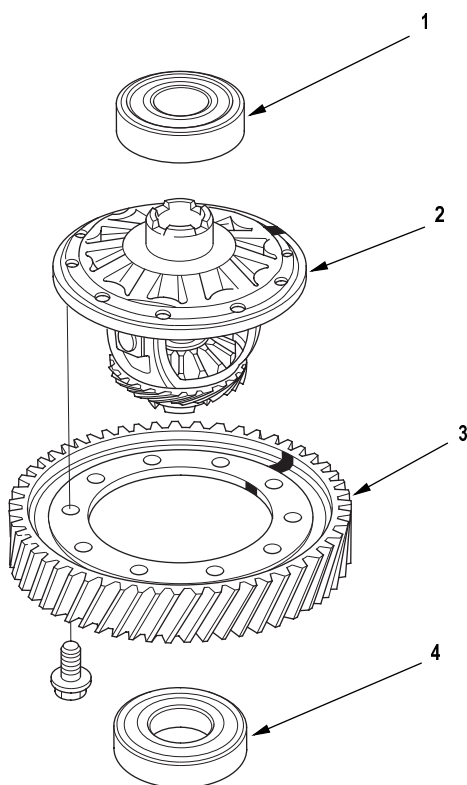
4WD model



- |                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| 1 BALL BEARING         | Replacement, <a href="#">page 13-59</a>   |
| 2 DIFFERENTIAL CARRIER | Backlash Inspection, <a href="#">page 13-58</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 13-58</a> |
| 3 FINAL DRIVEN GEAR    | Replacement, <a href="#">page 13-58</a>   |
| 4 TRANSFER DRIVEN GEAR | Replacement, <a href="#">page 13-58</a>   |
| 5 BALL BEARING         | Replacement, <a href="#">page 13-59</a>   |



### 2WD model



- 1 BALL BEARING
- 2 DIFFERENTIAL CARRIER
- 3 FINAL DRIVEN GEAR
- 4 BALL BEARING

Replacement, [page 13-59](#)

Backlash Inspection, [page 13-58](#); Replacement, [page 13-58](#)

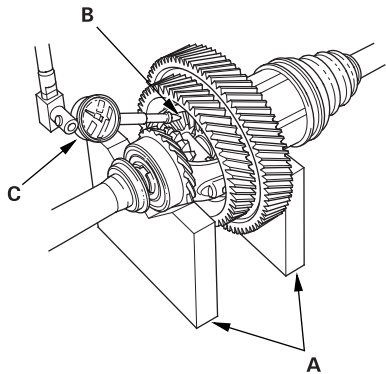
Replacement, [page 13-58](#)

Replacement, [page 13-59](#)

Backlash Inspection

NOTE: 4WD model is shown, 2WD model is similar.

- 1. Place the differential assembly on V-blocks (A), and install both axles.



- 2. Measure the backlash of both pinion gears (B) with a dial indicator (C). If the backlash is not within the standard, replace the differential carrier.

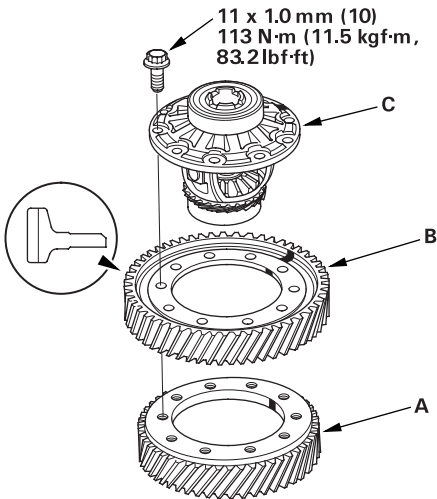
Standard (New): 0.05 - 0.15 mm (0.002 - 0.006 in.)

Driven Gear/Carrier Replacement

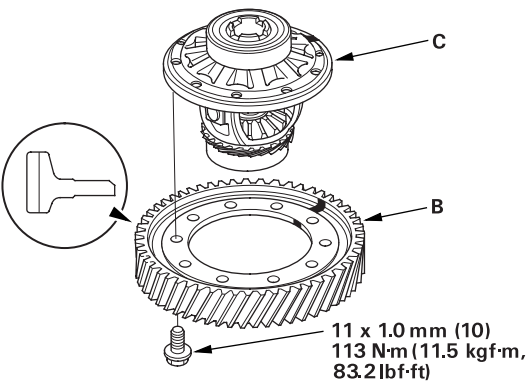
- 1. Remove the bolts (left-hand threads) in a crisscross pattern in several steps, then remove the transfer driven gear (A), final driven gear (B) from the differential carrier(C).

NOTE: Align the mark of driven gear and the carrier.

4WD model:



2WD model:



- 2. Install the final driven gear with the chamfer on the inside diameter facing the carrier. Tighten the bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps.



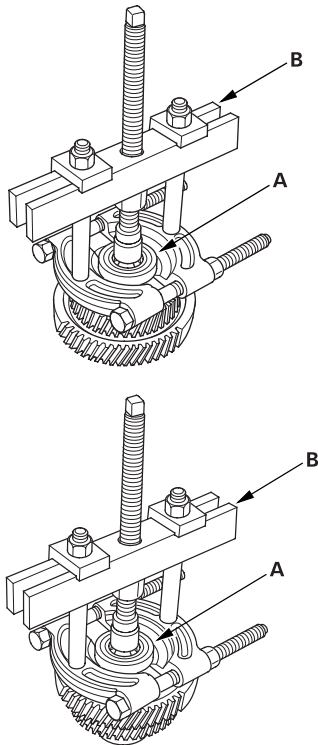
## Carrier Bearings Replacement

### Special Tool Required

Driver, 40 mm I.D. 07746-0030100

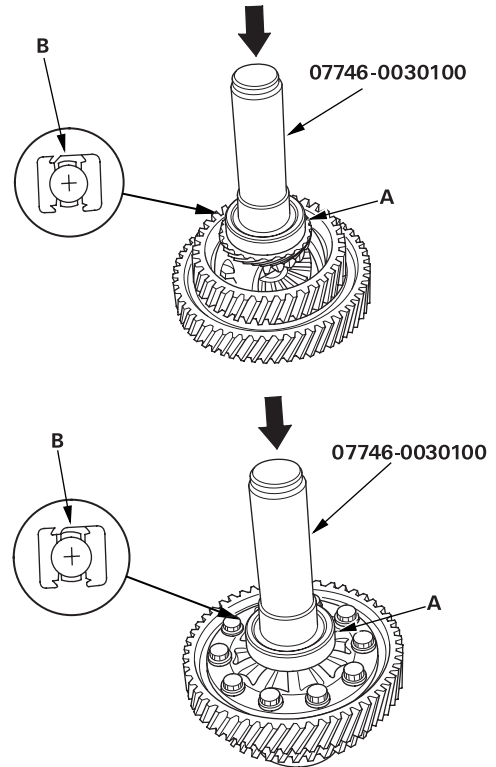
NOTE: 4WD model is shown, 2WD model is similar.

1. Check the carrier bearings for wear and rough rotation. If they rotate smoothly and their rollers show no signs of wear, the bearings are OK.
2. Remove the carrier bearing (A) with a commercially-available bearing puller (B).



3. Install the new bearings (A) with the special tool and a press. Press each bearing on until it bottoms. There should be no clearance between the bearings and the carrier.

NOTE: Turn the seal (B) part of the bearing to the outside of differential, and install it.

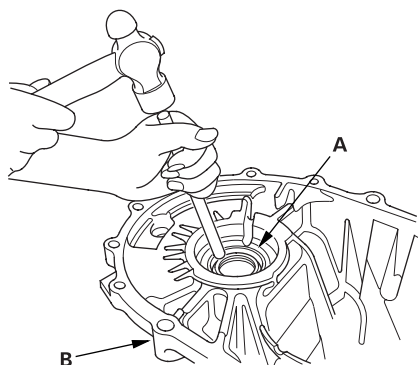


## Oil Seal Replacement

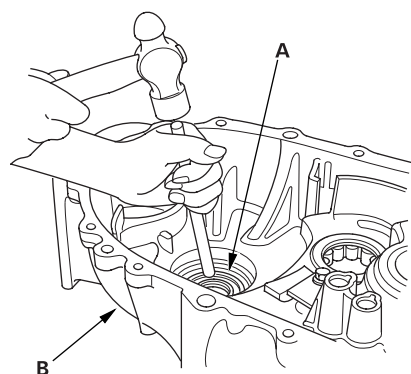
### Special Tools Required

- Driver 07749-0010000
- Oil seal driver attachment 07NAD-P200100

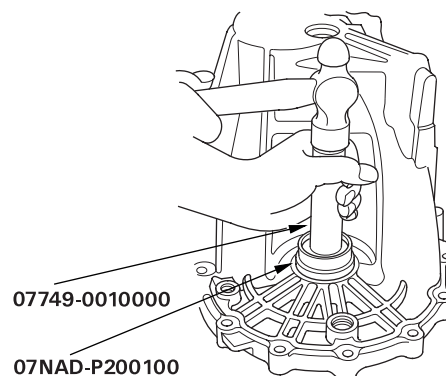
1. Remove the differential assembly.
2. Remove the oil seal (A) from the transmission housing (B).



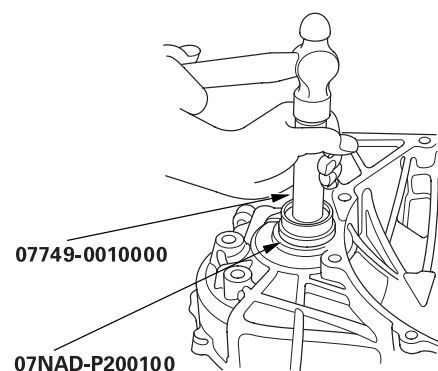
3. Remove the oil seal (A) from the clutch housing (B).



4. Install the new oil seal in the transmission housing with the special tools.



5. Install the new oil seal in the clutch housing with the special tools.





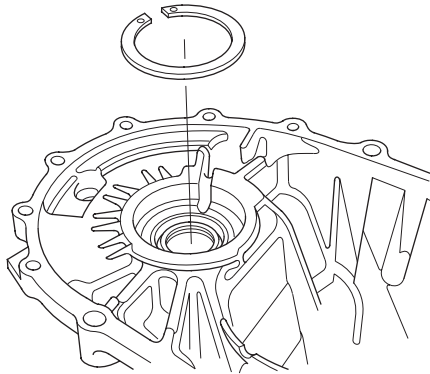


## Differential Thrust Clearance Adjustment

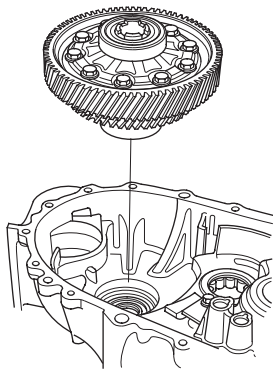
### Special Tool Required

Driver, 40 mm I.D. 07746-0030100

1. Install the 80 mm shim that's the same size as the one you removed.



2. Install the differential assembly into the clutch housing.

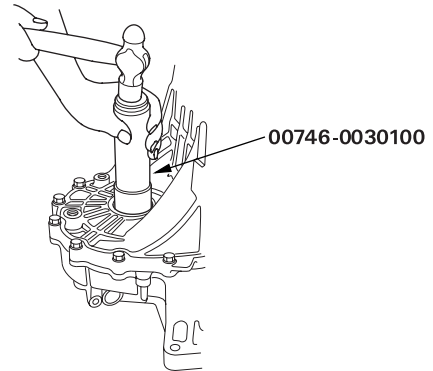


3. Install the transmission housing onto the clutch housing, then tighten the 8 mm flange bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps.

8 x 1.25 mm

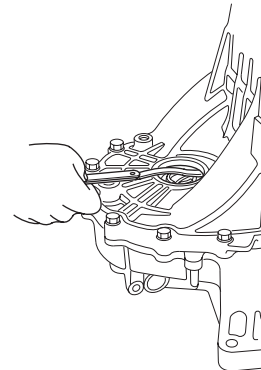
27 N·m (2.8 kgf·m, 20 lbf·ft)

4. Use the special tool to bottom the differential assembly in the clutch housing.



5. Measure clearance between 80 mm shim and bearing outer race in transmission housing.

Standard: 0 - 0.10 mm (0 - 0.004 in.)



(cont'd)

Differential Thrust Clearance Adjustment (cont'd)

6. If the clearance is more than the standard, select a new shim from the following table. If the clearance measured in step 5 is within the standard, go to step 9.

80 mm Shim

	Part Number	Thickness
A	41441-PL3-B00	1.0 mm (0.0394 in.)
B	41442-PL3-B00	1.1 mm (0.0433 in.)
C	41443-PL3-B00	1.2 mm (0.0472 in.)
D	41444-PL3-B00	1.3 mm (0.0512 in.)
E	41445-PL3-B00	1.4 mm (0.0551 in.)
F	41446-PL3-B00	1.5 mm (0.0591 in.)
G	41447-PL3-B00	1.6 mm (0.0630 in.)
H	41448-PL3-B00	1.7 mm (0.0669 in.)
J	41449-PL3-B00	1.8 mm (0.0709 in.)
K	41450-PL3-B00	1.05 mm (0.0413 in.)
L	41451-PL3-B00	1.15 mm (0.0453 in.)
M	41452-PL3-B00	1.25 mm (0.0492 in.)
N	41453-PL3-B00	1.35 mm (0.0531 in.)
P	41454-PL3-B00	1.45 mm (0.0571 in.)
Q	41455-PL3-B00	1.55 mm (0.0610 in.)
R	41456-PL3-B00	1.65 mm (0.0650 in.)
S	41457-PL3-B00	1.75 mm (0.0689 in.)

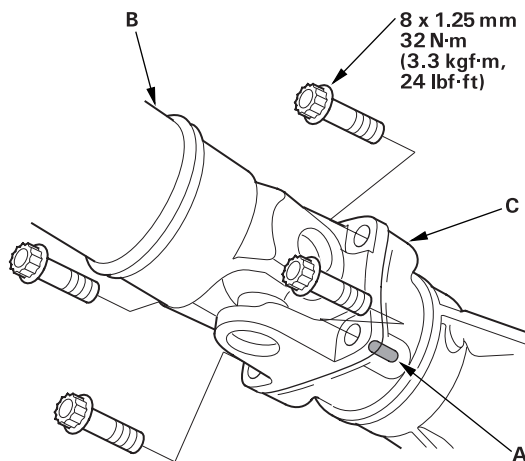
7. Remove the bolts and transmission housing.
8. Replace the thrust shim selected in step 7, then recheck the clearance.
9. Reinstall the transmission.



## Transfer Assembly

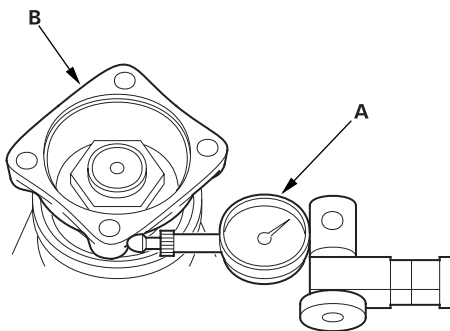
### Backlash Inspection on Car

1. Raise the front of the vehicle, and support it with safety stands ([see section 01](#)).
2. Set the parking brake, and block both rear wheels securely.
3. Shift to neutral position.
4. Make a reference mark (A) across the propeller shaft (B) and the companion flanges (C).



5. Separate the propeller shaft from the transfer assembly.
6. Set a dial indication (A) on the companion flange (B), then measure the transfer gear backlash.

**STANDARD:** 0.06 - 0.16 mm (0.002 - 0.006 in.)



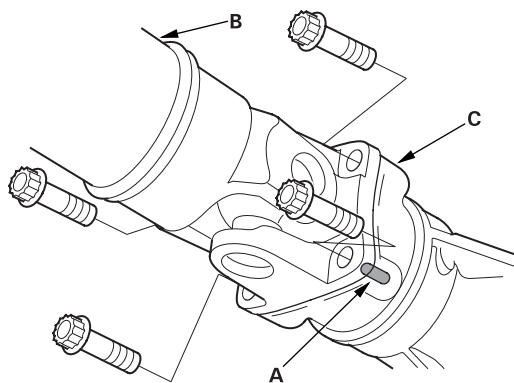
7. If the measurement is out of specification, remove the transfer assembly ([see page 13-64](#)) and inspect the transfer assembly ([see page 13-67](#)).

8. Before reinstalling the propeller shaft, check the transfer assembly oil seal for damage and fluid leaks.
  - If the seal is leaking, remove the transfer assembly ([see page 13-64](#)), replace the oil seal, and adjust the total starting torque (see step 4 on [page 13-67](#)). Do not replace the oil seal with the transfer assembly installed on the transmission.
  - If the seal is OK, reinstall the propeller shaft.

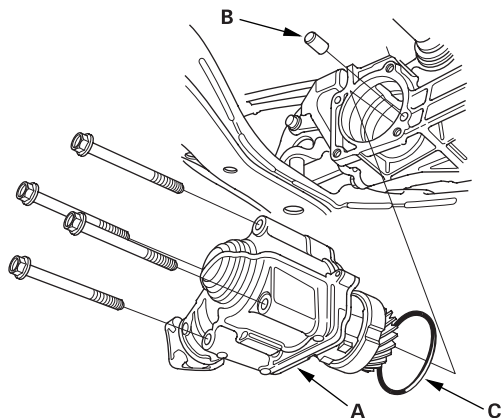
## Transfer Removal

NOTE: Make sure the lifts, jacks, and safety stands are placed properly ([see page 01-7](#)).

1. Raise the front of the vehicle, and support it with safety stands ([see section 01](#)).
2. Set the parking brake, and block both rear wheels securely.
3. Drain the manual transmission fluid. Reinstall the drain plug with a new sealing washer ([see page 13-4](#)).
4. Make reference marks (A) across the propeller shaft (B) and the companion flanges (C).



5. Separate the propeller shaft from the transfer assembly.
6. Remove the transfer (A), dowel pin (B) and O-ring (C).

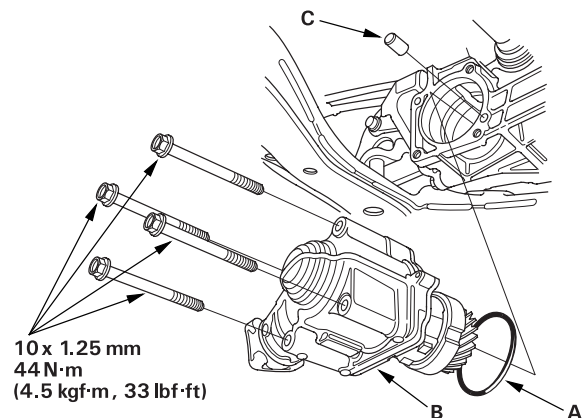


## Transfer Installation

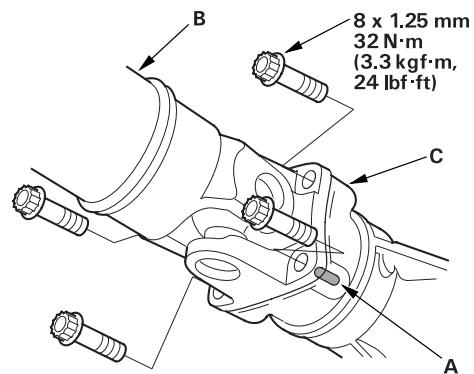
NOTE:

- While installing the transfer assembly on the transmission, do not allow dust or other foreign particles to enter the transmission.
- Be careful not to damage the clutch housing with transfer driven gear.

1. Install a new O-ring (A) on the transfer (B), then install the dowel pin (C) on the transmission.
2. Apply MTF to the transfer driven gear and transmission contact area, then install the transfer to the transmission.



3. Install the propeller shaft to the transfer assembly by aligning the reference marks.

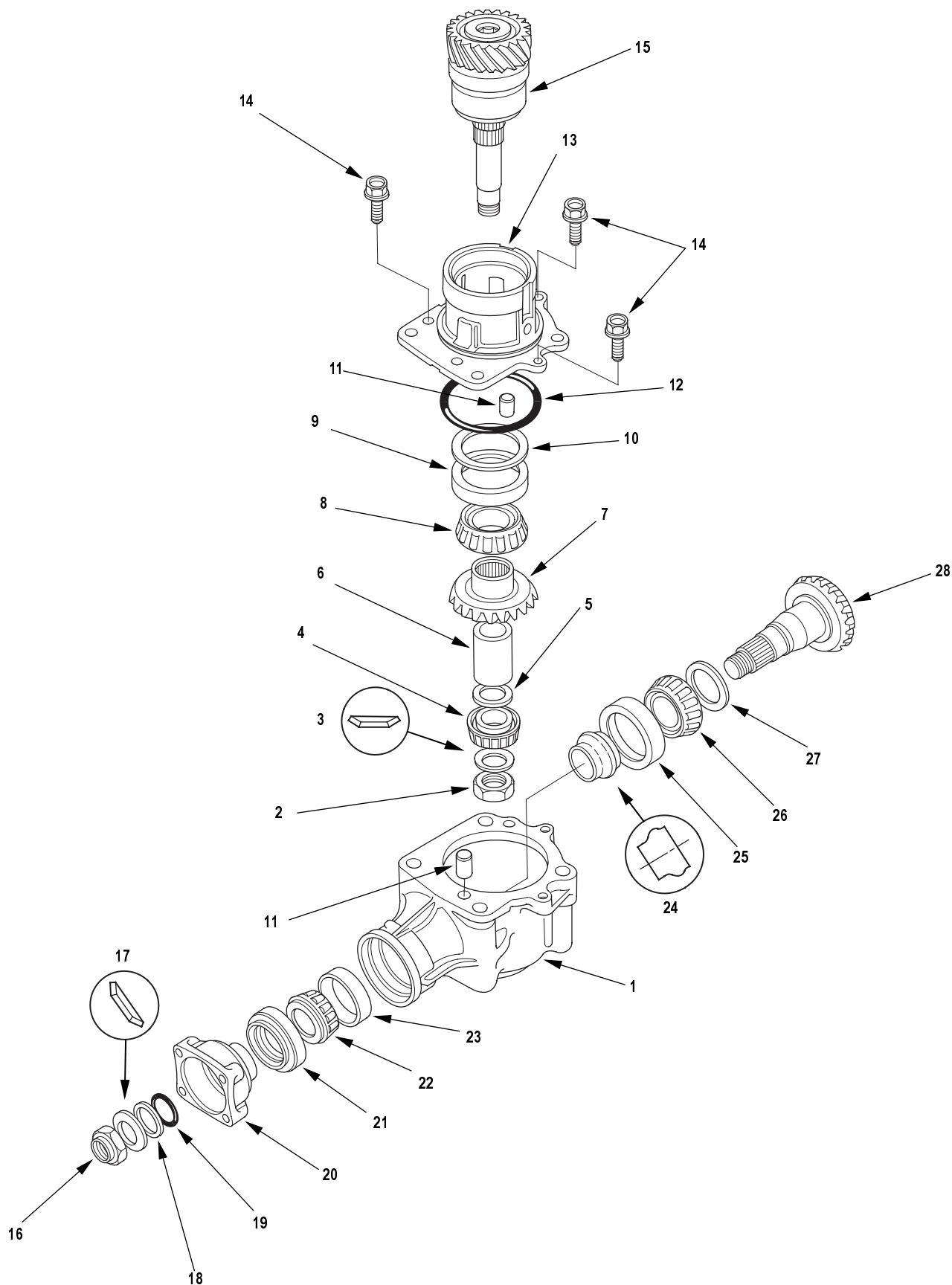


4. Refill the transmission with MTF ([see page 13-4](#)).
5. Start the engine, and run it to normal operating temperature (the radiator fan comes on). Turn the engine off, and check fluid level.



## Transfer Overhaul

### Exploded View



(cont'd)

Exploded View (cont'd)

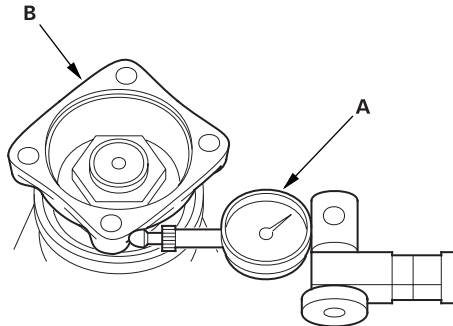
1	TRANSFER HOUSING	11	DOWEL PIN	21	OIL SEAL Replace.
2	22 mm LOCKNUT Replace.	12	O-RING Replace.	22	TAPERED ROLLER BEARING
3	CONICAL SPRING WASHER Replace.	13	TRANSFER HOLDER	23	TAPERED ROLLER BEARING OUTER RACE
4	TAPERED ROLLER BEARING	14	6 mm FLANGE BOLTS	24	TRANSFER SPACER Replace.
5	25 mm THRUST SHIM	15	TRANSFER SHAFT ASSEMBLY	25	TAPERED ROLLER BEARING OUTER RACE
6	TRANSFER COLLAR	16	22 mm LOCKNUT Replace.	26	TAPERED ROLLER BEARING
7	TRANSFER DRIVE GEAR	17	CONICAL SPRING WASHER Replace.	27	35 mm THRUST SHIM
8	TAPERED ROLLER BEARING	18	BACK-UP RING	28	TRANSFER DRIVEN GEAR
9	TAPERED ROLLER BEARING OUTER RACE	19	O-RING Replace.		
10	76 mm THRUST SHIM	20	COMPANION FLANGE		



## Transfer Inspection

### Transfer Gear (Hypoid gear) Backlash Measurement

1. Set a dial indicator (A) on the companion flange (B) as shown.



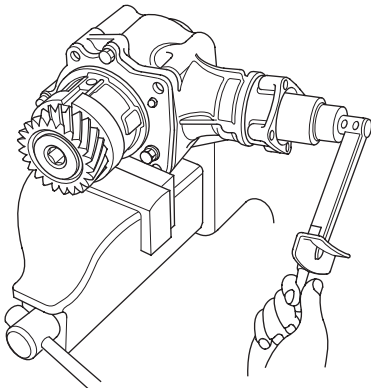
2. Measure the transfer gear backlash.  
**STANDARD: 0.06 - 0.16 mm (0.002 - 0.006 in.)**

### Total Starting Torque Measurement

3. Rotate the companion flange several times to seat the tapered roller bearing.

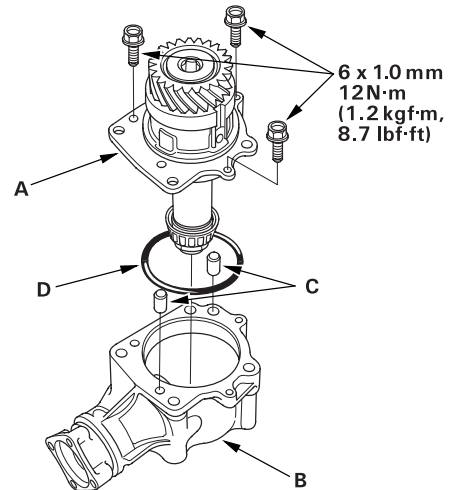
4. Measure the starting torque (companion flange side) using a torque wrench.  
**NOTE:** To prevent damage to the transfer housing, always use soft jaws or equivalent materials between the transfer housing and the vise.

**STANDARD:**  
2.24 - 3.71 N·m  
(22.0 - 36.4 kgf·cm, 19.1 - 31.6 lbf·in.)

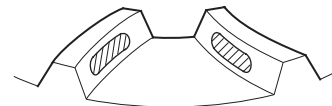


### Transfer Drive Gear Tooth Contact Inspection

5. Remove the transfer from the vise.
6. Remove the transfer holder assembly (A) from the transfer housing (B), then remove the dowel pin (C) and O-ring (D).



7. Apply Prussian Blue to the transfer drive gear teeth lightly and evenly.
8. Install the transfer holder assembly to the transfer housing, then tighten the bolts.
9. Rotate the companion flange in both directions until the transfer gear rotates one full turn in both directions.
10. Check the transfer gear tooth contact pattern.



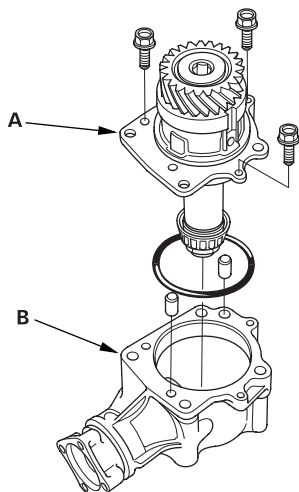
11. If the measurements or the tooth contact pattern are not within the standard, disassemble the transfer assembly, replace worn or damaged parts, and reassemble it.

### Transfer Disassembly

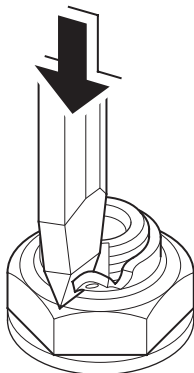
#### Special Tools Required

Companion Flange Holder 07PAB-0020000

1. Remove the transfer holder assembly (A) from the transfer housing (B).

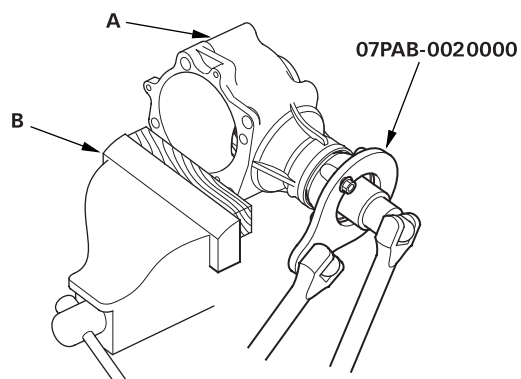


2. Cut the lock tabs of the locknut using a chisel. Keep all of the chiseled particles out of the transfer driven gear.



3. Secure the transfer housing (A) in a bench vise (B) with soft jaws.

NOTE: To prevent damage to the transfer housing, always use soft jaws or equivalent materials between the transfer housing and the vise.

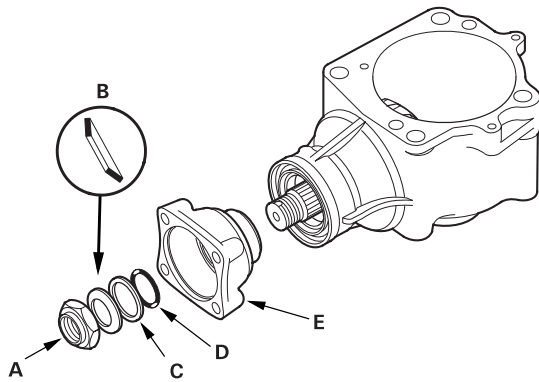


4. Install the special tool on the companion flange, then loosen the transfer driven gear shaft locknut.

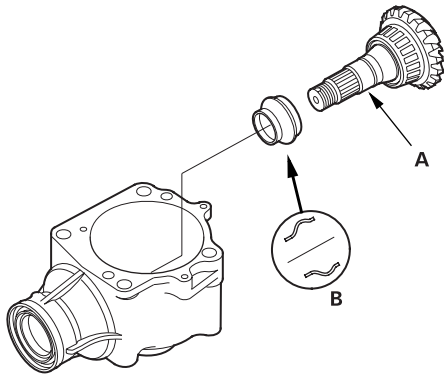




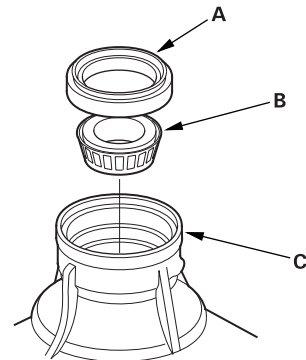
5. Remove the transfer driven gear locknut (A), conical spring washer (B), back-up ring (C), O-ring (D) and companion flange (E).



6. Remove the transfer driven gear (A), then remove the transfer spacer (B) from the transfer driven gear.

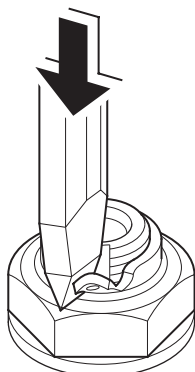


7. Remove the oil seal (A) and the tapered roller bearing (B) from the transfer housing (C).

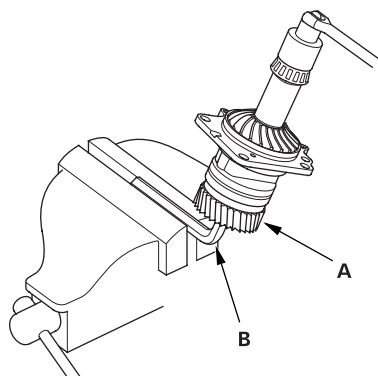


### Transfer Holder Disassembly

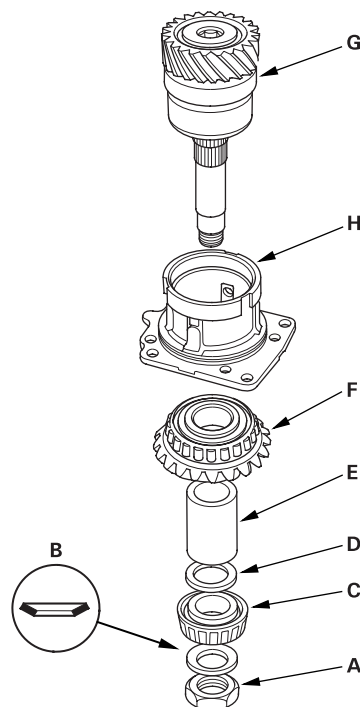
1. Cut the lock tabs of the locknut using a chisel. Keep all of the chiseled particles out of the transfer shaft.



2. Hold the transfer shaft (A) with a 14 mm Allen wrench (B) clamped in a bench vise, then loosen the locknut.



3. Remove the locknut (A), conical spring washer (B), tapered roller bearing (C), 25 mm thrust shim (D), transfer shaft collar (E), transfer drive gear (F), and transfer shaft assembly (G) from the transfer holder (H).





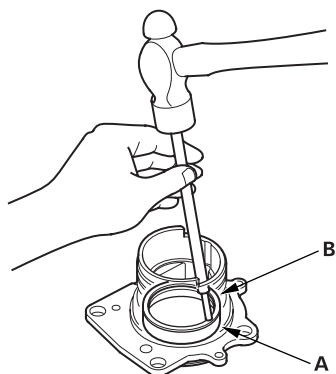
## Transfer Holder Tapered Roller Bearing Outer Race Replacement

### Special Tools Required

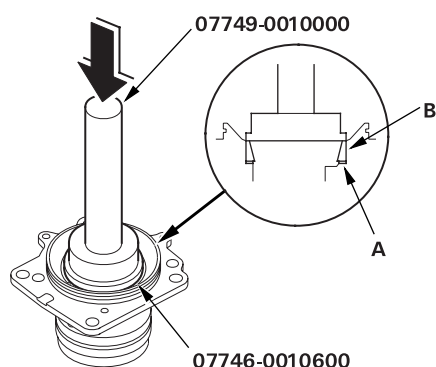
- Attachment, 72 x 75 mm 07746-0010600
- Driver 07749-0010000

NOTE: Coat all parts with MTF during reassembly.

1. Remove the tapered roller bearing outer race (A) and 76 mm thrust shim (B) from the transfer holder.



2. Install the 76 mm thrust shim (A) in the transfer holder.



3. Install the tapered roller bearing outer race (B) using the special tools and a press.

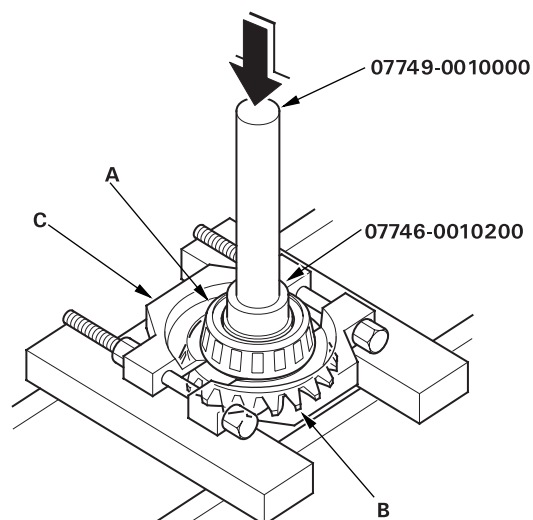
## Transfer Drive Gear Bearing Replacement

### Special Tools Required

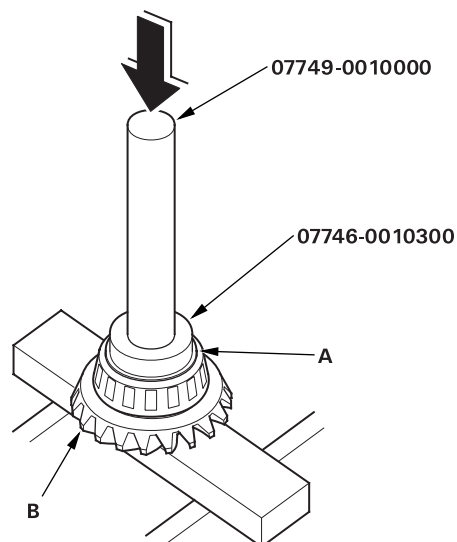
- Attachment, 37 x 40 mm 07746-0010200
- Attachment, 42 x 47 mm 07746-0010300
- Driver 07749-0010000

NOTE: Coat all parts with MTF during reassembly.

1. Remove the tapered roller bearing (A) from the transfer drive gear (B) using a commercially available bearing separator (C), the special tools and a press.



2. Install the new tapered roller bearing (A) in the transfer drive gear (B) using the special tools and a press.



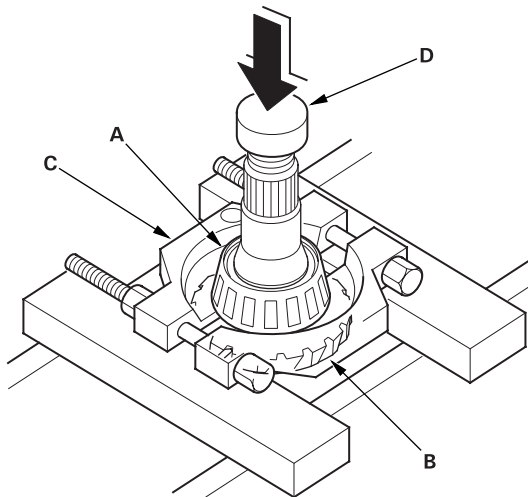
## Transfer Driven Gear Bearing Replacement

### Special Tools Required

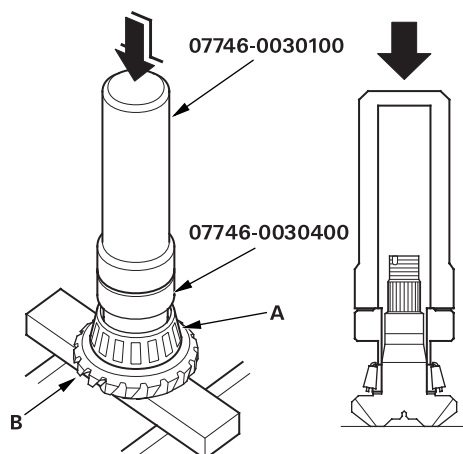
- Driver, 40 mm I.D 07746-0030100
- Attachment, 35 mm I.D 07746-0030400

NOTE: Coat all parts with MTF during reassembly.

1. Remove the tapered roller bearing (A) from the transfer driven gear (B) using a commercially available bearing separator (C), an adapter (D), and a press.



2. Install the new tapered roller bearing (A) on the transfer driven gear (B) using the special tools and a press.



## Transfer Housing Bearing Outer Race Replacement

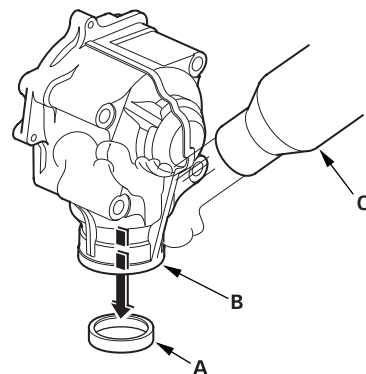
### Special Tools Required

- Installer shaft, 14 x 165 mm 07JAF-SJ80110
- Installer nut, 14 mm 07JAF-SJ80120
- Bearing installer attachment 07KAF-PS30120
- Bearing installer attachment 07LAF-PZ70110
- Attachment, 52 x 55 mm 07746-0010400
- Driver 07749-0010000

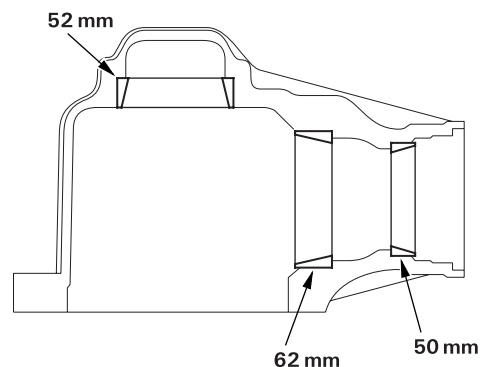
### NOTE:

- Coat all parts with MTF during reassembly.
- Replace the tapered roller bearing and the bearing outer race as a set if either part is replaced.

1. Remove the tapered roller bearing outer race (A) from transfer housing (B) by heating the cover to almost 212°F (100°C) using a heat gun (C). Do not heat the cover over 212°F (100°C).

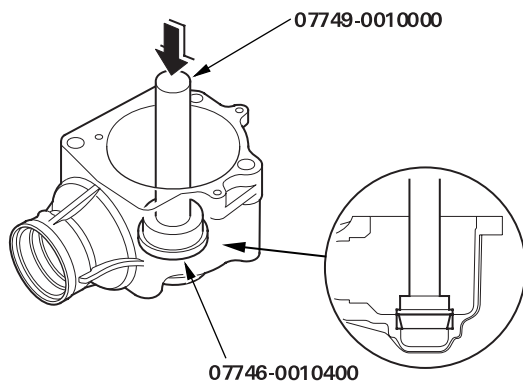


### Bearing Outer Race Locations

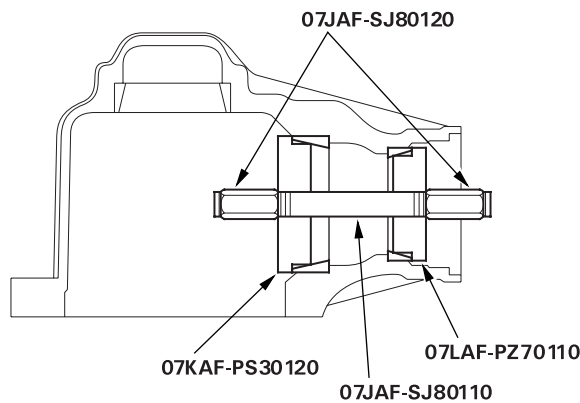




2. Install the 52 mm tapered roller bearing outer race using the special tools.



3. Install the 62 mm tapered roller bearing outer race and 50 mm tapered roller bearing outer race using the special tools.



## Transfer Reassembly

### Special Tools Required

- Oil seal driver attachment 07JAD-PH80101
- Companion flange holder 07PAB-0020000
- Attachment, 72 x 75 mm 07746-0010600
- Driver, 40 mm I.D 07746-0030100
- Attachment, 35 mm I.D 07746-0030400
- Driver 07749-0010000

Note these items during reassembly:

- While reassembling the transfer assembly:
  - Check and adjust the transfer gear tooth contact.
  - Measure and adjust the transfer gear backlash.
  - Check and adjust the tapered roller bearing starting torque.
- Cost all parts with MTF during reassembly.
- Replace the tapered roller bearing and the bearing outer race as a set if either part is replaced.
- Replace the transfer drive gear and the transfer driven gear shaft as a set if either part is replaced.

### Outline of Assembly

1. Select the 35 mm thrust shim.  
Perform this procedure if the transfer driven gear shaft or the tapered roller bearing on the transfer driven gear shaft is replaced.
2. Preassemble the parts to check and adjust transfer gear backlash and transfer gear tooth contact.
3. Disassemble the parts, then assemble the transfer driven gear shaft and its related parts.
4. Measure and adjust the starting torque of the transfer driven gear shaft tapered roller bearing.
5. Assemble the transfer shaft and its related parts.
6. Measure and adjust the total starting torque.

(cont'd)

Transfer Reassembly (cont'd)

35 mm Thrust Shim Selection

1. Select the 35 mm thrust shim if the transfer driven gear shaft or the tapered roller bearing on the transfer driven gear shaft is replaced.

Calculate the thickness of the 35 mm thrust shim using the formula below.

FORMULA:  $\frac{A}{100} - \frac{B}{100} + C = X$

A: Number on the existing transfer driven gear shaft

B: Number on the replacement transfer driven gear shaft.

C: Thickness of the existing 35 mm thrust shim

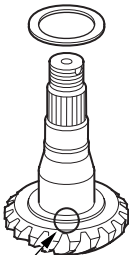
X: Thickness needed for the replacement 35 mm thrust shim.

NOTE: The number on the transfer driven gear shaft is shown in 1/100 mm.

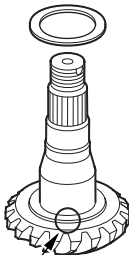
EXAMPLE:

C: EXISTING 35 mm THRUST SHIM  
Thickness: C = 1.05 mm

X: REPLACEMENT 35 mm THRUST SHIM  
Thickness: X = ? ? mm



A: EXISTING TRANSFER DRIVEN GEAR SHAFT



B: REPLACEMENT TRANSFER DRIVEN GEAR SHAFT

$$X = \frac{A}{100} - \frac{B}{100} + C = \frac{2}{100} - \frac{-1}{100} + 1.05$$
  
$$= 0.02 + 0.01 + 1.05 = 1.08 \text{ (mm)}$$

Select 35 mm thrust shim thickness of 1.08 mm (0.043 in.). If the tapered roller bearing on the transfer driven gear shaft is replaced. Measure the thickness of the replacement bearing and the existing bearing, and calculate the difference of the bearing thickness. Adjust the thickness of the existing 35 mm thrust shim by the amount of difference in bearing thickness, and select the replacement 35 mm thrust shim. Do not use more than one 35 mm thrust shim to adjust the transfer gear backlash.

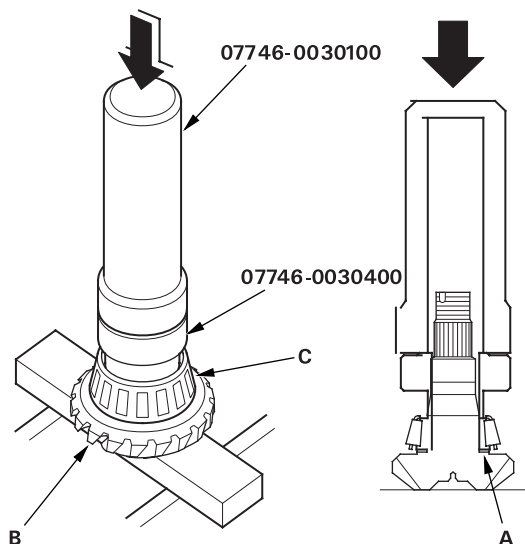
THRUST SHIM, 35 mm

	Part Number	Thickness
A	41361-PS3-000	0.72 mm (0.028 in.)
B	41362-PS3-000	0.75 mm (0.030 in.)
C	41363-PS3-000	0.78 mm (0.031 in.)
D	41364-PS3-000	0.81 mm (0.032 in.)
E	41365-PS3-000	0.84 mm (0.033 in.)
F	41366-PS3-000	0.87 mm (0.034 in.)
G	41367-PS3-000	0.90 mm (0.035 in.)
H	41368-PS3-000	0.93 mm (0.037 in.)
I	41369-PS3-000	0.96 mm (0.038 in.)
J	41370-PS3-000	0.99 mm (0.039 in.)
K	41371-PS3-000	1.02 mm (0.040 in.)
L	41372-PS3-000	1.05 mm (0.041 in.)
M	41373-PS3-000	1.08 mm (0.043 in.)
N	41374-PS3-000	1.11 mm (0.044 in.)

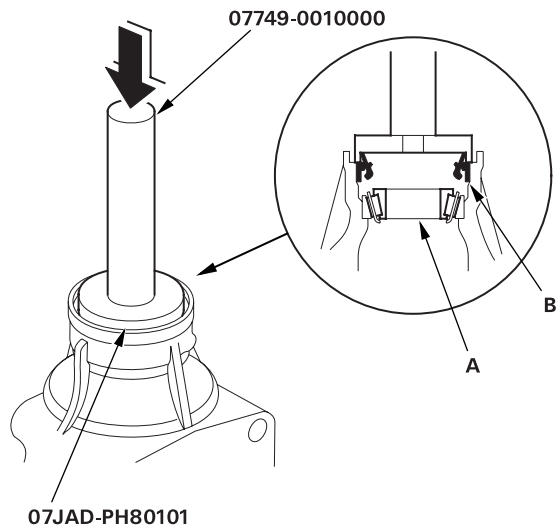


## Transfer Gear Backlash Inspection and Transfer Gear Tooth Contact Inspection

2. Install the 35 mm thrust shim (A) on the transfer driven gear (B), then install the tapered roller bearing (C) using the special tools and a press.

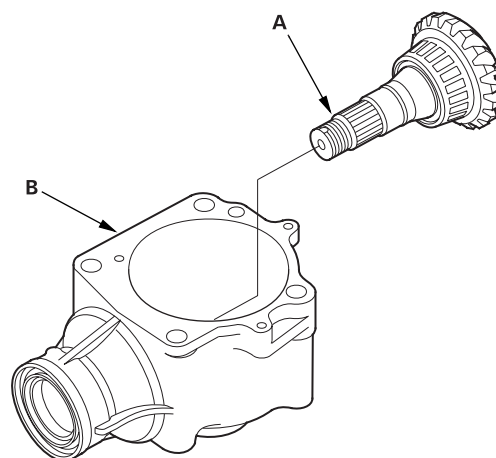


3. Install the bearing outer race, then the tapered bearing (A) on the companion flange side of the transfer housing.

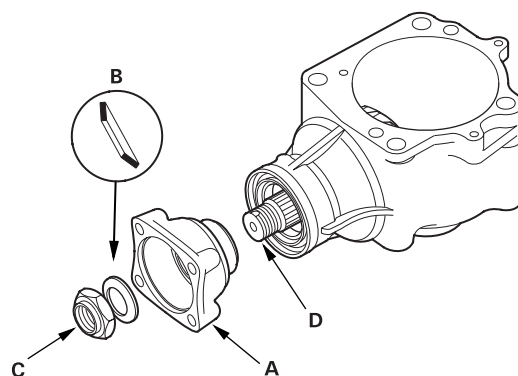


4. Install the new oil seal (B) on the transfer housing using the special tools.

5. Install the transfer driven gear (A) in the transfer housing (B). Do not install the transfer spacer on the transfer driven gear shaft in this step.



6. Install the companion flange (A), conical spring washer (B) and locknut (C) on the transfer driven gear (D). Do not install the O-ring and the back-up ring on the transfer gear shaft in this step.



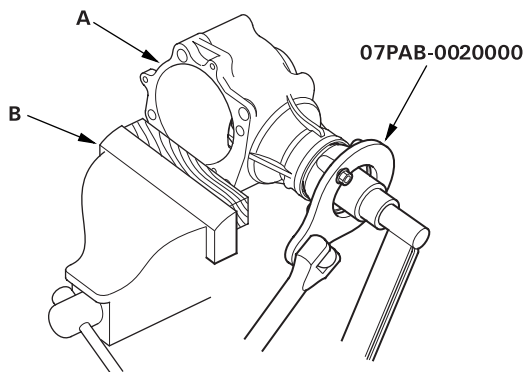
(cont'd)

## Transfer Reassembly (cont'd)

## 35 mm Thrust Shim Selection (cont'd)

7. Secure the transfer housing (A) in a bench vise (B) with soft jaws, then install the special tool on the companion flange.

NOTE: To prevent damage to the transfer housing, always use soft jaws or equivalent materials between the transfer housing and the vise.



8. Tighten the locknut while measuring the starting torque so the starting torque is within 1.08-1.47 N·m (11.0 - 15.0 kgf·cm, 9.55 - 13.0 lbf·in.).

NOTE:

- Coat the threads of the locknut, and the shaft with MTF before installing the locknut.
- Do not stake the locknut in this step.

**STARTING TORQUE:**

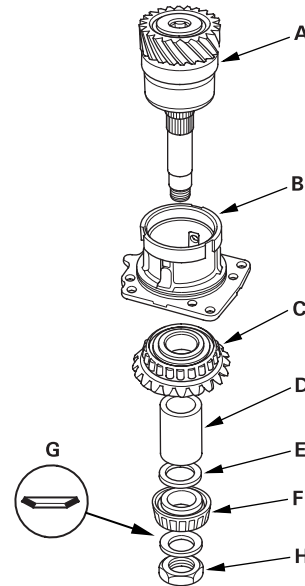
1.08 - 1.47 N·m

(11.0 - 15.0 kgf·cm, 9.55 - 13.0 lbf·in.)

9. Install the transfer shaft assembly (A) in the transfer holder (B), then install the transfer drive gear (C), transfer collar (D), 25 mm thrust shim (E), tapered roller bearing (F), conical spring washer (G), and locknut (H) on the transfer shaft assembly.

NOTE:

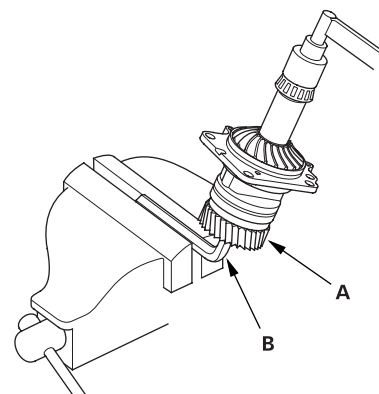
- Coat the threads of the locknut, and the shaft with MTF before installing the locknut.
- Do not stake the locknut in this step.



10. Hold the transfer shaft (A) with a 14 mm Allen wrench (B) clamped in a bench vise, and tighten the locknut.

NOTE: Do not stake the locknut in this step.

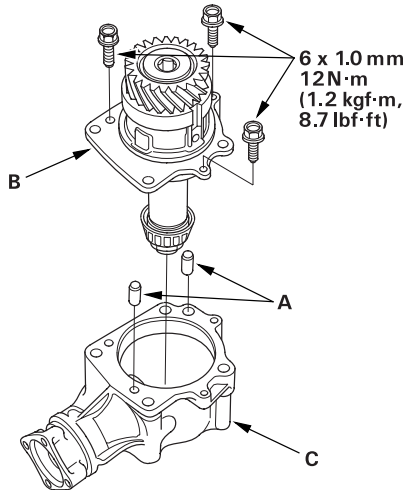
**TORQUE: 118 N·m (12.0 kgf·m, 86.8 lbf·ft)**



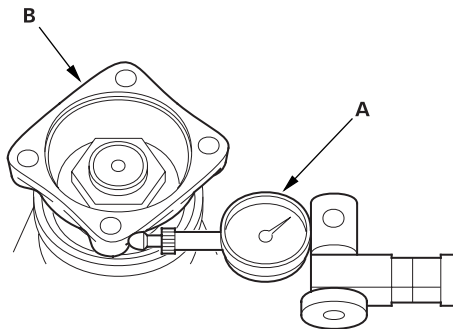




11. Apply Prussian Blue to both sides of the transfer drive gear teeth lightly and evenly.
12. Install the dowel pin (A) and transfer holder assembly (B) to the transfer housing (C).  
NOTE: Temporarily install the transfer holder assembly without the O-ring.

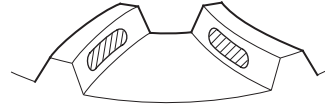


13. Rotate the companion flange several times to seat the tapered roller bearing.
14. Set a dial indicator (A) on the companion flange (B), then measure the transfer gear backlash.  
**STANDARD: 0.06 - 0.16 mm (0.002 - 0.006 in.)**

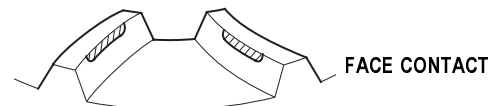
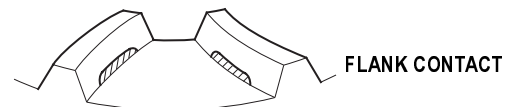
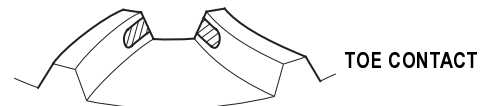


15. Check the transfer gear tooth contact pattern.

## CORRECT TOOTH CONTACT PATTERN



## INCORRECT TOOTH CONTACT PATTERN



(cont'd)

Transfer Reassembly (cont'd)

35 mm Thrust Shim Selection (cont'd)

16. If the transfer gear tooth contact is incorrect, adjust the transfer gear tooth contact with a 35 mm or 25 mm thrust shim. If the gear tooth contact is correct, go to step 17.

NOTE:

- To select a 35 mm thrust shim, refer to [page 13-74](#).
- Do not use more than one 35 mm shim to adjust the transfer gear tooth contact.
- To select the 25 mm thrust shim, refer to [page 13-78](#).
- Do not use more than one 25 mm shim to adjust the transfer gear tooth contact.

• **Toe Contact**

Use a thicker 35 mm thrust shim to move the transfer driven gear shaft toward the transfer drive gear. Because this movement causes the transfer gear backlash to change, move the transfer drive gear away from the transfer driven gear shaft to adjust the transfer gear backlash as follows:

- Increase the thickness of the 25 mm thrust shim.
- Reduce the thickness of the 76 mm thrust shim by the amount of increased thickness of the 25 mm thrust shim.

• **Flank Contact**

Use a thinner thrust shim to move the transfer drive gear toward the transfer driven gear shaft. Flank contact must be adjusted within the limits of the transfer gear backlash. If the backlash exceeds the limits, adjust as described under Heel Contact.

• **Heel Contact**

Use a thinner 35 mm thrust shim to move the transfer driven gear shaft away from the transfer drive gear. Because this movement causes the transfer gear backlash to change, move the transfer drive gear toward the transfer driven gear shaft to adjust the transfer gear backlash as follows:

- Reduce the thickness of the 25 mm thrust shim.
- Increase the thickness of the 76 mm thrust shim by the amount of reduced thickness of the 25 mm thrust shim.

• **Face Contact**

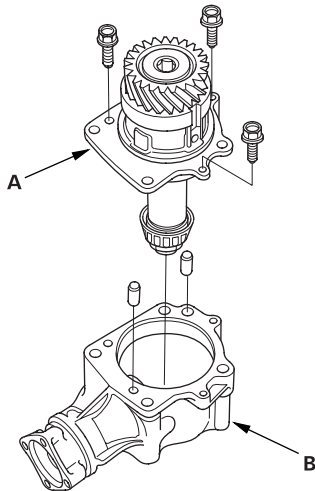
Use a thicker thrust shim to move the transfer drive gear away from the transfer driven gear shaft. Face contact must be adjusted within the limits of the transfer gear backlash. If the backlash exceeds the limits, adjust as described under Toe Contact.

THRUST SHIM, 25 mm

Shim No.	Part Number	Thickness
1.70	29411-P1C-000	1.70 mm (0.067 in.)
1.73	29412-P1C-000	1.73 mm (0.068 in.)
1.76	29413-P1C-000	1.76 mm (0.069 in.)
1.79	29414-P1C-000	1.79 mm (0.070 in.)
1.82	29415-P1C-000	1.82 mm (0.072 in.)
1.85	29416-P1C-000	1.85 mm (0.073 in.)
1.88	29417-P1C-000	1.88 mm (0.074 in.)
1.91	29418-P1C-000	1.91 mm (0.075 in.)
1.94	29419-P1C-000	1.94 mm (0.076 in.)
1.97	29420-P1C-000	1.97 mm (0.078 in.)
2.00	29421-P1C-000	2.00 mm (0.079 in.)
2.03	29422-P1C-000	2.03 mm (0.080 in.)
2.06	29423-P1C-000	2.06 mm (0.081 in.)
2.09	29424-P1C-000	2.09 mm (0.082 in.)
2.12	29425-P1C-000	2.12 mm (0.083 in.)
2.15	29426-P1C-000	2.15 mm (0.085 in.)
2.18	29427-P1C-000	2.18 mm (0.086 in.)
2.21	29428-P1C-000	2.21 mm (0.087 in.)
2.24	29429-P1C-000	2.24 mm (0.088 in.)

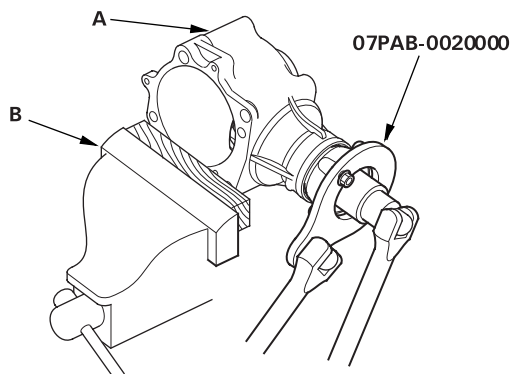


17. Remove the transfer holder assembly (A) from the transfer housing (B).



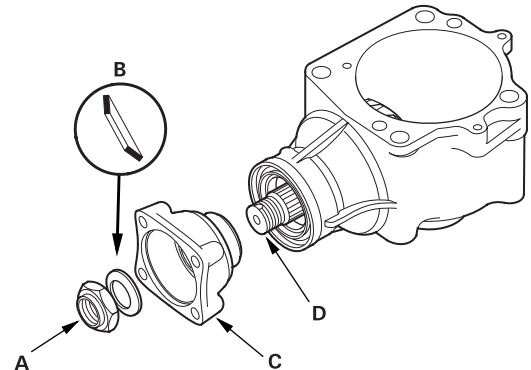
18. Secure the transfer housing (A) in a bench vise (B) with soft jaws.

NOTE: To prevent damage to the transfer housing, always use soft jaws or equivalent materials between the transfer housing and the vise.

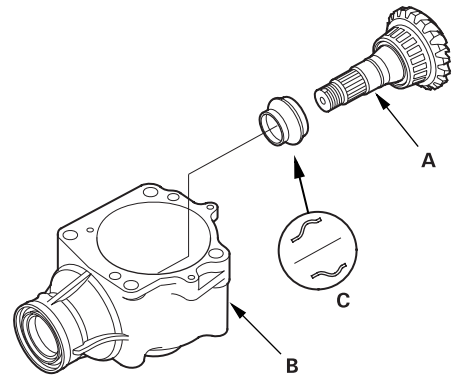


19. Install the special tool on the companion flange, then loosen the locknut.

20. Remove the locknut (A), conical spring washer (B) and companion flange (C) from the transfer driven gear (D).



21. Remove the transfer driven gear (A) from the transfer housing (B).



22. Install the new transfer spacer (C) on the transfer driven gear (A), then install them in the transfer housing (B).

(cont'd)

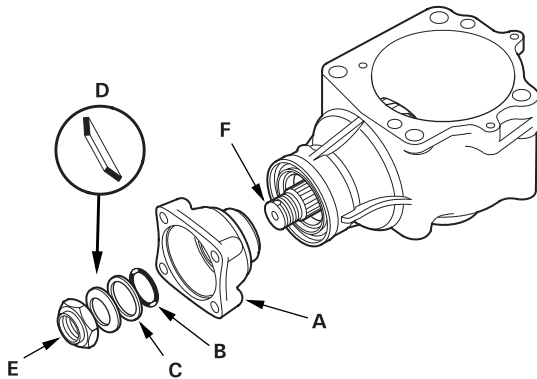
## Transfer Reassembly (cont'd)

### 35 mm Thrust Shim Selection (cont'd)

23. Install the companion flange (A), O-ring (B), back-up ring (C), conical spring washer (D) and locknut (E) on the transfer driven gear (F).

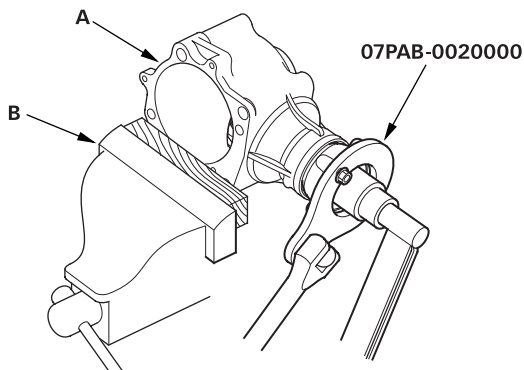
**NOTE:**

- Coat the threads of the locknut, O-ring and transfer shaft with MTF before installing the locknut.
- Install the conical spring washer in the direction shown.



24. Secure the transfer housing (A) in a bench vise (B) with soft jaws.

**NOTE:** To prevent damage to the transfer housing, always use soft jaws or equivalent materials between the transfer housing and the vise.



25. Install the special tool on the companion flange, then tighten the transfer driven gear shaft locknut while measuring the starting torque of the transfer driven gear shaft.

**STARTING TORQUE:**

1.08 - 1.47 N·m

(11.0 - 15.0 kgf·cm, 9.55 - 13.0 lbf·in)

**TIGHTENING TORQUE:**

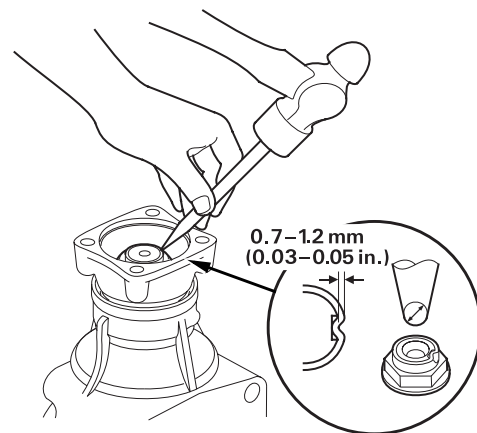
132 - 260 N·m

(13.5 - 26.5 kgf·m, 97.6 - 192 lbf·ft)

**NOTE:**

- Rotate the companion flange several times to seat the tapered roller bearing, then measure the starting torque.
- If the starting torque exceeds 1.47 N·m (15.0 kgf·cm, 13.0 lbf·in.), replace the transfer spacer and reassemble the parts. Do not adjust the torque with the locknut loose.
- If the tightening torque exceeds 260 N·m (26.5 kgf·m, 192 lbf·ft), replace the transfer spacer and reassemble the parts.
- Write down the measurement of the starting torque: it is used to measure the total starting torque.

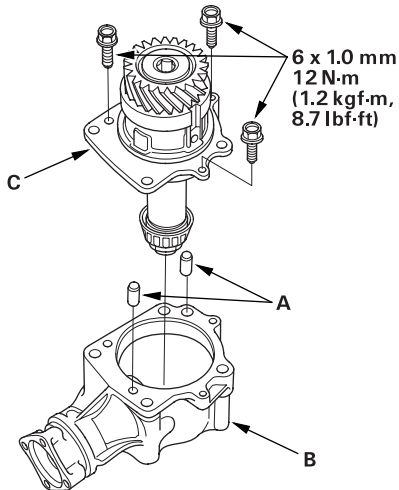
26. Stake the locknut into the transfer driven gear shaft using a 3.5 mm punch.





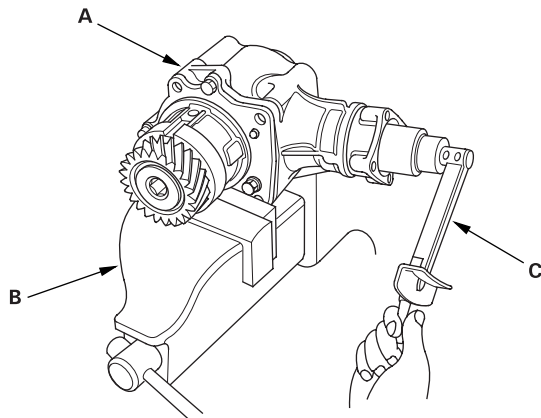
27. Install the dowel pin (A) to the transfer housing (B), then install the transfer holder assembly (C).

NOTE: Temporarily install the transfer holder assembly without the O-ring.



28. Secure the transfer housing (A) in a bench vise (B) with soft jaws, then rotate the companion flange several times to fit the tapered roller bearing.

NOTE: To prevent damage to the transfer housing, always use soft jaws or equivalent materials between the transfer housing and the vise.



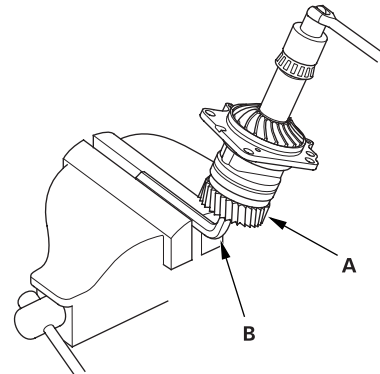
29. Measure the total starting torque using the torque wrench (C).

**TOTAL STARTING TORQUE:**  
**1.70 - 2.08 N·m (17.3 - 21.2 kgf·cm, 15.0 - 18.4 lbf·in.) +**  
**Transfer Driven Gear Shaft Starting Torque Value**  
**(wrote down in step 25).**

30. Remove the transfer holder assembly from the transfer housing.

31. If the measurement is not within the specification, go to step 32.  
 If the measurement is within the specification, go to step 43.

32. Hold the transfer shaft (A) with a 14 mm Allen wrench (B) clamped in a bench vise then loosen the locknut.

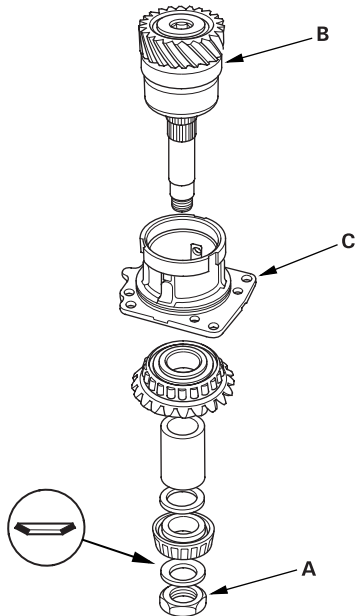


(cont'd)

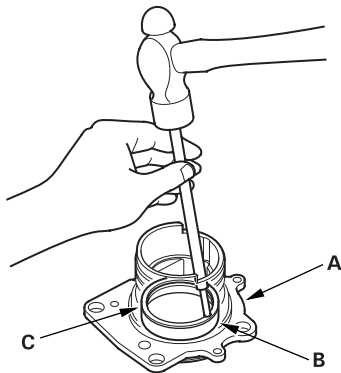
Transfer Reassembly (cont'd)

35 mm Thrust Shim Selection (cont'd)

33. Remove the locknut (A) and transfer shaft assembly (B) from the transfer holder (C).



34. Remove the tapered roller bearing outer race (A) and 76 mm thrust shim (B) from the transfer holder (C).



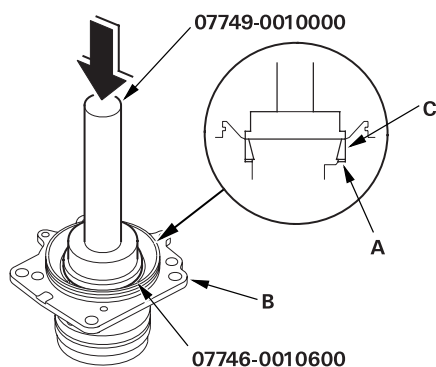
35. Measure the thickness of the removed 76 mm thrust shim, and select a new 76 mm shim.

THRUST SHIM, 76 mm

Shim No.	Part Number	Thickness
A	41361-PPS-000	1.20 mm (0.047 in.)
B	41362-PPS-000	1.23 mm (0.048 in.)
C	41363-PPS-000	1.26 mm (0.049 in.)
D	41364-PPS-000	1.29 mm (0.050 in.)
E	41365-PPS-000	1.32 mm (0.052 in.)
F	41366-PPS-000	1.35 mm (0.053 in.)
G	41367-PPS-000	1.38 mm (0.054 in.)
H	41368-PPS-000	1.41 mm (0.055 in.)
J	41369-PPS-000	1.44 mm (0.057 in.)
K	41370-PPS-000	1.47 mm (0.058 in.)
L	41371-PPS-000	1.50 mm (0.059 in.)
M	41372-PPS-000	1.53 mm (0.060 in.)
N	41373-PPS-000	1.56 mm (0.061 in.)
P	41374-PPS-000	1.59 mm (0.062 in.)
R	41375-PPS-000	1.62 mm (0.064 in.)
S	41376-PPS-000	1.65 mm (0.065 in.)
T	41377-PPS-000	1.68 mm (0.066 in.)
U	41378-PPS-000	1.71 mm (0.067 in.)
W	41379-PPS-000	1.74 mm (0.068 in.)
X	41380-PPS-000	1.77 mm (0.070 in.)
Y	41381-PPS-000	1.80 mm (0.071 in.)
Z	41382-PPS-000	1.83 mm (0.072 in.)
AA	41383-PPS-000	1.86 mm (0.073 in.)
AB	41384-PPS-000	1.89 mm (0.074 in.)
AC	41385-PPS-000	1.92 mm (0.076 in.)
AD	41386-PPS-000	1.95 mm (0.077 in.)
AE	41387-PPS-000	1.98 mm (0.078 in.)
AF	41388-PPS-000	2.01 mm (0.079 in.)
AG	41389-PPS-000	2.04 mm (0.080 in.)
AH	41390-PPS-000	2.07 mm (0.081 in.)
AJ	41391-PPS-000	2.10 mm (0.083 in.)
AK	41392-PPS-000	2.13 mm (0.084 in.)
AL	41393-PPS-000	2.16 mm (0.085 in.)
AM	41394-PPS-000	2.19 mm (0.086 in.)
AN	41395-PPS-000	2.22 mm (0.087 in.)
AP	41396-PPS-000	2.25 mm (0.089 in.)
AR	41397-PPS-000	2.28 mm (0.090 in.)
AS	41398-PPS-000	2.31 mm (0.091 in.)
AT	41399-PPS-000	2.34 mm (0.092 in.)
AU	41400-PPS-000	2.37 mm (0.093 in.)
AW	41401-PPS-000	2.40 mm (0.094 in.)
AX	41402-PPS-000	2.43 mm (0.096 in.)
AY	41403-PPS-000	2.46 mm (0.097 in.)
AZ	41404-PPS-000	2.49 mm (0.098 in.)
BA	41405-PPS-000	2.52 mm (0.099 in.)
BB	41406-PPS-000	2.55 mm (0.100 in.)
BC	41407-PPS-000	2.58 mm (0.102 in.)
BD	41408-PPS-000	2.61 mm (0.103 in.)
BE	41409-PPS-000	2.64 mm (0.104 in.)
BF	41410-PPS-000	2.67 mm (0.105 in.)

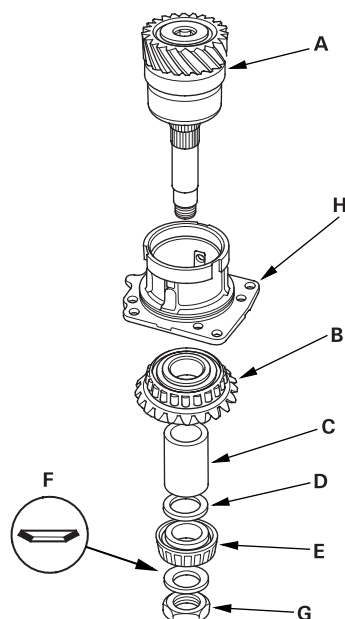


36. Install the 76 mm thrust shim (A) in the transfer holder (B).



37. Install the tapered roller bearing outer race (C) using the special tool and a press.

38. Install the transfer shaft assembly (A), transfer drive gear (B), transfer shaft collar (C), 25 mm thrust shim (D), tapered roller bearing (E), conical spring washer (F) and locknut (G) in the transfer holder (H).

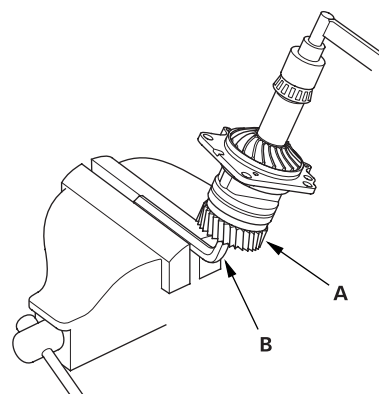


39. Hold the transfer shaft (A) with a 14 mm Allen wrench (B) clamped in a bench vise then tighten the locknut.

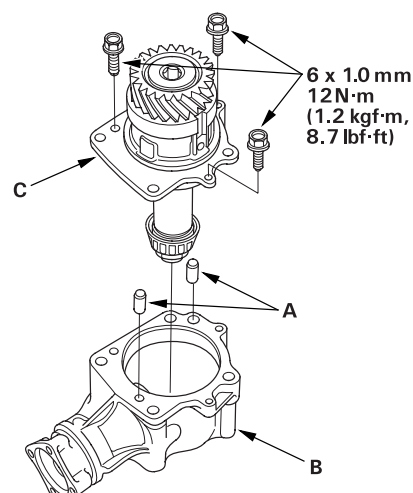
NOTE: Do not stake the locknut in this step.

## TIGHTENING TORQUE:

118 N·m (12.0 kgf·m, 86.8 lbf·ft)



40. Install the dowel pin (A) to the transfer housing (B), then install the transfer holder assembly (C).



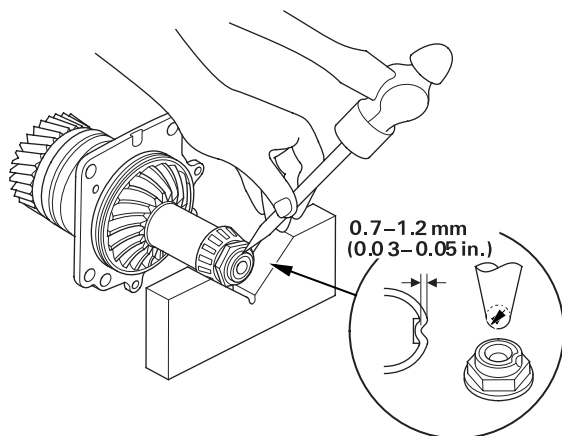
41. Recheck and make sure the total starting torque is within the specification.

(cont'd)

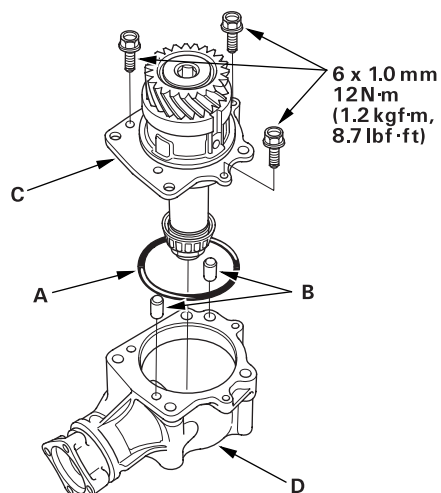
### Transfer Reassembly (cont'd)

#### 35 mm Thrust Shim Selection (cont'd)

42. Remove the transfer holder assembly from the transfer housing.
43. Stake the locknut on the transfer shaft using a 3.5 mm punch.



44. Coat the new O-ring (A) with MTF, install it on the transfer holder, then install the dowel pin (B) and transfer holder assembly (C) to the transfer housing (D).





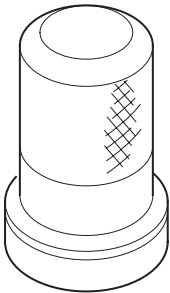
## Rear Differential

Special Tools .....	15-2
System Description .....	15-3
Dual Pump System Function Test.....	15-9
Symptom Troubleshooting Index.....	15-12
Differential Fluid Inspection and Replacement .....	15-13
Differential Removal.....	15-14
Differential Housing Assembly Removal and Installation .....	15-15
Oil Seal Replacement .....	15-16
Differential Disassembly .....	15-18
Differential Reassembly .....	15-21
Differential Installation .....	15-25
Differential Mount Replacement.....	15-27

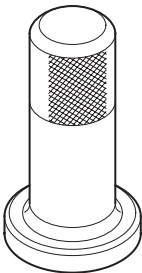


Special Tools

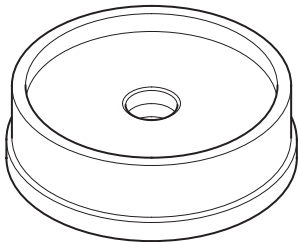
Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07GAD-PH70201	Oil Seal Driver 64	
2	07JAD-PL90100	Oil Seal Driver 65	
3	07NAD-PX40100	Attachment, 78 x 80 mm	
4	07PAB-0020000	Companion Flange Holder	
5	07749-0010000	Driver 15 x 135L	



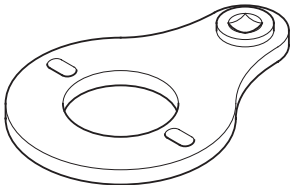
1



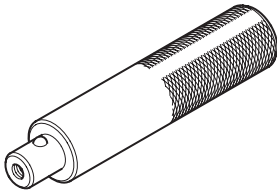
2



3



4



5



## System Description

### Outline

The Real-time 4WD-Dual Pump System model has a hydraulic clutch and a differential mechanism in the rear differential assembly. Under normal conditions, the vehicle is driven by the front wheels. However, depending on the driving force of the front wheels and the road conditions, the system instantly transmits appropriate driving force to the rear wheels without requiring the driver to switch between 2WD (front wheel drive) and 4WD (four wheel drive). The switching mechanism between 2WD and 4WD is integrated into the rear differential assembly to make the system light and compact.

In addition, the dual-pump system switches off the rear-wheel-drive force when braking in a forward gear. This allows the braking system to work properly on models equipped with an Anti-lock Braking System (ABS).

### Construction

The rear differential assembly consists of the torque control differential case assembly and the rear differential carrier assembly. The torque control differential case assembly consists of the differential clutch assembly, the companion flange, and the oil pump body assembly. The rear differential carrier assembly consists of the differential mechanism. The differential drive and driven gears are hypoid gears.

The oil pump body assembly consists of the front oil pump, the rear oil pump, the hydraulic control mechanism, and the clutch piston. The clutch piston has a disc spring that constantly provides the differential clutch assembly with a preset torque to prevent abnormal sound.

The clutch guide in the differential clutch assembly is connected to the propeller shaft via the companion flange, and it receives the driving force from the transfer assembly. The clutch guide rotates the clutch plate and the front oil pump in the oil pump body.

The clutch hub in the differential clutch assembly has a clutch disc that is splined with the hypoid drive pinion gear. The hypoid drive gear drives the rear oil pump.

The front and rear oil pumps are trochoidal pumps. The rear oil pump capacity is 2.5 percent larger than the front oil pump to handle the rotation difference between the front and rear wheels caused by worn front tires and tight corner braking. The oil pumps are designed so the fluid intake works as a fluid discharge when the oil pumps rotate in reverse. Honda DPSF (Dual Pump System Fluid) is used instead of differential fluid.

### Operation

When there is a difference in rotation speed between the front wheels (clutch guide) and rear wheels (hypoid driven gear), hydraulic pressure from the front and rear oil pumps engages the differential clutch, and drive force from the transfer assembly is applied to the rear wheels.

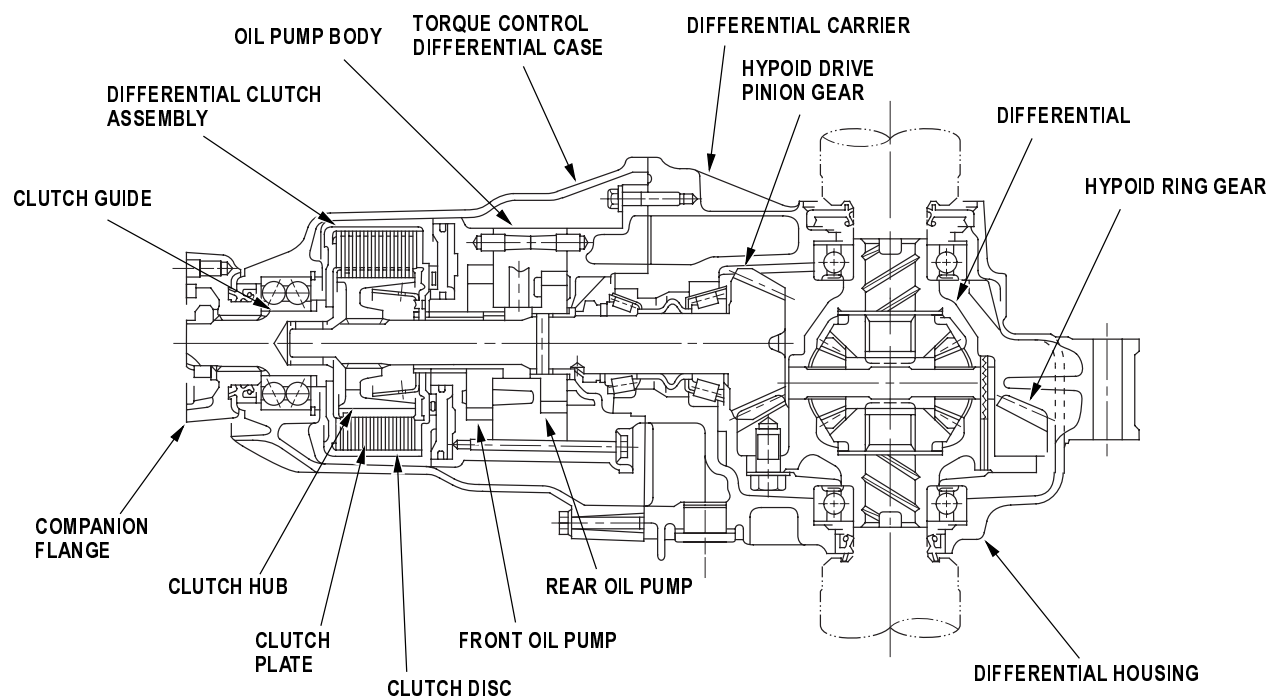
The hydraulic pressure control mechanism in the oil pump body selects 4WD mode when the vehicle is started abruptly, or when accelerating in a forward or reverse gear (causing rotation difference between the front and rear wheels), or when braking in reverse gear (when decelerating). It switches to 2WD mode when the vehicle is driven at a constant speed in forward or reverse gear (when there is no rotation difference between the front and rear wheels), or when braking in a forward gear (when decelerating).

To protect the system, the differential clutch assembly is lubricated by hydraulic pressure generated by the oil pumps in both 4WD and 2WD modes. Also, the thermal switch relieves the hydraulic pressure on the clutch piston and cancels 4WD mode if the temperature of the differential fluid rises above normal.

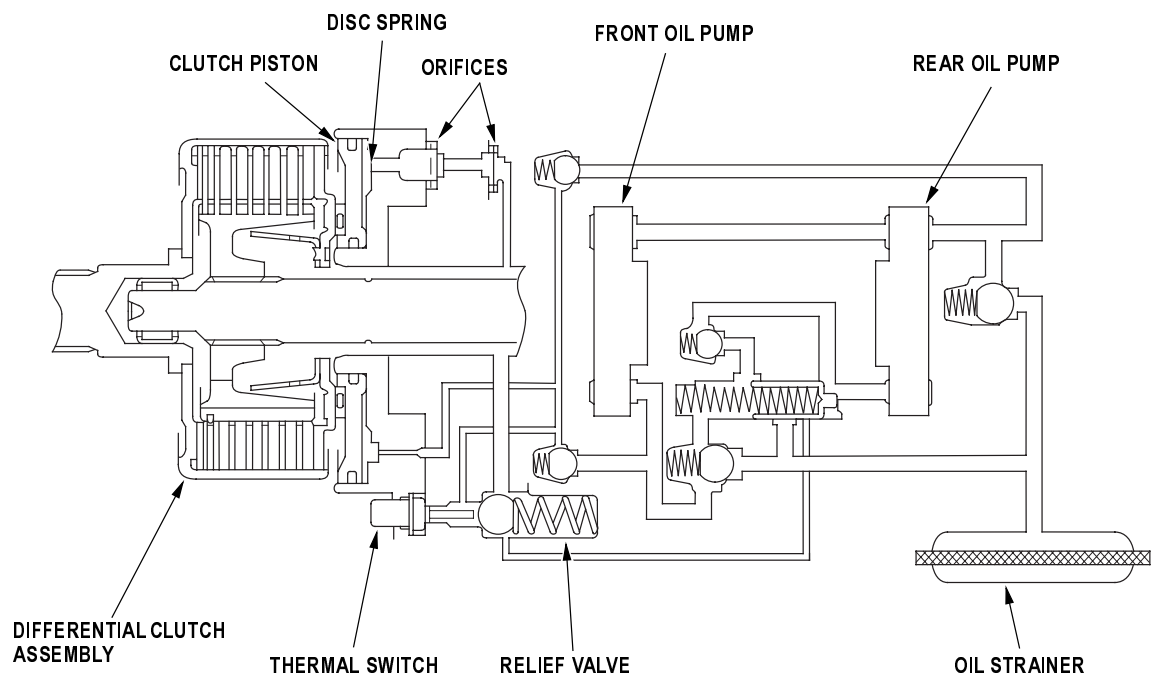
(cont'd)

System Description (cont'd)

REAR DIFFERENTIAL ASSEMBLY



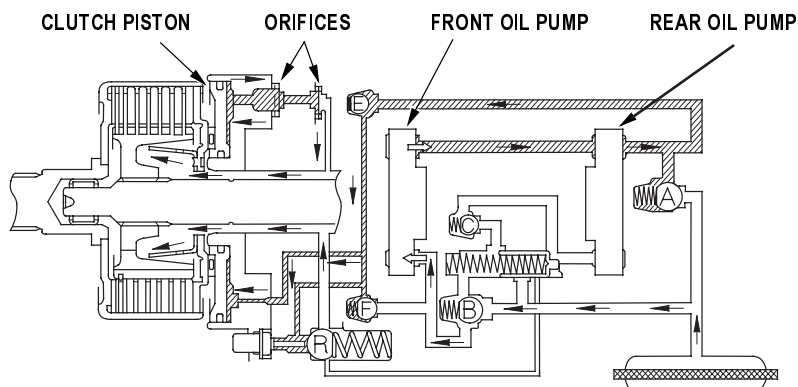
HYDRAULIC CONTROL SYSTEM





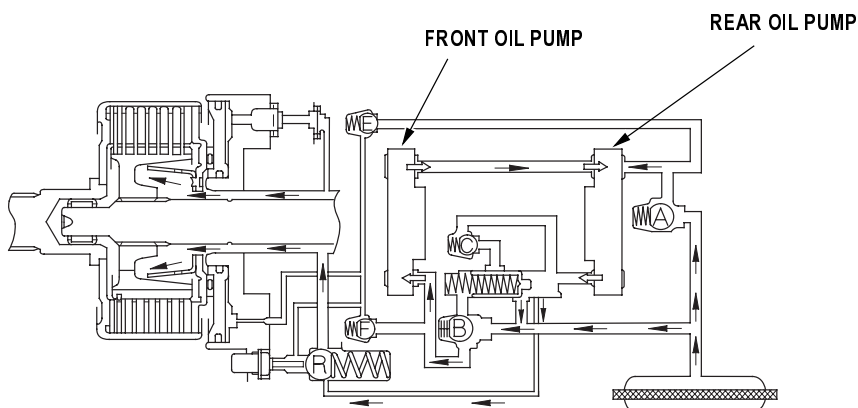
### Forward Start and Acceleration (4WD)

During a forward start and forward acceleration, the dual pump system can engage four wheel drive. If the front wheels spin faster than the rear wheels, the front oil pump spins faster than the rear oil pump. The front pump draws fluid through check valve B and discharges it. Some of the discharged fluid is drawn in by the rear oil pump. The remaining fluid will pass through check valve E into the clutch piston. There, hydraulic pressure is regulated by two orifices. The regulated hydraulic pressure at the clutch piston pushes the plates and discs of the clutch together to form a connection. The engaged clutch then passes driving force from the transfer assembly to the rear wheels, producing 4WD.



### Forward Driving at Constant Speed (2WD)

When driving forward at a constant speed (cruising), the dual pump system functions in two wheel drive mode. The rotation speed of the front and rear wheels is the same, so the speed of the front and rear pumps is also the same. Fluid discharged by the front oil pump is drawn in by the rear oil pump and is circulated through the system. Because there is no pressure built up at the clutch piston, the clutch does not engage, and the vehicle remains in 2WD (front wheel drive).

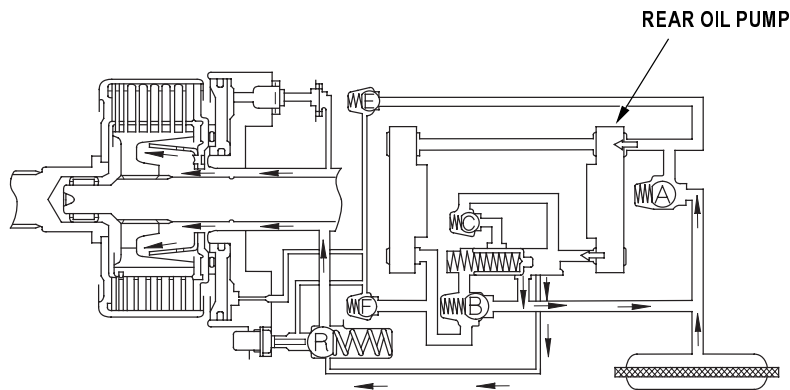


(cont'd)

## System Description (cont'd)

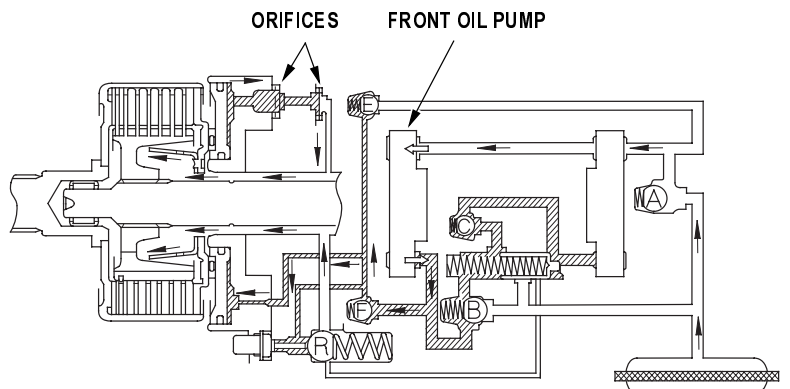
### Forward Deceleration (2WD)

During forward deceleration, the dual pump system functions in two wheel drive mode. Because of braking characteristics, the speed of the rear wheels may exceed the speed of the front wheels during deceleration. If so, the rear oil pump spins faster than the front oil pump. Fluid discharged by the rear oil pump is simply drawn in again by the rear pump and recirculated. Because there is no pressure built up at the clutch piston, the clutch piston does not engage, and the vehicle remains in 2WD (front wheel drive).



### Reverse Start and Acceleration (4WD)

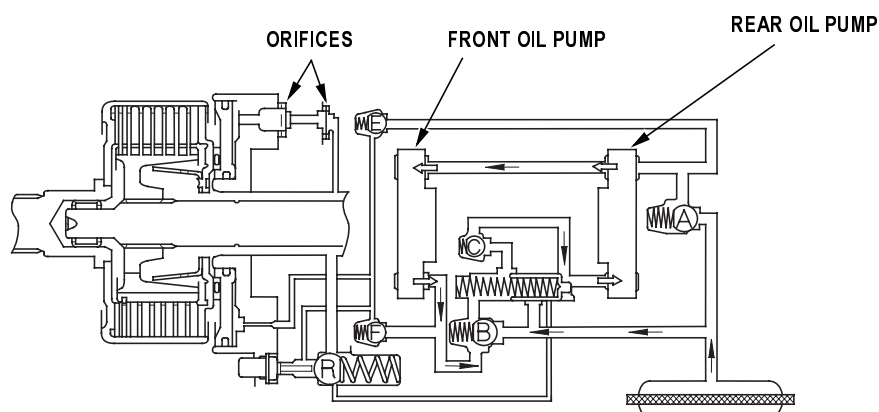
During reverse start and reverse acceleration, the dual pump system can engage four wheel drive. If the front wheels spin faster than the rear wheels, the front oil pump spins faster than the rear oil pump. The front oil pump draws in fluid through check valve A and discharges it. (Note that in reverse, the direction of the pumps is the opposite of that during forward driving.) Some of the fluid that is discharged by the front oil pump is drawn in by the rear oil pump. The remaining fluid passes through check valve F into the cylinder of the clutch piston, where it is regulated by two orifices. The regulated hydraulic pressure at the clutch piston may force the plates and discs of the clutch together to form a connection. The engaged clutch passes driving force from the transfer assembly to the rear wheels, producing 4WD.





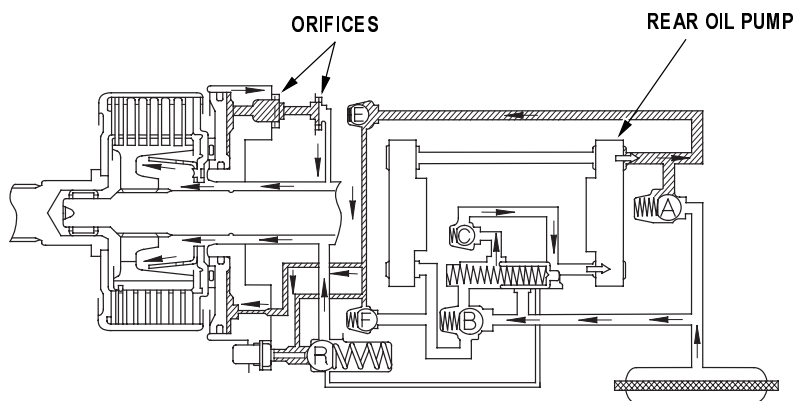
### Reverse Driving at Constant Speed (2WD)

When driving in reverse at a constant speed, the dual pump system functions in two wheels drive mode. The rotation speed of the front and rear wheels is the same, so the speed of the front and rear pumps is also the same. Fluid discharged by the front oil pump is drawn in by the rear oil pump and is circulated through the system. But, because there is a difference in the capacity between the two pumps, fluid flows through check valve E, and then through orifices. This fluid lubricates and cools the clutch assembly and bearings. In this condition, only a low pressure is built up at the clutch piston. Therefore the clutch does not engage, and the vehicle remains in 2WD (front wheel drive).



### Reverse Deceleration (4WD)

During reverse deceleration, the dual pump system can engage four wheel drive. When decelerating in reverse direction, the speed of the rear wheels may exceed the speed of the front wheels (due to engine braking). In this condition, the rear oil pump draws fluid through check valves B and C. Fluid discharged from the rear oil pump then flows through check valve E to the clutch piston. There, pressure is regulated by two orifices. The regulated hydraulic pressure at the clutch piston may force the plates and discs of the clutch together to form a connection. The engaged clutch passes driving force from the transfer assembly to the rear wheels, producing 4WD.

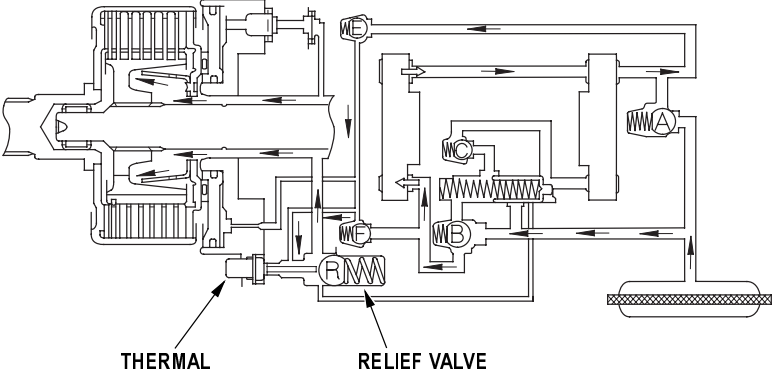


(cont'd)

## System Description (cont'd)

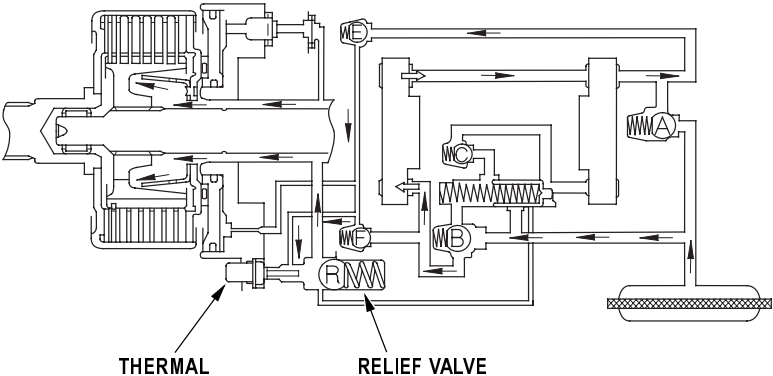
### Thermal Switch Operation (2WD)

During 4WD operation, pressure-regulated fluid is in contact with the clutch piston and the thermal switch. If the temperature of the fluid in the differential goes too high, the thermal switch pushes open the relief valve R. This causes the pressure in the clutch piston to drop, and 4WD mode is disengaged.



### Relief Valve Operation

When the fluid pressure goes higher than the relief valve spring force, check valve R opens. Pressure applied at the clutch piston is held constant. This feature adds stability by preventing the rear wheel drive system from experiencing excessive torque.





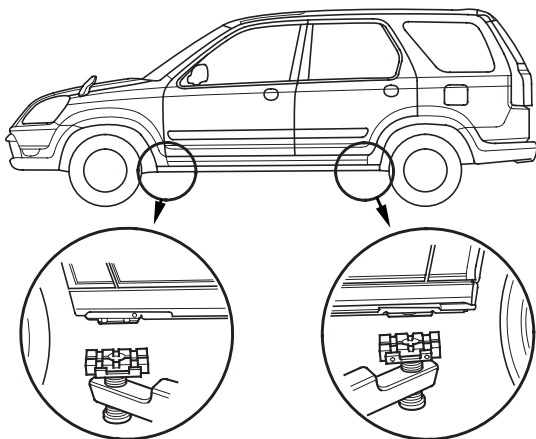


## Dual Pump System Function Test

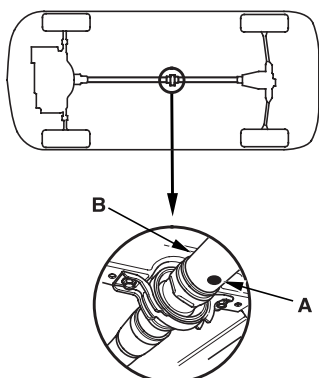
### Automatic Transmission

#### When starting and accelerating in forward gears (4WD mode)

1. Lift up the vehicle so all four wheels are off the ground (see page 01-7).



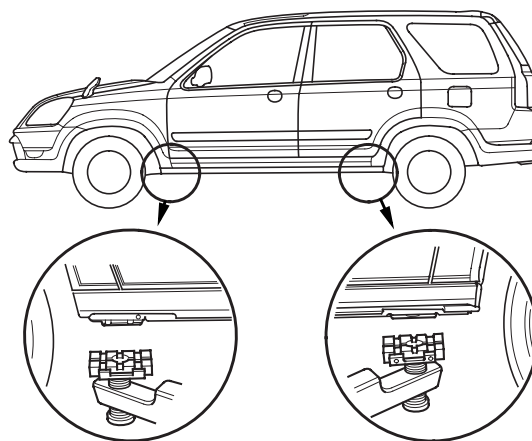
2. Make a mark (A) on either No. 1 or No. 2 propeller shaft (B).



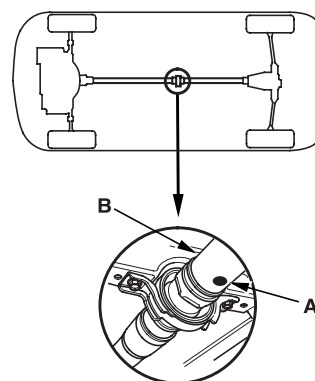
3. Start the engine, and let it run until it warms up (the radiator fan comes on at least twice).
4. With the engine at idle, shift to the [1] position.
5. Apply the parking brake firmly, and measure the time it takes the propeller shaft to rotate 10 times.
  - If the measured time is more than 10 seconds, the 4WD system is normal.
  - If the time is less than 10 seconds, there is a problem in 4WD system. Check the differential fluid. If the differential fluid is normal, replace the torque control differential (TCD) case kit.

#### When starting and accelerating in reverse gear (4WD mode)

1. Lift up the vehicle so all four wheels are off the ground (see page 01-7).



2. Make a mark (A) on either No. 1 or No. 2 propeller shaft (B).



3. Start the engine, and let it run until it warms up (the radiator fan comes on at least twice).
4. With the engine at idle, shift to the [R] position.
5. Apply the parking brake firmly, and measure the time it takes the propeller shaft to rotate 10 times.
  - If the measured time is more than 10 seconds, the 4WD system is normal.
  - If the time is less than 10 seconds, there is a problem in 4WD system. Check the differential fluid. If the differential fluid is normal, replace the torque control differential (TCD) case kit.

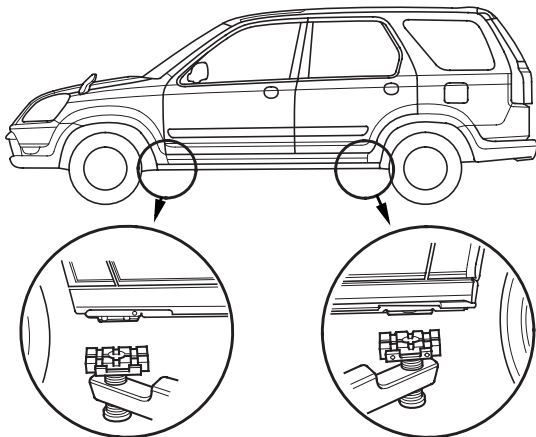
(cont'd)

## Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### Manual Transmission

#### When starting and accelerating in forward gears (4WD mode)

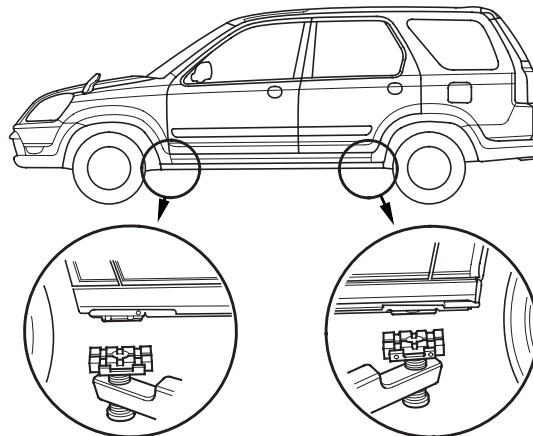
1. Lift up the vehicle so all four wheels are off the ground ([see page 01-7](#)).



2. Start the engine, and let it run until it warms up (the radiator fan comes on at least twice).
3. With the engine at idle, shift into 1st gear and release the clutch.
4. Apply the parking brake firmly.
  - If the engine stalls, the 4WD system is normal.
  - If the engine continues running, there is a problem in 4WD system. Check the differential fluid. If the differential fluid is normal, replace the torque control differential (TCD) case kit.

#### When starting and accelerating in reverse gears (4WD mode)

1. Lift up the vehicle so all four wheels are off the ground ([see page 01-7](#)).



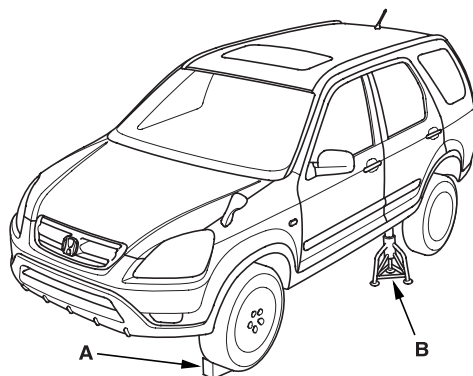
2. Start the engine, and let it run until it warms up (the radiator fan comes on at least twice).
3. With the engine at idle, shift into reverse gear and release the clutch.
4. Apply the parking brake firmly.
  - If the engine stalls, the 4WD system is normal.
  - If the engine continues running, there is a problem in 4WD system. Check the differential fluid. If the differential fluid is normal, replace the torque control differential (TCD) case kit.



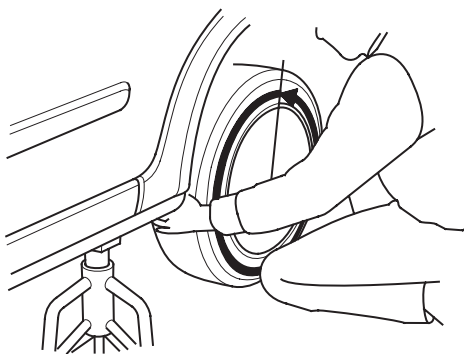
## Automatic Transmission/Manual Transmission

### When decelerating in a forward gears (2WD mode)

1. Block the front wheels (A) raise the left rear wheel, and support it with a safety stand (B) as shown.

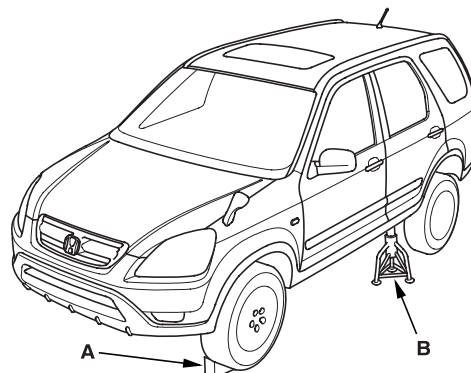


2. Hold the tire and turn it counterclockwise continuously for more than one rotation.
  - If the rotation of the wheel does not gradually feel heavy while rotating, the 2WD system when decelerating in a forward gear is normal.
  - If the rotation of the wheel gradually feels heavy, there is a problem in the system. Check the differential fluid. If the fluid is normal, replace the torque control differential (TCD) case kit.

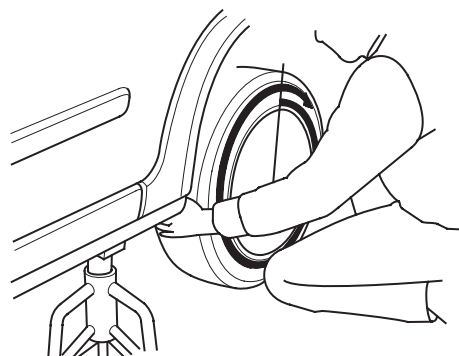


### When decelerating in reverse gears (4WD mode)

1. Block the front wheels (A), raise the left rear wheel, and support it with a safety stand (B) as shown.



2. Hold the tire and turn it clockwise continuously for more than one rotation.
  - If the rotation of the wheel gradually feels heavy, the 4WD system when decelerating in reverse gear is normal.
  - If the rotation of the wheel does not gradually feel heavy, there is a problem in the system. Check the differential fluid. If the fluid is normal, replace the torque control differential (TCD) case kit.



### Symptom Troubleshooting Index

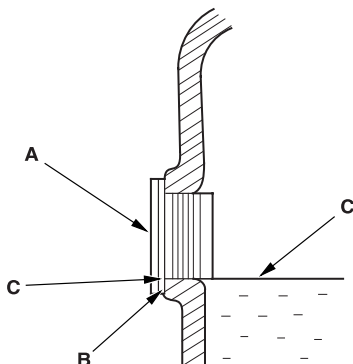
Most problems in the unit are to be diagnosed by identifying noises from the gears or bearings.  
Care should be taken during diagnosis not to confuse differential noises with those from other drivetrain components.

Symptom	Probable Cause	Remedy
Will not go into 4WD mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fluid level too low</li> <li>Incorrect fluid type</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Add fluid</li> <li>Replace</li> </ul>
Will not return to 2WD mode	Incorrect fluid type	Drain and fill the differential
Gear or bearing noises	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fluid level too low</li> <li>Incorrect or worn out fluid</li> <li>Damaged or chipped gears</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Add fluid</li> <li>Drain and fill the differential</li> <li>Replace the differential carrier assembly</li> </ul>
Overheating	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fluid level too low</li> <li>Incorrect fluid type</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Add fluid</li> <li>Drain and fill the differential</li> </ul>
Fluid leak	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fluid level too high</li> <li>Clogged breather hose</li> <li>Worn or damaged oil seal</li> <li>Damaged sealing washer</li> <li>Loose mounting bolts or inadequate sealing</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lower to proper level</li> <li>Clean or replace</li> <li>Replace</li> <li>Replace</li> <li>Recheck torque or apply sealant</li> </ul>

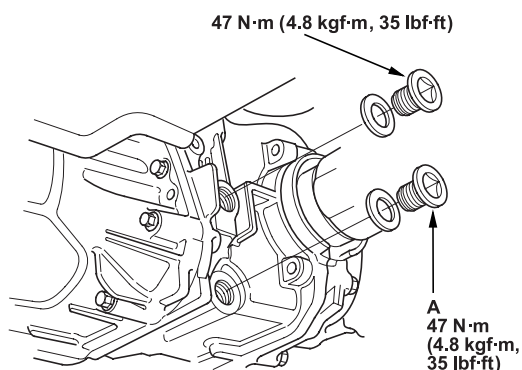


## Differential Fluid Inspection and Replacement

1. With the vehicle on level ground, inspect the differential fluid with engine OFF.
2. Remove the oil filler plug (A) and sealing washer (B), then check the condition of the fluid, and make sure the fluid is at the proper level (C).



3. The fluid level must be up to the fill hole. If it is below the hole, add the recommended fluid until it runs out, then reinstall the oil filler plug with a new sealing washer.
4. If the differential fluid is dirty, remove the drain plug (A), and drain the fluid.



5. Clean the drain plug, then reinstall it with a new sealing washer, and refill the differential with the recommended fluid to the proper level.

NOTE: If you disassembly the differential, check the fluid level again after the 4WD system check is finished. Add fluid if necessary.

### Fluid Capacity

1.0 / (1.1 US qt, 0.9 Imp qt) at fluid change

1.2 / (1.3 US qt, 1.1 Imp qt) at overhaul

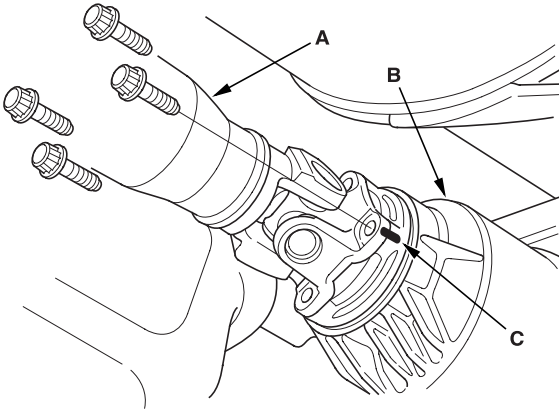
### Recommended fluid:

Honda DPSF (Dual Pump System Fluid)

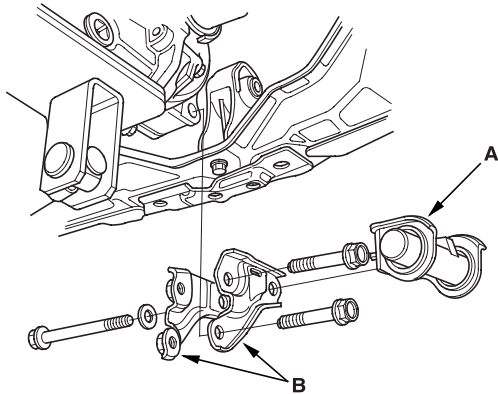
6. Reinstall the oil filler plug with a new sealing washer.

## Differential Removal

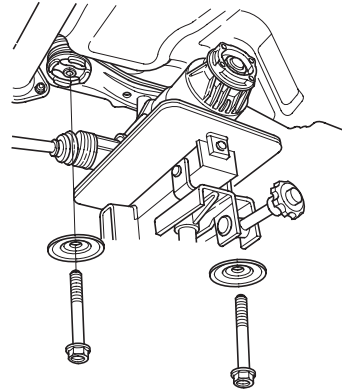
1. Drain the differential fluid ([see page 15-13](#)).
2. Mark the propeller shaft (A) and companion flange of the rear differential assembly (B) so they can be reinstalled in their original positions (C).



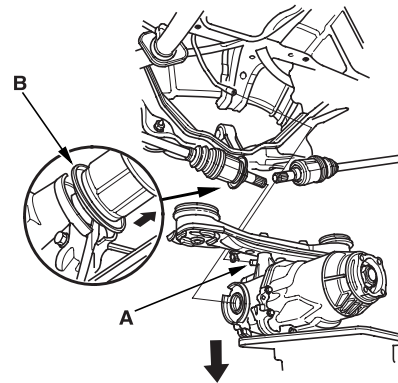
3. Remove the propeller shaft from the rear differential assembly.
4. Remove the EVAP canister assembly with bracket ([see page 11-199](#)).
5. Remove the rear differential damper (A).
6. Place a transmission jack under the rear differential assembly, then remove the right mounting bracket B (B) and the left mounting bracket B (B).



7. Remove the mounting bolts and the plate.



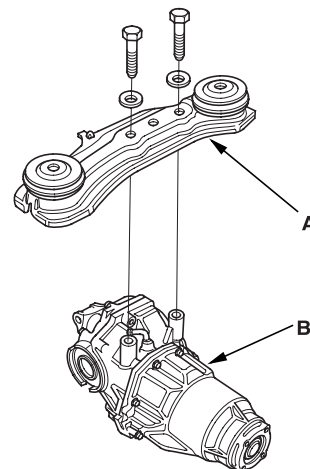
8. Remove the breather tube (A) from the breather tube fitting.



9. Lower the rear differential assembly while pulling both driveshaft inner joints out of the rear differential assembly.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the driveshaft ring (B) when prying out the differential inboard joints.

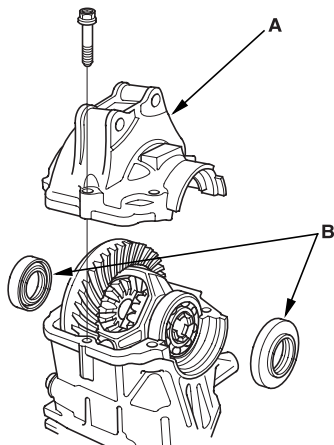
10. Remove the rear differential mount assembly A (A) from the rear differential assembly (B).





## Differential Housing Assembly Removal and Installation

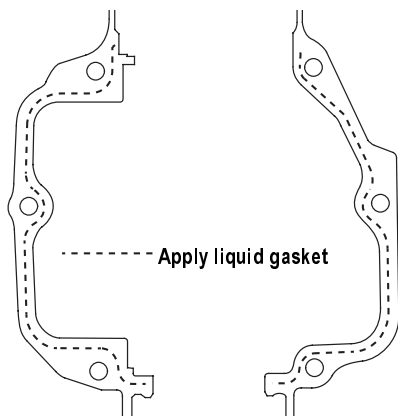
1. Remove the six mounting bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps, then remove the differential housing assembly (A) and oil seals (B).



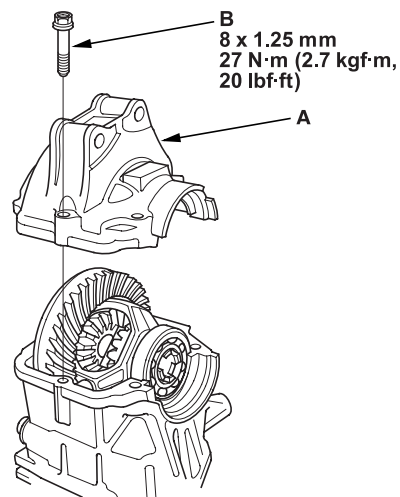
2. Remove the dirt and oil from the sealing surfaces. Apply liquid gasket (P/N08C70-K0234M) to the sealing surface. Be sure to seal the entire circumference of the bolt holes to prevent oil leakage.

### NOTE:

- If 5 minutes have passed after applying liquid gasket, reapply it and assemble the housings.
- Allow it to cure at least 20 minutes after assembly before filling the differential with fluid.



3. Install the differential housing assembly (A), then torque the six mounting bolts (B) in a crisscross pattern in several steps.



4. Install the oil seals.

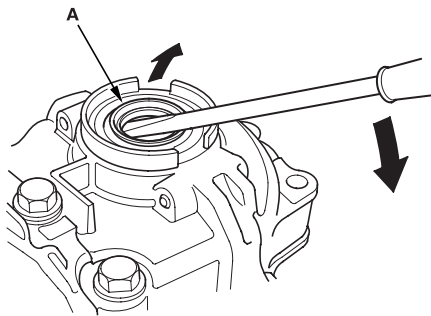
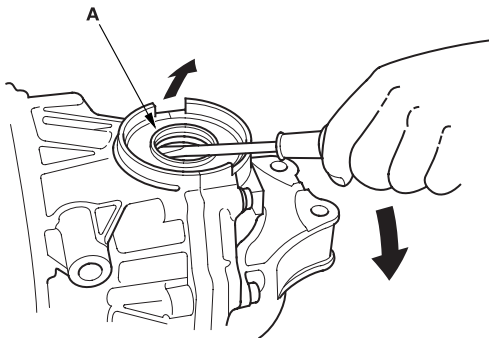
Oil Seal Replacement

Special Tools Required

- Driver 07749-0010000
- Attachment, 78 x 80 mm 07NAD-PX40100

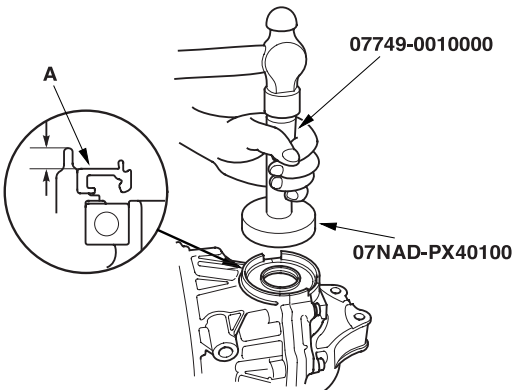
1. Remove the oil seals (A) from the differential housing.

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the differential carrier while prying out the seals.

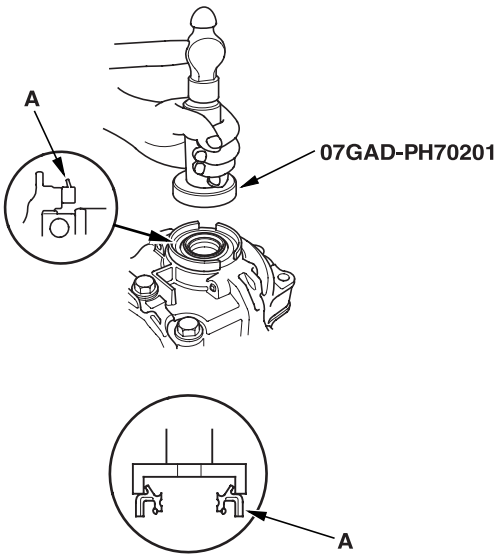


2. Install the oil seals (A) squarely using the special tools. Be careful not to damage the lip of the oil seals.

Right side: Installation depth of the oil seal is 9 mm (0.35 in.) below the edge of the differential carrier assembly.



Left side: Install the oil seal (A) flush with the edge of the differential carrier assembly.

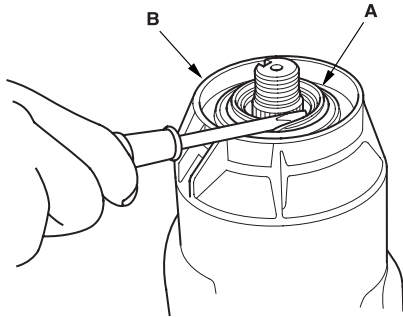




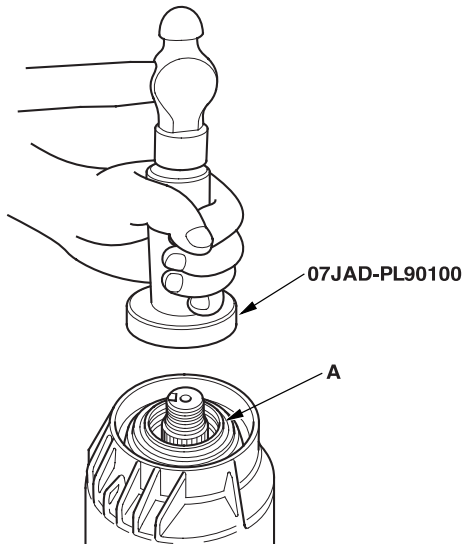


3. Remove the oil seal (A) from the torque control differential case (B).

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the shaft or case while prying out the seal.



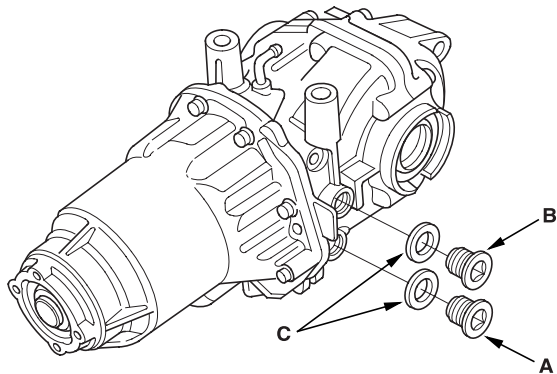
4. Install the oil seal (A) squarely using the special tool. Be careful not to damage the lip of the oil seal.



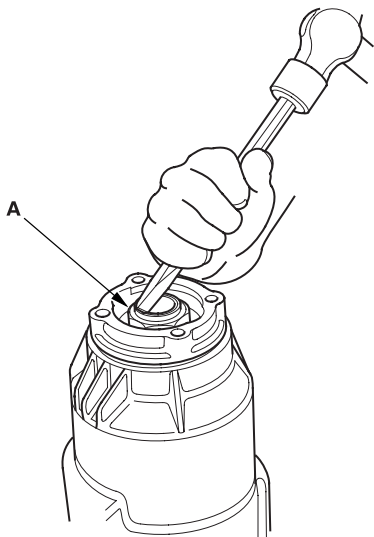
Differential Disassembly

**Special Tools Required**  
Companion Flange Holder 07PAB-0020000

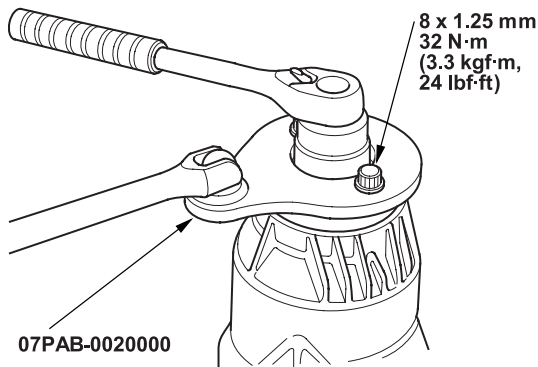
1. Remove the drain plug (A) and the oil filler plug (B) with sealing washers (C).



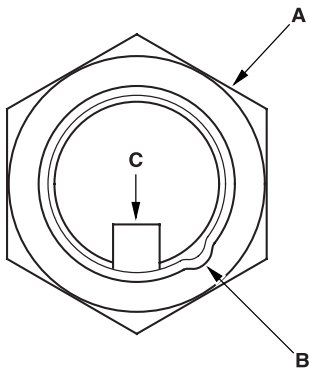
2. Raise the locknut tub (A) from the groove of the clutch guide, making sure that the tab completely clears the groove to prevent damaging the clutch guide.



3. Install the special tools on the companion flange.

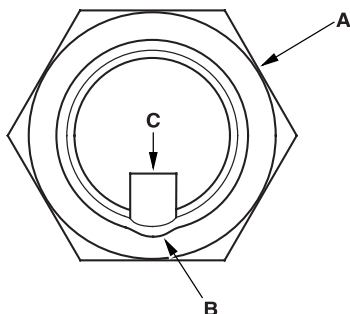


4. Loosen the locknut (A) counterclockwise so that its tab (B) comes out from the groove (C) in the clutch guide.

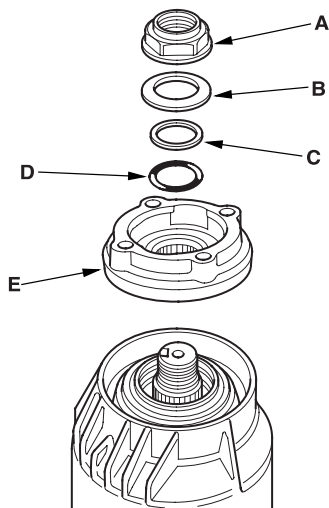




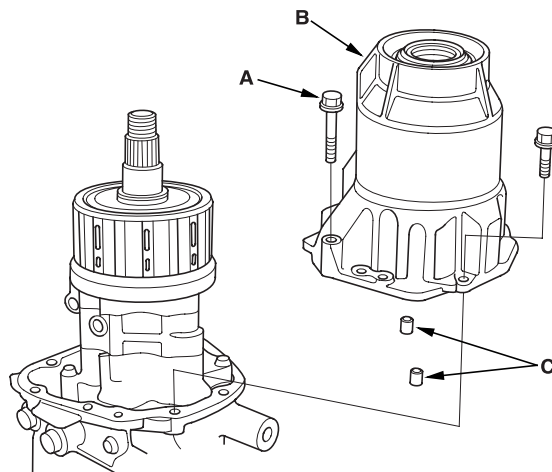
5. Tighten the locknut (A) until its tab (B) aligns with the groove (C).
6. Remove any dirt from inside of the groove in the clutch guide, then loosen the locknut.



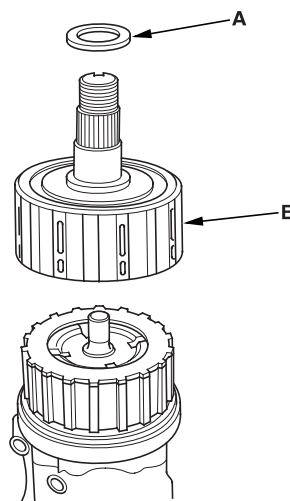
7. Remove the locknut (A), the disc spring washer (B), the back-up ring (C), the O-ring (D) and the companion flange (E).



8. Remove the eight mounting bolts (A) in a crisscross pattern in several steps, then remove the torque control differential case (B) and the dowel pin (C).



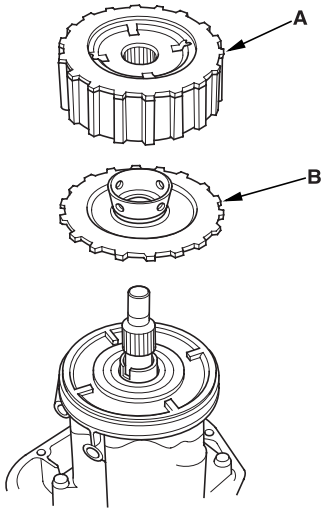
9. Remove the shim (A) and the clutch guide (B).



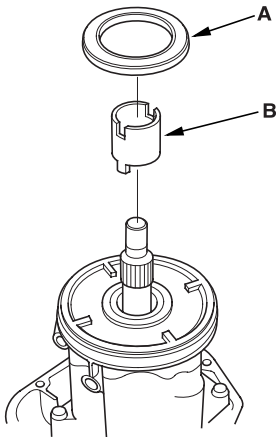
(cont'd)

## Differential Disassembly (cont'd)

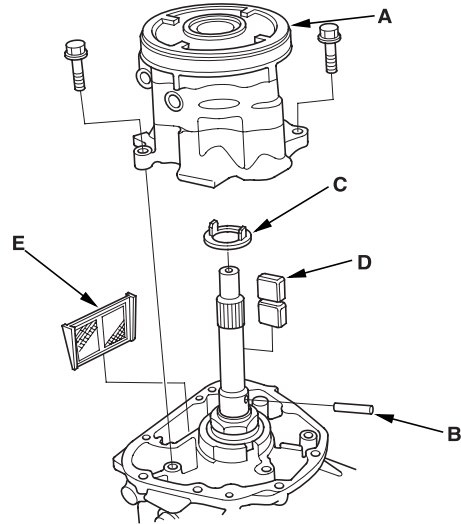
10. Remove the clutch hub/plates/discs (A) and the pressure plate (B).



11. Remove the thrust needle bearing (A) and the oil pump driveshaft (B).



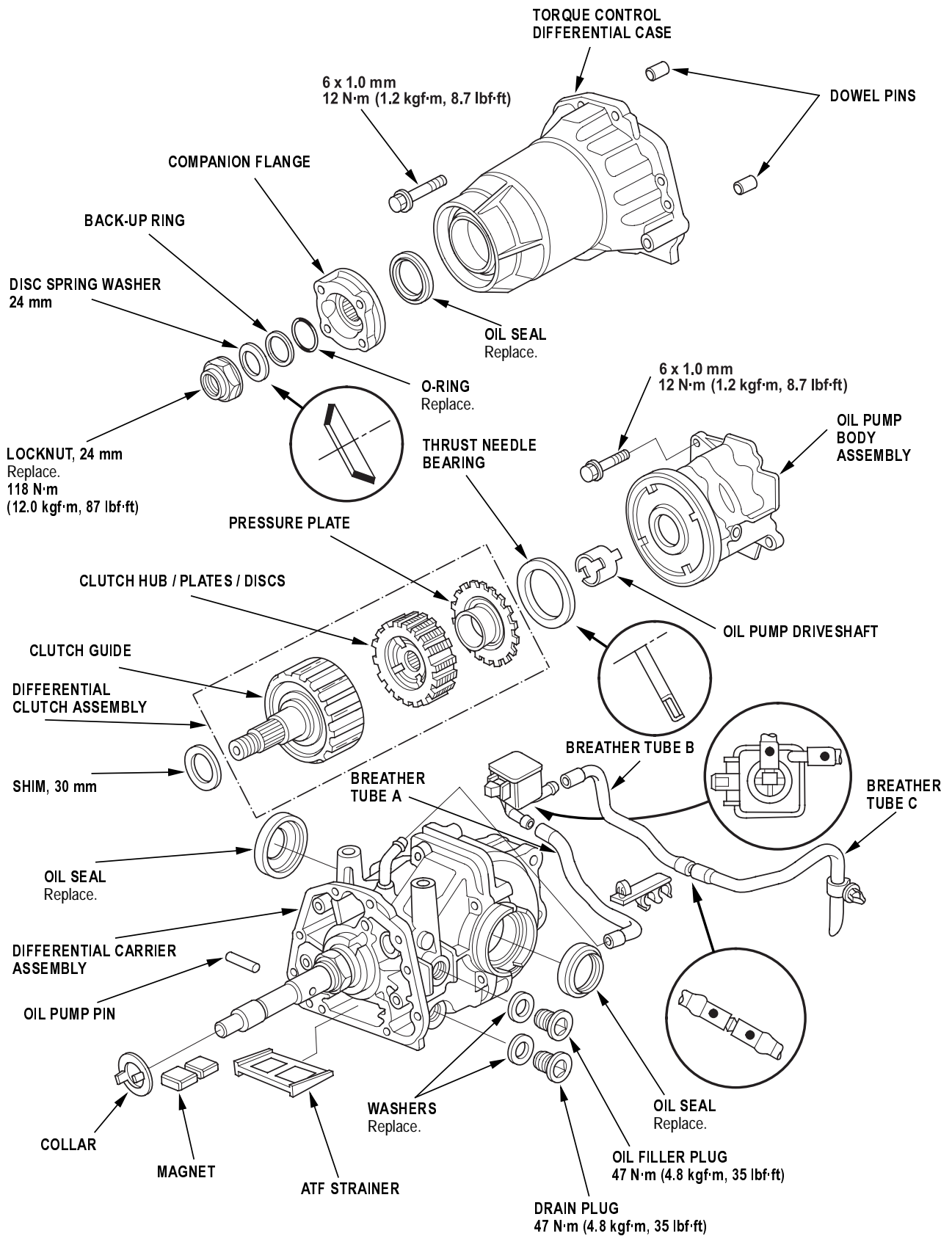
12. Remove the oil pump body assembly (A), the oil pump pin (B), the collar (C), the magnet (D), and the ATF strainer (E).





## Differential Reassembly

### Exploded View



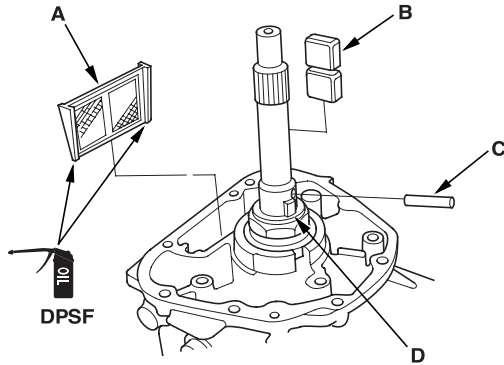
(cont'd)

## Differential Reassembly (cont'd)

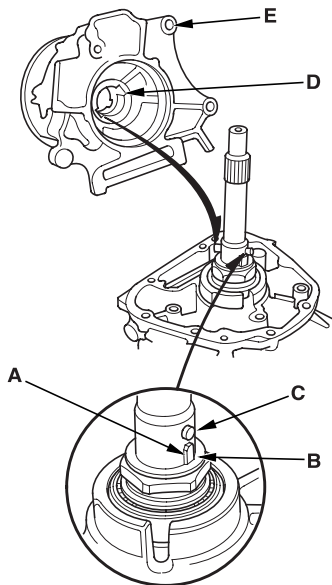
### Special Tools Required

Companion Flange Holder 07PAB-0020000

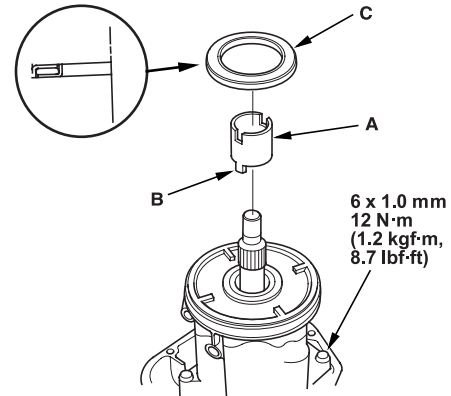
1. Apply DPSF to the rubber of the ATF strainer (A), then install the ATF strainer, the magnet (B), and the oil pump pin (C), and the collar (D) to the differential carrier assembly.



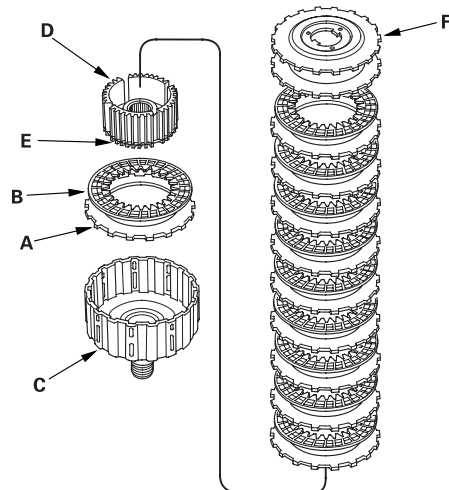
2. Align the tabs (A) of the collar (B) with the oil pump pin (C). Align the grooves (D) of the rear oil pump with the oil pump pin and collar tabs, then install the oil pump body assembly (E) to the differential carrier assembly.



3. Tighten the oil pump body assembly mounting bolts.
4. Install the oil pump driveshaft (A) by aligning the projection (B) of the oil pump driveshaft with the groove of the front oil pump in the oil pump body assembly.

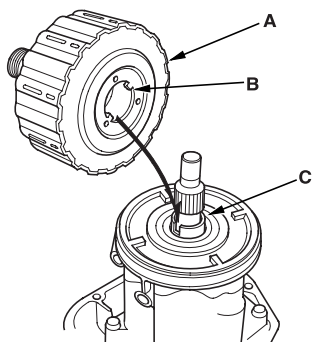


5. Install the thrust needle bearing (C).
6. If necessary, reassemble the differential clutch, and note these items:
  - Install on metal clutch plate (A) and one fiber clutch disc (B) in the clutch guide (C), then install the clutch hub with snap ring (D) into the clutch guide.
  - Make sure the splines of the clutch hub and fiber clutch disc line up below the snap ring (E).
  - Install the remaining metal clutch plates and fiber clutch discs alternately until you installed a total of eleven plates and ten discs, then install the pressure plate (F).





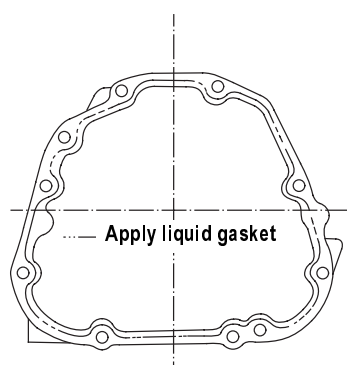
7. Install the differential clutch assembly (A) by aligning the tabs of the pressure plate (B) with the grooves in the oil pump driveshaft (C).



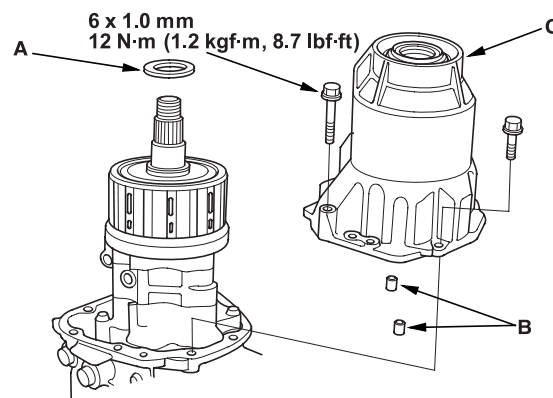
8. Remove the dirt and oil from the sealing surfaces. Apply liquid gasket (P/N08C70-K0234M) to the sealing surface. Be sure to seal the entire circumference of the bolt holes to prevent oil leakage.

**NOTE:**

- If 5 minutes have passed after applying liquid gasket, reapply it and assemble the housings.
- Allow it to cure at least 20 minutes after assembly before filling the differential with oil.

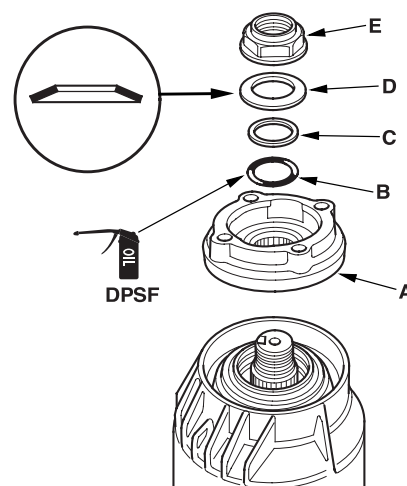


9. Install the 30 mm shim (A), the 6 x 1.0 mm dowel pins (B), and the torque control differential case (C). Torque the eight mounting bolts in a crisscross pattern in several steps.



10. Install the companion flange (A), O-ring (B), back-up ring (C), disc spring washer (D), and the locknut (E).

**NOTE:** Apply DPSF to the O-ring.

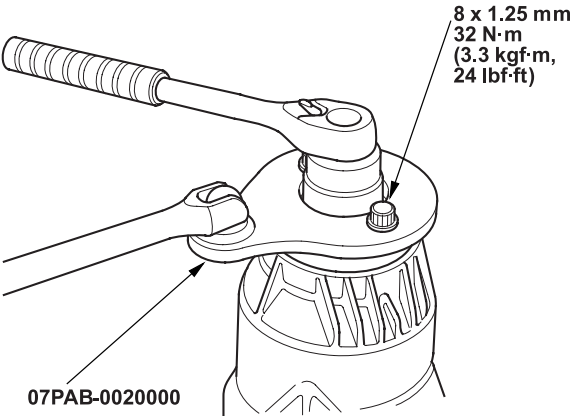


(cont'd)

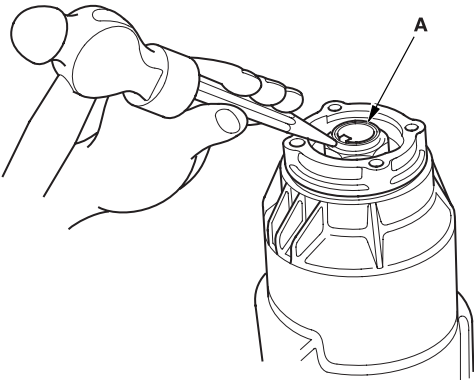
Differential Reassembly (cont'd)

11. Install the special tools to the companion flange, then tighten the new locknut to specified torque.

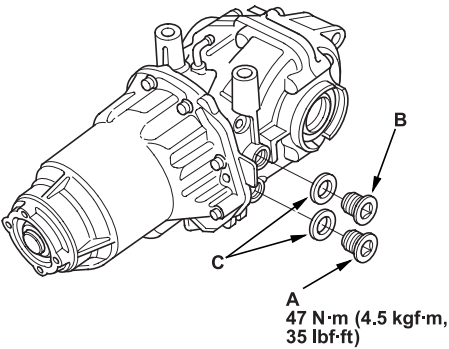
**TORQUE: 118 N·m (12.0 kgf·m, 87 lbf·ft)**



12. Stake the locknut tab (A) into the groove in the clutch guide.



13. Install the drain plug (A) and the oil filler plug (B) with new washers (C).

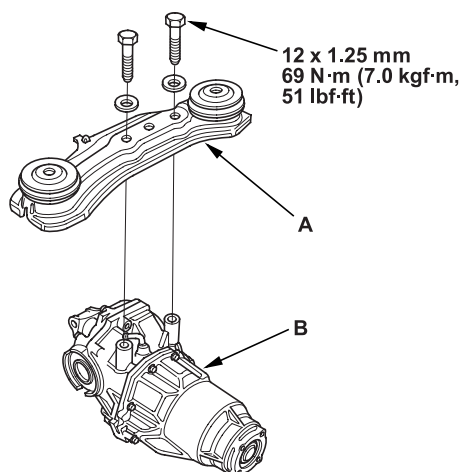




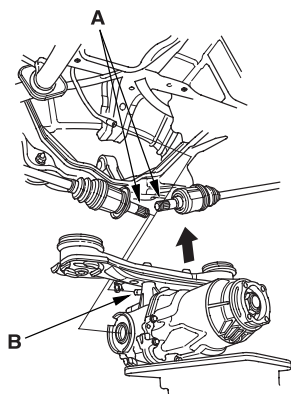


## Differential Installation

1. Install the rear differential mount assembly A (A) to the rear differential assembly (B).

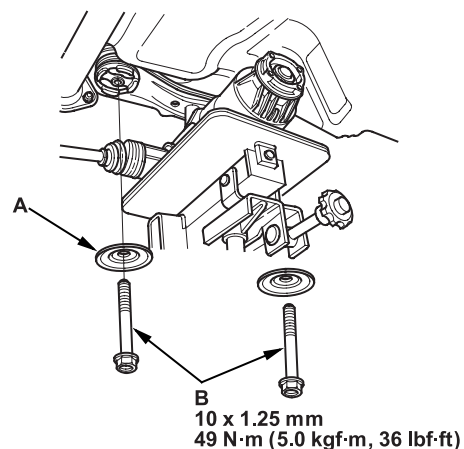


2. Jack up the rear differential.
3. Install the new set rings (A) on to the driveshafts, then install the driveshaft into the rear differential.

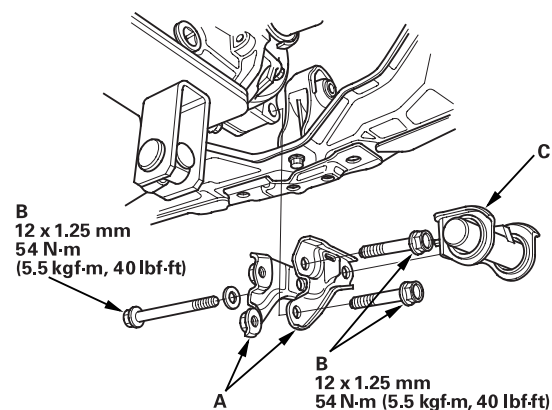


4. Lift the rear differential up into position, then push on both driveshafts to lock the set rings into place. Connect the breather tube (B).

5. Install the plates (A) and torque the rear differential mount assembly mounting bolts (B).



6. Install the right and left rear differential mount brackets B (A) then torque the bolts (B) and damper (C).

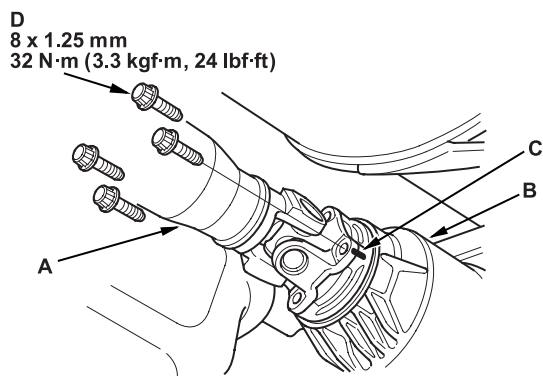


7. Install the EVAP canister assembly with bracket (see page 11-199).

(cont'd)

### Differential Installation (cont'd)

8. Install the No. 2 propeller shaft (A) onto the rear differential (B) by aligning the reference mark (C). Be sure to use new mounting bolts (D).

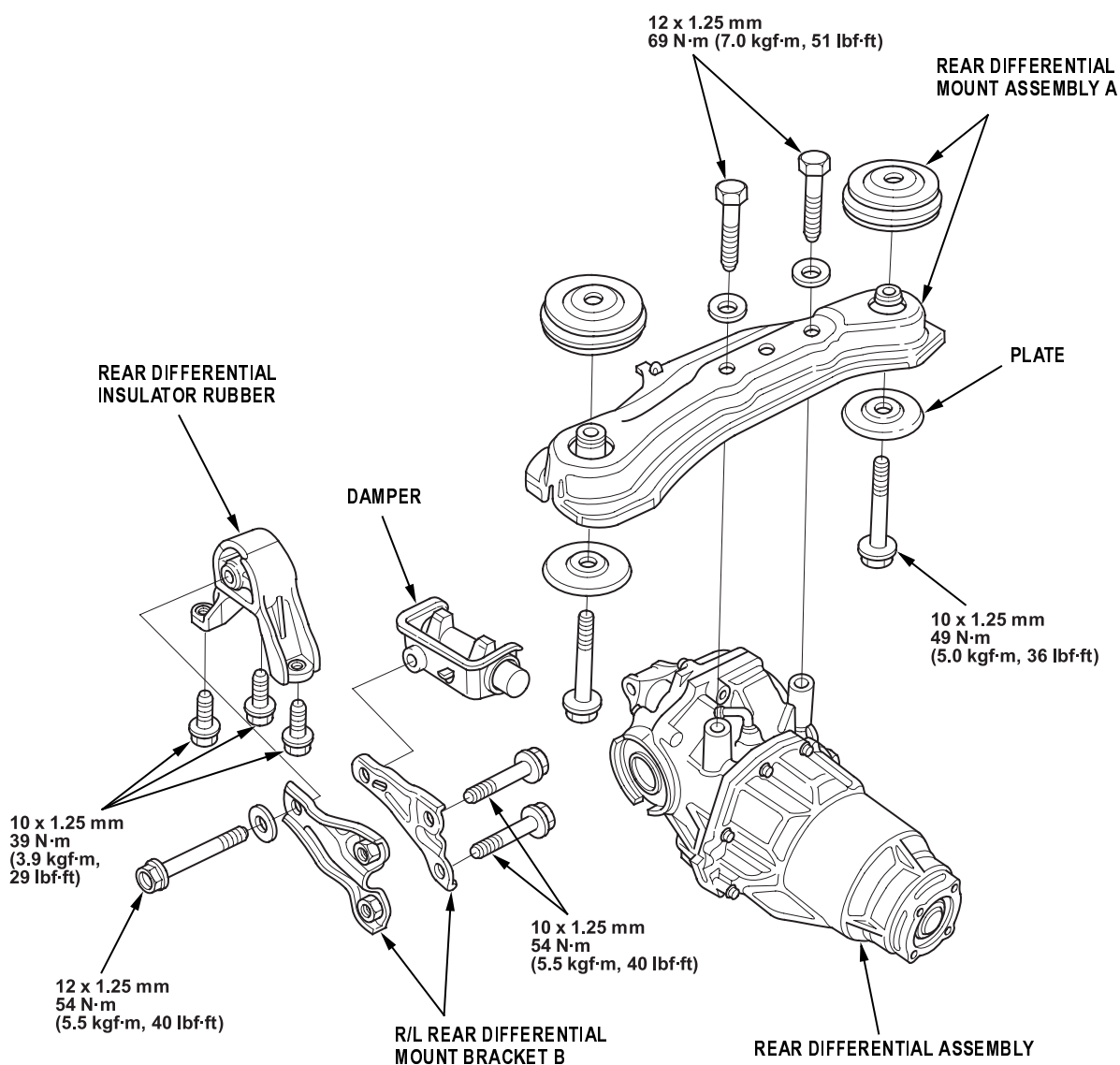


9. Fill the rear differential with the specified amount of DPSF ([see page 15-13](#)).



## Differential Mount Replacement

### Exploded View





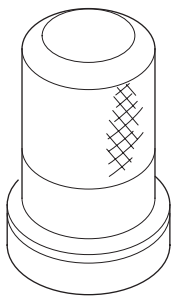
## Driveline/Axle

Special Tools .....	16-2
Driveshaft Inspection .....	16-3
Front Driveshafts Removal .....	16-3
Front Driveshafts Disassembly .....	16-5
Dynamic Damper Replacement .....	16-8
Front Driveshafts Reassembly .....	16-9
Front Driveshafts Installation .....	16-17
Intermediate Shaft Removal .....	16-19
Intermediate Shaft Disassembly .....	16-20
Intermediate Shaft Reassembly .....	16-21
Intermediate Shaft Installation .....	16-23
Rear Driveshafts Removal .....	16-24
Rear Driveshafts Disassembly .....	16-25
Rear Driveshafts Reassembly .....	16-27
Rear Driveshafts Installation .....	16-31
Propeller Shaft Inspection .....	16-32
Propeller Shaft Removal .....	16-33
Propeller Shaft Installation .....	16-34

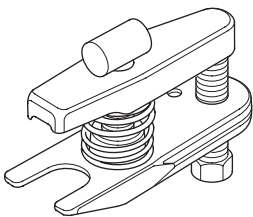


Special Tools

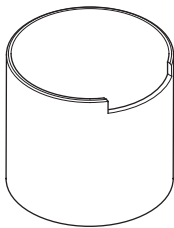
Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07GAD-PH70201	Oil Seal Driver	1
2	07MAC-SL00200	Ball Joint Remover, 28 mm	1
3	07NAF-SR30101	Half Shaft Base	1
4	07XAC-0010200	Threaded Adapter, 24 x 1.5 mm	1
5	07746-0010400	Attachment, 52 x 55 mm	1
6	07746-0030400	Attachment, 35 mm I.D.	1
7	07749-0010000	Driver	1
8	07936-5790001	Sliding Hammer Set	1
9	07947-SB00100	Oil Seal Driver	1



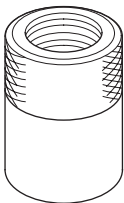
1



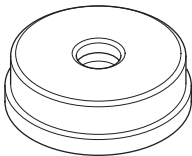
2



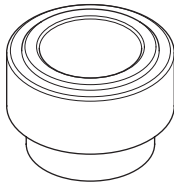
3



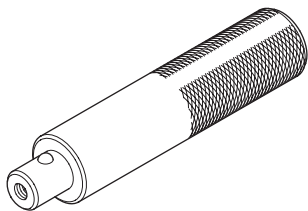
4



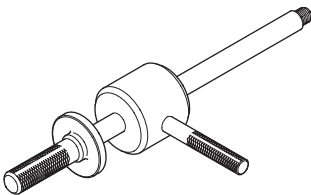
5



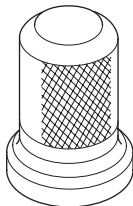
6



7



8

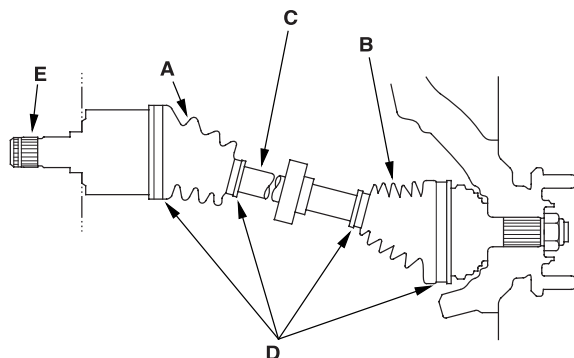


9



## Driveshaft Inspection

1. Check the inboard boot (A) and the outboard boot (B) on the driveshaft (C) for cracks, damage, leaking grease, and loose boot bands (D). If any damage is found, replace the boot and boot bands.



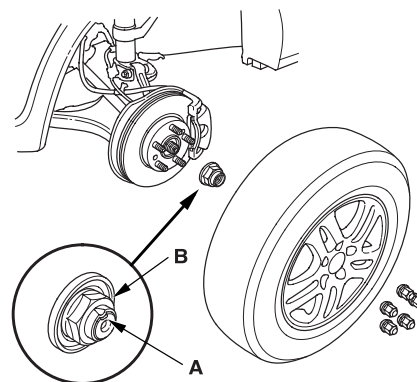
2. Turn the driveshaft by hand, and make sure the splines (E) and joint are not excessively loose.
3. Make sure the driveshaft is not twisted or cracked; if it is, replace it.

## Front Driveshafts Removal

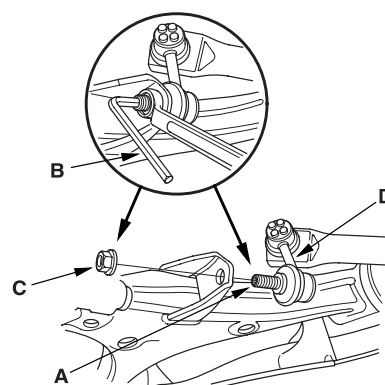
### Special Tool Required

Ball joint remover, 28 mm 07MAC-SL00200

1. Loosen the wheel nuts slightly.
2. Raise the front of the vehicle, and support it with safety stands in the proper locations ([see page 01-7](#)).
3. Remove the wheel nuts and front wheels.



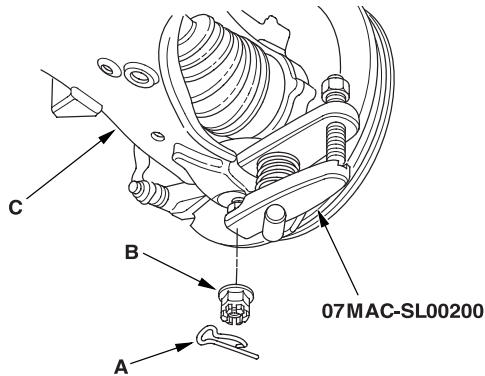
4. Lift up the locking tab (A) on the spindle nut (B), then remove the nut.
5. If the left driveshaft is removed, drain the manual transmission fluid ([see page 13-4](#)) or automatic transmission fluid ([see page 14-131](#)). It is not necessary to drain the transmission fluid when the right driveshaft is removed (for vehicles with intermediate shaft).
6. Hold the stabilizer ball joint pin (A) with a hex wrench (B), and remove the flange nut (C). Separate the front stabilizer link (D) from the lower arm.



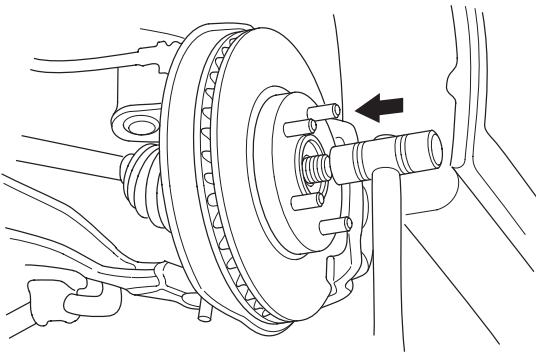
(cont'd)

## Front Driveshafts Removal (cont'd)

7. Remove the cotter pin (A) from the lower arm ball joint castle nut (B), and remove the nut.

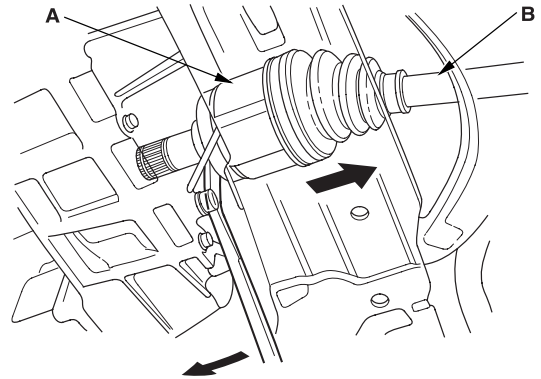


8. Separate the ball joint from the lower arm (C) with the special tool (see page 18-10).
9. Pull the knuckle outward, and remove the driveshaft outboard joint from the front wheel hub.
10. Remove the driveshaft outboard joint from the front wheel hub using a plastic hammer.

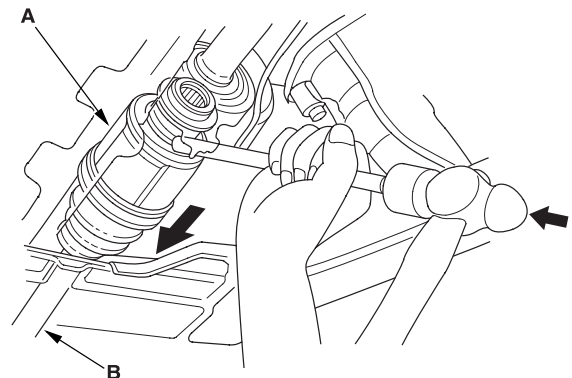


11. Pry (left driveshaft)/tap (right driveshaft), the inboard joint (A) with a prybar, and remove the driveshaft from the differential case or bearing support as an assembly. Do not pull on the driveshaft (B), because the inboard joint may come apart. Draw the driveshaft straight out to avoid damaging the differential oil seal.

Left driveshaft



Right driveshaft







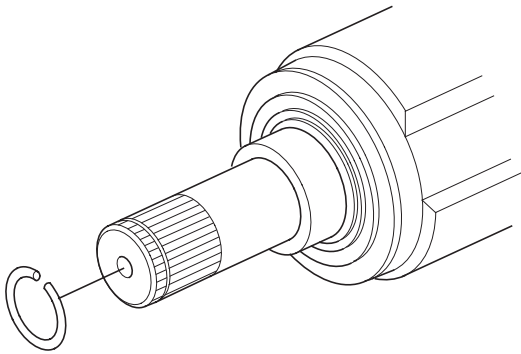
## Front Driveshafts Disassembly

### Special Tools Required

- Threaded adapter, 24 x 1.5 mm 07XAC-0010200
- Sliding hammer set 07936-5790001
- Boot band pincers, commercially available

### Inboard Joint Side:

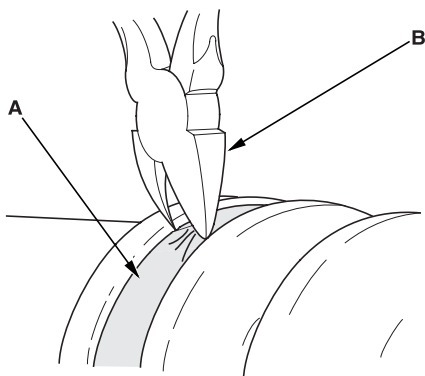
1. Remove the set ring from the inboard joint.



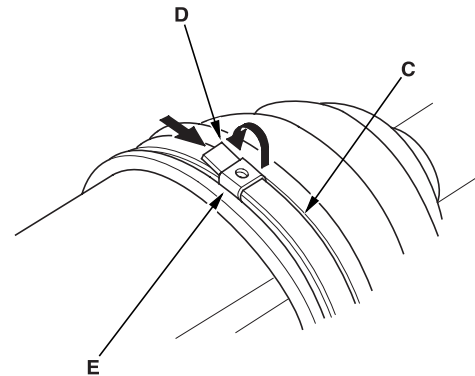
2. Remove the boot bands. Be careful not to damage the boot and dynamic damper.

- If the boot band is a welded type (A), cut the boot band (B).
- If the boot band is a double loop type (C), lift up the band bend (D), and push it into the clip (E).
- If the boot band is a low profile type (F), pinch the boot band using a commercially available boot band pincers (G).

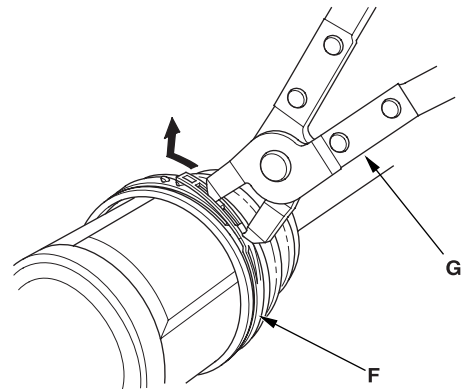
### Welded Type



### Double Loop Type



### Low Profile Type

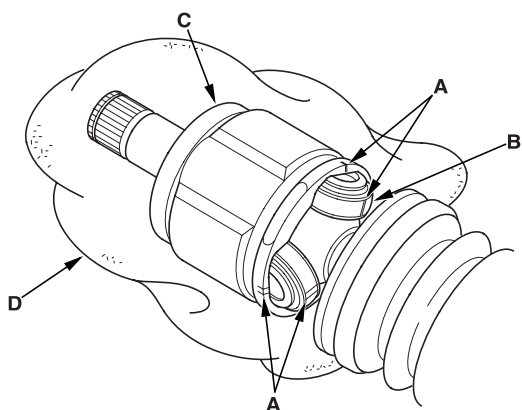


(cont'd)

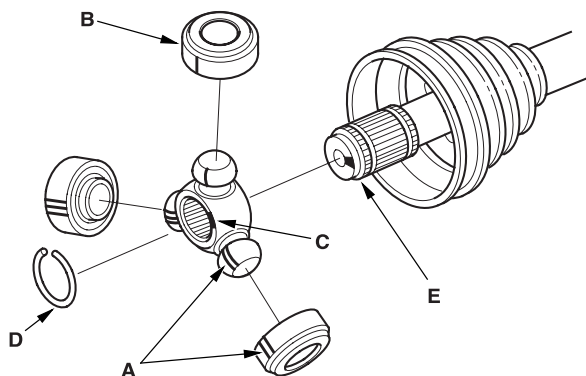
## Front Driveshafts Disassembly (cont'd)

### Inboard Joint Side: (cont'd)

3. Make a mark (A) on each roller (B) and inboard joint (C) to identify the locations of rollers and grooves in the inboard joint. Then remove the inboard joint on the shop towel (D). Be careful not to drop the rollers when separating them from the inboard joint.

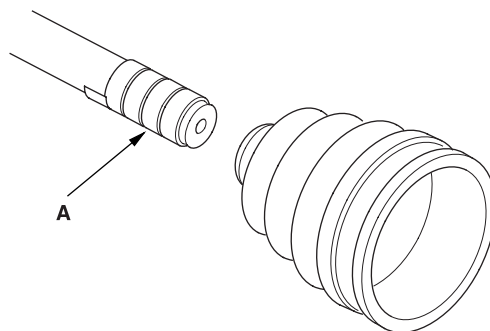


4. Make a mark (A) on the rollers (B) and spider (C) to identify the locations of the rollers on the spider, then remove the rollers.



5. Remove the circlip (D).
6. Mark the spider (C) and driveshaft (E) to identify the position of the spider on the shaft.
7. Remove the spider (C).

8. Wrap the splines on the driveshaft with vinyl tape (A) to prevent damage to the boot.



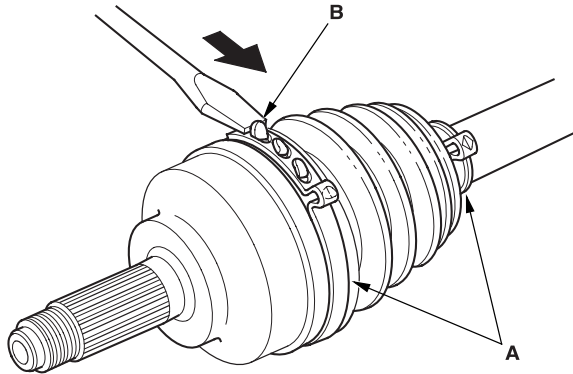
9. Remove the inboard boot. Be careful not to damage the boot.
10. Remove the vinyl tape.



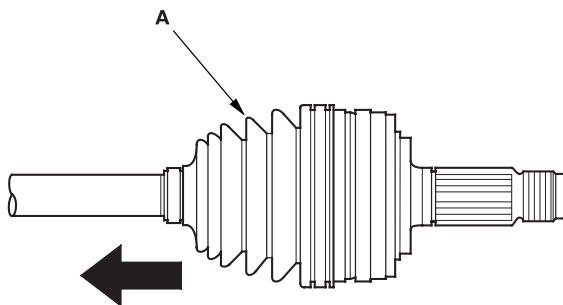
## Outboard Joint Side:

1. Remove the boot bands. Be careful not to damage the boot and dynamic damper.  
If the boot band is an ear clamp type (A), lift up the three tabs (B) with a screwdriver.

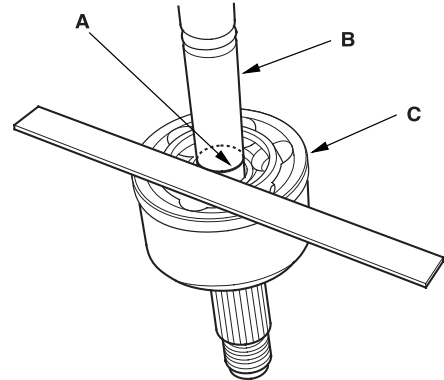
Ear Clamp Type



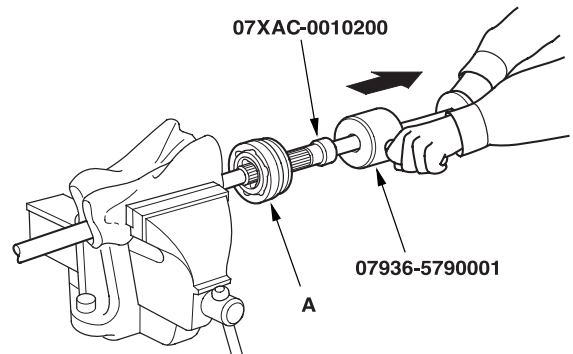
2. Slide the outboard boot (A) to the inboard joint side. Be careful not to damage the boot.



3. Wipe off the grease to expose the driveshaft and the outboard joint inner race.
4. Make a mark (A) on the driveshaft (B) at the same position of the outboard joint end (C).



5. Carefully clamp the driveshaft in a vise.



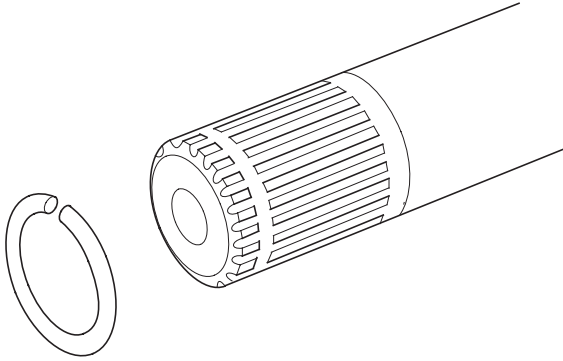
6. Remove the outboard joint (A) using the special tool as shown.
7. Remove the driveshaft from the vise.

(cont'd)

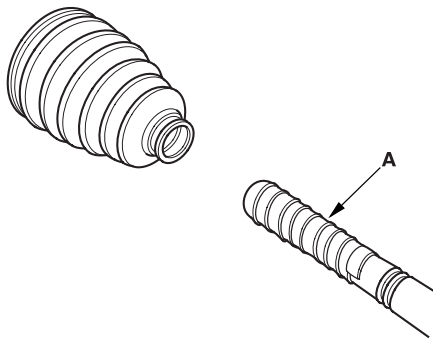
## Front Driveshafts Disassembly (cont'd)

### Outboard Joint Side: (cont'd)

8. Remove the stop ring from the driveshaft.



9. Wrap the splines on the driveshaft with vinyl tape (A) to prevent damage to the boot.

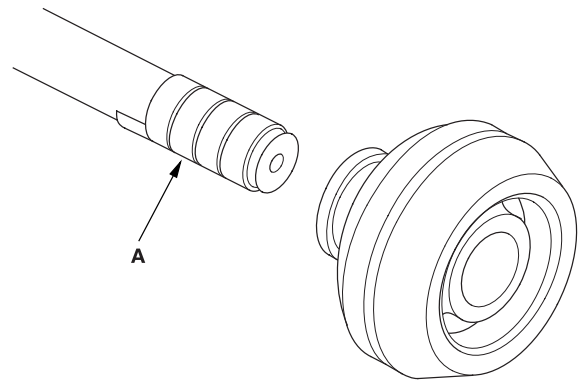


10. Remove the outboard boot. Be careful not to damage the boot.

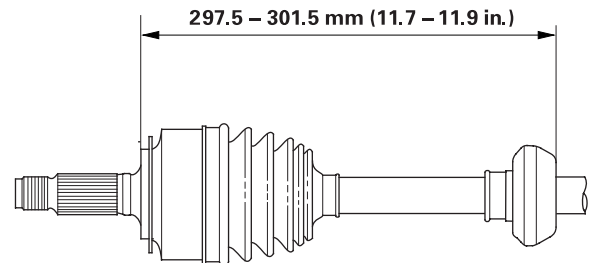
11. Remove the vinyl tape.

## Dynamic Damper Replacement

1. Remove the inboard joint (see page 16-5).
2. Remove the dynamic damper bands. Be careful not to damage the dynamic damper (see page 16-5).
  - If the boot band is a welded type, cut the boot band.
  - If the boot band is a double loop type, lift up the band bend, and push it into the clip.
  - If the boot band is a low profile type, pinch the boot band using the commercially available boot band pincers.
3. Wrap the splines on the driveshaft with vinyl tape (A) to prevent damage to the dynamic damper.



4. Remove the dynamic damper. Be careful not to damage the dynamic damper.
5. Adjust the length of the dynamic damper to the figure below.

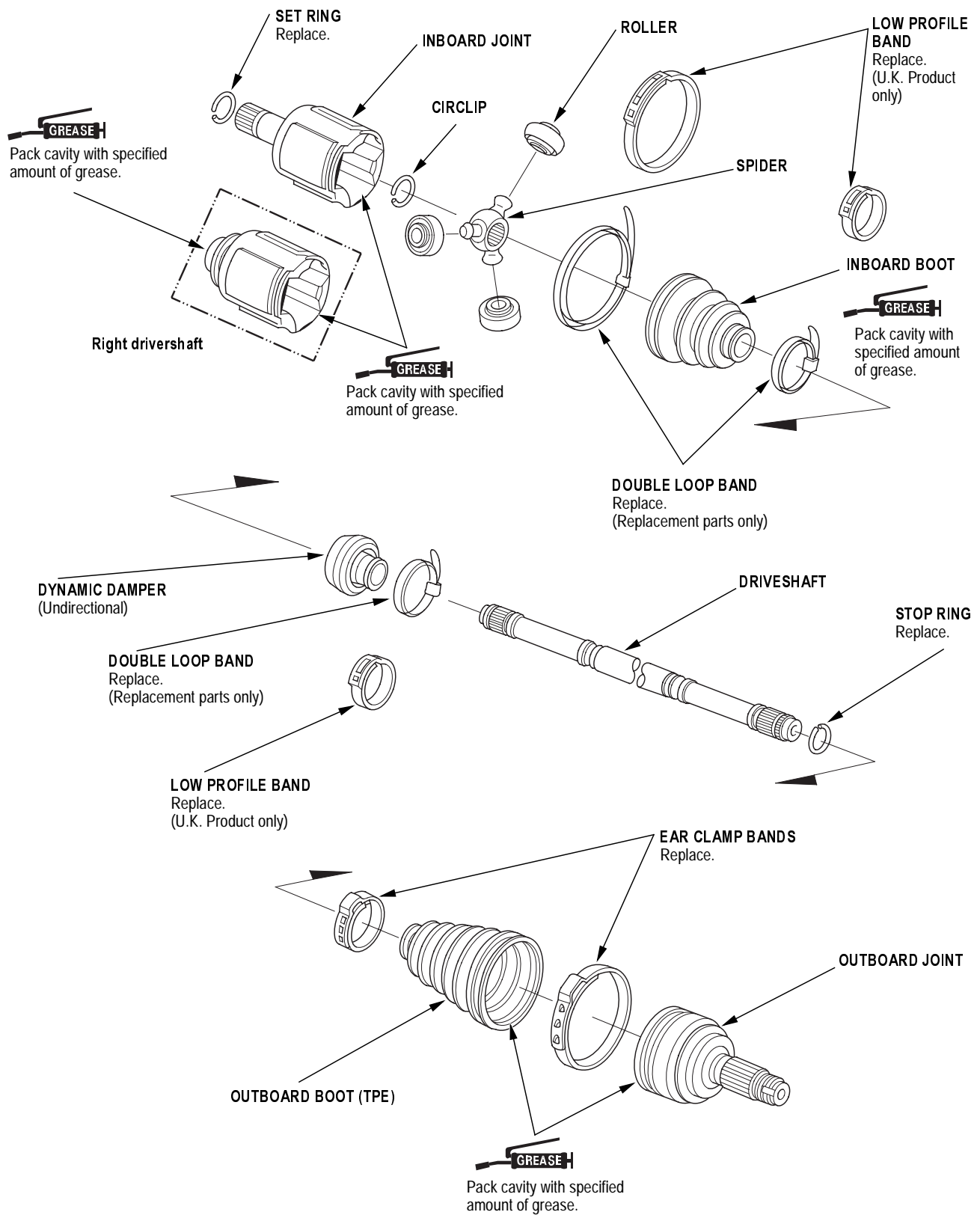


6. Install the dynamic damper band (see step 9 on page 16-11).
7. Install the inboard joint (see step 1 on page 16-10).



## Front Driveshafts Reassembly

### Exploded View



(cont'd)

## Front Driveshafts Reassembly (cont'd)

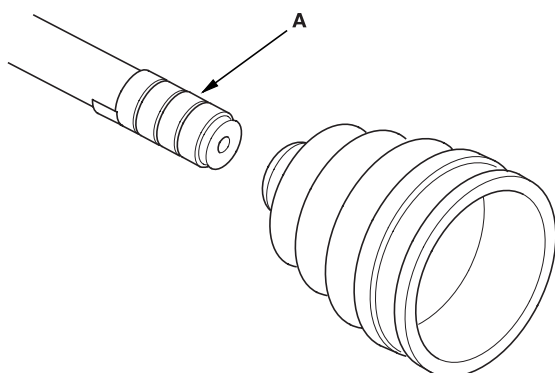
### Special Tools Required

- Boot band tool, KD-3191 or equivalent, commercially available
- Boot band pincers, Kent-Moore J-35910 or equivalent, commercially available

NOTE: Refer to the Exploded View as needed during this procedure.

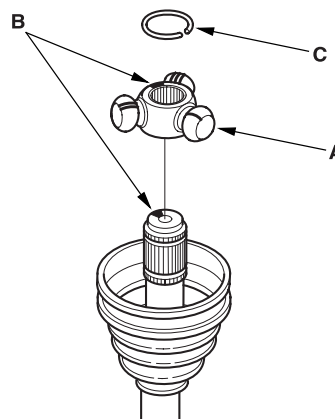
### Inboard Joint Side:

1. Wrap the splines with vinyl tape (A) to prevent damage to the inboard boot.

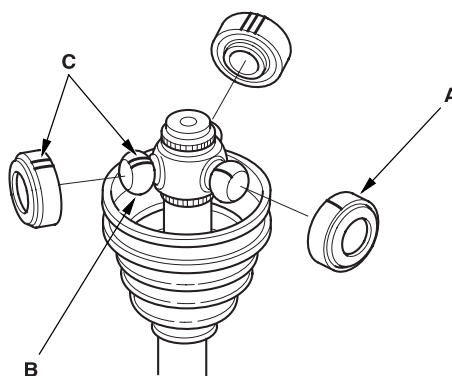


2. Install the inboard boot onto the driveshaft then remove the vinyl tape. Be careful not to damage the inboard boot.

3. Install the spider (A) onto the driveshaft by aligning the marks (B) on the spider and the end of the driveshaft.



4. Fit the circlip (C) into the driveshaft groove. Always rotate the circlip in its groove to make sure it is fully seated.
5. Fit the rollers (A) onto the spider (B) with their high shoulders facing outward, and note these items:
  - Reinstall the rollers in their original positions on the spider by aligning the marks (C).
  - Hold the driveshaft pointed up to prevent the rollers from falling off.

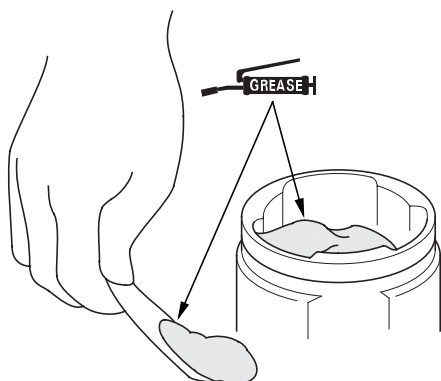




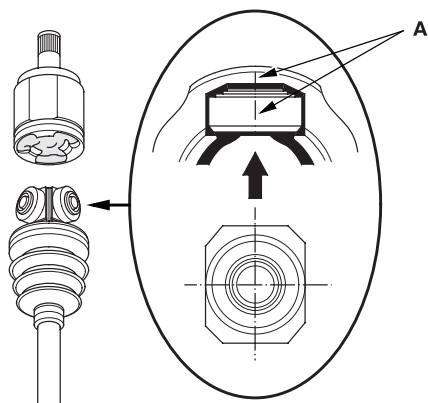
6. Pack the inboard joint with the joint grease included in the new driveshaft set.

**Grease quantity**

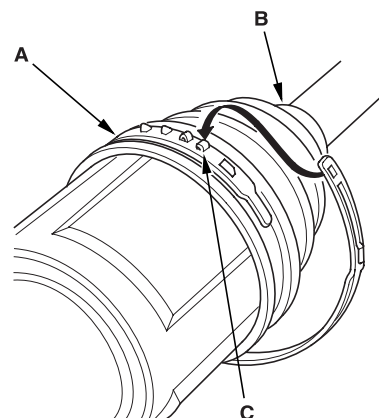
**Inboard joint:** 150 - 160 g (5.3 - 5.7 oz)



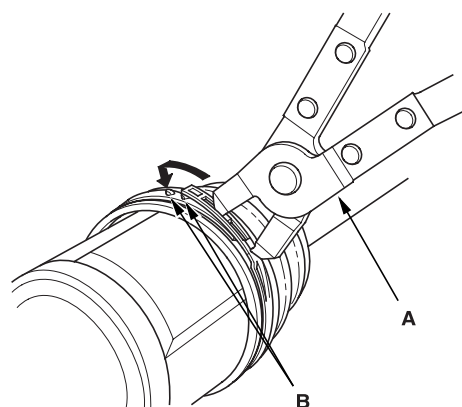
7. Fit the inboard joint onto the driveshaft, and note these items:
  - Reinstall the inboard joint onto the driveshaft by aligning the marks (A) on the inboard joint and the rollers.
  - Hold the driveshaft with the inboard joint pointing up to prevent it from falling off.



8. Make sure the ends of the boot are seated in the grooves in the driveshaft and joint, then install the boot bands.
  - For the double loop type, go to step 12. (Replacement boot bands only)
  - For the low profile type, go to step 9. (U.K. Product only)
9. Install the new low profile band (A) onto the boot (B), then hook the tab (C) of the band.



10. Close the hook portion of the band with a commercially available boot band pincers (A), then hook the tabs (B) of the band.



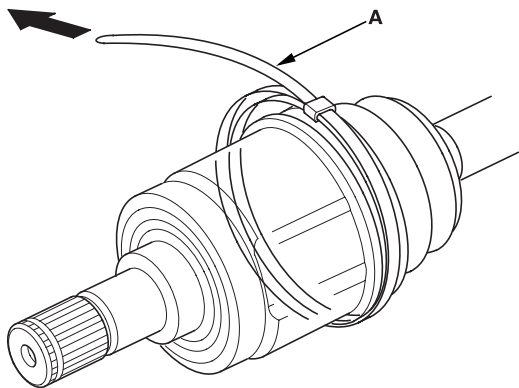
11. Install the boot band on the other end of the boot, and repeat steps 9 and 10.

(cont'd)

## Front Driveshafts Reassembly (cont'd)

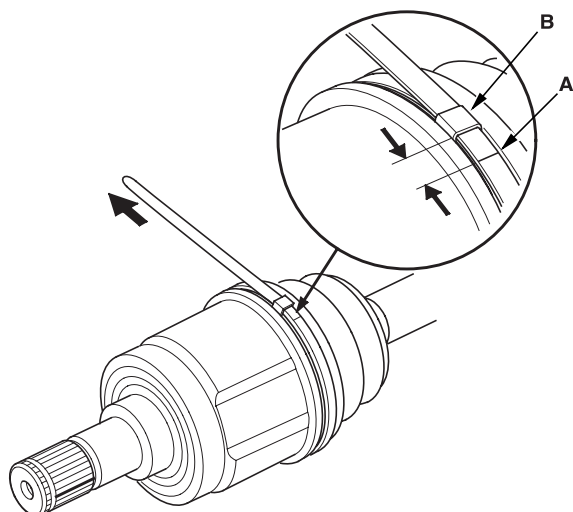
## Inboard Joint Side: (cont'd)

12. Set the new double loop band (A) onto the boot with the band end toward the front of the vehicle.

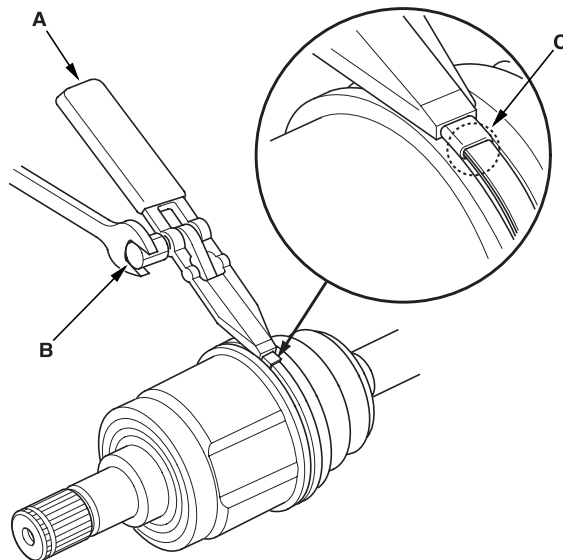


13. Pull up the slack in the band by hand.

14. Make a mark (A) on the band 10 - 14 mm (0.4 - 0.6 in.) from the clip (B).

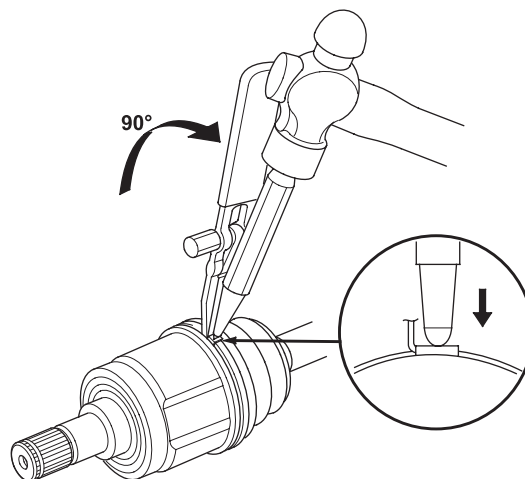


15. Thread the free end of the band through the nose section of the commercially available boot band tool KD-3191 or equivalent (A), and into the slot on the winding mandrel (B).



16. Place a wrench on the winding mandrel of the boot band tool, and tighten the band until the marked spot (C) on the band meets the edge of the clip.

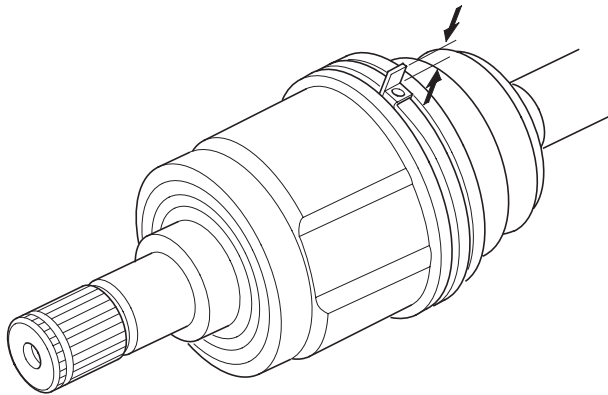
17. Lift up the boot band tool to bend the free end of the band 90° to the clip. Center-punch the clip, then fold over the remaining tail onto the clip.







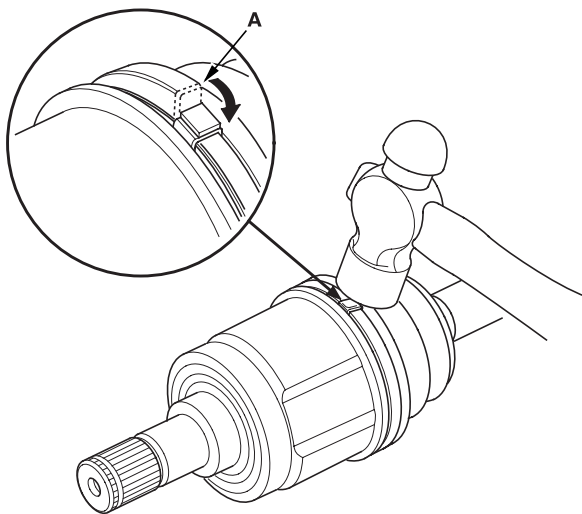
18. Unwind the boot band tool, and cut off the excess free end of the band to leave a 5 - 10 mm (0.2 - 0.5 in.) tail protruding from the clip.



19. Bend the band end (A) by tapping it down with a hammer.

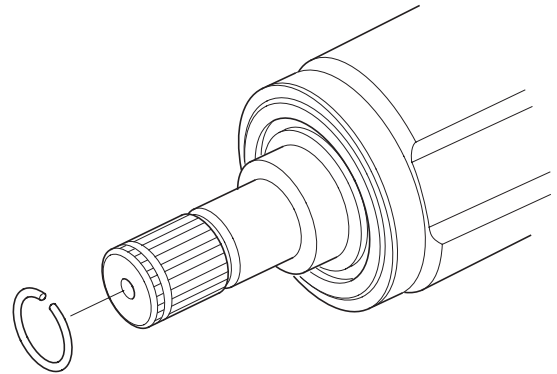
**NOTE:**

- Make sure the band and clip do not interfere with anything, and the band does not move.
- Remove any grease remaining on the surrounding surfaces.



20. Install the boot band on the other end of the boot, and repeat steps 12 through 19.

21. Install the new set ring.

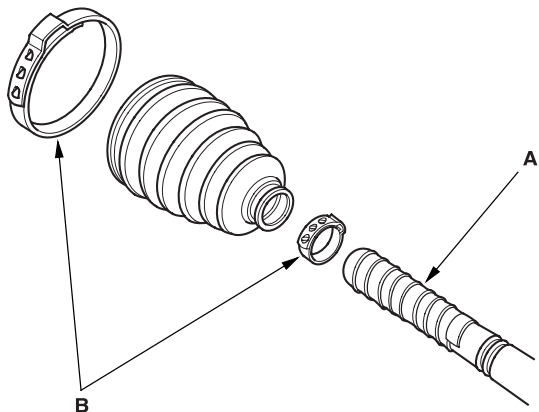


(cont'd)

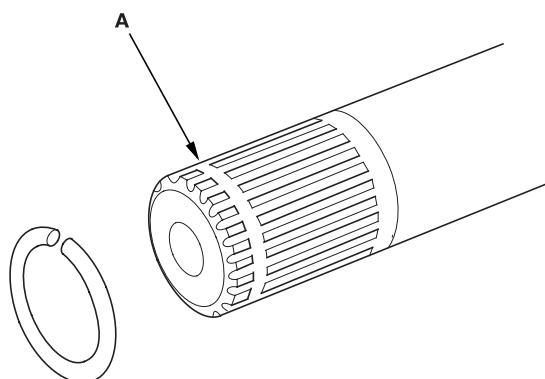
## Front Driveshafts Reassembly (cont'd)

### Outboard Joint Side:

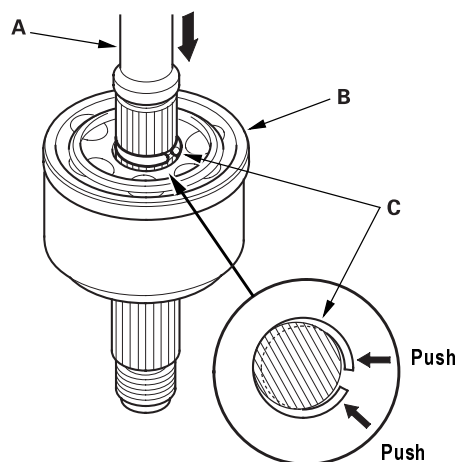
1. Wrap the splines with vinyl tape (A) to prevent damage to the outboard boot.



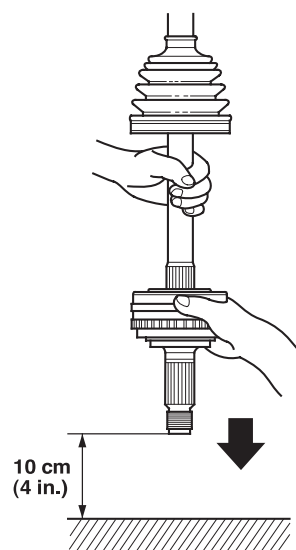
2. Install the new boot bands (B).
3. Install the outboard boot. Be careful not to damage the outboard boot.
4. Remove the vinyl tape.
5. Install the new stop ring into the driveshaft groove (A).



6. Insert the driveshaft (A) into the outboard joint (B) until the stop ring (C) is close to the joint.

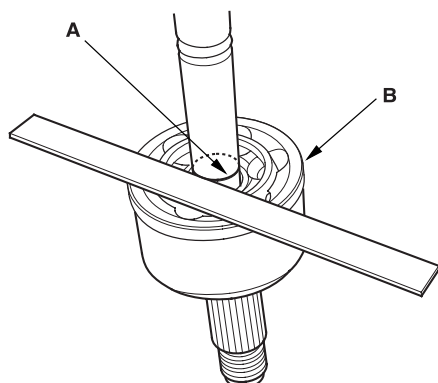


7. To completely seat the outboard joint, pick up the driveshaft and joint, and drop them from about 10 cm (4 in.) onto a hard surface. Do not use a hammer as excessive force may damage the driveshaft.





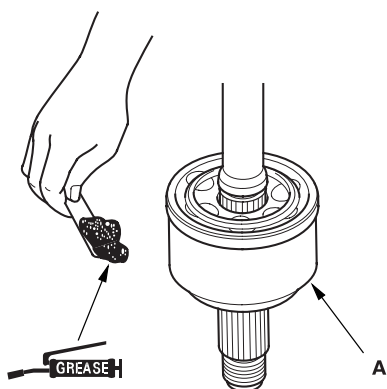
8. Check the alignment of the paint mark (A) with the outboard joint end (B).



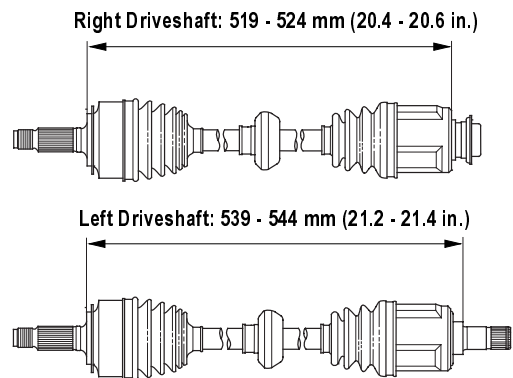
9. Pack the outboard joint (A) with the joint grease included in the new joint boot set.

**Grease quantity**

**Outboard joint: 140 - 150 g (4.9 - 5.3 oz)**



10. Adjust the length of the driveshafts to the figure below, then adjust the boots to halfway between full compression and full extension. Make sure the ends of the boots seat in the groove of the driveshaft and joint.

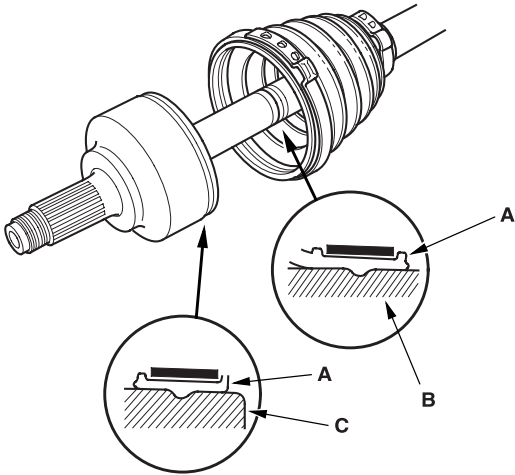


(cont'd)

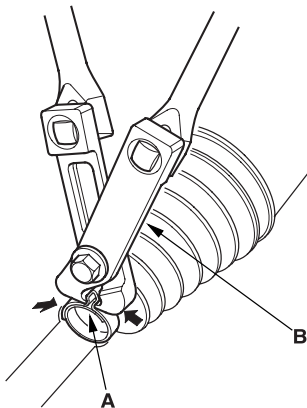
Front Driveshafts Reassembly (cont'd)

Outboard Joint Side: (cont'd)

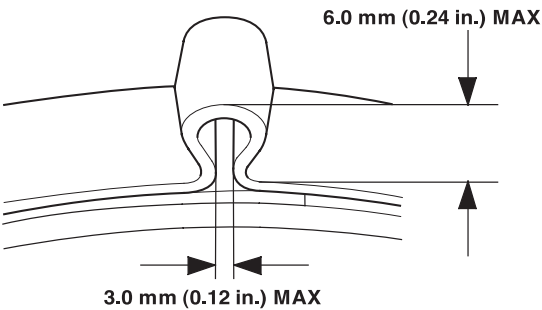
11. Fit the boot (A) ends onto the driveshaft (B) and outboard joint (C).



12. Close the ear portion (A) of the band with a commercially available boot band pincers (B).



13. Check the clearance between the closed ear portion of the band. If the clearance is not within the standard, close the ear portion of the band further.

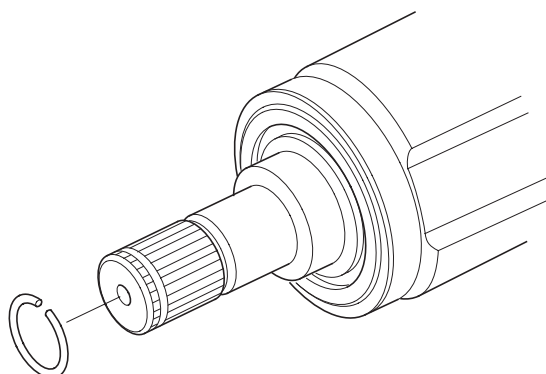


14. Repeat steps 13 and 14 for the band on the other end of the boot.

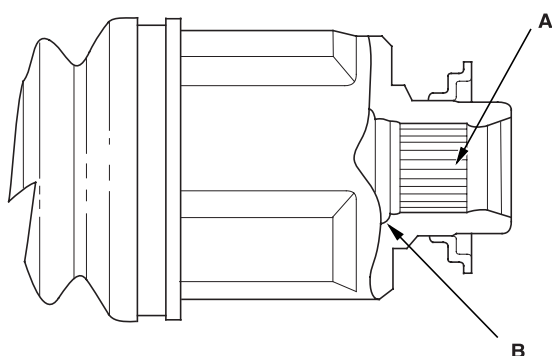


## Front Driveshafts Installation

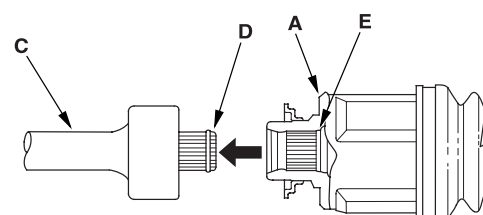
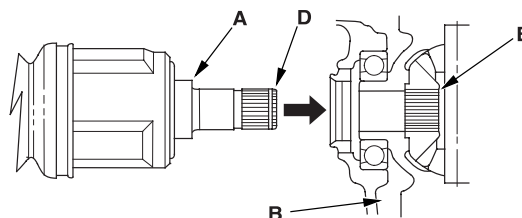
1. Install a new set ring onto the set ring groove of the driveshaft (left driveshaft).



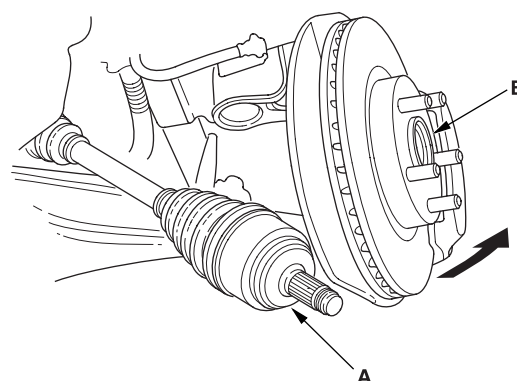
2. Apply 0.5 - 1.0 g (0.02 - 0.04 oz) of specified grease to the whole splined surface (A) of the right driveshaft. After applying grease, remove the grease from the splined grooves at intervals of 2 - 3 splines and from the set ring groove (B) so that air can bleed from the intermediate shaft.



3. Clean the areas where the driveshaft contacts the differential thoroughly with solvent or carburetor cleaner, and dry with compressed air. Insert the inboard end (A) of the driveshaft into the differential (B) or intermediate shaft (C) until the set ring (D) locks in the groove (E).



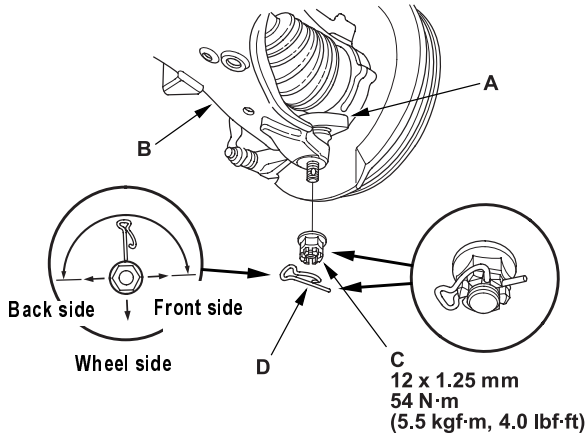
4. Install the outboard joint (A) into the front hub (B).



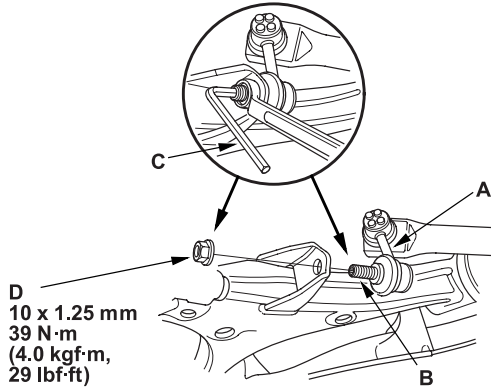
(cont'd)

## Front Driveshafts Installation (cont'd)

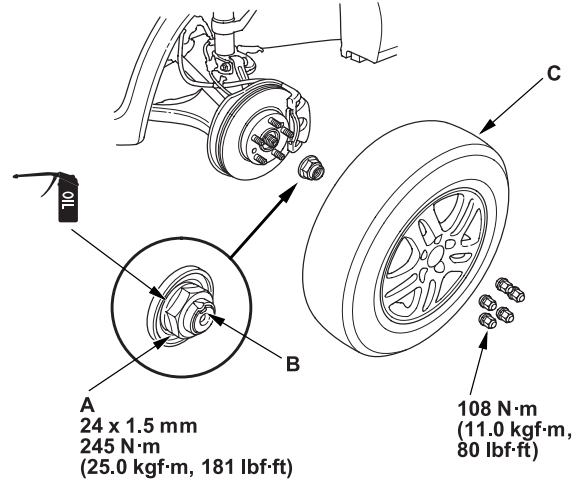
5. Install the knuckle (A) onto the lower arm (B). Wipe off the grease before tightening the nut at the ball joint. Torque the castle nut (C) to the lower torque specification, then tighten it only far enough to align the slot with the pin hole. Do not align the nut by loosening.



6. Install the new lock pin (D) into the pin hole as shown.
7. Connect the front stabilizer link (A) to the lower arm. Hold the stabilizer link ball ball pin (B) with a hex wrench (C), and tighten the new flange nut (D).



8. Install a new spindle nut (A), then tighten the nut. After tightening, use a drift to stake the spindle nut shoulder (B) against the driveshaft.

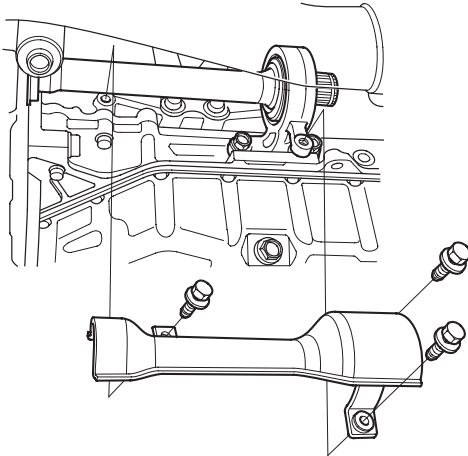


9. Clean the mating surfaces of the brake disc and the front wheel, then install the front wheel with the wheel nuts.
10. Refill the transmission with recommended manual transmission fluid (see page 13-4), or automatic transmission fluid (see page 14-131).
11. Check the front wheel alignment, and adjust it if necessary (see page 18-4).

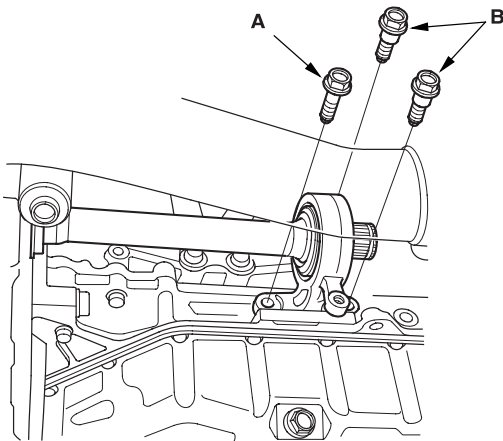


### Intermediate Shaft Removal

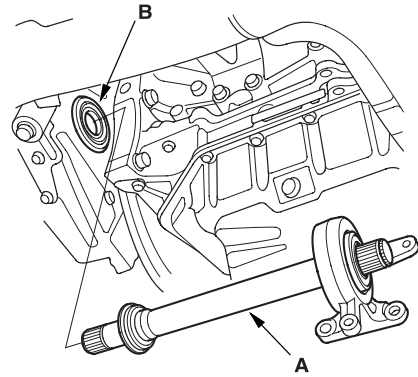
1. Remove the right driveshaft ([see page 16-3](#))
2. Remove the heat cover.



3. Remove the flange bolt (A) and two dowel bolts (B).



4. Remove the intermediate shaft (A) from the differential. Hold the intermediate shaft horizontal until it is clear of the differential to prevent damage to the differential oil seal (B).

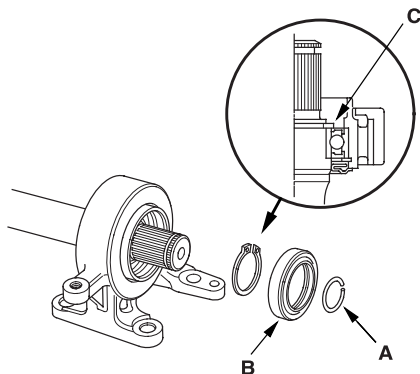


## Intermediate Shaft Disassembly

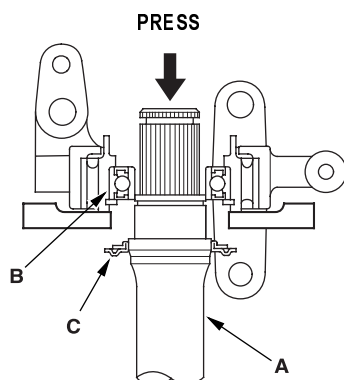
### Special Tools Required

- Oil seal driver 07947-SB00100
- Half shaft base 07NAF-SR30101

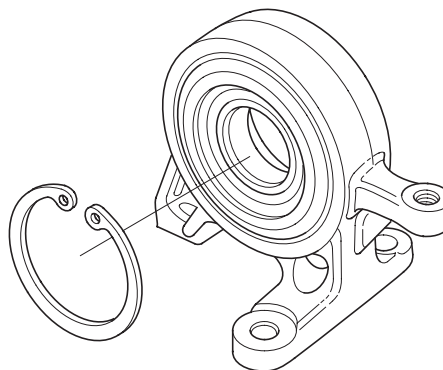
1. Remove the set ring (A), outer seal (B), and external snap ring (C).



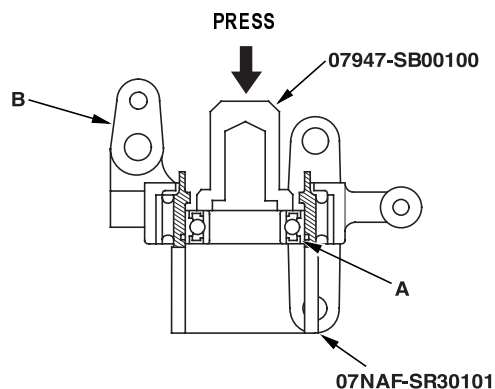
2. Press the intermediate shaft (A) out of the intermediate shaft bearing (B) using a press. Be careful not to damage the metal rings (C) on the intermediate shaft during disassembly.



3. Remove the internal snap ring.



4. Press the intermediate shaft bearing (A) out of the bearing support (B) using the special tools and a press.

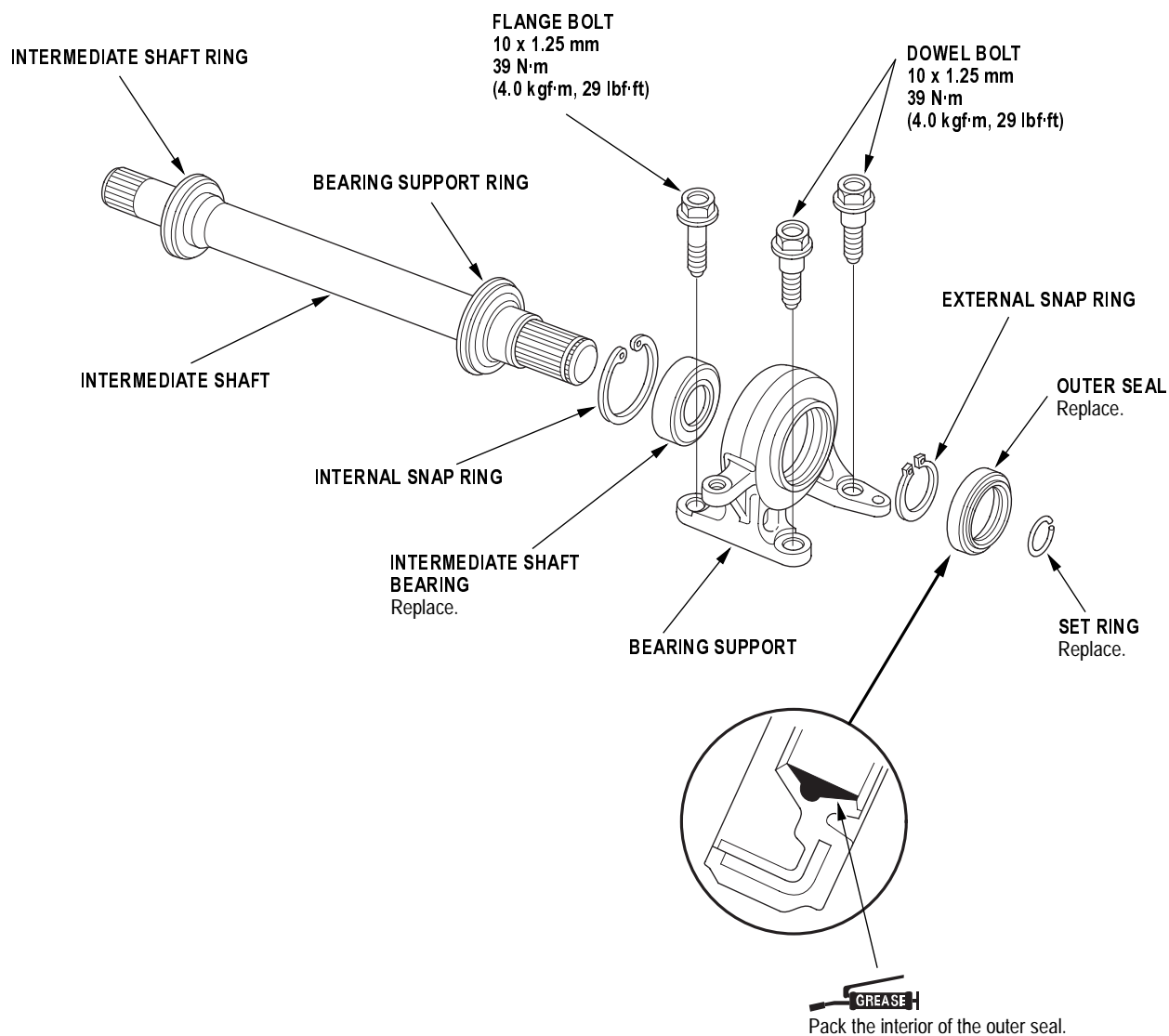






## Intermediate Shaft Reassembly

### Exploded View



(cont'd)

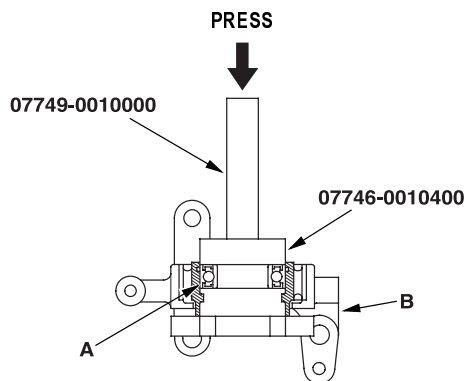
## Intermediate Shaft Reassembly (cont'd)

### Special Tools Required

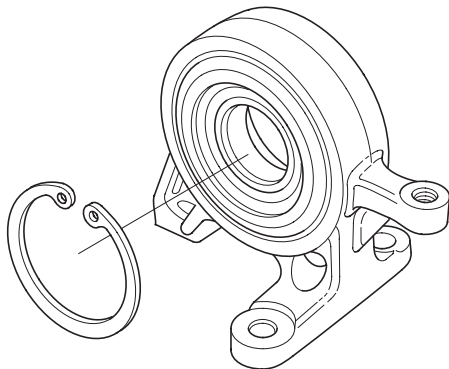
- Driver 07749-0010000
- Attachment, 52 x 55 mm 07746-0010400
- Attachment, 35 mm I.D. 07746-0030400
- Oil seal driver 07GAD-PH70201

NOTE: Refer to the Exploded View as needed during this procedure.

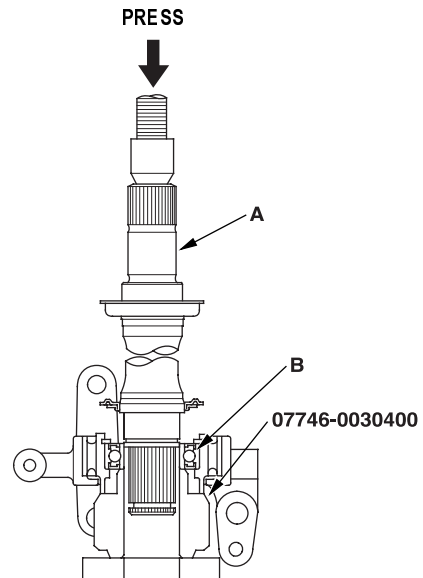
1. Clean the disassembled parts with solvent, and dry them with compressed air. Do not wash the rubber parts with solvent.
2. Press the intermediate shaft bearing (A) into the bearing support (B) using the special tools and a press.



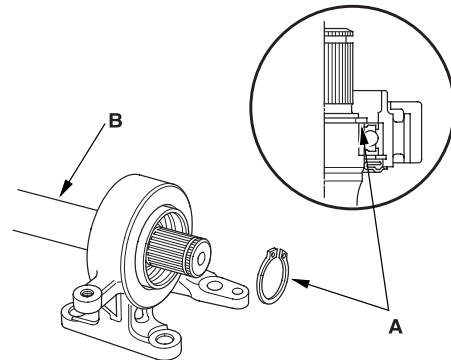
3. Seat the internal snap ring into the groove of the bearing support.



4. Press the intermediate shaft (A) into the shaft bearing (B) using the special tool and a press.

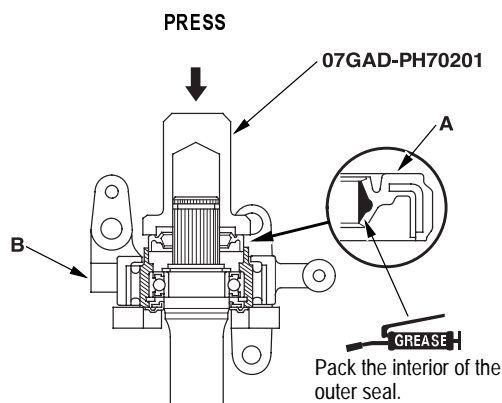


5. Seat the external snap ring (A) into the groove of the intermediate shaft (B).

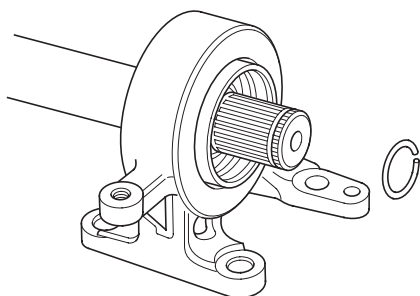




6. Install the outer seal (A) into the bearing support (B) using the special tool and a press.

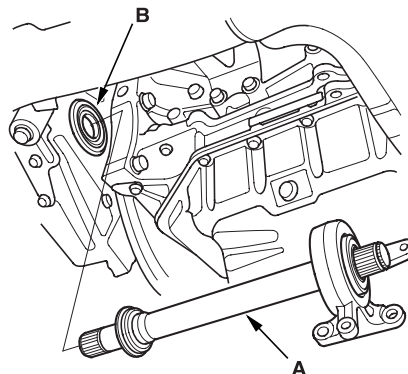


7. Install the set ring.

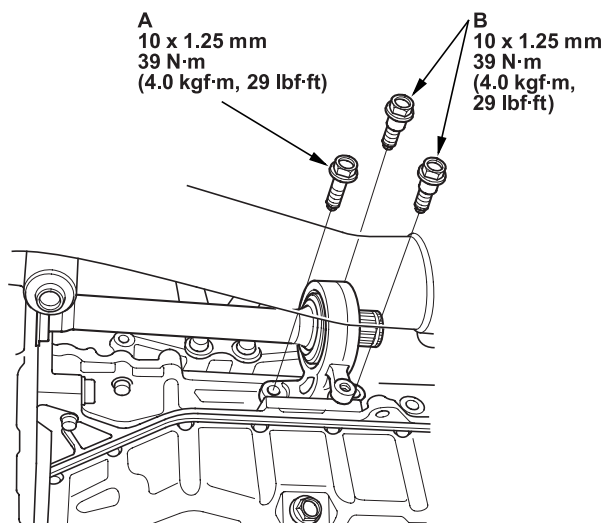


## Intermediate Shaft Installation

1. Use solvent or carburetor cleaner to thoroughly clean the areas where the intermediate shaft (A) contacts the transmission (differential), and dry with compressed air. Insert the intermediate shaft assembly into the differential. Hold the intermediate shaft horizontal to prevent damage to the differential oil seal (B).



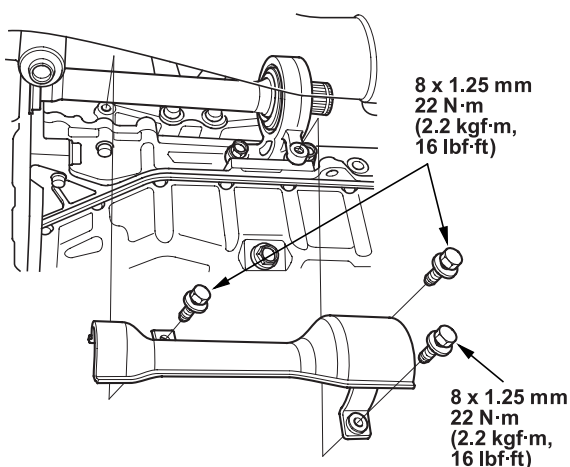
2. Install the flange bolt (A) and two dowel bolts (B).



(cont'd)

## Intermediate Shaft Installation (cont'd)

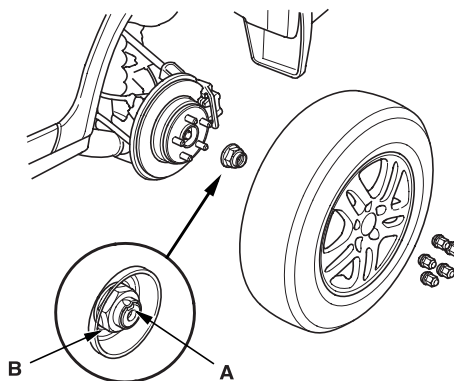
3. Install the heat cover, and tighten the three bolts.



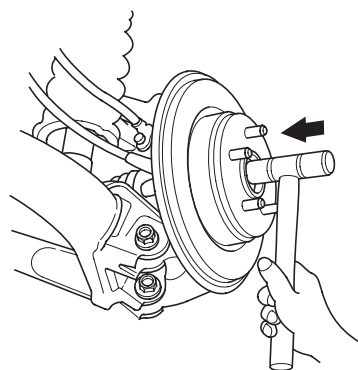
4. Install the right driveshaft (see page 16-17).

## Rear Driveshafts Removal

1. Loosen the wheel nuts slightly.
2. Raise the front of the vehicle, and support it with safety stands in the proper locations (see page 01-7).
3. Remove the wheel nuts and front wheels.



4. Lift up the locking tab (A) on the spindle nut (B), then remove the nut.
5. Remove the rear driveshafts from the rear differential assembly (see step 9 on page 15-14).
6. Remove the rear driveshaft outboard joint from the trailing arm and rear hub using a plastic hammer or a puller if necessary.

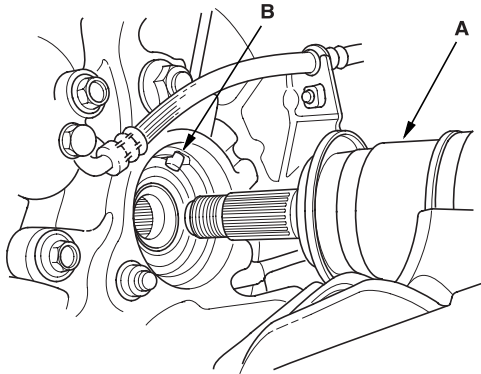




## 7. Remove the rear driveshaft (A).

### NOTE:

- Be careful not to damage the ABS wheel sensor (B).
- Pull on the outer joint. Do not pull on the driveshaft because the joint may come apart.

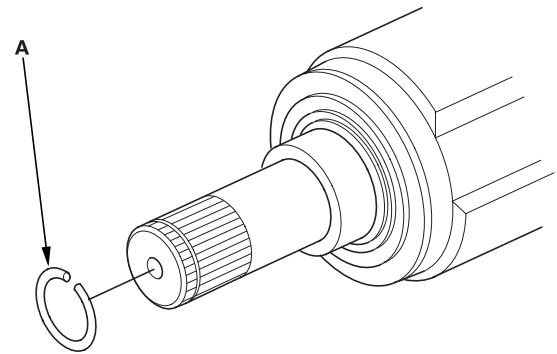


## Rear Driveshafts Disassembly

### NOTE:

- Due to the amount of work required to replace one damaged boot, it is best to replace both boots at the same time.
- These instructions are for the inboard joint. The same procedure applies to the outboard joint.

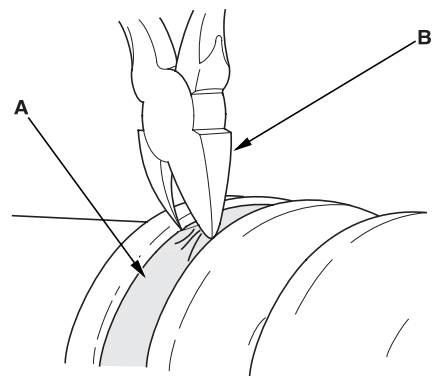
### 1. Remove the set ring (A) from the inboard joint.



### 2. Remove the boot bands. Be careful not to damage the boot and dynamic damper.

- If the boot band is a welded type (A), cut the boot band (B).
- If the boot band is a double loop type (C), lift up the band bend (D), and push it into the clip (E).
- If the boot band is a low profile type (F), pinch the boot band using a commercially available boot band pincers (G).

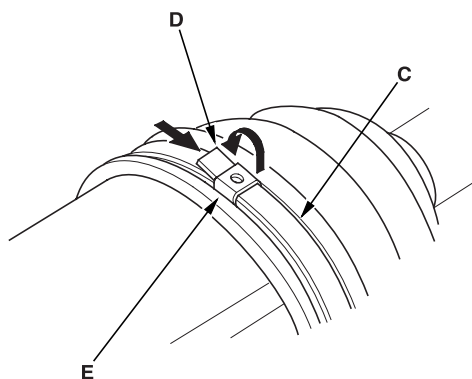
#### Welded Type



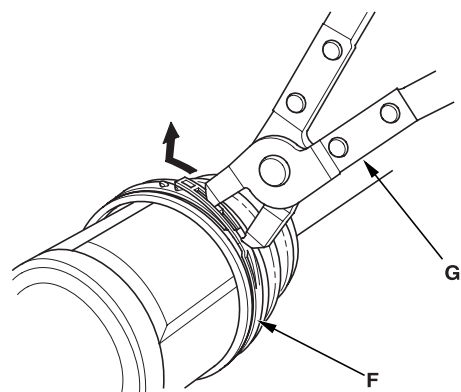
(cont'd)

## Rear Driveshafts Disassembly (cont'd)

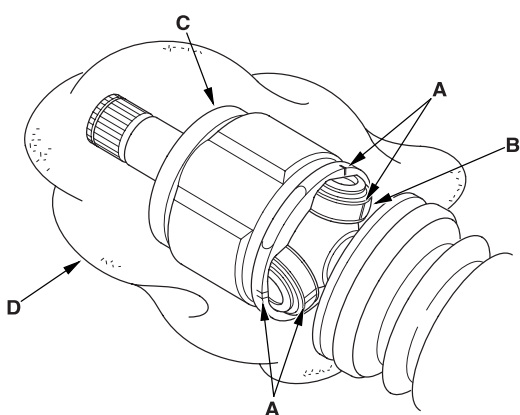
Double Loop Type



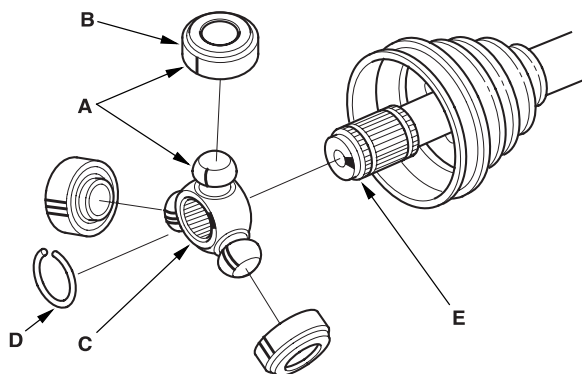
Low Profile Type



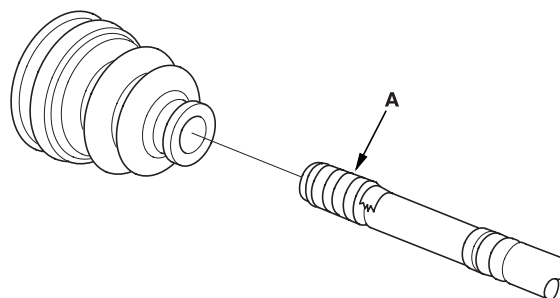
3. Make a mark (A) on each roller (B) and inboard joint (C) to identify the locations of rollers and grooves in the inboard joint. Then remove the inboard joint on the shop towel (D). Be careful not to drop the rollers when separating them from the inboard joint.



4. Make a mark (A) on the rollers (B) and spider (C) to identify the locations of the rollers on the spider, then remove the rollers.



5. Remove the circlip (D).
6. Mark the spider (C) and driveshaft (E) to identify the position of the spider on the shaft.
7. Remove the spider (C).
8. Wrap the splines on the driveshaft with vinyl tape (A) to prevent damage to the boot.

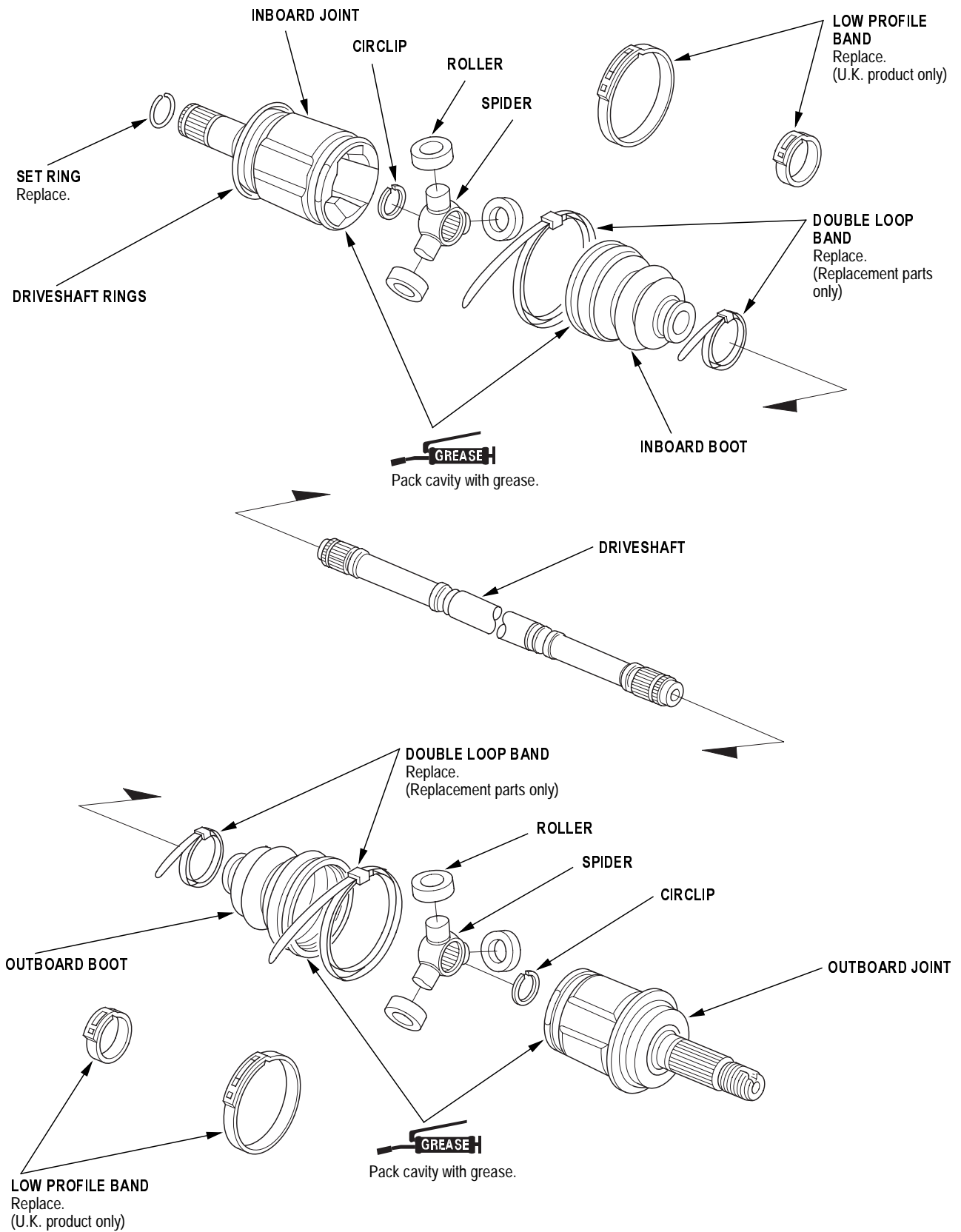


9. Remove the inboard boot. Be careful not to damage the boot.
10. Remove the vinyl tape.



## Rear Driveshafts Reassembly

### Exploded View



(cont'd)

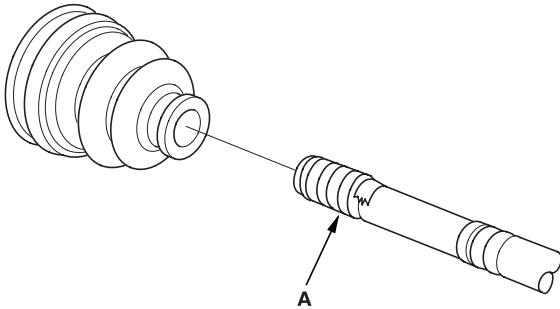
## Rear Driveshafts Reassembly (cont'd)

### Special Tools Required

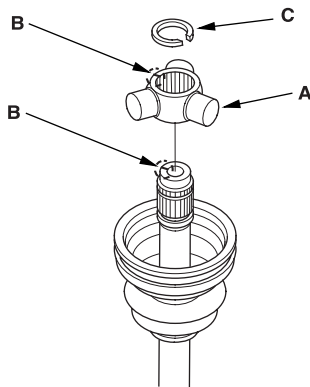
- Boot band tool, KD-3191 or equivalent, commercially available
- Boot band pincers, commercially available

NOTE: Refer to the Exploded View as needed during this procedure.

1. Wrap the splines with vinyl tape (A) to prevent damage to the inboard boot.

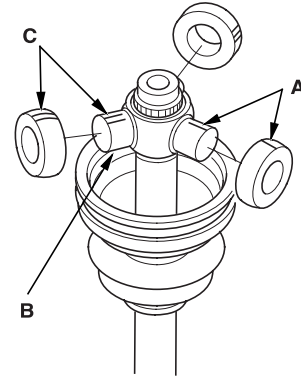


2. Install the inboard boot onto the driveshaft, then remove the vinyl tape. Be careful not to damage the inboard boot.
3. Install the spider (A) onto the driveshaft by aligning the marks (B) on the spider and the end of the driveshaft.



4. Fit the circlip (C) into the driveshaft groove. Always rotate the circlip in its groove to make sure it is fully seated.

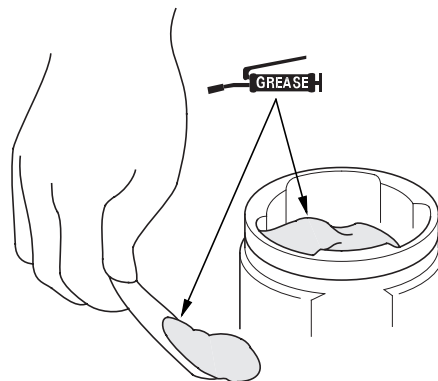
5. Fit the rollers (A) onto the spider (B) with their high shoulders facing outward, and note these items:
  - Reinstall the rollers in their original positions on the spider by aligning the marks (C).
  - Hold the driveshaft pointed up to prevent the rollers from falling off.



6. Pack the inboard joint with the joint grease included in the new driveshaft set.

### Grease quantity

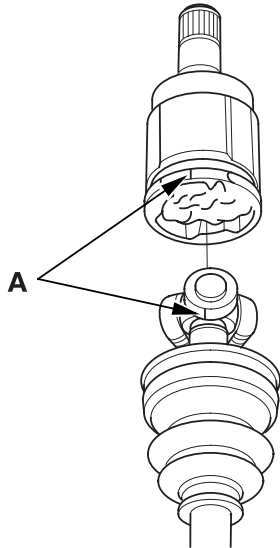
Inboard joint: 80 - 90 g (2.8 - 3.2 oz)





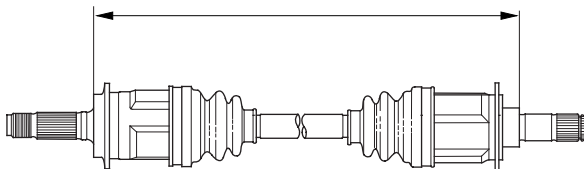


7. Fit the inboard joint onto the driveshaft, and note these items:
  - Reinstall the inboard joint onto the driveshaft by aligning the marks (A) on the inboard joint and the rollers.
  - Hold the driveshaft so the inboard joint points up to prevent it from falling off.



8. Adjust the length of the driveshafts to the figure below, then adjust the boots to halfway between full compression and full extension. Make sure the ends of the boots seat in the grooves of the driveshaft and joint.

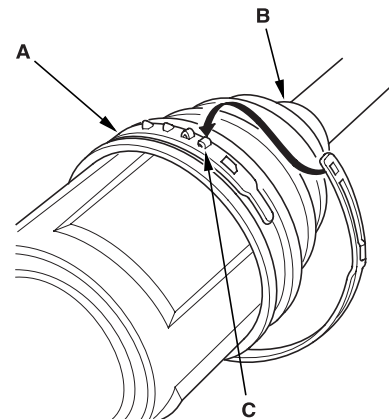
**Left driveshaft:** 633 - 637 mm (24.9 - 25.1 in.)  
**Right driveshaft:** 690 - 694 mm (27.2 - 27.3 in.)



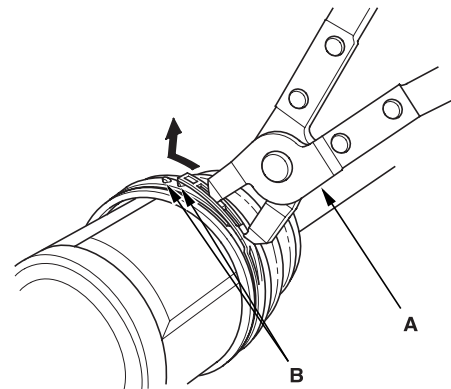
9. Make sure the ends of the boot are seated in the grooves in the driveshaft and joint, then install the boot bands.

- For the double loop type, go to step 13.  
(Replacement boot bands only)
- For the low profile type, go to step 10.  
(U.K. Product only)

10. Install the new low profile band (A) onto the boot (B), then hook the tab (C) of the band.



11. Close the hook portion of the band with a commercially available boot band pincers (A), then hook the tabs (B) of the band.

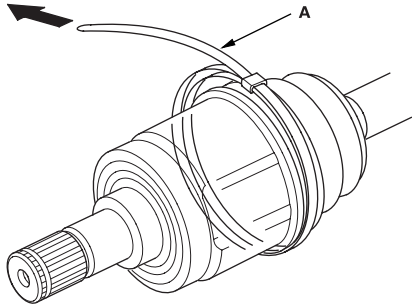


12. Install the boot band on the other end of the boot, and repeat steps 10 and 11.

(cont'd)

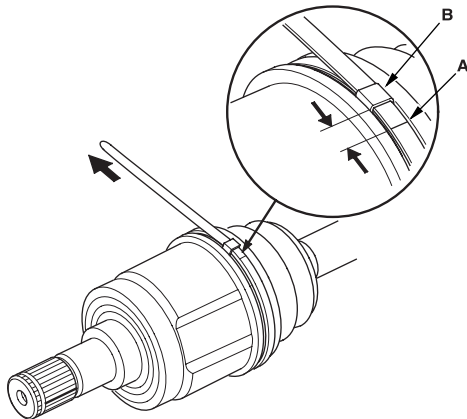
## Rear Driveshafts Reassembly (cont'd)

13. Fit the boot ends onto the driveshaft and the inboard joint, then install the new double loop band (A) onto the boot.

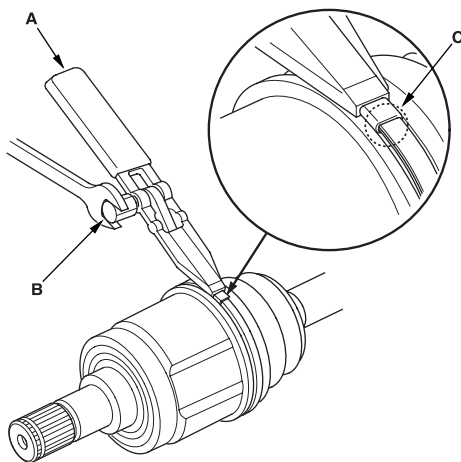


14. Pull up the slack in the band by hand.

15. Mark a position (A) on the band 10 - 14 mm (0.4 - 0.6 in.) from the clip (B).

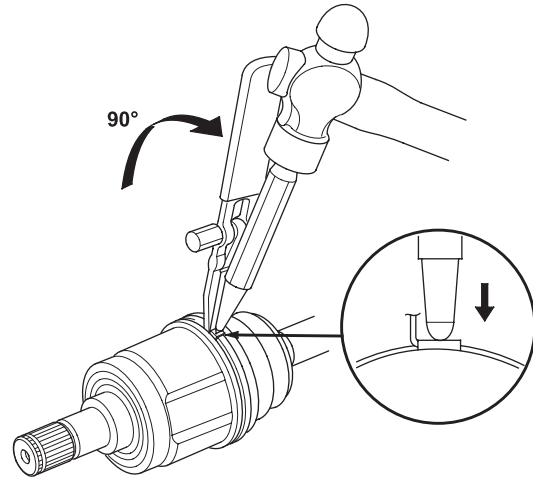


16. Thread the free end of the band through the nose section of the commercially available boot band tool KD-3191 or equivalent (A), and into the slot on the winding mandrel (B).

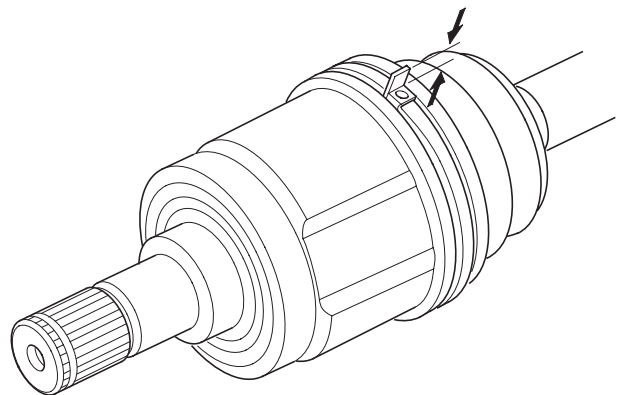


17. Place a wrench on the winding mandrel of the boot band tool, and tighten the band until the marked spot (C) on the band meets the edge of the clip.

18. Lift up the boot band tool to bend the free end of the band 90° to the clip. Center-punch the clip, then fold over the remaining tail onto the clip.



19. Unwind the boot band tool, and cut off the excess free end of the band to leave a 5 - 10 mm (0.2 - 0.4 in.) tail protruding from the clip.

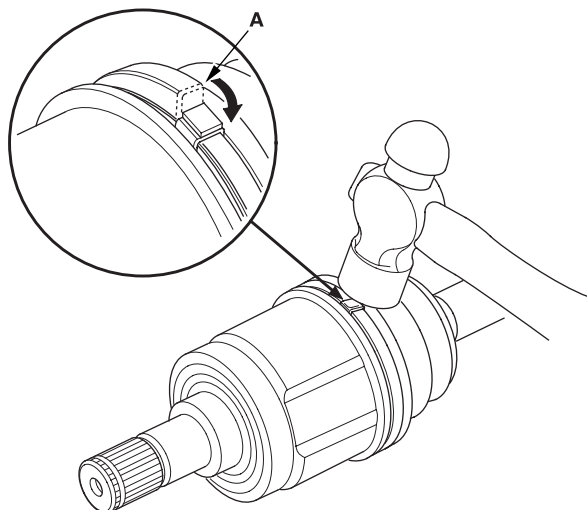




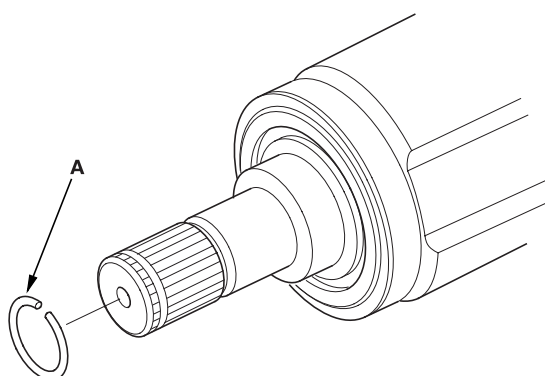
20. Bend the band end (A) by tapping it down with a hammer.

NOTE:

- Make sure the band and clip do not interfere with anything and the band does not move.
- Remove any grease remaining on the surrounding surfaces.



21. Install the new set ring (A).

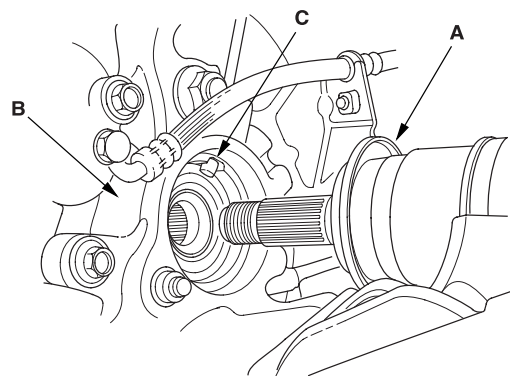


## Rear Driveshafts Installation

NOTE: Before starting installation, make sure the mating surfaces of the joint and the spline section are free from dirt or dust.

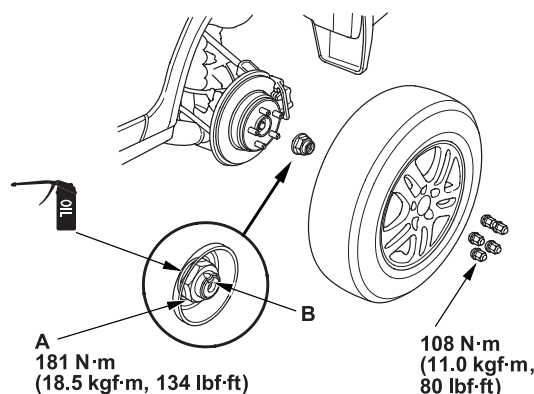
1. Install the outboard joint (A) into the rear hub (B).

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the ABS wheel sensor (C).



2. Install the rear driveshafts into the rear differential assembly (see step 3 on [page 15-25](#)).

3. Apply a small amount of engine oil to the seating surface of the new spindle nut (A).

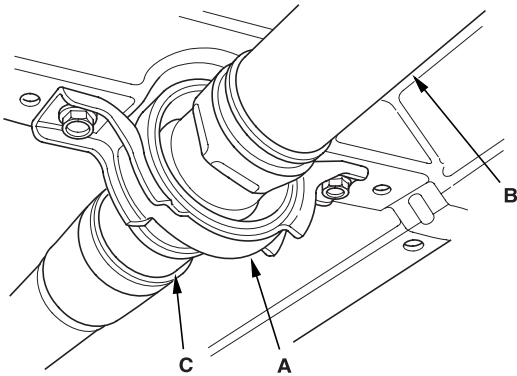


4. Install a new spindle nut, then torque the nut. After tightening, use a drift to stake the spindle nut shoulder against the driveshaft (B).
5. Clean the mating surfaces of the brake disc and the wheel, then install the rear wheel and torque the wheel nuts.

## Propeller Shaft Inspection

### Universal Joint and Boots

1. Shift the transmission to Neutral.
2. Raise the vehicle off the ground, and support it with safety stands in the proper locations ([see page 01-7](#)).
3. Check the center support bearing (A) for excessive play or rattle. If the center support has excessive play or rattle, replace the propeller shaft assembly (B).

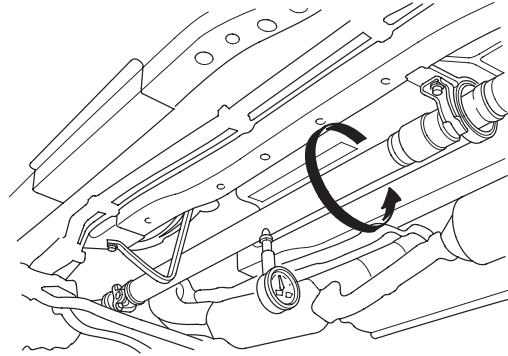


4. Check the universal joint boots (C) for damage and deterioration. If the boots are damaged or deteriorated, replace the propeller shaft assembly.
5. Check the universal joints for excessive play or rattle. If the universal joints have excessive play or rattle, replace the propeller shaft assembly.

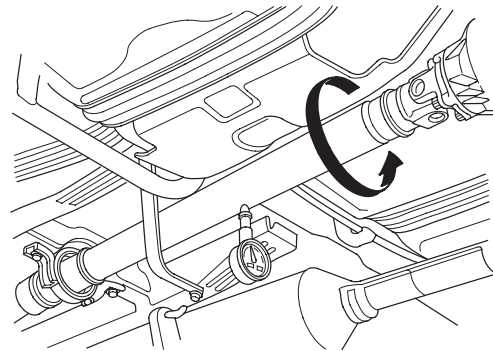
### Propeller Shaft Runout

6. Install a dial indicator with its needle on the center of the No. 1 or No. 2 propeller shaft.
7. Turn the other propeller shaft slowly, and check the runout. Repeat this procedure for the other propeller shaft.

**No. 1 Propeller Shaft Runout:**  
**Service Limit: 1.5 mm (0.06 in.)**



**No. 2 Propeller Shaft Runout:**  
**Service Limit: 1.5 mm (0.06 in.)**

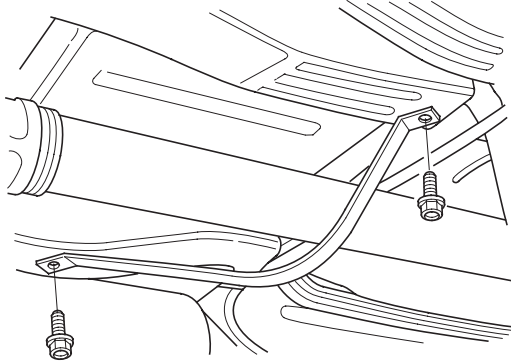


8. If the runout on either propeller shaft exceeds the service limit, replace the propeller shaft assembly.

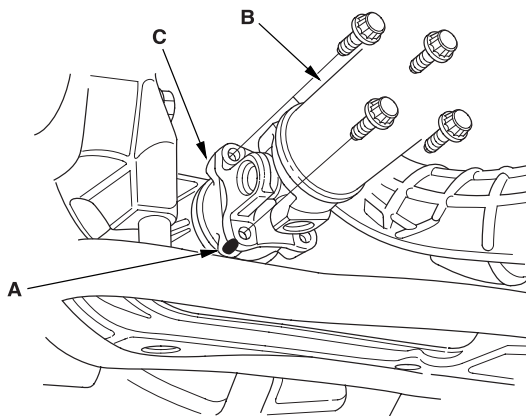


### Propeller Shaft Removal

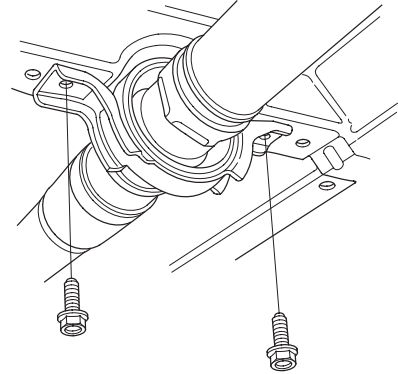
1. Raise the vehicle off the ground, and support it with safety stands in the proper location ([see page 01-7](#)).
2. Remove the No. 2 propeller shaft protector.



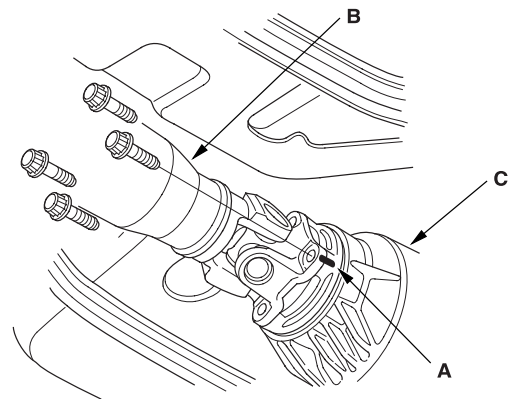
3. Make a reference mark (A) across the propeller shaft (B) and transfer companion flange (C).



4. Separate the propeller shaft from the transfer assembly.
5. Remove the center support bearing mounting bolts.



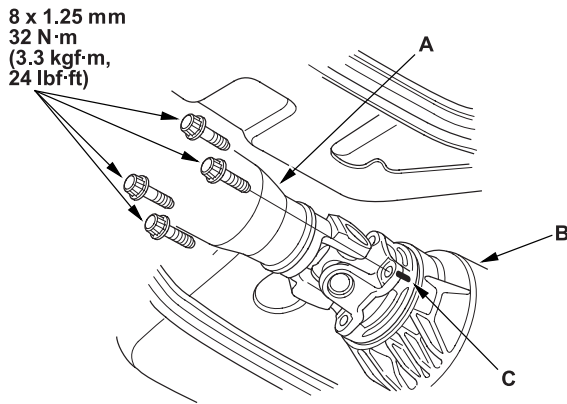
6. Make a reference mark (A) across the propeller shaft (B) and rear differential companion flange (C).



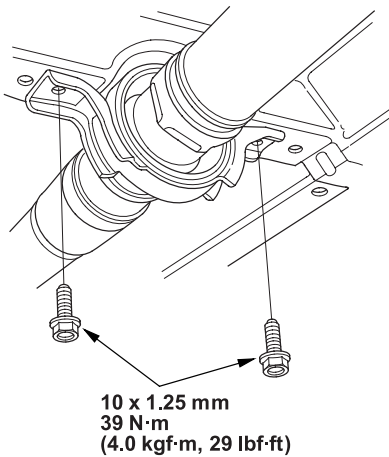
7. Separate the propeller shaft from the rear differential, then remove the propeller shaft.

## Propeller Shaft Installation

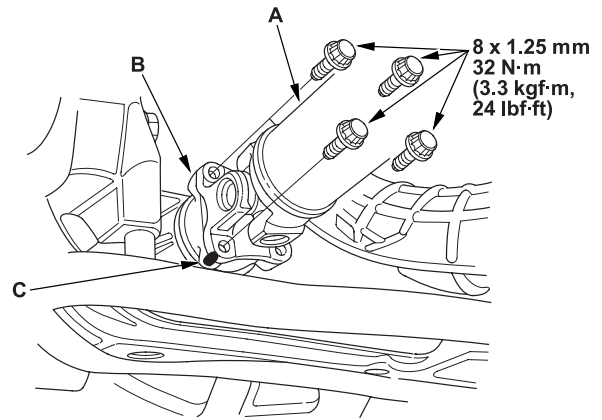
1. Install the propeller shaft (A) onto the rear differential (B) by aligning the reference mark (C).



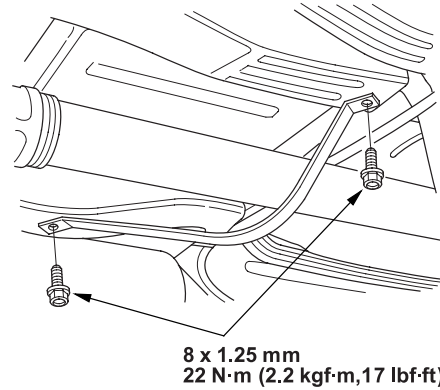
2. Install the center support bearing mounting bolt. Make sure you use a new bolt.



3. Install the propeller shaft (A) onto the transfer (B) by aligning the reference mark (C).



4. Install the No. 2 propeller shaft protector.



## Steering

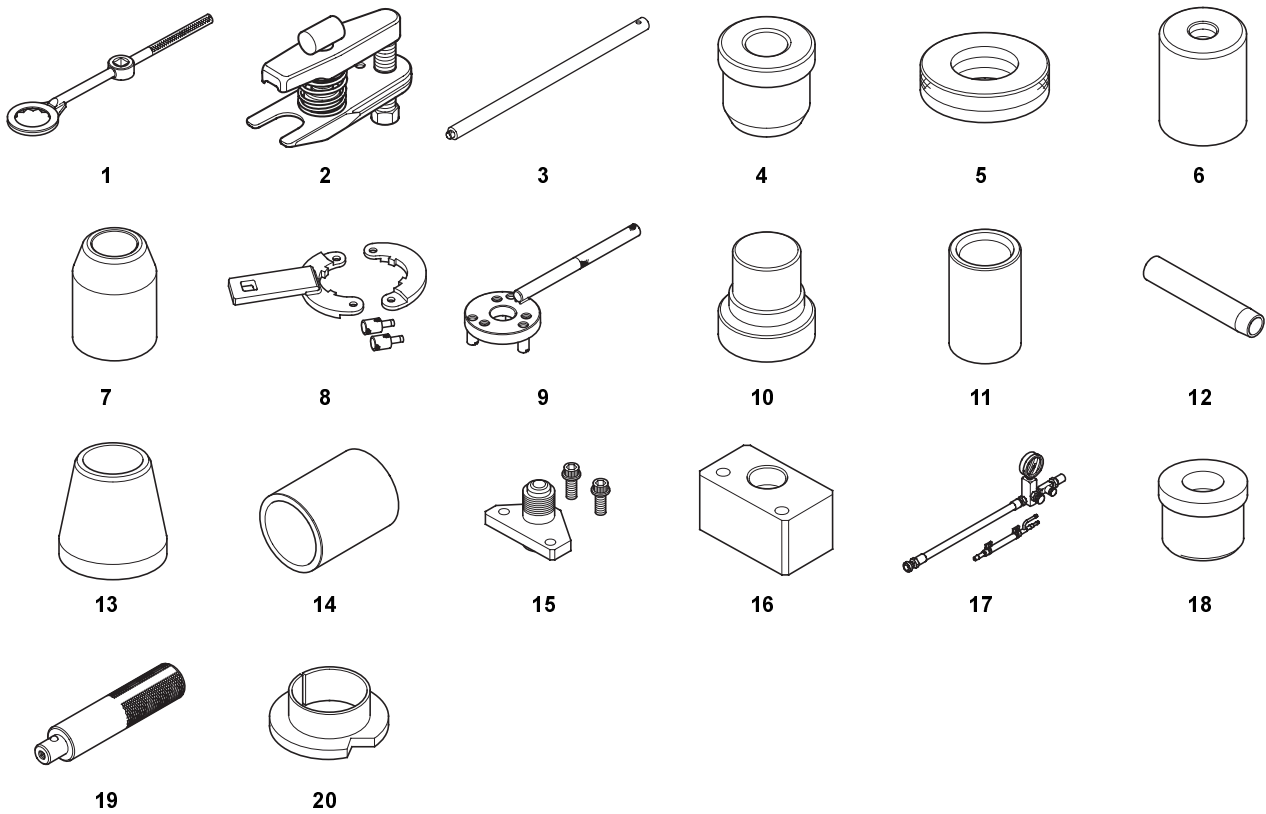
<b>Power Steering .....</b>	<b>17-2</b>
Special Tools .....	17-2
Component Location Index .....	17-3
Symptom Troubleshooting Index.....	17-4
Hard Steering Troubleshooting.....	17-6
Steering Wheel Rotational Play Check .....	17-7
Power Assist Check .....	17-7
Steering Linkage and Gearbox Inspection .....	17-8
Pump Pressure Test.....	17-9
Fluid Leakage Inspection .....	17-10
Fluid Replacement .....	17-11
Hoses and Lines Replacement .....	17-12
Pump Replacement.....	17-13
Pump Overhaul .....	17-14
Steering Wheel Removal.....	17-21
Steering Wheel Disassembly/Reassembly.....	17-22
Steering Wheel Installation.....	17-23
Steering Column Removal and Installation .....	17-24
Steering Column Tilt Operation Check .....	17-25
Steering Column/Tilt Lever Inspection/Adjustment.....	17-26
Steering Lock Replacement .....	17-27
Rack Guide Adjustment .....	17-28
Steering Gearbox Removal.....	17-29
Steering Gearbox Overhaul.....	17-33
Steering Gearbox Installation .....	17-51
Tie-rod Ball Joint Boot Replacement.....	17-55



Power Steering

Special Tools

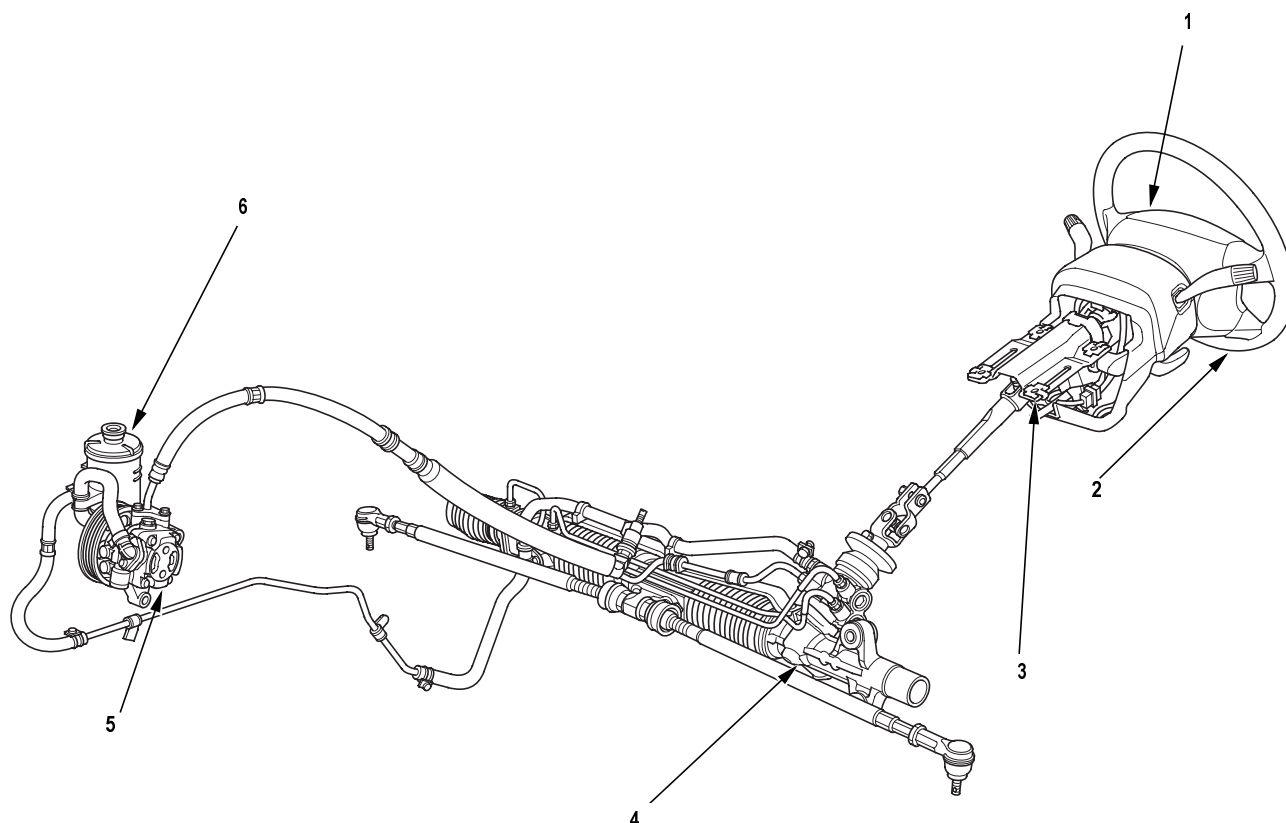
Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07MAA-SL00100	Locknut Wrench, 40 mm	1
2	07MAC-SL00200	Ball Joint Remover, 28 mm	1
3	07NAD-SR30101	Driver Handle	1
4	07NAD-SR30200	Cylinder End Seal Remover Attachment	1
5	07NAG-SR30900	Valve Seal Ring Sizing Tool	1
6	07QAD-P0A0100	Attachment, 42 mm	1
7	07YAG-S2X0100	Sleeve Seal Ring Guide	1
8	07ZAA-S5A0100	Locknut Wrench	1
9	07ZAB-S5A0100	Pulley Holder	1
10	07ZAF-S5A0100	Driver, 27 mm	1
11	07ZAG-SA50100	Sleeve Seal Ring Sizing Tool, 36 mm	1
12	07ZAG-S5A0200	Valve Seal Ring Guide	1
13	07ZAG-S7A0100	Piston Seal Ring Guide, 42 mm	1
14	07ZAG-S7A0200	Piston Seal Ring Sizing Tool, 42 mm	1
15	07ZAK-S7C0101	P/S Joint Adapter (Pump)	1
16	07ZAK-S7C0200	P/S Joint Adapter (Hose)	1
17	07406-0010001	P/S Pressure Gauge	1
18	07446-0010100	Attachment, 32 x 35 mm	1
19	07749-0010000	Driver	1
20	07974-6890801	Cylinder End Seal Slider, 23 mm	1







## Component Location Index



1 DRIVER'S AIRBAG	Removal / Installation, <a href="#">page 23-135</a>
2 STEERING WHEEL	Steering Wheel Removal, <a href="#">page 17-21</a> ; Steering Wheel Disassembly / Reassembly, <a href="#">page 17-22</a> ; Steering Wheel Installation, <a href="#">page 17-23</a>
3 STEERING COLUMN	Steering Column Tilt Operation Check, <a href="#">page 17-25</a> ; Steering Column Removal and Installation, <a href="#">page 17-24</a> ; Steering Column / Tilt Lever Inspection / Adjustment, <a href="#">page 17-26</a> ; Steering Lock Replacement, <a href="#">page 17-27</a>
4 POWER STEERING GEARBOX	Rack Guide Adjustment, <a href="#">page 17-28</a> ; Steering Gearbox Removal, <a href="#">page 17-29</a> ; Steering Gearbox Overhaul, <a href="#">page 17-33</a> ; Steering Gearbox Installation, <a href="#">page 17-51</a> ; Tie Rod Ball Joint Boot Replacement, <a href="#">page 17-55</a>
5 POWER STEERING PUMP	Pump Pressure Test, <a href="#">page 17-9</a> ; Drive Belt Inspection and Replacement, <a href="#">page 04-29</a> ; Pump Replacement, <a href="#">page 17-13</a> ; Pump Overhaul, <a href="#">page 17-14</a>
6 POWER STEERING FLUID RESERVOIR	Fluid Replacement, <a href="#">page 17-11</a> ; Hoses and Lines Replacement, <a href="#">page 17-12</a> ; Fluid Leakage Inspection, <a href="#">page 17-10</a>

## Symptom Troubleshooting Index

Find the symptom in the chart below, and do the related procedures in the order listed until you find the cause.

Symptom	Procedure(s)	Also check for:
Hard steering	Troubleshoot the system ( <a href="#">see page 17-6</a> ).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Modified suspension</li> <li>Damaged suspension</li> <li>Tire sizes, tire varieties, and air pressure</li> </ul>
Assist (excessively light steering at high speed)	Check the rack guide adjustment ( <a href="#">see page 17-28</a> ).	Front wheel alignment ( <a href="#">see page 18-4</a> ).
Shock or vibration when the wheel is turned to full lock	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the rack guide adjustment (<a href="#">see page 17-28</a>).</li> <li>2. Check the drive belt for slippage (<a href="#">see page 04-29</a>).</li> <li>3. Overhaul the steering gearbox (<a href="#">see page 17-33</a>).</li> </ol>	
Steering wheel will not return smoothly	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check cylinder lines for deformation.</li> <li>2. Check wheel alignment (<a href="#">see page 18-4</a>).</li> <li>3. Overhaul the steering gearbox (<a href="#">see page 17-33</a>).</li> </ol>	
Uneven or rough steering	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the rack guide adjustment (<a href="#">see page 17-28</a>).</li> <li>2. Check the drive belt (<a href="#">see page 04-29</a>).</li> <li>3. Check low or erratic engine idle speed (<a href="#">see page 11-148</a>).</li> <li>4. Check for air in the power steering system due to low fluid level.</li> <li>5. Check for low fluid level in the power steering reservoir due to possible leaks in system.</li> <li>6. Overhaul the steering gearbox (<a href="#">see page 17-33</a>).</li> </ol>	
Steering wheel kicks back during wide turns	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the drive belt (<a href="#">see page 04-29</a>).</li> <li>2. Check the power steering pump fluid pressure (<a href="#">see page 17-9</a>).</li> </ol>	
Humming	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check when the noise occurs <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the noise is heard 2 - 3 minutes after starting the engine in cold weather, this is normal.</li> <li>• If the noise is heard when the wheel is turned with the vehicle stopped, this is normal due to the fluid pulsation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. Check for the high-pressure hose touching the subframe or body.</li> <li>3. Check for automatic transmission converter noise.</li> <li>4. Check for air bubble in the power steering fluid.</li> </ol>	Pump pressure.



Rattle or chattering (Rack rattle)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check for loose steering components (tie-rod and ball joints). Tighten or replace as necessary.</li> <li>2. Check the steering column shaft for wobbling. If the steering column wobbles, replace the steering column assembly (see page 17-24).</li> <li>3. Check the rack guide adjustment (see page 17-28).</li> <li>4. Check the power steering pump pulley. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the pulley is loose, tighten it (see step 47 on page 17-20).</li> <li>• If the pump shaft is loose, replace the pump (see page 17-13).</li> </ul> </li> </ol>	
Hissing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the fluid level. If low, fill the reservoir to the proper level and check for leaks.</li> <li>• Check the reservoir for leaks.</li> <li>• Check for crushed inlet hose or loose hose clamp allowing air into the suction side of the system.</li> <li>• Check the power steering pump shaft oil seal for leaks.</li> </ul>	Air in the P/S fluid
Pump noise	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compare the pump noise at normal operating temperature to another like vehicle (pump noise up to 2 - 3 minutes after starting the engine in cold weather is normal).</li> <li>• Remove and inspect the pump for wear and damage (see page 17-14).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• P/S pump pressure</li> <li>• Air in the P/S fluid</li> </ul>
Squeaking	Check the drive belt (see page 04-29).	
Fluid leaks from the steering gearbox	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fluid leaks from the top of the valve body unit: Overhaul the valve body unit (see step 24 on page 17-38).</li> <li>• Fluid leaks from the boot A: Replace the valve oil seal on the pinion shaft.</li> <li>• Replace the cylinder end seal on the gearbox side.</li> <li>• Fluid leaks from the boot B: Replace the right (RHD: left) cylinder end seal.</li> <li>• Fluid leaks from pinion shaft near the lower steering joint bolt: Overhaul the valve body unit.</li> </ul>	
Fluid leaks from line	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fluid leaks from the cylinder line connections (flare nuts): Tighten the connection and retest.</li> <li>• Fluid leaks from a damaged cylinder lines: Replace the cylinder line.</li> <li>• Fluid leaks from the pump outlet hose or return line fitting on the valve body unit (flair nuts): Tighten the fitting and retest. If it still leaks, replace the hose, the line, or valve body unit as necessary.</li> </ul>	
Fluid leaks from pump	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fluid leaks from the front oil seal: Replace the front oil seal.</li> <li>• Fluid leaks from the power steering pump housing: Replace the leaking O-rings or seals (see page 17-14), and if necessary replace the power steering pump (see page 17-13).</li> </ul>	
Fluid leaks from reservoir	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fluid leaks from around the reservoir cap: Fluid level is too high: drain the reservoir to the proper level. Aerated fluid: check for an air leak on the inlet side of pump.</li> <li>• Fluid leaks from reservoir: Check for the reservoir for cracks and replace as necessary.</li> </ul>	
Fluid leaks from pump outlet hose (high-pressure)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the fitting for loose bolts. If the bolts are tight, replace the fitting O-ring.</li> <li>• Fluid leaks at the swagged joint: Replace the outlet hose.</li> </ul>	
Fluid leaks from pump inlet hose (low-pressure)	Check the hose for damage, deterioration, or improper assembly. Replace or repair as necessary.	

## Hard Steering Troubleshooting

## Hard Steering

1. Check the power assist ([see page 17-7](#)).

*Is the starting load more than 29 N (3.0 kgf, 6.6 lbf)?*

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Power assist is OK.■

2. Measure steady-state fluid pressure from the pump at idle ([see page 17-9](#)).

*Is the pressure 1,500 kPa (15 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 213 psi) or less?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Go to step 7.

3. Measure the pump relief pressure at idle ([see page 17-9](#)).

*K20A4 and K20A5 Engine models:*

*Is the pressure 6,900 - 7,500 kPa (70 - 77 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1,000 - 1,100 psi) or less?*

*K24A1 Engine models:*

*Is the pressure 7,500 - 8,100 kPa (76 - 83 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1,080 - 1,180 psi) or less?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Faulty pump assembly.■

4. With a spring scale, measure the power assist in both directions, to the left and to the right.

*Are the two measurements within 2.9 N (0.3 kgf, 0.66 lbf) of each other?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Go to step 8.

5. Measure the fluid pressure with shut-off valve and pressure gauge valve open, while turning the steering wheel fully to the left and fully to the right.

*K20A4 and K20A5 Engine models:*

*Is the pressure 6,900 - 7,500 kPa (70 - 77 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1,000 - 1,100 psi) or less?*

*K24A1 Engine models:*

*Is the pressure 7,500 - 8,100 kPa (76 - 83 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1,080 - 1,180 psi) or less?*

**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Faulty gearbox.■

6. Adjust the rack guide ([see page 17-28](#)), and retest.  
*Is the steering OK?*

**Yes** Repair is completed.■

**No** Faulty gearbox.■

7. Check the feed and return lines between the pump and the gearbox for clogging and deformation.

*Are the lines clogged or deformed?*

**Yes** Repair or replace the lines.■

**No** Faulty valve body unit or pump.■

8. Check the cylinder lines for deformation ([see page 17-10](#)).

*Are the lines deformed?*

**Yes** Replace the lines.■

**No** Go to step 9.

9. Check for a bent rack shaft or misadjusted rack guide (too tight).

*Is the rack shaft bent or the rack guide adjusted too tight?*

**Yes** Replace the rack shaft or readjust the rack guide.■

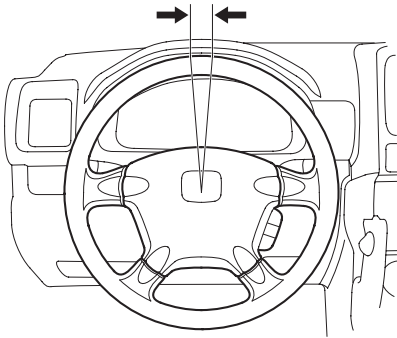
**No** Faulty valve body unit.■



### Steering Wheel Rotational Play Check

1. Turn the front wheels to the straight ahead position.
2. Measure how far you can turn the steering wheel left and right without moving the front wheels.
  - If the play is within the limit, the gearbox and linkages are OK.
  - If the play exceeds the limit, adjust the rack guide ([see page 17-28](#)). If the play is still excessive after rack guide adjustment, inspect the steering linkage and gearbox ([see page 17-8](#)).

ROTATIONAL PLAY: 0 - 10mm (0 - 0.39 in.)

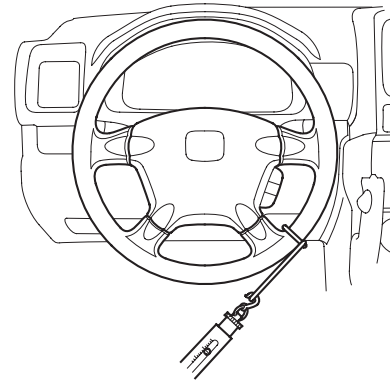


### Power Assist Check

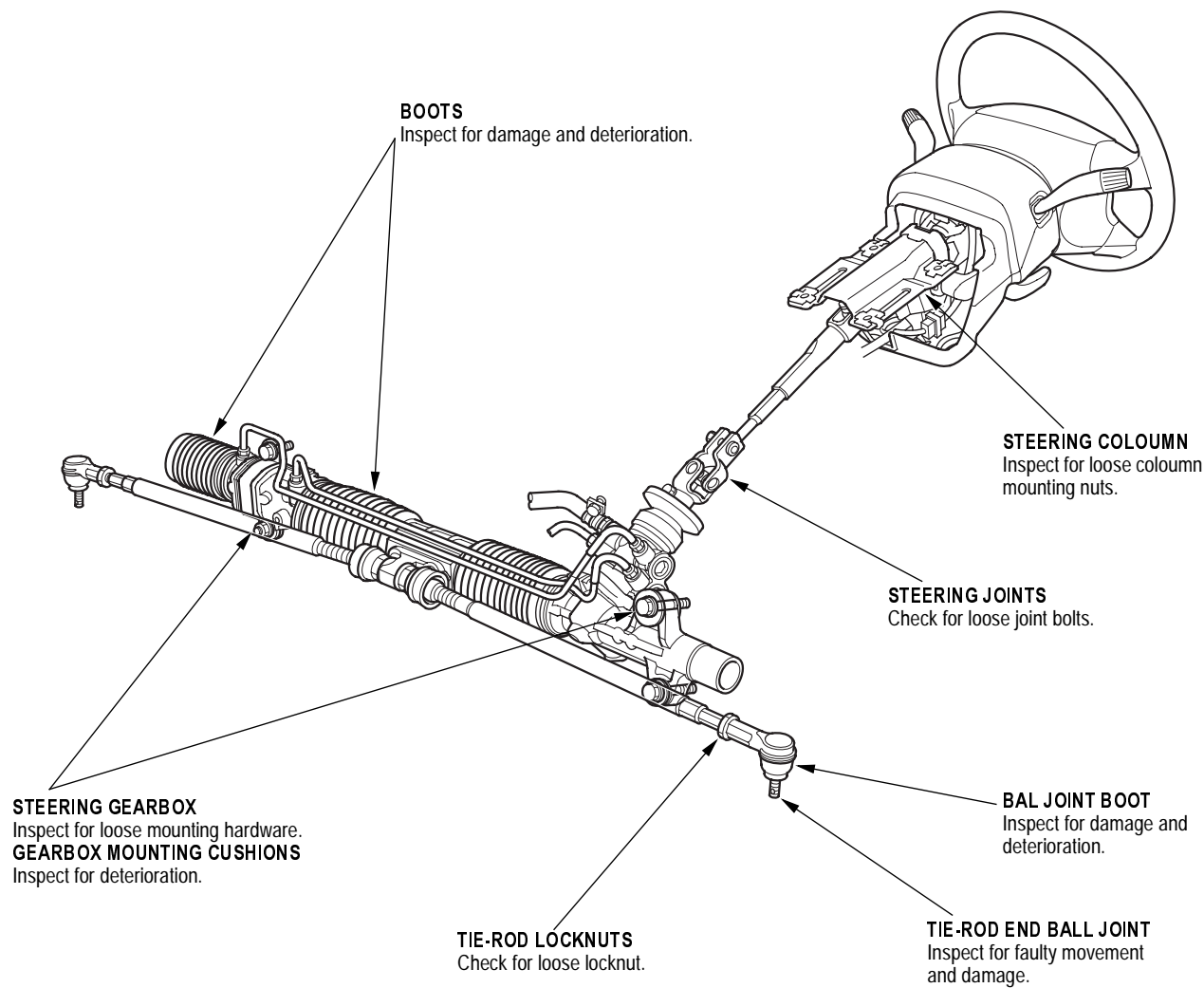
1. Check the power steering fluid level ([see page 17-11](#)).
2. Start the engine, let it idle, and turn the steering wheel from lock-to-lock several times to warm up the fluid.
3. Attach a commercially available spring scale to the steering wheel. With the engine idling and the vehicle on a clean, dry floor, pull the scale as shown and read it as soon as the tires begin to turn.
  - If the scale reads no more than specifications, the gearbox and pump are OK.
  - If the scale reads more than specifications, troubleshoot the steering system ([see page 17-6](#)).

#### INITIAL TURNING

LOAD: 29 N (3.0 kgf, 6.6 lbf)



Steering Linkage and Gearbox Inspection





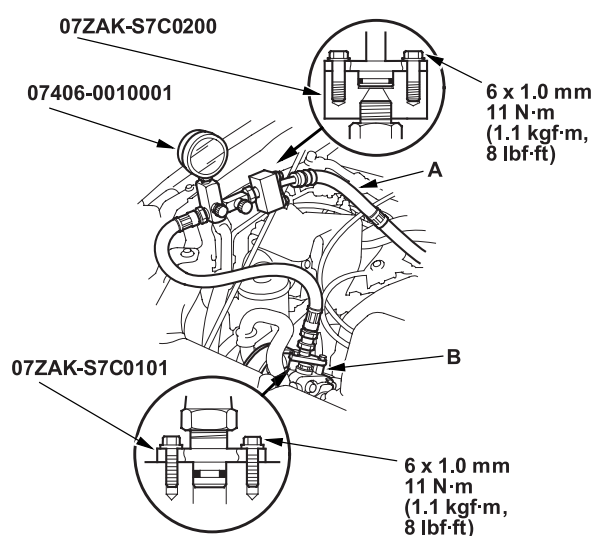
## Pump Pressure Test

### Special Tools Required

- P/S joint adapter (pump) 07ZAK-S7C0101
- P/S joint adapter (hose) 07ZAK-S7C0200
- P/S pressure gauge 07406-0010001

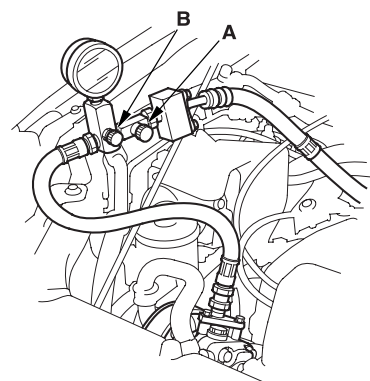
Check the fluid pressure as follows to determine whether the trouble is in the pump or gearbox.

1. Check the power steering fluid level (see page 17-11).
2. Disconnect the pump outlet hose (A) from the pump outlet with care so as not to spill the power steering fluid on the frame and other parts. Install the P/S joint adapter (pump) on the pump outlet (B).



3. Connect the P/S joint adapter (hose) to the P/S pressure gauge, then connect the pump outlet hose (A) to the P/S joint adapter (hose).
4. Install the P/S pressure gauge to the P/S joint adapter (pump).

5. Fully open the shut-off valve (A).



6. Fully open the pressure control valve (B).
7. Start the engine and let it idle.
8. Turn the steering wheel from lock-to-lock several times to warm the fluid to operating temperature at 158°F (70°).
9. Measure steady-state fluid pressure while the engine is idling. If the pump is in good condition, the pressure should be no more than 1,500 kPa (15 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 214 psi). If the pressure is too high, check the outlet hose or valve body unit (see Steering System Troubleshooting). Raise the engine speed to 3,000 rpm, and measure the fluid pressure. If the pump is in good condition, the pressure should be at least 1,500 kPa (15 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 214 psi). If the pressure is too high, repair or replace the pump.
10. Lower the engine speed and let it idle. Close the shut-off valve, then close the pressure control valve gradually until the pressure gauge needle is stable. Read the pressure.

### NOTICE

Do not keep the shut-off valve closed more than 5 seconds or the pump could be damaged by overheating.

11. Immediately open the pressure control valve fully. If the pump is in good condition, the gauge should read at least this specification:

#### K20A4 and K20A5 Engine models:

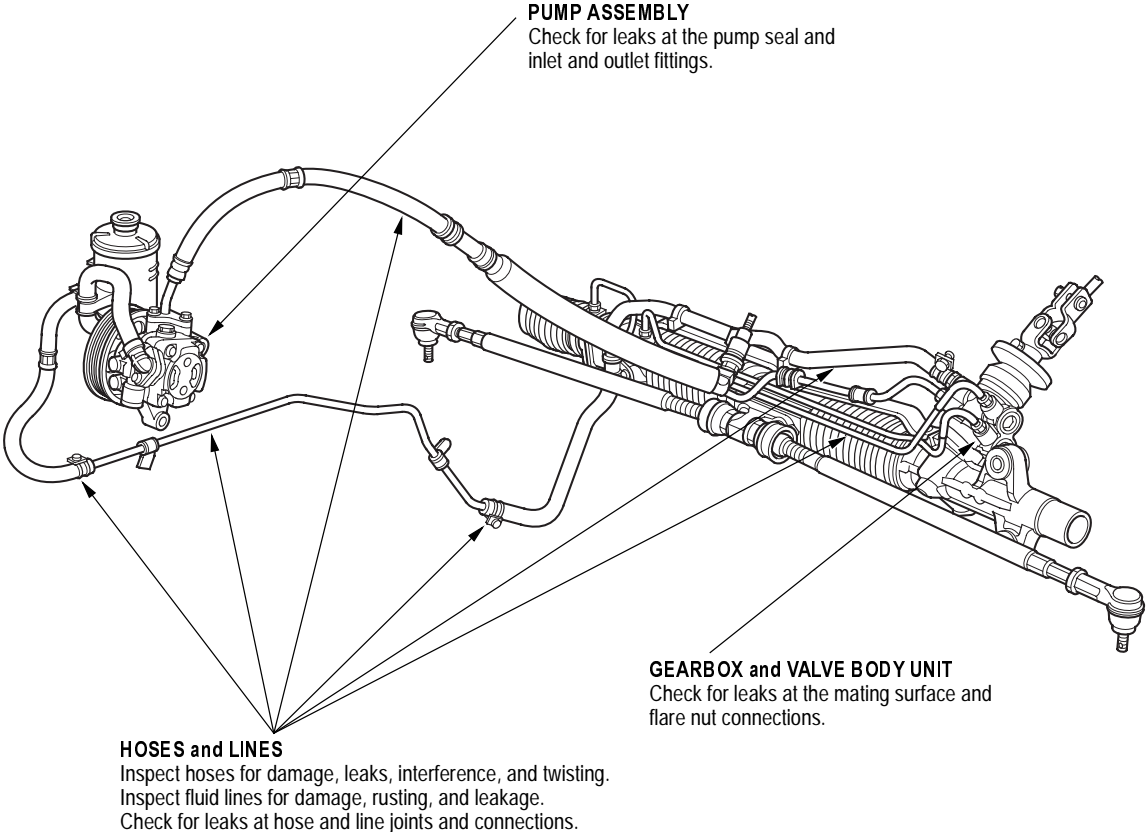
6,900 - 7,500 kPa (70 - 77 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1,000 - 1,100 psi)

#### K24A1 Engine models:

7,500 - 8,100 kPa (76 - 83 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1,080 - 1,180 psi)

A low reading means pump output is too low for full assist. Repair or replace the pump.

Fluid Leakage Inspection







## Fluid Replacement

Check the reservoir (A) at regular intervals, and add the recommended fluid as necessary. Always use Genuine Honda Power Steering Fluid. Using any other type of power steering fluid or automatic transmission fluid can cause increased wear and poor steering in cold weather.

### SYSTEM CAPACITY:

#### RHD models:

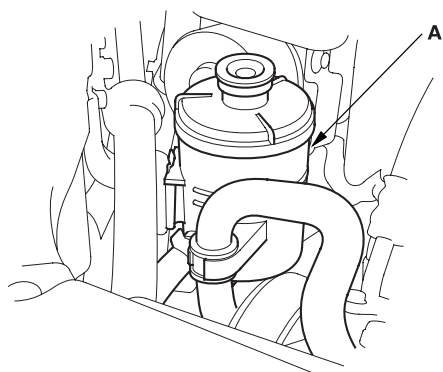
0.72 / (0.76 US. qt, 0.63 Imp.qt) at disassembly

#### LHD models:

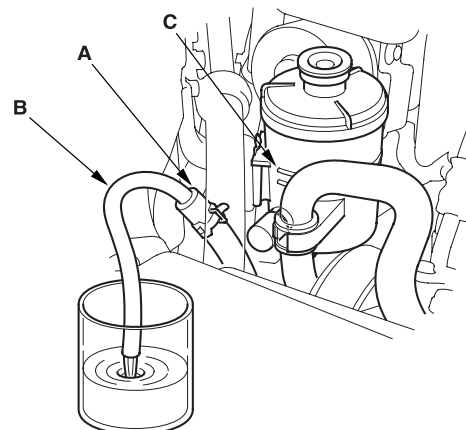
0.75 / (0.79 US. qt, 0.66 Imp.qt) at disassembly

### RESERVOIR CAPACITY:

0.26 / (0.27 US. qt, 0.23 Imp.qt)



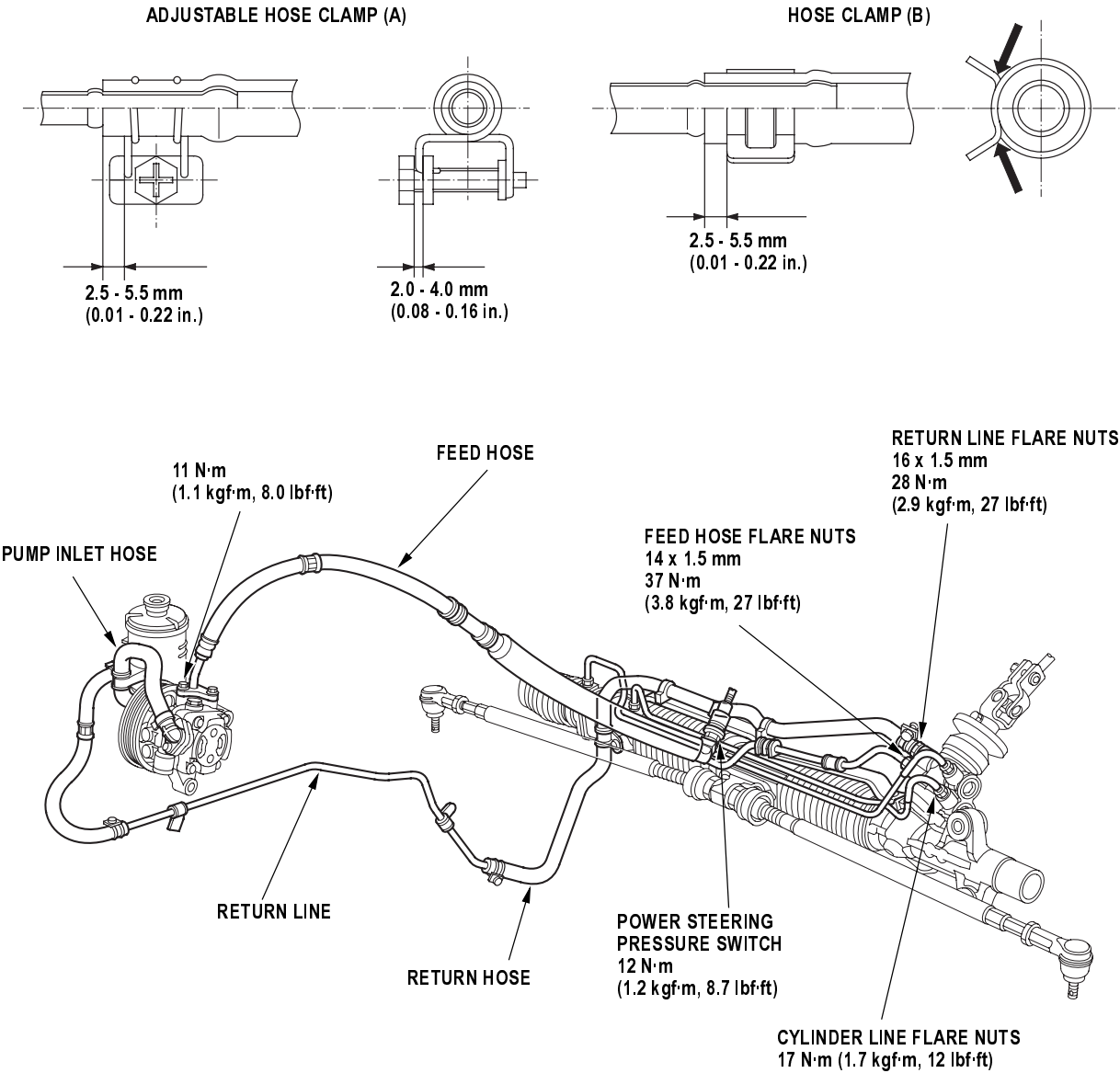
1. Raise the reservoir, then disconnect the return hose (A) to drain the reservoir. Take care not to spill the fluid on the body and parts. Wipe off any spilled fluid at once.



2. Connect a hose (B) of suitable diameter to the disconnected return hose, and put the hose end in a suitable container.
3. Start the engine, let it run at idle, and turn the steering wheel from lock-to-lock several times. When fluid stops running out of the hose, shut off the engine. Discard the fluid.
4. Reinstall the return hose on the reservoir.
5. Fill the reservoir to the upper level line (C).
6. Start the engine and run it at fast idle, then turn the steering from lock-to-lock several times to bleed air from the system.
7. Recheck the fluid level and add more if necessary. Do not fill the reservoir beyond the upper level line.

Hoses and Lines Replacement

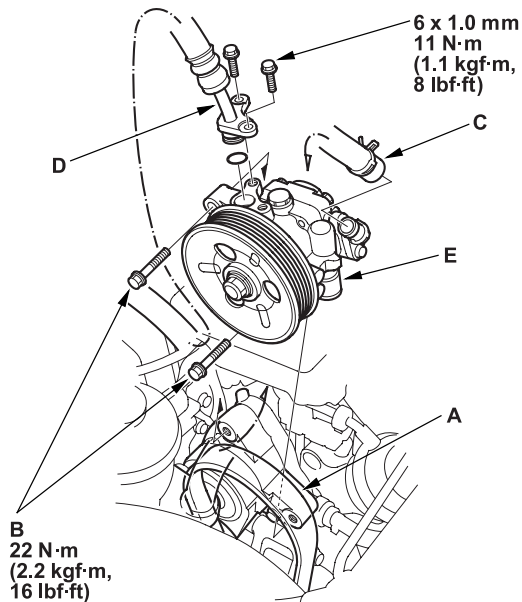
- Note these items during installation:
- Connect each hose to the corresponding line securely until it contacts the stop on the line. Install the clamp or adjustable clamp at the specified distance from the hose end as shown.
  - Check all clamps for deterioration or deformation; replace with the clamps new ones if necessary.
  - Add the recommended power steering fluid to the specified level on the reservoir and check for leaks.





## Pump Replacement

1. Place a suitable container under the vehicle.
2. Drain the power steering fluid from the reservoir.
3. Remove the drive belt (A) from the pump pulley ([see page 04-30](#)).

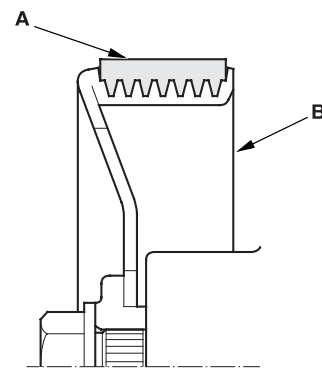


4. Remove the pump mounting bolts (B).
5. Cover the auto-tensioner, alternator and A/C compressor with several shop towels to protect it from spilled power steering fluid. Disconnect the pump inlet hose (C) and pump outlet hose (D) from the pump (E), and plug them. Take care not to spill the fluid on the body or parts. Wipe off any spilled fluid at once. Do not turn the steering wheel with the pump removed.
6. Cover the opening of the pump with a piece of tape to prevent foreign material from entering the pump.

7. Connect the pump inlet hose and pump outlet hose.
8. Loosely install the pump in the pump bracket with the mounting bolts, then tighten the pump fittings securely.
9. Install the drive belt (A).

Note these item during belt installation:

- Make sure that the belt is properly positioned on the pulleys (B).
- Do not get power steering fluid or grease on the auto-tensioner, alternator, A/C compressor and drive belt or pulley faces. Clean off any fluid or grease before installation.

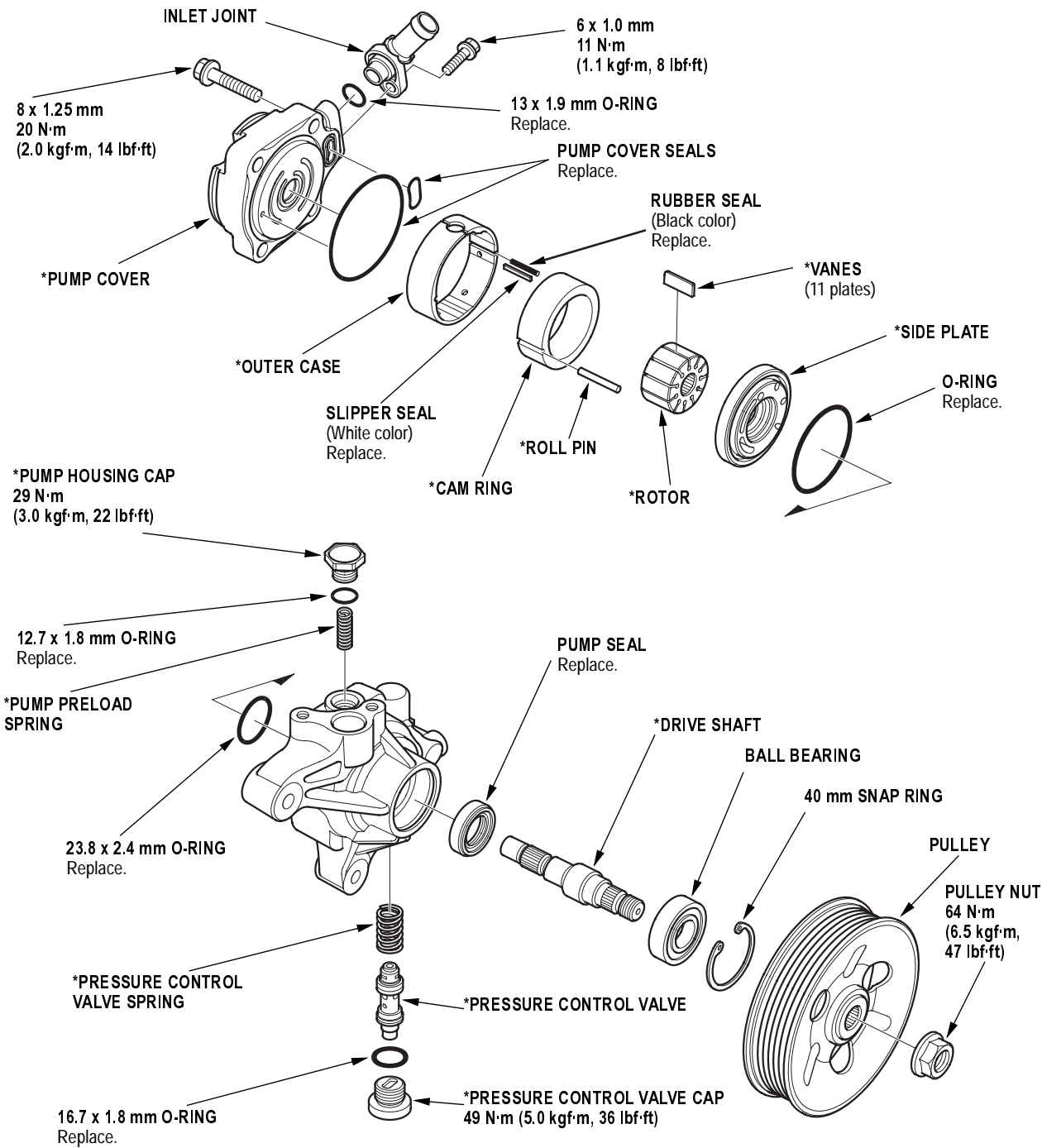


10. Tighten the pump mounting bolts to the specified torque.
11. Fill the reservoir to the upper level line ([see page 17-11](#)).

Pump Overhaul

Exploded View

Replace the pump as an assembly if the parts indicated with asterisk (\*) are worn or damaged.





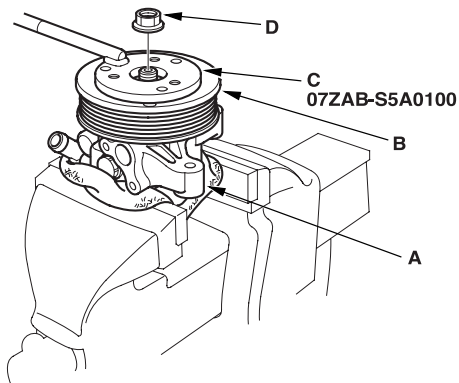
## Special Tools Required

- Attachment, 32 x 35 mm 07746-0010100
- Driver 07749-0010000
- Pulley holder 07ZAB-S5A0100

## Disassembly

NOTE: Refer to the Exploded View as needed during the following procedure.

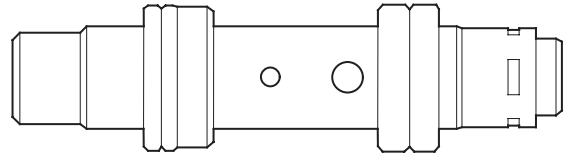
1. Remove the power steering pump (see page 17-13).
2. Drain the fluid from the pump.
3. Hold the steering pump (A) a vise with soft jaws, hold the pulley (B) with the special tool (C), and remove the pulley nut (D) and pulley. Be careful not to damage the pump housing with the jaws of the vise.



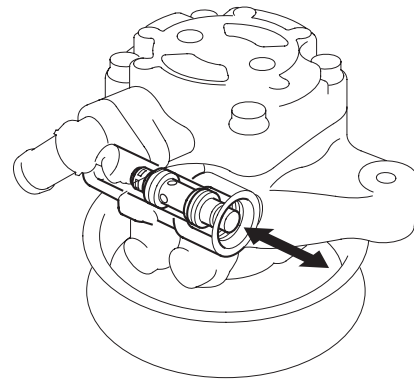
4. Remove the inlet joint and O-ring.
5. Remove the pressure control valve cap, O-ring, valve spring, and pressure control valve.
6. Remove the pump housing cap, O-ring, and pump preload spring.
7. Remove the pump cover and pump cover seals.
8. Pull out the roll pin.
9. Remove the outer case, cam ring, rotor, vanes, and side plate.
10. Remove the rubber seal and slipper seal from the outer case.
11. Remove the O-rings from the bottom of the housing.
12. Remove the snap ring, then remove the drive shaft by tapping the shaft end with the plastic hammer.
13. Remove the seal from the pump housing.

## Inspection

14. Check the pressure control valve for wear, burrs, and other damage to the edges of the grooves in the valve.



15. Inspect the bore of the pressure control valve on the pump housing for scratches and wear.
16. Slip the pressure control valve back in the pump housing, and check that it moves in and out smoothly. If OK, go to step 17; if not, replace the pump as an assembly. The pressure control valve is not available separately.

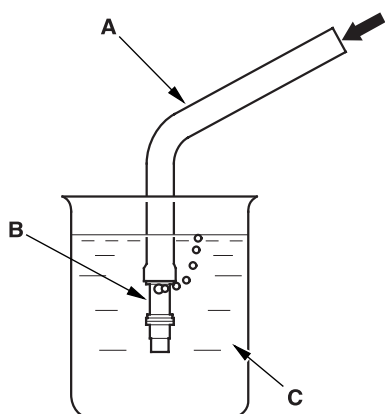


(cont'd)

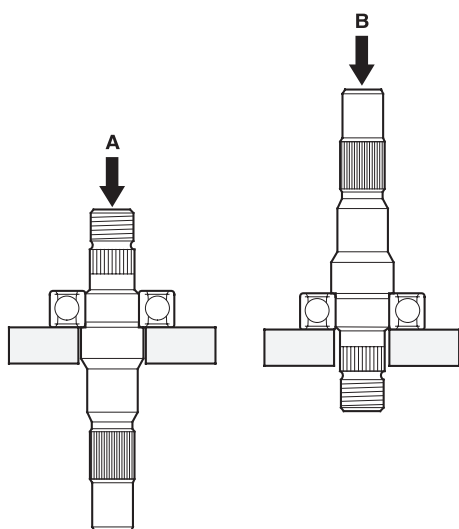
## Pump Overhaul (cont'd)

## Inspection (cont'd)

17. Attach a hose (A) to the end of the pressure control valve (B) as shown. Then submerge the pressure control valve in a container of power steering fluid or solvent (C), and blow in the hose.
- If air bubbles leak through the valve at less than 98 kPa (1.0 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 14.2 psi), replace the pump as an assembly. The pressure control valve is not available separately.
  - If the pressure control valve is OK, set it aside for reassembly later.



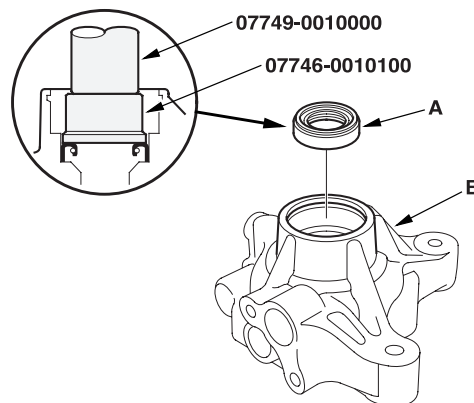
18. Inspect the ball bearing by rotating the outer race slowly. If you feel any play (axial or radial) or roughness, remove the faulty ball bearing (A), and install a new one (B).



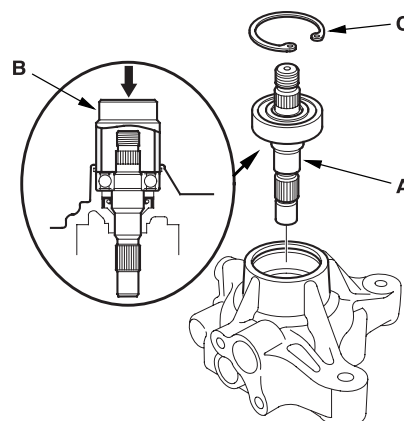
19. Inspect each part shown with an asterisk in the Exploded View; if any of them are worn or damaged, replace the pump as an assembly.

## Reassembly

20. Install the new pump seal (A) (with its grooved side facing in) into the pump housing (B) by hand first, then drive it in using the special tools with until there is no step at the top of the pump seal, and the seal is fully seated in the pump housing.



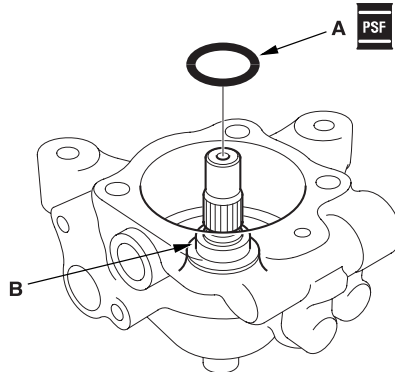
21. Position the pump drive shaft (A) in the pump housing, then press it in with the appropriate size socket wrench (B) as shown. Do not apply more than 1,370 N (140 kgf, 308 lbf) of pressure.



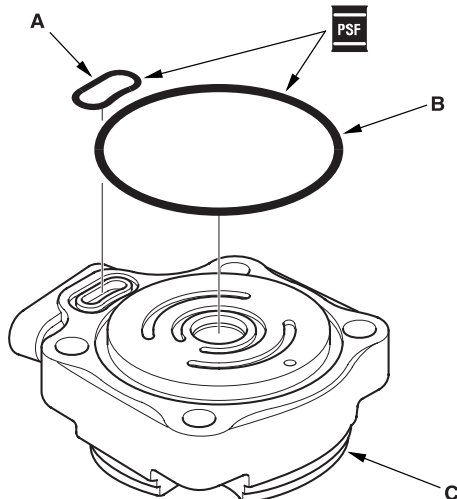
22. Install the 40 mm snap ring (C) with its radiused side facing out.



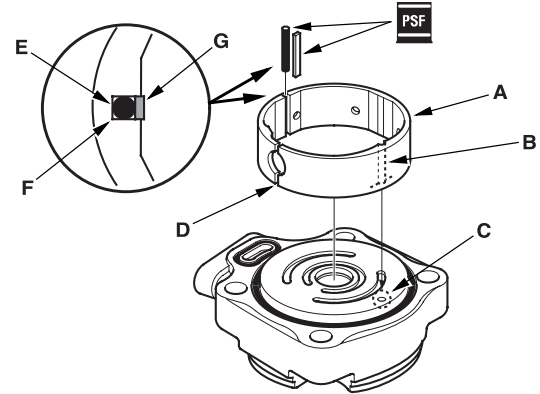
- 23.** Coat the new 23.8 mm O-ring (A) with the power steering fluid, then position it on the bottom (B) of the pump housing.



- 24.** Coat the new cover seals (A) and (B) with the power steering fluid, then position them into the grooves on the cover (C).



- 25.** Install the outer case (A) by aligning the slot (B) inside the outer case with the cover roll pin hole (C). Be sure that the slit (D) on the outer case is to direction shown.



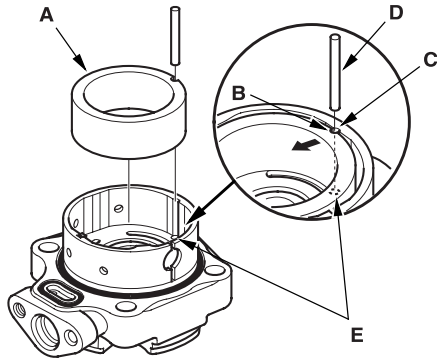
- 26.** Apply the power steering fluid to the rubber seal (E) (black), and install it in the slot (F) of the outer case.
- 27.** Apply power steering fluid to the slipper seal (G) (white), and install it on top of the rubber seal you just installed.

(cont'd)

### Pump Overhaul (cont'd)

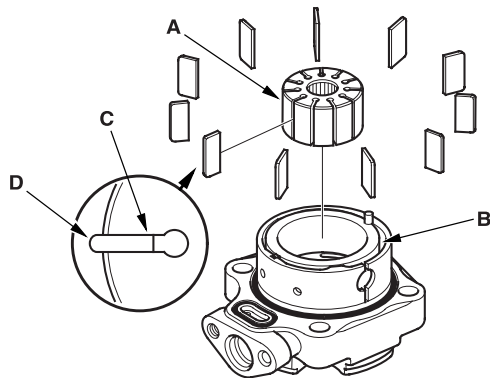
#### Reassembly (cont'd)

- 28.** Install the cam ring (A) with the “●” mark on it upward. Align the slot (B) with the slot (C) in the outer case.



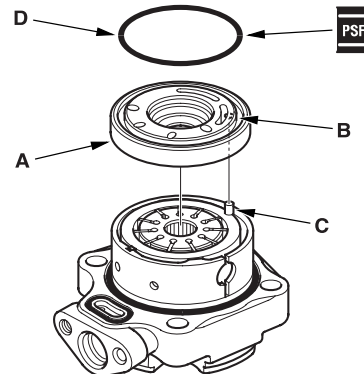
- 29.** Insert the roll pin (D) into the slots between the cam ring and outer case, then push roll pin into the set hole (E).

- 30.** Install the rotor (A) in the cam ring (B).



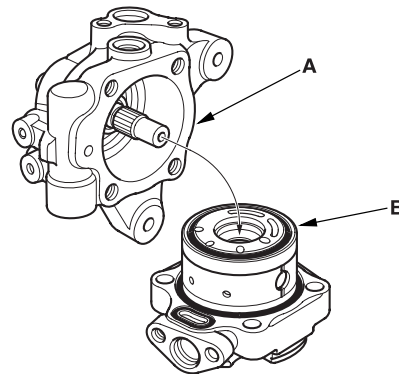
- 31.** Set the 11 vanes (C) in the grooves in the rotor. Make sure that the round ends (D) of the vanes are in contact with the sliding surface of the cam ring.

- 32.** Place the side plate (A) on the cam ring, and aligning the roll pin set hole (B) in the side plate with the roll pin end (C).



- 33.** Coat the new O-ring (D) with the power steering fluid, then position it into the groove on the side plate.

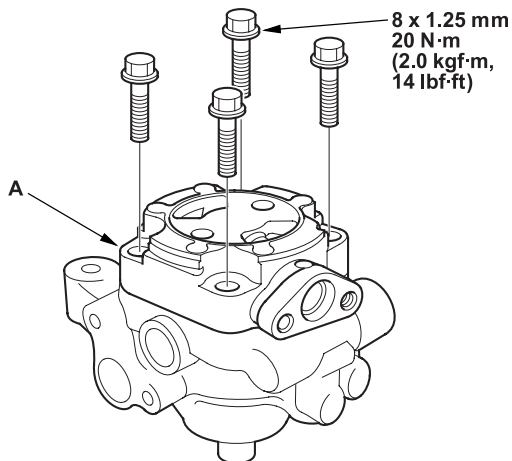
- 34.** Install the pump housing (A) over the cover assembly (B).



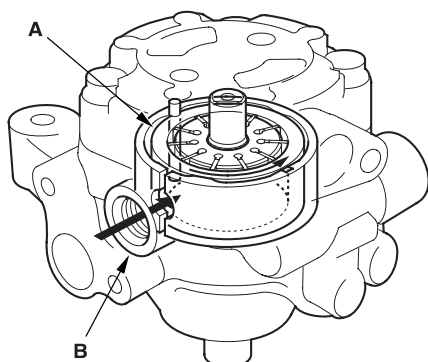




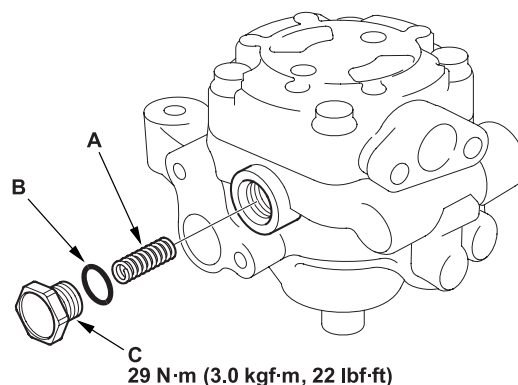
35. Align the bolt holes in the cover (A) with the threaded holes in the pump housing. Install the flange bolts loosely first, then torque the flange bolts in a criss cross pattern in two or more steps.



36. Push in the cam ring (A) from the pump housing cap hole (B) with a flat blade screwdriver, to make sure the cam ring is fully seated against the outer case.



37. Install the pump preload spring (A) in the pump housing.

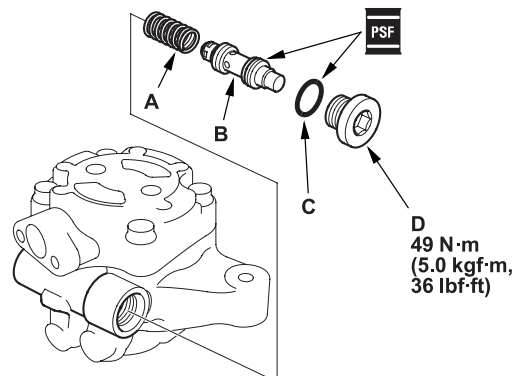


38. Coat the new 12.7 mm O-ring (B) with power steering fluid, and install it on the pump housing cap (C).

39. Install the pump housing cap on the pump housing, and tighten it to specified torque.

40. Install the pressure control valve spring (A) in the pump housing.

41. Coat the pressure control valve (B) with power steering fluid, and install it on the pump housing.



42. Coat the new 16.7 mm O-ring (C) with power steering fluid, and install it on the pressure control valve cap (D).

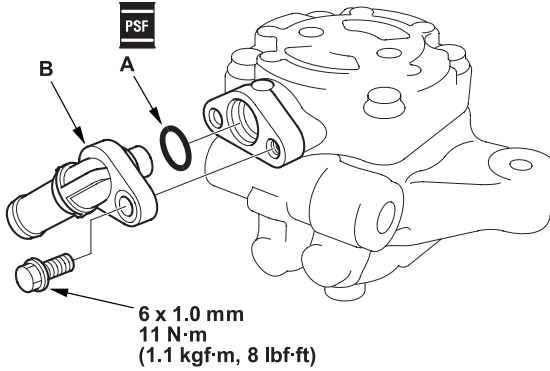
43. Install the pressure control valve cap on the pump housing, and tighten it to the specified torque.

(cont'd)

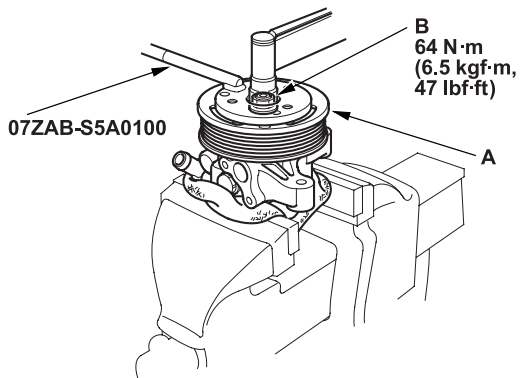
### Pump Overhaul (cont'd)

#### Reassembly (cont'd)

44. Coat the new O-ring (A) with power steering fluid, and install it on the inlet joint (B).



45. Install the inlet joint on the pump housing.
46. Install the pulley (A), then loosely install the pulley nut (B). Hold the steering pump in a vise with soft jaws. Be careful not to damage the pump housing with the jaws of the vise.



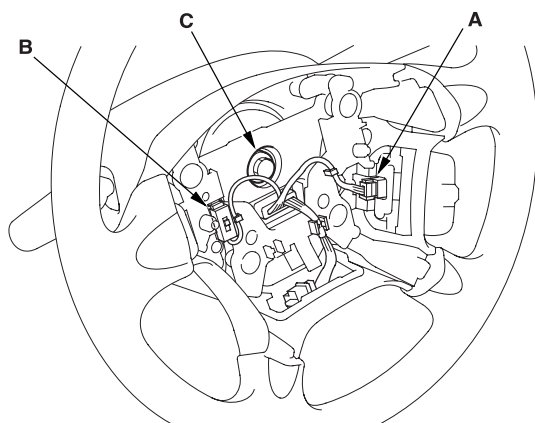
47. Hold the pulley with the special tool, and tighten the pulley nut to specified torque.
48. Check that the pump turns smoothly by turning the pulley. If it turns hard, loosen the four flange bolts on the cover, then retightening them try again in the same manner as in the step 35.



## Steering Wheel Removal

SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations (see page 23-14) and precautions and procedures (see page 23-16) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

1. Align the front wheels straight ahead, then remove the driver's airbag from the steering wheel (see page 23-135).
2. Disconnect the cruise control set/resume switch connector (if equipped) (A) and horn switch connector (B).

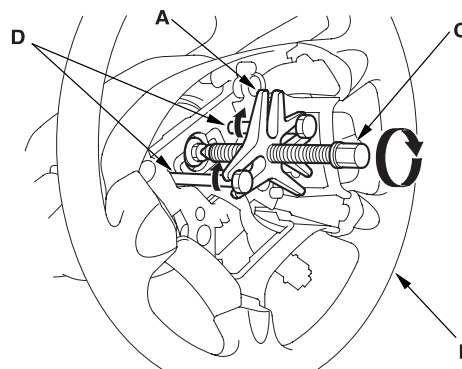


3. Loosen the steering wheel bolt (C).

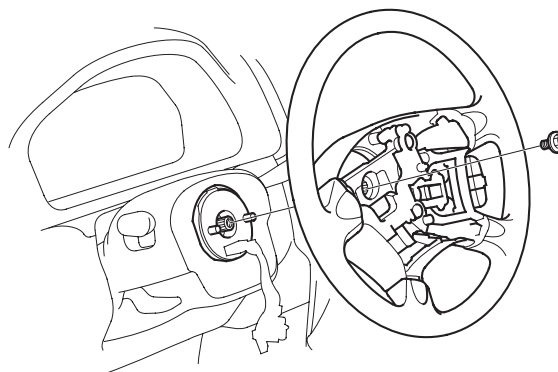
4. Install a commercially available steering wheel puller (A) on the steering wheel (B). Free the steering wheel from the steering column shaft by turning the pressure bolt (C) of the puller.

Note these items when removing the steering wheel:

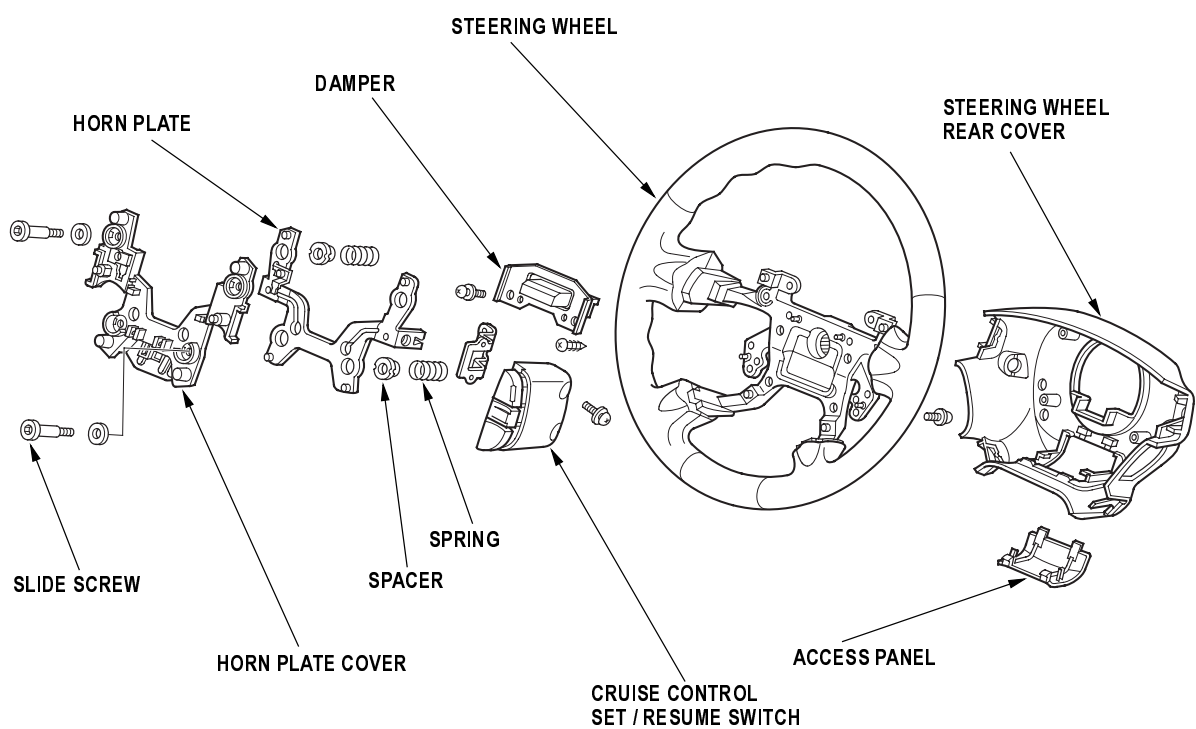
- Do not tap on the steering wheel or the steering column shaft when removing the steering wheel.
- If you thread the puller bolts (D) into the wheel hub more than five threads, the bolts will hit the cable reel and damage it. To prevent this, install a pair of jam nuts five threads up on each puller bolt.



5. Remove the steering wheel puller, then remove the steering wheel bolt and steering wheel from the steering column.



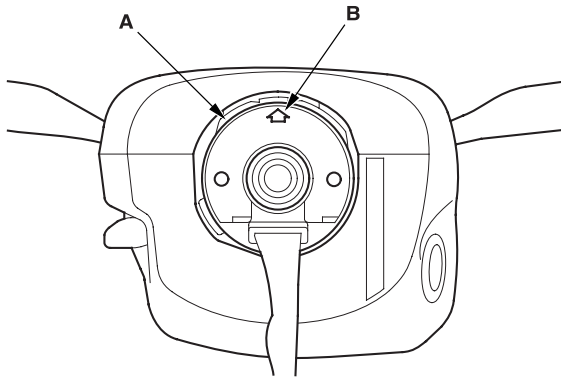
Steering Wheel Disassembly/Reassembly



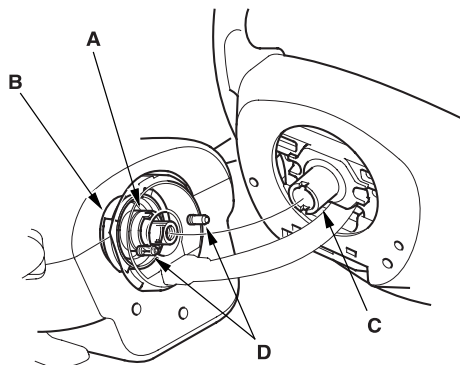


## Steering Wheel Installation

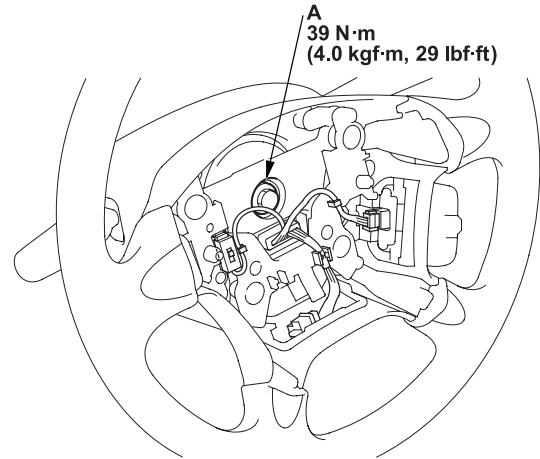
1. Before installing the steering wheel, make sure the front wheels are aligned straight ahead, then center the cable reel (A). Do this by first rotating the cable reel clockwise until it stops. Then rotate it counterclockwise about two and a half turns. The arrow mark (B) on the cable reel label point should point straight up.



2. Position the two tabs (A) of the turn signal cancelling sleeve (B) as shown. Install the steering wheel on to the steering column shaft, making sure the steering wheel hub (C) engages the pins (D) of the cable reel and tabs of the canceling sleeve. Do not tap on the steering wheel or steering column shaft when installing the steering wheel.



3. Install the steering wheel bolt (A) and tighten it to the specified torque. Connect the horn and cruise control set/resume switch connectors. Make sure the wire harness is routed and fastened properly.



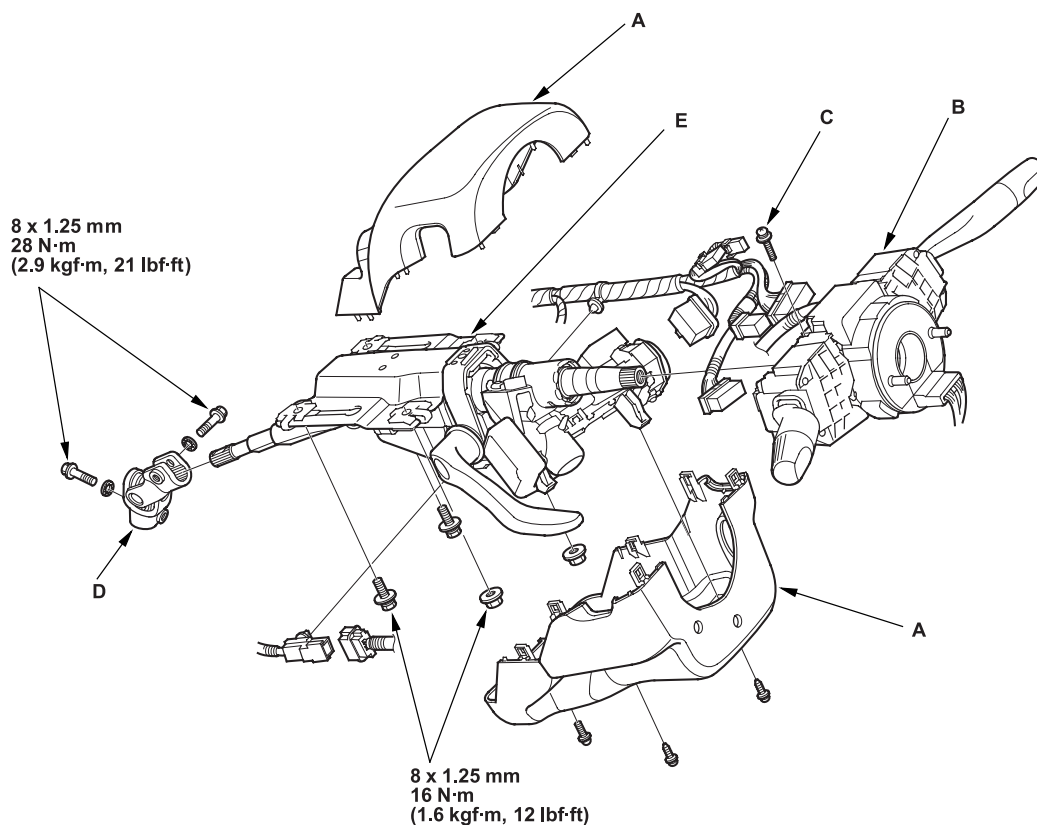
4. Install the driver's airbag, and confirm that the system is operating properly ([see page 23-135](#)).
5. Check the horn and turn signal cancelling for proper operation.

## Steering Column Removal and Installation

SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations (see page 23-14) and precautions and procedures (see page 23-16) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

### Removal

1. Record the radio station presets, and disconnect the battery.
2. Remove the driver's airbag assembly and the steering wheel (see page 17-21).
3. Remove the driver's dashboard lower covers (see page 20-88).
4. Remove the column covers (A).

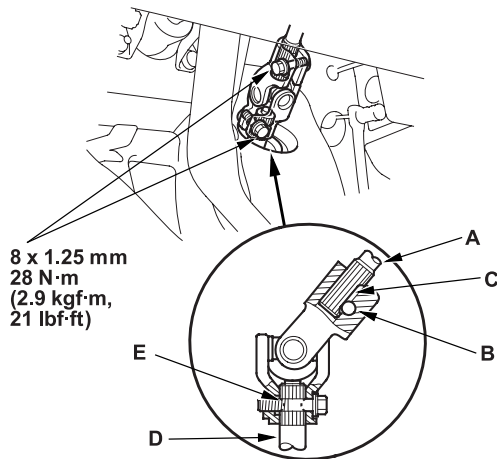


5. Disconnect the wire harness connectors from the combination switch assembly (B).
6. Remove the combination switch assembly from the steering column shaft by removing the screw (C) on the top of the combination switch.
7. Disconnect the connectors from the ignition switch, and release the wire harness clips from the steering column.
8. Disconnect the steering joint (D), and remove it from the column shaft.
9. Remove the steering column (E) by removing the attaching nuts and bolts.



## Installation

1. Install the steering column in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Take care not to let the sliding capsules fall out of the position during column installation.
  - Make sure the wires are not caught or pinched by any parts.
2. Insert the upper end of the steering joint onto the steering shaft (A) (line up the bolt hole (B) with the flat portion (C) on the shaft).



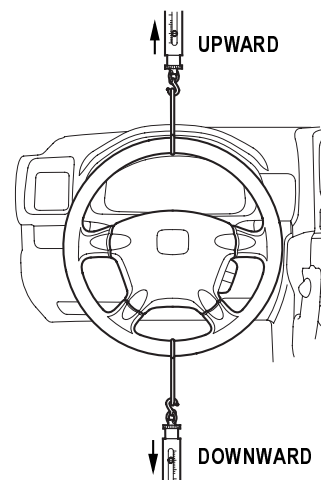
3. Slip the lower end of the steering joint onto the pinion shaft (D) (line up the bolt hole with the groove (E) around the shaft), and loosely install the lower joint bolt. Be sure that the lower joint bolt is securely in the groove in the pinion shaft.
4. Pull on the steering joint to make sure that the steering joint is fully seated. Then install the upper joint bolt and tighten it. Tighten the lower joint bolt to specified torque.
5. Finish the installation, and note these items:
  - Make sure the wire harness is routed and fastened properly.
  - Make sure the connectors are properly connected.
  - Reinstall the steering wheel ([see page 17-23](#)).
  - Reconnect the battery.
  - Verify horn and turn signal switch operation.
  - Check wheel alignment, if necessary ([see page 18-4](#)).

## Steering Column Tilt Operation Check

1. Set the steering wheel in the straight driving position, and loosen the tilt lever fully.
2. Attach the spring scale to the highest point of the steering wheel, and set the tilting position at the lowest.
3. Pull the spring scale straight up, and read the operation load during tilting.
4. Attach the spring scale to the lowest point of the steering wheel.
5. Pull the spring scale straight down, and read the operation load during tilting.

**Tilting Load (Upward/Downward):**

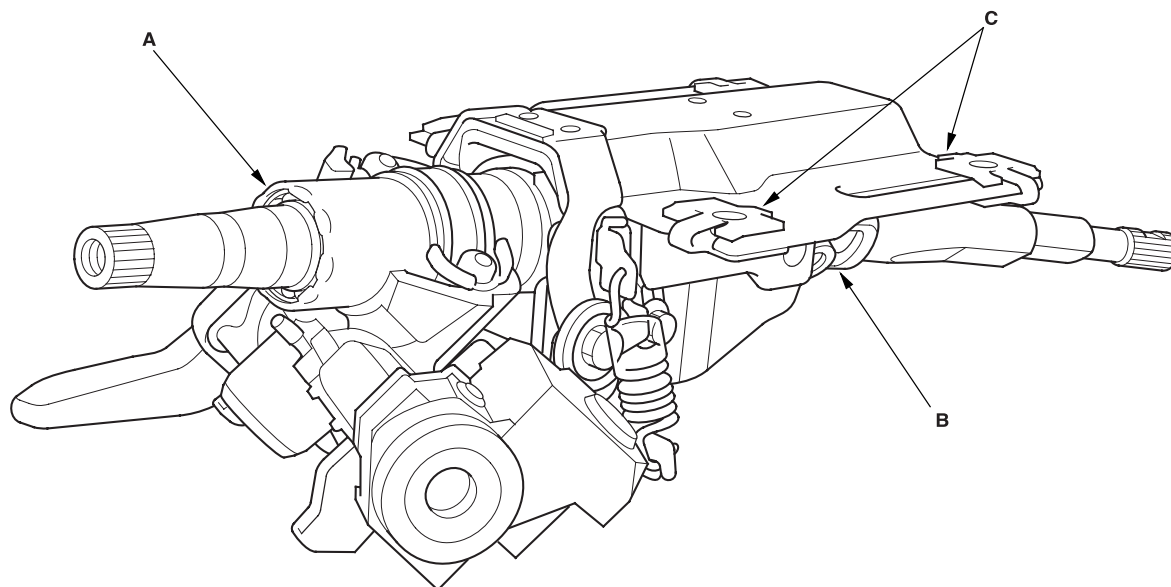
**Standard: 68 N (7.0 kgf, 15 lbf) or below**



6. If the measurement is more than the specification, adjust the tilt lever preload ([see page 17-27](#)).

### Steering Column/Tilt Lever Inspection/Adjustment

- Check the steering column ball bearing (A) and the steering joint bearings (B) for play and proper movement. If any bearing is noisy or has excessive play, replace the steering column as an assembly.
- Check the sliding capsules (C) for distortion and breakage. If there is distortion or breakage replace the steering column as an assembly.



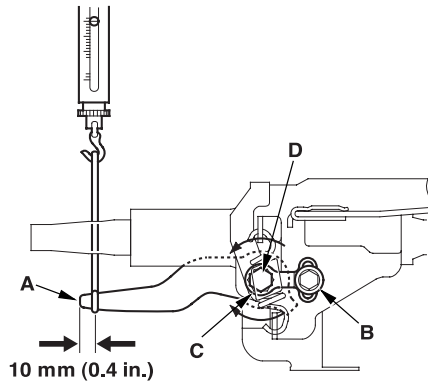




## Tilt Lever Preload Inspection

1. Move the tilt lever (A) from the loose position to the lock position three to 5 times; then measure the tilt lever preload 10 mm (0.4 in.) from the end of the tilt lever.

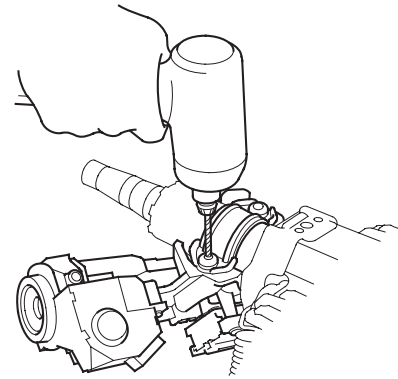
Preload: 70 - 90 N (7 - 9 kgf, 15 - 20 lbf)



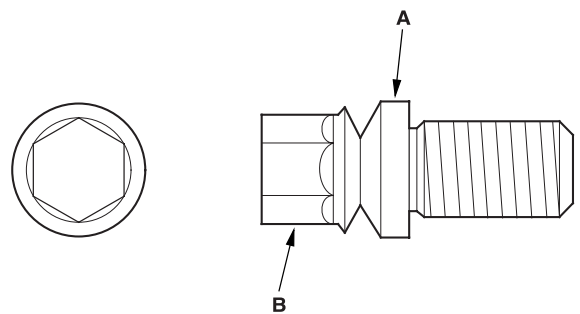
2. If the measurement is out of the specification, adjust the preload using the following procedures.
  - Loosen the tilt lever, and set the steering column in the neutral position.
  - Remove the 6 mm lock bolt (B), and remove the stop (C). Be careful not to loosen the tilt lever when installing the stop or tightening the 6 mm lock bolt.
  - Adjust the preload by turning the tilt lock bolt (D) left bolt.
  - Pull up the tilt lever to the uppermost position, and install the stop. Check the preload again. If the measurement is still out of specification, repeat the above procedures to adjust.

## Steering Lock Replacement

1. Remove the steering column (see page 17-24).
2. Center punch each of the two shear bolts, and drill their heads off with a 5 mm (3/16 in.) drill bit. Be careful not to damage the switch body when removing the shear bolts.



3. Remove the shear bolts from the switch body.
4. Install the switch body without the key inserted.
5. Loosely tighten the new shear bolts.
6. Insert the ignition key, and check for proper operation of the steering wheel lock and that the ignition key turns freely.
7. Tighten the shear bolts (A) until the hex heads (B) twist off.

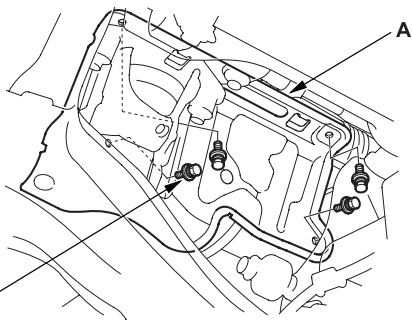


## Rack Guide Adjustment

### Special Tools Required

Locknut wrench, 40 mm 07MAA-SL00100

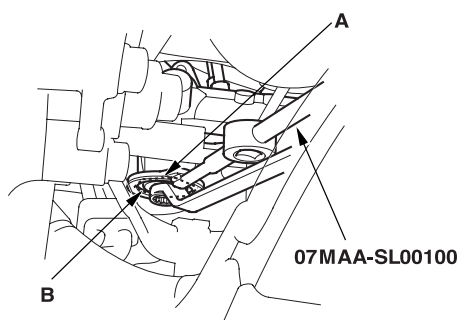
1. Set the wheels in the straight ahead position.
2. Vehicle's with RHD; remove the air cleaner. Then remove the heat shield (A) to upward. Be carefully not to damage the heater hoses.



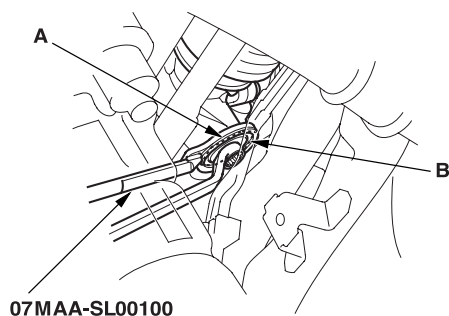
6 x 1.0 mm  
9.8 N·m  
(1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)

3. Loosen the rack guide screw locknut (A) with the special tool, then remove the rack guide screw (B).

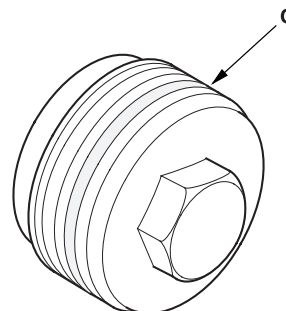
LHD:



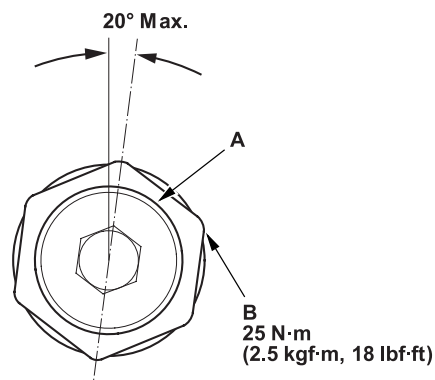
RHD:



4. Remove the old sealant from rack guide screw, and apply new sealant to the middle of the threads (C). Loosely install the rack guide screw on the steering gearbox.



5. Tighten the rack guide screw (A) to 25 N·m (2.5 kgf·m, 18 lbf·ft), then loosen it.



6. Retighten the rack guide screw to 6 N·m (0.6 kgf·m, 4 lbf·ft), then back it off to specified angle.

**Specified Return Angle: 20° Max.**

7. Hold the rack guide screw stationary with a wrench, and tighten the locknut by hand until it's fully seated.
8. Install the special tool on the locknut (B), and hold the rack guide screw (A) stationary with a wrench. Tighten the locknut an additional 30° with the special tool.
9. Vehicle's with RHD; reinstall the heat shield and air cleaner.
10. Check for unusual steering effort through the complete turning travel.
11. Check the steering wheel rotation play and the power assist ([see page 17-7](#)).



## Steering Gearbox Removal

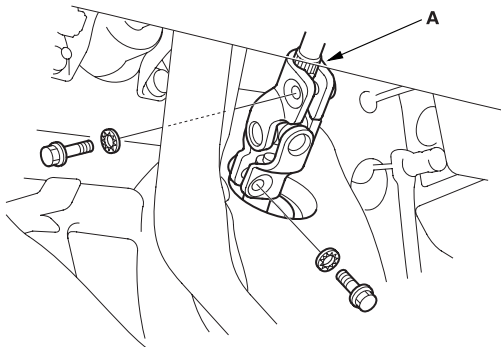
### Special Tools Required

Ball joint remover, 28 mm 07MAC-SL00200

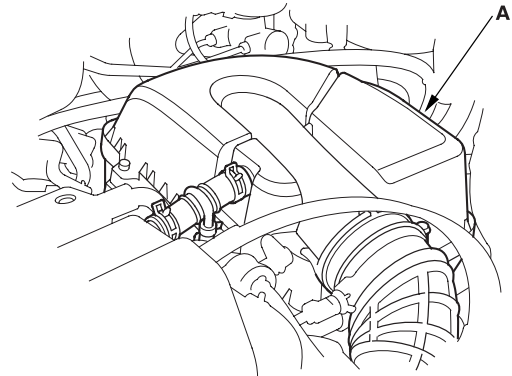
Note these items during removal:

- Using solvent and a brush, wash any oil and dirt off the valve body unit, its lines, and the end of the gearbox. Blow dry with compressed air.
- Be sure to remove the steering wheel before disconnecting the steering joint. Damage to the cable reel can occur.

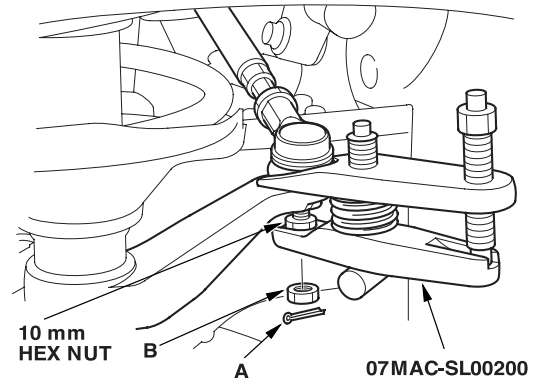
1. Raise the front of vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported.
2. Remove the front wheels.
3. Remove the driver's airbag and the steering wheel ([see page 17-21](#)).
4. Remove the driver's dashboard lower cover and under cover ([see page 20-89](#)).
5. Remove the steering joint bolts, and disconnect the steering joint by moving the steering joint (A) toward the column.



6. Remove the air cleaner (A).



7. Remove the cotter pin (A) from the tie-rod ball joint nut (B), and loosen the nut.



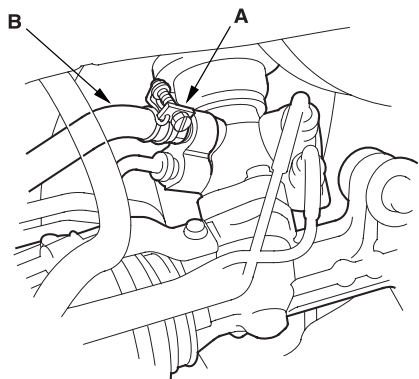
8. Separate the tie-rod ball joint and damper steering arm using the special tool ([see page 18-10](#)).

(cont'd)

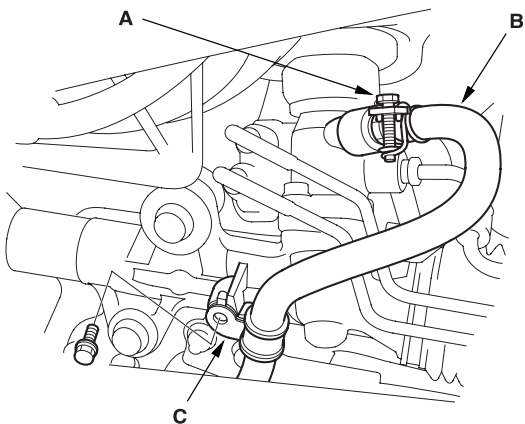
Steering Gearbox Removal (cont'd)

9. Loosen the adjustable hose clamp (A) and disconnect the return hose (B), and return line clamp (RHD model) (C).

LHD:

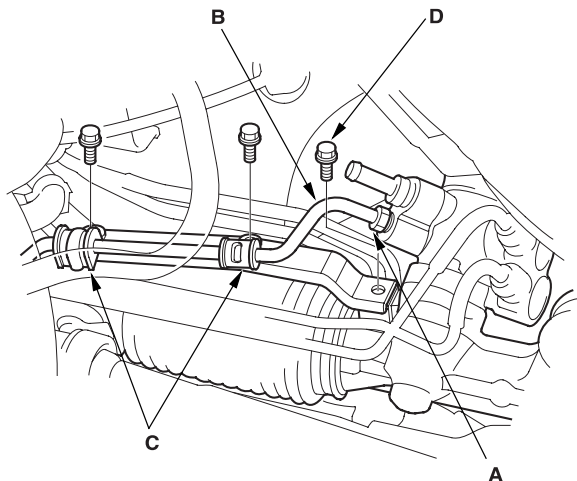


RHD:

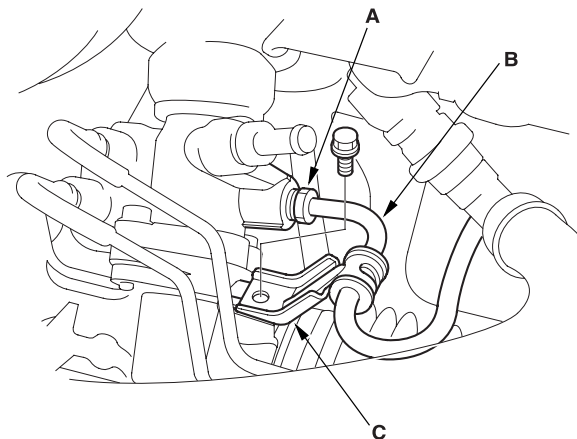


10. On the driver's side, loosen the 14 mm flare nut (A) and disconnect the feed line (B), and feed line clamps (C). Remove the P/S return line bracket attaching bolt (LHD model) (D).

LHD:

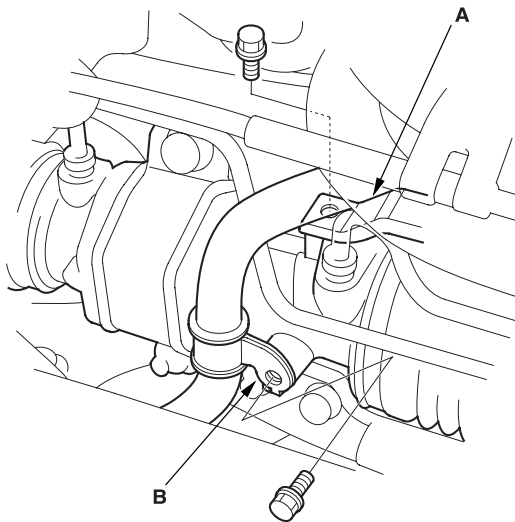


RHD:

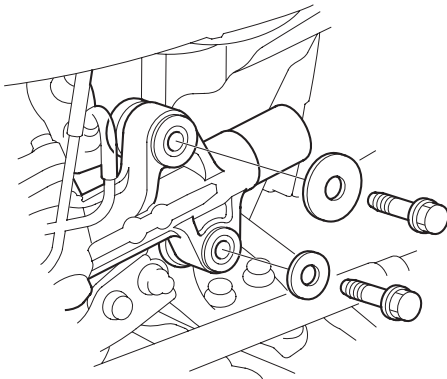




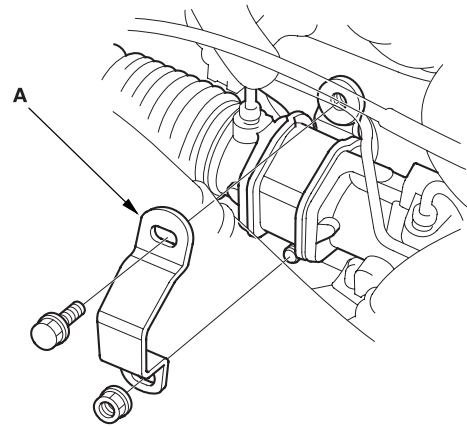
11. On the passenger's side, remove the P/S return line bracket (A) and return line clamp (B).



12. Remove the two 10 mm flange bolts and washers from the left side (RHD: right side) of gearbox.

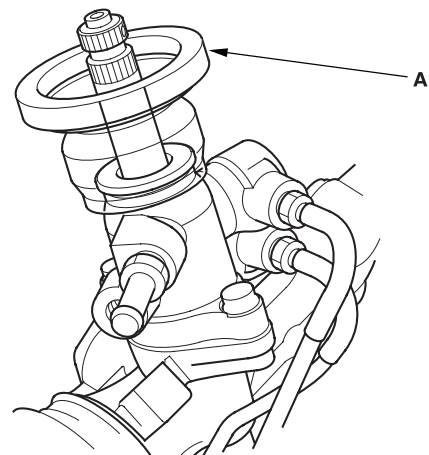


13. Remove the 10 mm flange bolt and nut from the right side (RHD: left side) of the gearbox, then remove the mounting bracket (A).



14. Lower the steering gearbox, and rotate it so the pinion shaft points upward.

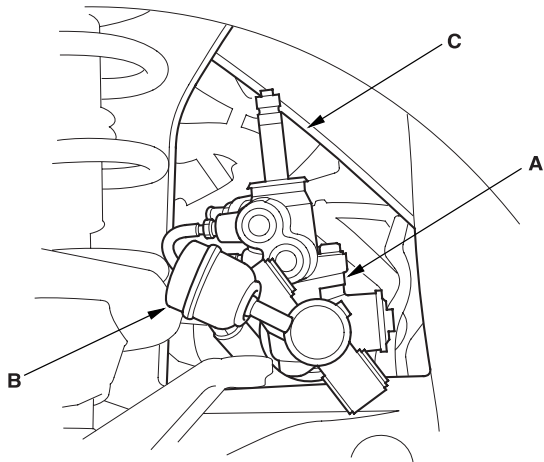
15. Remove the pinion shaft grommet (A) from the top of the valve body unit.



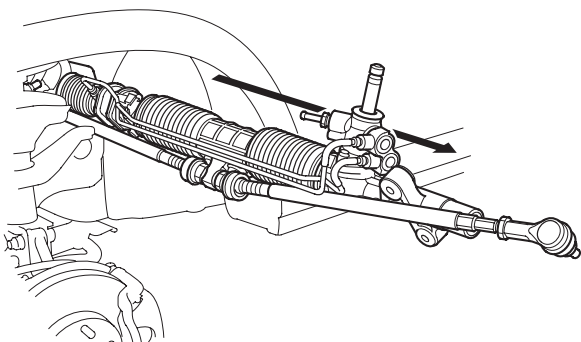
(cont'd)

### Steering Gearbox Removal (cont'd)

16. Carefully move the steering gearbox (A) and tie-rods (B) as an assembly toward the driver's side until the pinion shaft clears the wheelwell opening (C) on the frame.



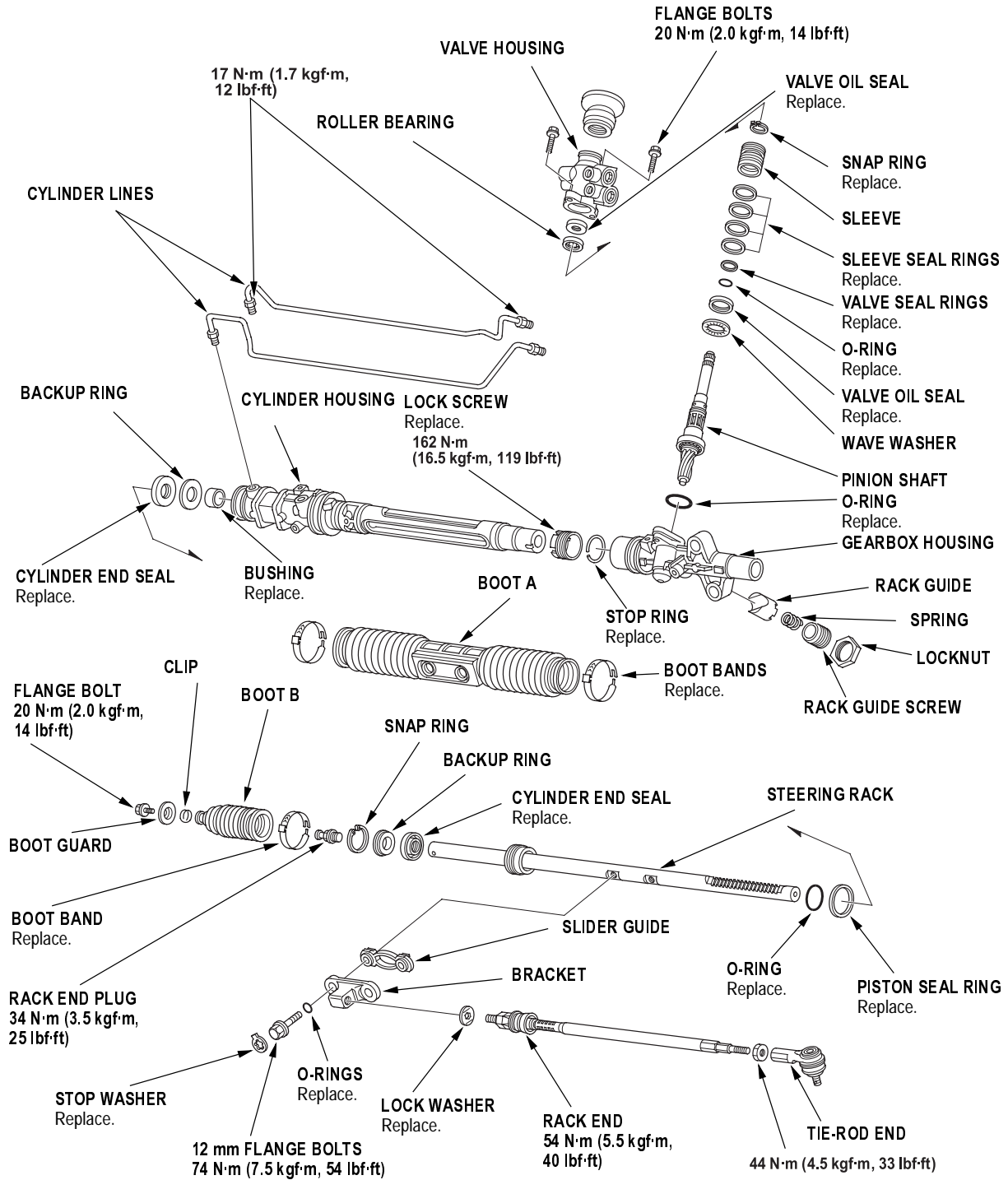
17. Remove the steering gearbox through the wheelwell opening on the driver's side.





## Steering Gearbox Overhaul

### Exploded View



(cont'd)

## Steering Gearbox Overhaul (cont'd)

## Special Tools Required

- Cylinder end seal remover attachment 07NAD-SR30200
- Driver, 27 mm 07ZAF-S5A0100
- Valve seal ring sizing tool 07NAG-SR30900
- Sleeve seal ring guide 07YAG-S2X0100
- Sleeve seal ring sizing tool 07ZAG-S5A0100
- Attachment, 32 x 35 mm 07746-0010100
- Driver 07749-0010000
- Piston seal ring guide, 42 mm 07ZAG-S7A0100
- Piston seal ring sizing tool, 42 mm 07ZAG-S7A0200
- Locknut wrench 07ZAA-S5A0100
- Driver handle 07NAD-SR30101
- Cylinder end seal slider, 23 mm 07974-6890801
- Valve seal ring guide 07ZAG-S5A0200
- Pincers, Oetiker 1098 or equivalent, commercially available.

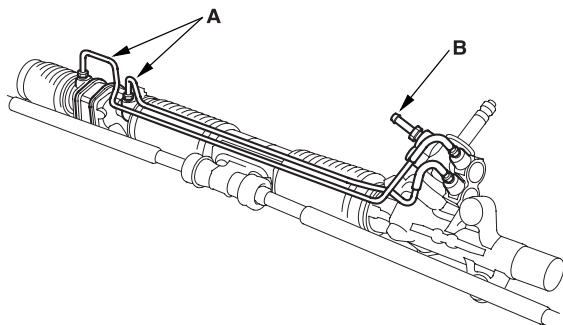
NOTE: Refer to the Exploded View as needed during this procedure.

## Removal

1. Remove the steering gearbox (see page 17-29).

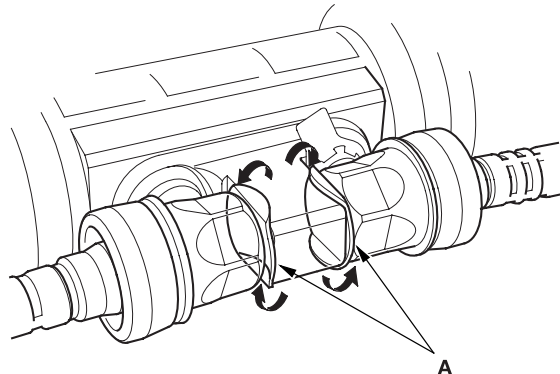
## Disassembly

2. Remove cylinder lines (A) and return line joint (B) from the gearbox.

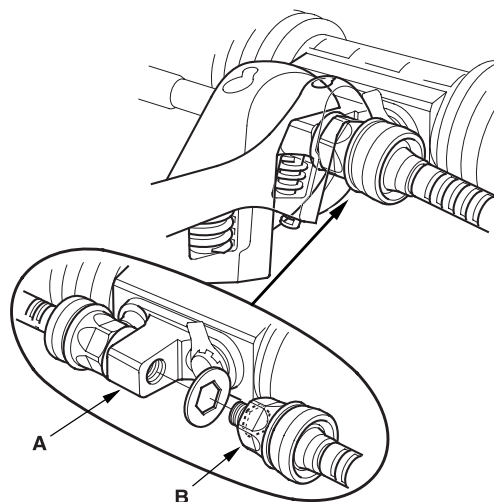


3. Drain the fluid from the cylinder fittings by slowly moving the steering rack back and forth.

4. Unbend the lock washer (A).



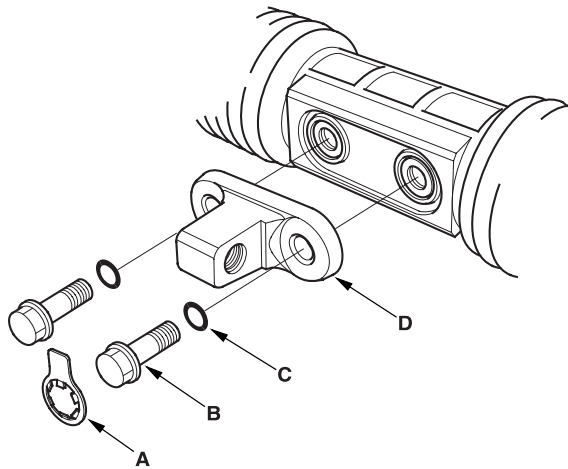
5. Hold the bracket (A) with one wrench, and unscrew both rack ends (B) with another wrench. Remove the lock washers.



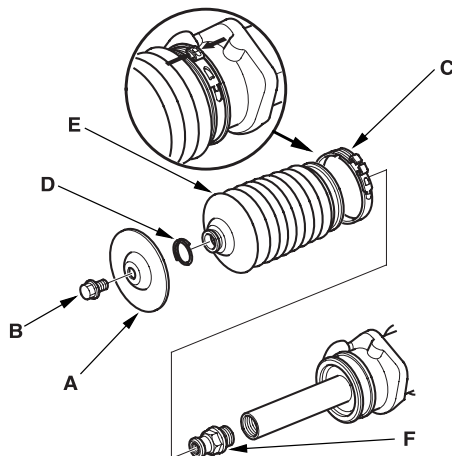




6. Remove the stop washer (A), the 12 mm flange bolts (B), O-rings (C), and bracket (D) from the steering gearbox.

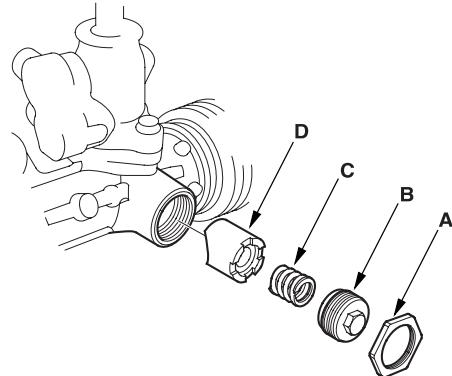


7. Remove the boot guard (A) by removing the 8 mm flange bolt (B) on the rack end.

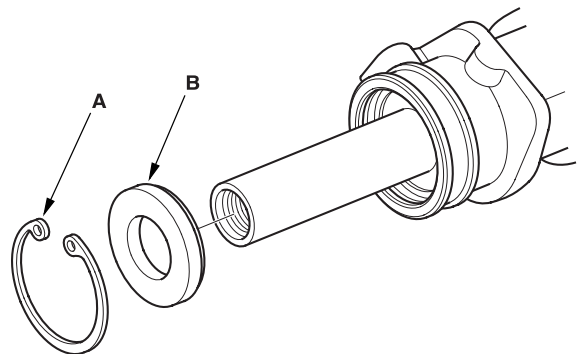


8. Remove the boot band (C) and clip (D). Pull the boot (E) away from the end of the steering gearbox. Remove the rack end plug (F).

9. Loosen the locknut (A), then remove the rack guide screw (B), spring (C), and rack guide (D) from the steering gearbox.



10. Remove the snap ring (A) and backup ring (B) from the cylinder housing.

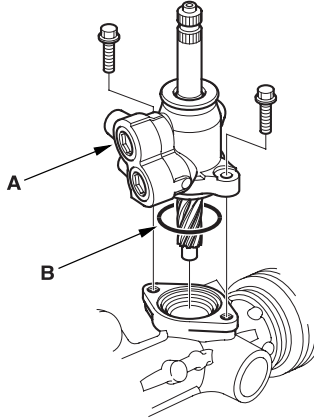


(cont'd)

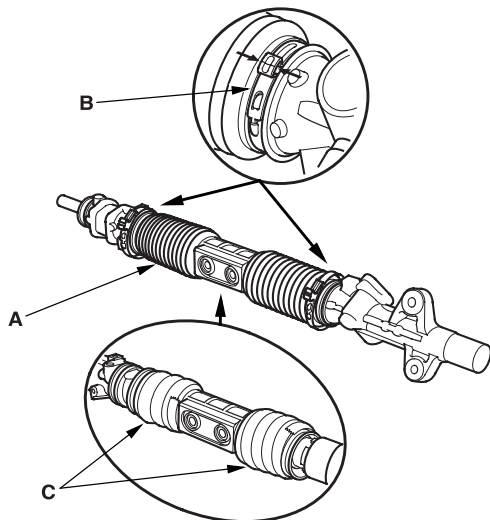
## Steering Gearbox Overhaul (cont'd)

### Disassembly (cont'd)

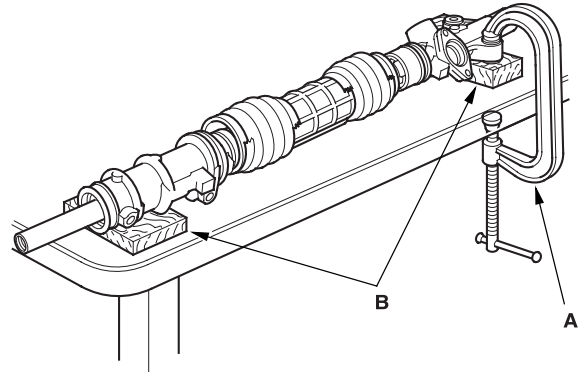
11. Remove the valve body unit (A) from the steering gearbox. Remove the O-ring (B) and discard it.



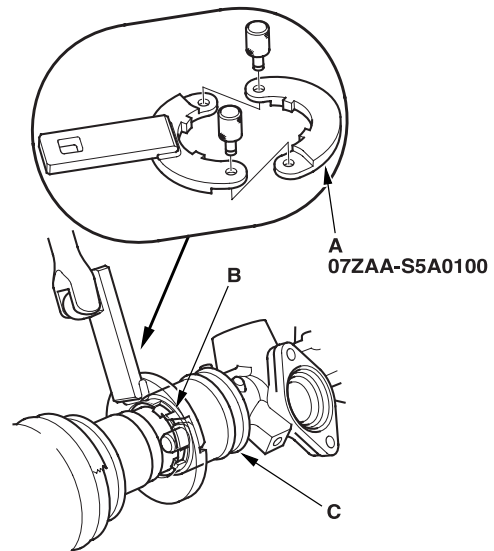
12. Remove the two boot bands (B) from boot A. Compress boot A by hand, and apply vinyl tape (C) so the boots stay collapsed and pulled back.



13. Hold the gearbox housing using a C-clamp (commercially available) (A) and the wooden blocks (B) as shown. Do not clamp the cylinder housing or gearbox housing in the vise.

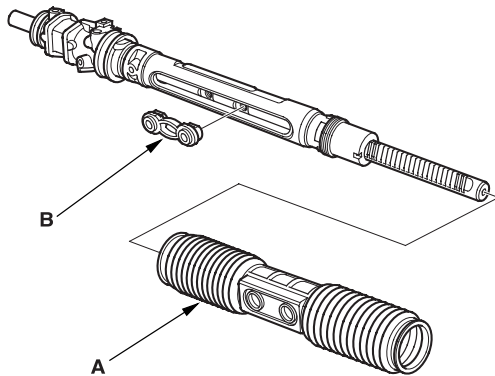


14. Install the special tool (A) on the lock screw (B), then loosen and remove the lock screw from inside of the gearbox housing (C).

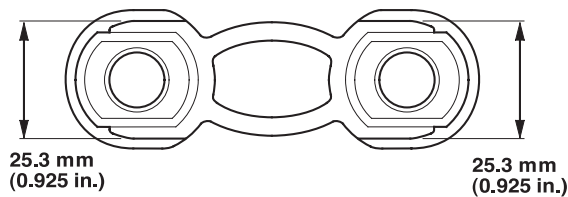




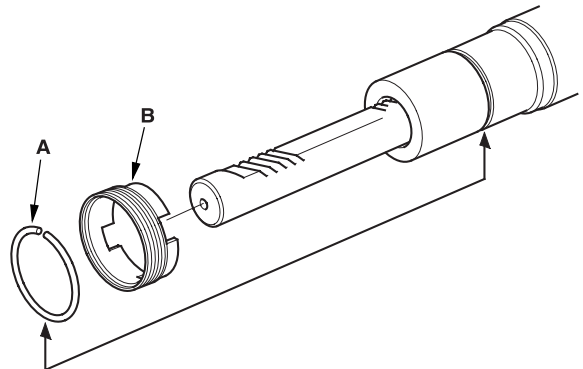
15. Remove the special tool.
16. Pull on the cylinder to remove it from the gearbox housing. Remove boot A and the slider guide (B) from the cylinder.



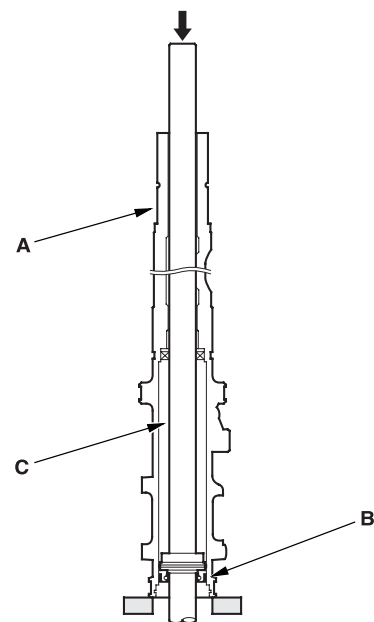
17. Check the slider guide for damage and cracks. Use vernier calipers to measure the thickness of the slider guide. If the thickness is less than the service limit, replace the slider guide.



18. Remove and discard the stop ring (A) on the cylinder by expanding it with snap ring pliers. Remove and discard the lock screw (B).



19. Set the cylinder housing (A) in a press so the cylinder side points downward, then press the cylinder end seal (B) and steering rack (C) out of the cylinder. Hold the rack to keep it from falling when pressed clear.



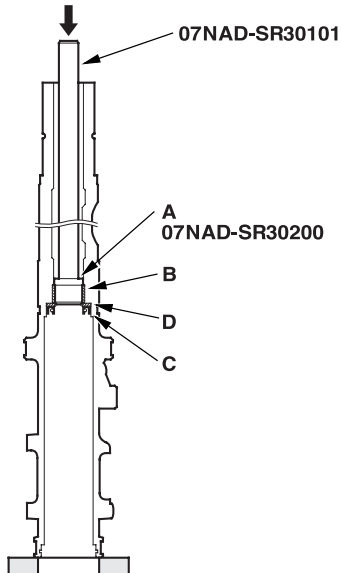
20. Remove the cylinder end seal from the steering rack.

(cont'd)

## Steering Gearbox Overhaul (cont'd)

### Disassembly (cont'd)

21. Insert the special tools into the cylinder.  
Make sure the attachment (A) of the special tools is securely positioned on the bushing edges (B).

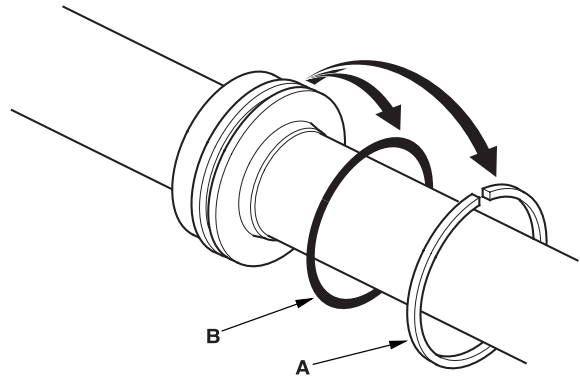


22. Place the cylinder in a press, then remove the cylinder end seal (C), backup ring (D), and bushing (B) from the cylinder by pressing on the special tool end.

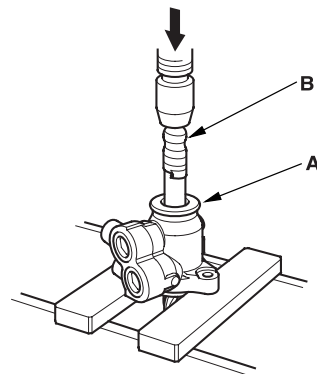
Note the items when pressing the cylinder end seal:

- Keep tool straight to avoid damaging the cylinder wall. Check the tool angle, and correct it if necessary, when removing the cylinder end seal.
- Use a press to remove the cylinder end seal. Do not try to remove the seal by striking the tool; striking the tool would break the cylinder end seal, and the seal would remain in the cylinder.

23. Carefully pry the piston seal ring (A) and O-ring (B) off the rack piston. Be careful not to damage the inside of the seal ring groove and piston edges when removing the seal ring.



24. Before removing the valve housing (A), apply vinyl tape (B) to the splines on the pinion shaft.

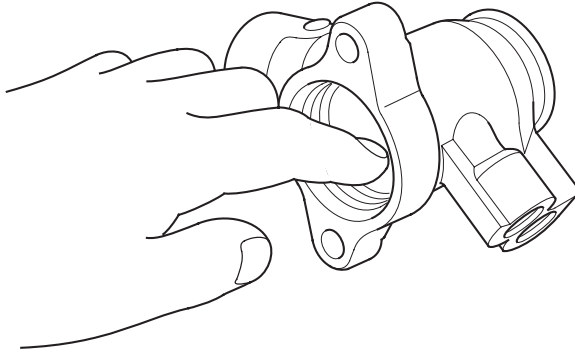


25. Separate the valve housing from the pinion shaft/valve using a press.



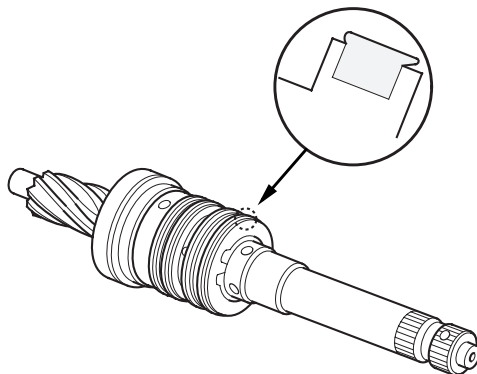
- 26.** With your finger, check the inner wall of the valve housing where the seal ring slides. If there is a step in the wall, the housing is worn. Replace it.

NOTE: There may be sliding marks from the seal ring on the wall of the valve housing. Replace the valve housing only if the wall is stepped.

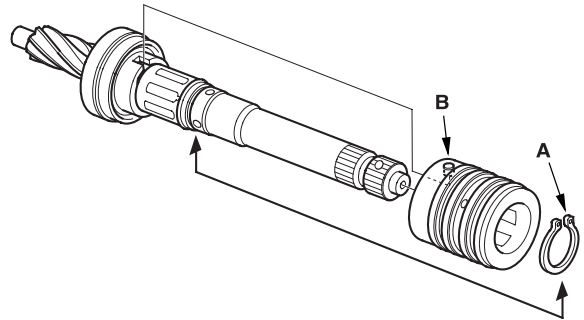


- 27.** Check for wear, burrs, and other damage to the edges of the grooves in the sleeve.

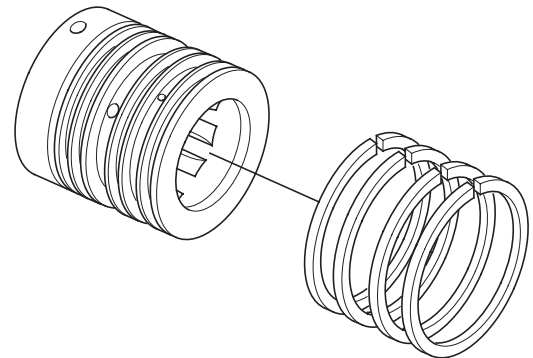
NOTE: The pinion shaft and sleeve are a precision matched set. If either the pinion shaft or sleeve must be replaced, replace both parts as a set.



- 28.** Remove the snap ring (A) and sleeve (B) from the pinion shaft.



- 29.** Using a cutter or an equivalent tool, cut and remove the four seal rings from the sleeve. Be careful not to damage the edges of the sleeve grooves and the outer surface when removing the seal rings.

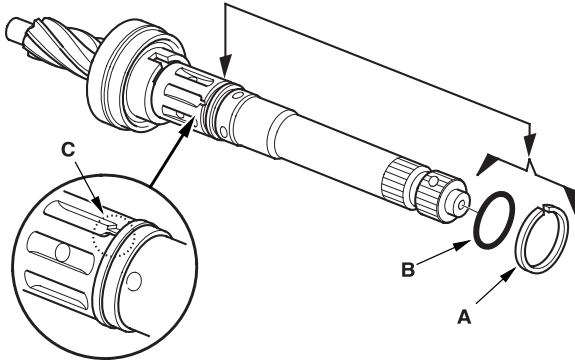


(cont'd)

## Steering Gearbox Overhaul (cont'd)

### Disassembly (cont'd)

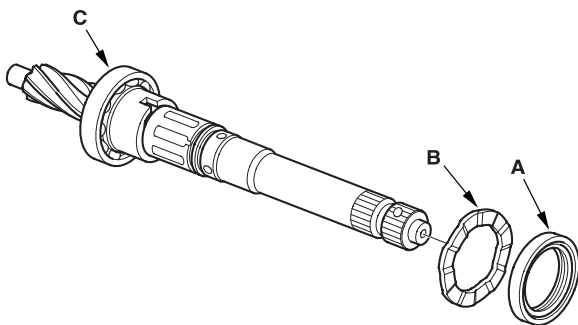
30. Using a cutter or an equivalent tool, cut the valve seal ring (A) and O-ring (B) at the groove (C) in the pinion shaft. Remove the valve seal ring and O-ring. Be careful not to damage the edges of the pinion shaft groove and outer surface when removing the valve seal ring and O-ring.



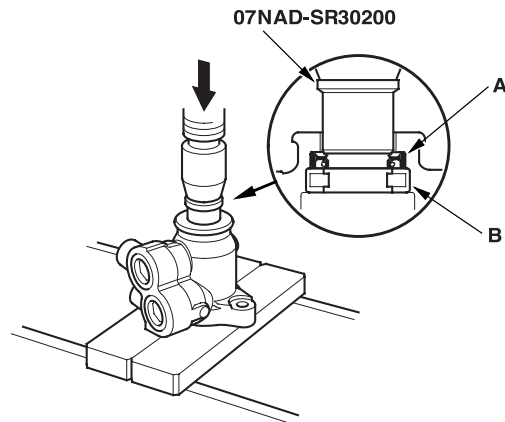
31. Remove the valve oil seal (A) and wave washer (B) from the pinion shaft.

Note these items during disassembly:

- Inspect the ball bearing (C) by rotating the outer race slowly. If there is any excessive play, replace the pinion shaft and sleeve as an assembly.
- The pinion shaft and sleeve are a precise fit; do not intermix old and new pinion shafts and sleeves.

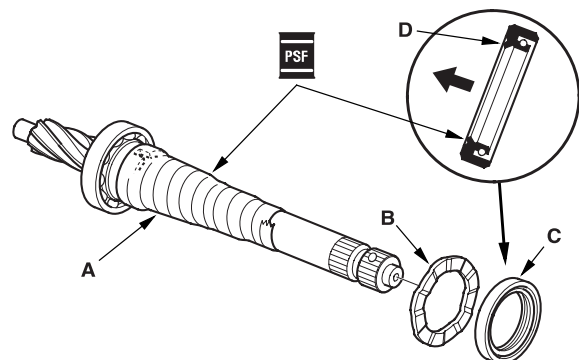


32. Press the valve oil seal (A) and roller bearing (B) out of the valve housing using a hydraulic press and special tool.



### Reassembly

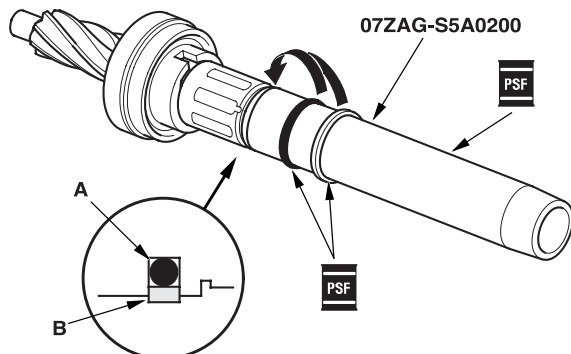
33. Apply vinyl tape (A) to the stepped portion of the pinion shaft, and coat the surface of the vinyl tape with the power steering fluid.



34. Install the wave washer (B). Coat the inside surface of the new valve oil seal (C) with power steering fluid, and install the seal with its grooved side facing opposite the bearing, then slide it over the pinion shaft, being careful not to damage its sealing lip (D). Remove the vinyl tape.

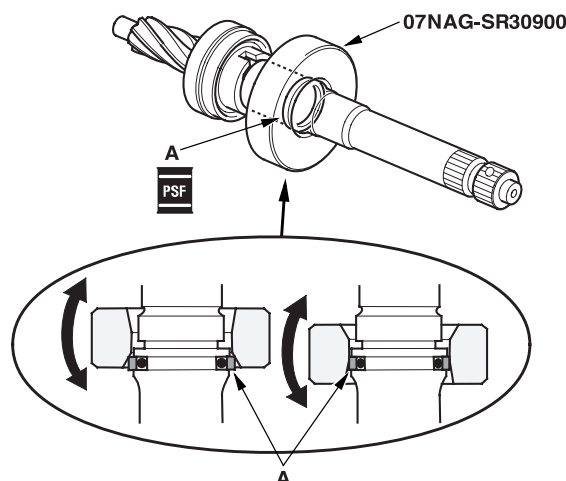


35. Install the special tool over the pinion, and coat the surface of the tool with the power steering fluid. Slip the new O-ring (A) and new valve seal ring (B) over the special tool, and expand them.



36. Fit the O-ring and in the groove of the pinion shaft. Then slide the valve seal ring over the shaft and in the groove on the pinion shaft.

37. Remove the special tool, and apply power steering fluid to the surface of the valve seal ring (A).



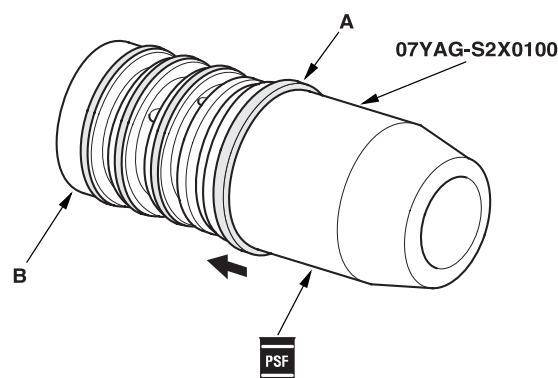
38. Apply power steering fluid to the inside of the special tool. Set the larger diameter end of the special tool over the valve seal ring, and move the special tool up and down several times to make the valve seal ring fit in the pinion shaft groove.

39. Remove the special tool, turn it over, slide the smaller diameter end over the valve seal ring. Move it up and down several times to make the valve seal ring fit snugly in the pinion shaft groove.

40. Apply power steering fluid to the surface of the special tool. Slip two new seal rings (A) over the special tool from the smaller diameter end, and expand them. Install only two rings at a time from each end of the pinion shaft sleeve (B).

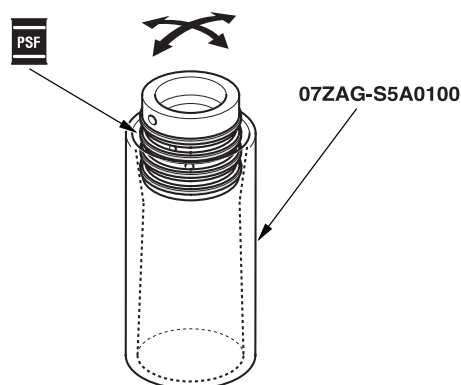
Note these items when installing the seal ring:

- Do not over-expand the seal ring. Install the resin seal rings with care so as not to damage them. After installation, be sure to contract the seal rings using the special tool (sizing tool).
- There are two types of sleeve seal rings: black and brown. Do not mix the different types of rings as they are not compatible.



41. Align the special tool with each groove in the sleeve, and slide a sleeve seal ring into each groove. After installation, compress the seal rings with your fingers temporarily.

42. Apply power steering fluid to the seal rings on the sleeve, and to the entire inside surface of the special tool, then slowly insert the sleeve into the special tool.



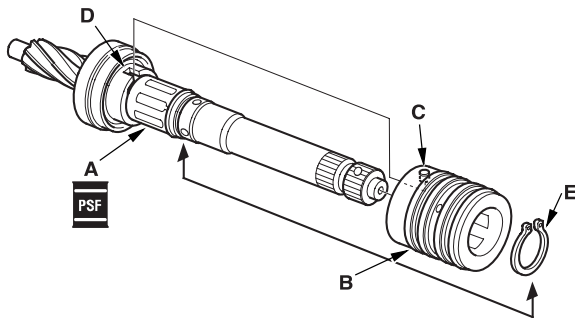
43. Move the sleeve back and forth several times to make the seal rings snugly fit in the sleeve. Be sure that the seal rings are not twisted.

(cont'd)

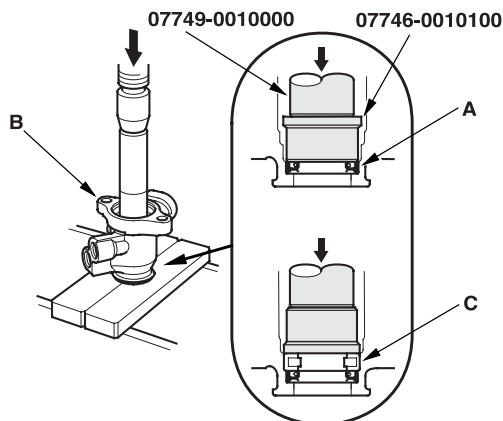
## Steering Gearbox Overhaul (cont'd)

### Reassembly (cont'd)

- 44.** Apply power steering fluid to the surface of the pinion shaft (A). Slide the sleeve (B) onto the pinion shaft by aligning the locating pin (C) on the inside of the sleeve with the cutout (D) in the shaft. Then install the new snap ring (E) securely in the pinion shaft groove. Be careful not to damage the valve seal ring when inserting the sleeve.

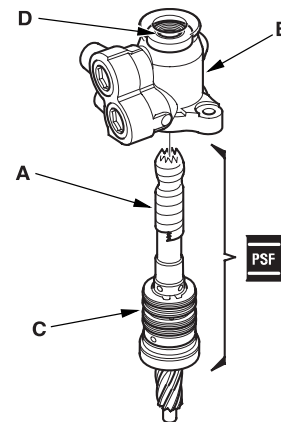


- 45.** Apply power steering fluid to the seal ring lip of the new valve oil seal (A), then install the seal in the valve housing (B) using a hydraulic press and special tools. Install the seal with its grooved side facing the tool.



- 46.** Press the roller bearing (C) into the valve housing with a hydraulic press and special tool.

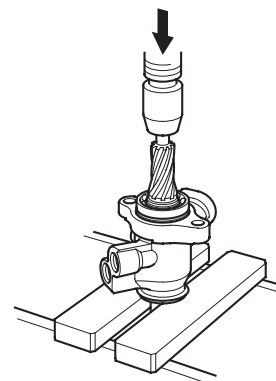
- 47.** Apply vinyl tape (A) to the pinion shaft, then coat the vinyl tape with power steering fluid.



- 48.** Insert the pinion shaft into the valve housing (B). Be careful not to damage the valve seal rings (C) and valve oil seal sealing lip (D).

- 49.** Remove the vinyl tape from the pinion shaft, then remove any residue from the tape adhesive.

- 50.** Press the pinion shaft/sleeve into the valve housing with a hydraulic press. Check that the pinion shaft/sleeve turns smoothly by hand after installing it.



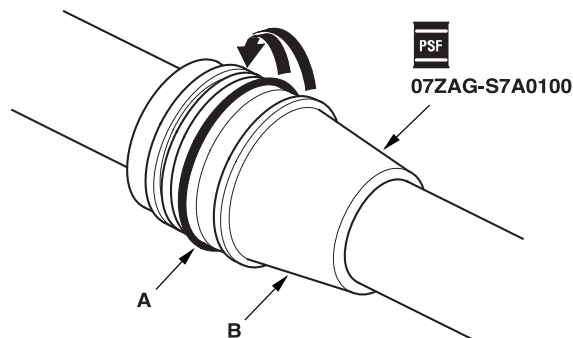




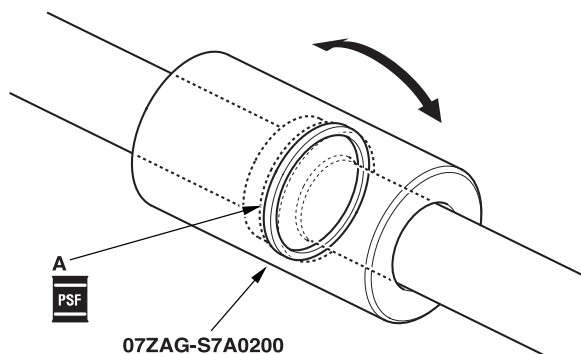
51. Coat the special tool with power steering fluid, then slide it onto the rack, big end first.
52. Position the new O-ring (A) and new piston seal ring (B) on the special tool, then slide them down toward the big end of the tool.

Note these items during reassembly:

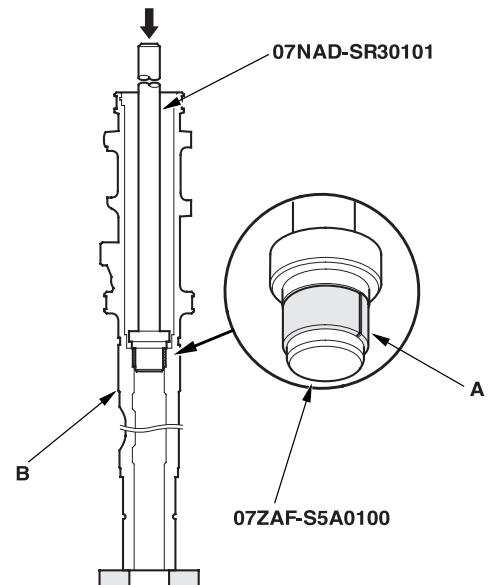
- Do not over expand the resin seal rings. Install the resin seal rings with care so as not to damage them. After installation, be sure to contract the seal ring using the special tool (sizing tool).
- Replace piston's O-ring and seal ring as a set.



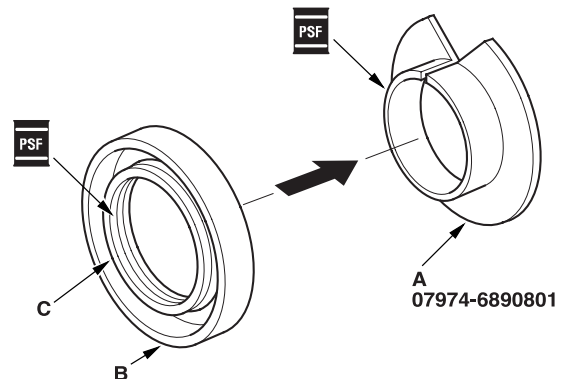
53. Pull the O-ring off into the piston groove, then pull the piston seal ring off into the piston groove on top of the O-ring.
54. Coat the piston seal ring (A) and the inside of the special tool with power steering fluid, then carefully slide the tool onto the rack and over the piston seal ring.
55. Move the special tool back and forth several times to make the piston seal ring fit snugly in the piston.



56. Set the new bushing (A) on the special tool, and insert the special tools into the cylinder housing (B).



57. Set the cylinder in a press, and install the bushing (A) into the bottom of the cylinder by pressing on the tool with press. Do not push on the tool with excessive force as it may damage the new bushing.
58. Coat the sliding surface of the special tool (A) and new cylinder end seal (B) with power steering fluid. Place the seal on the special tool with its grooved side (C) facing opposite the special tool.

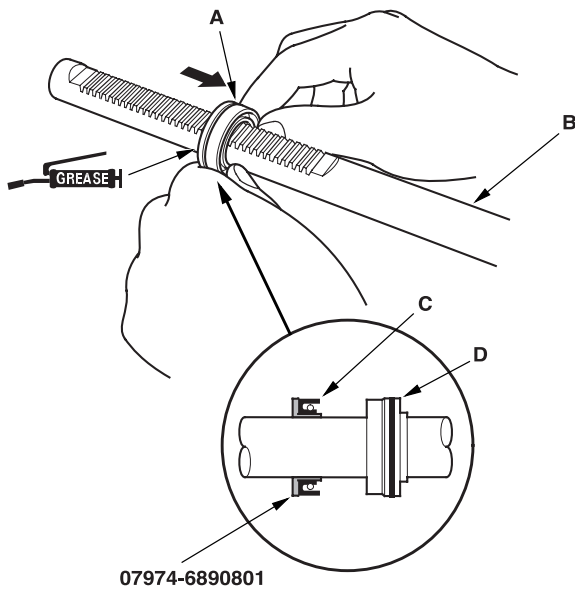


(cont'd)

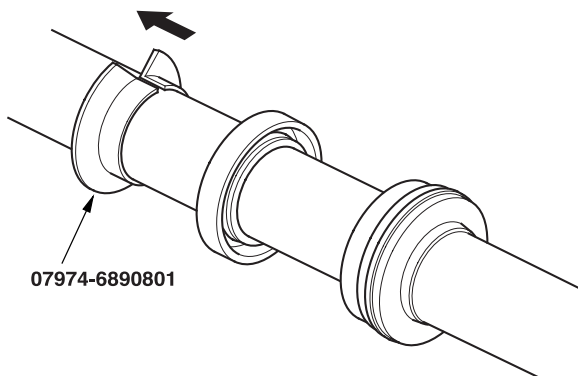
### Steering Gearbox Overhaul (cont'd)

#### Reassembly (cont'd)

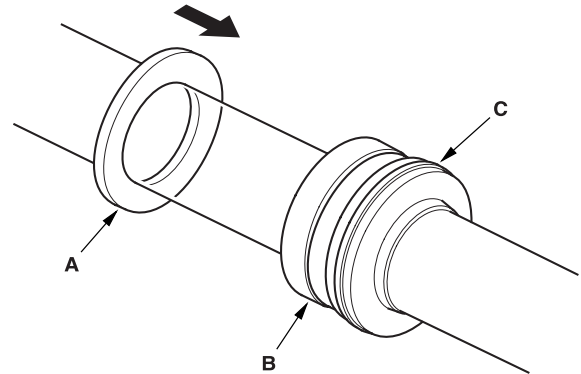
59. Apply a thin coat of grease to the inside of the special tool.
60. Install the cylinder end seal (A) onto the steering rack (B) with its grooved side (C) toward the piston (D). Make sure the gap in special tool is opposite of rack teeth.



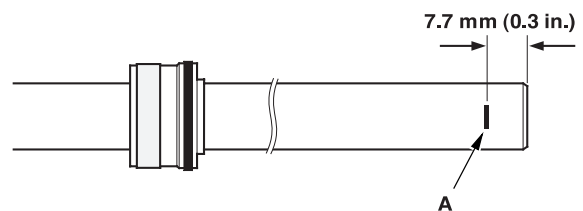
61. Separate the cylinder end seal from the special tool, then remove the special tool.



62. Install the new backup ring (A) on the steering rack, then place the backup ring and cylinder end seal (B) against the piston (C).

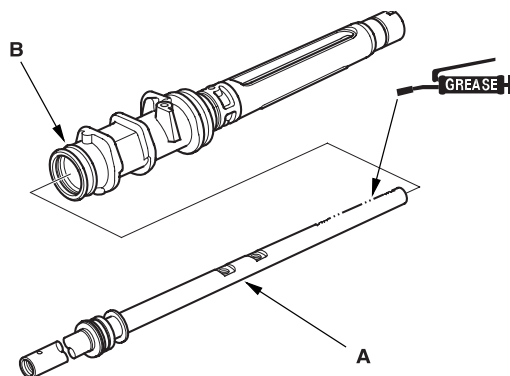


63. Mark (A) a position on the steering rack surface with a felt-tip marker, 7.7 mm (0.3 in.) from the rack end edges.

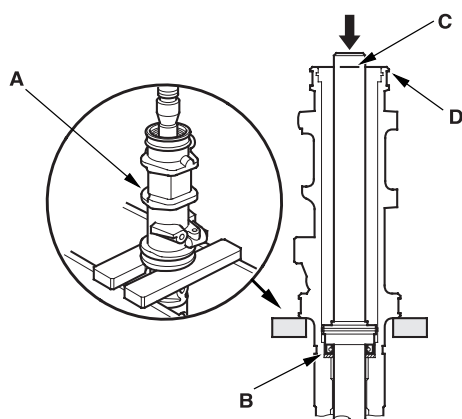




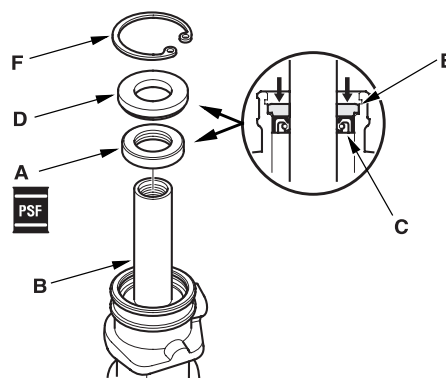
- 64.** Grease the steering rack teeth, then insert the steering rack (A) into the cylinder (B). Be careful not to damage to inner surface of the cylinder wall and bushing with the rack edges.



- 65.** Set the cylinder (A) in a press, then press the cylinder end seal (B) into the bottom of the cylinder until the mark (C) on the rack meets the edges (D) of the cylinder.



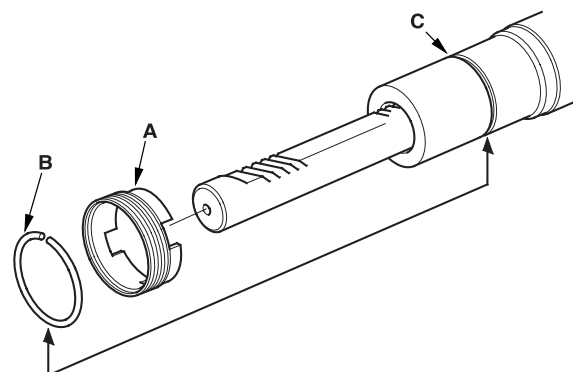
- 66.** Coat the inside and outside surfaces of the new cylinder end seal (A) with power steering fluid.



- 67.** Install the cylinder end seal onto the steering rack (B) with its grooved side (C) toward the piston. Push in the cylinder end seal with your finger.

- 68.** Place the backup ring (D) on the cylinder end seal with its flat side facing upward. Then drive the backup ring in with the appropriate size socket wrench until its surface is below the snap ring groove (E). Install the snap ring (F) in the groove.

- 69.** Install the new lock screw (A) on the cylinder.



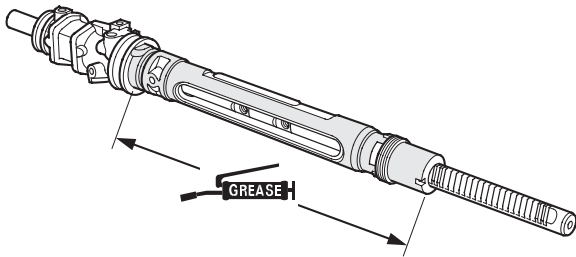
- 70.** Install the new stop ring (B) in the groove (C) on the cylinder by expanding it with snap ring pliers. Be careful not to scratch or damage on the cylinder surface with the stop ring edges.

(cont'd)

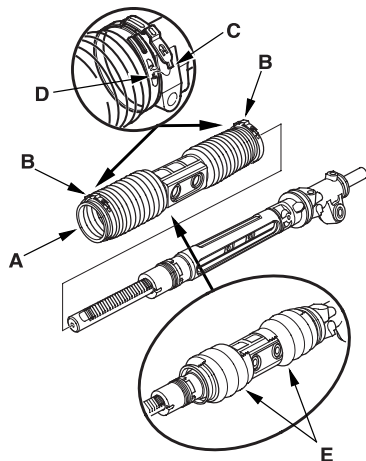
## Steering Gearbox Overhaul (cont'd)

### Reassembly (cont'd)

71. Coat the housing surface with multipurpose grease as shown.

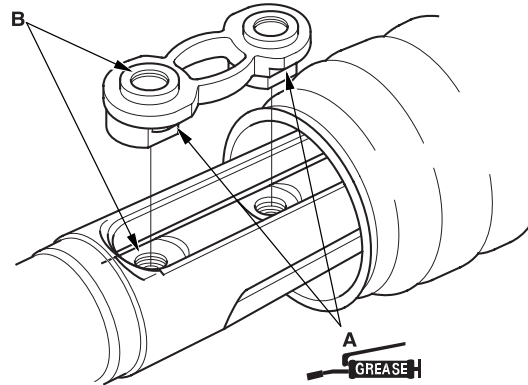


72. Set the new boot bands (B) on the band installation grooves of boot A by aligning the tabs (C) with the holes (D) of the band. Do not close the ear portion of the boot band yet.

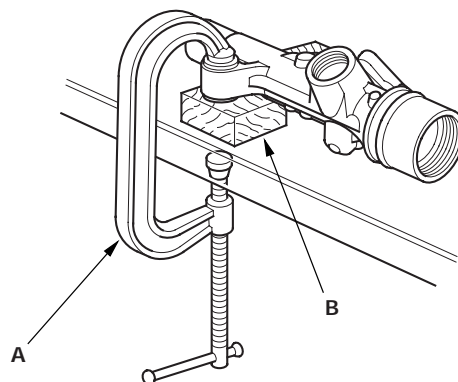


73. Compress boot A by hand, and apply vinyl tape (E) to the bellows so the boots stay collapsed and pulled back. Pass boot A over the cylinder so the smaller diameter end of the boot faces the gearbox housing.

74. Apply multipurpose grease to the sliding surface of the slider guide (A). Keep grease off of the rack-to-slider guide matching surfaces and the boot-to-slider guide matching surfaces. Slide the steering rack all the way to left, and place the slider guide on the steering rack by aligning the bolt holes (B).

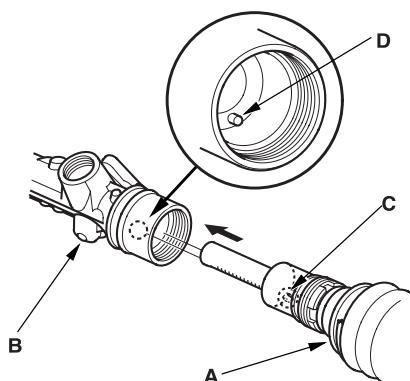


75. Hold the gearbox housing using a C-clamp (A) and the wooden block (B) as shown.

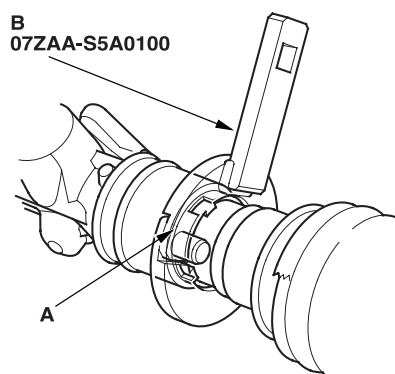




76. Push the cylinder (A) into the gearbox housing (B) so the notch (C) is aligned with the pin (D) inside of the gearbox housing.

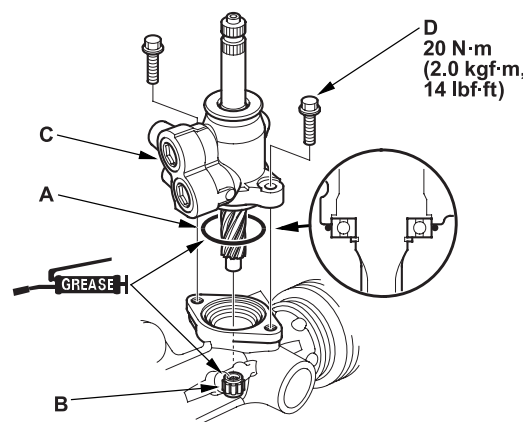


77. Tighten the lock screw (A) by hand first, then install the special tool (B) on the lock screw. Lightly tighten the lock screw. Do not tighten the lock screw to specified torque yet.



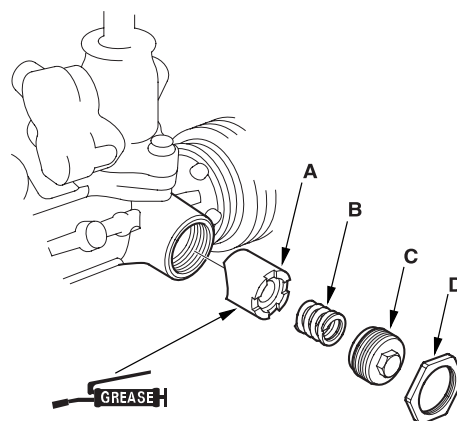
78. Remove the special tool.

79. Coat the new O-ring (A) with grease, and carefully fit it on the valve housing.



80. Apply grease to the needle bearing (B) in the gearbox housing, then install the valve body unit (C) by engaging the gears. Note the valve body unit installation position (direction of the line connections). Tighten the flange bolts (D) to the specified torque.

81. Grease the sliding surface and circumference of the rack guide (A), and install it onto the gearbox housing. Wipe the grease off the threaded section of the housing.



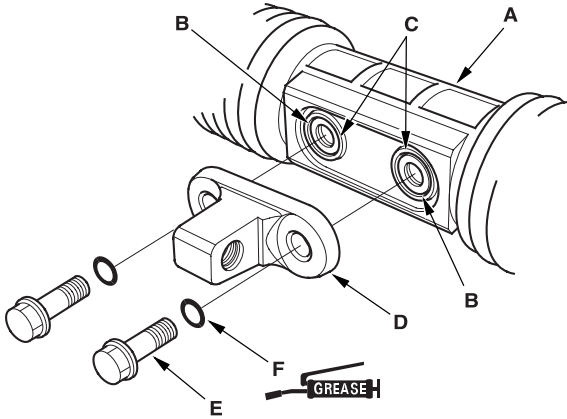
82. Install the spring (B). Apply sealant to the middle of the threads on the rack guide screw (C), then install and tighten it to 25 N·m (2.5 kgf·m, 18 lbf·ft). Loosely install the locknut (D).

(cont'd)

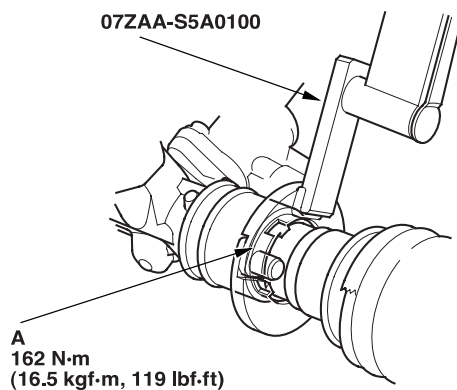
## Steering Gearbox Overhaul (cont'd)

### Reassembly (cont'd)

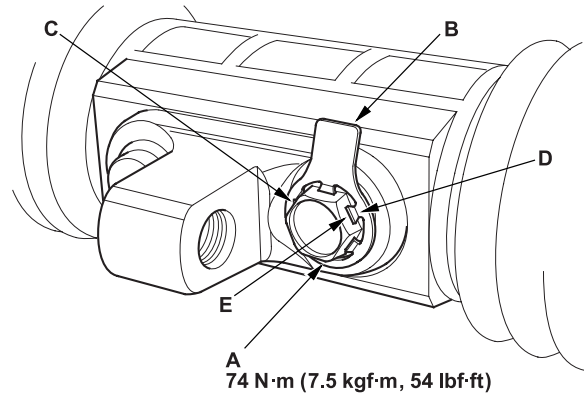
- 83.** Center the steering rack within its stroke, and align the slider guide (B) with the holes (C) in boot A. Fit the slider guide to boot A by pressing around the edges of the holes securely.



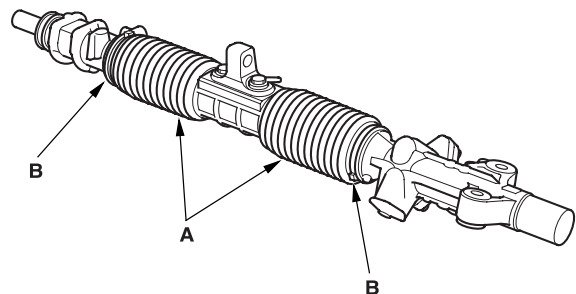
- 84.** Before installing the bracket (D), clean the mating surface of the 12 mm flange bolts (E) and bracket. Coat the new O-rings (F) with grease, and install them on the 12 mm flange bolts.
- 85.** Loosely install the bracket on the steering rack by tightening the 12 mm flange bolts to 25 N·m (2.5 kgf·m, 18 lbf·ft).
- 86.** Hold the gearbox housing using a C-clamp, then install the special tool on the lock screw (A). Retighten the lock screw to specified torque values. Remove the special tool.



- 87.** Retighten the 12 mm flange bolts (A) to specified torque values.

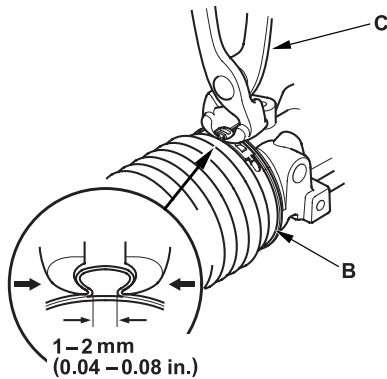


- 88.** After tightening the 12 mm flange bolts, install a new stop washer (B) over one of the bolt heads (C). Be sure the tabs (D) of the stop washer are aligned with the flat surfaces (E) of the bolt head.
- 89.** Clean off any grease or contamination from the boot installation grooves around on the housing.
- 90.** Expand boot (A) by removing the vinyl tape, and fit the boot ends (B) in the installation grooves on the cylinder housing.

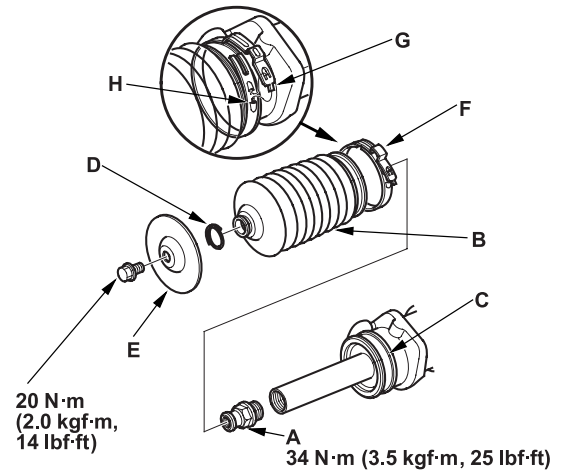




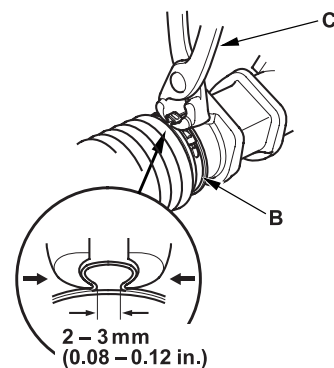
- 91.** Close the ear portion (A) of the bands (B) with a commercially available pincers, Oetiker 1098 or equivalent (C).



- 92.** Install the rack end plug (A).



93. Clean off any grease or contamination from the boot installation grooves (C) around on the housing.
94. Slide the steering rack, and adjust the distance between the cylinder housing end and the rack end plug end in the dimension to 70.5 mm (2.8 in.). Install boot B, and set the boot end in the installation grooves in the cylinder housing and rack end plug properly. Install the clip (D) and boot guard (E). Install the new boot band (F) in the band grooves of boot B by aligning the tabs (G) with the holes (H) in the band.
95. Close the ear poriton (A) of the band (B) with a commercially available pincers, Oetiker 1098 or equivalent (C). Slide the rack right and left to be certain that the boots are not deformed or twisted.

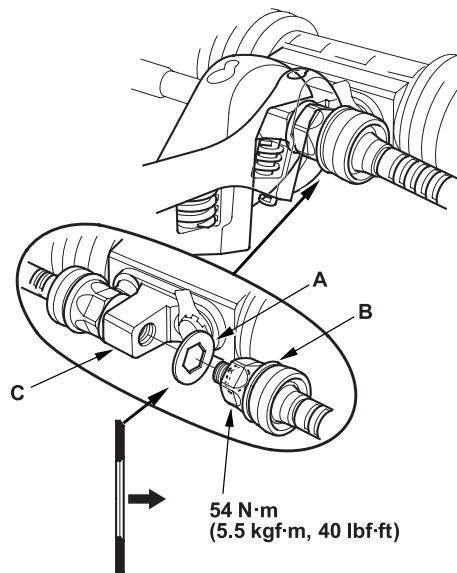


(cont'd)

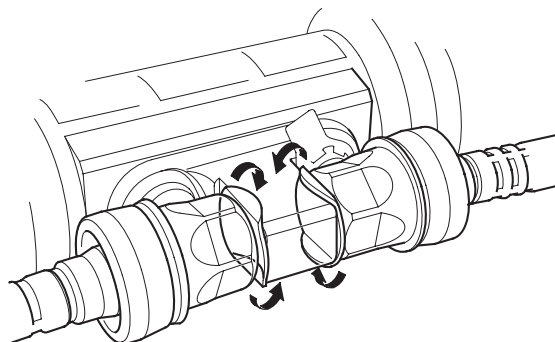
## Steering Gearbox Overhaul (cont'd)

## Reassembly (cont'd)

96. Install a new lock washer (A) on the tie-rod (B) with the radiused side of the washer toward the tie-rod, and screw the tie-rod on the bracket (C). Repeat this step for the other tie-rod. Hold the bracket with one wrench, and tighten both tie-rods to the specified torque with another wrench.



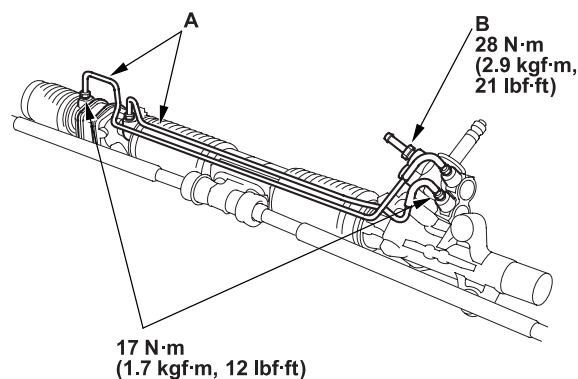
97. Bend the lock washer against the flat spots on the bracket with a large pair of pliers.



98. Install the cylinder lines (A) and return line joint (B).

Note these items during reassembly:

- Thoroughly clean the joints of the cylinder lines. The joints must be free of foreign material.
- Install the cylinder lines by tightening the flare nuts by hand first, then tighten the flare nuts to the specified torque.



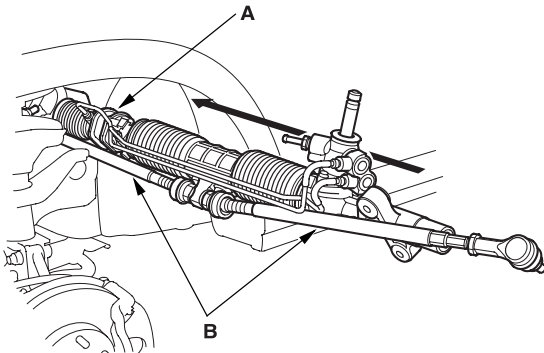
99. Adjust the rack guide screw (see page 17-28). After adjusting, check that the rack moves smoothly by sliding it right and left.





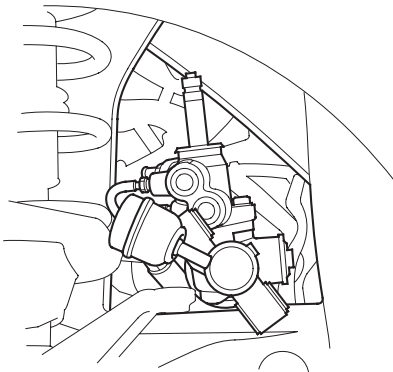
## Steering Gearbox Installation

1. Pass the cylinder of the steering gearbox (A) together with the tie-rods (B) through the wheelwell opening on the driver's side.

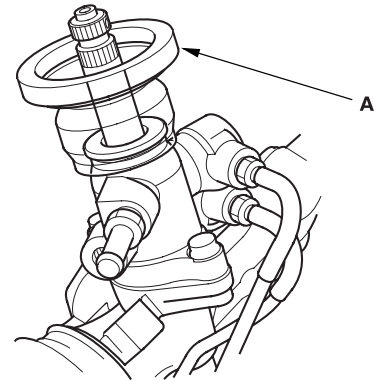


2. Carefully move the steering gearbox toward the passenger's side until the pinion shaft clears the wheelwell opening on the frame. Continue moving the gearbox toward the passenger's side until the steering gearbox is in position.

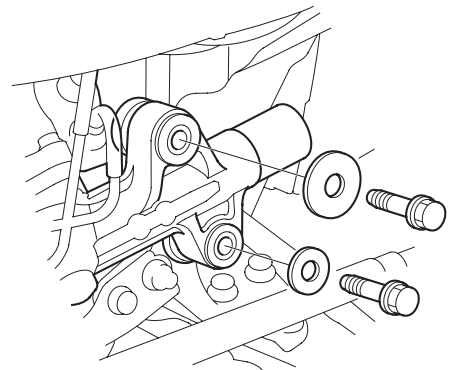
NOTE: Make sure the power steering return hose is routed between the gearbox and right tie-rod.



3. Install the pinion shaft grommet (A).



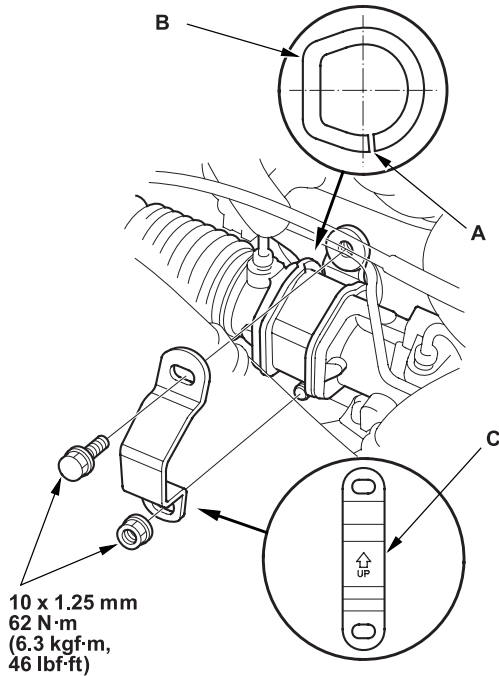
4. Install the mounting cushion on the cylinder side of the gearbox.
5. Insert the pinion shaft up through the bulkhead, and place the steering gearbox on the mounting brackets. Be sure that the pinion shaft grommet is in place securely.
6. Loosely install the two 10 mm flange bolts and washers on the left side (RHD: right side) of the gearbox.



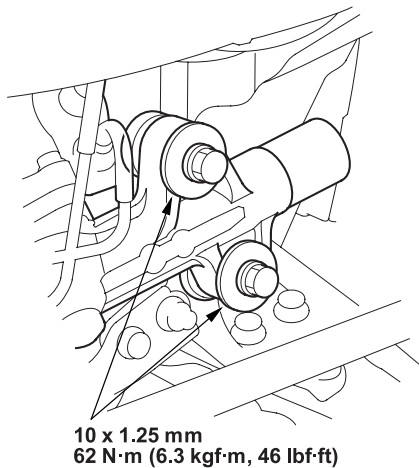
(cont'd)

## Steering Gearbox Installation (cont'd)

7. Position the cutout (A) on the mounting cushion (B) as shown, and install it on the housing of the gearbox securely fitted. Install the mounting bracket (C) over the mounting cushion.

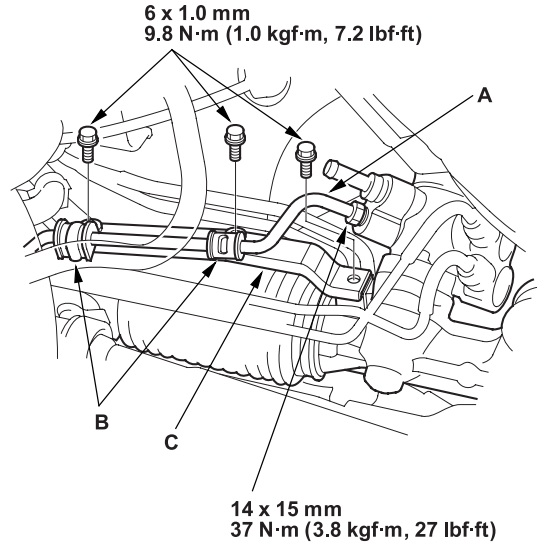


8. Install the 10 mm flange bolt and nut loosely first, then torque the flange bolt and nut alternately in two or more steps.
9. Tighten the left side (RHD: right side) of the flange bolts to the specified torque value.

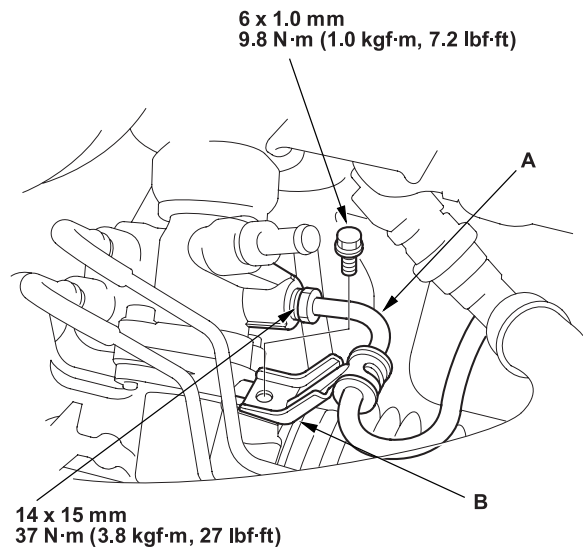


10. On the driver's side, connect feed line (A) securely, and tighten the 14 mm flare nut to specified torque.

LHD:



RHD:

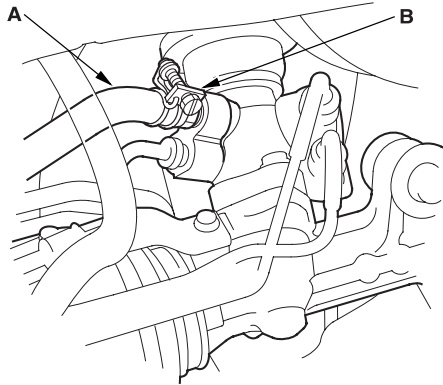


11. Install the feed line clamps (B) and P/S return line bracket (LHD model) (C) on the gearbox.

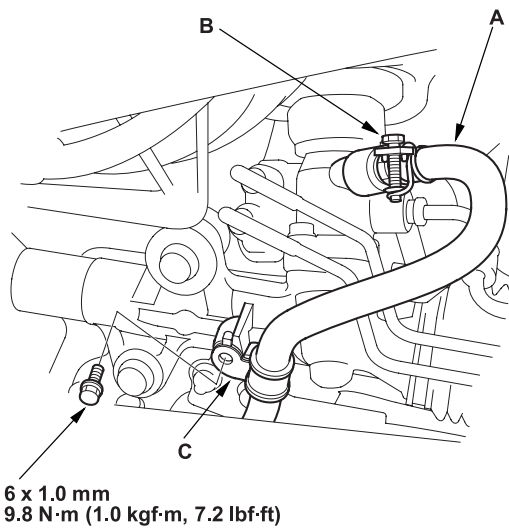


12. Connect the return hose (A) securely, and tighten the adjustable hose clamp (B) (see page 17-12). Install the return line clamp (C) (RHD model) on the gearbox.

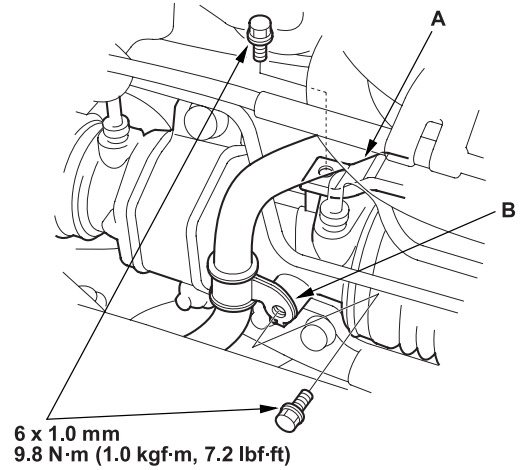
LHD:



RHD:



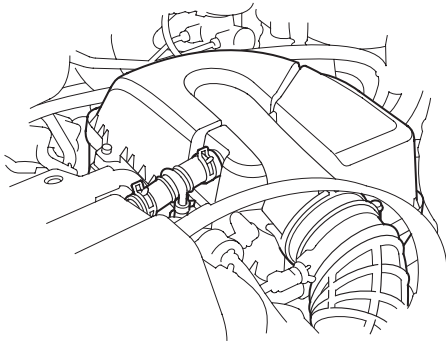
13. Install the P/S return line bracket (LHD model) (A) and return line clamp (B) on the gearbox. Make sure that there is no interference between the feed and return lines any other parts.



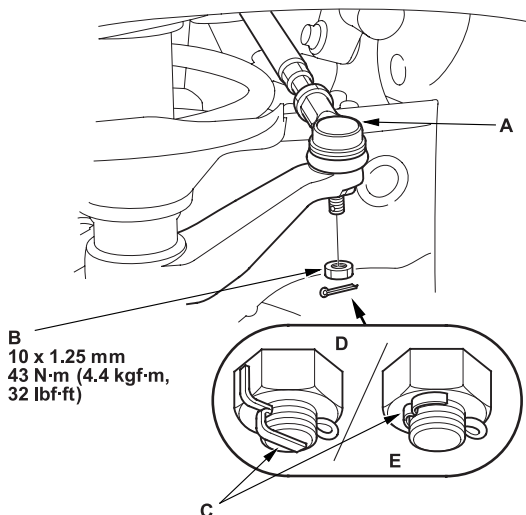
(cont'd)

## Steering Gearbox Installation (cont'd)

14. Reinstall the air cleaner.



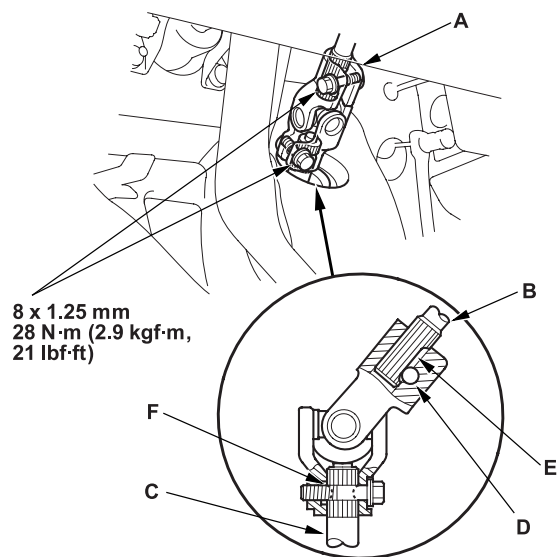
15. Wipe off any grease contamination from the ball joint tapered section and threads. Then reconnect the tie-rod end (A) to the damper steering arms. Install the 10 mm nut (B) and tighten it to the specified torque.



16. Install a new cotter pin (C), and bend it as shown (D) or (E).

17. Install the steering joint (A), and reconnect the steering shaft (B) and pinion shaft (C). Make sure the steering joint is connected as follows:

- Insert the upper end of the steering joint onto the steering shaft (line up the bolt hole (D) with the flat portion (E) on the shaft).
- Slip the lower end of the steering joint onto the pinion shaft (C) (line up the bolt hole with the groove (F) around the shaft), and loosely install the lower joint bolt. Be sure that the lower joint bolt is securely in the groove in the pinion shaft.
- Pull on the steering joint to make sure that the steering joint is fully seated. Then install the upper joint bolt and tighten it. Tighten the steering joint bolts to specified torque.



18. Install the driver's dashboard lower covers.



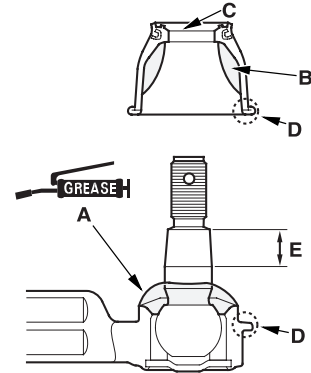
19. Install the front wheels, then set the wheels in the straight ahead position.
20. Center the cable reel by first rotating it clockwise until it stops. Then rotate it counterclockwise (about two and half turns) until the arrow mark on the label points straight up. Reinstall the steering wheel (see page 17-23).
21. Fill the system with power steering fluid, and bleed air from the system (see page 17-11).
22. After installation, perform the following checks.
  - Start the engine, allow it to idle, and turn the steering wheel from lock-to-lock several times to warm up the fluid. Check the gearbox for leaks (see page 17-10).
  - Perform the front toe inspection (see page 18-7).
  - Check the steering wheel spoke angle. If steering spoke angles to the right and left are not equal (steering wheel and rack are not centered), correct the engagement of the joint/pinion shaft serrations, then adjust the front toe by turning the tie-rods, if necessary.

## Tie-rod Ball Joint Boot Replacement

### Special Tools Required

Attachment, 42 mm 07QAD-P0A0100

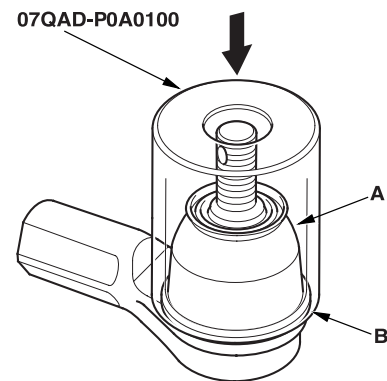
1. Remove the boot from the tie-rod end, and wipe the old grease off the ball pin.
2. Pack the lower area of the ball pin (A) with fresh multipurpose grease.



3. Pack the interior of the new boot (B) and lip (C) with fresh multipurpose grease.

Note these items when installing new grease:

- Keep grease off the boot mounting area (D) and the tapered section (E) of the ball pin.
  - Do not allow dust, dirt, or other foreign materials to enter the boot.
4. Install the new boot (A) using the special tool. The boot must not have a gap at the boot installation sections (B). After installing the boot, check the ball pin tapered section for grease contamination, and wipe it if necessary.





# 18

## Suspension

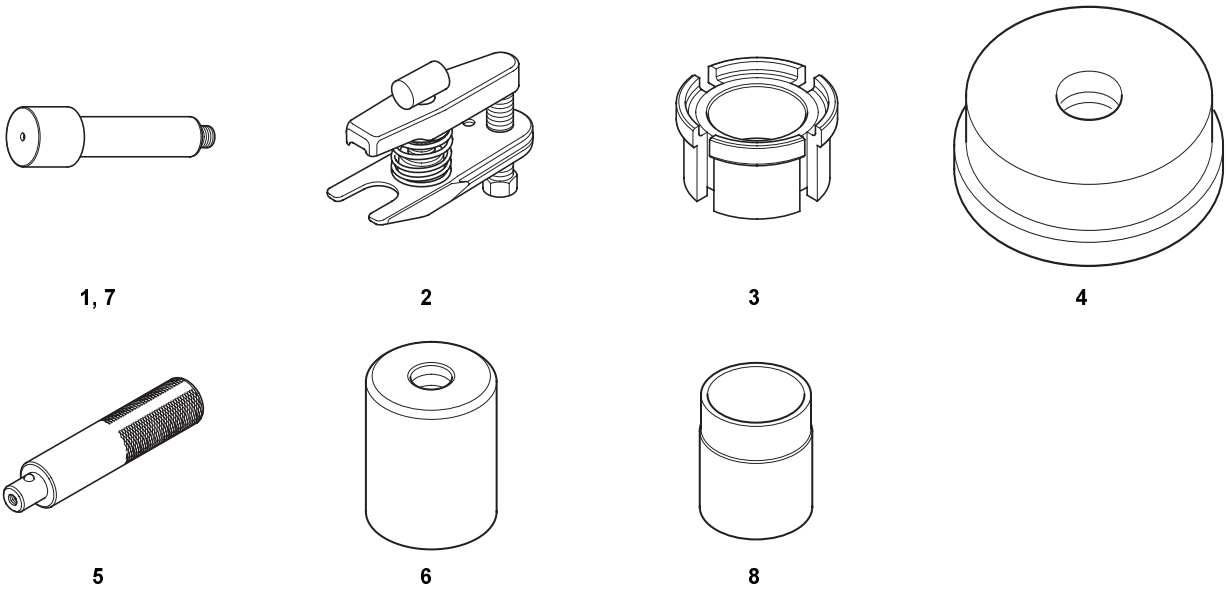
<b>Front and Rear Suspension</b> .....	<b>18-2</b>
Special Tools .....	18-2
Component Location Index .....	18-3
Wheel Alignment .....	18-4
Wheel Bearing End Play Inspection .....	18-8
Wheel Runout Inspection .....	18-9
Ball Joint Removal .....	18-10
Damper Disposal .....	18-11
<b>Front Suspension</b> .....	<b>18-12</b>
Knuckle/Hub/Wheel Bearing Replacement .....	18-12
Ball Joint Boot Replacement .....	18-17
Stabilizer Link Replacement .....	18-18
Stabilizer Bar Replacement .....	18-19
Lower Arm Replacement .....	18-20
Damper/Spring Replacement .....	18-21
<b>Rear Suspension</b> .....	<b>18-27</b>
Knuckle/Hub/Wheel Bearing Replacement .....	18-27
Stabilizer Bar Replacement .....	18-32
Stabilizer Link Replacement .....	18-33
Upper Arm Replacement .....	18-34
Trailing Arm Replacement .....	18-35
Damper/Spring Replacement .....	18-36



Front and Rear Suspension

Special Tools

Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07GAF-SD40100	Hub Dis/Assembly Tool 42 mm	1
2	07MAC-SL00200	Ball Joint Remover, 28 mm	1
3	07MGK-0010100	Wheel Alignment Gauge Attachment	1
4	07746-0010500	Attachment, 62 x 68 mm	1
5	07749-0010000	Driver	1
6	07965-SA50500	Front Hub Dis/Assembly Tool	1
7	07965-SA70100	Hub Dis/Assembly Tool 34 mm	1
8	07965-SD90100	Support Base	1

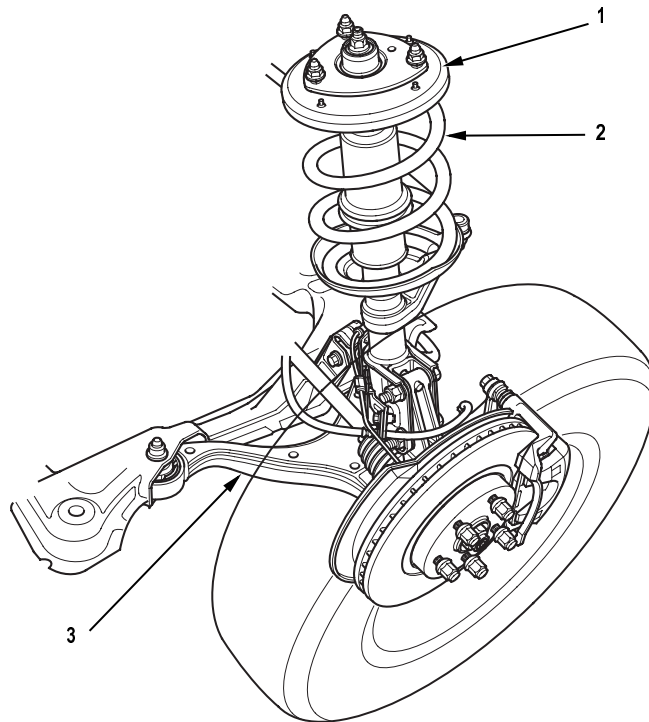




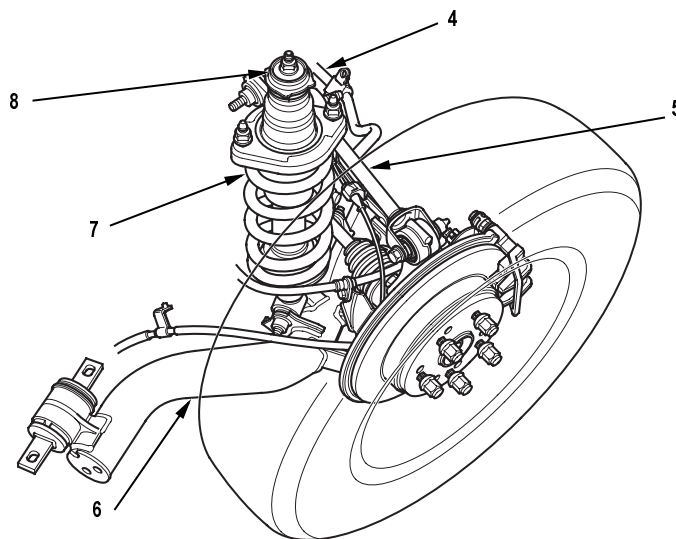


## Component Location Index

### Front Suspension:



### Rear Suspension:



1	DAMPER	Disposal, <a href="#">page 18-11</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 18-21</a>
2	SPRING	Replacement, <a href="#">page 18-21</a>
3	LOWER ARM	Replacement, <a href="#">page 18-20</a>
4	STABILIZER BAR	Replacement, <a href="#">page 18-32</a>
5	UPPER ARM	Replacement, <a href="#">page 18-34</a>
6	TRAILING ARM	Replacement, <a href="#">page 18-35</a>
7	SPRING	Replacement, <a href="#">page 18-36</a>
8	DAMPER	Disposal, <a href="#">page 18-11</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 18-36</a>

### Wheel Alignment

#### Special Tool Required

Wheel alignment gauge attachment 07MGK-0010100

The suspension can be adjusted for front camber, front toe, and rear toe. However, each of these adjustments are interrelated to each other. For example, when you adjust toe, the camber changes. Therefore, you must adjust the front wheel alignment whenever you adjust camber or toe.

#### Pre-Alignment Checks

For proper inspection and adjustment of the wheel alignment, do these checks:

1. Release the parking brake to avoid an incorrect measurement.
2. Make sure the suspension is not modified.
3. Check the tire size and tire pressure.

#### Tire size:

##### Front/rear:

15 inch wheel disc: 205/70R15 96T

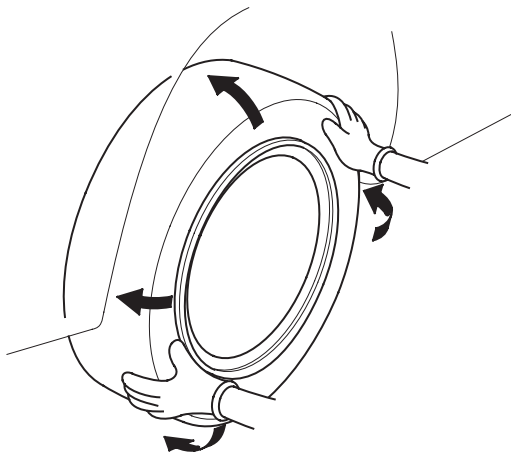
16 inch wheel disc: 205/65R16 95T

#### Tire pressure:

##### Front/rear:

180 kPa (1.8 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 26 psi)

4. Check the runout of the wheels and tires.
5. Check the suspension ball joints. (Hold a wheel with your hands, and move it up and down and right and left to check for wobbling).



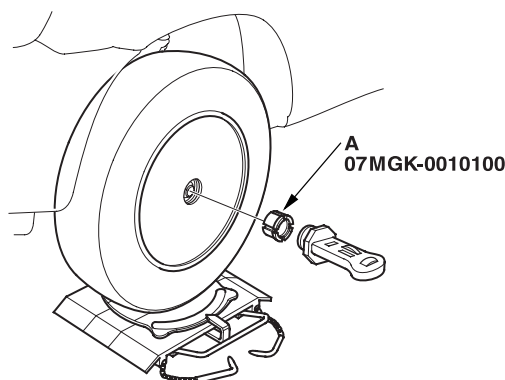
6. Bounce the vehicle up and down several times to stabilize the suspension.

#### Front Caster Inspection

1. Raise the vehicle and set the turning radius gauges beneath the front wheels, and place boards under the rear wheels the same thickness as the turning radius gauges, then lower the vehicle.

NOTE: Be sure that the vehicle is level with the wheels on the turning radius gauges and boards.

2. Remove the wheel cap, and install the wheel alignment gauge attachment (A) and camber/caster gauge on the wheel hub, and apply the front brake.



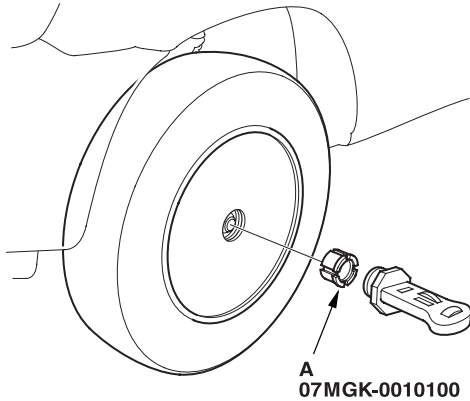
3. Turn the front wheel 20° outward, then turn the adjusting screw of the camber/caster gauge to set the bubble at 0°.
4. Turn the wheel 20° inward and read the caster on the gauge with the bubble at the center of the gauge. If the caster angle is not within the specification, check for bent or damaged suspension components.

**Front Caster angle: 1°45' ± 1°**



## Front Camber Inspection

1. Turn the front wheels to the straight ahead position.
2. Remove the wheel cap, and install the wheel alignment gauge attachment (A) and camber/caster gauge on the wheel hub.



3. Read the camber angle on the gauge with the bubble at the center of the gauge. If the camber angle is not within the specification, adjust the camber (see the right column).

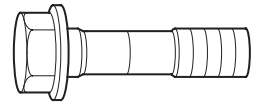
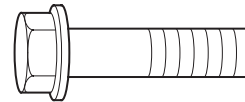
**Front camber angle:  $0^{\circ}00' \pm 45'$**

## Front Camber Adjustment

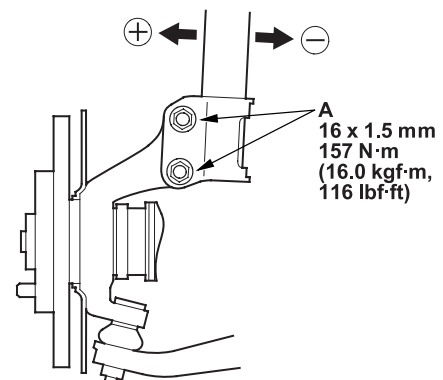
The front camber can be adjusted by exchanging one or both of the damper pinch bolts with the smaller diameter adjusting bolt(s). The difference between the adjusting bolt diameter and the pinch bolt hole diameter allows a small range of adjustment.

**Damper Pinch Bolt:**

**Adjusting Bolt:**  
P/N 90188-S6M-Z010



1. Raise the front of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the front wheels.
2. Loosen the damper pinch nuts and bolts (A), and adjust the camber by moving the bottom of the damper within the range of the damper pinch bolt free play.



3. Tighten the nuts to the specified torque. Make sure the damper pinch bolts tightening torque.
4. Reinstall the front wheels. Lower the front of the vehicle to the ground, and bounce the vehicle several times to stabilize the suspension.
5. Check the camber angle. If it is within the specification, check the front toe. If it is not within the specification, go to step 6.

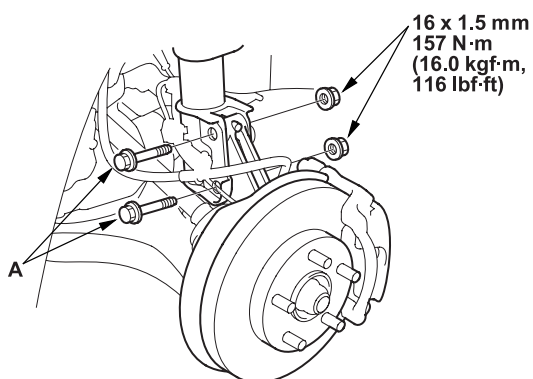
(cont'd)

### Wheel Alignment (cont'd)

#### Front Camber Adjustment (cont'd)

6. Raise the front of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the front wheels.
7. Replace the damper pinch bolts with the adjusting bolts (A), and adjust the camber angle.

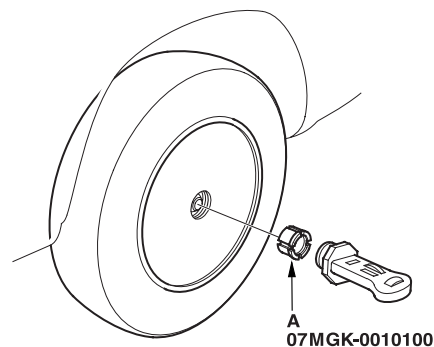
NOTE: The camber angle can be adjusted up to  $\pm 15'$  (center of tolerance) by replacing one damper pinch bolt with the adjusting bolt. The camber angle can be adjusted up to  $\pm 30'$  by replacing both upper and lower damper pinch bolts with the adjusting bolts.



8. Tighten the bolts to the specified torque.
9. Reinstall the front wheels. Lower the front of the vehicle to the ground, and bounce the vehicle several times to stabilize the suspension.
10. Check the camber angle. If it is within the specification, check the front toe, and adjust it if necessary. If it is not within the specification, readjust it, and recheck. If the camber angle cannot be adjusted to the specification, check for bent or damaged suspension components.

#### Rear Camber Inspection

1. Remove the wheel cap, and install the wheel alignment gauge attachment (A) and camber/caster gauge on the wheel hub.



2. Read the camber angle on the gauge with the bubble at the center of the gauge. If the camber angle is not within the specification, check for bent or damaged suspension components.

Rear camber angle:  $-0^{\circ}45' \pm 45'$

#### NOTICE

Do not loosen the special bolts on the trailing arm.

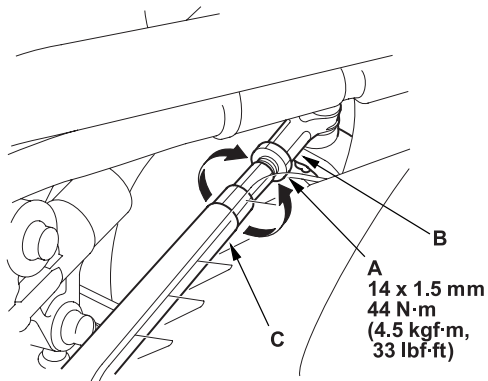


## Front Toe Inspection/Adjustment

1. Center the steering wheel spokes.
2. Check the toe. If it is not within the specification, go to step 3.

**Front toe-in:  $0 \pm 2$  mm ( $0 \pm 0.08$  in.)**

3. Loosen the locknut (A) while holding the tie-rod end (B).



4. Turn the tie-rod end (C) until the toe is correct.  
NOTE: Adjust both the right and left wheels at the same time by the same amount in opposite directions to obtain the correct toe and to keep the steering wheel straight.
5. After adjusting, tighten the locknut while holding the tie-rod arm. Make sure the toe setting does not change.

## Rear Toe Inspection/Adjustment

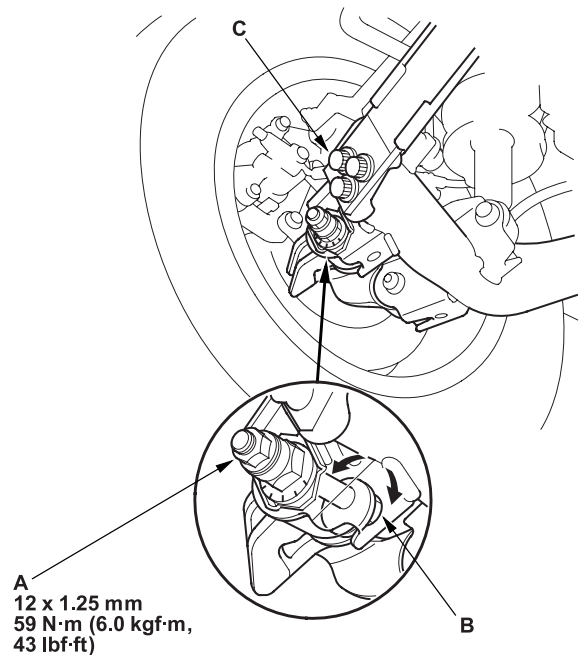
1. Release the parking brake.
2. Check the toe. If it is not within the specification, go to step 3.

**Rear toe-in:  $2 \pm 2$  mm ( $0 \pm 0.08$  in.)**

3. Loosen the self-locking nut (A) while holding the adjusting bolt (B).

### NOTICE

Do not loosen the special bolts (C) on the trailing arm.



4. Replace the self-locking nut with a new one, and lightly tighten it.  
NOTE: Always use a new self-locking nut whenever it has been loosened.
5. Turn the adjusting bolt until the toe is correct.  
**Rear toe-in:**  
**0 (from -1 to +2) mm (0 (from -0.04 to +0.08) in.)**
6. Tighten the self-locking nut to the specified torque while holding the adjusting bolt.

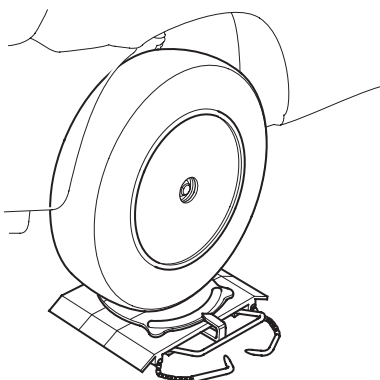
(cont'd)

### Wheel Alignment (cont'd)

#### Turning Angle Inspection

1. Raise the vehicle and set the turning radius gauges beneath the front wheels, and place boards under the rear wheels the same thickness as the turning radius gauges, then lower the vehicle.

NOTE: Be sure that the vehicle is level with the wheels on the turning radius gauges and boards.



2. Turn the steering wheel fully to the right and left while applying the brakes, and check the turning angles of both front wheels. If the turning angle is not within the specification or the inward turning angles differ between the right and left, go to step 3.

#### Turning angle:

Inward:  $39^{\circ}45' \pm 2^{\circ}$

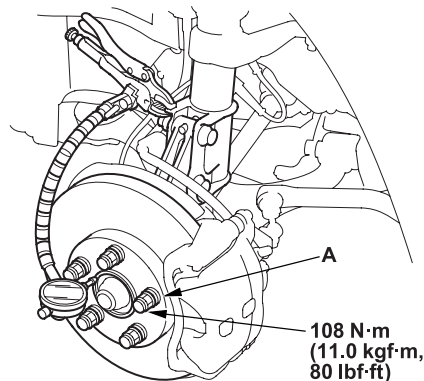
Outward:  $32^{\circ}30'$  (reference)

3. Check the toe. If it is correct but the turning angle is not within the specification, check for bent or damaged suspension components.

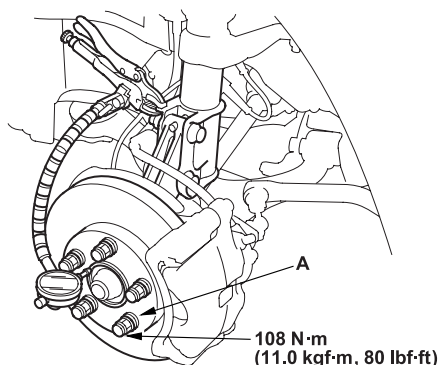
### Wheel Bearing End Play Inspection

1. Raise the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the wheels.
2. Install suitable flat washers (A) and wheel nuts, and tighten the nuts to the specified torque to hold the brake disc securely against the hub.

Front:



Rear:



3. Set up the dial gauge against the hub cap or hub flange as shown, and measure the bearing end play by moving the brake disc inward and outward.

#### Bearing end play:

Standard:

Front/rear: 0 - 0.05 mm (0 - 0.002 in.)

4. If the bearing end play is more than the standard, replace the wheel bearing.



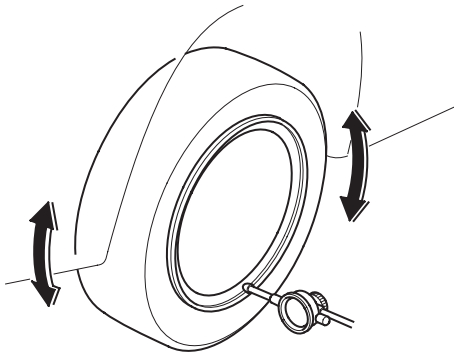
### Wheel Runout Inspection

1. Raise the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported.
2. Check for a bent or deformed wheel.
3. Set up the dial gauge as shown, and measure the axial runout by turning the wheel.

#### Front and rear wheel axial runout:

##### Standard:

Aluminum wheel:	0 - 0.7 mm (0 - 0.03 in.)
Steel wheel:	0 - 1.0 mm (0 - 0.04 in.)
Service limit:	2.0 mm (0.08 in.)

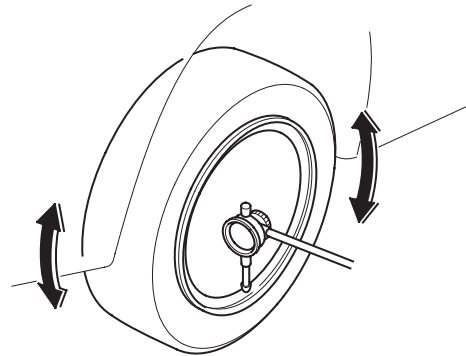


4. Reset the dial gauge to the position shown, and measure the radial runout.

#### Front and rear wheel radial runout:

##### Standard:

Aluminum wheel:	0 - 0.7 mm (0 - 0.03 in.)
Steel wheel:	0 - 1.0 mm (0 - 0.04 in.)
Service limit:	1.5 mm (0.06 in.)



5. If the wheel runout is not within the specification, check the wheel bearing end play ([see page 18-8](#)), and make sure the mating surfaces on the brake disc and the inside of the wheel are clean.
6. If the bearing end play is within the specification but the wheel runout is more than the service limit, replace the wheel.

### Ball Joint Removal

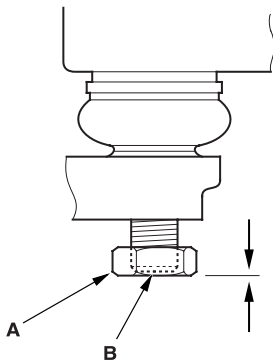
#### Special Tools Required

Ball joint remover, 28 mm 07MAC-SL00200

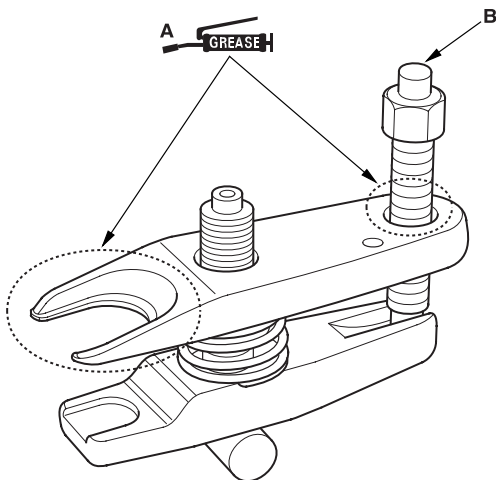
#### NOTICE

Always use a ball joint remover to disconnect a ball joint. Do not strike the housing or any other part of the ball joint connection to disconnect it.

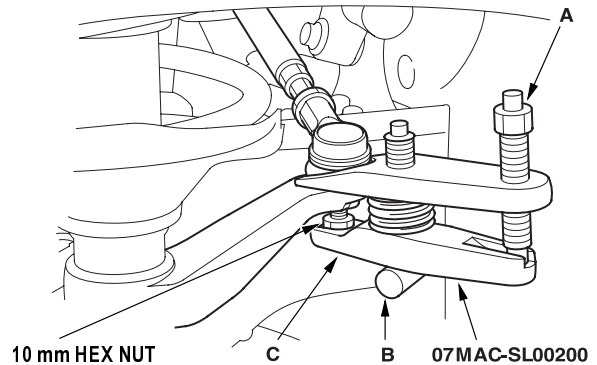
1. Install a hex nut (A) onto the threads of the ball joint (B). Make sure the nut is flush with the ball joint pin end to prevent damage to the thread end of the ball joint pin.



2. Apply grease to the special tool on the areas shown (A). This will ease installation of the tool and prevent damage to the pressure bolt (B) threads.



3. Install the special tool as shown. Insert the jaws carefully, making sure not to damage the ball joint boot. Adjust the jaw spacing by turning the pressure bolt (A).



4. After adjusting the adjusting bolt, make sure the head of the adjusting bolt (B) is in the position shown to allow the jaw (C) to pivot.
5. With a wrench, tighten the pressure bolt until the ball joint pin pops loose from the steering arm or knuckle. If necessary, apply penetrating type lubricant to loosen the ball joint pin.

NOTE: Do not use pneumatic or electric tools on the pressure bolt.

6. Remove the tool, then remove the nut from the end of the ball joint pin, and pull the ball joint out of the steering arm or knuckle. Inspect the ball joint boot, and replace it if damaged.





### Damper Disposal



#### WARNING



The dampers contain nitrogen gas and oil under pressure. The pressure must be relieved before disposal to prevent explosion and possible injury when scrapping.



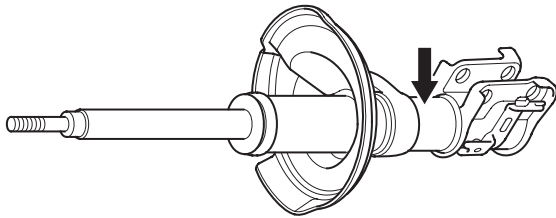
#### WARNING



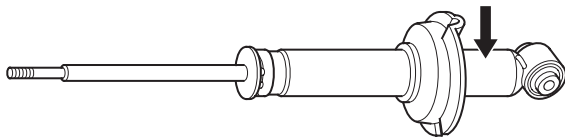
Always wear eye protection to avoid getting metal shavings in your eyes when the damper pressure is relieved.

Place the damper on a level surface with its shaft extended and drill a hole of 2 - 3 mm (0.078 - 0.118 in.) diameter in the body to release the gas.

Front damper:



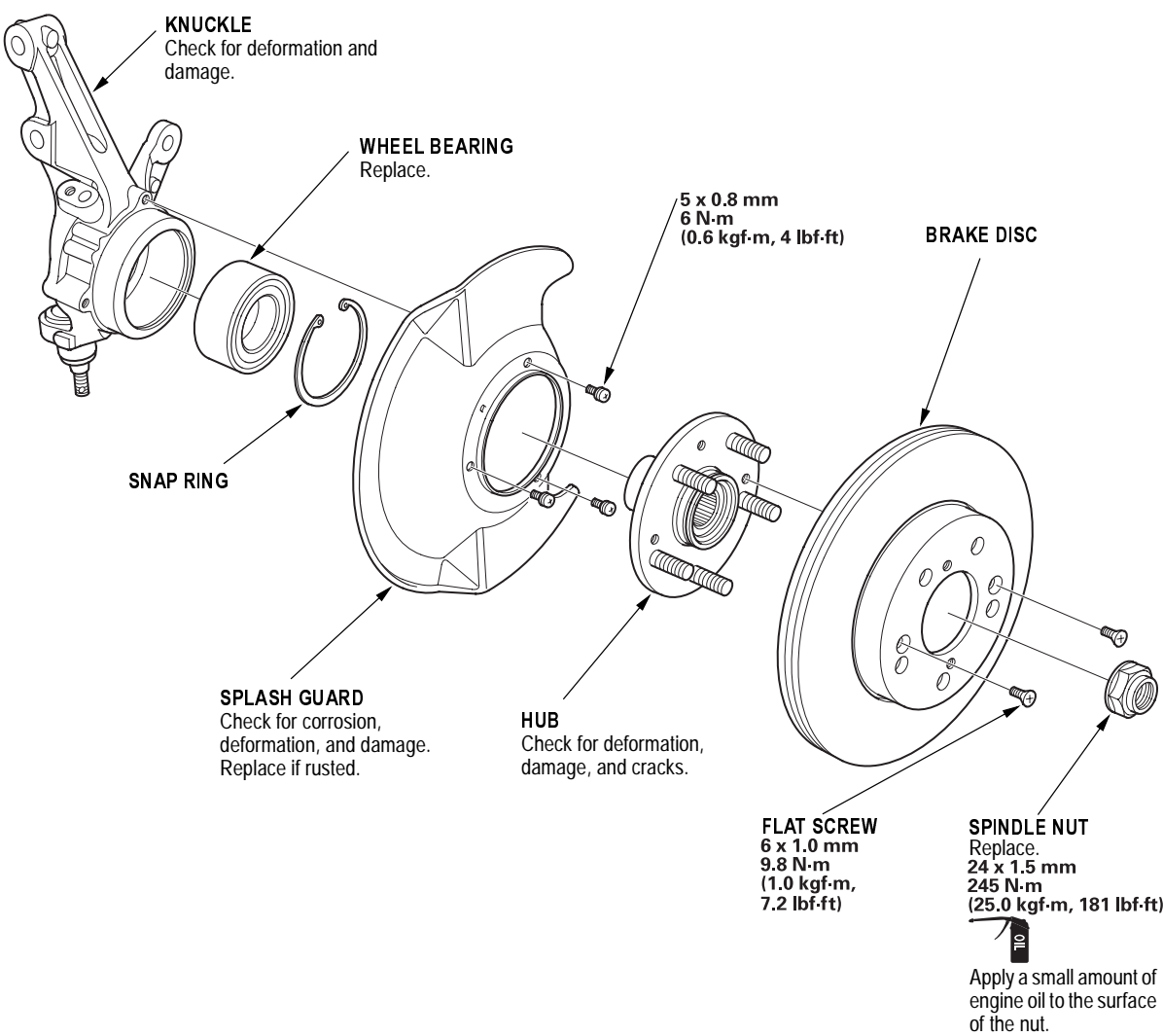
Rear damper:



Front Suspension

Knuckle/Hub/Wheel Bearing Replacement

Exploded View



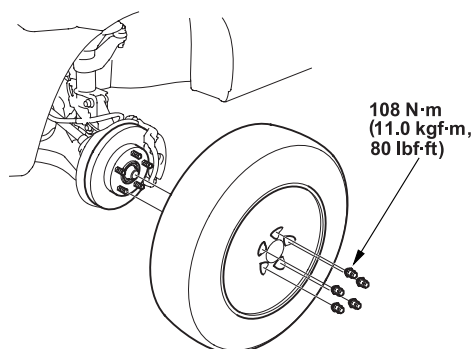


## Special Tools Required

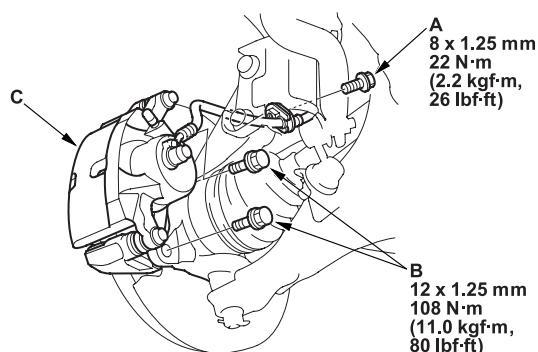
- Hub dis/assembly tool 07GAF-SD40100
- Ball joint remover, 28 mm 07MAC-SL00200
- Attachment 62 x 68 mm 07746-0010500
- Driver 07749-0010000
- Support base 07965-SD90100

## Knuckle/Hub Replacement

1. Raise the front of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported.
2. Remove the wheel cap, wheel nuts, and front wheel.

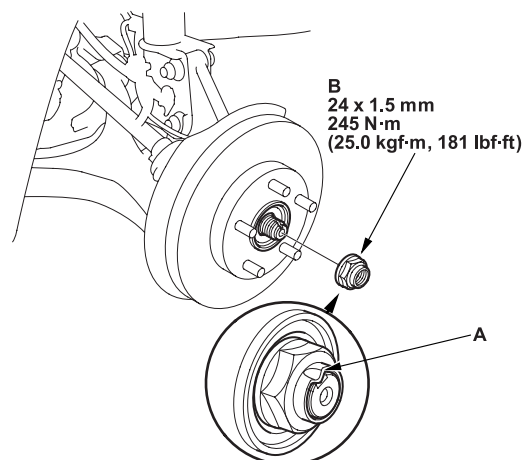


3. Remove the brake hose bracket mounting bolt (A).

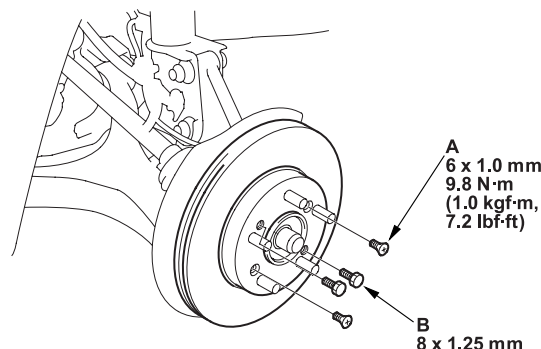


4. Remove the caliper bracket mounting bolts (B), and remove the caliper assembly (C) from the knuckle. To prevent damage to the caliper assembly or brake hose, use a short piece of wire to hang the caliper assembly from the undercarriage. Do not twist the brake hose with force.

5. Raise the stake (A), and remove the spindle nut (B).



6. Remove the brake disc retaining flat screws (A).



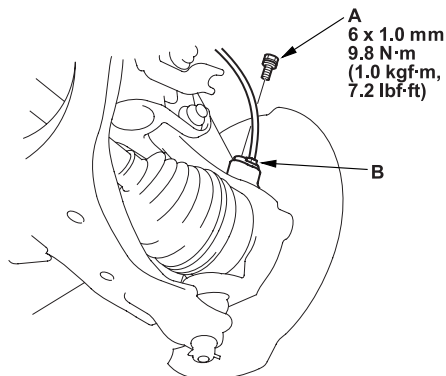
7. Screw two 8 x 1.25 mm bolts (B) into the disc to push it away from the hub. Turn each bolt two turns at a time to prevent cocking the disc excessively.

(cont'd)

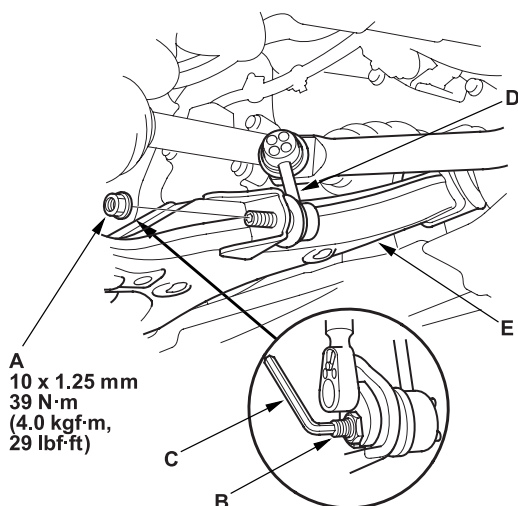
## Knuckle/Hub/Wheel Bearing Replacement (cont'd)

### Knuckle/Hub Replacement (cont'd)

8. Remove the flange bolt (A) and wheel sensor (B) from the knuckle. Do not disconnect the wheel sensor connector.

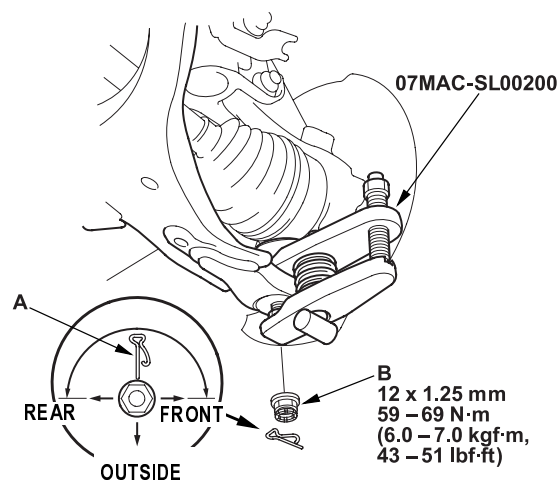


9. Remove the flange nut (A) while holding the joint pin (B) with a hex wrench (C), and disconnect the stabilizer link (D) from the lower arm (E).



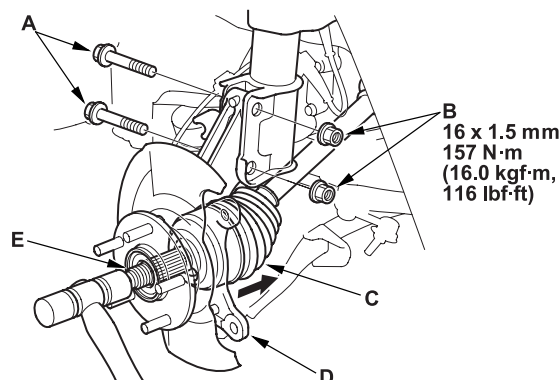
10. Remove the clip (A) from the lower arm ball joint, and remove the castle nut (B).

NOTE: During installation, insert the clip into the ball joint pin from the inside to the outside of the vehicle. The closed end of the clip must be in the range shown.



11. Disconnect the lower arm from the knuckle using the special tool (see page 18-10).

12. Loosen the damper pinch bolts (A) while holding the nuts (B), and remove the bolts and nuts.



13. Remove the driveshaft outboard joint (C) from the knuckle (D) by tapping the driveshaft end (E) with a plastic hammer while drawing the knuckle outward, then remove the knuckle.

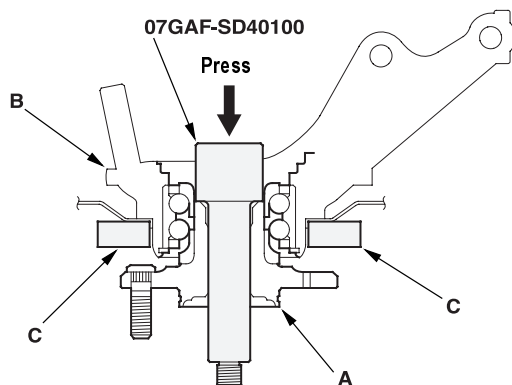
NOTE: Do not pull the driveshaft end outward. The driveshaft joint may come off.



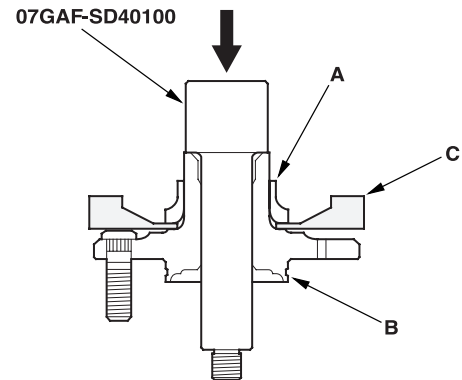
14. Install the knuckle/hub/in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Be careful not to damage the ball joint boot when installing the knuckle.
  - Tighten all mounting hardware to the specified torque values.
  - First install all the components and lightly tighten the bolts and nuts, then raise the suspension to load it with the vehicle's weight before fully tightening to the specified torques. Do not place the jack against the ball joint pin of the lower arm.
  - Torque the castle nut to the lower torque specification, then tighten it only far enough to align the slot with the clip hole. Do not align the castle nut by loosening it.
  - Install a new clip on the castle nut after torquing.
  - Use a new spindle nut on reassembly.
  - Before installing the spindle nut, apply a small amount of engine oil to the seating surface of the nut. After tightening, use a drift to stake the spindle nut shoulder against the driveshaft.
  - Replace the self-locking nuts, damper pinch bolts and nuts with new ones.
  - Before installing the brake disc, clean the mating surface of the front hub and the inside of the brake disc.
  - Before installing the wheel, clean the mating surface of the brake disc and the inside of the wheel.
  - Check the front wheel alignment, and adjust it if necessary ([see page 18-4](#)).

### Wheel Bearing Replacement

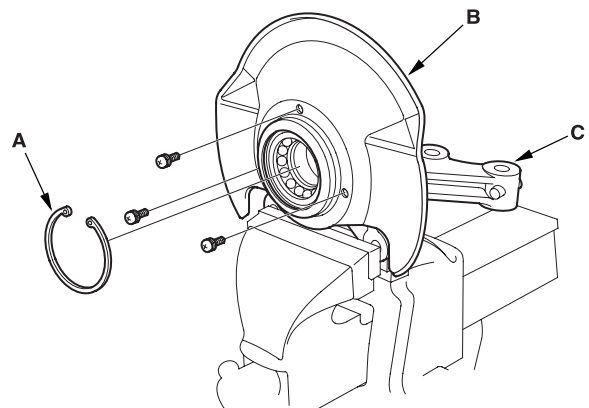
1. Separate the hub (A) from the knuckle (B) using the special tool and a hydraulic press. Hold the knuckle with the attachment (C) of the hydraulic press or equivalent tool. Be careful not to deform the splash guard. Hold onto the hub to keep it from falling when pressed clear.



2. Press the wheel bearing inner race (A) off of the hub (B) using the special tool, a commercially available bearing separator (C), and a press.



3. Remove the snap ring (A) and the splash guard (B) from the knuckle (C).

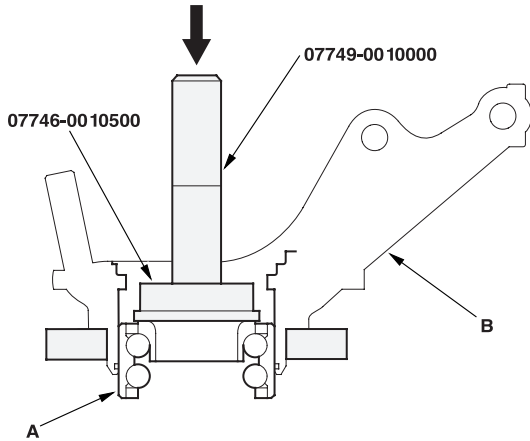


(cont'd)

### Knuckle/Hub/Wheel Bearing Replacement (cont'd)

#### Wheel Bearing Replacement (cont'd)

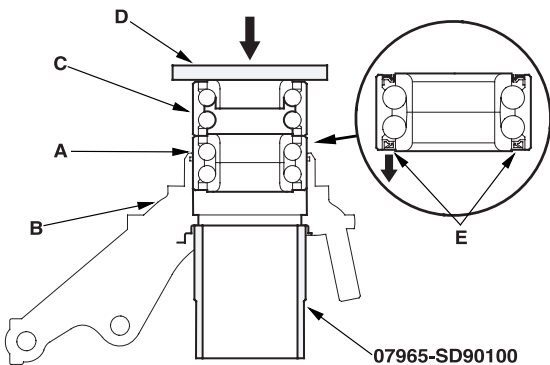
- Press the wheel bearing (A) out of the knuckle (B) using the special tool and a press.



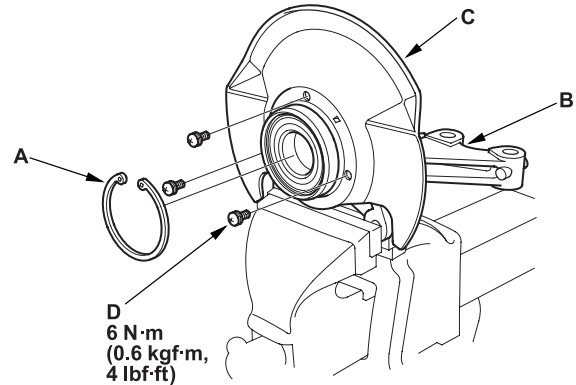
- Wash the knuckle and hub thoroughly in high flash point solvent before reassembly.
- Press a new wheel bearing (A) into the knuckle (B) using the old bearing (C), a steel plate (D), the special tool, and a press.

#### NOTE:

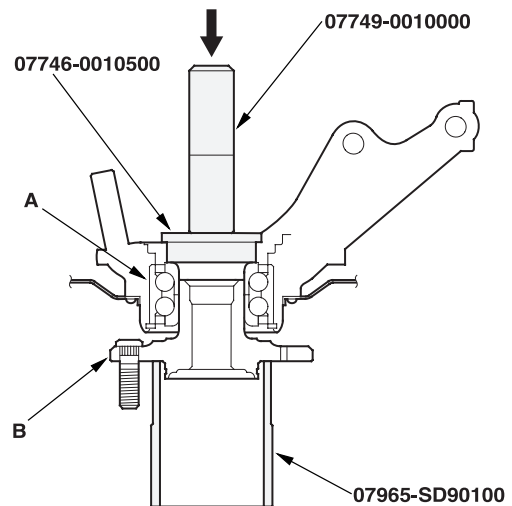
- Install the wheel bearing with the magnetic encoder (E) (brown color), toward the inside of the knuckle.
- Remove any oil, grease, dust and other foreign material from the encoder surface.
- Keep any magnetic tools away from the encoder surface.
- Be careful not to damage the encoder surface when you insert wheel bearing.



- Install the snap ring (A) securely in the knuckle (B).



- Install the splash guard (C), and tighten the screws (D) to the specified torque.
- Press a wheel bearing (A) onto the hub (B) using the special tools and a press.



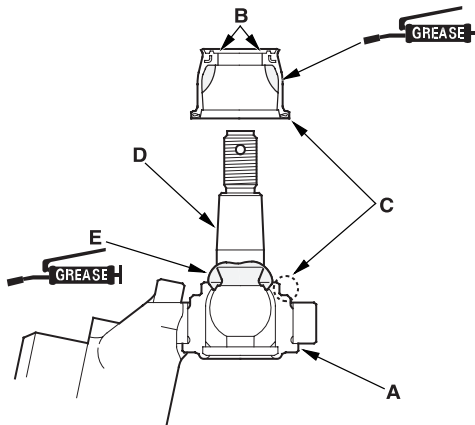


### Ball Joint Boot Replacement

#### Special Tools Required

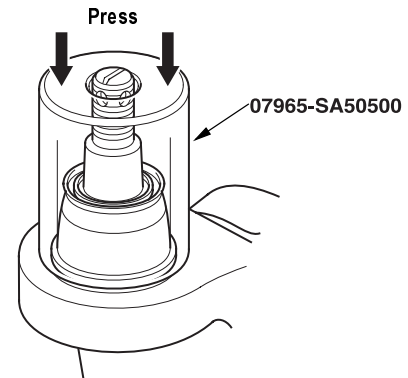
Front hub dis/assembly tool 07965-SA50500

1. Remove the boot. Check for a gap (A) between the ball joint and the knuckle. If there is a gap, replace the knuckle assembly. Do not press the ball joint back into the knuckle.
2. Pack the interior and lip (B) of a new boot with fresh grease. Keep the grease off of the boot-to-knuckle mating surfaces (C).



3. Wipe the grease off the tapered section of the pin (D), and pack fresh grease onto the base (E).

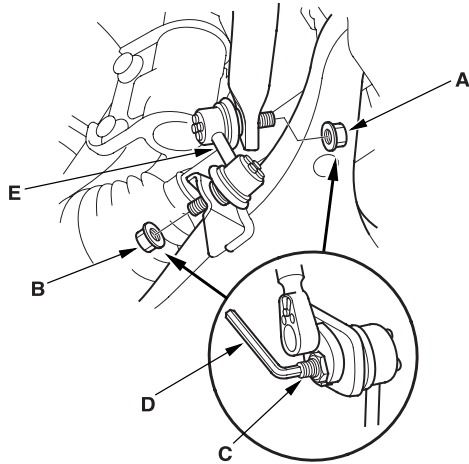
4. Install the boot onto the ball joint pin, then squeeze it gently to force out any air. Do not let dirt or other foreign materials get into the boot.
5. Press the boot with the special tool until the bottom seats on the knuckle (A) evenly around.



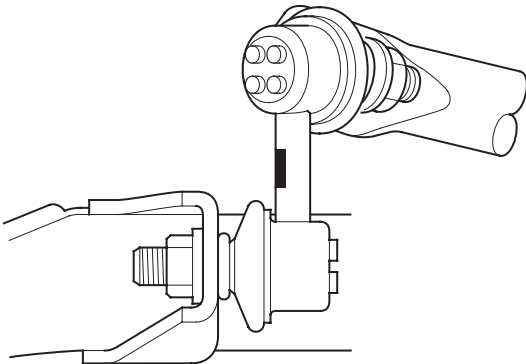
6. After installing a boot, wipe any grease off the exposed portion of the ball joint pin.

### Stabilizer Link Replacement

1. Raise the front of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the front wheels.
2. Remove the self-locking nut (A) and flange nut (B) while holding the respective joint pin (C) with a hex wrench (D), and remove the stabilizer link (E).



3. Install the stabilizer link on the stabilizer bar and lower arm with the joint pins set at the center of each moving range.



4. Install the self-locking nut and flange nut, and lightly tighten them.

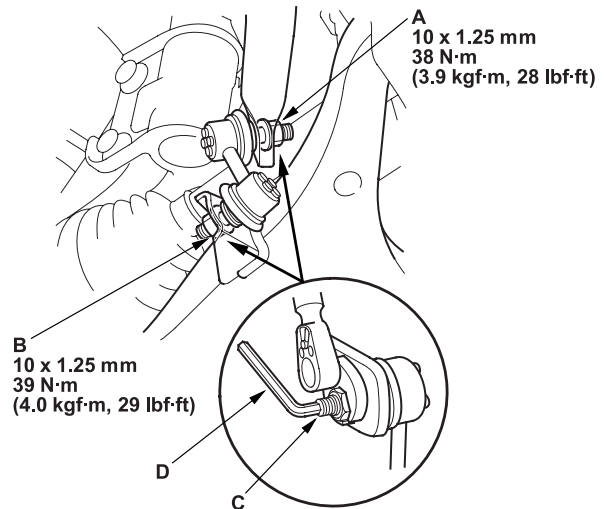
NOTE: Use a new self-locking nut on reassembly.

5. Place the floor jack under the lower arm ball joint, and raise the suspension to load it with the vehicle's weight.

#### NOTICE

Do not place the jack against the ball joint pin of the lower arm.

6. Tighten the new self-locking nut (A) and flange nut (B) to the specified torque values while holding the respective joint pins (C) with a hex wrench (D).



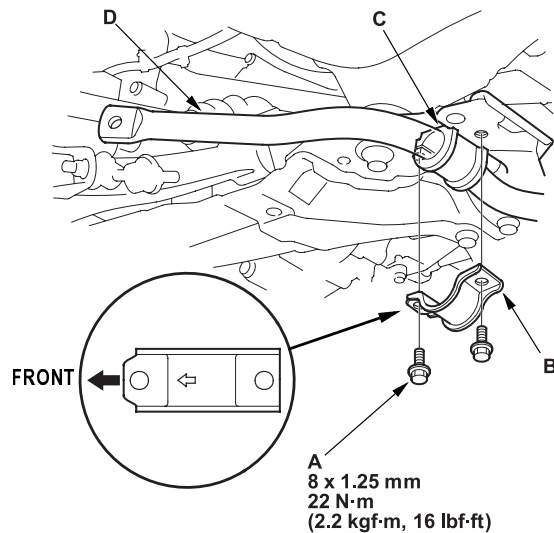
7. After 5 minutes of driving, re-tighten the self-locking nut again to the specified torque.



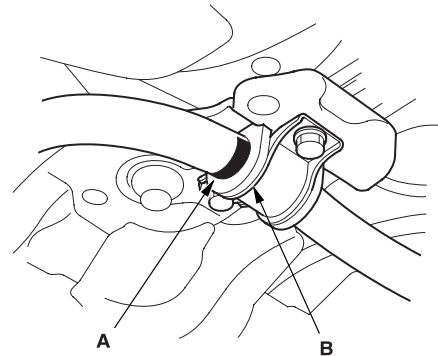


### Stabilizer Bar Replacement

1. Raise the front of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the front wheels.
2. Disconnect the stabilizer links from the stabilizer bar on the right and left ([see page 18-18](#)).
3. Remove the flange bolts (A) and bushing holders (B), then remove the bushings (C) and the stabilizer bar (D).



4. Install the stabilizer bar in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Use new self-locking nuts on reassembly.
  - Note the right and left direction of the stabilizer bar.
  - Align the ends of the paint marks (A) on the stabilizer bar with each end of the bushings (B).
  - Note the fore/aft direction of the bushing holders.
  - Refer to Stabilizer Link Replacement to connect the stabilizer bar to the links ([see page 18-18](#)).

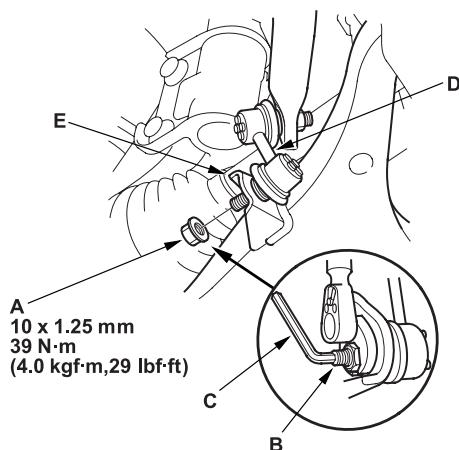


### Lower Arm Replacement

#### Special Tools Required

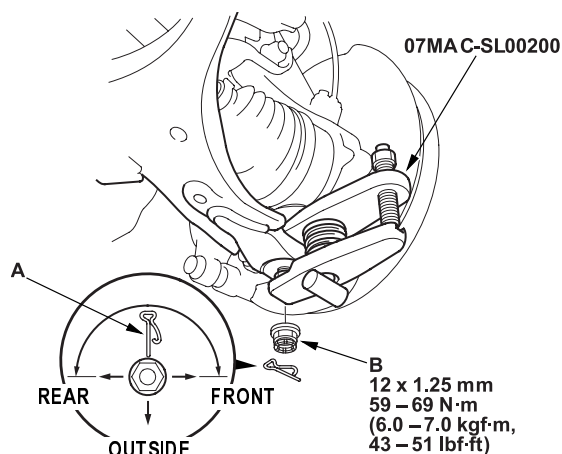
Ball joint remover, 28 mm 07MAC-SL00200

1. Raise the front of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the front wheels.
2. Remove the flange nut (A) while holding the joint pin (B) with a hex wrench (C), and disconnect the stabilizer link (D) from the lower arm (E).



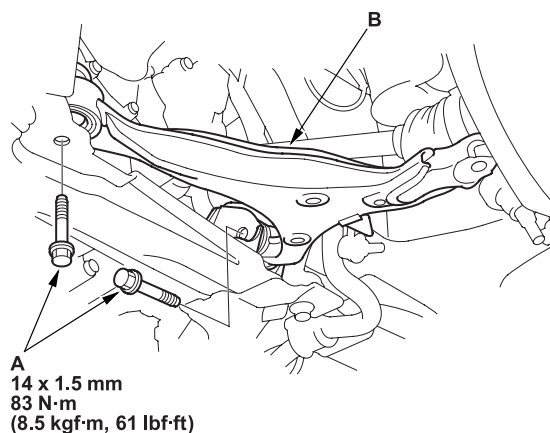
3. Remove the clip (A) from the lower arm ball joint, and remove the castle nut (B).

NOTE: During installation, insert the clip into the ball joint pin from the inside to the outside of the vehicle. The closed end of the clip must be in the range shown.



4. Disconnect the lower arm from the knuckle using the special tool (see page 18-10).

5. Remove the flange bolts (A), and remove the lower arm (B).

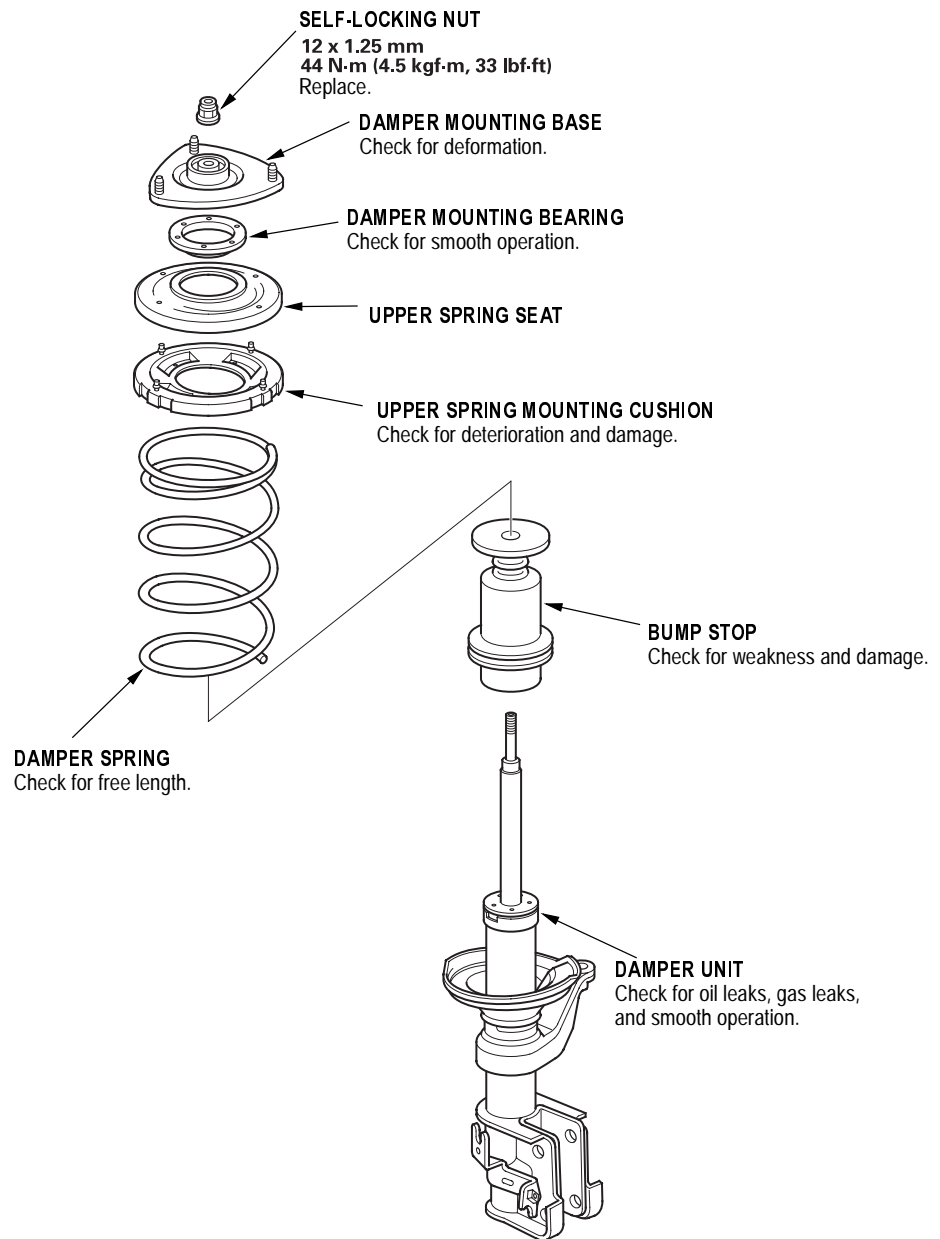


6. Install the lower arm in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Be careful not to damage the ball joint boot when connecting the lower arm to the knuckle.
  - Tighten all mounting hardware to the specified torque values.
  - First install all the components and lightly tighten the bolts and nuts, then raise the suspension to load it with the vehicle's weight before fully tightening it to the specified torques. Do not place the jack on the lower arm ball joint.
  - Torque the castle nut to the lower torque specification, then tighten it only far enough to align the slot with the clip hole. Do not align the castle nut by loosening it.
  - Install a new clip on the castle nut after torquing.
  - Before installing the wheel, clean the mating surface of the brake disc and the inside of the wheel.
  - Check the wheel alignment, and adjust it if necessary (see page 18-4).



### Damper/Spring Replacement

#### Exploded View



(cont'd)

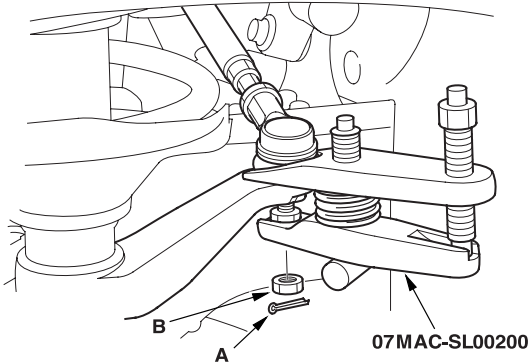
### Damper/Spring Replacement (cont'd)

#### Special Tools Required

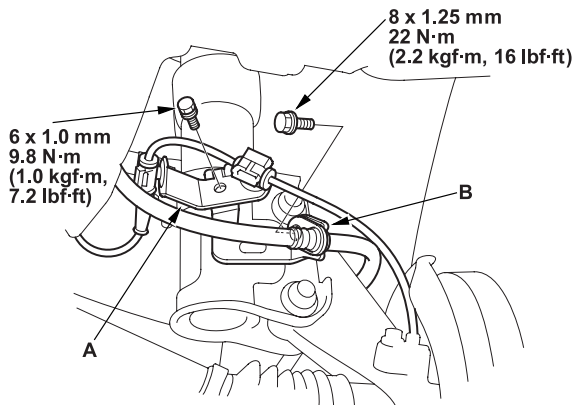
Ball joint remover, 28 mm 07MAC-SL00200

#### Removal

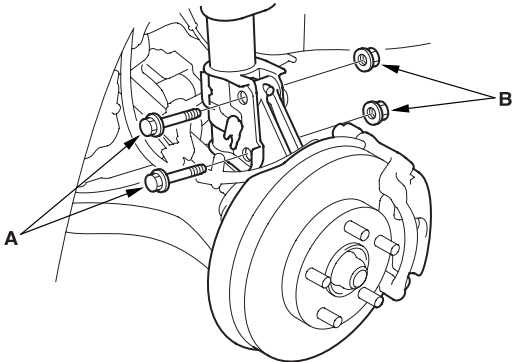
1. Raise the front of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the front wheels.
2. Remove the cotter pin (A) from the tie-rod end ball joint, and remove the nut (B).



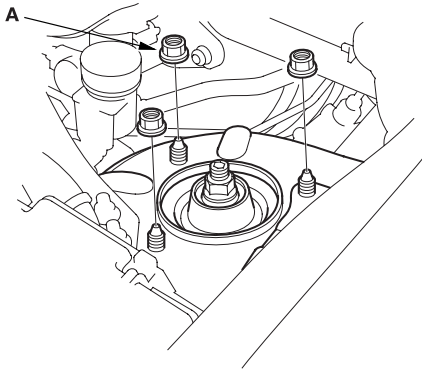
3. Disconnect the tie-rod end from the steering arm on the damper using the special tool ([see page 18-10](#)).
4. Remove the bolts, and remove the wheel sensor harness bracket (A) and brake hose bracket (B) from the damper. Do not disconnect the wheel sensor connector.



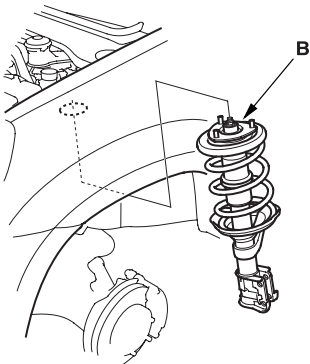
5. Remove the damper pinch bolts (A) while holding the nuts (B).



6. Remove the flange nuts (A) from the top of the damper.



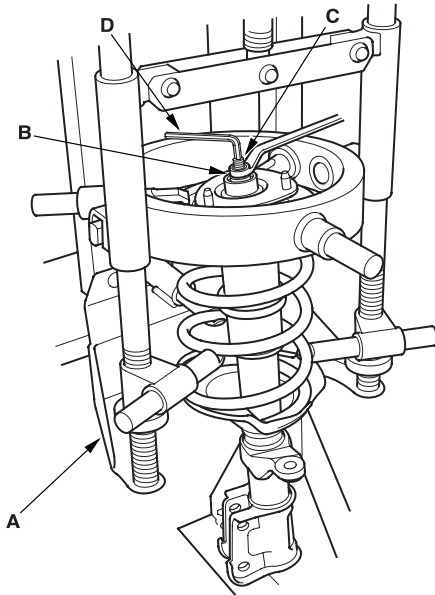
7. Lower the lower arm, and remove the damper assembly (B).





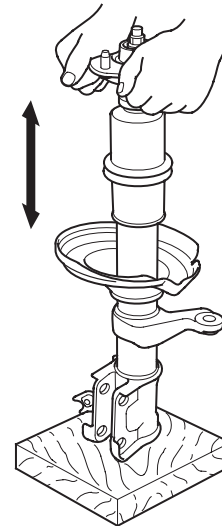
### Disassembly/Inspection

1. Compress the damper spring with the commercially available strut compressor (A) according to the manufacturer's instructions, then remove the self-locking nut (B) while holding the damper shaft (C) with a hex wrench (D). Do not compress the spring more than necessary to remove the nut.



2. Release the pressure from the strut spring compressor, then disassemble the damper as shown in the Exploded View.

3. Reassemble all the parts, except for the upper spring seat and spring.
4. Compress the damper assembly by hand, and check for smooth operation through a full stroke, both compression and extension. The damper should extend smoothly and constantly when compression is released. If it does not, the gas is leaking and the damper should be replaced.



5. Check for oil leaks, abnormal noises, and binding during these tests.

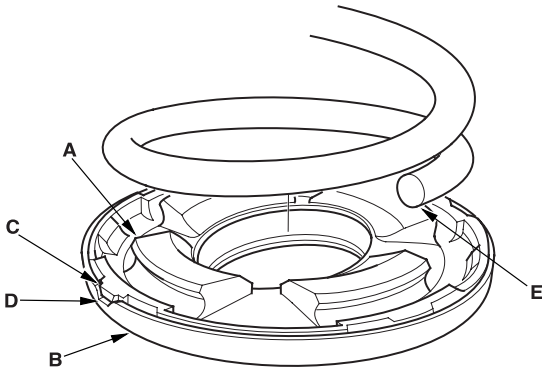
(cont'd)

### Damper/Spring Replacement (cont'd)

#### Reassembly

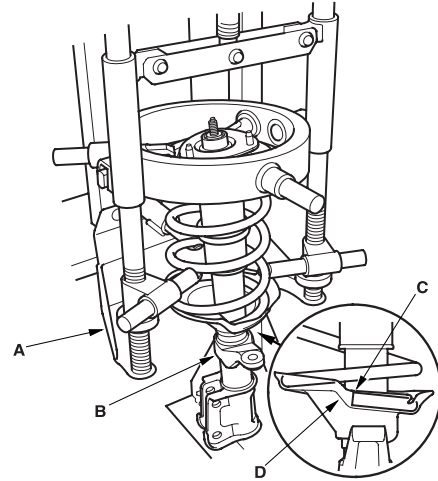
NOTE: Refer to the Exploded View as needed.

1. Install the upper spring mounting cushion (A) on the upper spring seat (B) by aligning the log portion (C) on cushion with cutout (D) in the seat.



2. Install the spring (E) in the groove of the cushion securely fitted.
3. Install the damper mounting bearing and damper mounting base on the upper spring seat.

4. Install the upper spring seat and the spring on a commercially available strut spring compressor (A), and compress the spring lightly.



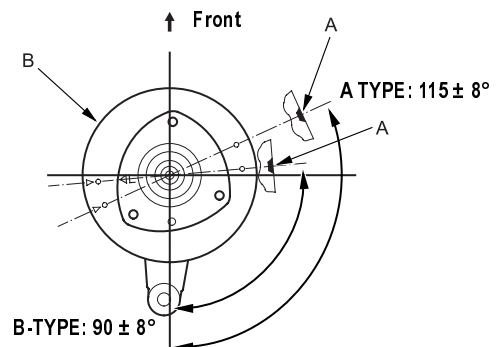
5. Insert the damper unit (B) up through the compressed spring.
6. Align the bottom of the spring (C) and the stepped part (D) of the lower spring seat.
7. Check that the cutout (A) in the side of the upper spring seat (B) is in position shown. Note that there are two types of the damper, A type and B type, and the cutout position is different from type to type.

**A type damper:** P/N 51601/51602-S9A-G02

**B type damper:** P/N 51601/51602-S9A-G12

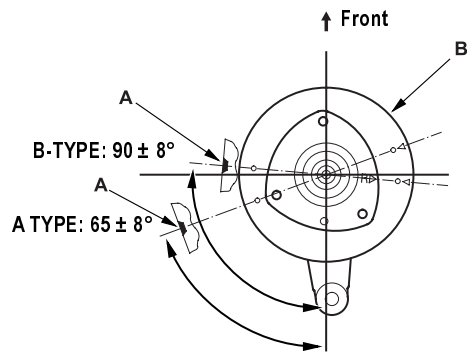
The part No. is shown on the damper unit label. If the cutout is out of position, repeat to the step 1 and reassemble the spring and upper spring seat accordingly.

Left side:

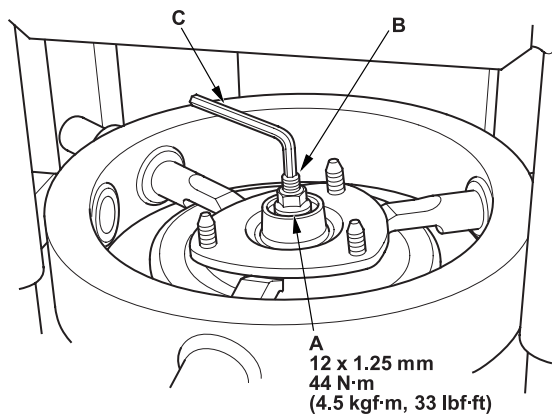




Right side:



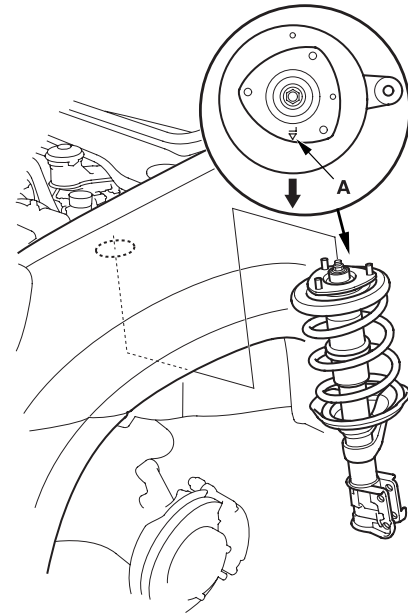
8. Hold the bottom of the damper with your hand, and compress the spring. Do not compress the spring excessively.
9. Install the 12 mm nut (A) on the damper shaft (B). Hold the damper shaft with a hex wrench (C), and tighten the 12 mm nut to the specified torque.



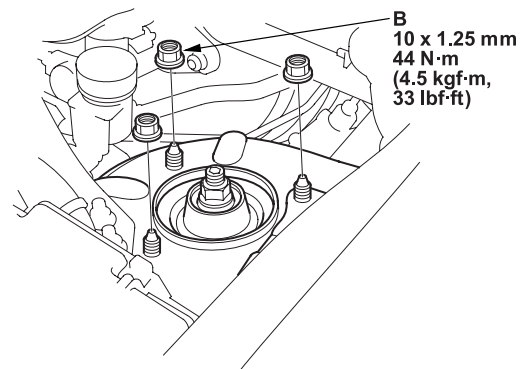
10. Remove the damper assembly from the strut spring compressor.

## Installation

1. Lower the lower arm, and position the damper assembly in the body. Turn the damper mounting base so that the "L" mark (A) faces toward the outside of the vehicle.



2. Loosely install flange nuts (B) onto the top of the damper.

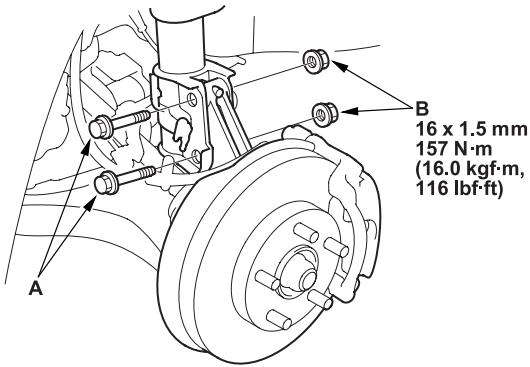


(cont'd)

### Damper/Spring Replacement (cont'd)

#### Installation (cont'd)

- Position the damper on the knuckle, and install the new damper pinch bolts (A) and nuts (B), and lightly tighten the nuts.

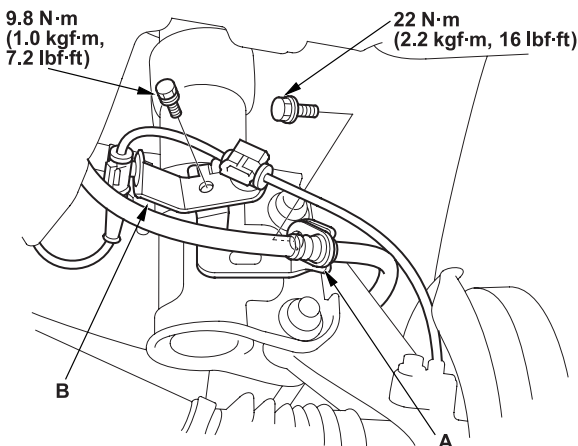


- Place the floor jack under the lower arm ball joint, and raise the suspension to load it with the vehicle's weight.

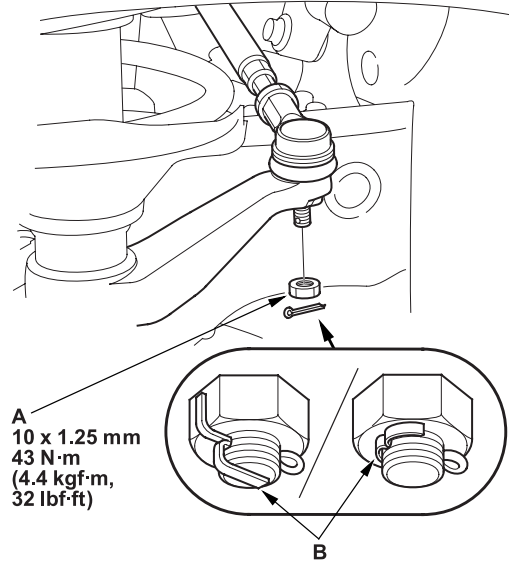
#### NOTICE

Do not place the jack against the lower arm ball joint.

- Tighten the flange nuts on the top of the damper to the specified torque.
- Tighten the damper pinch nuts to the specified torque.
- Install the brake hose bracket (A) and the wheel sensor harness bracket (B) onto the damper, and tighten the bolt to the specified torque.



- Connect the tie-rod end to the steering arm, and tighten the nut (A) to the specified torque. Install the cotter pin (B) after tightening, and bend its end as shown.



- Clean the mating surface of the brake disc and the inside of the wheel, then install the front wheels.
- Check the wheel alignment, and adjust it if necessary ([see page 18-4](#)).

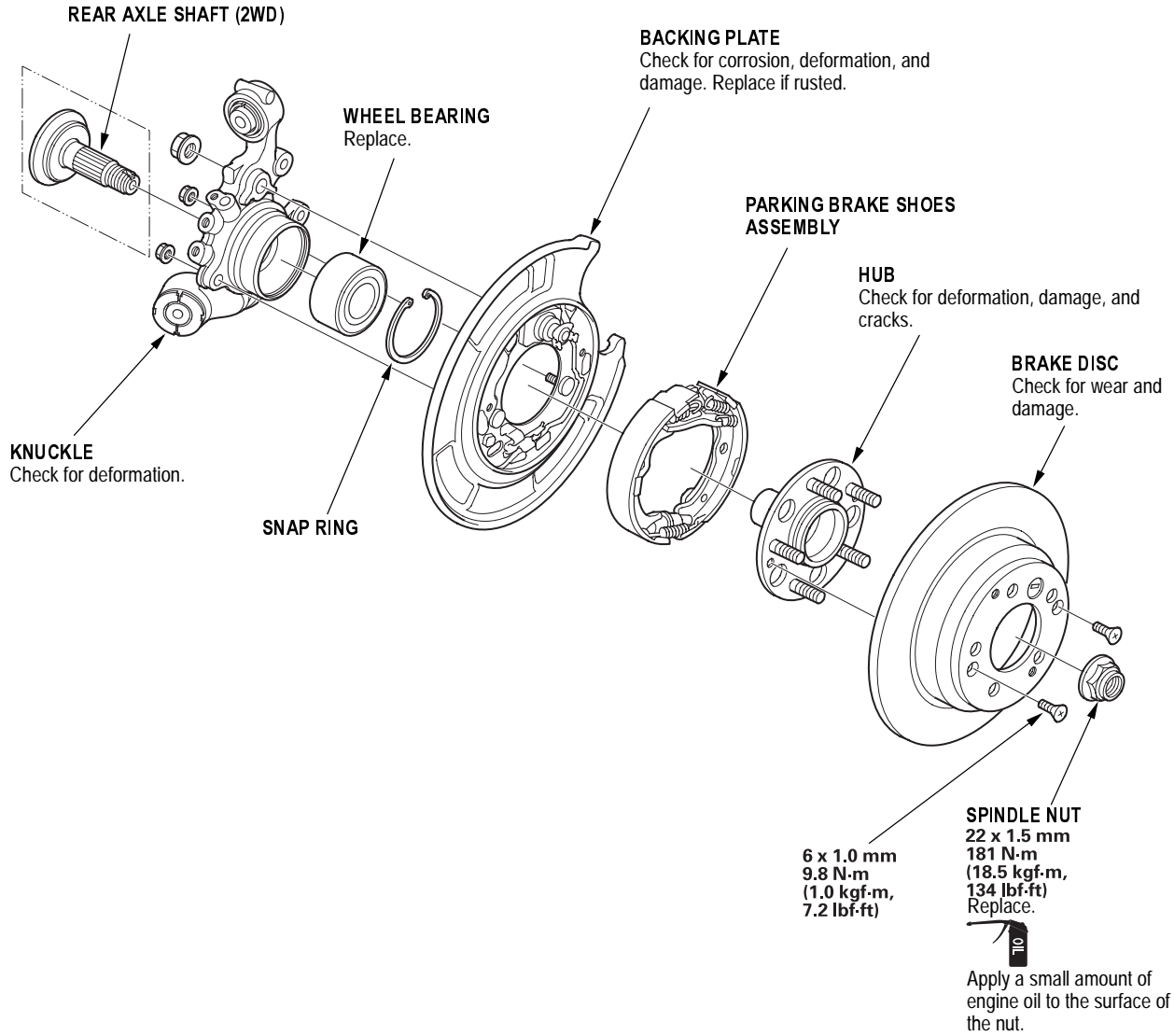




## Rear Suspension

### Knuckle/Hub/Wheel Bearing Replacement

#### Exploded View



(cont'd)

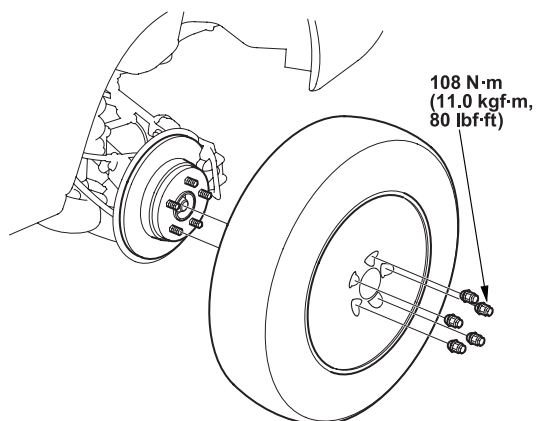
### Knuckle/Hub/Wheel Bearing Replacement (cont'd)

#### Special Tools Required

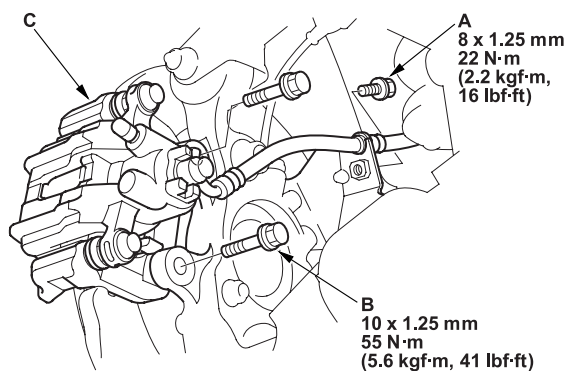
- Hub dis/assembly tool 34 mm 07965-SA70100
- Ball joint remover, 28 mm 07MAC-SL00200
- Attachment 62 × 68 mm 07746-0010500
- Driver 07749-0010000
- Support base 07965-SD90100

#### Knuckle Replacement

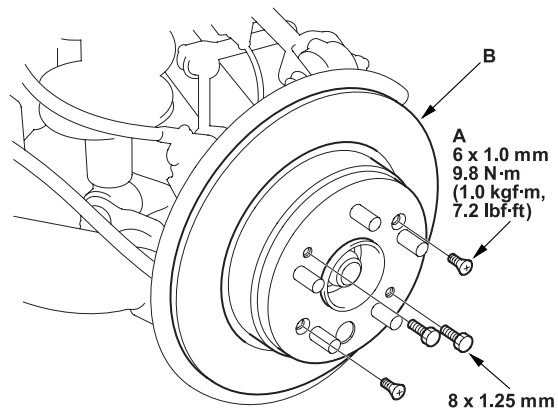
1. Raise the rear of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the rear wheels.
2. Release the parking brake lever.



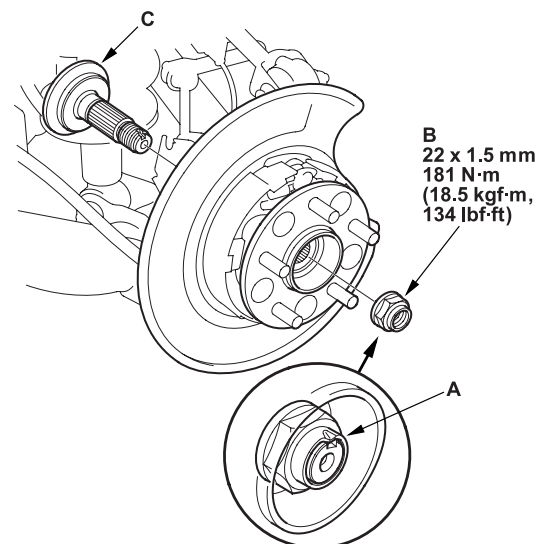
3. Remove the brake hose mounting bolt (A).
4. Remove the caliper bracket mounting bolts (B), and hang the caliper (C) to one side. To prevent damage to the caliper or brake hose, use a short piece of wire to hang the caliper from the undercarriage.



5. Remove the brake disc retaining screw (A), screw two 8 × 1.25 mm bolts into the brake disc/drum (B) to push it away from the hub. Turn each bolt two turns at a time to prevent cocking the brake disc/drum excessively. Remove the brake disc/drum.



6. Raise the stake (A), and remove the spindle nut (B) and rear axle shaft (vehicles with 2WD) (C).

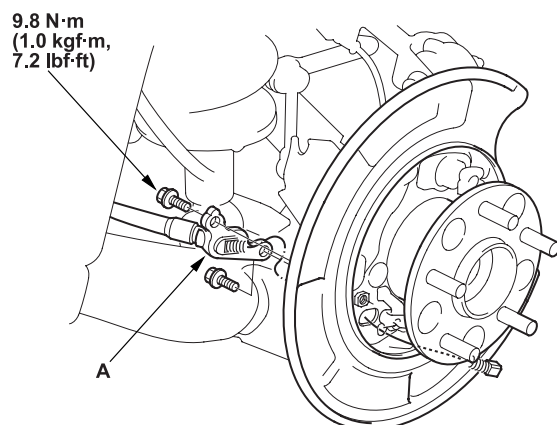




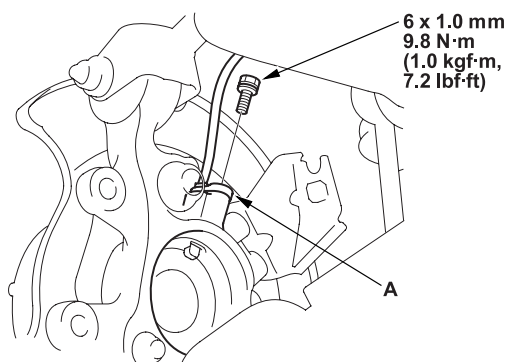
7. Remove the parking brake shoes (see page 19A-36).

8. Remove the parking brake cable (A) from the backing plate.

NOTE: The parking brake cable must not be bent or distorted. This will lead to stiff operation and premature cable failure.

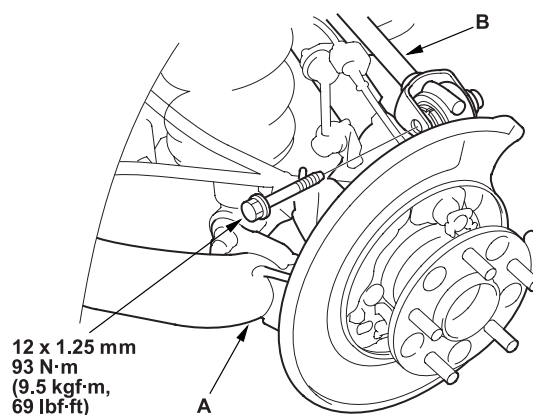


9. Remove the wheel sensor (A) from the knuckle (if equipped with ABS).



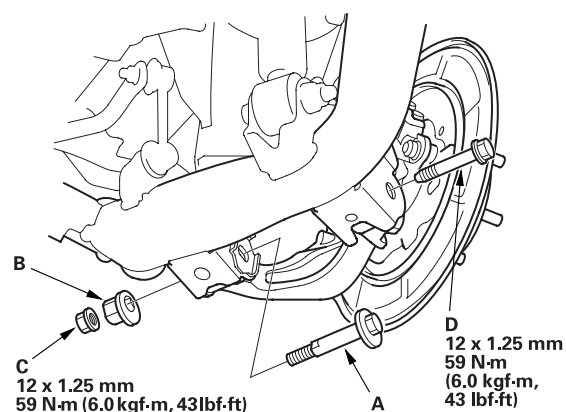
10. Place a floor jack under the trailing arm (A) to support it.

NOTE: Do not place the jack against the plate section of the lower arm. Be careful not to damage any suspension components.



11. Remove the flange bolt, and disconnect the upper arm (B) from the knuckle.

12. Mark the cam positions of the adjusting bolt (A) and adjusting cam (B), then remove the self-locking nut (C), adjusting cam, and adjusting bolt. Discard the self-locking nut.

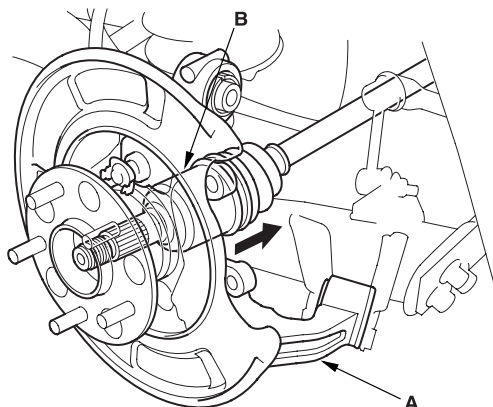


(cont'd)

### Knuckle/Hub/Wheel Bearing Replacement (cont'd)

#### Knuckle Replacement (cont'd)

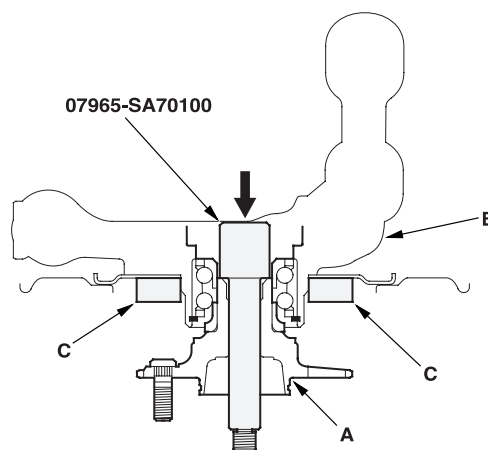
13. Remove the knuckle (A) while pushing in the driveshaft and holding the driveshaft outboard joint (B). (4WD only)



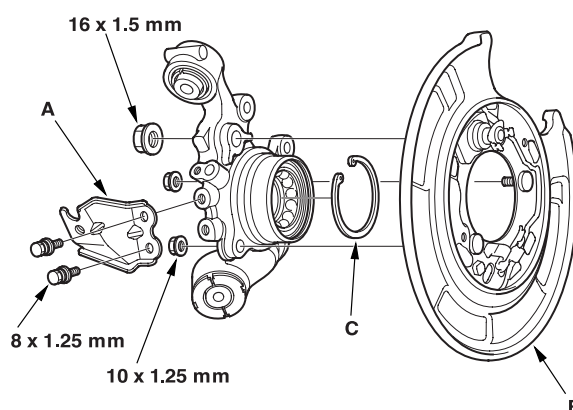
14. Install the knuckle in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - First install all the suspension components, and lightly tighten the bolts and nuts, then place a floor jack under the lower arm, and raise the suspension to load it with the vehicle's weight before fully tightening the bolts and nuts to the specified torque values.
  - Align the cam positions of the adjusting bolt (A) and adjusting cam (B) with the marked positions when tightening.
  - Use a new self-locking nut on reassembly.
  - Use a new spindle nut on reassembly.
  - Before installing the spindle nut, apply a small amount of engine oil to the seating surface of the nut. After tightening, use a drift to stake the spindle nut shoulder against the driveshaft.
  - Before installing the brake disc/drum, clean the mating surfaces of the rear hub and the inside of the brake disc/drum.
  - Before installing the wheel, clean the mating surfaces of the brake disc/drum and the inside of the wheel.
  - Check the rear wheel alignment, and adjust it if necessary ([see page 18-4](#)).

#### Wheel Bearing Replacement

1. Separate the hub (A) from the knuckle (B) using the special tool and a hydraulic press. Hold the knuckle with a press attachment (C) or equivalent tool. Be careful not to deform the splash guard. Hold onto the hub to keep it from falling when pressed clear.



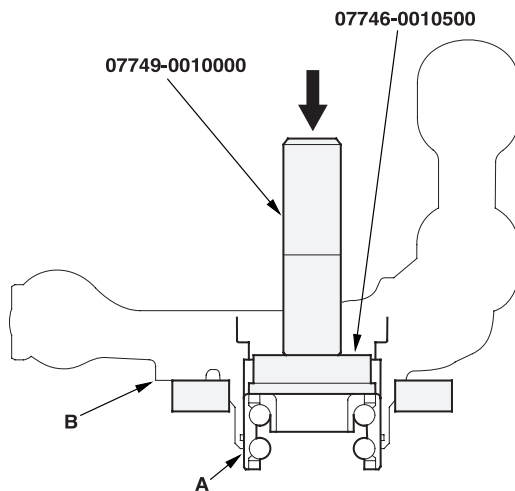
2. Remove the brake hose mounting bracket (A).



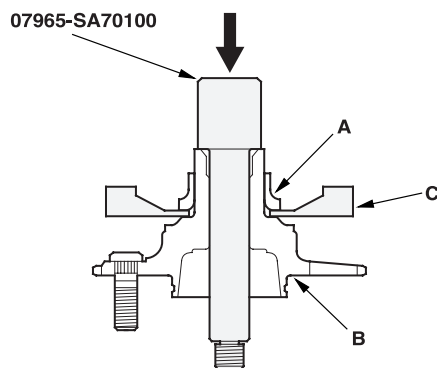
3. Remove the backing plate (B), and snap ring (C).



4. Press the wheel bearing (A) out of the knuckle (B) using the special tools and a press.



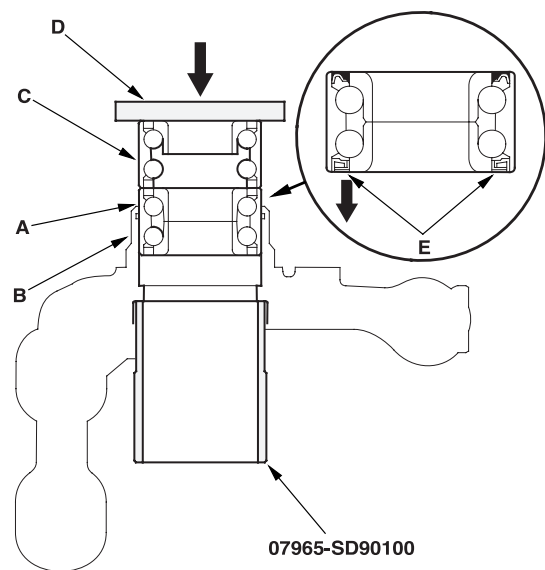
5. Press the wheel bearing inner race (A) from the hub (B) using the special tool, a commercially available bearing separator (C), and a press.



6. Wash the knuckle and hub thoroughly in high flash point solvent before reassembly.
7. Press a new wheel bearing (A) into the knuckle (B) using the old bearing (C), a steel plate (D), the special tool, and a press. Be careful not to damage the sleeve of the pack seal.

**NOTE:**

- Install the wheel bearing with the magnetic encoder (E) (brown color), toward the inside of the knuckle.
- Remove any oil, grease, dust and other foreign material from the encoder surface.
- Keep any magnetic tools away from the encoder surface.
- Be careful not to damage the encoder surface when you insert wheel bearing.

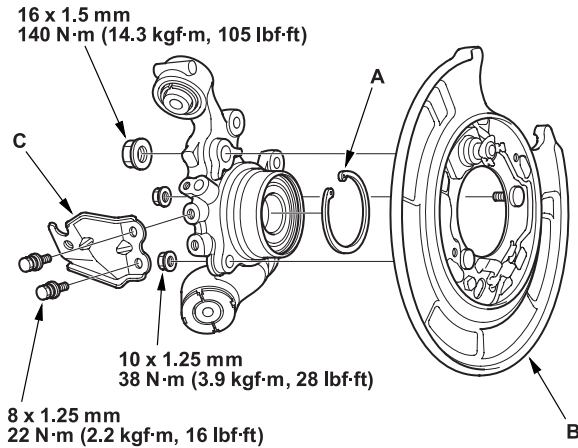


(cont'd)

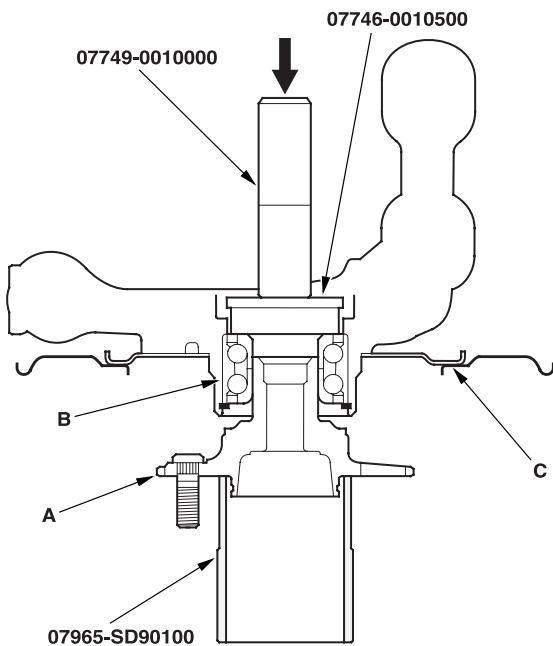
### Knuckle/Hub/Wheel Bearing Replacement (cont'd)

#### Wheel Bearing Replacement (cont'd)

8. Install the snap ring (A), backing plate (B), and brake hose mounting bracket (C). Tighten the flange nuts and bolts to the specified torque.

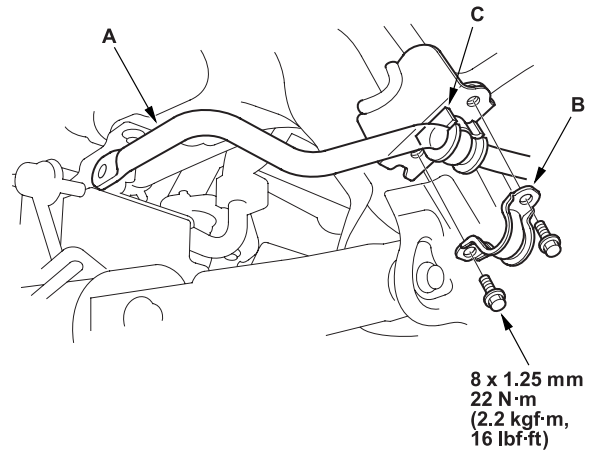


9. Install the hub (A) on the knuckle (B) using the special tools and a hydraulic press. Be careful not to deform the backing plate (C).

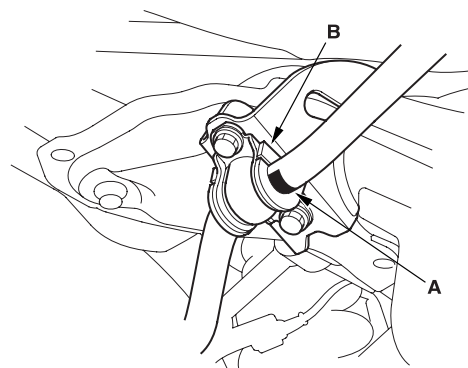


### Stabilizer Bar Replacement

1. Raise the rear of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the rear wheels.
2. Disconnect the stabilizer links from the stabilizer bar (A) on the right and left ([see page 18-33](#)).



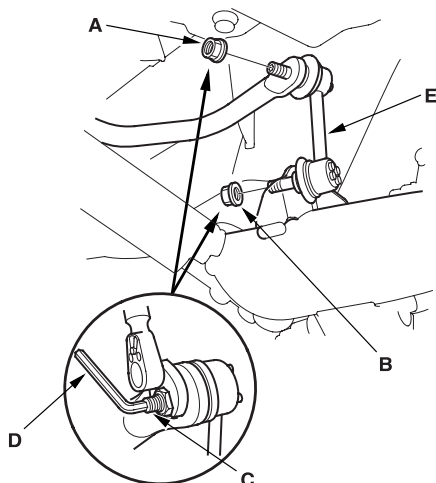
3. Remove the flange bolts and bushing holders (B), then remove the bushings (C) and the stabilizer bar.
4. Install the stabilizer bar in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Use new self-locking nuts on reassembly.
  - Make sure the right and left ends of the stabilizer bar are installed on their respective sides of the vehicle.
  - Align the ends of the paint marks (A) on the stabilizer bar with the bushings (B).
  - Refer to Stabilizer Link Replacement to connect the stabilizer bar to the links ([see page 18-33](#)).



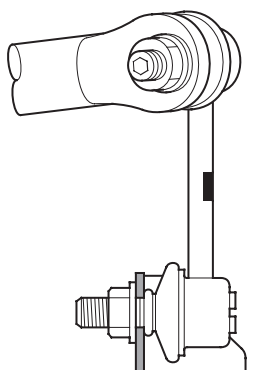


## Stabilizer Link Replacement

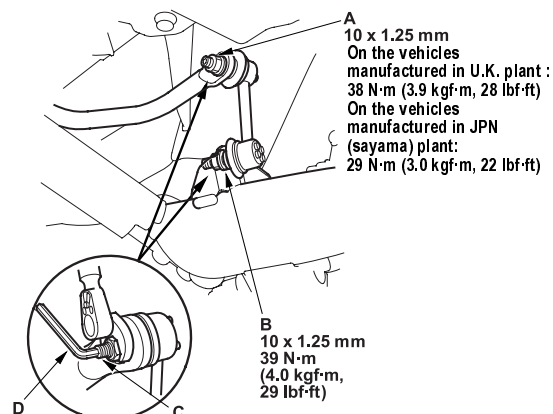
1. Raise the rear of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the rear wheels.
2. Remove the self-locking nut (A) and flange nut (B) while holding the respective joint pin (C) with a hex wrench (D), and remove the stabilizer link (E).



3. Install the stabilizer link on the stabilizer bar and trailing arm with the joint pins set at the center of each moving range.



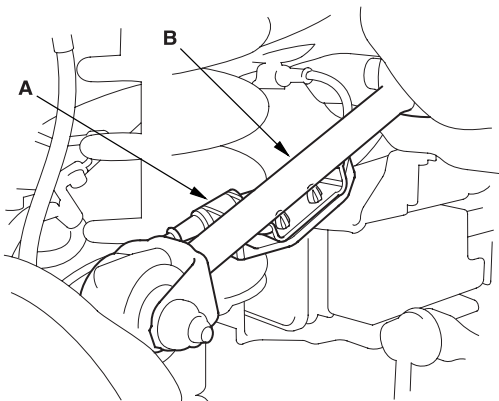
4. Install the self-locking nut and flange nut, and lightly tighten them.  
NOTE: Use a new self-locking nut on reassembly.
5. Place a jack under the trailing arm at the knuckle side end, and raise the suspension to load it with the vehicle's weight.
6. Tighten the new self-locking nut (A) and flange nut (B) to the specified torque values while holding the respective joint pins (C) with a hex wrench (D).



7. After 5 minutes of driving, re-tighten the self-locking nut again to the specified torque.

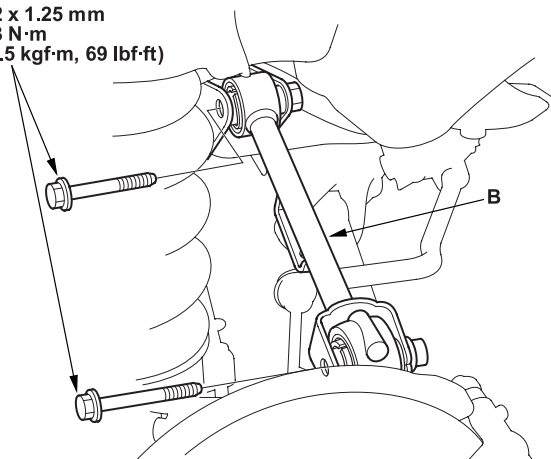
### Upper Arm Replacement

1. Raise the rear of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the rear wheels.
2. Place a floor jack under the trailing arm, and support the suspension.
3. Remove the wheel sensor harness bracket (A) from the upper arm (B).



4. Remove the flange bolts (A), and remove the upper arm (B).

A  
12 x 1.25 mm  
93 N·m  
(9.5 kgf·m, 69 lbf·ft)



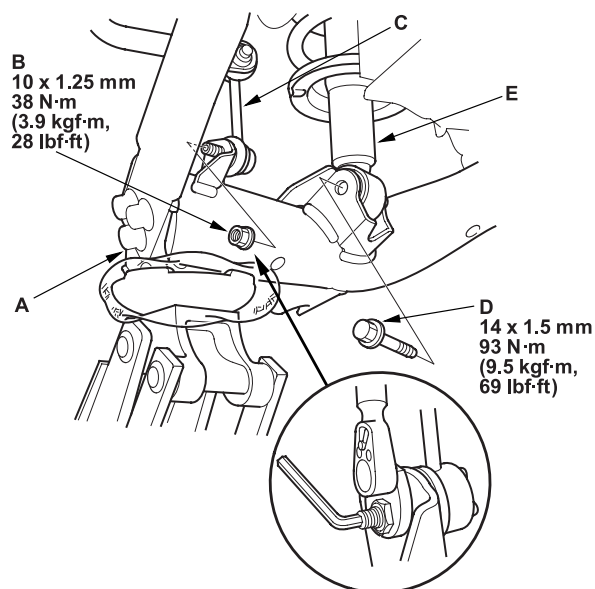
5. Install the upper arm in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - First install all the suspension components and lightly tighten the bolts and nuts, then place a jack under the trailing arm, and raise the suspension to load it with the vehicle's weight before fully tightening the bolts and nuts to the specified torque values.
  - Tighten all the mounting hardware to the specified torque values.
  - Before installing the wheel, clean the mating surface of the brake disc and the inside of the wheel.
  - Check the wheel alignment, and adjust it if necessary ([see page 18-4](#)).



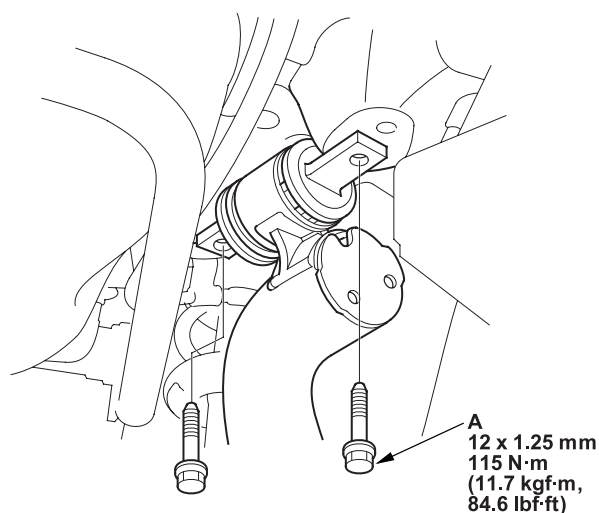


## Trailing Arm Replacement

1. Raise the rear of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the rear wheels.
2. Remove the knuckle ([see page 18-28](#)).
3. Place the floor jack under the trailing arm (A) to support it.



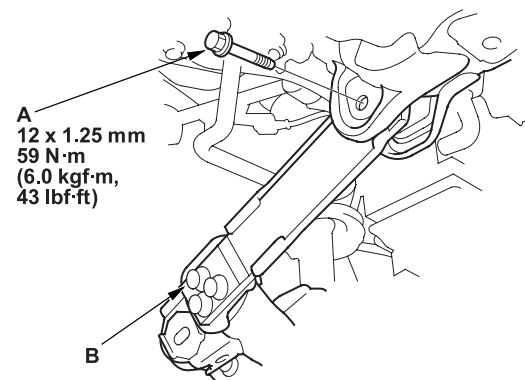
4. Remove the flange nut (B), and disconnect the stabilizer link (C) from the trailing arm.
5. Remove the flange bolt (D), and disconnect the damper (E) from the trailing arm.
6. Remove the trailing arm front mounting bolts (A).



7. Remove the trailing arm rear mounting bolt (A).

### NOTICE

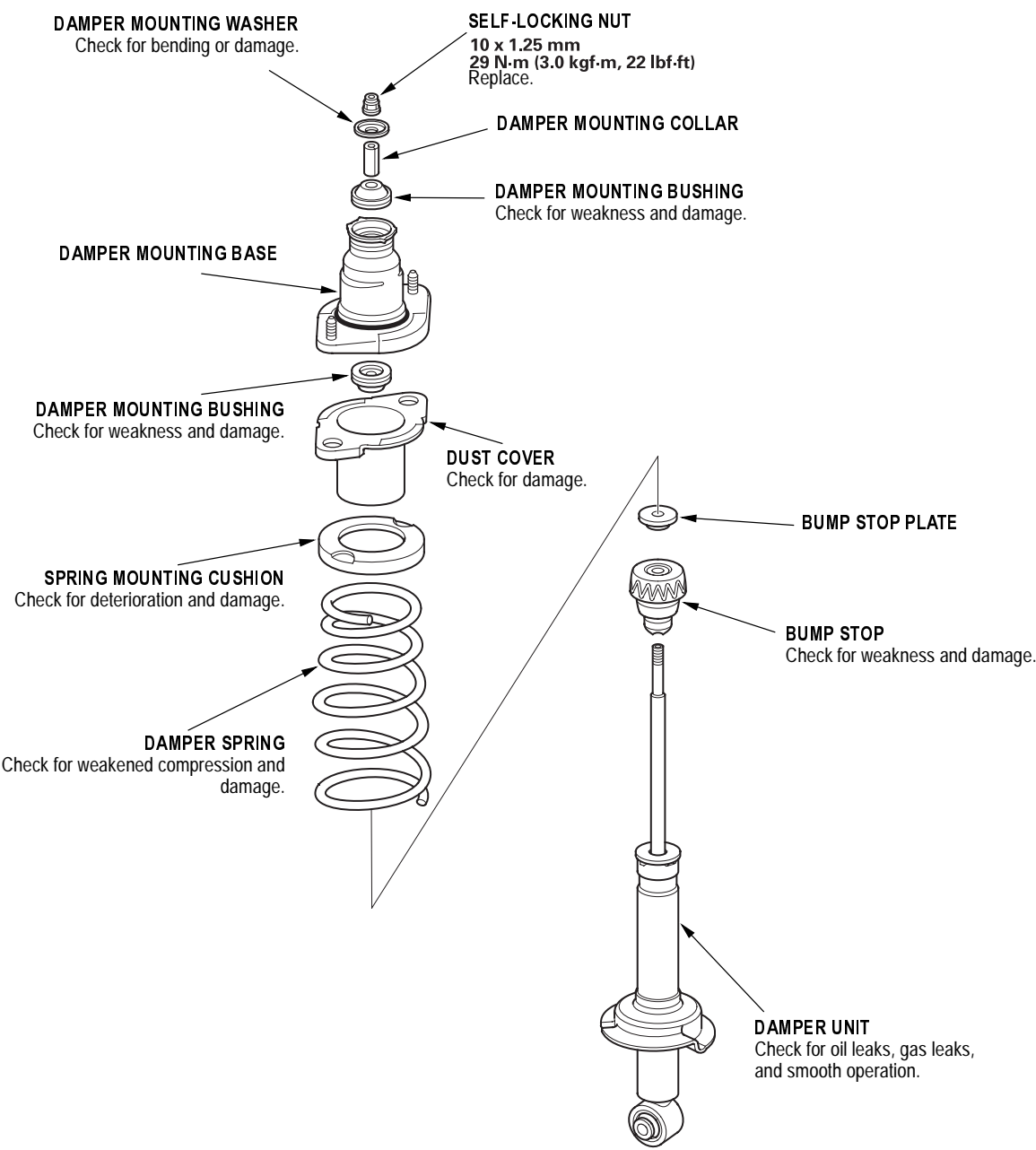
Do not loosen the special bolts (B) on the trailing arm.



8. Lower the jack, and remove the trailing arm.
9. Install the trailing arm in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - First install all the suspension components and lightly tighten the bolts and nuts, then place a jack under the trailing arm, and raise the suspension to load it with the vehicle's weight before fully tightening the bolts and nuts to the specified torque values.
  - Tighten all the mounting hardware to the specified torque values.
  - Before installing the wheel, clean the mating surface of the brake disc and the inside of the wheel.
  - Check the wheel alignment, and adjust it if necessary ([see page 18-4](#)).

Damper/Spring Replacement

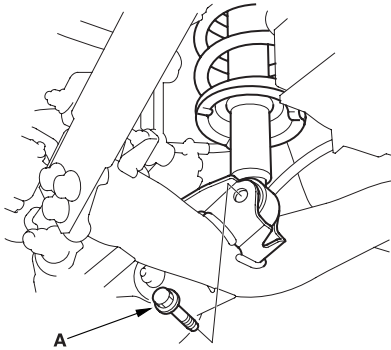
Exploded View



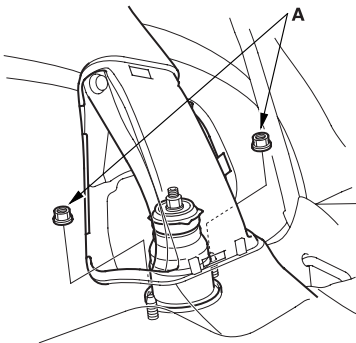


### Removal

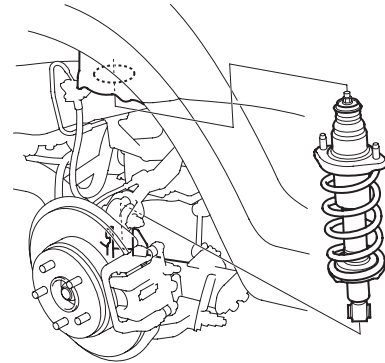
1. Raise the rear of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the rear wheels.
2. Remove the flange bolt (A) from the bottom of the damper.



3. Remove the flange nuts (A) from the top of the damper in the cargo area.



4. Remove the damper assembly from the body.

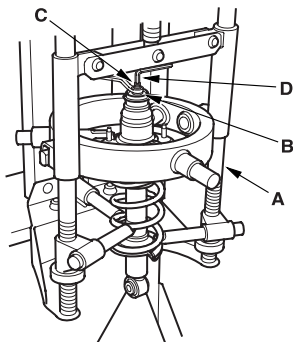


(cont'd)

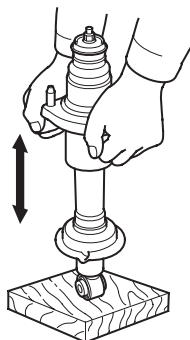
### Damper/Spring Replacement (cont'd)

#### Disassembly/Inspection

1. Compress the damper spring with the commercially available strut compressor (A) according to the manufacturer's instructions, then remove the self-locking nut (B) while holding the damper shaft (C) with a hex wrench (D). Do not compress the spring more than necessary to remove the nut.



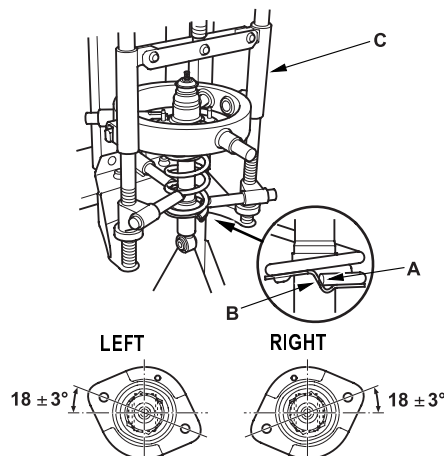
2. Release the pressure from the strut spring compressor, then disassemble the damper as shown in the Exploded View.
3. Reassemble all the parts, except for the spring.
4. Compress the damper assembly by hand, and check for smooth operation through a full stroke, both compression and extension. The damper should extend smoothly and constantly when compression is released. If it does not, the gas is leaking and the damper should be replaced.



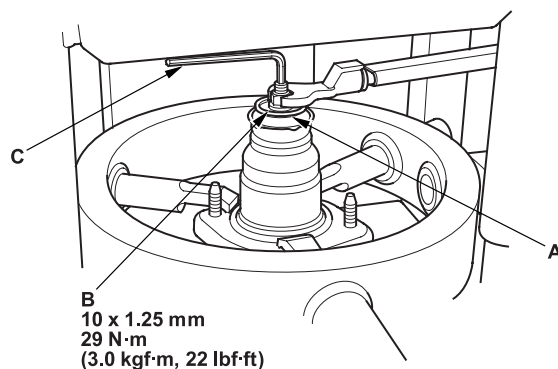
5. Check for oil leaks, abnormal noises, or binding during these tests.

#### Reassembly

1. Install all the parts except the damper mounting washer and self-locking nut onto the damper unit by referring to the Exploded View. Align the bottom of the spring (A) and the stepped part of the lower spring seat (B), and align the damper mounting base as shown.



2. Install the damper assembly on a commercially available strut spring compressor (C).
3. Compress the damper spring with the spring compressor.
4. Install the washer (A) and a new self-locking nut (B) on the damper shaft.

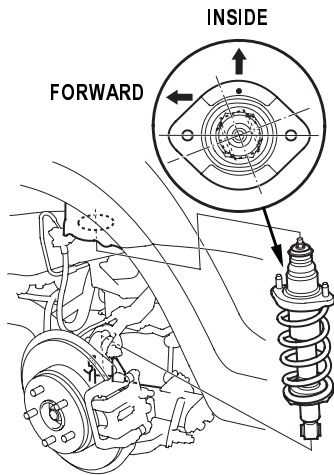


5. Hold the damper shaft with a hex wrench (C), and tighten the self-locking nut to the specified torque.

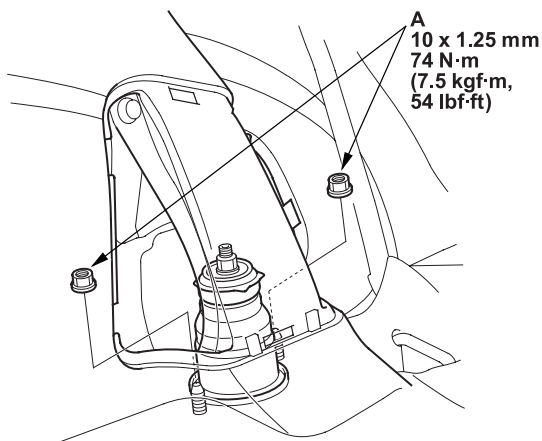


### Installation

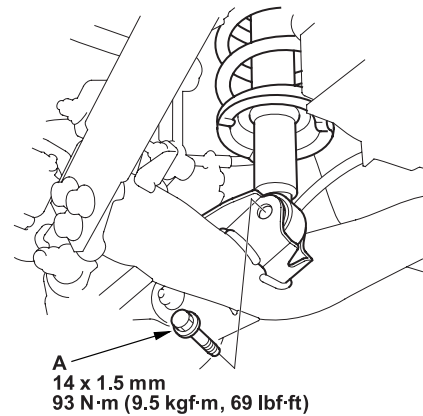
1. Position the damper assembly in the body. Note the direction of the damper mounting base so that the small hole dot on it is toward the inside of the vehicle.



2. Loosely install the flange nuts (A) onto the top of the damper.



3. Loosely install the flange bolt (A) on the bottom of the damper.



4. Raise the suspension with a floor jack to load the vehicle weight, and tighten the nuts and bolt to the specified torque values.
5. Clean the mating surface of the brake disc and the inside of the wheel, then install the rear wheel.
6. Check the wheel alignment, and adjust it if necessary ([see page 18-4](#)).



## Brakes

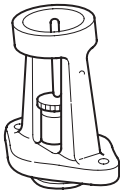
<b>Conventional Brake Components .....</b>	<b>19A-2</b>
Special Tools .....	19A-2
Component Location Index .....	19A-3
Brake System Operation and Leakage Check .....	19A-4
Brake Pedal and Brake Pedal Position Switch Adjustment.....	19A-5
Parking Brake Check and Adjustment .....	19A-6
Brake System Bleeding.....	19A-9
Brake System Indicator Circuit Diagram .....	19A-10
Parking Brake Switch Test .....	19A-11
Brake Fluid Level Switch Test .....	19A-11
Front Brake Pads Inspection and Replacement.....	19A-12
Front Brake Disc Inspection .....	19A-18
Front Brake Caliper Overhaul .....	19A-19
Master Cylinder Replacement.....	19A-21
Master Cylinder Disassembly.....	19A-22
Master Cylinder Reassembly .....	19A-23
Brake Booster Pushrod Clearance Adjustment.....	19A-26
Brake Booster Inspection.....	19A-27
Brake Booster Replacement .....	19A-29
Rear Brake Pads Inspection and Replacement .....	19A-30
Rear Brake Disc Inspection.....	19A-32
Rear Brake Caliper Overhaul .....	19A-33
Parking Brake Drum Inspection .....	19A-34
Parking Brake Shoes Replacement .....	19A-36
Lining Surface Break-in.....	19A-39
Brake Hoses and Lines Inspection.....	19A-40
Brake Hose Replacement .....	19A-41
Parking Brake Cable Replacement .....	19A-42



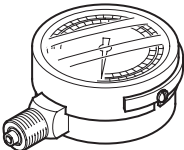
Conventional Brake Components

Special Tools

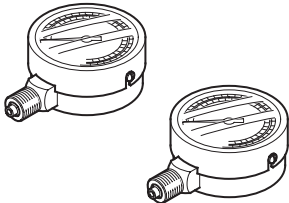
Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07JAG-SD40100	Pushrod Adjustment Gauge	1
2	07404-5790301	Vacuum Gauge	1
3	07406-5790201	Pressure Gauges	2
4	07410-5790101	Attachment	1
5	07410-5790501	Tube Joint Adaptor	1
6	07510-6340101	Pressure Gauge Joint Pipes	2



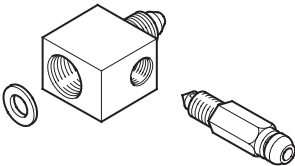
1



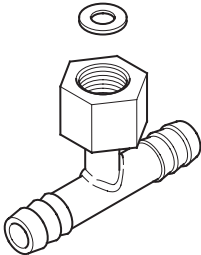
2



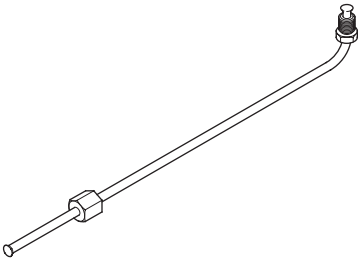
3



4



5

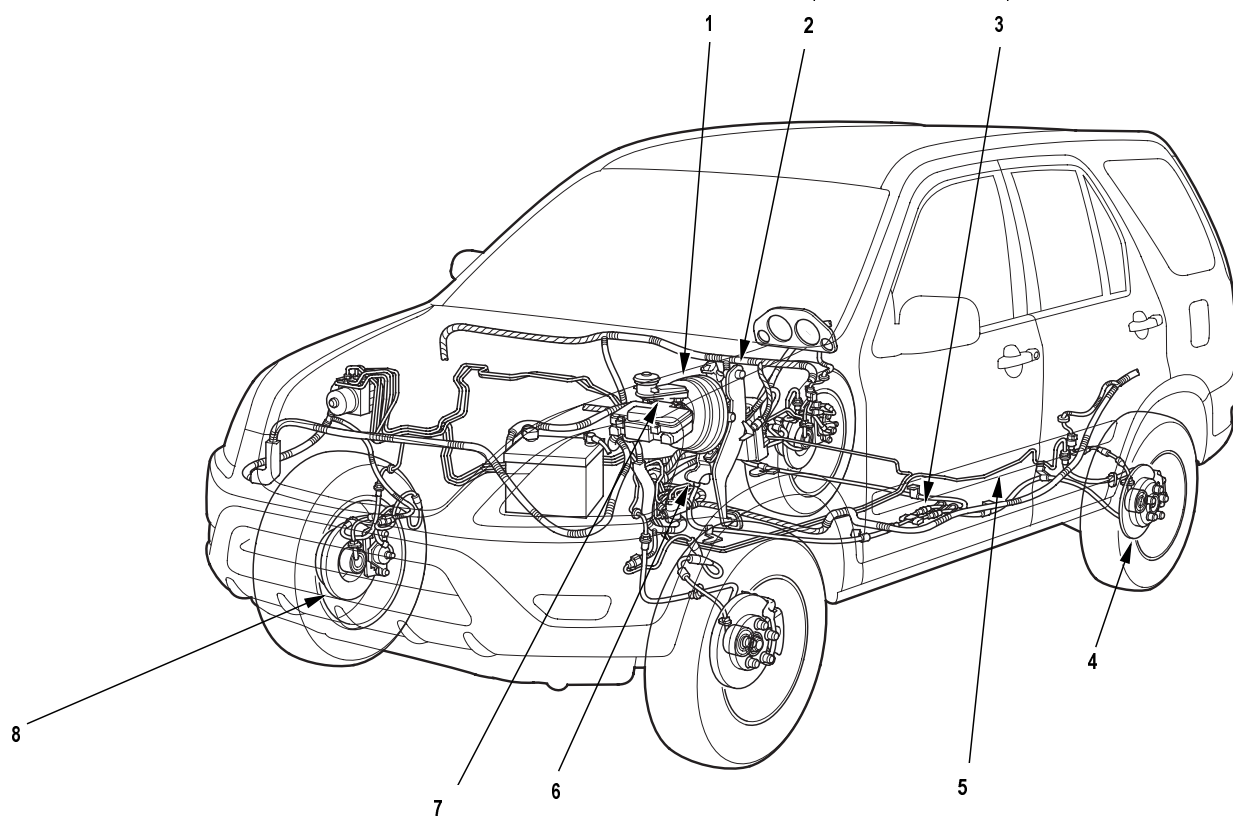


6





## Component Location Index

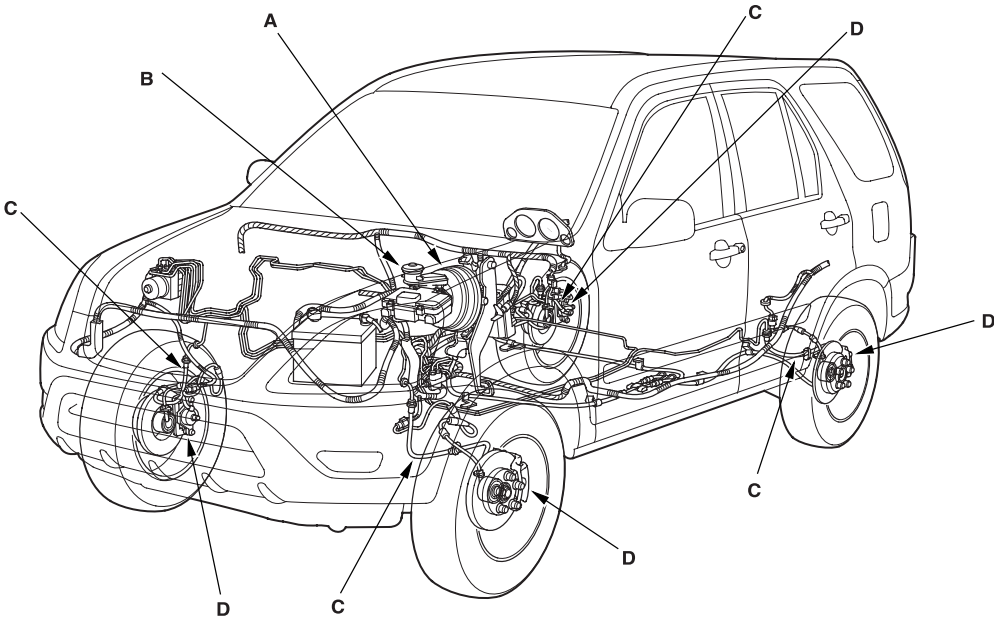


1 BRAKE BOOSTER	Brake Booster Inspection, <a href="#">page 19A-27</a> ; Brake Booster Replacement, <a href="#">page 19A-29</a>
2 BRAKE PEDAL	Brake Pedal and Brake Pedal Position Switch Adjustment, <a href="#">page 19A-5</a>
3 PARKING BRAKE CABLE	Parking Brake Cable Replacement, <a href="#">page 19A-42</a>
4 REAR DISC BRAKE	Rear Brake Pads Inspection and Replacement, <a href="#">page 19A-30</a> ; Rear Brake Disc Inspection, <a href="#">page 19A-32</a> ; Rear Brake Caliper Overhaul, <a href="#">page 19A-33</a> ; Parking Brake Drum Inspection, <a href="#">page 19A-34</a> ; Parking Brake Shoes Replacement, <a href="#">page 19A-36</a> ; Lining Surface Break-in, <a href="#">page 19A-39</a>
5 BRAKE HOSES and LINES	Brake Hoses and Lines Inspection, <a href="#">page 19A-40</a> ; Break Hoses Replacement, <a href="#">page 19A-41</a>
6 PARKING BRAKE LEVER	Parking Brake Check and Adjustment, <a href="#">page 19A-6</a> ; Parking Brake Switch Test, <a href="#">page 19A-11</a> ; Brake System Indicator Circuit Diagram, <a href="#">page 19A-10</a>
7 MASTER CYLINDER	Brake Fluid Level Switch Test, <a href="#">page 19A-11</a> ; Master Cylinder Replacement, <a href="#">page 19A-21</a> ; Disassembly, <a href="#">page 19A-22</a> ; Reassembly, <a href="#">page 19A-23</a> ; Brake Booster Pushrod Clearance Adjustment, <a href="#">page 19A-26</a> ; Brake System Bleeding, <a href="#">page 19A-9</a>
8 FRONT BRAKES	Front Brake Pads, Inspection and Replacement, <a href="#">page 19A-12</a> ; Front Brake Disc Inspection, <a href="#">page 19A-18</a> ; Front Brake Caliper Overhaul, <a href="#">page 19A-19</a>

Brake System Operation and Leakage Check

Check all the following items:

Component	Procedure
Brake Booster (A)	Check brake operation by applying the brakes during a test drive. If the brakes do not work properly, check the brake booster. Replace the brake booster as an assembly if it does not work properly or if there are signs of leakage.
Piston Cup and Pressure Cup Inspection (B)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check brake operation by applying the brakes. Look for damage or signs of fluid leakage. Disassembly and inspect the master cylinder if the pedal does not work properly or if there is damage or signs of fluid leakage. Replace the secondary piston and primary piston as an assembly whenever the master cylinder is disassembled.</li><li>• Check for a difference in brake pedal stroke between quick and slow brake applications. Disassembly and inspect the master cylinder if there is a difference in pedal stroke. Replace the secondary piston and primary piston as an assembly whenever the master cylinder is disassembled.</li></ul>
Brake Hoses (C)	Look for damage or signs of fluid leakage. Replace the brake hose with a new one if it is damaged or leaking.
Caliper Piston Seal and Piston Boots (D)	Check brake operation by applying the brakes. Look for damage or signs of fluid leakage. If the pedal does not work properly, the brakes drag, or there is damage or signs of fluid leakage, disassemble and inspect the brake caliper. Replace the boots and seals with new ones whenever the brake caliper is disassembled.



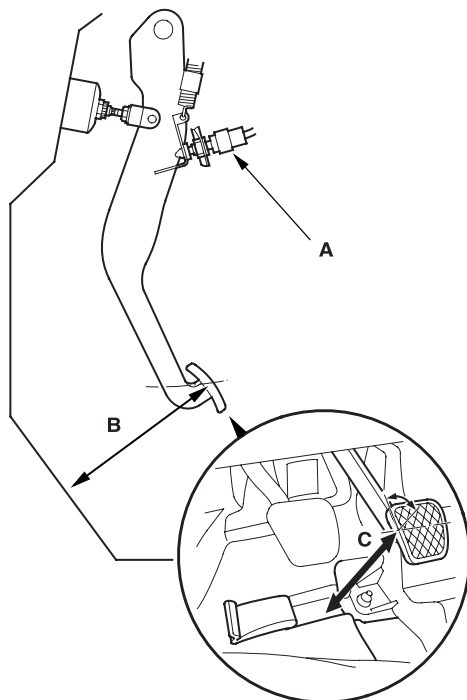


## Brake Pedal and Brake Pedal Position Switch Adjustment

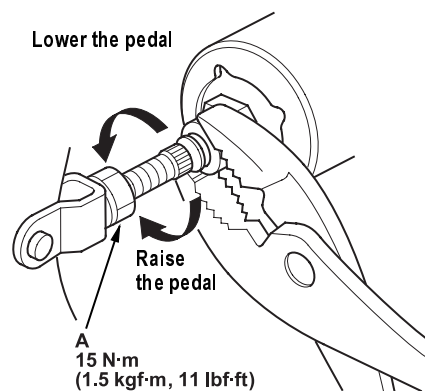
### Pedal Height

1. Turn the brake pedal position switch (A) counterclockwise, and pull it back until it is no longer touching the brake pedal.
2. Lift up the carpet. At the insulator cutout, measure the pedal height (B) from the middle of the pedal pad (C).

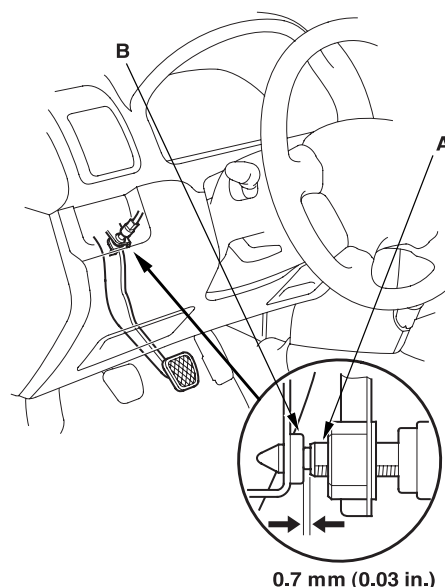
**Standard Pedal Height (with carpet removed):**  
173 mm (6.81 in.) Min.



3. Loosen the pushrod locknut (A), and screw the pushrod in or out with pliers until the standard pedal height from the floor is reached. After adjustment, tighten the locknut firmly. Do not adjust the pedal height with the pushrod pressed.



4. Push in the brake pedal position switch until its plunger is fully pressed (threaded end (A) touching the pad (B) on the pedal arm). Then, turn the switch 45° clockwise to lock it. The gap between the brake pedal position switch and the pad is automatically adjusted to 0.7 mm (0.03 in.) by locking the switch. Make sure the brake lights go off when the pedal is released.



5. Check the brake pedal free play as described below.

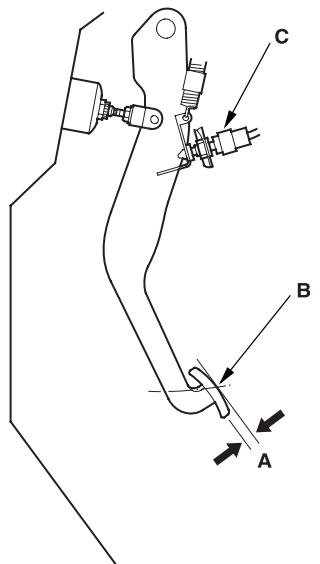
(cont'd)

### Brake Pedal and Brake Pedal Position Switch Adjustment (cont'd)

#### Pedal Free Play

1. With the engine off, inspect the play (A) on the pedal pad (B) by pushing the pedal by hand.

Free Play: 1 - 5 mm (0.04 - 0.2 in.)



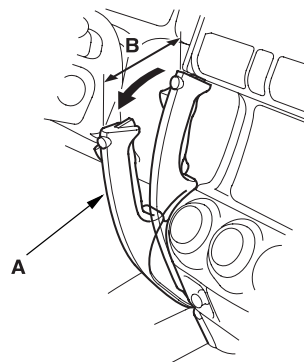
2. If the pedal free play is out of specification, adjust the brake pedal position switch (C). If the pedal free play is insufficient, it may result in brake drag.

### Parking Brake Check and Adjustment

#### Check

1. Pull the parking brake lever (A) with 196 N (20 kgf, 44 lbf) of force to fully apply the parking brake. The parking brake lever should be locked within the specified number of clicks (B).

Lever locked clicks: 5 - 9



2. Adjust the parking brake if the lever clicks are not within the specification.

NOTE: Minor parking brake lever adjustments (1 - 2 clicks) can be made with the adjusting nut in the equalizer.

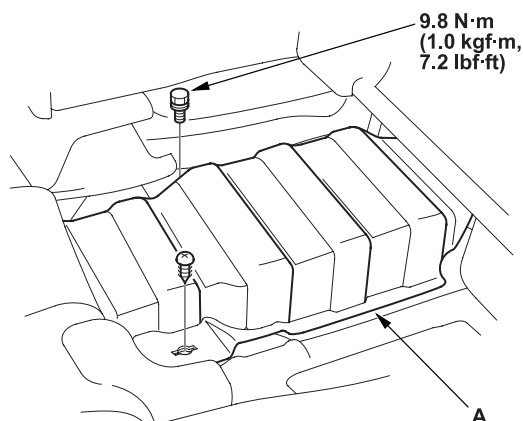
If a larger adjustment is required, follow the major adjustment procedure using the adjuster at the parking brake drum.

After installing new parking brake shoes and/or new rear brake disc/drums, make sure you to drive the vehicle for "break-in" ([see page 19A-39](#)).

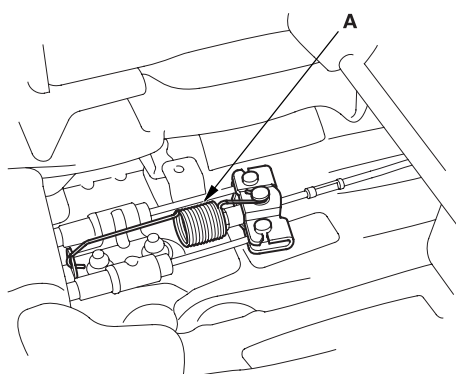


## Minor adjustment

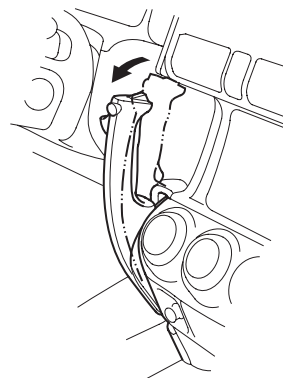
1. Raise the rear of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported.
2. Release the parking brake lever fully. Move the driver's seat (RHD: assistant seat) all the way forward.
3. Pull back the carpet under the seat. Remove the screw and bolt for the parking brake equalizer cover (A).



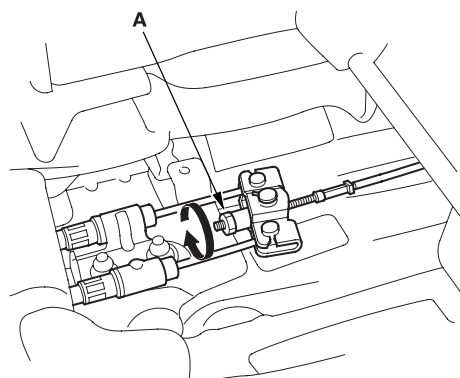
4. Remove the return spring (A).



5. Pull the parking brake lever one click.



6. Tighten the adjusting nut (A) until the parking brakes drag slightly when the rear wheels are turned.



7. Release the parking brake lever fully, and check that the parking brakes do not drag when the rear wheels are turned. Readjust if necessary.
8. Reinstall the return spring and the parking brake equalizer cover.
9. Make sure the parking brakes are fully applied when the parking brake lever is pulled all the way.

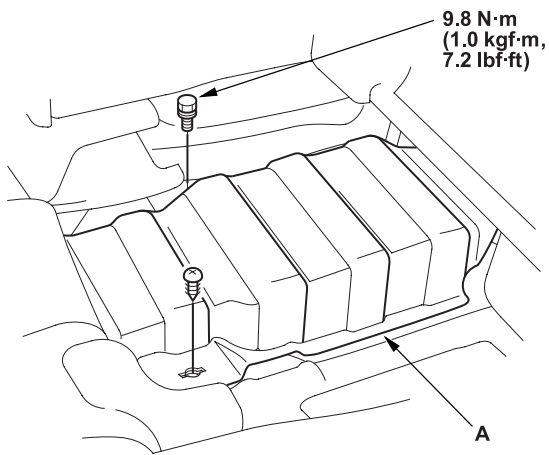
(cont'd)

### Parking Brake Check and Adjustment (cont'd)

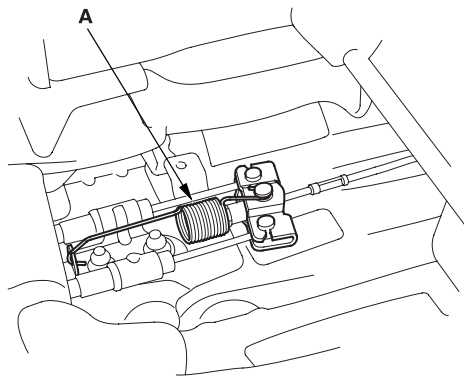
#### Check (cont'd)

Major adjustment (to be done when replacing brake shoes and after lining surface break-in)

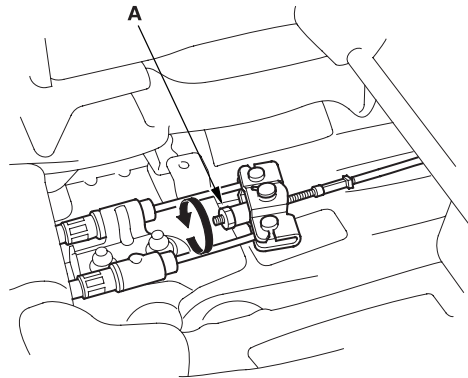
1. Raise the rear of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported.
2. Release the parking brake lever fully. Move the driver's seat (RHD: assistant seat) all the way forward.
3. Pull back the carpet on the floor at the under the seat. Remove the screw and bolt for the parking brake equalizer cover (A).



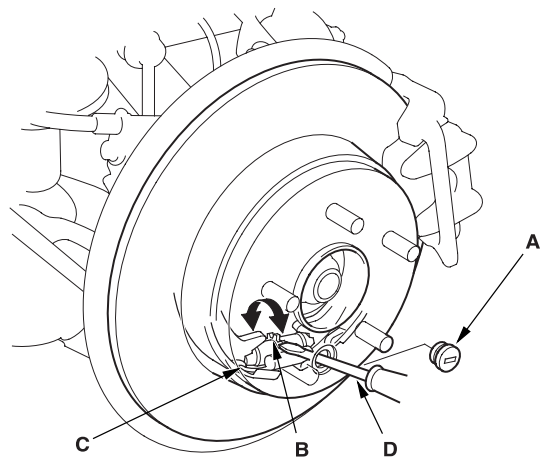
4. Remove the return spring (A).



5. Back off the adjusting nut (A) in the equalizer.



6. Remove the rear wheels.
7. Remove the access plug (A).



8. Turn the ratchet teeth (B) on the adjuster assembly (C) with a flat-tip screwdriver (D) until the shoes lock against the drum. Then back off eight clicks, and install the access plug.
9. Do the minor adjustment procedure.
10. Install the rear wheels.

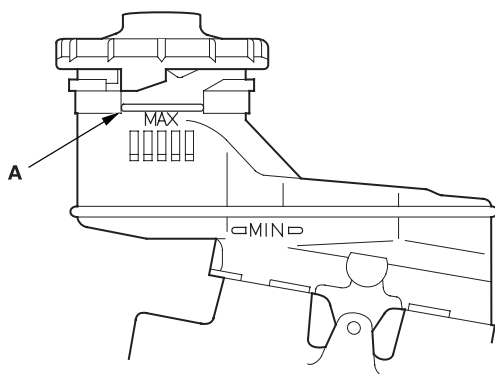


## Brake System Bleeding

### NOTE:

- Do not spill brake fluid on the vehicle; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- The reservoir on the master cylinder must be at the MAX (upper) level mark at the start of the bleeding procedure and checked after bleeding each brake caliper. Add fluid as required.
- Do not reuse the drained fluid.
- Always use Genuine Honda DOT 3 brake fluid. Non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and shorten the life of the system.
- Make sure no dirt or other foreign matter is allowed to contaminate the brake fluid.

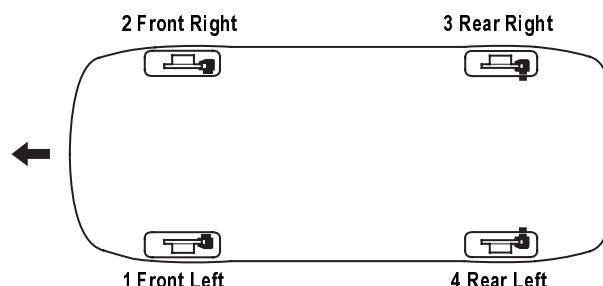
1. Make sure the brake fluid level in the reservoir is at the MAX (upper) level line (A).



2. Slide a piece of clear plastic hose over the first bleed screw, and submerge the other end in a container of new brake fluid.
3. Have someone slowly pump the brake pedal several times, then apply steady pressure.
4. Loosen the left-front brake bleed screw to allow air to escape from the system. Then tighten the bleed screw securely.

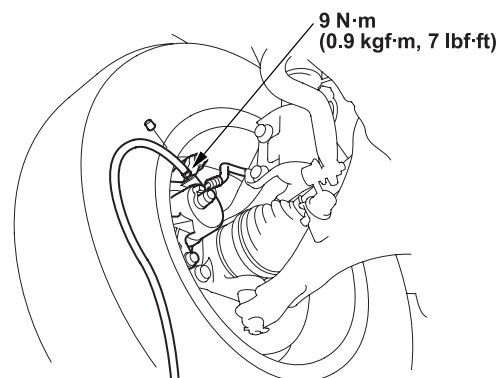
5. Repeat the procedure for each wheel in the sequence shown below until air bubbles no longer appear in the fluid.

### BLEEDING SEQUENCE:

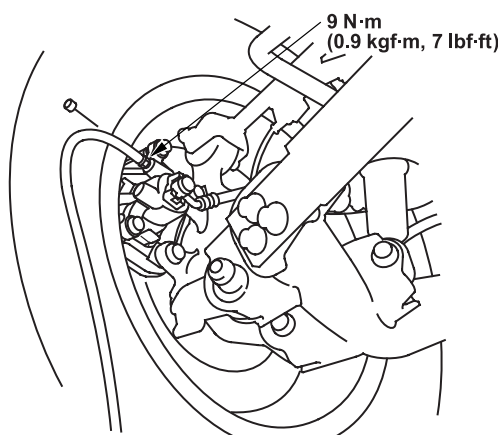


6. Refill the master cylinder reservoir to the MAX (upper) level line.

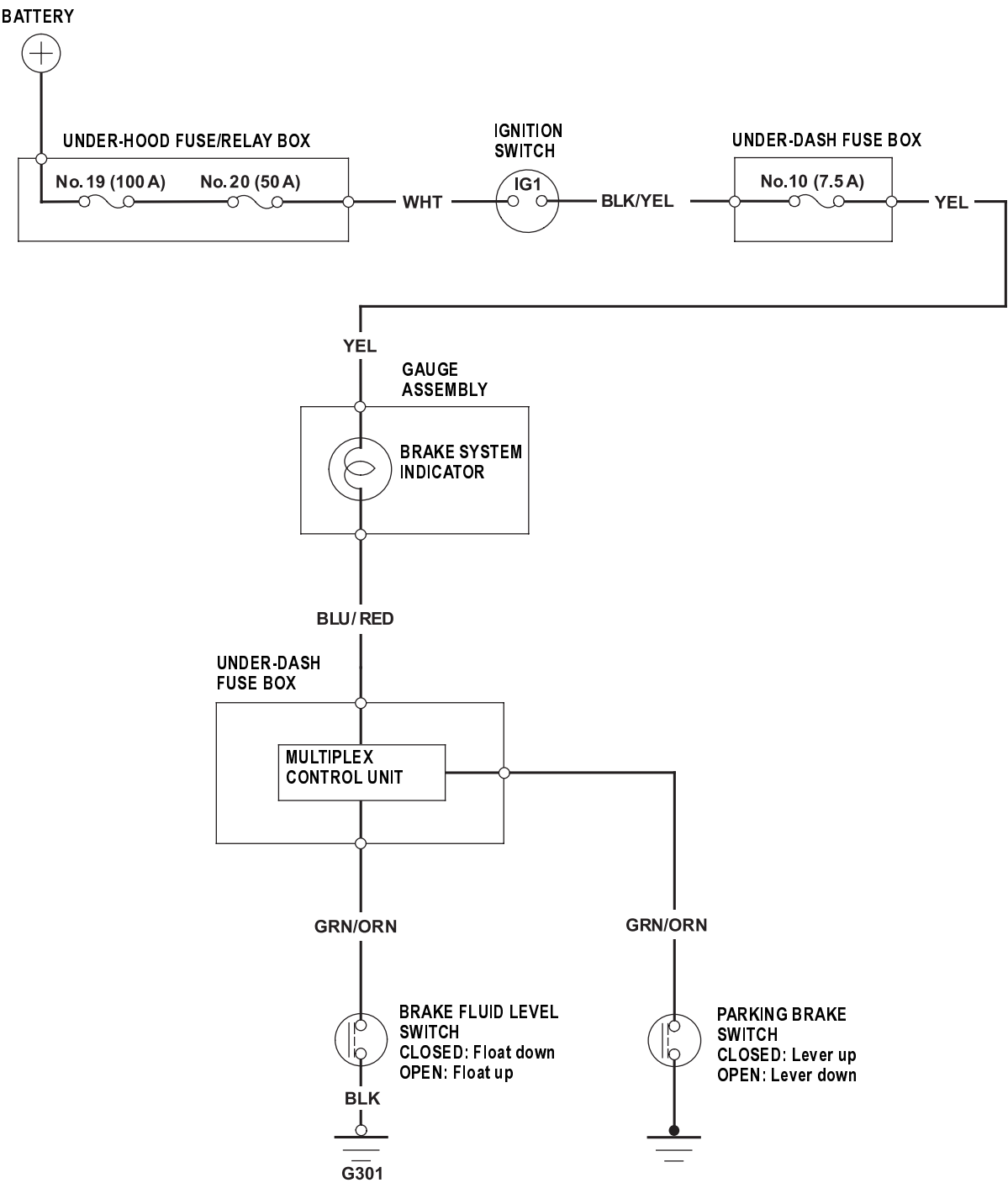
### FRONT BRAKE:



### REAR BRAKE:



Brake System Indicator Circuit Diagram

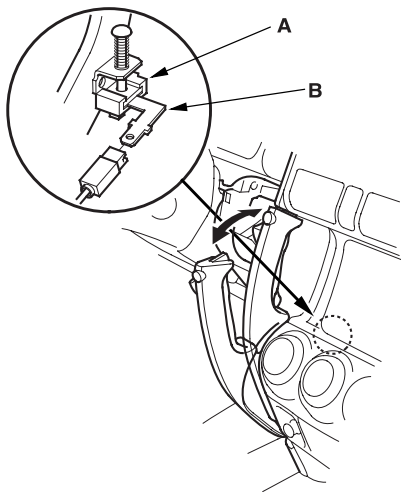






## Parking Brake Switch Test

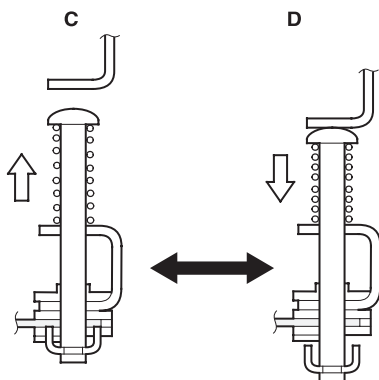
1. Remove the driver's under panel ([see page 20-89](#)).
2. Disconnect the connector from the parking brake switch (A).



3. Check for continuity between the switch terminal (B) and body ground:
  - With the parking brake lever pulled (C), there should be continuity.
  - With the parking brake lever released (D), there should be no continuity.

### NOTE:

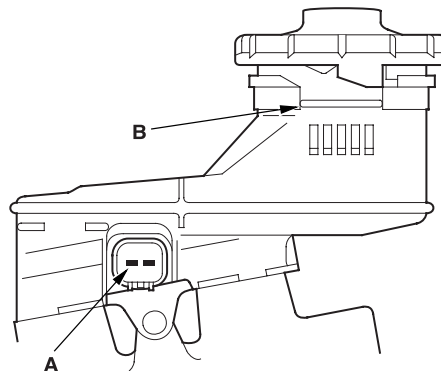
- If both the ABS indicator and the brake system indicator come on at the same time, check the ABS ([see page 19B-3](#)).
- If the parking brake switch/brake fluid level switch is OK, but the brake system indicator does not work, check the ABS.



## Brake Fluid Level Switch Test

Check for continuity between the terminals (A) with the float in the down position and the up position.

- Remove the brake fluid completely from the reservoir. With the float down, there should be continuity.
- Fill the reservoir with brake fluid to MAX (upper) level (B). With the float up, there should be no continuity.



### Front Brake Pads Inspection and Replacement



#### CAUTION



Frequent inhalation of brake pad dust, regardless of material composition, could be hazardous to your health.

- Avoid breathing dust particles.
- Never use an air hose or brush to clean brake assemblies. Use an appropriate vacuum cleaner.

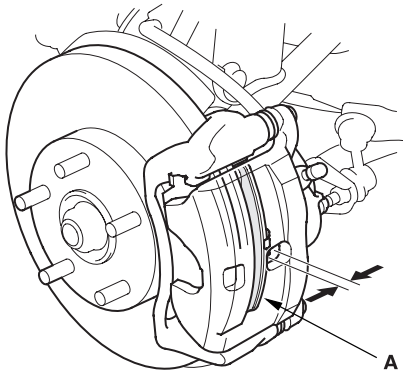
#### Inspection

1. Raise the front of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the front wheels.
2. Check the thickness of the inner pad (A) and outer pad (B). Do not include the thickness of the brake pad backing plate.

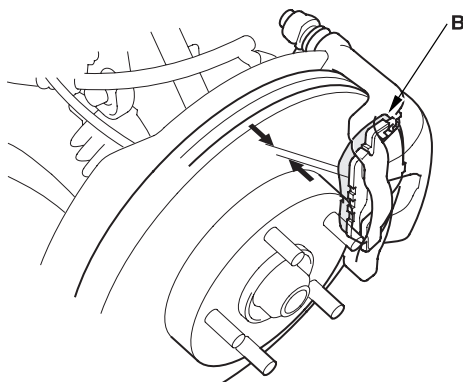
#### Brake pad thickness:

Standard: 10.5 - 11.5 mm (0.41 - 0.45 in.)  
Service Limit: 1.6 mm (0.06 in.)

Inner pad:



Outer pad:

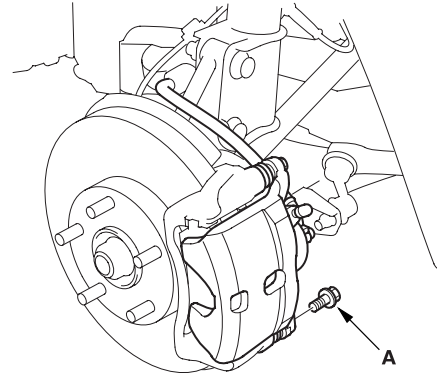


3. If the brake pad thickness is less than the service limit, replace all the pads as a set.

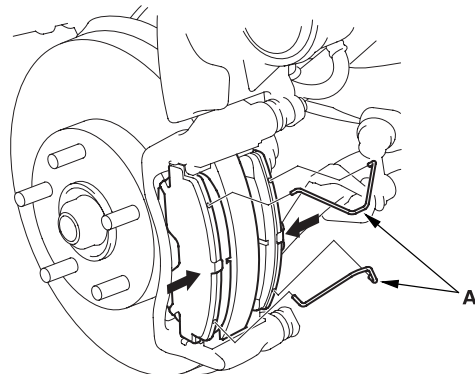
#### Replacement (15 inch Brake Disc Type)

1. Remove the flange bolt (A).

NOTE: The pad springs are installed on the pads to prevent brake drag. Be careful when pivoting up the caliper body fully, or the spring could be flipped out of the position.

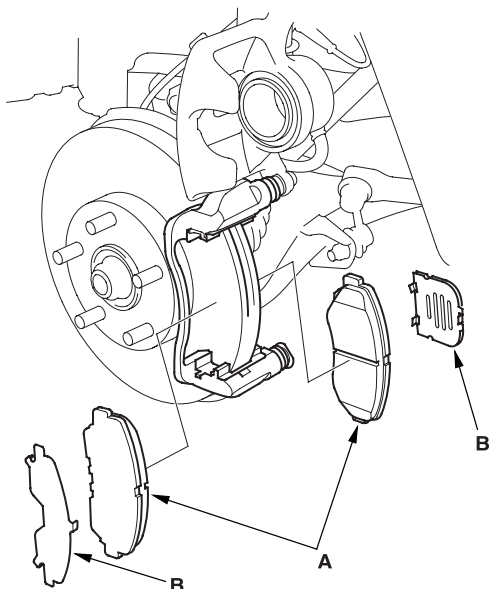


2. Pivot the caliper body slightly so the pads do not come out of position, and hold the pads on both sides firmly with your fingers. Remove the pad springs (A) from the pads.

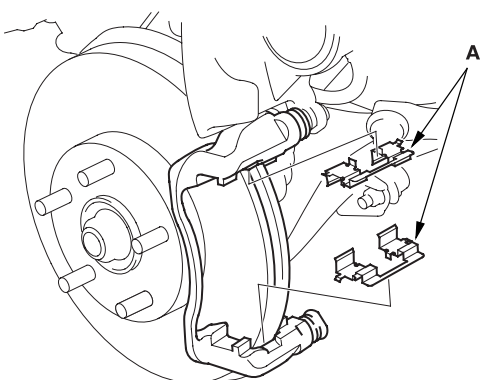




3. Pivot up the caliper up out of the way and remove the pads (A).



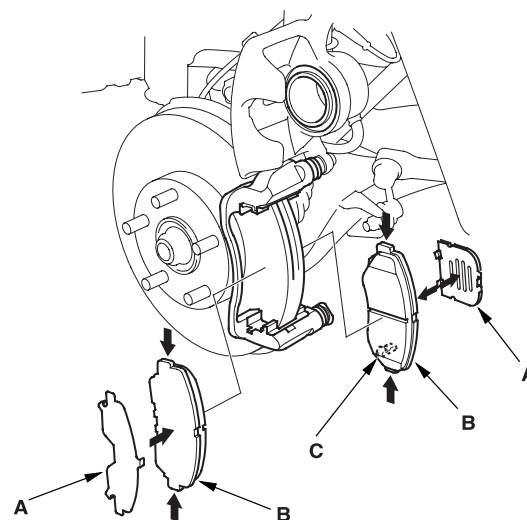
4. Remove the pad shims (B).
5. Check the hose and pin boots for damage and deterioration.
6. Remove the pad retainers (A).



7. Clean the caliper thoroughly; remove any rust, and check for grooves and cracks.
8. Check the brake disc for damage and cracks.
9. Install the pad retainers.

10. Apply Dow Corning Molykote M77 grease to the back of the pads (B), and the other areas indicated by the arrows.

Wipe excess grease off the shim. Contaminated brake discs and pads reduce stopping ability. Keep grease off the discs and pads.



11. Install the brake pads and pad shim correctly. Install the pads with the wear indicators (C) on the inside.

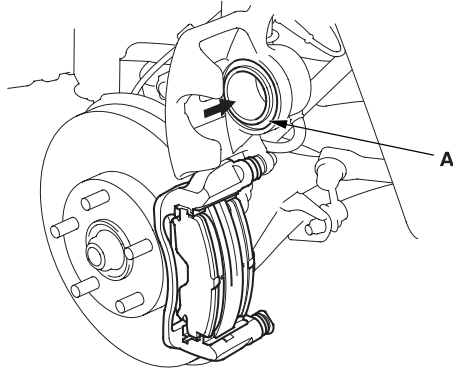
If you are reusing the pads, always reinstall the brake pads in their original positions to prevent a momentary loss of braking efficiency.

(cont'd)

### Front Brake Pads Inspection and Replacement (cont'd)

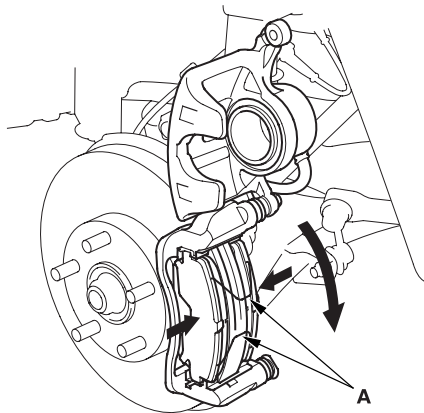
#### Replacement (15 inch Brake Disc Type) (cont'd)

- 12.** Push in the piston (A) so the caliper will fit over the pads. Check the brake fluid level. The brake fluid may overflow if the reservoir is too full. Make sure the piston boot is in position to prevent damaging it when pivoting the caliper down.

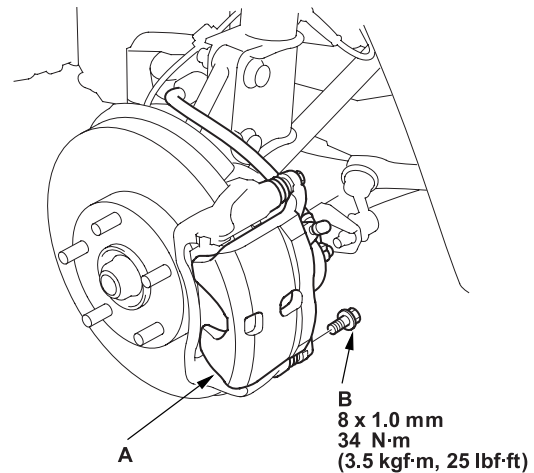


- 13.** Hold the pads on both sides firmly with your fingers, and install the new pad springs (A) on the pads. Holding the pads, set the caliper over the pads by pivoting it down slowly.

NOTE: Insert the pad spring ends into the pad installation holes securely.



- 14.** Pivot the caliper (A) down into position. Be careful not to damage the pin boots.



- 15.** Install the flange bolt (B), and tighten it to the specified torque.

- 16.** Press the brake pedal several times to make sure the brake works, then test-drive.

NOTE: Engagement of the brake may require a greater pedal stroke immediately after the brake pads have been replaced as a set. Several applications of the brake pedal will restore the normal pedal stroke.

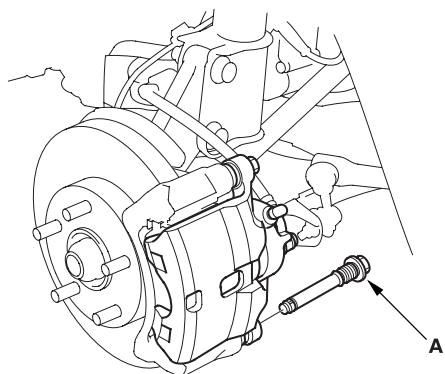
- 17.** After installation, check for leaks at hose and line joints or connections, and retighten if necessary.



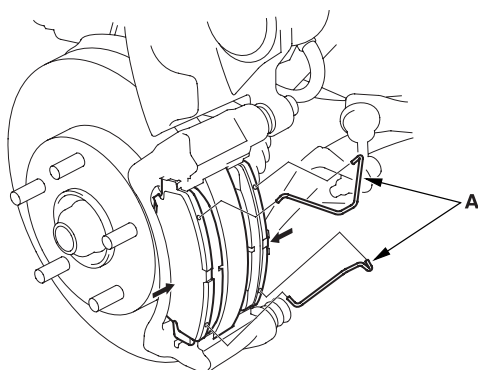
## Replacement (14 inch Brake Disc Type)

1. Remove the pin bolt (A).

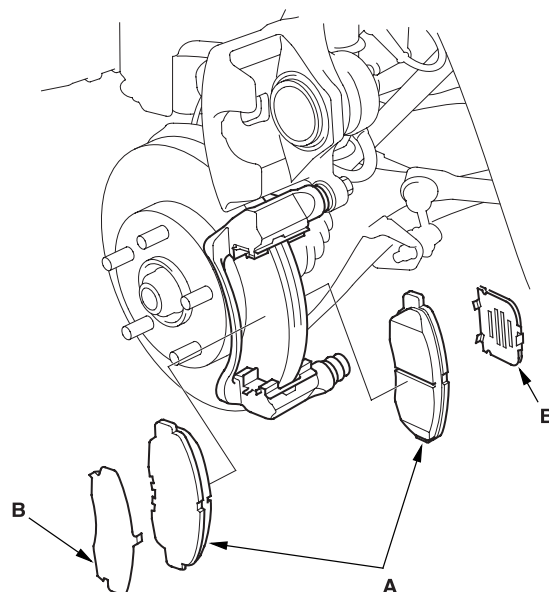
NOTE: The pad springs are installed on the pads to prevent brake drag. Be careful when pivoting up the caliper body fully, or the spring could be flipped out of the position.



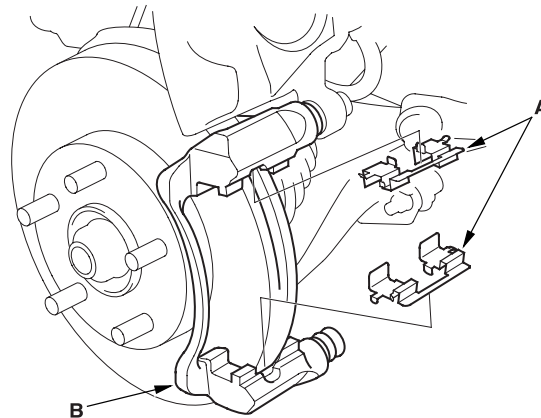
2. Pivot the caliper body slightly so the pads do not come out of position, and hold the pads on both sides firmly with your fingers. Remove the pad spring (A) from the pads.



3. Pivot up the caliper up out of the way and remove the pad (A).



4. Remove the pad shims (B).
5. Check the hose and pin boots for damage and deterioration.
6. Remove the pad retainers (A).



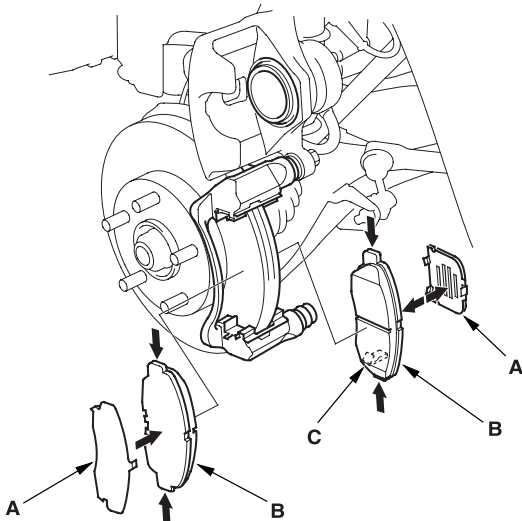
7. Clean the caliper thoroughly; remove any rust, and check for grooves and cracks.
8. Check the brake disc for damage and cracks.
9. Install the pad retainers.

(cont'd)

### Front Brake Pads Inspection and Replacement (cont'd)

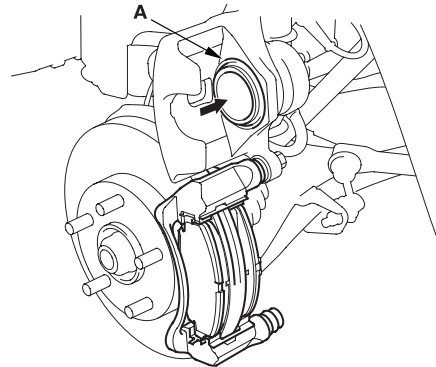
#### Replacement (14 inch Brake Disc Type) (cont'd)

- 10.** Apply Dow Corning Molykote M77 grease to the back of the pads (B), and the other areas indicated by the arrows. Wipe excess grease off the shim. Contaminated brake discs and pads reduce stopping ability. Keep grease off the discs and pads.



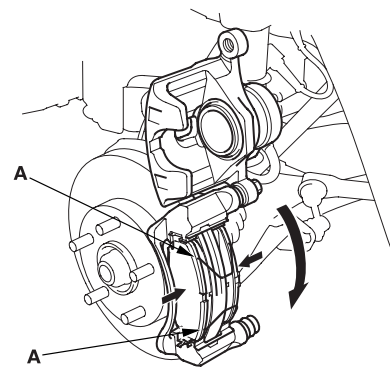
- 11.** Install the brake pads and pad shim correctly. Install the pads with the wear indicators (C) on the inside. If you are reusing the pads, always reinstall the brake pads in their original positions to prevent a momentary loss of braking efficiency.

- 12.** Push in the piston (A) so the caliper will fit over the pads. Check the brake fluid level. The brake fluid may overflow if the reservoir is too full. Make sure the piston boot is in position to prevent damaging it when pivoting the caliper down.



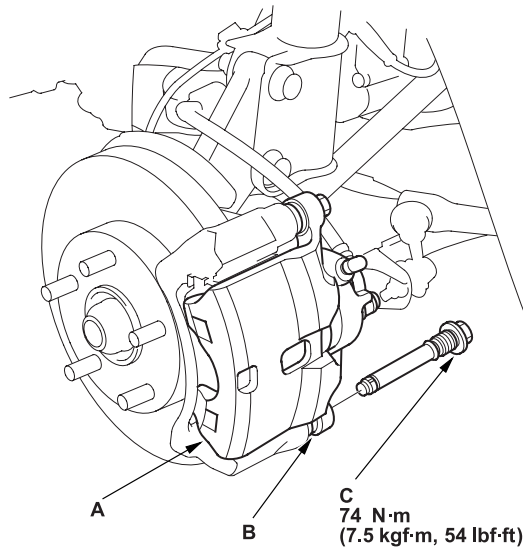
- 13.** Hold the pads on both sides firmly with your fingers, and install the new pad springs (A) on the pads. Holding the pads, set the caliper body over the pads by pivoting it down slowly.

**NOTE:** Insert the pad spring ends into the pad installation holes securely.





14. Pivot the cliper (A) down into position. Be careful not to damage the pin boot (B), and check for the pin boot are not deformed or removed.

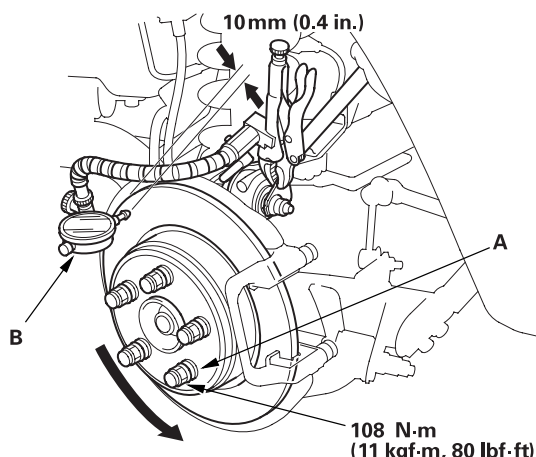


15. Install the pin bolt (C), and tighten it to the specified torque.
16. Press the brake pedal several times to make sure the brake works, then test-drive.  
NOTE: Engagement of the brake may require a greater pedal stroke immediately after the brake pads have been replaced as a set. Several applications of the brake pedal will restore the normal pedal stroke.
17. After installation, check for leaks at hose and line joints or connections, and retighten if necessary.

### Front Brake Disc Inspection

#### Runout

1. Raise the front of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the front wheels.
2. Remove the brake pads (see page 19A-12).
3. Inspect the disc surface for damage and cracks. Clean the disc thoroughly, and remove all rust.
4. Install suitable flat washers (A) and wheel nuts, and tighten the nuts to the specified torque to hold the brake disc securely against the hub.



5. Set up the dial gauge against the brake disc as shown, and measure the runout at 10 mm (0.4 in.) from the outer edge of the disc.

#### Brake Disc Runout:

**Service Limit:** 0.10 mm (0.004 in.)

6. If the disc is beyond the service limit, refinish the brake disc.

**Max. Refinish Limit:** 21.0mm (0.83 in.)

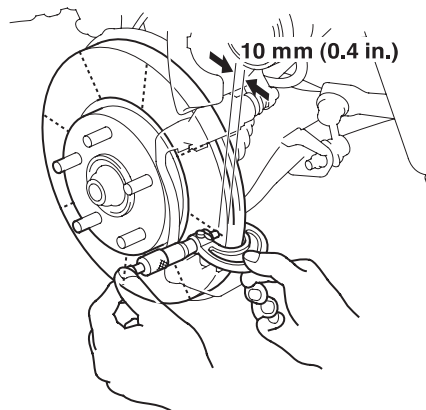
#### NOTE:

- If the brake disc is beyond the service limit for refinishing, replace it (see page 18-12).
- A new disc should be refinished if its runout is greater than 0.10 mm (0.004 in.).

#### Thickness and Parallelism

1. Raise the front of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the front wheels.
2. Remove the brake pads (see page 19A-12).
3. Using a micrometer, measure disc thickness at eight points, approximately 45° apart and 10 mm (0.4 in.) in from the outer edge of the disc.

NOTE: This is the maximum allowable difference between the thickness measurements.



#### Brake Disc Thickness:

**Standard:** 23.0 mm(0.91 in.)

**Max. Refinishing Limit:** 21.0 mm (0.83 in.)

**Brake Disc Parallelism:** 0.015 mm (0.0006 in.) max.

4. If the smallest measurement is less than the max. Refinishing limit, replace the brake disc (see page 18-12).
5. If the disc is beyond the service limit for parallelism, refinish the brake disc with an on-car brake lathe. The Kwik-Lathe produced by Kwik-way Manufacturing Co. and the "Front Brake Disc Lathe" offered by Snap-on Tools Co. are approved for this operation.





### Front Brake Caliper Overhaul



#### CAUTION



Frequent inhalation of brake pad dust, regardless of material composition, could be hazardous to your health.

- Avoid breathing dust particles.
- Never use an air hose or brush to clean brake assemblies. Use an appropriate vacuum cleaner.

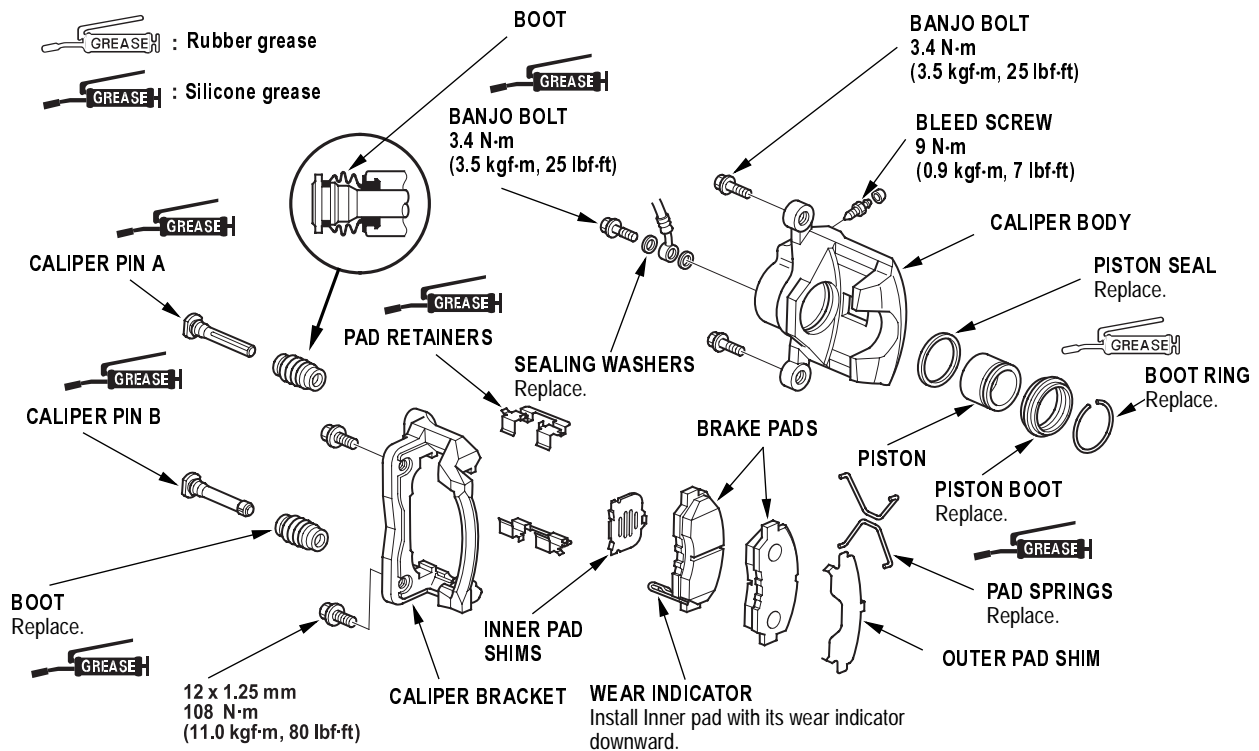
Remove, disassemble, inspect, reassemble, and install the caliper, and note these items:

- Do not spill brake fluid on the vehicle; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid gets on the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- To prevent dripping, cover disconnected hose joints with rags or shop towels.
- Clean all parts in brake fluid and air dry; blow out all passages with compressed air.
- Before reassembling, check that all parts are free of dust and other foreign particles.
- Replace parts with new ones as specified in the illustration.
- Make sure no dirt or other foreign matter is allowed to contaminate the brake fluid.
- When reusing pads, always reinstall them in their original positions to prevent loss of braking efficiency.
- Do not reuse drained brake fluid.
- Always use Genuine Honda DOT 3 brake fluid. Non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and shorten the life of the system.
- Do not mix different brands of brake fluid as they may not be compatible.
- Coat the piston, piston seal groove, and caliper bore with clean brake fluid.
- Make sure no grease or oil gets on the brake discs or pads.
- Replace all rubber parts with new ones whenever disassembled.
- After installing the caliper, check the brake hose and line for leaks, interference, and twisting.

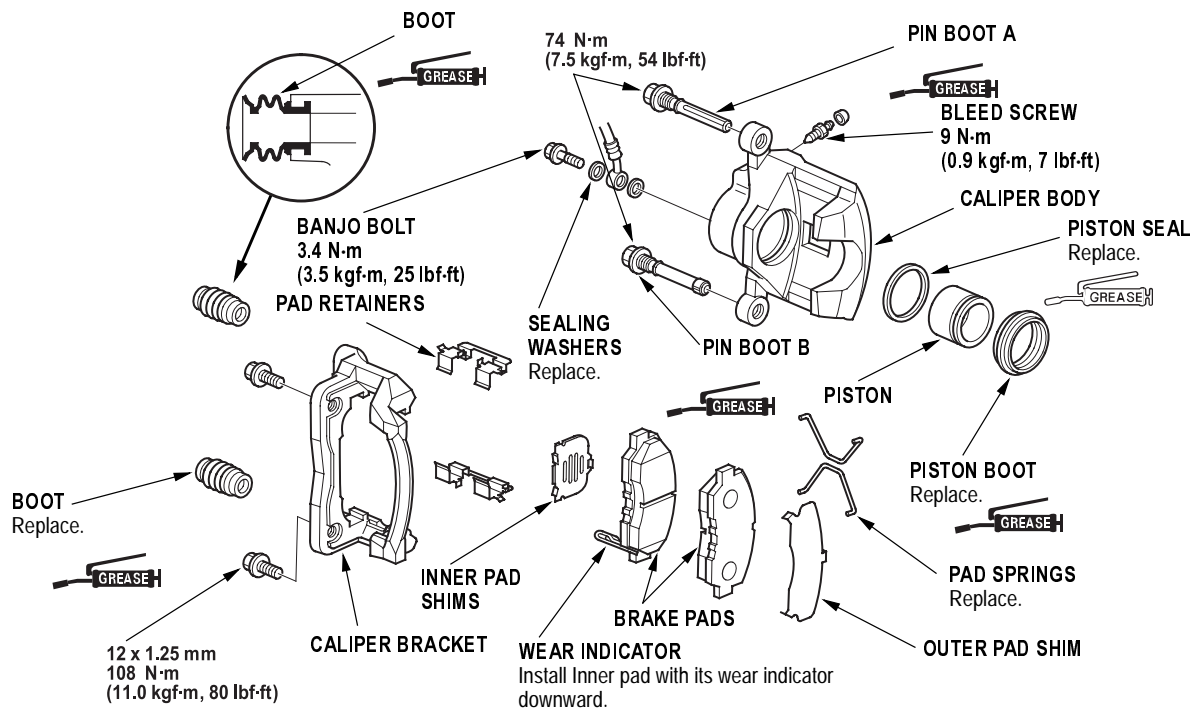
(cont'd)

### Front Brake Caliper Overhaul (cont'd)

15 inch Brake Disc Type (AD57-15):



14 inch Brake Disc Type (AD57-14):

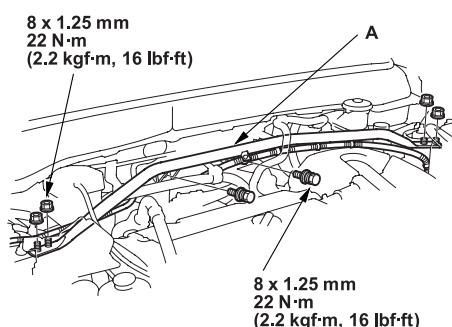




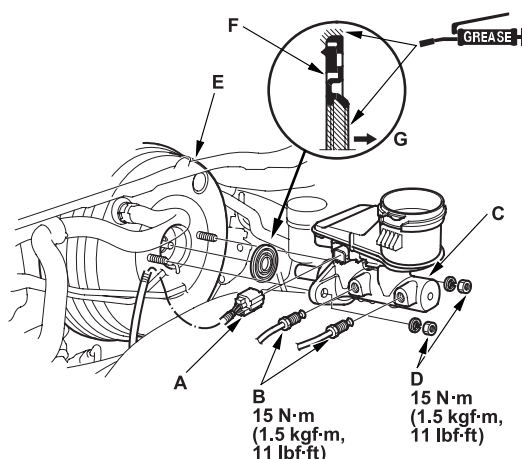
## Master Cylinder Replacement

**NOTE:** Do not spill brake fluid on the vehicle; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid does contact the paint, wash it off immediately with water.

1. Release the engine wire harness clips on the strut brace (A), and remove the strut brace. With M/T: Remove the clutch reservoir bracket from the strut brace, and move it aside. Do not disconnect the clutch hose from the reservoir.



2. Remove the reservoir cap and brake fluid from the master cylinder reservoir.
3. Remove the brake fluid level sensor connector (A).



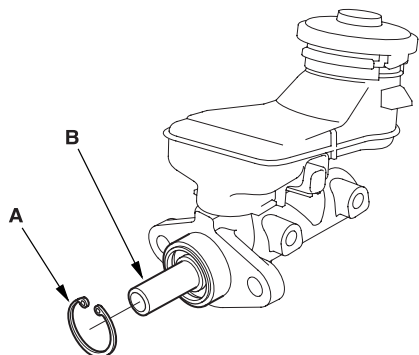
4. Disconnect the brake lines (B) from the master cylinder (C). To prevent spills, cover the hose joints with rags or shop towels.
5. Remove the master cylinder mounting nuts (D) and washers.
6. Remove the master cylinder from the brake booster (E). Be careful not to bend or damage the brake lines when removing the master cylinder.
7. Remove the rod seal (F) from the master cylinder.

8. Install the master cylinder in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

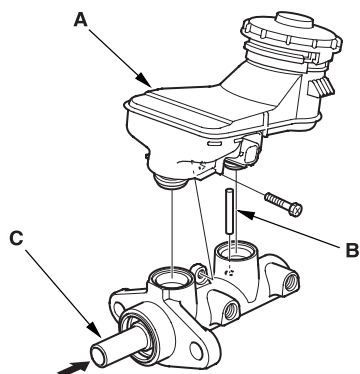
- Replace all the rubber parts with new ones whenever the master cylinder is removed.
- Check the pushrod clearance before installing the master cylinder, and adjust it if necessary (see page 19A-26).
- Use a new rod seal on reassembly.
- Coat the inner bore lip and outer circumference of the new rod seal with the recommended seal grease in the master cylinder set.
- Install the rod seal onto the master cylinder with its grooved side (G) toward the master cylinder.
- Check the brake pedal height and free play after installing the master cylinder, and adjust it if necessary (see page 19A-5).

### Master Cylinder Disassembly

1. Remove the rod seal from the master cylinder.
2. Remove the circlip (A) while pushing in the secondary piston (B).

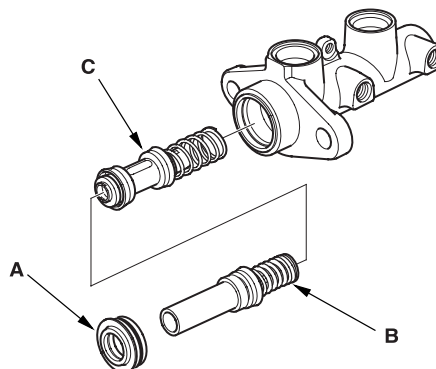


3. Remove the reservoir (A).

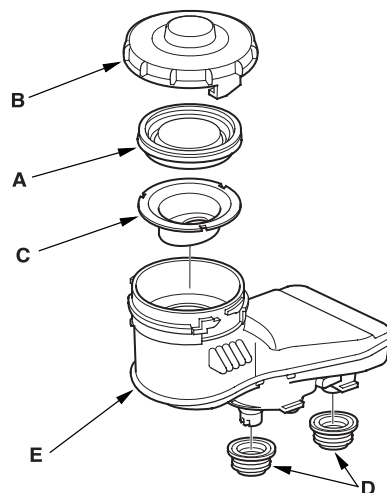


4. On vehicle's with ABS; remove the stop pin (B) while pushing in the secondary piston (C).

5. Remove the piston guide (A), secondary piston (B) and primary piston (C).



6. Remove the reservoir seal (A) from the reservoir cap (B).



7. Remove the strainer(C) and grommets (D) from the reservoir (E).

NOTE: When reservoir and master cylinder body are separated, replace the grommets with new ones.

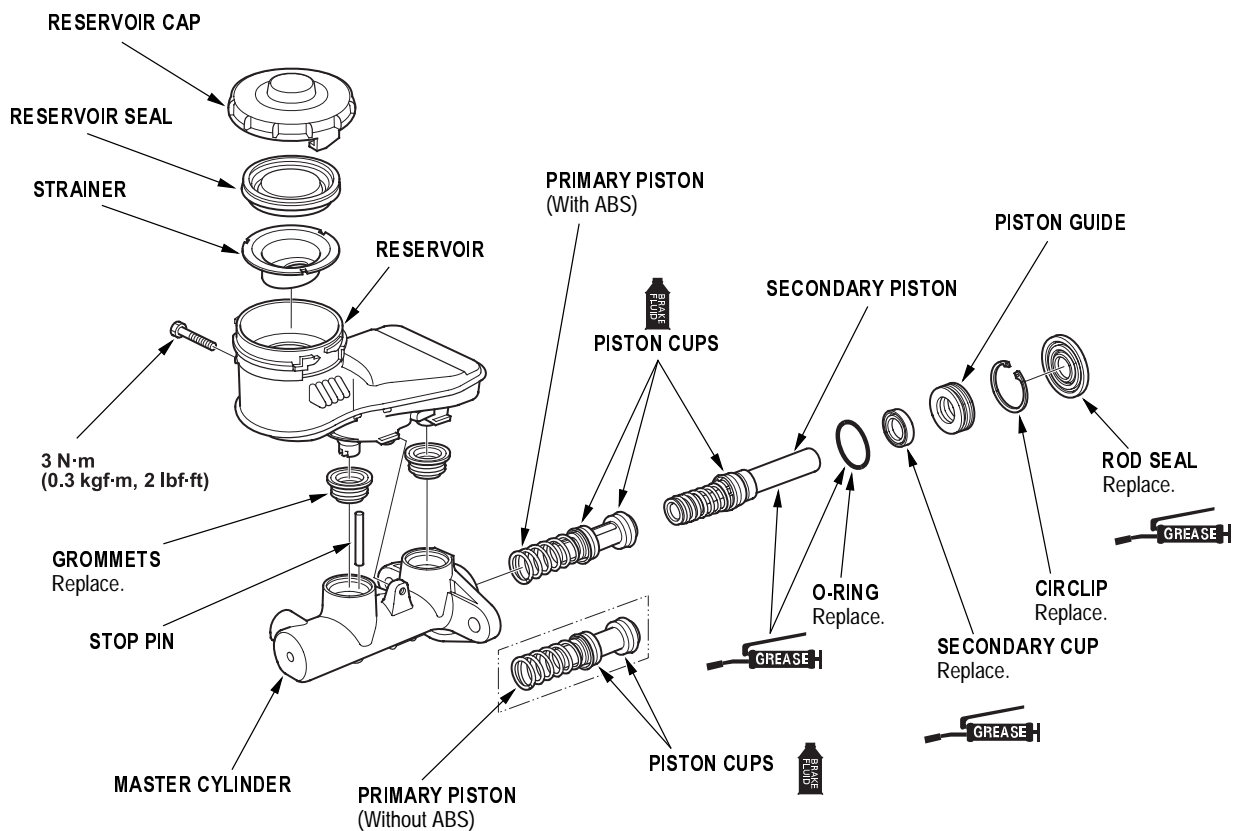


## Master Cylinder Reassembly

### NOTE:

- If replacing the primary piston, secondary piston, or master cylinder body, check and adjust the pushrod clearance ([see page 19A-26](#)) before installing the master cylinder.
- Clean all the parts in brake fluid and air dry; blow out all passages with compressed air.
- Before reassembling, check that all the parts are free of dust and other foreign particles.
- Replace parts with new ones whenever specified to do so.
- Use only genuine DOT3 Honda brake fluid. Non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and shorten the life of the system.
- Do not mix different brands of brake fluid as they may not be compatible.
- Replace the master cylinder if the bore is damaged or worn. Do not hone or attempt to refinish the bore.
- Coat the piston cups, pressure cup and master cylinder bore with clean brake fluid.
- Use recommended greases in the master cylinder seal set.

1. Install the reservoir seal in the groove of the reservoir cap.
2. Install the strainer, assembled reservoir cap, and new grommets on the reservoir.



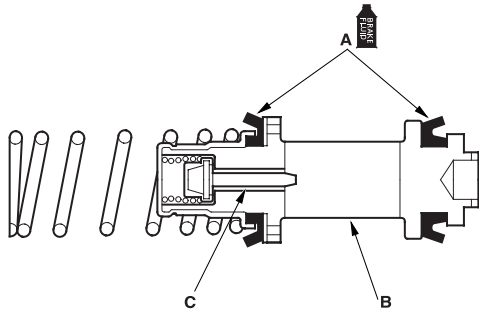
(cont'd)

### Master Cylinder Reassembly (cont'd)

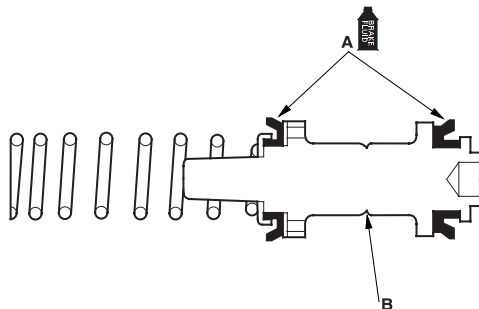
- Coat the cups (A) of a new primary piston (B) with clean brake fluid, then install the primary piston into the master cylinder.

NOTE: On vehicle's with ABS, check that the valve stem (C) moves smoothly by lightly pushing it through the slot in the piston. Install the piston so the slot in the piston aligns with the stop pin hole in the master cylinder.

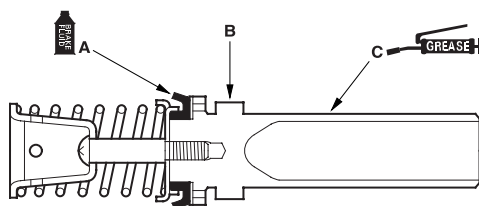
With ABS



Without ABS

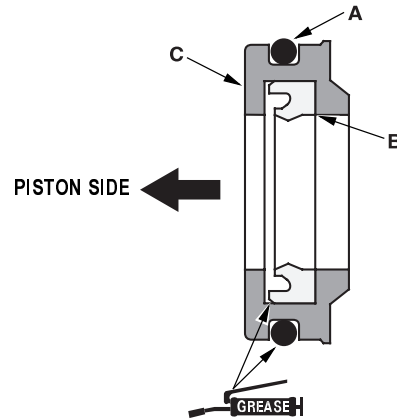


- Coat the cup (A) of a new secondary piston (B) with clean brake fluid.



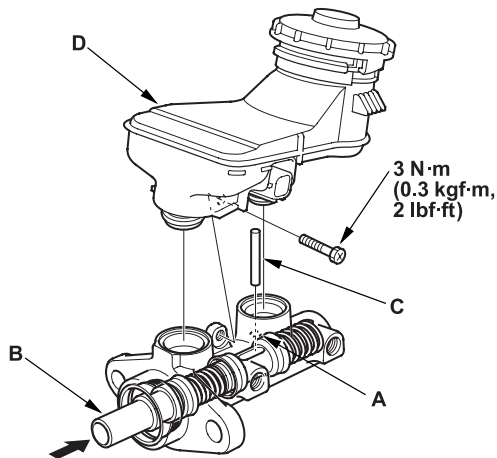
- Apply recommended seal grease in the master cylinder seal set to the piston surface (C), then install the secondary piston into the master cylinder.

- Apply recommended seal grease in the master cylinder seal set to a new O-ring (A) and the secondary cup (B) in a new piston guide (C), then install the piston guide into the master cylinder. Note the direction.

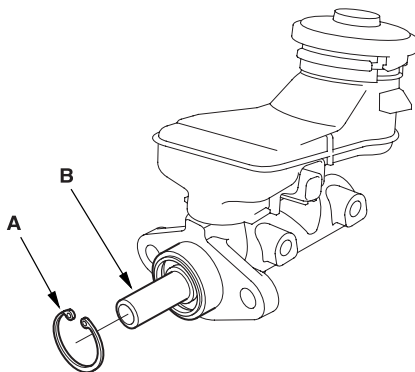




7. On vehicle's with ABS; align the slot in the primary piston with the stop pin hole (A) by pushing the secondary piston (B) in, and install the stop pin (C).



8. Install the reservoir (D) to the master cylinder.
9. Install the new circlip (A) while pushing in the secondary piston (B). Be careful not to scratched damage on the piston surface with the circlip edges.



10. Adjust the pushrod clearance ([see page 19A-26](#)).

11. Apply recommended seal grease in the master cylinder seal set to a new rod seal, and install the seal onto the master cylinder ([see page 19A-21](#)).

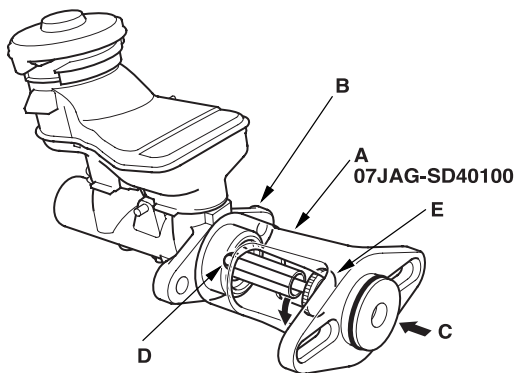
### Brake Booster Pushrod Clearance Adjustment

#### Special Tools Required

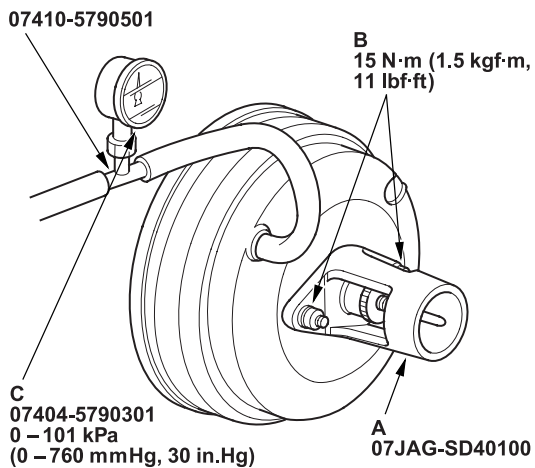
- Pushrod adjustment gauge 07JAG-SD40100
- Vacuum gauge 07404-5790301
- Tube joint adapter 07410-5790501

NOTE: Master cylinder pushrod-to-piston clearance must be checked and adjustments made, if necessary, before installing the master cylinder.

1. Set the special tool (A) on the master cylinder body (B), push in the center shaft (C) until the top (D) of it contacts the end of the secondary piston (E) by turning the adjusting nut (F).



2. Without disturbing the center shaft's position, install the special tool (A) backwards on the booster.

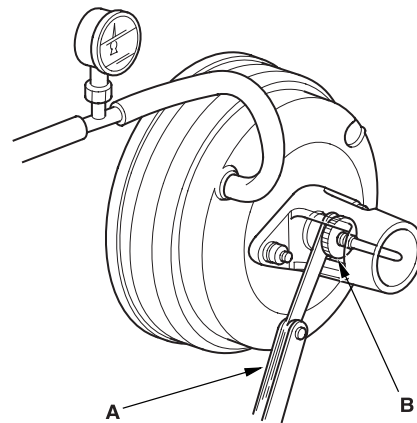


3. Install the master cylinder nuts (B), and tighten to the specified torque.
4. Connect the booster in-line with a vacuum gauge (C) 0 - 101 kPa (0 - 760 mmHg, 30 in.Hg) to the booster's engine vacuum supply, and maintain an engine speed that will deliver 66 kPa (500 mmHg, 20 in.Hg) vacuum.

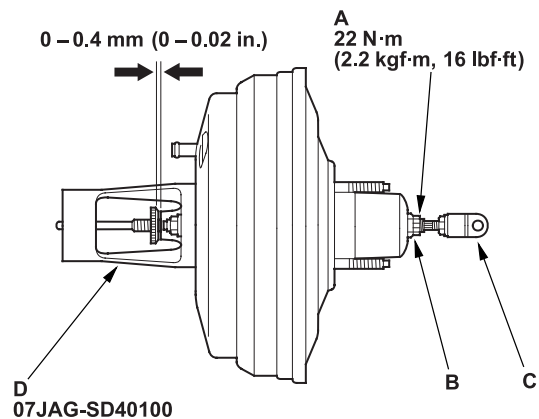
5. With a feeler gauge (A), measure the clearance between the gauge body and the adjusting nut (B) as shown.

If the clearance between the gauge body and adjusting nut is 0.4 mm (0.02 in.), the pushrod-to-piston clearance is 0 mm. However, if the clearance between the gauge body, and adjusting nut is 0 mm, the pushrod-to-piston clearance is 0.4 mm (0.02 in.) or more. Therefore it must be adjusted and rechecked.

**Clearance: 0 - 0.4 mm (0 - 0.02 in.)**



6. If the clearance is incorrect, loosen the star locknut (A) and turn the adjuster (B) in or out to adjust.
  - Adjust the clearance while the specified vacuum is applied to the booster.
  - Hold the clevis (C) while adjusting.

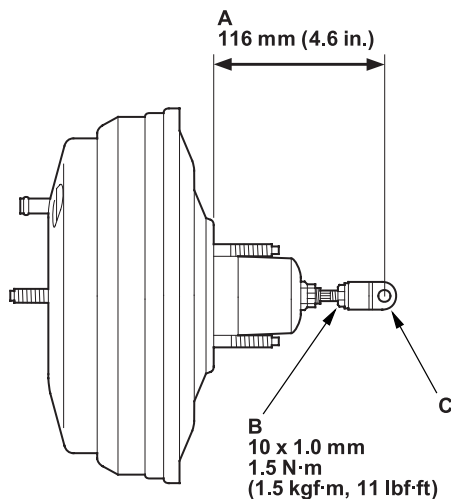


7. Tighten the star locknut securely.
8. Remove the special tool (D).





9. Check the pushrod length (A) as shown if the booster is removed. If the length is incorrect, loosen the pushrod locknut (B), and turn the clevis (C) in or out to adjust.



10. Install the master cylinder (see page 19A-21).

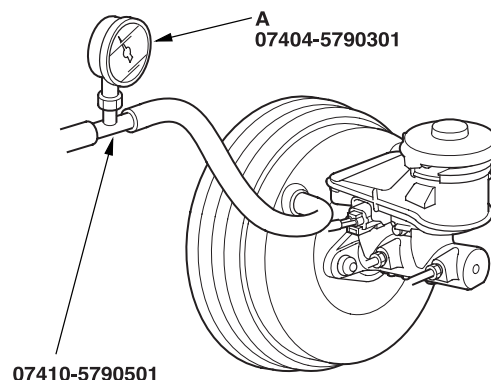
## Brake Booster Inspection

### Special Tools Required

- Vacuum gauge 07404-5790301
- Pressure gauge 07406-5790201
- Attachment 07410-5790101
- Tube joint adapter 07410-5790501
- Pressure gauge joint pipe 07510-6340101

### Leak Test

1. Install the vacuum gauge (A) between the brake booster and check valve.



2. Start the engine, adjust the engine speed with the accelerator pedal so that the vacuum gauge readings show 40.0 - 66.7 kPa (300 - 500 mmHg, 11.8 - 19.7 in.Hg), then stop the engine.
3. Read the vacuum gauge.

If the vacuum reading decreases 2.7 kPa (20 mmHg, 0.8 in.Hg) or more after 30 seconds, check following parts for leaks.

- Check valve
- Vacuum hose, pipe
- Seals
- Brake booster
- Master cylinder

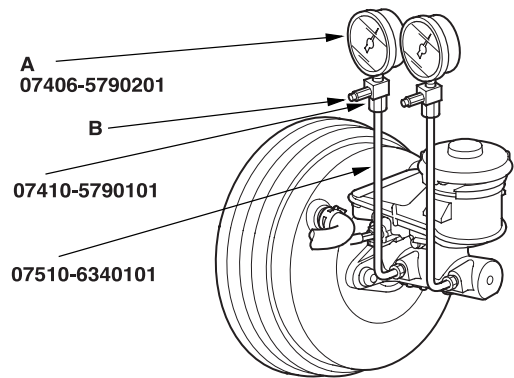
NOTE: Do not try to disassemble the brake booster. Replace the brake booster as an assembly with a new one.

(cont'd)

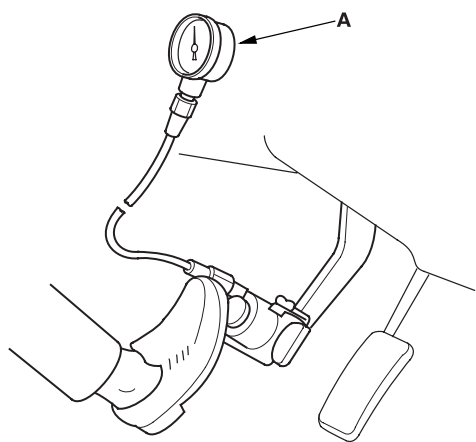
Brake Booster Inspection (cont'd)

Function Test

- 1. Install the vacuum gauge as same as the leak test.
- 2. Connect the oil pressure gauges (A) to the master cylinder using the attachments (special tools) as shown.
- 3. Bleed air through the valves (B).



- 4. Start the engine and let it idle.
- 5. Have an assistant depress the brake pedal with a 98 N (10 kgf, 22 lbf) and 294 N (30 kgf, 66 lbf) of pressure measuring with a commercially available pressure gauge (A).



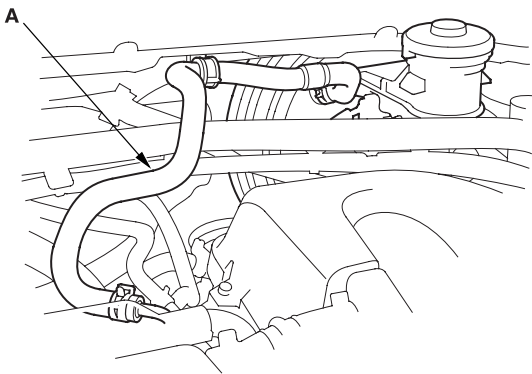
- 6. The following pressures should be observed at the pressure gauges in each vacuum.

Vacuum booster Vacuum kPa (mmHg, in.Hg)	Brake pedal pressure N (kgf, lbf)	Master cylinder oil pressure kPa (kgf/cm², psi)	
		With ABS	Without ABS
0 (0, 0)	98 (10, 22)	0 (0, 0)	
	294 (30, 66)	1,920 (19.6, 280)	
66.7 (500, 19.7)	98 (10, 22)	6,330 (64.5, 920)	
	294 (30, 66)	12,130 (123.7, 1,760)	

- 7. Inspect the master cylinder for leaks if the readings do not fall within the limits shown above.

Booster Check Valve Test

- 1. Disconnect the brake booster vacuum hose (check valve built in) (A) at the booster side.

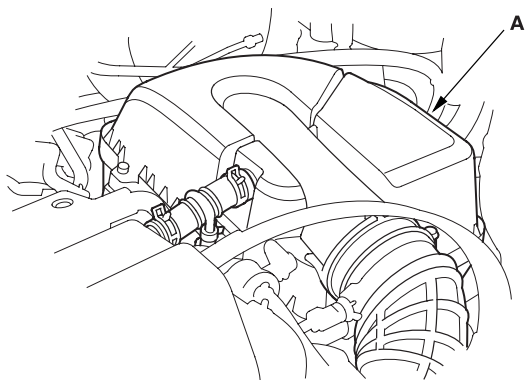


- 2. Start the engine, and let it idle. There should be vacuum available. If no vacuum is available, the check valve is not working properly. Replace the brake booster vacuum hose and check valve, and retest.

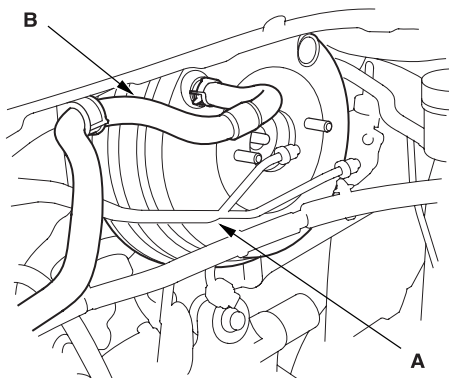


## Brake Booster Replacement

1. Remove the master cylinder (see page 19A-21).
2. Remove the air cleaner assembly (A).

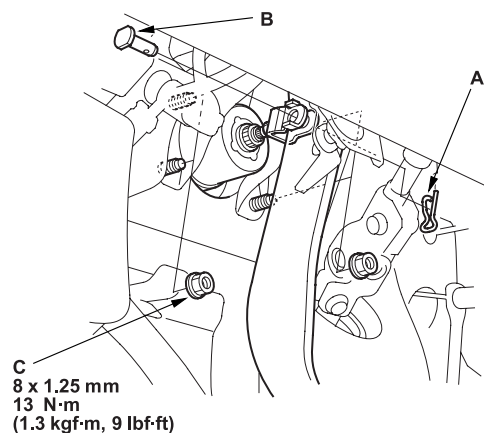


3. Remove the master cylinder brake lines (A) from the brake line clip.



4. Disconnect the vacuum hose (B) from the brake booster.

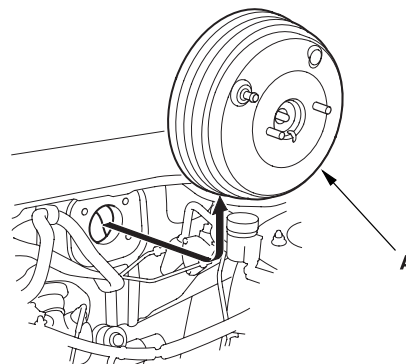
5. Remove the clip (A) and the joint pin (B), and disconnect the yoke from the brake pedal.



6. Remove the brake booster mounting nuts (C).
7. Remove the brake booster (A) from the engine compartment.

### NOTICE

- Be careful not to damage the booster surfaces and threads of the booster stud bolts.
- Be careful not to bent or damage the brake lines.



8. Install the brake booster in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Adjust the pushrod clearance before installing the brake booster (see page 19A-26).
  - Use a new clip whenever installing.
  - After installing the brake booster and master cylinder, fill the reservoir with new brake fluid, bleed the brake system (see page 19A-9), and adjust the brake pedal height and free play (see page 19A-5).

### Rear Brake Pads Inspection and Replacement



#### CAUTION



Frequent inhalation of brake pad dust, regardless of material composition, could be hazardous to your health.

- Avoid breathing dust particles.
- Never use an air hose or brush to clean brake assemblies. Use an appropriate vacuum cleaner.

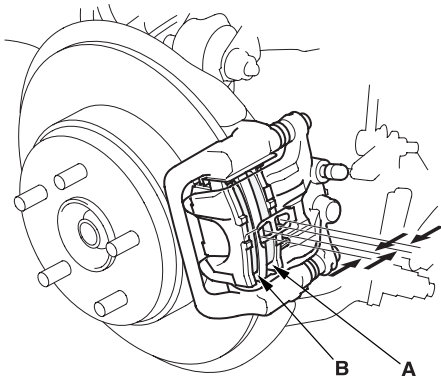
#### Inspection

1. Raise the rear of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the rear wheels.
2. Check the thickness of the inner (A) and outer pads (B). Do not include the thickness of the brake pad backing plate.

#### Brake pad thickness

**Standard:** 8.5 - 9.5 mm (0.33 - 0.37 in.)

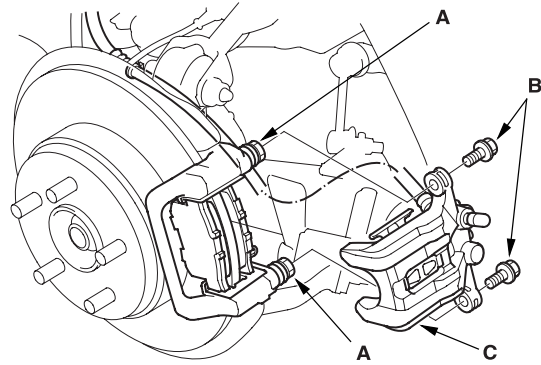
**Service limit:** 1.6 mm (0.06 in.)



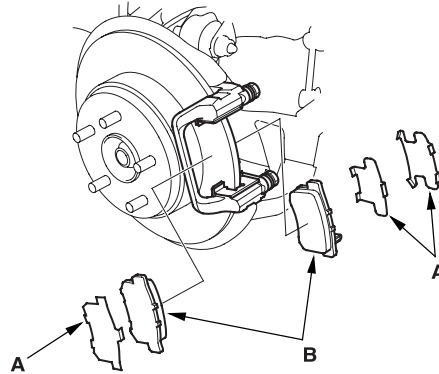
3. If the brake pad thickness is less than the service limit, replace all the pads as a set.

#### Replacement

1. Hold the pins (A) with a wrench, being careful not to damage the pin boots. Remove the caliper bolts (B) and remove the caliper (C) from the caliper bracket.

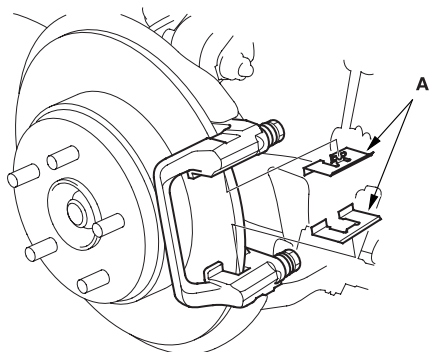


2. Remove the pad shims (A) and pads (B).

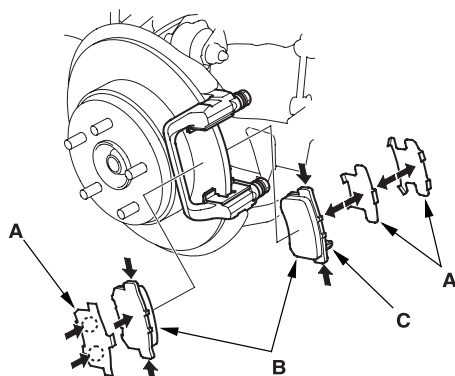




3. Remove the pad retainers (A).

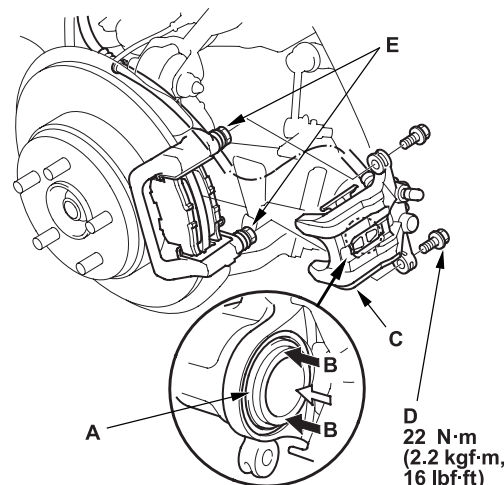


4. Clean the caliper thoroughly; remove any rust, and check for grooves and cracks.
5. Check the brake disc for damage and cracks.
6. Install the pad retainers.
7. Apply Dow Corning Molykote M77 grease to both sides of the pad shims (A), the back of the pads (B), and the other areas indicated by the arrows. Wipe excess grease off the shim. Contaminated brake discs and pads reduce stopping ability. Keep grease off the discs and pads.



8. Install the brake pads and pad shims correctly. Install the pads with the wear indicators (C) on the inside.  
If you are reusing the pads, always reinstall the brake pads in their original positions to prevent a momentary loss of braking efficiency.

9. Push in the piston (A) so that the caliper will fit over the pads. Check the brake fluid level. The brake fluid may overflow if the reservoir is too full. Make sure that the piston boot is in position to prevent damaging it when installing the caliper.



10. Apply Dow Corning Molykote M77 grease to the piston edges (B) on their mating surfaces against the inner pad shim.
11. Install the brake caliper (C) and caliper bolts (D), and torque them to the specified torque while holding the pin (E). Be careful not to damage the pin boots.
12. Press the brake pedal several times to make sure the brake works then test-drive.

NOTE: Engagement of the brake may require a greater pedal stroke immediately after the brake pads have been replaced as a set. Several applications of the brake pedal will restore the normal pedal stroke.

13. After installation, check for leaks at hose and line joints or connections, and retighten if necessary.

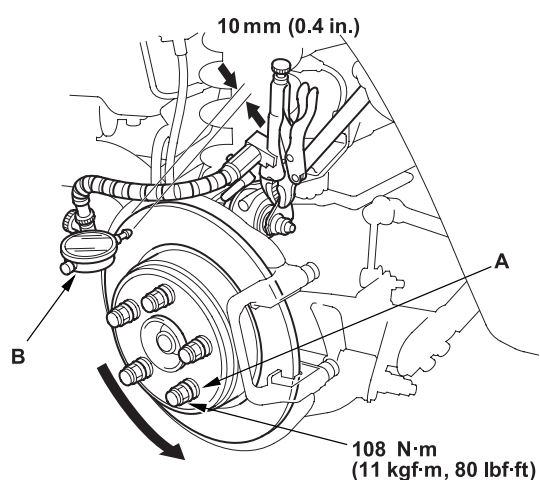
### Rear Brake Disc Inspection

#### Runout

1. Raise the rear of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the rear wheels.
2. Remove the brake pads ([see page 19A-30](#)).
3. Inspect the disc surface for damage and cracks. Clean the disc thoroughly and remove all rust.
4. Use wheel nuts and suitable flat washers (A) to hold the disc securely against the hub, then mount a dial indicator (B) as shown, and measure the runout at 10 mm (0.4 in.) from the outer edge of the disc.

#### Brake Disc Runout:

Service limit: 0.10 mm (0.004 in.)



5. If the disc is beyond the service limit, refinish the brake disc.

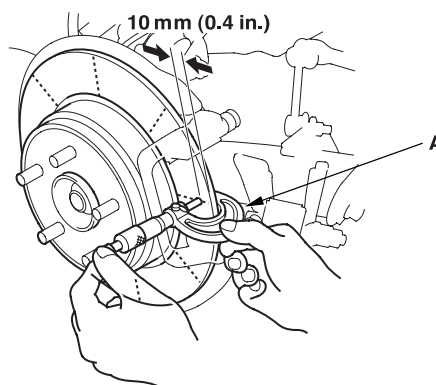
Max. Refinishing Limit: 8.0 mm (0.31 in.)

NOTE: A new disc should be refinished if its runout is greater than 0.10 mm (0.004 in.).

#### Thickness and parallelism

1. Loosen the rear wheel nuts slightly, then raise the vehicle and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the rear wheels.
2. Remove the brake pads ([see page 19A-30](#)).
3. Using a micrometer (A), measure disc thickness at eight points, approximately 45° apart and 10 mm (0.4 in.) in from the outer edge of the disc.

This is the maximum allowable difference between the thickness measurements.



#### Brake Disc thickness:

Standard: 8.9 - 9.1 mm (0.350 - 0.358 in.)

Max. Refinishing Limit: 8.0 mm (0.31 in.)

#### Brake Disc Parallelism: 0.015 mm

(0.0006 in.) max.

4. If the smallest measurement is less than the max. Refinishing limit, replace the brake disc ([see page 18-27](#)).
5. If the disc is beyond the service limit for parallelism, refinish the brake disc with an on-car brake lathe. The Kwik-Lathe produced by Kwik-way Manufacturing Co. and the "Front Brake Disc Lathe" offered by Snap-on Tools Co. are approved for this operation.



## Rear Brake Caliper Overhaul



### CAUTION

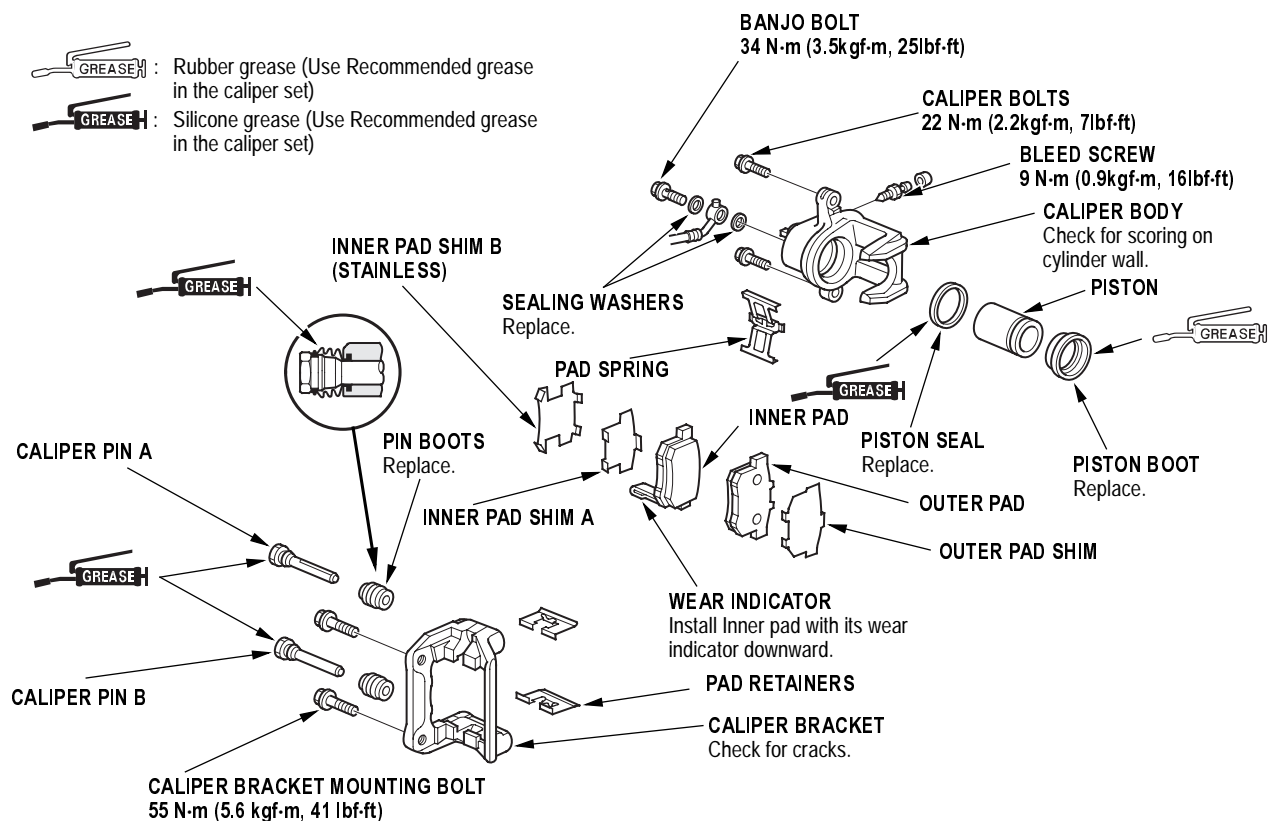


Frequent inhalation of brake pad dust, regardless of material composition, could be hazardous to your health.

- Avoid breathing dust particles.
- Never use an air hose or brush to clean brake assemblies. Use an approved vacuum cleaner.

Remove, disassemble, inspect, reassemble, and install the caliper, and note these items:

- Do not spill brake fluid on the vehicle; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid gets on the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- Clean all parts in brake fluid and air dry; blow out all passages with compressed air.
- Before reassembling, check that all parts are free of dirt and other foreign particles.
- Replace parts with new ones as specified in the illustration.
- Make sure no dirt or other foreign matter gets in the brake fluid.
- Make sure no grease or oil gets on the brake discs or pads.
- When reusing pads, always reinstall them in their original positions to prevent loss of braking efficiency.
- Do not reuse drained brake fluid.
- Always use Genuine Honda DOT 3 Brake Fluid. Non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and shorten the life of the system.
- Coat the piston, piston seal groove, and caliper bore with clean brake fluid.
- Replace all rubber parts with new ones.
- After installing the caliper, check the brake hose and line for leaks, interference, and twisting.



### Parking Brake Drum Inspection



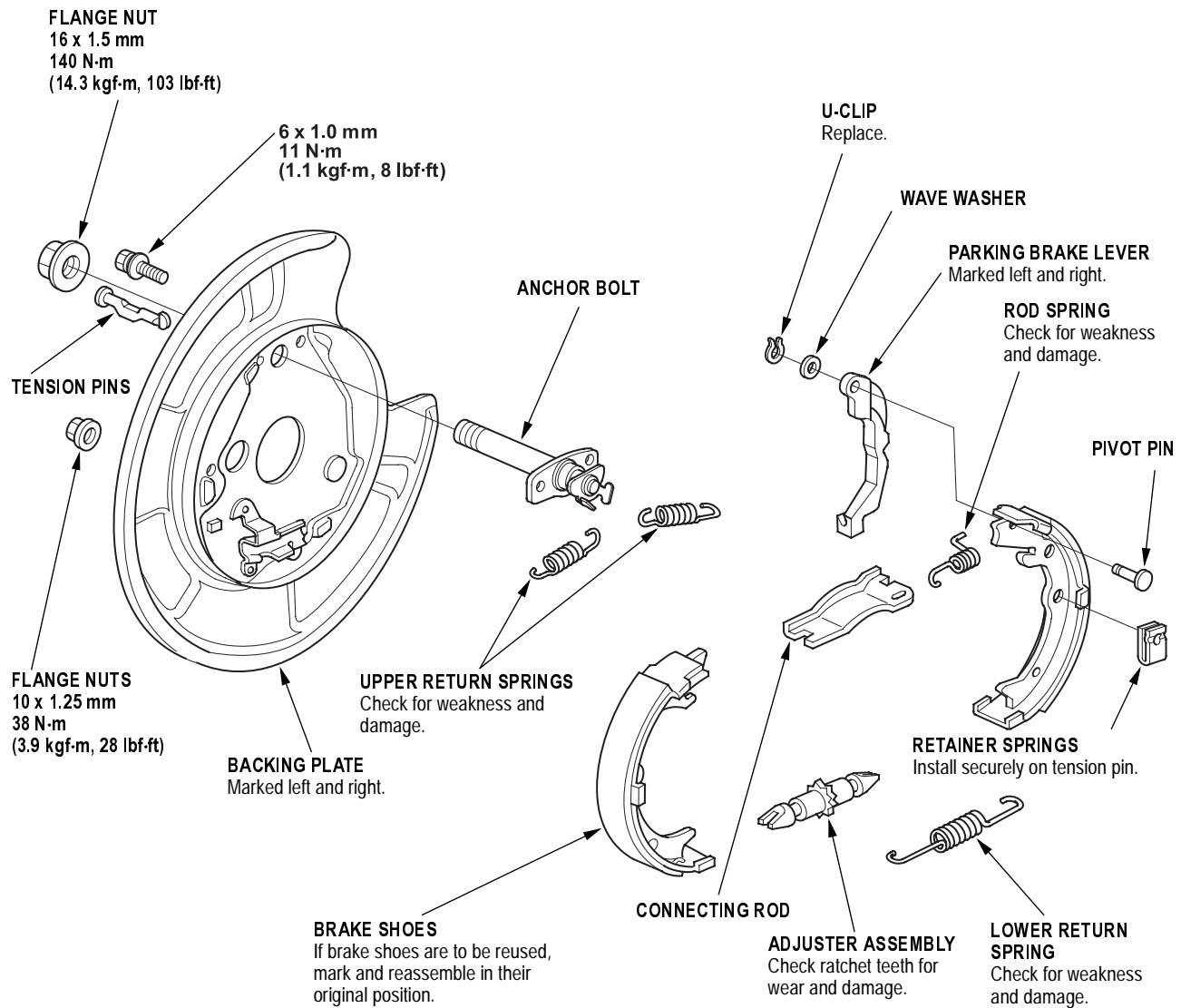
#### CAUTION



Frequent inhalation of brake pad dust, regardless of material composition, could be hazardous to your health.

- Avoid breathing dust particles.
- Never use an air hose or brush to clean brake assemblies. Use an appropriate vacuum cleaner.

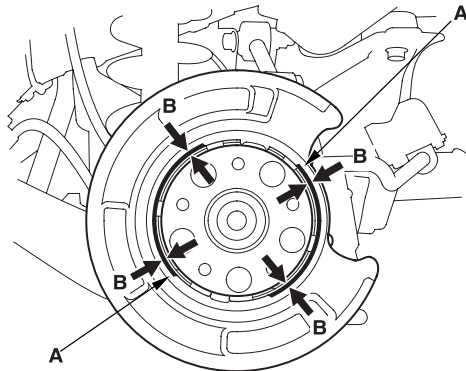
1. Raise the rear of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the rear wheels.
2. Release the parking brake, and remove the rear brake caliper and disc/drum ([see page 18-27](#)).







3. Check the parking brake linings (A) for cracking, glazing, wear, and contamination.



4. Measure the parking brake lining thickness (B). Measurement does not include brake shoe thickness.

**Parking brake lining thickness:**

**Standard:** 3.2 mm (0.126 in.)

**Service limit:** 1.0 mm (0.04 in.)

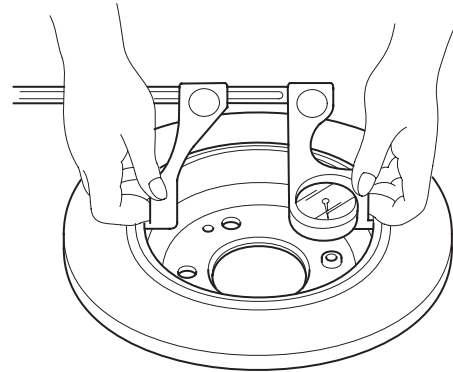
5. If the brake lining thickness is less than the service limit, replace all the parking brake shoes as a set.
6. Check the bearings in the hub unit for smooth operation.

7. Measure the inside diameter of the parking brake drum with inside vernier calipers.

**Parking brake drum inside diameter:**

**Standard:** 169.9 - 170.0 mm (6.689 - 6.693 in.)

**Service limit:** 171.0 mm (6.732 in.)



8. If the inside diameter of the parking brake drum is more than service limit, replace the rear brake disc/drum.
9. Check the parking brake drum for scoring, grooves, and cracks.

### Parking Brake Shoes Replacement



#### CAUTION

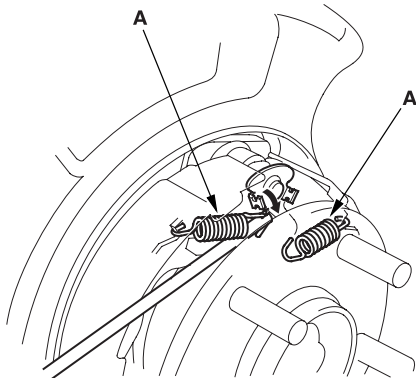


Frequent inhalation of brake pad dust, regardless of material composition, could be hazardous to your health.

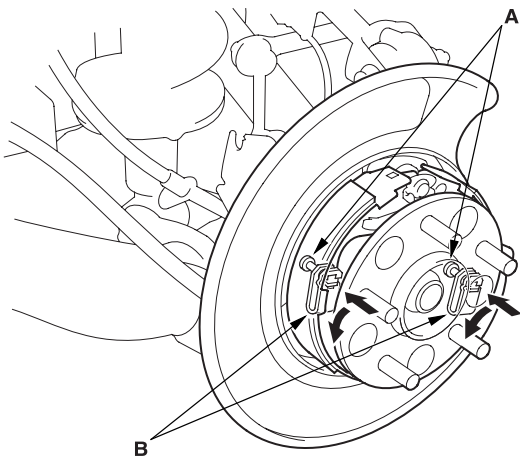
- Avoid breathing dust particles
- Never use an air hose or brush to clean brake assemblies. Use an appropriate vacuum cleaner.

#### Disassembly

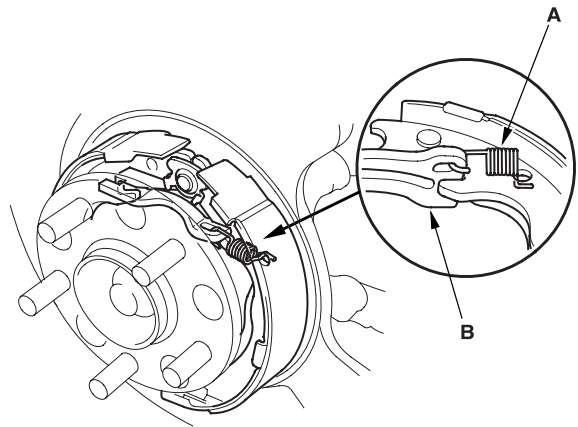
1. Raise the rear of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported. Remove the rear wheels.
2. Release the parking brake and remove the rear brake caliper and brake disc/drum ([see page 18-27](#)).
3. Disconnect and remove the upper return springs (A).



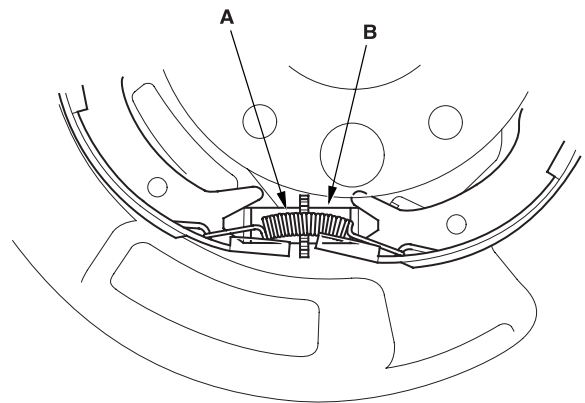
4. Remove the tension pins (A) by pushing the retainers springs (B) and turning the pins.



5. Disconnect the rod spring (A), and remove the connecting rod (B).

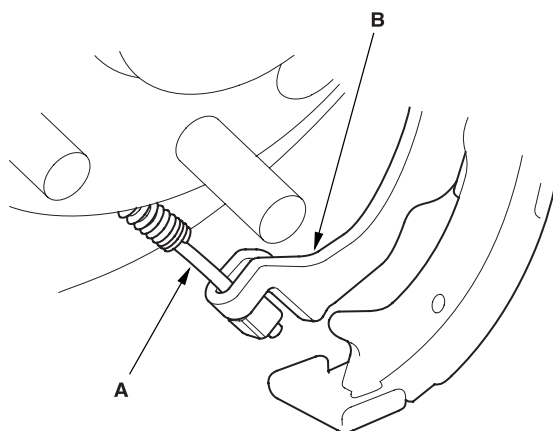


6. Lower the parking brake shoe assembly.
7. Remove the forward brake shoe by removing the lower return spring (A) and adjuster assembly (B).

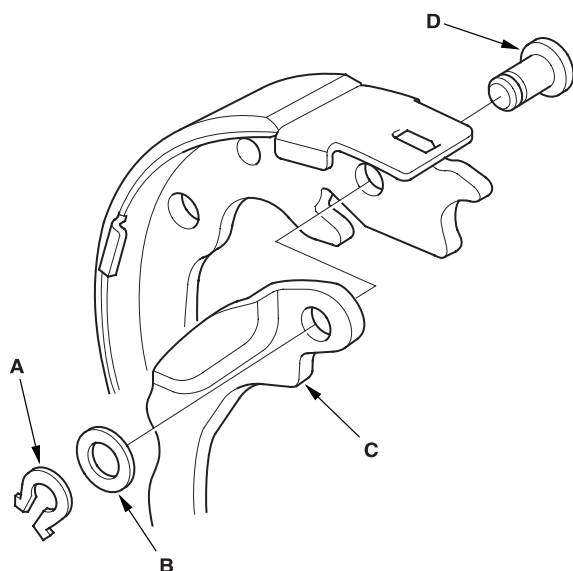




8. Remove the rearward brake shoe by disconnecting the parking brake cable (A) from the parking brake lever (B).

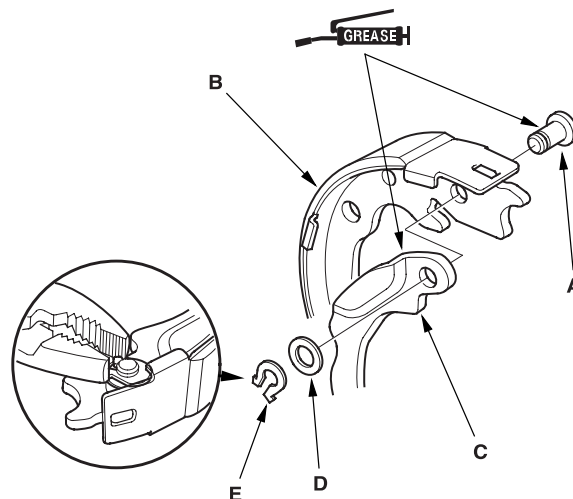


9. Remove the U-clip (A), wave washer (B), parking brake lever (C) and pivot pin (D) from the brake shoe.

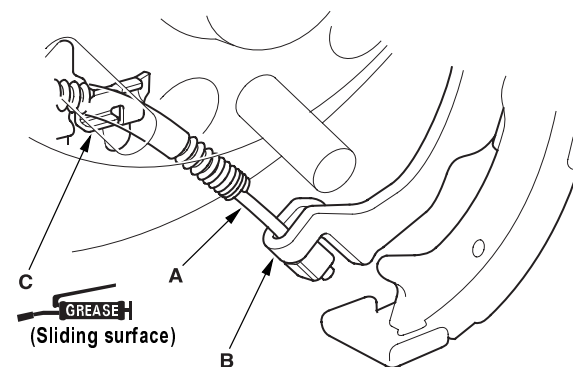


### Reassembly

1. Apply Molykote 44 MA grease to the sliding surface of the pivot pin (A), and insert the pin into the rearward brake shoe (B).



2. Install the parking brake lever (C) and washer (D) on the pivot pin, and secure with a new U-clip (E).
  - Install the wave washer with its convex side facing out.
  - Pinch the U-clip securely to prevent the pivot pin from coming out from the brake shoe.
3. Connect the parking brake cable (A) to the parking brake lever (B). Apply silicone grease to the cable contact surface (C) on the backing plate.

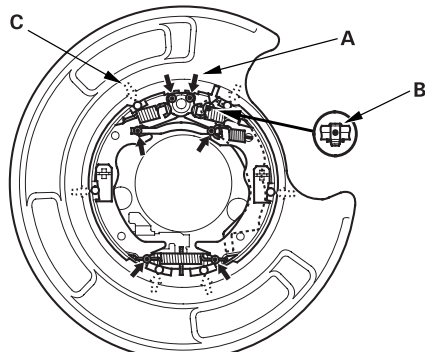


(cont'd)

### Parking Brake Shoes Replacement (cont'd)

#### Reassembly (cont'd)

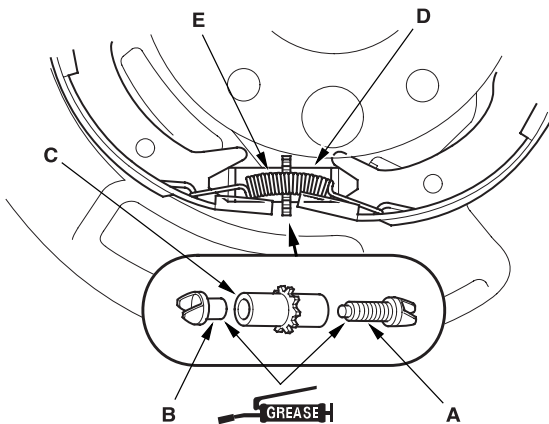
4. Apply Molykote 44 MA grease to the shoe ends (A), sliding surfaces (B), and opposite edges of the parking brake shoe (C) as shown. Wipe off any excess. Don't get grease on the brake linings.



#### Greasing symbols:

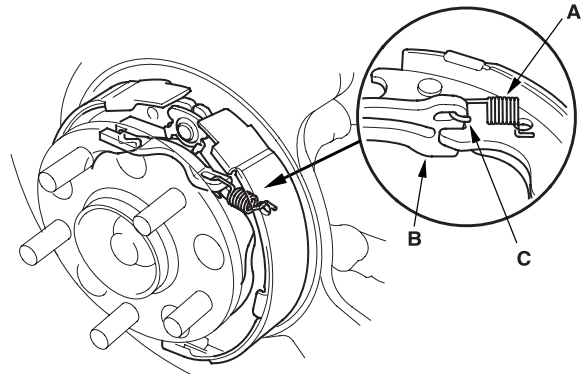
- Brake shoe ends
- Opposite edge of the shoe
- Sliding surface

5. Clean the threaded portions of the clevis (A), and coat the threads of the clevis with grease. Clean the sliding surface of the clevis (B), and coat the sliding surface of the clevis (B) with grease. Install the clevis (A) and (B) on the adjuster (C), and shorten the clevis (A) by turning the adjuster.

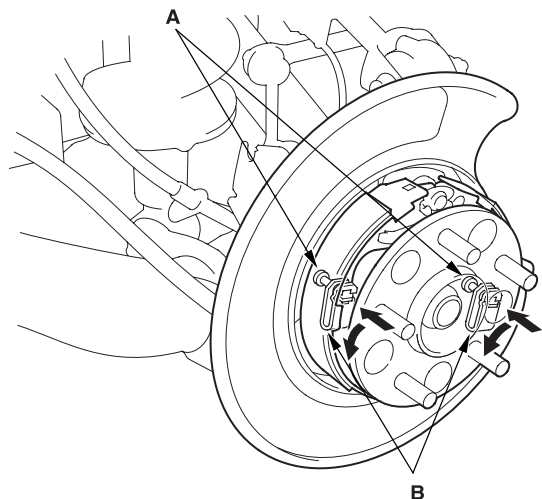


6. Reinstall the brake shoe adjuster assembly (D), and hook the lower return spring (E) on the parking brake shoes.

7. Hook the rod spring (A) to the connecting rod (B) first with the spring end (C) pointing downward. Then hook the rod spring to the parking brake shoe, and install the connecting rod on the parking brake shoes.

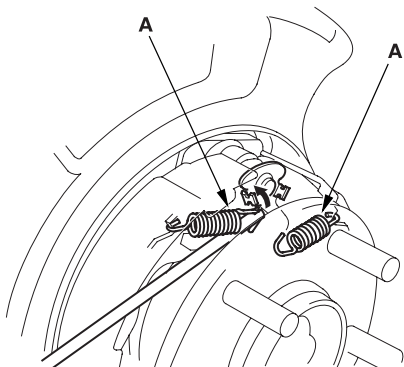


8. Reinstall the tension pins (A) and retainer springs (B). Make sure the tension pin does not contact the parking brake lever.





9. Reinstall the upper return springs (A).



10. Install the rear brake disc/drum and rear brake caliper (see page 18-28).
11. Do the major adjustment for parking brake (see page 19A-6).

### Lining Surface Break-in

NOTE:

- Do brake linings surface break-in when replacing shoes with new linings and/or new rear brake disc/drum.

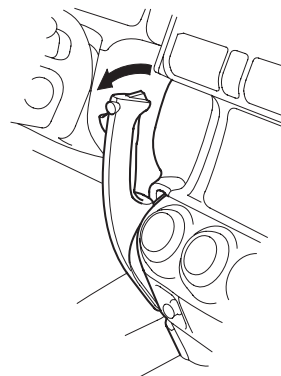


#### WARNING



Perform this operation in a safe area.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level surface.
2. Do the major parking brake adjustment.
3. Do the minor parking brake adjustment.
4. Drive the vehicle at no more than 31 mph (50 km/h).
5. Pull the parking brake lever two to four clicks while driving the vehicle for 400 m (1/4 mile).

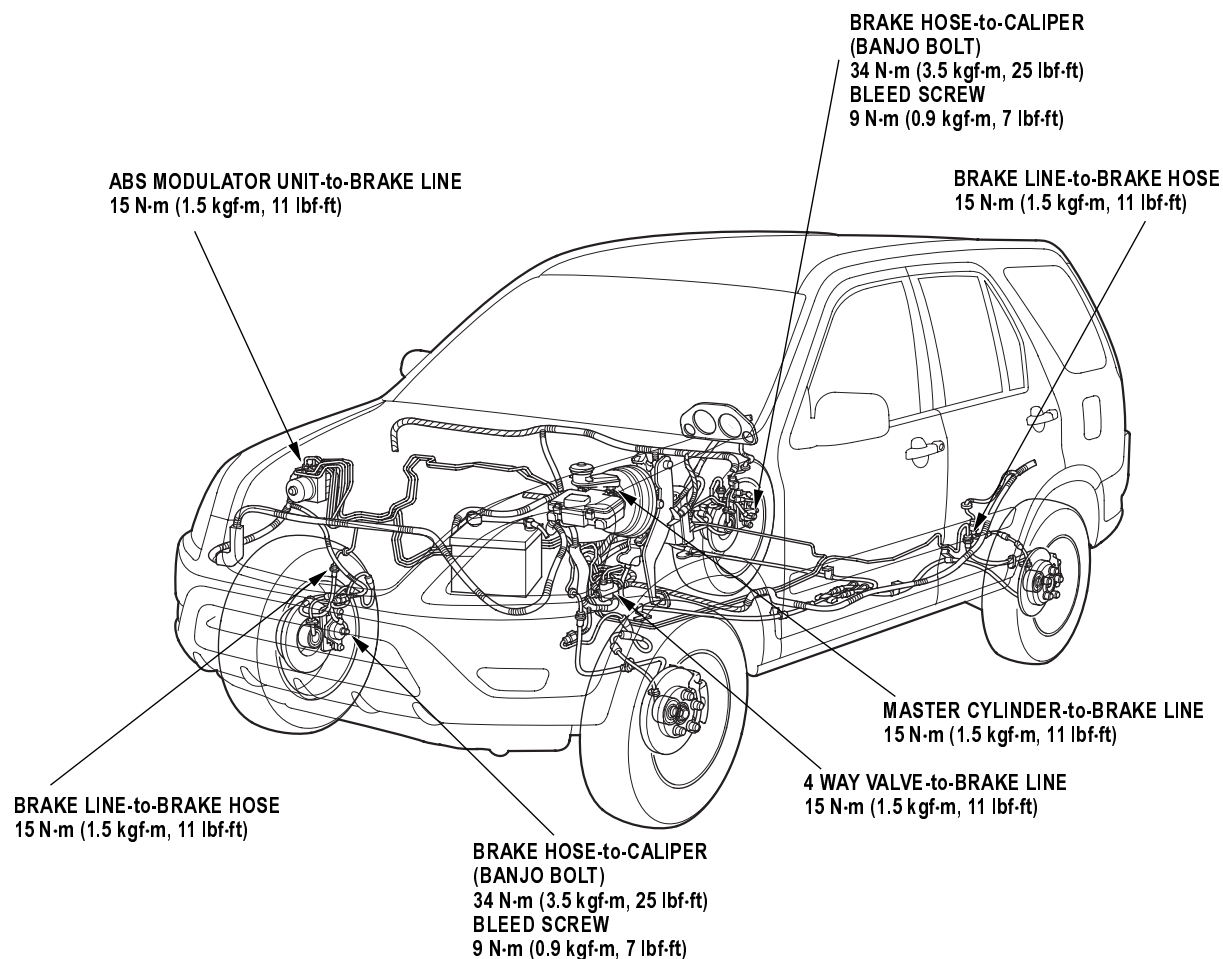


6. Stop the vehicle, and release the parking brake lever for 5 - 10 minutes to allow the drums to cool. Repeat steps 4 through 6 three more times.
7. Do the major parking brake adjustment (see page 19A-6).

### Brake Hoses and Lines Inspection

1. Inspect the brake hoses, for damage, deterioration, leaks, interference, and twisting.
2. Check the brake lines for damage, rusting, and leakage. Also check for bent brake lines.
3. Check for leaks at hose and line joints or connections, and retighten if necessary.
4. Check the master cylinder and ABS modulator unit (if equipped) for damage and leakage.

NOTE: Replace the brake hose clip whenever the brake hose is serviced.



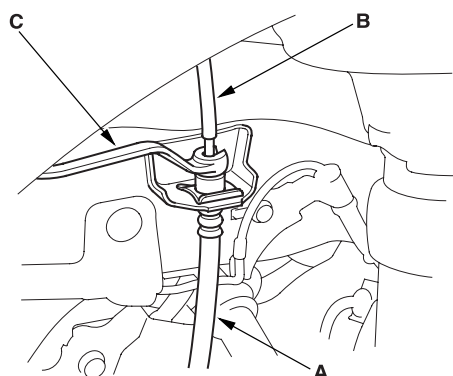


## Brake Hose Replacement

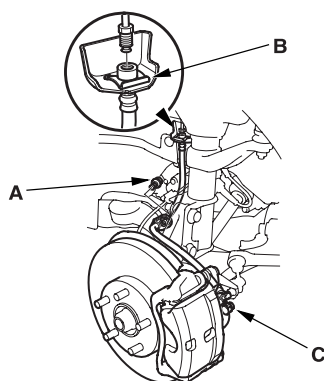
### NOTE:

- Do not spill brake fluid on the vehicle; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid gets on the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- To prevent dripping, cover disconnected line joints with rags or shop towels.
- Before reassembling, check that all parts are free of dust and other foreign particles.
- Replace parts with new ones whenever specified to do so.

1. Replace the brake hose (A) if the hose is twisted, cracked, or if it leaks.

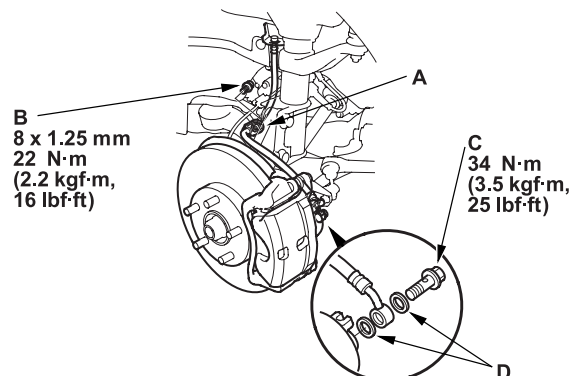


2. Disconnect the brake hose from the brake line (B) using a 10 mm flare nut wrench (C).
3. Remove the flange bolt (A), and remove the brake hose brackets from the damper.

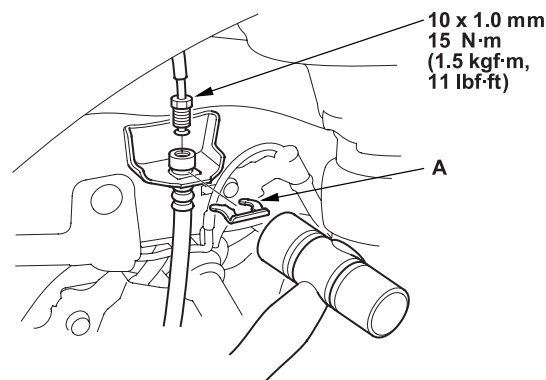


4. Remove and discard the hose clip (B).
5. Remove the banjo bolt (C), and remove the brake hose from the caliper.

6. Install the brake hose bracket (A) on the damper with the flange bolt (B) first, then connect the brake hose to the caliper with the banjo bolt (C) and new sealing washers (D).



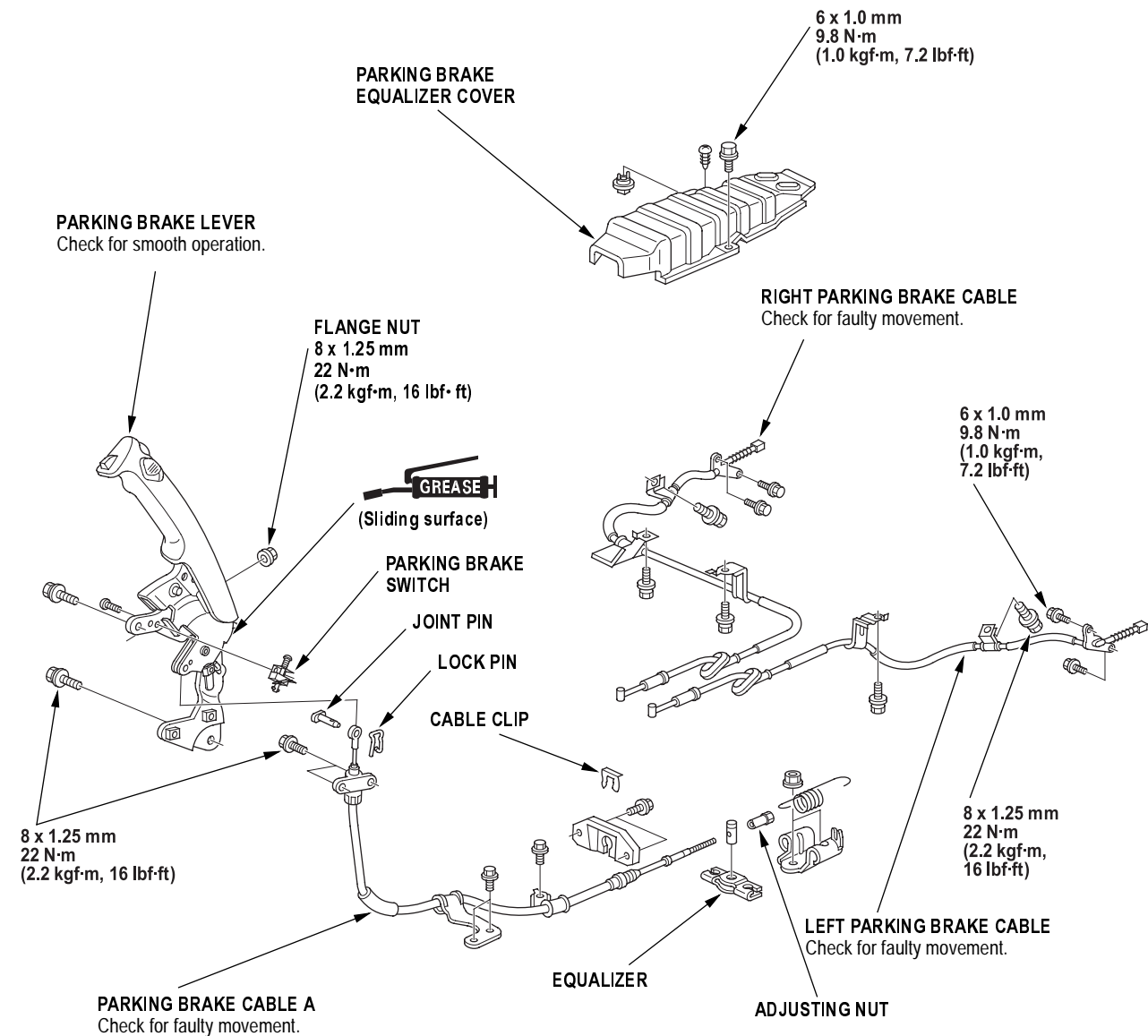
7. Install the hose onto the hose bracket on the body with a new hose clip (A).



8. Connect the brake line to the brake hose.
9. After installing the brake hose, bleed the brake system ([see page 19A-9](#)).
10. Do the following checks:
  - Check the brake hose and line joint for leaks, and tighten if necessary.
  - Check the brake hoses for interference and twisting.

Parking Brake Cable Replacement

Exploded View



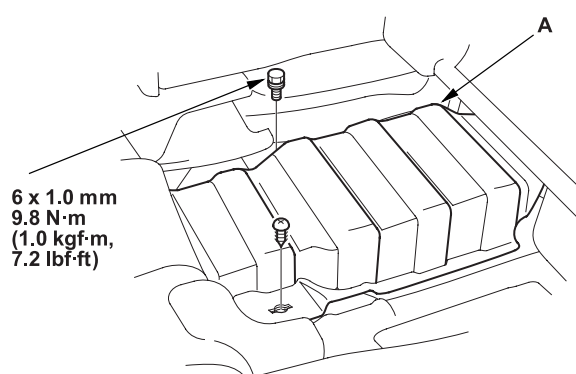




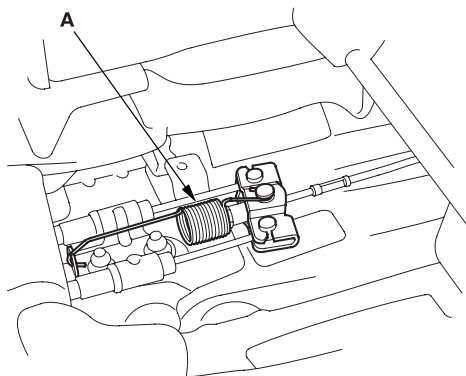
## NOTE:

- The parking brake cables must not be bent or distorted. This will lead to stiff operation and premature failure.
- Refer to the Exploded View as needed during this procedure.

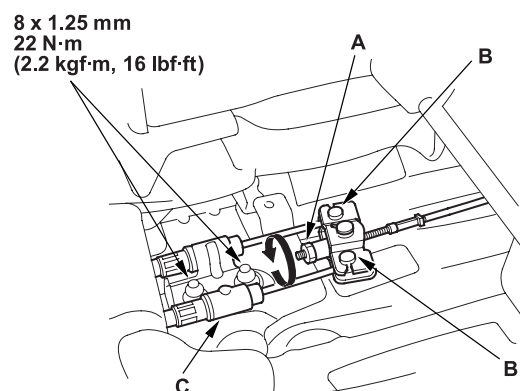
1. Raise the rear of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported.
2. Release the parking brake lever fully. Move the driver's seat (RHD: assistant seat) all the way forward.
3. Pull back the carpet on the floor at the under the seat. Remove the screw and bolt for the parking brake equalizer cover (A).



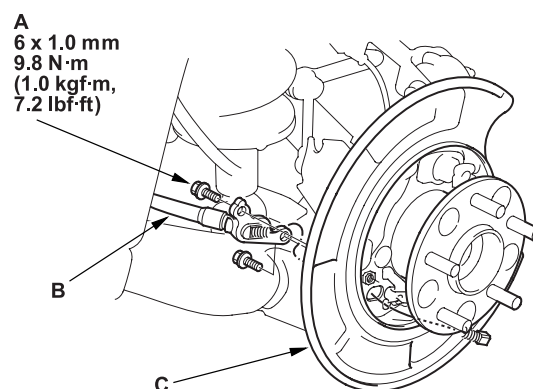
4. Remove the return spring (A).



5. Back off the adjusting nut (A) in the equalizer, and disconnect the parking brake cable ends (B) from the equalizer.



6. Remove the cable guide base (C).
7. Remove the rear brake shoes (see page 19A-36), and disconnect the parking brake cable from the shoe.
8. Remove the flange bolts (A) and parking brake cable (B) from the backing plate (C).



9. Reinstall the parking brake cable in reverse order of removal, and note these items.
  - Be careful not to bend or distort the cable.
  - Do the major parking brake adjustment (see page 19A-6).



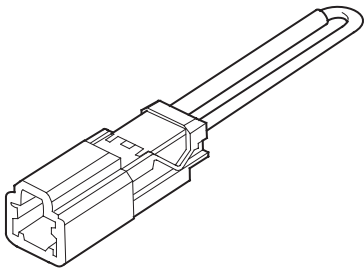
## Brakes

<b>ABS Components .....</b>	<b>19B-2</b>
Special Tools .....	19B-2
Component Location Index .....	19B-3
General Troubleshooting Information .....	19B-4
DTC Troubleshooting Index .....	19B-10
Symptom Troubleshooting Index .....	19B-11
System Description .....	19B-12
Circuit Diagram .....	19B-20
System Connectors .....	19B-22
DTC Troubleshooting .....	19B-23
ABS Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting .....	19B-32
Brake System Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting .....	19B-34
ABS Modulator-Control Unit Removal and Installation .....	19B-36
Wheel Sensor Inspection .....	19B-38
Wheel Sensor Replacement .....	19B-39

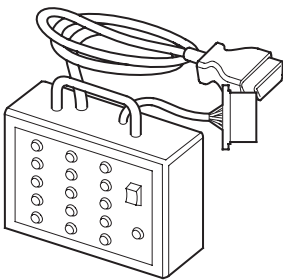
ABS Components

Special Tools

Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07PAZ-0010100	SCS Short Connector (EU model)	1
2	07WAJ-0010100	DLC Pin Box (Except EU model)	1

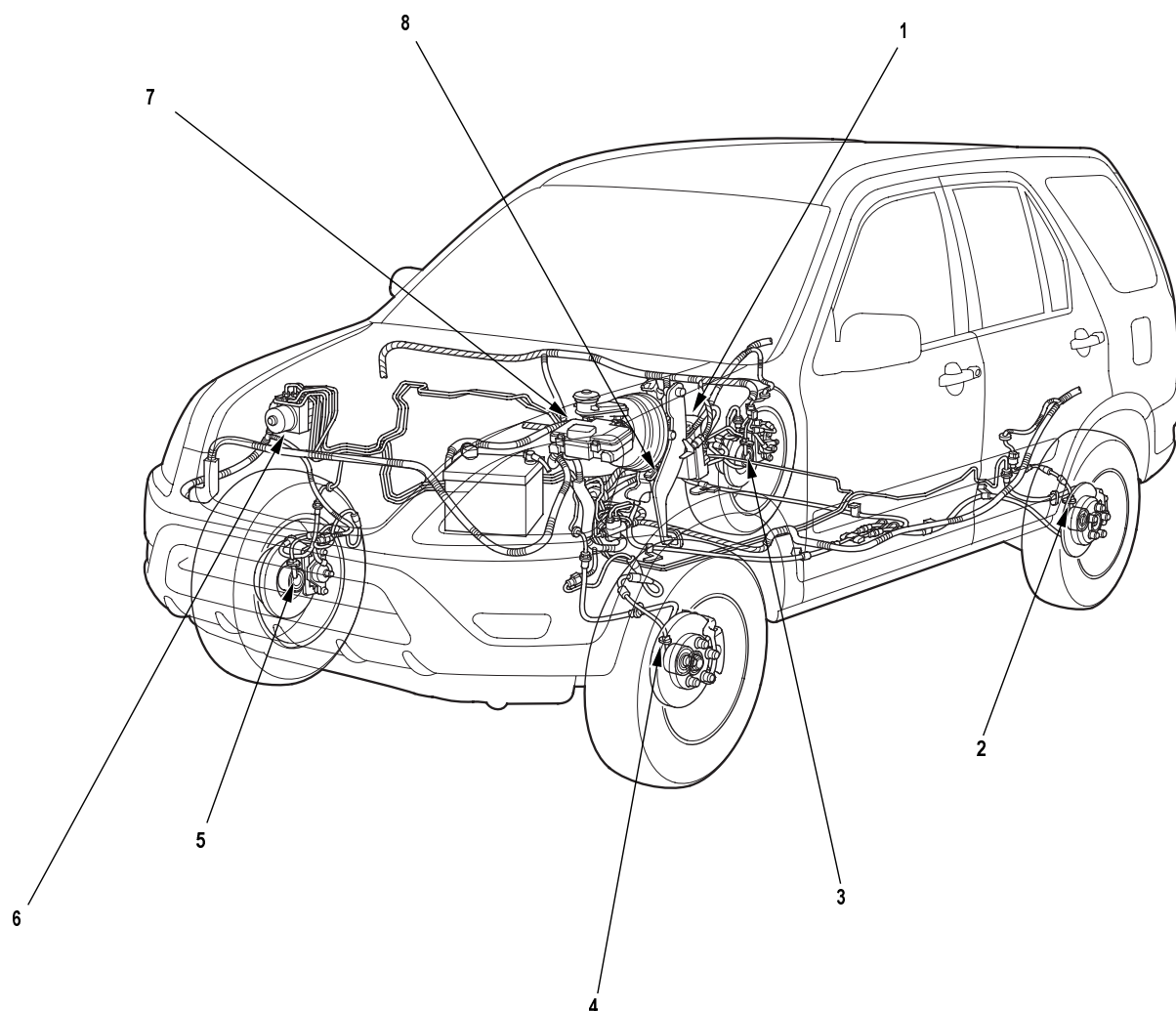


1



2

## Component Location Index



- |   |                            |   |
|---|----------------------------|---|
| 1 | UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX  |   |
| 2 | LEFT-REAR WHEEL SENSOR     | Inspection, <a href="#">page 19B-38</a><br>Replacement, <a href="#">page 19B-39</a> |
| 3 | RIGHT-REAR WHEEL SENSOR    | Inspection, <a href="#">page 19B-38</a><br>Replacement, <a href="#">page 19B-39</a> |
| 4 | LEFT-FRONT WHEEL SENSOR    | Inspection, <a href="#">page 19B-38</a><br>Replacement, <a href="#">page 19B-39</a> |
| 5 | RIGHT-FRONT WHEEL SENSOR   | Inspection, <a href="#">page 19B-38</a><br>Replacement, <a href="#">page 19B-39</a> |
| 6 | ABS MODULATOR-CONTROL UNIT | Removal and installation, <a href="#">page 19B-36</a>                               |
| 7 | UNDER-HOOD FUSE/RELAY BOX  |   |
| 8 | DATA LINK CONNECTOR (16P)  |   |

## General Troubleshooting Information

### ABS Indicator

- If the system is OK, the ABS indicator goes off 2 seconds after turning the ignition switch ON (II) without starting the engine, and then comes on again and goes off 2 seconds later after starting the engine. This occurs because the ABS control unit is turned on by the IG1 power source.
- The ABS indicator comes on when the ABS control unit detects a problem in the system. However, even though the system is operating properly, the indicator will come on under these conditions:
  - Only the drive wheels rotate
  - One drive wheel is stuck
  - The vehicle goes into a spin
  - The ABS continues to operate for a long time.
  - The vehicle is subjected to an electrical signal disturbance

To determine the actual cause of the problem, question the customer about the problem, taking the above conditions into consideration.

- When a problem is detected and the ABS indicator comes on, there are cases when the indicator stays on until the ignition switch is turned OFF, and cases when the indicator goes off automatically when the system returns to normal.
  - DTC 61, 62:  
The ABS indicator goes off automatically when the system returns to normal.
  - DTC 11, 13, 15, 17, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 54, or 81:  
The ABS indicator stays on until the ignition switch is turned OFF whether or not the system returns to normal.
  - DTC 12, 14, 16, 18, 21, 22, 23, 24, 51, 52, or 53:  
The ABS indicator goes off when the vehicle is driven again and the system is OK after the ignition switch is turned from OFF to ON (II).

### Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC)

- The memory can hold three DTCs. However, when the same DTC is detected more than once, the more recent DTC is written over the earlier one. Therefore, when the same problem is detected repeatedly, it is memorized as a single DTC.
- The DTCs are indicated in the order they occurred, beginning with the most recent.
- The DTCs are memorized in the EEPROM (non-volatile memory). Therefore, the memorized DTCs are not cleared when the battery is disconnected, the ignition switch is turned off, or the system returns to normal. Perform the specified procedures to clear the DTCs.

### Self-diagnosis

- Self-diagnosis can be classified into two categories:
  - Initial diagnosis:  
Done right after the engine starts and until the ABS indicator goes off
  - Regular diagnosis:  
Done right after the initial diagnosis until the ignition switch is turned OFF
- When a problem is detected by self-diagnosis, the system does the following:
  - Turns the ABS indicator on
  - Memorizes the DTC
  - Stops ABS control

### Kickback

The pump motor operates when the ABS is functioning, and the fluid in the reservoir is forced out to the master cylinder, causing kickback at the brake pedal.

### Pump Motor

- The pump motor operates when the ABS is functioning.
- The ABS control unit checks the pump motor operation when the vehicle is started the first time after the ignition switch is turned ON (II). You may hear the motor operate at this time, but it is normal.

## How to Troubleshoot ABS DTCs

The troubleshooting flowchart procedures assume that the cause of the problem is still present and the ABS indicator is still on. Following the flowchart when the ABS indicator does not come on can result in incorrect diagnosis.

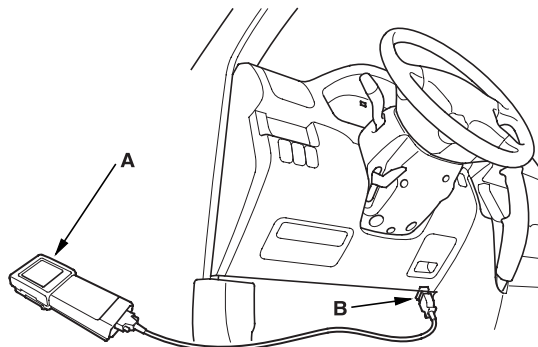
The connector illustrations show the female terminal connectors with a single outline and the male terminal connectors with a double outline.

1. Question the customer about the conditions when the problem occurred, and try to reproduce the same conditions for troubleshooting. Find out when the ABS indicator came on, such as during ABS control, after ABS control, when the vehicle was at a certain speed, etc.
2. When the ABS indicator does not come on during the test-drive, but troubleshooting is done based on the DTC, check for loose connectors, poor terminal contact, etc., before you start troubleshooting.
3. After troubleshooting, clear the DTC and test-drive the vehicle. Be sure the ABS indicator does not come on.

## How to Retrieve ABS DTCs

### Honda PGM Tester Method:

1. With the ignition switch OFF, connect the Honda PGM Tester (A) to the 16P Data Link Connector (DLC) (B) right side of the under-dash fuse/relay box.

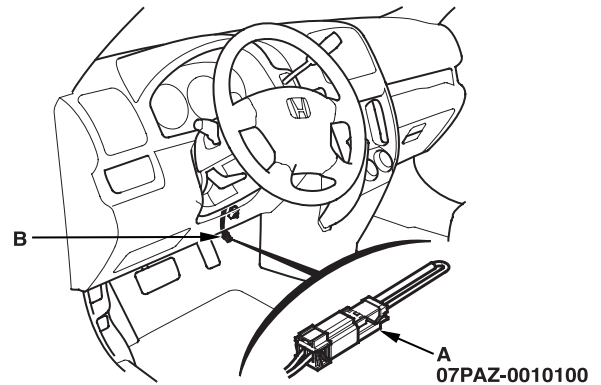


2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and follow the prompts on the PGM Tester to display the DTC(s) on the screen. After determining the DTC, refer to the DTC Troubleshooting Index.

NOTE: See the Honda PGM Tester user's manual for specific instructions.

### SCS Short Connector Method (EU Model):

1. With the ignition switch OFF, connect the SCS short connector (A) to the service check connector (2P) (B) right side of the under-dash fuse/relay box.



2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II) without pressing the brake pedal.

NOTE: If you press the brake pedal when turning the ignition switch ON (II), the system shifts to the DTC clearing mode.

(cont'd)

## General Troubleshooting Information (cont'd)

### How to Troubleshoot ABS DTCs (cont'd)

- The blinking frequency indicates the DTC. DTCs are indicated by a series of long and short blinks. One long blink equals 10 short blinks. Add the long and short blinks together to determine the DTC. After determining the DTC, refer to the DTC Troubleshooting Index.

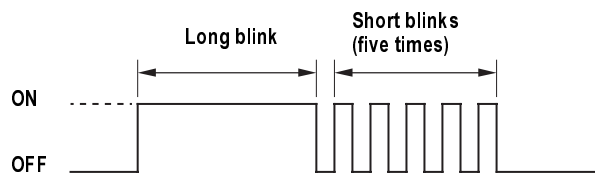
#### NOTE:

- If the DTC is not memorized, the ABS indicator will go off for 3.6 seconds, and then come back on.
- If the ABS indicator continues on, troubleshoot for "ABS indicator does not go off" (see step 1 on [page 19B-33](#)).

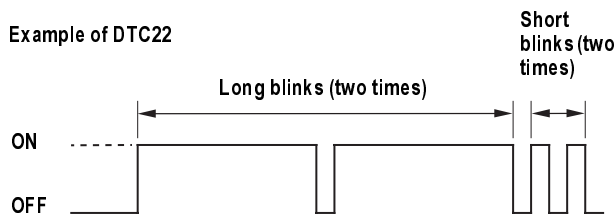
The system will not indicate the DTC unless these conditions are met:

- The ignition switch is turned ON (II).
- The SCS circuit is shorted to body ground before the ignition switch is turned ON (II).

#### Example of DTC15



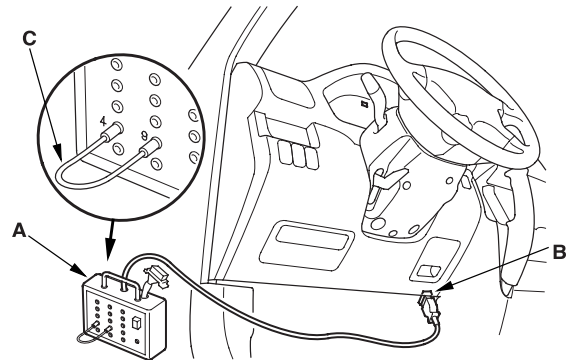
#### Example of DTC22



- Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- Disconnect the SCS short connector from the service check connector.

### DLC Pin Box Method (Except EU Model):

- With the ignition switch OFF, connect the DLC pin box (A) to the 16P Data Link Connector (DLC) (B) right side of the under-dash fuse/relay box.



- Insert the plugs of the jumper wire (C) to No. 4 and No. 9 plug holes of the DLC terminal box, then push the switch.
- Turn the ignition switch ON (II) without pressing the brake pedal.

NOTE: If you press the brake pedal when turning the ignition switch ON (II), the system shifts to the DTC clearing mode.



4. The blinking frequency indicates the DTC. DTCs are indicated by a series of long and short blinks. One long blink equals 10 short blinks. Add the long and short blinks together to determine the DTC. After determining the DTC, refer to the DTC Troubleshooting Index.

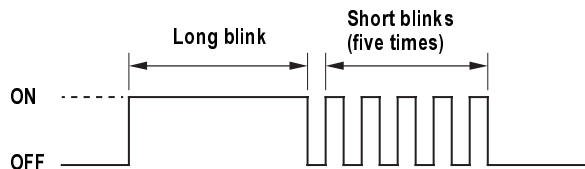
**NOTE:**

- If the DTC is not memorized, the ABS indicator will go off for 3.6 seconds, and then come back on.
- If the ABS indicator stays on, troubleshoot for "ABS indicator does not go off" (see step 1 on [page 19B-33](#)).

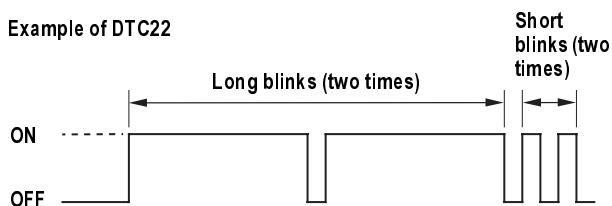
The system will not indicate the DTC unless these conditions are met:

- The brake pedal is not pressed.
- The ignition switch is turned ON (II).
- The SCS circuit is shorted to body ground before the ignition switch is turned ON (II).

**Example of DTC15**



**Example of DTC22**

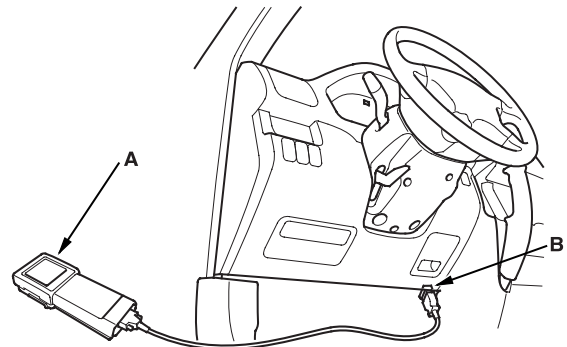


5. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
6. Disconnect the DLC pin box from the DLC.

## How to Clear ABS DTCs

### Honda PGM Tester Method:

1. With the ignition switch OFF, connect the Honda PGM Tester (A) to the 16P Data Link Connector (DLC) (B) under the driver's side of the dashboard.



2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and clear the DTC(s) by following the screen prompts on the PGM Tester.

**NOTE:** See the Honda PGM Tester user's manual for specific instructions.

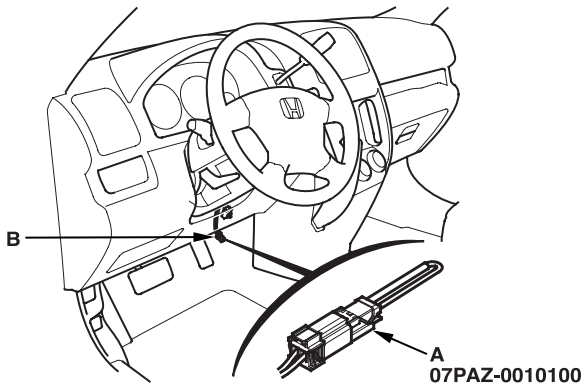
(cont'd)

### General Troubleshooting Information (cont'd)

#### How to Clear ABS DTCs (cont'd)

##### SCS Short Connector Method (Except EU Model):

1. With the ignition switch OFF, connect the SCS short connector (A) to the service check connector (2P) (B) right side of the under-dash fuse/relay box.



2. Press the brake pedal.
3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II) while continuing to press the brake pedal.
4. After the ABS indicator goes off, release the brake pedal.
5. After the ABS indicator comes on, press the brake pedal again.
6. After the ABS indicator goes off, release the brake pedal.

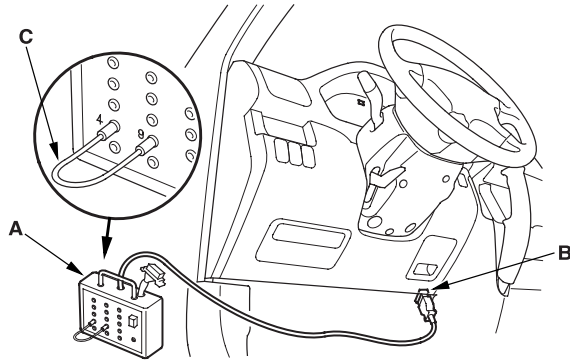
You cannot clear the DTC unless these conditions are met:

- The vehicle speed is 6 mph (10 km/h) or less.
- The SCS circuit is shorted to body ground before the ignition switch is turned ON (II).
- The brake pedal is pressed before the ignition switch is turned ON (II).

7. After a few seconds, the ABS indicator blinks twice and the DTC is cleared. If the indicator does not blink twice, repeat steps 1 thru 6. If the ABS indicator stays on after it blinks twice, check the DTC, because a problem was detected during initial diagnosis before shifting to DTC clearing mode.
8. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
9. Disconnect the SCS short connector from the service check connector.

### DLC pin Box Method (Except EU Model):

1. With the ignition switch OFF, connect the DLC pin box (A) to the 16P Data Link Connector (DLC) (B) right side of the under-dash fuse/relay box.



2. Insert the plugs of the jumper wire (C) to No. 4 and No. 9 plug holes of the DLC pin box, then push the switch.
3. Press the brake pedal.
4. Turn the ignition switch ON (II) while continuing to press the brake pedal.
5. After the ABS indicator goes off, release the brake pedal.
6. After the ABS indicator comes on, press the brake pedal again.
7. After the ABS indicator goes off, release the brake pedal.

You cannot clear the DTC unless these conditions are met:

- The vehicle speed is 6 mph (10 km/h) or less.
- The SCS circuit is shorted to body ground before the ignition switch is turned ON (II).
- The brake pedal is pressed before the ignition switch is turned ON (II).

8. After a few seconds, the ABS indicator blinks twice and the DTC is cleared. If the indicator does not blink twice, repeat steps 1 thru 7. If the ABS indicator stays on after it blinks twice, check the DTC, because a problem was detected during initial diagnosis before shifting to DTC clearing mode.
9. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
10. Disconnect the DLC pin box from the DLC.

## DTC Troubleshooting Index

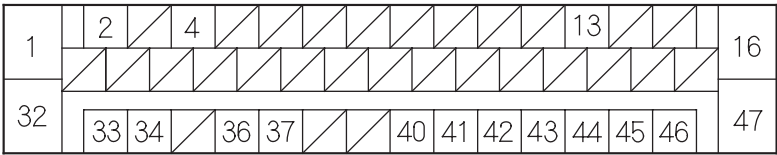
DTC	Detection Item	Note
DTC:11	Right-front wheel sensor (open/short to body ground/short to power)	<a href="#">(see page 19B-23)</a>
DTC:12	Right-front wheel sensor (electrical noise/intermittent interruption)	<a href="#">(see page 19B-26)</a>
DTC:13	Left-front wheel sensor (open/short to body ground/short to power)	<a href="#">(see page 19B-23)</a>
DTC:14	Left-front wheel sensor (electrical noise/intermittent interruption)	<a href="#">(see page 19B-26)</a>
DTC:15	Right-rear wheel sensor (open/short to body ground/short to power)	<a href="#">(see page 19B-23)</a>
DTC:16	Right-rear wheel sensor (electrical noise/intermittent interruption)	<a href="#">(see page 19B-26)</a>
DTC:17	Left-rear wheel sensor (open/short to body ground/short to power)	<a href="#">(see page 19B-23)</a>
DTC:18	Left-rear wheel sensor (electrical noise/intermittent interruption)	<a href="#">(see page 19B-26)</a>
DTC:21	Right-front pulser	<a href="#">(see page 19B-27)</a>
DTC:22	Left-front pulser	<a href="#">(see page 19B-27)</a>
DTC:23	Right-rear pulser	<a href="#">(see page 19B-27)</a>
DTC:24	Left-rear pulser	<a href="#">(see page 19B-27)</a>
DTC:31	Solenoid	<a href="#">(see page 19B-27)</a>
DTC:32	Solenoid	<a href="#">(see page 19B-27)</a>
DTC:33	Solenoid	<a href="#">(see page 19B-27)</a>
DTC:34	Solenoid	<a href="#">(see page 19B-27)</a>
DTC:35	Solenoid	<a href="#">(see page 19B-27)</a>
DTC:36	Solenoid	<a href="#">(see page 19B-27)</a>
DTC:37	Solenoid	<a href="#">(see page 19B-27)</a>
DTC:38	Solenoid	<a href="#">(see page 19B-27)</a>
DTC:51	Motor lock	<a href="#">(see page 19B-28)</a>
DTC:52	Motor stuck OFF	<a href="#">(see page 19B-29)</a>
DTC:53	Motor stuck ON	<a href="#">(see page 19B-30)</a>
DTC:54	ABS fail-safe relay	<a href="#">(see page 19B-30)</a>
DTC:61	Low IG1 voltage	<a href="#">(see page 19B-31)</a>
DTC:62	High IG1 voltage	<a href="#">(see page 19B-31)</a>
DTC:81	Central Processing Unit (CPU) diagnosis, and ROM/RAM diagnosis	<a href="#">(see page 19B-31)</a>

## Symptom Troubleshooting Index

Symptom	Diagnostic procedure	Also check for
ABS indicator does not come on	ABS Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting ( <a href="#">see page 19B-32</a> )	
ABS indicator does not go off and no DTC is stored	ABS Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting (see step 1 on <a href="#">page 19B-33</a> )	
Brake system indicator does not come on	Brake Sytem Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting ( <a href="#">see page 19B-34</a> )	
Brake system indicator does not go off and no DTC is stored	Brake Sytem Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting (see step 1 on <a href="#">page 19B-35</a> )	

System Description

ABS Control Unit Inputs and Outputs for 47P Connector



Wire side of female terminals

Terminal number	Wire color	Terminal sign (Terminal name)	Description	Measurement (Disconnect the ABS control unit connector)		
				Terminals	Conditions	Voltage
1	WHT/RED	+B -P	Power source for the pump motor relay	1 - GND	At all times	Battery Voltage
2	GRY	DIAG-II	Communicates with Honda PGM Tester	—	—	—
4	YEL	IG1	Power source for activating the system	4 - GND	Ignition switch ON (II)	Battery Voltage
13	BRN/YEL	EBD	Drives brake system indicator	13 - GND	Engine running, parking brake	Pulled Below 0.3 V
					Released	Battery Voltage
16	BLK	GND-V	Ground for the system/solenoid valve	—	—	—

Terminal number	Wire color	Terminal sign (Terminal name)	Description	Measurement (Disconnect the ABS control unit connector)			
				Terminals	Conditions	Voltage	
32	WHT/BLU	+B -V	Power source for the system/solenoid valve	32 - GND	At all times	Battery Voltage	
33	BLU	FR -GND	Detects right-front wheel sensor signal	—	—	—	
34	GRN/BLK	FR +B					
36	YEL/RED	RL +B	Detects left-rear wheel sensor signal	—	—	—	
37	GRY/RED	RL -GND					
40	BRN	SCS	Use for DTC indication or clearing	—	—	—	
41	WHT/BLK	STOP	Detects brake switch signal	41 - GND	Brake pedal	Pressed	Battery Voltage
						Released	Below 0.3 V
42	BLU/YEL	RR -GND	Detects right-rear wheel sensor signal	—	—	—	
43	GRN/YEL	RR +B					
44	BLU/RED	ABS	Drives ABS indicator	44 - GND	Ignition switch ON (II)	About 6 V	
45	BLU/ORN	FL +B	Detects left-front wheel sensor signal	—	—	—	
46	BRN/WHT	FL -GND					
47	BLK	GND -P	Ground for the pump motor	—	—	—	

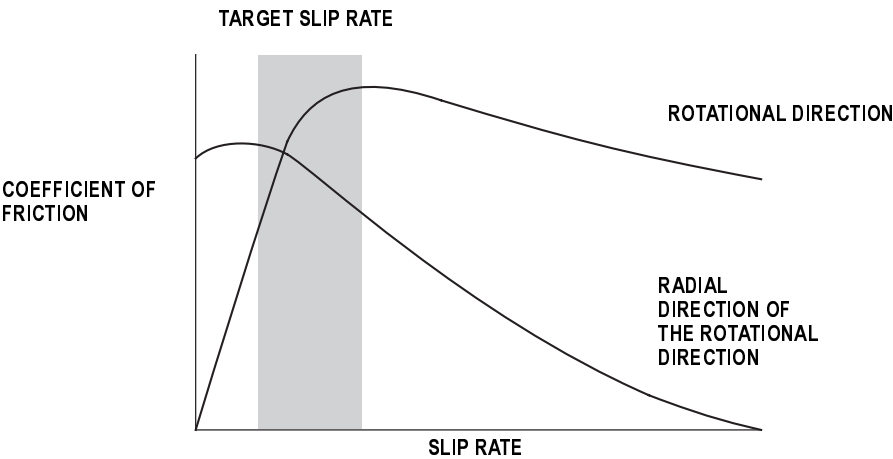
(cont'd)

System Description (cont'd)

Features

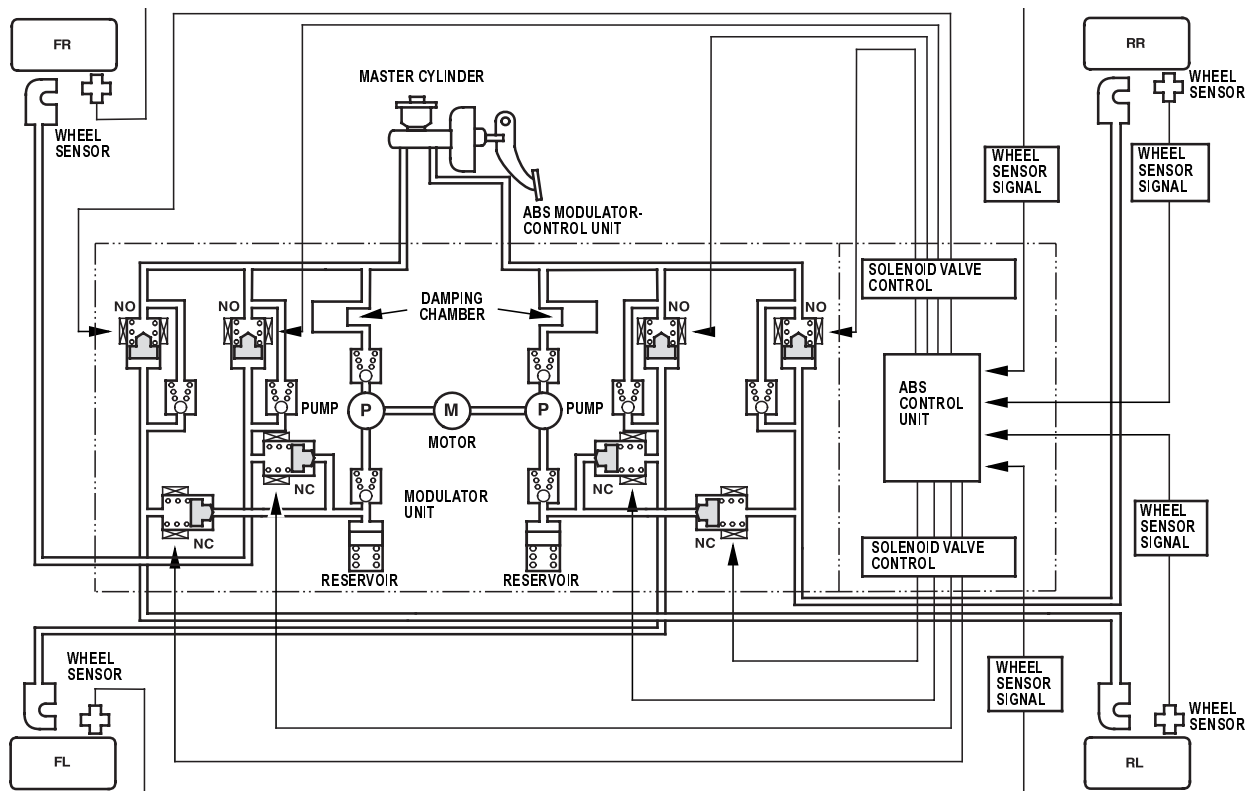
When the brake pedal is pressed during driving, the wheels can lock before the vehicle comes to a stop. In such an event, the maneuverability of the vehicle is reduced if the front wheels are locked, and the stability of the vehicle is reduced if the rear wheels are locked, creating an extremely unstable condition. The ABS precisely controls the slip rate of the wheels thereby ensuring the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle. The ABS calculates the slip rate of the wheels based on the wheel speed, then it controls the brake fluid pressure to reach the target slip rate.

Grip Force of Tire and Road Surface





COMPONENTS		MAIN FUNCTION
Wheel sensor		The wheel sensor outputs the speed signal to the ABS control unit according to the magnetic encoder's rotation speed.
Modulator-control unit	ABS control unit	The ABS control unit processes the signal from the wheel sensor, then outputs the ABS control signal to the modulator unit.
	Modulator unit	The modulator unit receives the control signal, then controls brake fluid pressure for each wheel.



NO: Normally Open  
NC: Normally Closed

(cont'd)

### System Description (cont'd)

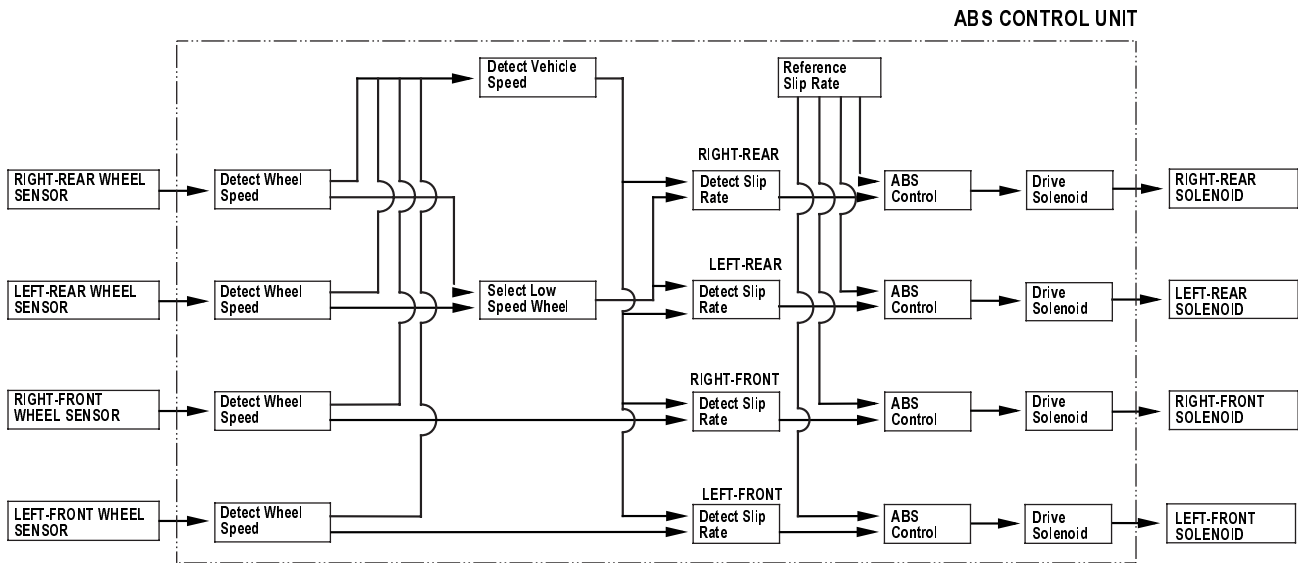
#### ABS Control Unit

##### Main Control

The ABS control unit detects the wheel speed based on the wheel sensor signal it received, then it calculates the vehicle speed based on the detected wheel speed. The control unit detects the vehicle speed during deceleration based on the rate of deceleration.

The ABS control unit calculates the slip rate of each wheel, and transmits the control signal to the modulator unit solenoid valve when the slip rate is high.

The pressure reduction control has three modes: pressure reducing, pressure retaining, and pressure intensifying.



#### Electronic Brake Distribution (EBD) Control

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) function helps control vehicle braking by adjusting the rear brake force before the ABS operates. Based on wheel sensor signals, the ABS control unit uses the modulator to control the rear brakes individually. When the rear wheel speed is less than the front wheel speed, the ABS control unit retains the current rear brake fluid pressure by closing the inlet valve in the modulator. As the rear wheel speed increases and approaches the front wheel speed, the control unit increases the rear brake fluid pressure by momentarily opening the inlet valve. This whole process is repeated very rapidly. While this is happening, there is kickback at the brake pedal.

During self-diagnosis, if the ABS control unit detects a problem that affects the EBD, it turns on the brake system indicator and the ABS indicator.



### Self-diagnosis Function

1. The ABS control unit is equipped with a main CPU and a sub-CPU. Each CPU checks the other for problems.
2. The CPUs check the circuit of the system.
3. The ABS control unit turns on the ABS indicator when the unit detects a problem and the unit stops the system.
4. The self-diagnosis can be classified into these two categories:
  - Initial diagnosis
  - Regular diagnosis

### On-board Diagnosis Function

The ABS can be diagnosed with the Honda PGM Tester.

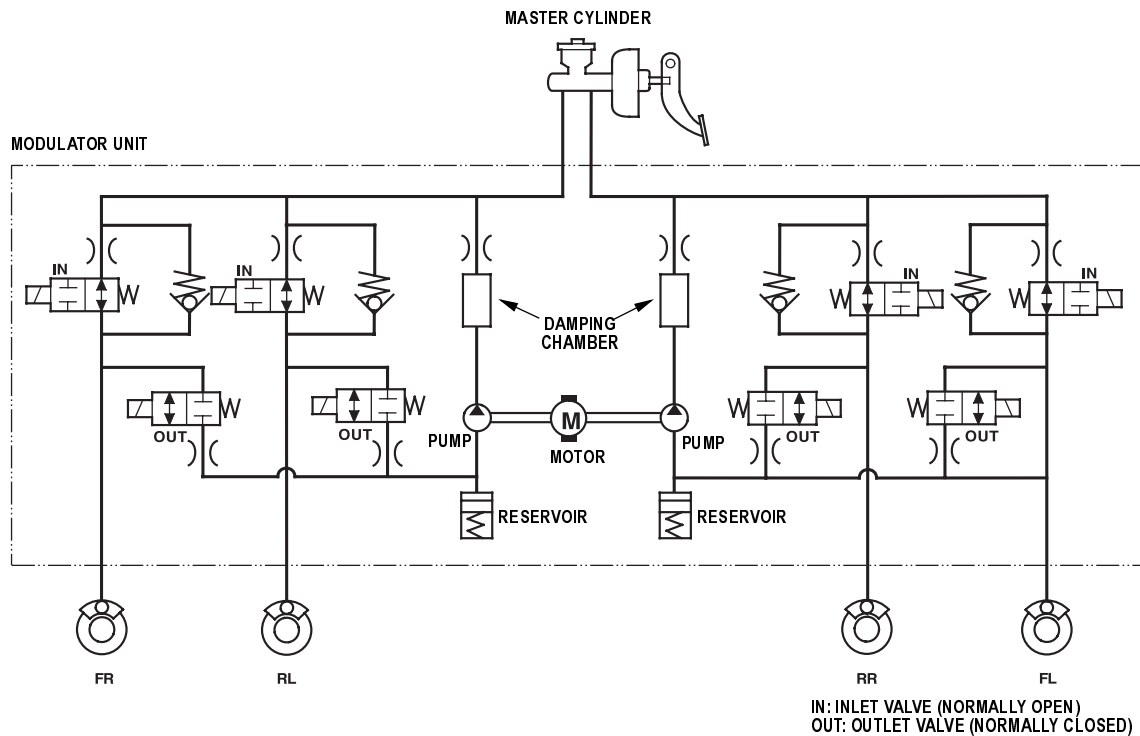
The ABS Checker cannot be used with this system. For air bleeding and checking wheel sensor signals, use the Honda PGM Tester. See the Honda PGM Tester user's manual for specific operating instructions.

(cont'd)

### System Description (cont'd)

#### ABS Modulator

The ABS modulator consists of the inlet solenoid valve, outlet solenoid valve, reservoir, pump, pump motor, and the damping chamber. The modulator reduces the caliper fluid pressure directly. It is a circulating-type modulator because the brake fluid circulates through the caliper, reservoir, and the master cylinder. The hydraulic control has three modes: pressure intensifying, pressure retaining, and pressure reducing. The hydraulic circuit is an independent four channel-type, one channel for each wheel.



**Pressure intensifying mode:** Inlet valve open, outlet valve closed  
Master cylinder fluid is flows to the caliper.

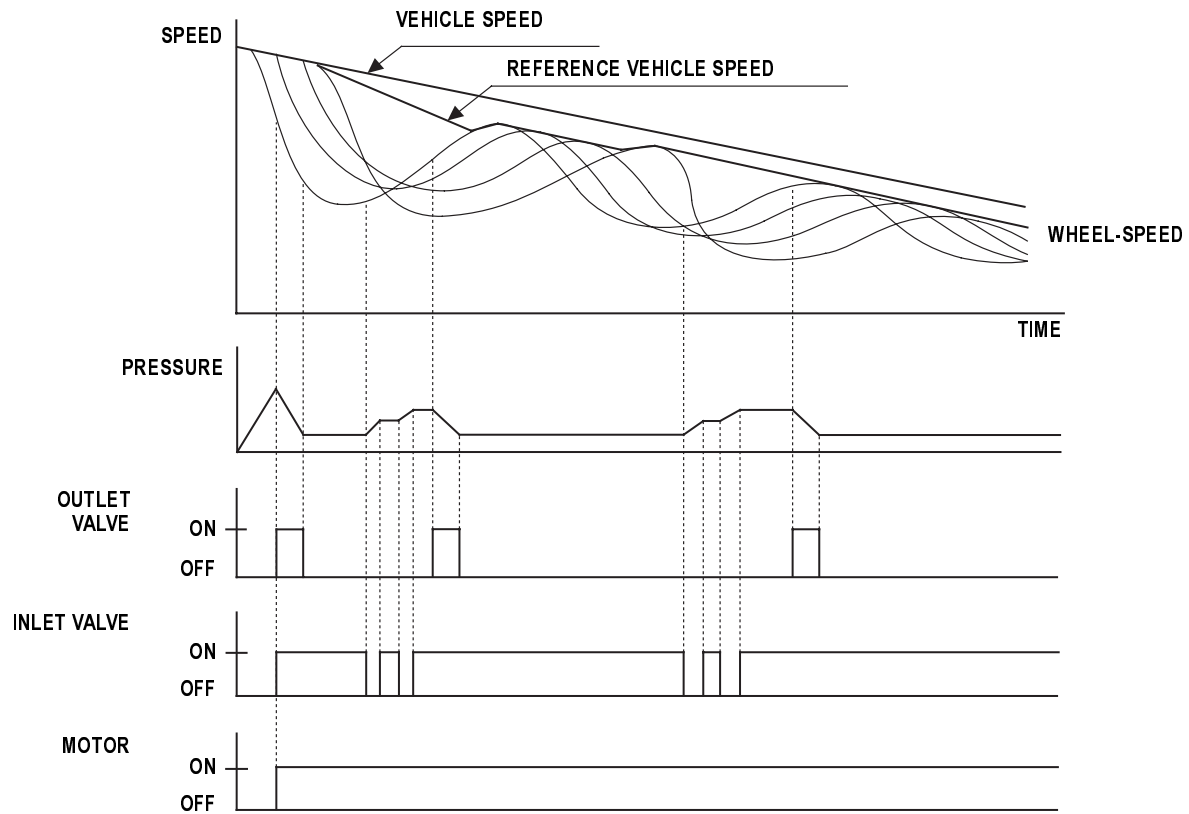
**Pressure retaining mode:** Inlet valve closed, outlet valve closed  
Caliper fluid is retained by the inlet valve and outlet valve.

**Pressure reducing mode:** Inlet valve closed, outlet valve open  
Caliper fluid flows through the outlet valve to the reservoir.

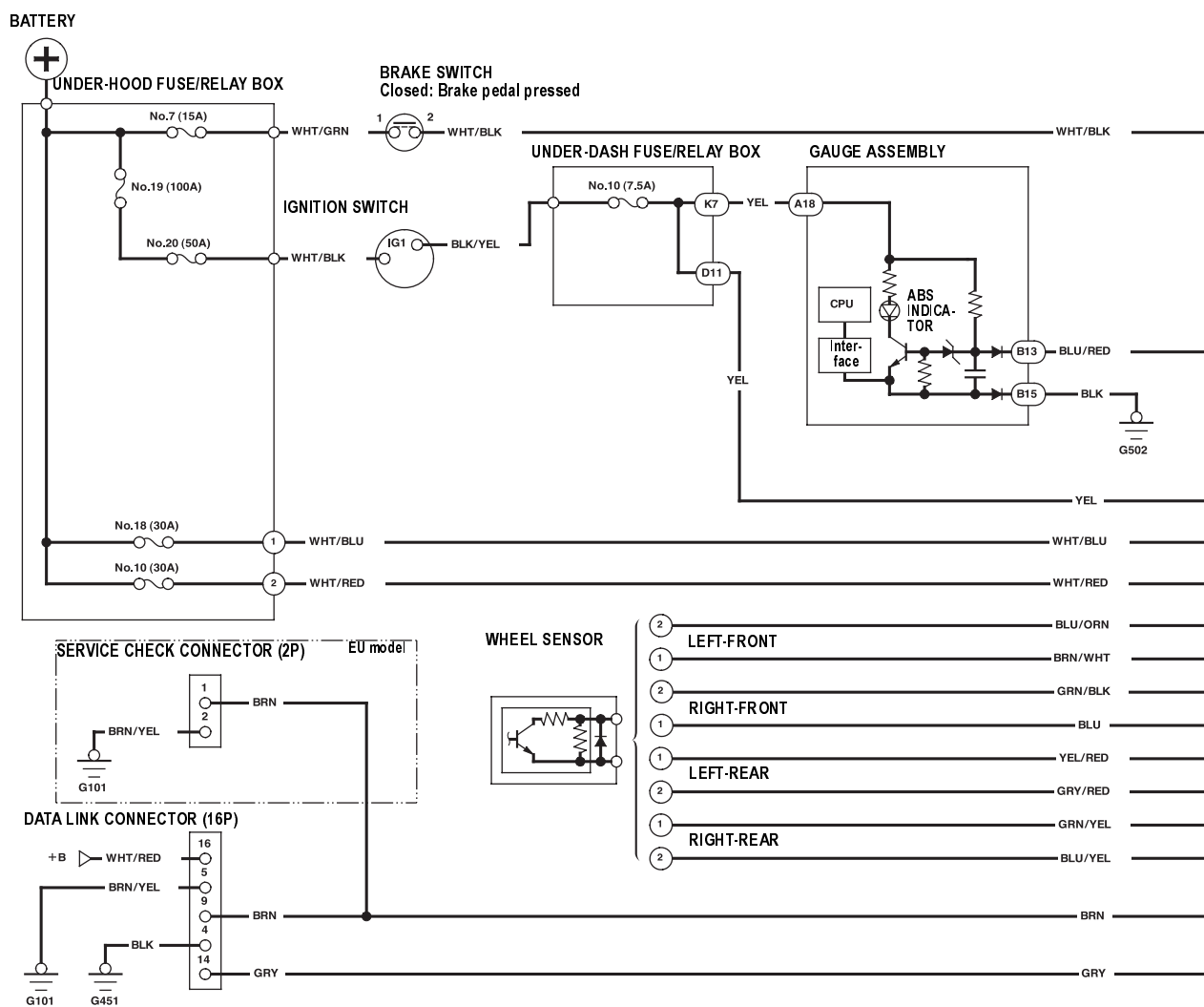
**Motor operation mode:** When starting the pressure reducing mode, the pump motor is ON.  
When stopping ABS operation, the pump motor is OFF.  
The reservoir fluid is pumped out by the pump, through the damping chamber, to the master cylinder.

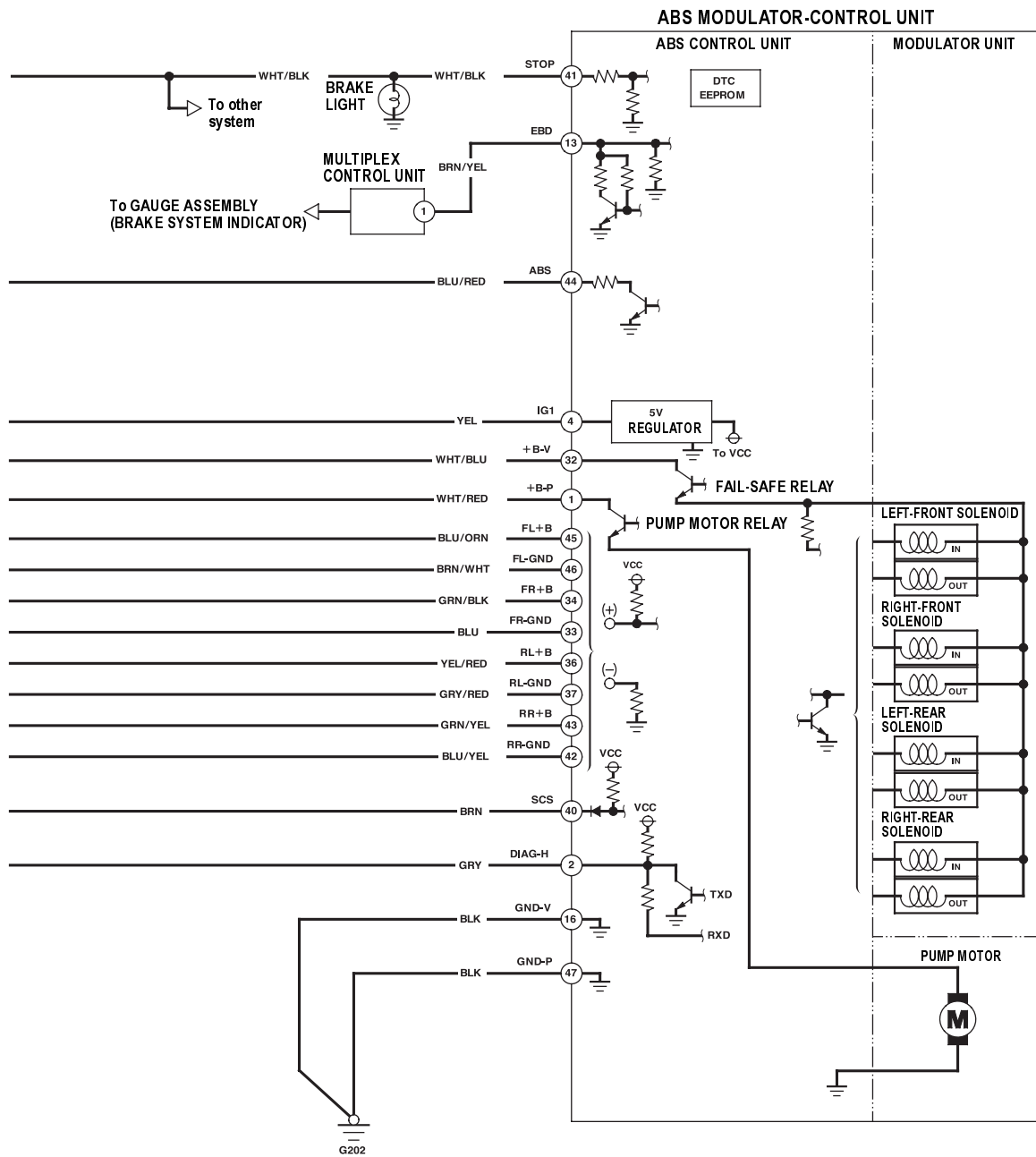
## Wheel Sensors

The wheel sensors are semiconductor type. The wheel sensors detect changes in magnetic polarity on the magnetic encoder in the wheel bearing. The ABS control unit calculates the wheel speed based on signals received from the wheel sensor.



When the wheel speed drops sharply below the vehicle speed, the outlet valve opens momentarily to reduce the caliper fluid pressure. The pump motor starts at this time. As the wheel speed is restored, the inlet valve opens momentarily to increase the caliper fluid pressure.



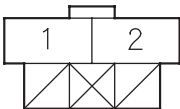


System Connectors

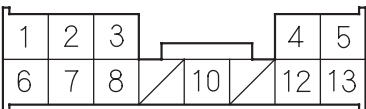
UNDER-HOOD  
FUSE/RELAY BOX  
2P CONNECTOR



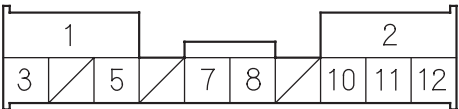
BRAKE SWITCH  
4P CONNECTOR



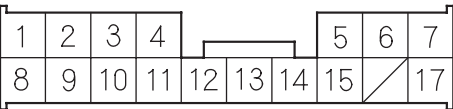
MULTIPLEX CONTROL UNIT  
13P CONNECTOR



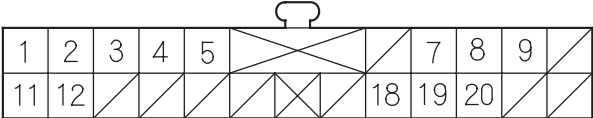
UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX CONNECTORS  
CONNECTOR D (12P)



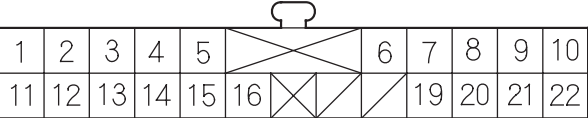
CONNECTOR K (17P)



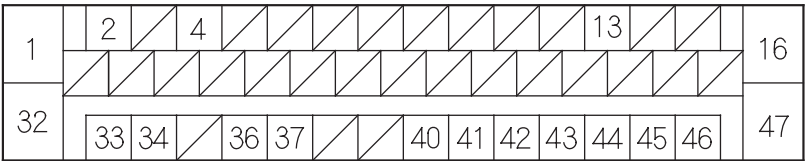
GAUGE ASSEMBLY CONNECTORS  
CONNECTOR A (22P)



CONNECTOR B (22P)

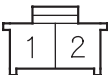


ABS CONTROL UNIT 47P CONNECTOR

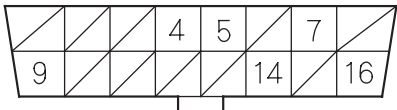


Wire side of female terminals

SERVICE CHECK CONNECTOR (2P)  
(EU model)



DATA LINK CONNECTOR (16P)



Terminal side of female terminals

WHEEL SENSOR 2P CONNECTORS

FRONT



Wire side of female terminals

REAR



Terminal side of male terminals



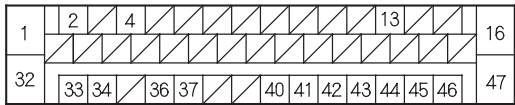


DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

8. Disconnect the wire harness 2P connector from the appropriate wheel sensor.
9. Check for continuity between body ground and the appropriate wheel sensor +B and GND terminals of the ABS control unit 47P connector individually (see table).

DTC	Appropriate Terminal	
	+B	GND
11 (Right-front)	FR +B: No. 34	FR - GND: No. 33
13 (Left-front)	FR +B: No. 45	FL - GND: No. 46
15 (Right-rear)	RR +B: No. 43	RR - GND: No. 42
17 (Left-rear)	RL +B: No. 36	RL - GND: No. 37

ABS CONTROL UNIT 47P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

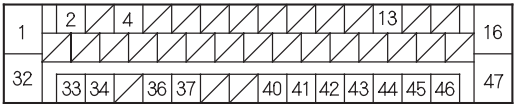
Is there continuity?

- Yes** Repair short to body ground in the wire between the ABS modulator-control unit and the wheel sensor.■
- No** Replace the wheel sensor.■

10. Measure the resistance between the appropriate wheel sensor +B and GND terminals of the ABS control unit 47P connector (see table), then measure the resistance between same terminals after changing positive tester probe and negative tester probe.

DTC	Appropriate Terminal	
	+B	GND
11 (Right-front)	FR +B: No. 34	FR - GND: No. 33
13 (Left-front)	FR +B: No. 45	FL - GND: No. 46
15 (Right-rear)	RR +B: No. 43	RR - GND: No. 42
17 (Left-rear)	RL +B: No. 36	RL - GND: No. 37

ABS CONTROL UNIT 47P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

Is the resistance infinity at both sides?

- Yes** Go to step 11.
- No** Go to step 12.



DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

DTC 12, 14, 16, 18: Wheel Sensor (Electrical Noise/ Intermittent Interruption)

NOTE: If the ABS indicator comes on because of electrical noise, the indicator goes off when you test-drive the vehicle at 19 mph (30 km/h).

- 1. Check the appropriate wheel sensor and magnetic encoder (see page 19B-38).

DTC	Appropriate Wheel Sensor
12	Right-front
14	Left-front
16	Right-rear
18	Left-rear

Are they OK?

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Reinstall or replace the appropriate wheel sensor or magnetic encoder.■

- 2. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
- 3. Disconnect the ABS control unit 47P connector.

- 4. Check for continuity between the appropriate wheel sensor GND terminal and other wheel sensor GND terminals (see table).

DTC	Appropriate Terminal	Appropriate Terminal		
12	FR-GND: No. 33	No. 46	No. 42	No. 37
14	FL-GND: No. 46	No. 33	No. 42	No. 37
16	RR-GND: No. 42	No. 33	No. 46	No. 37
18	RL-GND: No. 37	No. 33	No. 46	No. 42

ABS CONTROL UNIT 47P CONNECTOR

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47

Wire side of female terminals

Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the appropriate wheel sensor and the other wheel sensor.■

**No** Clear the DTC, and test-drive the vehicle. If the ABS indicator comes on and the same DTC is indicated, replace the ABS modulator-control unit.■

## DTC 21, 22, 23, 24: Magnetic Encoder

1. Clear the DTC (see step 1 on [page 19B-7](#)) .
2. Test-drive the vehicle at 19 mph (30 km/h) or more.  
*Does the ABS indicator come on, and are DTCs 21, 22, 23, 24 indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 3.  
**No** The system is OK at this time.■
3. Check the appropriate wheel sensor (see table) ([see page 19B-38](#)).

DTC	Appropriate Wheel Sensor
21	Right-front
22	Left-front
23	Right-rear
24	Left-rear

*Is the encoder OK?*

- Yes** Check for loose terminals in the ABS control unit 25P connector. If necessary, substitute a known-good ABS modulator-control unit, and recheck.■
- No** Replace the magnetic encoder.■

## DTC 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38: Solenoid

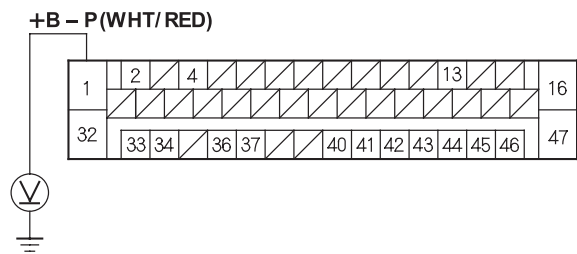
1. Clear the DTC (see step 1 on [page 19B-7](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
3. Verify the DTC.  
*Does the ABS indicator come on, and are DTCs 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38 indicated?*  
**Yes** Check for loose terminals in the ABS control unit 47P connector. If necessary, substitute a known-good ABS modulator-control unit, and recheck.■  
**No** The system is OK at this time.■

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

DTC 51: Motor Lock

- 1. Check the No. 10 (30A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.  
*Is the fuse OK?*  
**Yes** Reinstall the fuse, and go to step 2.  
**No** Replace the fuse, and recheck.■
- 2. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
- 3. Disconnect the ABS control unit 47P connector.
- 4. Reconnect the battery cable.
- 5. Measure the voltage between the ABS control unit 47P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

ABS CONTROL UNIT 47P CONNECTOR



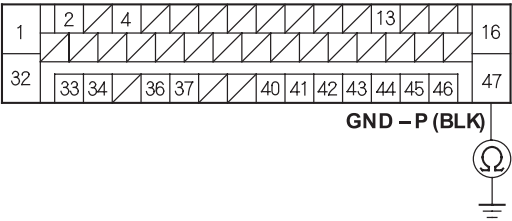
Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

- Yes** Go to step 6.
- No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 10 (30A) fuse and the ABS control unit.■

- 6. Check for continuity between the ABS control unit 47P connector terminal No. 47 and body ground.

ABS CONTROL UNIT 47P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

- Yes** Go to step 7.
  - No** Repair open in the wire between the ABS control unit and body ground (G202).■
- 7. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
  - 8. Reconnect the ABS control unit 47P connector.
  - 9. Reconnect the battery cable.
  - 10. Clear the DTC.
  - 11. Test-drive the vehicle at 6 mph (10 km/h) or more.  
*Does the ABS indicator come on, and is DTC 51 indicated?*  
**Yes** Replace the ABS modulator-control unit.■  
**No** The system is OK at this time.■

### DTC 52: Motor Stuck OFF

1. Check the No. 10 (30A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.

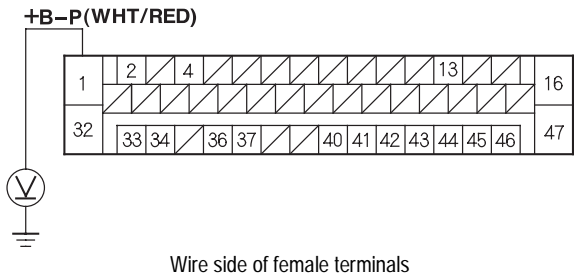
*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Reinstall the fuse, and go to step 2.

**No** Replace the fuse, and recheck.■

2. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
3. Disconnect the ABS control unit 47P connector.
4. Reconnect the battery cable.
5. Measure the voltage between the ABS control unit 47P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

ABS CONTROL UNIT 47P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

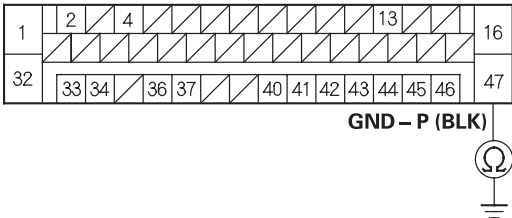
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 10 (30A) fuse and the ABS control unit.■

6. Check for continuity between the ABS control unit 47P connector terminal No. 47 and body ground.

ABS CONTROL UNIT 47P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Check for loose terminals in the ABS control unit 47P connector. If necessary, substitute a known-good ABS modulator control unit, and recheck.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ABS control unit and body ground (G202).■

**DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)****DTC 53: Motor Stuck ON**

1. Clear the DTC (see step 1 on [page 19B-7](#)).
2. Test-drive the vehicle.

*Does the ABS indicator come on and is DTC 53 indicated?*

**Yes** Replace the ABS modulator-control unit.■

**No** The system is OK at this time.■

**DTC 54: ABS Fail-safe Relay**

1. Clear the DTC (see step 1 on [page 19B-7](#)).
2. Test-drive the vehicle.

*Does the ABS indicator come on and is DTC 54 indicated?*

**Yes** Replace the ABS modulator-control unit.■

**No** Intermittent failure; the vehicle is OK at this time.■





### DTC 61, 62: IG1 Voltage

1. Clear the DTC (see step 1 on [page 19B-7](#)).
2. Test-drive the vehicle at 6 mph (10 km/h) or more.

*Does the ABS indicator come on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** The system is OK at this time.■

3. Verify the DTC.

*Is DTC 61 or 62 indicated?*

**Yes** Check the charging system.■

**No** Perform the appropriate troubleshooting for the DTC.■

### DTC 81: Central Processing Unit (CPU) Diagnosis, and ROM/RAM Diagnosis

1. Clear the DTC (see step 1 on [page 19B-7](#)).

2. Test-drive the vehicle.

*Does the ABS indicator come on and is DTC 81 indicated?*

**Yes** Replace the ABS modulator-control unit.■

**No** Intermittent failure; the vehicle is OK at this time.■

### ABS Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting

#### ABS indicator does not come on

1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and watch the ABS indicator.

*Does the ABS indicator come on?*

**Yes** The system is OK at this time.■

**No** Go to step 2.

2. Turn the ignition switch OFF then ON (II) again.

*Does the brake system indicator come on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Repair open in the indicator power source circuit.■

- Blown No. 10 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.
- Open in the wire between the No. 10 (7.5A) fuse and the gauge assembly.
- Open circuit inside the fuse box.

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
5. Disconnect the ABS control unit 47P connector.
6. Reconnect the battery cable.
7. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

*Does the ABS indicator come on?*

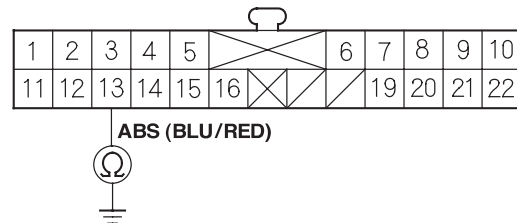
**Yes** Check for loose terminals in the ABS control unit 47P connector. If necessary, substitute a known-good ABS modulator-control unit, and recheck.■

**No** Go to step 8.

8. Remove the gauge assembly ([see page 22A-74](#)).
9. Disconnect the gauge assembly connector B (22P).

10. Check for continuity between the gauge assembly connector B (22P) terminal No. 13 and body ground.

GAUGE ASSEMBLY CONNECTOR B (22P)



Wire side of female terminals

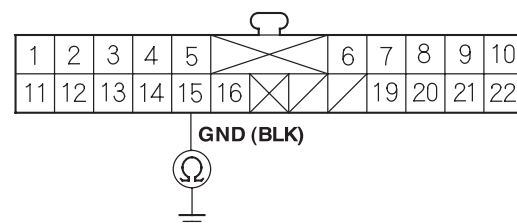
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short to body ground in the wire between the gauge assembly and the ABS control unit.■

**No** Go to step 11.

11. Check for continuity between the gauge assembly connector B (22P) terminal No. 15 and body ground.

GAUGE ASSEMBLY CONNECTOR B (22P)



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

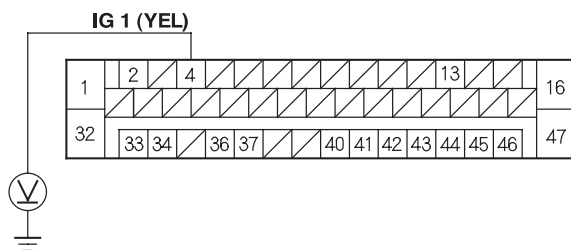
**Yes** Check for loose terminals in the gauge assembly connectors. If the connector is OK, replace the gauge assembly.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the gauge assembly and body ground (G502).■

## ABS indicator does not go off

1. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
2. Disconnect the ABS control unit 47P connector.
3. Reconnect the battery cable.
4. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
5. Measure the voltage between the ABS control unit 47P connector terminal No. 4 and body ground.

ABS CONTROL UNIT 47P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

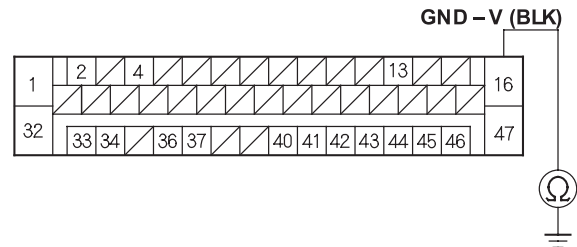
**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 10 (7.5 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box and the ABS control unit.■

6. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

7. Check for continuity between the ABS control unit 47P connector terminal No. 16 and body ground.

ABS CONTROL UNIT 47P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

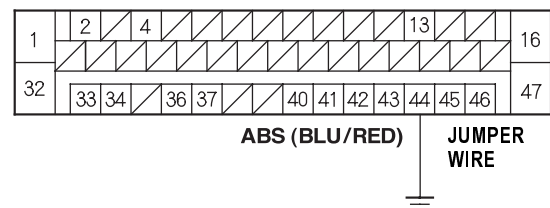
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ABS control unit and body ground (G202).■

8. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
9. Connect the ABS control unit 47P connector terminal No. 44 and body ground with a jumper wire.

ABS CONTROL UNIT 47P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Does the ABS indicator go off?*

**Yes** Check for loose terminals in the ABS control unit 47P connector. If necessary, substitute a known-good ABS modulator-control unit, and recheck.■

**No** Go to step 10.

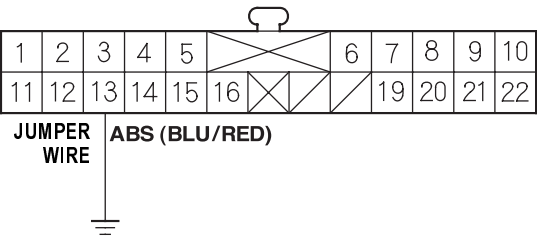
(cont'd)

ABS Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

ABS indicator does not go off (cont'd)

- 10. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- 11. Remove the jumper wire from the ABS control unit 47P connector.
- 12. Remove the gauge assembly (see page 22A-74).
- 13. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
- 14. Connect the gauge assembly connector B (22P) terminal No. 13 and body ground with a jumper wire.

GAUGE ASSEMBLY CONNECTOR B (22P)



Wire side of female terminals

Does the ABS indicator go off?

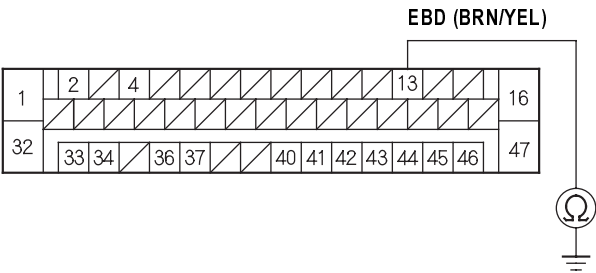
- Yes** Repair open in the wire between the gauge assembly and the ABS control unit.■
- No** Check for loose terminals in the gauge assembly connectors. If the connectors are OK, replace the gauge assembly.■

Brake System Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting

Brake system indicator does not come on

- 1. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
- 2. Disconnect the multiplex control unit 13P connector and the ABS control unit 47P connector.
- 3. Check for continuity between the ABS control unit 47P connector terminal No. 13 and body ground.

ABS CONTROL UNIT 47P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

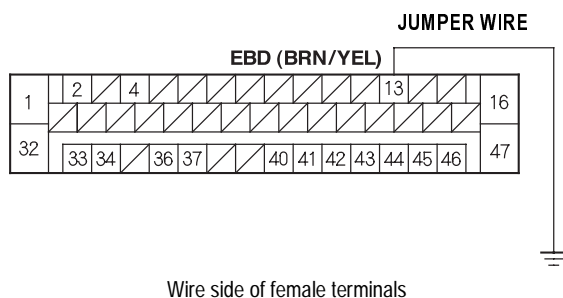
Is there continuity?

- Yes** Repair short to body ground in the wire between the multiplex control unit and the ABS control unit.■
- No** Go to multiplex control system troubleshooting (see page 22A-235).■

## Brake system indicator does not go off

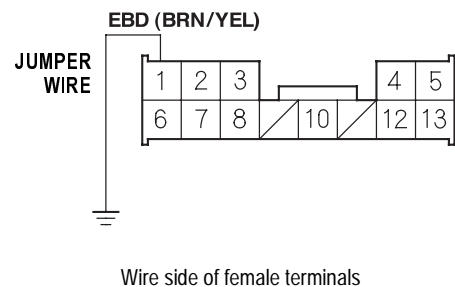
1. Start the engine.
2. Release the parking brake.  
*Does the brake system indicator go off?*  
**Yes** The system is OK at this time.■  
**No** Go to step 3.
3. Check the brake fluid level.  
*Is the level OK?*  
**Yes** Go to step 4.  
**No** Refill the brake fluid, and recheck.■
4. Check the ABS indicator.  
*Does the ABS indicator stay on?*  
**Yes** Read the ABS DTC ([see page 19B-5](#)), and do applicable troubleshooting for the DTC.■  
**No** Go to step 5.
5. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
6. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
7. Disconnect the ABS control unit 47P connector.
8. Reconnect the battery cable.
9. Connect the ABS control unit 47P connector terminal No. 13 and body ground with a jumper wire.

ABS CONTROL UNIT 47P CONNECTOR



10. Start the engine.
11. Check the brake system indicator.  
*Does the brake system indicator go off?*  
**Yes** Replace the ABS modulator-control unit.■  
**No** Go to step 12.
12. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
13. Connect the multiplex control unit 13P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground with a jumper wire.

MULTIPLEX CONTROL UNIT 13P CONNECTOR



14. Start the engine.
15. Check the brake system indicator.  
*Does the brake system indicator go off?*  
**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the multiplex control unit and the ABS control unit.■  
**No** Go to multiplex control system troubleshooting ([see page 22A-235](#)).

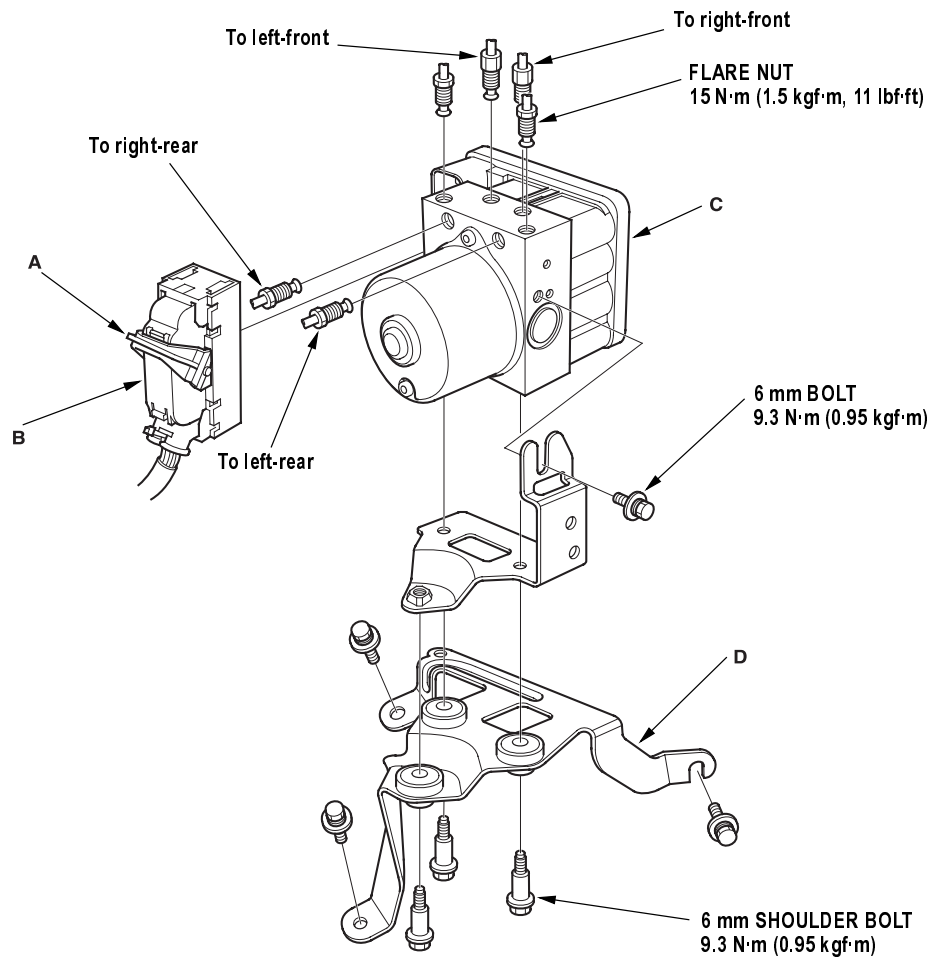
## ABS Modulator-Control Unit Removal and Installation

### NOTE:

- Do not spill brake fluid on the vehicle; it may damage the paint; if brake fluid gets on the paint, wash it off immediately with water.
- Be careful not to damage or deform the brake lines during removal and installation.
- To prevent the brake fluid from flowing, plug and cover the hose ends and joints with a shop towel or equivalent material.

### Removal

1. Turn the ignition switch.
2. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
3. Pull up the lock (A) of the ABS control unit 47P connector (B), then disconnect the connector.





4. Disconnect the six brake lines.
5. Remove the ABS modulator-control unit (C)/bracket (D) from the body.
6. Remove the two 6 mm shoulder bolts and the 6 mm bolt from the bracket, then remove the ABS modulator-control unit from the bracket.

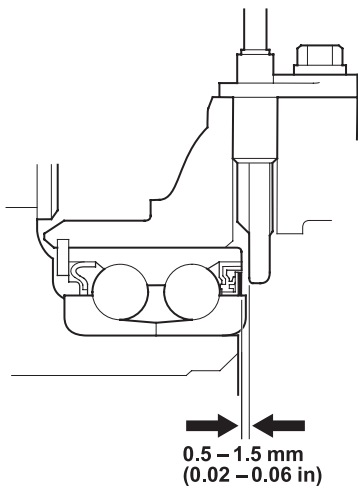
### Installation

1. Install the ABS modulator-control unit to the bracket, then tighten the two 6 mm shoulder bolts and the 6 mm bolt.
2. Install the ABS modulator-control unit/bracket to the body.
3. Align the connecting surface of the ABS control unit 47P connector.
4. Push in the lock of the ABS control unit 47P connector, then connect the connector.
5. Connect the six brake lines.
6. Bleed the brake system, starting with the front wheels.
7. Start the engine, and check that the ABS indicator and brake system indicator go off.
8. Test-drive the vehicle, and check that the ABS indicator and brake system indicator do not come on.

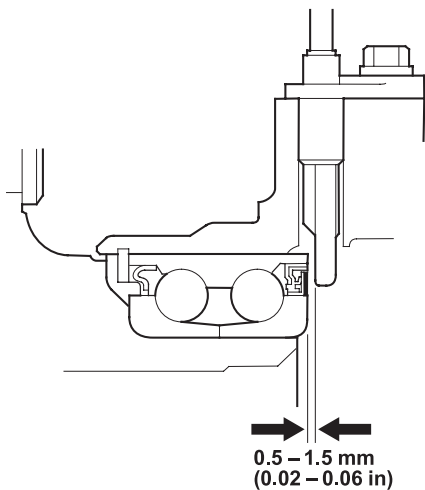
## Wheel Sensor Inspection

1. Remove the knuckle.  
Front ([see page 18-12](#)).  
Rear ([see page 18-27](#)).
2. Check the magnetic encoder after cleaning the encoder. If necessary, replace the encoder.

Front



Rear



3. Measure the air gap between the wheel sensor and the magnetic encoder all the way around while rotating the encoder.

**Standard:**

**Front/Rear:** 0.5 - 1.5 mm (0.02-0.06 in.)

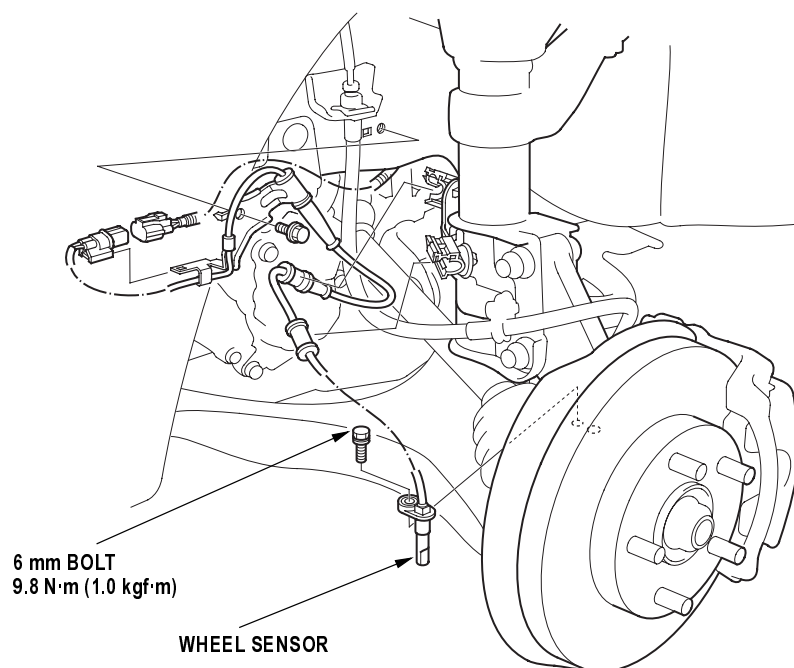
4. Install the knuckle.  
Front (see step 14 on [page 18-15](#)).  
Rear (see step 14 on [page 18-30](#)).



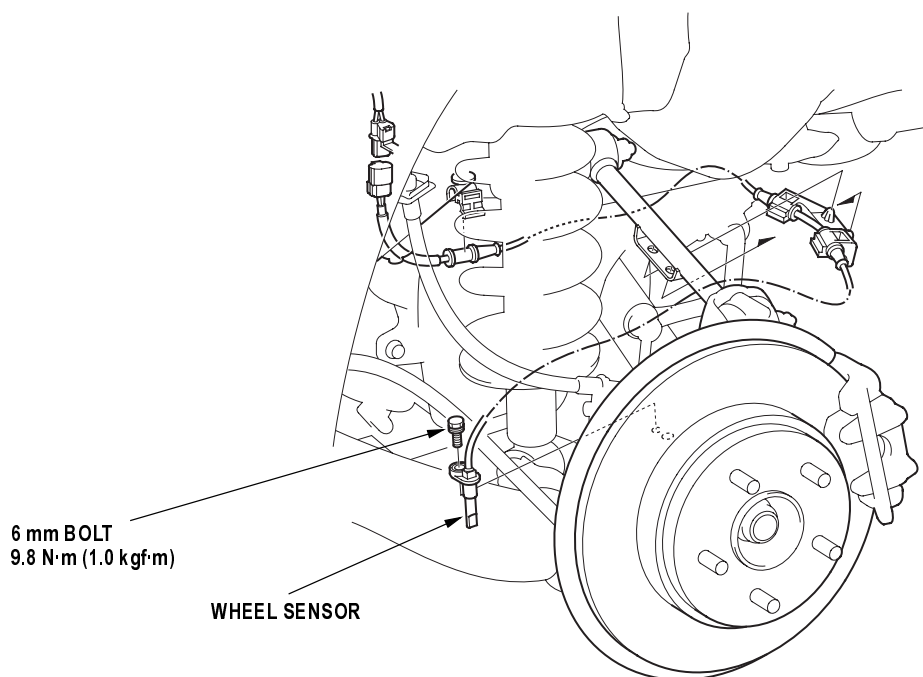
### Wheel Sensor Replacement

NOTE: Install the sensors carefully to avoid twisting the wires.

Front:



Rear:





## Body

Doors .....	20-2
Mirrors .....	20-38
Glass .....	20-43
Sunroof .....	20-63
Interior Trim .....	20-75
Dashboard .....	20-87
Seats .....	20-102
Bumpers .....	20-130
Hood .....	20-132
Tailgate .....	20-135
Fuel Fill Door .....	20-138
Exterior Trim .....	20-139
Fenderwell .....	20-155
Openers .....	20-158
Frame .....	20-168

### SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS) (If body maintenance is required)

The CR-V SRS includes a driver's airbag in the steering wheel hub, a passenger's airbag in the dashboard above the glove box, seat belt tensioners in the front seat belt retractors, seat belt buckle tensioners in the front seat belt buckles, and side airbags in the front seat-backs. Information necessary to safely service the SRS is included in this Service Manual. Items marked with an asterisk ( ) on the contents page include or are located near SRS components.

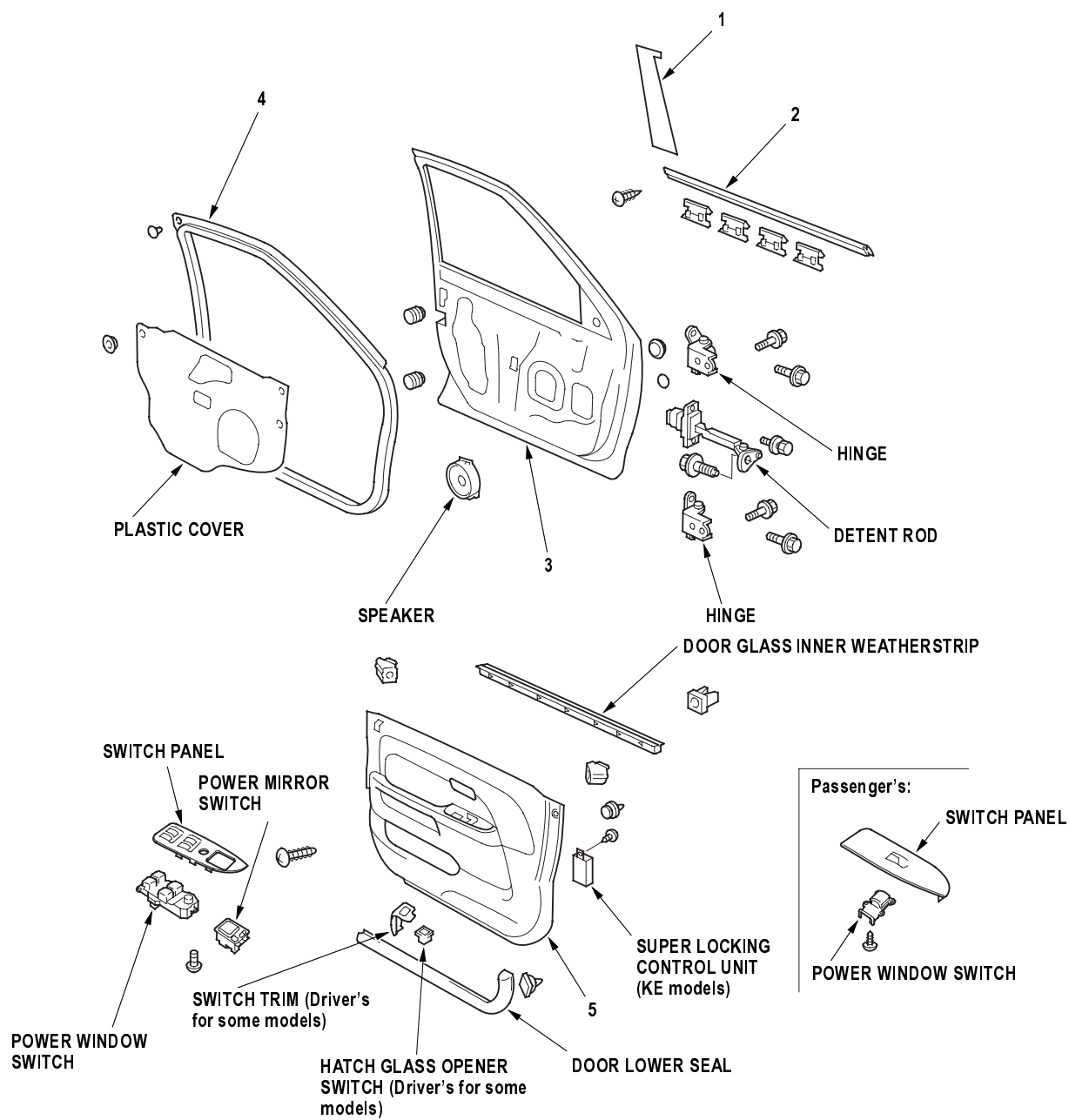
Servicing, disassembling, or replacing these items will require special precautions and tools, and should be done only by an authorized Honda dealer.

- To avoid rendering the SRS inoperative, which could lead to personal injury or death in the event of a severe frontal collision, all SRS service work must be performed by an authorized Honda dealer.
- Improper service procedures, including incorrect removal and installation of the SRS could lead to personal injury caused by unintentional deployment of the airbags and side airbags.
- Do not bump the SRS unit. Otherwise, the system may fail in a collision, or the airbags may deploy when the ignition switch is ON (II).
- SRS electrical connectors are identified by yellow color coding. Related components are located in the steering column, front console, dashboard, dashboard lower panel, in the dashboard above the glove box, in the front seats, and around the floor. Do not use electrical test equipment on these circuits.

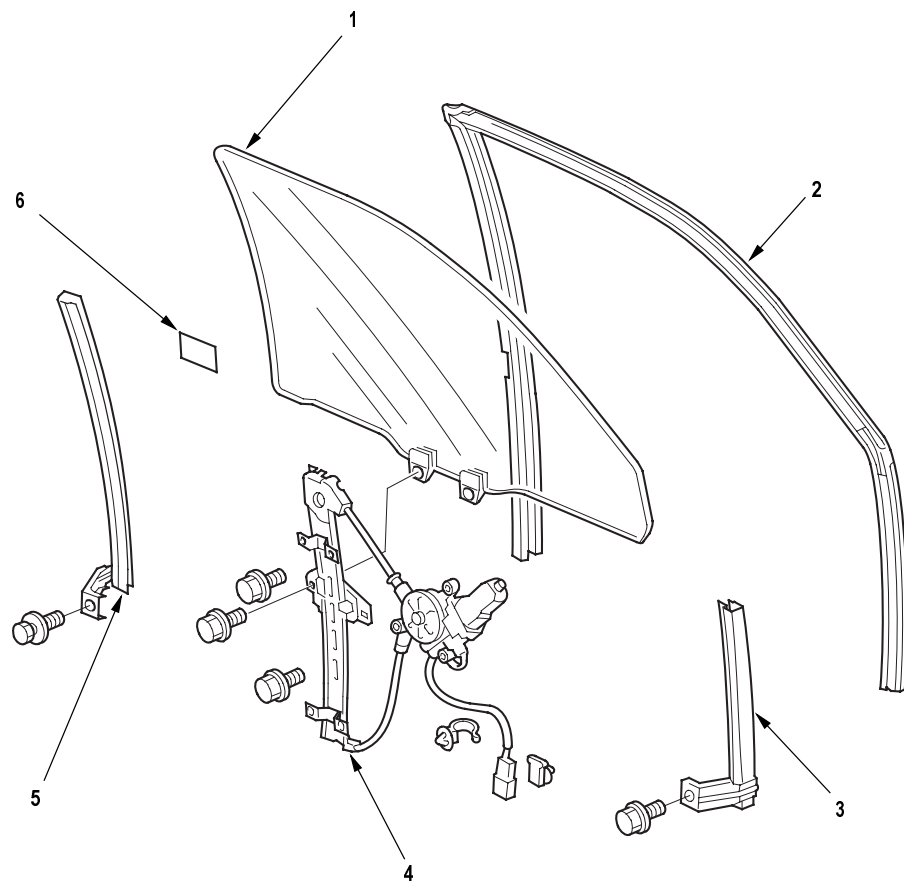


Doors

Component Location Index - Front Door



- |   |                               |   |
|---|-------------------------------|---|
| 1 | DOOR CHANNEL TAPE             | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-19</a>         |
| 2 | DOOR GLASS OUTER WEATHERSTRIP | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-17</a>         |
| 3 | DOOR                          | Position Adjustment, <a href="#">page 20-36</a> |
| 4 | DOOR WEATHERSTRIP             | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-18</a>         |
| 5 | DOOR PANEL                    | Removal/Installation, <a href="#">page 20-9</a> |



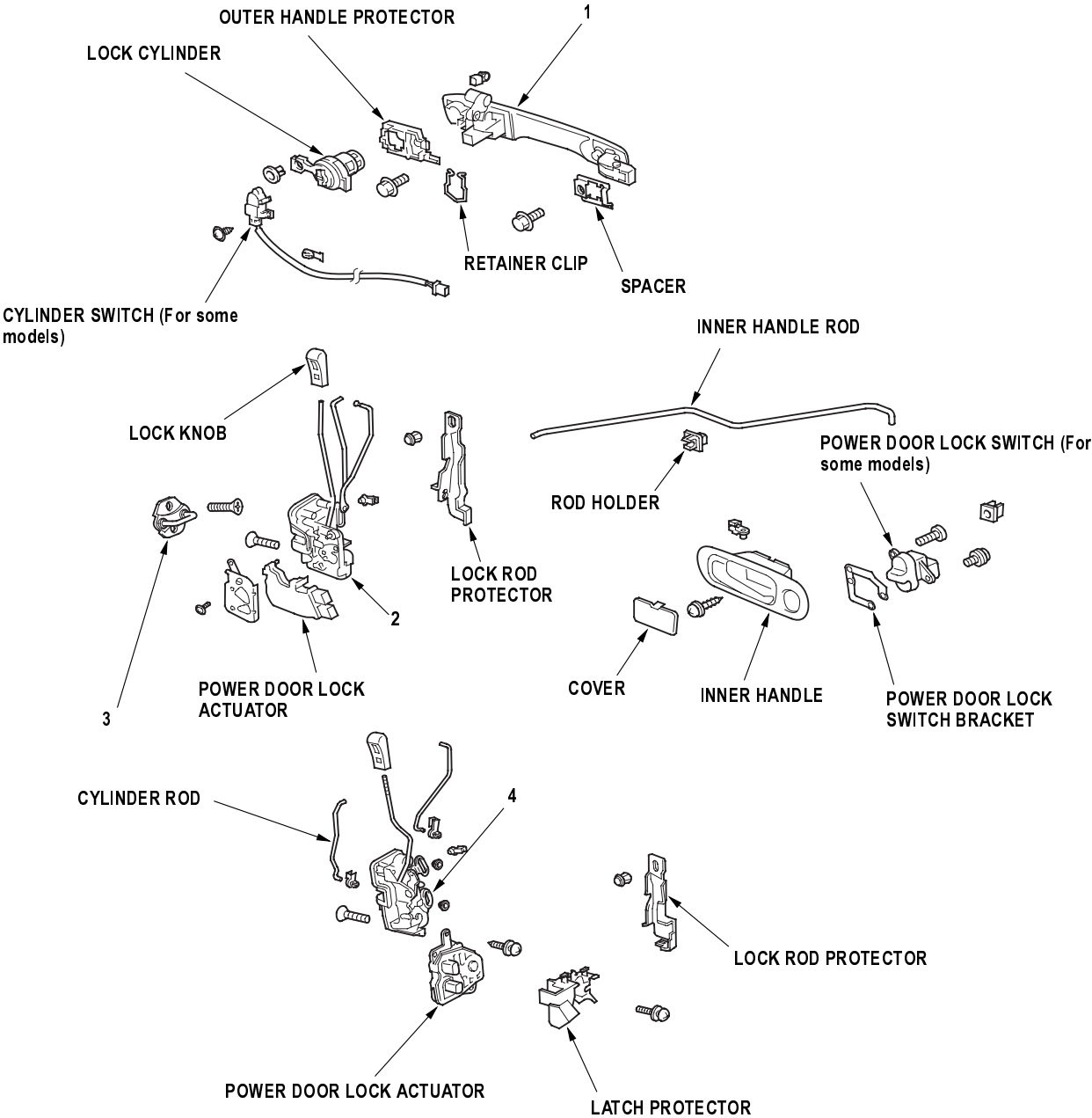
- 1 GLASS
- 2 GLASS RUN CHANNEL
- 3 FRONT LOWER CHANNEL
- 4 REGULATOR
- 5 CENTER LOWER CHANNEL
- 6 IMMOBILIZER LABEL (for some models)

Replacement, [page 20-16](#); Adjustment, [page 20-34](#)

Replacement, [page 20-16](#)

(cont'd)

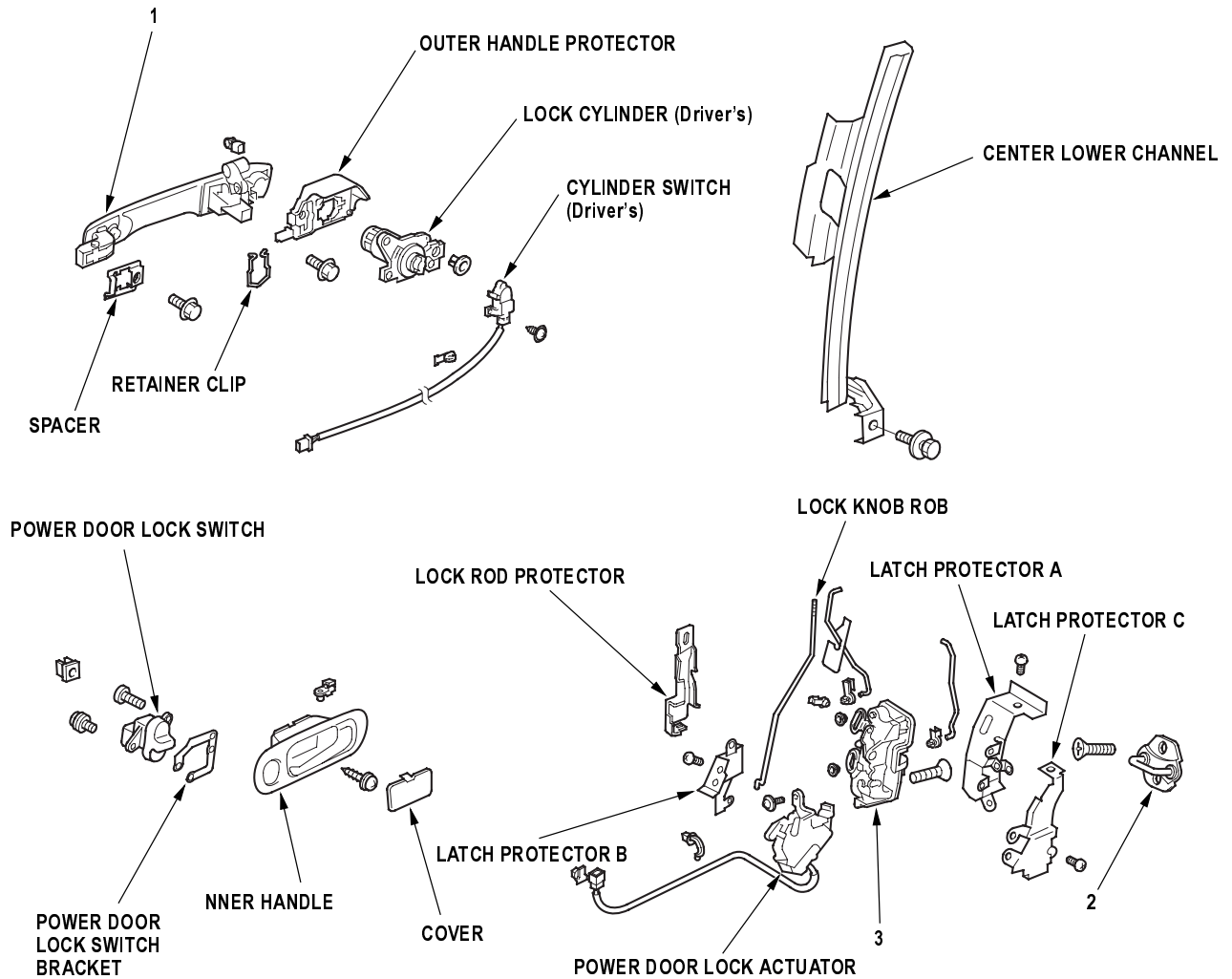
Component Location Index - Front Door (cont'd)



- |   |                    |   |
|---|--------------------|---|
| 1 | OUTER HANDLE       | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-11</a> |
| 2 | LATCH (HONDA LOCK) | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-14</a> |
| 3 | STRIKER            | Adjustment, <a href="#">page 20-37</a>  |
| 4 | LATCH (MITSUI)     | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-14</a> |

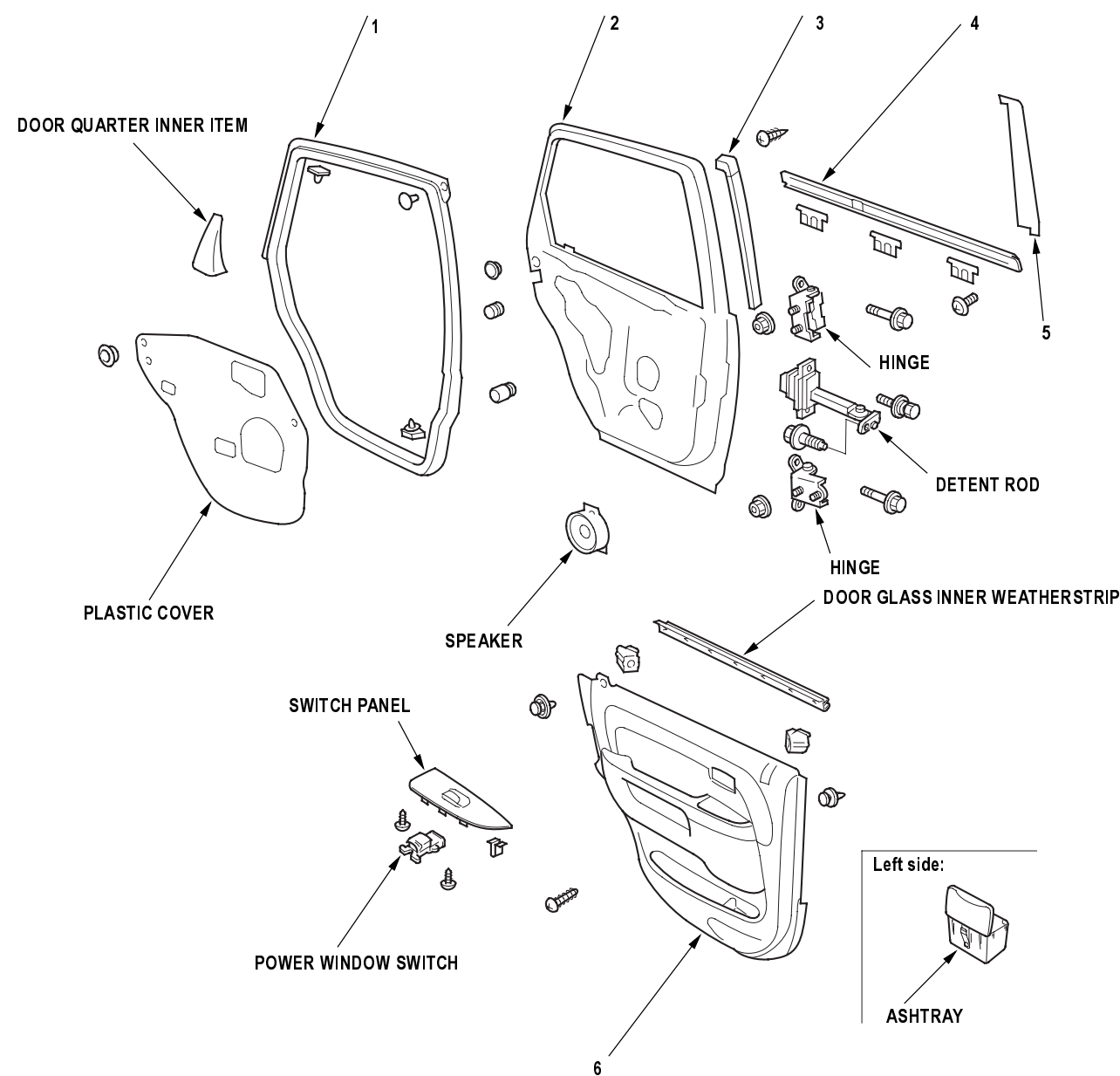


With Super Locking:



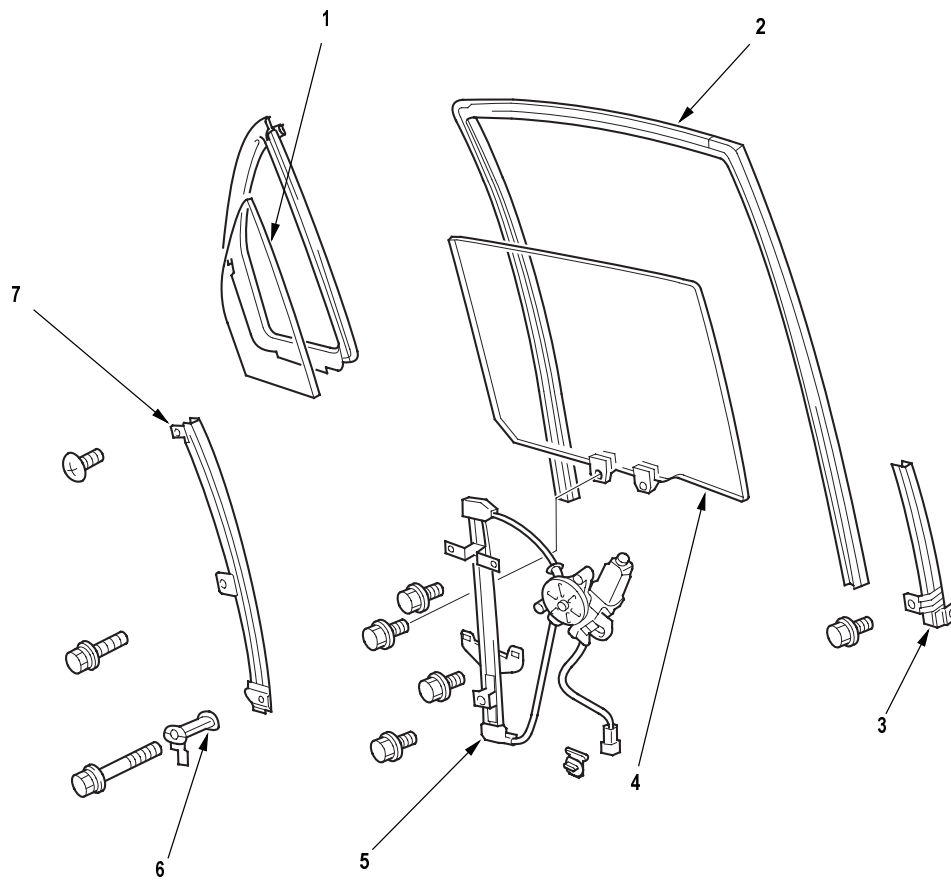
- |   |              |   |
|---|--------------|---|
| 1 | OUTER HANDLE | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-11</a> |
| 2 | STRIKER      | Adjustment, <a href="#">page 20-37</a>  |
| 3 | LATCH        | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-14</a> |

Component Location Index - Rear Door



- |   |                               |  |
|---|-------------------------------|--|
| 1 | DOOR WEATHERSTRIP             | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-30</a>          |
| 2 | DOOR                          | Position Adjustment, <a href="#">page 20-36</a>  |
| 3 | DOOR CENTER PILLAR SEAL       | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-31</a>          |
| 4 | DOOR GLASS OUTER WEATHERSTRIP | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-30</a>          |
| 5 | DOOR CHANNEL TAPE             | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-32</a>          |
| 6 | DOOR PANEL                    | Removal/Installation, <a href="#">page 20-21</a> |

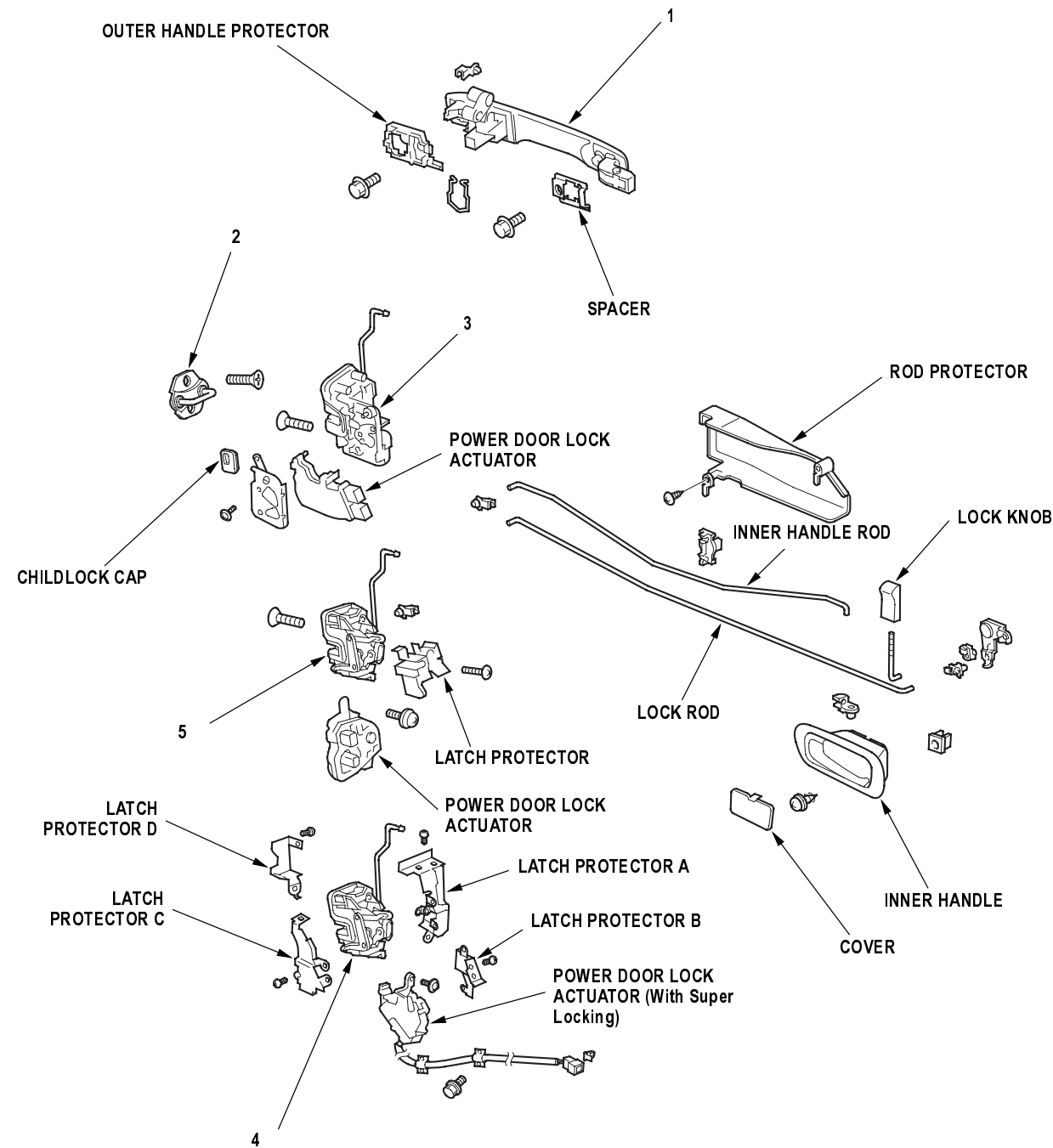




- |   |                     |  |
|---|---------------------|--|
| 1 | QUARTER GLASS       | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-50</a>  |
| 2 | GLASS RUN CHANNEL   |  |
| 3 | FRONT LOWER CHANNEL |  |
| 4 | GLASS               | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-27</a> ; Adjustment, <a href="#">page 20-34</a> |
| 5 | REGULATOR           | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-27</a>  |
| 6 | COLLAR              |  |
| 7 | CENTER CHANNEL      |  |

(cont'd)

Component Location Index - Rear Door (cont'd)



- |   |                                    |   |
|---|------------------------------------|---|
| 1 | OUTER HANDLE                       | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-23</a> |
| 2 | STRIKER                            | Adjustment, <a href="#">page 20-37</a>  |
| 3 | LATCH (HONDA LOCK)                 | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-25</a> |
| 4 | LATCH (MITUI) (With Super Locking) | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-25</a> |
| 5 | LATCH (MITSUI)                     | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-25</a> |



## Front Door Panel Removal/Installation

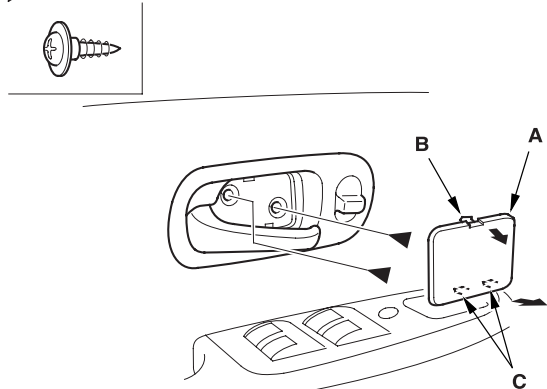
### Special Tools Required

Trim pad remover, Snap-on A 177A or equivalent, commercially available.

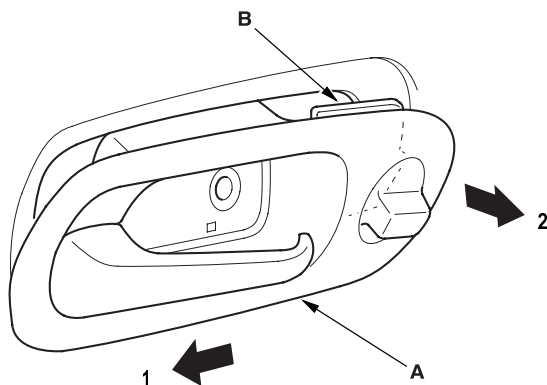
1. Using a flat-tip screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, pry out on the upper portion of the cover (A) to release the hooks (B), then remove the cover.

### Fastener Locations

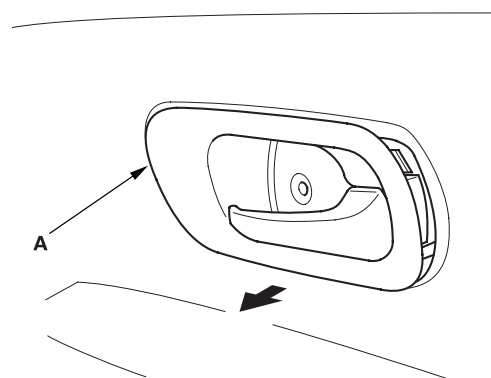
► : Screw, 2



2. Remove the screws.
3. Driver's door with power door lock switch: Pull out the inner handle (A) rearward and out half-way to release the power door lock switch bracket (B) from the door panel (C).

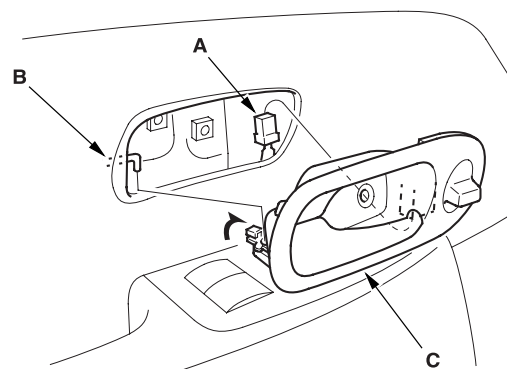


4. Driver's door without power door lock switch, and passenger's door: Pull out the inner handle (A) half-way.



5. If equipped, disconnect the power door lock switch connector (A) on driver's side.

Disconnect the inner handle rod (B), then remove the inner handle (C).



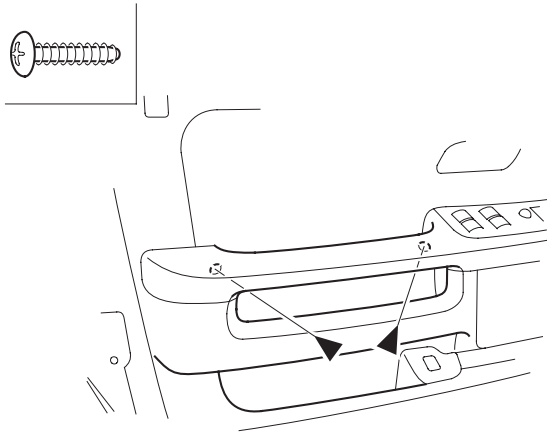
(cont'd)

## Front Door Panel Removal/Installation (cont'd)

6. Lower the glass fully.
7. Remove the screws from under the armrest.

## Fastener Locations

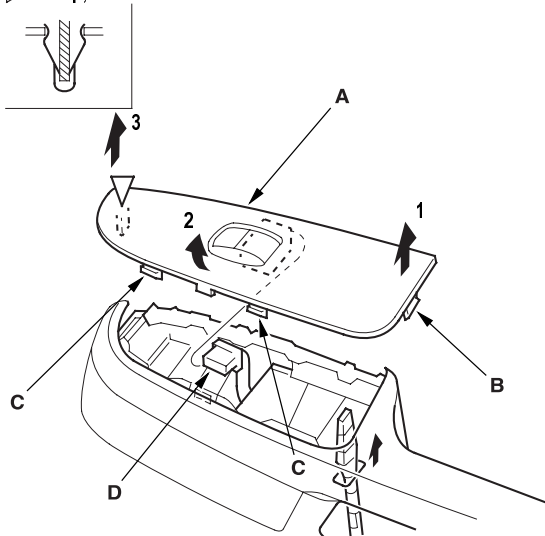
► : Screw, 2



8. Passenger's door: Remove the switch panel (A).
  - 1 Insert a flat-tip screwdriver wrapped with protective tape through a hole under the armrest, and push up the back of the panel to release the rear hook (B).
  - 2 Pull out along the edge of the panel to release the hooks (C) and clip.
  - 3 Disconnect the power window switch connector (D).

## Fastener Location

▷ : Clip, 1

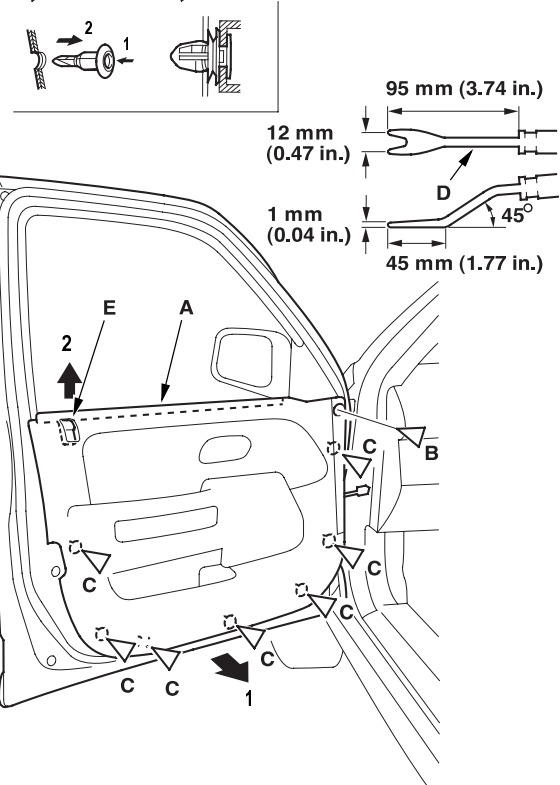


9. Remove the mirror mount cover (see step 2 on [page 20-39](#)).
10. Remove the door panel (A) with as little bending as possible to avoid creasing or breaking it.
  - 1 Release the clip (B).
  - 2 Release the clips (C) that hold the door panel with a commercially available trim pad remover (D).
  - 3 Starting at the rear, pull the door panel upward, then release the lock knob (E).

## Fastener Locations

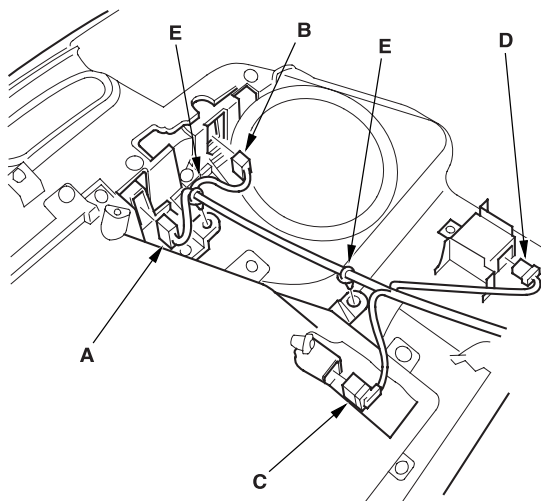
B▷ : Clip, 1

C▷ : Clip, 8





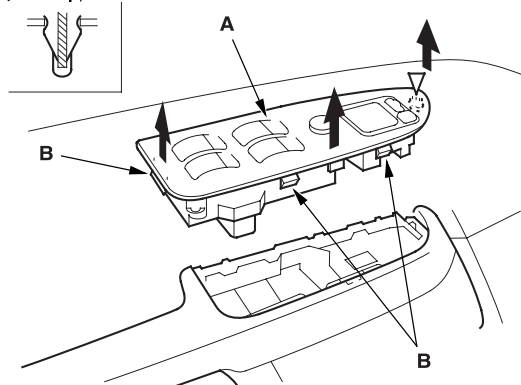
11. Driver's door: Disconnect the power window switch connector (A), power mirror switch connector (B), and if equipped, disconnect the hatch glass opener switch connector (C) and super locking control unit connector (D), and detach the harness clips (E) from the back of the door panel. RHD is shown, LHD is symmetrical except it has no super locking control unit.



12. Driver's door: Push up the back of the switch panel (A) to release the clip and hooks (B), then remove the panel.

#### Fastener Location

▷ : Clip, 1



13. Install the panel in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
- Replace any damaged clips.
  - Make sure the connectors are plugged in properly, and the rod is connected properly.

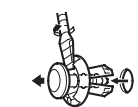
## Front Door Outer Handle Replacement

NOTE: Put on gloves to protect your hands.

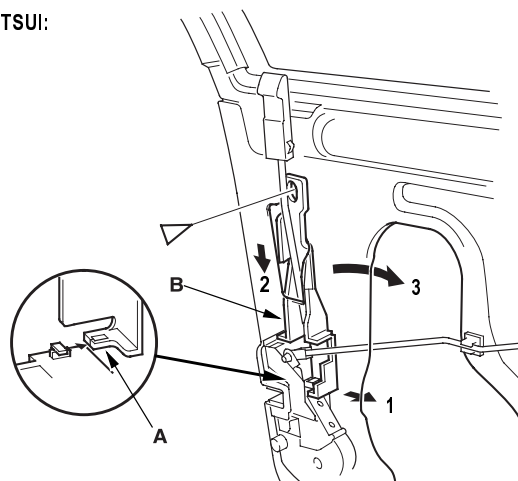
1. Remove these items:
  - Door panel ([see page 20-9](#))
  - Plastic cover, as necessary ([see page 20-2](#))
2. Raise the glass fully.
3. Release the clip and detach the hook (A), then remove the lock rod protector (B).

#### Fastener Location

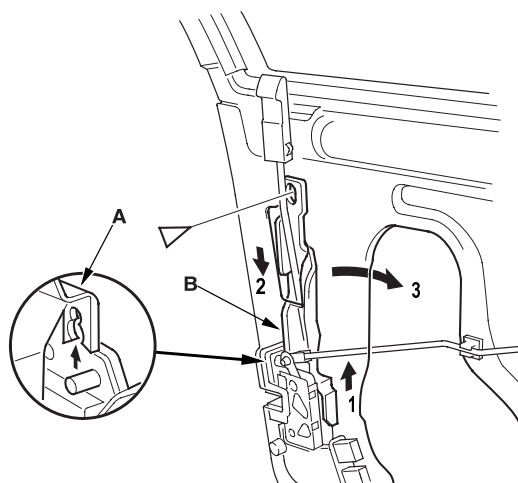
▷ : Clip, 1



MITSUI:



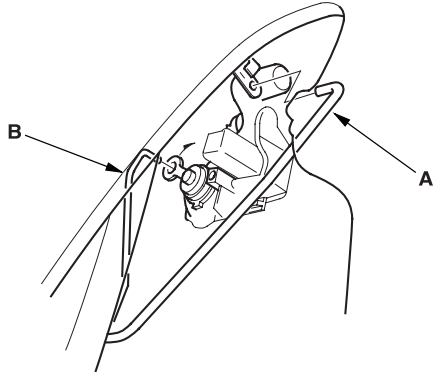
HONDA LOCK:



(cont'd)

## Front Door Outer Handle Replacement (cont'd)

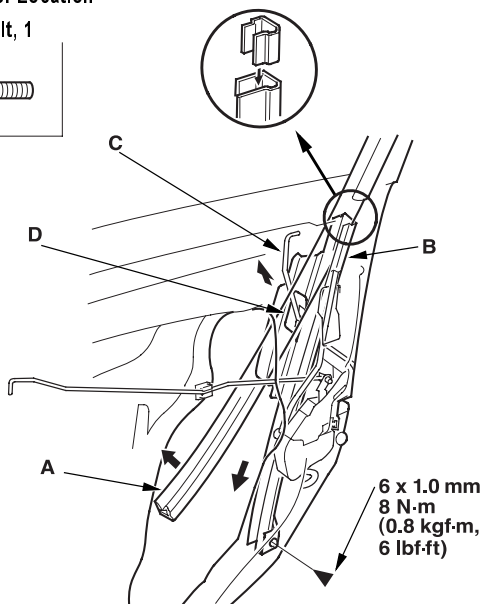
4. Disconnect the outer handle rod (A) and cylinder rod (B). Driver's with Super Locking : Disconnect the outer handle rod only. Without cylinder switch is shown (with cylinder switch is similar).



5. Driver's with Super Locking : Pull the glass run channel (A) away as necessary. Remove the bolt, then remove the center lower channel (B) by pulling it downward, and pull the channel up to remove it from the outer handle rod (C) through the hole (D) in the channel.

### Fastener Location

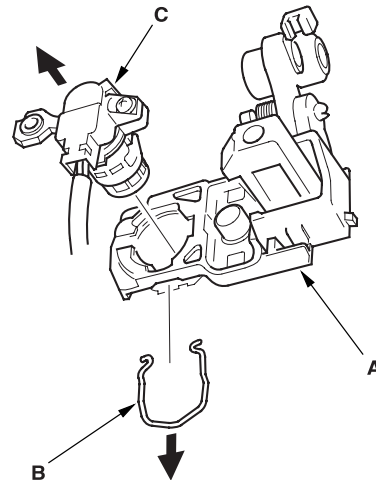
► : Bolt, 1



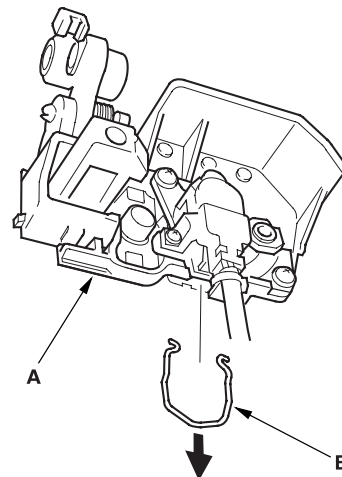
6. Driver's with Super Locking : Disconnect the cylinder rod (see step 4).

7. Release the retainer clip (B) with a hooked shaped tool. On no Super Locking models, remove the lock cylinder (C).

### Without Super Locking:



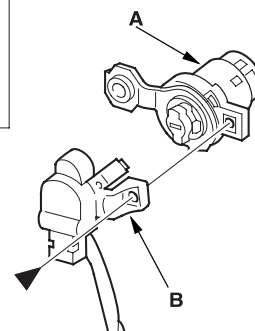
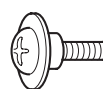
### With Super Locking:



8. On no Super Locking models with cylinder switch, remove the screw, then separate the lock cylinder (A) and cylinder switch (B).

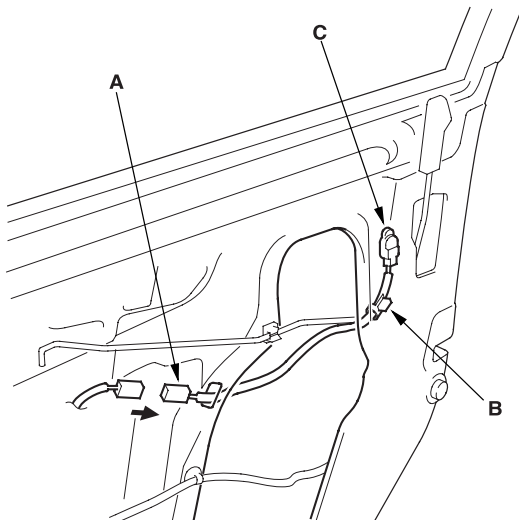
### Fastener Location

► : Screw, 1





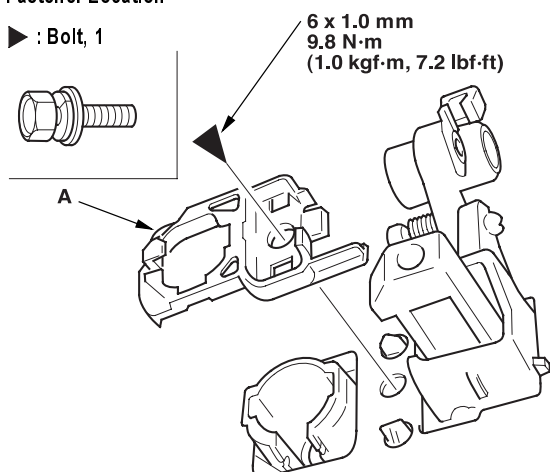
9. With cylinder switch: Disconnect the cylinder switch connector (A), and detach the harness clip (B), then remove the cylinder switch (C). With Super Locking is shown.



10. Remove the bolt, then remove the cylinder protector (A). Without Super Locking and with Super Locking (passengers side) are shown, with Super Locking (driver's side) is that removing the lock cylinder and cylinder protector as an assembly.

#### Fastener Location

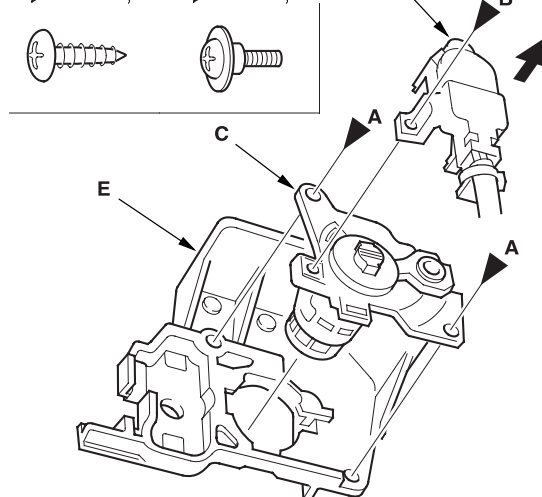
► : Bolt, 1



11. With Super Locking: Remove the screws (A, B), then separate the lock cylinder (C), cylinder switch (D), and cylinder protector (E).

#### Fastener Locations

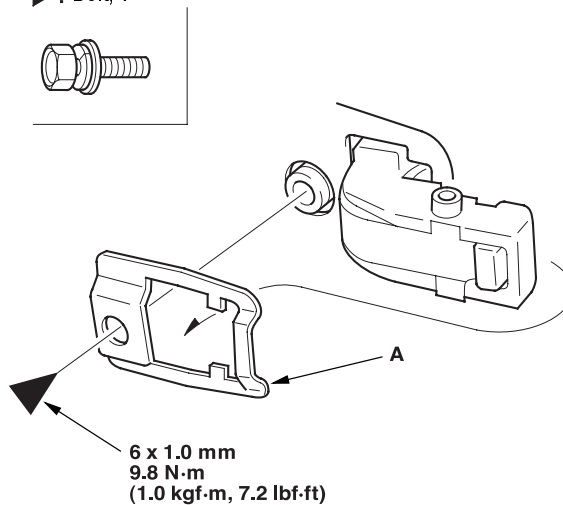
A► : Screw, 2 B► : Screw, 1



12. Remove the bolt, then remove the spacer (A).

#### Fastener Location

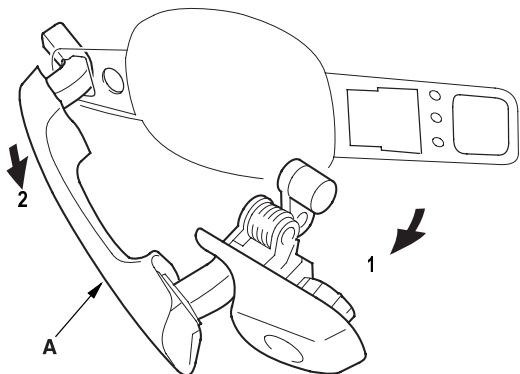
► : Bolt, 1



(cont'd)

## Front Door Outer Handle Replacement (cont'd)

13. While pulling the outer handle (A), remove the handle from the holes in the door panel. Take care not to scratch the door.



14. Install the handle in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
- Make sure the cylinder switch harness is routed properly (for some models).
  - Make sure the cylinder switch connector is plugged in properly (for some models), and each rod is connected securely.
  - Make sure the door locks and opens properly.
  - When installing the lock cylinder, leave the outer door handle bolts loose so the inner protector does not interfere with the lock cylinder, then tighten the handle bolts.
  - Install the lock cylinder retaining clip on the handle, then install the lock cylinder. Be sure the clip is fully seated in the slot on the lock cylinder.

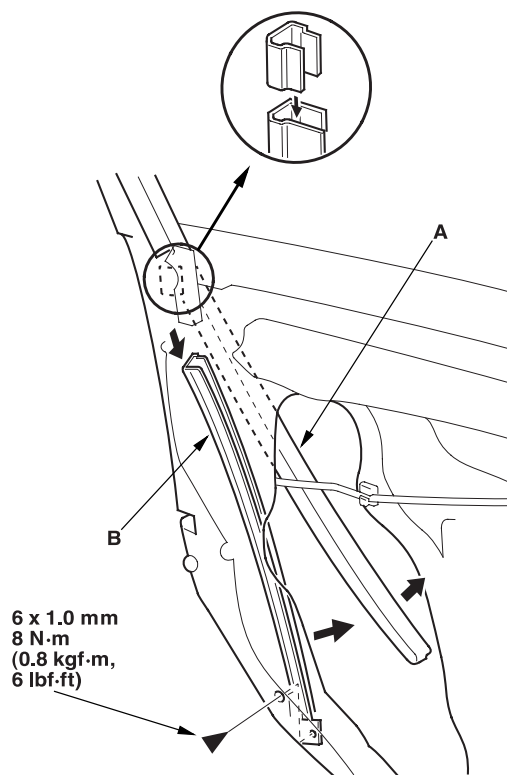
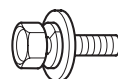
## Front Door Latch Replacement

NOTE: Put on gloves to protect your hands.

1. Remove these items:
  - Door panel (see page 20-9)
  - Plastic cover, as necessary (see page 20-2)
  - Lock rod protector (see step 3 on page 20-11)
  - Center lower channel, driver's with Super Locking (see step 5 on page 20-12)
2. Raise the glass fully.
3. Without Super locking and passenger's with Super Locking: Pull the glass run channel (A) away as necessary, and remove the bolt, then remove the center lower channel (B) by pulling it downward.

### Fastener Location

►: Bolt, 1



4. Disconnect the outer handle rod and cylinder rod (see step 4 on page 20-12).



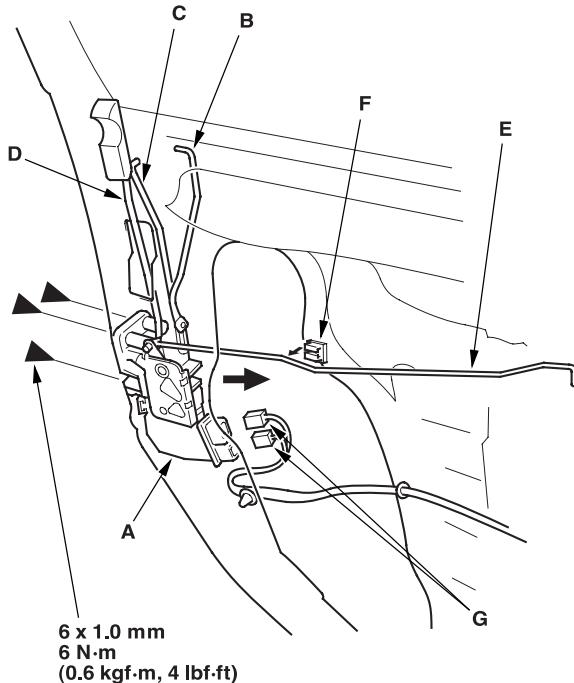
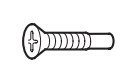


5. Without Super Locking: Remove the latch (A). Take care not to bend the outer handle rod (B), cylinder rod (C), lock rod (D), and inner handle rod (E). The Honda Lock make is shown (the Mitsui make is similar).

- 1 Release the inner handle rod from the rod holder (F).
- 2 Disconnect the connectors (G).
- 3 Remove the screws.
- 4 Remove the latch from the hole in the door.

## Fastener Locations

► : Screw, 3

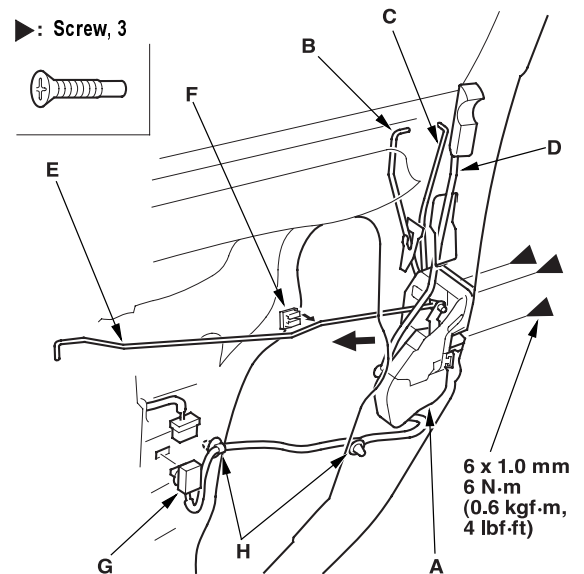
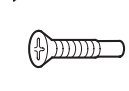


6. With Super Locking: Remove the latch (A). Take care not to bend the outer handle rod (B), cylinder rod (C), lock rod (D), and inner handle rod (E).

- 1 Release the inner handle rod from the rod holder (F).
- 2 Disconnect the connector (G), and detach it. Detach the harness clips (H).
- 3 Remove the screws.
- 4 Remove the latch from the hole in the door.

## Fastener Locations

► : Screw, 3



7. Install the latch in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- Make sure the actuator connector(s) is plugged in properly, and each rod is connected securely.
- Make sure the door locks and opens properly.

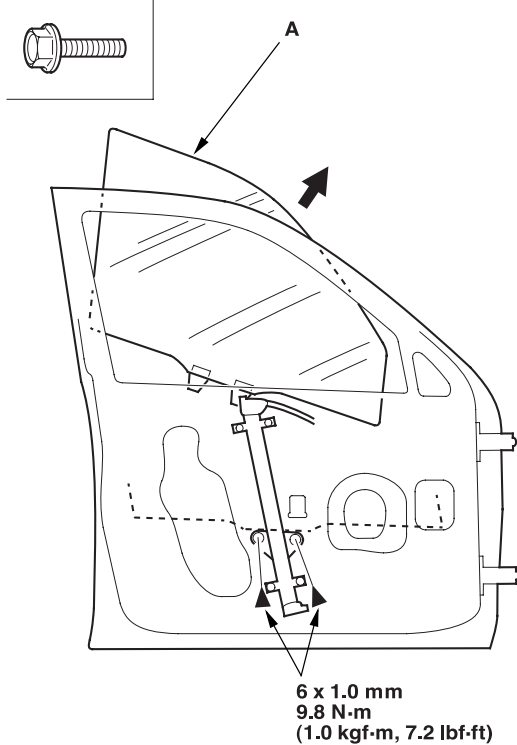
## Front Door Glass and Regulator Replacement

NOTE: Put on gloves to protect your hands.

1. Remove these items:
  - Door panel (see page 20-9)
  - Plastic cover, as necessary (see page 20-2)
2. Carefully move the glass (A) until you can see the bolts, then remove them. Carefully pull the glass out through the window slot. Take care not to drop the glass inside the door.

### Fastener Locations

► : Bolt, 2

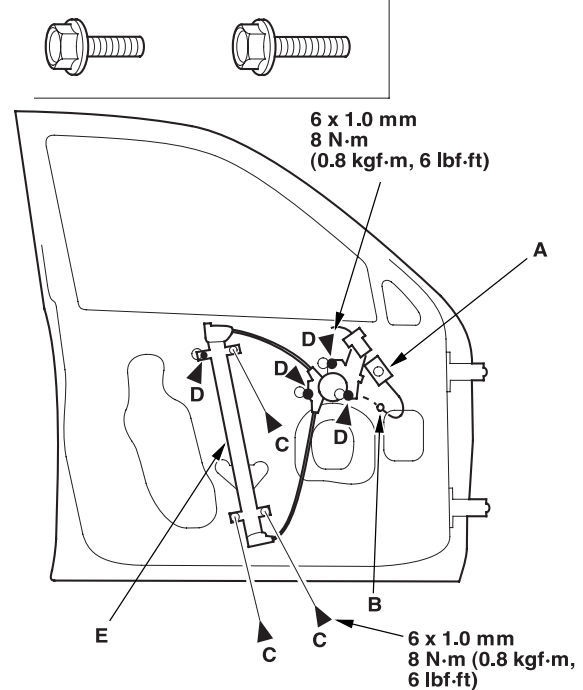


3. Disconnect and detach the connector (A) and harness clip (B) from the door.

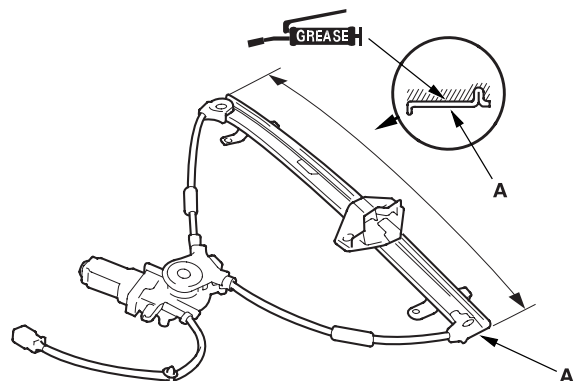
### Fastener Locations

C ► : Bolt, 3

D ► : Bolt, 4



4. Remove the bolts (C), and loosen the bolts (D), then remove the regulator (E) through the hole in the door.
5. Grease all the sliding surfaces of the regulator (A) where shown.





6. Install the glass and regulator in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Roll the glass up and down to see if it moves freely without binding.
  - Make sure that there is no clearance between the glass and glass run channel when the glass is closed.
  - Adjust the position of the glass as necessary ([see page 20-34](#)).

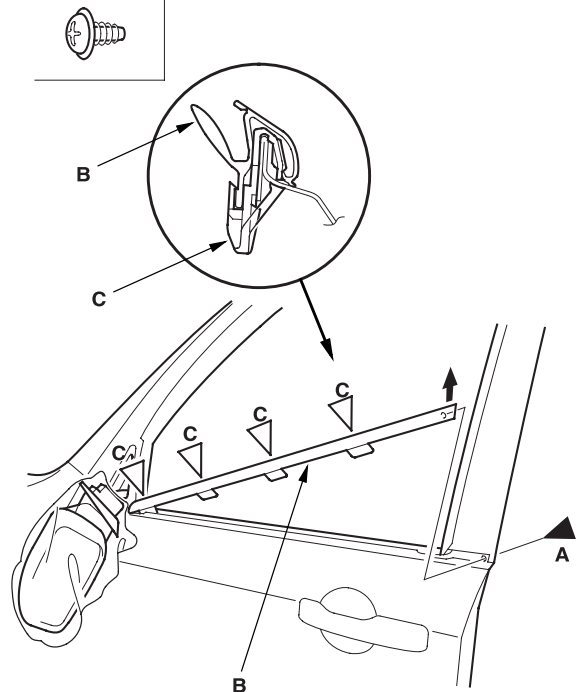
## Front Door Glass Outer Weatherstrip Replacement

### NOTE:

- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
  - Take care not to scratch the door.
1. Remove the power mirror ([see page 20-39](#)). To prevent scratching the power mirror and door, wrap the power mirror with a shop towel. Disconnecting the power mirror connector is not required.
  2. Remove the screw (A) from the rear edge of the door. Starting at the rear, pry the door glass outer weatherstrip (B) up to detach the clips (C), then remove the weatherstrip.

### Fastener Locations

A ► : Screw, 1      C ► : Clip, 4



3. Install the weatherstrip in the reverse order of removal, and replace any damaged clips.

## Front Door Weatherstrip Replacement

### NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the door.
- Use a clip remover to remove the clips.

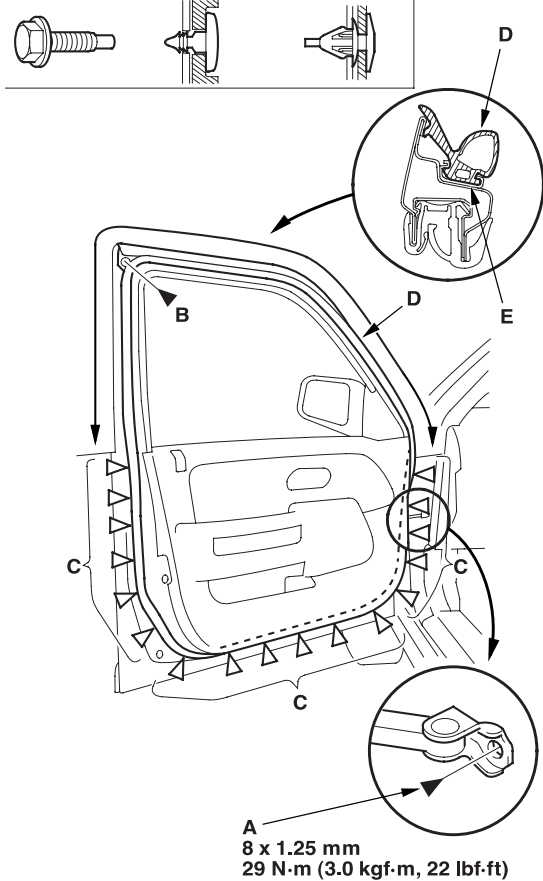
1. At the front pillar, remove the door stop mounting bolt (A).

### Fastener Locations

A ► : Bolt, 1

B ► : Clip, 1

C ► : Clip, 17



2. Detach the clips (B, C), then remove the door weatherstrip (D).
3. Install the weatherstrip in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Replace any damaged clips.
  - Make sure the weatherstrip is installed in the holder (E) securely.
  - Apply liquid thread lock to door stop mounting bolt before installation.
  - Check for water leaks (see step 7 on [page 20-35](#)).



## Front Door Channel Tape Replacement

### NOTE:

- Keep dust away from the working area.
  - When working at lower temperatures, heat the door channel and door channel tape with a hair dryer.
    - Door channel: about 15°C (59°F).
    - Door channel tape: about 30°C (86°F).
  - When heating the door channel tape, heat it evenly and gradually to prevent deformation.
  - When pressing the door channel tape, slowly press it from the corner to prevent air bubbles and wrinkles.
  - If there are air bubbles in the door channel tape, release the air with your finger or a plastic squeegee.
  - If the air bubble is more than 10 mm (0.4 in.) in diameter, peel up the door channel tape, then reapply it.
1. The following tools are required to replace the door channel tape:
    - Plastic squeegee
    - Alcohol
    - Sponge or Shop towel
    - Hair dryer
  2. Remove these items:
    - Door glass outer weatherstrip ([see page 20-17](#))
    - Glass run channel, as necessary ([see page 20-2](#))
  3. Slowly peel up the old door channel tape while heating it with a hair dryer.
  4. Clean the door channel bonding surface with a sponge dampened in alcohol. After cleaning, keep oil, grease, and water from getting on the surface.

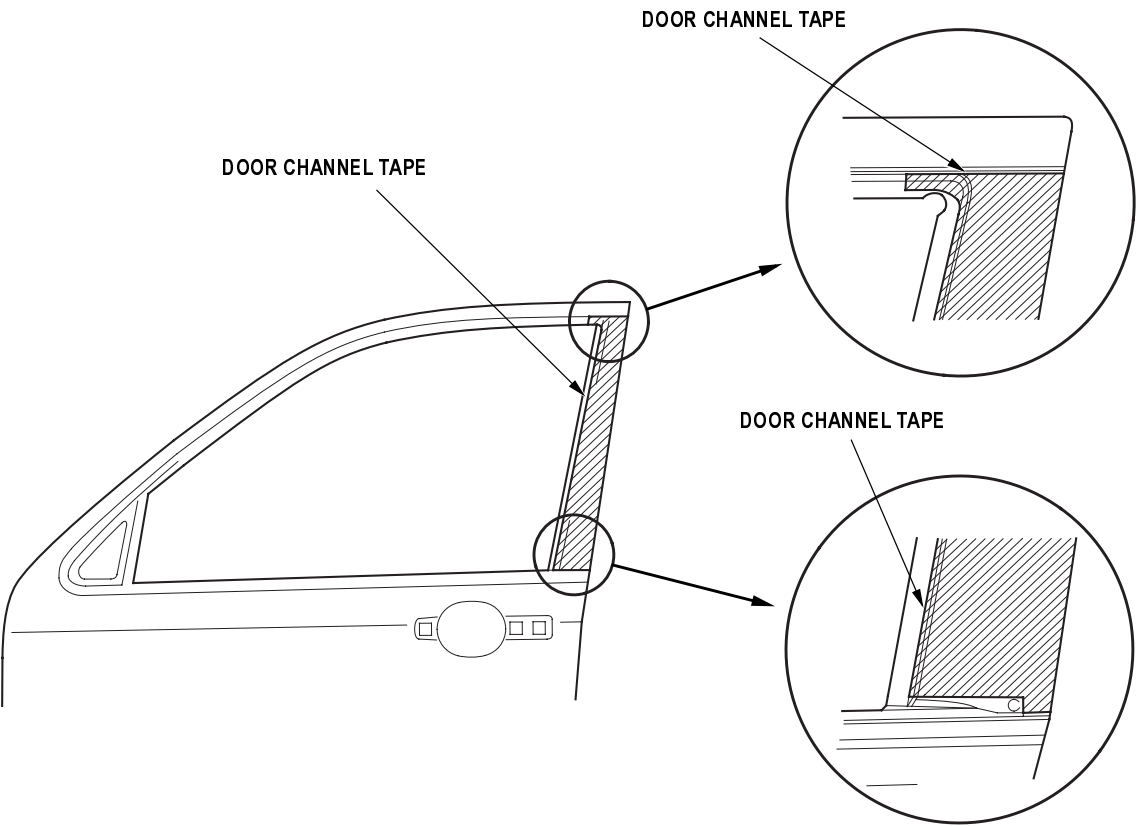
5. Attach the door channel tape.
  - 1 Peel the edge of the adhesive backing from the channel tape.
  - 2 Fit the door channel tape to the door channel.
  - 3 Apply the door channel tape to the door channel while peeling the adhesive backing from it a little at a time. Check that the channel tape is parallel with the door channel.
  - 4 Push firmly on the door channel tape with a plastic squeegee (felt side).

NOTE: To prevent air bubbles, slowly press the door channel tape around the door frame corner.
6. As necessary, repeat the preceding steps.
7. Reinstall all remaining removed parts.
8. Check that the body color on the door channel is covered by the door channel tape.
9. Check for water leaks (see step 7 on [page 20-35](#)).

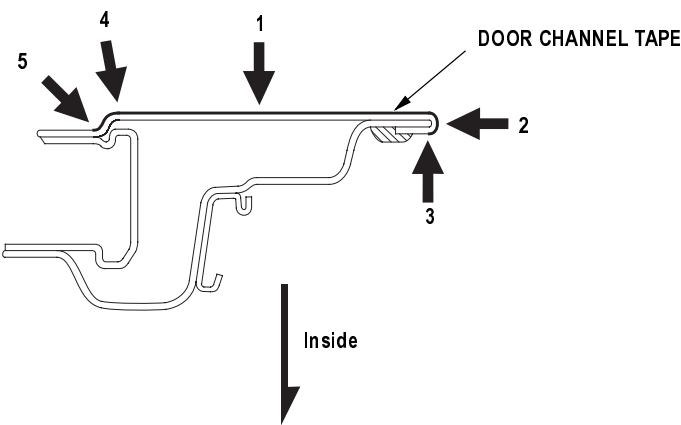
(cont'd)

Front Door Channel Tape Replacement (cont'd)

Attachment Point (Reference):



Note: Press in numbered sequence:





## Rear Door Panel Removal/Installation

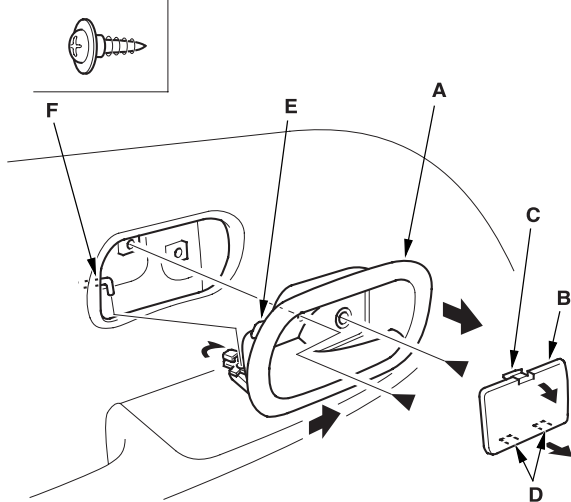
### Special Tools Required

Trim pad remover, Snap-on A 177A or equivalent, commercially available.

1. Lower the glass fully.
2. Remove the inner handle (A). Take care not to scratch the door panel.
  - 1 Using a flat-tip screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, pry out on the upper portion of the cover (B) to release the hooks (C, D), then remove the cover.
  - 2 Remove the screws.
  - 4 Pull out the inner handle forward and out half-way to release the hook (E).
  - 2 Disconnect the inner handle rod (F).

### Fastener Locations

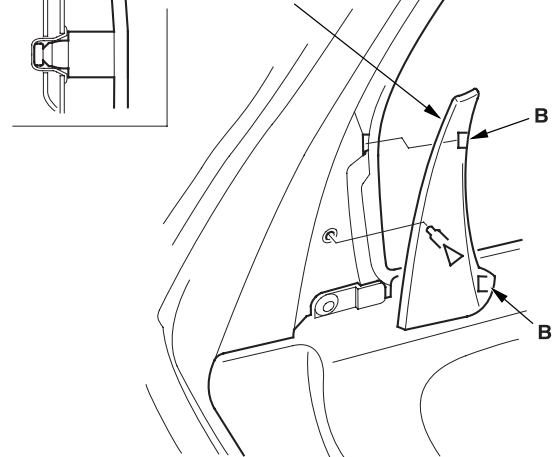
► : Screw, 2



3. Remove the door quarter inner trim (A). Take care not to scratch the door.
  - 1 Using a flat-tip screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, insert it next to the pin, and detach the pin by prying on the trim while holding the hook portions. Take care not to break the hooks (B).
  - 2 Pull the trim forward to release the hooks.

### Fastener Location

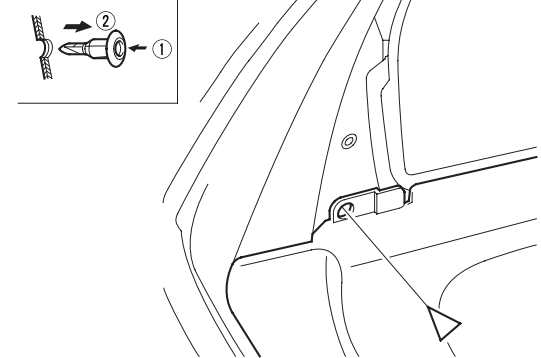
▷ : Pin, 1



4. Remove the clip from the door quarter inner trim mounting portion.

### Fastener Location

▷ : Clip, 1



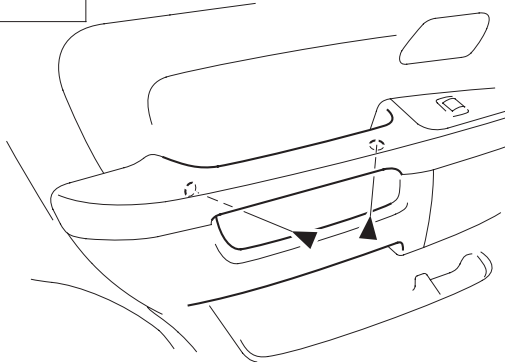
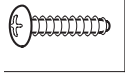
(cont'd)

## Rear Door Panel Removal/Installation (cont'd)

5. Remove the screws from under the armrest.

### Fastener Locations

► : Screw, 2

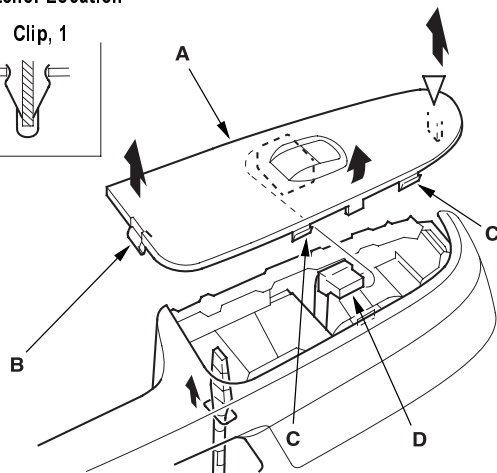
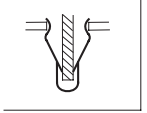


6. Remove the switch panel (A).

- Insert a flat-tip screwdriver wrapped with protective tape through a hole under the armrest, and push up the back of the panel to release the rear hook (B).
- Pull out along the edge of the panel to release the hooks (C) and clip.
- Disconnect the power window switch connector (D).

### Fastener Location

► : Clip, 1

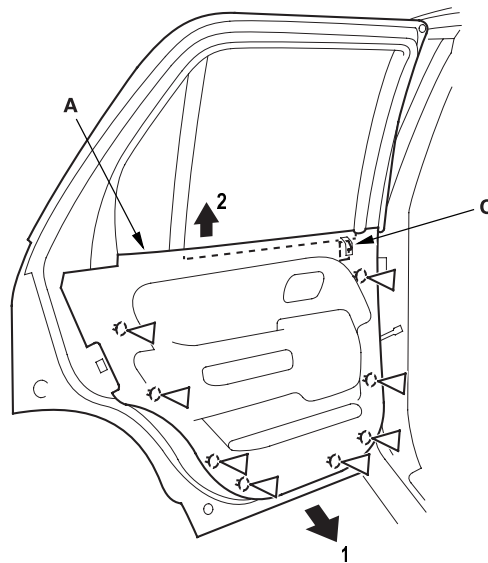
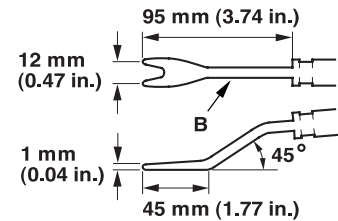
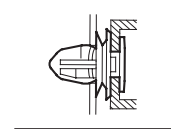


7. Remove the door panel (A) with as little bending as possible to avoid creasing or breaking it.

- Release the clips that hold the door panel with a commercially available trim pad remover (B).
- Standing at the rear, pull the door panel upward, then release the lock knob (C).

### Fastener Locations

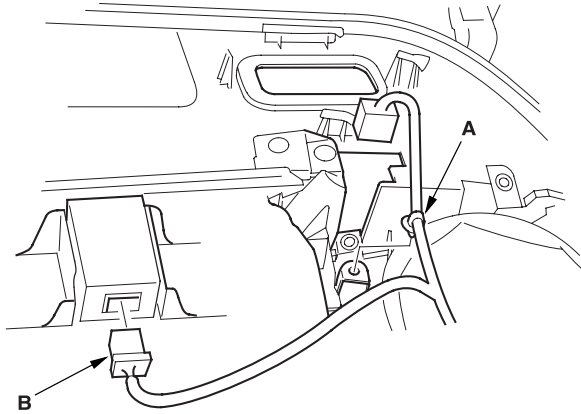
► : Clip, 8







8. Form the back of the door panel, detach the harness clip (A). If equipped, disconnect the super locking control unit connector (B). RHD is shown, LHD is symmetrical except it has no super locking control unit.



9. Install the panel in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Replace any damaged clips.
  - Make sure the connector (s) is plugged in properly and the rod is connected properly.

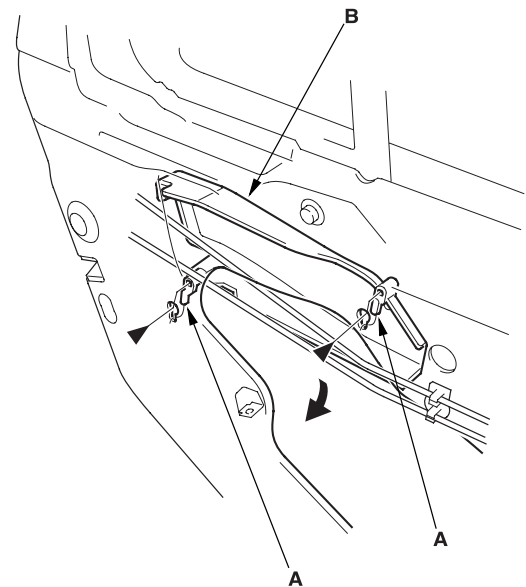
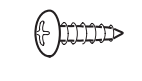
## Rear Door Outer Handle Replacement

NOTE : Put on gloves to protect your hands.

1. Remove these items:
  - Door panel ([see page 20-21](#))
  - Plastic cover, as necessary ([see page 20-6](#))
2. Raise the glass fully.
3. Remove the screws, and release the hooks (A), then remove the rod protector (B).

### Fastener Locations

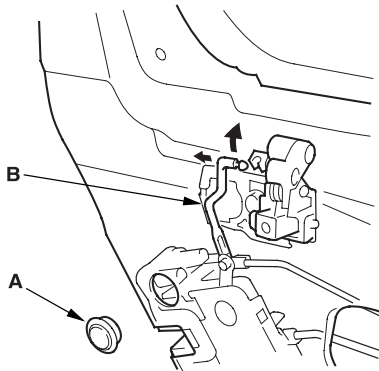
►: Screw, 2



(cont'd)

## Rear Door Outer Handle Replacement (cont'd)

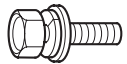
4. Remove the access cap (A), then disconnect the outer handle rod (B).



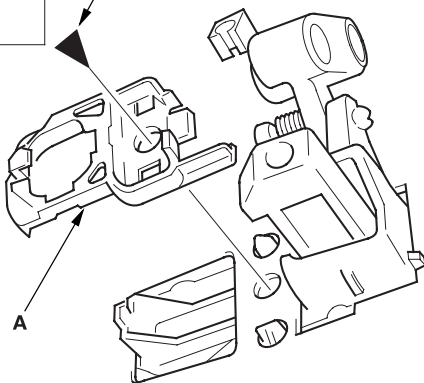
5. Remove the bolt, then remove the protector (A).

### Fastener Location

► : Bolt, 1



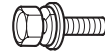
6 x 1.0 mm  
9.8 N·m  
(1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)



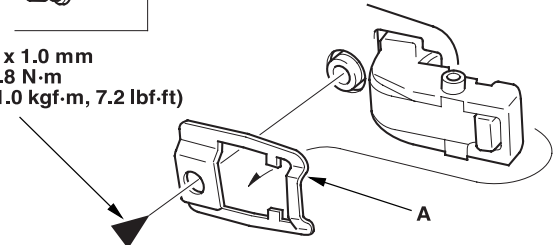
6. Remove the bolt, then remove the spacer (A).

### Fastener Location

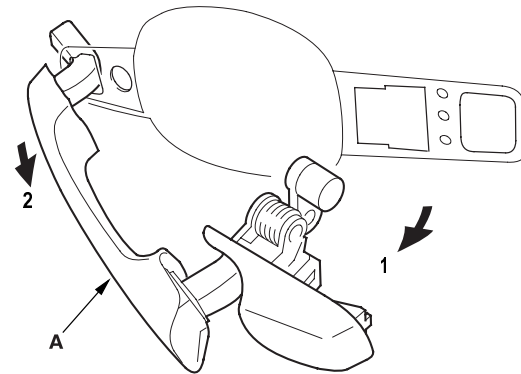
► : Bolt, 1



6 x 1.0 mm  
9.8 N·m  
(1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)



7. While pulling the outer handle (A), remove the handle from the holes in the door panel. Take care not to scratch the door.



8. Install the handle in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

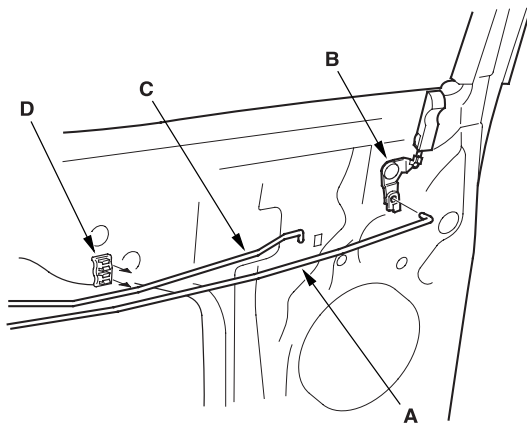
- Make sure the outer handle rod is connected securely.
- Make sure the door locks and opens properly.



## Rear Door Latch Replacement

NOTE: Put on gloves to protect your hands.

1. Remove these items:
  - Door panel (see page 20-21)
  - Plastic cover, as necessary (see page 20-6)
  - Rod protector (see step 3 on page 20-23)
2. Raise the glass fully.
3. Remove the access cap, then disconnect the outer handle rod (see step 4 on page 20-24).
4. Disconnect the lock rod (A) from the lock crank (B), and release the inner handle rod (C) and lock rod from the rod holder (D).

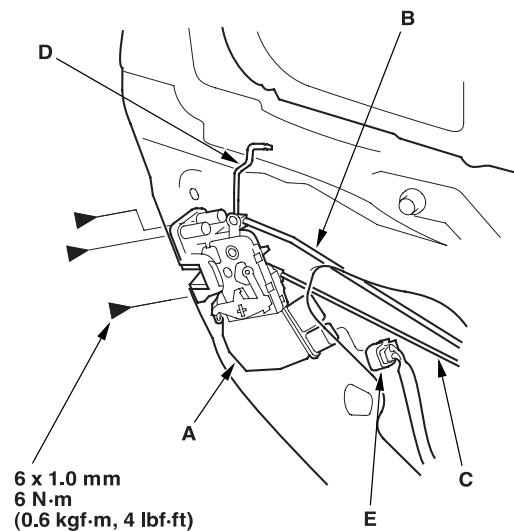


5. Without Super Locking: Remove the latch (A). Take care not to bend the inner handle rod (B), lock rod (C), and outer handle rod (D). The Honda Lock make is shown (the Mitsui make is similar).

- 1 Disconnect the connector (E).
- 2 Remove the screws.
- 3 Remove the latch from the hole in the door.

### Fastener Locations

► : Screw, 3



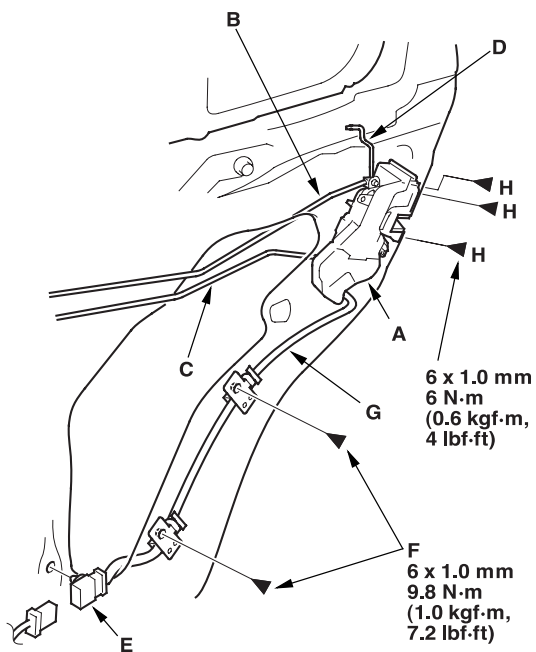
(cont'd)

## Rear Door Latch Replacement (cont'd)

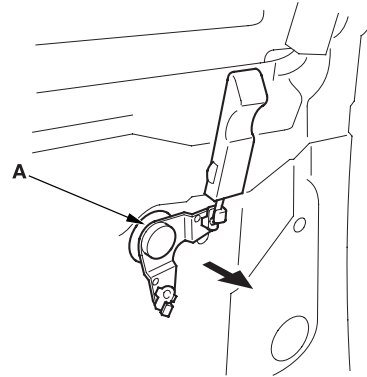
6. With Super Locking: Remove the latch (A). Take care not to bend the inner handle rod (B), lock rod (C), and outer handle rod (D).
  - 1 Disconnect the connector (E), and detach it.
  - 2 Remove the bolts (F), then release the wire harness (G) from the door.
  - 3 Remove the screws (H)
  - 4 Remove the latch from the hole in the door.

### Fastener Locations

F ► Bolt, 2    H ► Screw, 3



7. If necessary, remove the lock crank (A) from the door.



8. Install the latch in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Make sure the connector is plugged in properly, and each rod is connected securely.
  - Make sure the door locks and opens properly.



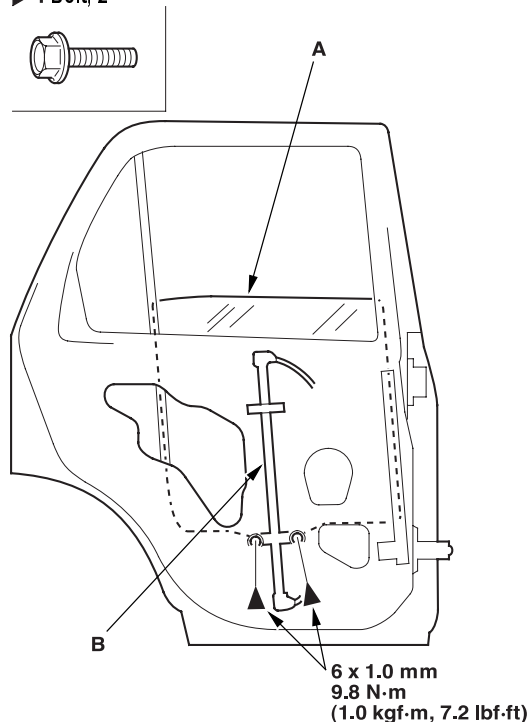
## Rear Door Glass and Regulator Replacement

NOTE: Put on gloves to protect your hands.

1. Remove these items:
  - Door panel (see page 20-21)
  - Plastic cover, as necessary (see page 20-6)
  - Rod protector (see step 3 on page 20-23)
2. Carefully move the glass (A) until you can see the bolts, then remove them. Remove the glass from the regulator (B), and carefully lower the glass. Take care not to drop the glass inside the door.

### Fastener Locations

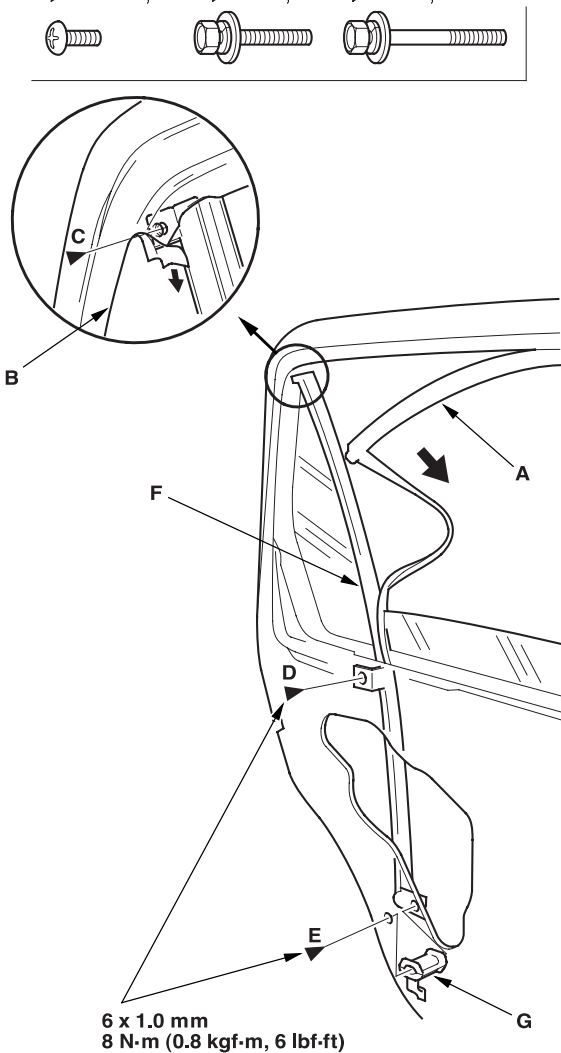
► : Bolt, 2



3. Pull the glass run channel (A) away as needed. Pull back the door quarter glass seal (B), then remove the screw (C). Remove the bolts (D, E) securing the center channel (F), then remove the collar (G).

### Fastener Locations

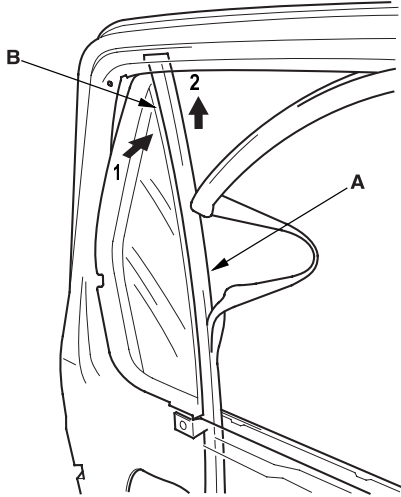
C ► : Screw, 1    D ► : Bolt, 1    E ► : Bolt, 1



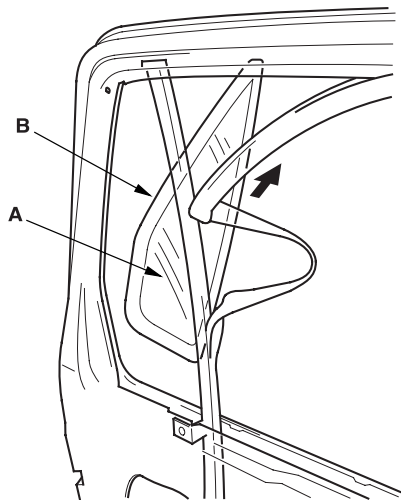
(cont'd)

### Rear Door Glass and Regulator Replacement (cont'd)

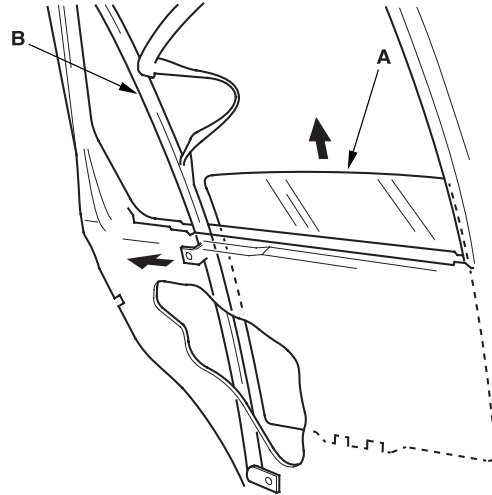
4. Pull the upper portion of the center channel (A) forward to remove it from the door quarter glass seal (B), and pull up the center channel. Take care not to scratch the door.



5. Remove the door quarter glass (A) and seal (B) as an assembly from the door.

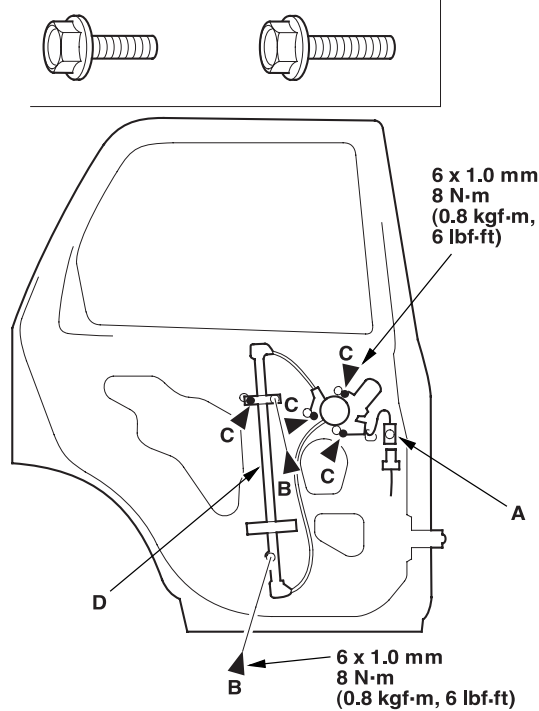


6. Release the glass (A) from the center channel (B), and carefully remove the glass out through the window slot. Take care not to drop the glass inside the door.



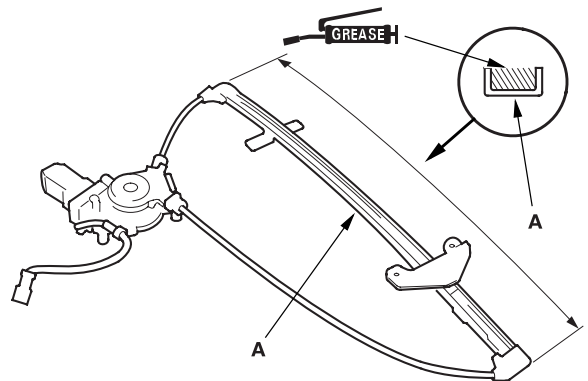


7. Disconnect and detach the connector (A) from the door.

**Fastener Locations****B** ▶ : Bolt, 2**C** ▶ : Bolt, 4

8. Remove the bolts (B), and loosen the bolts (C), then remove the regulator (D) through the hole in the door.

9. Grease all the sliding surfaces of the regulator (A) where shown.



10. Install the glass and regulator in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- Roll the glass up and down to see if it moves freely without binding.
- Make sure that there is no clearance between the glass and glass run channel when the glass is closed.
- Adjust the position of the glass as necessary ([see page 20-34](#)).

## Rear Door Glass Outer Weatherstrip Replacement

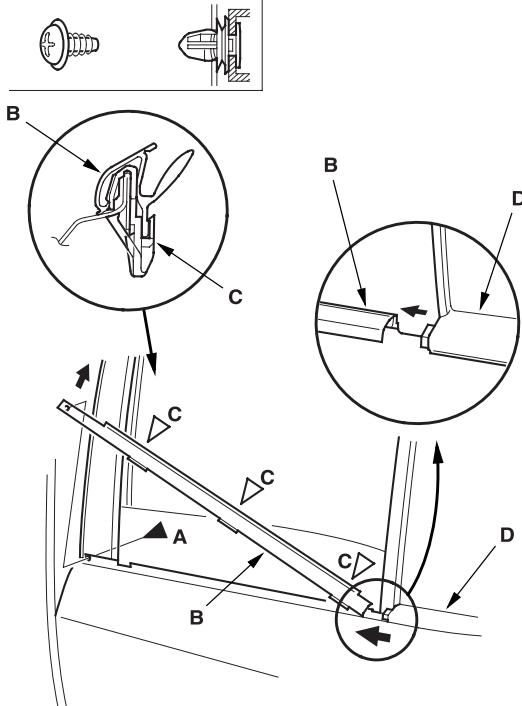
### NOTE:

- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- Take care not to scratch the door.

1. Remove the screw (A) from the front edge of the door. Starting at the front, pry the door glass outer weatherstrip (B) up to detach the clips (C), and release the weatherstrip from the door quarter glass seal (D), then remove it.

### Fastener Locations

A ► : Screw, 1 C ► : Clip, 3



2. Install the weatherstrip in the reverse order of removal, and replace any damaged clips.

## Rear Door Weatherstrip Replacement

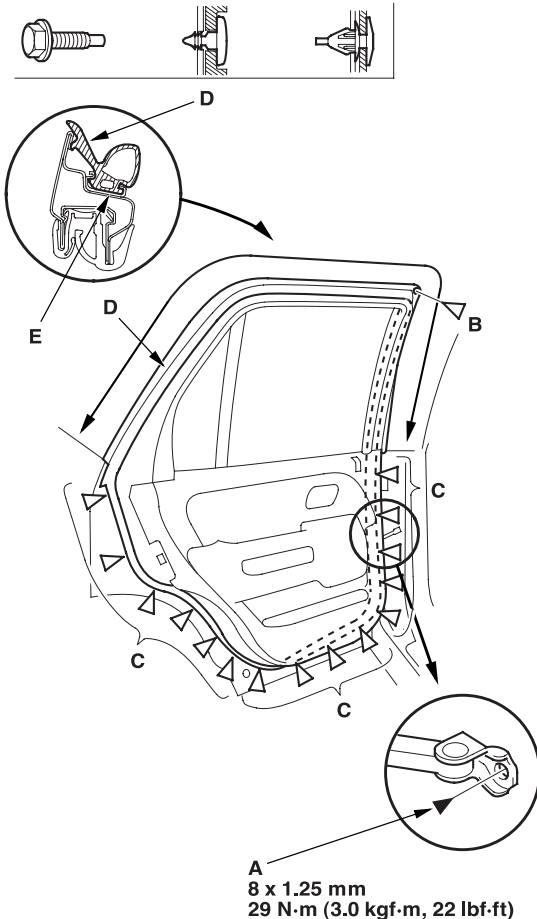
### NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the door.
- Use a clip remover to remove the clips.

1. At the center pillar, remove the door stop mounting bolt (A).

### Fastener Locations

A ► : Bolt, 1 B ► : Clip, 1 C ► : Clip, 15



2. Detach the clip (B, C), then remove the door weatherstrip (D).
3. Install the weatherstrip in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Replace any damaged clips.
  - Make sure the weatherstrip is installed in the holder (E) securely.
  - Apply liquid thread lock to the door stop mounting bolt before installation.
  - Check for water leaks (see step 7 on [page 20-35](#)).

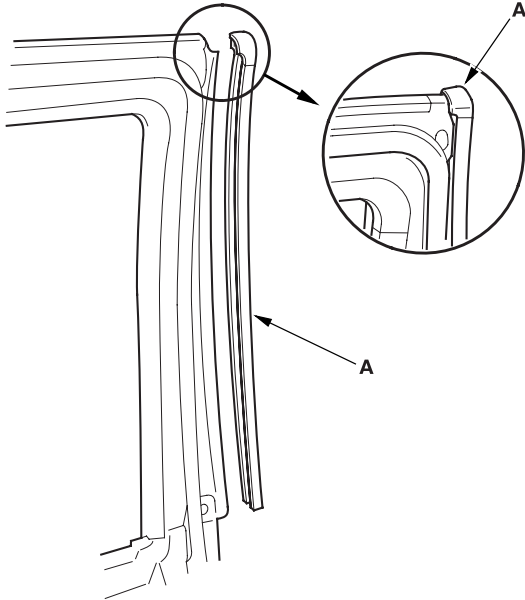




## Rear Door Center Pillar Seal Replacement

NOTE: Take care not to scratch the door.

1. Pull the door center pillar seal (A) away, then remove it.



2. After installing the seal to the upper edge of the door flange, align the seal to the bottom edge of the door flange, then push the seal into place.

## Rear Door Channel Tape Replacement

### NOTE:

- Keep dust away from the working area.
  - When working at lower temperatures, heat the door channel and door channel tape with a hair dryer.
    - Door channel: about 15°C (59°F).
    - Door channel tape: about 30°C (86°F).
  - When heating the door channel tape, heat it evenly and gradually to prevent deformation.
  - When pressing the door channel tape, slowly press it from the corner to prevent air bubbles and wrinkles.
  - If there are air bubbles in the door channel tape, release the air with your finger or a plastic squeegee.
  - If the air bubble is more than 10 mm (0.4 in.) in diameter, peel up the door channel tape, then reapply it.
1. The following tools are required to replace the door channel tape:
    - Plastic squeegee
    - Alcohol
    - Sponge or Shop towel
    - Hair dryer
  2. Remove these items:
    - Door glass outer weatherstrip ([see page 20-30](#))
    - Glass run channel, as necessary ([see page 20-6](#))
    - Door center pillar seal ([see page 20-31](#))
  3. Slowly peel up the old door channel tape while heating it with a hair dryer.
  4. Clean the door channel bonding surface with a sponge dampened in alcohol. After cleaning, keep oil, grease, and water from getting on the surface.

5. Attach the door channel tape.

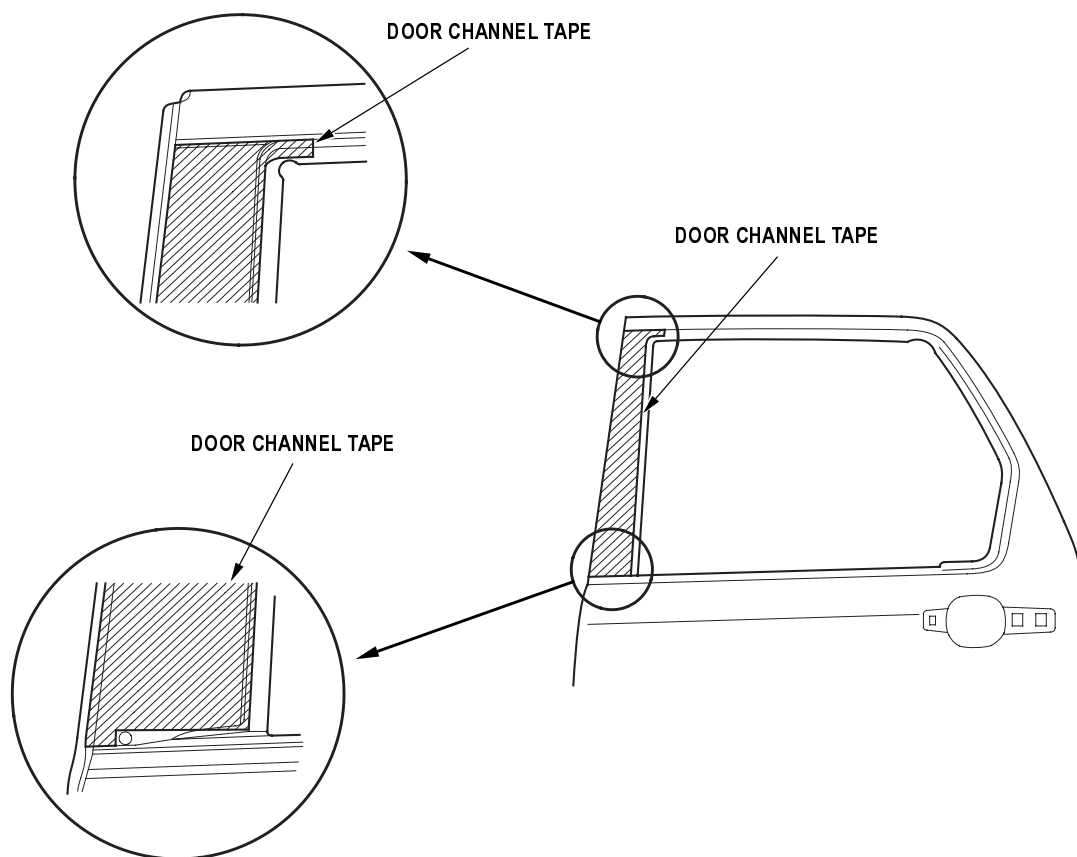
- 1 Peel the edge of the adhesive backing from the channel tape.
- 2 Fit the door channel tape to the door channel.
- 3 Apply the door channel tape to the door channel while peeling the adhesive backing from it a little at a time. Check that the channel tape is parallel with the door channel.
- 4 Push firmly on the door channel tape with a plastic squeegee (felt side).

NOTE: To prevent air bubbles, slowly press the door channel tape around the door frame corner.

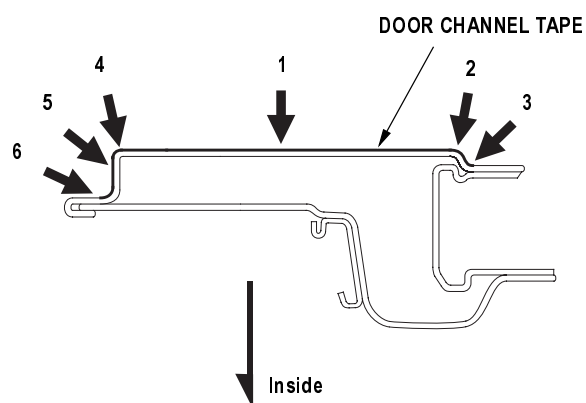
6. As necessary, repeat the preceding steps.
7. Reinstall all remaining removed parts.
8. Check that the body color on the door channel is covered by the door channel tape.
9. Check for water leaks (see step 7 on [page 20-35](#)).



## Attachment Point (Reference):



Note: Press in numbered sequence.

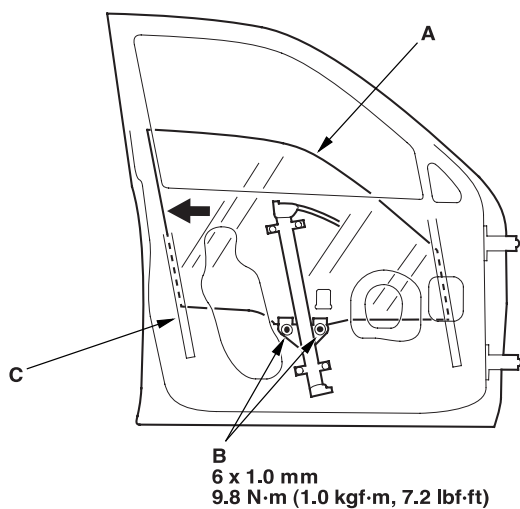


## Front and Rear Door Glass Adjustment

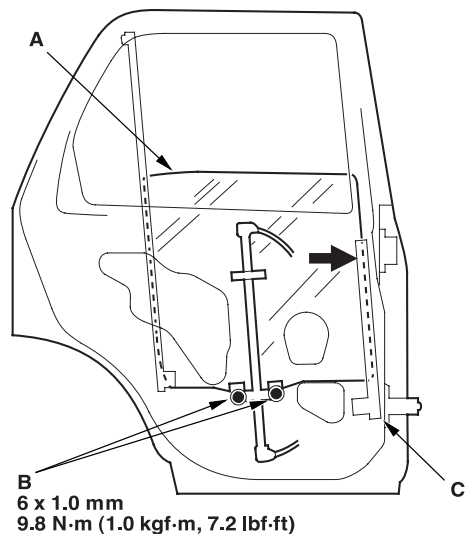
NOTE: Check the weatherstrips and glass run channel for damage or deterioration, and replace them if necessary.

1. Place the vehicle on a firm, level surface.
2. Remove these items:
  - Door panel, front door (see page 20-9), rear door (see page 20-21)
  - Plastic cover, front door (see page 20-2), rear door (see page 20-6)
3. Carefully move the glass (A) until you can see the glass mounting bolts (B), then loosen them.

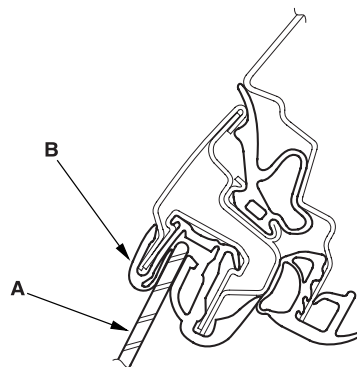
Front door:



Rear door:



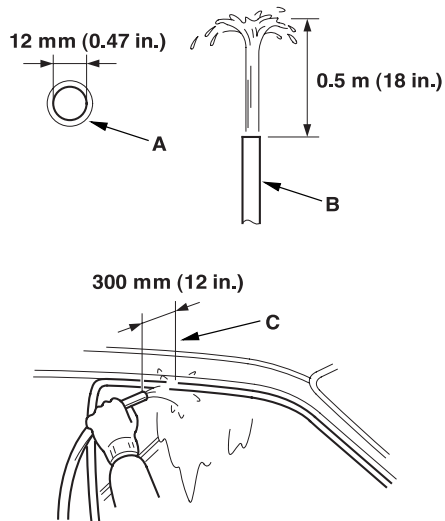
4. Push the glass (A) against the channel (C), then tighten the glass mounting bolts.
5. Check that the glass moves smoothly.
6. Raise the glass fully, and check for gaps. Also check that the glass (A) contacts the glass run channel (B) evenly.





7. Check for water leaks. Run water over the roof and on the sealing area as shown, and note these items:

- Use a 12 mm (0.47 in.) diameter hose (A).
- Adjust the rate of water flow as shown (B).
- Do not use a nozzle.
- Hold the hose about 300 mm (12 in.) away from the door (C).



8. Attach the plastic cover, and install the door panel, front door ([see page 20-9](#)), rear door ([see page 20-21](#)).



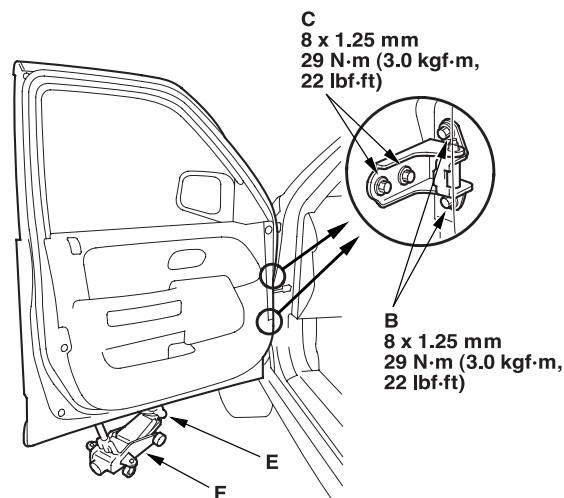
## Front and Rear Door Position Adjustment

SRS components are located in the center pillar bottom area. Review the SRS component locations ([see page 23-14](#)), and the precautions and procedures ([see page 23-16](#)) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

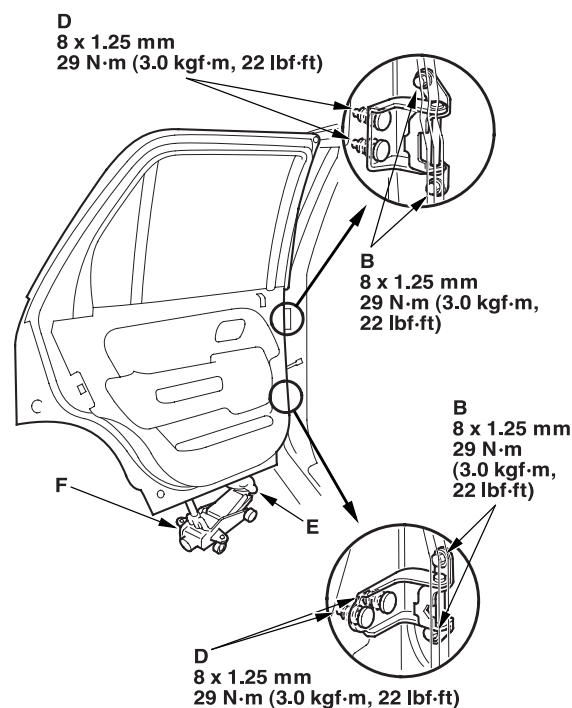
NOTE: Check for a flush fit with the body, then check for equal gaps between the front, rear, and bottom door edges and the body. Check that the door and body edges are parallel. Before adjusting, replace the mounting bolts.

1. Place the vehicle on a firm, level surface when adjusting the doors.
2. Adjust at the hinges (A):
  - Loosen the door mounting bolts (B) slightly, and move the door in or out until it's flush with the body.
  - On the front door: Remove the front inner fender ([see page 20-155](#)) and front fender fairing ([see page 20-156](#)). Loosen the hinge mounting bolts (C) slightly, and move the door backward or forward, up or down as necessary to equalize the gaps.
  - On the rear door: Remove the center pillar lower trim panel ([see page 20-76](#)), and remove the front seat belt and retractor ([see page 23-4](#)), and the plug seal from the body. Loosen the hinge mounting nuts (D) slightly, and move the door backward or forward, up or down as necessary to equalize the gaps.
  - Place a shop towel (E) on the jack (F) to prevent damage to the door when adjusting the door.

### Front door:

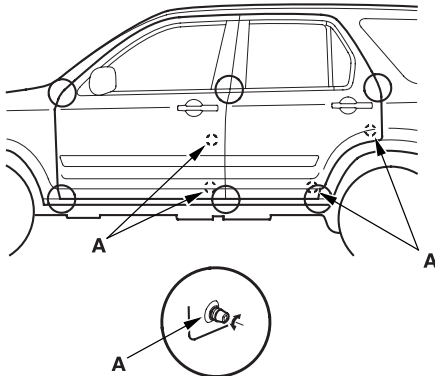


### Rear door:





3. Check that the door and body edges are parallel. If necessary, adjust the door cushions (A) to make the rear of the doors flush with the body.

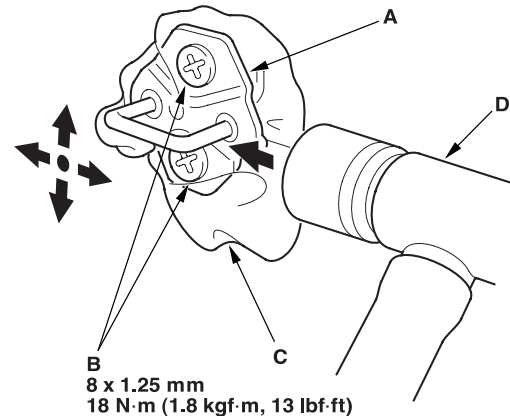


4. Apply body paint to the hinge mounting bolts, and around the hinges.
5. Check for water leaks (see step 7 on [page 20-35](#)).

## Front and Rear Door Striker Adjustment

Make sure the door latches securely without slamming it. If necessary, adjust the striker (A): The striker nuts are fixed, but the striker can be adjusted slightly up or down, and in or out.

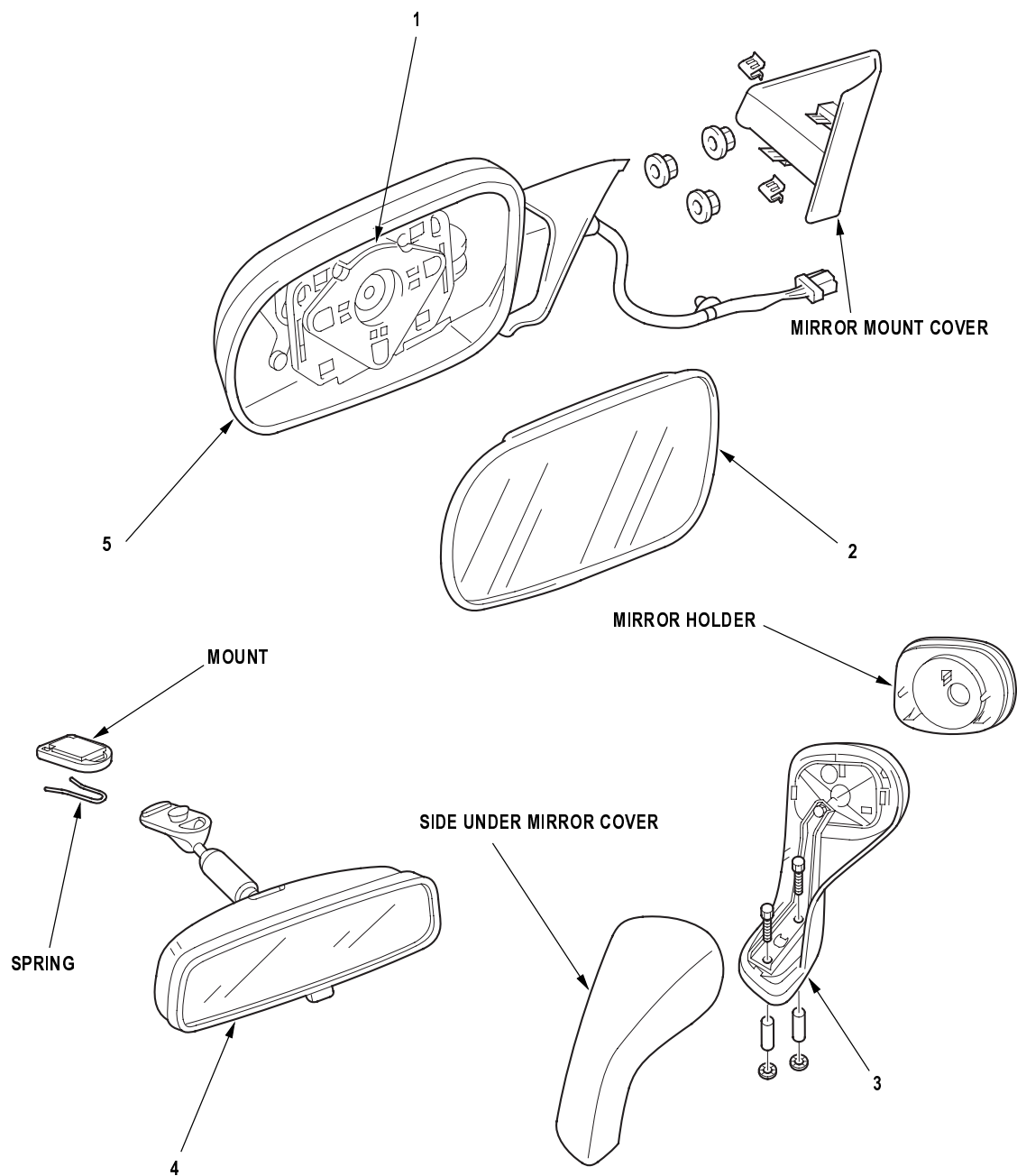
1. Loosen the screws (B), then insert a shop towel (C) between the body and striker.



2. Lightly tighten the screws.
3. Wrap the striker with a shop towel, then adjust the striker by tapping it with a plastic hammer (D). Do not tap the striker too hard.
4. Loosen the screws, and remove the shop towel.
5. Lightly tighten the screws.
6. Hold the outer handle out, and push the door against the body to be sure the striker allows a flush fit. If the door latches properly, tighten the screws and recheck.

Mirrors

Component Location Index



- |   |                       |   |
|---|-----------------------|---|
| 1 | POWER MIRROR ACTUATOR | Replacement, <a href="#">Page 22A-137</a> |
| 2 | MIRROR HOLDER         | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-40</a>   |
| 3 | SIDE UNDER MIRROR     | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-40</a>   |
| 4 | REARVIEW MIRROR       | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-41</a>   |
| 5 | POWER MIRROR          | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-39</a>   |



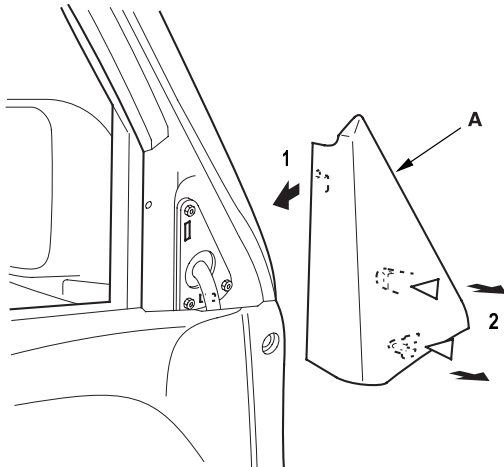
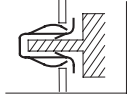


## Power Mirror Replacement

1. Lower the door glass fully.
2. Carefully pry out the mirror mount cover (A) by hand in the sequence shown.

Fastener Location

▷ : Screw, 1

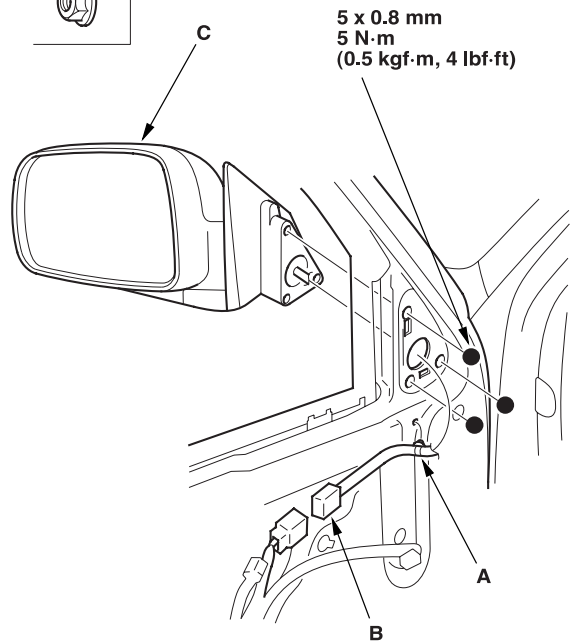


3. Remove the door panel ([see page 20-9](#)).

4. Remove the plastic cover as necessary, then detach the harness clip (A), and disconnect the connector (B). While holding the mirror (C), remove the nuts, then remove the mirror. Take care not to scratch the door.

Fastener Location

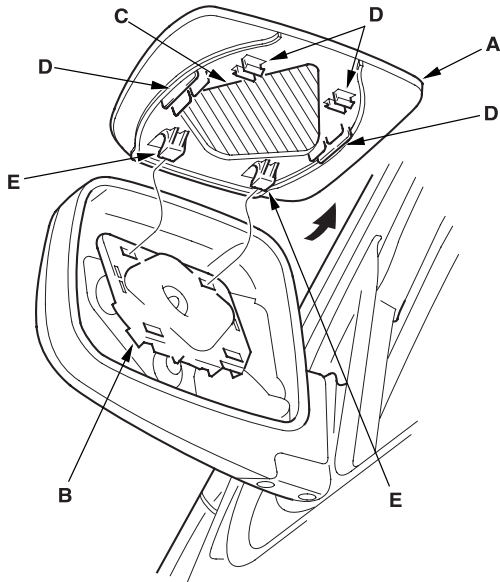
● : Nut, 3



5. Install the mirror in the reverse order of removal, and make sure the connector is plugged in properly.

## Mirror Holder Replacement

1. Carefully pull out the bottom edge of the mirror holder (A) by hand. Take care not to scratch the mirror.



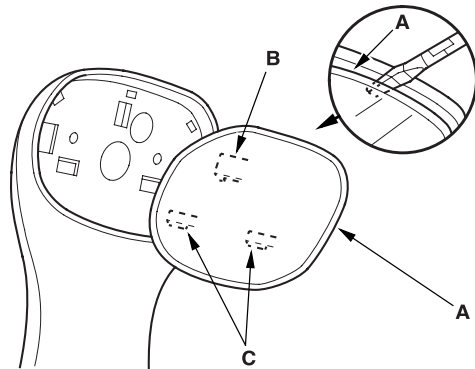
2. Separate the mirror holder from the actuator (B) by slowly pulling them apart while removing the adhesive (C), detaching the clips (D), and releasing the hooks (E). If equipped, disconnect the mirror defogger connectors from the heater pad terminals.
3. If equipped, reconnect the mirror defogger connectors.
4. Reattach the hooks of the mirror holder to the actuator, then position the mirror holder on the actuator. Carefully push on the clip portions of the mirror holder until the mirror holder locks into place.
5. Check the operation of the actuator.

## Side Under Mirror Replacement

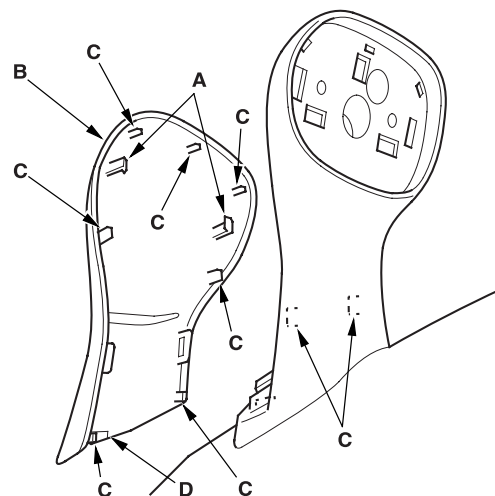
### For Some Models

NOTE: When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.

1. Using a flat-tip screwdriver, carefully pull out the upper edge of the mirror holder (A) to release the hook (B), and carefully pull out the mirror holder to release the hooks (C) by hand, then remove the mirror holder. Take care not to scratch the mirror.



2. From the mirror holder mounting, release the hooks (A) of the side under mirror cover (B), and release the tabs (C) and hook (D), then remove the side under mirror cover.

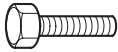


3. Remove the bolts, then remove the side under mirror base (A). Take care not to scratch the front fender.

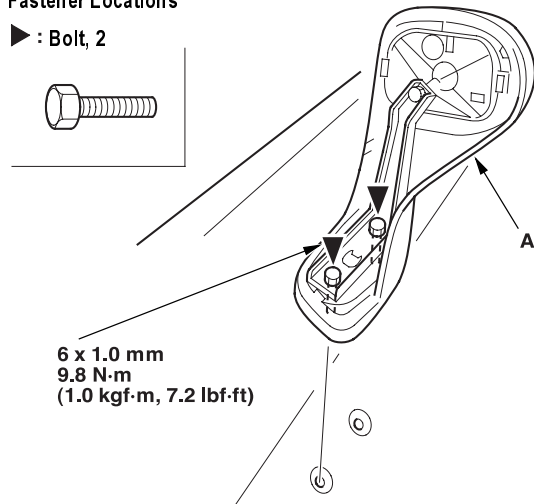


## Fastener Locations

► : Bolt, 2



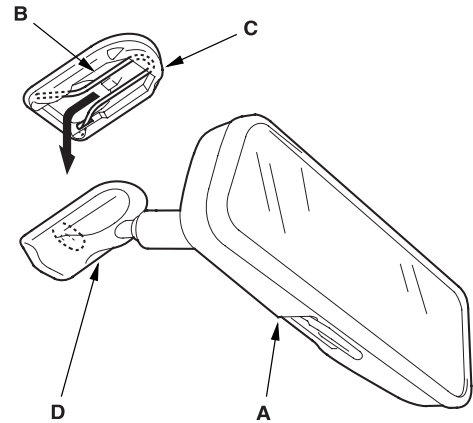
6 x 1.0 mm  
9.8 N·m  
(1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)



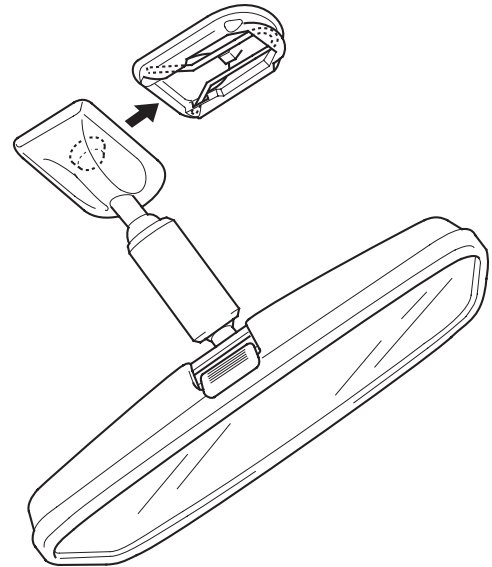
4. Install the mirror in the reverse order of removal.

## Rearview Mirror Replacement

1. Slide the rearview mirror (A) down toward the bottom of the windshield, then detach it from the spring (B) in the mount (C), and remove the rearview mirror. Take care not to scratch the mirror base (D).



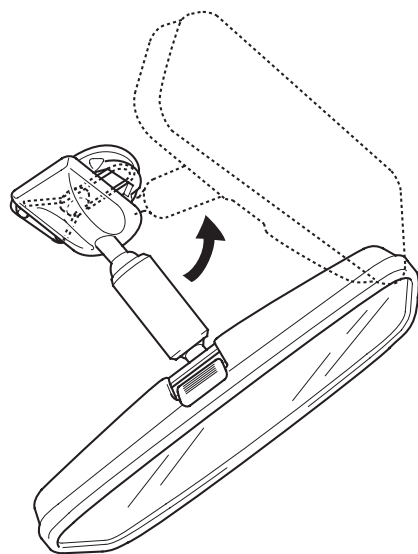
2. If necessary, remove the spring from the mount.
3. Fit the mirror base over the mount.



(cont'd)

Rearview Mirror Replacement (cont'd)

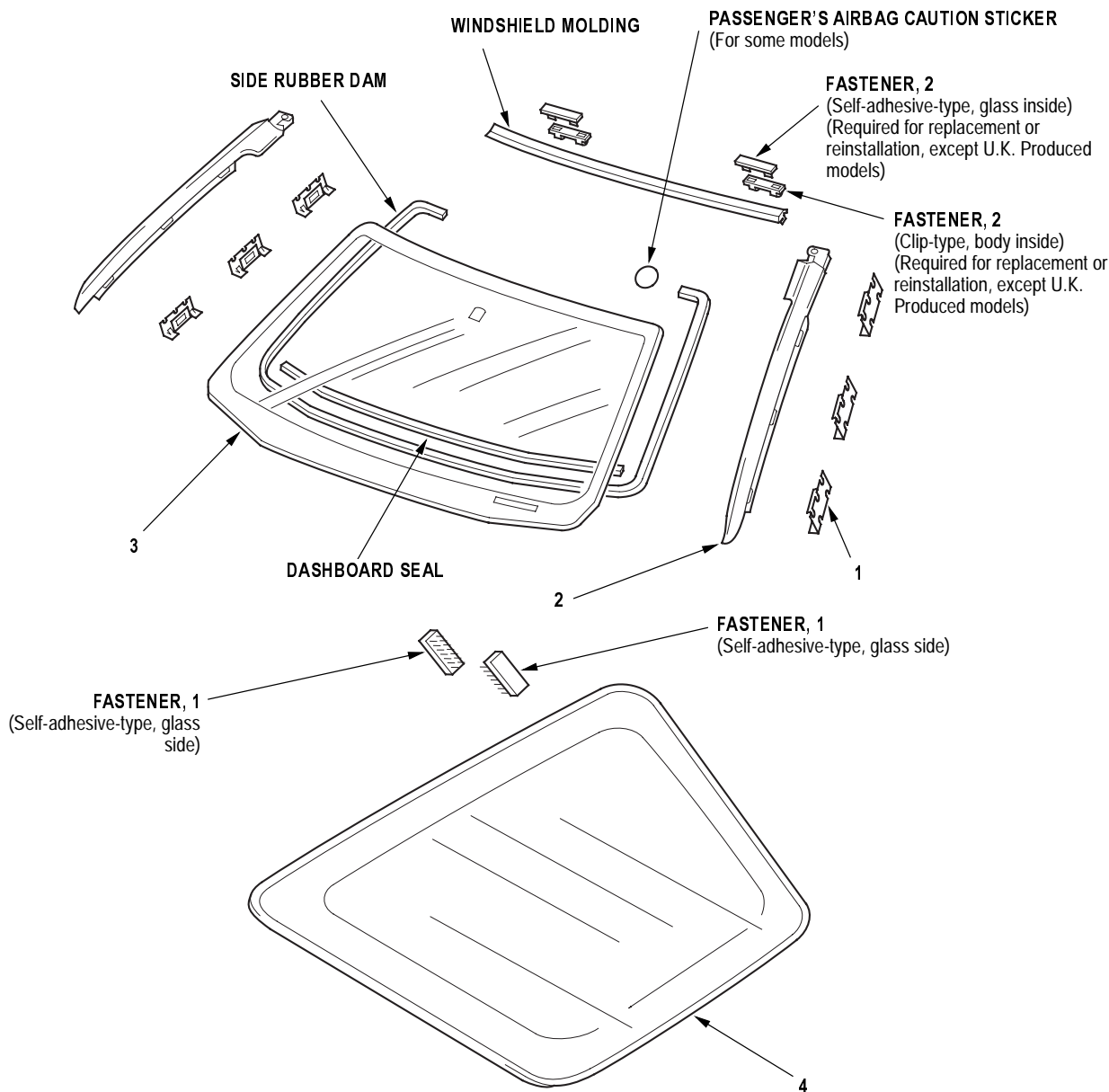
- 4. Secure the mirror by turning the base 90°.





# Glass

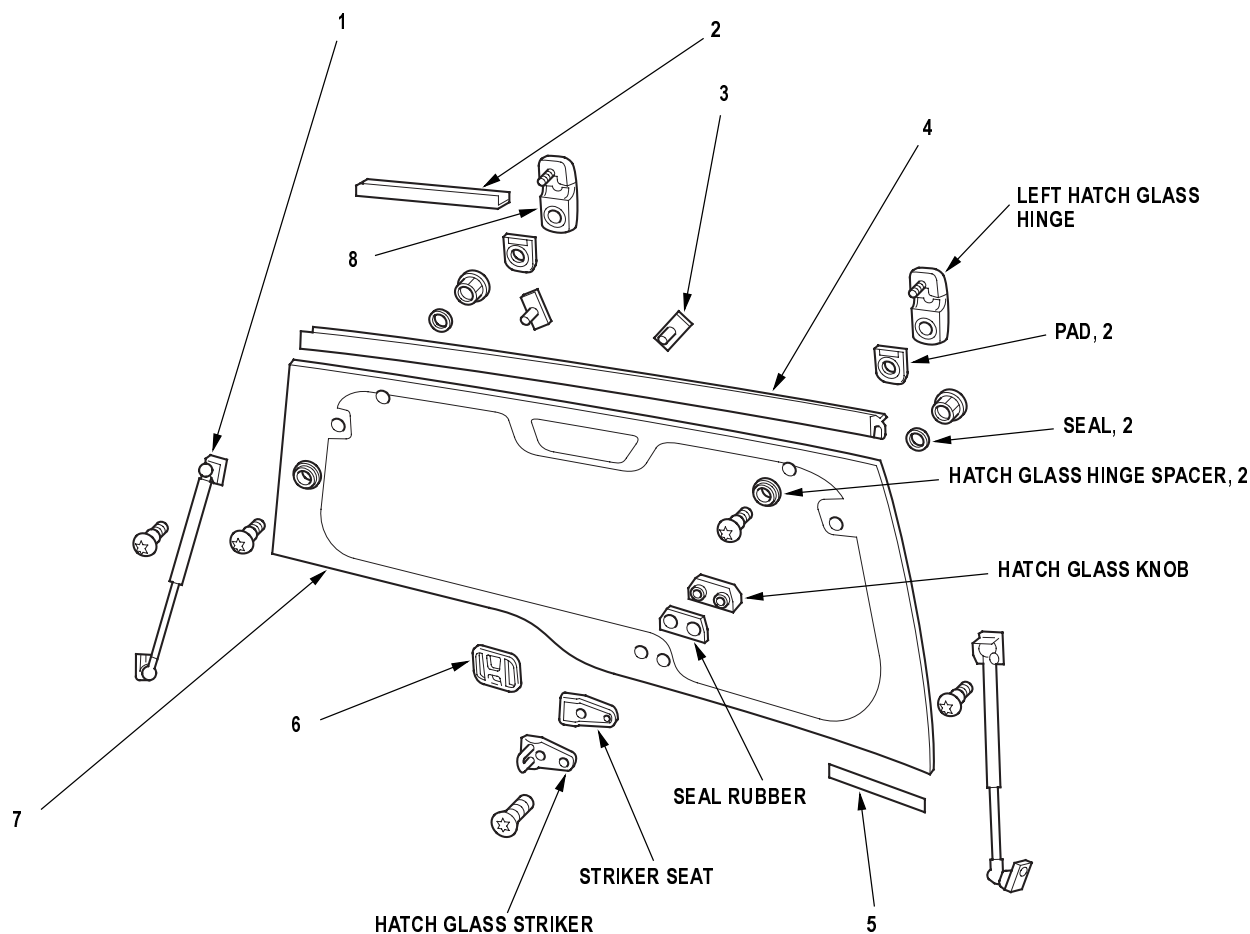
## Component Location Index



- |   |                      |  |
|---|----------------------|--|
| 1 | RETAINER, 6          | Installation, <a href="#">page 20-50</a> |
| 2 | WINDSHIELD SIDE TRIM | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-142</a> |
| 3 | WINDSHIELD           | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-45</a>  |
| 4 | QUARTER GLASS        | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-50</a>  |

(cont'd)

Component Location Index (cont'd)



- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | HATCH GLASS SUPPORT STRUT, 2           | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-55</a>  |
| 2 | WIRE HARNESS TRIM                      | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-61</a>  |
| 3 | HIGH MOUNT BRAKE LIGHT BRACKET, 2      | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-61</a>  |
| 4 | REAR WINDOW MOLDING                    | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-59</a>  |
| 5 | REALTIME 4WD STICKER (For some models) | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-153</a>   |
| 6 | REAR "H" EMBLEM                        | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-153</a>   |
| 7 | HATCH GLASS                            | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-55</a> ; Disassembly/Reassembly, <a href="#">page 20-57</a> ; Adjustment, <a href="#">page 20-58</a> ; Hatch Glass Weatherstrip Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-62</a> |
| 8 | RIGHT HATCH GLASS HINGE                |  |

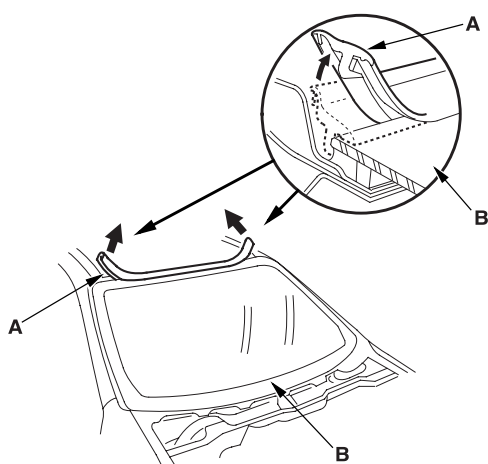


## Windshield Replacement

### NOTE:

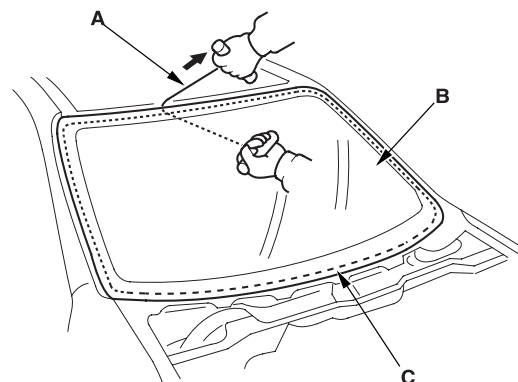
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- Wear eye protection when removing the glass with piano wire.
- Use seat covers to avoid damaging the seat.
- Use glass adhesive set P/N 08C73-X0230N.

1. Remove these items:
  - Windshield side trim (see page 20-142)
  - Windshield wiper arms (see page 22A-223)
  - Cowl covers (see page 20-140)
2. Remove the molding (A) from the upper edge of the windshield (B). If necessary, cut the molding with a utility knife.

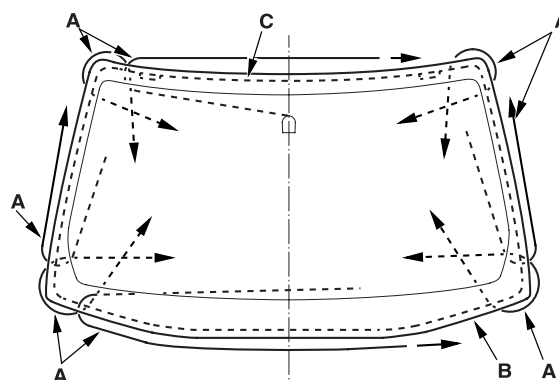


3. If the old windshield is to be reinstalled, make alignment marks across the glass and body with a grease pencil.
4. Pull down the front portion of the headliner (see page 20-81). Take care not to bend the headliner excessively, or you may crease or break it.
5. Apply protective tape along the edge of the dashboard and body. Using an awl, make a hole through the rubber dam and adhesive from inside the vehicle at the corner portion of the windshield. Push a piece of piano wire through the hole, and wrap each end around a piece of wood.

6. With a helper on the outside, pull the piano wire (A) back and forth in a sawing motion. Hold the piano wire as close to the windshield (B) as possible to prevent damage to the body and dashboard. Carefully cut through the rubber dam and adhesive (C) around the entire windshield.



Cutting portions:



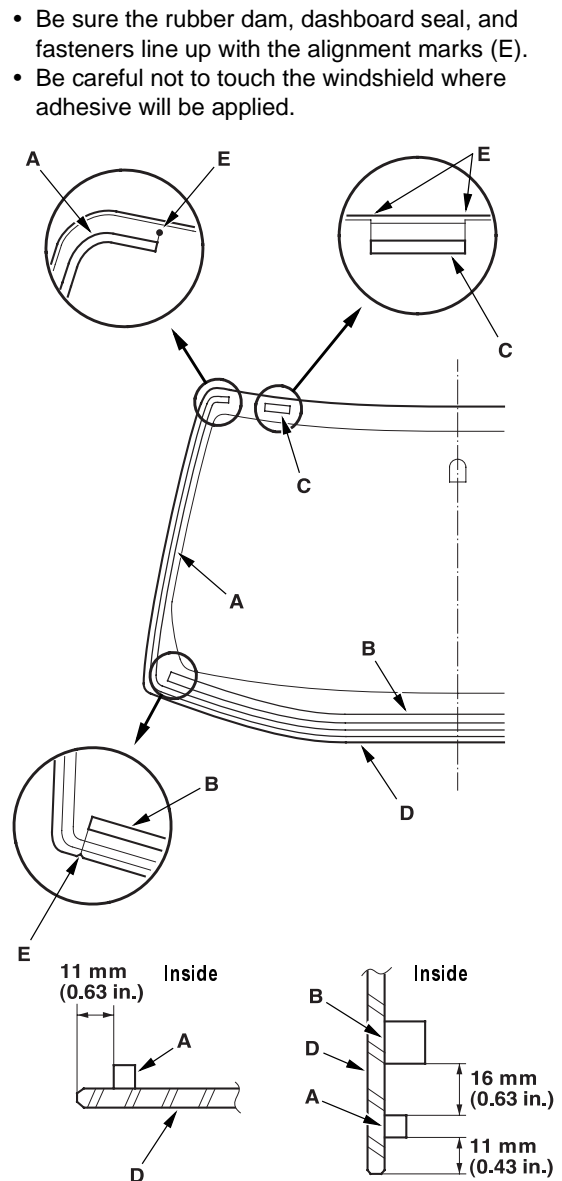
7. Carefully remove the windshield.

(cont'd)

## Windshield Replacement (cont'd)

8. With a knife, scrape the old adhesive smooth to a thickness of about 2 mm (0.08 in.) on the bonding surface around the entire windshield opening flange:
  - Do not scrape down to the painted surface of the body; damaged paint will interfere with proper bonding.
  - Remove the rubber dam and fasteners from the body.
9. Clean the body bonding surface with a sponge dampened in alcohol. After cleaning, keep oil, grease and water from getting on the clean surface.
10. If the old windshield is to be reinstalled, use a putty knife to scrape off all of the old adhesive, the fasteners, and the rubber dam from the windshield. Clean the inside face and the edge of the windshield with alcohol where new adhesive is to be applied. Make sure the bonding surface is kept free of water, oil, and grease.

11. Glue the rubber dam (A), dashboard seal (B), and fasteners (C) to the inside face of the windshield (D) as shown:

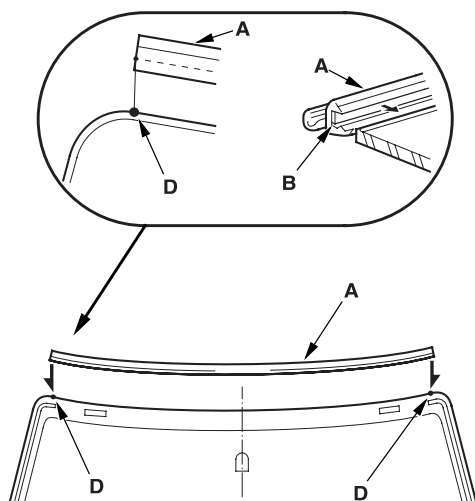






**12.** Glue the molding (A) with adhesive tape (B) of the windshield (C):

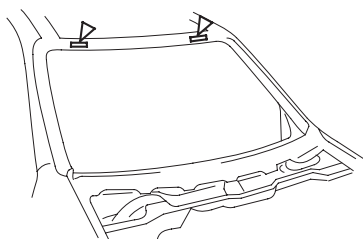
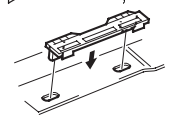
- Be sure the molding lines up with the alignment marks (D).
- Be careful not to touch the windshield where adhesive will be applied.



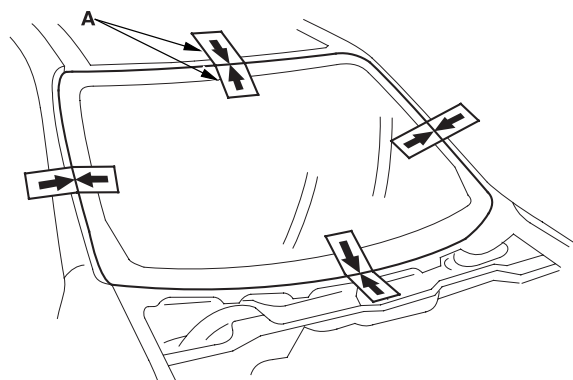
**13.** Install the fasteners to the body.

**Fastener Locations**

▷: Fastener, 2



**14.** Set the windshield in the opening, and center it. Make alignment marks (A) across the windshield and body with a grease pencil at the four points shown. Be careful not to touch the windshield where adhesive will be applied.



**15.** Remove the windshield.

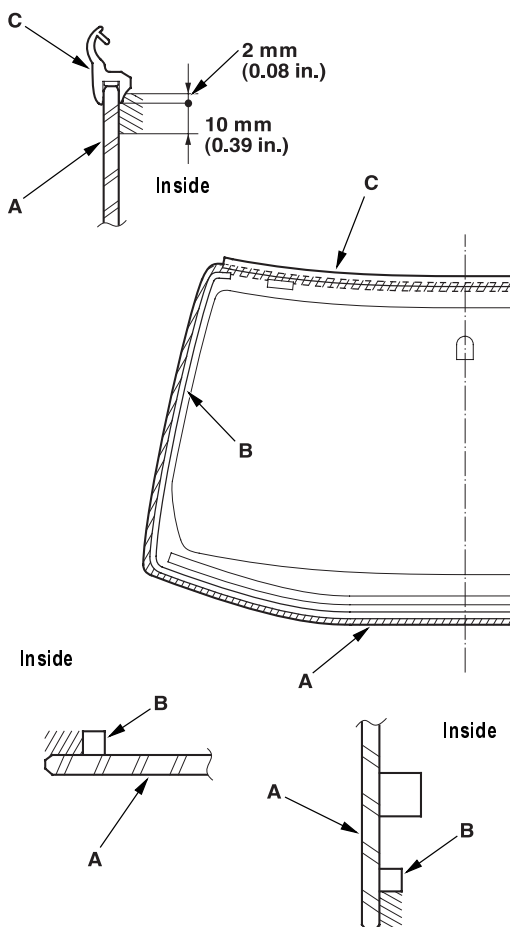
(cont'd)

## Windshield Replacement (cont'd)

16. With a sponge, apply a light coat of glass primer around the edge of the windshield (A) between the rubber dam (B) and molding (C) as shown, then lightly wipe it off with gauze or cheesecloth:

- Apply glass primer to the molding.
- Do not apply body primer to the windshield, and do not get body and glass primer sponges mixed up.
- Never touch the primed surfaces with your hands. If you do, the adhesive may not bond to the windshield properly, causing a leak after the windshield is installed.
- Keep water, dust, and abrasive materials away from the primed surface.

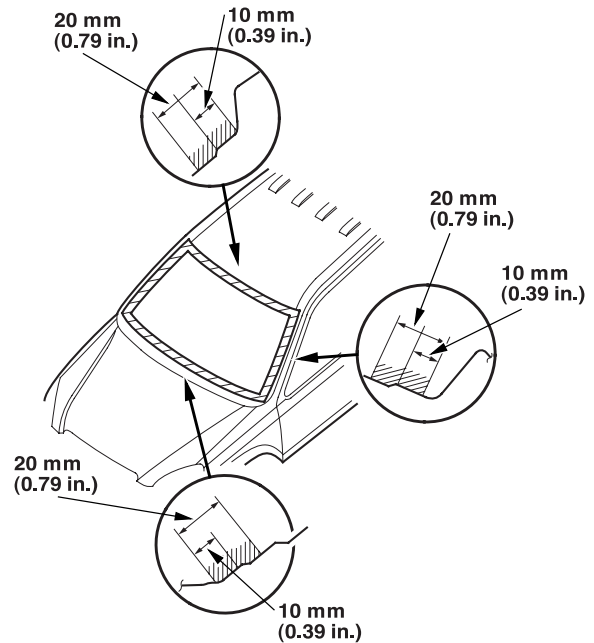
//// : Apply glass primer here



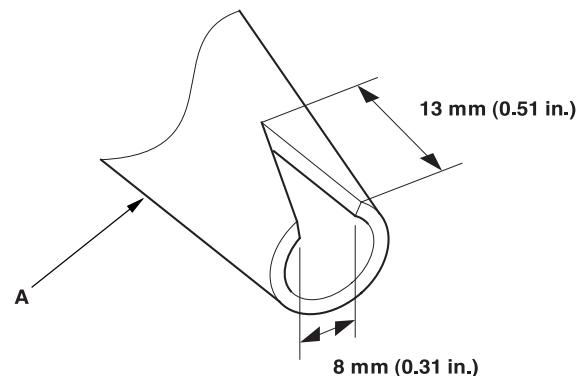
17. With a sponge, apply a light coat of body primer to the original adhesive remaining around the windshield opening flange. Let the body primer dry for at least 10 minutes:

- Do not apply glass primer to the body, and be careful not to mix up glass and body primer sponges.
- Never touch the primed surfaces with your hands.
- Mask off the dashboard before painting the flange.

//// : Apply body primer here

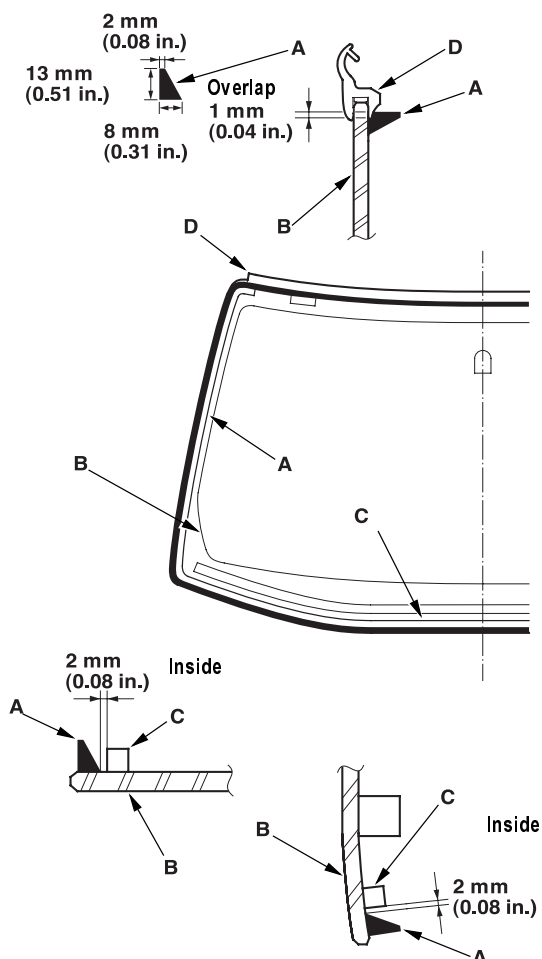


18. Before filling a cartridge, cut a "V" in the end of the nozzle (A) as shown.





19. Pack adhesive into the cartridge without air pockets to ensure continuous delivery. Put the cartridge in a caulking gun, and run a bead of adhesive (A) around the edge of the windshield (B) between the rubber dam (C) and molding (D) as shown. Apply the adhesive within 30 minutes after applying the glass primer. Make a slightly thicker bead at each corner.

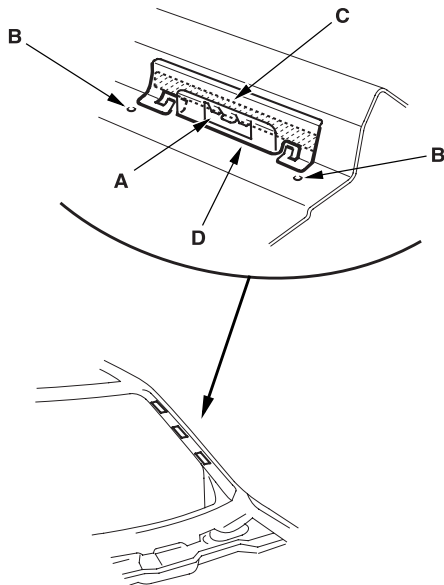


20. Use suction cups to hold the windshield over the opening, align it with the alignment marks made in step 14, and set it down on the adhesive. Lightly push on the windshield until its edges are fully seated on the adhesive all the way around. Do not open or close the doors until the adhesive is dry.
21. Scrape or wipe the excess adhesive off with a putty knife or towel. To remove adhesive from a painted surface or the windshield, wipe with a soft shop towel dampened with alcohol.
22. Let the adhesive dry for at least 1 hour, then spray water over the windshield and check for leaks. Mark leaking areas, and let the windshield dry, then seal with sealant:
- Let the vehicle stand for at least 4 hours after windshield installation. If the vehicle has to be used within the first 4 hours, it must be driven slowly.
  - Keep the windshield dry for the first hour after installation.
23. Reinstall all remaining removed parts. Advise the customer not to do the following things for 2 to 3 days:
- Slam the doors with all the windows rolled up.
  - Twist the body excessively (such as when going in and out of driveways at an angle or driving over rough, uneven roads).

## Windshield Side Trim Retainer Installation

NOTE: Take care not to scratch the body.

1. Clean the body surface with alcohol where new retainers are to be applied.
2. Peel the adhesive backing away from the retainer.
3. Line up the retainers (A) with the alignment marks (B) on the body, and glue the retainers with adhesive tape (C).



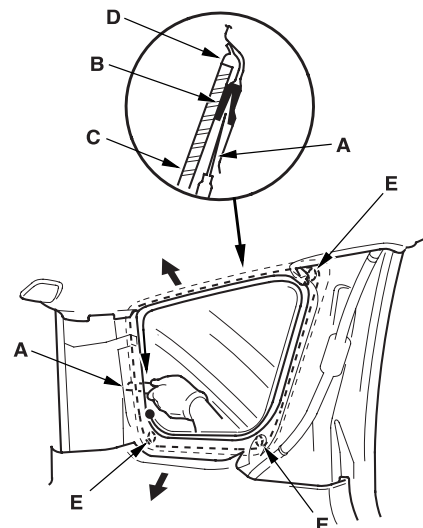
4. Apply two-part epoxy adhesive (D) around the edge of the retainers as shown.

## Quarter Glass Replacement

NOTE:

- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- Use seat covers to avoid damaging any surface.
- Use glass adhesive set P/N 08C73-X0230N.

1. Remove these items ([see page 20-78](#)):
  - Quarter pillar trim
  - Rear pillar trim
2. From inside the vehicle, use a utility knife (A) to cut through the adhesive (B) all the way around:
  - If the quarter glass (C) is to be reinstalled, take care not to damage the molding (D).
  - If the molding is damaged, replace the quarter glass, molding and clips (E) as an assembly.
  - If any of the clips are broken, the quarter glass can be reinstalled using butyl tape (refer to step 7).
  - Apply protective tape along the edge of the entire quarter glass opening flange.

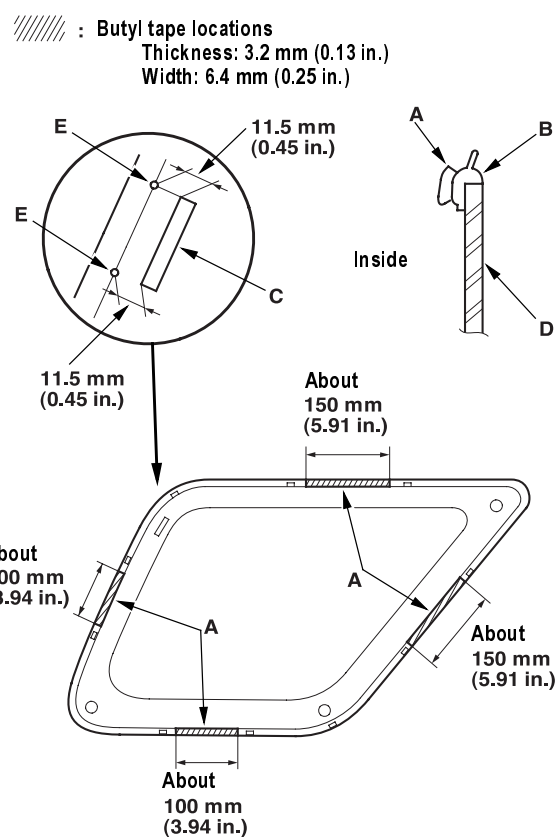


3. Carefully remove the quarter glass, and check the molding for damage, and replace the quarter glass if necessary.



4. With a putty knife, scrape the old adhesive smooth to a thickness of about 2 mm (0.08 in.) on the bonding surface around the entire quarter glass opening flange:
  - Do not scrape down to the painted surface of the body; damaged paint will interfere with proper bonding.
  - Remove the clips and fastener from the body.
5. Clean the body bonding surface with a sponge damaged in alcohol. After cleaning, keep oil, grease, and water from getting on the surface.
6. If the old quarter glass is to be reinstalled, use a putty knife to scrape off all of the old adhesive, any broken clips, and the fastener from the glass. Clean the inside face and the edge of the glass with alcohol where new adhesive is to be applied. Make sure the bonding surface is kept free of water, oil, and grease.

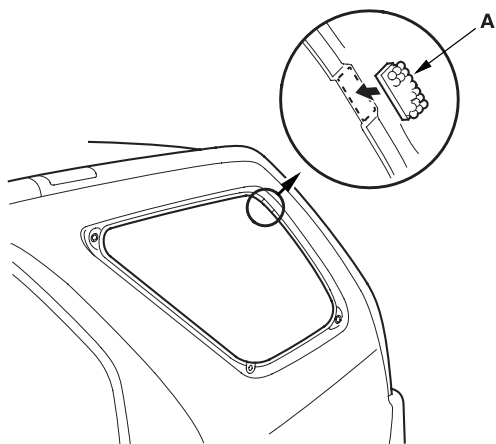
7. If the old quarter glass is to be reinstalled (and either clip is broken off the molding), apply a light coat of primer (C-100, or equivalent), then apply butyl tape (A) to the molding (B) as shown. Glue the fastener (C) to the inside face of the quarter glass (D):
  - Be sure the fastener lines up with the alignment marks (E).
  - Be careful not to touch the quarter glass where adhesive will be applied.
  - Do not peel the separator off the butyl tape.



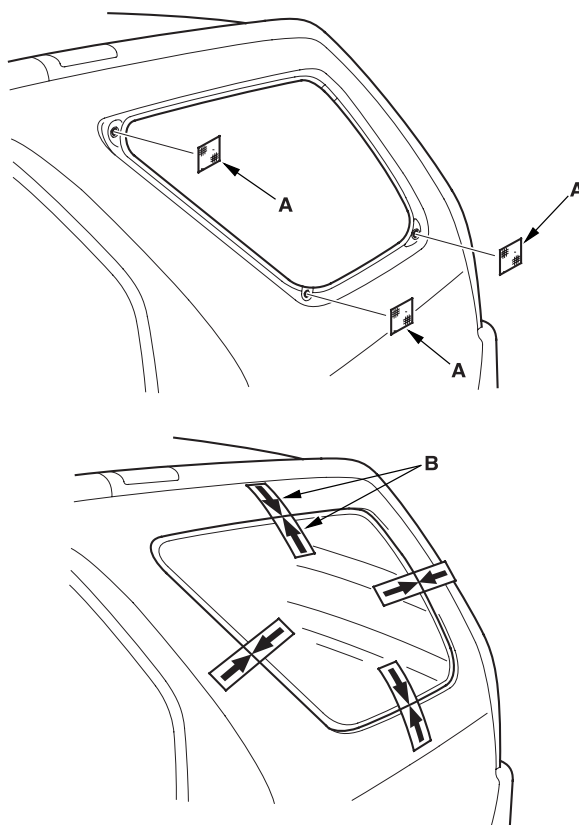
(cont'd)

**Quarter Glass Replacement (cont'd)**

8. If the new quarter glass is to be installed, glue the fastener (A) to the body. Be sure the fastener lines up with the body contour.



9. If the old quarter glass is to be reinstalled (and either clip is broken off the molding), seal the body holes with pieces of urethane tape (A). Then set the quarter glass upright in the opening, and make alignment marks (B) across the quarter glass and body with a grease pencil at the three points shown. Be careful not to touch the quarter glass where adhesive will be applied.



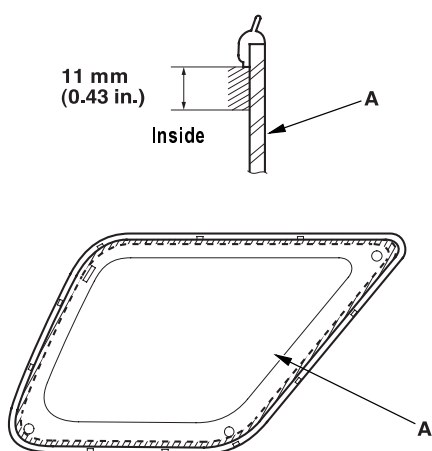
10. Remove the quarter glass.



11. With a sponge, apply a light coat of glass primer to the inside face of the quarter glass (A) as shown, then lightly wipe it off with gauze or cheesecloth:

- Do not apply body primer to the quarter glass, and do not get the body and glass primer sponges mixed up.
- Never touch the primed surfaces with your hands. If you do the adhesive may not bond to the quarter glass properly, causing a leak after the quarter glass is installed.
- Keep water, dust, and abrasive materials away from the primed surface.

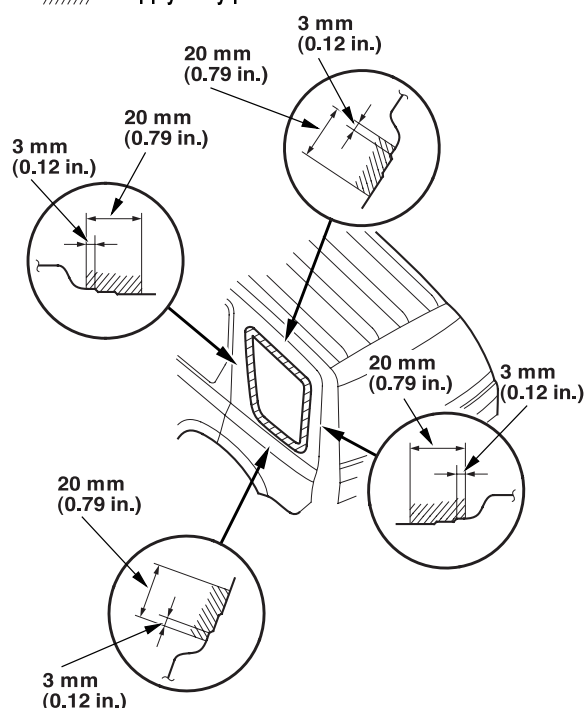
//// : Apply glass primer here.



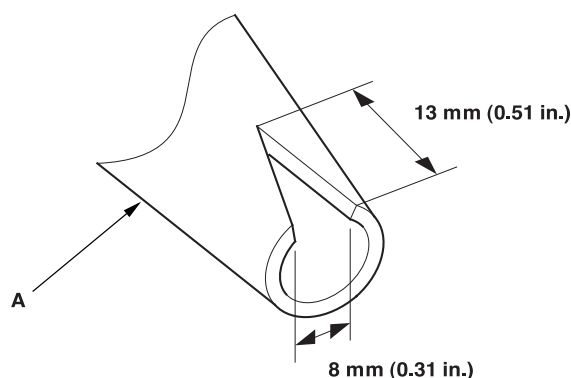
12. With a sponge, apply a light coat of body primer to the original adhesive remaining around the quarter glass opening flange. Let the body primer dry for at least 10 minutes:

- Do not apply glass primer to the body, and be careful not to mix up the glass and body primer sponges.
- Never touch the primed surfaces with your hands.
- Mask off the interior trim before painting the flange.

//// : Apply body primer here.



13. Before filling a cartridge, cut a "V" in the end of the nozzle (A) as shown.

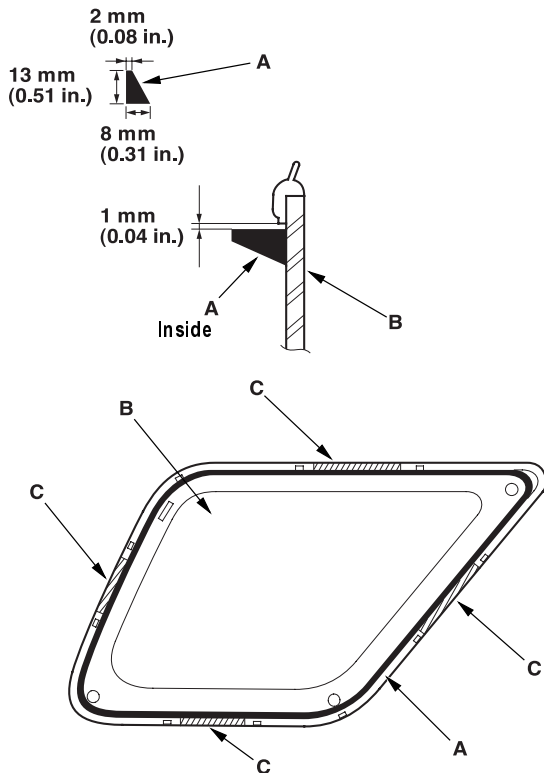


(cont'd)

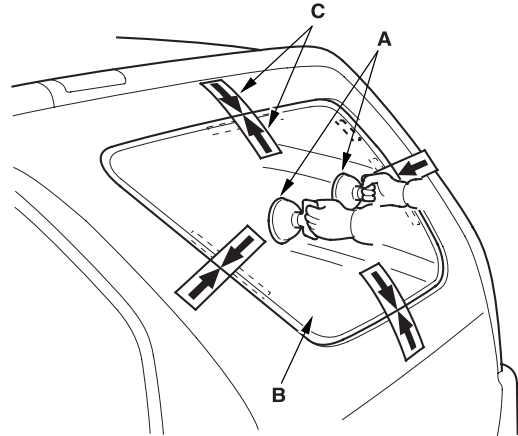
### Quarter Glass Replacement (cont'd)

**14.** Park adhesive into the cartridge without air pockets to ensure continuous delivery. Put the cartridge in a caulking gun, and run a bead of adhesive (A) around the edge of the quarter glass (B) as shown:

- After applying the adhesive, peel the separator off the butyl tape (C).
- Apply the adhesive within 30 minutes after applying the glass primer. Make a slightly thicker bead at each corner.



**15.** Use suction cups (A) to hold the quarter glass (B) over the opening, align the clips or the alignment marks (C) made in step 9, and set it down on the adhesive. Lightly push on the quarter glass until its edges are fully seated on the adhesive all the way around. Do not open or close the doors until the adhesive is dry.



**16.** Scrape or wipe the excess adhesive off with a putty knife or towel. To remove adhesive from a painted surface or the quarter glass, wipe with a soft shop towel dampened with alcohol.

**17.** Let the adhesive dry for at least 1 hour, then spray water over the quarter glass and check for leaks. Mark the leaking areas and let the quarter glass dry, then seal with sealant. Let the vehicle stand for at least 4 hours after quarter glass installation. If the vehicle has to be used within the first 4 hours, it must be driven slowly.

**18.** Reinstall all remaining removed parts. Advise the customer not to do the following things for 2 to 3 days:

- Slam the doors with all the windows rolled up.
- Twist the body excessively (such as when going in and out of driveways at an angle or driving over rough, uneven roads).



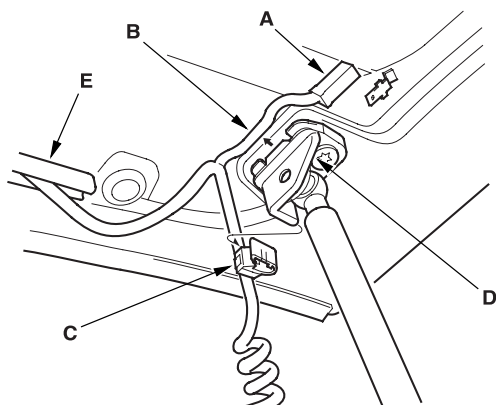


## Hatch Glass/Hatch Glass Support Strut Replacement

### NOTE:

- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- Take care not to scratch the tailgate.
- Do not damage the rear window defogger grid lines and terminals.

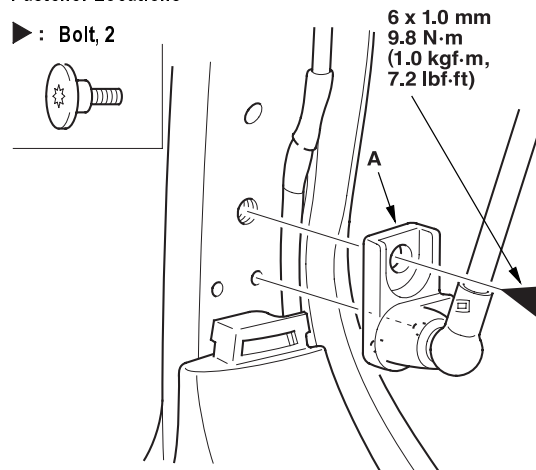
1. Remove the tailgate side trim from both sides (see page 20-80).
2. Remove the high mount brake light (see page 22A-98).
3. Disconnect the rear window defogger connectors (A), and release the wire harnesses (B) and harness holders (C) from both hatch glass support strut brackets (D). On the right side, release the wire harness from the wire harness trim (E).



4. While holding the hatch glass, using a Torx T30 bit, remove the bolts, then remove the hatch glass support strut brackets (A) from both sides.

### Fastener Locations

► : Bolt, 2



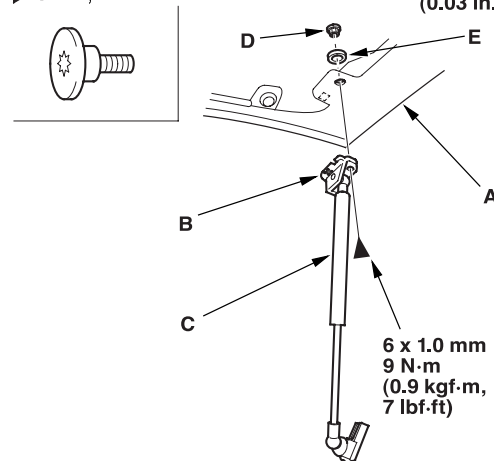
5. While holding the hatch glass (A), use a Torx T30 bit to remove the bolt, then release the double-faced adhesive tape (B), remove the hatch glass support strut (C), support strut nut (D), and seal (E) from the hatch glass.

### Fastener Locations

► : Bolt, 2

### Adhesive tape: Thickness

0.75 mm  
(0.03 in.)



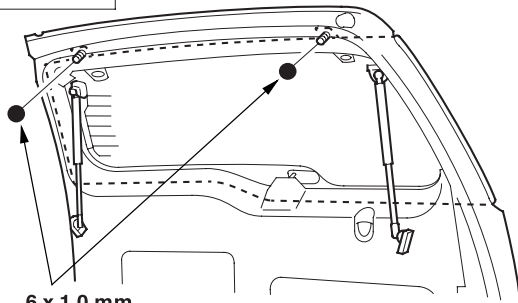
(cont'd)

## Hatch Glass/Hatch Glass Support Strut Replacement (cont'd)

6. With an assistant holding the hatch glass, remove the nuts from both sides. Unlock the hatch glass latch.

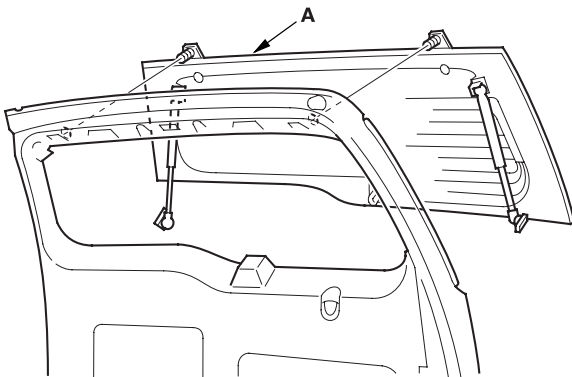
### Fastener Locations

● : Nut, 2



6 x 1.0 mm  
9.8 N·m  
(1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)

7. Remove the hatch glass (A). Take care not to scratch the tailgate.



8. Install the glass and support strut in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Replace the removed support strut mounting bolt with a new one.
  - Make sure the rear window defogger connectors are plugged in properly.
  - Adjust the position of the glass ([see page 20-58](#)).
  - Check that the hatch glass opens properly and locks securely.
9. Check for water leaks ([see step 9 on page 20-59](#)).



## Hatch Glass Disassembly/Reassembly

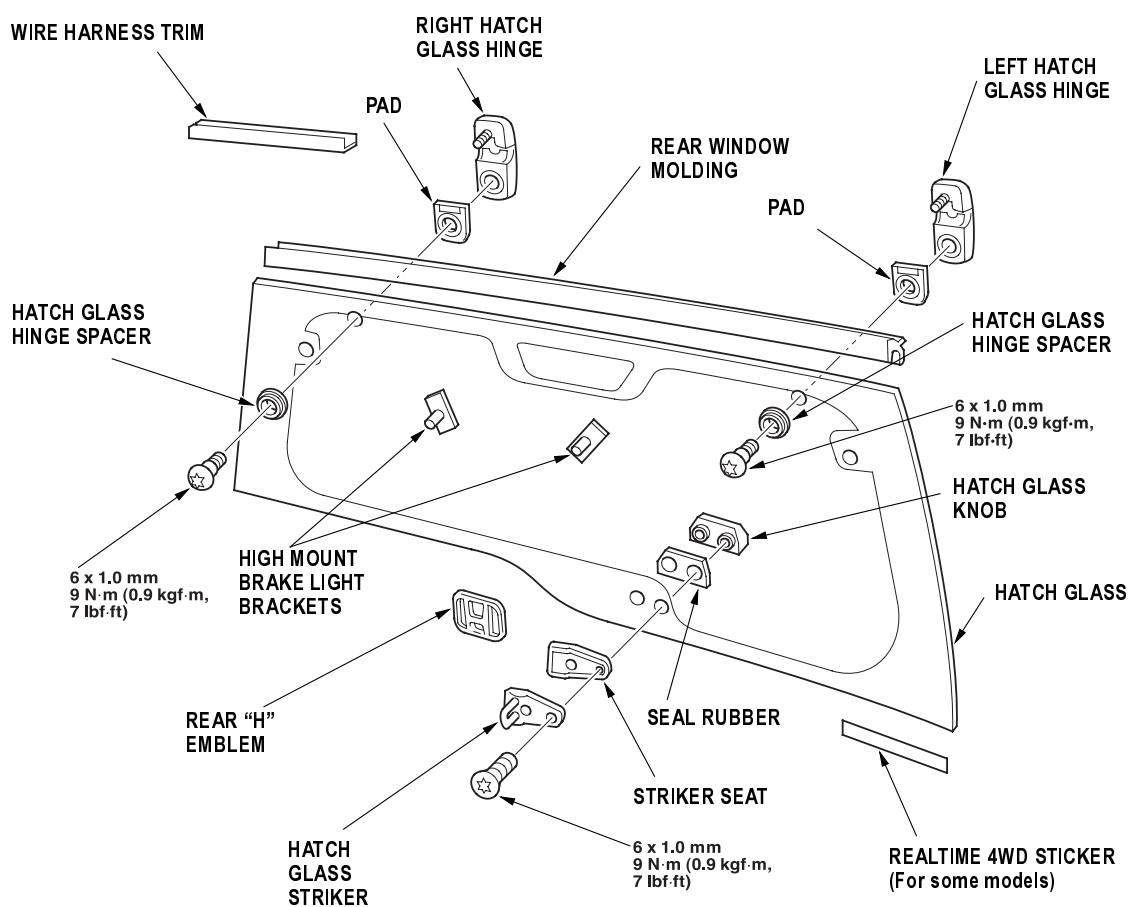
### NOTE:

- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- Place the hatch glass on the protective seat to prevent damage.
- Do not damage the rear window defogger grid lines and terminals.

Disassemble the hatch glass as shown, and note these items:

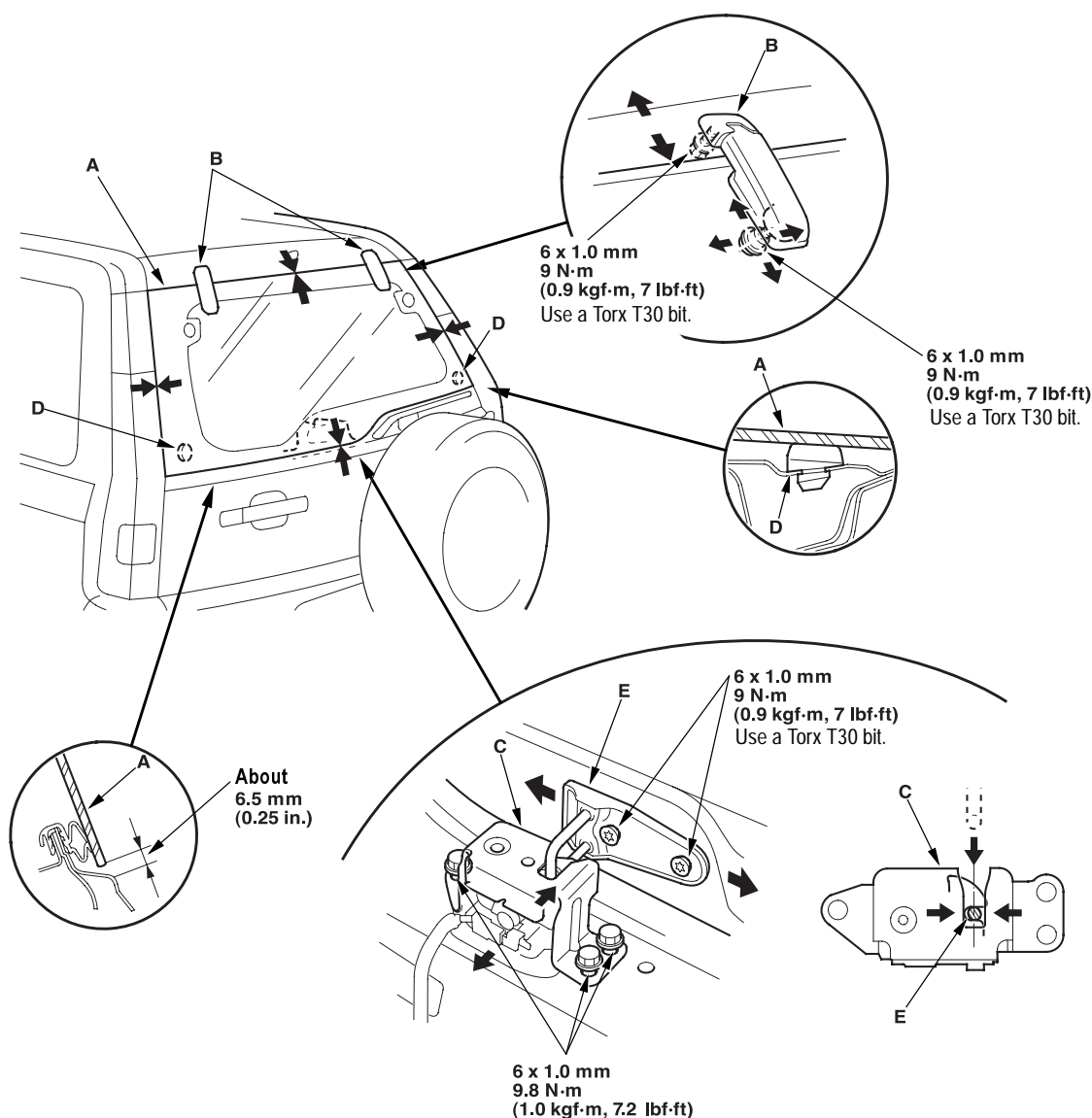
- To remove the bolts, use a Torx T30 bit.
- To remove the rear window molding, refer to Rear Window Molding Replacement ([see page 20-59](#)).
- To remove the high mount brake light bracket and wire harness trim, refer to High Mount Brake Light Bracket/Wire Harness Trim Replacement ([see page 20-61](#)).

Reassemble the hatch glass in the reverse order of removal. To install the rear "H" emblem and the REALTIME 4WD sticker, refer to Emblem/Sticker Replacement ([see page 20-153](#)).



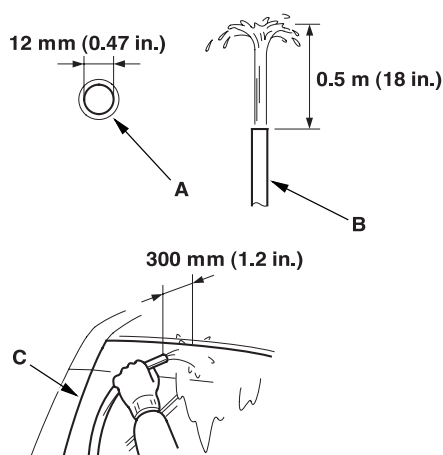
## Hatch Glass Adjustment

1. Remove the tailgate lower trim panel ([see page 20-80](#)).
2. With the help of an assistant, remove the hatch glass support struts from both sides ([see page 20-55](#)). Hold the hatch glass when opening and closing it.
3. Slightly loosen each bolt, screw, and nut.
4. Adjust the hatch glass (A) alignment in the following sequence.
  - Adjust the hatch glass hinges (B) up and down, to obtain the proper gap between the hatch glass and tailgate.
  - Adjust the hatch glass hinges right and left, as necessary to equalize the gap between the hatch glass and taillight on each side. Adjust the striker at the same time.
  - Adjust the hatch glass latch (C) forward and rearward, to make the hatch glass fit flush with the tailgate at the bottom edge. There should be no gap between the hatch glass stops (D) and hatch glass on each side.
  - Adjust the strikes (E) right and left until it's centered in the hatch glass latch.





5. Tighten each bolt, screw, and nut securely.
6. Check that the hatch glass opens properly and locks securely.
7. Reinstall the support struts securely (see page 20-55).
8. Reinstall the tailgate lower trim panel (see page 20-80).
9. Check for water leaks. Run water over the roof and on the sealing area as shown, and note these items:
  - Use a 12 mm (0.47 in.) diameter hose (A).
  - Adjust the rate of water flow as shown (B).
  - Do not use a nozzle.
  - Hold the hose about 300 mm (12 in.) away from the tailgate (C).

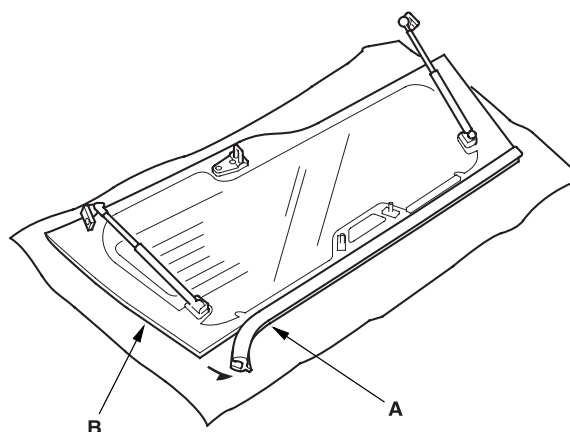


## Rear Window Molding Replacement

### NOTE:

- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- Place the hatch glass on the protective seat to prevent damage.
- Do not damage the rear window defogger grid lines and terminals.

1. Remove the hatch glass (see page 20-55).
2. Remove the hatch glass hinges from both sides of the hatch glass (see page 20-57).
3. Remove the molding (A) from the upper edge of the hatch glass (B). If necessary, cut the molding with a utility knife.



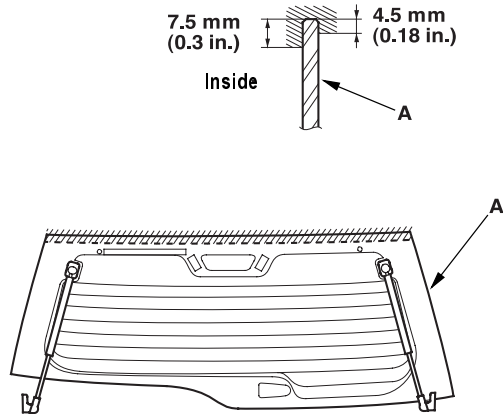
4. Use a putty knife to scrape off all of the adhesive from the hatch glass. Clean the upper edge of the hatch glass with isopropyl alcohol where new molding will be installed. After cleaning, keep oil, grease, and water from getting on the surface.

(cont'd)

## Rear Window Molding Replacement (cont'd)

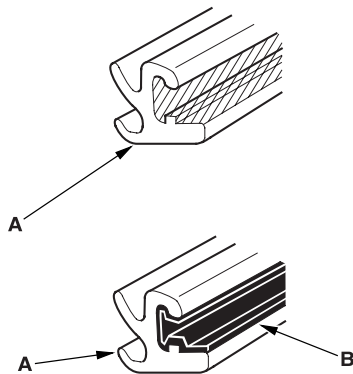
5. Apply primer (YOKOHAMA RUBBER MS-90, or equivalent) to the upper edge of the hatch glass (A). Be careful not to touch the hatch glass where primer will be applied.

////// : Apply primer here.

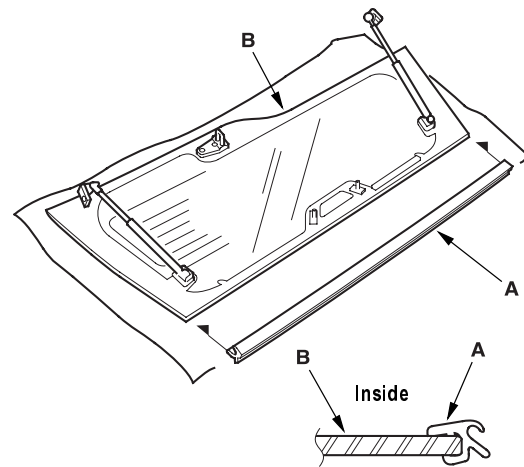


6. Apply primer (SAKAI CHEMISTRY SL-8861, or equivalent) to the entire groove of the molding (A), and run a bead of urethane adhesive (B) in the groove of the molding.

////// : Apply primer here.



7. Align the edge of the molding (A) with the corner edge of the hatch glass (B), and glue the molding.



8. Scrape or wipe the excess adhesive off with a putty knife or towel. To remove adhesive from the hatch glass, wipe with a soft shop towel dampened with alcohol.
9. Let the adhesive dry for at least 1 hour.
10. Reinstall the hatch glass hinges.
11. Reinstall the hatch glass.

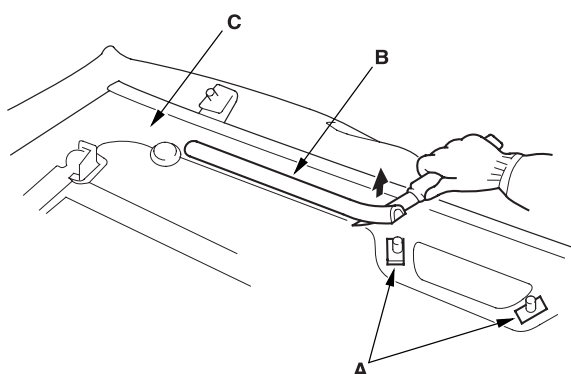


## High Mount Brake Light Bracket/Wire Harness Trim Replacement

### NOTE:

- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- Place the hatch glass on the protective seat to prevent damage.
- Do not damage the rear window defogger grid lines and terminals.

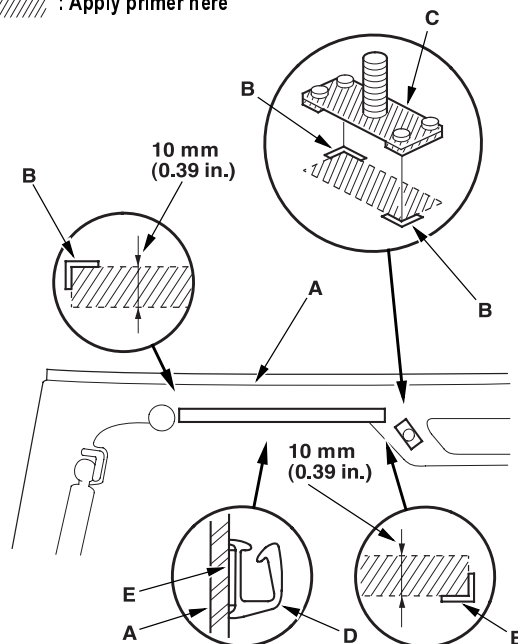
1. Remove the hatch glass (see page 20-55).
2. Cut the adhesive portions of the high-mount brake light brackets (A) and wire harness trim (B) with a utility knife, then remove them. Take care not to scratch the hatch glass (C).



3. Use a putty knife to scrape off all of the old adhesive and adhesive tape from the hatch glass. Clean the inside face of the hatch glass with isopropyl alcohol where new bracket and trim are to be installed. Make sure the bonding surface is kept free of water, oil, and grease.

4. Apply primer (YOKOHAMA RUBBER MS-90, or equivalent) to the inside face of the hatch glass (A):
  - Be sure the primer lines up with the alignment marks (B).
  - Be careful not to touch the hatch glass where primer will be applied.

//// : Apply primer here

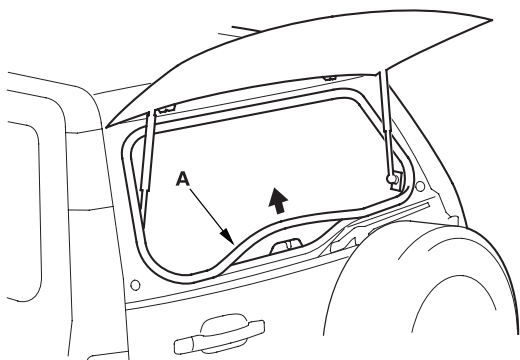


5. Apply primer (SAKAI CHEMISTRY SL-8861, or equivalent) to the back of the high-mount brake light brackets (C).
6. Glue the brackets to the hatch glass with urethane adhesive, and glue the trim (D) to the hatch glass with the adhesive tape (E). Be sure the brackets and trim line up with the alignment marks.
7. Scrape or wipe the excess adhesive off with a putty knife or towel. To remove adhesive from the hatch glass, use a soft shop towel dampened with alcohol.
8. Let the adhesive dry for at least 1 hour.
9. Reinstall the hatch glass.

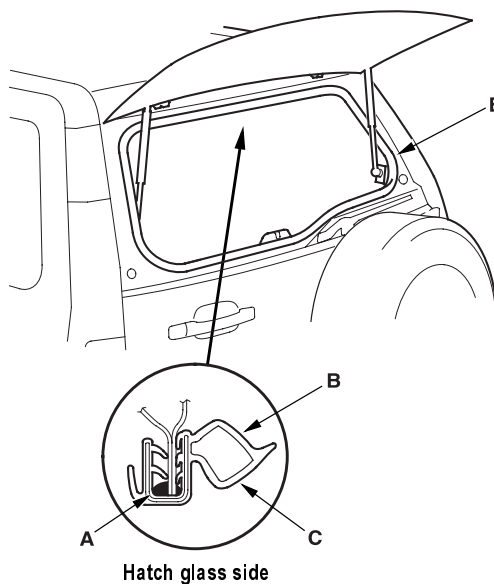
## Hatch Glass Weatherstrip Replacement

### NOTE:

- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
  - Take care not to scratch the tailgate.
1. Remove the tailgate side trim from both sides (see [page 20-80](#)).
  2. Remove the high mount broke light (see [page 22A-98](#)).
  3. Disconnect the rear window defogger connectors, and release the wire harnesses from both sides (see step 3 on [page 20-55](#)).
  4. Remove the hatch glass support strut brackets from both sides of the tailgate (see step 4 on [page 20-55](#)).
  5. With an assistant holding the hatch glass, remove the hatch glass weatherstrip (A) by pulling out on it.



6. Clean the bonding surface around the hatch glass opening flange with alcohol.
7. Apply sealant (Cemedine P/N 08712-0004, or equivalent) (A) in the groove around the hatch glass weatherstrip (B).



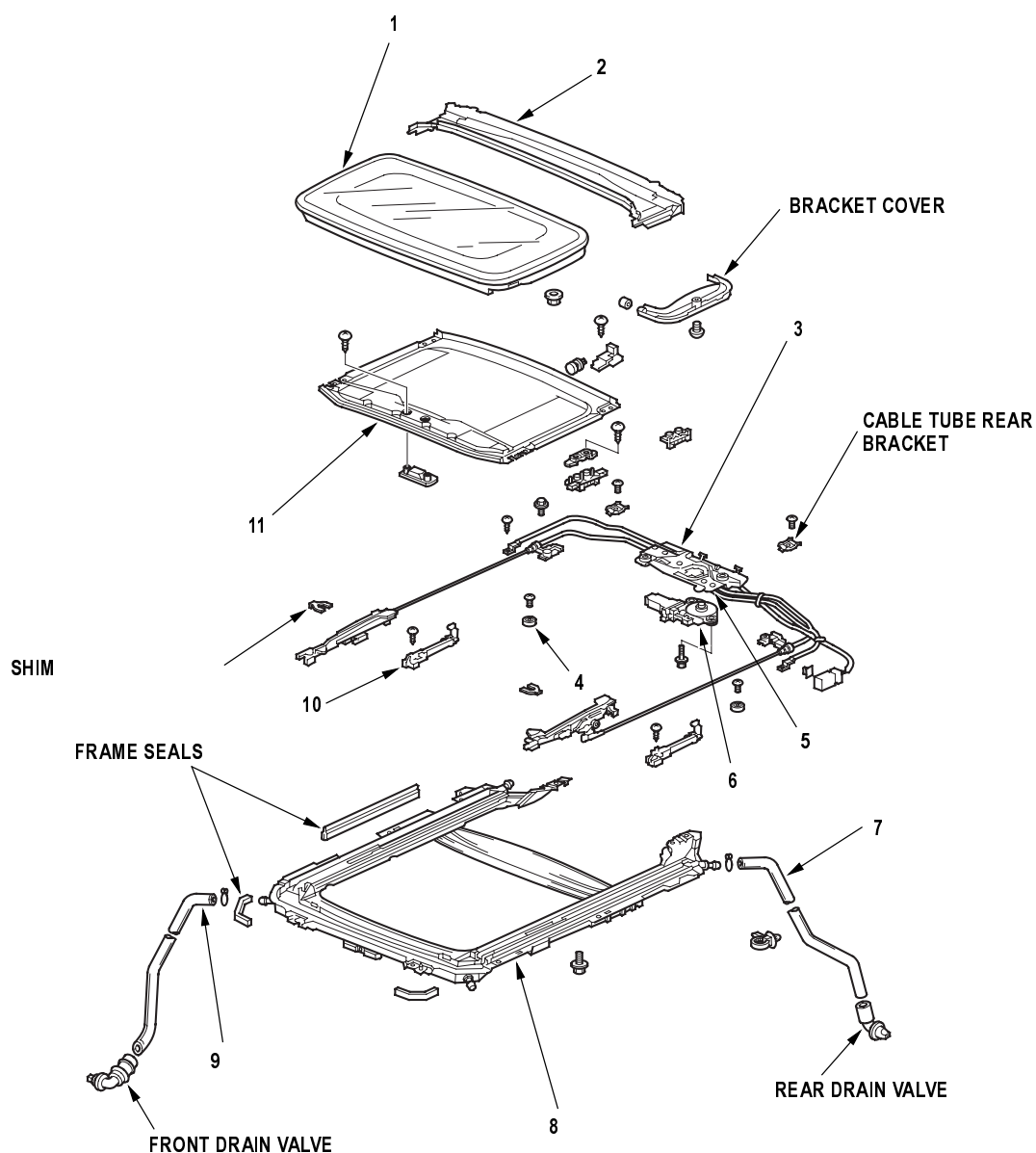
8. Locate the painted alignment mark (C) on the hatch glass weatherstrip. Align the painted mark with the alignment tab in the center of the hatch glass opening, and install the weatherstrip. Make sure it's seated completely and facing in the direction shown. Make sure there are no wrinkles in the weatherstrip.
9. Check for water leaks (see step 9 on [page 20-59](#)).





## Sunroof

### Component Location Index



- |                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| 1 GLASS                 | Height Adjustment, <a href="#">page 20-65</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-65</a><br>Closing Force and Opening Drag Check, <a href="#">page 20-74</a> |
| 2 DRAIN CHANNEL         | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-66</a>   |
| 3 POSITION SWITCH       | Adjustment, <a href="#">page 20-73</a>  |
| 4 SLIDE STOP            |   |
| 5 CABLE ASSEMBLY        | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-71</a>   |
| 6 MOTOR                 | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-68</a>   |
| 7 REAR DRAIN TUBE       | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-69</a>   |
| 8 FRAME                 | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-69</a>   |
| 9 FRONT DRAIN TUBE      | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-69</a>   |
| 10 DRAIN CHANNEL SLIDER | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-71</a>   |
| 11 SUNSHADE             | Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-67</a>   |

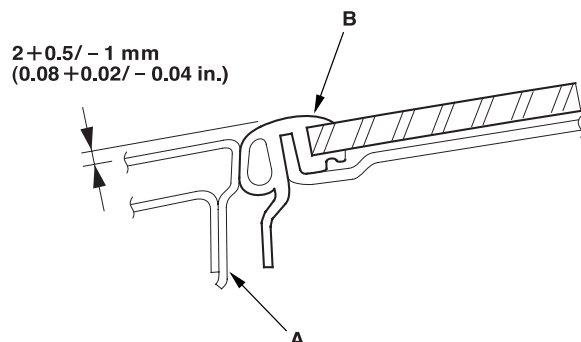
Symptom Troubleshooting Index

Symptom	Diagnostic Procedure	Also check for
Water leaks	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Check for a clogged drain tube.</li><li>2. Check for a gap between the glass weatherstrip and the roof panel.</li><li>3. Check for a defective or an improperly installed glass weatherstrip or drain channel.</li><li>4. Check for a gap between the drain seal and the roof panel.</li></ol>	
Wind noise	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Check for excessive clearance between the glass weatherstrip and the roof panel.</li></ol>	
Motor noise	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Check for a loose motor.</li><li>2. Check for a worn gear or bearing.</li><li>3. Check for a deformed cable assembly.</li></ol>	
Glass does not move, but motor turns	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Check for a defective gear or inner cable.</li><li>2. Check for foreign matter stuck between the guide rail and the slider.</li><li>3. Check for a loose inner cable.</li><li>4. Make sure the cable assembly is attached properly.</li></ol>	
Glass does not move and motor does not turn (glass can be moved with sunroof wrench)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Check for a blown fuse.</li><li>2. Check for a faulty sunroof switch.</li><li>3. Check the limit switch.</li><li>4. Check for a run down battery.</li><li>5. Check for a defective motor.</li><li>6. Check for a faulty relay.</li></ol>	



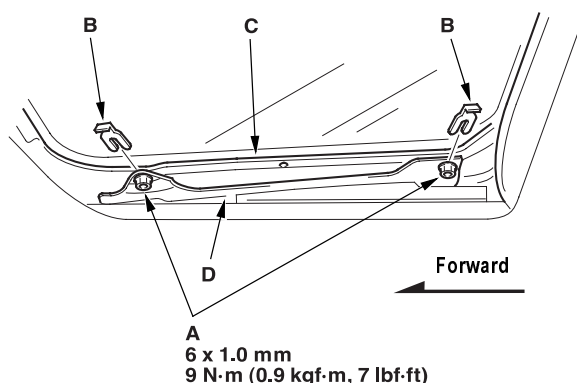
## Glass Height Adjustment

The roof panel (A) should be even with the glass weatherstrip (B), to within  $2+0.5/-1$  mm ( $0.08+0.02/-0.04$  in.) at the center of the glass opening. If not, make the following adjustment:



1. Remove the bracket cover from each side.
2. Loosen the nuts (A), and install the shims (B) between the glass frame (C) and glass bracket (D) on each side.

**Shim thickness: Front and rear max. 2 mm (0.08 in.)**



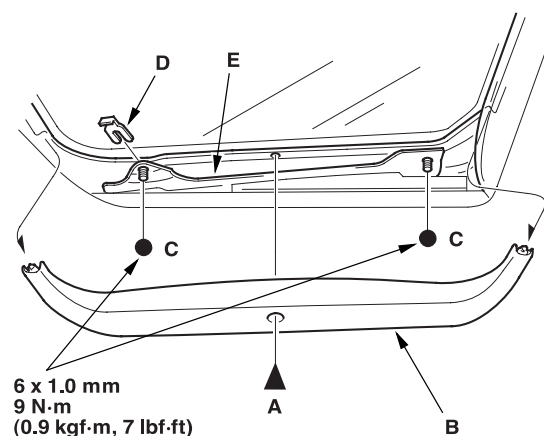
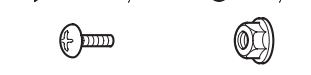
3. If necessary, repeat on the opposite side.

## Glass Replacement

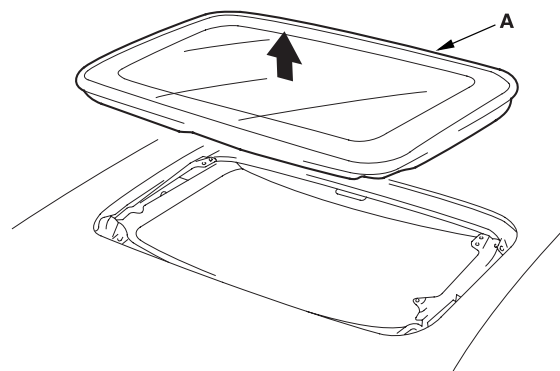
1. Close the glass fully.
2. Slide the sunshade all the way back.
3. Remove the screws (A), then remove both bracket covers (B). Remove the nuts (C) and shims (D) from both glass brackets (E).

### Fastener Locations

A ► : Screw, 2      C ● : Nut, 4



4. Remove the glass (A) by lifting it up. Do not damage the roof panel.



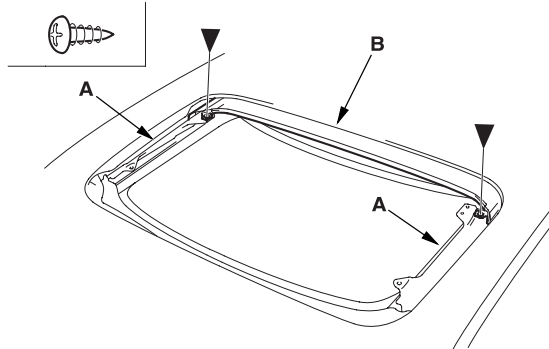
5. Install the glass in the reverse order of the removal, and adjust the glass height alignment.
6. Check for water leaks. Use free-flowing water from a hose without a nozzle. Do not use high-pressure water.

## Drain Channel Replacement

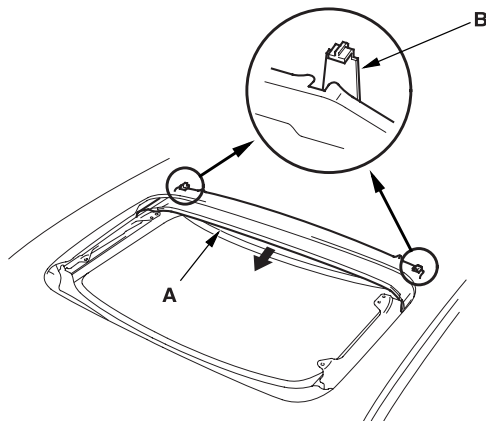
1. Remove the glass ([see page 20-65](#)).
2. With the sunroof wrench, move both glass brackets (A) to the position where the sunroof normally pivots down, and remove the screws securing the drain channel (B).

### Fastener Locations

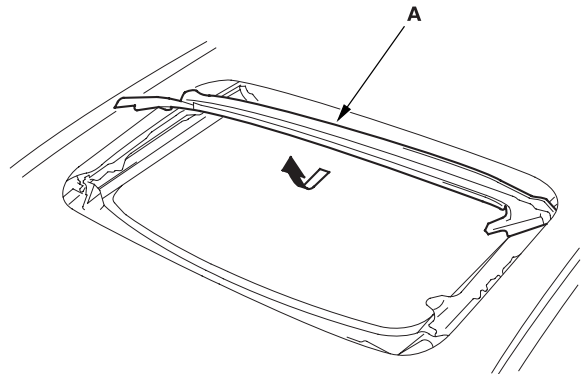
► : Screw, 2



3. Release the drain channel (A) from both hooks (B) of the drain channel slider by pulling the drain channel forward.



4. Remove the drain channel (A).



5. Install the channel in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Push the drain channel onto the hooks until a faint click is heard.
  - Check the glass height adjustment ([see page 20-65](#)).
6. Check for water leaks. Let the water run freely from a hose without a nozzle. Do not use a high-pressure spray.

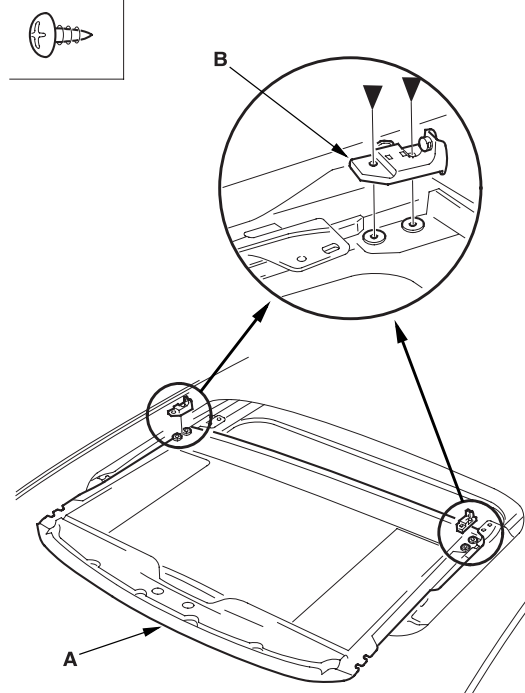


## Sunshade Replacement

1. Remove the drain channel (see page 20-66).
2. Slide the sunshade (A) until you can see both sunshade slider spacers (B).

### Fastener Locations

► : Screw, 4

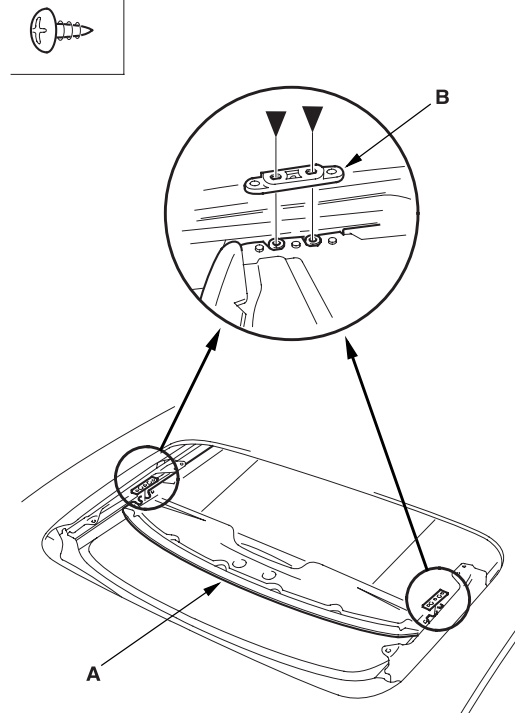


3. Remove the screws, then remove both spacers.

4. While lifting the front portion of the sunshade (A), move the sunshade forward until you can see both sunshade rear hooks (B). Do not damage the sunshade and hooks.

### Fastener Locations

► : Screw, 4

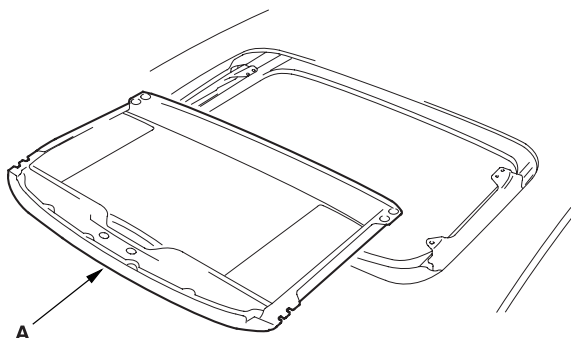


5. Remove the screws, then remove both hooks.

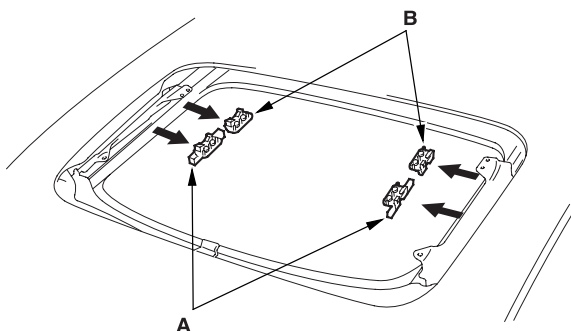
(cont'd)

### Sunshade Replacement (cont'd)

6. Remove the sunshade (A).



7. Remove the front sunshade base sliders (A) and rear sunshade base sliders (B) from both guide rail portions of the frame.



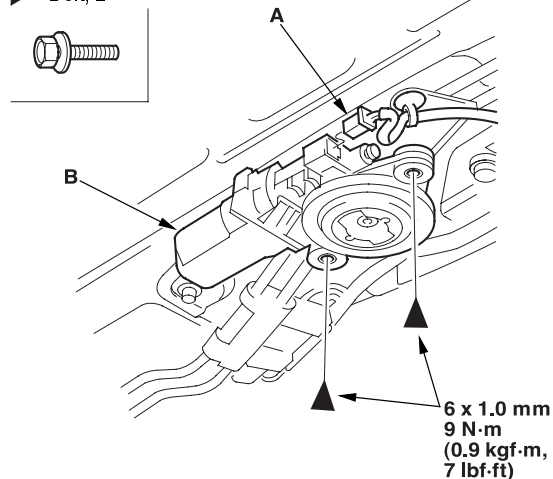
8. Install the sunshade in the reverse order of removal, and check the glass height adjustment ([see page 20-65](#)).
9. Check for water leaks. Let the water run freely from a hose without a nozzle. Do not use a high-pressure spray.

### Motor Replacement

1. Remove the headliner ([see page 20-81](#)).
2. Put on gloves to protect your hands. Disconnect the connector (A), and remove the bolts, then remove the motor (B).

#### Fastener Locations

►: Bolt, 2



3. Install the motor in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Make sure the connector is plugged in properly.
  - Check the motor operation.



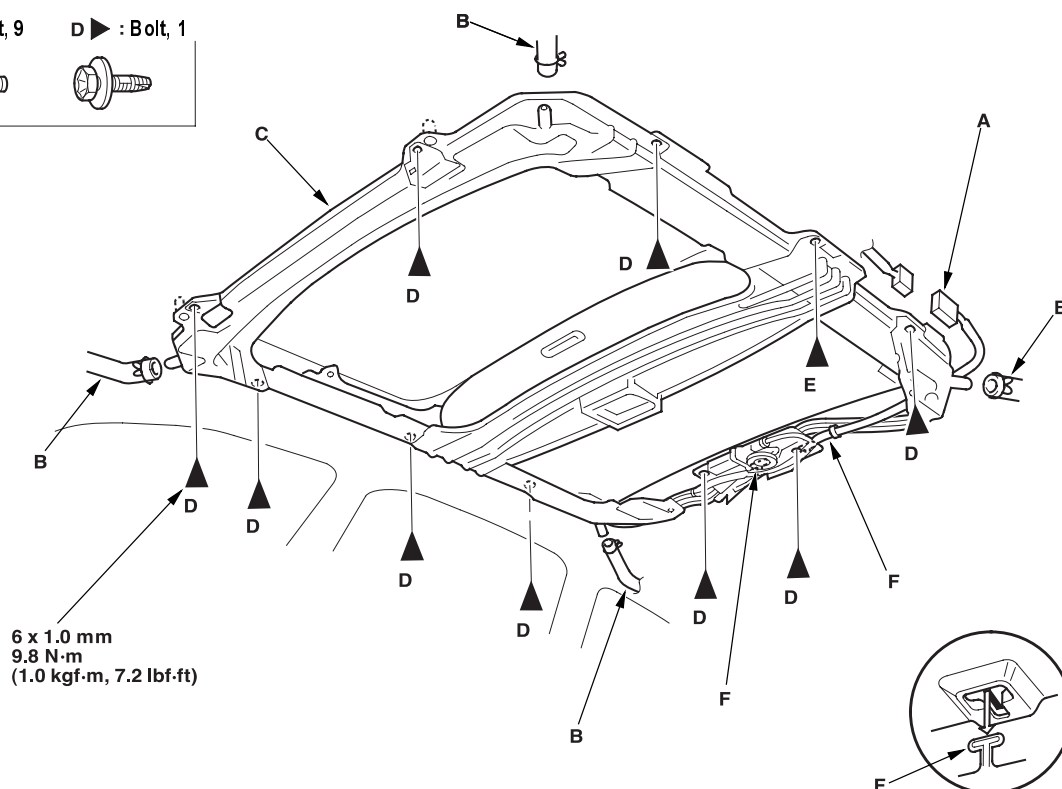
## Frame and Drain Tube Replacement

NOTE: Put on gloves to protect your hands.

1. Remove these items:
  - Headliner ([see page 20-81](#))
  - Sunroof glass ([see page 20-65](#))
2. Disconnect the sunroof connector (A) and drain tubes (B). LHD is shown, RHD is symmetrical.

### Fastener Locations

D ▶ : Bolt, 9    D ▶ : Bolt, 1

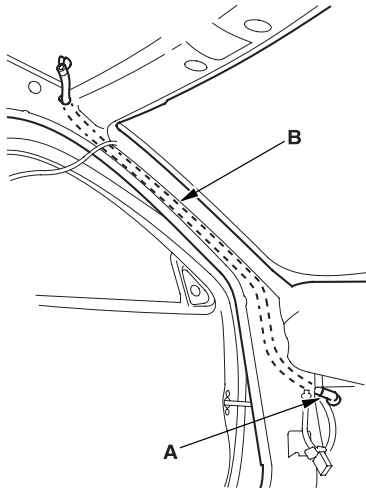


3. With an assistant holding the frame (C), remove the bolts (D) and ground bolt (E), starting at the rear, and release the rear hooks (F) by moving the frame forward, then remove the frame.
4. With the help of an assistant, carefully remove the frame through the front door opening. Take care not to scratch the interior trim and body, or tear the seat covers.

(cont'd)

## Frame and Drain Replacement (cont'd)

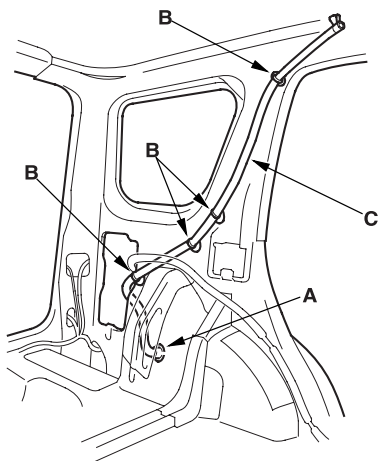
5. To remove a front drain valve (A) from the body, remove the kick panel, left or right ([see page 20-76](#)). Tie a string to the end of the drain tube, then pull the front drain tube (B) down out of the front pillar.



6. To remove a rear drain valve (A) from the cargo area, remove these parts:

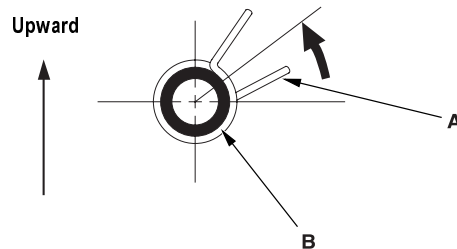
- Rear side trim panel ([see page 20-77](#))
- Quarter pillar trim ([see page 20-78](#))

Using a clip remover, detach the clips (B), then remove the rear drain tube (C).



7. Install the frame and drain tube in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- Before installing the frame, clear the drain tubes and drain valves using compressed air.
- Check the frame seal.
- Clean the surface of the frame.
- When installing the frame, first attach the rear hooks into the body holes.
- Make sure the connector is plugged in properly.
- When connecting the drain tube, slide it over the frame nozzle at least 10 mm (0.39 in.).
- Install the tube clip (A) on the drain tube (B) as shown.



8. Check for water leaks. Let the water run freely from a hose without a nozzle. Do not use a high-pressure spray.





## Drain Channel Slider and Cable Assembly Replacement

1. Remove the frame (see page 20-69).
2. Remove these parts from the frame:
  - Drain channel (see page 20-66)
  - Sunshade (see page 20-67)
  - Sunroof motor (see page 20-68)
3. Put on gloves to protect your hands. From both sides of the frame (A), remove the screws (B, C), then remove the slide stops (D) and cable tube rear brackets (E), and remove the cable tube side bracket mounting bolts (F) and the cable tube mounting screws (G).

### Fastener Locations

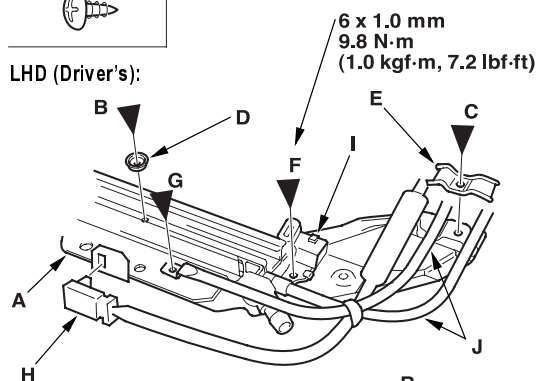
B ►: Screw, 2    C ►: Screw, 2    F ►: Bolt, 2



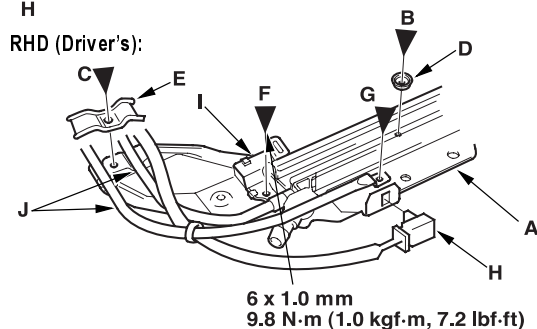
G ►: Screw, 2



LHD (Driver's):

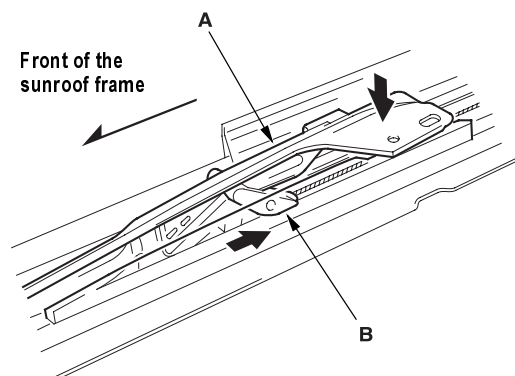


RHD (Driver's):

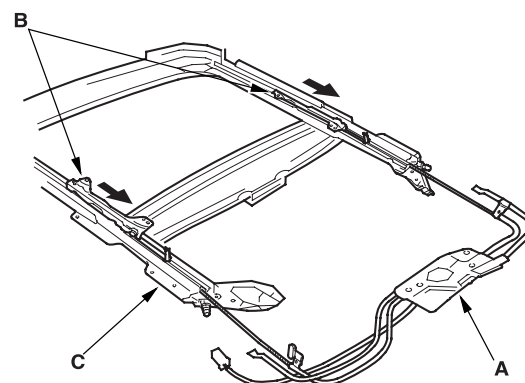


4. From the driver's side, detach the sunroof connector (H) from the frame.
5. Remove the cable tube side brackets (I) and cable tubes (J) from both sides of the frame.

6. Pivot the glass bracket (A) down by sliding the link lifter (B) back, then slide both glass brackets back with the link lifter.



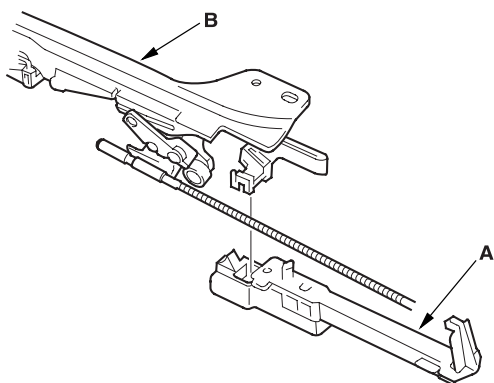
7. Slide the cable assembly (A) and both glass brackets (B) back, then remove them from the frame (C).



(cont'd)

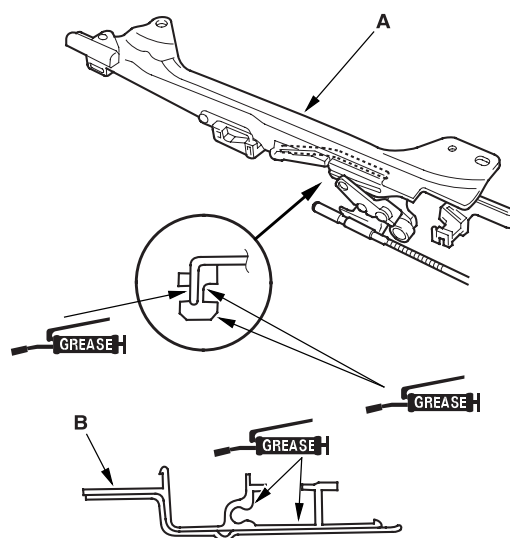
**Drain Channel Slider and Cable Assembly Replacement (cont'd)**

8. Remove the drain channel sliders (A) from the glass brackets (B) on both sides.



9. Install the slider and cable assembly in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

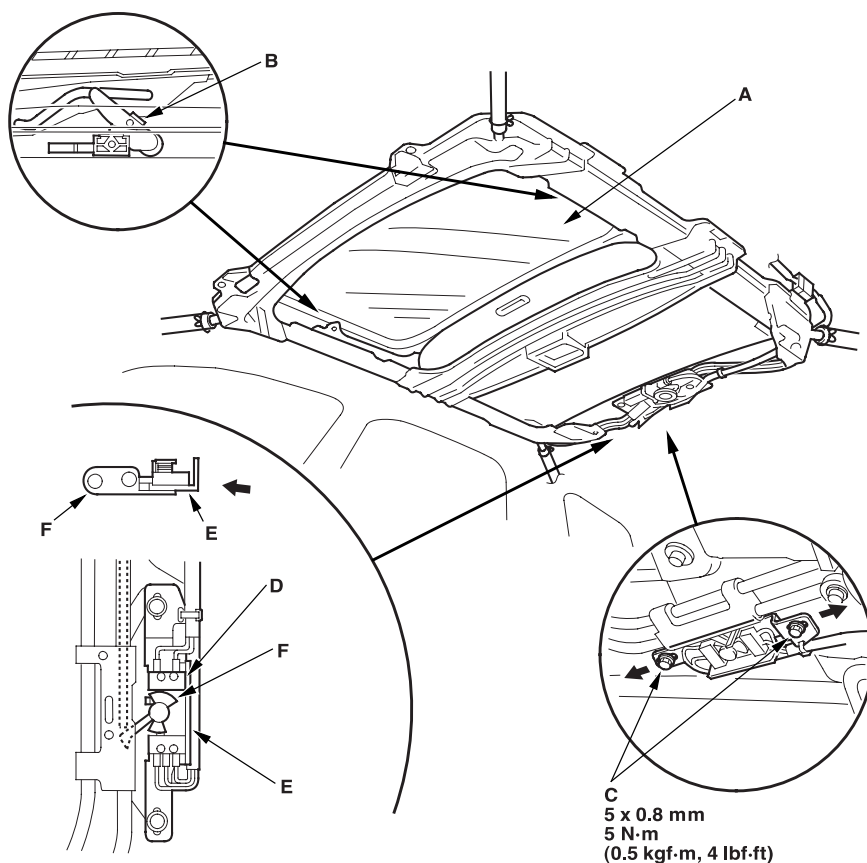
- Damaged parts should be replaced.
- Apply multipurpose grease to the glass bracket (A) and guide rail portion of the frame (B) indicated by the arrows.
- Before reinstalling the motor, make sure both link lifters are parallel, and in the fully closed position.
- Before reinstalling the motor, install the frame and glass, then check the opening drag ([see page 20-74](#)).





## Position Switch Adjustment

1. Remove the headliner (see page 20-81).
2. With the sunroof wrench, close the glass (A) fully:
  - Make sure both link lifters (B) are parallel, and in the position shown.
  - Check the glass fit to the roof panel and the glass height (see page 20-65).

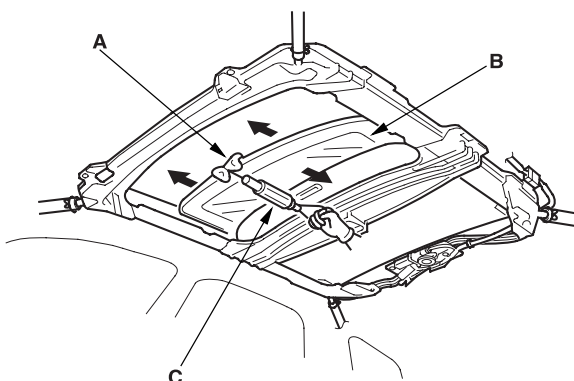


3. With an open-end wrench, loosen the position switch mounting bolts (C).
4. Adjust the position switch (D):
  - Move the switch plate (E) a little at a time, then secure it in the position where you hear a faint click when the switch cam (F) pushes the position switch (open/close).
  - Check that the switch plate contacts the switch bracket (F).
5. Check the operation of the glass (from the tilt-up position to fully closed position, from the fully open position to the fully closed position) by operating the sunroof switch.

### Closing Force and Opening Drag Check

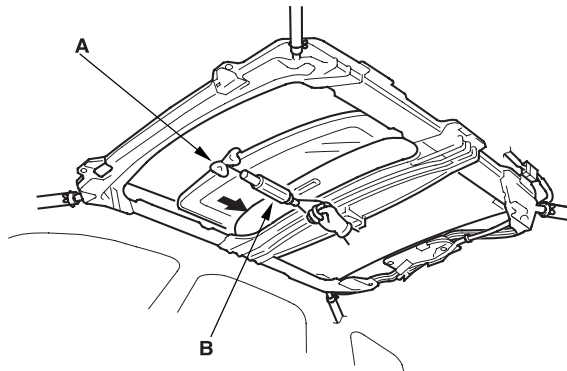
1. Remove the headliner ([see page 20-81](#)).
2. Closing force check:
  - With a shop towel (A) on the leading edge of the glass (B), attach a spring scale (C) as shown.
  - Have an assistant hold the switch to close the glass while you measure the force required to stop it.
  - Read the force as soon as the glass stops moving, then immediately release the switch and spring scale.

**Closing Force: 200 - 290 N (20 - 30 kgf, 44 - 66 lbf)**



3. If the force is not within specification, remove the sunroof motor ([see page 20-68](#)), then check:
  - The gear portion and the inner cable for breakage and damage. If the gear portion is broken, replace the motor. If the inner cable is damaged, remove the frame ([see page 20-69](#)), and replace the cable assembly ([see page 20-71](#)).
  - The sunroof motor ([see page 22A-128](#)). If the motor fails to run or doesn't turn smoothly, replace it.
  - The opening drag. Go to step 4.

4. Opening drag check: Protect the leading edge of the glass with a shop towel (A). Measure the effort required to open the glass using a spring scale (B) as shown.

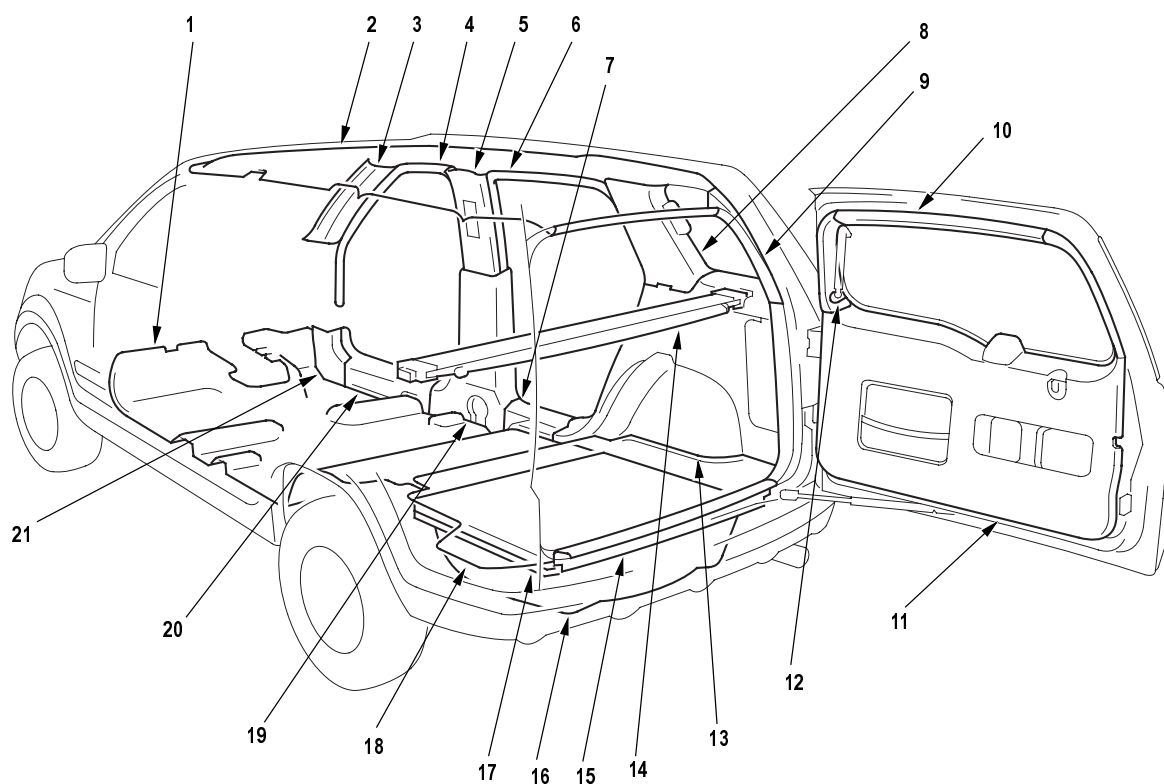


5. If the load is over 40 N (4 kgf, 9 lbf), check:
  - The side clearance and glass height adjustment ([see page 20-65](#)).
  - For broken or damaged sliding parts. If any sliding parts are damaged, replace them.



## Interior Trim

### Component Location Index



1	CARPET	Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-85</a>	12	TAILGATE SIDE TRIM	<a href="#">page 20-80</a>
2	HEADLINER	Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-81</a>	13	REAR SIDE TRIM PANEL	<a href="#">page 20-77</a>
3	FRONT PILLAR TRIM	<a href="#">page 20-76</a>	14	TONNEAU COVER	<a href="#">page 20-77</a>
4	FRONT DOOR OPENING TRIM	<a href="#">page 20-76</a>	15	REAR TRIM PANEL	<a href="#">page 20-79</a>
5	CENTER PILLAR UPPER TRIM	<a href="#">page 20-76</a>	16	REAR FLOOR BUCKET	<a href="#">page 20-79</a>
6	REAR DOOR OPENING TRIM	<a href="#">page 20-76</a>	17	CARGO FLOOR LID	<a href="#">page 20-79</a>
7	REAR DOOR SILL TRIM	<a href="#">page 20-76</a>	18	TRUNK FLOOR MAT	<a href="#">page 20-79</a>
8	QUARTER PILLAR TRIM	<a href="#">page 20-78</a>	19	CENTER PILLAR LOWER TRIM PANEL	<a href="#">page 20-76</a>
9	REAR PILLAR TRIM	<a href="#">page 20-78</a>	20	FRONT DOOR SILL TRIM	<a href="#">page 20-76</a>
10	TAILGATE UPPER TRIM PANEL	<a href="#">page 20-80</a>	21	KICK PANEL	<a href="#">page 20-76</a>
11	TAILGATE LOWER TRIM PANEL	<a href="#">page 20-80</a>			

## Trim Removal/Installation - Door Area

### NOTE:

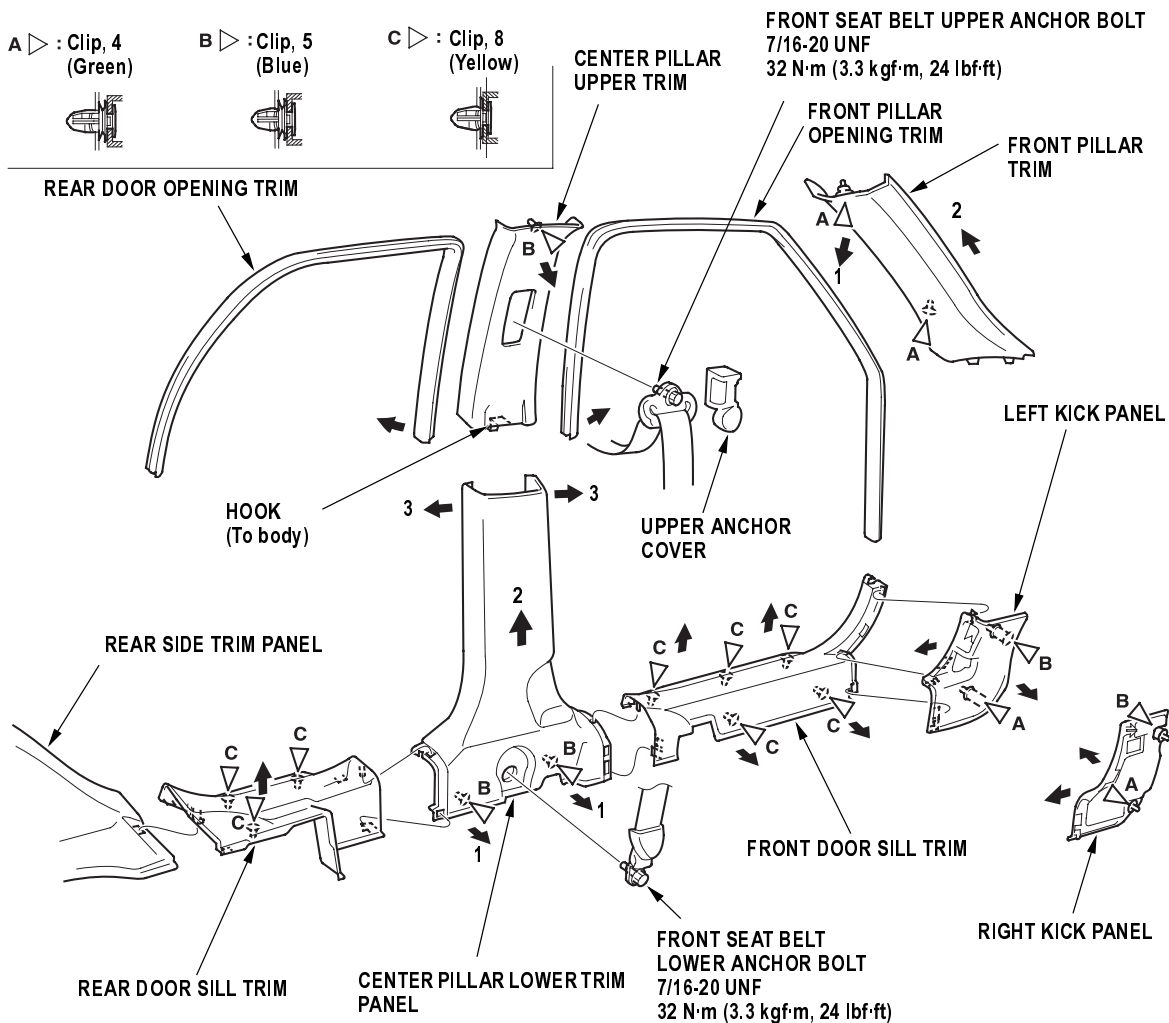
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.
- Take care not to bend or scratch the trim and panels.

Remove the trim as shown:

Install the trim in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- Replace any damaged clips.
- Apply liquid thread lock to the front seat belt upper anchor bolt before installation.
- Before installing the anchor bolts, make sure there are no twists or kinks in the belts.

### Fastener Locations





## Trim Removal/Installation - Rear Side Area

### NOTE:

- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.
- Take care not to bend or scratch the trim and panels.

Remove these items, then remove the trim as shown:

- Rear door sill trim ([see page 20-76](#))
- Trunk floor mat, cargo floor lid, rear floor bucket, tie-down hooks, rear trim panel ([see page 20-79](#))
- Accessory power socket (from the left rear side trim panel) ([see page 22A-239](#))

Install the trim in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

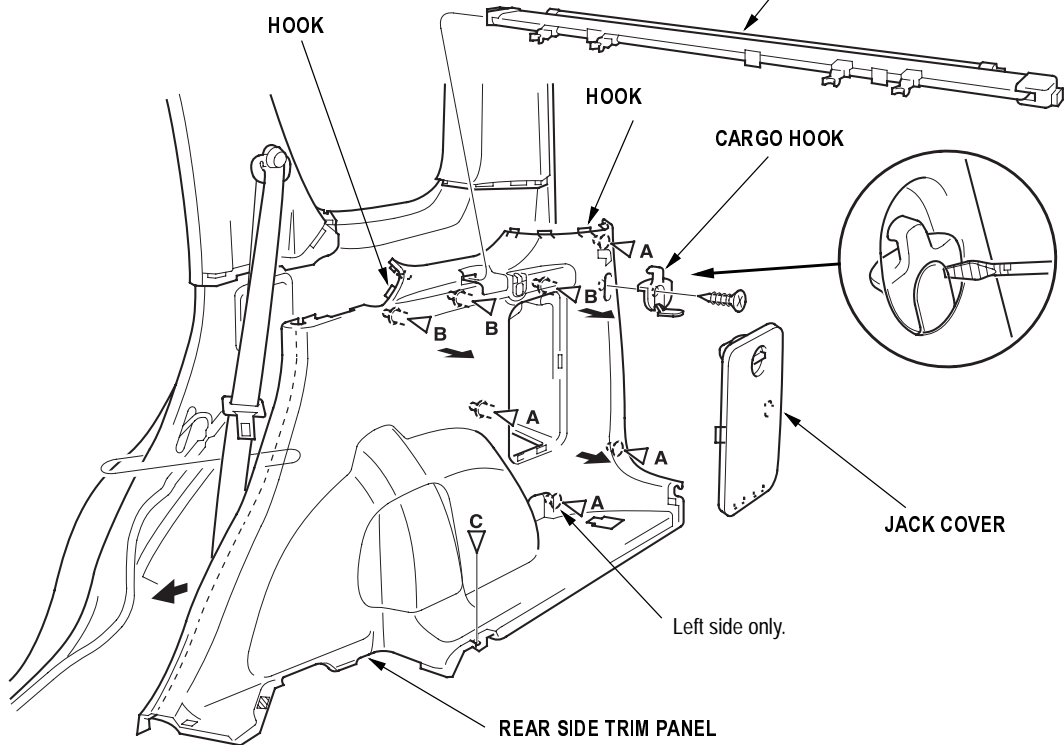
- Replace any damaged clips.
- Make sure there are no pinches in the belt.

### Fastener Locations

A ▷ : Clip (Blue)  
Right, 3  
Left, 4

B ▷ : Clip, 3  
(Orange)

C ▷ : Clip, 1



## Trim Removal/Installation - Rear Side Pillar Area

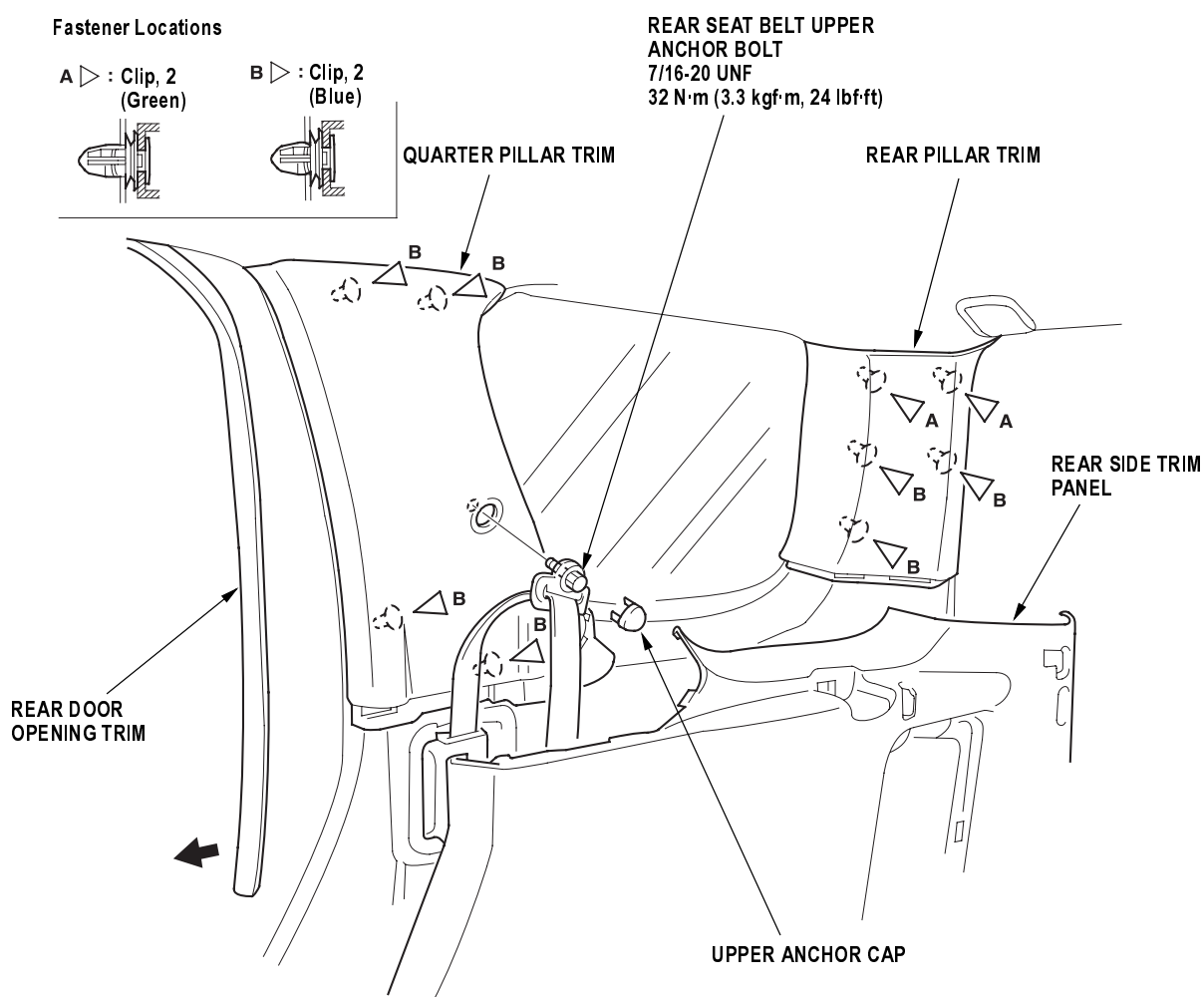
**NOTE:**

- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.
- Take care not to bend or scratch the trim and panels.

Remove the trim as shown. Remove the upper portion of the rear side trim panel as necessary ([see page 20-77](#)).

Install the trim in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- Replace any damaged clips.
- When installing the rear side trim panel, make sure there are no pinches in the belt.
- Before installing the anchor bolt, make sure there are no twists or kinks in the belt.







## Trim Removal/Installation - Cargo Area

### NOTE:

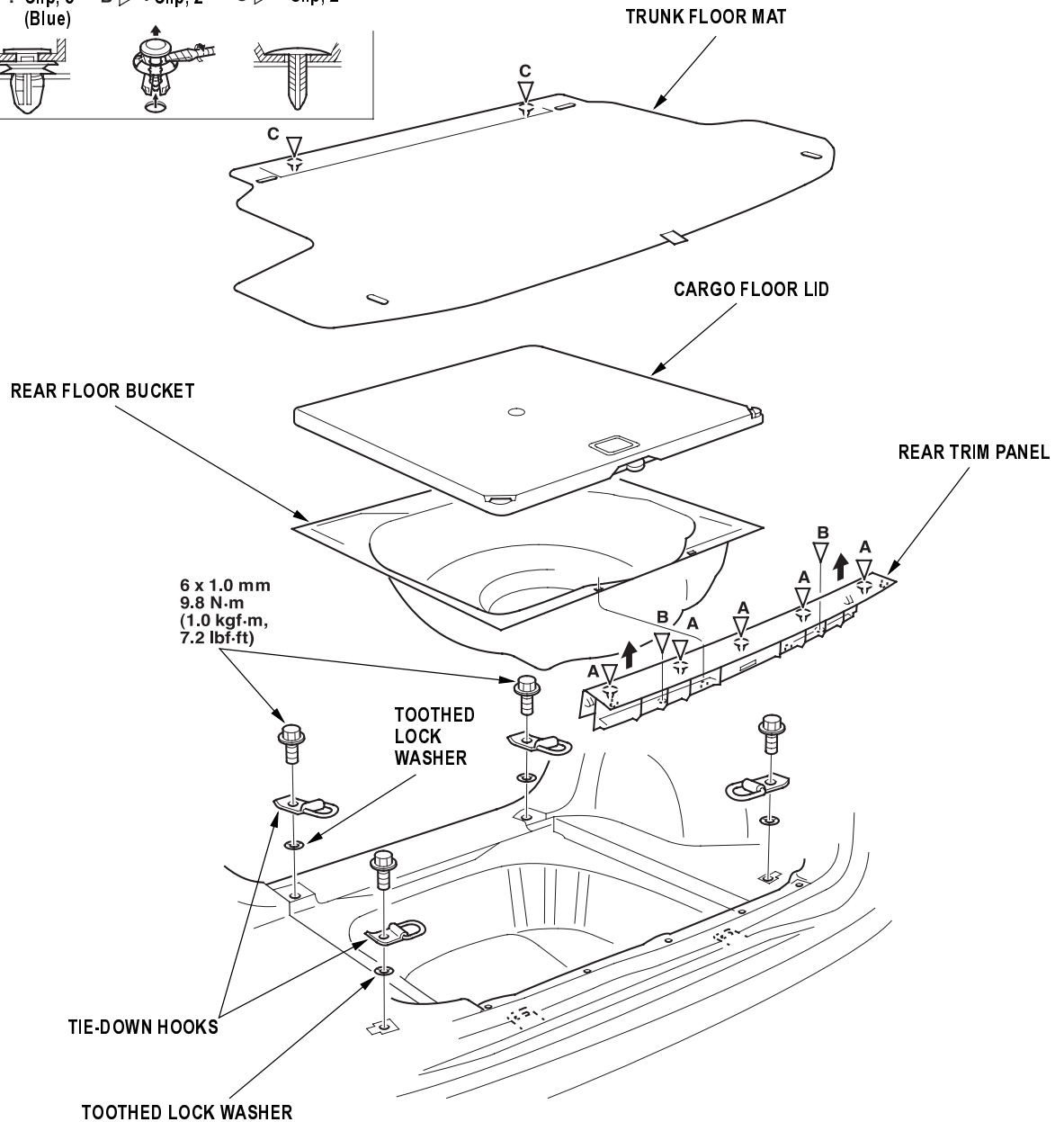
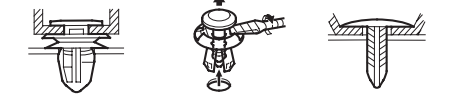
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.
- Take care not to bend or scratch the trim and panels.

Remove the trim as shown.

Install the trim in the reverse order of removal, and replace any damaged clips.

### Fastener Locations

A ▷ : Clip, 5 (Blue)    B ▷ : Clip, 2    C ▷ : Clip, 2



Trim Removal/Installation - Tailgate Area

NOTE:

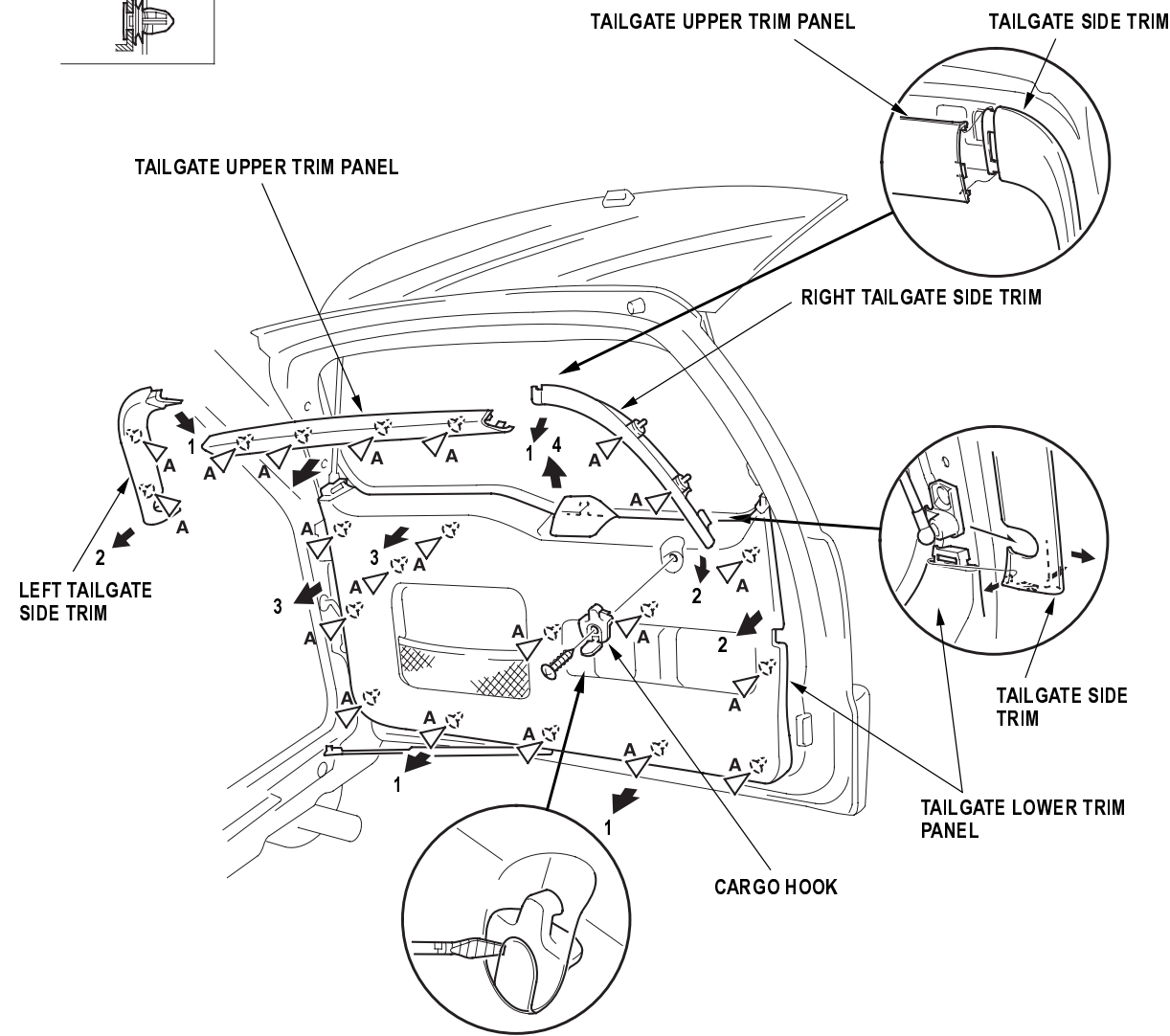
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.
- Take care not to bend or scratch the trim and panels.

Remove the trim as shown.

Install the trim in the reverse order of removal, and replace any damaged clips.

Fastener Locations

A ▷: Clip, 21  
(Blue)





## Headliner Removal/Installation

### NOTE:

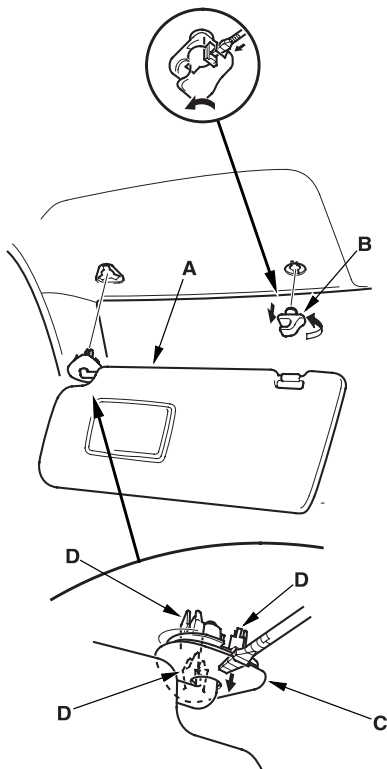
- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.
- Take care not to bend and scratch the headliner.
- Be careful not to damage the dashboard and other interior trim.

#### 1. Remove these items:

- Front pillar trim, both sides ([see page 20-76](#))
- Center pillar upper trim, one side ([see page 20-76](#))
- Quarter pillar trim, one side ([see page 20-78](#))
- Rear pillar trim, both sides ([see page 20-78](#))
- Spotlights, for some models ([see page 22A-108](#))
- Ceiling light ([see page 22A-109](#))
- Cargo room light ([see page 22A-109](#))

#### 2. From both sides, remove the sunvisor (A) and holder (B).

- 1 Using a flat-tip screwdriver, pry the cap (C).
- 2 Pull the clip portions (D) of the cap down.
- 3 Remove the sunvisor from the body and holder.
- 4 Using a flat-tip screwdriver, push the hook, and turn the holder 90°, then pull it out.

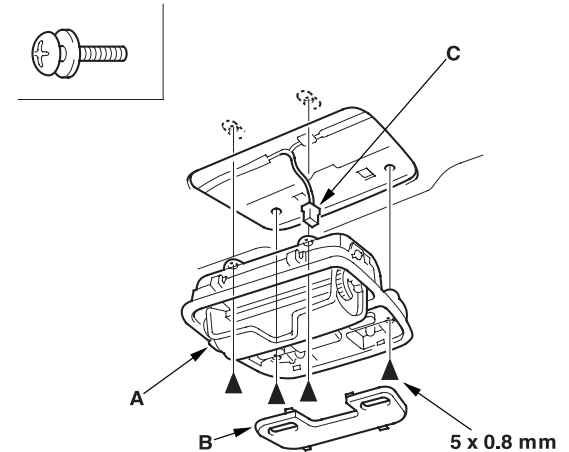


#### 3. If equipped, remove the roof console (A).

- 1 Remove the lens (B).
- 2 Remove the screws.
- 3 Pull out the roof console, and disconnect the front individual map light connector (C).

#### Fastener Locations

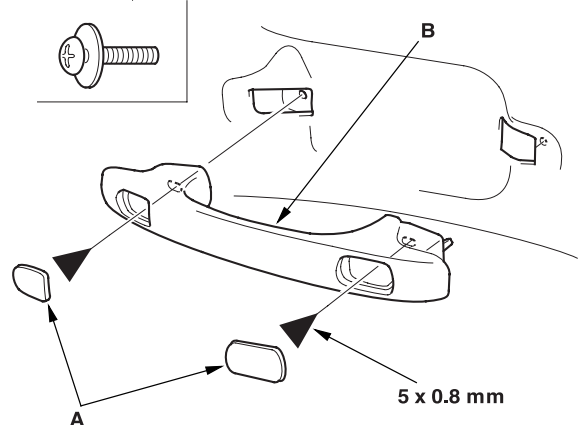
► : Screw, 4



#### 4. Remove the caps (A), and remove the screws, then remove the grab handles (B) (driver's and each passenger's).

#### Fastener Locations

► : Screw, 8



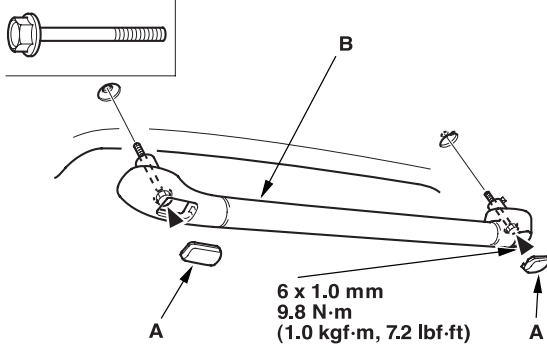
(cont'd)

## Headliner Removal/Installation (cont'd)

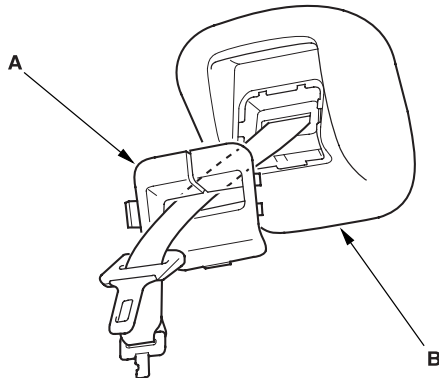
5. If equipped, remove the caps (A), and remove the bolts, then remove the inner roof rails (B) from both sides.

### Fastener Locations

► : Bolt, 4



6. If equipped, remove the cap (A) from the center seat belt retractor cover (B).

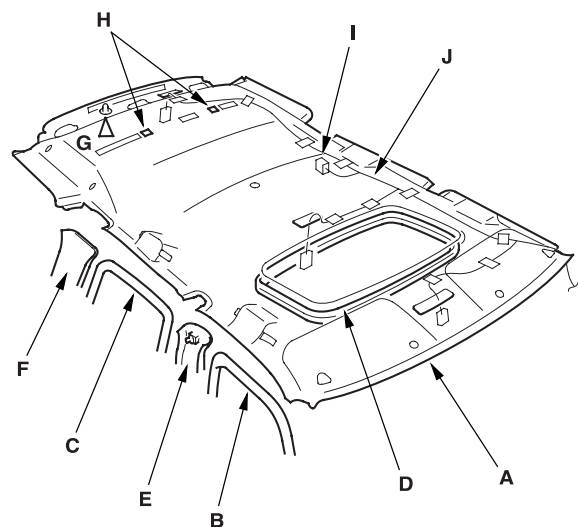
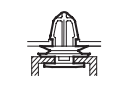


7. With the help of an assistant, remove the headliner (A). LHD is shown, RHD is similar.

- 1 Remove the remaining front door opening trim (B) and rear door opening trim (C) from each roof portion.
- 2 With sunroof: Remove the roof trim (D).
- 3 Remove the upper portion of the remaining center pillar upper trim (E) and quarter pillar trim (F). Take care not to damage the trim.
- 4 Detach the clip (G), and release the fasteners (H) by pulling the rear portion of the headliner down. Take care not to damage the headliner.
- 5 Lower the headliner, and remove it from the remaining trim, and disconnect the sunroof connector (I) (with sunroof). Take care not to damage the interior wire harness (J).

### Fastener Locations

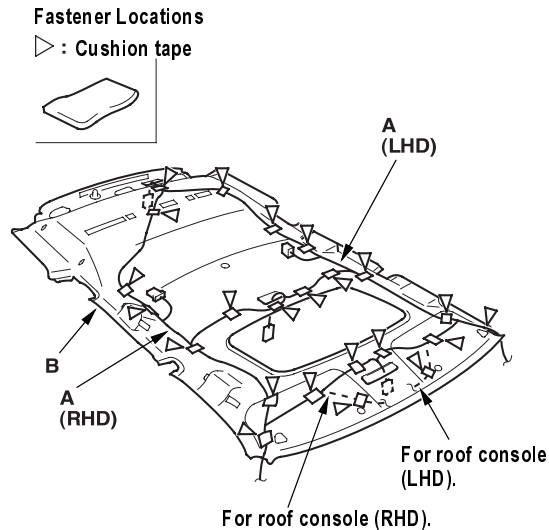
► : Clip, 1



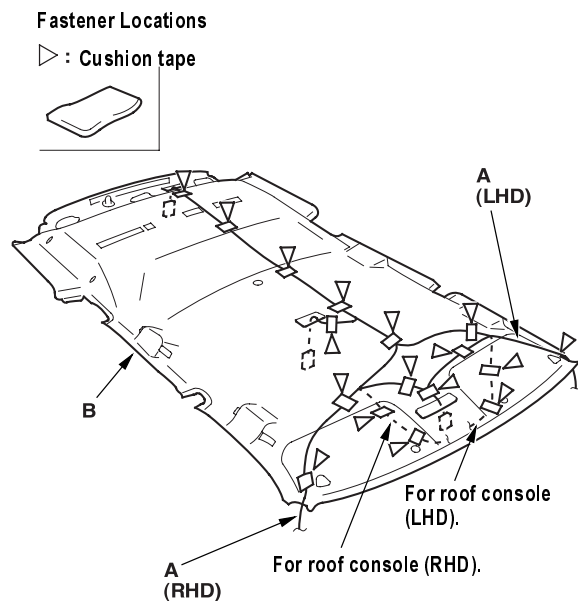


8. With the help of an assistant, remove the cushion tape, then remove the interior wire harness (A) from the headliner (B). Take care not to damage the headliner and interior wire harness.

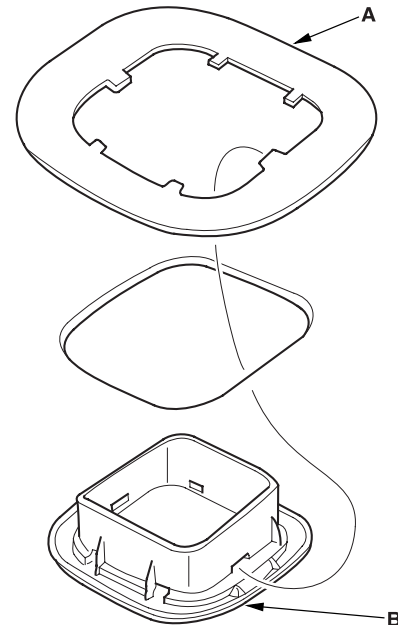
With sunroof:



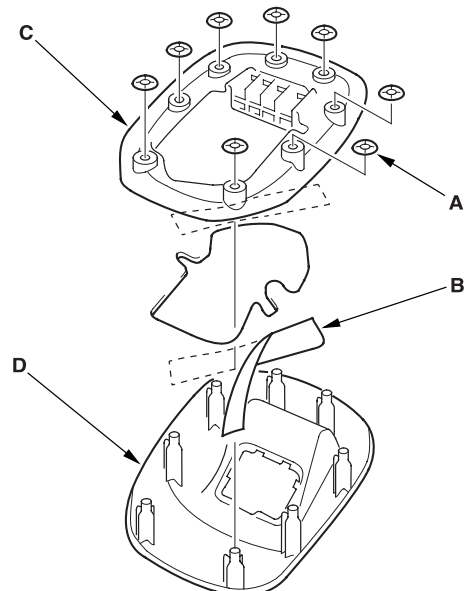
Without sunroof:



9. Remove the headliner through the tailgate opening. Take care not to damage the headliner.
10. If equipped with the anchors, remove the anchor cover bracket (A), then remove the anchor cover (B) from the headliner.



11. If equipped with a center seat belt retractor, remove the speed nuts (A), and remove the cushion tape (B), then remove the retractor cover bracket (C) and retractor cover (D) from the headliner.

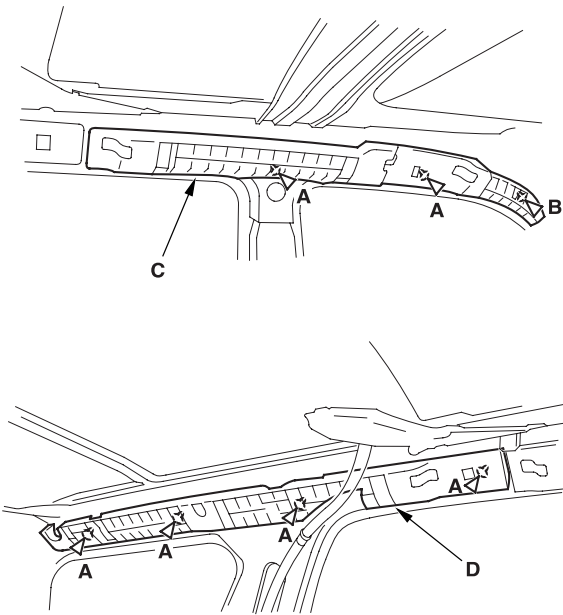
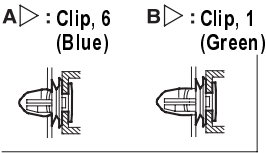


(cont'd)

Headliner Removal/Installation (cont'd)

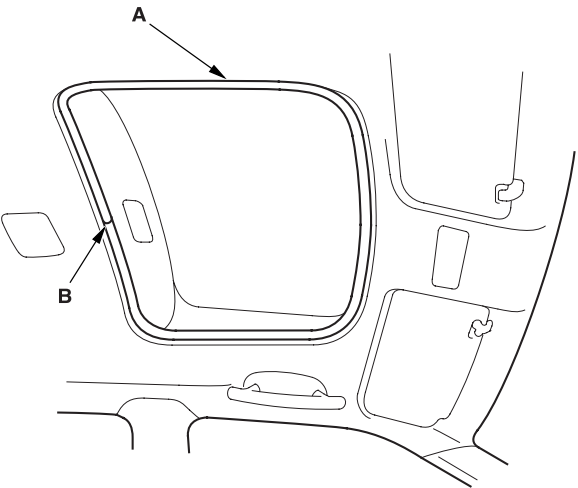
12. Using a clip remover, detach the clips (A, B), then remove the front roof side pad (C) and rear roof side pad (D).

Fastener Locations



13. Install the headliner in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- When reinstalling the headliner through the tailgate opening, be careful not to fold or bend it. Also, be careful not to scratch the body.
- Replace any damaged clips, and replace the cushion tape.
- Check that both sides of the headliner are securely attached to the trim.
- With sunroof: When reinstalling the roof trim (A), install the joint (B) as shown.





## Carpet Replacement

SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations (see page 23-14), and the precautions and procedures (see page 23-16) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

### NOTE:

- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- Take care not to damage, wrinkle or twist the carpet.
- Be careful not to damage the dashboard or other interior trim pieces.

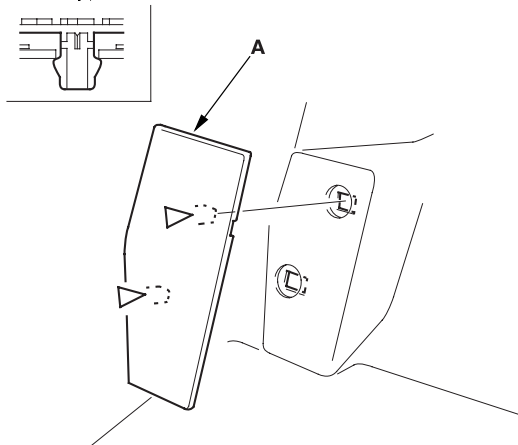
### 1. Remove these items:

- Front seats, both sides (see page 20-103)
- Rear seats, both sides (see page 20-114)
- Center pillar lower trim panel, both sides (see page 20-76)
- Dashboard center lower cover, A/T (see page 20-91), M/T (see page 20-93)

### 2. RHD: Detach the clips, then remove the footrest (A).

#### Fastener Locations

▷ : Clip, 2

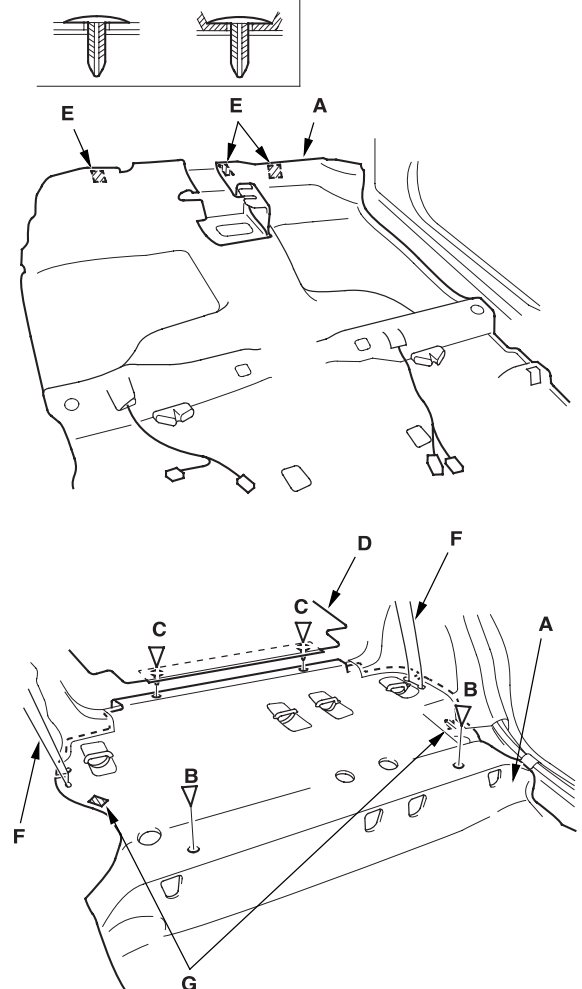


### 3. Remove the carpet (A).

- 1 Remove the clips (B).
- 2 Detach the clips (C), then pull back the trunk floor mat (D).
- 3 Release the fasteners (E), then pull back the carpet from under the dashboard.
- 4 Remove both rear seat belts (F) through the slit in the carpet, and release the fasteners (G) for both rear side trim panels.

#### Fastener Locations

B▷ : Clip, 2    C▷ : Clip, 2



(cont'd)

Carpet Replacement (cont'd)

4. Install the carpet in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
- Take care not to damage, wrinkle or twist the carpet.

• Make sure the seat harnesses are routed correctly.

• Replace any damaged clips.

• Slip both rear seat belts through the slit in the carpet properly.





## Dashboard

### Instrument Panel Removal/Installation

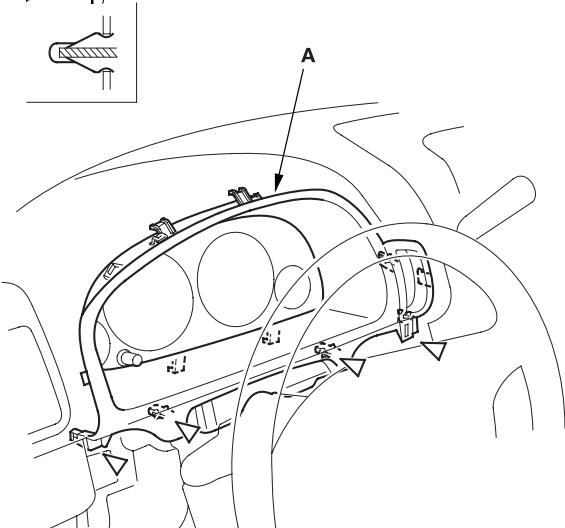
#### NOTE:

- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape, and apply protective tape around the related parts to prevent damage.
- Take care not to scratch the dashboard and related parts.
- LHD is shown, RHD is symmetrical.

1. Remove the driver's dashboard lower cover (see [page 20-88](#)).
2. Remove the steering column upper cover (see [page 17-24](#)).
3. Gently pull out the instrument panel (A) along the bottom to release the clips.

#### Fastener Locations

▷ : Clip, 4

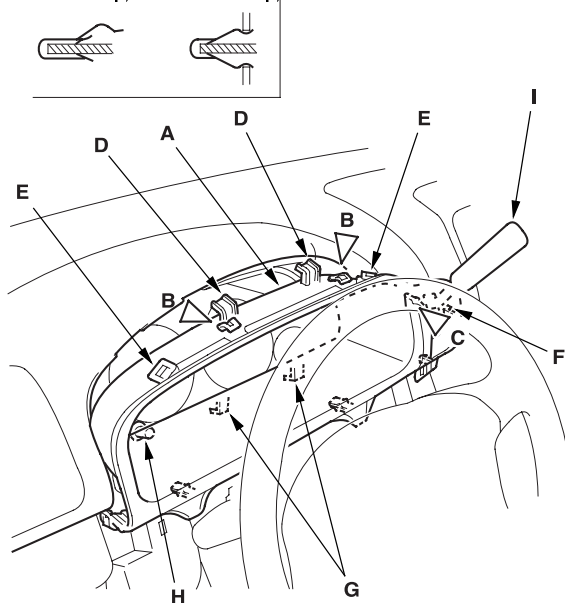


4. Remove the instrument panel (A).

- 1 Gently pull out the upper portion of the instrument panel to release the clips (B, C) and hooks (D, E, F, G).
- 2 Gently pull out on the panel being careful not to bend the trip/reset (H) and dash lights brightness controller (for some models).
- 3 On A/T model, slip the shift knob (I) through the hole in the instrument panel.

#### Fastener Locations

B▷ : Clip, 2    C▷ : Clip, 1



5. Install the panel in the reverse order of removal.

## Driver's Dashboard Lower Cover Removal/Installation

### NOTE:

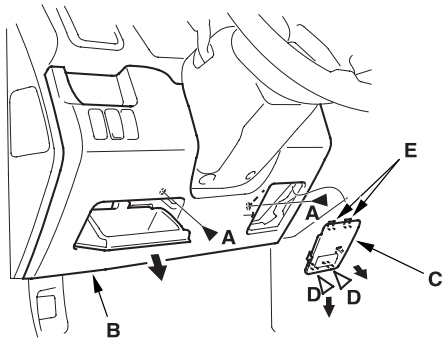
- Take care not to scratch the dashboard and related parts.
- LHD is shown, RHD is symmetrical.

### 1. Remove the screws (A) from the driver's dashboard lower cover (B).

- 1 Pull out the bottom of the fuse lid (C) to release the clips (D), and pull it down to release the hooks (E).
- 2 Remove the screw from the fuse lid opening.
- 3 Open the pocket, then remove the screw.

#### Fastener Locations

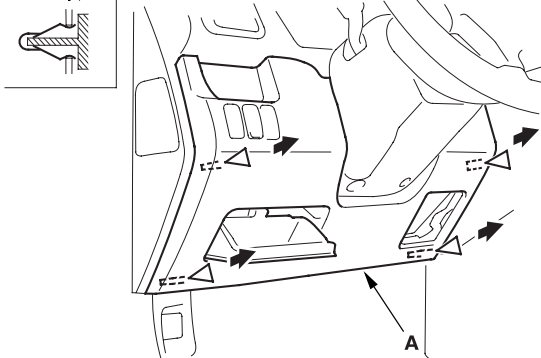
A ▶ : Screw, 2    D ▶ : Clip, 2



### 2. Pull out the bottom of the driver's dashboard lower cover (A) to release the clips.

#### Fastener Locations

▶ : Clip, 4

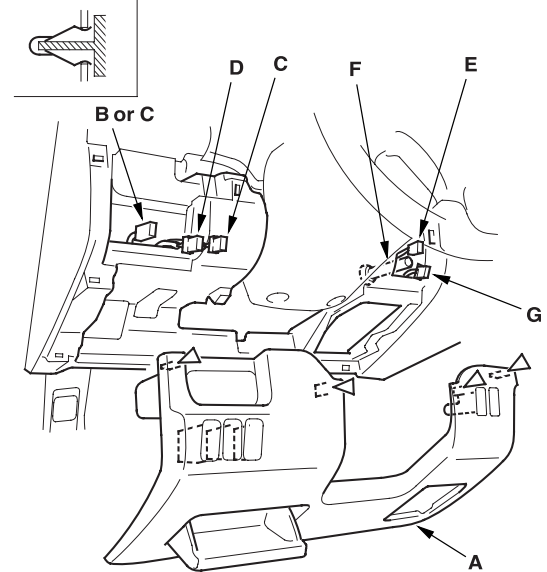


### 3. Remove the driver's dashboard lower cover (A).

- 1 Pull out the upper portions of the cover to release the clips.
- 2 If equipped, disconnect the headlight adjuster switch connector (B), cruise control main switch connector (C), sunroof switch connector (D), in-car temperature sensor connector (E), air hose (F), and seat heater switch connector (G).

#### Fastener Locations

▶ : Clip, 4



### 4. Install the cover in the reverse order of removal, and make sure that each connector is plugged in properly, and the air hose is connected properly.



## Driver's Dashboard Under Cover Removal/ Installation

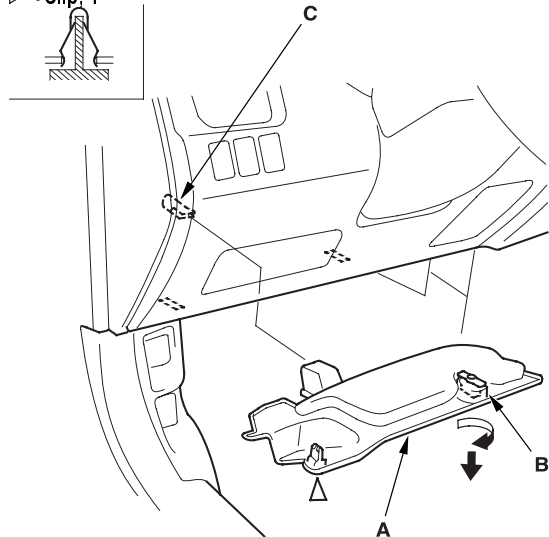
### NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the dashboard and related parts.
- LHD is shown, RHD is symmetrical.

1. Remove the driver's dashboard under cover (A).
  - 1 Turn the lock knob (B) 90°.
  - 2 Gently pull down the rear edge to release the clip.
  - 3 Pull the cover away to release it from the clip (C).

### Fastener Location

▷ : Clip, 1



2. Install the cover in the reverse order of removal.

## Dashboard Center Panel Removal/ Installation

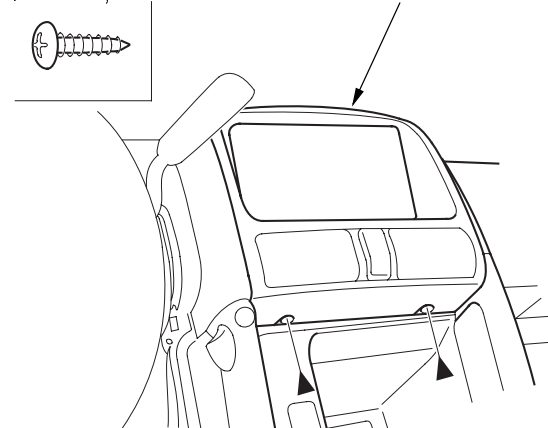
### NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the dashboard and related parts.
- LHD is shown, RHD is symmetrical.

1. Remove the screws from the bottom of the dashboard center panel (A).

### Fastener Locations

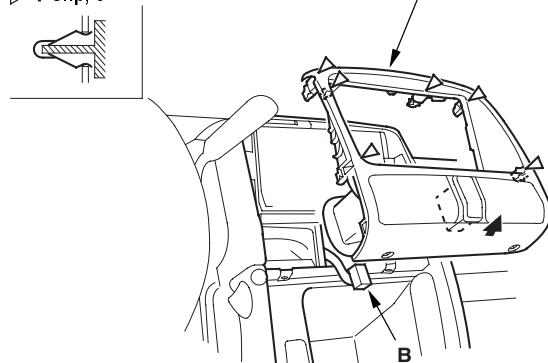
► : Screw, 2



2. Pull out on the bottom of the dashboard center panel (A) to make a gap between the dashboard and panel. Gently pull out along the panel to release the clips, then remove the panel. Disconnect the hazard warning switch connector (B).

### Fastener Locations

▷ : Clip, 6



3. Install the panel in the reverse order of removal, and make sure the hazard warning switch connector is plugged in properly.

## Dashboard Center Tray Removal/Installation

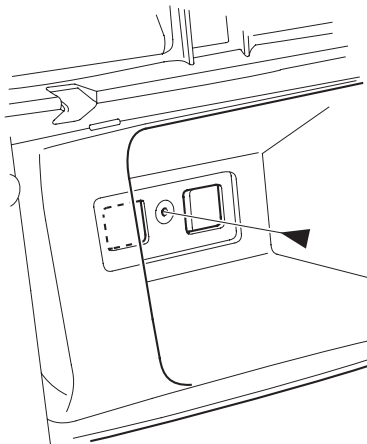
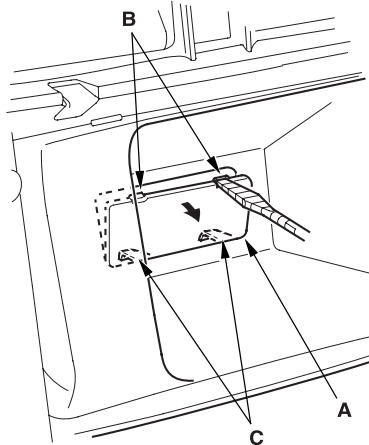
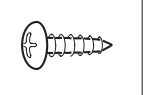
### NOTE:

- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape, and apply protective tape around the related parts to prevent damage.
- Take care not to scratch the dashboard and related parts.
- LHD is shown, RHD is symmetrical.

1. Remove the dashboard center panel (see page 20-89).
2. Using a flat-tip screwdriver, pry out the upper portion of the lid (A) to release the hooks (B), and release the bottom hooks (C), then remove the lid. Remove the screw.

### Fastener Location

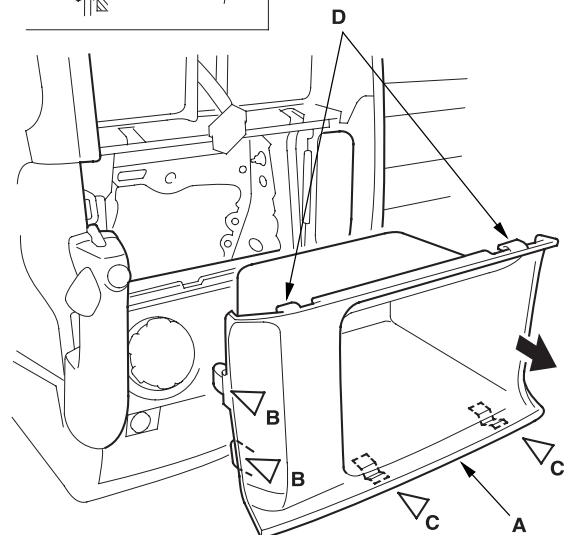
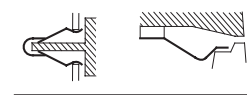
► : Screw, 1



3. Hold the screw mounting portion of the dashboard center tray (A) by hand, and pull out the tray to release the clips (B, C) and hooks (D), then remove it.

### Fastener Locations

B► : Clip, 2    C► : Clip, 2



4. Install the tray in the reverse order of removal.



## Heater Control Panel Removal/Installation

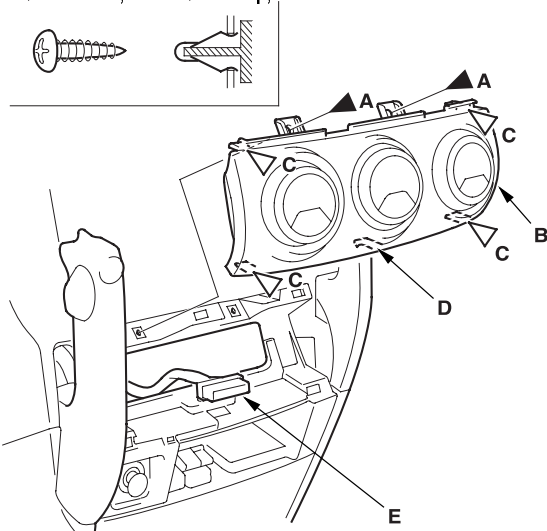
### NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the dashboard and related parts.
- LHD is shown, RHD is symmetrical.

1. Remove the dashboard center tray (see page 20-90).
2. Pull the parking brake lever.
3. Remove the screws (A), and pull out the heater control panel (B) to release the clips (C) and hook (D). Disconnect the heater control unit connector (E), then remove the heater control panel.

### Fastener Locations

A ► : Screw, 2    C ► : Clip, 4



4. Install the panel in the reverse order of removal, and make sure the heater control unit connector is plugged in properly.

## Dashboard Center Lower Cover Removal/Installation - A/T

SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations (see page 23-14) and precautions and procedures (see page 23-16) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

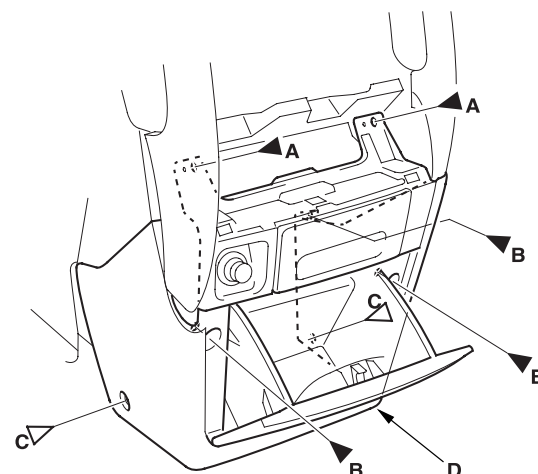
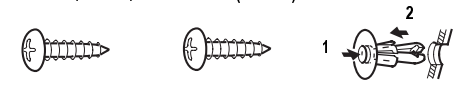
### NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the dashboard and related parts.
- LHD is shown, RHD is symmetrical.

1. Remove these items:
  - Passenger's dashboard under cover (see page 20-95)
  - Heater control panel
2. Open the pocket. Remove the screws (A, B) and clips (C) from the dashboard center lower cover (D).

### Fastener Locations

A ► : Screw, 2 (Silver)    B ► : Screw, 3 (Black)    C ► : Clip, 2



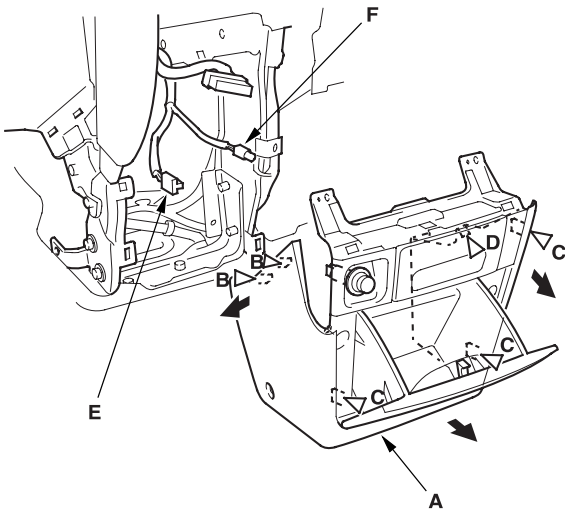
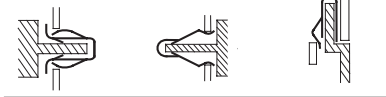
(cont'd)

### Dashboard Center Lower Cover Removal/Installation - A/T (cont'd)

3. Remove the dashboard center lower cover (A).
  - 1 Pull out the parking brake lever portion of the cover to release the clips (B).
  - 2 Pull out the cover to release the clips (C, D).
  - 3 Disconnect the cigaret lighter connector (E) and ashtray light bulb socket (F) (for some models).

#### Fastener Locations

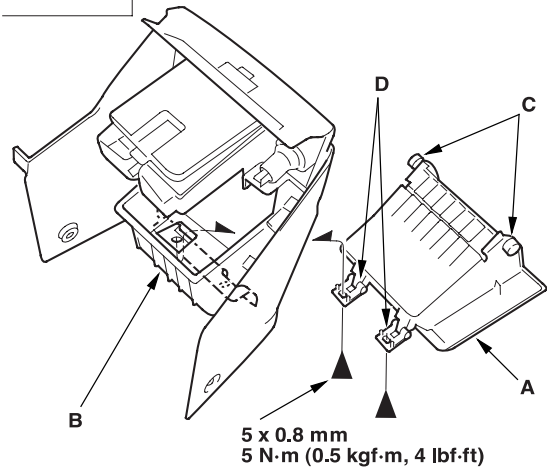
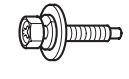
B ▷ : Clip, 2    C ▷ : Clip, 3    D ▷ : Clip, 1



4. If necessary, remove the pocket (A) from the dashboard center lower cover (B).
  - 1 Remove the bolts.
  - 2 Release the stops (C) from the cover.
  - 3 Pull out the hinges (D) from the cover.

#### Fastener Locations

▶ : Bolt, 2



5. Install the cover in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Replace any damaged clips.
  - Make sure the cigaret lighter connector is plugged in properly and the ashtray light bulb socket is connected properly.



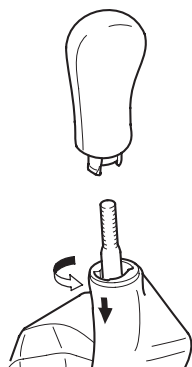
## Dashboard Center Lower Cover Removal/Installation - M/T

SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations ([see page 23-14](#)), and precautions and procedures ([see page 23-16](#)) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

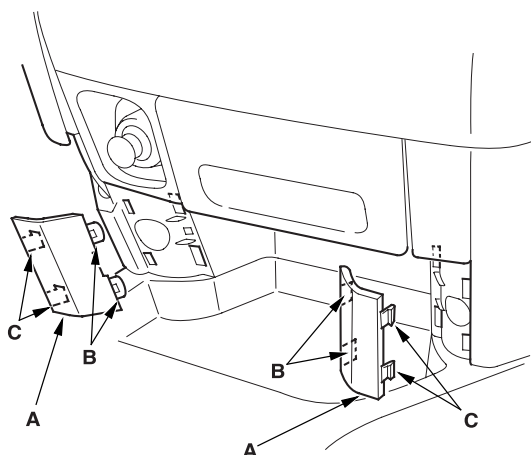
### NOTE:

- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape, and apply protective tape around the related parts to prevent damage.
- Take care not to scratch the dashboard and related parts.
- LHD is shown, RHD is symmetrical.

1. Remove these items:
  - Front seat center table ([see page 20-106](#))
  - Passenger's dashboard under cover ([see page 20-95](#))
  - Heater control panel ([see page 20-91](#))
2. Remove the shift knob.



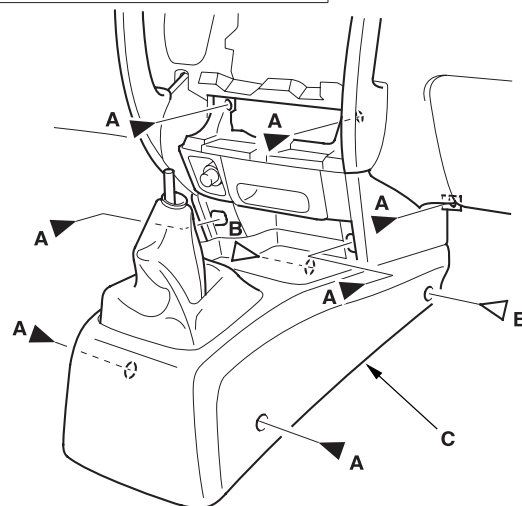
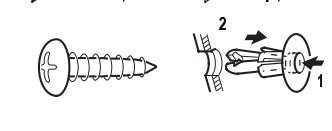
3. Using a flat-tip screwdriver, pry out the inside edge of the caps (A) to release the hooks (B), and pull out the caps to release the hooks (C), then remove the caps from both sides.



4. Remove the screws (A) and clips (B) from the dashboard center lower cover (C).

### Fastener Locations

A ▶ : Screw, 7    B ▶ : Clip, 2



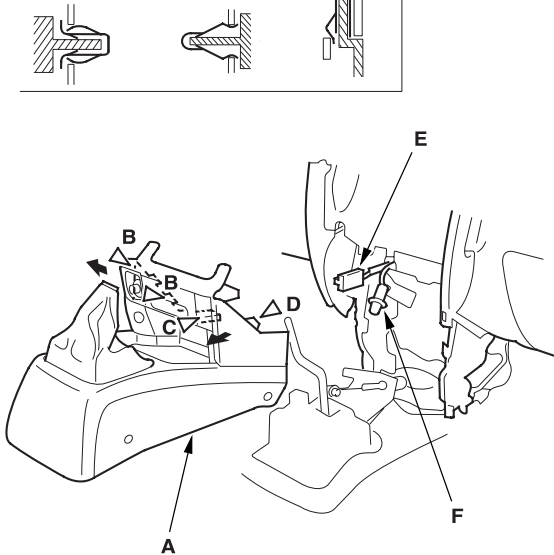
(cont'd)

# Dashboard Center Lower Cover Removal/Installation - M/T (cont'd)

5. Remove the dashboard center lower cover (A).
  - 1 Pull out the parking brake lever portion of the cover to release the clips (B).
  - 2 Pull out the cover to release the clips (C, D).
  - 3 Disconnect the cigaret lighter connector (E) and ashtray light bulb socket (F) (for some models).

## Fastener Locations

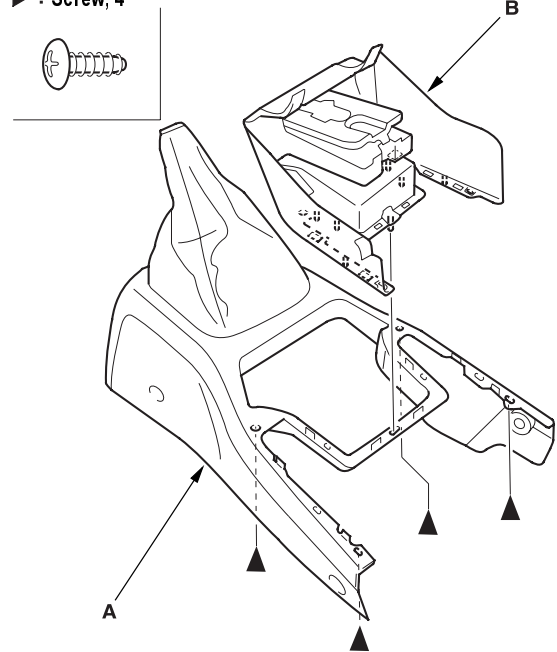
B▷ : Clip, 2    C▷ : Clip, 1    D▷ : Clip, 1



6. If necessary, remove the screws, then separate the center console (A) and center lower cover (B).

## Fastener Locations

► : Screw, 4



7. Install the cover in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Replace any damaged clips.
  - Make sure the cigaret lighter connector is plugged in properly and the ashtray light bulb socket is connected properly.





## Passenger's Dashboard Under Cover Removal/Installation

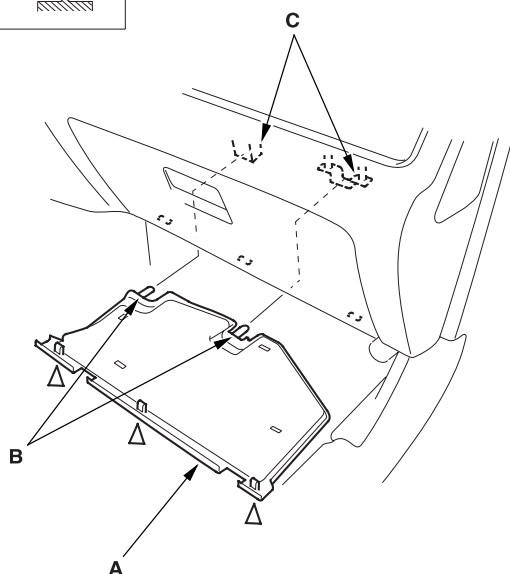
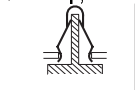
### NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the dashboard and related parts.
- LHD is shown, RHD is symmetrical.

1. Remove the passenger's dashboard under cover (A).
  - 1 Gently pull down the rear edge to release the clips.
  - 2 Pull the cover away to release the pins (B) from the holders (C).

### Fastener Locations

▷ : Clip, 3



2. Install the cover in the reverse order of removal.

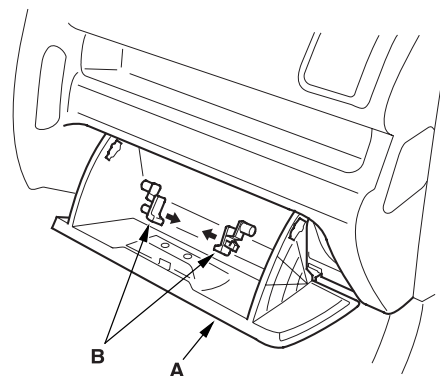
## Glove Box Removal/Installation

SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations ([see page 23-14](#)), and the precautions and procedures ([see page 23-16](#)) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

### NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the dashboard and related parts.
- LHD is shown, RHD is symmetrical.

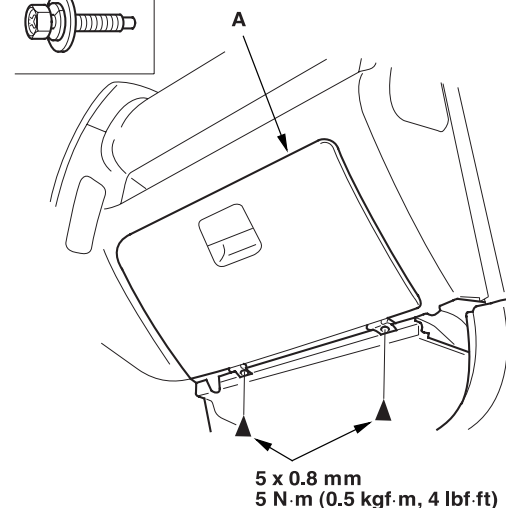
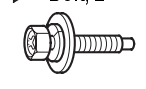
1. While holding the glove box (A), remove the glove box stop (B) on each side.



2. Remove the bolts, then remove the glove box (A).

### Fastener Locations

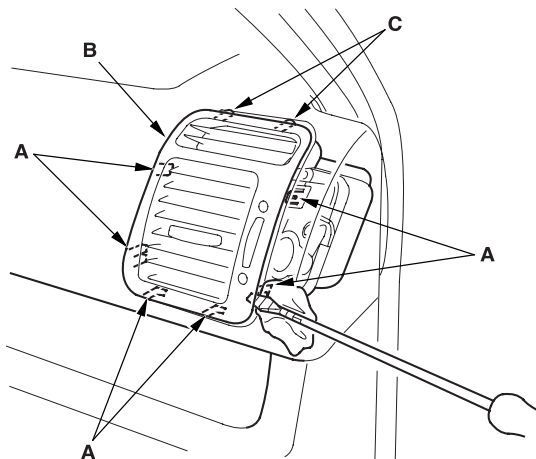
► : Bolt, 2



3. Install the glove box in the reverse order of removal.

### Dashboard Side Vent Removal/Installation

1. Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with protective tape, and apply protective tape around the related parts to prevent damage. Carefully insert a flat-tip screwdriver next to the clip (A), and detach the clips by prying on the side vent (B). Take care not to scratch the dashboard and related parts.



2. Remove the vent by releasing the hooks (C).
3. Reinstall the hook portions of the vent first, then push the clip portions into place securely.

### Dashboard Removal/Installation

SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations ([see page 23-14](#)), and the precautions and procedures ([see page 23-16](#)) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

**NOTE:**

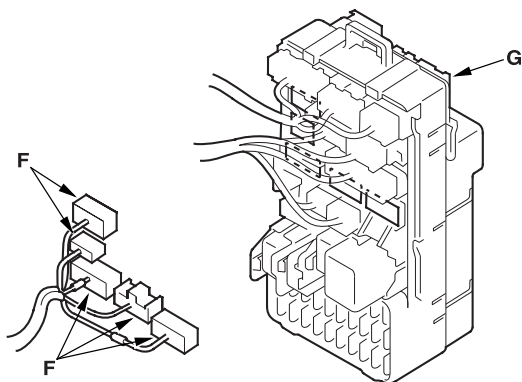
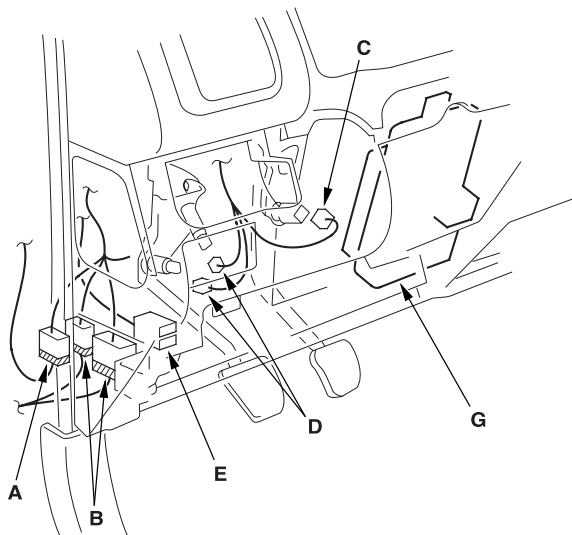
- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape, and apply protective tape around the related parts to prevent damage.
- Have an assistant help you when removing and installing the dashboard.
- Take care not to scratch the dashboard, body and other related parts.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

1. If equipped, make sure you have the anti-theft code for the radio, then write down the frequencies for the preset buttons.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable, and wait at least three minutes before beginning work.
3. Remove these items:
  - Driver's dashboard lower cover ([see page 20-88](#))
  - Driver's dashboard under cover ([see page 20-89](#))
  - Glove box ([see page 20-95](#))
  - Passenger's dashboard under cover ([see page 20-95](#))
  - Dashboard center lower cover, A/T ([see page 20-91](#)), M/T ([see page 20-93](#))
  - Passenger's side vent ([see page 20-96](#))
  - Front pillar trim, both sides ([see page 20-76](#))
  - Kick panels, both sides ([see page 20-76](#))
  - Steering column ([see page 17-24](#))
  - Parking brake lever ([see page 19A-42](#))
  - A/T model only: Disconnect the A/T control cable ([see page 14-157](#))



## Driver's side:

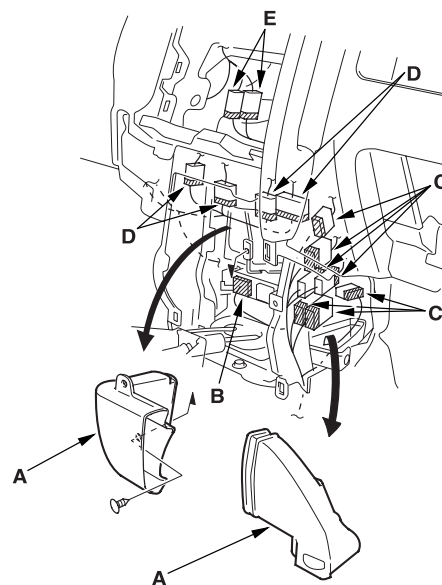
4. Front under the dash, disconnect the interior wire harness connector (A), driver's door wire harness connectors (B), brake switch connector (C) and clutch switch connector (D) (on MT model). Remove the relay (E) from the bracket, and disconnect the engine compartment wire harness connectors (F) from the under-dash fuse/relay box (G). LHD is shown, RHD is similar.



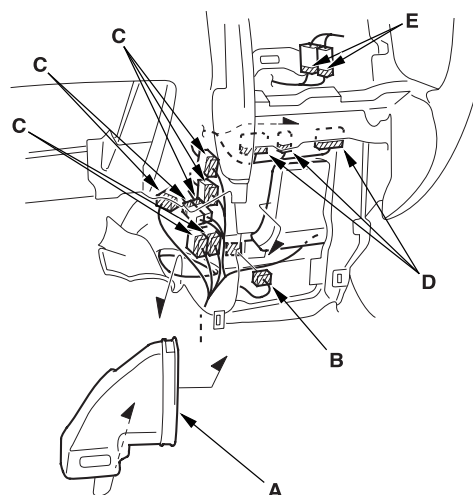
## Middle portion:

5. Remove the rear heater joint ducts (A). Disconnect the SRS control unit connector (B), floor wire harness connectors (C), engine compartment wire harness connectors (D), and heater sub harness connectors (E).

LHD:



RHD:



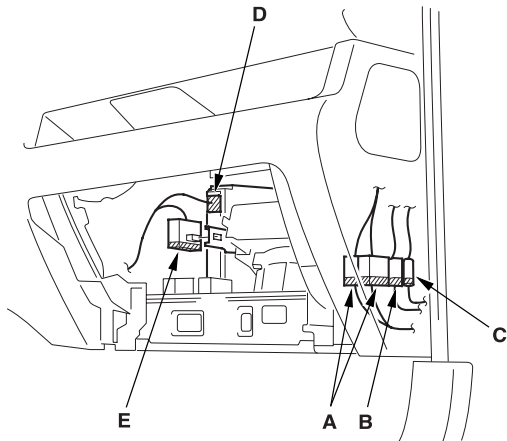
(cont'd)

## Dashboard Removal/Installation (cont'd)

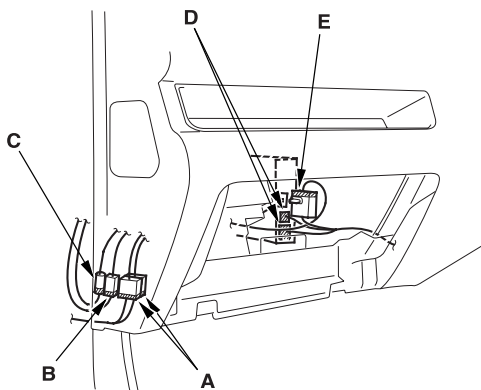
### Passenger's side:

6. From under the dash, disconnect the passenger's door wire harness connectors (A), roof antenna connector (B), antenna lead (C), ECM/PCM connector (D), and engine wire harness connector (E).

LHD:



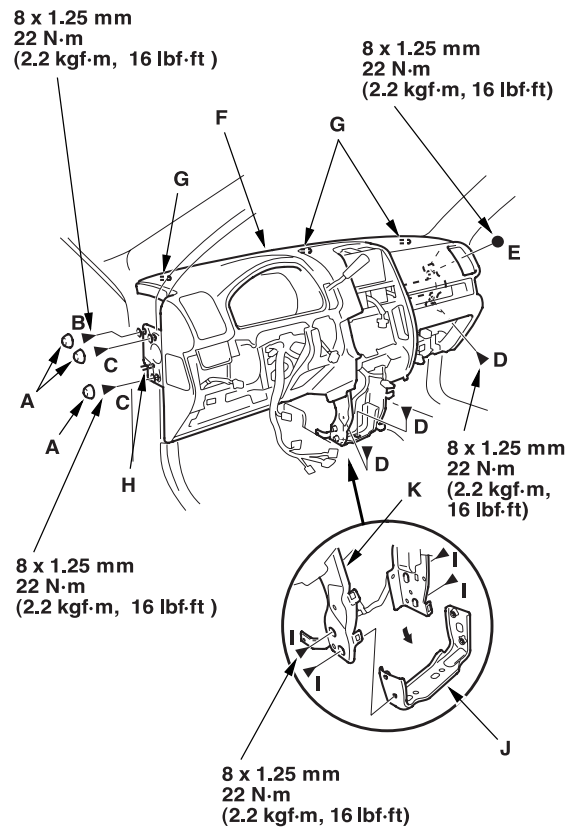
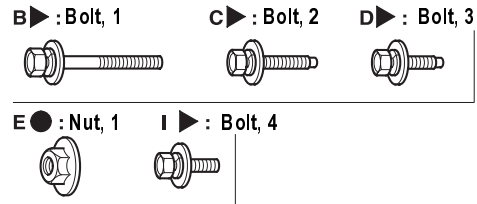
RHD:



7. Detach all of the harness and connector clips.

8. From outside the driver's door, remove the caps (A), then remove the bolts (B, C, D) and nut (E), and lift up on the dashboard (F) to release it from the guide pins (G, H) on the body. When pulling the dashboard out, remove the center frame mounting bolts (I), then remove the center bracket (J) from the center frame (K). LHD is shown, RHD is symmetrical.

### Fastener Locations



9. Carefully remove the dashboard through the front door opening.
10. A/T model only: Remove the center bracket from the center frame.



## Steering Hanger Beam Replacement

11. Install the dashboard in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Make sure the dashboard fits onto the guide pins correctly.
  - Apply liquid thread lock to the center frame mounting bolts before reinstallation.
  - Reinstall the center bracket on the center frame, and slightly tighten the mounting bolts. Reinstall the dashboard on the body. After tightening both dashboard mounting bolts and nut, tighten the center bracket mounting bolts and center frame mounting bolts.
  - Before tightening the bolts, make sure each wire harness is not pinched.
  - Make sure the connectors are plugged in properly, and the antenna lead is connected properly.
  - Reconnect the negative cable to battery.
  - If equipped, enter the anti-theft code for the radio, then enter the customer's radio station presets.

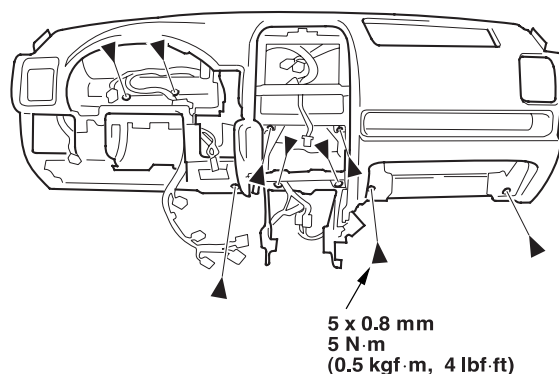
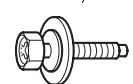
### NOTE:

- Have an assistant help you when removing and installing the steering hanger beam.
- Take care not to scratch the dashboard.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- LHD is shown, RHD is symmetrical.

1. Remove the dashboard ([see page 20-96](#))
2. Remove these items from the dashboard:
  - Instrument panel ([see page 20-87](#))
  - Gauge assembly ([see page 22A-74](#))
  - Shift lever, A/T ([see page 14-152](#))
  - AVN unit, for some models ([see page 22B-26](#))
  - Audio unit ([see page 22A-118](#))
  - Passenger's airbag ([see page 23-136](#))
  - Sunlight sensor, auto A/C ([see page 21-91](#))
3. Remove the bolts from the dashboard.

### Fastener Locations

► : Bolt, 9



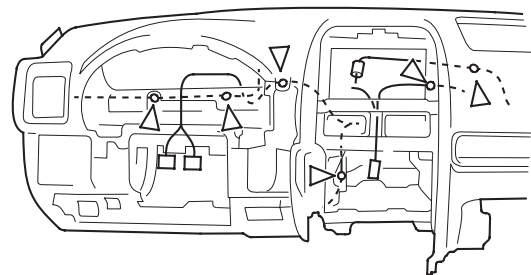
(cont'd)

Steering Hanger Beam Replacement (cont'd)

4. Detach the harness clips.

Fastener Locations

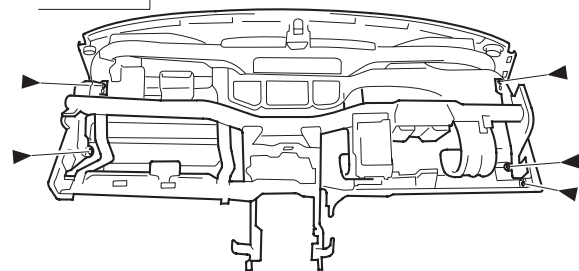
▷ : Harness Clip



5. From the back of the dashboard, remove the screws.

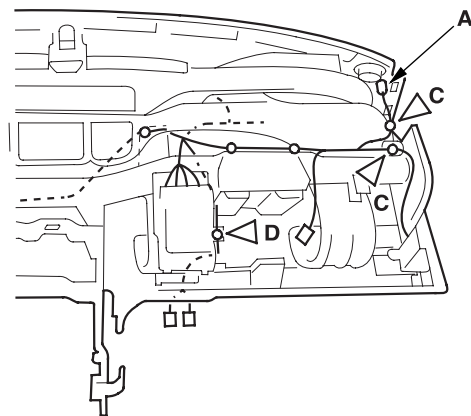
Fastener Locations

► : Screw, 5

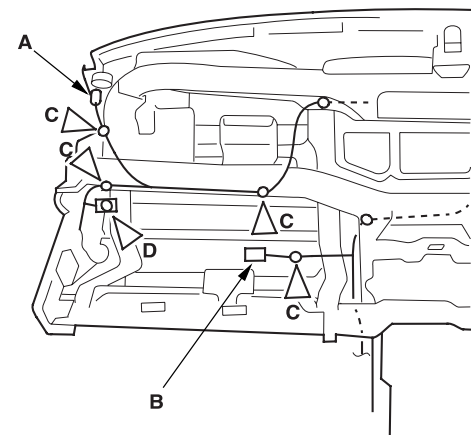


6. From the back of the dashboard, disconnect the tweeter connectors (A) (for some models) from both sides and the glove box light connector (B) (for some models), and detach the harness clips (C) and harness holders (D).

Driver's side:

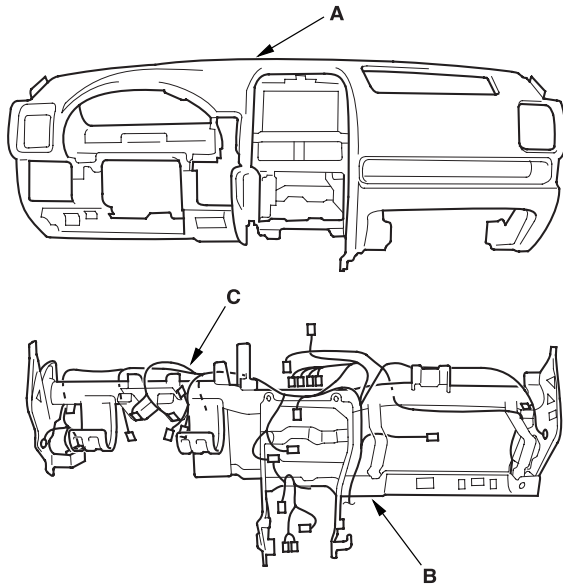


Passenger's side:





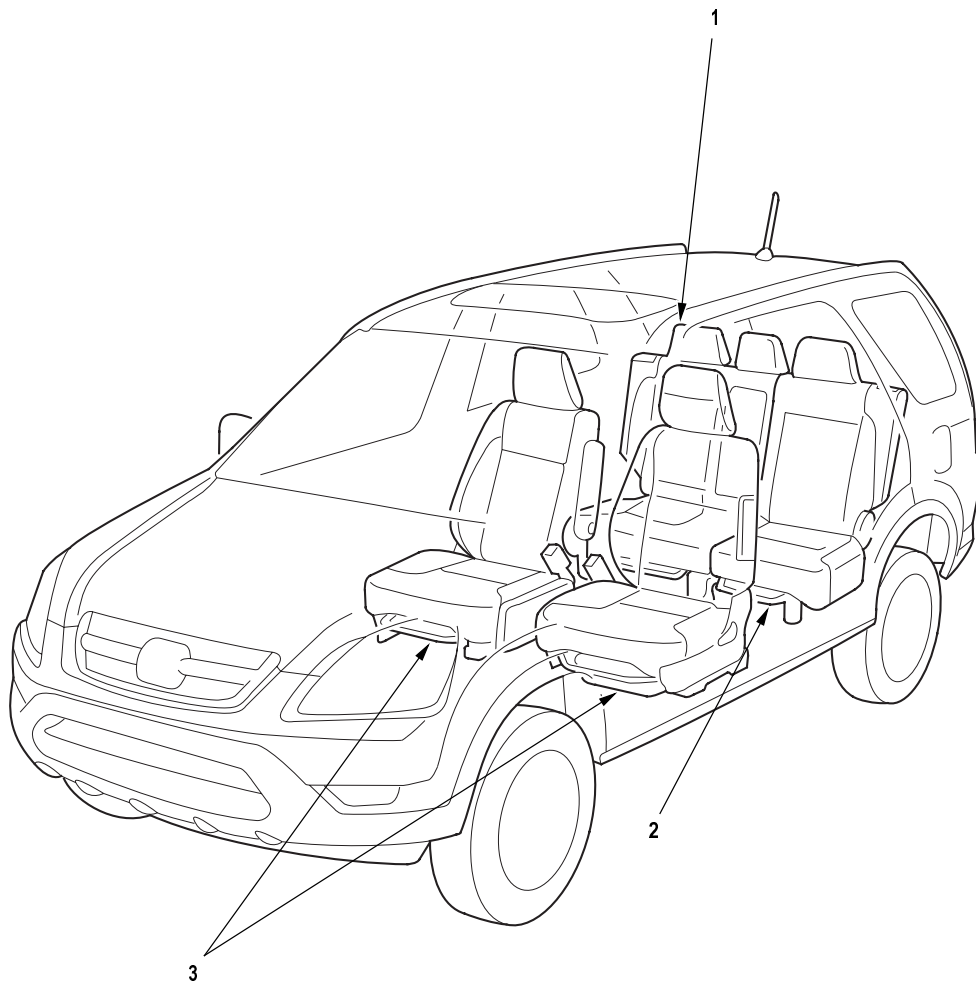
7. With the help of an assistant, separate the dashboard (A) and steering hanger beam (B).



8. Install the beam in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Make sure the dashboard wire harness (C) is not pinched.
  - Make sure the connectors are plugged in properly.

## Seats

### Component Location Index



- |   |                        |   |
|---|------------------------|---|
| 1 | <b>RIGHT REAR SEAT</b> | Removal/Installation, <a href="#">page 20-114</a> ; Armrest Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-115</a> ; Armrest Cover Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-116</a> ; Seat Cover Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-117</a> ; Lock Control Cable Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-127</a> ; Seat-back Latch Lever replacement, <a href="#">page 20-128</a>  |
| 2 | <b>LEFT REAR SEAT</b>  | Removal/Installation, <a href="#">page 20-114</a> ; Seat Cover Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-123</a> ; Seat-back Latch Lever Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-128</a>  |
| 3 | <b>FRONT SEAT</b>      | Removal/Installation, <a href="#">page 20-103</a> ; Center Table Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-106</a> ; Armrest Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-107</a> ; Disassembly/Reassembly-with manual height adjustable, <a href="#">page 20-108</a> ; Disassembly/Reassembly-without manual height adjustable, <a href="#">page 20-109</a> ; Seat Cover Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-110</a> |





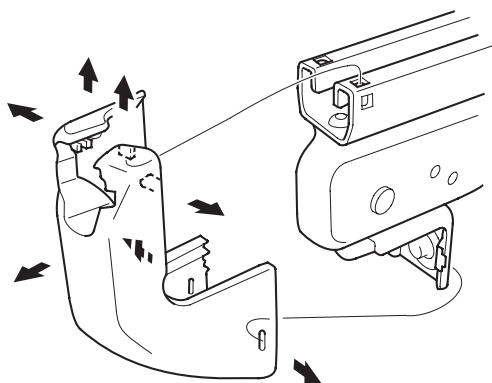
## Front Seat Removal/Installation

For some models: SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations ([see page 23-14](#)), and the precautions and procedures ([see page 23-16](#)) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

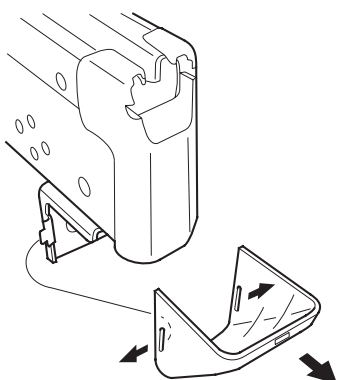
### NOTE:

- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.
  - Take care not to scratch the body or tear the seat covers.
  - Put on gloves to protect your hands.
  - LHD is shown, RHD is symmetrical.
1. If equipped, make sure you have the anti-theft code for the radio, then write down the frequencies for the preset buttons.
  2. If equipped with a side airbag, disconnect the negative battery cable, and wait at least 3 minutes before beginning work.
  3. Remove the front seat track end covers from the front of both seat tracks.

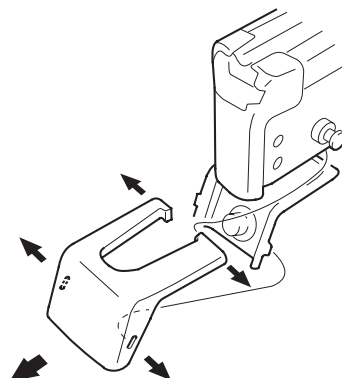
Driver's:



Passenger's:

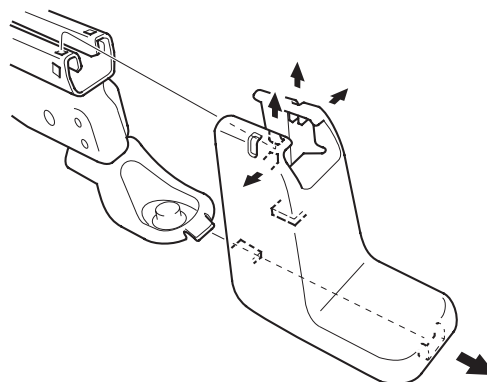


4. Remove the rear outer seat track end cover.

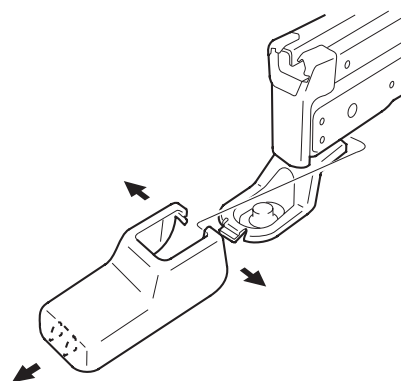


5. Remove the rear inner seat track end cover.

Driver's:



Passenger's:



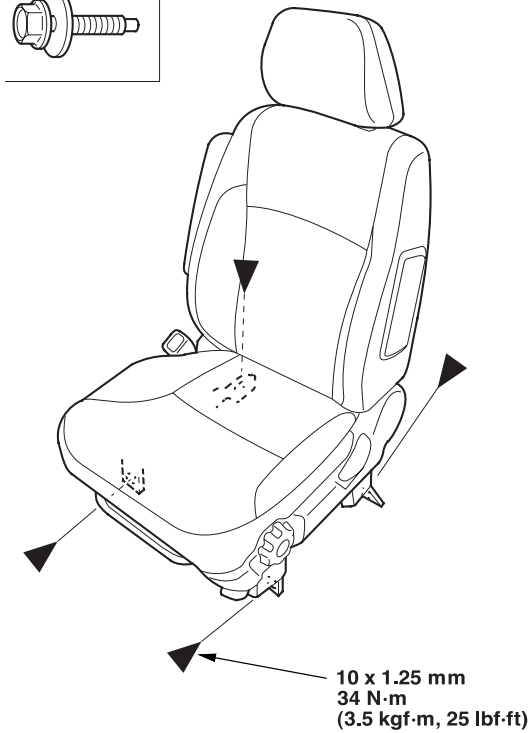
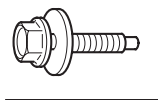
(cont'd)

Front Seat Removal/Installation (cont'd)

6. Remove the bolts securing the front seat.

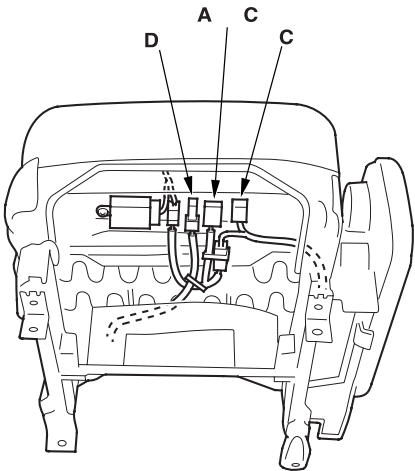
Fastener Locations

► : Bolt, 4

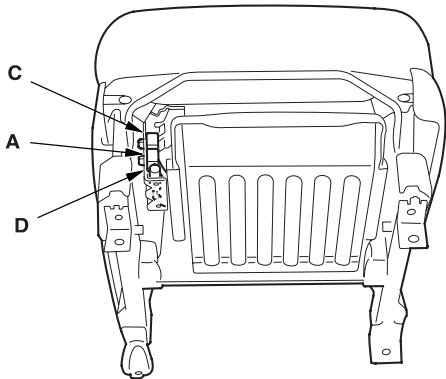


7. For some models: Lift up the front seat, disconnect the seat sub harness connector (A) or the seat belt switch connector (B), the seat belt buckle tensioner connector (C), and the side airbag connector (D). RHD is shown, LHD is symmetrical.

Driver's:



Passenger's:





8. Remove the headrest.
9. With the help of an assistant, carefully remove the front seat through the front door opening.
10. Install the seat in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Make sure each connector is plugged in properly.
  - If equipped with a side airbag, reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
  - If equipped, enter the anti-theft code for the radio, then enter the customer's radio station presets.

## Front Seat Center Table Replacement

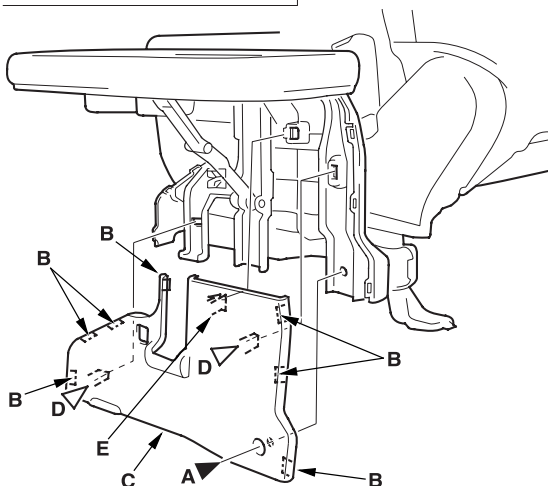
### NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the dashboard, tear the seams or damage the seat covers.
- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- A/T models are shown, and M/T models are similar.

1. Set up the table.
2. Remove the screw (A), release the tabs (B), and pull the outer cover (C) back to detach the clips (D) and hooks (E), then remove it.

### Fastener Locations

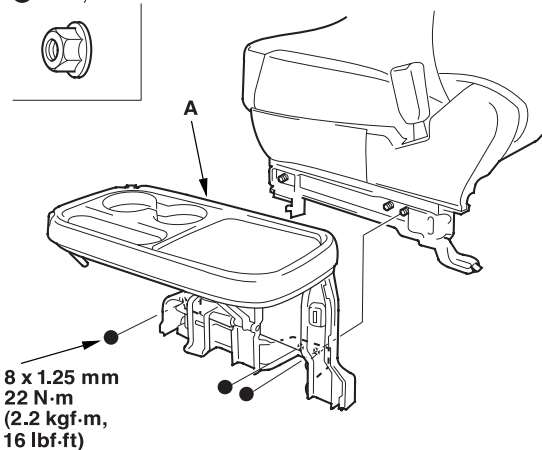
A ► : Screw, 1    D ► : Clip, 2



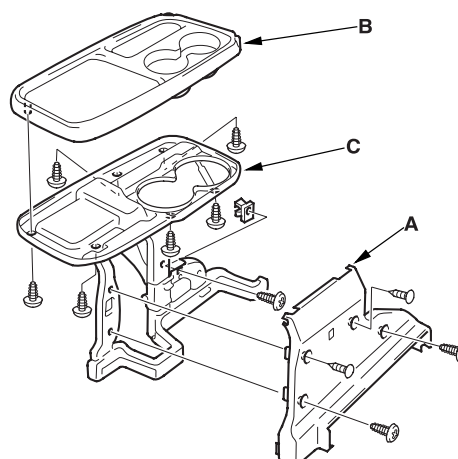
3. Remove the nuts, then remove the center table (A).

### Fastener Locations

● : Nut, 3



4. Remove the inner cover (A) and the center table cover (B) from the center table frame (C).



5. Install the table in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Replace any damaged clips.
  - Push the clip, hook, and tab portions into place securely.



## Front Seat Armrest Replacement

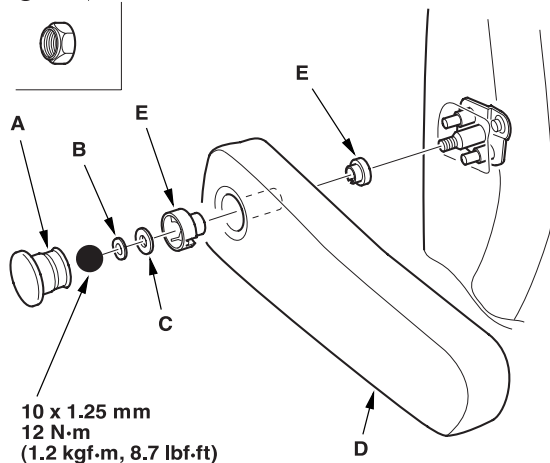
### For Some Models

NOTE: Take care not to tear the seams or damage the seat covers.

1. Remove the cap (A).

Fastener Location

● : Nut, 1

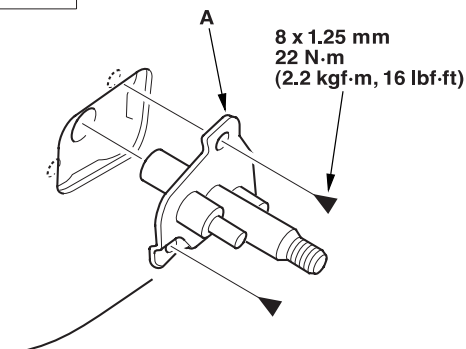
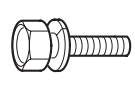


2. Remove the nut, the washer (B), and the wave washer (C), then remove the armrest (D). If necessary, remove the bushings (E) from the armrest.

3. Remove the bolts, then remove the armrest bracket (A).

Fastener Locations

► : Bolt, 2



4. Install the armrest in the reverse order of removal.

## Front Seat Disassembly/Reassembly - With Manual Height Adjustable

For some models: SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations ([see page 23-14](#)), and the precautions and procedures ([see page 23-16](#)) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

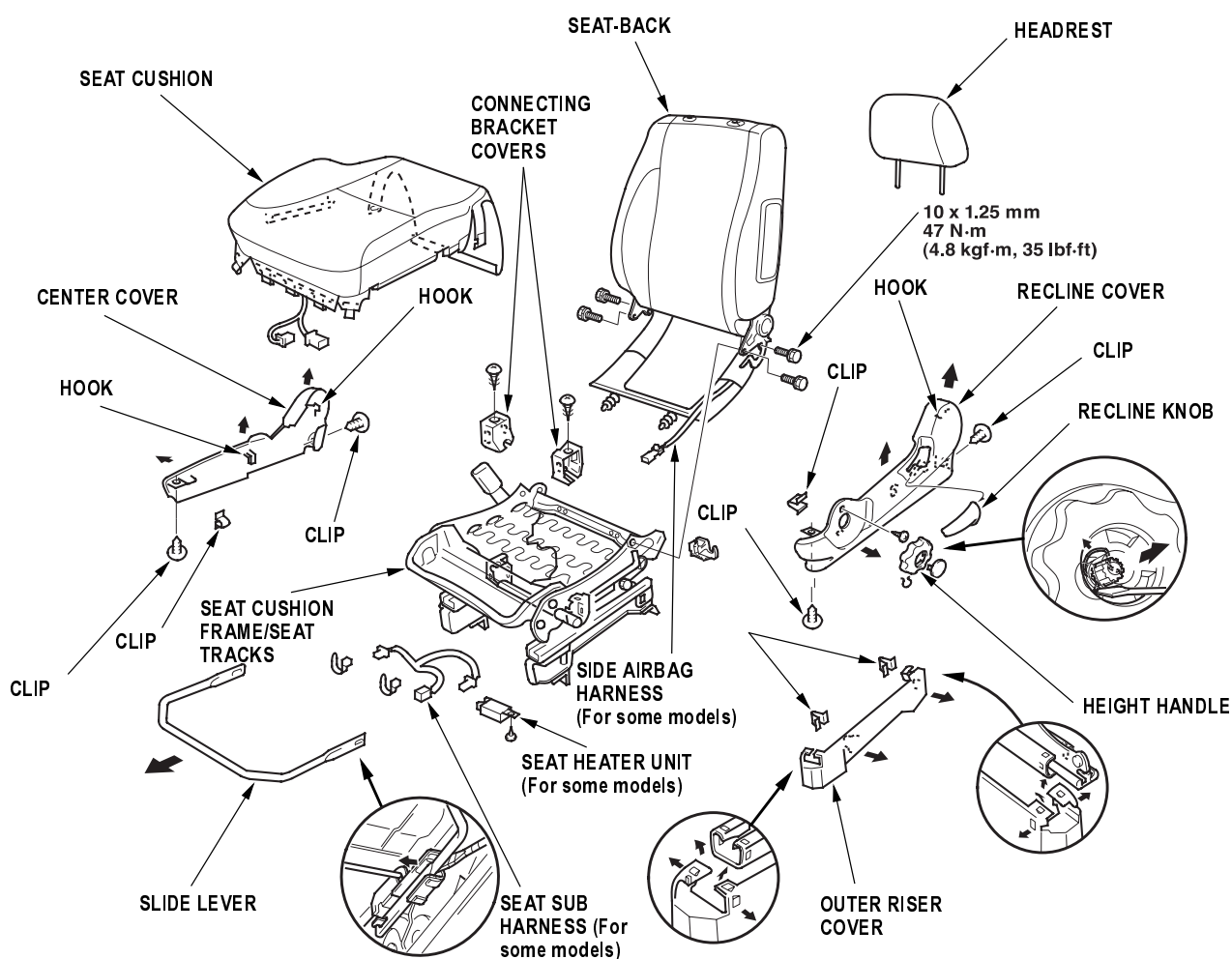
### NOTE:

- Take care not to tear the seams or damage the seat covers.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.
- The left side seat is shown, the right side seat is symmetrical.

Disassemble the seat as shown. For seat cushion removal and installation procedures, refer to Front Seat Cover Replacement ([see page 20-112](#)).

Reassemble the seat in the reverse order of disassembly, and note these items:

- Apply multipurpose grease to the moving portion of the seat track.
- To prevent wrinkles in the seat cushion cover, stretch the material evenly over the pad.





## Front Seat Disassembly/Reassembly - Without Manual Height Adjustable

For some models: SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations ([see page 23-14](#)), and the precautions and procedures ([see page 23-16](#)) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

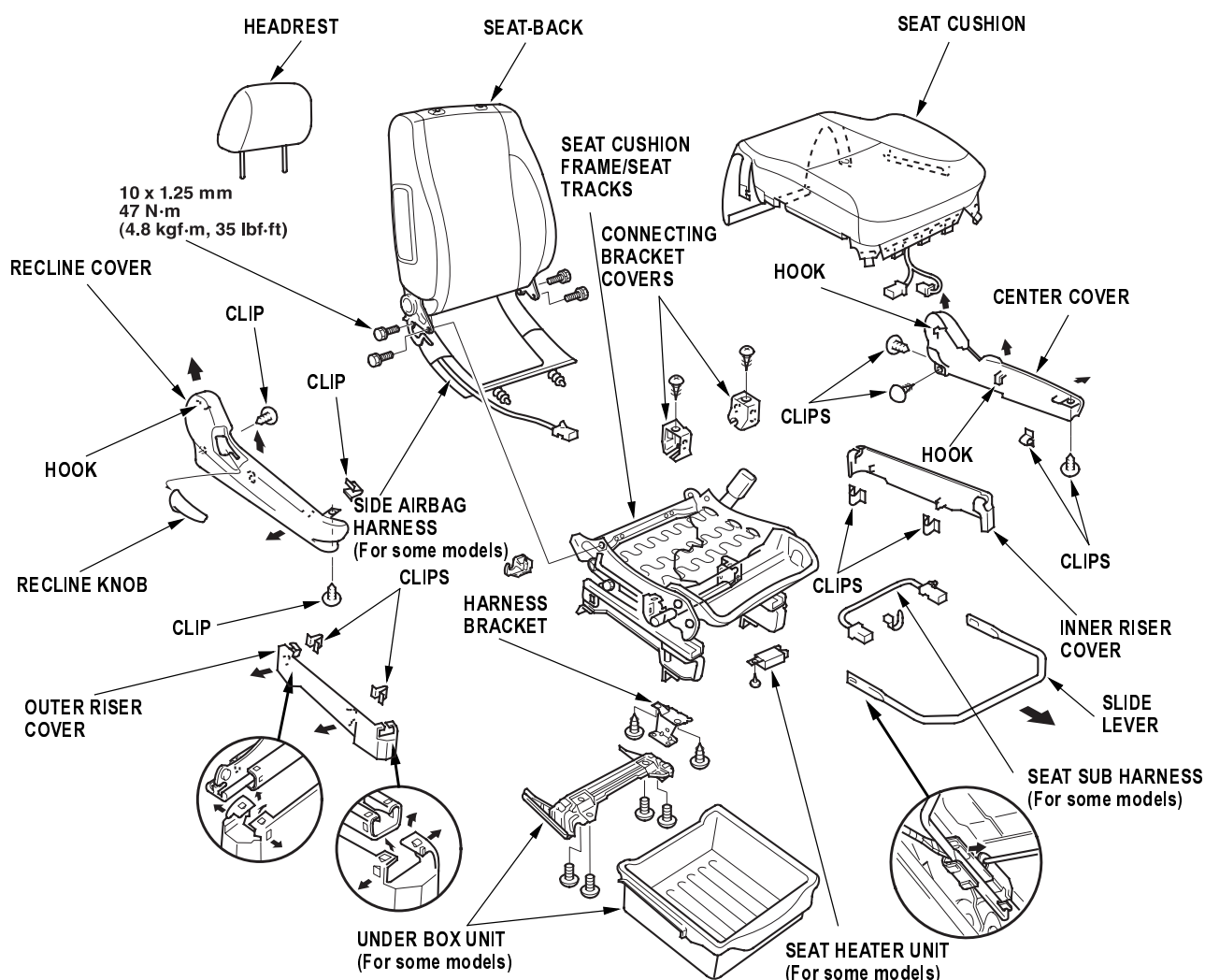
### NOTE:

- Take care not to tear the seams or damage the seat covers.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.
- The right side seat is shown, the left side seat is symmetrical.

Disassemble the seat as shown. For seat cushion removal and installation procedures, refer to Front Seat Cover Replacement ([see page 20-112](#)).

Reassemble the seat in the reverse order of disassembly, and note these items:

- Apply multipurpose grease to the moving portion of the seat track.
- To prevent wrinkles in the seat cushion cover, stretch the material evenly over the pad.



## Front Seat Cover Replacement

For some models: SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations (see page 23-14), and the precautions and procedures (see page 23-16) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

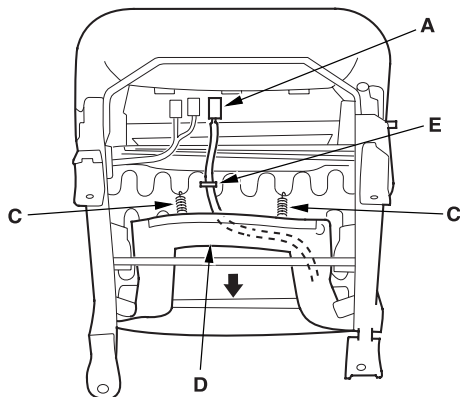
### NOTE:

- Take care not to tear the seams or damage the seat covers.
- On the passenger's seat with side airbag, do not touch the OPDS sensor in the seat-back pad, and keep it away from oil. Oil can corrode the sensor causing it to fail.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

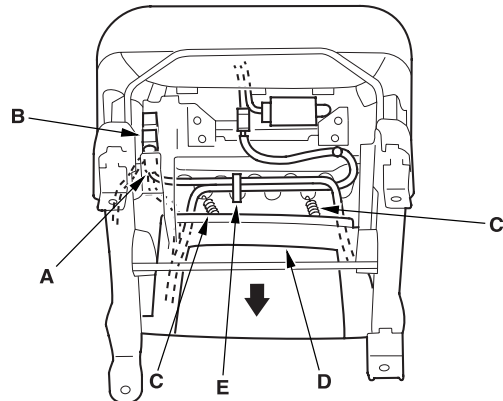
### Seat-back Cover

1. Remove the front seat (see page 20-103).
2. If equipped, remove the armrest (see page 20-107).
3. With side airbag: From under the seat cushion, detach the side airbag connector clip (A), and from under the passenger's eat cushion on some RHD models, detach the seat sub harness connector clip (B). Release the hook springs (C), pull the seat cushion cover (D) back, then remove the harness bands (E). The passenger's seat on RHD model is shown, and the passenger's seat on LHD model is symmetrical except it has no OPDS unit.

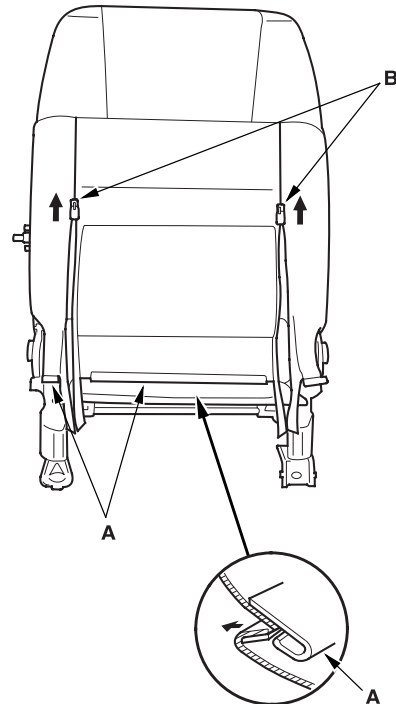
Driver's (LHD):



Passenger's (RHD):



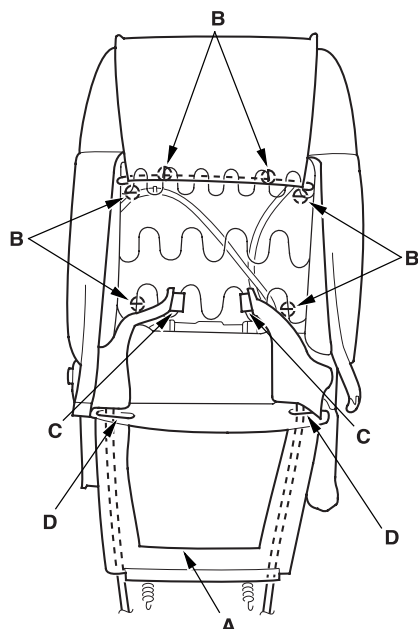
4. Fold the seat-back forward.
5. With side airbag: Release the hooks (A), and unzip the seat-back cover (B).



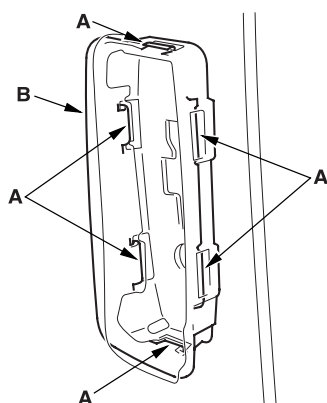




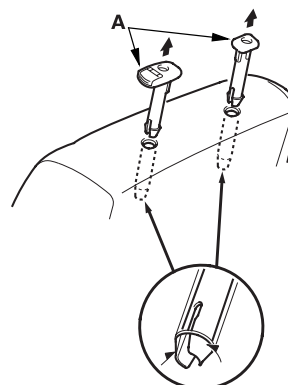
6. Turn over the seat back cover (A), release the inside springs (B) and hooks (C). Pull the side airbag harness, and if equipped, the OPDS unit harness out through the holes (D) in the seat-back cover.



7. With side airbag: Remove the side airbag (see [page 23-137](#)), and release the hooks (A) from the airbag module holder (B).



8. Pull out the headrest guides (A) while pinching the end of the guides, and remove them.



9. Pull back the seat-back cover all the way around, then remove it.
10. Install the cover in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - To prevent wrinkles when installing a seat-back cover, make sure the material is stretched evenly over the pad before securing the clips, hooks, and inside springs.
  - Make sure the side airbag harness is routed properly.
  - If necessary, reinitialize the OPDS control unit ([see page 23-30](#)).

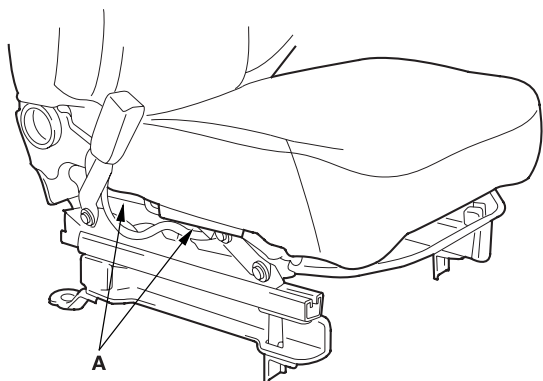
(cont'd)

## Front Seat Cover Replacement (cont'd)

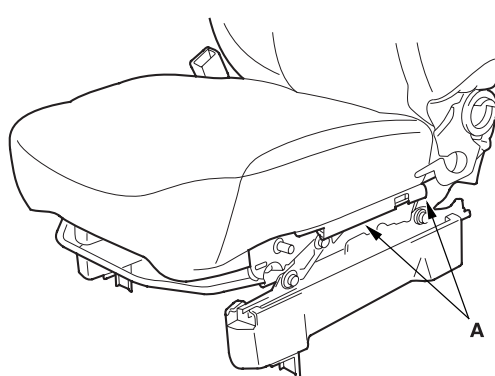
### Seat Cushion Cover

1. Remove the front seat (see page 20-103).
2. Remove these items from the front seat:
  - Center table (see page 20-106)
  - Recline cover, driver's seat (see page 20-108), passenger's seat (see page 20-109)
  - Center cover, driver's seat (see page 20-108), passenger's seat (see page 20-109)
3. From under the seat cushion, detach the side airbag connector clip, and from under the passenger's seat, on some RHD models, detach the OPDS unit connector clip. Release the hook springs from the seat cushion frame spring, then pull the cover back, and remove the harness bands.
4. Release the hook, and unzip the seat-back cover. Pull the side airbag harness and the OPDS harness (passenger's seat on some RHD models) out through the hole in the seat-back cover.
5. Remove the clip, and release the hooks (A).

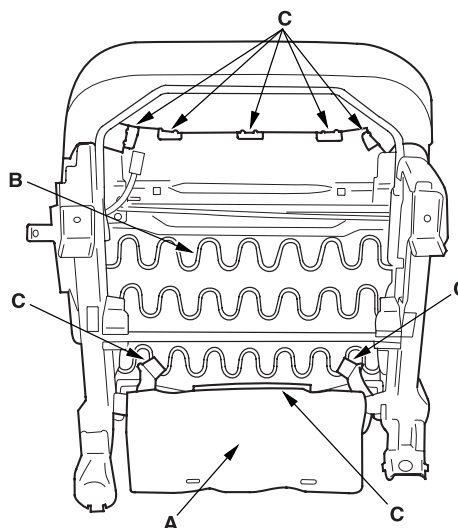
Inside:



Outside:

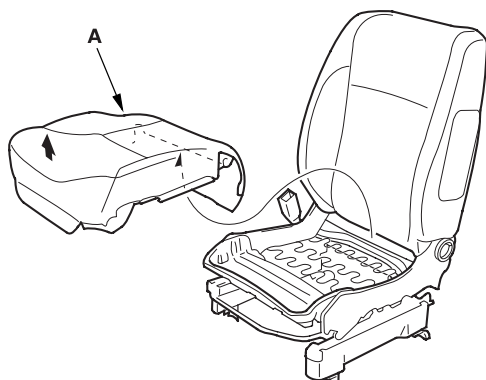


6. From under the seat cushion, release the seat cushion cover (A) from the seat cushion frame spring (B), and release the hooks (C).

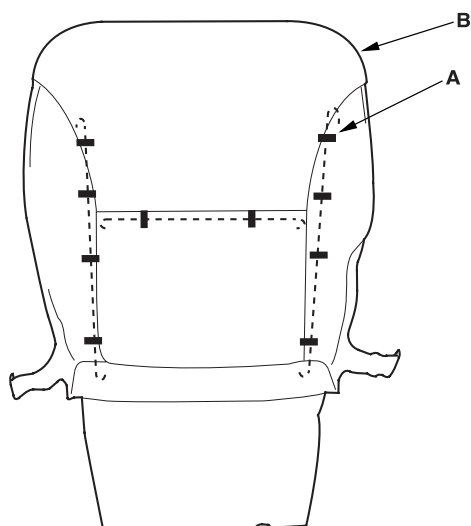




7. Remove the seat cushion cover (A) with the seat cushion pad from the seat cushion frame.

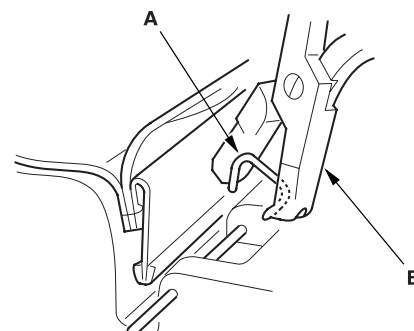


8. Pull back the edge of the seat cushion cover all the way around, and release the clips (A), then remove the seat cushion cover (B).



9. Install the cover in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

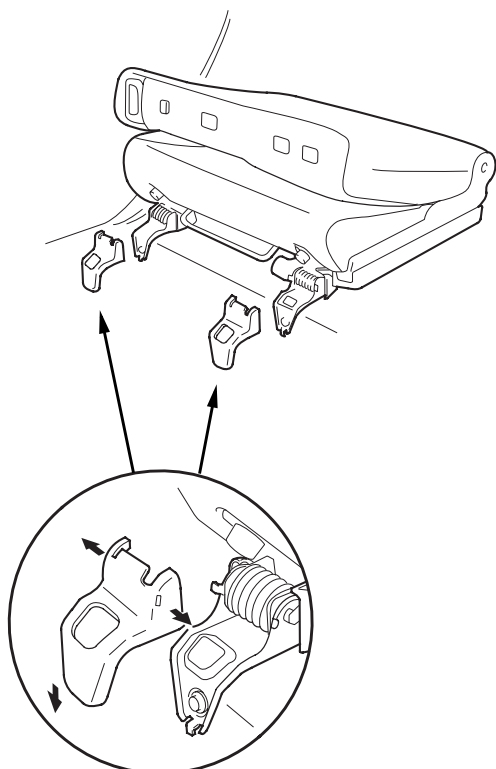
- To prevent wrinkles when installing a seat cushion cover, make sure the material is stretched evenly over the pad before securing the clips and hooks.
- Make sure the side airbag harness and OPDS harness (passenger's seat) are routed properly.
- Replace any clips you removed with new ones (A). Install them with commercially available upholstery ring pliers (B).



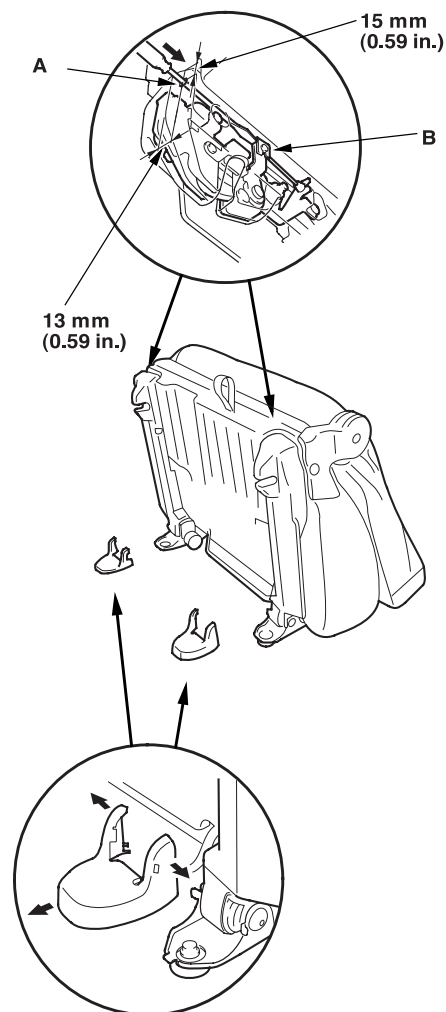
**Rear Seat Removal/Installation****NOTE:**

- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.
- Take care not to scratch the body or rear the seat covers.
- Right rear seat is shown, and left rear seat is similar.

1. Remove the headrests. Fold the seat-back forward, and slide the rear seat backward fully.
2. Remove the front seat track end covers from the front of both seat tracks.



3. Unlock the rear seat and tip it up, then remove the rear seat track end covers from the back of both seat tracks. If the seat cannot be unlocked by pulling the strap, make the holes (A) in the back of both seat tracks as shown. Insert a flat-tip screwdriver over 100 mm (3.94 in.) through holes, and push both levers (B) to unlock the seat.

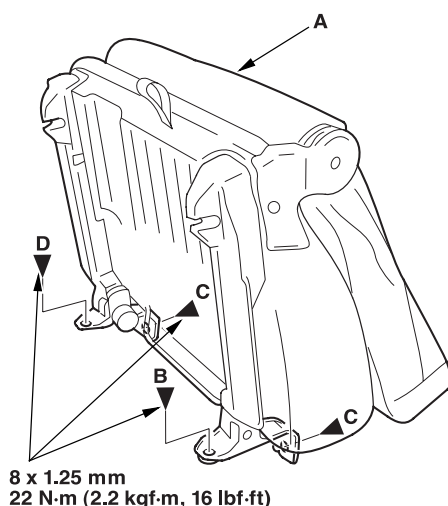
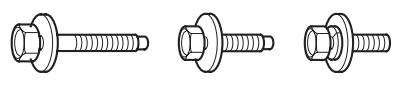




4. While holding the rear seat (A) up, remove the mounting bolt (B, C, D).

#### Fastener Locations

B ► : Bolt, 1    C ► : Bolt, 2    D ► : Bolt, 1

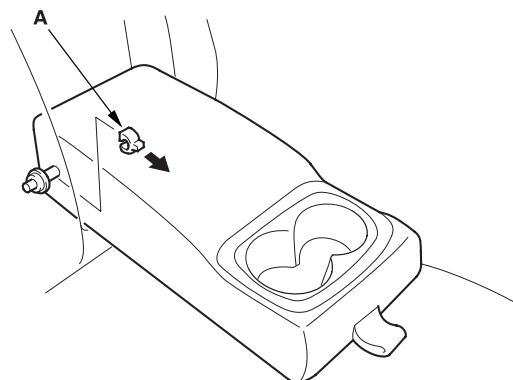


5. With the help of an assistant, remove the rear seat (A) through the door opening.
6. Install the rear seat in the reverse order of removal.

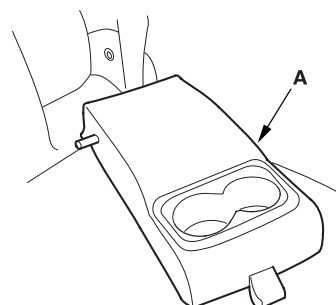
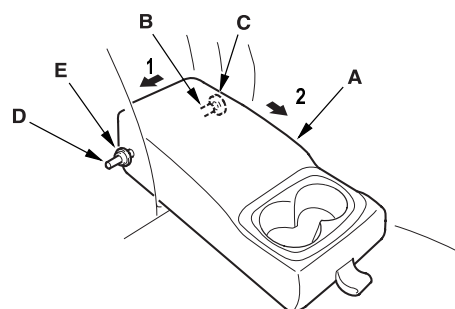
## Rear Seat Armrest Replacement

NOTE: Take care not to tear the seams or damage the seat covers.

1. Remove the clip (A) from the right portion of the armrest pivot.



2. Remove the armrest.
  - Slide the armrest (A) toward the right, side.
  - Remove the left pivot shaft (B) from the collar (C), and remove the right pivot shaft (D) from the collar (E) by pulling the armrest back.



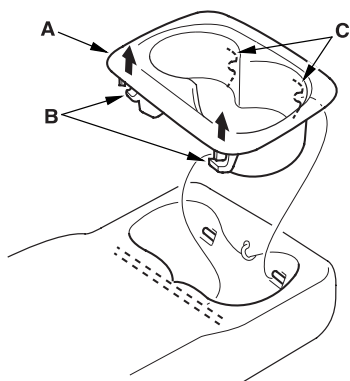
3. Install the armrest in the reverse order of removal.

## Rear Seat Armrest Cover Replacement

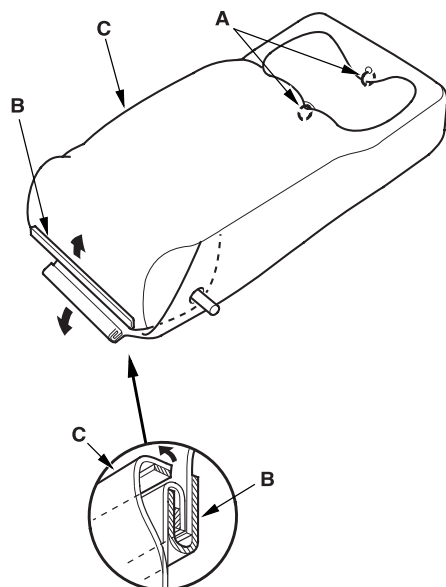
### NOTE:

- Take care not to tear the seams or damage the seat covers.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

1. Remove the armrest ([see page 20-115](#)).
2. Remove the beverage holder (A).
  - 1 Pull up on the rear edge of the holder to release the hooks (B).
  - 2 Release the front hooks (C), then remove the holder.

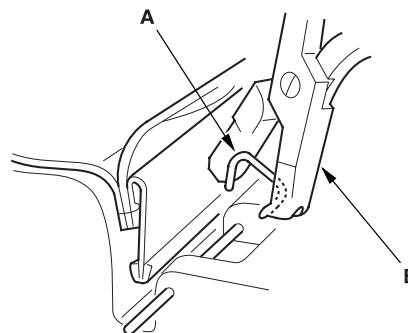


3. Release the clips (A) from the beverage holder opening, release the rear hook (B), then pull back the edge of the armrest cover (C) all the way around and remove it.



4. Install the cover in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- To prevent wrinkles when installing a seat cushion cover, make sure the material is stretched evenly over the pad before securing the clips and hooks.
- Replace any clips you removed with new ones (A). Install them with commercially available upholstery ring pliers (B).





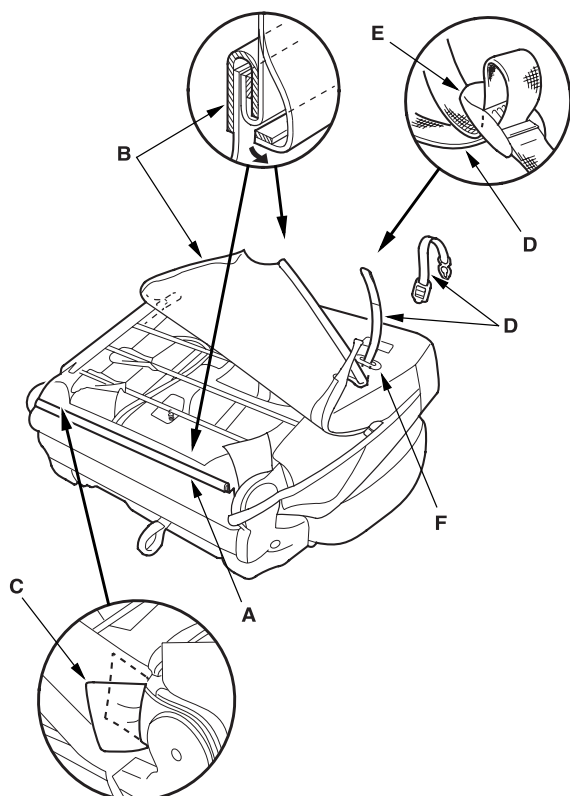
## Right Rear Seat Cover Replacement

### NOTE:

- Take care not to tear the seams or damage the seat covers.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

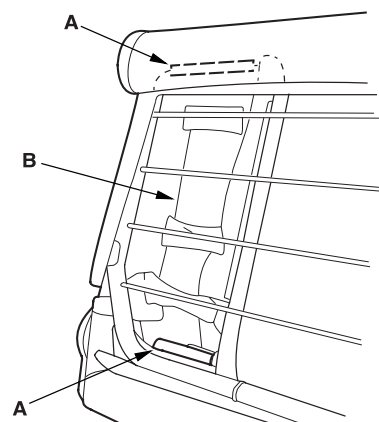
### Seat-back Cover

1. Remove the right rear seat (see page 20-114).
2. Remove the armrest (see page 20-115).
3. Release the bottom hook (A), unzip the seat-back cover (B), then fold back the cover. From between the left recline adjuster and the pad, remove a piece of cloth (C).

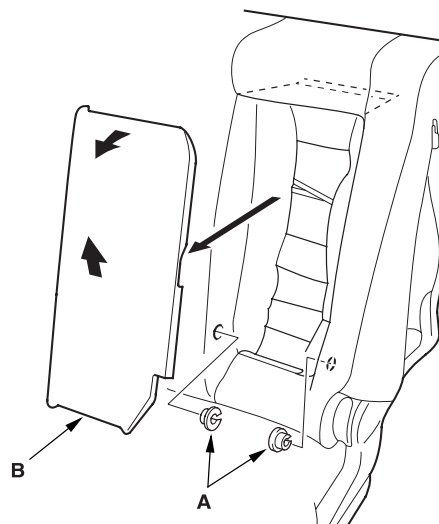


4. Loosen the seat-back strap (D) with the adjuster (E), and separate it into two pieces. Pull the strap secured on the seat-back frame inside the seat-back cover through the slot (F).

5. Release the hook strips (A) from the edge of the armrest back cover (B).



6. From the front of the seat-back, remove the armrest collars (A) and armrest back cover (B).

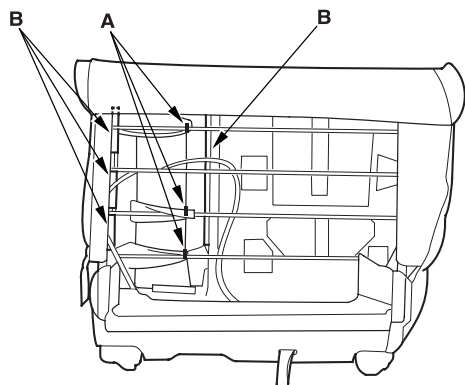


(cont'd)

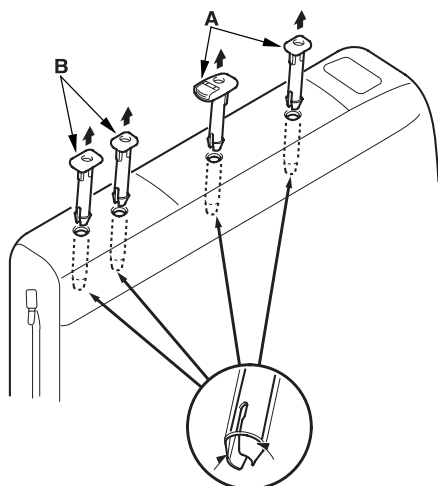
## Right Rear Seat Cover Replacement (cont'd)

### Seat-back Cover (cont'd)

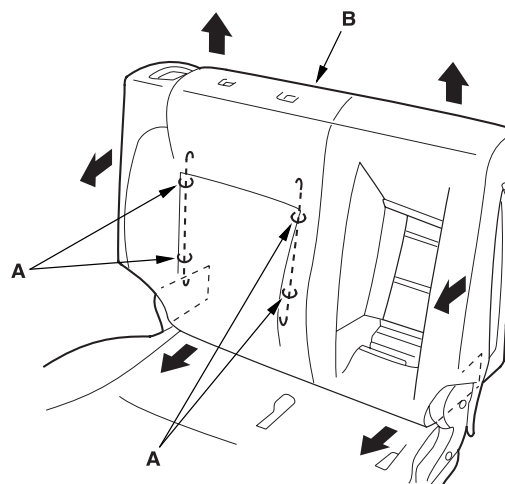
7. Release the clips (A) and hook strips (B) from the back of the seat-back.



8. Pull out the headrest guides (A), and if equipped, center headrest guides (B) while pinching the end of the guides, and remove them.

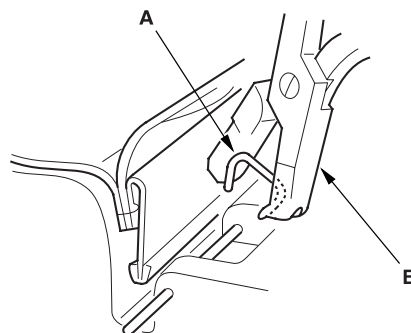


9. Pull back the edge of the seat-back cover all the way around, and release the clips (A), then remove the seat-back cover (B).



10. Install the seat-back cover in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- To prevent wrinkles when installing a seat-back cover, make sure the material is stretched evenly over the pad before securing the hook and clips.
- Replace the any clips (A) you removed with new ones using commercially available upholstery ring pliers (B).





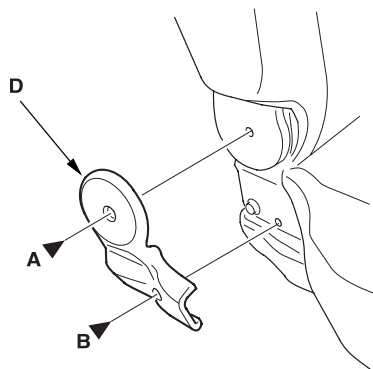
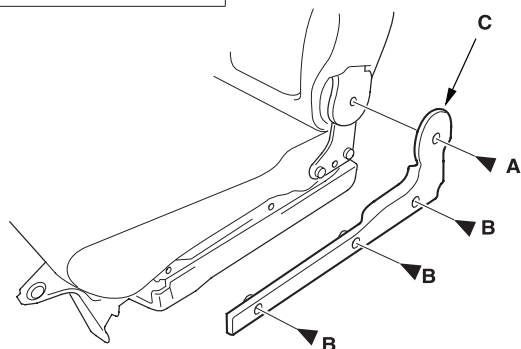


## Seat Cushion Cover

1. Remove the right rear seat ([see page 20-114](#)).
2. Remove the screws (A, B), then remove the recline cover (C) and the center cover (D).

### Fastener Locations

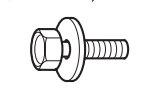
A ► : Screw, 2    B ► : Screw, 4



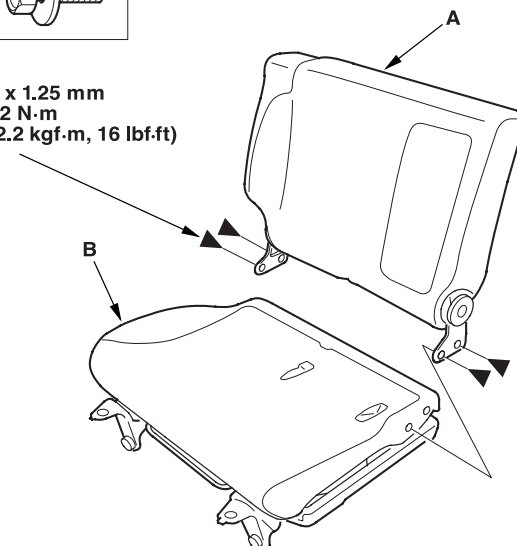
3. Remove the bolts searing the seat-back (A) and seat cushion (B), then separate them.

### Fastener Locations

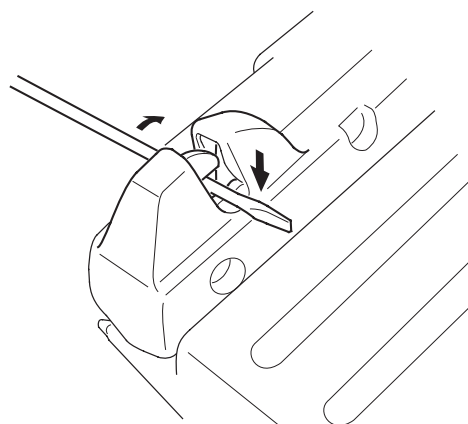
► : Bolt, 4



8 x 1.25 mm  
22 N·m  
(2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)



4. To allow the seat cushion to slide, use a screwdriver to move the latch.



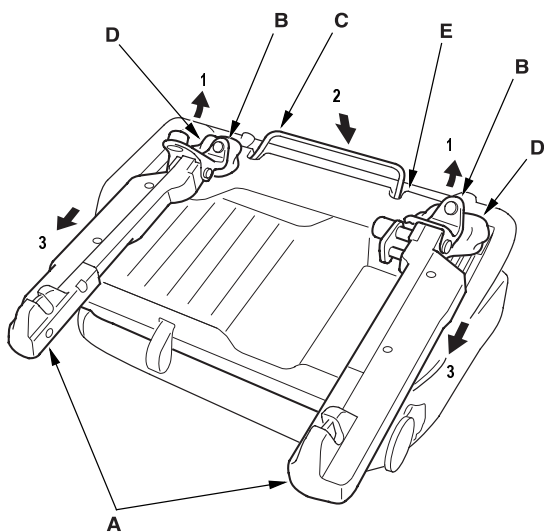
(cont'd)

## Right Rear Seat Cover Replacement (cont'd)

### Seat Cushion Cover (cont'd)

5. Slide both seat tracks (A) backward fully.
  - 1 Raise both foot brackets (B), and hold them.
  - 2 Push the slide lever (C) down.
  - 3 While holding both foot brackets, slide both seat tracks backward fully.
  - 4 Place a shop towel (D) between the brackets and the under cover (E).

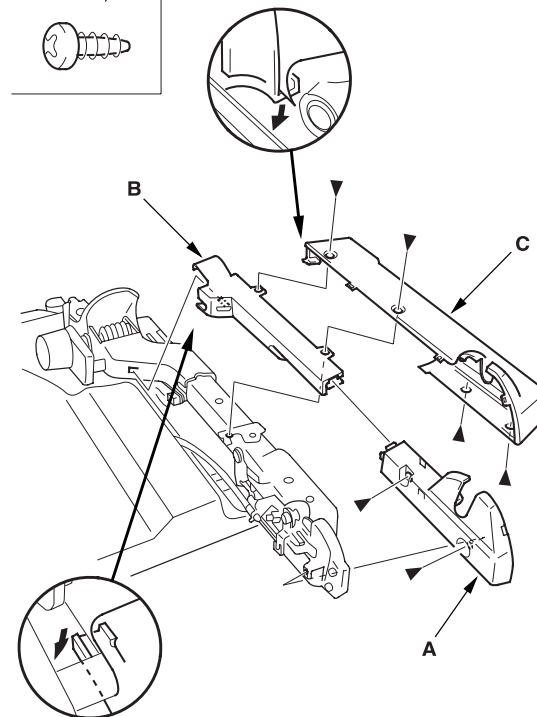
NOTE: While sliding both seat tracks, keep both foot brackets raised securely so as not to make them return with their spring tensions.



6. Remove the screws, then remove the latch cover (A), outer seat track cover B (B), and outer seat track cover A (C), the left seat track is shown, the right seat track is similar.

### Fastener Locations

► : Screw, 6

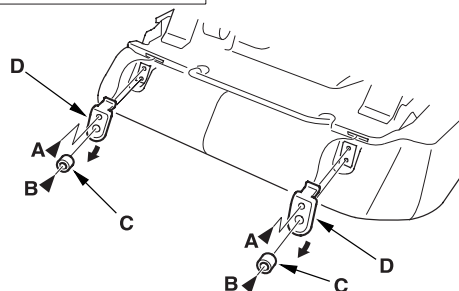




7. Remove the screws (A, B), then remove both dampers (C) and both damper covers (D).

Fastener Locations

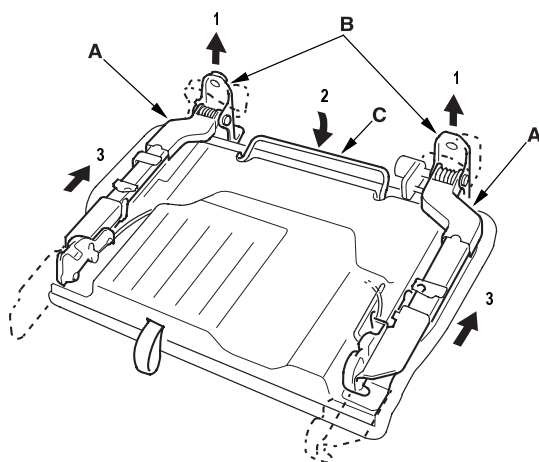
A ► : Screw, 2    B ► : Screw, 2



8. Slide both seat tracks (A) forward fully.

- 1 Raise both foot brackets (B), and hold them.
- 2 Push the slide lever (C) down.
- 3 While holding both foot brackets, slide both seat tracks forward fully.

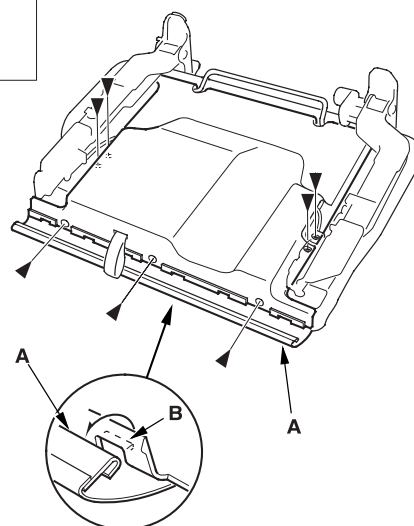
NOTE: While sliding both seat tracks, keep both foot brackets raised securely so as not to make them return with their spring tensions.



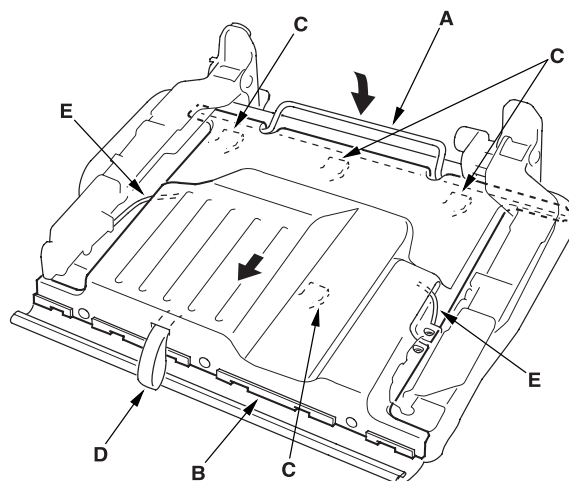
9. Pull back the rear edge of the seat cushion cover (A) to release it from the hooks (B), and remove the screws.

Fastener Locations

► : Screw, 7



10. While pushing the slide lever (A) down, remove the under cover (B) by pulling it to release the hooks (C). Pass the strap (D) through a slot, and both side cables (E) through each side slit in the cover. Take care not to band any cable.

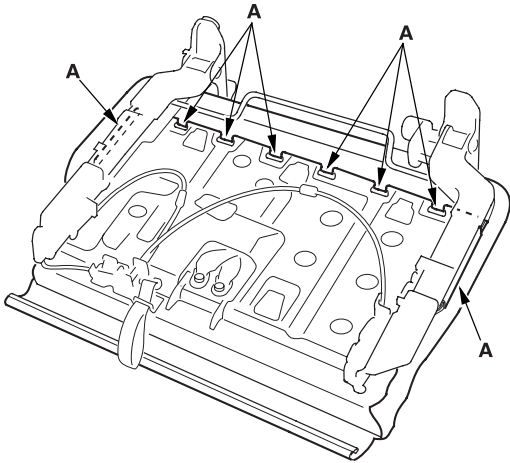


(cont'd)

## Right Rear Seat Cover Replacement (cont'd)

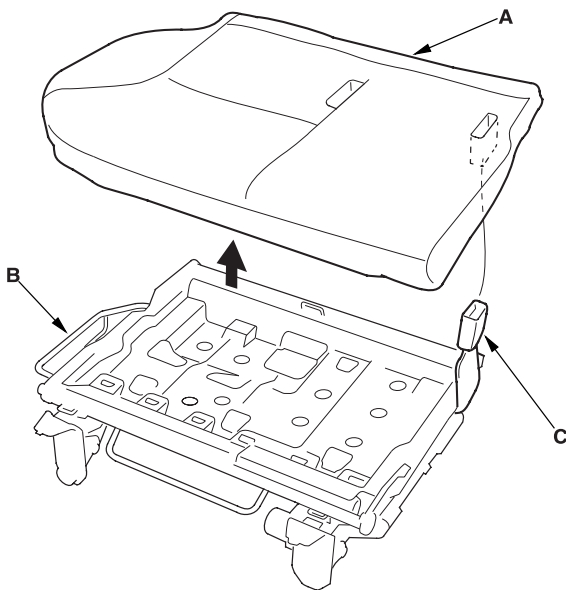
### Seat Cushion Cover (cont'd)

11. Release all of the hook strips (A).

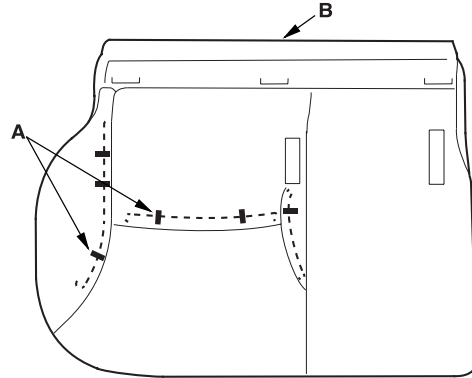


12. Remove the rear seat belt buckle and center seat belt/detachable anchor (see step 3 on [page 23-10](#)).

13. Remove the seat cushion cover (A) with the seat cushion pad from the seat cushion frame (B). Pass the center seat belt buckle (C) through a hole in the seat cushion cover.

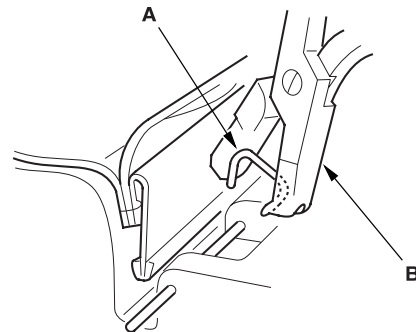


14. Pull back the edge of the seat cushion cover all the way around, and release the clips (A), then remove the seat cushion cover (B).



15. Install the cover in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- To prevent wrinkles when installing a seat cushion cover, make sure the material is stretched evenly over the pad before securing the hook and clips.
- Replace any clips (A) you removed with new ones using commercially available upholstery ring pliers (B).





## Left Rear Seat Cover Replacement

### NOTE:

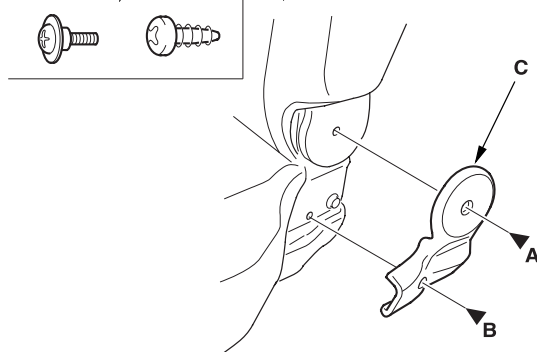
- Take care not to tear the seams or damage the seat covers.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

### Seat-back Cover

1. Remove the left rear seat ([see page 20-114](#)).
2. Remove the screws holder (A, B), then remove the recline cover (C).

#### Fastener Locations

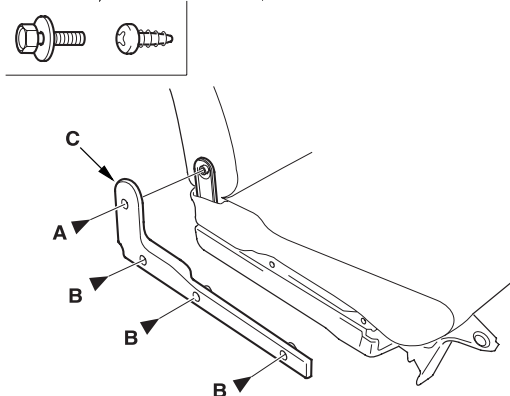
A ► : Screw, 1 B ► : Screw, 1



3. Remove the bolt (A) and screw (B), then remove the center cover (C).

#### Fastener Locations

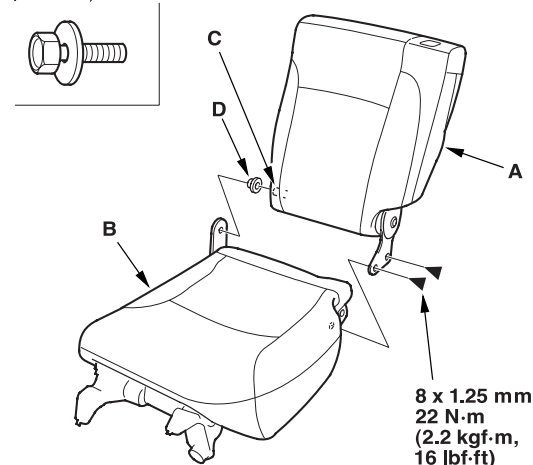
A ► : Bolt, 1 B ► : Screw, 3



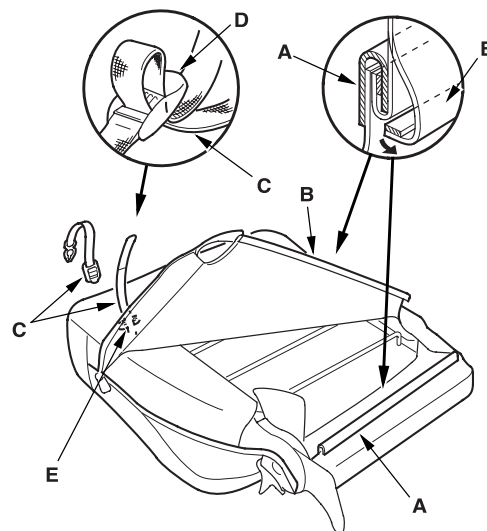
4. Remove the bolts securing the seat-back (A) and seat cushion (B), pull the center pivot (C) out from the pivot bracket then separate them. If necessary, remove the bushing (D).

#### Fastener Locations

► : Bolt, 4



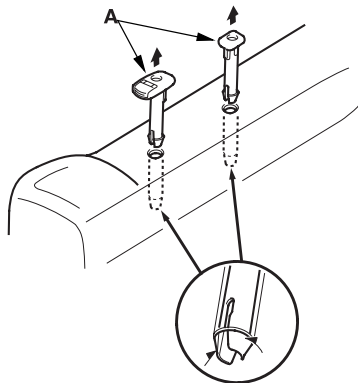
5. Release the bottom hook (A), unzip the seat-back cover (B), then fold back the cover. Loosen the seat-back strap (C) with the adjuster (D), and separate it into two pieces. Pull the strap secured on the seat-back frame in inside of the seat-back cover through the slot (E).



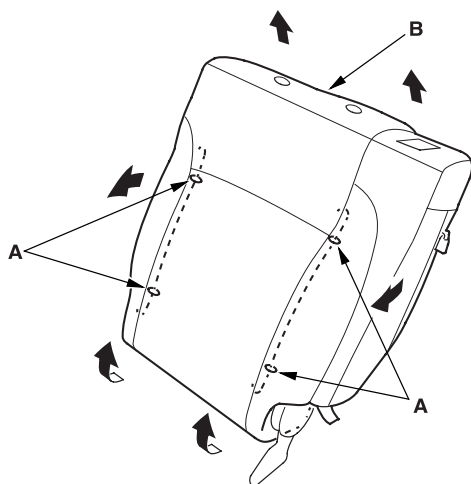
(cont'd)

**Left Rear Seat Cover Replacement (cont'd)****Seat-back Cover (cont'd)**

6. Pull out the headrest guides (A, B) while pinching the end of the guides, and remove them.

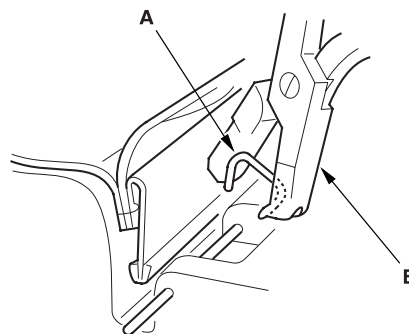


7. Remove the latch cover (see page 20-128).
8. Pull back the edge of the seat-back cover all the way around, and release the clips (A), then remove the seat-back cover (B).



9. Install the seat-back cover in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- To prevent wrinkles when installing a seat-back cover, make sure the material is stretched evenly over the pad before securing the hook and clips.
- Replace any clips (A) you removed with new ones using commercially available upholstery ring pliers (B).



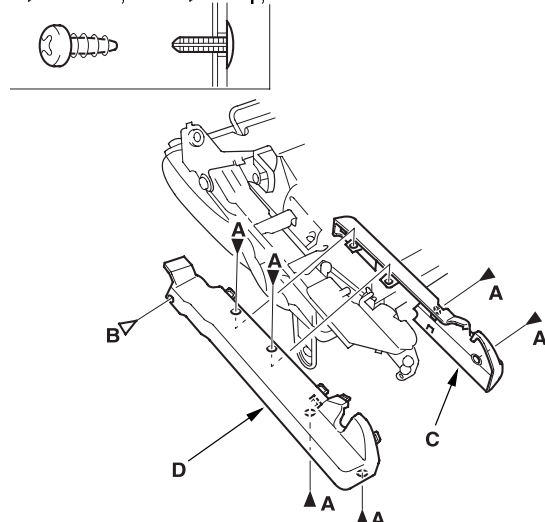


## Seat Cushion Cover

1. Remove the left rear seat (see page 20-114).
2. Remove the seat-back.
3. To allow the seat cushion to slide, use a screwdriver to move the latch (see step 4 on page 20-119).
4. Slide both seat tracks backward fully (see step 5 on page 20-120).  
NOTE: While sliding the outer seat track, keep the outer foot bracket raised securely so as not to make it return with its spring tension.
5. Remove the outer seat track cover (see step 6 on page 20-120).
6. Remove the screws (A) and release the clips (B), then remove the inner seat track end cover B (C) and inner seat track end cover A (D).

### Fastener Locations

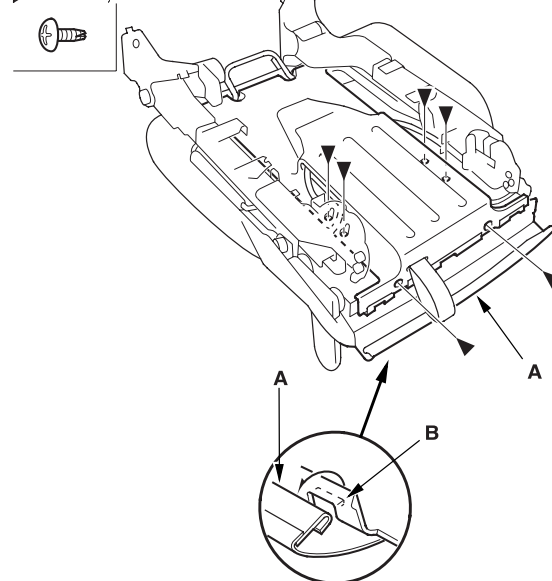
A : Screw, 6    B : Clip, 1



7. Remove both dampers and both damper covers (see step 7 on page 20-121).
8. Slide both seat tracks forward fully (see step 8 on page 20-121).  
NOTE: While sliding the outer seat track, keep the outer foot bracket raised securely so as not to make it return with its spring tension.
9. Pull back the rear edge of the seat cushion cover (A) to release it from the hooks (B), and remove the screws.

### Fastener Locations

: Screw, 6

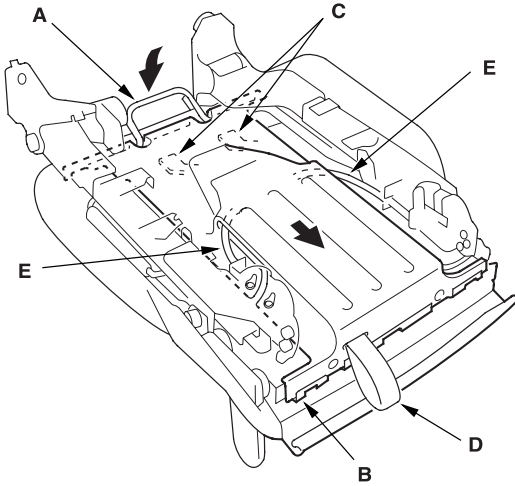


(cont'd)

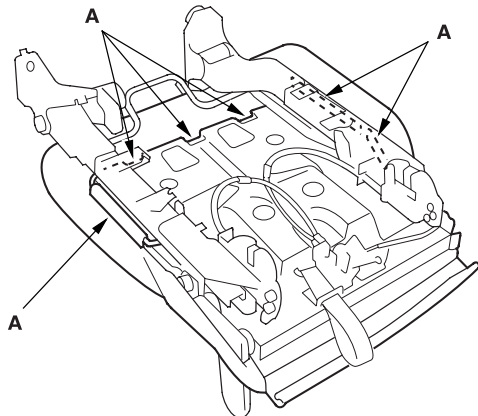
## Left Rear Seat Cover Replacement (cont'd)

### Seat Cushion Cover (cont'd)

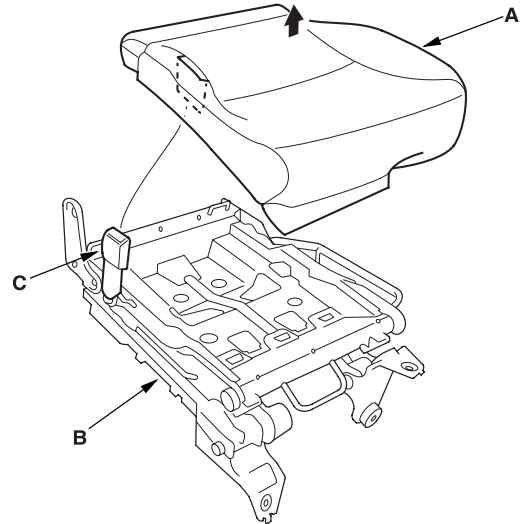
10. While pushing the slide lever (A) down, remove the under cover (B) by pulling it to release the hooks (C). Pass the strap (D) through a slot, and both side cables (E) through each side slit in the cover. Take care not to bend any cable.



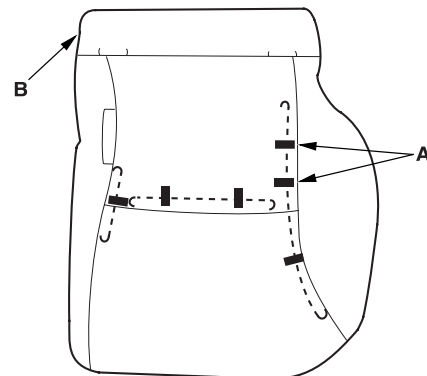
11. Release all of the hook strips (A).



12. Remove the seat cushion cover (A) with the seat cushion pad from the seat cushion frame (B). Pass the seat belt buckle (C) through a hole in the seat cushion cover.



13. Pull back the edge of the seat-back cover all the way around, and release the clips (A), then remove the seat cushion.

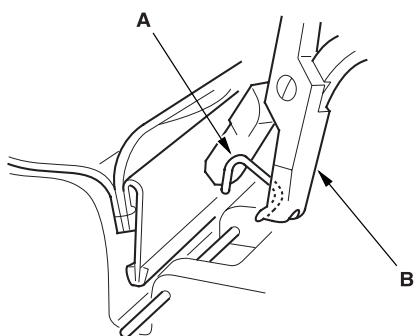






14. Install the cover in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- To prevent wrinkles when installing a seat-back cover, make sure the material is stretched evenly over the pad before securing the hook and clips.
- Replace any clips (A) you removed with new ones using commercially available upholstery ring pliers (B).

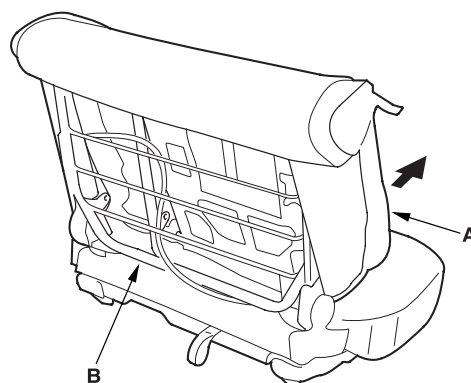


## Right Rear Seat-back Lock Control Cable Replacement

### NOTE:

- Take care not to tear the seams or damage the seat covers.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

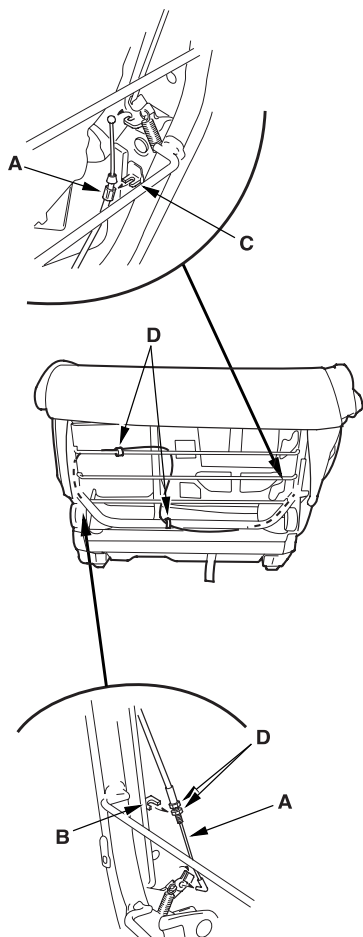
1. Remove the armrest ([see page 20-115](#)).
2. Release the bottom hook, unzip the seat-back cover, then fold back the cover ([see step 3 on page 20-117](#)).
3. Release the hook strips from the edge of the armrest back cover ([see step 5 on page 20-117](#)).
4. Remove the armrest back cover ([see step 6 on page 20-117](#)).
5. Release the hook strips at the armrest portions from the back of the seat-back ([see step 7 on page 20-118](#)).
6. Pull up the bottom of the seat-back pad (A) half-way apart from the seat-back frame (B).



(cont'd)

## Right Rear Seat-back Lock Control Cable Replacement (cont'd)

7. Disconnect the seat-back lock control cable (A) from the inner recline adjuster (B) and the outer recline adjuster (C). Release the clamps (D), then remove the cable.



8. Install the cable in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - After reconnecting the cable, adjust its tension with its adjusting nuts (D).
  - Replace any clamps you removed with new ones.
  - To prevent wrinkles when installing a seat-back cover, make sure the material is stretched evenly over the pad before securing the hooks.

## Rear Seat-back Latch Lever Replacement

### NOTE:

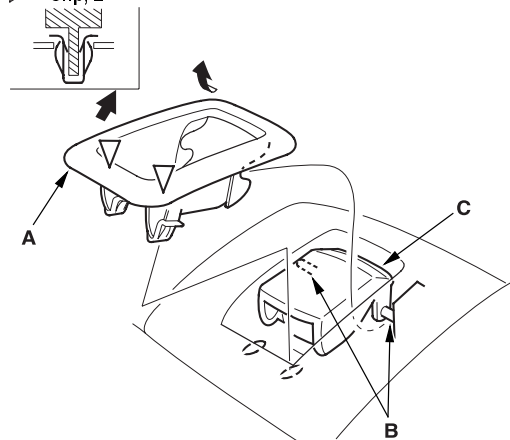
- Take care not to tear the seams or damage the seat covers.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- The right rear seat is shown, and the left rear seat is symmetrical.

1. Remove the latch cover (A).

- 1 Pull up the rear edge of the latch lever cover to release the clips.
- 2 Release the cover from the pivot pins (B) of the latch lever (C) while pulling the latch lever.

### Fastener Locations

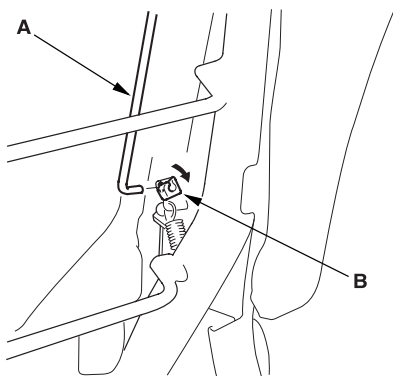
▷ : Clip, 2



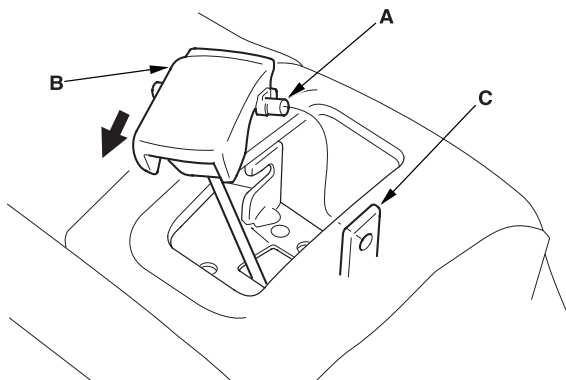
2. Release the bottom hook, unzip the seat-back cover, then fold back the cover, right rear seat (see step 3 on [page 20-117](#)), left rear seat (see step 5 on [page 20-123](#)).



3. Disconnect the lock knob rod (A) from the outer recline adjuster (B).

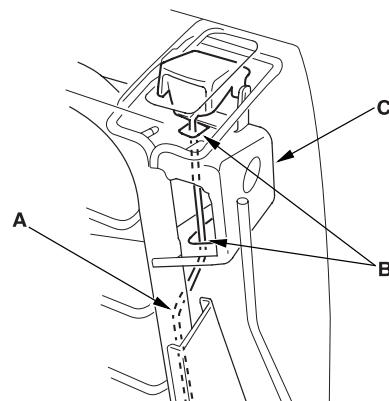


4. Release the pivot pin (A) of the latch lever (B) from the seat-back frame (C), then remove the latch lever by pulling it up.



5. Install the lever in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- Make sure the lock knob rod (A) is passed through the holes (B) in the seat-back frame (C) correctly when reinstalling the latch lever.
- To prevent wrinkles, make sure the material is stretched evenly over the pad before securing the clips.
- Replace any damaged clips with new ones.



## Bumpers

### Front Bumper Removal/Installation

**NOTE:**

- Have an assistant help you when removing and installing the front bumper.
- Take care not to scratch the front bumper and body.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

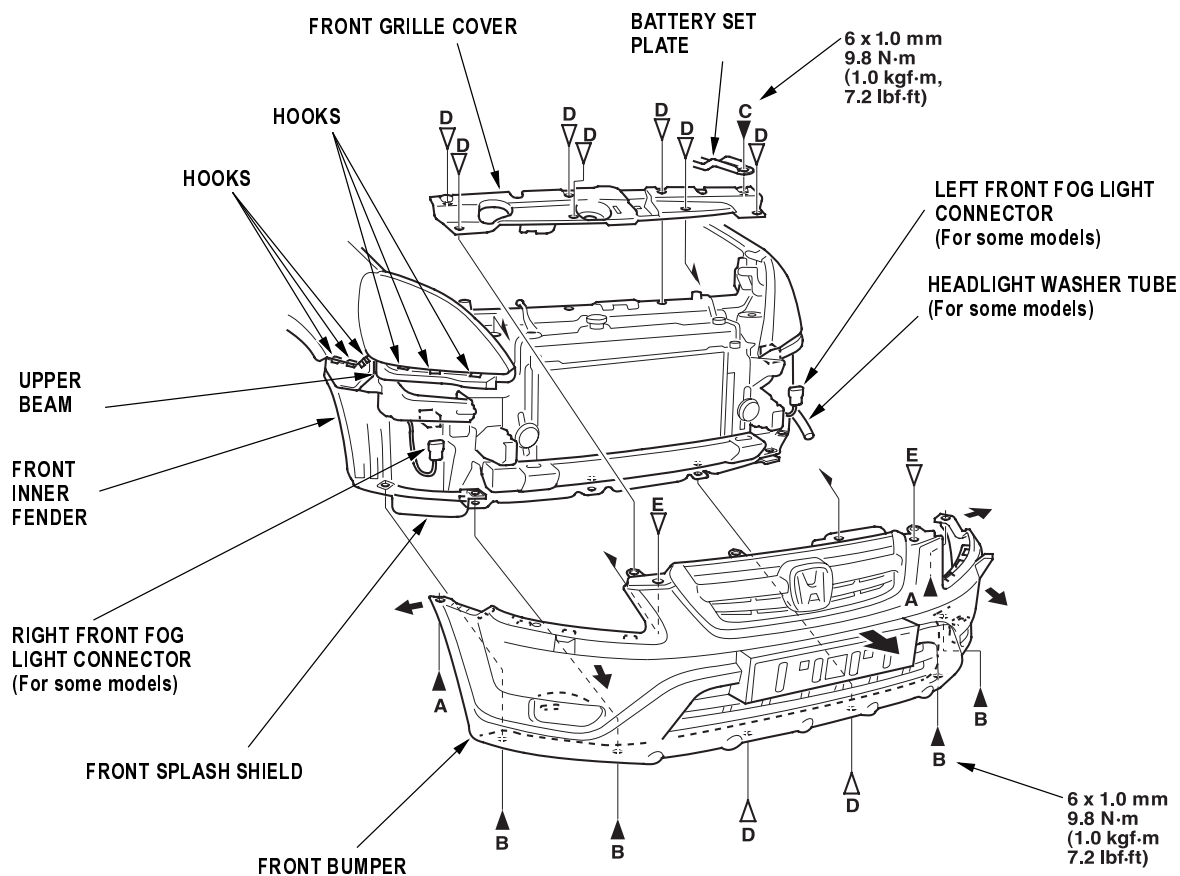
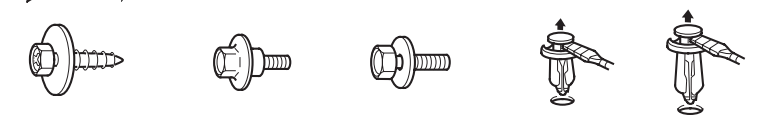
Remove the front bumper as shown.

Install the bumper in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- If equipped, make sure the front fog light connector is plugged in properly, and the headlight washer tube is connected properly.
- Make sure the front bumper engages the hooks of the side spacers and upper beams on both sides securely.
- Replace any damaged clips.

**Fastener Locations**

A ► : Screw, 2    B ► : Bolt, 4    C ► : Bolt, 1    D ► : Clip, 9    E ► : Clip, 2





## Rear Bumper Removal/Installation

### NOTE:

- Have an assistant help you when removing and installing the rear bumper.
- Take care not to scratch the rear bumper and body.
- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape to prevent damage.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- Apply protective tape around the hinge side edge of the tailgate lower trim to prevent damage to the rear bumper.
- For removing the rear bumper, remove the bolt securing the body side end of the tailgate support strut. After removing the bolt, gently open or close the tailgate to make most clearance between the rear bumper and the tailgate lower trim, and securely keep this position.

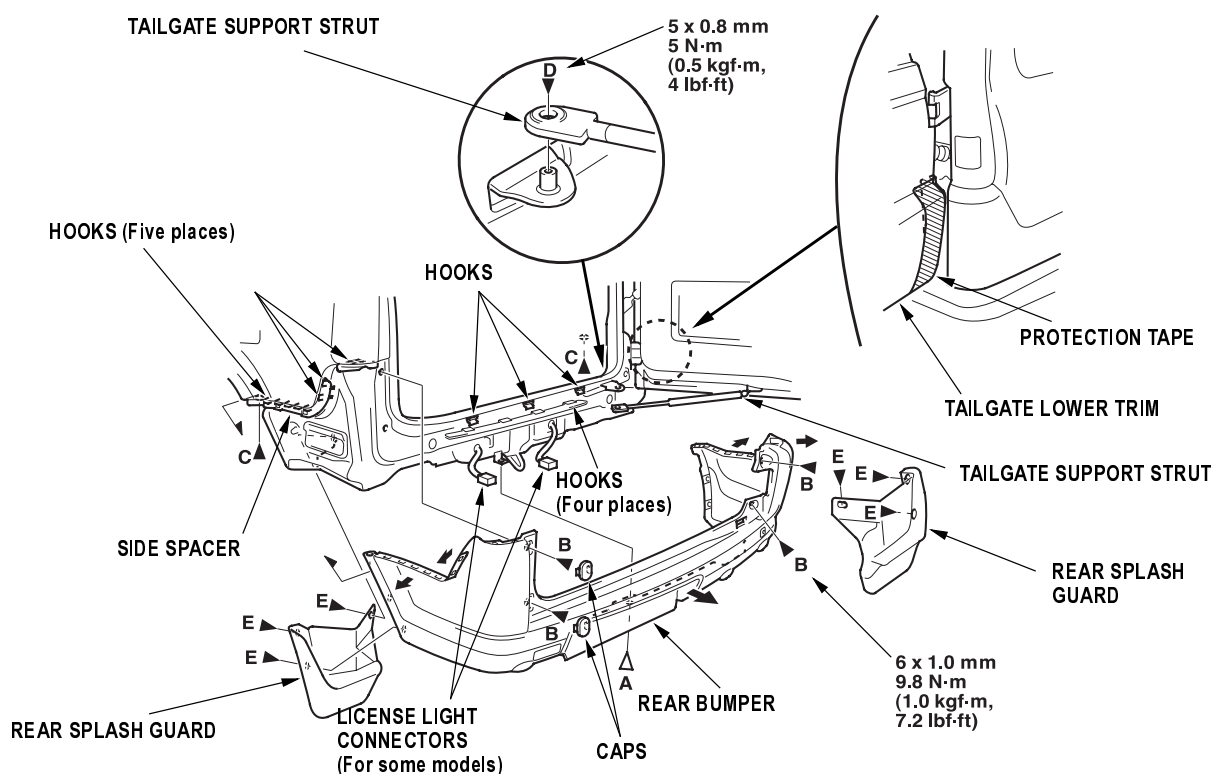
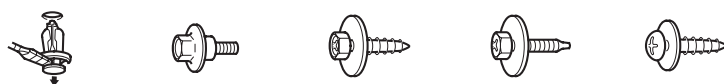
Remove the rear bumper as shown.

Install the bumper in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- Make sure each connector is plugged in properly.
- Make sure the rear bumper engages the hooks of the side spacers and upper brackets on both sides securely.
- Replace any damaged clips.

### Fastener Locations

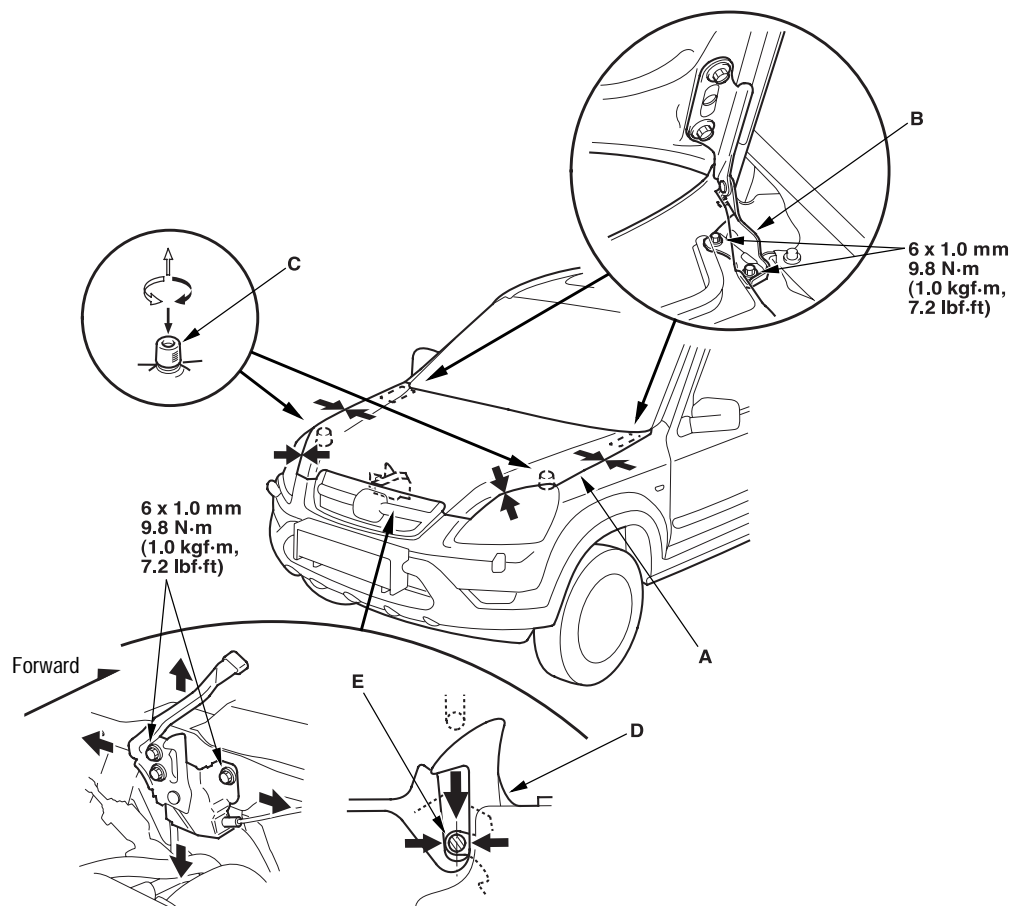
A ▶ : Clip, 1    B ▶ : Bolt, 4    C ▶ : Screw, 2    D ▶ : Bolt, 1    E ▶ : Screw, 6



## Hood

### Adjustment

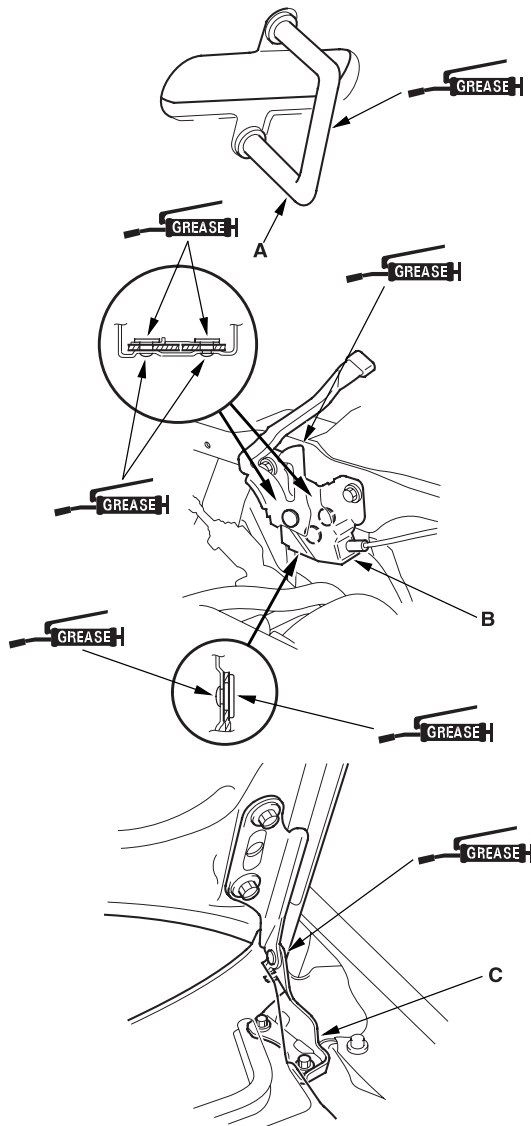
1. Slightly loosen each bolt.
2. Adjust the hood (A) alignment in this sequence.
  - Adjust the hood right and left, as well as forward and rearward, by using the elongated holes on the hood hinge(B).
  - Turn the hood edge cushions (C), as necessary, to make the hood fit flush with the body at the front and side edges.
  - Adjust the hood latch (D) to obtain the proper height at the forward edge, and move the hood latch right or left until the striker (E) is centered in the hood latch.



3. Tighten each bolt securely.



4. Check that the hood opens properly and locks securely.
5. Apply body paint to the hinge mounting bolts and around the hinges.
6. Grease each location of the hood striker (A), hood latch (B), and hood hinge (C) as indicated by the arrows.

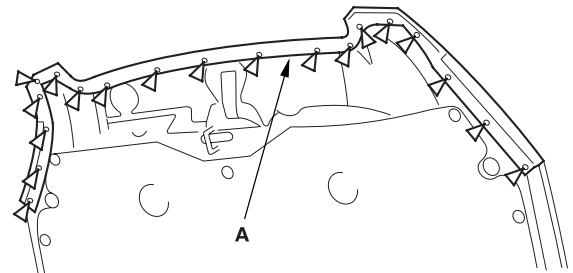
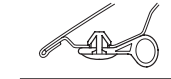


## Hood Seal Replacement

1. Using a clip remover, detach the clips, then remove the hood seal (A). Take care not to scratch the hood.

Fastener Locations

▷ : Clip, 19



2. Install the seal in the reverse order of removal, and replace any damaged clips.

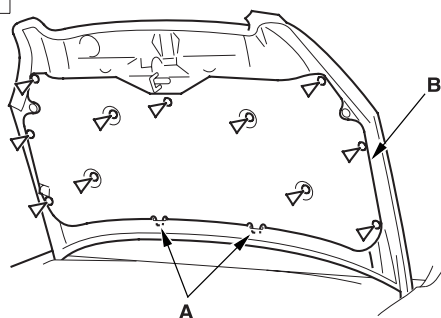
## Hood Insulator Replacement

### For Some Models

1. Using a clip remover, detach the clips, release the hooks (A), then remove the hood insulator (B). Take care not to scratch the hood.

#### Fastener Locations

▷ : Clip, 11



2. Install the insulator in the reverse order of removal, and replace any damaged clips.



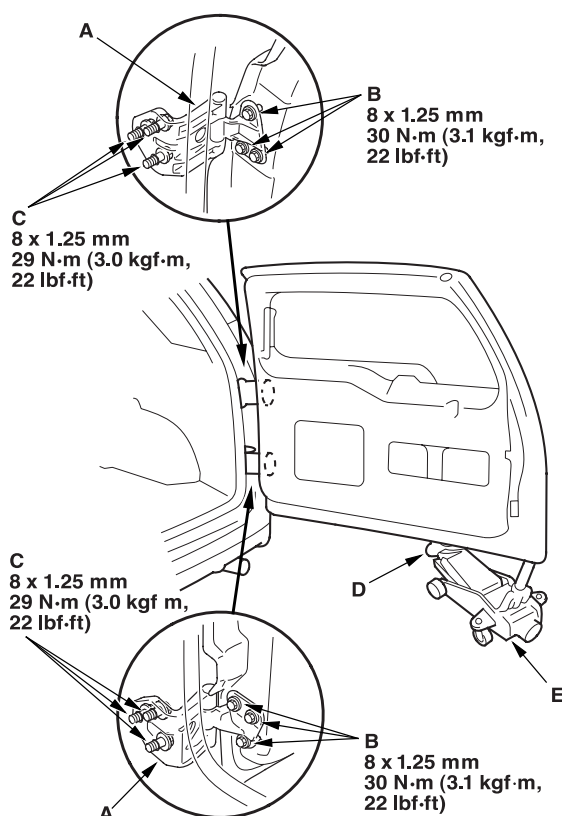


## Tailgate

### Tailgate Adjustment

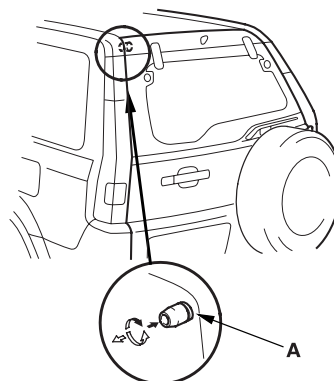
**NOTE:** Check for a flush fit with the body, then check for equal gaps between the top, both sides, and bottom tailgate edges and the body. Check that the tailgate and body edges are parallel. Before adjusting, replace the mounting bolts.

1. Place the vehicle on a firm, level surface when adjusting the tailgate.
2. Remove the tailgate support strut from each side (see page 20-137).
3. Adjust at the hinges (A):
  - Loosen the tailgate mounting bolts (B) slightly, and move the tailgate in or out until it's flush with the body.
  - Remove the right taillight (see page 22A-98) and rear bumper (see page 20-131).
  - Loosen the hinge mounting bolts (C) slightly, and move the tailgate left or right, up or down as necessary to equalize the gaps.
  - Place a shop towel (D) on the jack (E) to prevent damage to the tailgate when adjusting the tailgate.

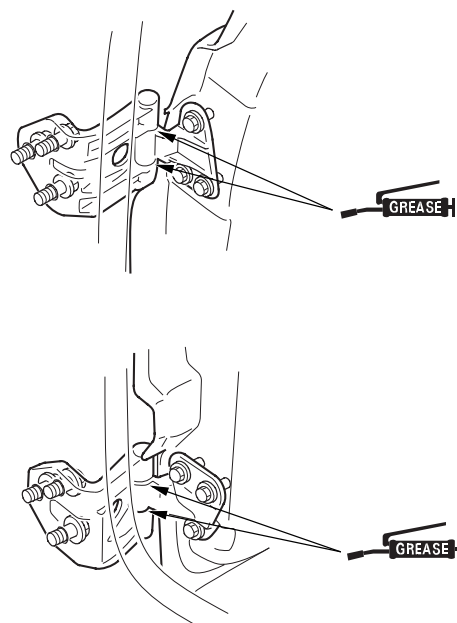


4. Tighten each bolts securely.

5. Check that the tailgate and body edges are parallel. If necessary, adjust the tailgate cushions (A) to make the left of the tailgate flush with the body.



6. Reinstall the support strut securely.
7. Apply body paint to the hinge mounting bolts and around the hinges.
8. Reinstall all removing removed parts.
9. Grease the location of the tailgate hinges is indicated by the arrows.

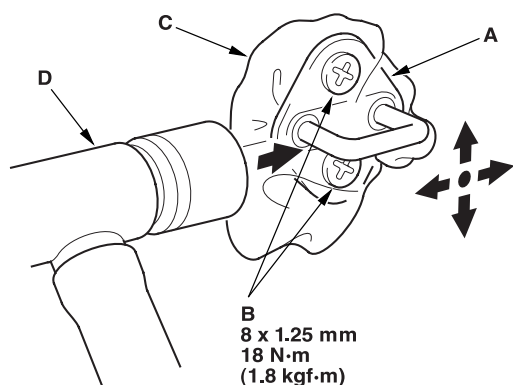


10. Check for water leaks (see step 9 on page 20-59).

## Tailgate Striker Adjustment

Make sure the tailgate latches securely without slamming it. If necessary, adjust the striker (A): The striker nuts are fixed, but the striker can be adjusted slightly up or down, and in or out.

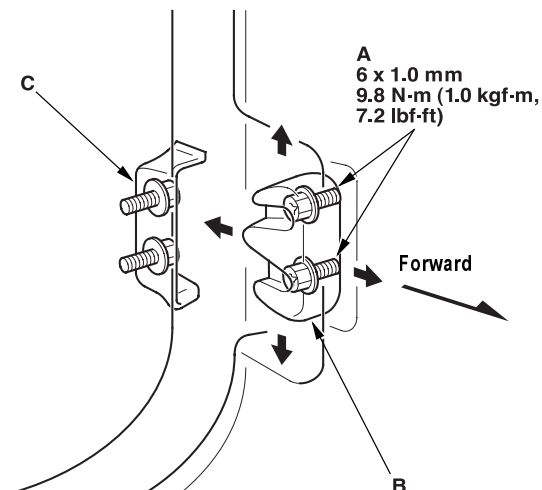
1. Remove the rear portion of the left rear side trim panel, as necessary ([see page 20-77](#)).
2. Loosen the screws (B), then insert a shop towel (C) between the body and striker.



3. Lightly tighten the screws.
4. Wrap the striker with a shop towel, then adjust the striker by tapping it with a plastic hammer (D). Do not tap the striker too hard.
5. Loosen the screws, and remove the shop towel.
6. Lightly tighten the screws.
7. Hold the outer handle out, and push the tailgate against the body to be sure the striker allows a flush fit. If the tailgate latches properly, tighten the screws and recheck.
8. Install the left rear side trim panel.

## Tailgate Wedge Adjustment

1. Loosen the bolts (A) and move the tailgate wedge (B) up or down to align it with the tailgate wedge striker (C). Move the tailgate wedge in or out to center it. Then lightly tighten the bolts and recheck.



2. Hold the tailgate door handle out and push the tailgate against the body to be sure the tailgate wedge allows a flush fit.
3. If the tailgate latches properly, tighten the bolts and recheck.



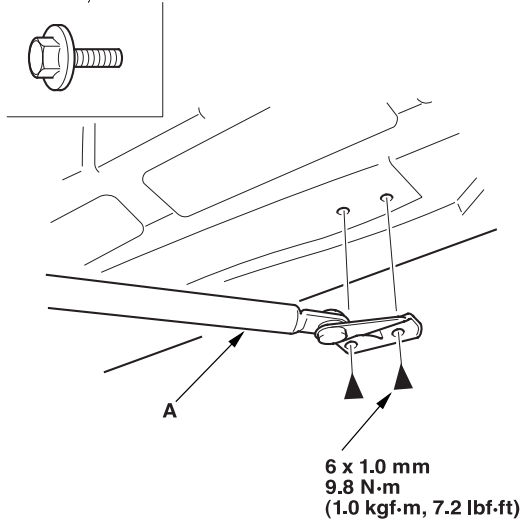
## Tailgate Support Strut Replacement

### NOTE:

- Have an assistant help you when removing and installing the support strut.
  - Take care not to scratch the body and tailgate.
1. Remove the bolt securing the body side end of the tailgate support strut, then release it from the bracket (see page 20-131).
  2. Remove the bolts, then remove the support strut (A).

### Fastener Locations

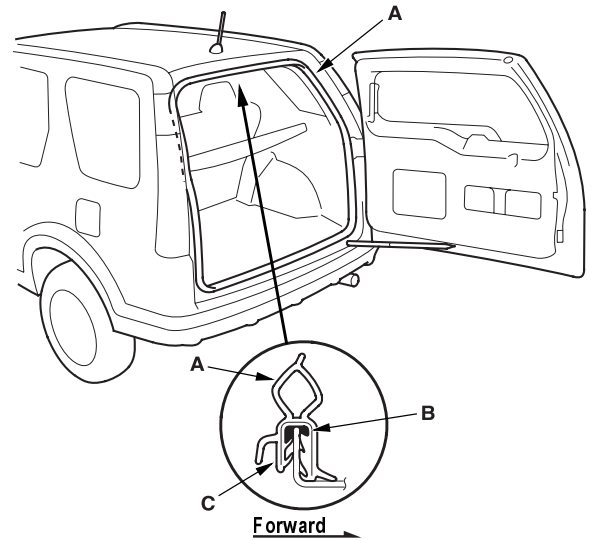
► : Bolt, 2



3. Install the support strut in the reverse order of removal.

## Tailgate Weatherstrip Replacement

1. Remove the tailgate weatherstrip (A) by pulling out on it.
2. Clean the bonding surface around the tailgate flange with alcohol.

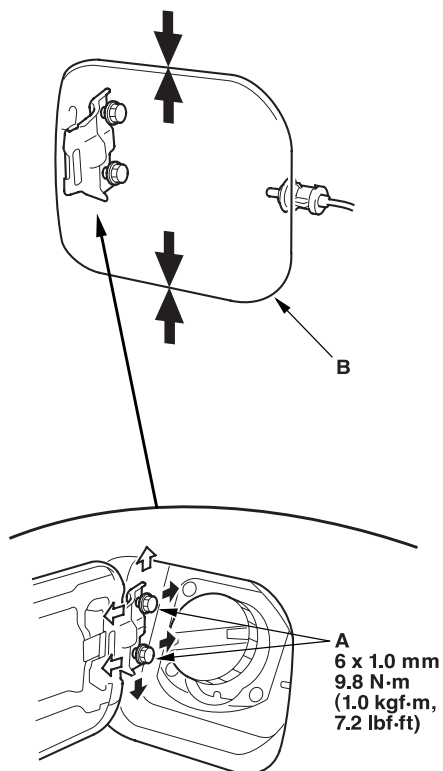


3. Apply sealant (Cemedine P/N 08712-0004, or equivalent) (B) in the groove around all of the tailgate weatherstrip.
4. Locate the painted alignment mark (C) on the tailgate weatherstrip. Align the painted mark with the alignment tab in the center of the tailgate opening, and install the weatherstrip. Make sure it's seated completely and facing in the direction shown. Make sure there are no wrinkles in the weatherstrip.
5. Check for water leaks.

## Fuel Fill Door

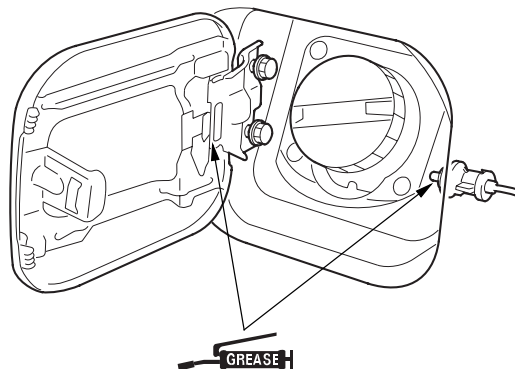
### Adjustment

1. Slightly loosen the hinge mounting bolts (A).



2. Adjust the fuel fill door (B) in or out until it's flush with the body, and up or down as necessary to equalize the gaps.
3. Tighten the hinge mounting bolts.
4. Check that the fuel fill door opens properly and locks securely, and check that the rear of the door is flush with the body.

5. Grease each location indicated by the arrows.



6. Apply body paint to the hinge mounting bolts and around the hinges.



## Exterior Trim

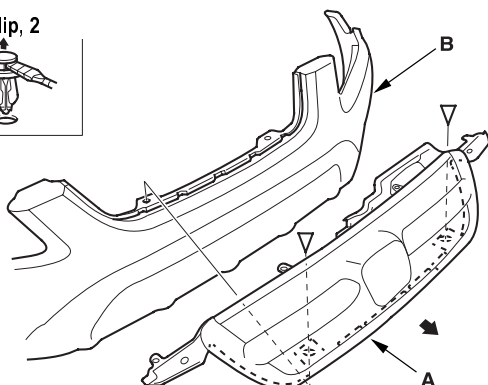
### Front Grille Replacement

NOTE: Put on gloves to protect your hands.

1. Remove the front bumper (see page 20-130).
2. Remove the clips, and remove the front grille (A) from the front bumper (B) by pulling it out. Take care not to scratch the front bumper.

#### Fastener Locations

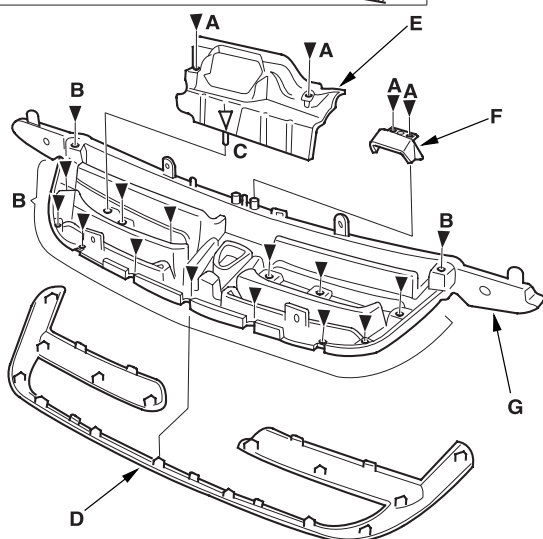
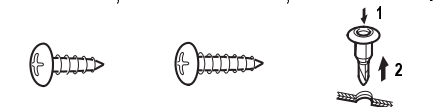
▷ : Clip, 2



3. If necessary, remove the screws (A, B) and clips (C), then remove the grille molding (D), mist cover plate (E), and front grille absorber (F) from the front grille (G).

#### Fastener Locations

A▷ : Screw, 4    B▷ : Screw, 15    C▷ : Clip, 1



4. Install the grille in the reverse order of removal, and replace any damaged clips.

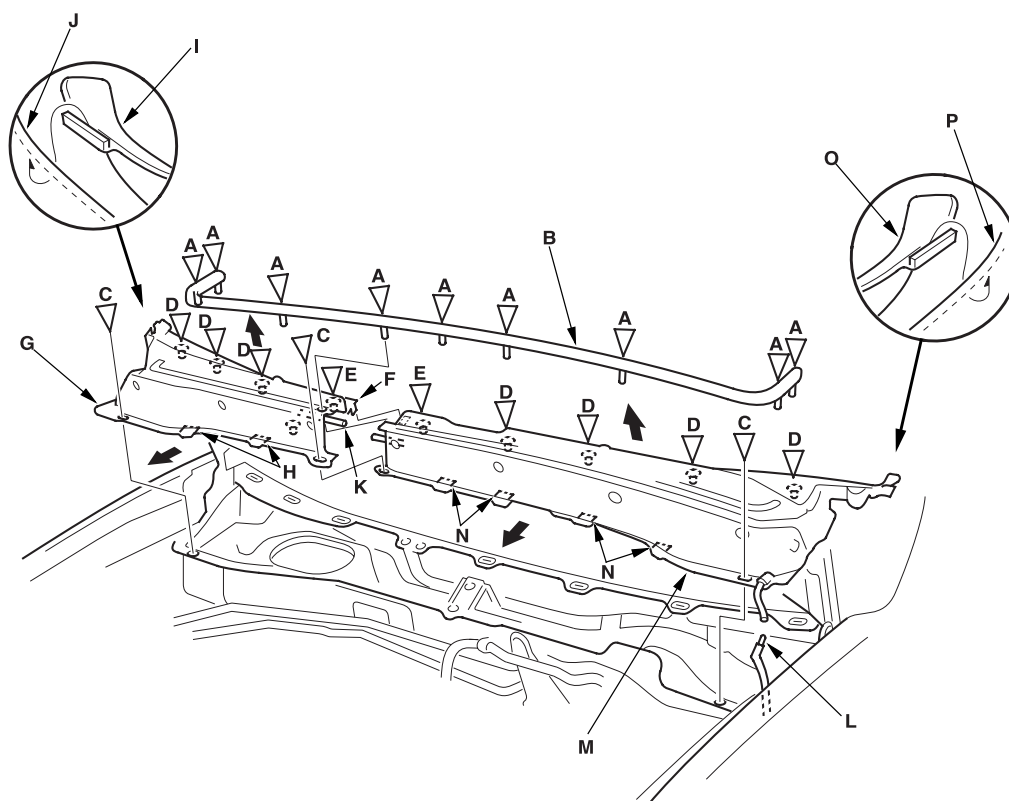
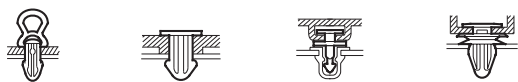
## Cowl Covers Replacement

NOTE: LHD is shown RHD is symmetrical except the windshield washer tubes.

1. Remove the windshield wiper arms ([see page 22A-223](#)).
2. Using a clip remover, detach the clips (A), then remove the hood rear seal (B), and detach the clips (C) from the cowl covers. Take care not to scratch the cowl covers.

### Fastener Locations

A ▷ : Clip, 9    C ▷ : Clip, 3    D ▷ : Clip, 7    E ▷ : Clip, 2



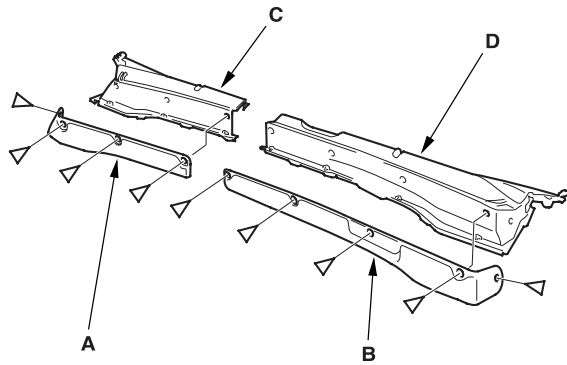
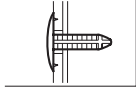
3. Detach the clips (D, E) and release the hook (F) by carefully pulling the passenger's cowl cover (G) upward. Pull the cover forward to release the hooks (H), pull the hinge cover (I) out from the front fender (J) and disconnect the windshield washer tube (K), then remove the cover. On RHD models, disconnect the windshield washer tube (L) routed from the washer reservoir to remove the passenger's cowl cover at this time. Take care not to scratch the body.
4. Detach the clips (D, E) by carefully pulling the driver's cowl cover (M) upward, and pull the cover forward to release the hooks (N). Pull the hinge cover (O) out from the front fender (P), and disconnect the windshield washer tube (L) routed from the washer reservoir then remove the cover. Take care not to scratch the body.



5. If necessary, release the clips, then remove the insulators (A, B) from both cowl covers (C, D).

### Fastener Locations

▷ : Clip, 9



6. Install the cover in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Replace any damaged clips.
  - Make sure the washer tubes are connected securely.

## Windshield Side Trim Replacement

### NOTE:

- When prying with a flat-tip screwdriver, wrap it with protective tape, and apply protective tape around the related parts to prevent damage.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

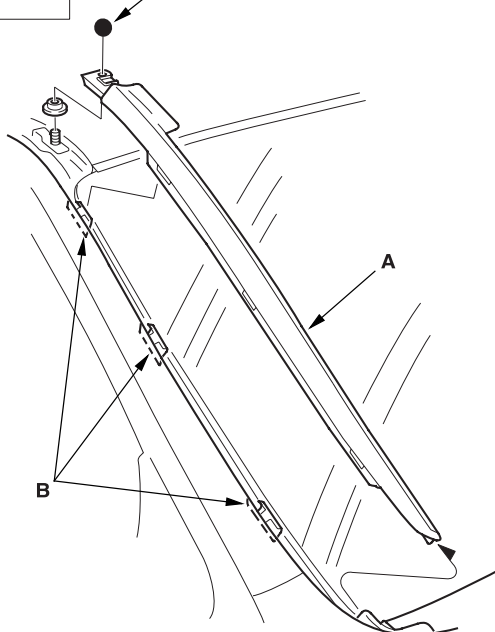
1. Remove the roof side front trim.
2. Remove the nut, and detach the windshield side trim (A) from the retainer (B) by pulling the trim up. Take care not to scratch the body.

### Fastener Location

● : Nut, 1



6 x 1.0 mm  
9.8 N·m  
(1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)



3. Install the windshield side trim in the reverse order of removal.

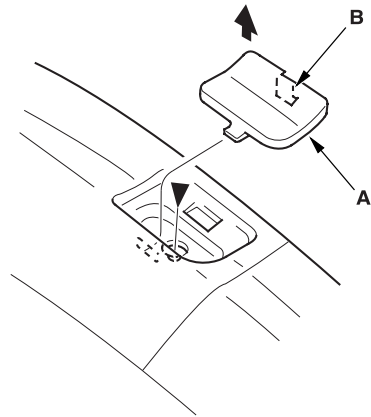
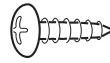
## Roof Side Front Trim Replacement

NOTE: Put on gloves to protect your hands.

1. Using a flat-tip screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, pry up on the front lid (A) of the roof side front trim to detach the hook (B), and remove the screw.

### Fastener Location

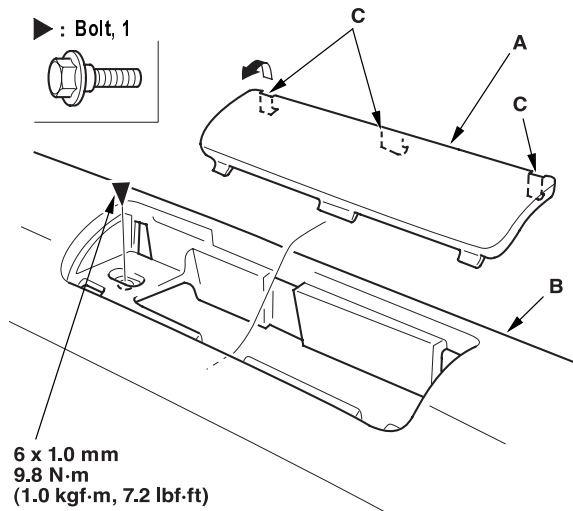
► : Screw, 1



2. Using a flat-tip screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, pry up on the middle lid (A) of the roof side front trim (B) to detach the hooks (C), and remove the bolts.

### Fastener Locations

► : Bolt, 1



6 x 1.0 mm  
9.8 N·m  
(1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)

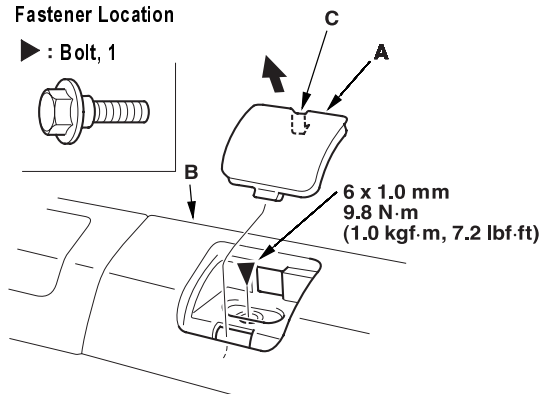




- Using a flat-tip screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, pry up on the rear lid (A) of the roof side front trim (B) to detach the hooks (C), and remove the bolts.

## Fastener Location

► : Bolt, 1

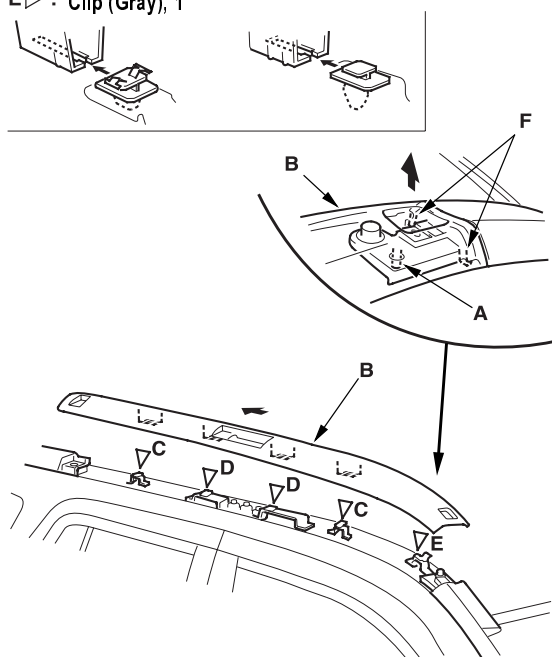


- Release the pin (A) by pulling the front portion of the roof side front trim (B) up, and hold it.

## Fastener Locations

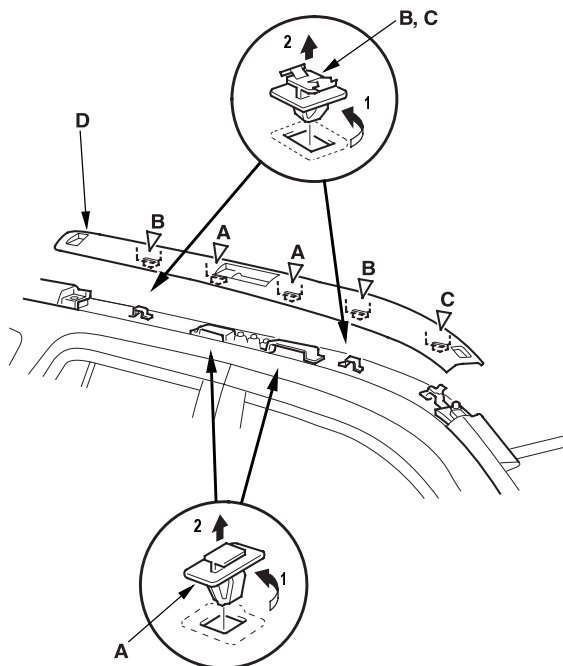
C ► : Clip (Yellow), 2  
E ► : Clip (Gray), 1

D ► : Clip, 2



- Release the trim from the clips (C, D, E), and release the hooks (F) by sliding the trim rearward, and remove the trim. Take care not to scratch the other trim and body.

- Replace any damaged clips (A, B, C).



- Remove the clips (A, B, C) from the body, and install them on the roof side front trim (D).
- Fit the clips (A, B, C) into the holes in the body, then push on the trim until the clips snap into place.
- Install the bolts, and install the lids.

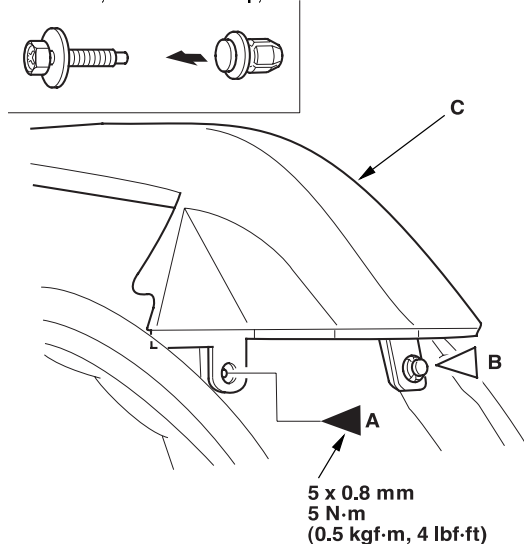
## Roof Side Rear Trim Replacement

NOTE: Put on gloves to protect your hands.

1. Remove the taillight ([see page 22A-98](#)).
2. Remove the bolt (A) and clip (B) from the rear portion of the roof side rear trim (C).

## Fastener Locations

A ► : Bolt, 1    B ► : Clip, 1

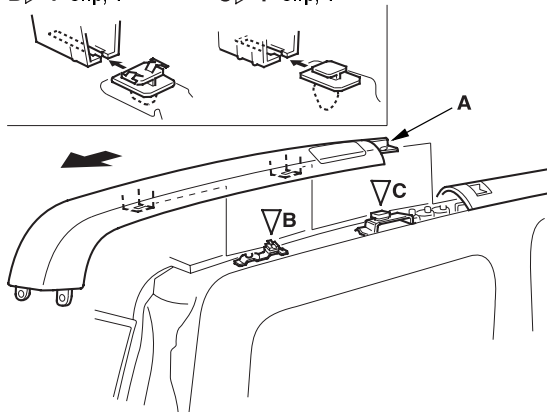


3. Using a flat-tip screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, pry up on the rear lid of the roof side front trim to detach the hook, and remove the screw ([see page 20-142](#)).
4. Remove the roof side rear trim (A) from the clips (B, C) by sliding the trim rear ward, then remove the trim. Take care not to scratch the body.

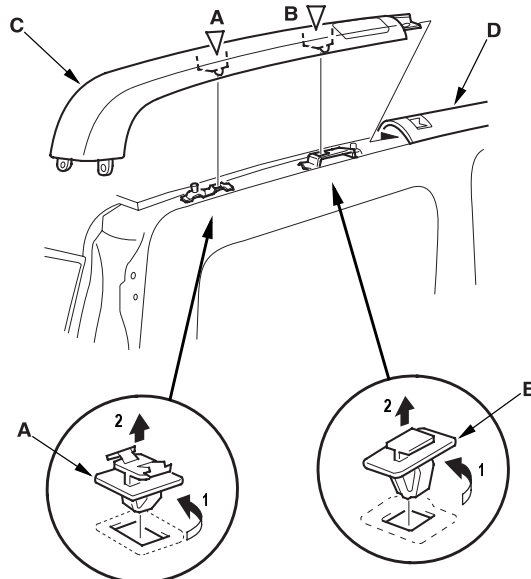
## Fastener Locations

B ► : Clip, 1

C ► : Clip, 1



5. Replace any damaged clips (A, B).



6. Remove the clips (A, B) from the body, and install them on the roof side rear trim (C).
7. Insert the roof side rear trim in the roof side front trim (D), and fit the clips (A, B) into the holes in the body, then push on the trim until the clips snap into place.
8. Install the bolt clip, and install the lid.
9. Reinstall the taillight.



## Front Wheel Arch Protector Replacement

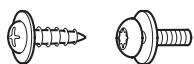
### NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the body.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

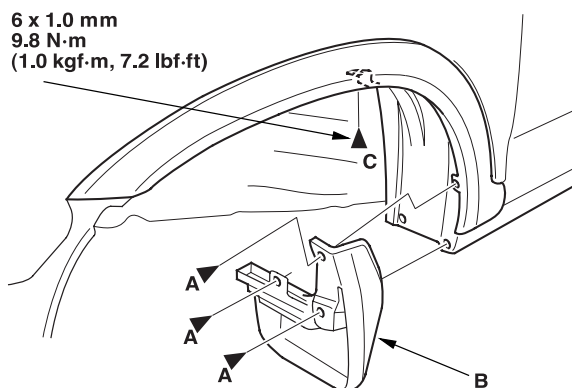
1. Remove the screw, then detach the wheel arch portion of the front bumper outward (see page 20-130).
2. On the back of the wheel arch, remove the screws (A), then remove the front splash guard (B). With a Torx T30 bit, remove the bolt (C).

### Fastener Locations

A ▶ : Screw, 3    ▶ : Bolt, 1



6 x 1.0 mm  
9.8 N·m  
(1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)

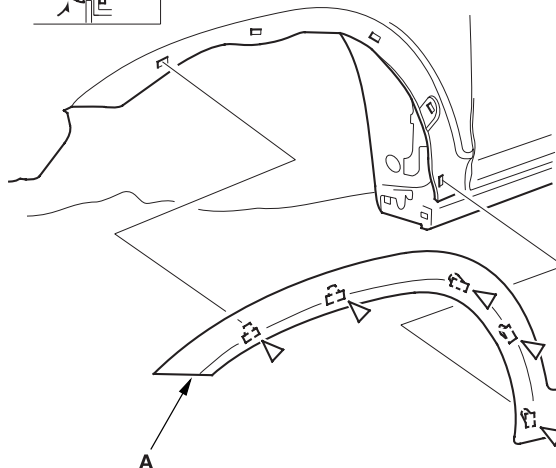
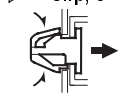


3. Remove the front inner fender (see page 20-155).

4. Remove the front wheel arch protector (A) while pinching the clips from inside the front fender.

### Fastener Locations

▶ : Clip, 5



5. Install the protector in the reverse order of removal, and replace any damaged clips.

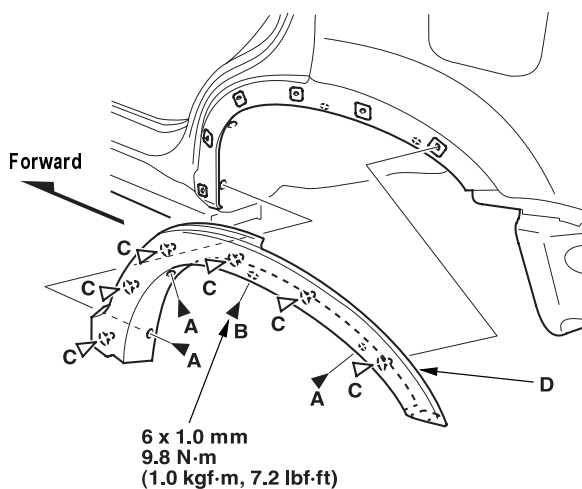
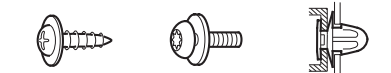
## Rear Wheel Arch Protector Replacement

NOTE: Take care not to scratch the body.

1. Remove the screw, and detach the wheel arch portion of the rear bumper outward (see page 20-131), then open the rear door.
2. From the wheel arch, remove the screws (A). With a Torx T30 bit, remove the bolt (B).

### Fastener Locations

A ► : Screw, 3    B ► : Bolt, 1    E ► : Clip, 6



3. Remove the rear wheel arch protector (D) while pinching the clips (E) from inside the rear fender.
4. Install the protector in the reverse order of removal, and replace any damaged clips.



## Door Moldings Replacement

### NOTE:

- Wrap the blade of your putty knife or flat-tip screwdriver with protective tape to prevent damage to the door.
- Be careful not to pry too far or you may bend the molding.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

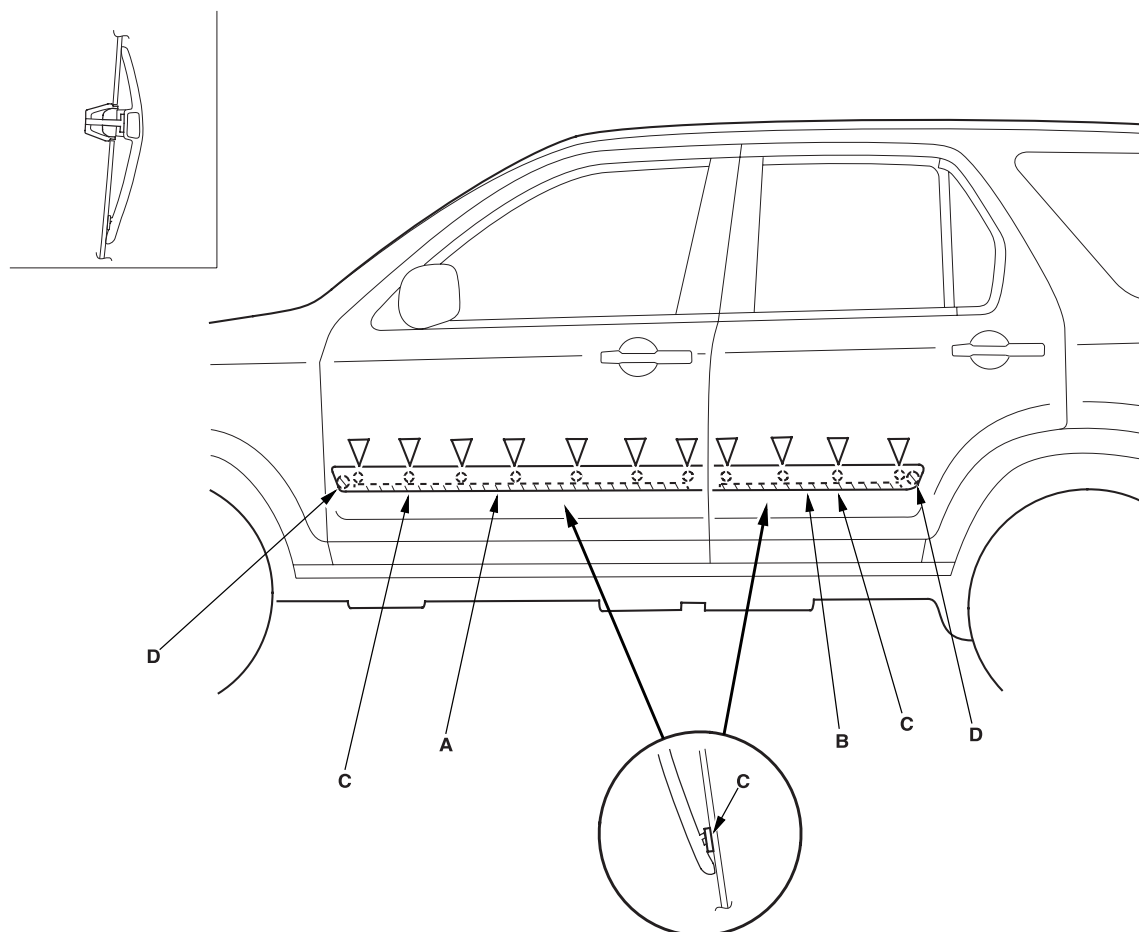
1. Prepare to release the molding clips from inside the vehicle:
  - To remove the front door molding, remove the front door panel ([see page 20-9](#)) and plastic cover.
  - To remove the rear door molding, remove the rear door panel ([see page 20-21](#)) and plastic cover.
2. Release the clips and gently pry the front door molding (A) or rear door molding (B) away from the door while removing the adhesive tape (C, D).

**Adhesive tape C:** 3M5311 or equivalent  
Thickness 1.2 mm (0.047 in.), Width 5 mm (0.2 in.)

**Adhesive tape D:** 3M5311 or equivalent  
Thickness 1.2 mm (0.047 in.), Width 8 mm (0.3 in.)

### Fastener Locations

▷ : Clip, 11



3. Install the moldings in the reverse order of removal, and replace any damaged clips and adhesive tape.

## Door Lower Trim Replacement

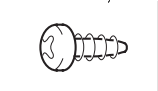
### NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the door.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

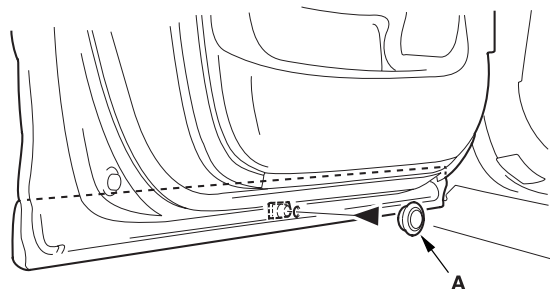
1. Open the front or rear door fully, remove the maintenance cap (A) from the door, then remove the screw.

### Fastener Location

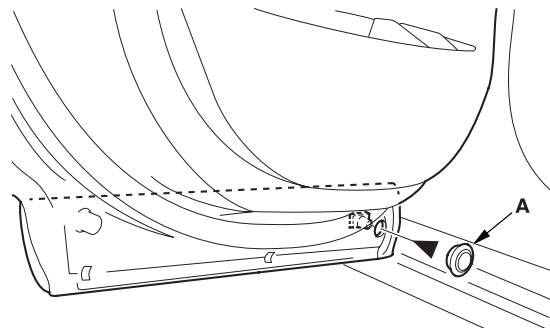
► : Screw, 1



### Front Door:



### Rear Door:

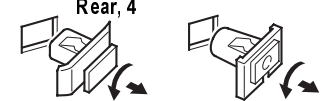


2. For rear door lower trim removal, close the rear door half-way.

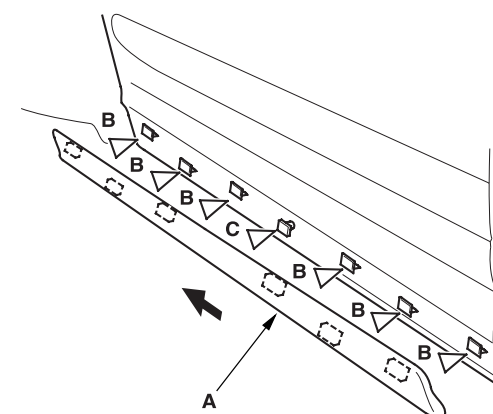
3. Slide the door lower trim (A) forward and remove it. Clips (B, C) will stay in the body.

### Fastener Locations

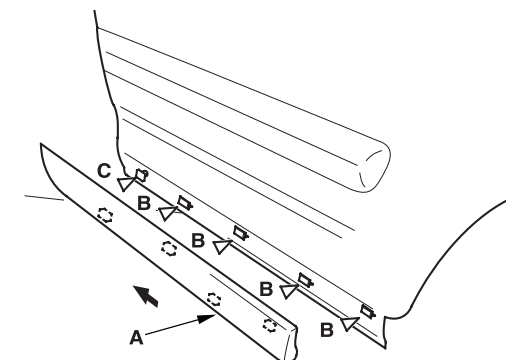
B ► : Clip, Front, 6 Rear, 4  
C ► : Clip, 1



### Front Door:



### Rear Door:



4. Remove the clips (B, C) from the body.
5. Replace any damaged clips.
6. Reinstall the clips (B, C) on the door lower trim, then secure the middle clip (front door) (C) or the front clip (rear door) (C) with the screw you removed in step 1. Make sure the clips are not upside down.
7. Hold the trim up, and fit all the clips into the holes in the door, then push on the trim until the clips snap into place.
8. Install the maintenance cap on the door.

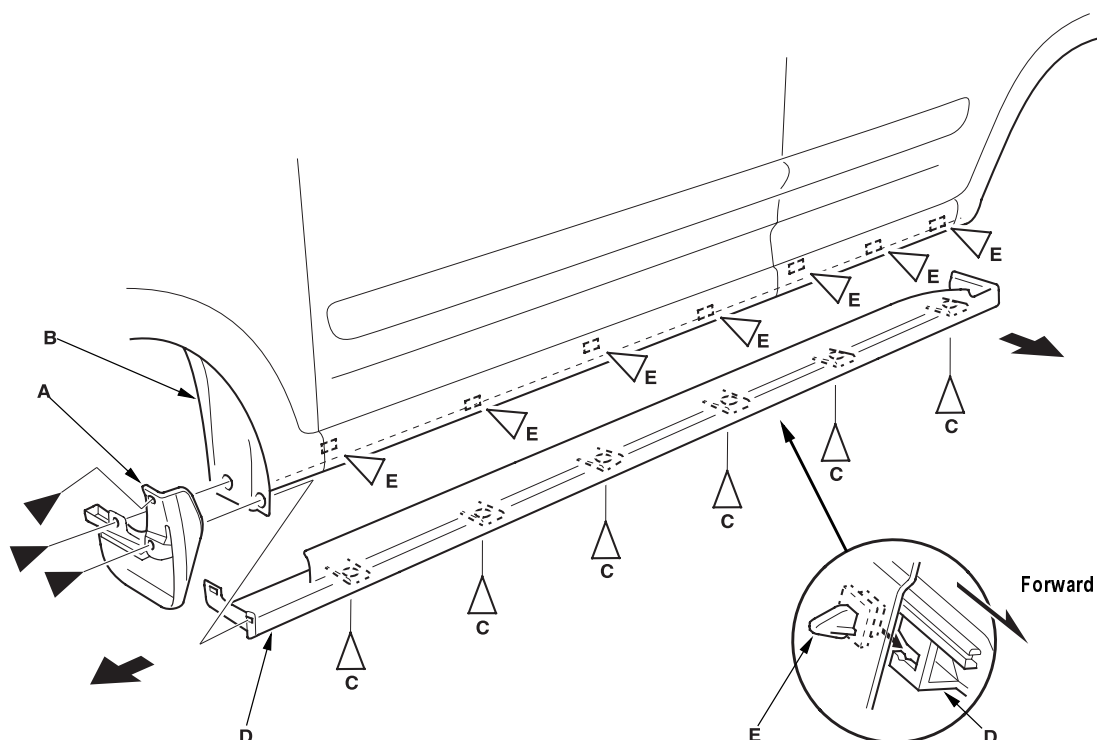


## Side Sill Panel Replacement

1. Remove the side sill panel.
  - 1 Remove the splash guard (A).
  - 2 Pull the inner fender (B) back as necessary, and remove the expansion clip (C).
  - 3 Slide the side sill panel (D) forward, and remove it. The side clips (E) will stay in the body.
  - 4 Remove the side clips from the body.

### Fastener Locations

► : Screw, 3    C ► : Clip, 6    E ► : Clip, 7



2. Replace any damaged clips.
3. Install the side clips on the side sill panel.
4. Hold the panel up, and fit all the side clips into the holes in the body, then push on the panel until the clips snap into place.
5. Install all the expansion clips.
6. Reinstall the inner fender and splash guard.

## Tailgate Lower Trim Replacement

### NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the tailgate.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

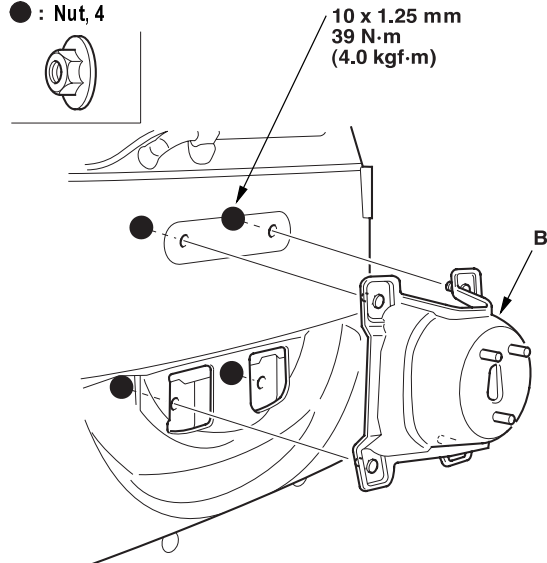
### 1. Remove these items:

- License plate (for some models)
- Tailgate lower trim panel ([see page 20-80](#))

### 2. Remove the spare tyre holder (A).

#### Fastener Locations

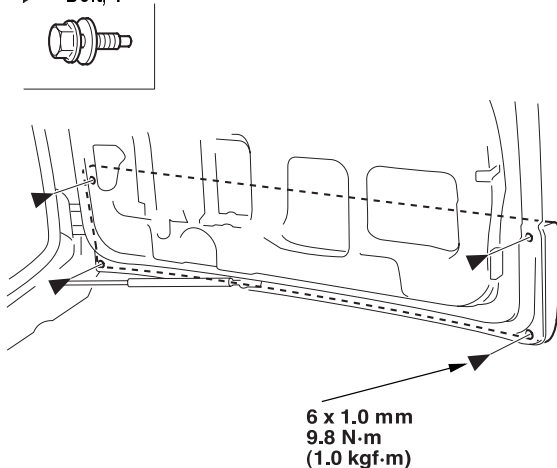
● : Nut, 4



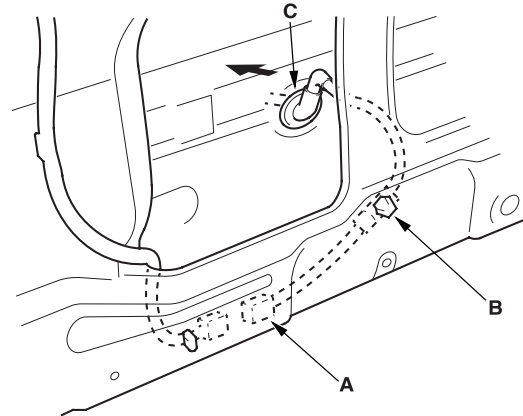
### 3. Open the tailgate, then remove the bolt securing the tailgate lower trim.

#### Fastener Locations

▶ : Bolt, 4



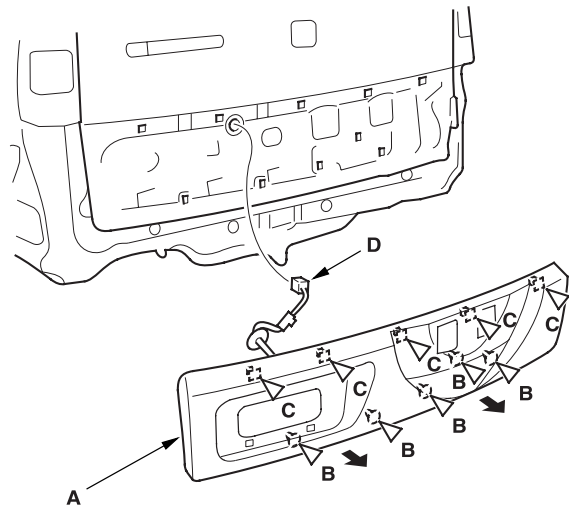
### 4. For some models: Disconnect the license light connector (A), detach the harness clip (B), then pull out the grommet (C).



### 5. Pull out along the bottom of the tailgate lower trim (A) to detach the lower clips (B). While pinching the upper clips (C) from inside the tailgate, remove the tailgate lower trim. If equipped, pull the license light harness (D) out from inside the tailgate.

#### Fastener Locations

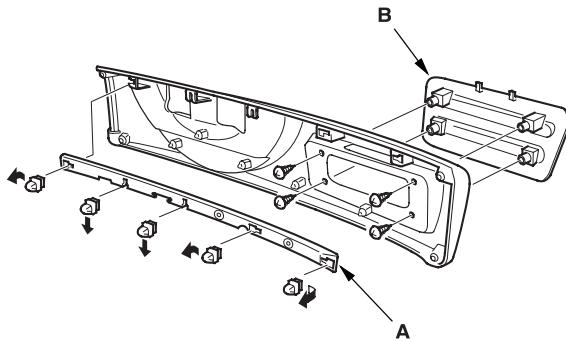
B▶ : Clip, 5 C▶ : Clip, 5







6. If necessary, remove the clips as shown, and remove the stiffener (A). And if applicable, remove the screws to remove the license cover (B).



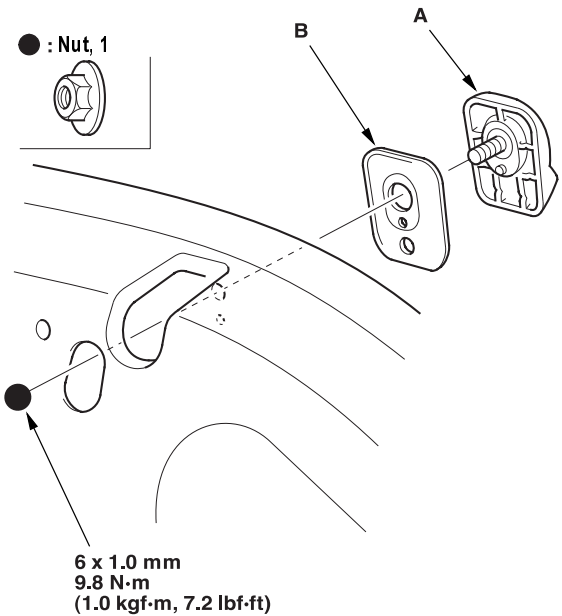
7. Install the trim in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Replace all the spare tyre holder mounting nuts as new ones.
  - Replace any damaged clips.

## Rear Window Wiper Lifter Replacement

1. Remove the tailgate lower trim panel (see page 20-80).
2. Remove the nut from inside the tailgate, then remove the rear window wiper lifter (A) and the seal (B).

### Fastener Location

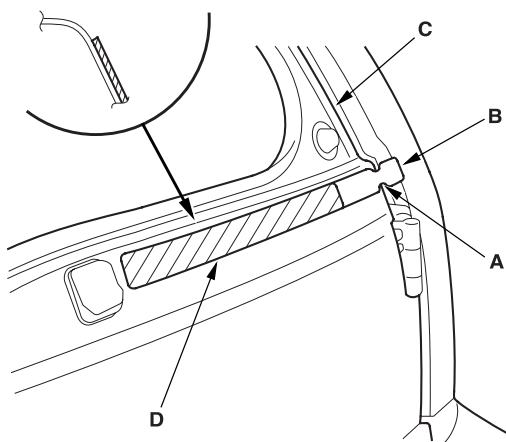
● : Nut, 1



3. Install the lifter in the reverse order of removal.

### Rear Window Wiper Protection Tape Replacement

1. Slowly peel up the old rear window wiper protection tape.
2. Clean the tailgate bonding surface with a sponge dampened in alcohol. After cleaning, keep oil, grease, and water from getting on the surface.
3. Peel the adhesive backing from the rear window wiper protection tape.
4. Align the notch (A) of the application tape (B) with the edge of the tailgate (C) and align the top edge of the application tape with the edge of the tailgate, then press the rear window wiper protection tape (D) into place.



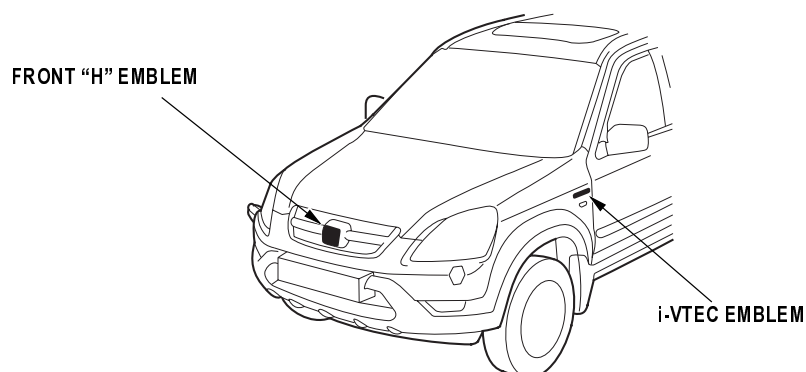
5. Remove the application tape.



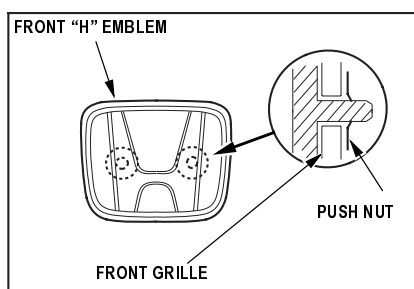
## Emblem/Sticker Replacement

NOTE: When removing the emblem/sticker, take care not to scratch the body.

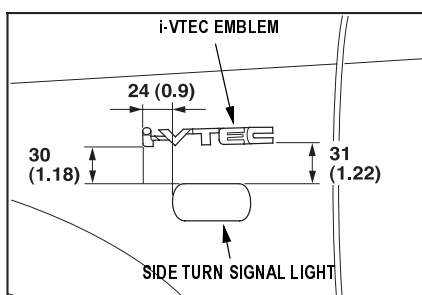
1. To remove the front "H" emblem, remove the front grille ([see page 20-139](#)).
2. Clean the body surface with a sponge dampened in alcohol. After cleaning, keep oil, grease, and water from getting on the surface.
3. Apply the emblem/sticker, where shown. When installing the REALTIME 4WD sticker on the hatch glass, align the application tape with the alignment marks, then press the sticker into place, and remove the application tape.



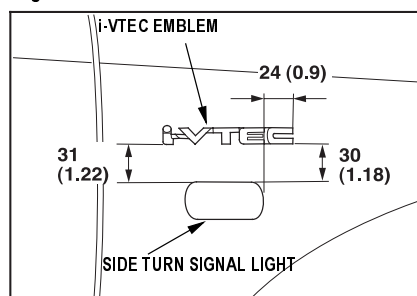
Unit: mm (in.)



Left side:

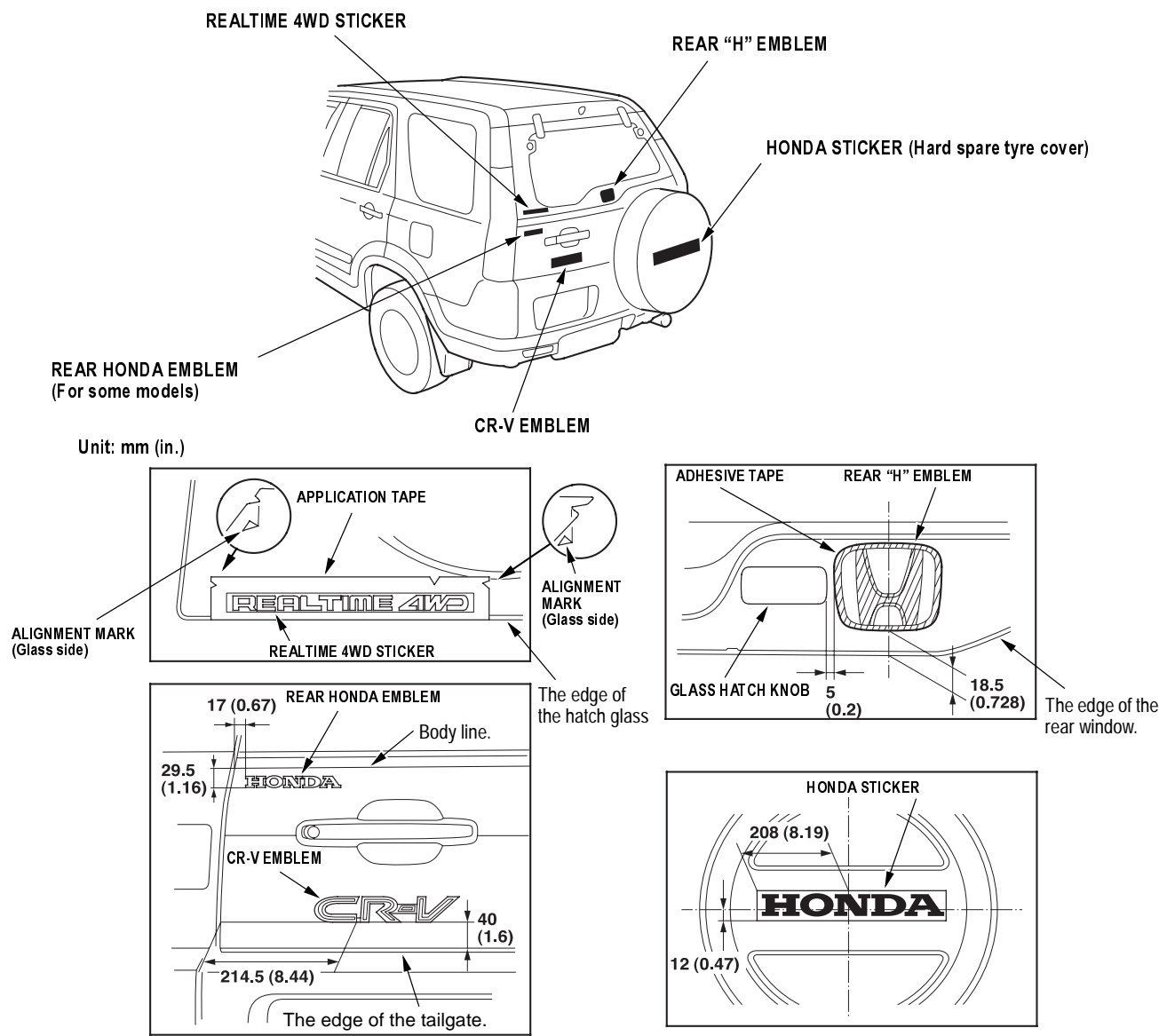


Right side:



(cont'd)

Emblem/Sticker Replacement (cont'd)



4. After installing the front "H" emblem, reinstall the front grille to the front bumper, and reinstall the front bumper.



## Fenderwell

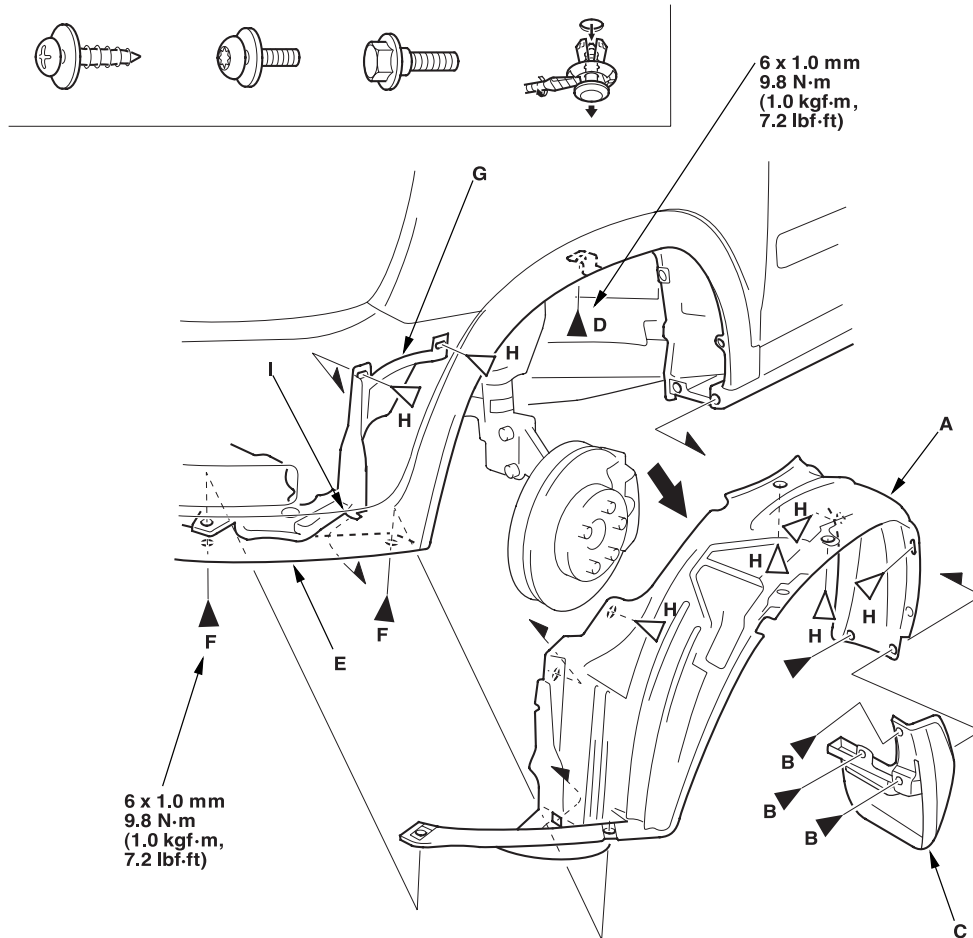
### Front Inner Fender Replacement

NOTE: Take care not to scratch the body.

1. Remove the front inner fender (A).
  - 1 On the back of the wheel arch, remove the screws (B), then remove the front splash guard (C).
  - 2 With a Torx T30 bit, remove the bolt (D) securing the front wheel arch protector.
  - 3 From under the front bumper (E), remove the bolt (F) securing the front bumper, splash shield (G), and front inner fender.
  - 4 From the wheel arch, remove the clips (H) securing the front inner fender (and splash shield) on the body.
  - 5 Release the hook (I) of the splash shield, then remove the front inner fender.

#### Fastener Locations

B ► : Screw, 3    D ► : Bolt, 1    F ► : Bolt, 2    H ► : Clip, 7



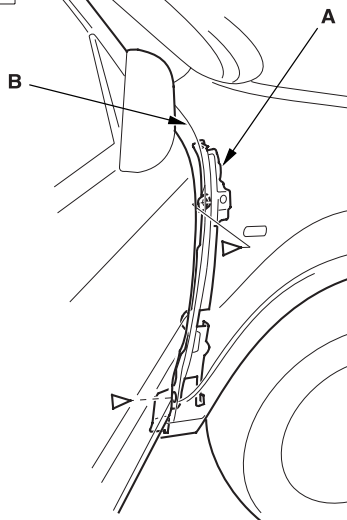
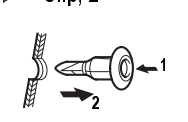
2. Install the inner fender in the reverse order of removal, and replace any damaged clips.

## Front Fender Fairing Replacement

1. Remove the front inner fender as necessary (see page 20-155).
2. For the left front fender fairing removal, remove the washer reservoir (see page 22A-224).
3. Open the front door. From outside the door, remove the upper clip, and from inside the door, remove the lower clip securing the front fender fairing (A) and front fender (B).

### Fastener Locations

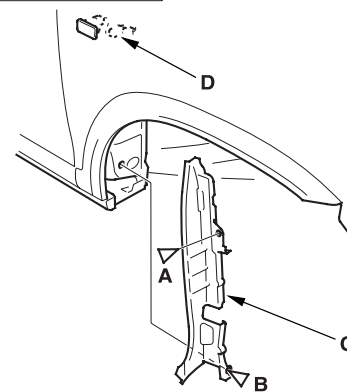
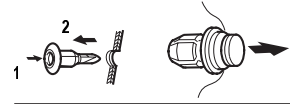
▷ : Clip, 2



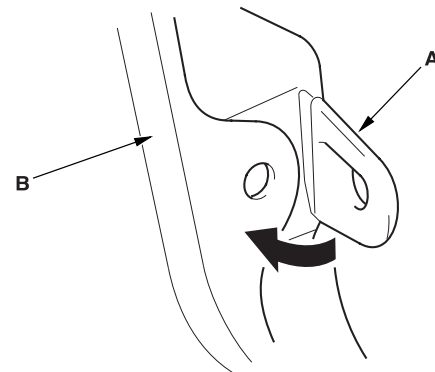
4. From the wheel arch, remove the clip (A), and release the clip (B), then remove the front fender fairing (C). If the fairing is caught by the side turn signal light harness, disconnect the connector (D).

### Fastener Locations

A▷ : Clip, 1    B▷ : Clip, 1



5. Install the fender fairing in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Replace any damaged clips.
  - Before installing the clips of the door upper and lower portions, install the front fender fairing (A) to the front fender (B) properly as shown.



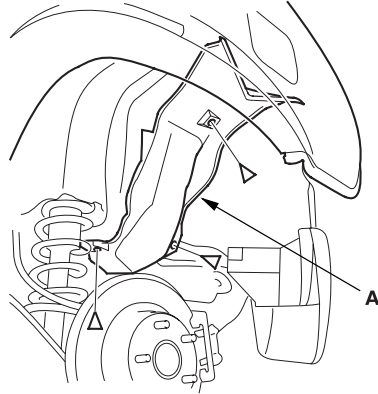
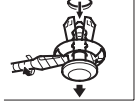


### Fuel Pipe Protector Replacement

1. Remove the clips, then remove the fuel pipe protector (A). Take care not to scratch the body.

Fastener Locations

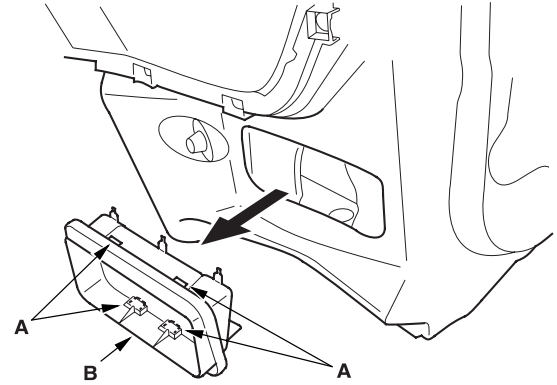
▷ : Clip, 3



2. Install the protector in the reverse order of removal, and replace any damaged clips.

### Rear Air Outlet Replacement

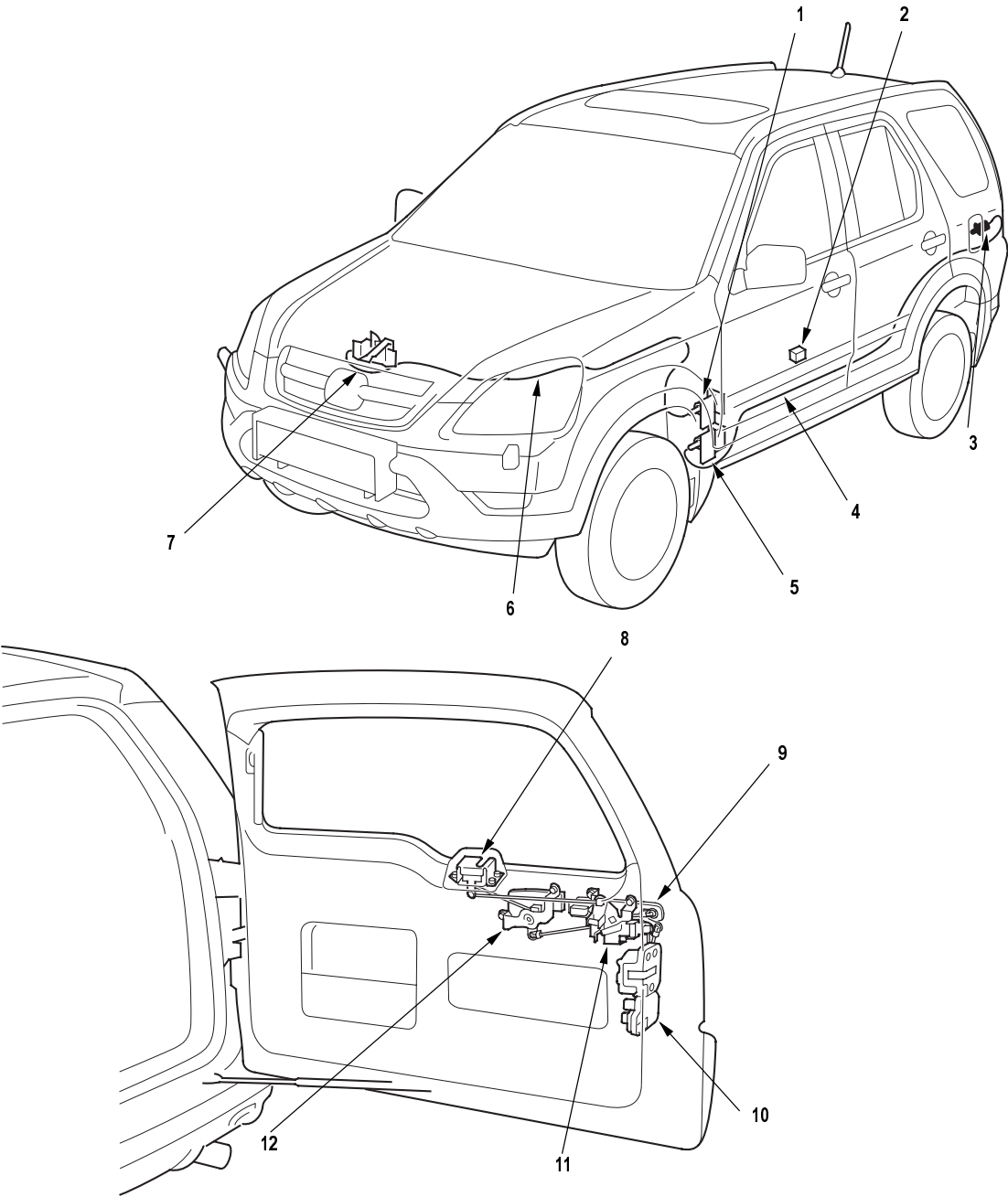
1. Remove the rear bumper ([see page 20-131](#)).
2. Detach the hooks (A), then remove the rear air outlet (B). Take care not to scratch the body.



3. Install the air outlet by pushing on the hook portions until the hooks snap into place.

Openers

Component Location Index



1	HOOD RELEASE HANDLE	<a href="#">page 20-159</a>	7	HOOD LATCH	Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-162</a>
2	HATCH GLASS OPENER SWITCH	Test, (see <a href="#">page 22A-181</a> )	8	HATCH GLASS LATCH	Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-166</a>
3	FUEL FILL DOOR LATCH	<a href="#">page 20-160</a>	9	TAILGATE HANDLE	Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-163</a>
4	FUEL FILL DOOR OPENER CABLE	Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-160</a>	10	TAILGATE LATCH	Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-164</a>
5	FUEL FILL DOOR OPENER	<a href="#">page 20-160</a>	11	TAILGATE STOPPER ASSEMBLY	Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-165</a>
6	HOOD OPENER CABLE	Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-159</a>	12	HATCH GLASS ACTUATOR	Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-167</a>





## Hood Opener Cable Replacement

### NOTE:

- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- Take care not to scratch the body and related parts.

### 1. Remove these items:

- Front inner fender (see page 20-155)
- Kick panel (see page 20-76)

### 2. Disconnect the hood opener cable (A) from the hood latch (B) (see page 20-162), and remove the bolts (C), then remove the hood release handle (D).

#### Fastener Locations

C ► : Bolt, 2

E ► : Clip

LHD without side turn signal light, 3  
LHD with side turn signal light/RHD, 2

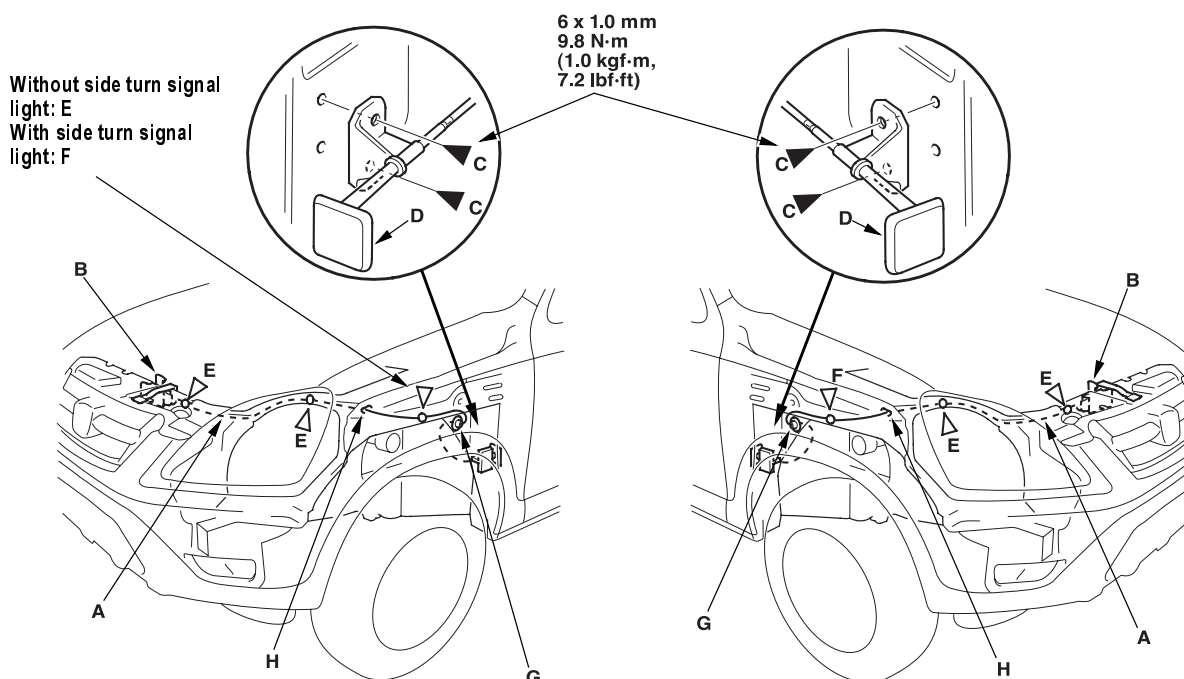
F ► : Clip

LHD without side turn signal light/RHD, 3



LHD:

RHD:



### 3. Using a clip remover, detach the clips (E), and remove the cable from the clip (F). Remove the grommet (G) from the body, then remove the hood opener cable from the vehicle. Take care not to bend the cable.

### 4. Install the cable in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- Replace any damaged clips.
- Route the cable through the hole (H) in the body.
- Make sure the hood opens properly and locks securely.

## Fuel Fill Door Opener Cable Replacement

SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations ([see page 23-14](#)), and the precautions and procedures ([see page 23-16](#)) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

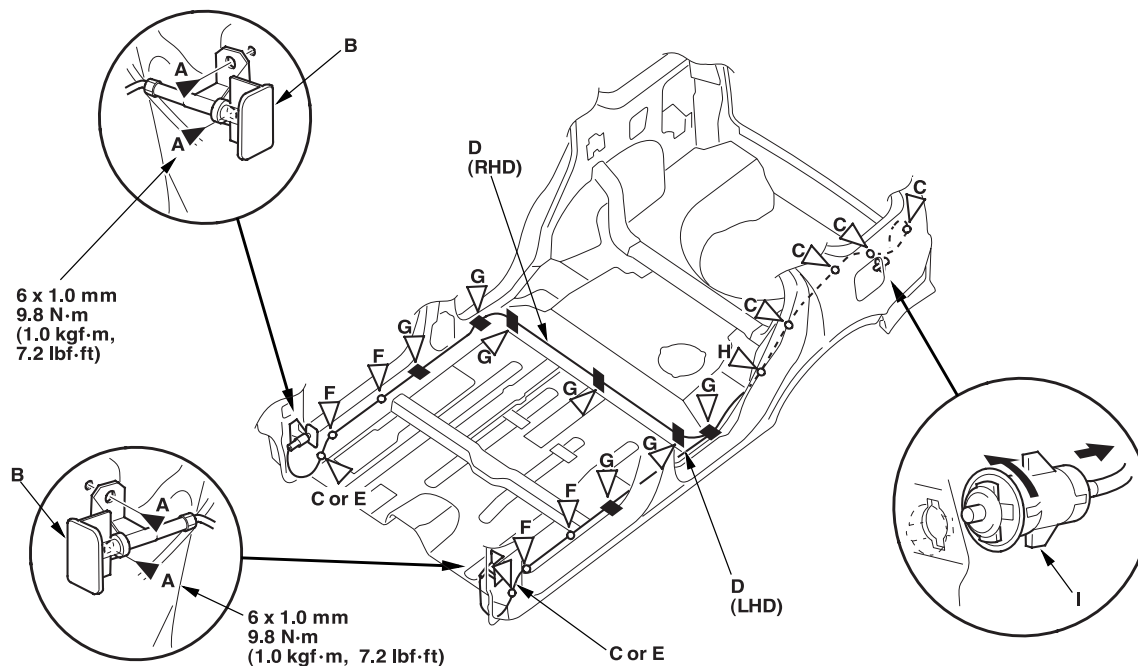
### NOTE:

- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
- Take care not to scratch the body and related parts.

1. Remove these items:
  - Front door sill trim ([see page 20-76](#))
  - Kick panel ([see page 20-76](#))
  - Rear door sill trim ([see page 20-76](#))
  - Center pillar lower trim ([see page 20-76](#))
  - Rear seat ([see page 20-114](#))
  - Rear side trim panel, left side ([see page 20-77](#))
2. Pull the carpet back as necessary ([see page 20-85](#)).
3. Remove the bolts (A), then remove the opener (B). Detach the clip (C) (for some models) by using a clip remover, and remove the fuel fill door opener cable (D) from the clips (E, F).

### Fastener Locations

A ▶ : Bolt, 2    C ▶ : Clip, 5 or 4    E ▶ : Clip, 1    F ▶ : Clip, 2    G ▶ : Cushion tape 2 or 6    H ▶ : Clip, 1

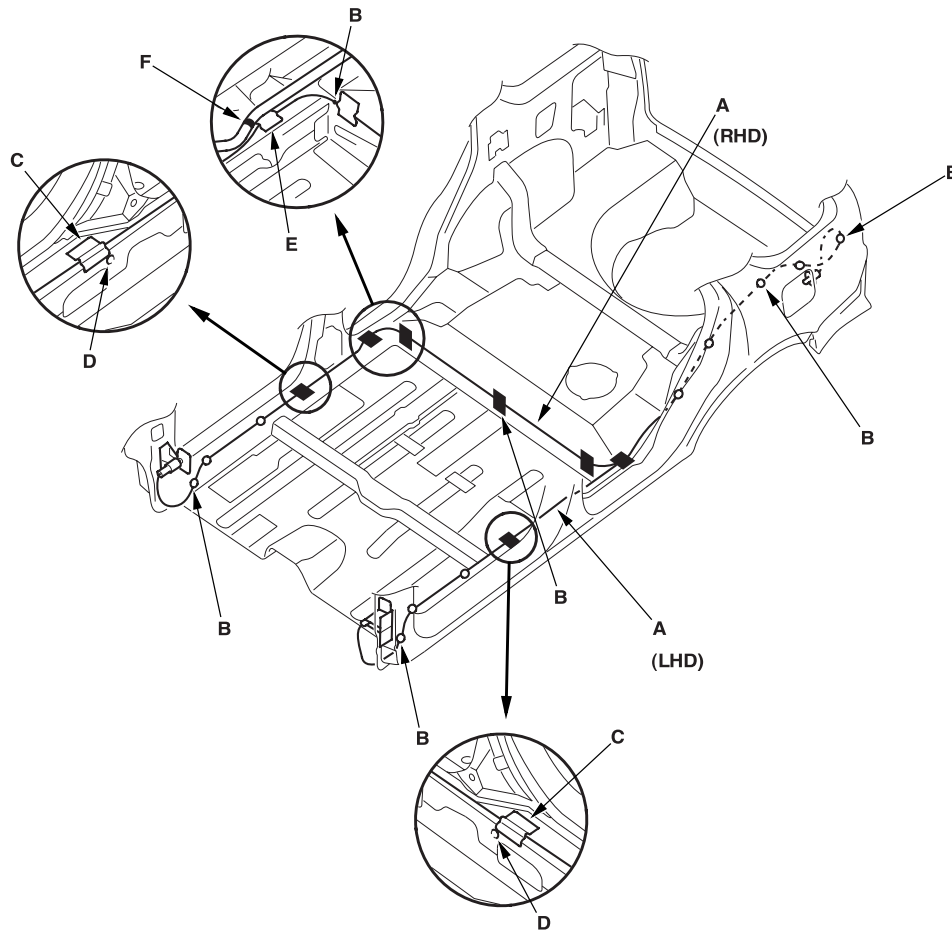


4. Remove the cushion tape (G). Remove the cable from the clip (H), and detach the clips (C) by using a clip remover.
5. Remove the fuel fill door latch (I) from the body by turning it 90°, then remove the fuel fill door opener cable from the vehicle. Take care not to bend the cable.



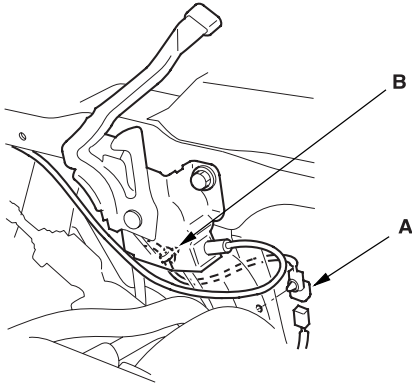
**6. Install the opener cable (A) in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:**

- Replace any damaged clips, and replace the cushion tape.
- Align the mark (B) on the cable with the clips and cushion tape. At the bottom of the center pillar, align the front cushion tape (C) with the hole (D) in the body, and or RHD, align rear cushion tape (E) with a harness clip (F).



## Hood Latch Replacement

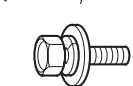
1. If equipped, detach the hood latch switch connector (A) and the harness clip (B) from the body, and disconnect the connector.



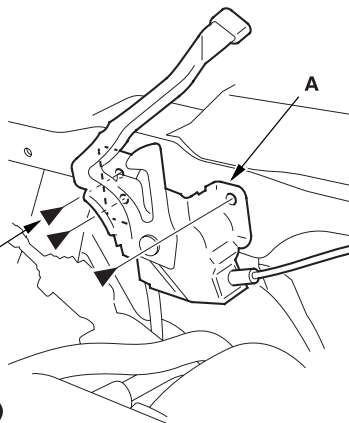
2. Remove the bolts, then remove the hood latch (A) from the body.

### Fastener Locations

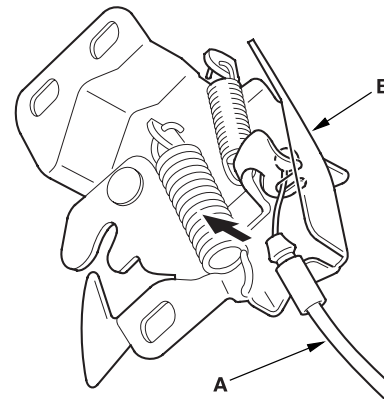
► : Bolt, 3



6 x 1.0 mm  
9.8 N·m  
(1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)

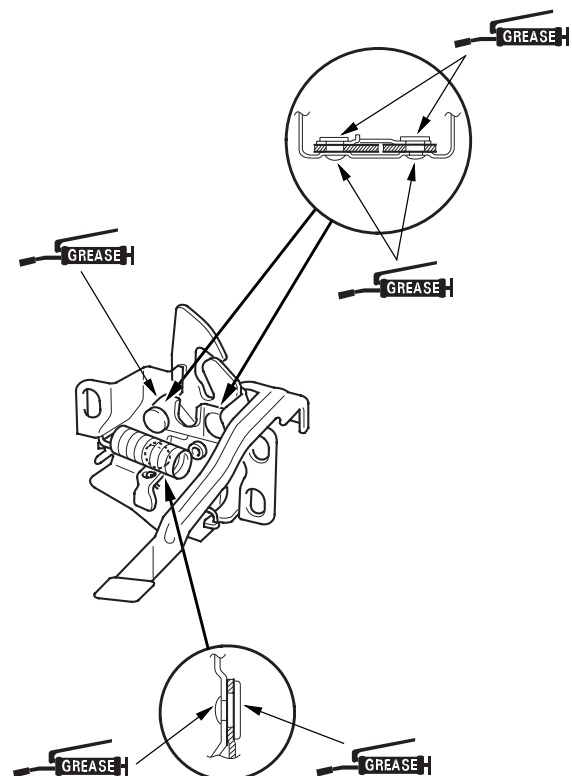


3. Disconnect the hood opener cable (A) from the hood latch (B). Take care not to bend the cable.



4. Install the hood latch in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- Grease each location of the hood latch indicated by the arrows.
- Make sure the hood opener cable is connected properly and hood latch switch connector is plugged in properly (for some models).
- Adjust the hood latch alignment ([see page 20-132](#)).
- Make sure the hood opens properly and locks securely.



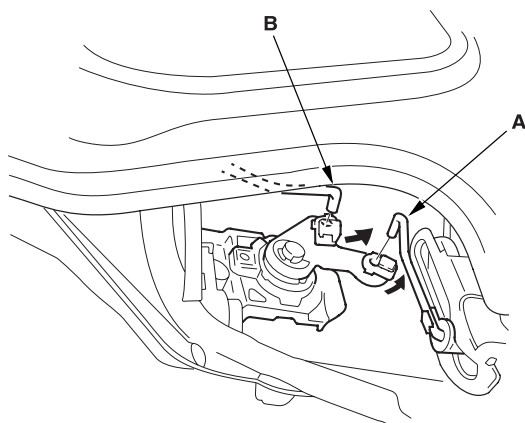


## Tailgate Handle Replacement

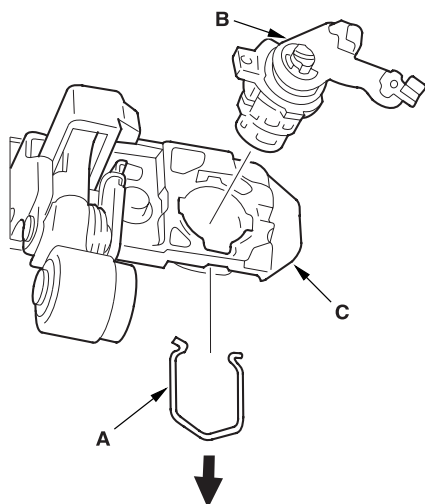
### NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the tailgate.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

1. Remove the tailgate stopper assembly (see page 20-165).
2. Disconnect the cylinder rod (A) and the hatch glass open rod (B) from the tailgate lock cylinder (C).



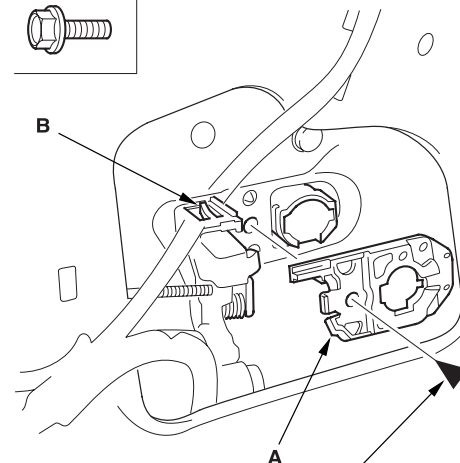
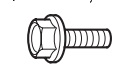
3. Release the retainer clip (A) with a hooked shaped tool, then remove the lock cylinder (B) from the tailgate handle (C).



4. Remove the bolt securing the cylinder protector (A) and tailgate handle. Release the hook (B), then remove the protector.

### Fastener Location

► : Bolt, 1

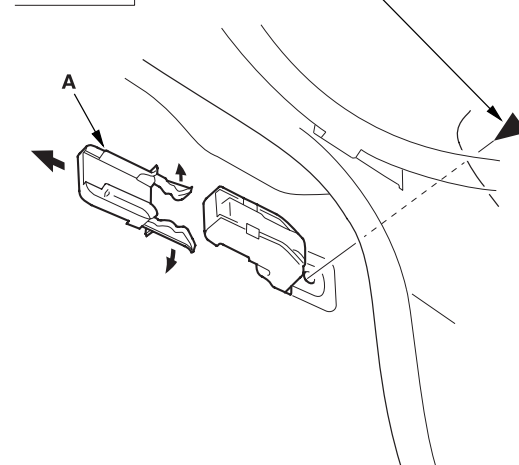
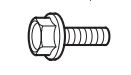


6 x 1.0 mm  
9.8 N·m  
(1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)

5. Remove the bolt securing the tailgate handle, and remove the spacer (A).

### Fastener Location

► : Bolt, 1

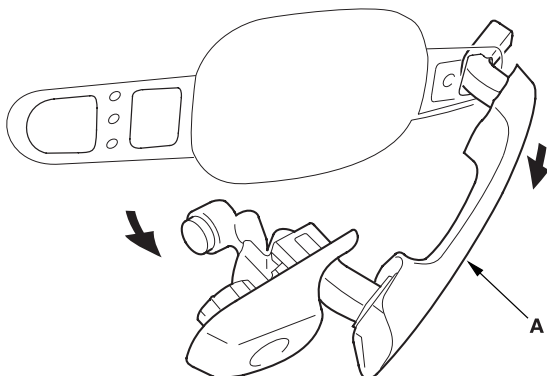


6 x 1.0 mm  
9.8 N·m  
(1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)

(cont'd)

### Tailgate Handle Replacement (cont'd)

6. Remove the outer handle (A) while pulling it as shown.



7. Install the tailgate handle in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
- Make sure each rod is connected securely.
  - Make sure the tailgate locks and opens properly.
  - Install the lock cylinder retaining clip on the handle, then install the lock cylinder. Be sure the clip is fully seated in the slot on the lock cylinder.

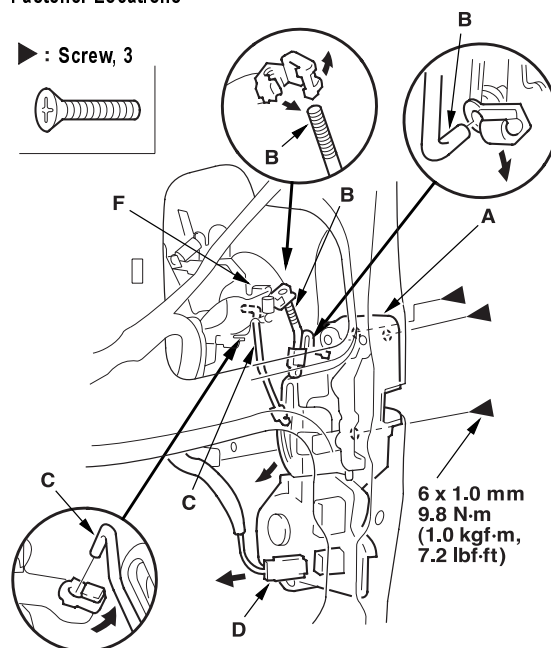
### Tailgate Latch Replacement

#### NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the tailgate.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

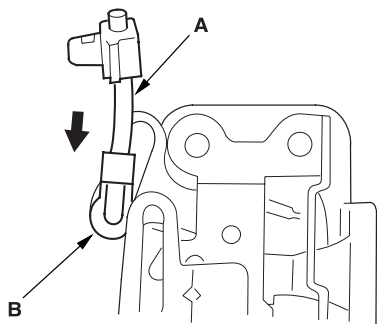
1. Remove the tailgate lower trim panel ([see page 20-80](#))
2. Remove the tailgate latch (A).
  - 1 Disconnect the tailgate rod (B) and cylinder rod (C).
  - 2 Disconnect the actuator connector (D).
  - 3 Remove the screws securing the latch.
  - 4 Remove the latch through the hole in the tailgate. Take care not to bend the tailgate rod and cylinder rod.

#### Fastener Locations





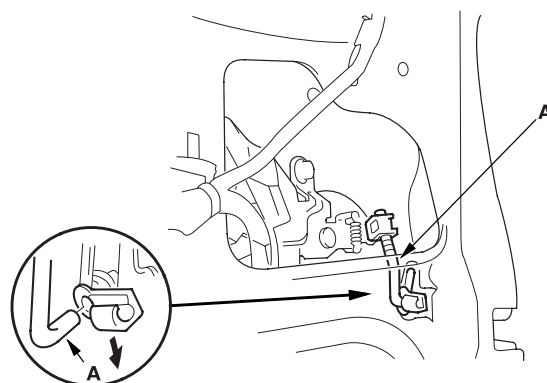
3. Install the latch in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Make sure the actuator connector is plugged in properly, and each rod is connected securely.
  - If the tailgate rod (A) was disconnected at the upper end (the tailgate stopper assembly side), reconnect it with its lower end on the bottom of a hole in the lever (B).
  - Make sure the tailgate locks and opens properly.



## Tailgate Stopper Assembly Replacement

### NOTE:

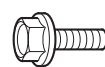
- Take care not to scratch the tailgate.
  - Put on gloves to protect your hands.
1. Remove the tailgate lower trim panel ([see page 20-80](#))
  2. Disconnect the tailgate rod (A) at the lower end from the tailgate latch.



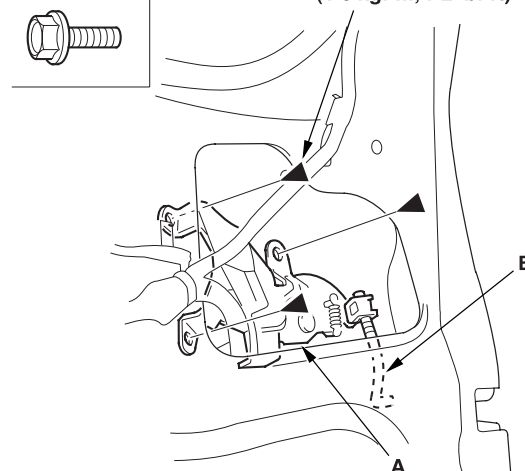
3. Remove the bolt, then remove the tailgate stopper assembly (A).

### Fastener Locations

► : Bolt, 3



6 x 1.0 mm  
9.8 N·m  
(1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)



4. If necessary, disconnect the tailgate rod (B) from the tailgate stepper assembly.

(cont'd)

## Tailgate Stopper Assembly Replacement (cont'd)

5. Install the stopper assembly in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Make sure the tailgate rod is connected securely. If you removed the tailgate rod from the tailgate stopper assembly, adjust the rod when reinstalling it (see step 3 on [page 20-165](#)).
  - Make sure the tailgate opens properly.

## Hatch Glass Latch Replacement

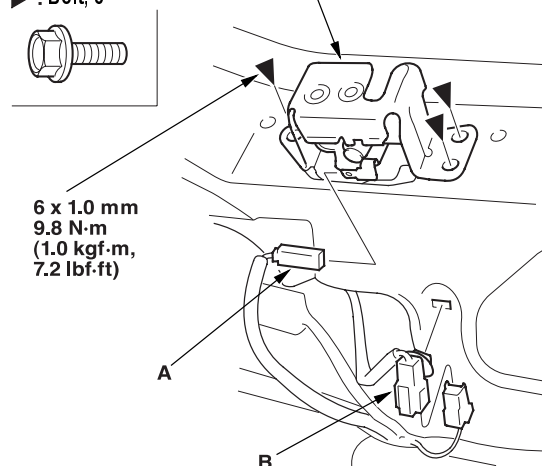
### NOTE:

- Take care not to scratch the tailgate.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

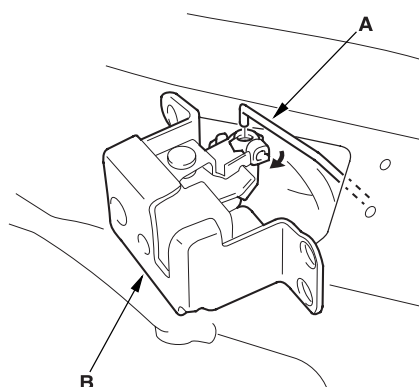
1. Remove the tailgate lower trim panel ([see page 20-80](#)).
2. Disconnect the hatch glass latch switch connector (A), hatch glass latch connector (B), and detach the hatch glass latch connector from the tailgate.

### Fastener Locations

► : Bolt, 3



3. Remove the bolts, then pull the hatch glass latch (C) out.
4. Disconnect the hatch glass rod (A), then remove the hatch glass latch (B). Take care not to bend the rod.



5. Install the latch in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Make sure each connector is plugged in properly, and the rod is connected properly.
  - Make sure the hatch glass opens properly and locks securely.



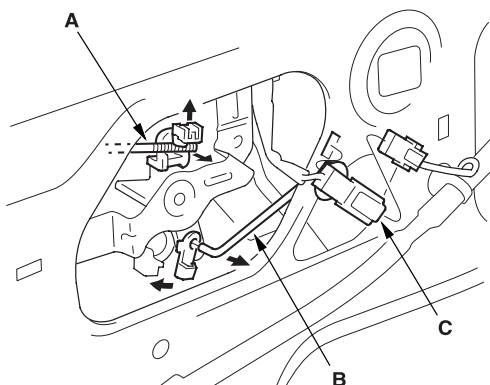


## Hatch Glass Actuator Replacement

### NOTE:

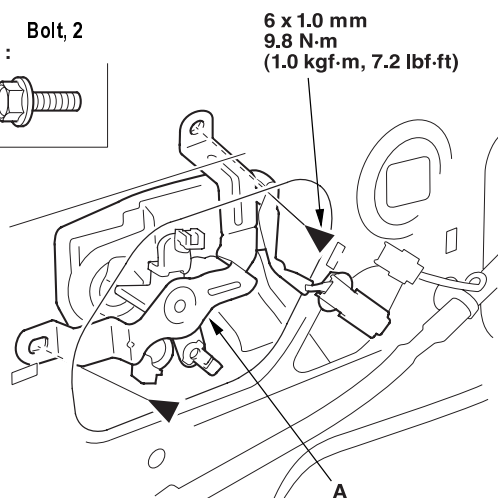
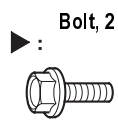
- Take care not to scratch the tailgate.
- Put on gloves to protect your hands.

1. Remove the tailgate lower trim panel (see page 20-80)
2. Disconnect the hatch glass rod (A), hatch glass open rod (B), and actuator connector (C), then detach the connector from the tailgate.



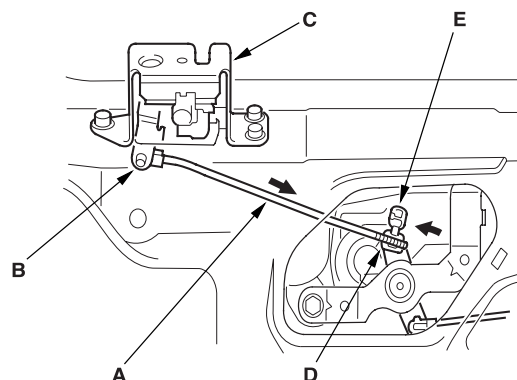
3. Remove the bolts, then remove the hatch glass actuator (A).

### Fastener Locations



4. Install the actuator in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- Make sure the actuator connector is plugged in properly, and each rod is connected securely.
- Reconnect the hatch glass rod (A) as following sequence.
  - Move the lever (B) of the latch (C) into lock position.
  - While holding the lever (B) into lock position, take off the looseness on the latch side of the rod by pulling the rod in direction shown by the arrow.
  - Move the lever (D) of the actuator into set position as shown by the arrow.
  - Connect the rod to the fastener (E) of the lever.
- Make sure the hatch glass opens properly and locks securely.

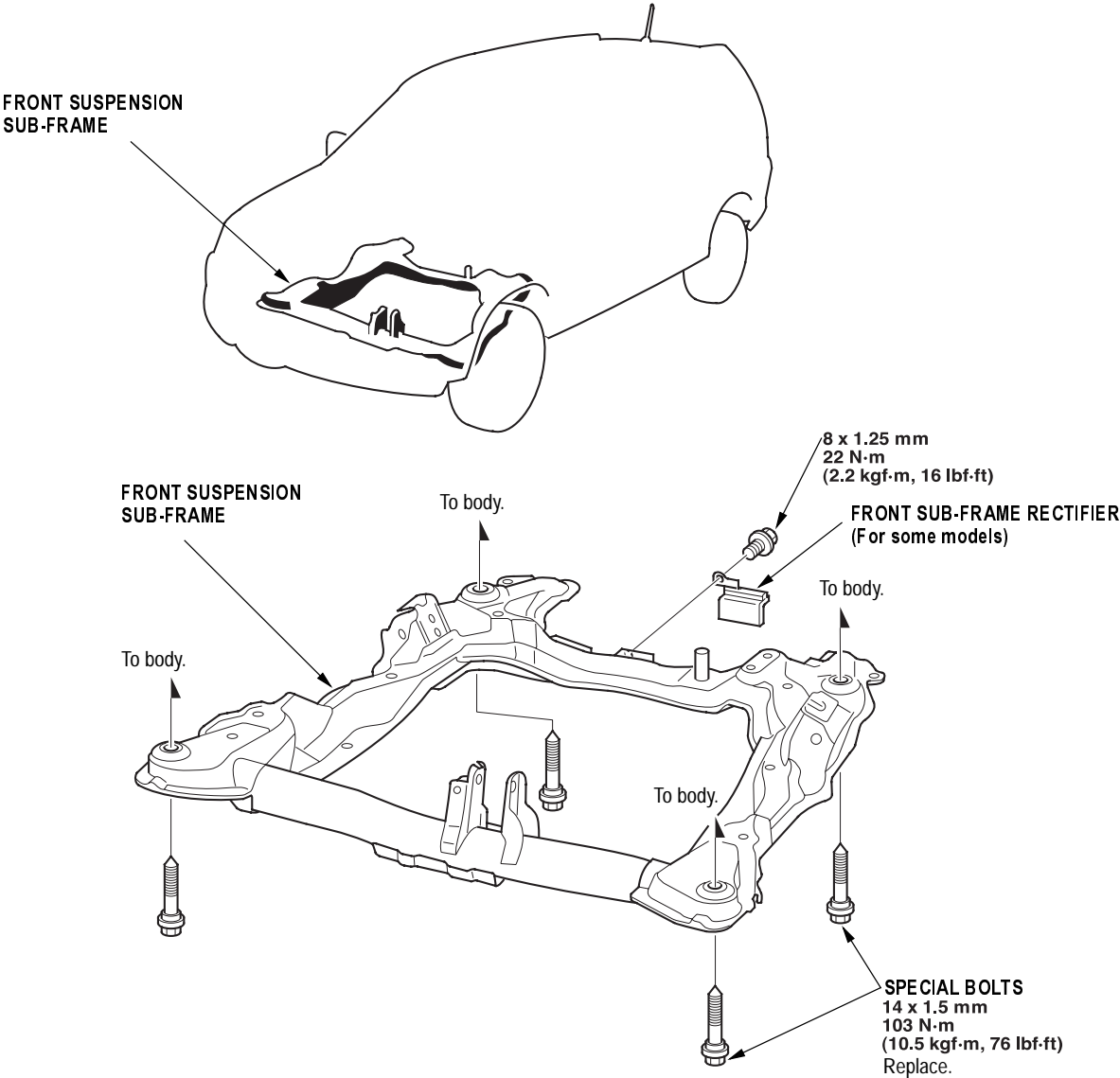


Frame

Sub-frame Replacement

Front Sub-frame Torque

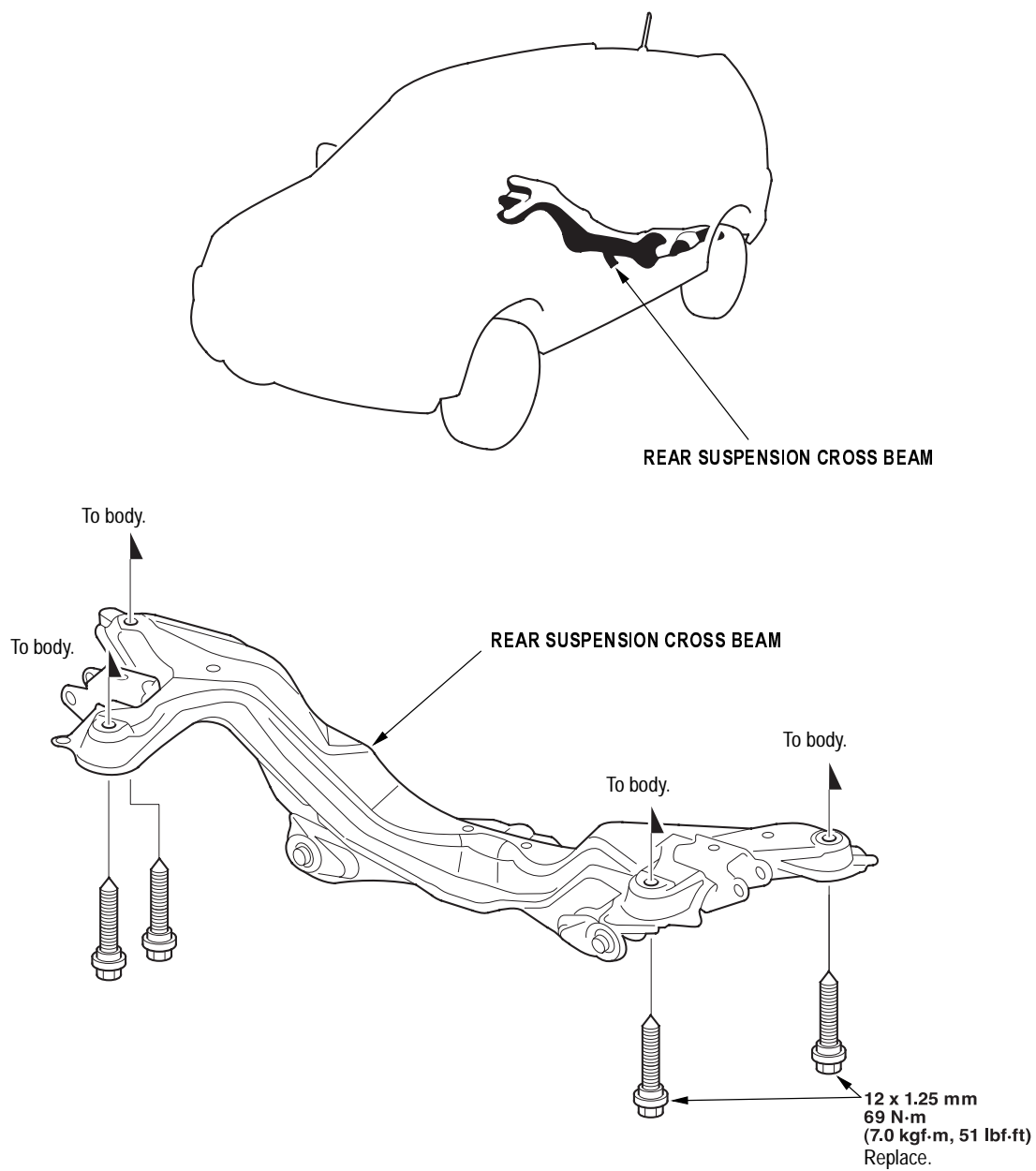
NOTE: After loosening the sub-frame mounting bolts, be sure to replace them with new ones.





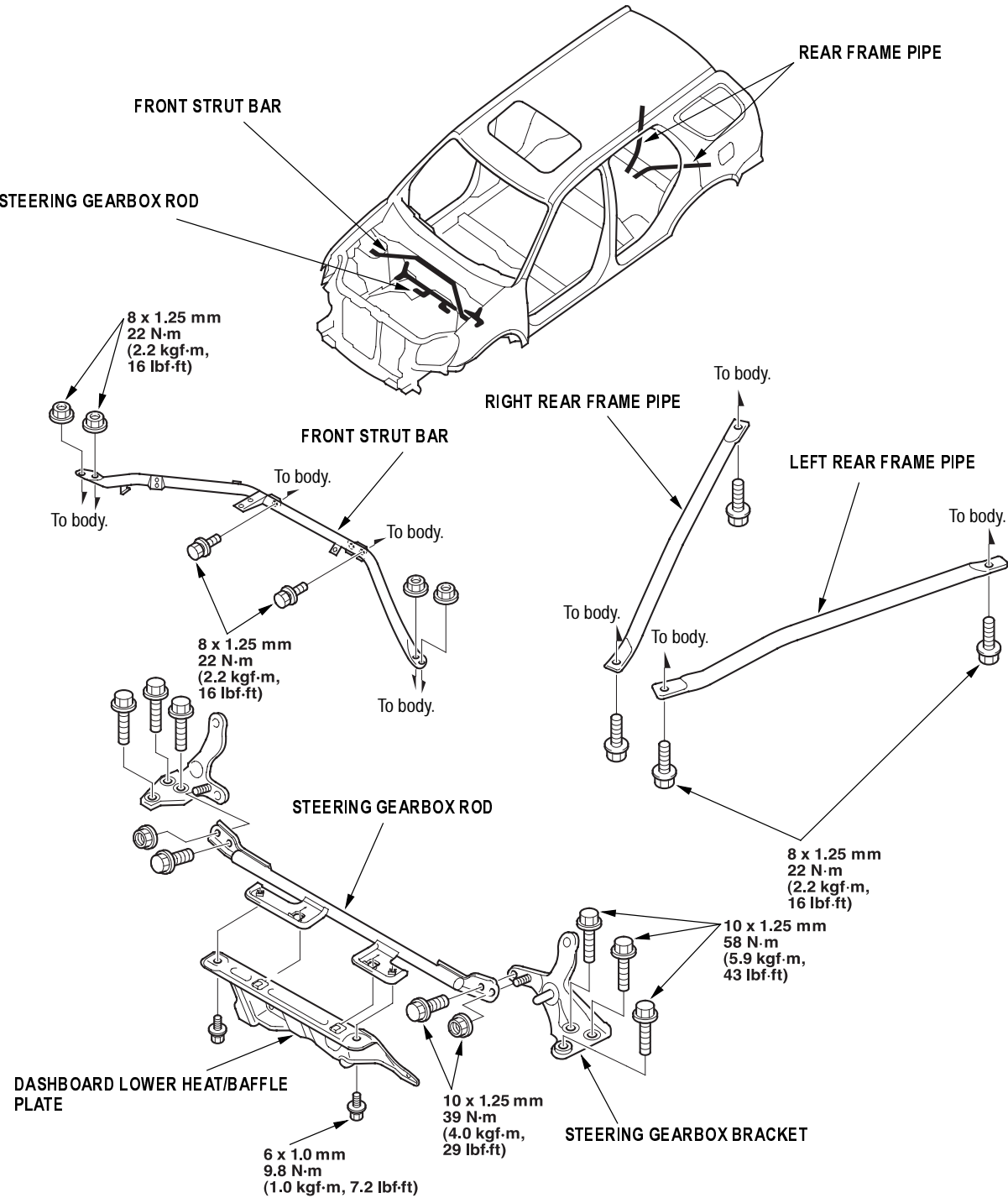
## Rear Sub-frame Torque

NOTE: After loosening the sub-frame mounting bolts, be sure to replace them with new ones.



Frame Stiffener Replacement

Front Strut Bar, Steering Gearbox Rod and Rear Frame Pipe Torque





## Frame Repair Chart

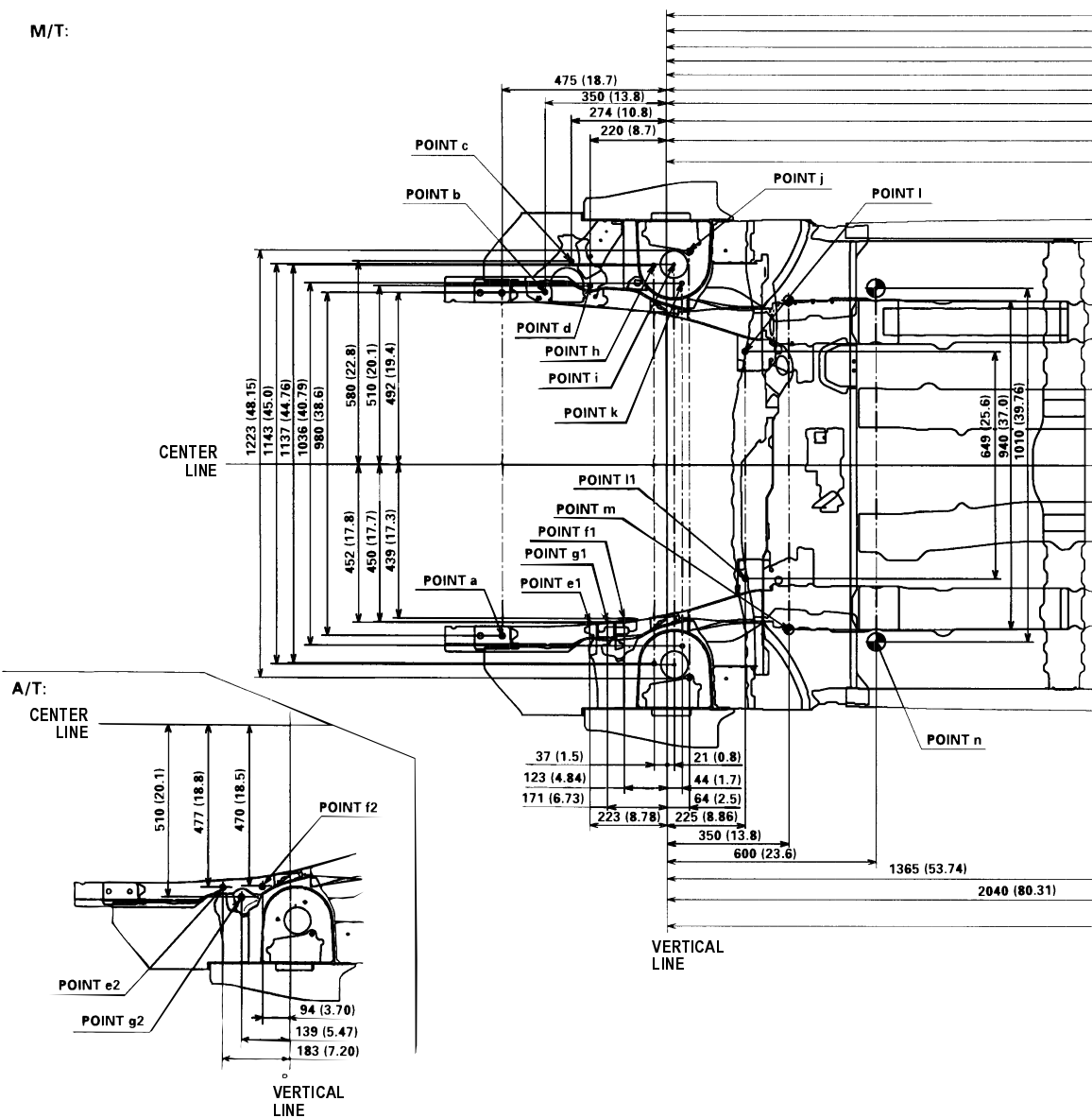
### Top View

Unit: mm (in.)

Ø: Inner diameter

- |    |                                       |    |                               |
|----|---------------------------------------|----|-------------------------------|
| a  | For sub-frame Ø16 (0.63)              | h  | For damper mount Ø11.5 (0.45) |
| b  | For engine mount Ø13 (0.51)           | i  | For damper center Ø78 (3.07)  |
| c  | For engine mount Ø13 (0.51)           | j  | For damper mount Ø11.5 (0.45) |
| d  | For engine mount Ø13 (0.51)           | k  | For damper mount Ø11.5 (0.45) |
| e1 | For M/T transmission mount Ø13 (0.51) | l  | For sub-frame Ø16 (0.63)      |
| e2 | For A/T transmission mount Ø13 (0.51) | l1 | For sub-frame Ø16 (0.63)      |
| f1 | For M/T transmission mount Ø13 (0.51) | m  | Locating hole Ø27.4 (1.08)    |
| f2 | For A/T transmission mount Ø13 (0.51) | n  | Locating hole Ø50 (1.97)      |
| g1 | For M/T transmission mount Ø13 (0.51) |    |                               |
| g2 | For A/T transmission mount Ø13 (0.51) |    |                               |

M/T:



- o

Locating hole  $\varnothing 25$  (0.98)
- p

Locating hole  $\varnothing 25$  (0.98)
- p1

Locating hole  $\varnothing 25$  (0.98)
- p2

Locating hole  $\varnothing 23$  (0.91)
- q

For trailing arm  $\varnothing 14$  (0.55)
- r

Locating hole  $\varnothing 20$  (0.79)
- s

For trailing arm  $\varnothing 14$  (0.55)
- t

Rear damper center  $\varnothing 68$  (2.68)
- u

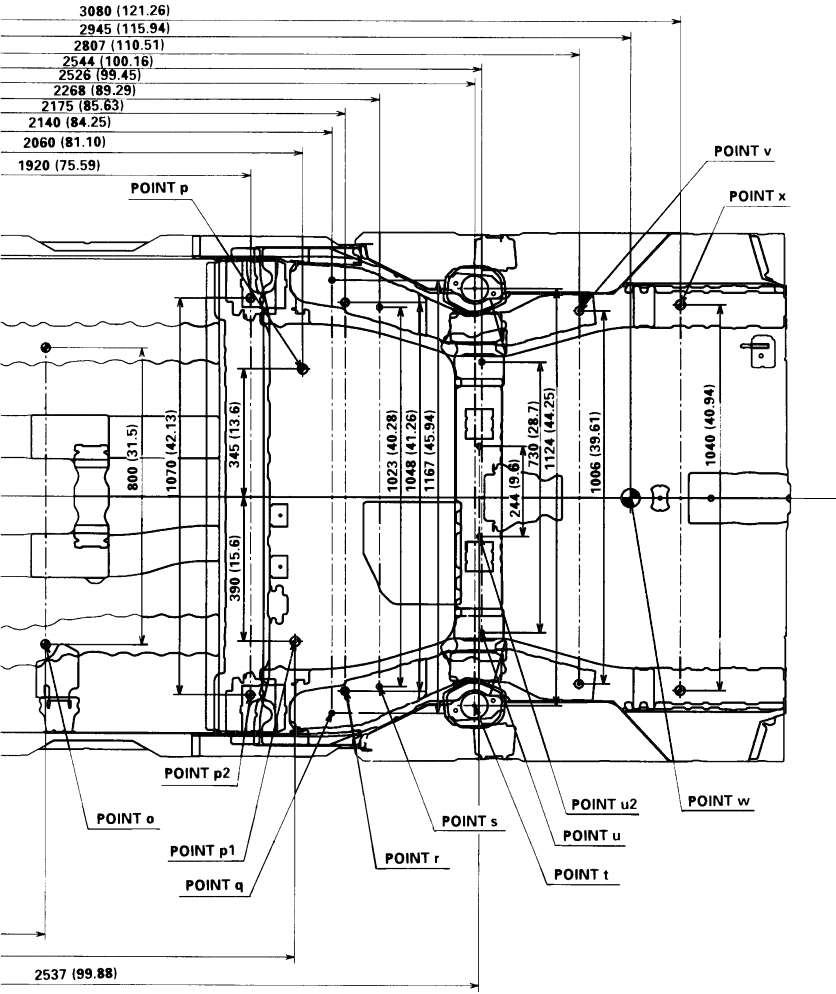
For rear cross beam  $\varnothing 15$  (0.59)
- u2

Locating hole Right side:  $\varnothing 13$  (0.51)/Left side:  $\varnothing 15$  (0.59)
- v

For rear cross beam  $\varnothing 15$  (0.59)
- w

Locating hole  $\varnothing 50$  (1.97)
- x

Locating hole  $\varnothing 25$  (0.98)



(cont'd)



## Frame Repair Chart (cont'd)

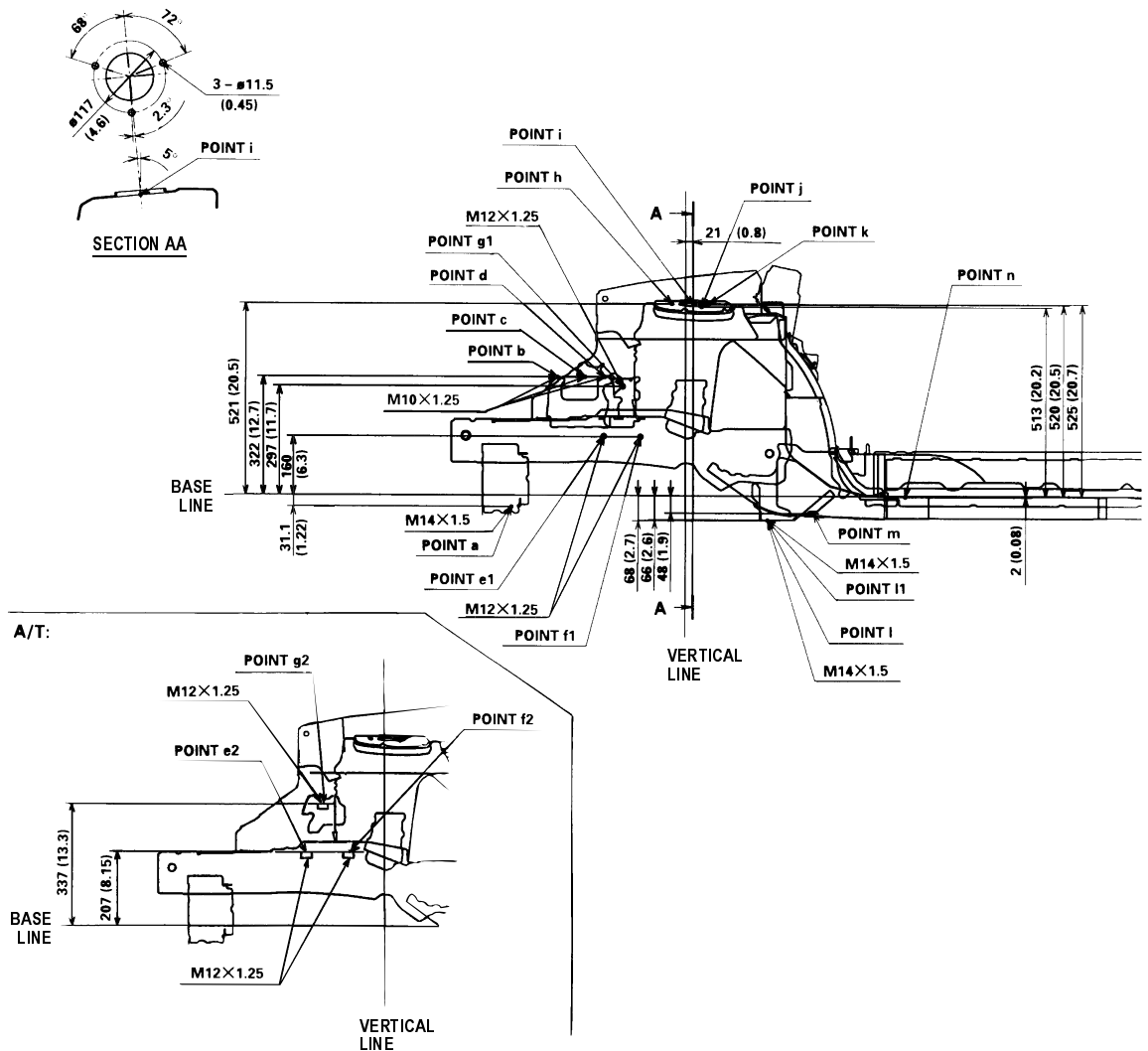
### Side View

Unit: mm (in.)

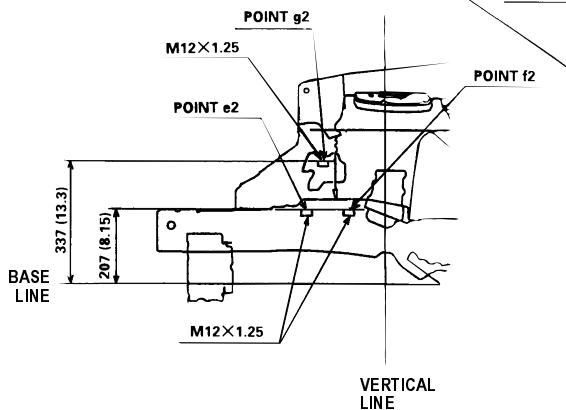
Ø: Inner diameter

- |    |                                       |    |                               |
|----|---------------------------------------|----|-------------------------------|
| a  | For sub-frame Ø16 (0.63)              | h  | For damper mount Ø11.5 (0.45) |
| b  | For engine mount Ø13 (0.51)           | i  | For damper center Ø78 (3.07)  |
| c  | For engine mount Ø13 (0.51)           | j  | For damper mount Ø11.5 (0.45) |
| d  | For engine mount Ø13 (0.51)           | k  | For damper mount Ø11.5 (0.45) |
| e1 | For M/T transmission mount Ø13 (0.51) | l  | For sub-frame Ø16 (0.63)      |
| e2 | For A/T transmission mount Ø13 (0.51) | l1 | For sub-frame Ø16 (0.63)      |
| f1 | For M/T transmission mount Ø13 (0.51) | m  | Locating hole Ø27.4 (1.08)    |
| f2 | For A/T transmission mount Ø13 (0.51) | n  | Locating hole Ø50 (1.97)      |
| g1 | For M/T transmission mount Ø13 (0.51) |    |                               |
| g2 | For A/T transmission mount Ø13 (0.51) |    |                               |

M/T:



A/T:



- o

Locating hole  $\varnothing 25$  (0.98)
- p

Locating hole  $\varnothing 25$  (0.98)
- p1

Locating hole  $\varnothing 25$  (0.98)
- p2

Locating hole  $\varnothing 23$  (0.91)
- q

For trailing arm  $\varnothing 14$  (0.55)
- r

Locating hole  $\varnothing 20$  (0.79)
- s

For trailing arm  $\varnothing 14$  (0.55)
- t

Rear damper center  $\varnothing 68$  (2.68)
- u

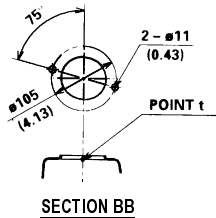
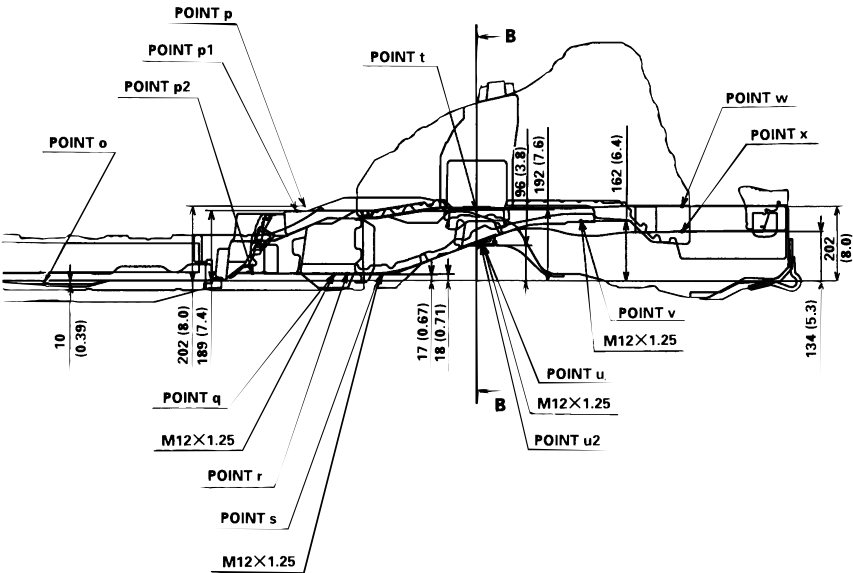
For rear cross beam  $\varnothing 15$  (0.59)
- u2

Locating hole Right side:  $\varnothing 13$  (0.51)/Left side:  $\varnothing 15$  (0.59)
- v

For rear cross beam  $\varnothing 15$  (0.59)
- w

Locating hole  $\varnothing 50$  (1.97)
- x

Locating hole  $\varnothing 25$  (0.98)



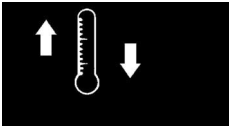


**HVAC**  
**(Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning)**

Heating ..... 21-2

Air Conditioning ..... 21-31

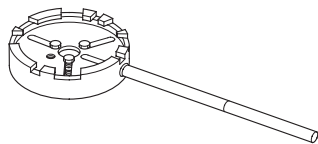
Climate Control ..... 21-61



Heating

Special Tools

Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07NAB-HAC0100	A/C Clutch Holder	1

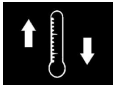


1

SUPPLEMENAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS) (If HVAC maintenance is required)

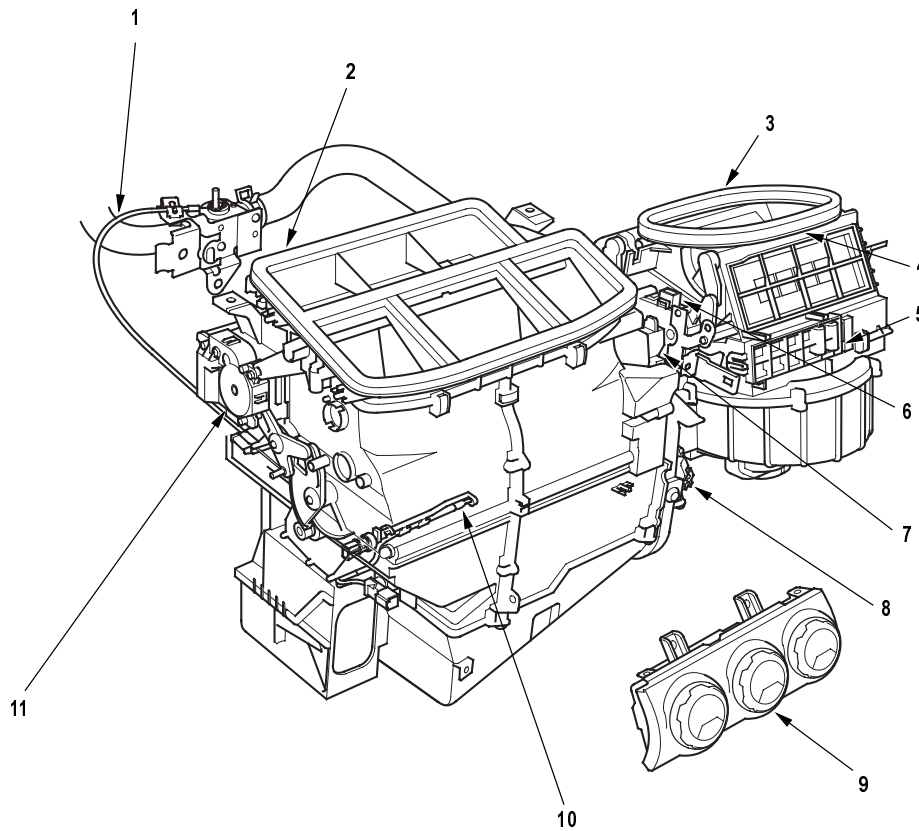
The CR-V SRS includes a driver's airbag in the steering wheel hub, a passenger's airbag in the dashboard above the glove box, seat belt tensioners in the front seat belt retractors, seat belt buckle tensioners in the front seat belt buckles, and side airbags in the front seat-backs. Information necessary to safely service the SRS is included in this Service Manual. Items marked with an asterisk (\*) on the contents include or are located near SRS components. Servicing, disassembling, or replacing these items will require special precautions and tools, and should be done only by an authorized Honda dealer.

- To avoid rendering the SRS inoperative, which could lead to personal injury or death in the event of a severe frontal collision, all SRS service work must be performed by an authorized Honda dealer.
- Improper service procedures, including incorrect removal and installation of the SRS could lead to personal injury caused by unintentional deployment of the airbags and side airbags.
- Do not bump the SRS unit. Otherwise, the system may fail in a collision, or the airbags may deploy when the ignition switch is ON (II).
- SRS electrical connectors are identified by yellow color coding. Related components are located in the steering column, front console, dashboard, dashboard lower panel, in the dashboard above the glove box, in the front seats, and around the floor. Do not use electrical test equipment on these circuits.



## Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.



1	HEATER VALVE CABLE	Adjustment, <a href="#">page 21-30</a>
2	HEATER UNIT / CORE	Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-28</a>
3	BLOWER UNIT	Removal and Installation, <a href="#">page 21-26</a>
4	BLOWER UNIT COMPONENTS	Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-27</a>
5	DUST AND POLLEN FILTER	Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-25</a>
6	RECIRCULATION CONTROL MOTOR	Test, <a href="#">page 21-23</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-23</a>
7	MODE CONTROL MOTOR	Test, <a href="#">page 21-22</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-22</a>
8	POWER TRANSISTOR	Test, <a href="#">page 21-24</a>
9	HEATER CONTROL PANEL	Removal and Installation, <a href="#">page 21-24</a>
10	EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR (With A/C)	Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-44</a> ; Test, <a href="#">page 21-44</a>
11	AIR MIX CONTROL MOTOR	Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-21</a> ; Test, <a href="#">page 21-21</a>

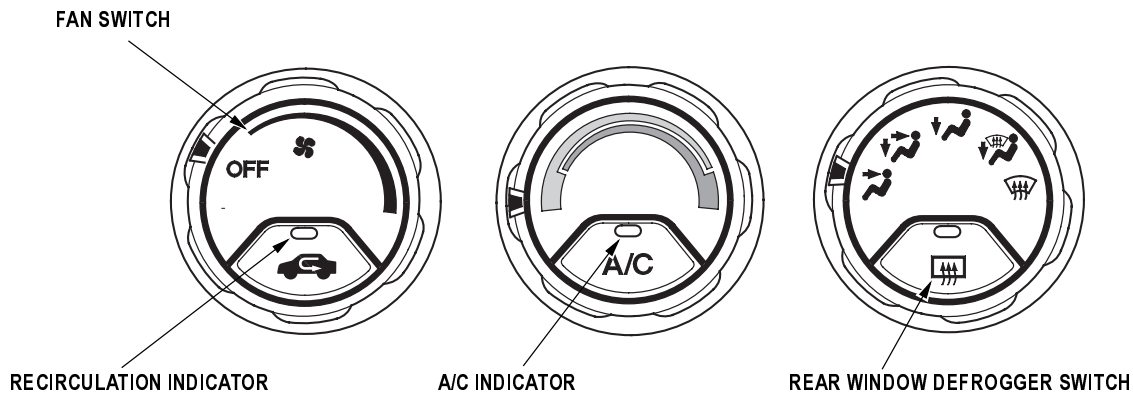
## General Troubleshooting Information

### How to Retrieve a DTC

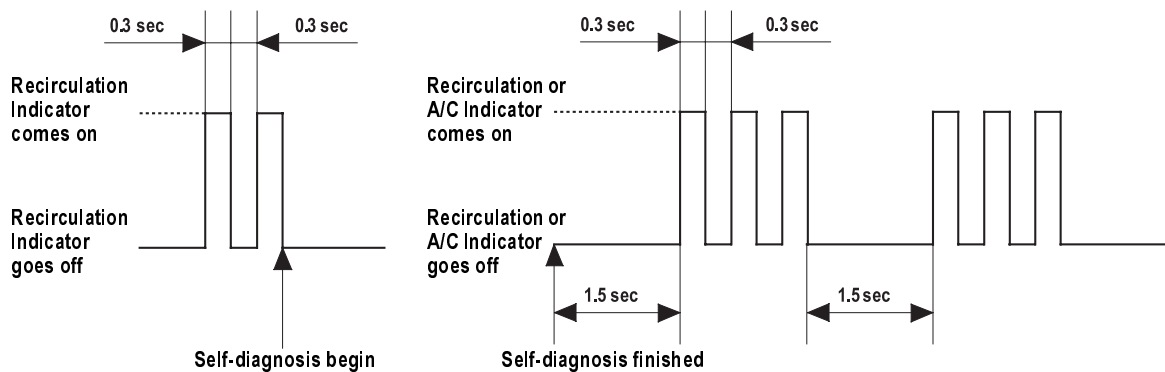
The Heater Control Panel has a self-diagnosis function.

#### Running the Self-diagnosis Function

1. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
2. Turn the fan switch OFF, the temperature control dial on Max Cool and the mode control dial on Vent.
3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), then press and hold the recirculation control switch. Within 10 seconds while holding the switch down, press the rear window defogger switch five times. The recirculation indicator blinks two times, then the self-diagnosis will begin. If there is any problem in the system after self-diagnosis is finished, the recirculation indicator will blink the Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 7 through 13 when problems in the evaporator temperature sensor circuit are detected (codes 14 and 15), the A/C indicator will blink the DTC. If no DTC's are found, the indicator will not blink.

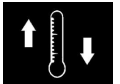


#### Example of DTC indication Pattern (DTC 3)



#### Resetting the Self-diagnosis Function

Turn the ignition switch OFF to cancel the self-diagnosis function. After completing repair work, run the self-diagnosis function again to make sure that there are no other malfunctions.



## DTC Troubleshooting Index

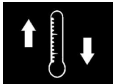
DTC (Recirculation Indicator Blinks)	Detection Item	Page
7	An open in the air mix control motor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-9)</a>
8	A short in the air mix control motor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-9)</a>
9	A problem in the air mix control linkage, door, or motor	<a href="#">(see page 21-10)</a>
10	An open or short in the mode control motor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-11)</a>
11	A problem in the mode control linkage, doors, or motor	<a href="#">(see page 21-12)</a>
12	A problem in the blower motor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-13)</a>
13	A problem in the EEPROM in the heater control panel; the control panel must be replaced	<a href="#">(see page 21-24)</a>

DTC (A/C Indicator Blinks)	Detection Item	Page
14 (With A/C)	An open in the evaporator temperature sensor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-16)</a>
15 (With A/C)	A short in the evaporator temperature sensor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-17)</a>

In case of multiple problems, the recirculation indicator will indicate only the DTC with the least number of blinks.

Symptom Troubleshooting Index

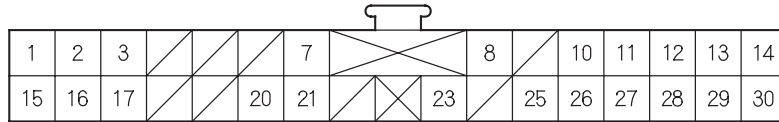
Symptom	Diagnostic procedure	Also check for
Recirculation control doors do not change between Fresh and Recirculate	Recirculation Control Motor Circuit Troubleshooting (see page 21-18)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Blown fuse No. 14 (10A) in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li><li>• Cleanliness and tightness of all connectors</li></ul>
Both heater and A/C do not work	Heater Control Power and Ground Circuits Troubleshooting (see page 21-20)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Blown fuse No. 14 (10A) in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li><li>• Poor ground at G501</li><li>• Cleanliness and tightness of all connectors</li></ul>



## System Description

### Heater Control Panel Inputs and Outputs

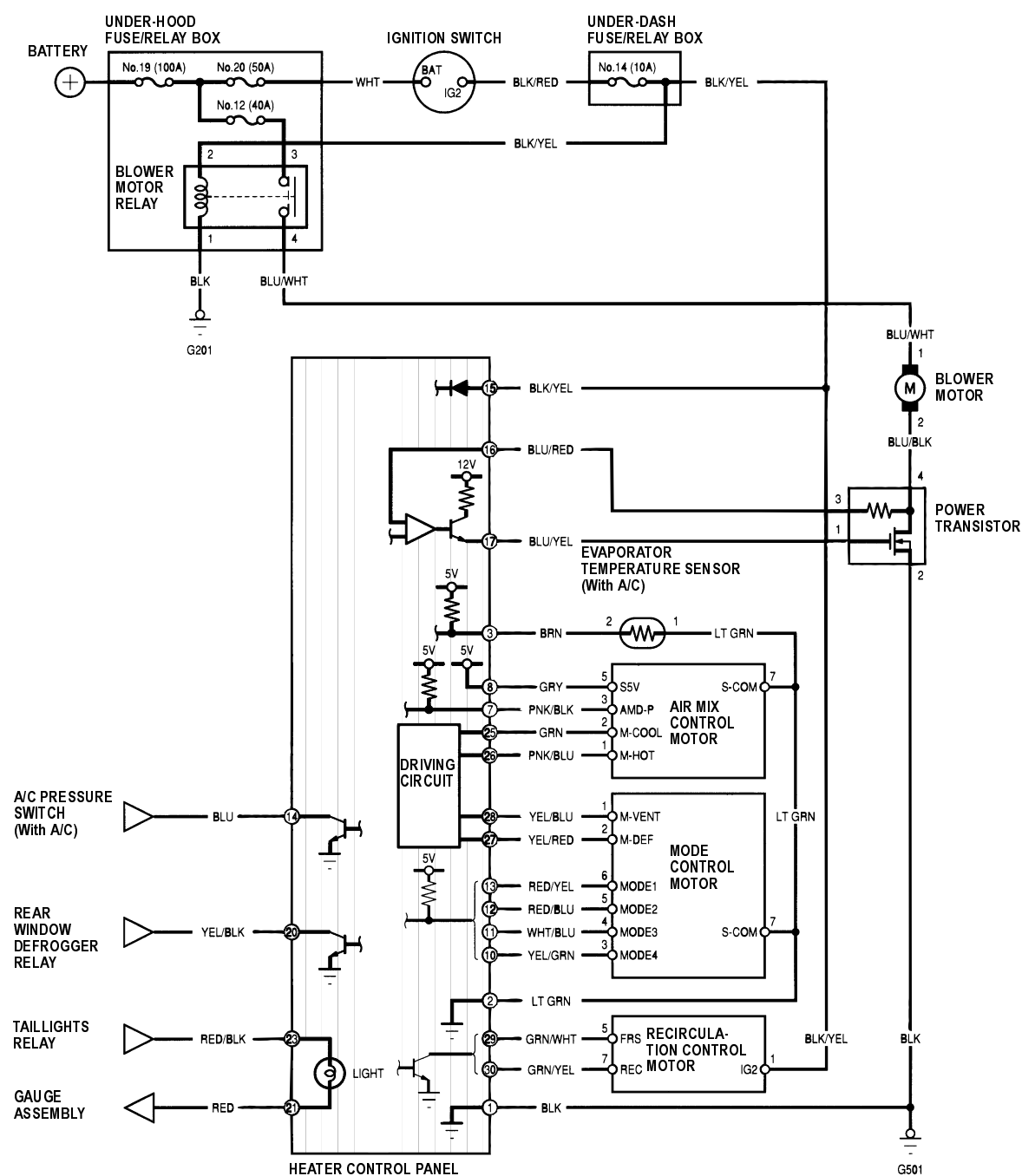
HEATER CONTROL PANEL 30P CONNECTOR



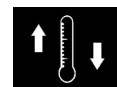
Wire side of female terminals

Cavity	Wire color	Signal	
1	BLK	Ground	Input
2	LT GRN	Sensor Common Ground	Input
3	BRN	Evaporator temperature sensor	Output
4	—	—	—
5	—	—	—
6	—	—	—
7	PNK/BLK	Air mix potential	Output
8	GRY	Air mix potential +5V	Output
9	—	—	—
10	YEL/GRN	Mode 4	Output
11	WHT/BLU	Mode 3	Output
12	RED/BLU	Mode 2	Output
13	RED/YEL	Mode 1	Output
14	BLU	A/C pressure switch	Input
15	BLK/YEL	IG2 Power	Input
16	BLU/RED	Blower feed back	Input
17	BLU/YEL	Power transistor base	Output
18	—	—	—
19	—	—	—
20	YEL/BLK	Rear window defogger relay	Output
21	RED	Ground (For lighting)	Output
22	—	—	—
23	RED/BLK	Taillights relay	Input
24	—	—	—
25	GRN	Air mix cool	Output
26	PNK/BLU	Air mix hot	Output
27	YEL/RED	Mode vent	Output
28	YEL/BLU	Mode def	Output
29	GRN/WHT	Fresh	Input
30	GRN/YEL	Recirculate	Input

Circuit Diagram





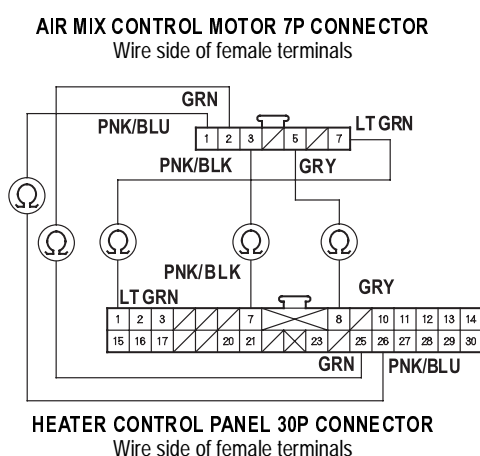


## DTC Troubleshooting

### DTC 7: An Open in the Air Mix Control Motor Circuit

1. Disconnect the air mix control motor 7P connector.
2. Disconnect the heater control panel 30P connector.
3. Check for continuity between the following terminals of the heater control panel 30P connector and the air mix control motor 7P connector.

30P:	7P:
No. 2	No. 7
No. 7	No. 3
No. 8	No. 5
No. 25	No. 2
No. 26	No. 1



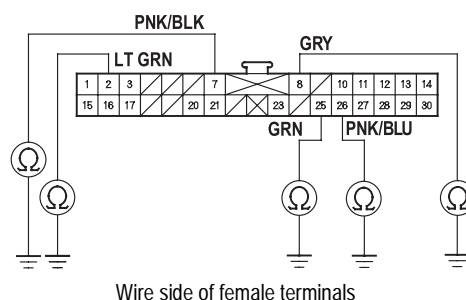
*Is there continuity?*

- Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the heater control panel 30P connector and at the air mix control motor 7P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good heater control panel, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original heater control panel.■
- No** Repair any open in the wire(s) between the heater control panel and the air mix control motor.■

### DTC 8: A Short in the Air Mix Control Motor Circuit

1. Disconnect the air mix control motor 7P connector.
2. Disconnect the heater control panel 30P connector.
3. Check for continuity between body ground and heater control panel 30P connector terminals No. 2, 7, 8, 25, and 26 individually.

#### HEATER CONTROL PANEL 30P CONNECTOR



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair any short to body ground in the wire(s) between the heater control panel and the air mix control motor.■

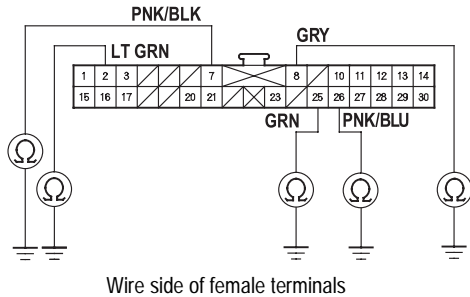
**No** Go to step 4.

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

- Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check the same terminals for voltage.

HEATER CONTROL PANEL 30P CONNECTOR



*Is there any voltage?*

- Yes** Repair any short to power in the wire(s) between the heater control panel and the air mix control motor. This short also may damage the heater control panel. Repair the short to power before replacing the heater control panel.■
- No** Substitute a known-good heater control panel, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original heater control panel.■

## DTC 9: A Problem in the Air Mix Control Linkage, Door, or Motor

- Test the air mix control motor ([see page 21-21](#)).

*Is the air mix control motor OK?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good heater control panel, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original heater control panel.■

**No** Go to step 2.

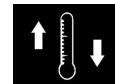
- Remove the air mix control motor ([see page 21-21](#)).

- Check the air mix control linkage and door for smooth movement.

*Do the air mix control linkage and door move smoothly?*

**Yes** Replace the air mix control motor.■

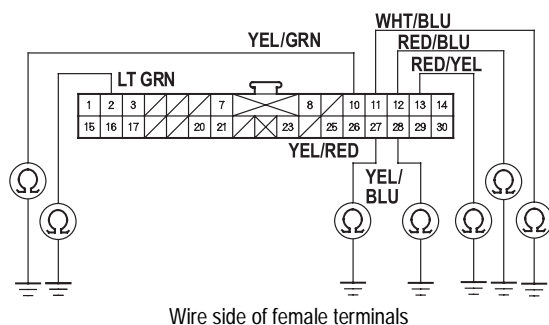
**No** Repair the air mix control linkage or door.■



## DTC 10: An Open or Short in the Mode Control Motor Circuit

1. Disconnect the mode control motor 7P connector.
2. Disconnect the heater control panel 30P connector.
3. Check for continuity between body ground and the heater control panel 30P connector terminals No. 2, 10, 11, 12, 13, 27, and 28 individually.

HEATER CONTROL PANEL 30P CONNECTOR



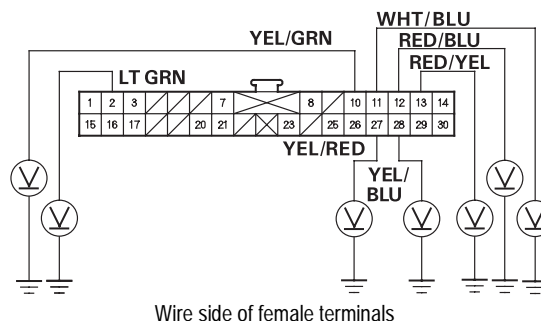
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair any short to body ground in the wire(s) between the heater control panel and the mode control motor.■

**No** Go to step 4.

4. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check the same terminals for voltage.

HEATER CONTROL PANEL 30P CONNECTOR



*Is there any voltage?*

**Yes** Repair any short to power in the wire(s) between the heater control panel and the mode control motor. This short also may damage the heater control panel. Repair the short to power before replacing the heater control panel.■

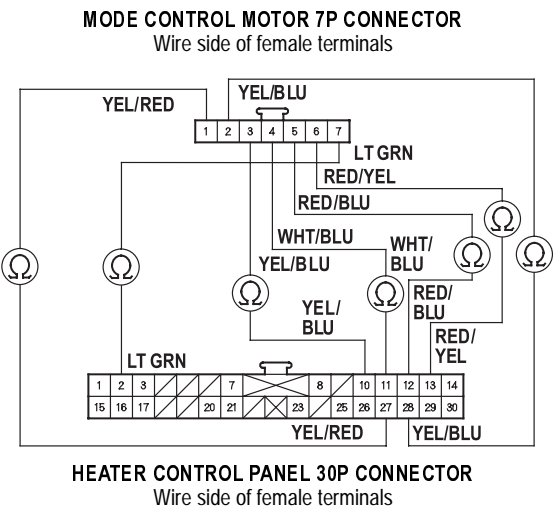
**No** Go to step 5.

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

5. Turn the ignition switch OFF, and check for continuity between the following terminals of the heater control panel 30P connector and the mode control motor 7P connector.

30P:	7P:
No. 2	No. 7
No. 10	No. 3
No. 11	No. 4
No. 12	No. 5
No. 13	No. 6
No. 28	No. 2
No. 27	No. 1

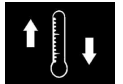


*Is there continuity?*

- Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the heater control panel 30P connector and at the mode control motor 7P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good heater control panel, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original heater control panel.■
- No** Repair any open in the wire(s) between the heater control panel and the mode control motor.■

DTC 11: A Problem in the Mode Control Linkage, Doors, or Motor

1. Test the mode control motor (see page 21-22).  
*Is the mode control motor OK?*
- Yes** Substitute a known-good heater control panel, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original heater control panel.■
- No** Go to step 2.
2. Remove the mode control motor (see page 21-22).
3. Check the mode control linkage and doors for smooth movement.  
*Do the mode control linkage and doors move smoothly?*
- Yes** Replace the mode control motor.■
- No** Repair the mode control linkage or doors.■



### DTC 12: A Problem in the Blower Motor Circuit

1. Check the No. 12 (40A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box, and the No. 14 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

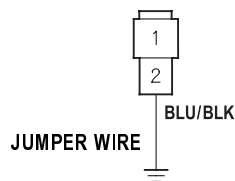
*Are the fuses OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Replace the fuse(s), and recheck.■

2. Connect the No. 2 terminal of the blower motor 2P connector to body ground with a jumper wire.

BLOWER MOTOR 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

*Does the blower motor run?*

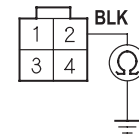
**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Go to step 17.

4. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
5. Disconnect the jumper wire.
6. Disconnect the power transistor 4P connector.

7. Check for continuity between the No. 2 terminal of the power transistor 4P connector and body ground.

POWER TRANSISTOR 4P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

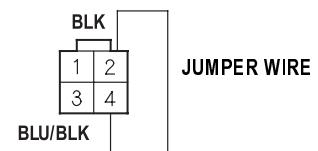
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Check for an open in the wire between the power transistor and body ground. If the wire is OK, check for poor ground at G501.■

8. Connect the No. 2 and No. 4 terminals of the power transistor 4P connector with a jumper wire.

POWER TRANSISTOR 4P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

9. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).  
*Does the blower motor run at high speed?*

**Yes** Go to step 10.

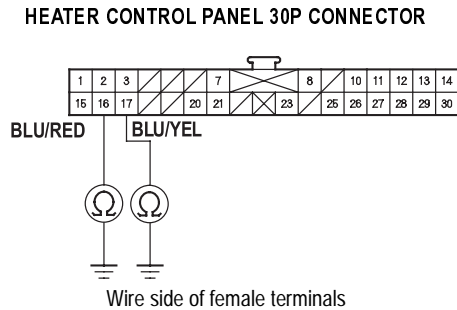
**No** Repair open in the wire between the power transistor and the blower motor.■

10. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
11. Disconnect the jumper wire.

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

12. Disconnect the heater control panel 30P connector.
13. Check for continuity between the No. 16 and No. 17 terminals of the heater control panel 30P connector and body ground individually.



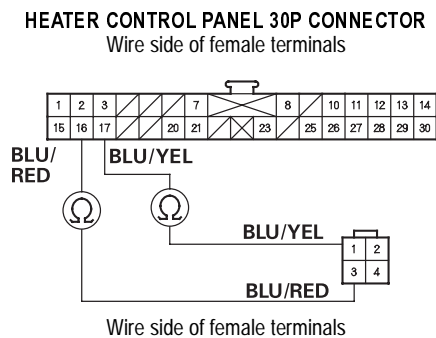
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair any short to body ground in the wire(s) between the heater control panel and the power transistor.■

**No** Go to step 14.

14. Check for continuity between the following terminals of the heater control panel 30P connector and the power transistor 4P connector.

30P:	4P:
No. 17	No. 1
No. 16	No. 3



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 15.

**No** Repair any open in the wire(s) between the heater control panel and the power transistor.■

15. Reconnect the heater control panel 30P connector.

16. Test the power transistor ([see page 21-24](#))

*Is the power transistor OK?*

**Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the heater control panel 30P connector and at the power transistor 4P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good heater control panel, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original heater control panel.■

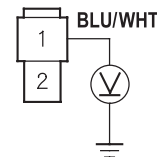
**No** Replace the power transistor.■

17. Disconnect the jumper wire.

18. Disconnect the blower motor 2P connector.

19. Measure the voltage between the No. 1 terminal of the blower motor 2P connector and body ground.

**BLOWER MOTOR 2P CONNECTOR**



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Replace the blower motor.■

**No** Go to step 20.

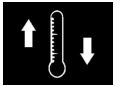
20. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

21. Remove the blower motor relay from the under-hood fuse/relay box, and test it ([see page 21-26](#)).

*Is the relay OK?*

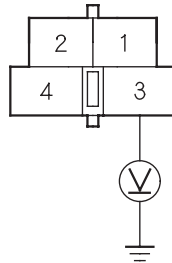
**Yes** Go to step 22.

**No** Replace the blower motor relay.■



22. Measure the voltage between the No. 3 terminal of the blower motor relay 4P socket and body ground.

BLOWER MOTOR 4P SOCKET



*Is there battery voltage?*

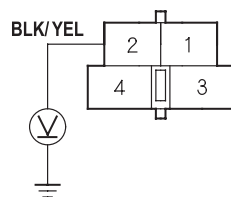
**Yes** Go to step 23.

**No** Replace the under-hood fuse/relay box.■

23. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

24. Measure the voltage between the No. 2 terminal of the blower motor relay 4P socket and body ground.

BLOWER MOTOR 4P SOCKET



*Is there battery voltage?*

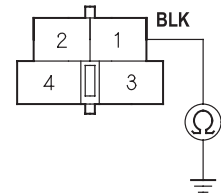
**Yes** Go to step 25.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 14 fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box and the blower motor relay.■

25. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

26. Check for continuity between the No. 1 terminal of the blower motor relay 4P socket and body ground.

BLOWER MOTOR RELAY 4P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the blower motor relay and the blower motor.■

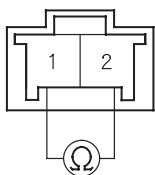
**No** Check for an open in the wire between the blower motor relay and body ground. If the wire is OK, check for poor ground at G501.■

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

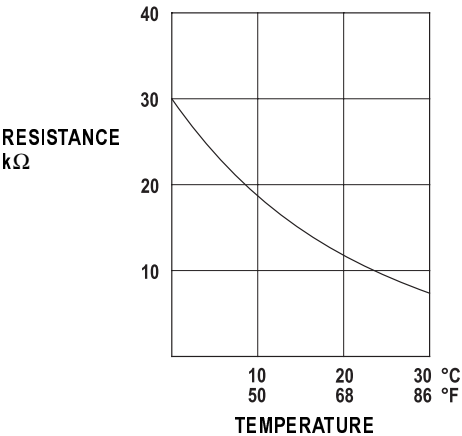
DTC 14: An Open in the Evaporator Temperature Sensor Circuit

- 1. Remove the evaporator temperature sensor (see page 21-44).
- 2. Measure the resistance between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals of the evaporator temperature sensor.  
\*Dip the sensor in ice water, and measure resistance. Then pour hot water on the sensor, and check for change in resistance.

EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR



Terminal side of male terminals

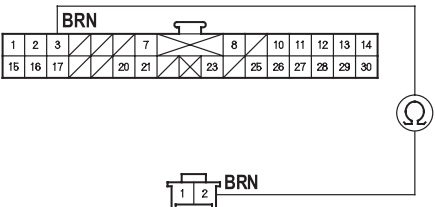


Is the resistance within the specifications shown on the graph?

- Yes** Go to step 3.
  - No** Replace the evaporator temperature sensor.■
3. Disconnect the heater control panel 30P connector.

4. Check for continuity between the No. 3 terminal of the heater control panel 30P connector and the No. 2 terminal of the evaporator temperature sensor 2P connector.

HEATER CONTROL PANEL 30P CONNECTOR  
Wire side of female terminals

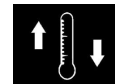


EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR 2P CONNECTOR  
Wire side of female terminals

Is there continuity?

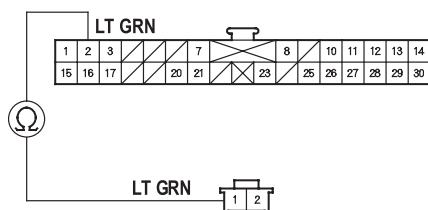
- Yes** Go to step 5.
- No** Repair open in the wire between the heater control panel and the evaporator temperature sensor.■





5. Check for continuity between the No. 2 terminal of the heater control panel 30P connector and the No. 1 terminal of the evaporator temperature sensor 2P connector.

**HEATER CONTROL PANEL 30P CONNECTOR**  
Wire side of female terminals



**EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR 2P CONNECTOR**  
Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the heater control panel 30P connector and at the evaporator temperature sensor 2P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good heater control panel, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original heater control panel.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the heater control panel and the evaporator temperature sensor.■

## DTC 15: A Short in the Evaporator Temperature Sensor Circuit

1. Remove the evaporator temperature sensor (see page 21-44).

2. Test the evaporator temperature sensor (see page 21-44).

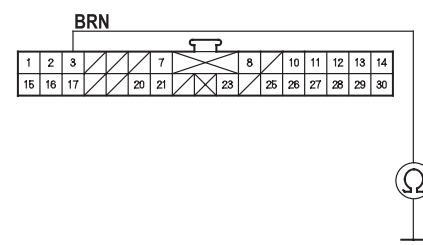
*Is the resistance within the specifications shown on the graph?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Replace the evaporator temperature sensor.■

3. Disconnect the heater control panel 30P connector.
4. Check for continuity between the No. 3 terminal of the heater control panel 30P connector and body ground.

**HEATER CONTROL PANEL 30P CONNECTOR**



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short to body ground in the wire between the heater control panel and the evaporator temperature sensor.■

**No** Substitute a known-good heater control panel, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original heater control panel.■

## Recirculation Control Motor Circuit Troubleshooting

1. Check the No. 14 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

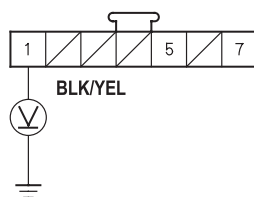
*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Replace the fuse, and recheck.■

2. Disconnect the recirculation control motor 7P connector.
3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
4. Measure the voltage between the No. 1 terminal of the recirculation control motor 7P connector and body ground.

RECIRCULATION CONTROL MOTOR 7P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

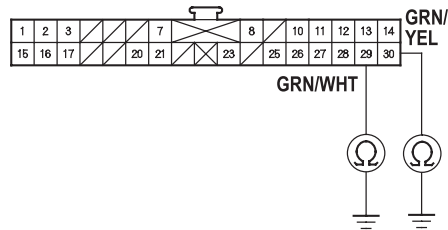
**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 14 fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box and the recirculation control motor.■

5. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
  6. Test the recirculation control motor ([see page 21-23](#)).
- Is the recirculation control motor OK?*
- Yes** Go to step 7.
- No** Go to step 12.
7. Disconnect the heater control panel 30P connector.

8. Check for continuity between the No. 29 and No. 30 terminals of the heater control panel 30P connector and body ground individually.

HEATER CONTROL PANEL 30P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

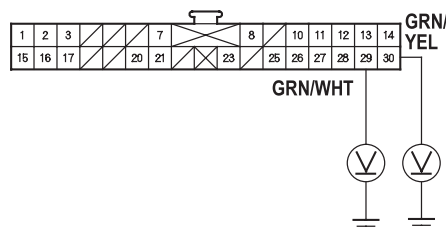
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair any short to body ground in the wire(s) between the heater control panel and the recirculation control motor.■

**No** Go to step 9.

9. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check the same wires for voltage.

HEATER CONTROL PANEL 30P CONNECTOR

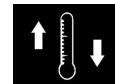


Wire side of female terminals

*Is there any voltage?*

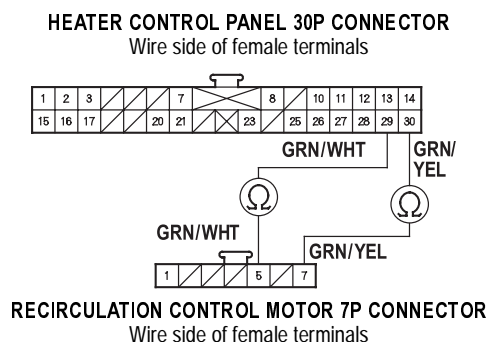
**Yes** Repair any short to power in the wire(s) between the heater control panel and the recirculation control motor. This short also may damage the heater control panel. Repair the short to power before replacing the heater control panel.■

**No** Go to step 10.



10. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
11. Check for continuity between the following terminals of the heater control panel 30P connector and the recirculation control motor 7P connector.

30P:      7P:  
 No. 29    No. 5  
 No. 30    No. 7



*Is there continuity?*

- Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the heater control panel 30P connector and at the recirculation control motor 7P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good heater control panel, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original heater control panel.■
- No** Repair any open in the wire(s) between the heater control panel and the recirculation control motor.■

12. Remove the recirculation control motor ([see page 21-23](#)).

13. Check the recirculation control linkage and doors for smooth movement.

*Do the recirculation control linkage and doors move smoothly?*

**Yes** Replace the recirculation control motor.■

**No** Repair the recirculation control linkage or doors.■

Heater Control Power and Ground Circuits Troubleshooting

1. Check the No.14 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

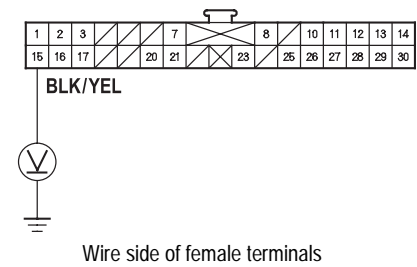
Is the fuse OK?

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Replace the fuse, and recheck.■

2. Disconnect the heater control panel 30P connector.
3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
4. Measure the voltage between the No. 15 terminal of the heater control panel 30P connector and body ground.

HEATER CONTROL PANEL 30P CONNECTOR



Is there battery voltage?

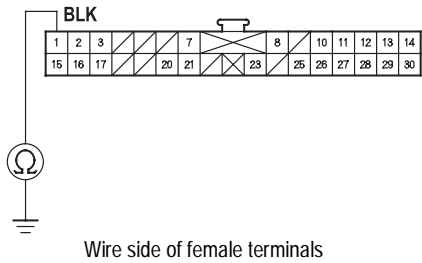
**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 14 fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box and the heater control panel.■

5. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

6. Check for continuity between the No. 1 terminal of the heater control panel 30P connector and body ground.

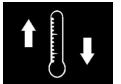
HEATER CONTROL PANEL 30P CONNECTOR



Is there continuity?

**Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the heater control panel 30P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good heater control panel, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original heater control panel.■

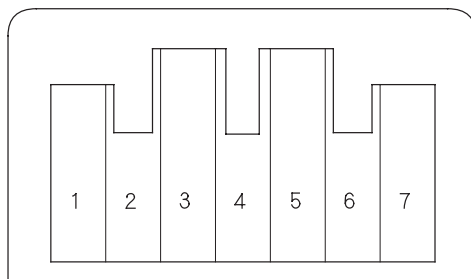
**No** Check for an open in the wire between the heater control panel and body ground. If the wire is OK, check for poor ground at G501.■



### Air Mix Control Motor Test

1. Disconnect the 7P connector from the air mix control motor.
2. Connect battery power to the No. 1 terminal of the air mix control motor, and ground the No. 2 terminal; the air mix control motor should run smoothly, and stop at Max Hot. If it doesn't, reverse the connections; the air mix control motor should run smoothly, and stop at Max Cool. If the air mix control motor does not run, remove it, then check the air mix control linkage and door for smooth movement.
  - If the linkage and door move smoothly, replace the air mix control motor.
  - If the linkage or door sticks or binds, repair them as needed.

AIR MIX CONTROL MOTOR



3. Measure the resistance between the No. 5 and No. 7 terminals. It should be between 4.2 k to 7.8 kΩ.
4. Reconnect the air mix control motor 7P connector, then turn the ignition switch ON (II).
5. Measure the voltage between the No. 3 and No. 7 terminals.

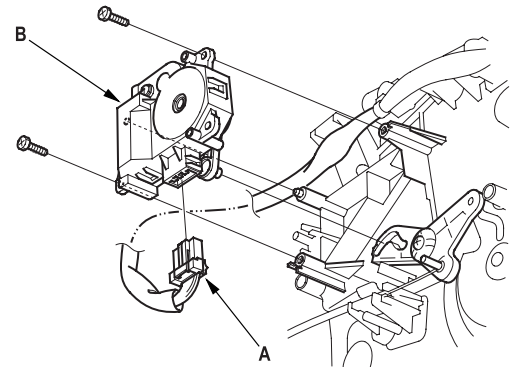
**Max Cool - about 1V**

**Max Hot - about 4V**

### Air Mix Control Motor Replacement

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.

1. RHD type, remove the clutch pedal bracket (M/T) or the parking brake pedal bracket (A/T).
2. Disconnect the 7P connector (A) from the air mix control motor (B). Remove the self-tapping screws and the air mix control motor from the heater unit.

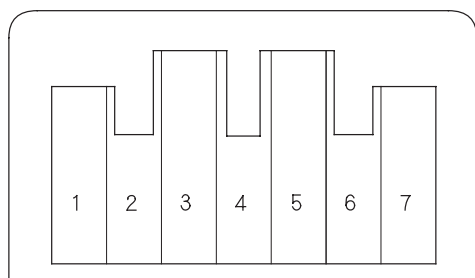


3. Install the motor in the reverse order of removal. After installation, make sure the motor runs smoothly.

### Mode Control Motor Test

1. Disconnect the 7P connector from the mode control motor.
2. Connect battery power to the No. 1 terminal of the mode control motor, and ground the No. 2 terminal; the mode control motor should run smoothly, and stop at Vent. If it doesn't, reverse the connections; the mode control motor should run smoothly, and stop at Defrost. When the mode control motor stops running, disconnect battery power immediately.

MODE CONTROL MOTOR

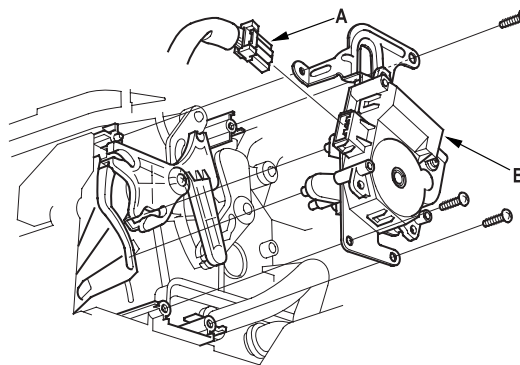


3. If the mode control motor does not run in step 2, remove it, then check the mode control linkage and doors for smooth movement.
  - If the linkage and doors move smoothly, replace the mode control motor.
  - If the linkage or doors stick or bind, repair them as needed.
4. Use a digital multimeter with an output of 1 mA or less at the 20 k $\Omega$  range. With the mode control motor running as in step 2, check for continuity between the No. 3, 4, 5, 6 terminals and the No. 7 terminal individually. There should be continuity for a moment at each terminal.
5. If there is no continuity for a moment at each terminal, replace the mode control motor.

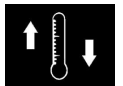
### Mode Control Motor Replacement

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.

1. Remove the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Disconnect the 7P connector (A) from the mode control motor (B). Remove the self-tapping screws and the mode control motor from the heater unit.



3. Install the motor in the reverse order of removal. After installation, make sure the motor runs smoothly.



## Recirculation Control Motor Test

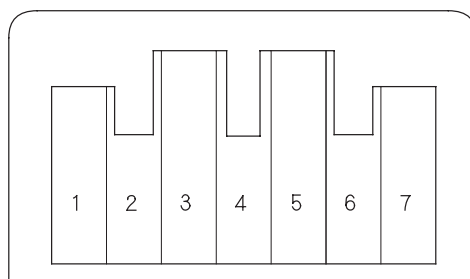
1. Disconnect the 7P connector from the recirculation control motor.

### NOTICE

Incorrectly applying power and ground to the recirculation control motor will damage it. Follow the instructions carefully.

2. Connect battery power to the No. 1 terminal of the recirculation control motor, and ground the No. 5 and No. 7 terminals; the recirculation control motor should run smoothly. To avoid damaging the recirculation control motor, do not reverse power and ground. Disconnect the No. 5 or No. 7 terminals from ground; the recirculation control motor should stop at Fresh or Recirculate. Don't cycle the recirculation control motor for a long time.

RECIRCULATION CONTROL MOTOR

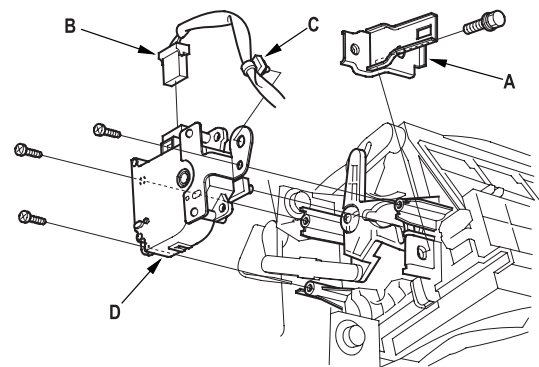


3. If the recirculation control motor does not run in step 2, remove it, then check the recirculation control linkage and doors for smooth movement.
  - If the linkage and doors move smoothly, replace the recirculation control motor.
  - If the linkage or doors stick or bind, repair them as needed.

## Recirculation Control Motor Replacement

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.

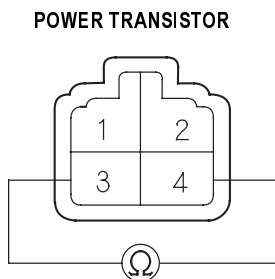
1. Remove the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Remove the bolt and the bracket (A). Disconnect the 7P connector (B) and the harness clip (C) from the recirculation control motor (D). Remove the self-tapping screws and the recirculation control motor from the blower unit.



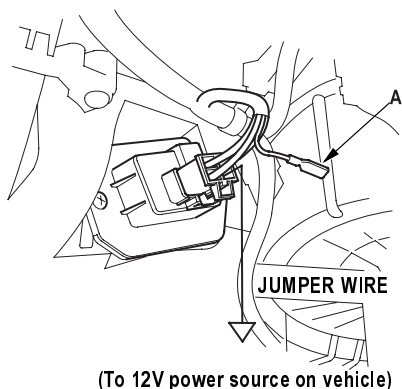
3. Install the motor in the reverse order of removal. After installation, make sure the motor runs smoothly.

### Power Transistor Test

1. Disconnect the 4P connector from the power transistor.
2. Measure the resistance between the No. 3 and No. 4 terminals of the power transistor. It should be about 1.4 - 1.5 k $\Omega$ .
  - If the resistance is within the specifications, go to step 3.
  - If the resistance is not within the specifications, replace the power transistor.



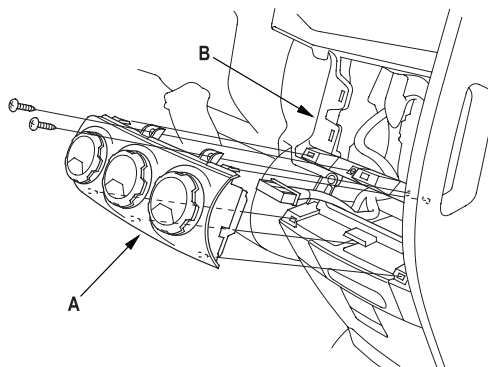
3. Carefully release the lock tab on the No. 1 terminal (BLU/YEL) (A) in the 4P connector, then remove the terminal and insulate it from body ground.



4. Reconnect the 4P connector to the power transistor.
5. Supply 12 volts to the No. 1 cavity with a jumper wire.
6. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the blower motor runs.
  - If the blower motor does not run, replace the power transistor.
  - If the blower motor runs, the power transistor is OK.

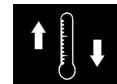
### Heater Control Panel Removal and Installation

1. Remove the center panel ([see page 20-87](#)).
2. Remove the self-tapping screws and the heater control panel (A) from the dashboard (B).



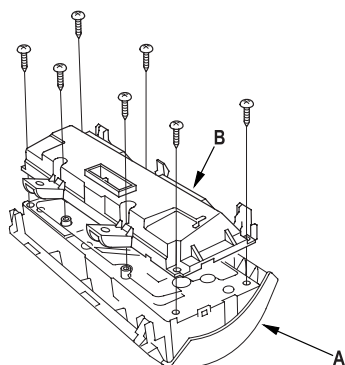
3. Install the control panel in the reverse order of removal. After installation, operate the control panel controls to see whether it works properly.
4. Run the self-diagnosis function to confirm that there are no problems in the system ([see page 21-4](#)).



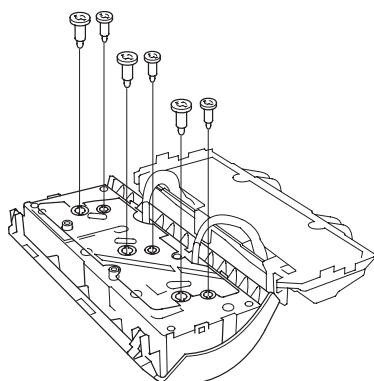


## Heater Control Panel Bulb Replacement

1. Discharge the static electricity (which accumulated on you when you removed the heater control panel) by touching the door striker or other body parts.
2. Remove the self-tapping screws, then carefully separate the heater control panel display (A) from the control panel (B). Do not kink or pull on the wires between the display and control panel. Do not touch the electronic components on the printed circuit board in the control panel.



3. Remove the bulb(s) with a flat-tip screw driver.



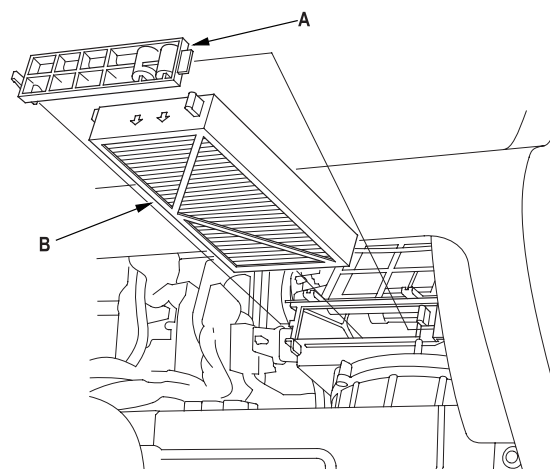
4. Install the bulb(s) in the reverse order of removal.

## Dust and Pollen Filter Replacement (With Air Conditioning)

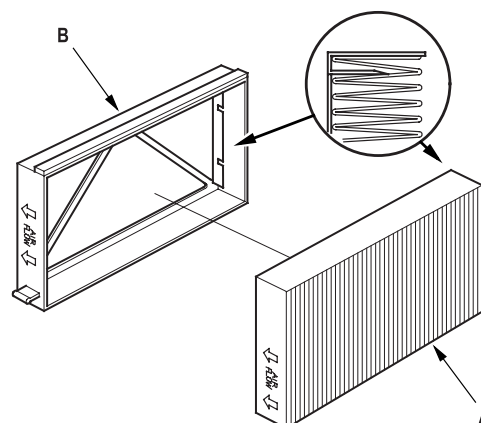
NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.

The dust and pollen filters should be replaced every 30,000 km (6,000 miles) or 12 months whichever comes first. Replace the filters more often if the air flow is less than usual.

1. Open the glove box. Remove the glove box stop on each side, then hang the glove box down ([see page 20-95](#)).
2. Remove the filter lid (A) from the blower unit, then pull out the first dust and pollen filter (B). Slide the second filter to the left, and pull it out.



3. Remove the filter (A) from the housing (B), and replace the filter.

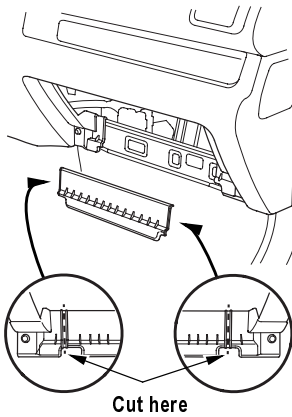


4. Install the filters in the reverse order of removal.

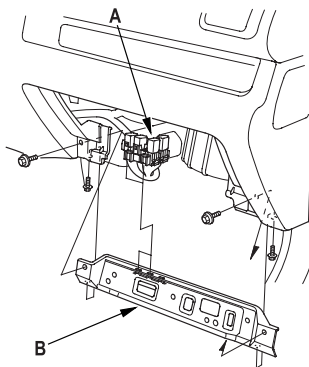
## Blower Unit Removal and Installation

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.

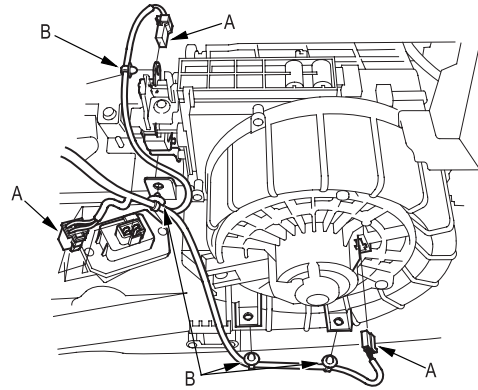
1. Remove the passenger's dashboard lower cover (see page 20-95), the right kick panel (see page 20-76), and the glove box (see page 20-95).
2. Cut the plastic cross brace in the glove box opening with diagonal cutters in the area shown. Remove and discard the plastic cross brace.



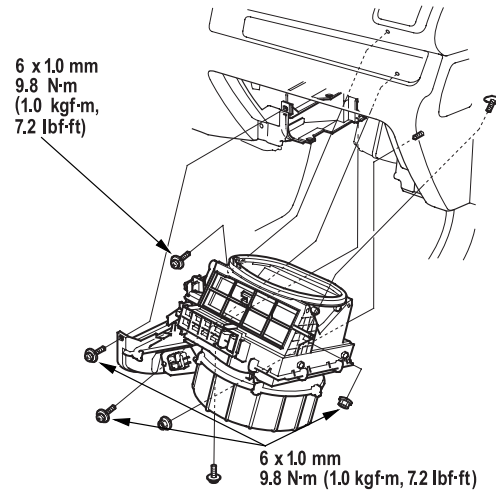
3. Remove the relays (A), then remove the bolts and the glove box frame (B).



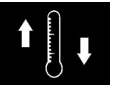
4. Remove the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
5. Disconnect the connectors (A) from the blower motor, the power transistor, and the recirculation control motor, then remove the wire harness clips (B).



6. Fold the carpet and pad back toward you. Remove the mounting bolts, the mounting nut, and the blower unit.



7. Install the unit in the reverse order of removal. Make sure that there is no air leakage.

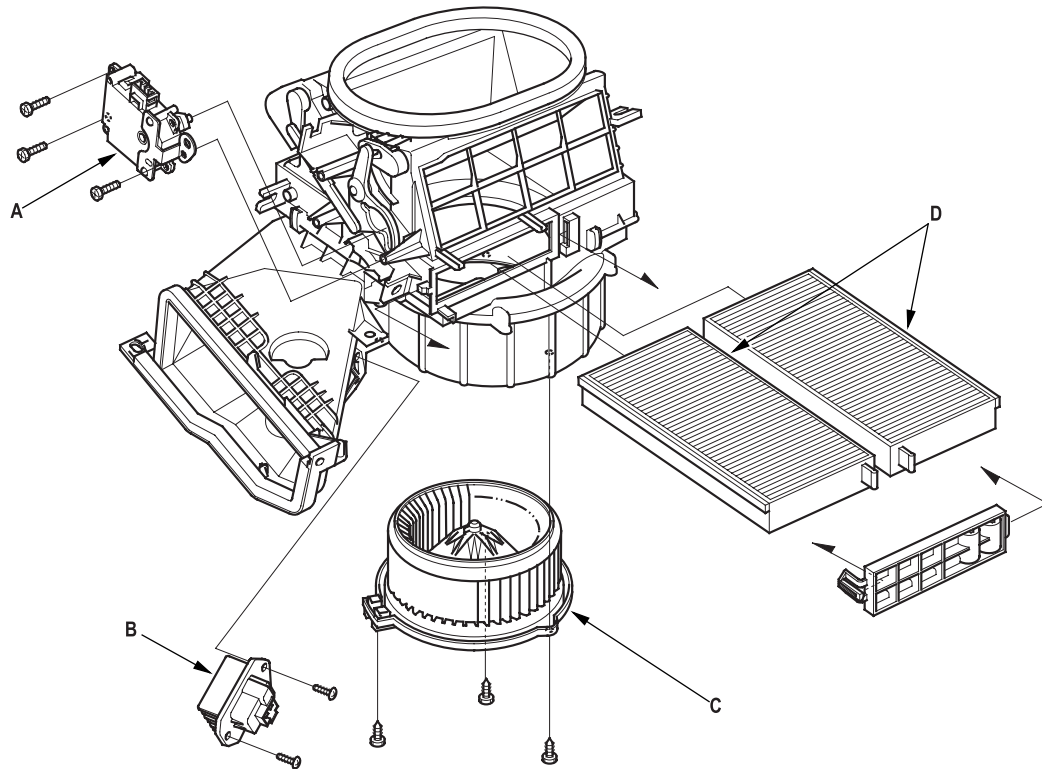


## Blower Unit Components Replacement

Note these items when overhauling the blower unit:

- The recirculation control motor (A), the power transistor (B), the blower motor (C), and the dust and pollen filters (with A/C)(D) can be replaced without removing the blower unit.
- Before reassembly, make sure that the recirculation control linkage and doors move smoothly.
- After reassembly, make sure the recirculation control motor runs smoothly ([see page 21-23](#)).

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.

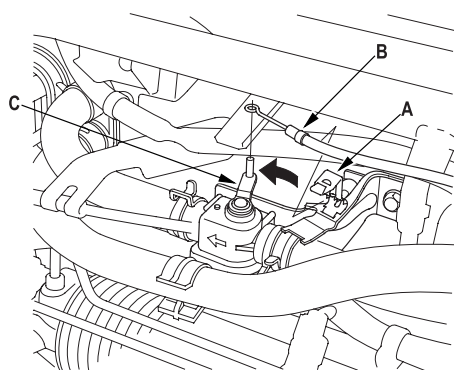


## Heater Unit/Core Replacement

SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations ([see page 23-14](#)), and precautions and procedures ([see page 23-16](#)) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

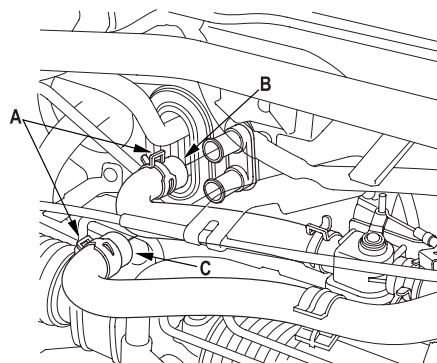
NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.

1. Make sure you have the anti-theft code for the radio, then write down the frequencies for the radio's preset buttons.
2. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
3. With air conditioning; disconnect the A/C line from the evaporator core ([see page 21-45](#)).
4. From under the hood, open the cable clamp (A), then disconnect the heater valve cable (B) from the heater valve arm (C). Turn the heater valve arm to the fully opened position as shown.

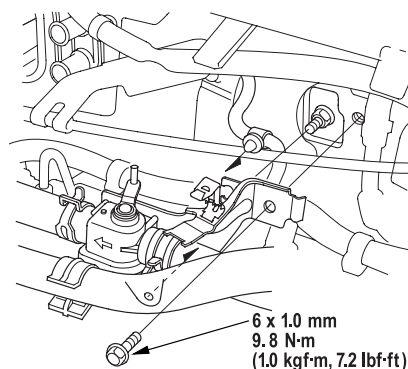


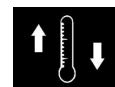
5. When the engine is cool, drain the engine coolant from the radiator ([see page 10-6](#)).

6. Slide the hose clamps (A) back, then disconnect the inlet heater hose (B) and the outlet heater hose (C) from the heater core. Engine coolant will run out when the hoses are disconnected; drain it into a clean drip pan. Be sure not to let coolant spill on the electrical parts or the painted surfaces. If any coolant spills, rinse it off immediately.

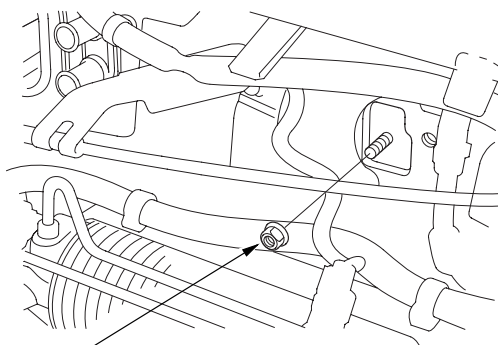


7. Remove the mounting bolt and the heater valve as shown.





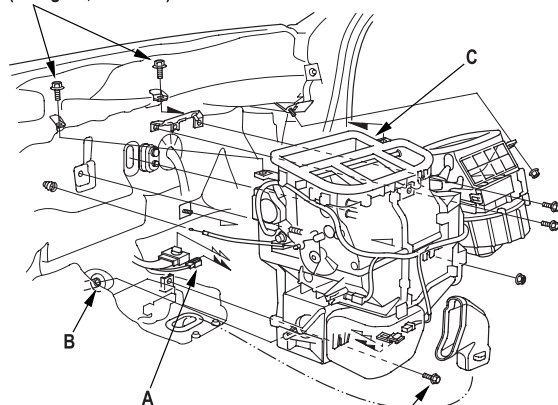
8. Remove the mounting nut from the heater unit. Take care not to damage or bend the fuel lines and the brake lines, etc.



8 x 1.25 mm 12 N·m (1.2 kgf·m, 8.7 lbf·ft)

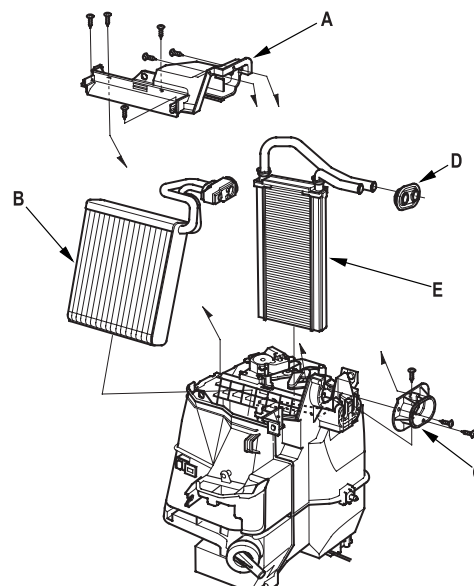
9. Remove the dashboard (see page 20-96).
10. Remove the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4)
11. Disconnect the connectors (A) from the heater unit, then disconnect the drain hose (B). Remove the mounting bolts and nuts, then remove the heater unit/Core (C).

6 x 1.0 mm  
9.8 N·m  
(1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)



6 x 1.0 mm  
9.8 N·m  
(1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)

12. Remove the self-tapping screws and the expansion valve cover (A). With air conditioning; carefully pull out the evaporator core (B) so you don't bend the inlet and outlet pipes. Remove the self-tapping screws and the flange cover (C), then remove the grommet (D), and carefully pull out the heater core (E) so you don't bend the inlet and outlet pipes.

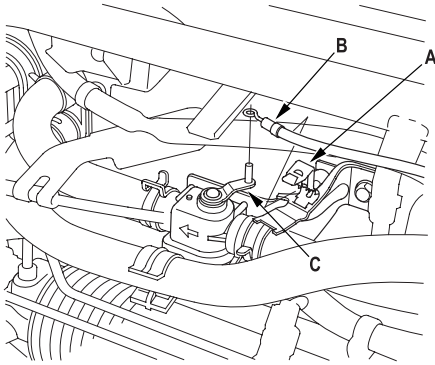


13. Install the heater core and the evaporator core (with A/C) in the reverse order of removal.
14. Install the heater unit in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Do not interchange the inlet and outlet heater hoses, and install the hose clamps securely.
  - Refill the cooling system with engine coolant (see page 10-6).
  - Be sure to connect the drain hose securely.
  - Adjust the heater valve cable (see page 21-30).
  - Make sure that there is no coolant leakage.
  - Make sure that there is no air leakage.
  - With air conditioning, refer to evaporator core replacement (see step 6 on page 21-45).

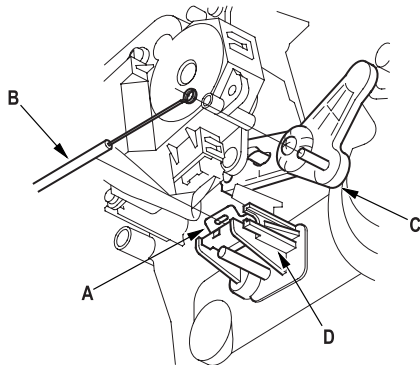
## Heater Valve Cable Adjustment

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.

1. From under the hood, open the cable clamp (A), then disconnect the heater valve cable (B) from the heater valve arm (C).

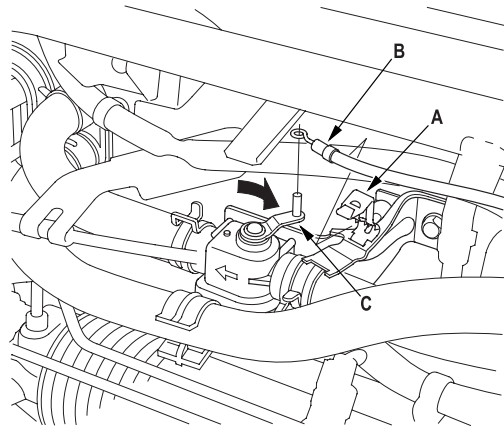


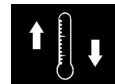
2. From under the dash, disconnect the heater valve cable housing from the cable clamp (A), and disconnect the heater valve cable (B) from the air mix control linkage (C).



3. Set the temperature control dial on Max Cool with the ignition switch ON (II).
4. Attach the heater valve cable (B) to the air mix control linkage (C) as shown above. Hold the end of the heater valve cable housing against the stop (D), then snap the heater valve cable housing into the cable clamp (A).

5. From under the hood, turn the heater valve arm (C) to the fully closed position as shown, and hold it. Attach the heater valve cable (B) to the heater valve arm, and gently pull on the heater valve cable housing to take up any slack, then install the heater valve cable housing into the cable clamp (A).

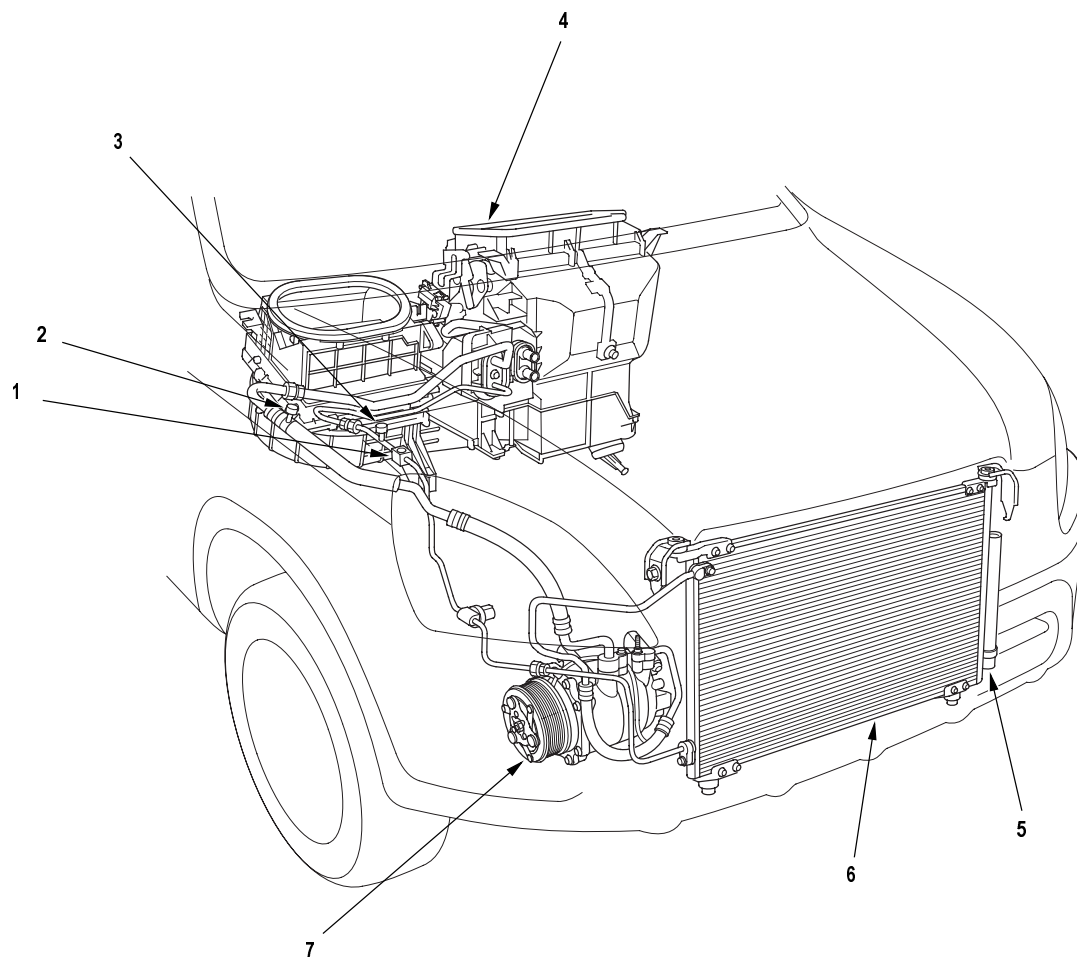




## Air Conditioning

### Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- 1 SIGHT GLASS
- 2 SERVICE VALVE (LOW PRESSURE SIDE)
- 3 SERVICE VALVE (HIGH PRESSURE SIDE)
- 4 EVAPORATOR CORE (Built-in the heater unit) Replacement, [page 21-45](#)

5 RECEIVER/DRYER

6 CONDENSER

7 COMPRESSOR

Replacement, [page 21-51](#)

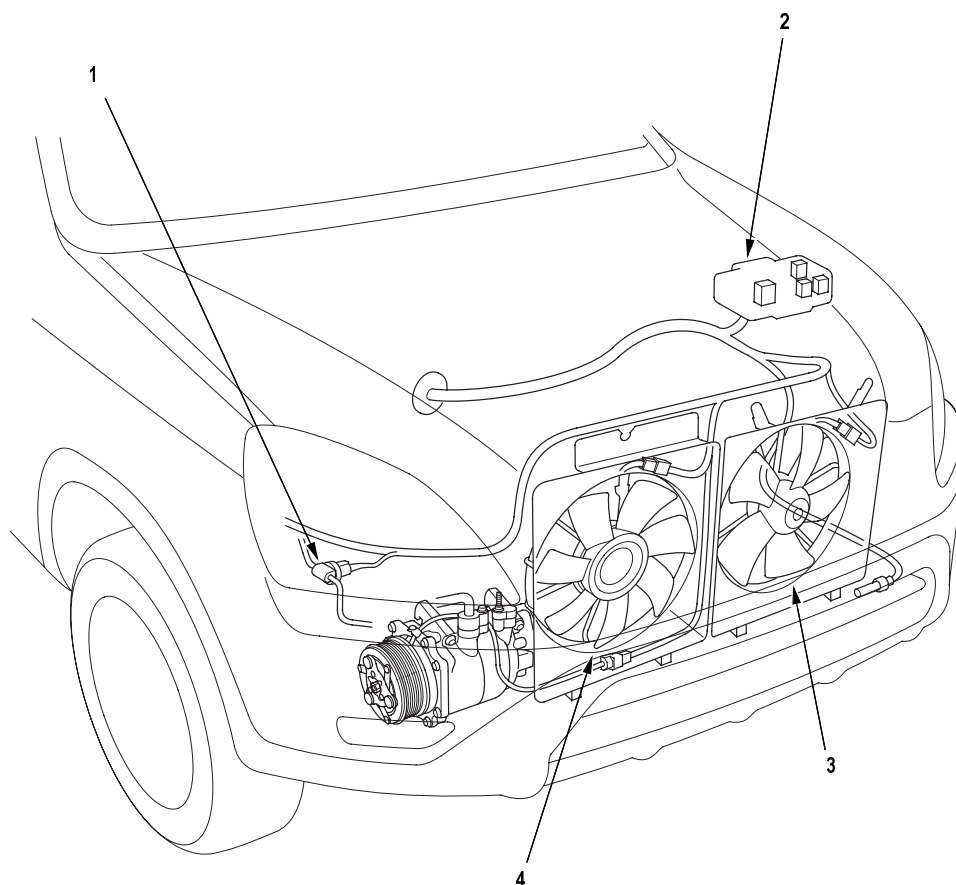
Replacement, [page 21-46](#); Clutch Check, [page 21-47](#); Clutch Overhaul, [page 21-48](#); Thermal Protector Check, [page 21-47](#); Thermal Protector Replacement, [page 21-50](#); Relief Valve Replacement, [page 21-50](#)

(cont'd)



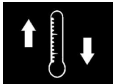
**Component Location Index (cont'd)**

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- 1 A/C PRESSURE SWITCH
- 2 BLOWER MOTOR RELAY, RADIATOR FAN RELAY, CONDENSER FAN RELAY, COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY  
(Located in the under-hood fuse/relay box) Test, [page 22A-60](#)
- 3 RADIATOR FAN
- 4 CONDENSER FAN





## A/C Service Tips and Precautions

⚠
**WARNING**
⚠

- Compressed air mixed with R-134a forms a combustible vapor.
- The vapor can burn or explode causing serious injury.
- Never use compressed air to pressure test R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioning systems.

⚠
**CAUTION**
⚠

- Air conditioning refrigerant or lubricant vapor can irritate your eyes, nose, or throat.
- Be careful when connecting service equipment.
- Do not breathe refrigerant or vapor.

The air conditioning system uses HFC-134a (R-134a) refrigerant and polyalkyleneglycol (PAG) refrigerant oil, which are not compatible with CFC-12 (R-12) refrigerant and mineral oil. Do not use R-12 refrigerant or mineral oil in this system, and do not attempt to use R-12 servicing equipment; damage to the air conditioning system or your servicing equipment will result. Separate the manifold gauge sets (pressure gauges, hoses, joints) for refrigerants R-12 and R-134a. Do not confuse them.

If accidental system discharge occurs, ventilate work area before resuming service.

R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioning systems should not be pressure tested or leak tested with compressed air.

Additional health and safety information may be obtained from the refrigerant and lubricant manufacturers.

- Always disconnect the negative cable from the battery whenever replacing air conditioning parts.
- Keep moisture and dirt out of the system. When disconnecting any lines, plug or cap the fittings immediately; don't remove the caps or plugs until just before you reconnect each line.
- Before connecting any hose or line, apply a few drops of refrigerant oil to the O-ring.
- When tightening or loosening a fitting, use a second wrench to support the matching fitting.
- When discharging the system, don't let refrigerant escape too fast; it will draw the compressor oil out of the system.

## A/C Refrigerant Oil Replacement

Recommended PAG oil:

KEIHIN SP-10:

- P/N 38897-P13-003: 120 mℓ (4 fl-oz, 4.2 Imp-oz)
- P/N 38898-P13-003: 250 mℓ (8 1/3 fl-oz, 8.8 Imp-oz)
- P/N 38899-P13-A01: 40 mℓ (1 1/3 fl-oz, 1.4 Imp-oz)

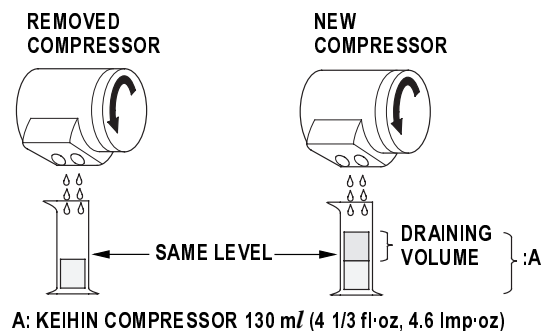
Add the recommended refrigerant oil in the amount listed if you replace any of the following parts.

- To avoid contamination, do not return the oil to the container once dispensed, and never mix it with other refrigerant oils.
- Immediately after using the oil, reinstall the cap on the container, and seal it to avoid moisture absorption.
- Do not spill the refrigerant oil on the vehicle; it may damage the paint; if it gets on the paint, wash it off immediately.

Condenser .....	35 mℓ (1 1/6 fl-oz, 1.2 Imp-oz)
Front evaporator .....	40 mℓ (1 1/3 fl-oz, 1.4 Imp-oz)
Rear evaporator .....	30 mℓ (1 fl-oz, 1.1 Imp-oz)
Line or hose .....	10 mℓ (1/3 fl-oz, 0.4 Imp-oz)
Leakage repair .....	25 mℓ (5/6 fl-oz, 0.9 Imp-oz)
Compressor .....	For compressor replacement,

subtract the volume of oil drained from the removed compressor from A, and drain the calculated volume of oil from the new compressor: A - Volume of removed compressor = Volume to drain from new compressor.

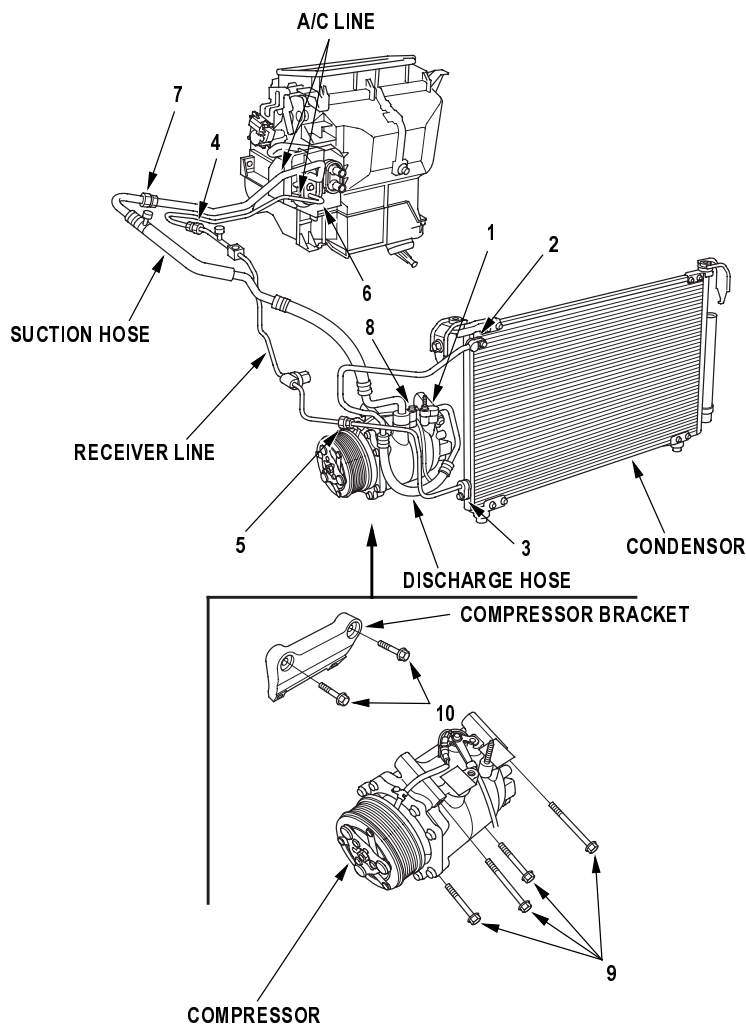
NOTE: Even if no oil is drained from the removed compressor, don't drain more than 50 mℓ (1 2/3 fl-oz, 1.8 Imp-oz) from the new compressor.



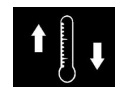
(cont'd)

**A/C Refrigerant Oil Replacement (cont'd)**

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- 1 Discharge hose to the compressor (6 x 1.0 mm) : 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)
- 2 Discharge hose to the condenser (6 x 1.0 mm) : 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)
- 3 Receiver line to the condenser (6 x 1.0 mm) : 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)
- 4 Receiver line to the A/C line : 13 N·m (1.3 kgf·m, 9.4 lbf·ft)
- 5 Receiver line A to the receiver line B (16 x 1.5 mm) : 13 N·m (3.2 kgf·m, 23 lbf·ft)
- 6 A/C line to the evaporator (6 x 1.0 mm) : 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)
- 7 Suction hose to the A/C line : 31 N·m (3.2 kgf·m, 23 lbf·ft)
- 8 Suction hose to the compressor (6 x 1.0 mm) : 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)
- 9 Compressor to the compressor bracket (8 x 1.25 mm) : 22 N·m (2.2 kgf·m, 16 lbf·ft)
- 10 Compressor bracket to the engine block (10 x 1.25 mm) : 44 N·m (4.5 kgf·m, 33 lbf·ft)

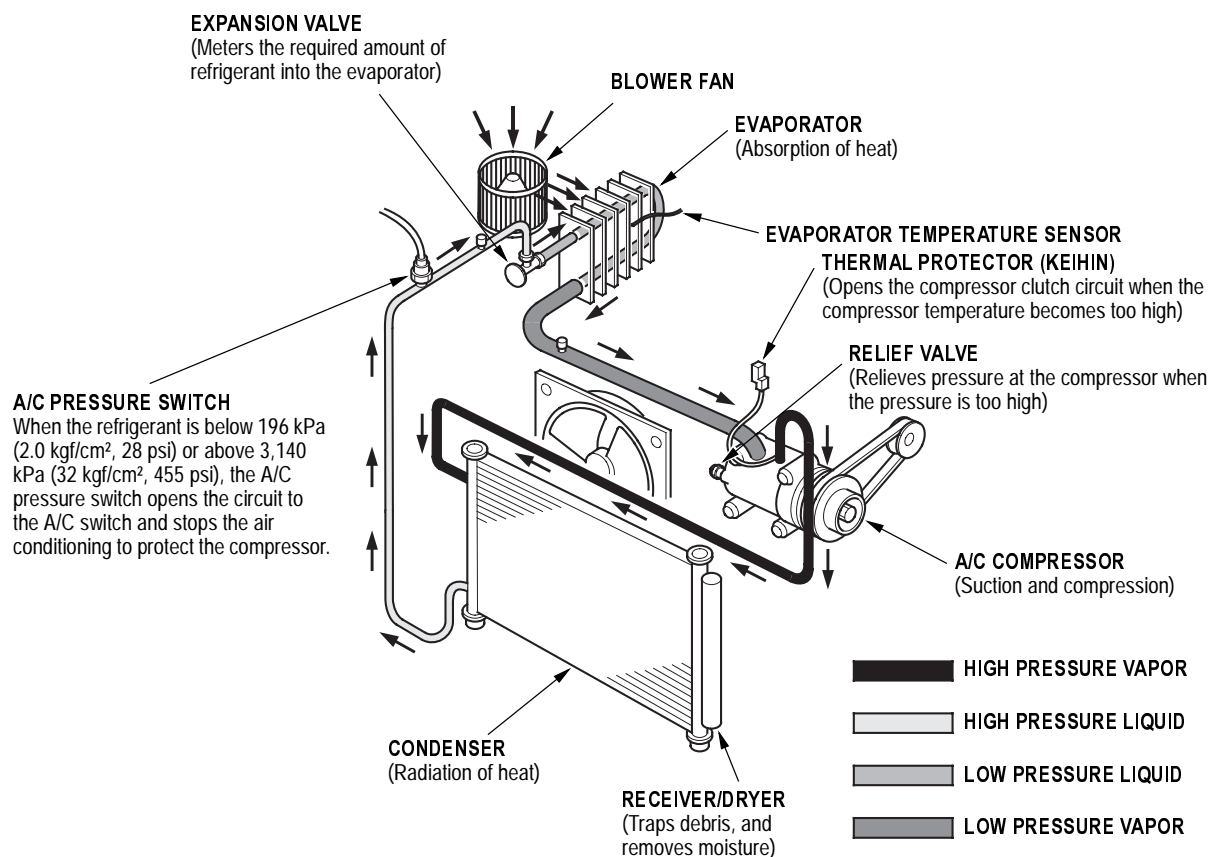


## Symptom Troubleshooting Index

Symptom	Diagnostic procedure	Also check for
Condenser fan does not run at all (but radiator fan runs with the A/C on)	Condenser Fan Circuit Troubleshooting ( <a href="#">see page 21-38</a> )	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown fuse No. 1 (20A) in the under-hood fuse/relay box, and No. 14 (10A) in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>Poor ground at G201</li> <li>Cleanliness and tightness of all connectors</li> </ul>
Both fans do not run with the A/C on	Radiator and Condenser Fans Common Circuit Troubleshooting ( <a href="#">see page 21-39</a> )	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown fuse No. 1 (20A) and No. 4 (20A) in the under-hood fuse/relay box, and No. 14 (10A) in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>Poor ground at G201</li> <li>Cleanliness and tightness of all connectors</li> </ul>
Compressor clutch does not engage	Compressor Clutch Circuit Troubleshooting ( <a href="#">see page 21-40</a> )	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown fuse No. 1 (20A) in the under-hood fuse/relay box, and No. 14 (10A) in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>Cleanliness and tightness of all connectors</li> </ul>
A/C System does not come on (both fans and compressor)	A/C Pressure Switch Circuit Troubleshooting ( <a href="#">see page 21-42</a> )	Cleanliness and tightness of all connectors

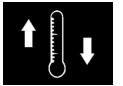
## System Description

The air conditioning system removes heat from the passenger compartment by circulating refrigerant through the system as shown below.

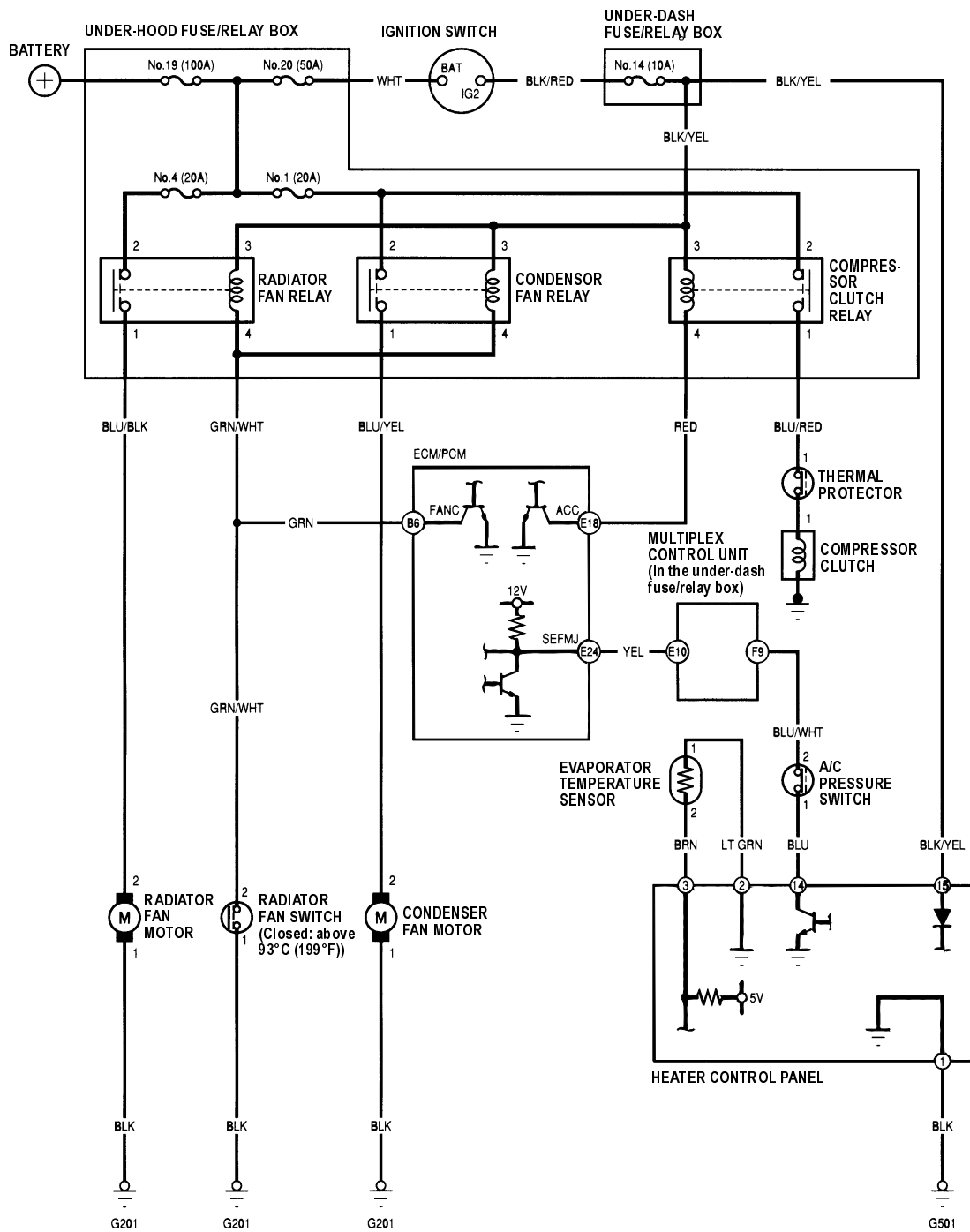


This vehicle uses HFC-134a (R-134a) refrigerant which does not contain chlorofluorocarbons. Pay attention to the following service items:

- Do not mix refrigerants CFC-12 (R-12) and HFC-134a (R-134a). They are not compatible.
- Use only the recommended polyalkyleneglycol (PAG) refrigerant oil (KEIHIN SP-10) designed for the R-134a compressor. Inter-mixing the recommended (PAG) refrigerant oil with any other refrigerant oil will result in compressor failure.
- All A/C system parts (compressor, discharge line, suction line, evaporator, condenser, receiver/dryer, expansion valve, O-rings for joints) have to be proper for refrigerant R-134a. Do not confuse with R-12 parts.
- Use a halogen gas leak detector designed for refrigerant R-134a.
- Use a vacuum pump adapter which is equipped with a check valve to prevent the backflow of the vacuum pump oil.
- Separate the manifold gauge sets (pressure gauges, hoses, joints) for refrigerants R-12 and R-134a. Do not confuse them.



## Circuit Diagram



## Condenser Fan Circuit Troubleshooting

1. Check the No. 1 (20A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box, and the No. 14 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

*Are the fuses OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Replace the fuse(s), and recheck.■

2. Remove the condenser fan relay from the under-hood fuse/relay box, and test it ([see page 22A-60](#)).

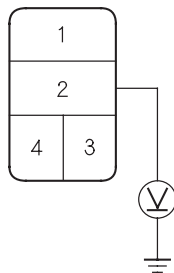
*Is the relay OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Replace the condenser fan relay.■

3. Measure the voltage between the No. 2 terminal of the condenser fan relay 4P socket and body ground.

CONDENSER FAN RELAY 4P SOCKET



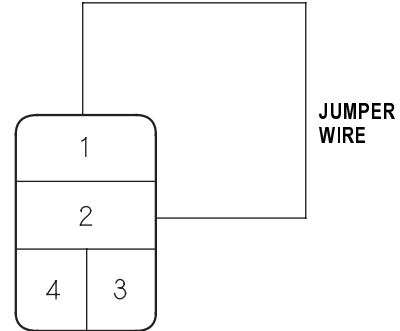
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Replace the under-hood fuse/relay box.■

4. Connect the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals of the condenser fan relay 4P socket with a jumper wire.

CONDENSER FAN RELAY 4P SOCKET



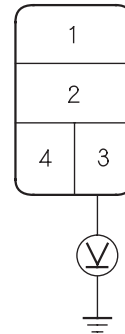
*Does the condenser fan run?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Go to step 8.

5. Disconnect the jumper wire.
6. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
7. Measure the voltage between the No. 3 terminal of the condenser fan relay 4P socket and body ground.

CONDENSER FAN RELAY 4P SOCKET

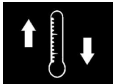


*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Replace the under-hood fuse/relay box.■

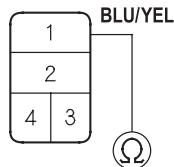
**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 14 fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box and the condenser fan relay socket in the under-hood fuse/relay box.■

8. Disconnect the jumper wire.



9. Disconnect the condenser fan 2P connector.
10. Check for continuity between the No. 1 terminal of the condenser fan relay 4P socket and the No. 2 terminal of the condenser fan 2P connector.

CONDENSER FAN RELAY 4P SOCKET



CONDENSER FAN 2P CONNECTOR

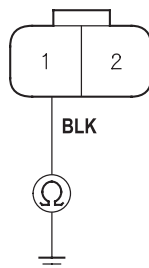
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 11.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the condenser fan relay socket in the under-hood fuse/relay box and the condenser fan.■

11. Check for continuity between the No. 1 terminal of the condenser fan 2P connector and body ground.

CONDENSER FAN 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Replace the condenser fan motor.■

**No** Check for an open in the wire between the condenser fan and body ground. If the wire is OK, check for poor ground at G201.■

## Radiator and Condenser Fans Common Circuit Troubleshooting

1. Check the No. 1 (20A) and No. 4 (20A) fuses in the under-hood fuse/relay box, and the No. 14 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

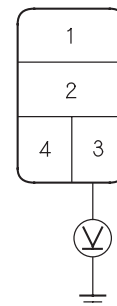
*Are the fuses OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Replace the fuse(s), and recheck.■

2. Remove the condenser fan relay from the under-hood fuse/relay box.
3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
4. Measure the voltage between the No. 3 terminal of the condenser fan relay 4P socket and body ground.

CONDENSER FAN RELAY 4P SOCKET



*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

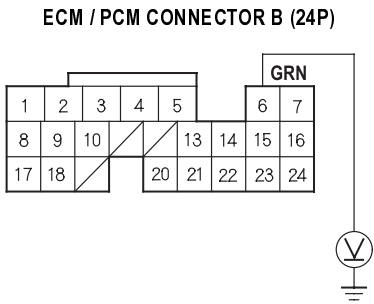
**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 14 fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box and the radiator fan relay socket, and the condenser fan relay socket.■

5. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
6. Reinstall the condenser fan relay.
7. Make sure the A/C switch is OFF.
8. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

(cont'd)

Radiator and Condenser Fans Common  
Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

9. Measure the voltage between the No. 6 terminal of ECM/PCM connector B (24P) and body ground with the ECM/PCM connectors connected.



Wire side of female terminals

Is there battery voltage?

- Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at ECM/PCM connector B (24P). If the connections are good, substitute a known-good ECM/PCM, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■
- No** Repair open in the wire between the radiator fan relay socket, the condenser fan relay socket and the ECM/PCM.■

Compressor Clutch Circuit Troubleshooting

1. Check the No. 1 (20A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box, and the No. 14 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

Are the fuses OK?

- Yes** Go to step 2.
- No** Replace the fuse(s), and recheck.■

2. Check the engine coolant temperature (use the Honda PGM Tester PGM-FI data list if possible).

Is the coolant temperature above normal?

- Yes** Troubleshoot and repair the cause of the high engine coolant temperature.■
- No** Go to step 3.

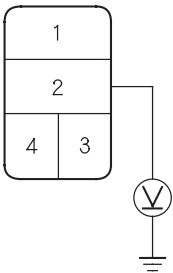
3. Remove the compressor clutch relay from the under-hood fuse/relay box, and test it (see page 22A-60).

Is the relay OK?

- Yes** Go to step 4.
- No** Replace the compressor clutch relay.■

4. Measure the voltage between the No. 2 terminal of the compressor clutch relay 4P socket and body ground.

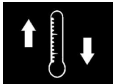
CONDENSOR FAN RELAY 4P SOCKET



Is there battery voltage?

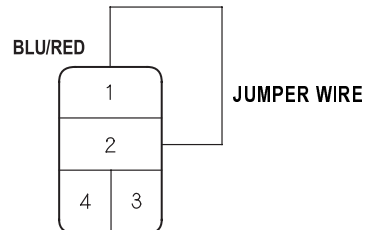
- Yes** Go to step 5.
- No** Replace the under-hood fuse/relay box.■





5. Connect the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals of the compressor clutch relay 4P socket with a jumper wire.

COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY 4P SOCKET



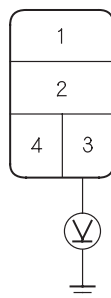
*Does the compressor clutch click ?*

**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Go to step 14.

6. Disconnect the jumper wire.
7. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
8. Measure the voltage between the No. 3 terminal of the compressor clutch relay 4P socket and body ground.

COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY 4P SOCKET



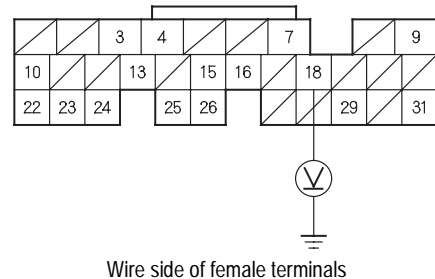
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 14 fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box and the compressor clutch relay socket.■

9. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
10. Reinstall the compressor clutch relay.
11. Make sure the A/C switch is OFF.
12. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
13. Measure the voltage between the No. 18 terminal of ECM/PCM connector E (31P) and body ground with the ECM/PCM connectors connected.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR E (31P)



*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at ECM/PCM connector E (31P). If the connections are good, substitute a known-good ECM/PCM, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the compressor clutch relay and the ECM/PCM.■

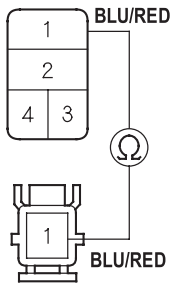
14. Disconnect the jumper wire.
15. Disconnect the compressor clutch 1P connector.

(cont'd)

## Compressor Clutch Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

16. Check for continuity between the No. 1 terminal of the compressor clutch relay 4P socket and the No. 1 terminal of the compressor clutch 1P connector.

COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY 4P SOCKET



COMPRESSOR CLUTCH 1P CONNECTOR  
Terminal side of male terminals

*Is there continuity?*

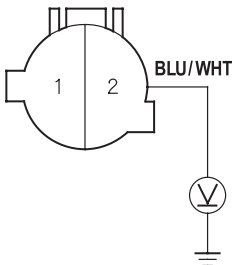
**Yes** Check the KEIHIN compressor clutch clearance, the thermal protector, and the compressor clutch field coil (see page 21-47).■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the compressor clutch relay socket and the compressor clutch.■

## A/C Pressure Switch Circuit Troubleshooting

1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
2. Turn the blower switch on, and check for blower motor operation.  
*Does the blower motor run on all speeds?*  
**Yes** Go to step 3.  
**No** Troubleshoot the blower motor circuit (see page 21-13).
3. Disconnect the A/C pressure switch 2P connector.
4. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
5. Measure the voltage between the No. 2 terminal of the A/C pressure switch 2P connector and body ground.

A/C PRESSURE SWITCH 2P CONNECTOR



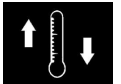
Wire side of female terminals

*Is there 5V or more?*

**Yes** Go to step 6.

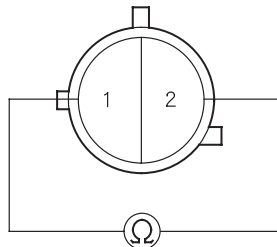
**No** Go to step 12.

6. Turn the ignition switch OFF.



7. Check for continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals of the A/C pressure switch.

A/C PRESSURE SWITCH



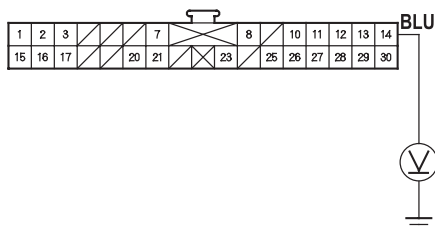
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Go to step 14.

8. Reconnect the A/C pressure switch 2P connector.
9. Disconnect the heater control panel 30P connector.
10. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
11. Measure the voltage between the No. 14 terminal of the heater control panel 30P connector and body ground.

HEATER CONTROL PANEL 30P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

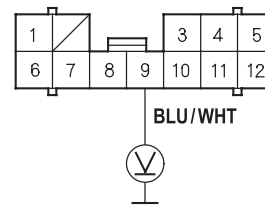
**Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the heater control panel 30P connector and at the A/C pressure switch 2P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good heater control panel, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original heater control panel.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the heater control panel and the A/C pressure switch.■

12. Make sure the A/C switch is OFF.

13. Measure the voltage between the No. 9 terminal of under-dash fuse/relay box connector F (12P) and body ground with the under-dash fuse/relay box connectors connected.

UNDER - DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX CONNECTOR F (12P)



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there 5 V or more?*

**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the under-dash fuse/relay box and the A/C pressure switch.■

**No** Refer to the multiplex control system (see page 22A-227).■

NOTE: Check for multiplex codes in mode 1. Follow the troubleshooting for any codes found. If no codes are found, substitute a known-good multiplex control unit and a PCM one at a time.

14. Check for proper A/C system pressure.

*Is the pressure within specifications?*

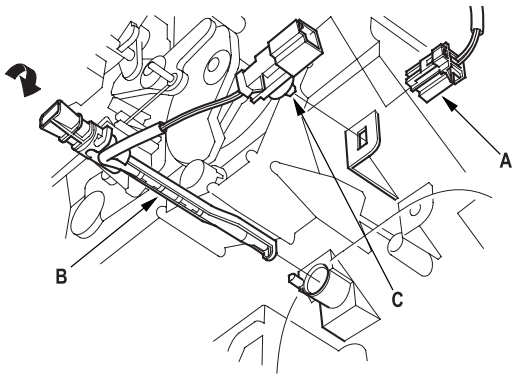
**Yes** Replace the A/C pressure switch.■

**No** Repair the A/C pressure problem.■

Evaporator Temperature Sensor Replacement

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.

- 1. Disconnect the 2P connector (A) from the evaporator temperature sensor (B), then remove the connector clip (C). Turn the evaporator temperature sensor counterclockwise to the stop, and carefully pull out it.

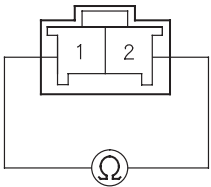


- 2. Install the sensor in the reverse order of removal.

Evaporator Temperature Sensor Test

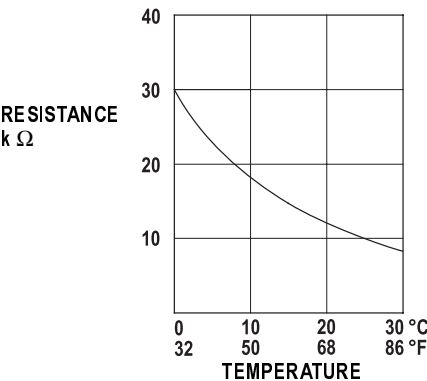
- 1. Dip the sensor in ice water, and measure the resistance between its terminals.

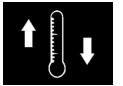
EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR



Terminal side of male terminals

- 2. Then pour hot water on the sensor, and check for a change in resistance.
- 3. Compare the resistance readings with the specifications shown in the graph; the resistance should be within the specifications.

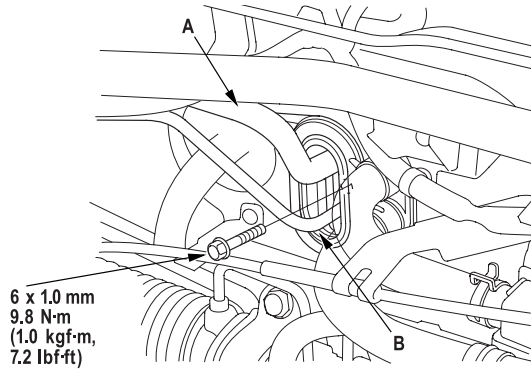




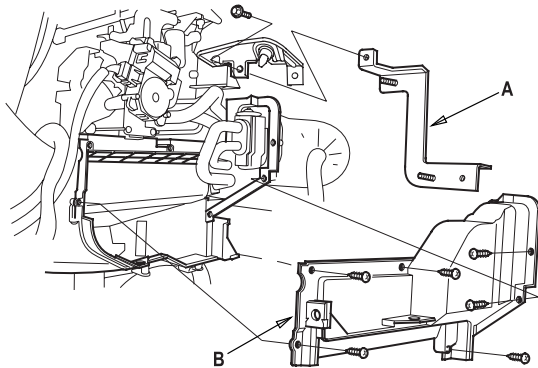
## Evaporator Core Replacement

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.

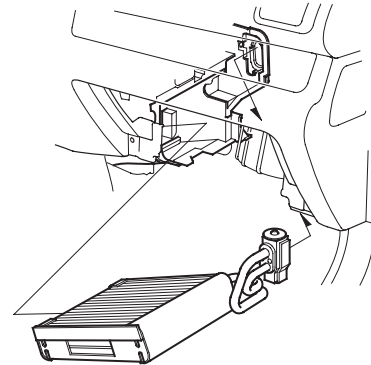
1. Recover the refrigerant with a recovery/recycling/charging station (see page 21-53).
2. Remove the bolt, then disconnect the A/C line from the evaporator core.



3. Remove the blower unit (see page 21-26).
4. Remove the bolt and the ECM/PCM bracket (A). Remove the self-tapping screws and the expansion valve cover (B).



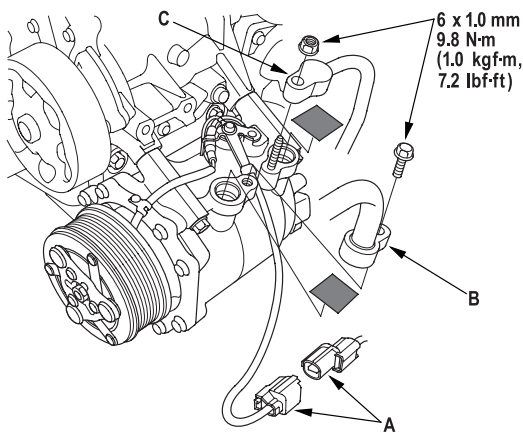
5. Carefully pull out the evaporator core without bending the pipes.



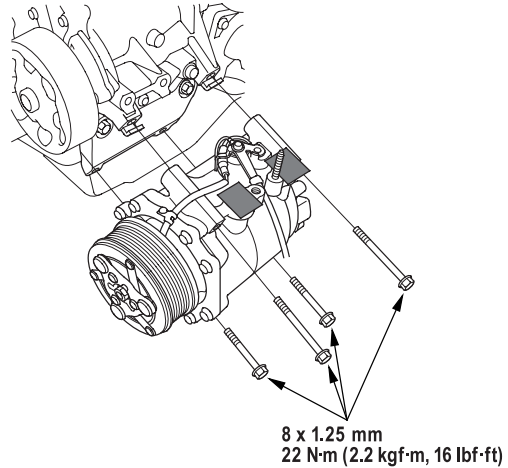
6. Install the core in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - If you're installing a new evaporator core, add refrigerant oil (KEIHIN SP-10) (see page 21-33).
  - Replace the O-rings with new ones at each fitting, and apply a thin coat of refrigerant oil before installing them. Be sure to use the right O-rings for HFC-134a (R-134a) to avoid leakage.
  - Immediately after using the oil, reinstall the cap on the container, and seal it to avoid moisture absorption.
  - Do not spill the refrigerant oil on the vehicle; it may damage the paint; if the refrigerant oil contacts the paint, wash it off immediately.
  - Charge the system (see page 21-55).

## Compressor Replacement

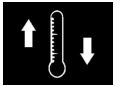
1. If the compressor is marginally operable, run the engine at idle speed, and let the air conditioning work for a few minutes, then shut the engine off.
2. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
3. Recover the refrigerant with a recovery/recycling/charging station ([see page 21-53](#)).
4. Remove the radiator reservoir tank ([see page 10-10](#)).
5. Remove the alternator ([see page 04-32](#)).
6. Disconnect the compressor clutch connector (A), remove the bolt and nut, then disconnect the suction line (B) and the discharge line (C) from the compressor. Plug or cap the lines immediately after disconnecting them to avoid moisture and dust contamination.



7. Remove the mounting bolts and the compressor. Be careful not to damage the radiator fins when removing the compressor.

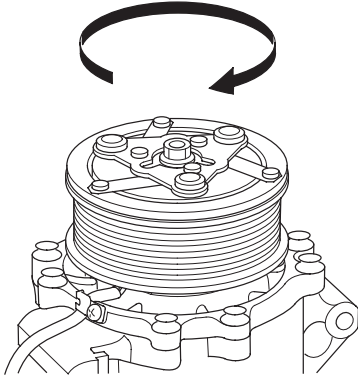


8. Install the compressor in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - If you're installing a new compressor, you must calculate the amount of refrigerant oil to be removed from it ([see page 21-33](#)).
  - Replace the O-rings with new ones at each fitting, and apply a thin coat of refrigerant oil before installing them. Be sure to use the right O-rings for HFC-134a (R-134a) to avoid leakage.
  - Use refrigerant oil (KEIHIN SP-10) for HFC-134a KEIHIN spiral type compressor only.
  - To avoid contamination, do not return the oil to the container once dispensed, and never mix it with other refrigerant oils.
  - Immediately after using the oil, reinstall the cap on the container, and seal it to avoid moisture absorption.
  - Do not spill the refrigerant oil on the vehicle; it may damage the paint; if the refrigerant oil contacts the paint, wash it off immediately.
  - Be careful not to damage the radiator fins when installing the compressor and the condenser fan shroud.
  - Charge the system ([see page 21-55](#))
  - Enter the anti-theft code for the radio, then enter the customer's radio station presets.



## Compressor Clutch Check

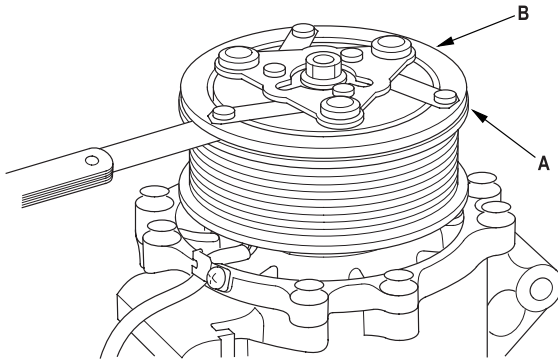
1. Check the armature plate for discoloration, peeling, or other damage. If there is damage, replace the clutch set (see page 21-48).
2. Check the rotor pulley bearing play and drag by rotating the rotor pulley by hand. Replace the clutch set with a new one if it is noisy or has excessive play/drag (see page 21-48).



3. Measure the clearance between the rotor pulley (A) and the armature plate (B) all the way around. If the clearance is not within specified limits, remove the armature plate (see page 21-48) and add or remove shims as needed to increase or decrease clearance.

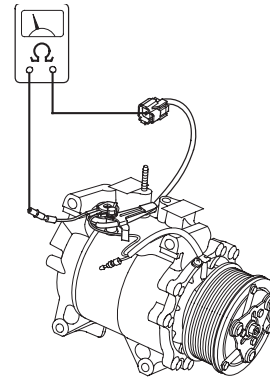
**Clearance:**  $0.5 \pm 0.15 \text{ mm}$  ( $0.020 \pm 0.006 \text{ in.}$ )

**NOTE:** The shims are available in four thicknesses: 0.1 mm, 0.2 mm, 0.4 mm, and 0.5 mm.



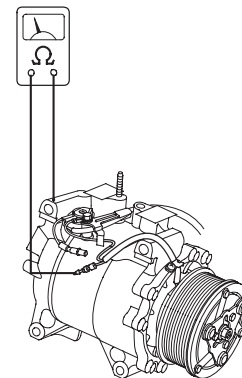
4. Release the field coil connector from the holder, then disconnect it. Check the thermal protector for continuity. If there is no continuity, replace the thermal protector (see page 21-50).

**NOTE:** The thermal protector will have no continuity above 122 to 128°C (252 to 262°F). When the temperature drops below 116 to 104°C (241 to 219°F), the thermal protector will have continuity.



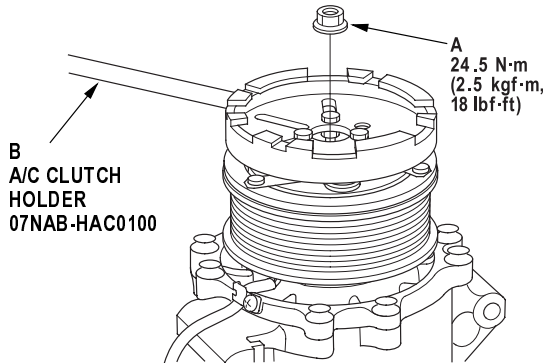
5. Check resistance of the field coil. If resistance is not within specifications, replace the field coil (see page 21-48).

**Field Coil Resistance:** 3.05 - 3.35 ohms at 20°C (68°F)



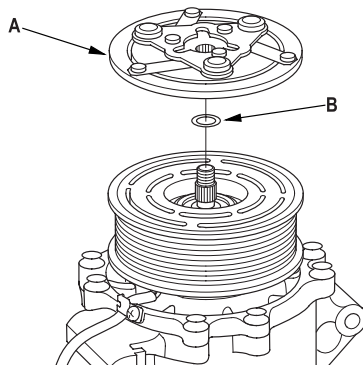
### Compressor Clutch Overhaul

1. Remove the center nut (A) while holding the armature plate with the special tool (B).

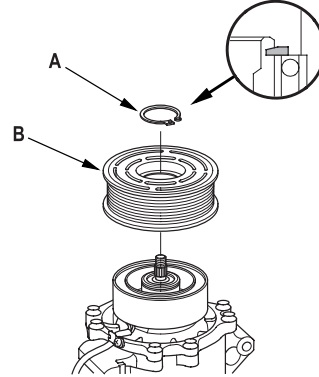


2. Remove the armature plate (A) and shim(s) (B), taking care not to lose the shim(s). If the clutch needs adjustment, increase or decrease the number and thickness of shims as necessary, then reinstall the armature plate, and recheck its clearance ([see page 21-47](#)).

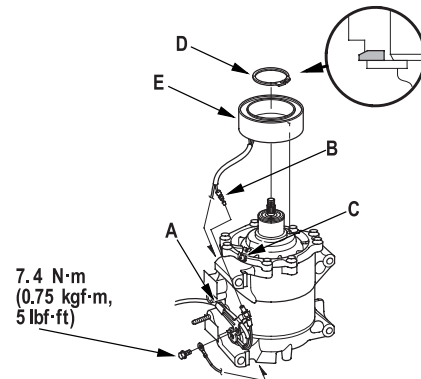
NOTE: The shims are available in four thickness: 0.1 mm, 0.2 mm, 0.4 mm and 0.5 mm.



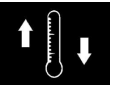
3. If you are replacing the field coil, remove the snap ring (A) with snap ring pliers, then remove the rotor pulley (B). Be careful not to damage the rotor pulley and compressor.



4. Remove the bolt and holder (A), then disconnect the field coil connector (B). Loosen the clamp screw (C) to free the field coil wire. Remove the snap ring (D) with snap ring pliers, then remove the field coil (E). Be careful not to damage the field coil and compressor.



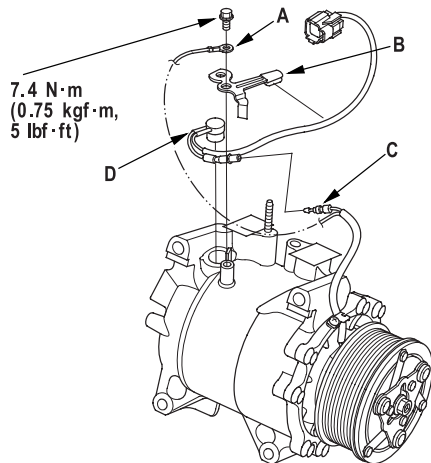




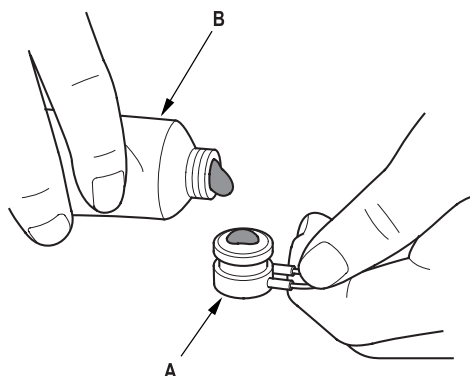
5. Reassemble the clutch in the reverse order of disassembly, and note these items:
  - Install the field coil with the wire side facing down, and align the boss on the field coil with the hole in the compressor.
  - Clean the rotor pulley and compressor sliding surfaces with contact cleaner or other non-petroleum solvent.
  - Install new snap rings, note the installation direction, and make sure they are fully seated in the groove.
  - Make sure that the rotor pulley turns smoothly after it's reassembled.
  - Route and clamp the wires properly or they can be damaged by the rotor pulley.

### Compressor Thermal Protector Replacement

1. Remove the bolt, the ground terminal (A), and the holder (B). Disconnect the field coil connector (C), then remove the thermal protector (D).



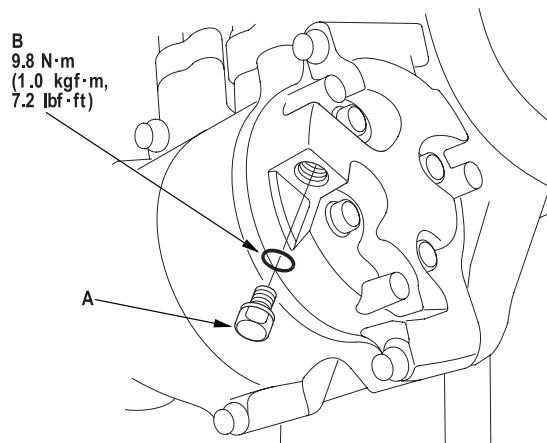
2. Replace the thermal protector (A) with a new one, and apply silicone sealant (B) to the bottom of the thermal protector.



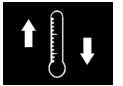
3. Install in the reverse order of removal.

### Compressor Relief Valve Replacement

1. Recover the refrigerant with a recovery/recycling/charging station (see page 21-53).
2. Remove the relief valve (A), and the O-ring (B). Plug the opening to keep foreign matter from entering the system and the compressor oil from running out.

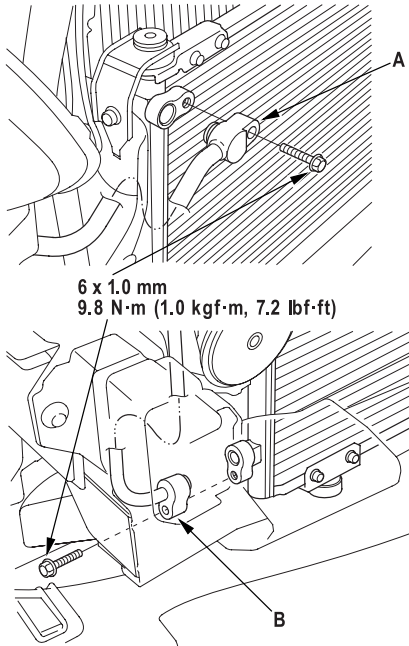


3. Clean the mating surfaces.
4. Install a new O-ring on the relief valve, and apply a thin coat of refrigerant oil to the O-ring.
5. Remove the plug, and install and tighten the relief valve.
6. Charge the system (see page 21-55).

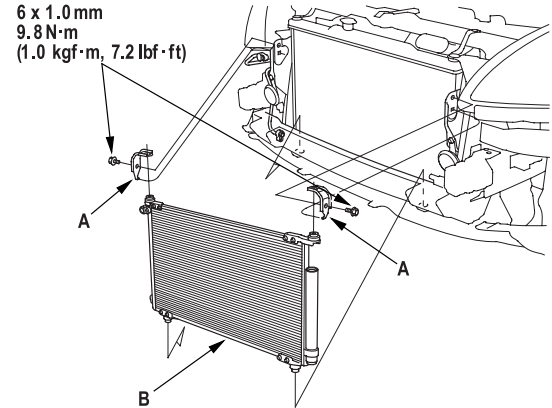


## Condenser Replacement

1. Recover the refrigerant with a recovery/recycling/charging station (see page 21-55).
2. Remove the front bumper (see page 20-130).
3. Remove the bolts, then disconnect the discharge line (A) and the receiver line (B) from the condenser. Plug or cap the lines immediately after disconnecting them to avoid moisture and dust contamination.



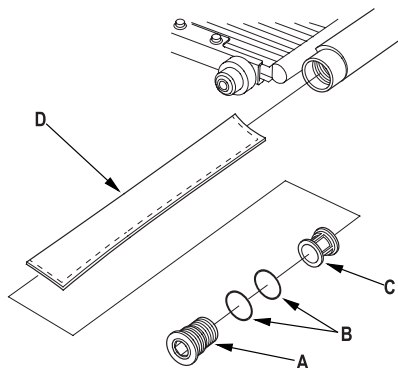
4. Remove the bolts and mounting brackets (A), then remove the condenser (B) by lifting it up. Be careful not to damage the radiator and condenser fins when removing the condenser.



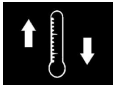
5. Install the condenser in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - If you're installing a new condenser, add refrigerant oil (KEIHIN SP-10) (see page 21-33).
  - Replace the O-rings with new ones at each fitting, and apply a thin coat of refrigerant oil before installing them. Be sure to use the right O-rings for HFC-134a (R-134a) to avoid leakage.
  - Immediately after using the oil, reinstall the cap on the container, and seal it to avoid moisture absorption.
  - Do not spill the refrigerant oil on the vehicle; it may damage the paint; if the refrigerant oil contacts the paint, wash it off immediately.
  - Be careful not to damage the radiator and condenser fins when installing the condenser.
  - Charge the system (see page 21-55).

### Receiver/Dryer Desiccant Replacement

1. Remove the condenser ([see page 21-51](#)).
2. Remove the cap (A) from the bottom of the condenser, then remove the O-rings (B), the filter (C) and the desiccant (D).



3. Install the desiccant in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Replace the O-rings with new ones, and apply a thin coat of refrigerant oil (KEIHIN SP-10) before installing them.
  - Be sure to use the right O-rings for HFC-134a (R-134a) to avoid leakage.



## Refrigerant Recovery



### CAUTION



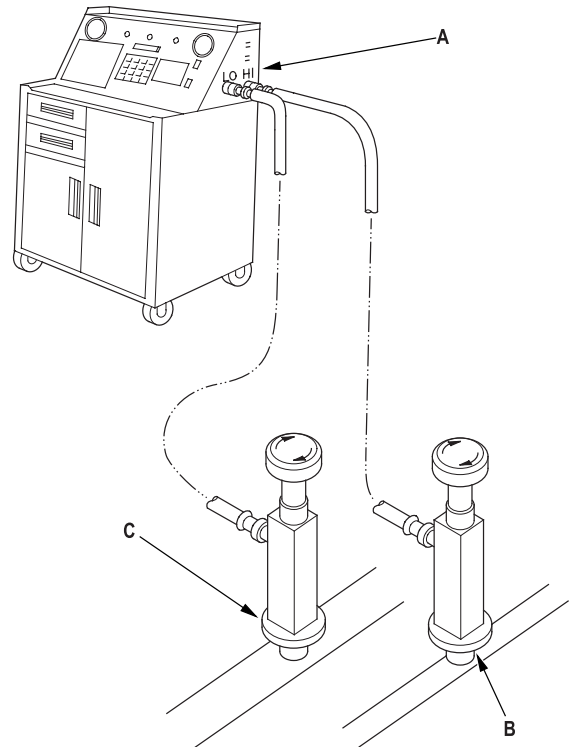
- Air conditioning refrigerant or lubricant vapor can irritate your eyes, nose, or throat.
- Be careful when connecting service equipment.
- Do not breathe refrigerant or vapor.

Use only service equipment for refrigerant HFC-134a (R-134a).

If accidental system discharge occurs, ventilate work area before resuming service.

Additional health and safety information may be obtained from the refrigerant and lubricant manufacturers.

1. Connect a R-134a refrigerant recovery/recycling/charging station (A) to the high-pressure service port (B) and the low-pressure service port (C), as shown, following the equipment manufacturer's instructions.



2. Measure the amount of refrigerant oil removed from the A/C system after the recovery process is completed. Be sure to put the same amount of new refrigerant oil back into the A/C system before charging.

**System Evacuation****CAUTION**

- Air conditioning refrigerant or lubricant vapor can irritate your eyes, nose, or throat.
- Be careful when connecting service equipment.
- Do not breathe refrigerant or vapor.

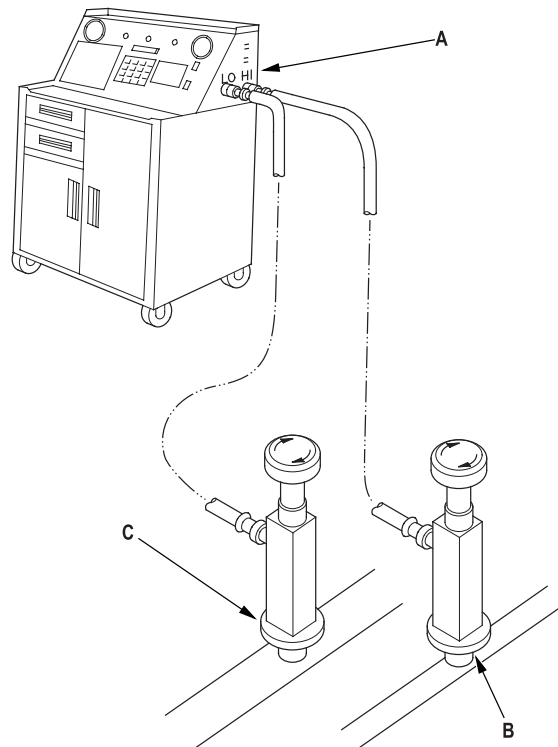
Use only service equipment for refrigerant HFC-134a (R-134a).

If accidental system discharge occurs, ventilate work area before resuming service.

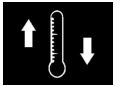
Additional health and safety information may be obtained from the refrigerant and lubricant manufacturers.

1. When an A/C system has been opened to the atmosphere, such as during installation or repair, it must be evacuated using a R-134a refrigerant recovery/recycling/charging station. (If the system has been open for several days, the receiver/dryer should be replaced, and the system should be evacuated for several hours.)

2. Connect a R-134a refrigerant recovery/recycling/charging station (A) to the high-pressure service port (B) and the low-pressure service port (C), as shown, following the equipment manufacturer's instructions. Evacuate the system.



3. If the low-pressure does not reach more than 93.3 kPa (700 mmHg, 27.6 in.Hg) in 15 minutes, there is probably a leak in the system. Partially charge the system, and check for leaks (see step 3 on [page 21-56](#)).



## System Charging

⚠
CAUTION
⚠

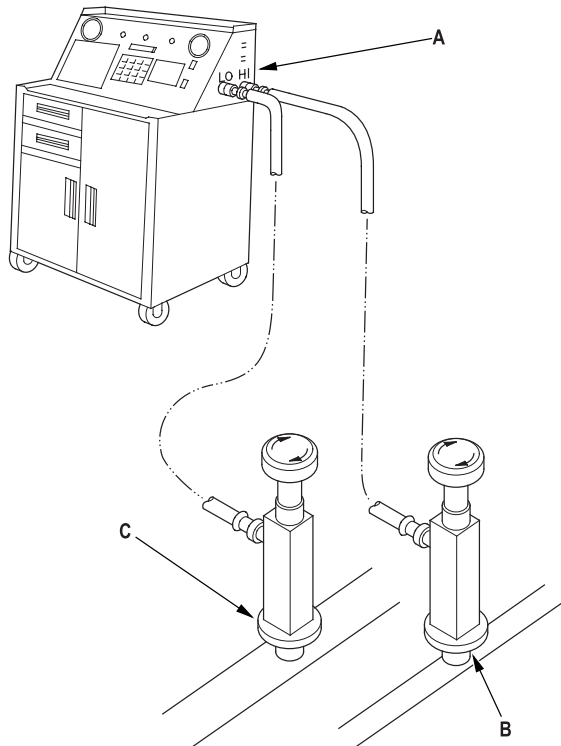
- Air conditioning refrigerant or lubricant vapor can irritate your eyes, nose, or throat.
- Be careful when connecting service equipment.
- Do not breathe refrigerant or vapor.

Use only service equipment for refrigerant HFC-134a (R-134a).

If accidental system discharge occurs, ventilate work area before resuming service.

Additional health and safety information may be obtained from the refrigerant and lubricant manufacturers.

1. Connect a R-134a refrigerant recovery/recycling/charging station (A) to the high-pressure service port (B) and the low-pressure service port (C), as shown, following the equipment manufacturer's instructions.



2. Evacuate the system ([see page 21-54](#)).
3. Add the same amount of new refrigerant oil to the system that was removed during recovery. Use only KEIHIN SP-10 refrigerant oil.
4. Charge the system with the specified amount of R-134a refrigerant. Do not overcharge the system; the compressor will be damaged.  
Select the appropriate units of measure for your refrigerant charging station.  
**Refrigerant capacity:**  
480 to 530 g  
0.48 to 0.53 kg  
1.06 to 1.17 lbs  
16.9 to 18.7 oz
5. Check for refrigerant leaks ([see page 21-56](#)).
6. Check for system performance ([see page 21-58](#)).

## Refrigerant Leak Test

**WARNING**

- Compressed air mixed with R-134a forms a combustible vapor.
- The vapor can burn or explode causing serious injury.
- Never use compressed air to pressure test R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioning system.

**CAUTION**

- Air conditioning refrigerant or lubricant vapor can irritate your eyes, nose, or throat.
- Be careful when connecting service equipment.
- Do not breathe refrigerant or vapor.

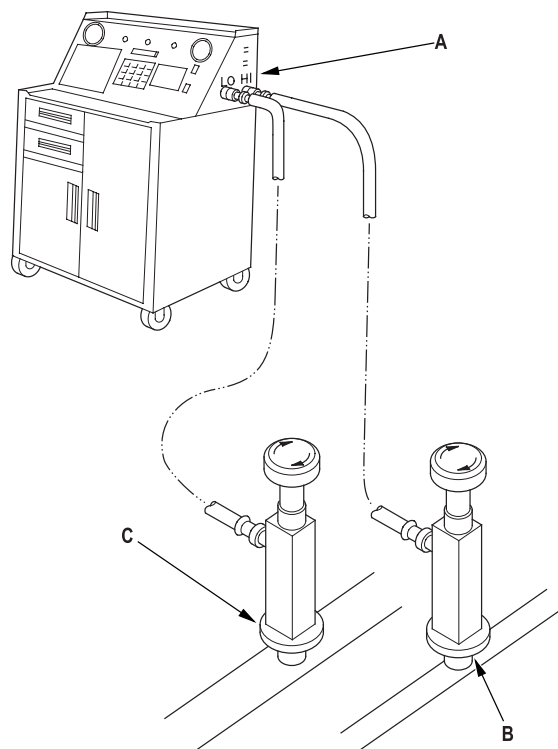
Use only service equipment for refrigerant HFC-134a (R-134a).

If accidental system discharge occurs, ventilate work area before resuming service.

R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioning systems should not be pressure tested or leak tested with compressed air.

Additional health and safety information may be obtained from the refrigerant and lubricant manufacturers.

1. Connect a R-134a refrigerant recovery/recycling/charging station (A) to the high-pressure service port (B) and the low-pressure service port (C), as shown, following the equipment manufacturer's instructions.



2. Open high pressure valve to charge the system to the specified capacity, then close the supply valve, and remove the charging system couplers.

Select the appropriate units of measure for your refrigerant charging station.

**Refrigerant capacity:**

**480 to 530 g**

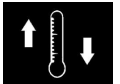
**0.48 to 0.53 kg**

**1.06 to 1.17 lbs**

**16.9 to 18.7 oz**

3. Check the system for leaks using a R-134a refrigerant leak detector with an accuracy of 14 g (0.5 oz) per year or better.
4. If you find leaks that require the system to be opened (to repair or replace hoses, fittings, etc.), recover the system.
5. After checking and repairing leaks, the system must be evacuated.





## A/C System Tests

### Pressure Test

Test results	Related symptoms	Probable cause	Remedy
Discharge (high) pressure abnormally high	After stopping compressor, pressure drops to about 196 kPa (2.0 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 28 psi) quickly, and then falls gradually.	Air in system	Discharge, evacuate (see page 21-54), and recharge with specified amount (see page 21-55).
	No bubbles in sight glass when condenser is cooled by water.	Excessive refrigerant in system	Discharge, evacuate, and recharge with specified amount.
	Reduced or no air flow through condenser.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clogged condenser or radiator fins</li> <li>Condenser or radiator fan not working properly</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clean.</li> <li>Check voltage and fan rpm.</li> <li>Check fan direction.</li> </ul>
	Line to condenser is excessively hot.	Restricted flow of refrigerant in system	Restricted lines
Discharge pressure abnormally low	Excessive bubbles in sight glass; condenser is not hot.	Insufficient refrigerant in system	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check for leak.</li> <li>Charge system.</li> </ul>
	High and low pressures are balanced soon after stopping compressor. Low side is higher than normal.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty compressor discharge valve</li> <li>Faulty compressor seal</li> </ul>	Replace the compressor.
	Outlet of expansion valve is not frosted, low-pressure gauge indicates vacuum.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty expansion valve</li> <li>Moisture in system</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Replace.</li> <li>Discharge, evacuate, and recharge with specified amount.</li> </ul>
Suction (low) pressure abnormally low	Excessive bubbles in sight glass; condenser is not hot.	Insufficient refrigerant in system	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Repair the leaks.</li> <li>Discharge, evacuate, and recharge with specified amount.</li> <li>Charge as required.</li> </ul>
	Expansion valve is not frosted, and low-pressure line is not cold. Low-pressure gauge indicates vacuum.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Frozen expansion valve (Moisture in system)</li> <li>Faulty expansion valve</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Discharge, evacuate, and recharge with specified amount.</li> <li>Replace the expansion valve.</li> </ul>
	Discharge temperature is low, and the air flow from vents is restricted.	Frozen evaporator	Run the fan with compressor off, then check evaporator temperature sensor.
	Expansion valve is frosted.	Clogged expansion valve	Clean or replace.
Suction pressure abnormally high	Low-pressure hose and check joint are cooler than the temperature around evaporator.	Expansion valve open too long	Repair or replace.
	Suction pressure is lowered when condenser is cooled by water.	Excessive refrigerant in system	Discharge, evacuate, and recharge with specified amount.
	High and low-pressure are equalized as soon as the compressor is stopped, and both gauges fluctuate while running.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty gasket</li> <li>Faulty high-pressure valve</li> <li>Foreign particle stuck in high-pressure valve</li> </ul>	Replace the compressor.
Suction and discharge pressures abnormally high	Reduced air flow through condenser.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clogged condenser or radiator fins</li> <li>Condenser or radiator fan not working properly</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clean.</li> <li>Check voltage and fan rpm.</li> <li>Check fan direction.</li> </ul>
	No bubbles in sight glass when condenser is cooled by water.	Excessive refrigerant in system	Discharge, evacuate, and recharge with specified amount.
Suction and discharge pressure abnormally low	Low-pressure hose and metal end areas are cooler than evaporator.	Clogged or kinked low-pressure hose parts	Repair or replace.
	Temperature around expansion valve is too low compared with that around receiver/dryer.	Clogged high-pressure line	Repair or replace.
Refrigerant leaks	Compressor clutch is dirty.	Compressor shaft seal leaking	Replace the compressor.
	Compressor bolt(s) are dirty.	Leaking around bolt(s)	Tighten bolt(s) or replace compressor.
	Compressor gasket is wet with oil.	Gasket leaking	Replace the compressor.

(cont'd)

**A/C System Tests (cont'd)****Performance Test****WARNING**

- Compressed air mixed R-134a forms a combustible vapor.
- The vapor can burn or explode causing serious injury.
- Never use compressed air to pressure test R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioning systems.

**CAUTION**

- Air conditioning refrigerant or lubricant vapor can irritate your eyes, nose, or throat.
- Be careful when connecting service equipment.
- Do not breathe refrigerant or vapor.

The performance test will help determine if the air conditioner system is operating within specifications.

Use only service equipment for refrigerant HFC-134a (R-134a).

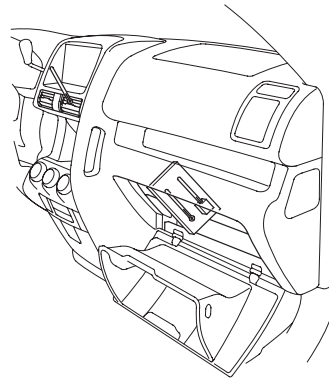
If accidental system discharge occurs, ventilate work area before resuming service.

R-134a service equipment or vehicle air conditioning systems should not be pressure tested or leak tested with compressed air.

Additional health and safety information may be obtained from the refrigerant and lubricant manufacturers.

1. Connect a R-134a refrigerant recover/recycling/charging station to the high-pressure service port and the low-pressure service port, following the equipment manufacturer's instructions.

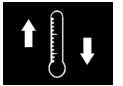
2. Insert a thermometer in the center vent.



3. Test conditions:

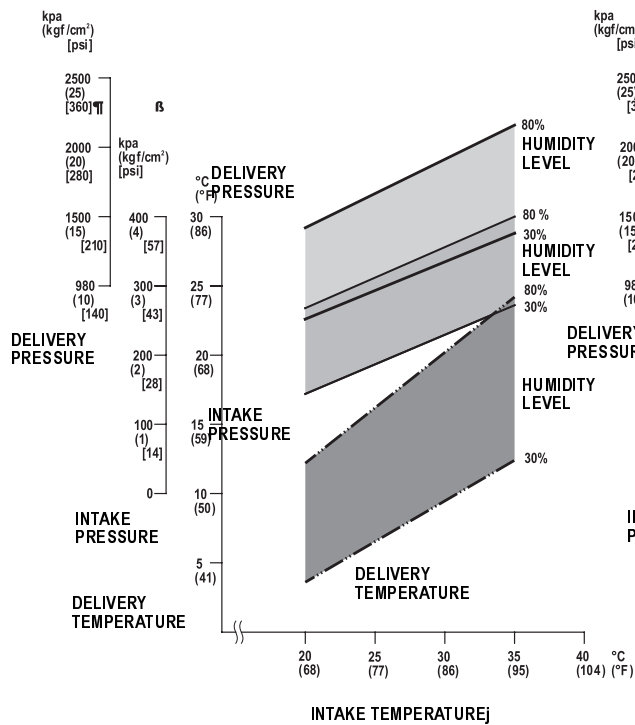
- Avoid direct sunlight.
- Open the hood.
- Open the front doors.
- Set the temperature control dial to Max Cool, the mode control dial to Vent and the recirculation control lever to Recirculate.
- Turn the A/C switch on and the fan switch on Max.
- Run the engine at 1,500 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ).
- No driver or passengers in vehicle.

4. After running the air conditioning for 10 minutes under the above test conditions, read the delivery temperature from the thermometer in the center vent, the intake temperature near the blower unit behind the glove box and the high and low system pressure from the A/C gauges.

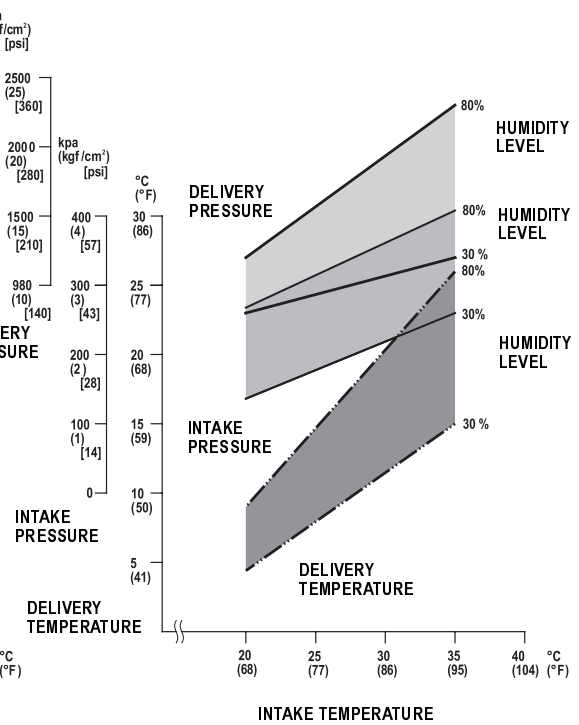


5. To complete the charts:
  - Mark the delivery temperature along the vertical line.
  - Mark the intake temperature (ambient air temperature) along the bottom line.
  - Draw a line straight up from the air temperature to the humidity.
  - Mark a point 10 % above and 10 % below the humidity level.
  - From each point, draw a horizontal line across the delivery temperature.
  - The delivery temperature should fall between the two lines.
  - Complete the low-side pressure test and high-side pressure test in the same way.
  - Any measurements outside the line may indicate the need for further inspection.

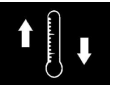
LHD model:



RHD model:



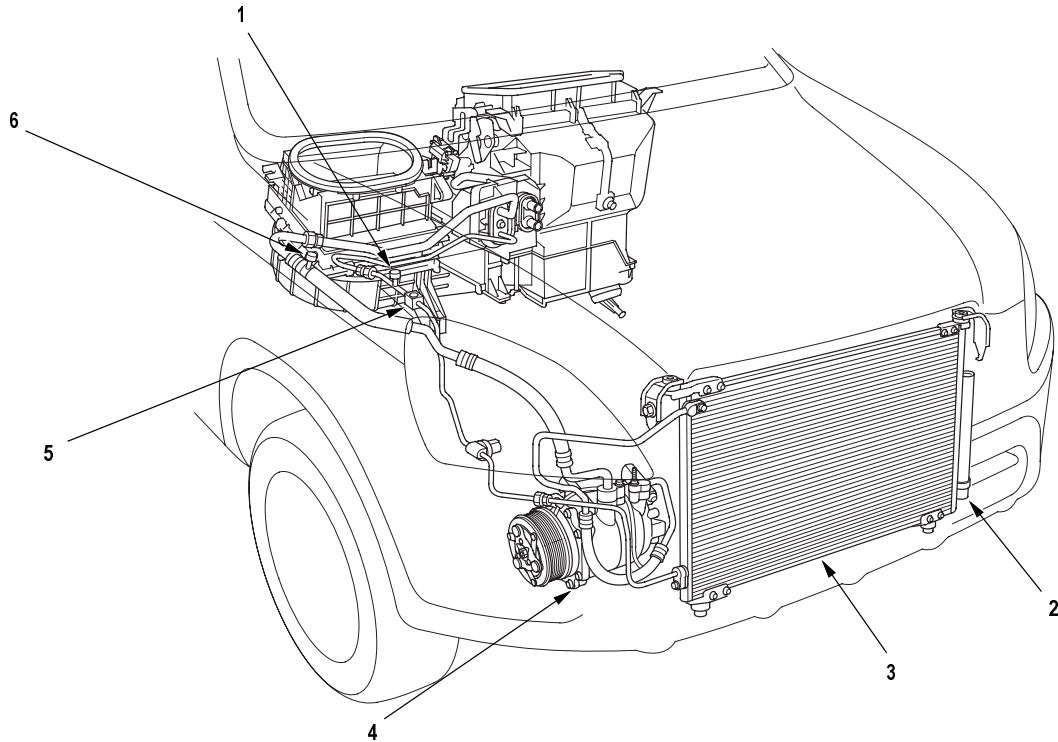




## Climate Control

### Component Location Index

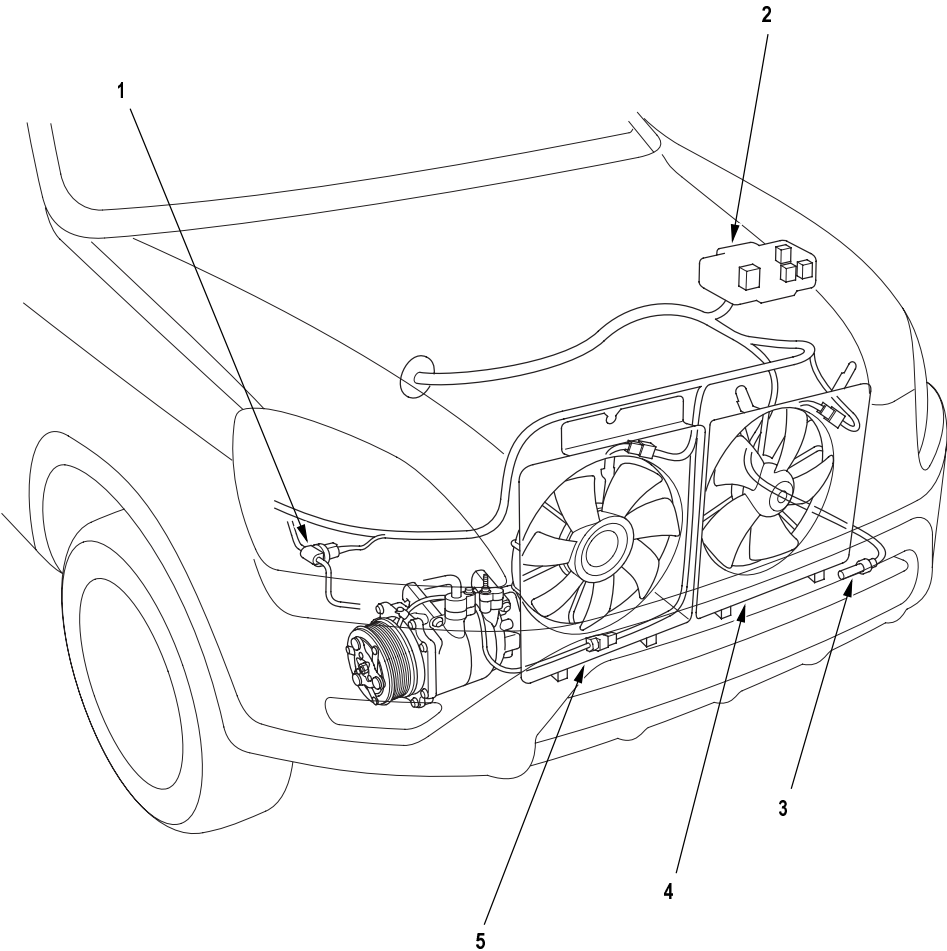
NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- 1 SERVICE VALVE (HIGH PRESSURE SIDE)
- 2 RECEIVER/DRYER
- 3 CONDENSER Replacement, [page 21-51](#)
- 4 COMPRESSOR Replacement, [page 21-46](#); Clutch Check, [page 21-47](#); Clutch Overhaul, [page 21-48](#); Thermal Protector Check, [page 21-47](#); Thermal Protector Replacement, [page 21-50](#); Relief Valve Replacement, [page 21-50](#)
- 5 SIGHT GLASS
- 6 SERVICE VALVE (LOW PRESSURE SIDE)

Component Location Index (cont'd)

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.

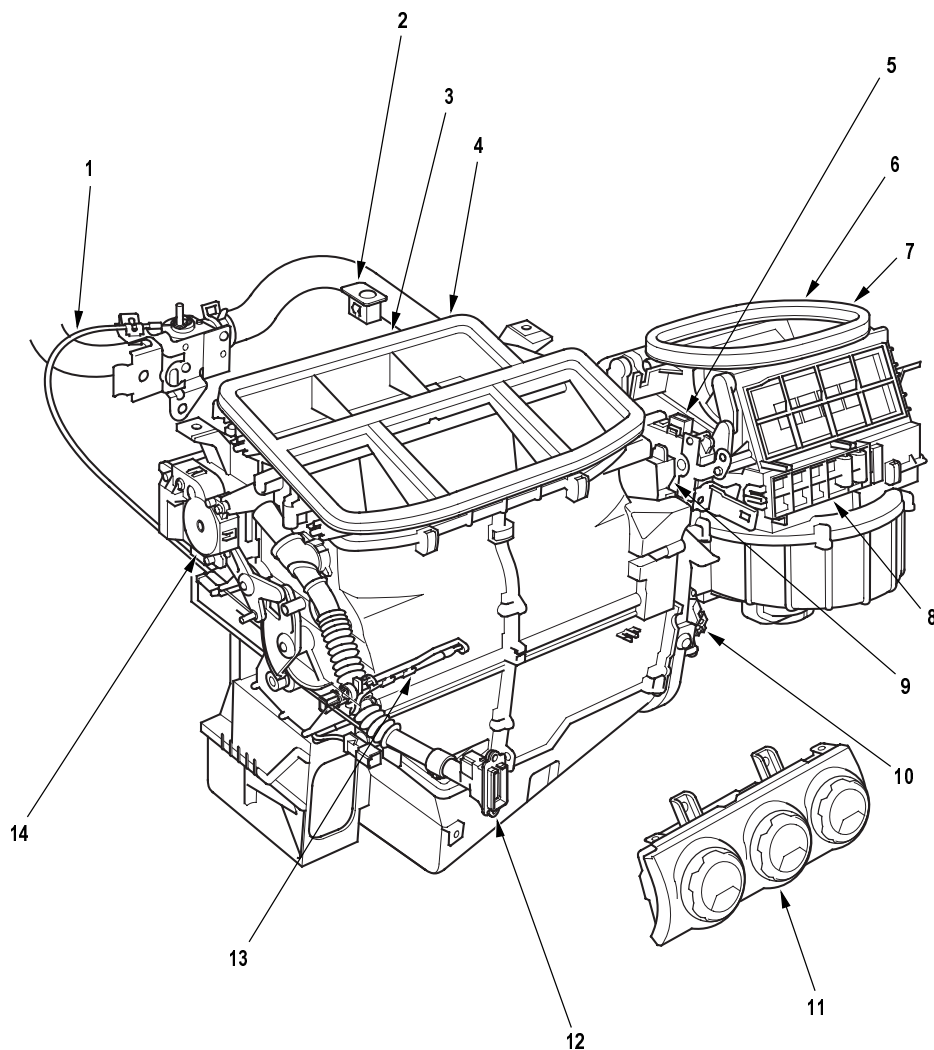
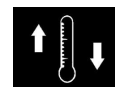


- 1    A/C PRESSURE SWITCH
- 2    BLOWER MOTOR RELAY, RADIATOR FAN RELAY,  
CONDENSER FAN RELAY, COMPRESSOR CLUTCH RELAY  
(Located in the under-hood fuse/relay box)
- 3    OUTSIDE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR
- 4    RADIATOR FAN
- 5    CONDENSER FAN

Test, [page 22A-60](#)

Replacement, [page 21-90](#); Test, [page 21-90](#)

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.



- |    |  |  |
|----|--|--|
| 1  | HEATER VALVE CABLE                         | Adjustment, <a href="#">page 21-30</a>                                     |
| 2  | SUNLIGHT SENSOR                            | Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-91</a> ; Test, <a href="#">page 21-91</a> |
| 3  | HEATER UNIT/CORE                           | Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-28</a>                                    |
| 4  | EVAPORATOR CORE (Built-in the heater unit) | Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-45</a>                                    |
| 5  | RECIRCULATION CONTROL MOTOR                | Test, <a href="#">page 21-23</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-23</a> |
| 6  | BLOWER UNIT                                | Removal and Installation, <a href="#">page 21-26</a>                       |
| 7  | BLOWER UNIT COMPONENTS                     | Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-27</a>                                    |
| 8  | DUST AND POLLEN FILTER                     | Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-25</a>                                    |
| 9  | MODE CONTROL MOTOR                         | Test, <a href="#">page 21-22</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-22</a> |
| 10 | POWER TRANSISTOR                           | Test, <a href="#">page 21-24</a>   |
| 11 | CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT                       | Removal and Installation, <a href="#">page 21-92</a>                       |
| 12 | IN-CAR TEMPERATURE SENSOR                  | Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-89</a> ; Test, <a href="#">page 21-89</a> |
| 13 | EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR              | Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-44</a> ; Test, <a href="#">page 21-44</a> |
| 14 | AIR MIX CONTROL MOTOR                      | Test, <a href="#">page 21-21</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 21-21</a> |

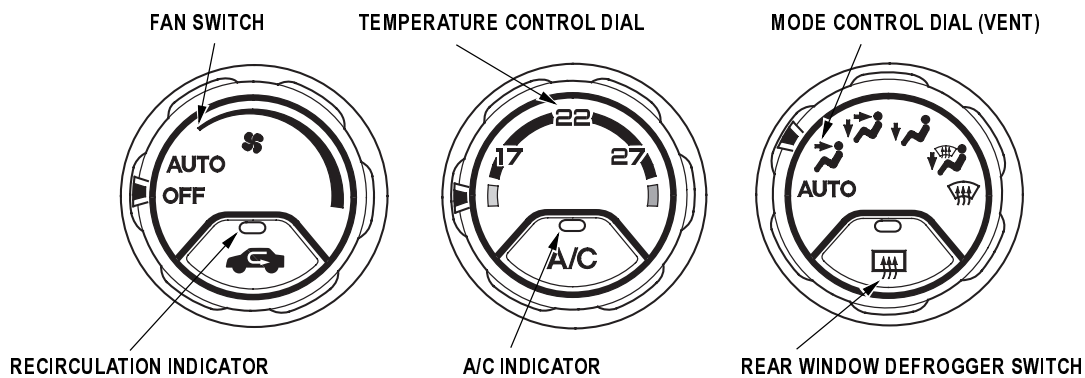
## General Troubleshooting Information

### How to Retrieve a DTC

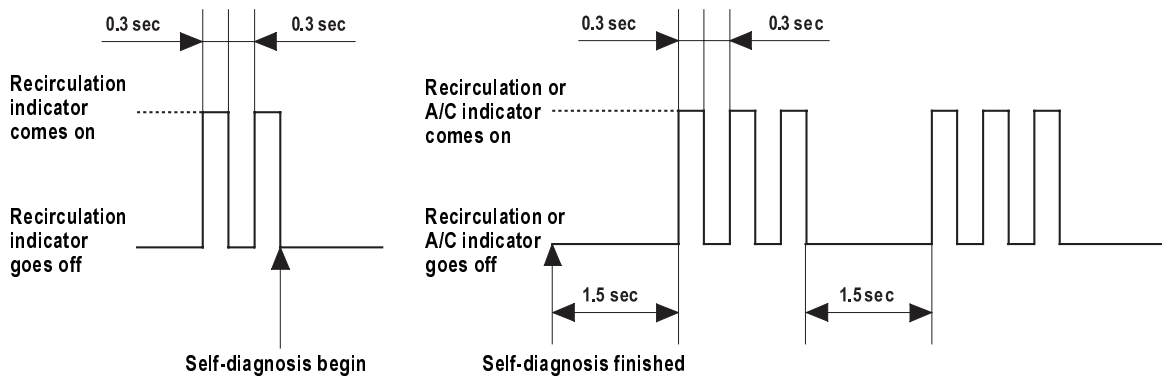
The Climate Control Unit has a self-diagnosis function.

#### Running the Self-diagnosis Function

1. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
2. Turn the fan switch OFF, the temperature control dial on Max Cool and the mode control dial on Vent.
3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), then press and hold the recirculation control switch. Within 10 seconds while holding the switch down, press the rear window defogger switch five times. The recirculation indicator blinks two times, then the self-diagnosis will begin. If there is any problem in the system after self-diagnosis is finished, the recirculation indicator will blink the Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) 1 through 13, When problems in the evaporator temperature sensor circuit are detected (codes 14 and 15), the A/C indicator will blink the DTC. If no DTC's are found, the indicator will not blink.



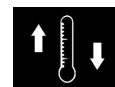
#### Example of DTC indication Pattern (DTC 3)



#### Resetting the Self-diagnosis Function

Turn the ignition switch OFF to cancel the self-diagnosis function. After completing repair work, run the self-diagnosis function again to make sure that there are no other malfunctions.





## DTC Troubleshooting Index

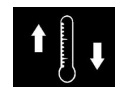
DTC (Recirculation Indication Blinks)	Detection Item	Page
1	An open in the in-car temperature sensor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-70)</a>
2	A short in the in-car temperature sensor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-71)</a>
3	An open in the outside air temperature sensor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-71)</a>
4	A short in the outside air temperature sensor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-73)</a>
5	An open in the sunlight sensor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-73)</a>
6	A short in the sunlight sensor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-74)</a>
7	An open in the air mix control motor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-75)</a>
8	A short in the air mix control motor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-75)</a>
9	A problem in the air mix control linkage, door, or motor	<a href="#">(see page 21-76)</a>
10	An open or short in the mode control motor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-77)</a>
11	A problem in the mode control linkage, doors, or motor	<a href="#">(see page 21-78)</a>
12	A problem in the blower motor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-79)</a>
13	A problem in the EEPROM in the climate control unit; the control unit must be replaced	<a href="#">(see page 21-92)</a>

DTC (A/C Indication Blinks)	Detection Item	Page
14	An open in the evaporator temperature sensor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-82)</a>
15	A short in the evaporator temperature sensor circuit	<a href="#">(see page 21-83)</a>

In case of multiple problems, the recirculation or A/C indicator will indicate only the DTC with the least number of blinks.

## Symptom Troubleshooting Index

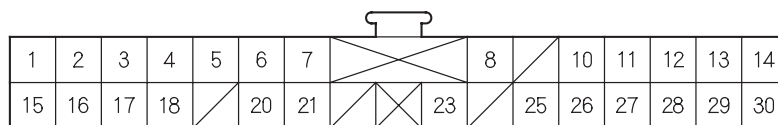
Symptom	Diagnostic procedure	Also check for
Recirculation control doors do not change between Fresh and Recirculate	Recirculation Control Motor Circuit Troubleshooting ( <a href="#">see page 21-84</a> )	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown fuse No. 14 (10A) in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>Cleanliness and tightness of all connectors</li> </ul>
The blower motor does not run immediately even through the engine is fully warmed up NOTE: The temperature control dial must be set between 18°C (64°F) and 32°C (90°F)	ECT Sensor Circuit Troubleshooting ( <a href="#">see page 21-88</a> )	Cleanliness and tightness of all connectors
Both heater and A/C do not work	Climate Control Power and Ground Circuits Troubleshooting ( <a href="#">see page 21-86</a> )	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown fuse No. 14 (10A) in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>Poor ground at G501</li> <li>Cleanliness and tightness of all connectors</li> </ul>
Condenser fan does not run at all (but radiator fan runs with the A/C on)	Condenser Fan Circuit Troubleshooting ( <a href="#">see page 21-38</a> )	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown fuse No. 1 (20A) in the under-hood fuse/relay box, and No. 14 (10A) in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>Poor ground at G201</li> <li>Cleanliness and tightness of all connectors</li> </ul>
Both fans do not run with the A/C on	Radiator and Condenser Fans Common Circuit Troubleshooting ( <a href="#">see page 21-39</a> )	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown fuse No. 1 (20A) and No. 4 (20A) in the under-hood fuse/relay box, and No. 14 (10A) in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>Poor ground at G201</li> <li>Cleanliness and tightness of all connectors</li> </ul>
Compressor clutch does not engage	Compressor Clutch Circuit Troubleshooting ( <a href="#">see page 21-40</a> )	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown fuse No. 1 (20A) in the under-hood fuse/relay box, and No. 14 (10A) in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>Cleanliness and tightness of all connectors</li> </ul>
A/C System does not come on (both fans and compressor)	A/C Pressure Switch Circuit Troubleshooting ( <a href="#">see page 21-87</a> )	Cleanliness and tightness of all connectors



## System Description

### Climate Control Unit Inputs and Outputs

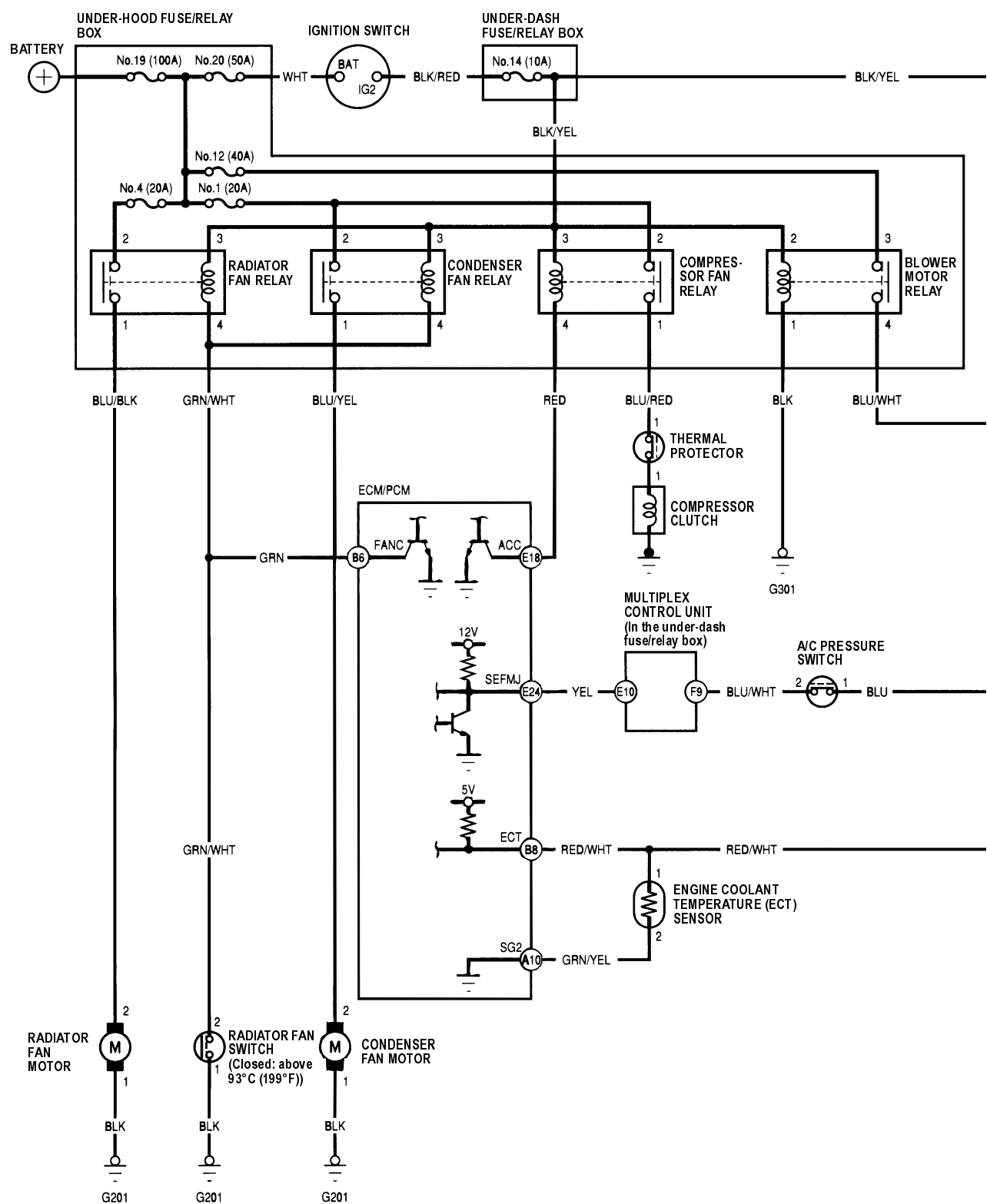
CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR

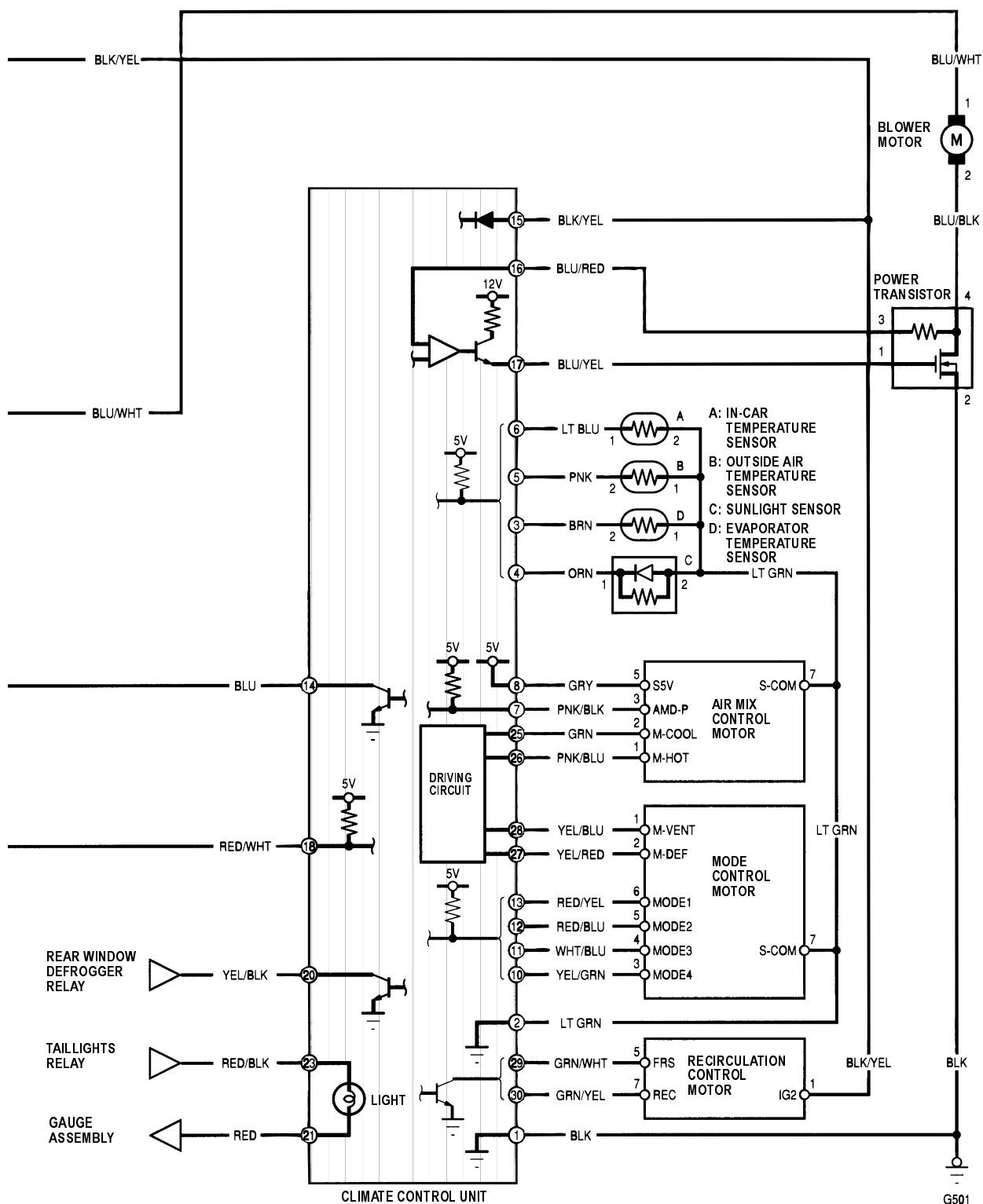
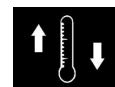


Wire side of female terminals

Cavity	Wire color	Signal	
1	BLK	Ground	Input
2	LT GRN	Sensor Common Ground	Input
3	BRN	Evaporator temperature sensor	Output
4	ORN	Sunlight sensor	Output
5	PNK	Outside air temperature sensor	Output
6	LT BLU	In-car temperature sensor	Output
7	PNK/BLK	Air mix potential	Output
8	GRY	Air mix potential +5V	Output
9	----	----	----
10	YEL/GRN	Mode 4	Output
11	WHT/BLU	Mode 3	Output
12	RED/BLU	Mode 2	Output
13	RED/YEL	Mode 1	Output
14	BLU	A/C pressure switch	Input
15	BLK/YEL	IG2 Power	Input
16	BLU/RED	Blower feed back	Input
17	BLU/YEL	Power transistor base	Output
18	RED/WHT	Engine coolant temperature (ECT) sensor	Output
19	----	----	----
20	YEL/BLK	Rear window defogger relay	Output
21	RED	Ground (For lighting)	Output
22	----	----	----
23	RED/BLK	Taillights relay	Input
24	----	----	----
25	GRN	Air mix cool	Output
26	PNK/BLU	Air mix hot	Output
27	YEL/RED	Mode vent	Output
28	YEL/BLU	Mode def	Output
29	GRN/WHT	Fresh	Input
30	GRN/YEL	Recirculate	Input

Circuit Diagram



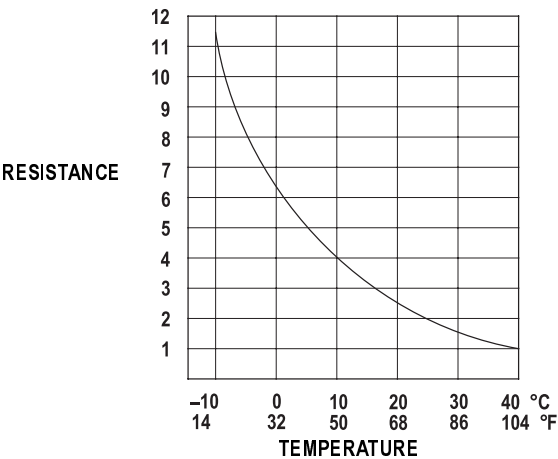
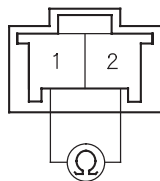


DTC Troubleshooting

DTC 1: An Open in the In-car Temperature Sensor Circuit

- 1. Remove the in-car temperature sensor (see page 21-89).
- 2. Measure the resistance between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals of the in-car temperature sensor.  
\*Check for change in resistance by heating or cooling the sensor with a hair drier.

IN-CAR TEMPERATURE SENSOR

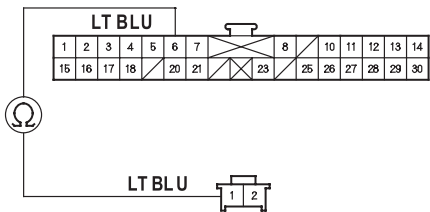


Is the resistance within the specifications shown on the graph?

- Yes** Go to step 3.
  - No** Replace the in-car temperature sensor.■
3. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.

4. Check for continuity between the No. 6 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and the No. 1 terminal of the in-car temperature sensor 2P connector.

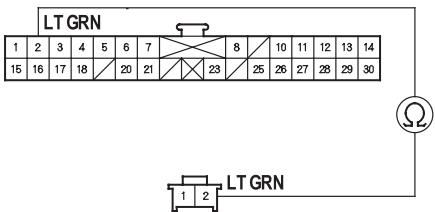
CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR  
Wire side of female terminals



Is there continuity?

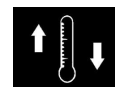
- Yes** Go to step 5.
  - No** Repair open in the wire between the climate control unit and the in-car temperature sensor.■
5. Check for continuity between the No. 2 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and the No. 2 terminal of the in-car temperature sensor 2P connector.

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR  
Wire side of female terminals



Is there continuity?

- Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the climate control unit 30P connector and at the in-car temperature sensor 2P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■
- No** Repair open in the wire between the climate control unit and the in-car temperature sensor.■



### DTC 2: A Short in the In-car Temperature Sensor Circuit

1. Remove the in-car temperature sensor (see page 21-89).
2. Test the in-car temperature sensor (see page 21-89).

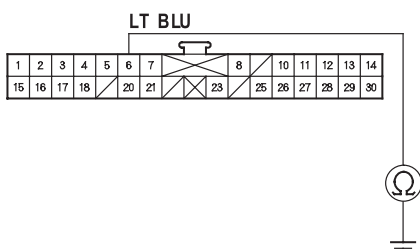
*Is the resistance within the specifications shown on the graph?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Replace the in-car temperature sensor.■

3. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
4. Check for continuity between the No. 6 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and body ground.

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

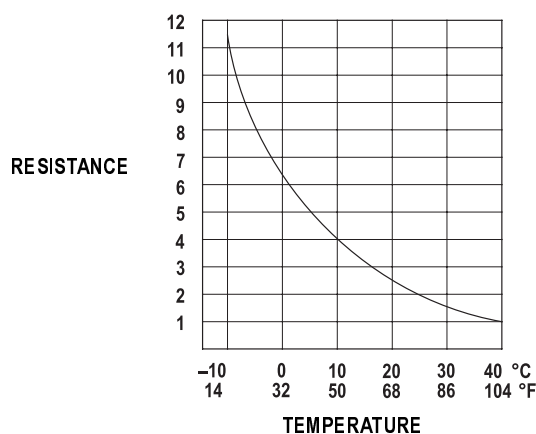
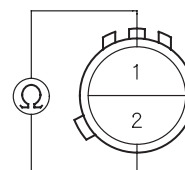
**Yes** Repair short to body ground in the wire between the climate control unit and the in-car temperature sensor.■

**No** Substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■

### DTC 3: An Open in the Outside Air Temperature Sensor Circuit

1. Remove the outside air temperature sensor (see page 21-90).
2. Measure the resistance between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals of the outside air temperature sensor.  
\*Dip the sensor in ice water, and measure resistance. Then pour hot water on the sensor, and check for change in resistance.

OUTSIDE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR



*Is the resistance within the specifications shown on the graph?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

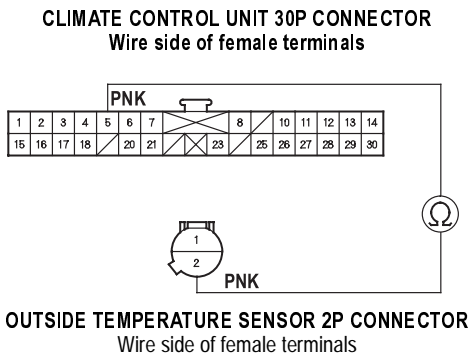
**No** Replace the outside air temperature sensor.■

3. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

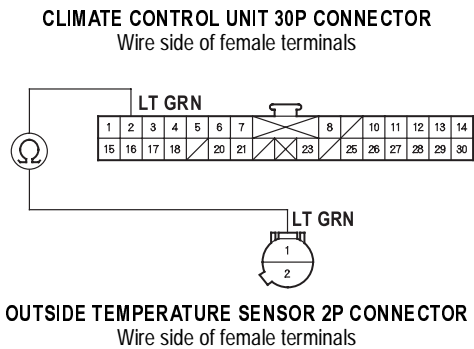
4. Check for continuity between the No. 5 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and the No. 2 terminal of the outside air temperature sensor 2P connector.



Is there continuity?

- Yes** Go to step 5.
- No** Repair open in the wire between the climate control unit and the outside air temperature sensor.■

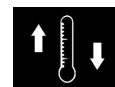
5. Check for continuity between the No. 2 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and the No. 1 terminal of the outside air temperature sensor 2P connector.



Is there continuity?

- Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the climate control unit 30P connector and at the outside air temperature sensor 2P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■
- No** Repair open in the wire between the climate control unit and the outside air temperature sensor.■





## DTC 4: A Short in the Outside Air Temperature Sensor Circuit

1. Remove the outside air temperature sensor (see page 21-90).
2. Test the outside air temperature sensor (see page 21-90).

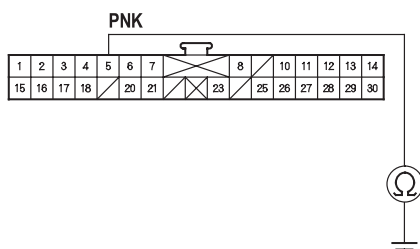
*Is the resistance within the specifications shown on the graph?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Replace the outside air temperature sensor.■

3. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
4. Check for continuity between the No. 5 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and body ground.

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR



*Is there continuity?*

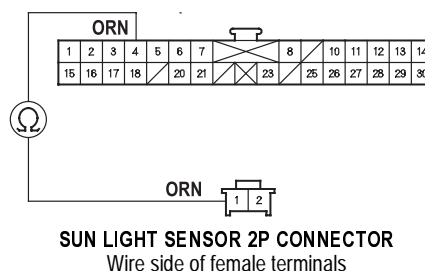
**Yes** Repair short to body ground in the wire between the climate control unit and the outside air temperature sensor.■

**No** Substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■

## DTC 5: An Open in the Sunlight Sensor Circuit

1. Disconnect the sunlight sensor 2P connector.
2. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
3. Check for continuity between the No. 4 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and the No. 1 terminal of the sunlight sensor 2P connector.

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR  
Wire side of female terminals



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

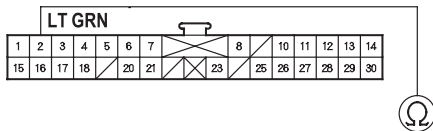
**No** Repair open in the wire between the climate control unit and the sunlight sensor.■

(cont'd)

## 0 DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

4. Check for continuity between the No. 2 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and the No. 2 terminal of the sunlight sensor 2P connector.

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR  
Wire side of female terminals



SUN LIGHT SENSOR 2P CONNECTOR  
Wire side of female terminals



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the climate control unit and the sunlight sensor.■

5. Reconnect the sunlight sensor 2P connector.
6. Reconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
7. Test the sunlight sensor ([see page 21-91](#)).

*Is the sunlight sensor OK?*

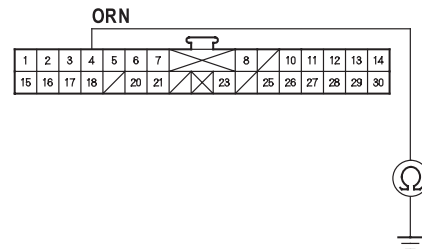
**Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the climate control unit 30P connector and at the sunlight sensor 2P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■

**No** Replace the sunlight sensor.■

## DTC 6: A Short in the Sunlight Sensor Circuit

1. Disconnect the sunlight sensor 2P connector.
2. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
3. Check for continuity between the No. 4 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and body ground.

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short to body ground in the wire between the climate control unit and the sunlight sensor.■

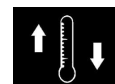
**No** Go to step 4.

4. Reconnect the sunlight sensor 2P connector.
5. Reconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
6. Test the sunlight sensor ([see page 21-91](#)).

*Is the sunlight sensor OK?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■

**No** Replace the sunlight sensor.■

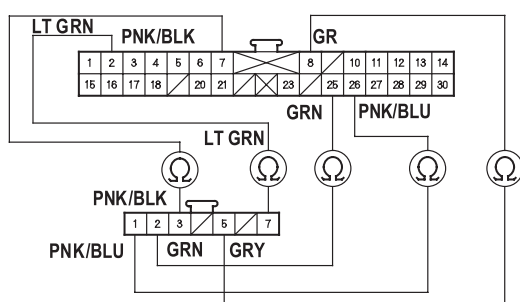


## DTC 7: An Open in the Air Mix Control Motor Circuit

1. Disconnect the air mix control motor 7P connector.
2. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
3. Check for continuity between following terminals of the climate control unit 30P connector and the air mix control motor 7P connector.

30P:	7P:
No. 2	No. 7
No. 7	No. 3
No. 8	No. 5
No. 25	No. 2
No. 26	No. 1

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR  
Wire side of female terminals



AIR MIX CONTROL MOTOR 7P CONNECTOR  
Wire side of female terminals

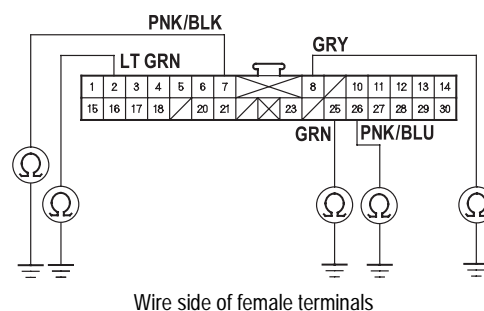
Is there continuity?

- Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the climate control unit 30P connector and at the air mix control motor 7P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■
- No** Repair any open in the wire(s) between the climate control unit and the air mix control motor.■

## DTC 8: A Short in the Air Mix Control Motor Circuit

1. Disconnect the air mix control motor 7P connector.
2. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
3. Check for continuity between body ground and the climate control unit 30P connector terminals No. 2, 7, 8, 25 and 26 individually.

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR



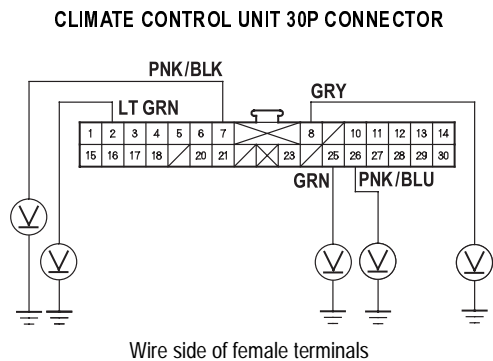
Is there continuity?

- Yes** Repair any short to body ground in the wire(s) between the climate control unit and the air mix control motor.■
- No** Go to step 4.

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

4. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check the same terminals for voltage.



Is there any voltage?

- Yes** Repair any short to power in the wire(s) between the climate control unit and the air mix control motor. This short also may damage the climate control unit. Repair the short to power before replacing the climate control unit.■
- No** Substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■

DTC 9: A Problem in the Air Mix Control Linkage, Door, or Motor

1. Test the air mix control motor (see page 21-21).  
*Is the air mix control motor OK?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■

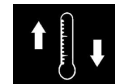
**No** Go to step 2.

2. Remove the air mix control motor (see page 21-21).
3. Check the air mix control linkage and door for smooth movement.

*Do the air mix control linkage and door move smoothly?*

**Yes** Replace the air mix control motor.■

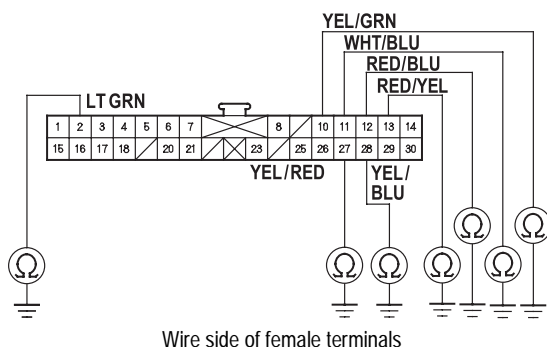
**No** Repair the air mix control linkage or door.■



## DTC 10: An Open or Short in the Mode Control Motor Circuit

1. Disconnect the mode control motor 7P connector.
2. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
3. Check for continuity between body ground and the climate control unit 30P connector terminals No. 2, 10, 11, 12, 13, 27 and 28 individually.

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR



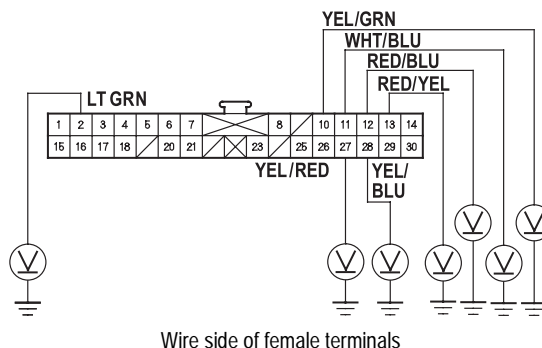
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair any short to body ground in the wire(s) between the climate control unit and the mode control motor.■

**No** Go to step 4.

4. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check the same terminals for voltage.

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR



*Is there any voltage?*

**Yes** Repair any short to power in the wire(s) between the climate control unit and the mode control motor. This short also may damage the climate control unit. Repair the short to power before replacing the climate control unit.■

**No** Go to step 5.

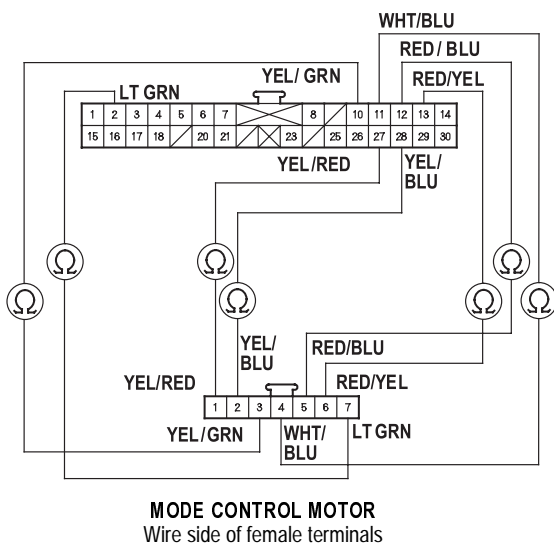
(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

5. Turn the ignition switch OFF, and check for continuity between following terminals of the climate control unit 30P connector and the mode control motor 7P connector.

30P:	7P:
No. 2	No. 7
No. 10	No. 3
No. 11	No. 4
No. 12	No. 5
No. 13	No. 6
No. 28	No. 2
No. 27	No. 1

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR  
Wire side of female terminals



MODE CONTROL MOTOR  
Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

- Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the climate control unit 30P connector and at the mode control motor 7P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit. ■
- No** Repair any open in the wire(s) between the climate control unit and the mode control motor. ■

## DTC 11: A Problem in the Mode Control Linkage, Doors, or Motor

1. Test the mode control motor (see page 21-22).

*Is the mode control motor OK?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit. ■

**No** Go to step 2.

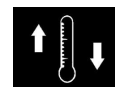
2. Remove the mode control motor (see page 21-22).

3. Check the mode control linkage and doors for smooth movement.

*Do the mode control linkage and doors move smoothly?*

**Yes** Replace the mode control motor. ■

**No** Repair the mode control linkage or doors. ■

**DTC 12: A Problem in the Blower Motor Circuit**

1. Check the No. 12 (40A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box, and the No. 14 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

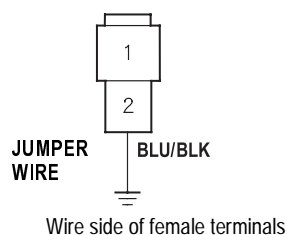
*Are the fuses OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Replace the fuse(s), and recheck.■

2. Connect the No. 2 terminal of the blower motor 2P connector to body ground with a jumper wire.

**BLOWER MOTOR 2P CONNECTOR**



3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

*Does the blower motor run?*

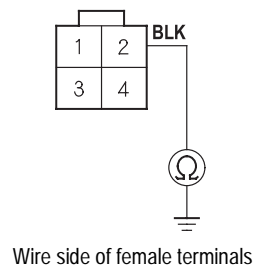
**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Go to step 17.

4. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
5. Disconnect the jumper wire.
6. Disconnect the power transistor 4P connector.

7. Check for continuity between the No. 2 terminal of the power transistor 4P connector and body ground.

**POWER TRANSISTOR 4P CONNECTOR**



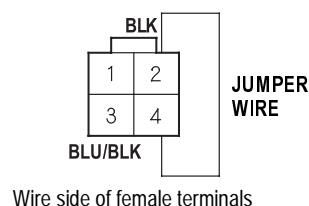
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Check for an open in the wire between the power transistor and body ground. If the wire is OK, check for poor ground at G501.■

8. Connect the No. 2 and No. 4 terminals of the power transistor 4P connector with a jumper wire.

**POWER TRANSISTOR 4P CONNECTOR**



9. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
- Does the blower motor run at high speed?*

**Yes** Go to step 10.

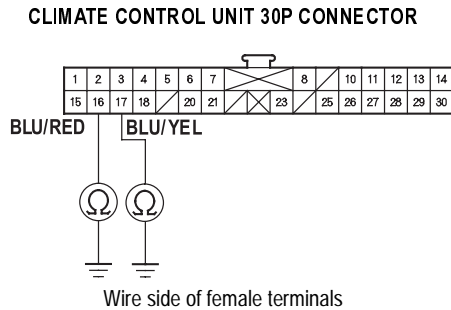
**No** Repair open in the wire between the power transistor and the blower motor.■

10. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
11. Disconnect the jumper wire.

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

12. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
13. Check for continuity between the No. 16 and No. 17 terminals of the climate control unit 30P connector and body ground individually.



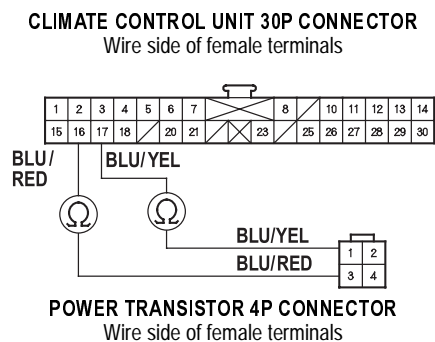
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair any short to body ground in the wire(s) between the climate control unit and the power transistor.■

**No** Go to step 14.

14. Check for continuity between the following terminals of the climate control unit 30P connector and power transistor 4P connector.

30P:	4P:
No. 17	No. 1
No. 16	No. 3



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 15.

**No** Repair any open in the wire(s) between the climate control unit and the power transistor.■

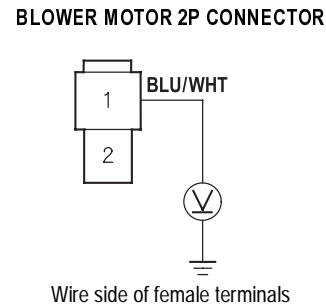
15. Reconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
16. Test the power transistor (see page 21-24).

*Is the power transistor OK?*

**Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the climate control unit 30P connector and at the power transistor 4P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■

**No** Replace the power transistor.■

17. Disconnect the jumper wire.
18. Disconnect the blower motor 2P connector.
19. Measure the voltage between the No. 1 terminal of the blower motor 2P connector and body ground.



*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Replace the blower motor.■

**No** Go to step 20.

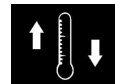
20. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
21. Remove the blower motor relay from the under-hood fuse/relay box, and test it (see page 22A-60).

*Is there relay OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 22.

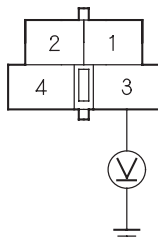
**No** Replace the blower motor relay.■





22. Measure the voltage between the No. 3 terminal of the blower motor relay 4P socket and body ground.

BLOWER MOTOR RELAY 4P SOCKET



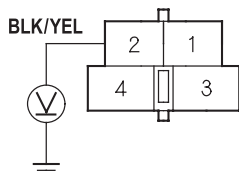
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 23.

**No** Replace the under-hood fuse/relay box.■

23. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
24. Measure the voltage between the No. 2 terminal of the blower motor relay 4P socket and body ground.

BLOWER MOTOR RELAY 4P SOCKET



*Is there battery voltage?*

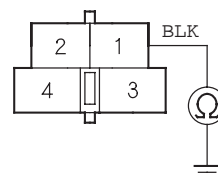
**Yes** Go to step 25.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 14 fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box and the blower motor relay.■

25. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

26. Check for continuity between the No. 1 terminal of the blower motor relay 4P socket and body ground.

BLOWER MOTOR RELAY 4P SOCKET



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the blower motor relay and the blower motor.■

**No** Check for an open in the wire between the blower motor relay and body ground. If the wire is OK, check for poor ground at G201.■

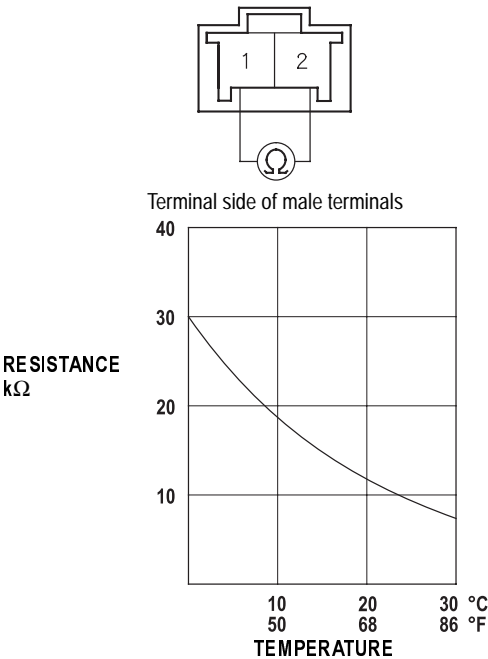
(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

DTC 14: An Open in the Evaporator Temperature Sensor Circuit

- 1. Remove the evaporator temperature sensor (see page 21-44).
- 2. Measure the resistance between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals of the evaporator temperature sensor.  
\*Dip the sensor in ice water, and measure resistance. Then pour hot water on the sensor, and check for change in resistance.

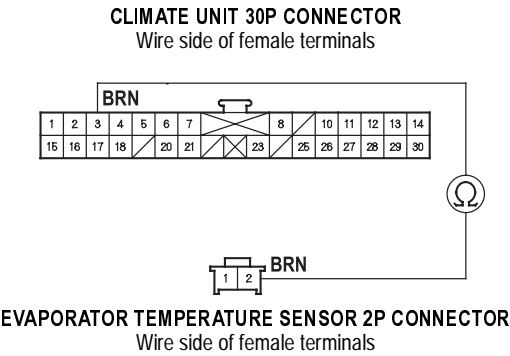
EVAPORATOR TEMPERATURE SENSOR



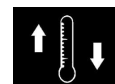
Is the resistance within the specifications shown on the graph?

- Yes** Go to step 3.
  - No** Replace the evaporator temperature sensor.■
3. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.

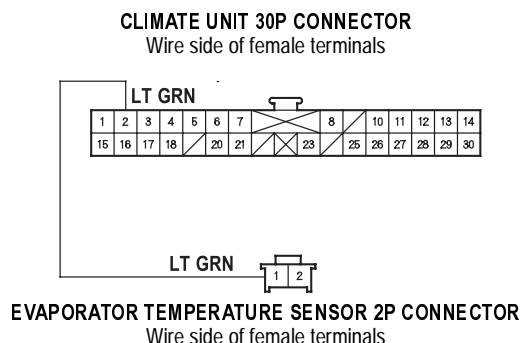
4. Check for continuity between the No. 3 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and the No. 2 terminal of the evaporator temperature sensor 2P connector.



- Is there continuity?
- Yes** Go to step 5.
  - No** Repair open in the wire between the climate control unit and the evaporator temperature sensor.■



5. Check for continuity between the No. 2 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and the No. 1 terminal of the evaporator temperature sensor 2P connector.



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the climate control unit 30P connector and at the evaporator temperature sensor 2P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the climate control unit and the evaporator temperature sensor.■

### DTC 15: A Short in the Evaporator Temperature Sensor Circuit

1. Remove the evaporator temperature sensor (see page 21-44).

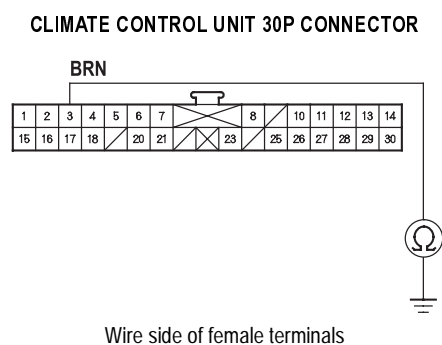
2. Test the evaporator temperature sensor (see page 21-44).

*Is the resistance within the specifications shown on the graph?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Replace the evaporator temperature sensor.■

3. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
4. Check for continuity between the No. 3 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and body ground.



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short to body ground in the wire between the climate control unit and the evaporator temperature sensor.■

**No** Substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■

## Recirculation Control Motor Circuit Troubleshooting

1. Check the No. 14 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

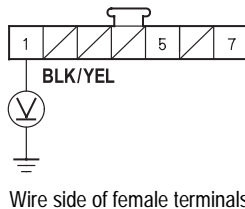
*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Replace the fuse, and recheck.■

2. Disconnect the recirculation control motor 7P connector.
3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
4. Measure the voltage between the No. 1 terminal of the recirculation control motor 7P connector and body ground.

RECIRCULATION CONTROL MOTOR 7P CONNECTOR



*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 14 fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box and the recirculation control motor. ■

5. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
6. Test the recirculation control motor (see page 21-23).

*Is the recirculation control motor OK?*

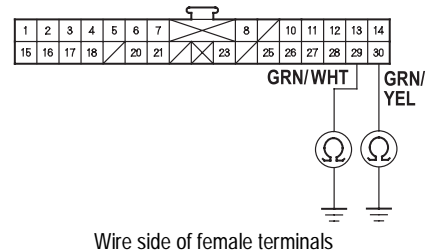
**Yes** Go to step 7.

**No** Go to step 12.

7. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.

8. Check for continuity between the No. 29 and No. 30 terminals of the climate control unit 30P connector and body ground individually.

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR



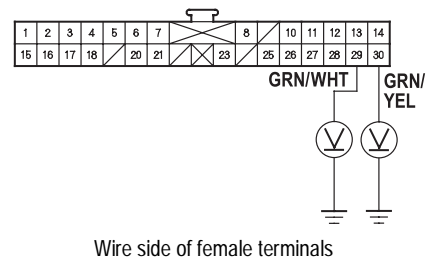
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair any short to body ground in the wire(s) between the climate control unit and the recirculation control motor. ■

**No** Go to step 9.

9. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check the same wires for voltage.

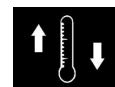
CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR



*Is there any voltage?*

**Yes** Repair any short to power in the wire(s) between the climate control unit and the recirculation control motor. This short also may damage the climate control unit. Repair the short to power before replacing the climate control unit. ■

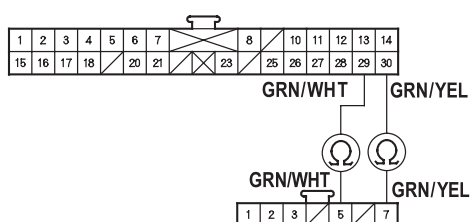
**No** Go to step 10.



10. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
11. Check for continuity between the following terminals of the climate control unit 30P connector and the recirculation control motor 7P connector.

30P:        7P:  
 No. 29     No. 5  
 No. 30     No. 7

**CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR**  
 Wire side of female terminals



**RECIRCULATION CONTROL MOTOR 7P CONNECTOR**  
 Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

- Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the climate control unit 30P connector and at recirculation control motor 7P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■
- No** Repair any open in the wire(s) between the climate control unit and the recirculation control motor.■

12. Remove the recirculation control motor (see page 21-23).
13. Check the recirculation control linkage and doors for smooth movement.

*Do the recirculation control linkage and doors move smoothly?*

- Yes** Replace the recirculation control motor.■
- No** Repair the recirculation control linkage or doors.■

Climate Control Power and Ground Circuits Troubleshooting

- 1. Check the No. 14 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

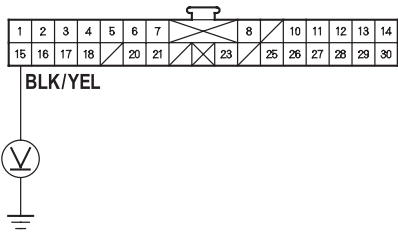
Is the fuse OK?

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Replace the fuse, and recheck.■

- 2. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
- 3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
- 4. Measure the voltage between the No. 15 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and body ground.

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR



Is there battery voltage?

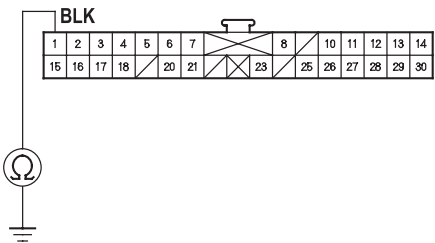
**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 14 fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box and the climate control unit.■

- 5. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

- 6. Check for continuity between the No. 1 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and body ground.

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR

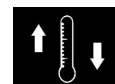


Wire side of female terminals

Is there continuity?

**Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the climate control unit 30P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■

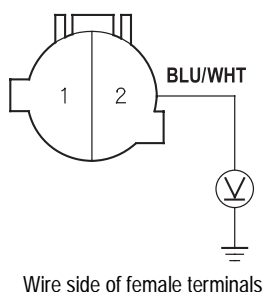
**No** Check for an open in the wire between the climate control unit and body ground. If the wire is OK, check for poor ground at G501.■



## A/C Pressure Switch Circuit Troubleshooting

1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
2. Turn the blower switch on, and check for blower motor operation.  
*Does the blower motor run on all speeds?*  
**Yes** Go to step 3.  
**No** Troubleshoot the blower motor circuit (see page 21-79).
3. Disconnect the A/C pressure switch 2P connector.
4. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
5. Measure the voltage between the No. 2 terminal of the A/C pressure switch 2P connector and body ground.

A/C PRESSURE SWITCH 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

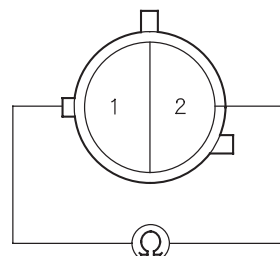
**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Go to step 12.

6. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

7. Check for continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals of the A/C pressure switch.

A/C PRESSURE SWITCH



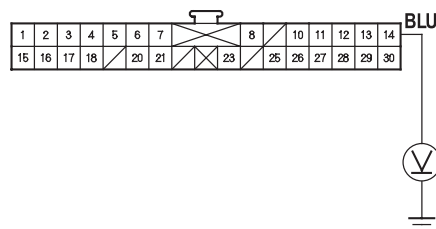
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Go to step 14.

8. Reconnect the A/C pressure switch 2P connector.
9. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
10. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
11. Measure the voltage between the No. 14 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and body ground.

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is battery voltage?*

**Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the climate control unit 30P connector and at the A/C pressure switch 2P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■

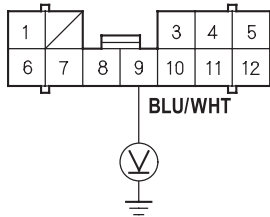
**No** Repair open in the wire between the climate control unit and the A/C pressure switch.■

(cont'd)

A/C Pressure Switch Circuit  
Troubleshooting (cont'd)

12. Make sure the A/C switch is OFF.
13. Measure the voltage between the No. 9 terminal of under-dash fuse/relay box connector F (12P) and body ground with the under-dash fuse/relay box connectors connected.

UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX CONNECTOR F (12P)



Wire side of female terminals

Is there 5V or more?

**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the under-dash fuse/relay box and the A/C pressure switch.■

**No** Refer to the multiplex control system (see page 22A-227).■

NOTE: Check for multiplex codes in mode 1. Follow the troubleshooting for any codes found. If no codes are found, substitute a known-good multiplex control unit and a PCM one at a time.

14. Check for proper A/C system pressure.

Is the pressure within specifications?

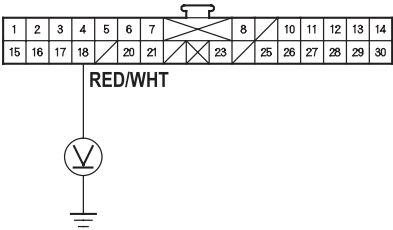
**Yes** Replace the A/C pressure switch.■

**No** Repair the A/C pressure problem.■

ECT Sensor Circuit Troubleshooting

1. Check the malfunction indicator lamp (MIL).  
*Does the malfunction indicator lamp come on?*  
**Yes** Refer to the fuel and emissions section (see page 11-3).■  
**No** Go to step 2.
2. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
3. Disconnect the ECT sensor 2P connector.
4. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
5. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
6. Measure the voltage between the No. 18 terminal of the climate control unit 30P connector and body ground.

CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT 30P CONNECTOR



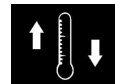
Wire side of female terminals

Is there about 5 V?

**Yes** Check for loose wires or poor connections at the climate control unit 30P connector and at the ECT sensor 2P connector. If the connections are good, substitute a known-good climate control unit, and recheck. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original climate control unit.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the climate control unit and the ECT sensor.■

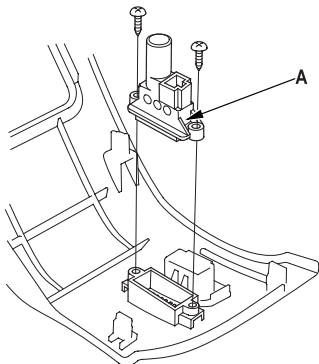




## In-car Temperature Sensor Replacement

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.

1. Remove the driver's dashboard lower cover (see [page 20-88](#)).
2. Disconnect the 2P connector and the air hose, then remove the self-tapping screws and the in-car temperature sensor (A) from the dashboard.



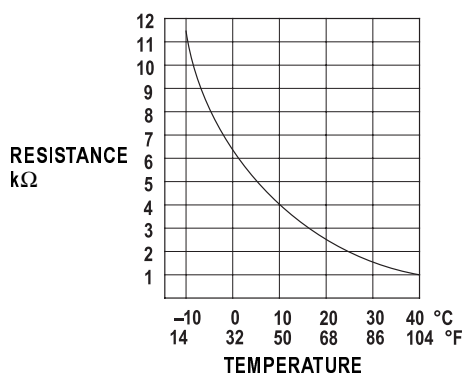
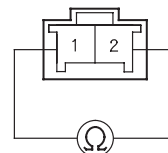
3. Install the sensor in the reverse order of removal. Be sure to connect the air hose securely.

## In-car Temperature Sensor Test

Check for a change in resistance by heating or cooling the sensor with a hair drier.

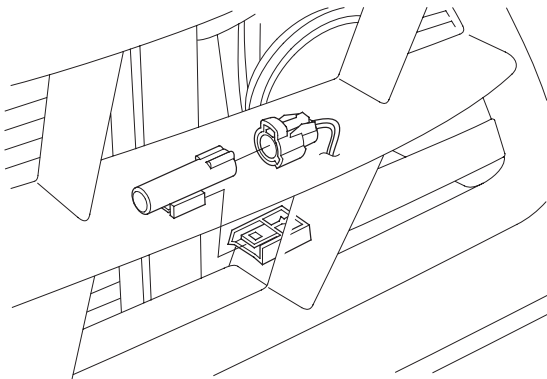
Compare the resistance reading between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals of the in-car temperature sensor with the specifications shown in the graph; the resistance should be within the specifications.

IN-CAR TEMPERATURE SENSOR



Outside Air Temperature Sensor Replacement

- 1. Release the lock, and remove the outside air temperature sensor, then disconnect the 2P connector.



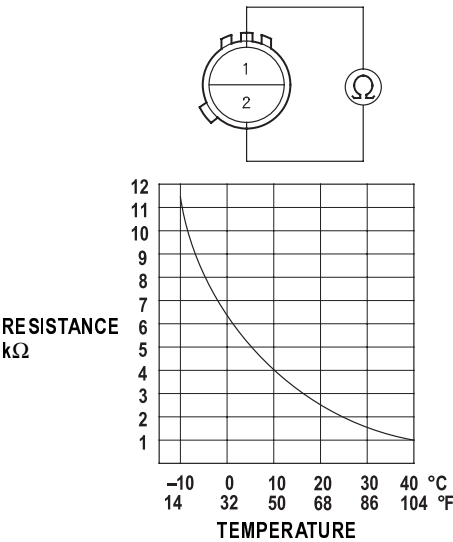
- 2. Install the sensor in the reverse order of removal.

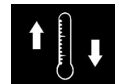
Outside Air Temperature Sensor Test

Dip the sensor in ice water, and measure the resistance. Then pour hot water on the sensor, and check for a change in resistance.

Compare the resistance reading between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals of the outside air temperature sensor with the specifications shown in the graph; the resistance should be within the specifications.

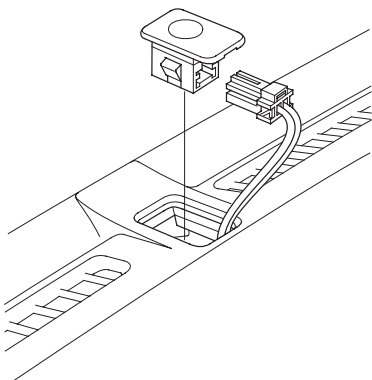
OUTSIDE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR





### Sunlight Sensor Replacement

1. Remove the sunlight sensor from the dashboard, then disconnect the 2P connector. Be careful not to damage the sensor and the dashboard.

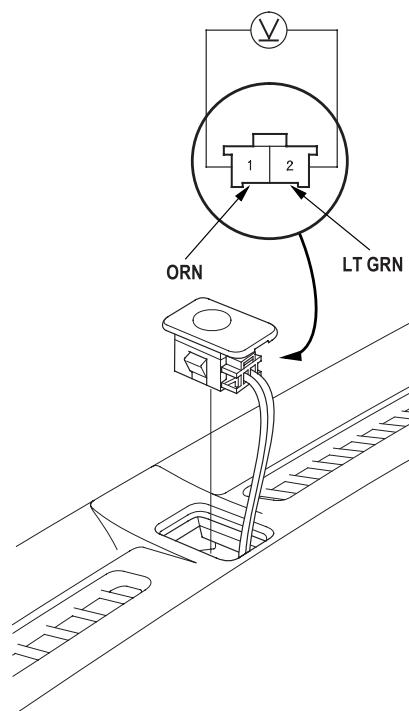


2. Install the sensor in the reverse order of removal.

### Sunlight Sensor Test

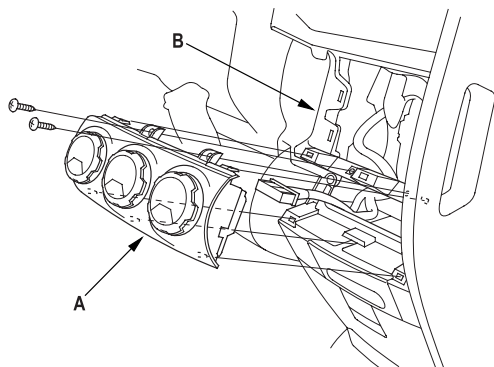
Turn the ignition switch ON (II). Measure the voltage between the terminals with the (+) probe on the No. 1 terminal and the (-) probe on the No. 2 terminal with the 2P connector connected. The voltage will not change under the light at a flashlight or fluorescent lamp. Voltage should be:

- 3.6 - 3.7 V or more with the sensor out of direct.
- 3.6 - 3.5 V or less with the sensor is direct sunlight.



### Climate Control Unit Removal and Installation

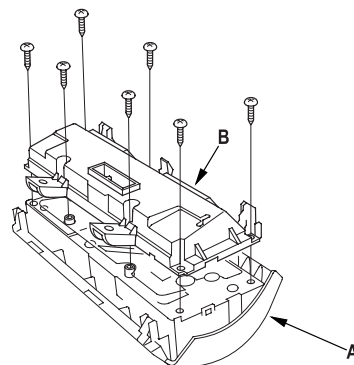
1. Remove the cool box (see page 20-90).
2. Remove the self-tapping screws and the heater control panel (A) from the dashboard (B).



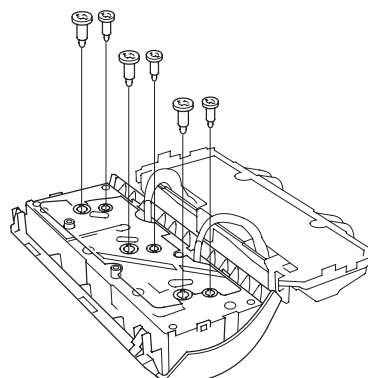
3. Install the control panel in the reverse order of removal. After installation, operate the control panel controls to see whether it works properly.
4. Run the self-diagnosis function to confirm that there are no problems in the system (see page 21-64).

### Climate Control Unit Bulb Replacement

1. Discharge the static electricity (which accumulated on you when you removed the climate control unit) by touching the door striker or other body parts.
2. Remove the self-tapping screws, then carefully separate the climate control unit display (A) from the control unit (B). Do not kink or pull on the wires between the display and control unit. Do not touch the electronic components on the printed circuit board in the control unit.



3. Remove the bulb(s) with a flat-tip screw driver.



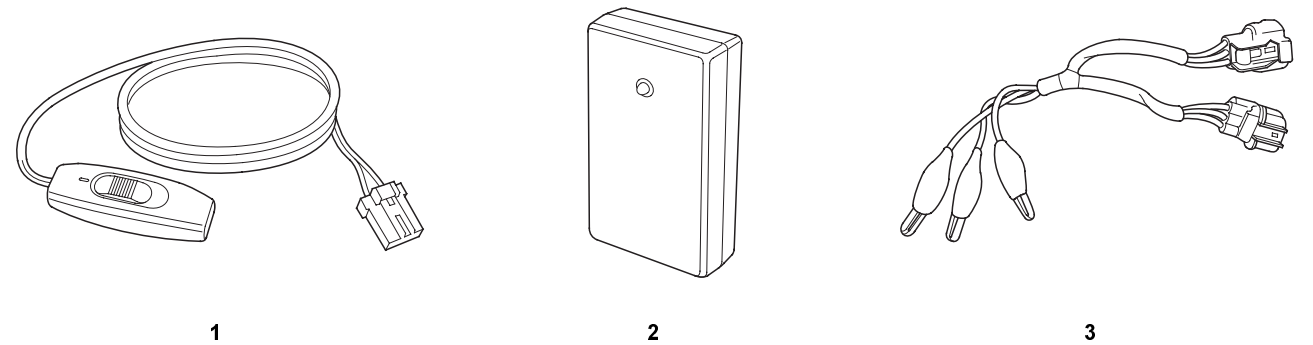
4. Install the bulb(s) in the reverse order of removal.

## Body Electrical

Special Tools .....	22A-2
General Troubleshooting Information .....	22A-3
Relay and Control Unit Locations .....	22A-7
Wire Harness and Ground Locations .....	22A-14
Fuse/Relay Boxes .....	22A-35
Power Distribution .....	22A-37
Ground Distribution .....	22A-48
Under-dash Fuse/Relay Box .....	22A-58
Battery .....	22A-59
Relays .....	22A-60
* Ignition Switch .....	22A-63
* Gauges .....	22A-64
Exterior Lights .....	22A-79
Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher .....	22A-102
Interior Lights .....	22A-106
Entry Light Control System .....	22A-111
* Stereo Sound System .....	22A-116
Rear Window Defogger .....	22A-122
Sunroof .....	22A-126
Power Mirrors .....	22A-130
Cigarette Lighter .....	22A-139
Horns .....	22A-140
Power Windows .....	22A-143
Keyless/Power Door Lock System .....	22A-158
Hatch Glass Opener .....	22A-179
Seat Heaters .....	22A-182
Immobilizer System .....	22A-186
Security Alarm System .....	22A-192
Wipers/Washers .....	22A-206
Multiplex Control System .....	22A-227
Accessory Power Socket .....	22A-238

Special Tools

Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07WAZ-0010100	MPCS Short Connector	1
2	07MAJ-SP00300	Keyless Entry Checker	1
3	07LAJ-PT30200	Test Harness	1



SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS) (If electrical maintenance is required)

The CR-V SRS includes a driver's airbag in the steering wheel hub, a passenger's airbag in the dashboard above the glove box, seat belt tensioners in the front seat belt retractors, seat belt buckle tensioners in the front seat belt buckles, and side airbags in the front seat-backs. Information necessary to safely service the SRS is included in this Service Manual. Items marked with an asterisk (\*) on the contents page include or are located near SRS components. Servicing, disassembling, or replacing these items will require special precautions and tools, and should be done only by an authorized Honda dealer.

- To avoid rendering the SRS inoperative, which could lead to personal injury or death in the event of a severe frontal collision, all SRS service work must be performed by an authorized Honda dealer.
- Improper service procedures, including incorrect removal and installation of the SRS could lead to personal injury caused by unintentional deployment of the airbags and side airbags.
- Do not bump the SRS unit. Otherwise, the system may fail in a collision, or the airbags may deploy when the ignition switch is ON (II).
- SRS electrical connectors are identified by yellow color coding. Related components are located in the steering column, front console, dashboard, dashboard lower panel, in the dashboard above the glove box, in the front seats, and around the floor. Do not use electrical test equipment on these circuits.

## General Troubleshooting Information

### Tips and Precautions

#### Before Troubleshooting

1. Check applicable fuses in the appropriate fuse/relay box.
2. Check the battery for damage, state of charge, and clean and tight connections.

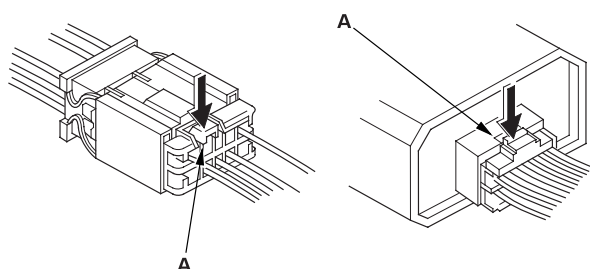
#### NOTICE

- Do not quick-charge a battery unless the battery ground cable has been disconnected, otherwise you will damage the alternator diodes.
- Do not attempt to crank the engine with the battery ground cable loosely connected or you will severely damage the wiring.

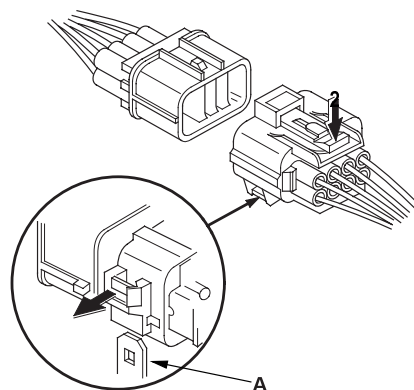
3. Check the alternator belt tension.

#### Handling Connectors

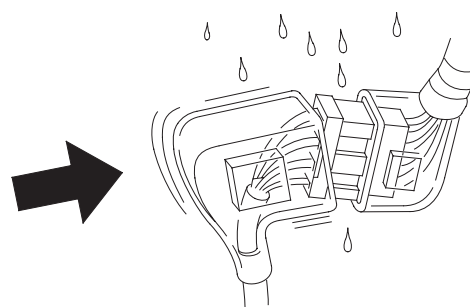
- Make sure the connectors are clean and have no loose wire terminals.
- Make sure multiple cavity connectors are packed with grease (except watertight connectors).
- All connectors have push-down release type locks (A).



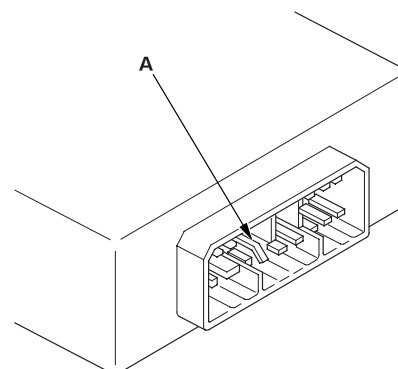
- Some connectors have a clip on their side used to attach them to a mount bracket on the body or on another component. This clip has a pull type lock.
- Some mounted connectors cannot be disconnected unless you first release the lock and remove the connector from its mount bracket (A).



- Never try to disconnect connectors by pulling on their wires; pull on the connector halves instead.
- Always reinstall plastic covers.



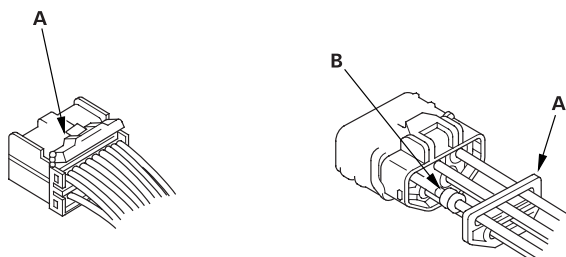
- Before connecting connectors, make sure the terminals (A) are in place and not bent.



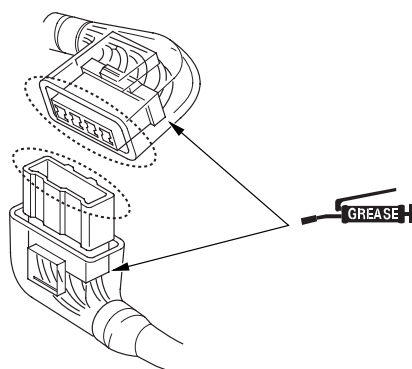
(cont'd)

### Tips and Precautions (cont'd)

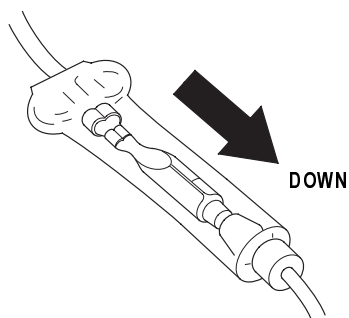
- Check for loose retainer (A) and rubber seals (B).



- The backs of some connectors are packed with grease. Add grease if necessary. If the grease is contaminated, replace it.

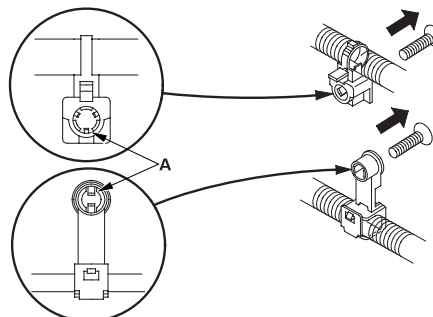


- Insert the connector all the way and make sure it is securely locked.
- Position wires so that the open end of the cover faces down.

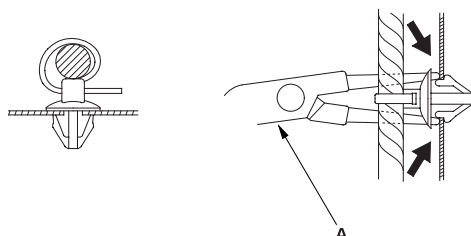


### Handling Wires and Harnesses

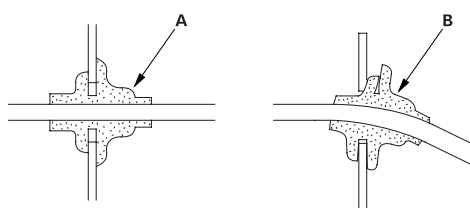
- Secure wires and wire harnesses to the frame with their respective wire ties at the designated locations.
- Remove clips carefully; don't damage their locks (A).



- Slip pliers (A) under the clip base and through the hole at an angle, then squeeze the expansion tabs to release the clip.



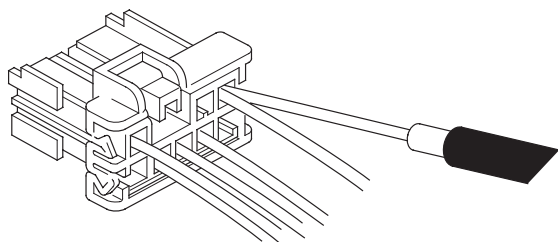
- After installing harness clips, make sure the harness doesn't interfere with any moving parts.
- Keep wire harnesses away from exhaust pipes and other hot parts, from sharp edges of brackets and holes, and from exposed screws and bolts.
- Seat grommets in their grooves properly (A). Do not leave grommets distorted (B).



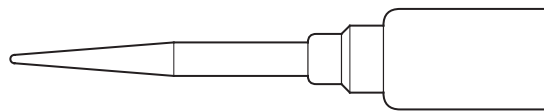


### Testing and Repairs

- Do not use wires or harnesses with broken insulation. Replace them or repair them by wrapping the break with electrical tape.
- After installing parts, make sure that no wires are pinched under them.
- When using electrical test equipment, follow the manufacturer's instructions and those described in this manual.
- If possible, insert the probe of the tester from the wire side (except waterproof connector).



- Use a probe with a tapered tip.



- Refer to the instructions in the Honda Terminal Kit for identification and replacement of connector terminals.

(cont'd)

### 5-step Troubleshooting

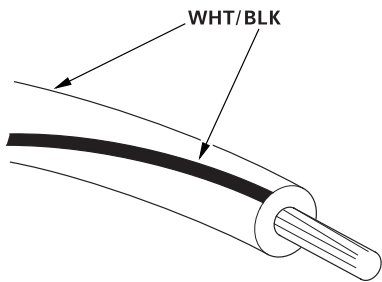
- 1. Verify The Complaint**  
Turn on all the components in the problem circuit to verify the customer complaint. Note the symptoms. Do not begin disassembly or testing until you have narrowed down the problem area.
- 2. Analyze The Schematic**  
Look up the schematic for the problem circuit. Determine how the circuit is supposed to work by tracing the current paths from the power feed through the circuit components to ground. If several circuits fail at the same time, the fuse or ground is a likely cause. Based on the symptoms and your understanding of the circuit operation, identify one or more possible causes of the problem.
- 3. Isolate The Problem By Testing The Circuit**  
Make circuit tests to check the diagnosis you made in step 2. Keep in mind that a logical, simple procedure is the key to efficient troubleshooting. Test for the most likely cause of failure first. Try to make tests at points that are easily accessible.
- 4. Fix The Problem**  
Once the specific problem is identified, make the repair. Be sure to use proper tools and safe procedures.
- 5. Make Sure The Circuit Works**  
Turn on all components in the repaired circuit in all modes to make sure you've fixed the entire problem. If the problem was a blown fuse, be sure to test all of the circuits on the fuse. Make sure no new problems turn up and the original problem does not recur.

### Wire Color Codes

The following abbreviations are used to identify wire colors in the circuit schematics:

WHT	White
YEL	Yellow
BLK	Black
BLU	Blue
GRN	Green
RED	Red
ORN	Orange
PNK	Pink
BRN	Brown
GRY	Gray
PUR	Purple
LT BLU	Light Blue
LT GRN	Light Green

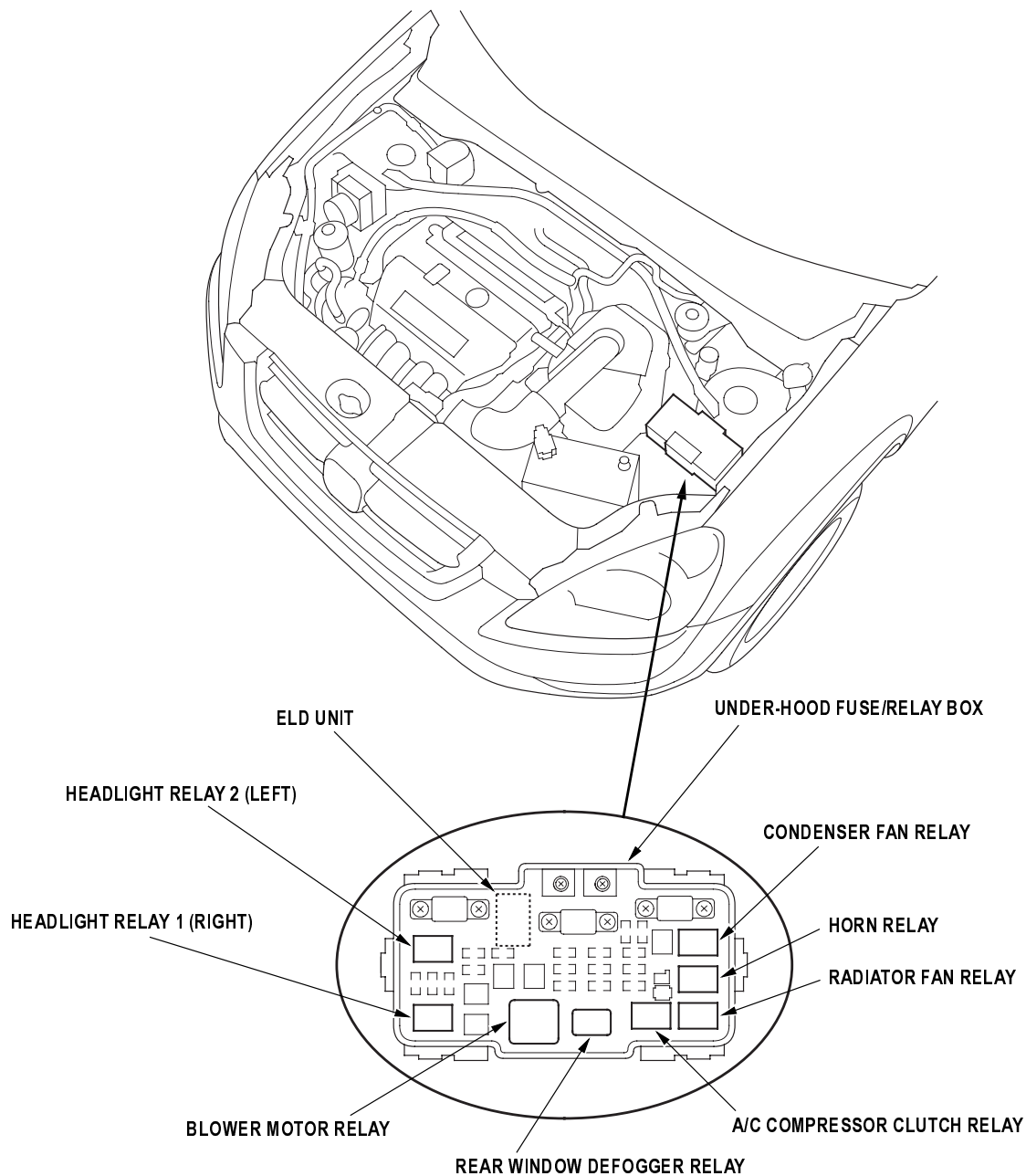
The wire insulation has one color or one color with another color stripe. The second color is the stripe.



## Relay and Control Unit Locations

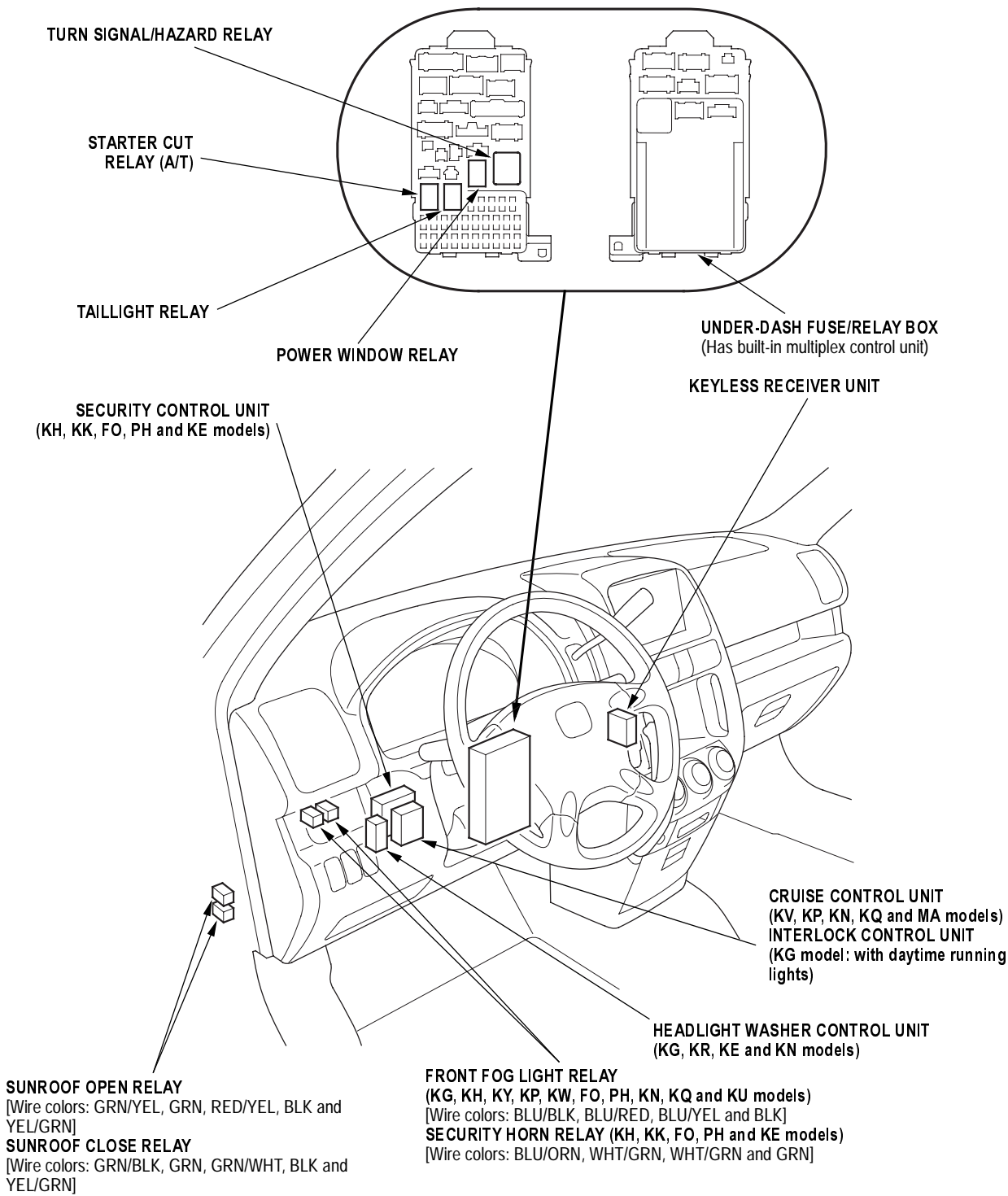
### Engine Compartment

Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.

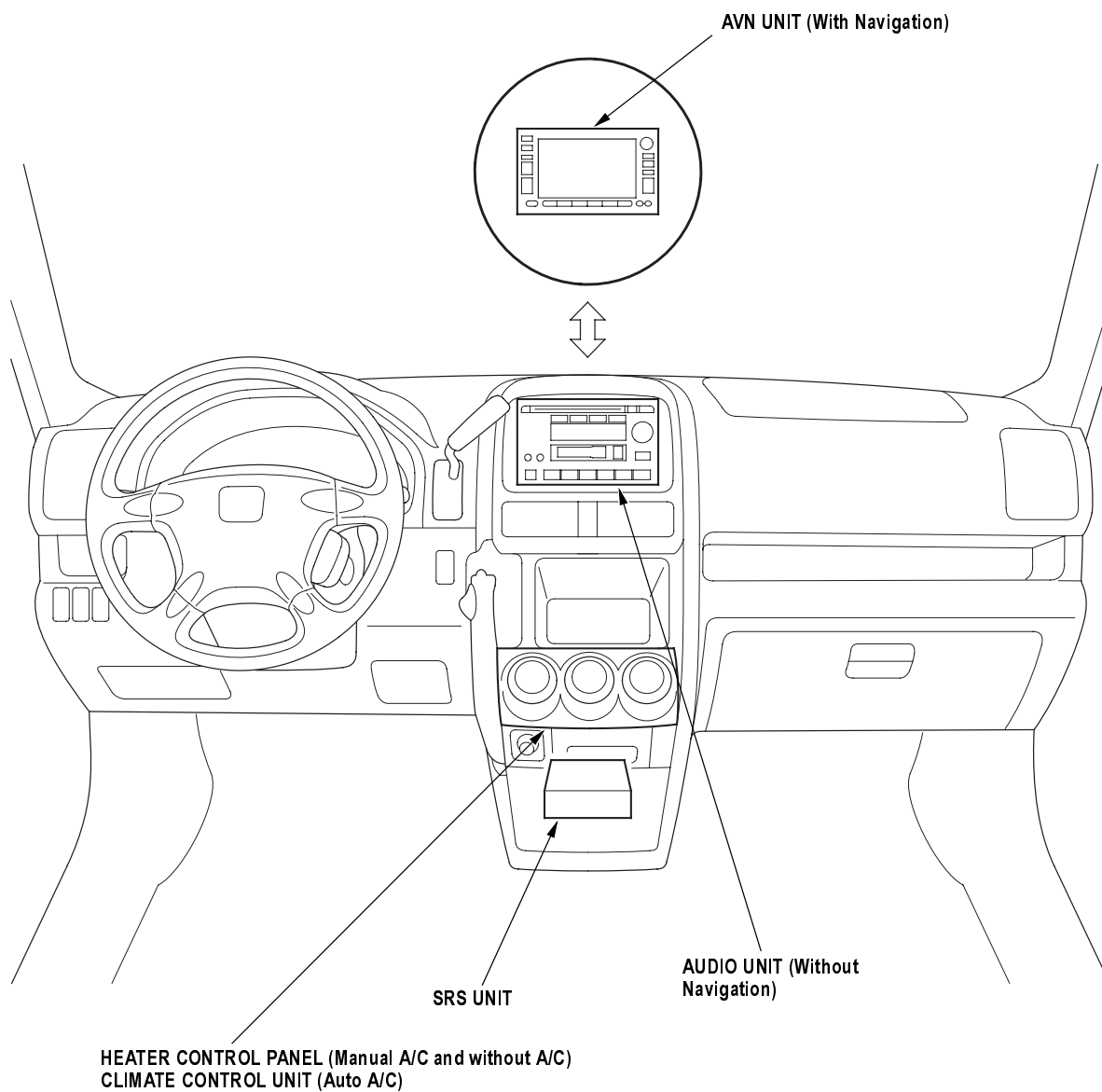


Dashboard

Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



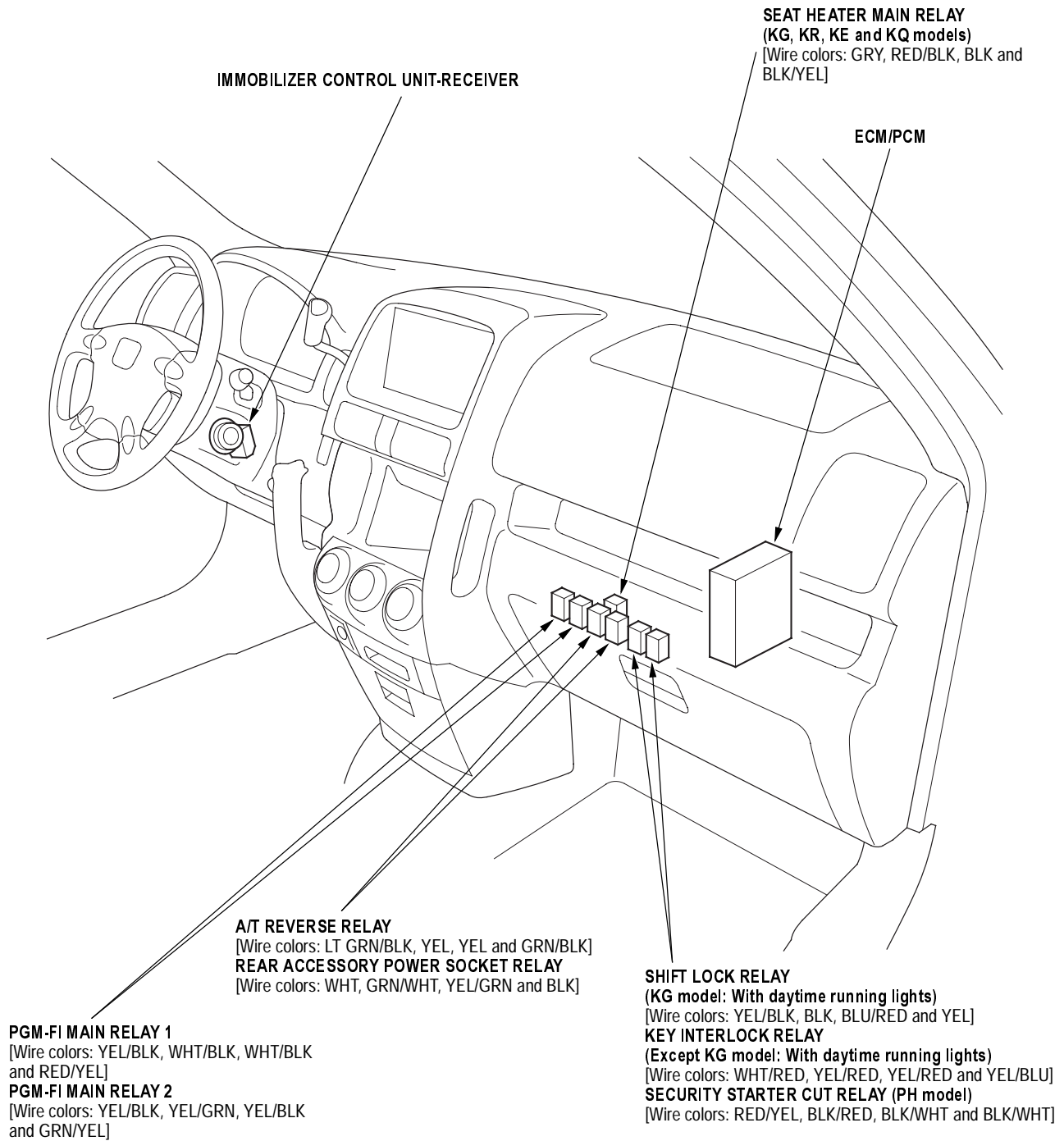
Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



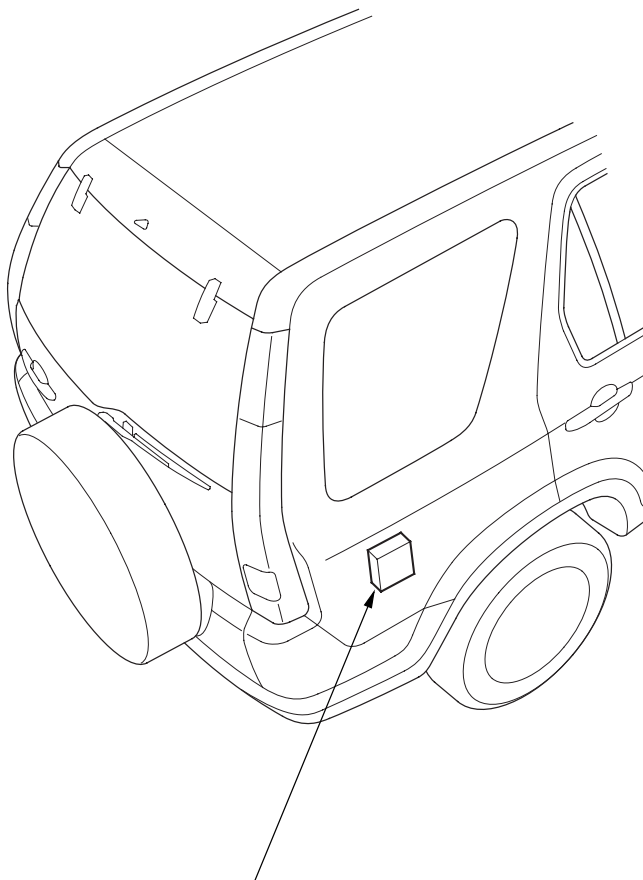
(cont'd)

### Dashboard (cont'd)

Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



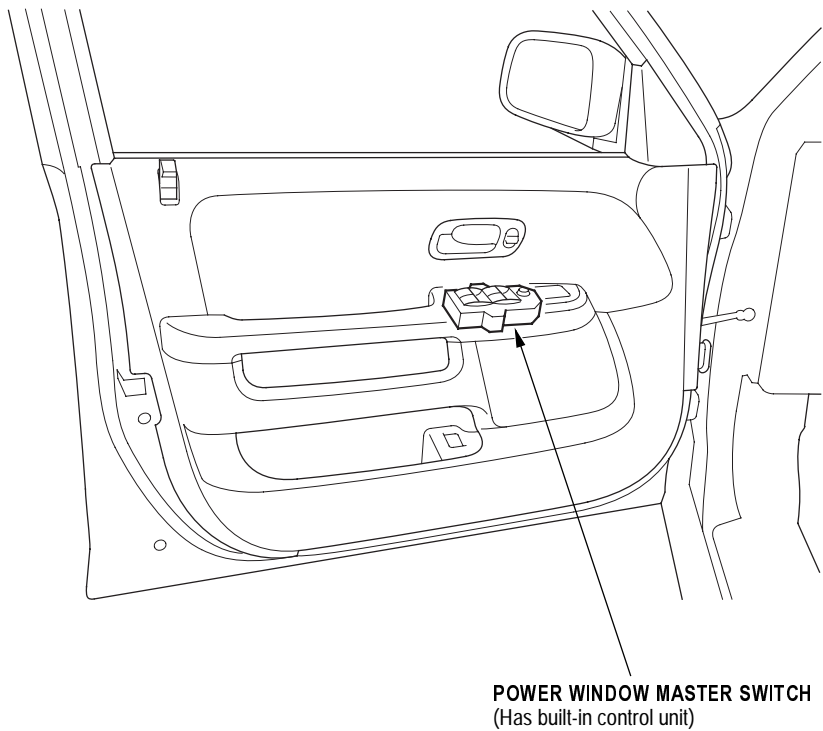
### Rear



REAR WINDOW WIPER CONTROL UNIT

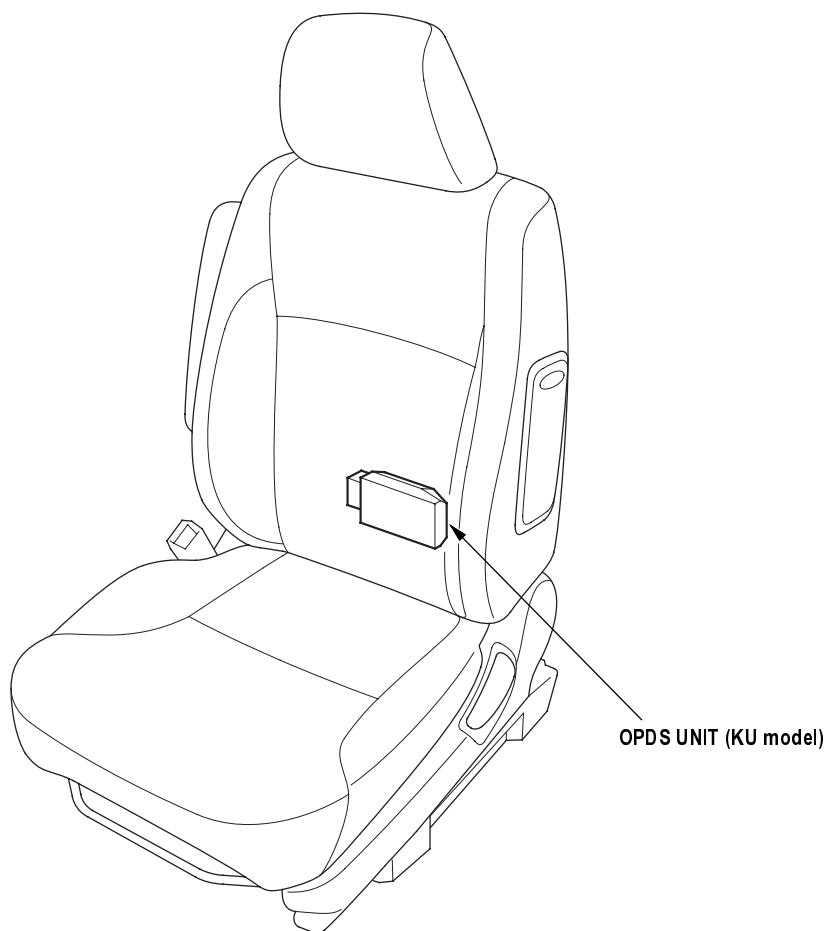
Door

Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.





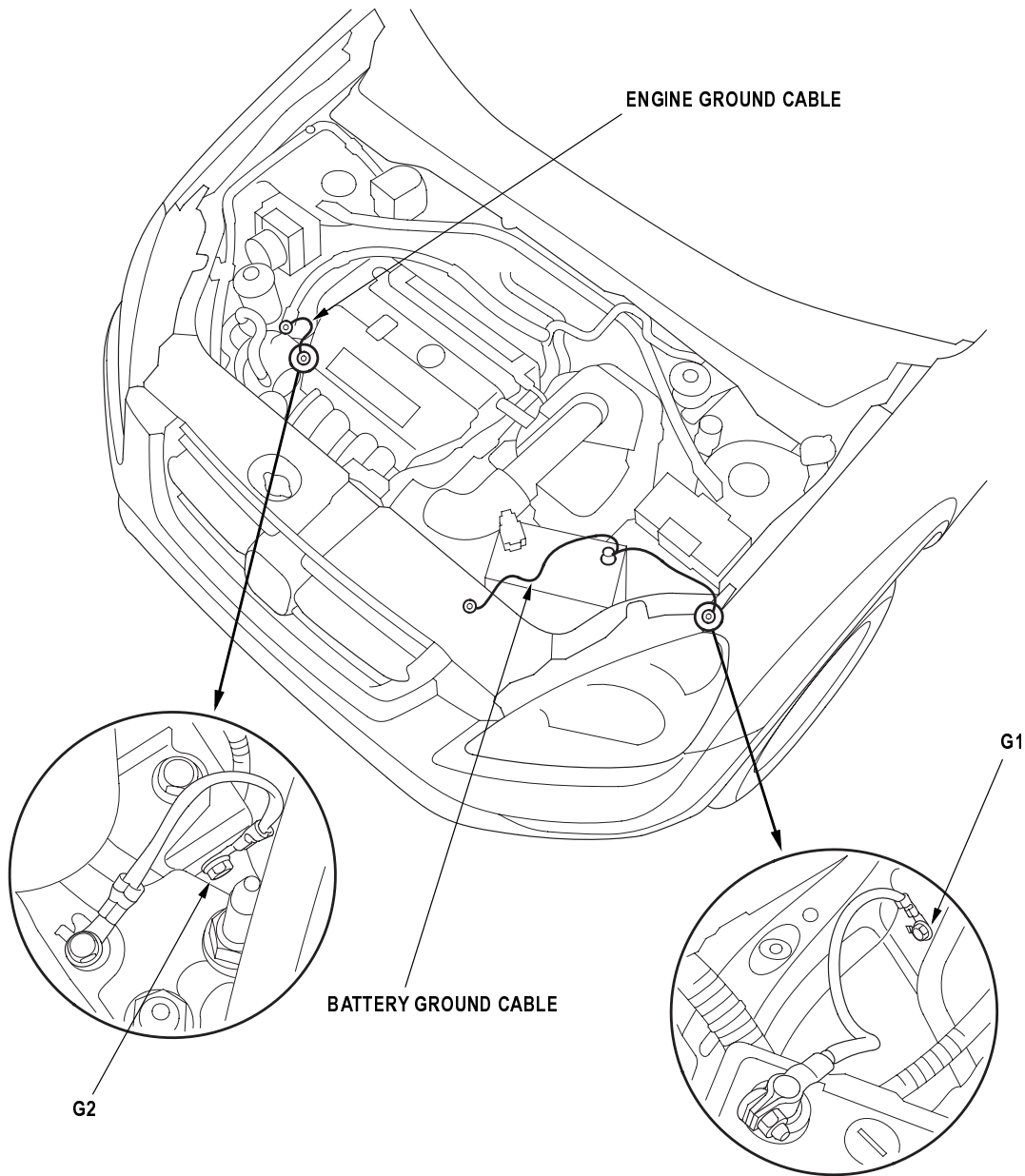
### Seat



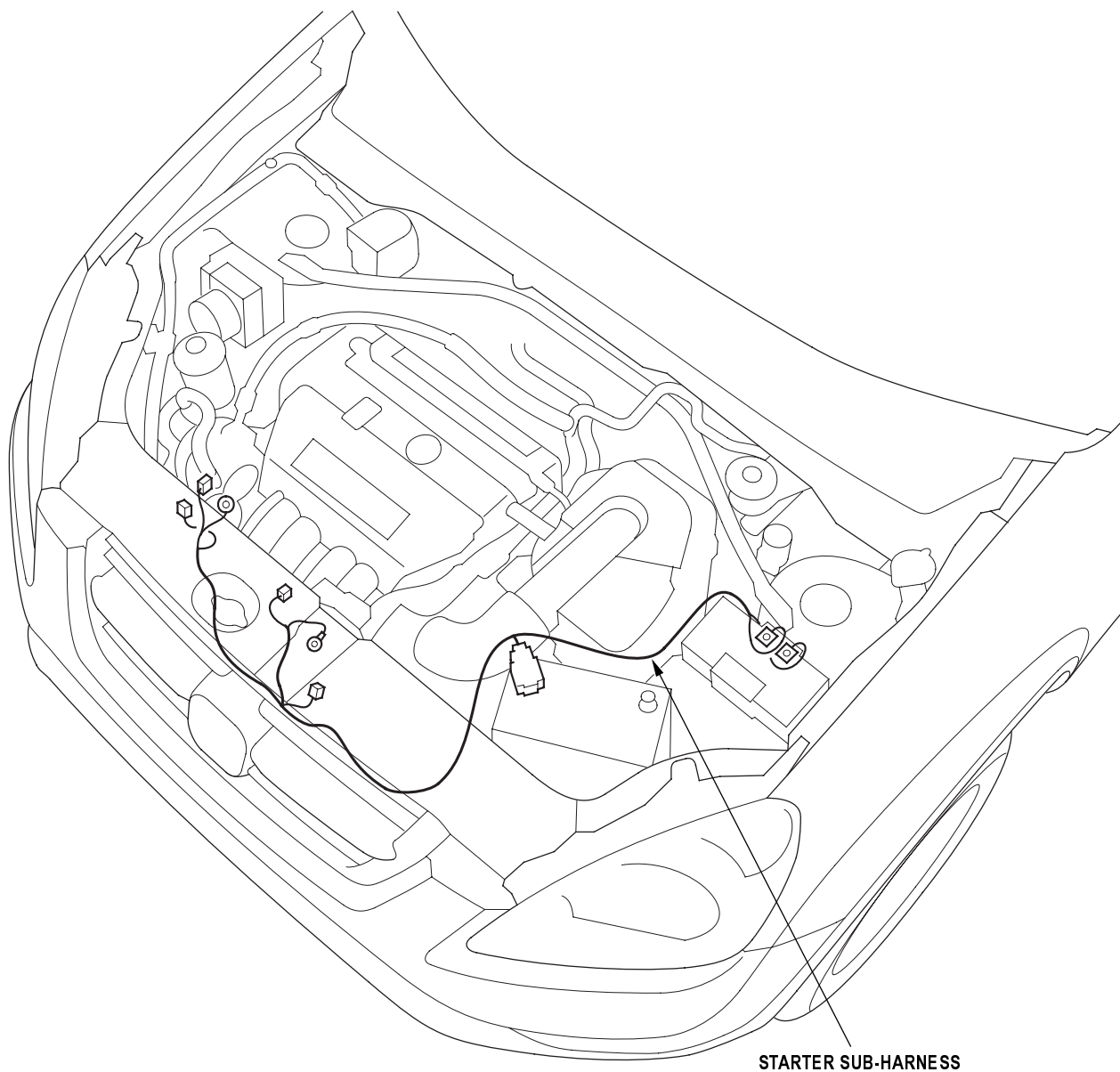
Wire Harness and Ground Locations

Engine Compartment

Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



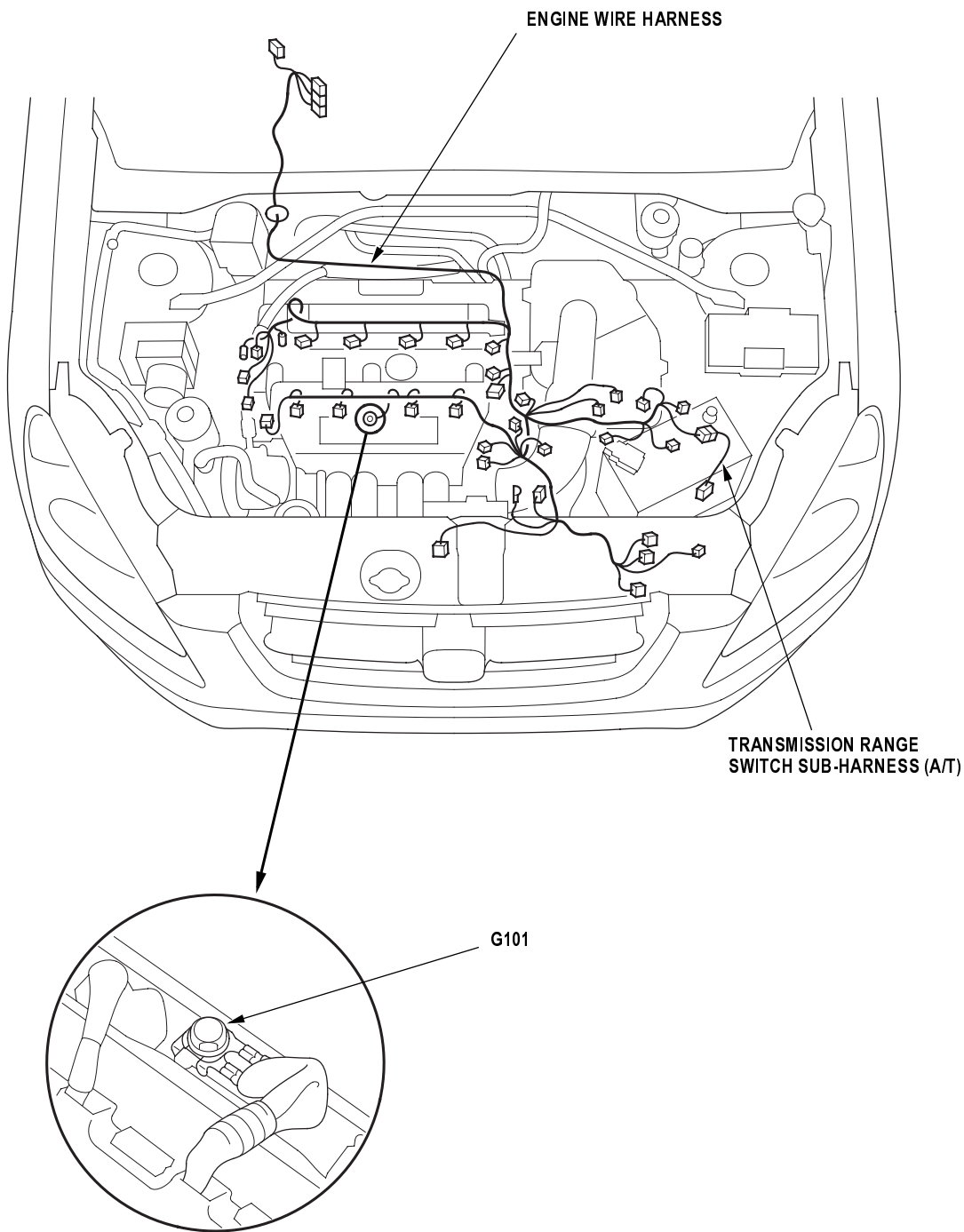
Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



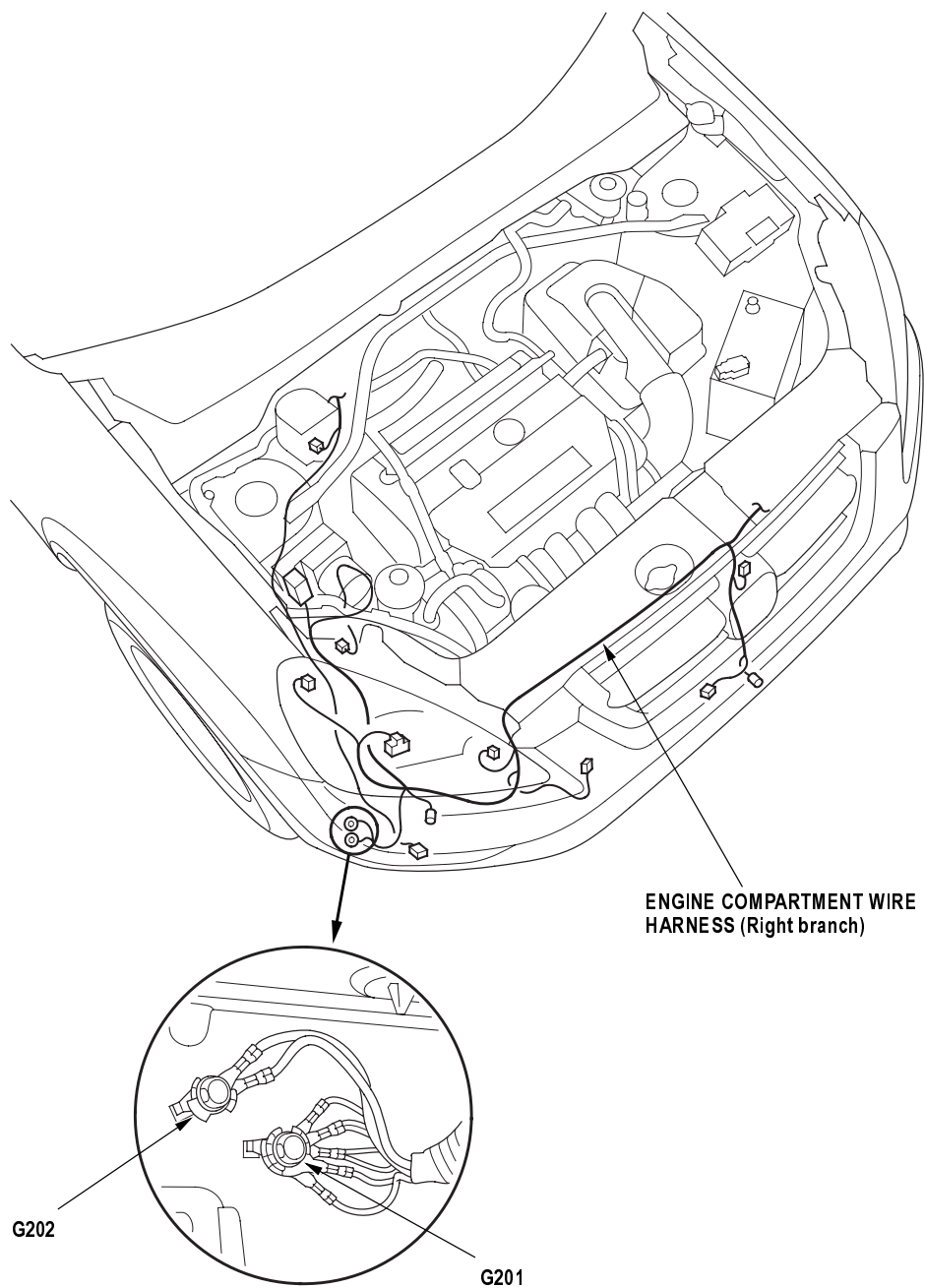
(cont'd)

Engine Compartment (cont'd)

Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



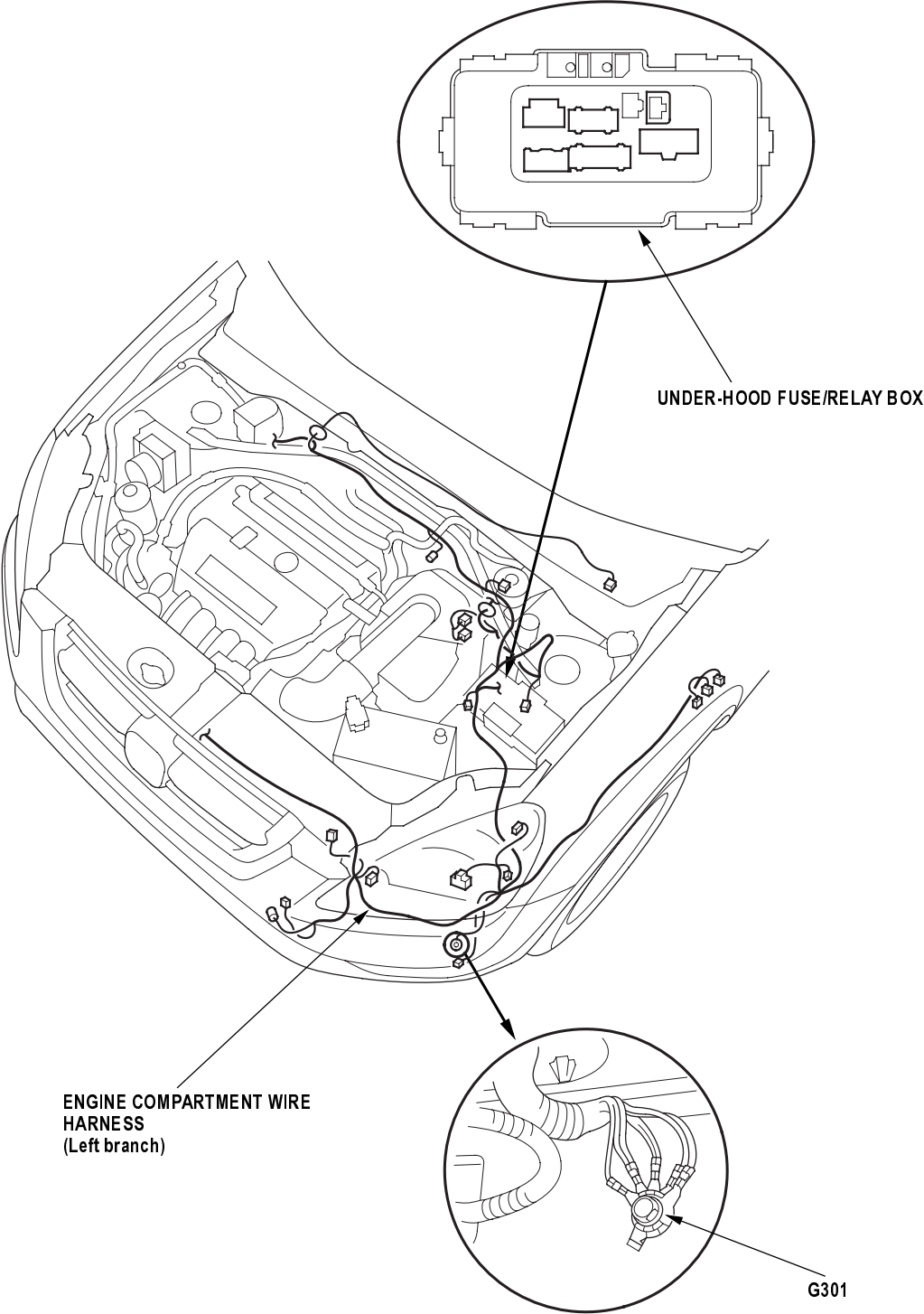
Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



(cont'd)

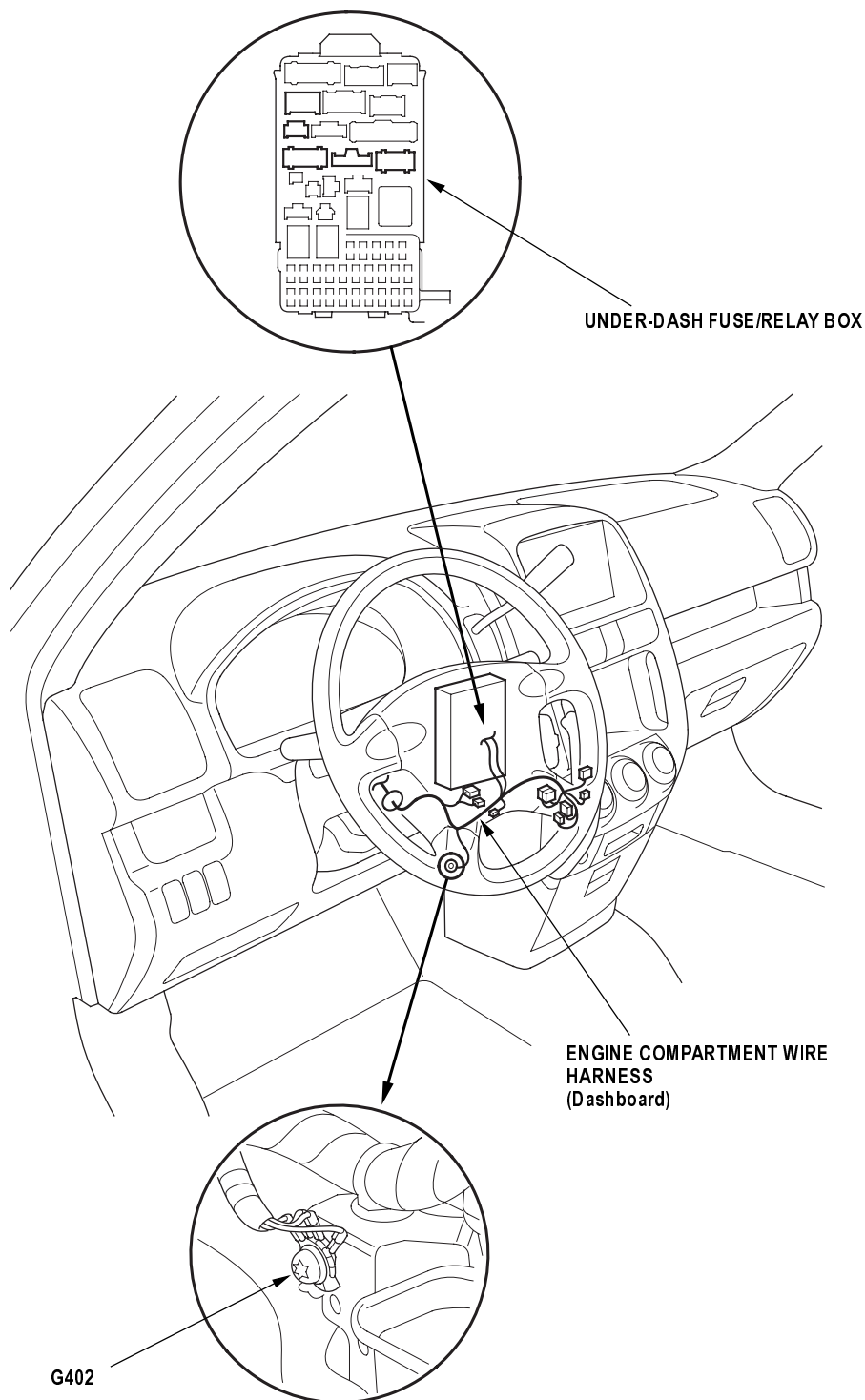
### Engine Compartment (cont'd)

Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



### Dashboard

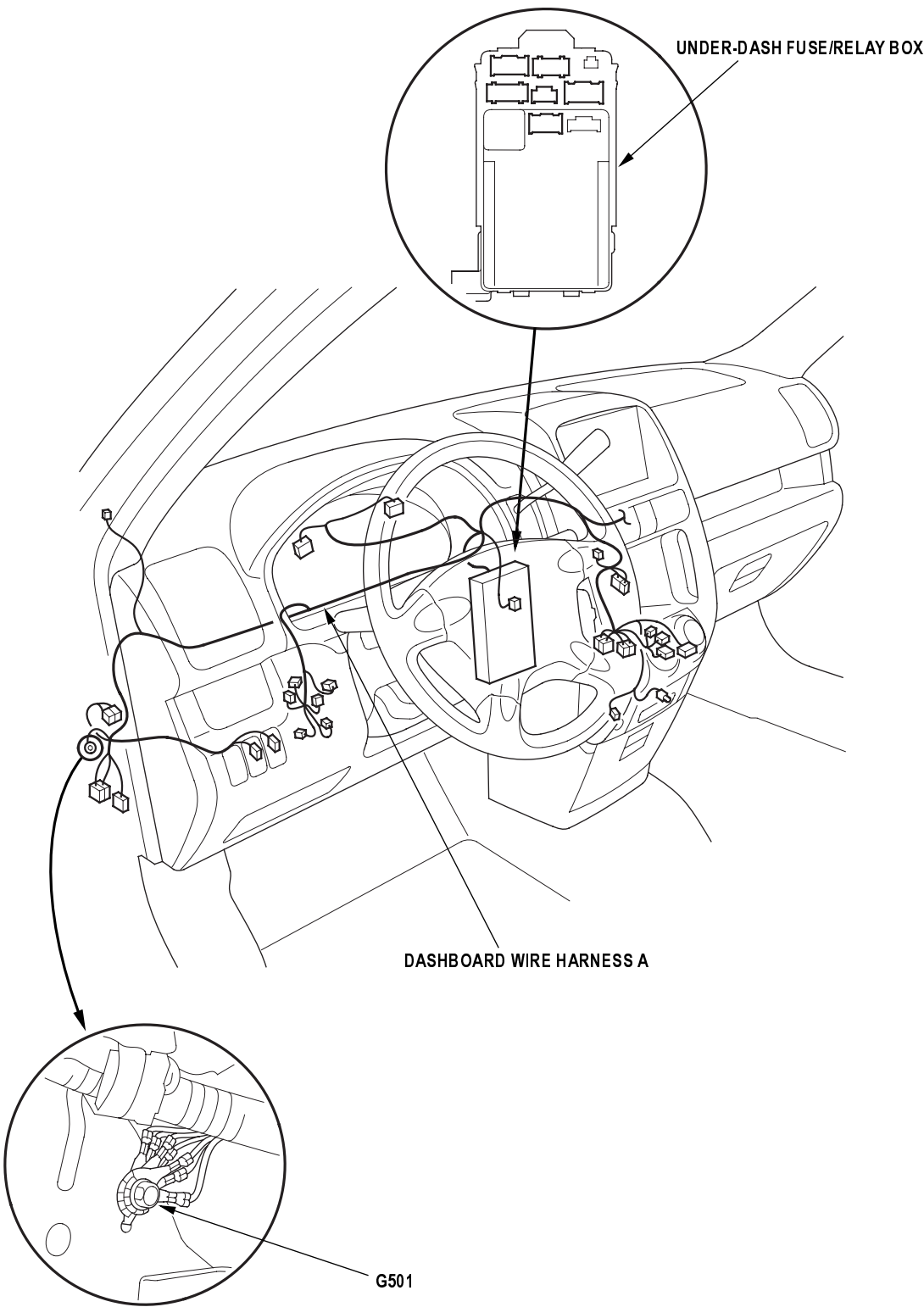
Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



(cont'd)

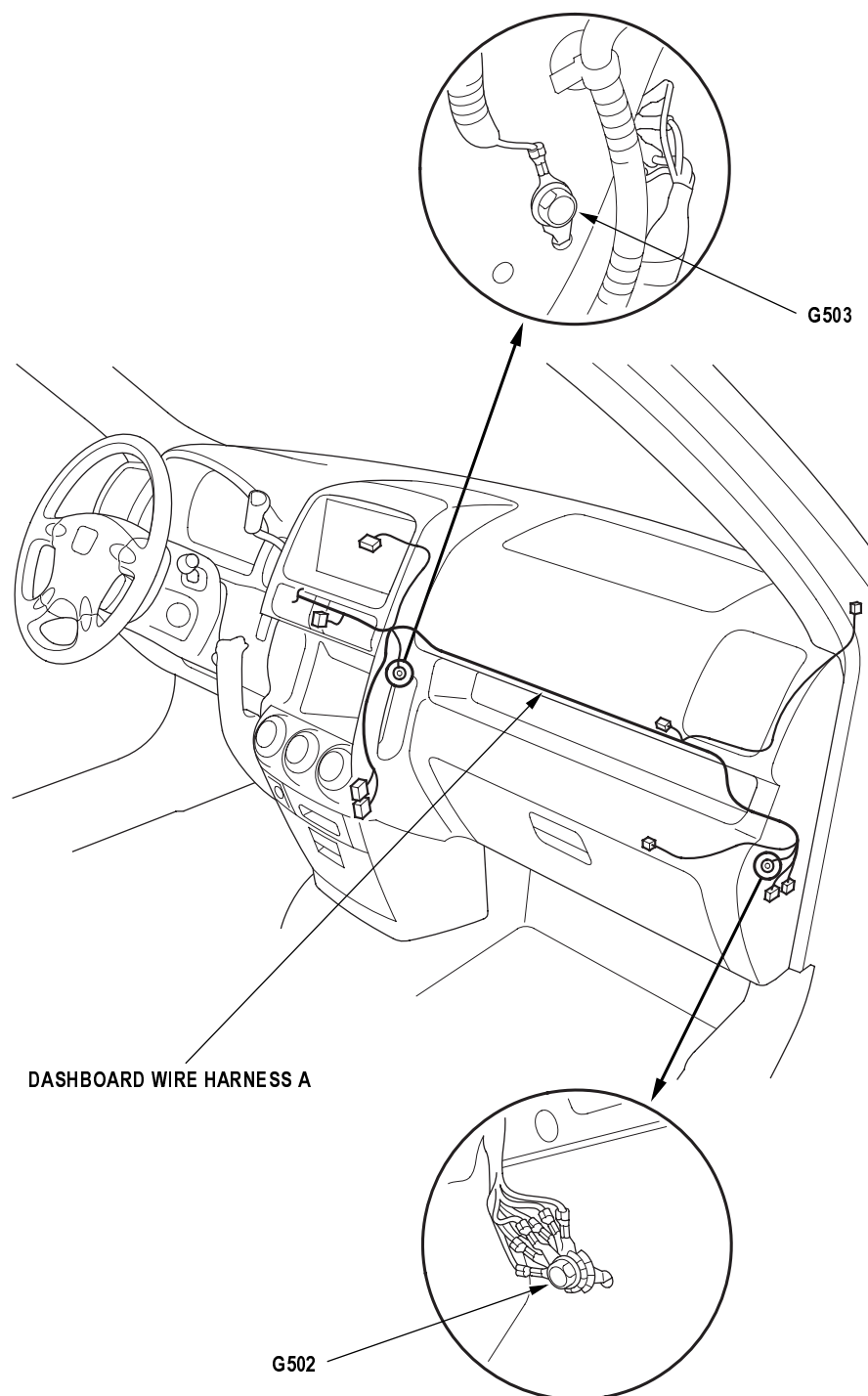
### Dashboard (cont'd)

Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.





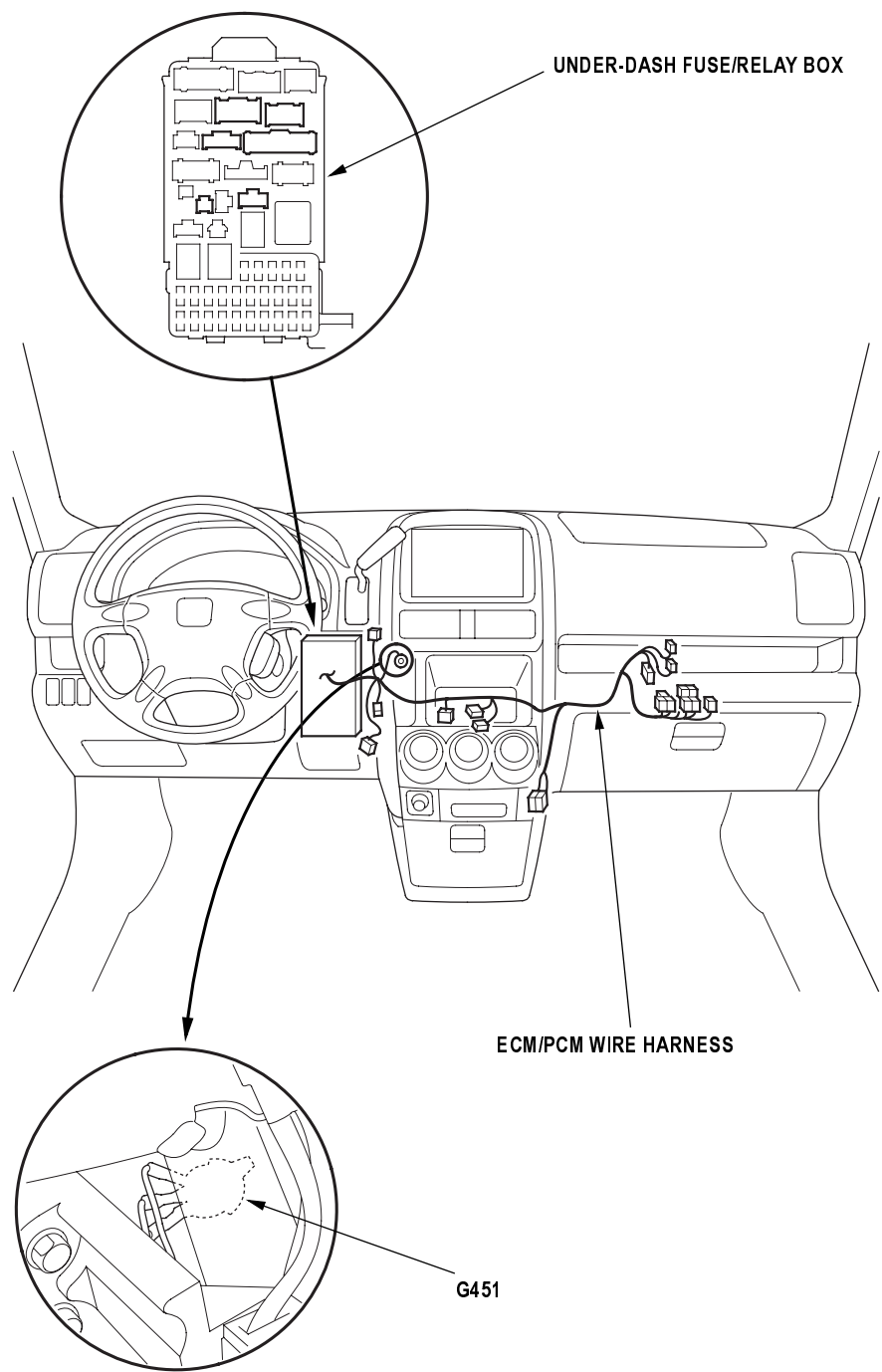
Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



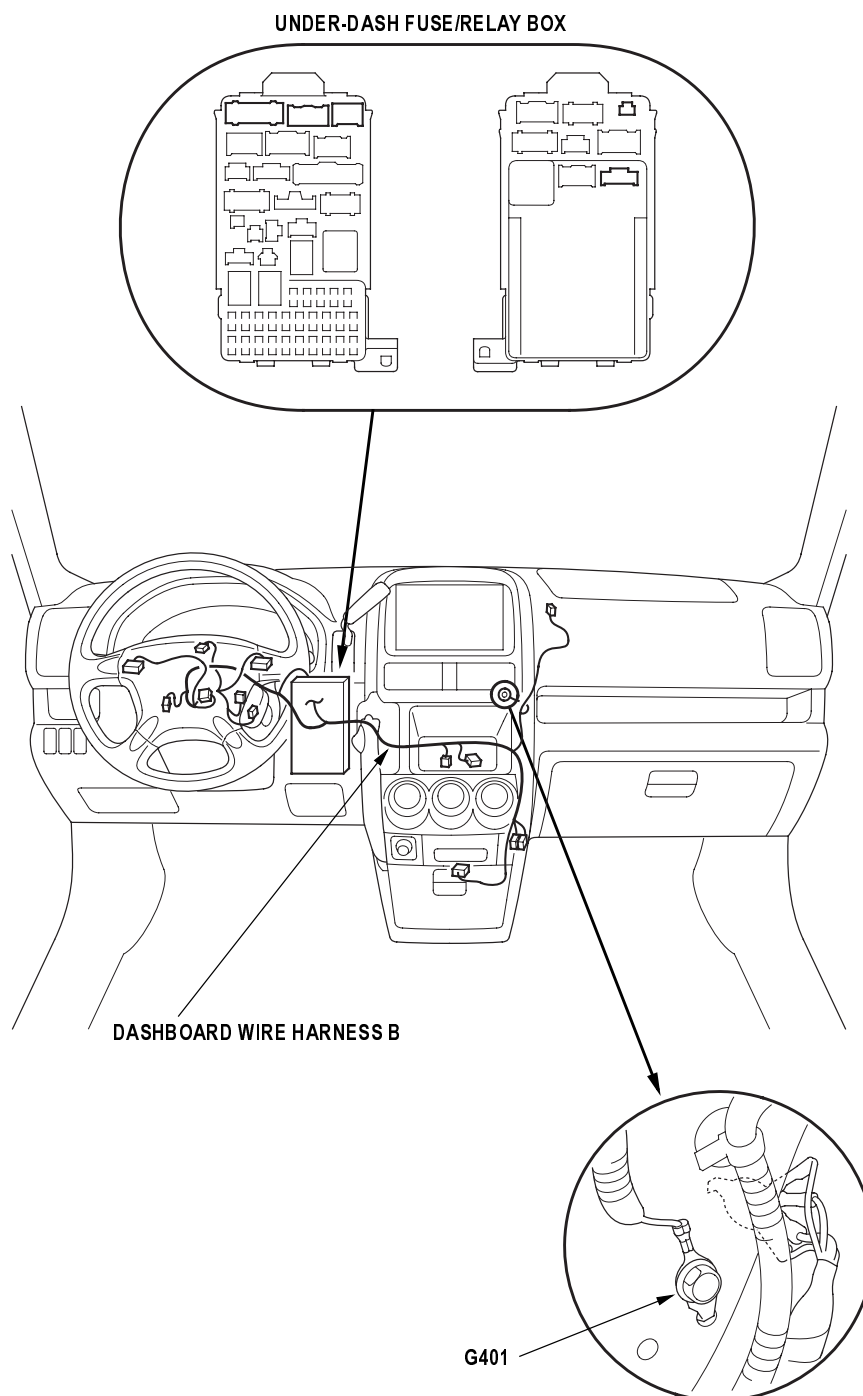
(cont'd)

## Dashboard (cont'd)

Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.

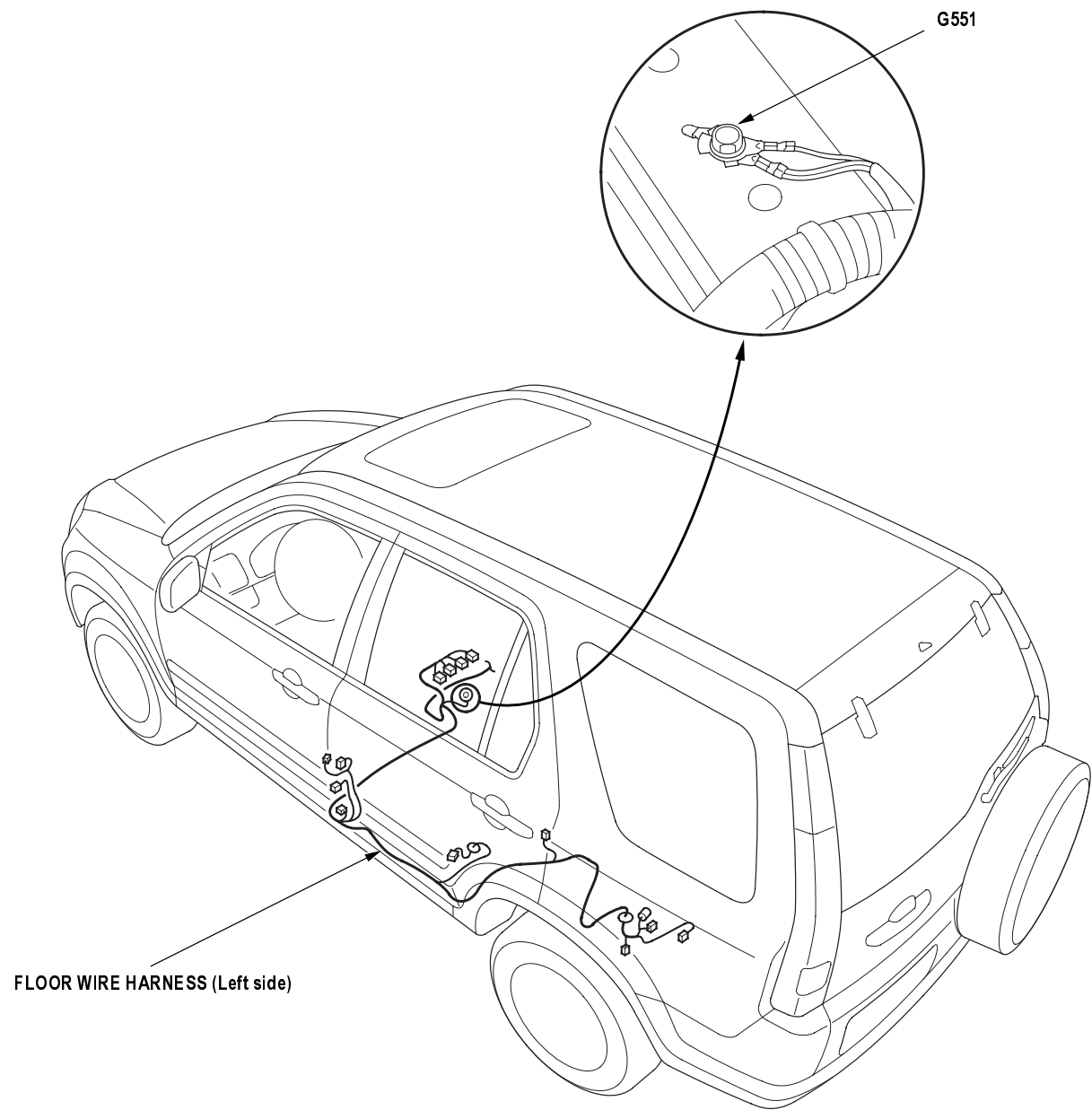


Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.

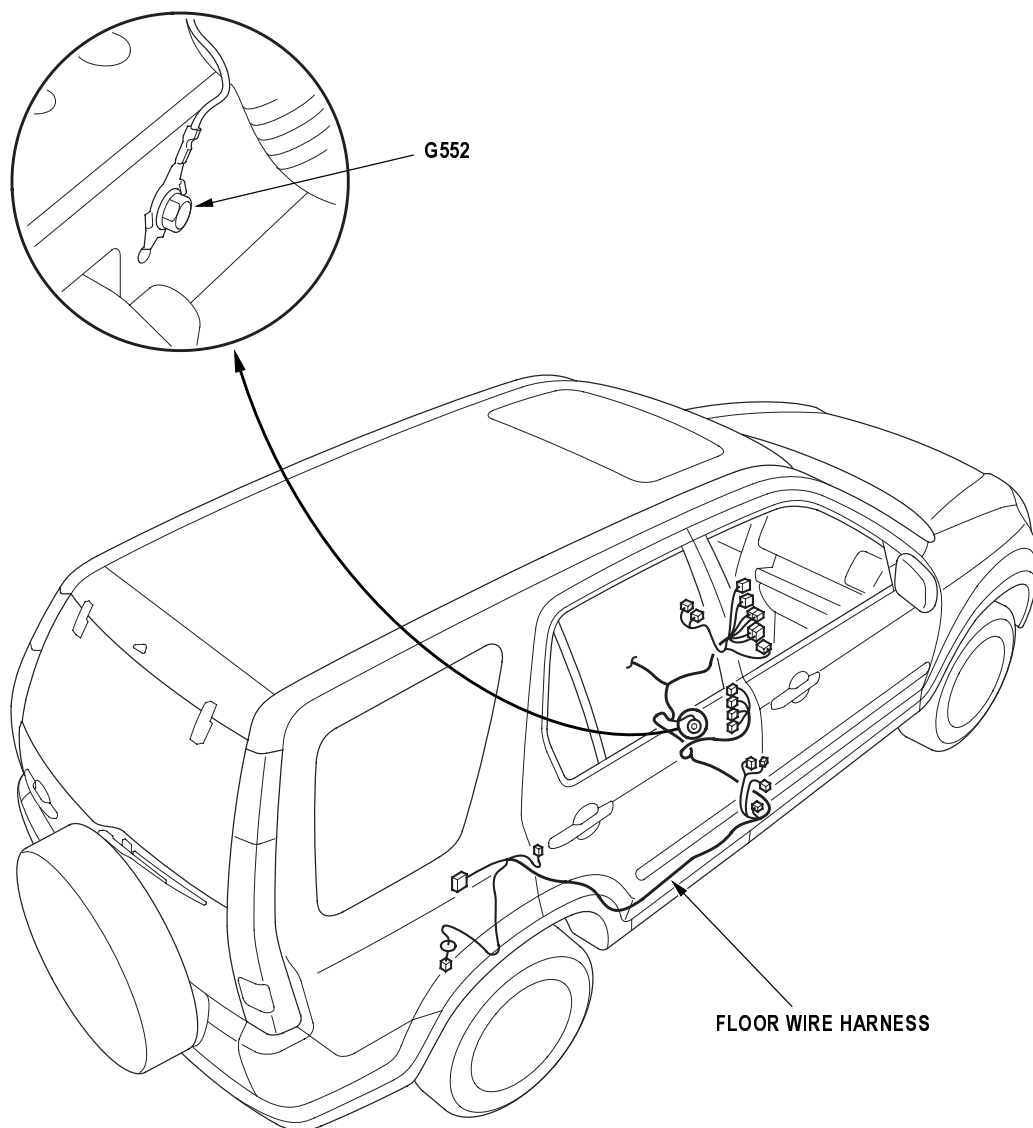


### Floor

Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.

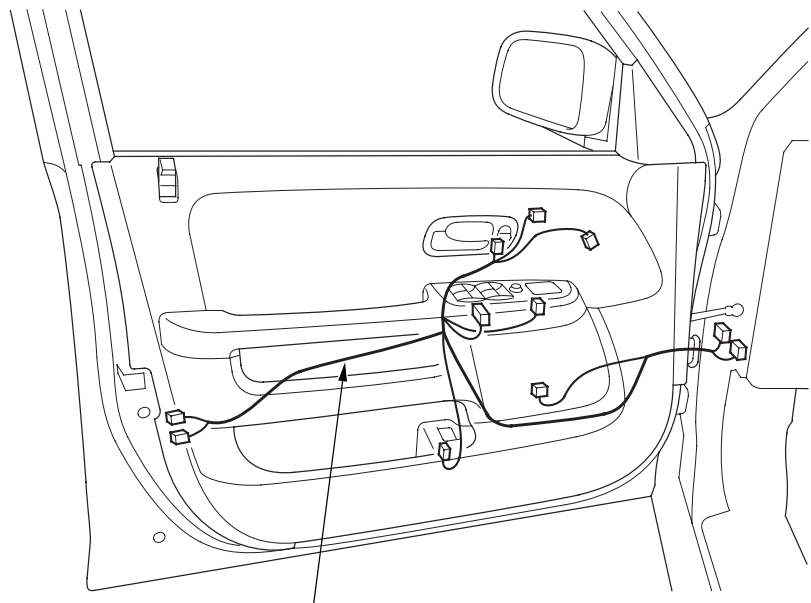


Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.

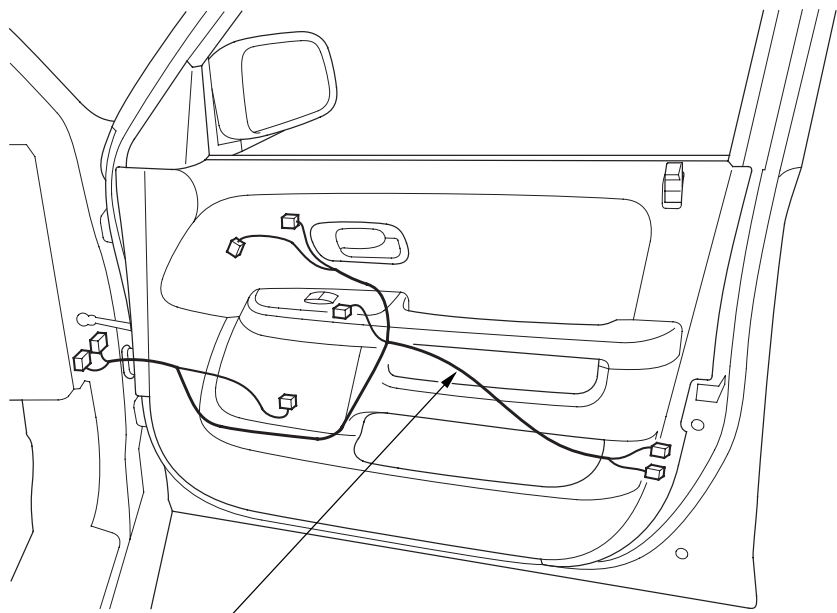


### Door

Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.

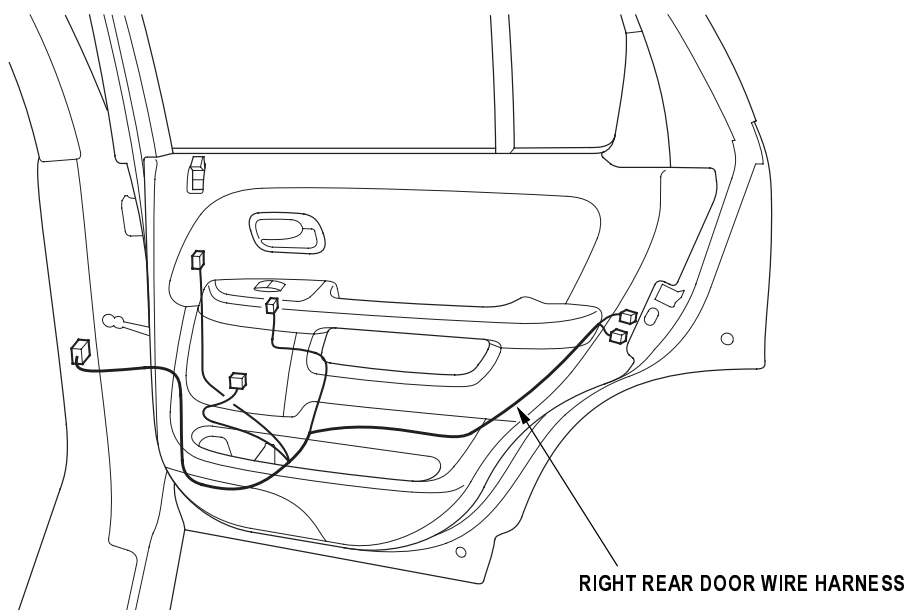
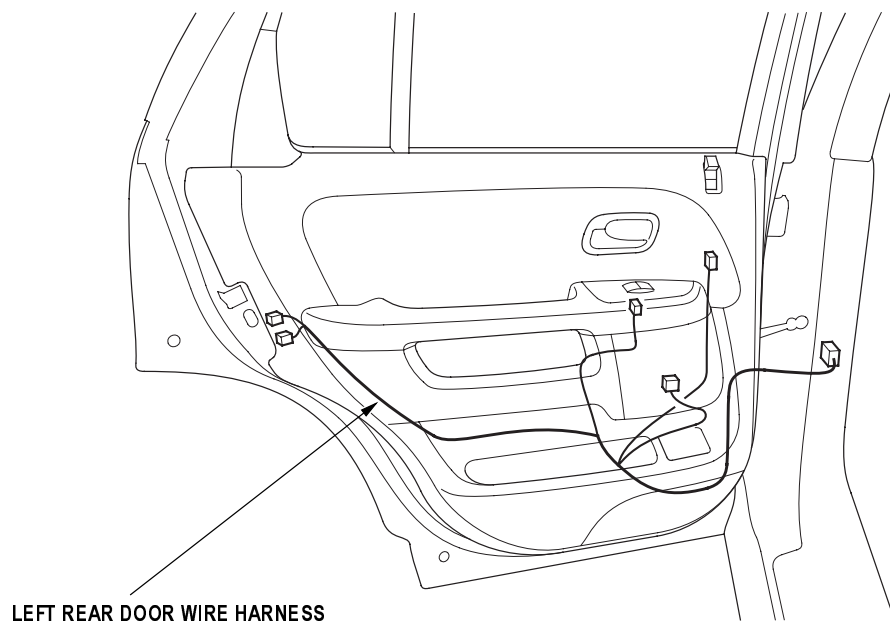


DRIVER'S DOOR WIRE HARNESS



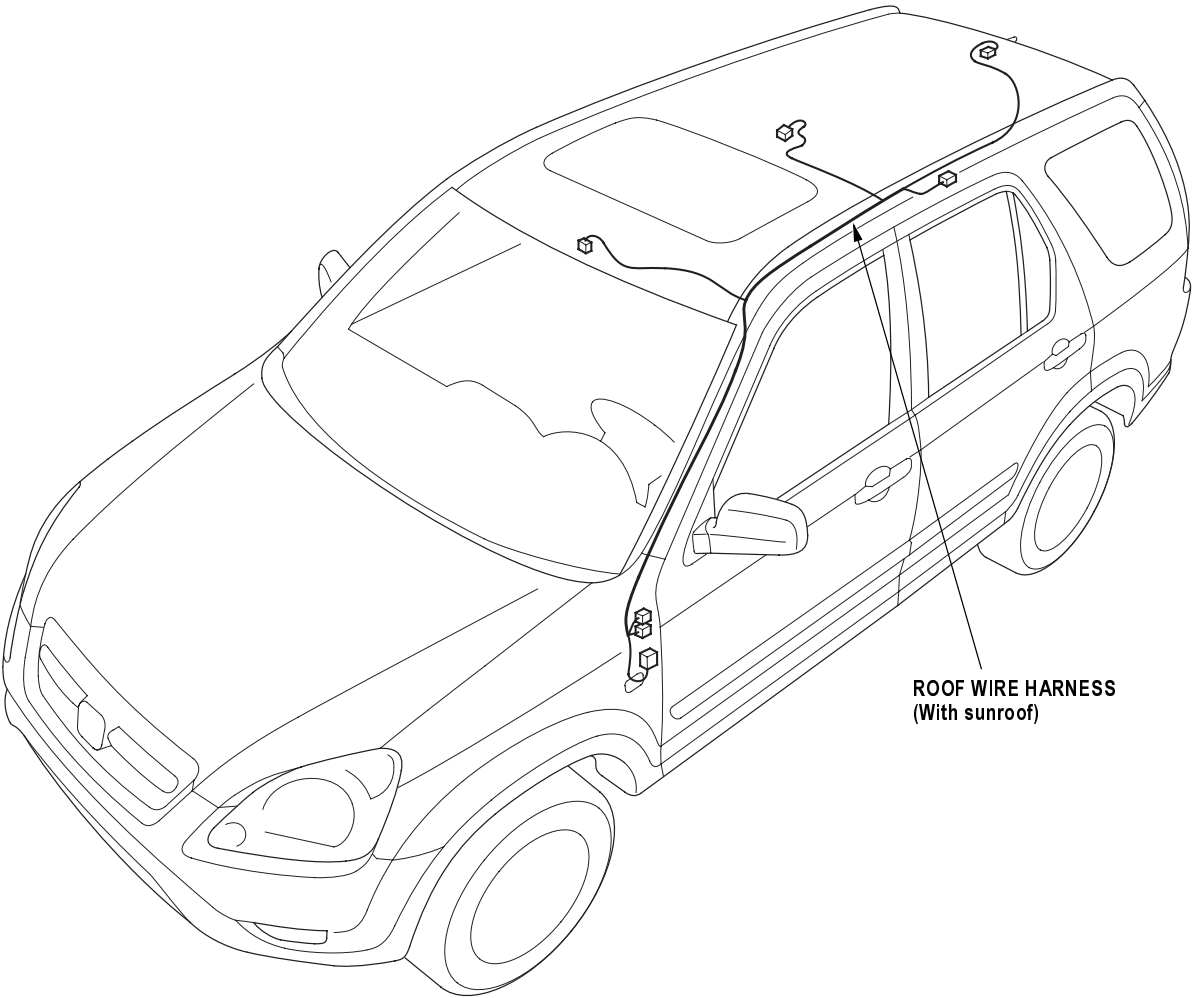
FRONT PASSENGER'S DOOR WIRE HARNESS

Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.

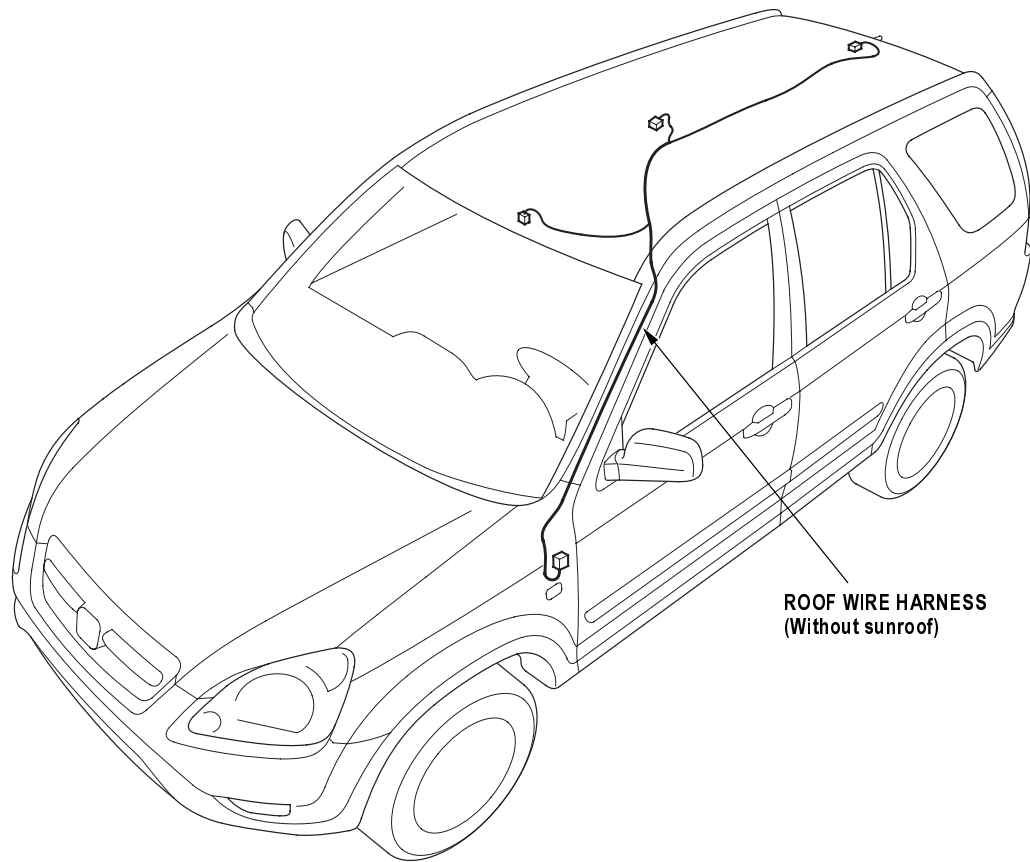


Roof

Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.

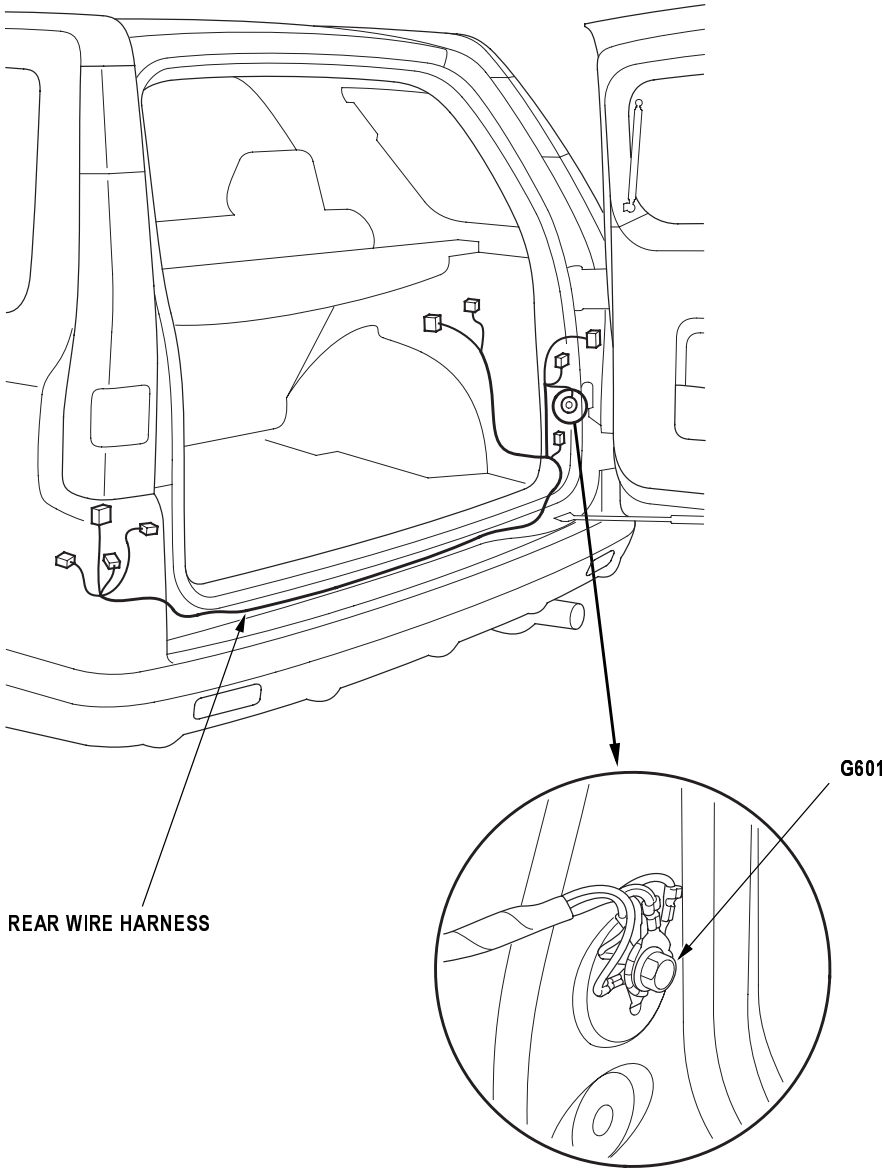




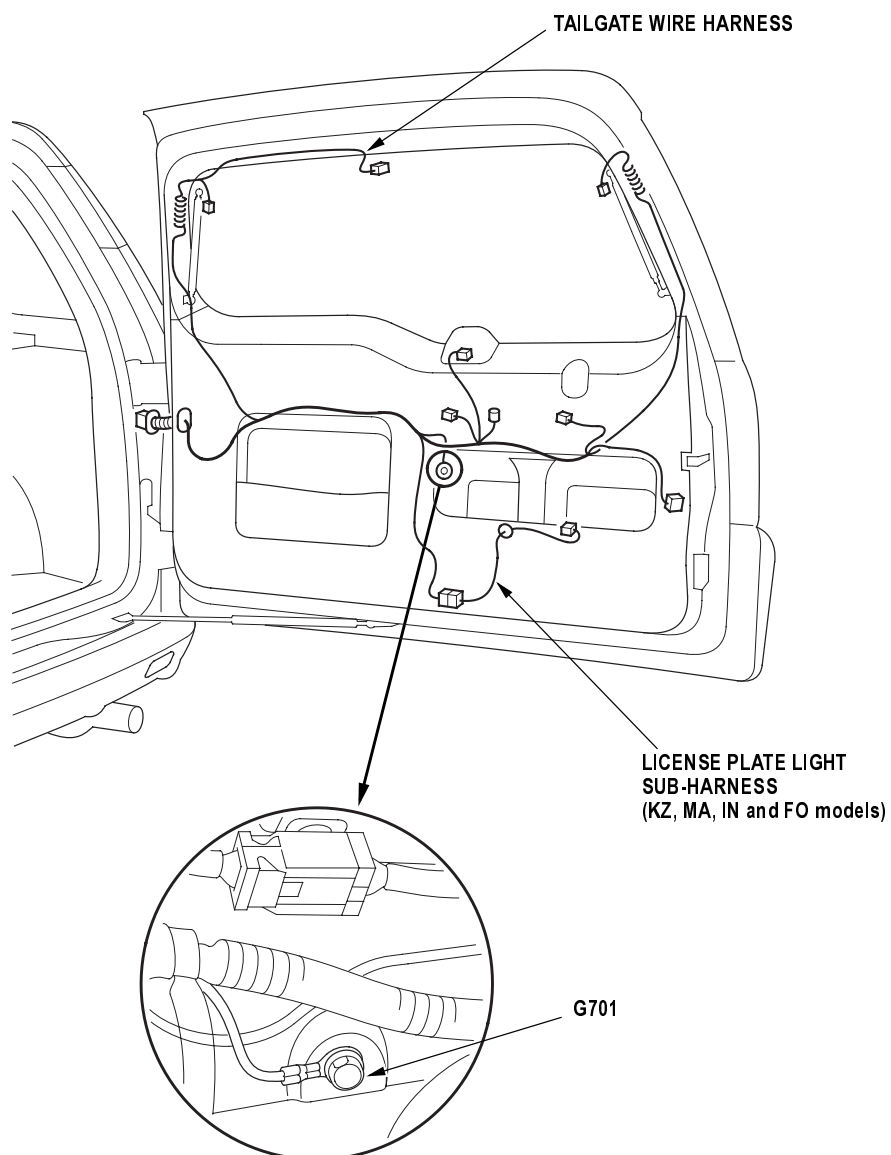


Rear/Tailgate

Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.

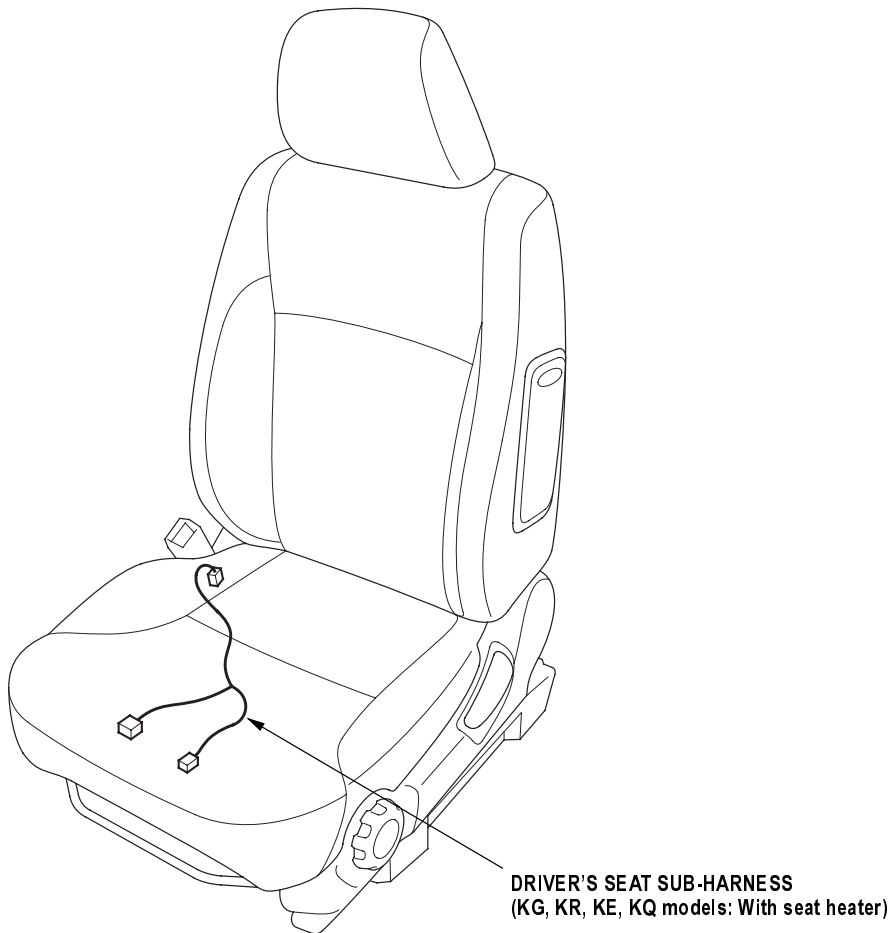


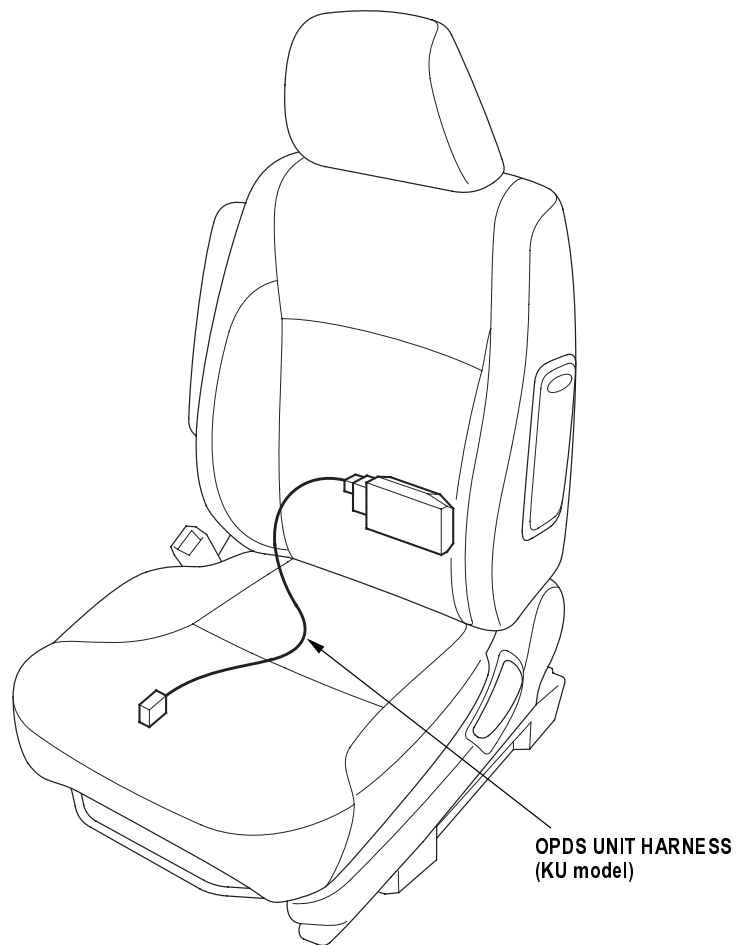
Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



Seat

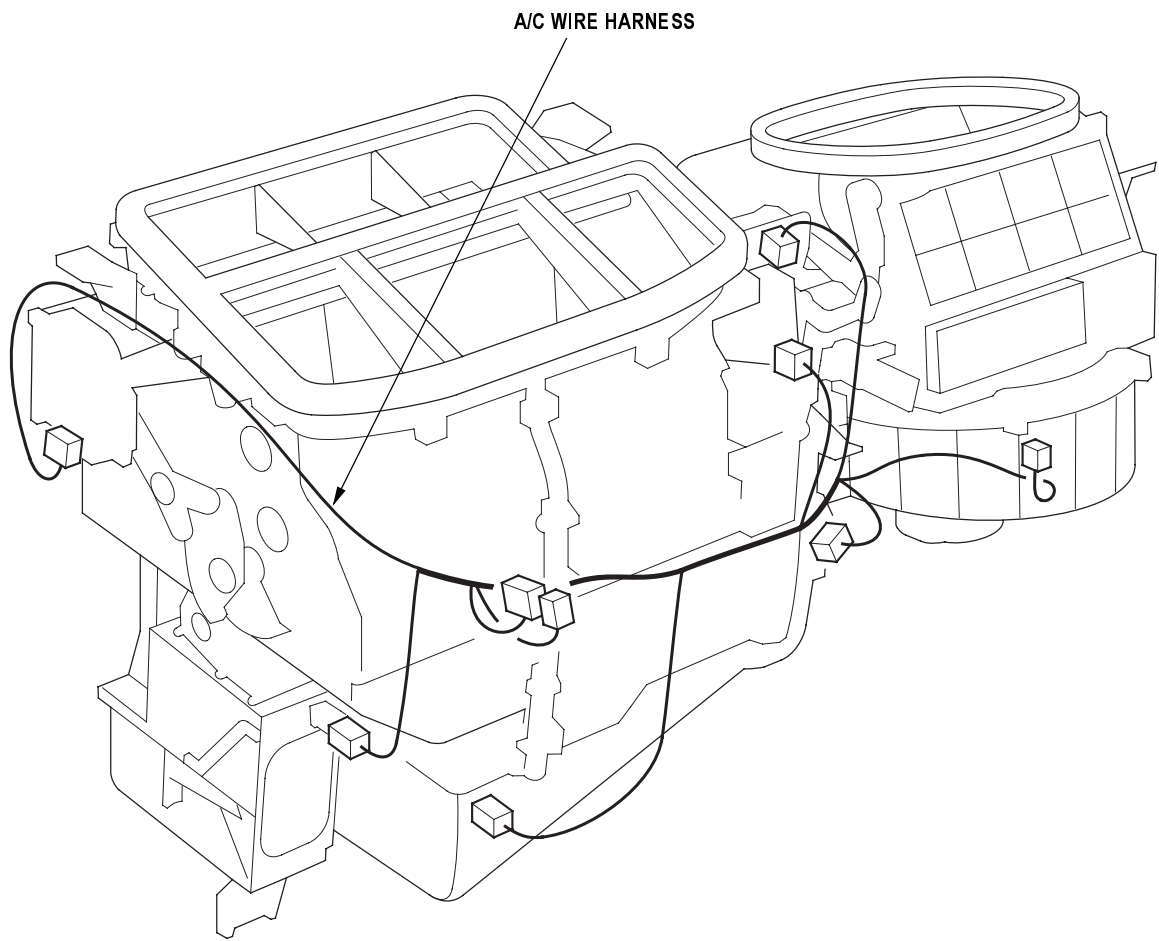
Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.





Blower

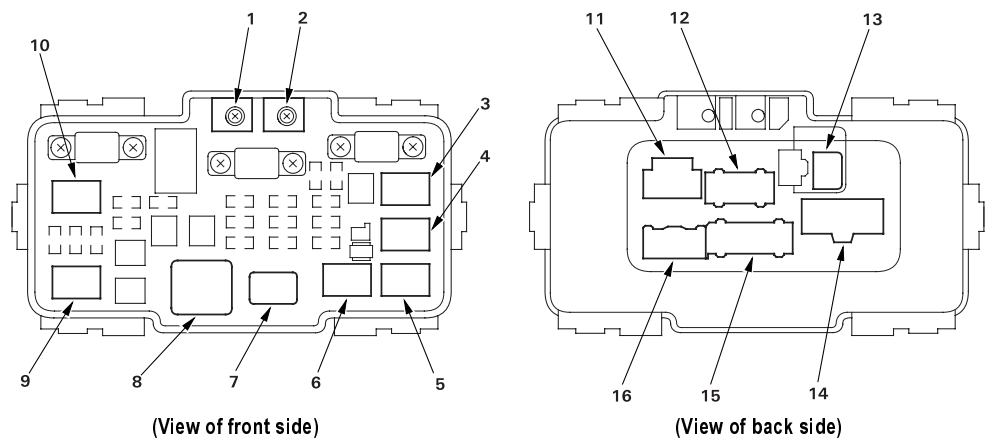
Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.



Fuse/Relay Boxes

Connector to Fuse/Relay Box Index

Socket	Ref	Terminal	Connects to
A	11	2	Engine compartment wire harness
A/C compressor clutch relay	6	4	
B	16	5	
Blower motor relay	8	4	
C	12	12	
Condenser fan relay	3	4	
D	15	14	
E	14	7	
ELD unit	13	3	
Horn relay	4	4	
Headlight relay 1	9	4	
Headlight relay 2	10	4	
Radiator fan relay	5	4	
Rear window defogger relay	7	4	
T1 (Battery)	2		Starter sub-harness
T101 (Alternator)	1		Starter sub-harness

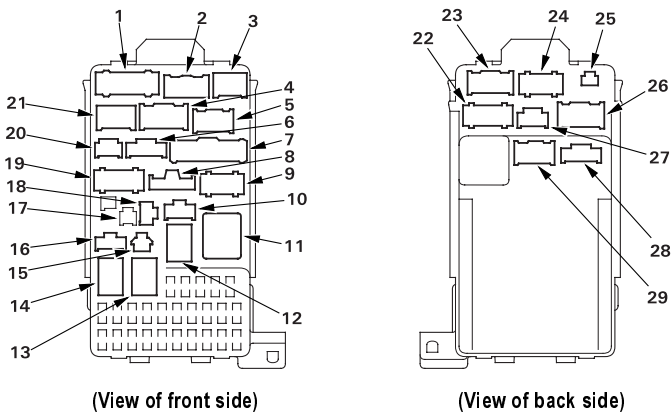


(cont'd)

Connector to Fuse/Relay Box Index (cont'd)

Under-dash Fuse/Relay Box

Socket	Ref	Terminal	Connects to
A	2	5	Dashboard wire harness
B	3	6	Dashboard wire harness
C	1	14	Dashboard wire harness
D	4	12	ECM/PCM wire harness
E	5	13	ECM/PCM wire harness
F	19	12	Engine compartment wire harness
G	9	10	Engine compartment wire harness
H	8	3	Engine compartment wire harness
I	20	5	Engine compartment wire harness
J	21	8	Engine compartment wire harness
K	23	17	Dashboard wire harness
L	24	10	Dashboard wire harness
M	22	12	Dashboard wire harness
N	27	6	Dashboard wire harness
O	26	12	Dashboard wire harness
P	7	18	ECM/PCM wire harness
Q	6	8	ECM/PCM wire harness
R	10	6	ECM/PCM wire harness
Power Window relay	12	4	
S	25	2	Dashboard wire harness
Starter cut relay	14	4	
T	18	3	Multiplex control unit service check connector
Taillight relay	13	4	
Turn signal/hazard relay	11	3	
U	15	1	Optional connector
V	16	4	Optional connector
W (Memory erase signal (MES) connector)	17	2	ECM/PCM wire harness
X	28	8	Dashboard wire harness B (Plugs directly into the multiplex control unit)
Y	29	13	Dashboard wire harness A (Plugs directly into the multiplex control unit)



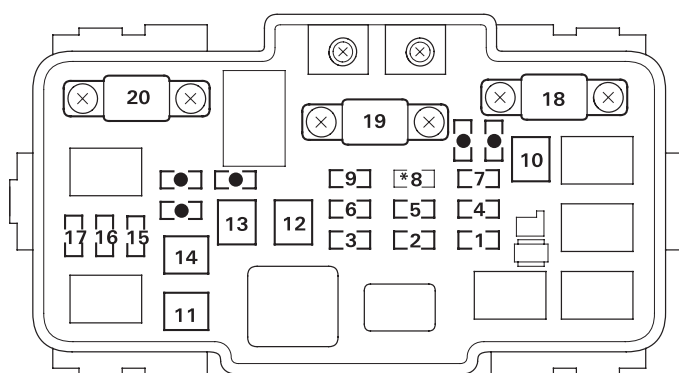


## Power Distribution

### Fuse to Component Index

#### Under-hood Fuse/Relay Box

Fuse Number	Amps	Wire Color	Component(s) or Circuit(s) Protected
1	20A	BLU/YEL	Condenser fan motor
		BLU/RED	A/C compressor clutch
2	15A	WHT/GRN	Dash lights, Fog light switch, Front parking lights, Front side marker lights, Multiplex control unit (KG model: daytime running lights), License plate lights, Taillights, Taillight relay
3	15A	WHT/BLU	Ceiling lights, Ignition key light, Rear wiper control unit, Spotlights
4	20A	BLU/BLK	Radiator fan motor
5	15A	WHT/BLK	Hazard warning light, Security control unit, Turn signal/hazard relay
6	15A	WHT/BLK	CKP sensor, ECM/PCM, Fuel injectors, IAC valve, Immobilizer control unit-receiver, PGM-FI main relay 1 and 2, TDC sensor
7	15A	WHT/GRN	ABS modulator-control unit, Brake lights, Cruise control unit, ECM/PCM, Security horn relay, Security horn
		BLU/RED	Horn
8	—	—	Not used
9	10A	WHT/RED	AVN unit (With Navigation), Audio unit (Without Navigation), Data link connector, Gauge assembly, Immobilizer control unit-receiver, Keyless receiver unit, Multiplex control unit, Security control unit
10	30A	WHT/RED	ABS modulator-control unit (+B MR)
11	20A	BLK/YEL	Noise condenser, Rear window defogger
12	40A	BLU/WHT	Blower motor
13	40A	WHT/BLK	No. 7, 22, 23, 24, 25 fuses (in the under-dash fuse/relay box)
14	40A	WHT/RED	No. 2, 3, 5, 15, 16 fuses (in the under-dash fuse/relay box)
15	15A	RED/YEL	Headlight washer control unit, High beam indicator light, Left headlight
16	20A	WHT	Multiplex control unit
17	15A	RED	Right headlight
18	30A	WHT/BLU	ABS modulator-control unit (+B FSR)
19	100A	—	Battery, Power distribution
20	50A	WHT	Ignition switch (BAT)



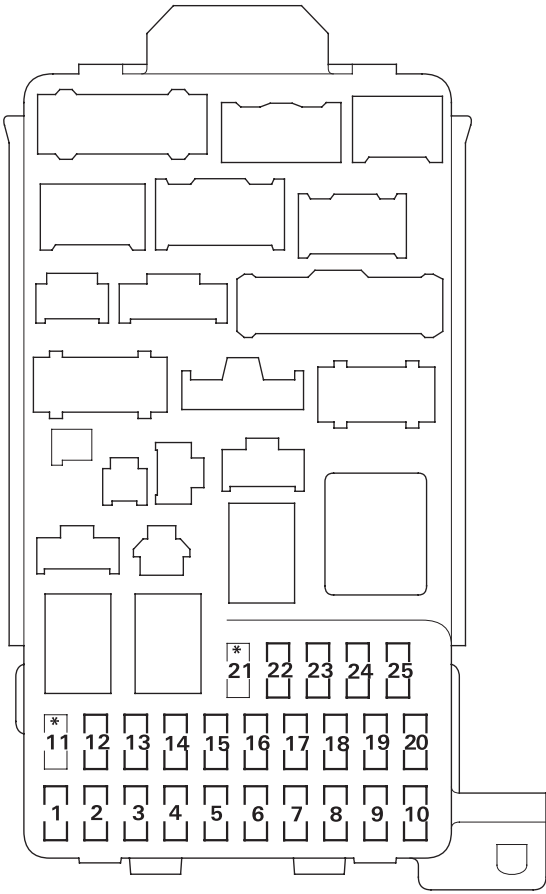
● : Spare fuse  
\* : Not used

(cont'd)

## Fuse to Component Index (cont'd)

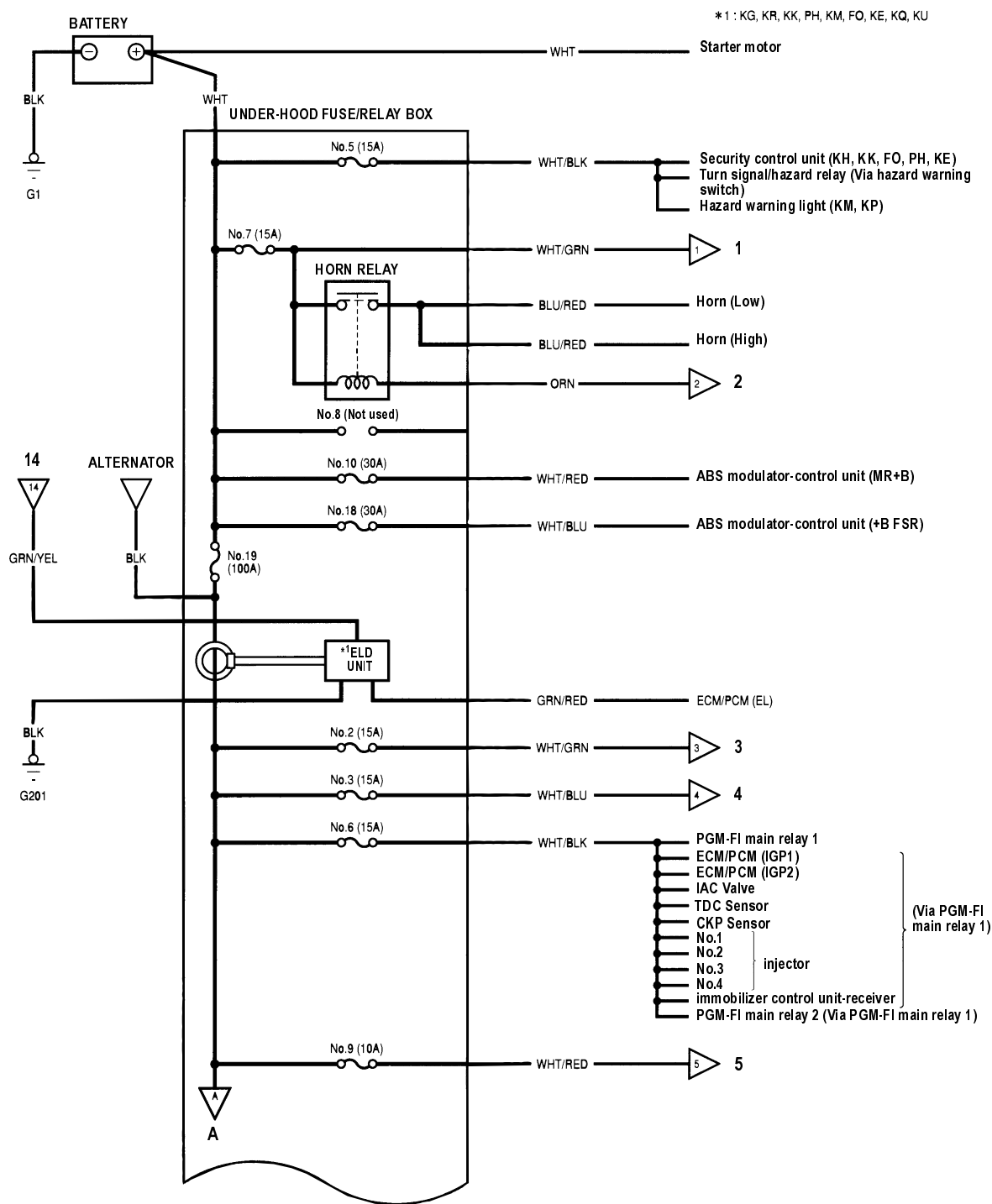
### Under-dash Fuse/Relay Box

Fuse Number	Amps	Wire Color	Component(s) or Circuit(s) Protected
1	15A	BLK/WHT	Ignition coils
2	10A	GRN/WHT	Rear accessory power socket
3	10A	Fuse/relay box socket	Multiplex control unit (KG model: daytime running lights)
	20A	BLU/RED	Front fog lights
4	10A	GRN/YEL	Alternator, Camshaft position (CMP) sensor, Cruise main switch, Cruise control unit, ELD unit, EVAP canister purge valve, Intake manifold runner control (IMRC) solenoid valve, Primary HO2S, Secondary HO2S, Vehicle speed sensor
5	7.5A	Fuse/relay box socket	Multiplex control unit (With rear fog light)
6	7.5A	YEL/GRN	Headlight adjuster switch, Headlight adjuster unit, Power window control unit, Power window relay, Sunroof open relay, Sunroof close relay
7	20A	GRN	Sunroof motor
8	7.5A	Fuse/relay box socket	Option connector, Multiplex control unit
		YEL/RED	AVN unit (With Navigation), Audio unit (Without Navigation), Interlock control unit (KG model: daytime running lights), Key interlock solenoid, Key interlock relay, Shift lock solenoid
9	7.5A	RED/GRN	OPDS unit (With side airbag), Rear wiper control unit, Rear wiper motor, Rear window washer motor
10	7.5A	Fuse/relay box socket	Multiplex control unit
		YEL	ABS modulator-control unit, A/T reverse relay, Back-up lights, Gauge assembly, Keyless receiver unit, Security control unit, Shift lock relay
11	—	—	Not used
12	7.5A	Fuse/relay box socket	Multiplex control unit (KG model: daytime running lights)
13	10A	PNK	SRS unit(VB)
14	10A	Fuse/relay box socket	Option connector
		BLK/YEL	A/C compressor clutch relay, Blower motor relay, Condenser fan relay, Climate control unit (With auto A/C), Heater control panel (Without auto A/C), In-car temperature sensor assembly (LHD type with auto A/C), Power mirror actuator, Power mirror defogger, Radiator fan relay, Rear window defogger relay, Recirculation control motor
15	30A	RED/YEL	Headlight washer motor
16	20A	RED/BLK	Seat heaters
17	15A	BLK/YEL	ECM/PCM, Fuel pump, Inertia switch (KG, KR and KE models), SRS unit (VA)
18	15A	YEL/GRN	Cigarette lighter, Rear accessory power socket relay
19	7.5A	YEL/BLK	Turn signal/hazard relay
20	20A	Fuse/relay box socket	Multiplex control unit
		GRN/BLK	Windshield wiper motor, Windshield washer motor
21	—	—	Not used
22	20A	GRN/BLK	Front passenger's power window motor
23	20A	GRN/WHT	Driver's power window motor
24	20A	YEL/RED	Left rear power window motor
25	20A	YEL/BLU	Right rear power window motor



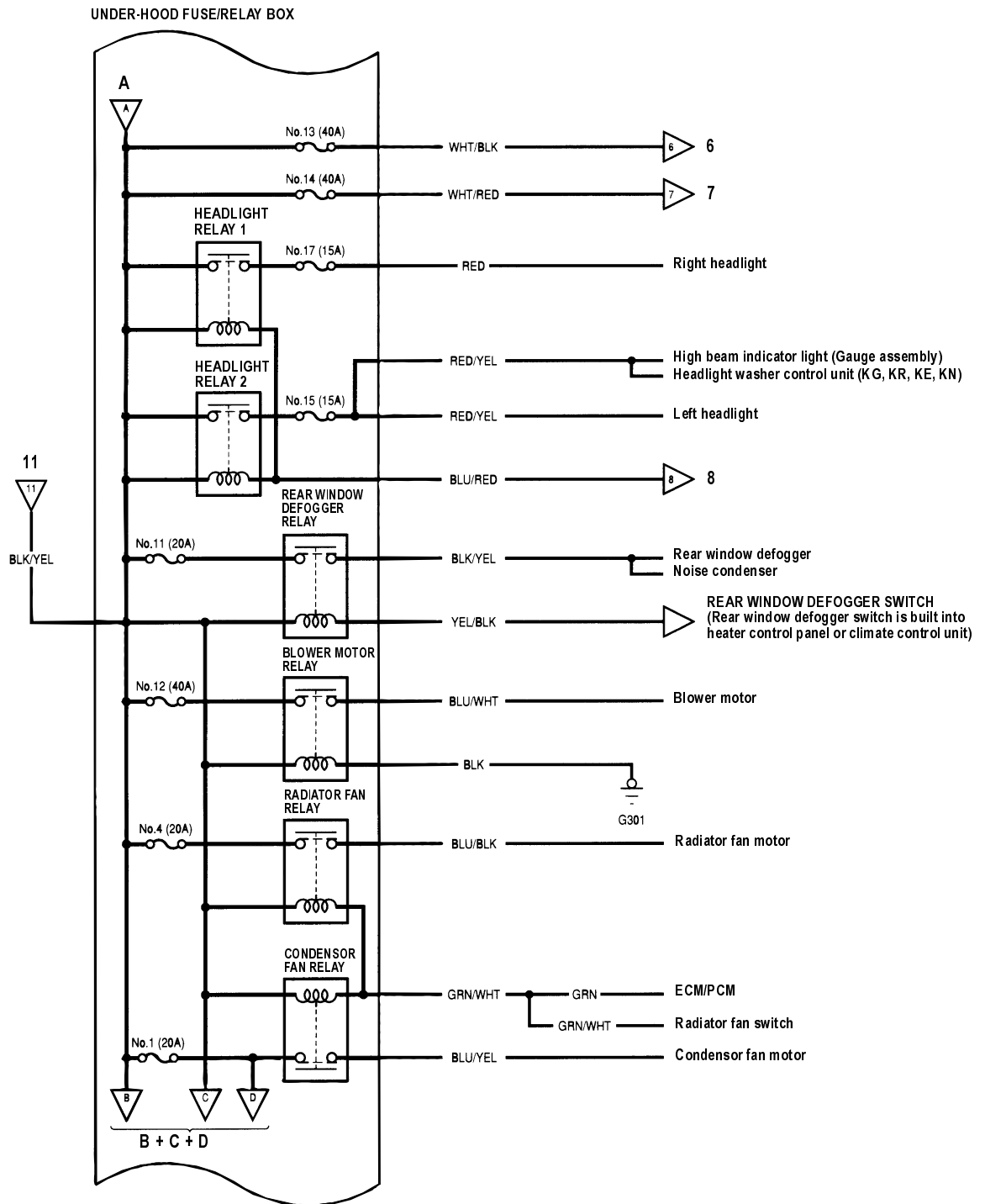
\* : Not used

Circuit Identification



- |    |                                      |                                  |
|----|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1  | UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX            | To <a href="#">page 22A-45</a>   |
| 2  | UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX            | To <a href="#">page 22A-47</a>   |
| 3  | UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX            | To <a href="#">page 22A-46</a>   |
| 4  | UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX            | To <a href="#">page 22A-48</a>   |
| 5  | UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX            | To <a href="#">page 22A-47</a>   |
| 14 | No.4 (10A) UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX | From <a href="#">page 22A-43</a> |
| A  |                                      | To <a href="#">page 22A-41</a>   |

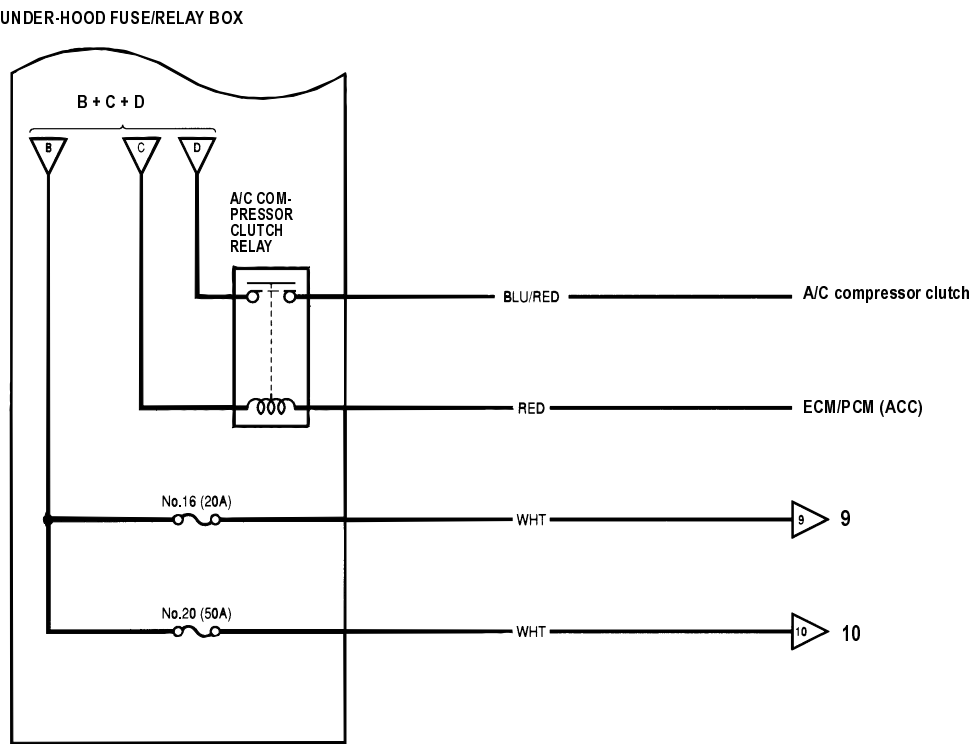
Circuit Identification (cont'd)



- |       |  |                                  |
|-------|--|----------------------------------|
| 6     | UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX              | To <a href="#">page 22A-44</a>   |
| 7     | UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX              | To <a href="#">page 22A-45</a>   |
| 8     | UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX              | To <a href="#">page 22A-47</a>   |
| 11    | No. 14 (10A) UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX | From <a href="#">page 22A-43</a> |
| B+C+D |  | To <a href="#">page 22A-42</a>   |
| A     |  | From <a href="#">page 22A-40</a> |

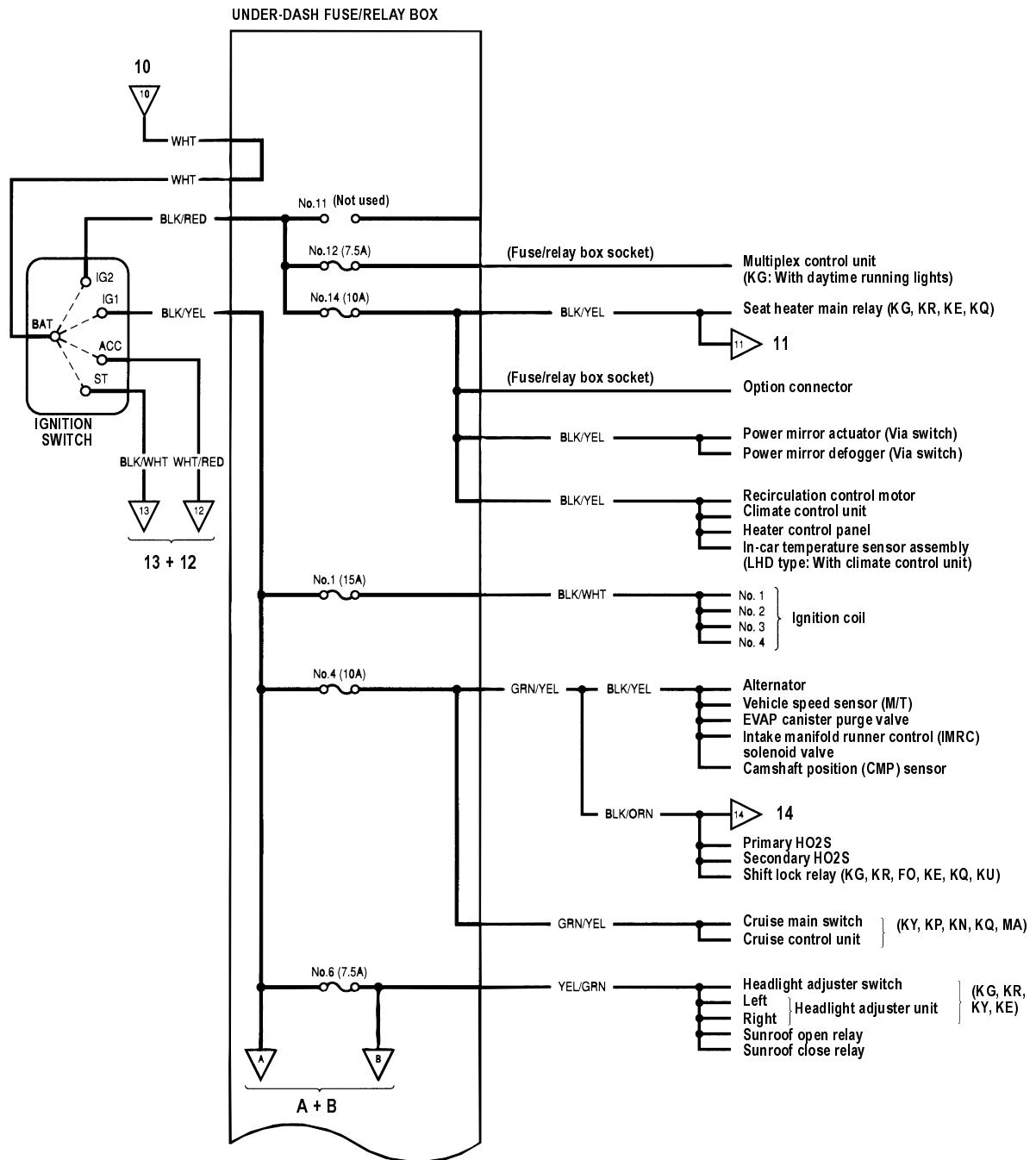
(cont'd)

Circuit Identification (cont'd)



- 9 UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX To [page 22A-47](#)
- 10 UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX To [page 22A-43](#)
- B+C+D From [page 22A-41](#)

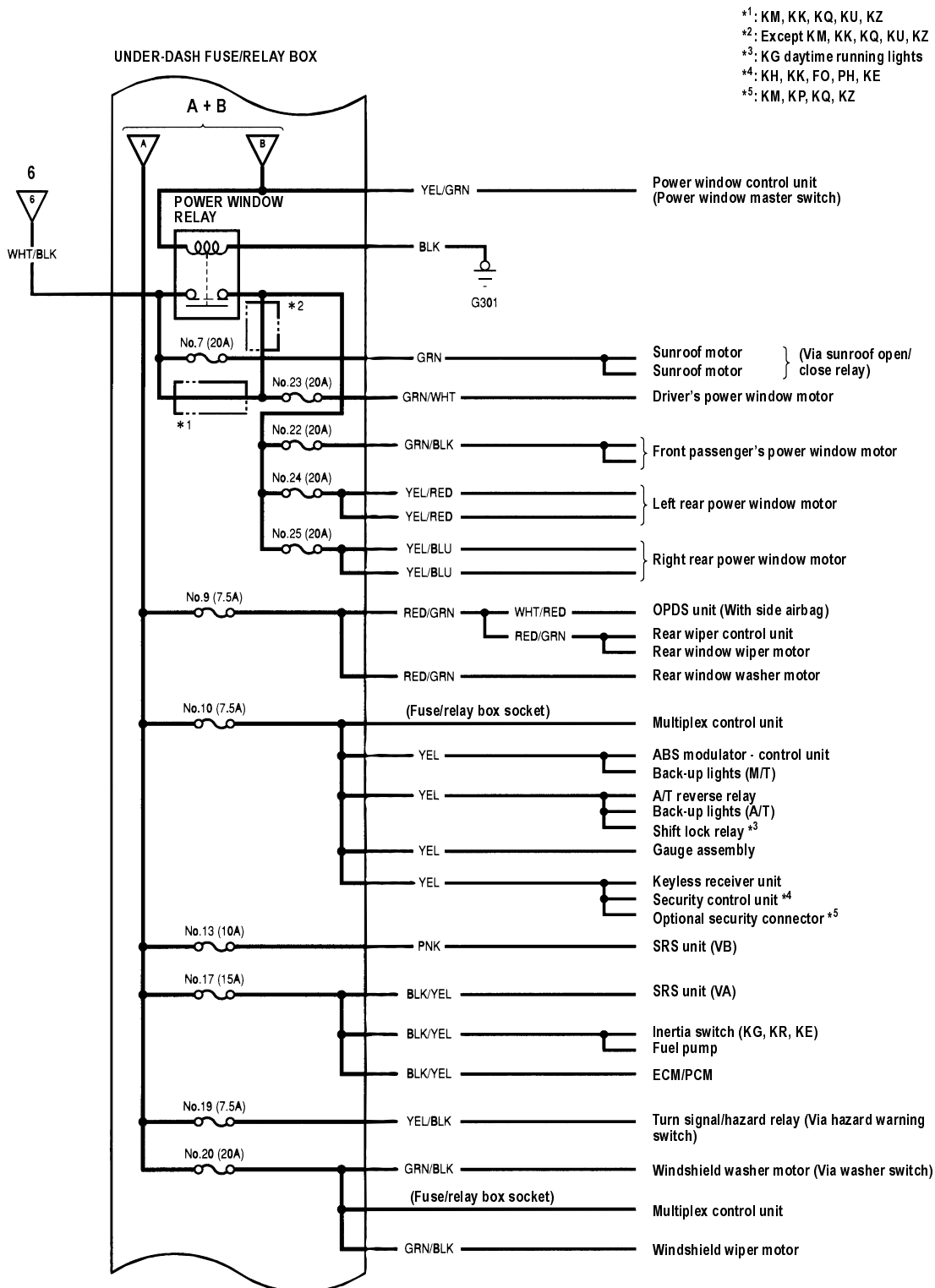
Circuit Identification (cont'd)



- |         |  |                                  |
|---------|--|----------------------------------|
| 10      | No. 20 (50A) UNDER-HOOD FUSE/RELAY BOX | From <a href="#">page 22A-42</a> |
| 11      | UNDER-HOOD FUSE/RELAY BOX              | To <a href="#">page 22A-41</a>   |
| 12 + 13 | UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX              | To <a href="#">page 22A-45</a>   |
| 14      | ELD UNIT                               | To <a href="#">page 22A-40</a>   |
| A + B   |  | To <a href="#">page 22A-44</a>   |

(cont'd)

## Circuit Identification (cont'd)

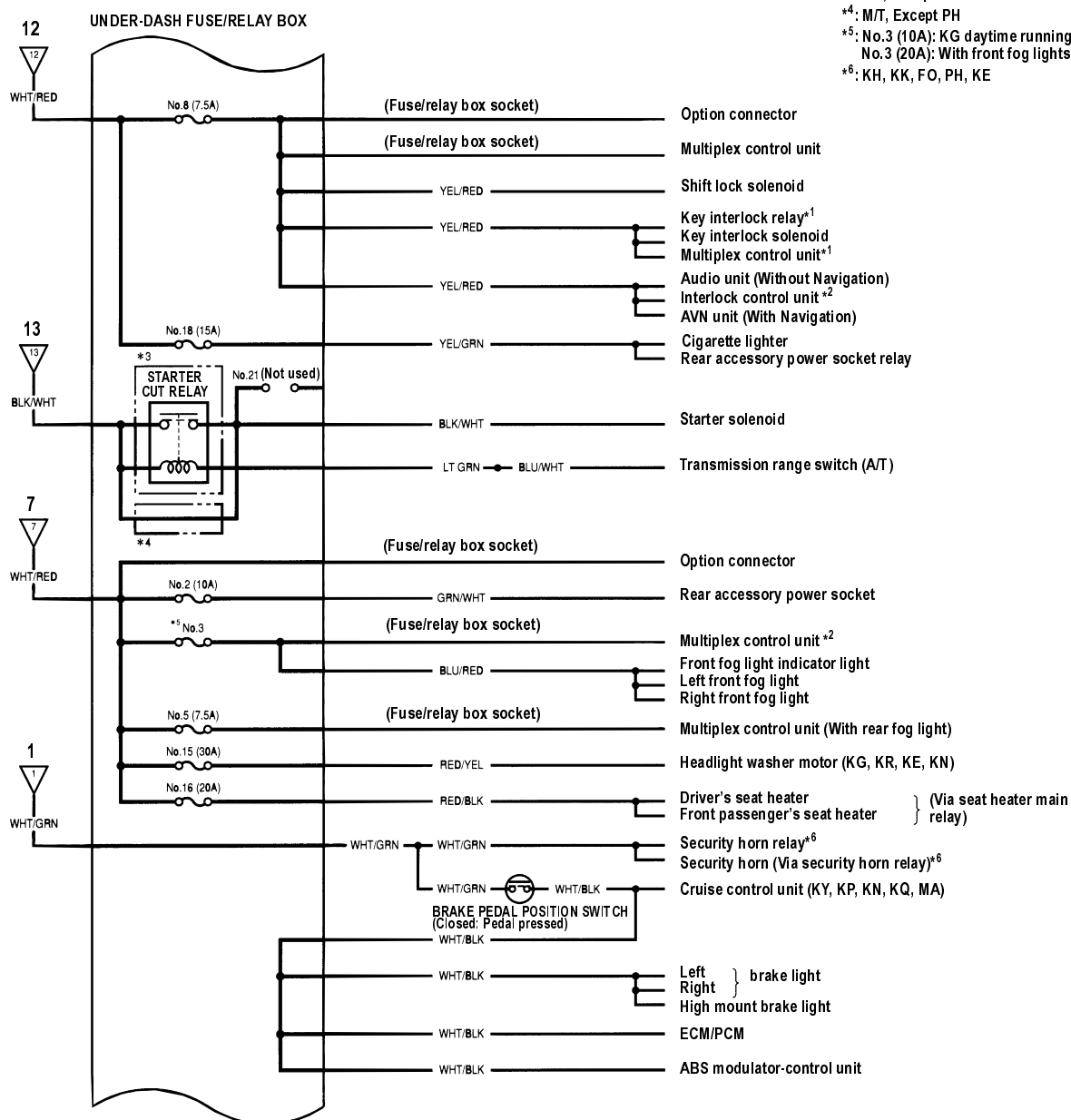


6 No.13 (40A) UNDER-HOOD FUSE/RELAY BOX  
A + B

From [page 22A-41](#)  
From [page 22A-43](#)



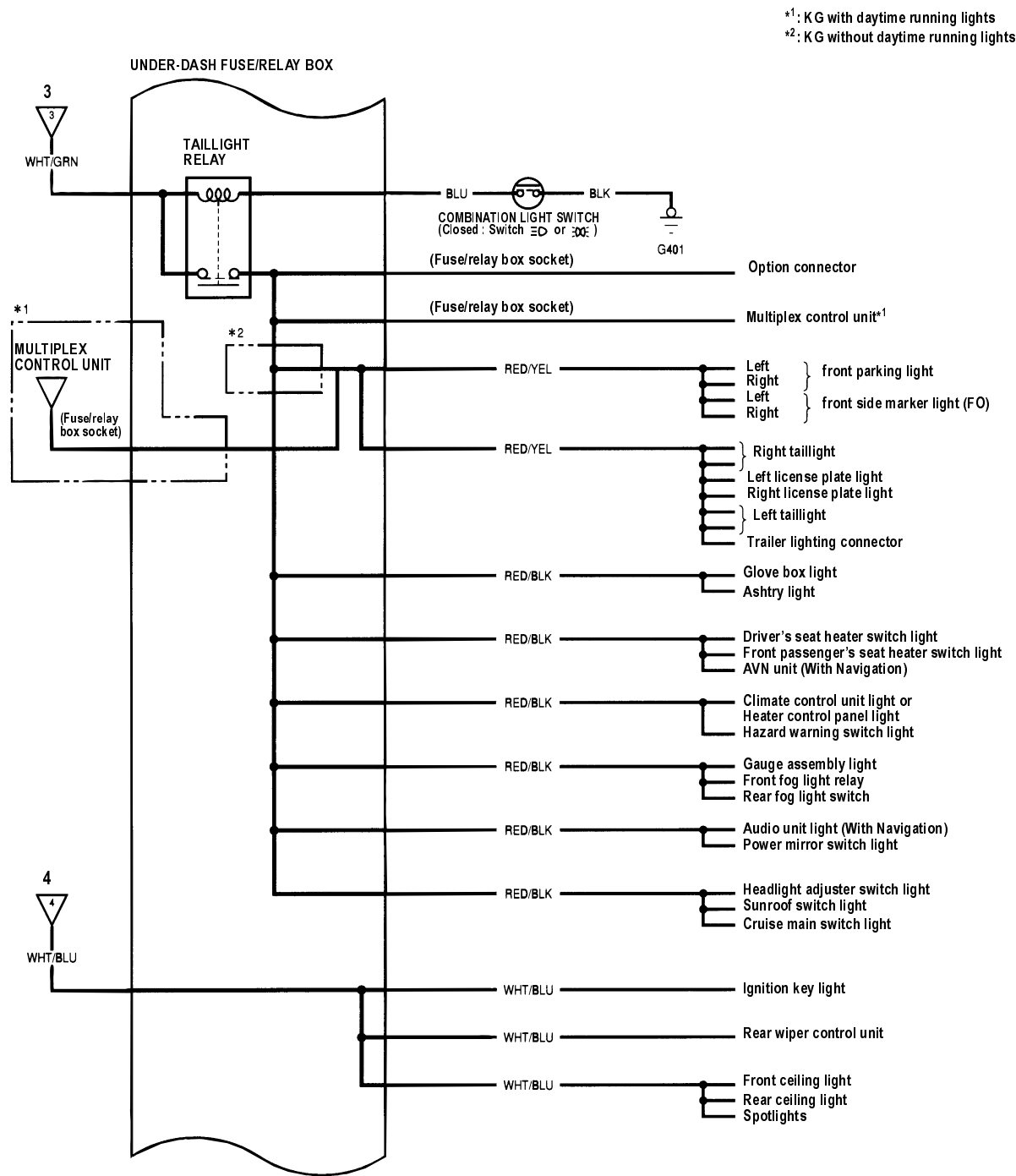
- \*1: Except KG daytime running lights
- \*2: KG daytime running lights
- \*3: A/T, Except PH
- \*4: M/T, Except PH
- \*5: No.3 (10A): KG daytime running lights  
No.3 (20A): With front fog lights
- \*6: KH, KK, FO, PH, KE



- |    |                       |                                  |   |  |                                  |
|----|-----------------------|----------------------------------|---|--|----------------------------------|
| 12 | IGNITION SWITCH (ACC) | From <a href="#">page 22A-43</a> | 7 | No.14 (40A) UNDER-HOOD FUSE/ RELAY BOX | From <a href="#">page 22A-41</a> |
| 13 | IGNITION SWITCH (ST)  | From <a href="#">page 22A-43</a> | 1 | No. 7 (15A) UNDER-HOOD FUSE/ RELAY BOX | From <a href="#">page 22A-40</a> |

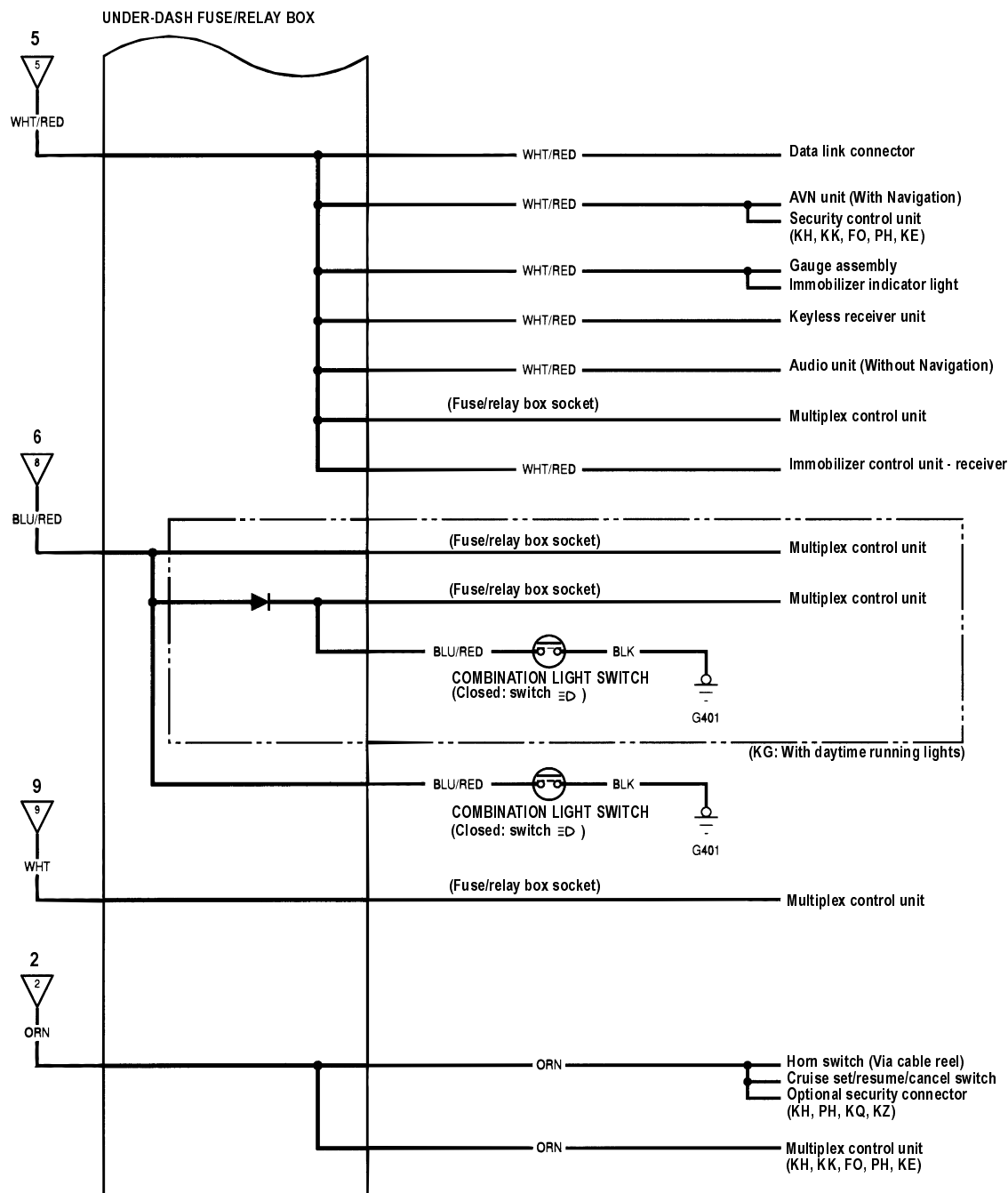
(cont'd)

Circuit Identification (cont'd)



- 3 No.2 (15A) UNDER-HOOD FUSE/RELAY BOX From [page 22A-40](#)  
4 No.3 (15A) UNDER-HOOD FUSE/RELAY BOX From [page 22A-40](#)

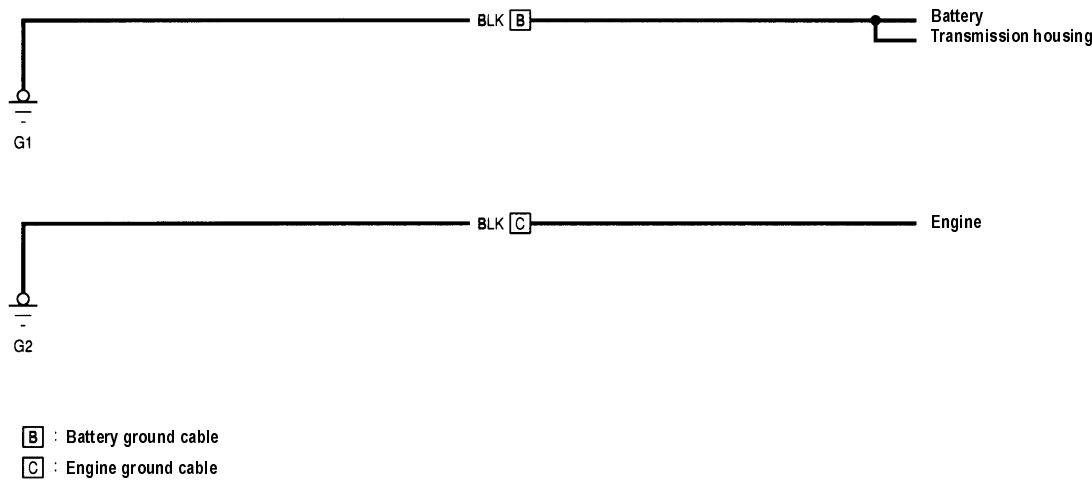
## Circuit Identification (cont'd)



- |   |  |                                  |
|---|--|----------------------------------|
| 5 | No.9 (10A) UNDER-HOOD FUSE/RELAY BOX   | From <a href="#">page 22A-40</a> |
| 6 | HEADLIGHT RELAY 1, 2                   | From <a href="#">page 22A-41</a> |
| 9 | No. 16 (20A) UNDER-HOOD FUSE/RELAY BOX | From <a href="#">page 22A-42</a> |
| 2 | HORN RELAY                             | From <a href="#">page 22A-40</a> |

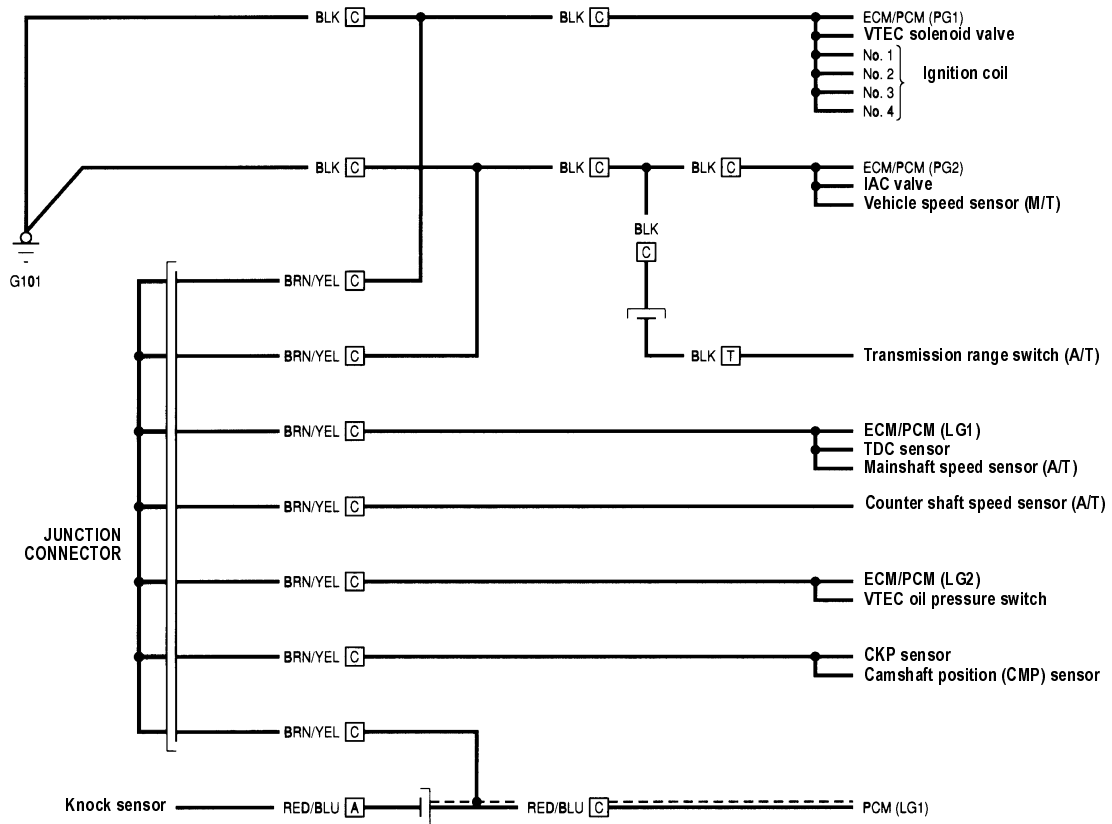
Ground Distribution

Circuit Identification





## Circuit Identification (cont'd)

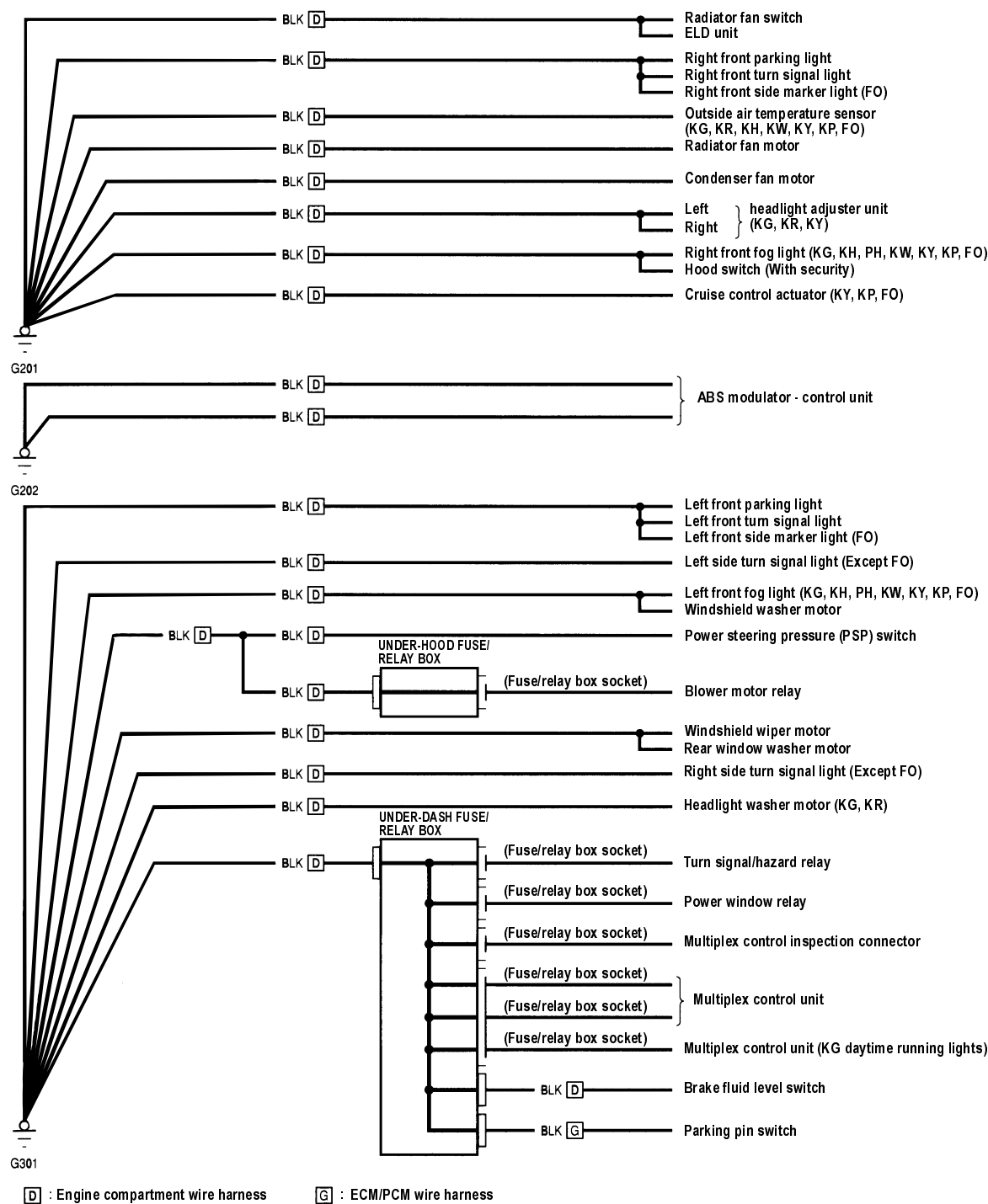


- [A] : Starter sub-harness
- [C] : Engine wire harness
- [T] : Transmission range switch sub-harness
- : Shielding

(cont'd)

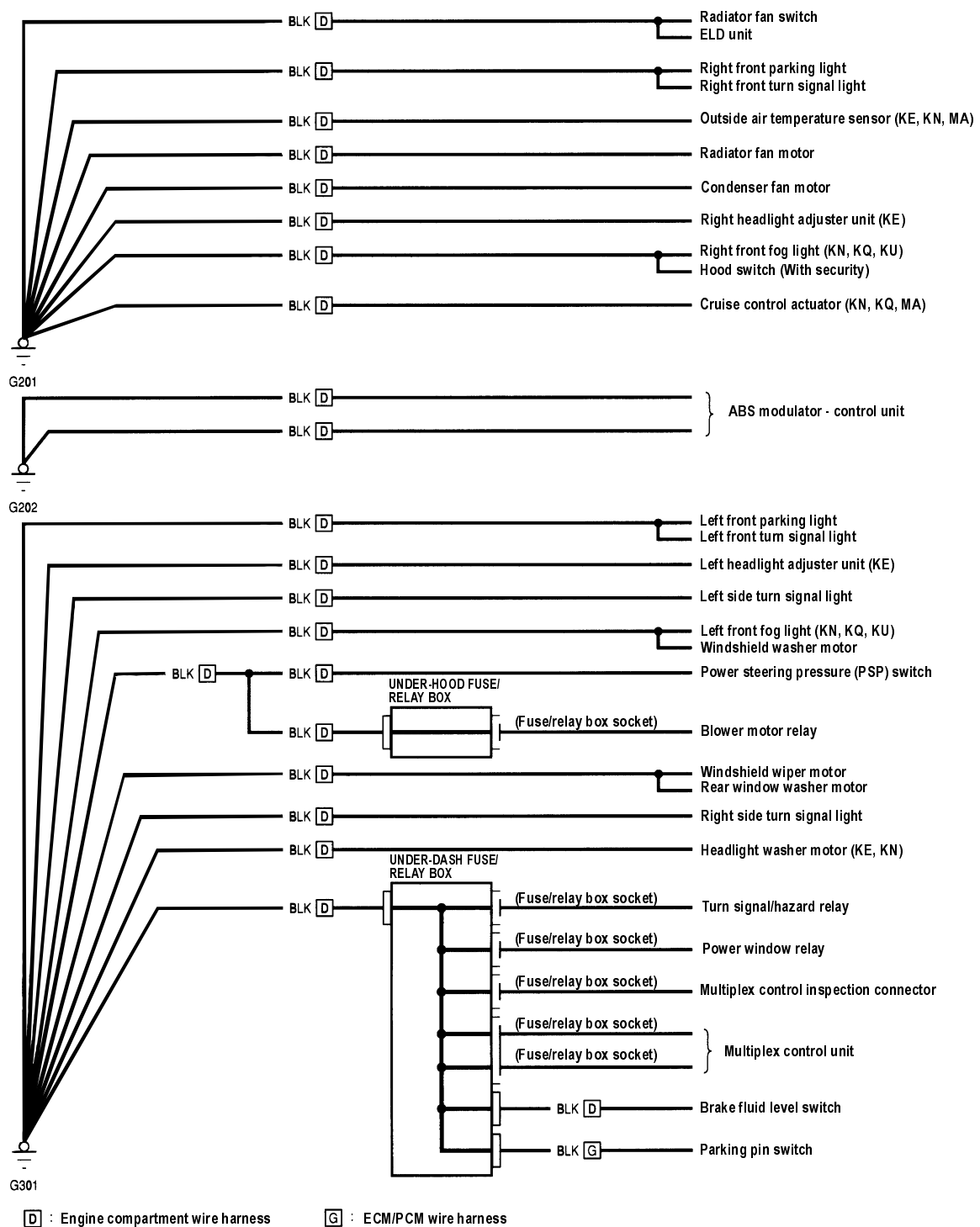
Circuit Identification (cont'd)

LHD type:



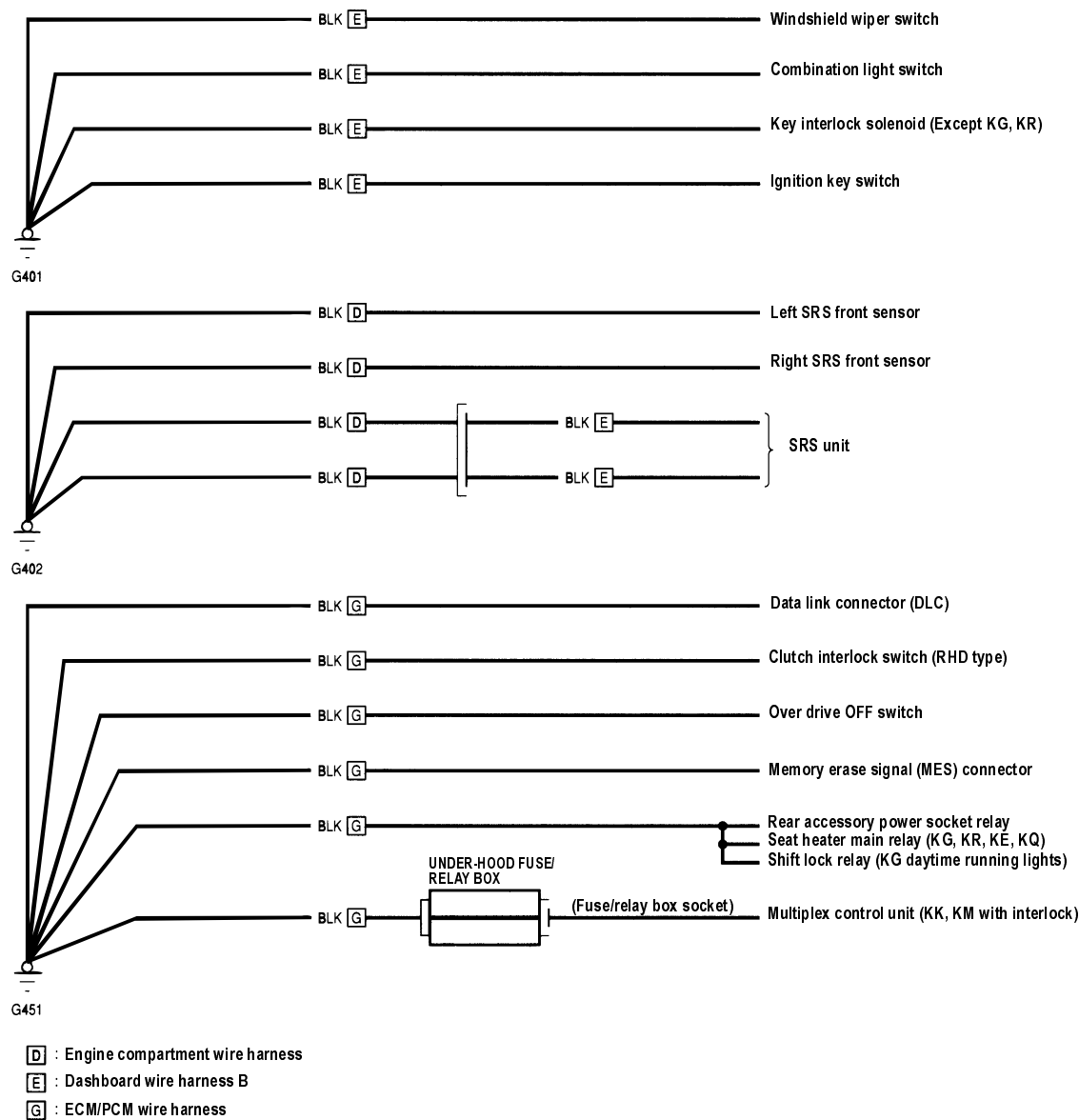
## Circuit Identification (cont'd)

RHD type:



(cont'd)

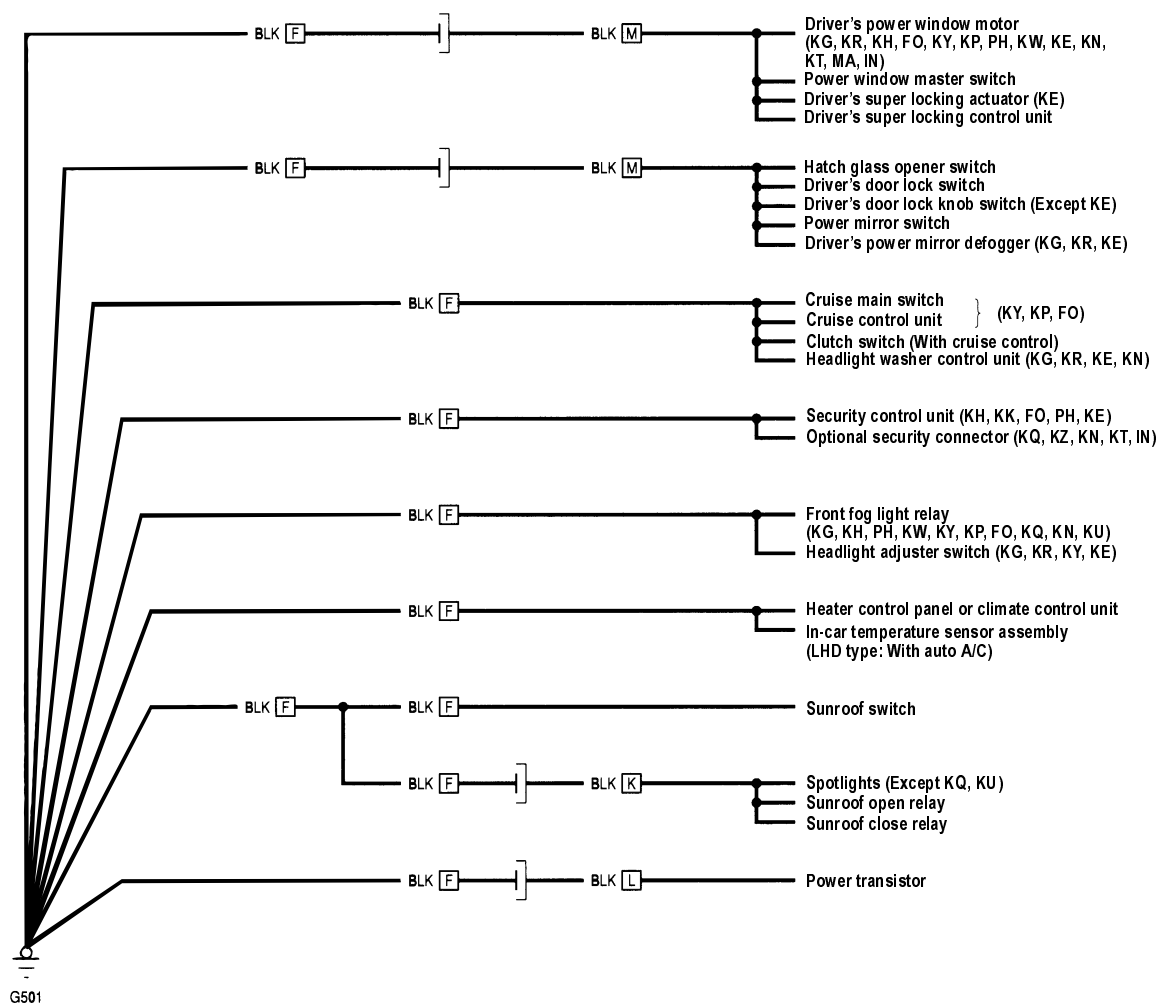
Circuit Identification (cont'd)







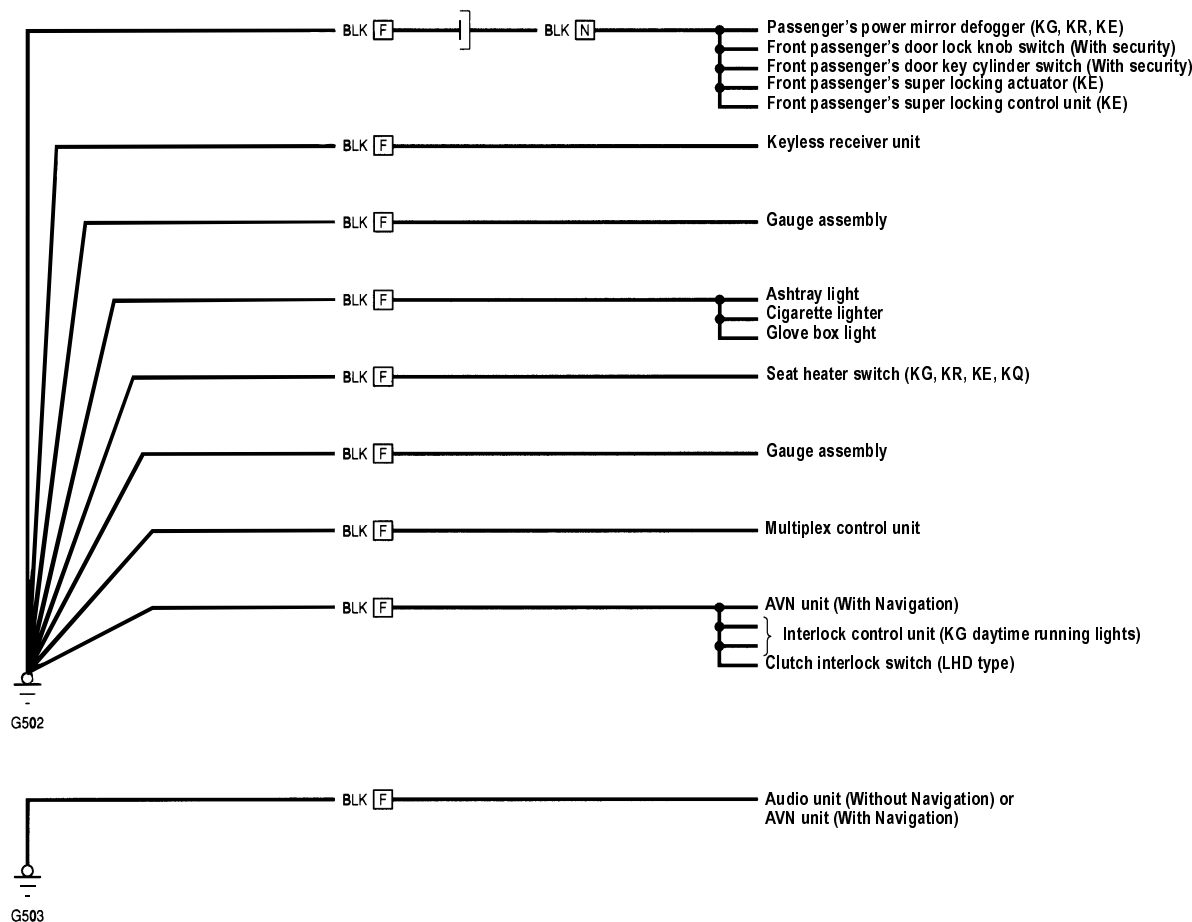
## Circuit Identification (cont'd)



[F] : Dashboard wire harness A  
[K] : Roof wire harness  
[L] : A/C wire harness  
[M] : Driver's door wire harness

(cont'd)

Circuit Identification (cont'd)

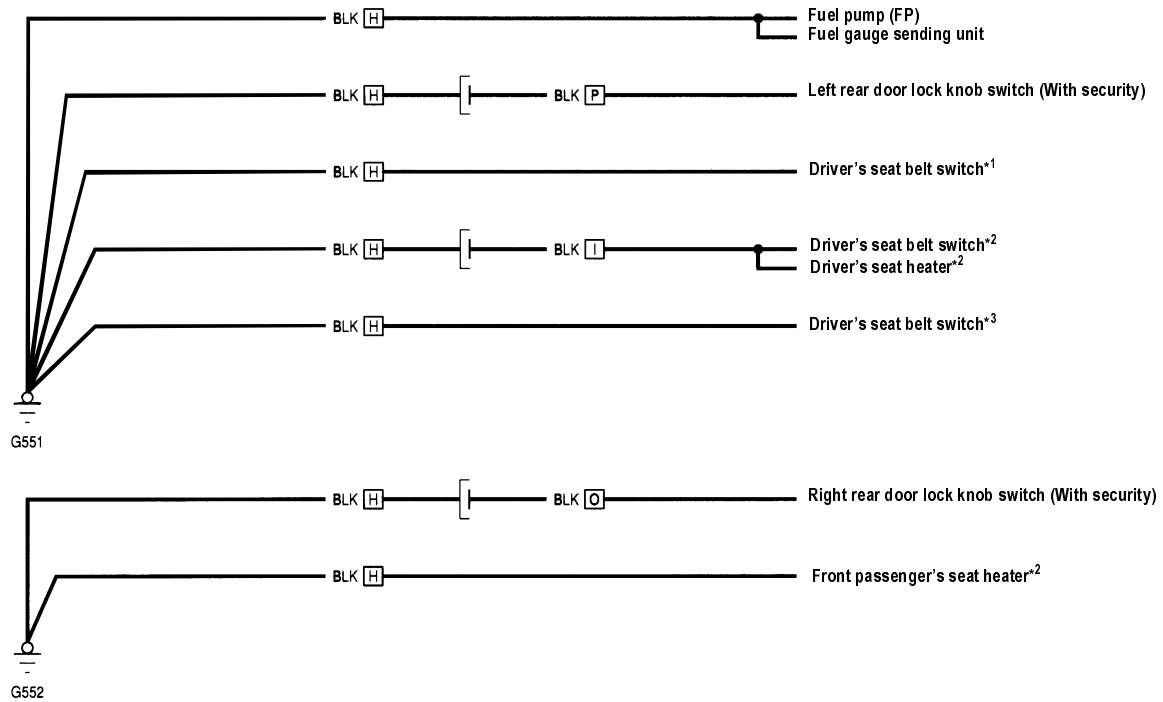


[F] : Dashboard wire harness A  
[N] : Front passenger's door wire harness

## Circuit Identification (cont'd)

LHD type:

- \*1: KG, KR without seat heater
- \*2: KG, KR with seat heater
- \*3: KP, KY, KK, KM, KW, FO, PH

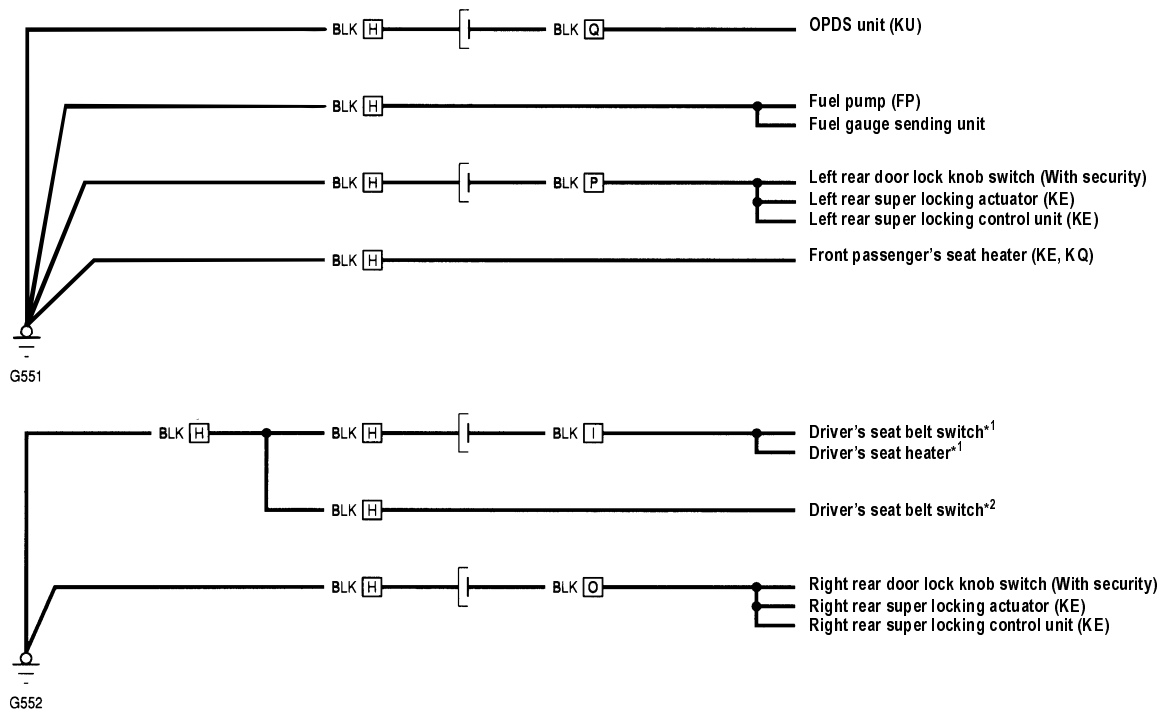


(cont'd)

Circuit Identification (cont'd)

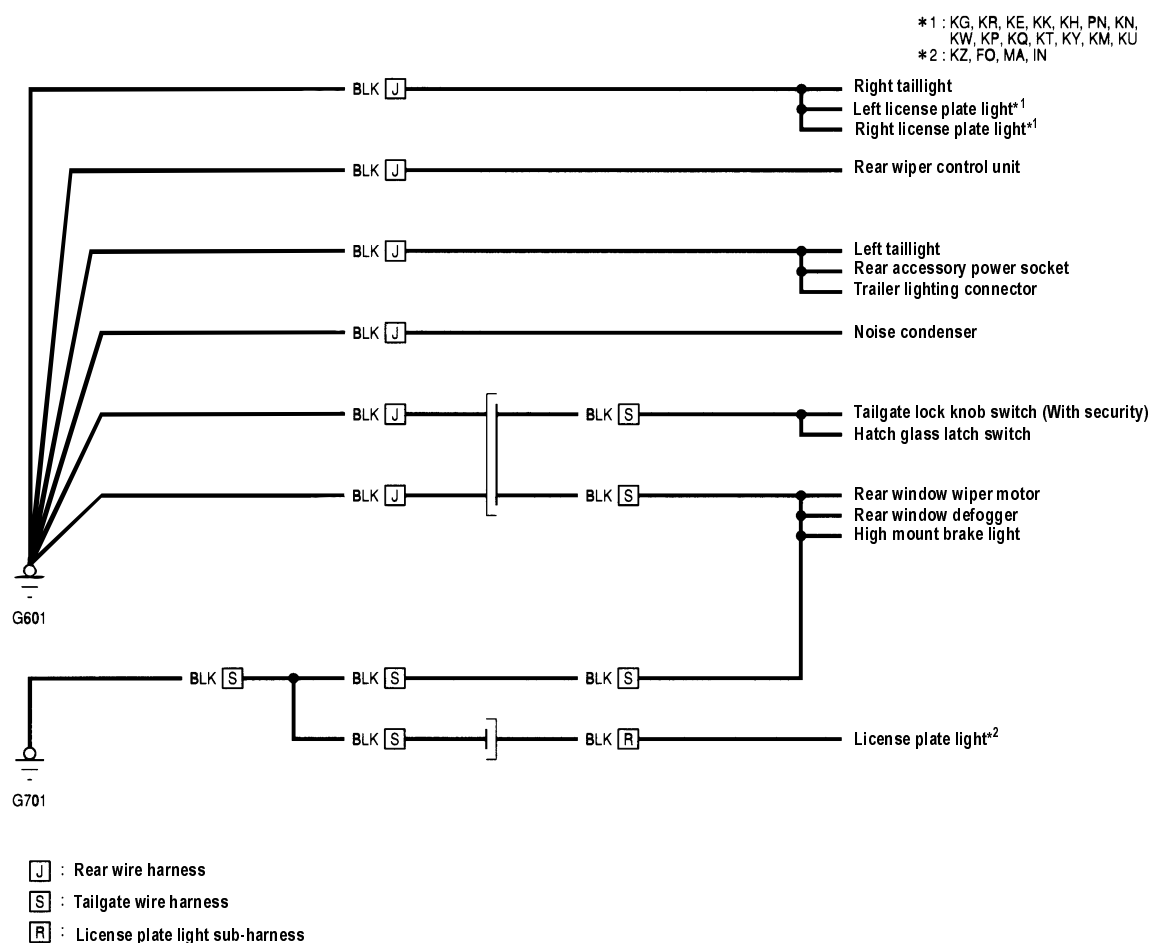
RHD type:

\*1: KE, KQ with seat heater  
\*2: KE, KQ without seat heater,  
KZ, KN, KU, MA



- [H] : Floor wire harness
- [I] : Driver's seat belt sub-harness
- [O] : Right rear door wire harness
- [P] : Left rear door wire harness
- [Q] : OPDS unit harness

## Circuit Identification (cont'd)



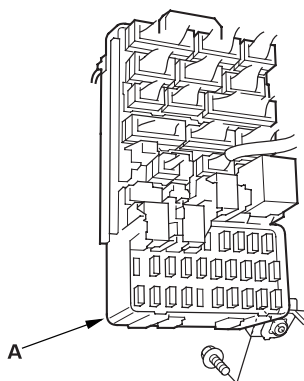
## Under-dash Fuse/Relay Box

### Removal and Installation

SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations ([see page 23-14](#)), and precautions and procedures ([see page 23-16](#)) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

#### Removal

1. Make sure you have the anti-theft code for the radio, then write down the frequencies for the radio's preset buttons.
2. Disconnect the battery negative cable, then disconnect the positive cable, and wait at least three minutes.
3. Remove the dashboard lower cover ([see page 20-88](#)).
4. Disconnect the connectors from the fuse side of the under-dash fuse/relay box.



5. Remove the mounting bolt and the under-dash fuse/relay box (A).
6. Disconnect the connectors from the back of the under-dash fuse/relay box, and remove the fuse/relay box.

NOTE: The SRS connector is a spring-loaded lock type ([see page 23-20](#)).

#### Installation

1. Install the under-dash fuse/relay box in the reverse order of removal and connect all connectors to the under-dash fuse/relay box.
2. Install the dashboard lower cover.
3. Connect both the negative cable and positive cable to the battery.
4. Enter the anti-theft code for the radio, then enter the customer's radio station presets.
5. Confirm that all systems work properly.

## Battery

### Battery Test



#### WARNING



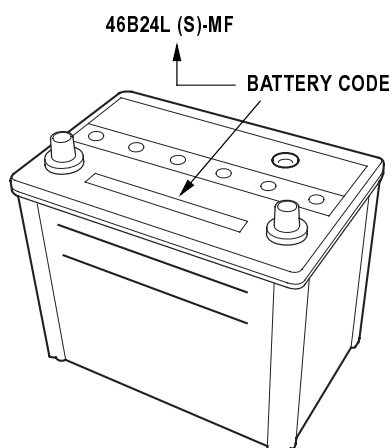
A battery can explode if you do not follow the proper procedure, causing serious injury to anyone nearby. Follow all procedures carefully and keep sparks and open flames away from the battery.

#### NOTE:

- To get accurate results, the temperature of the electrolyte must be between 21 and 38°C (70 and 100°F) before testing.
- The ECM/PCM memory must be reset after reconnecting the battery (see page 11-4).

#### Test Equipment Required:

- Battery Tester with:  
Voltmeter with 0 - 18 V scale, ammeter with 0 - 100 A and 0 -- 500 A scales, and a carbon pile with 0 - 300 W
- 12 V Battery Charger: Fast charge capability of 50 A and slow charge capability of 5 A



#### Test Procedure:

1. Check for damage: If the case is cracked or the terminals are loose, replace the battery.
2. Check indicator (for basic charge condition): Blue or Green is OK. If the indicator is red, peel the tape off, remove the caps, and add distilled water; then reinstall the caps and tape. If the indicator is clear, go to step 3.
3. Test battery load capacity by connecting a battery tester, and applying a load of three times the battery ampere hour rating.

When the load has been applied for exactly 15 seconds, the battery voltage reading should stay above 9.6 V.

- If the reading stays above 9.6 V, the battery is OK; clean its terminals and case, and reinstall it.
- If the reading is between 6.5 and 9.6 V, connect a battery charger and charge the battery for 3 minutes at an initial rate of 40 amps.



#### CAUTION



Amperage will drop as voltage increases; do not increase the amperage to compensate or you may damage the battery.

- Watch the battery voltage during the entire 3 minutes; the highest reading should stay below 15.5 V.
  - If the reading stays below 15.5 V, the battery is OK; clean its terminals and case, and reinstall it.
  - If the reading exceeds 15.5 V any time during the 3 minutes of fast charge, the battery is not good; replace it.
- If the reading drops below 6.5 V, slow-charge the battery by connecting a battery, and charge at 5 amps for no more than 24 hours (or until the indicator shows full charge, or the specific gravity of the electrolyte is at least 1.270). Then test load capacity again.
  - If the voltage stays above 9.6 V, the battery is OK; clean its terminals and case, and reinstall it.
  - If the voltage still drops below 6.5 V, the battery is not good; replace it.

Relays

Power Relay Test

Use this chart to identify the type of relay, then do the test listed for it.

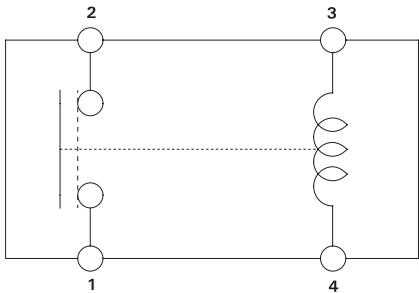
NOTE: See (see page 22A-104) for the turn signal/hazard relay input test.

Relay	Test
A/C compressor clutch relay	Normally-open type A
A/T reverse relay	
Condenser fan relay	
Front fog light relay	
Headlight relay 1	
Headlight relay 2	
Horn relay	
PGM-FI main relay 1	
Power window relay	
Radiator fan relay	
Rear accessory power socket relay	
Seat heater main relay	
Security horn relay	
Starter cut relay (A/T)	
Taillight relay	
Blower motor relay	Normally-open type B
Rear window defogger relay	
PGM-FI main relay 2	Five terminal type
Key interlock relay	
Shift lock relay	
Sunroof open relay	
Sunroof open relay	
Security starter cut relay	

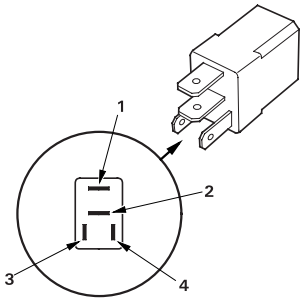
Normally-open type A:

Check for continuity between the terminals.

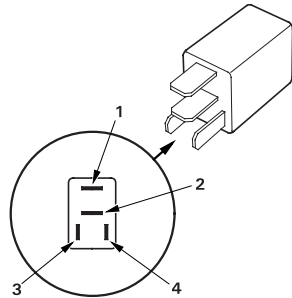
- There should be continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals when power and ground are connected to the No. 3 and No. 4 terminals.
- There should be no continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals when power is disconnected.



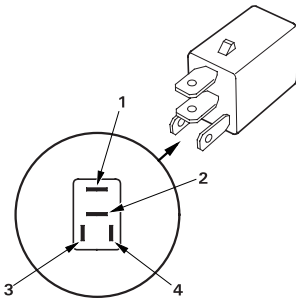
type 1:



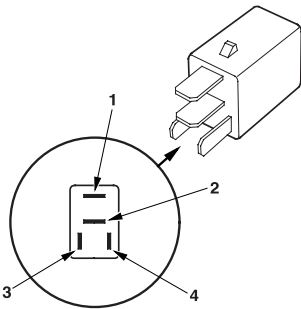
type 2:



PGM-FI main relay 1  
type 1:



type 2:

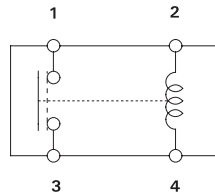




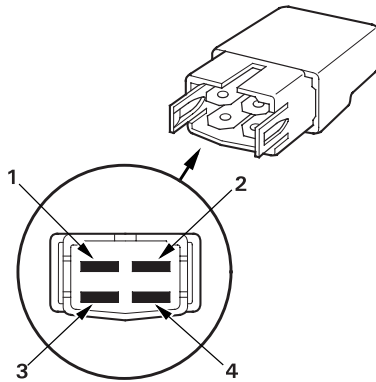
## Normally-open type B:

Check for continuity between the terminals.

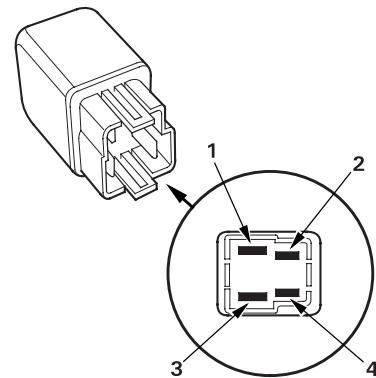
- There should be continuity between the No. 1 and No. 3 terminals when power and ground are connected to the No. 2 and No. 4 terminals.
- There should be no continuity between the No. 1 and No. 3 terminals when power is disconnected.



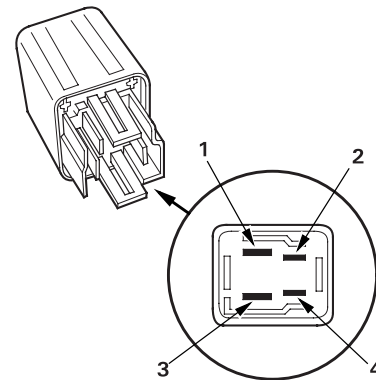
## Rear window defogger relay



## Blower motor relay type 1:



## type 2:



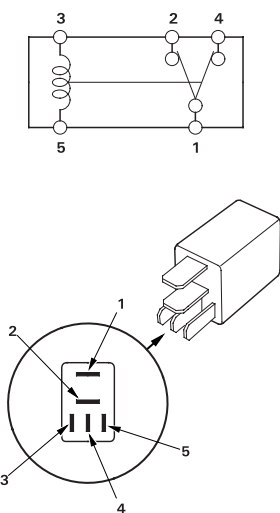
(cont'd)

Power Relay Test (cont'd)

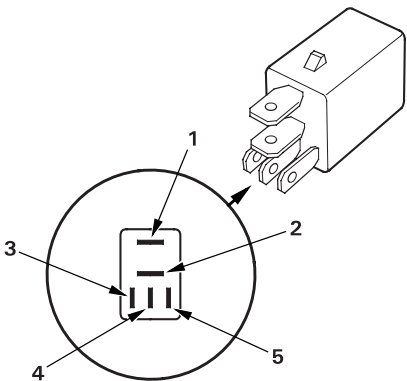
Five terminal type

Check for continuity between the terminals.

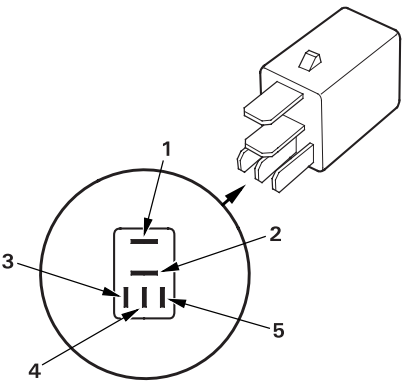
- There should be continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals when power and ground are connected to the No. 3 and No. 5 terminals.
- There should be continuity between the No. 1 and No. 4 terminals when power is disconnected.



PGM-FI main relay 2  
type 1:



type 2:

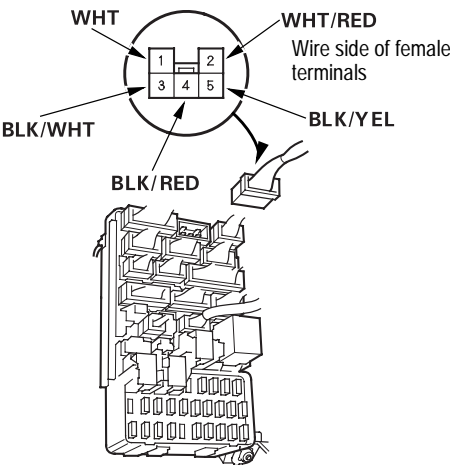


Ignition Switch

Test

SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations (see page 23-14) and precautions and procedures (see page 23-16) in the SRS section before performing repairs or servicing.

- 1. Remove the dashboard lower cover (see page 20-88).
- 2. Disconnect connector A (5P) from the under-dash fuse/relay box.



- 3. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

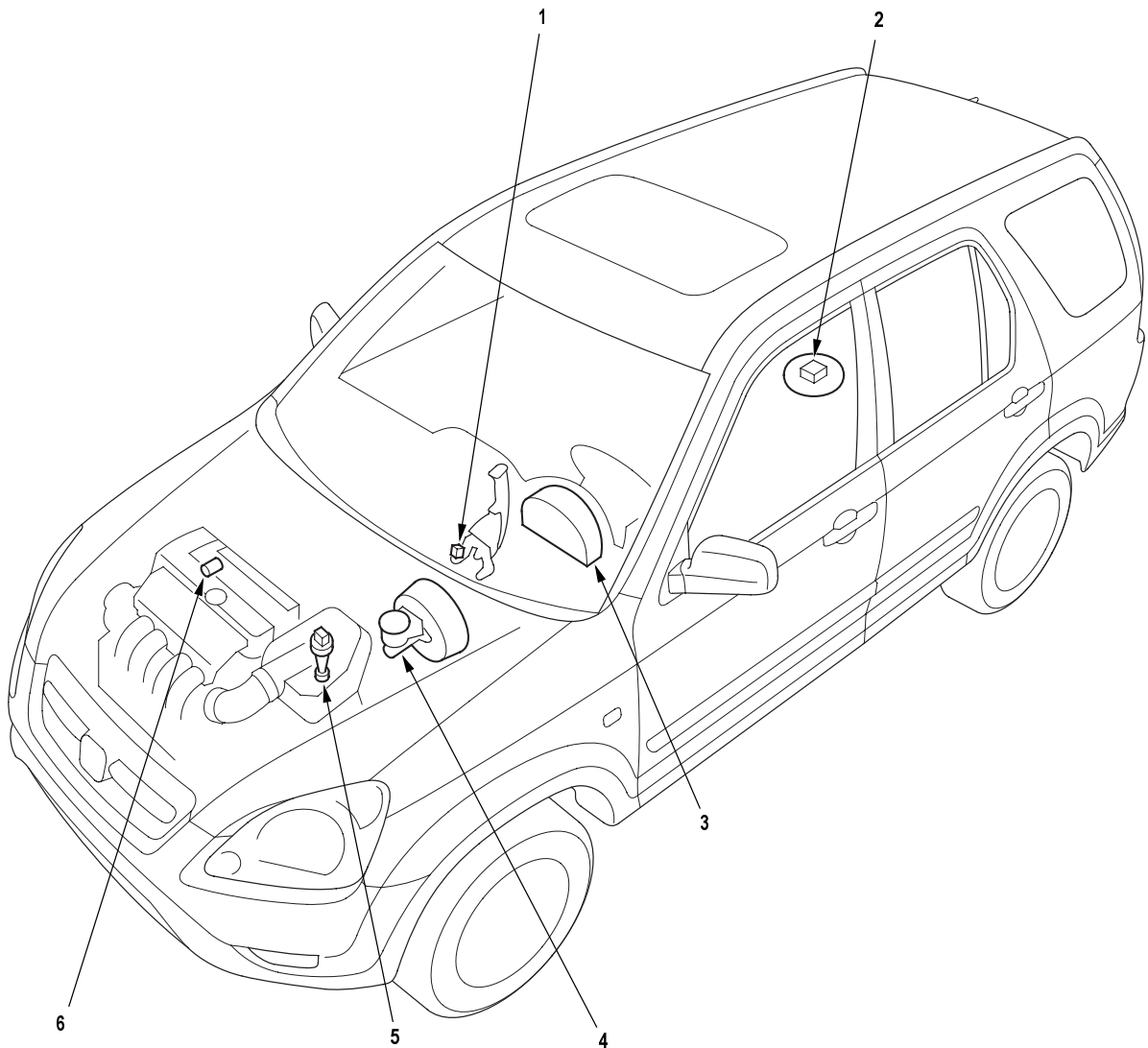
Terminal Position	WHT/ RED (ACC)	WHT (BAT)	BLK/ YEL (IG1)	BLK/ RED (IG2)	BLK/ WHT (ST)
O (LOCK)					
I (ACC)	○ — ○				
II (ON)	○ —		○ —	○ —	○ —
III (START)		○ —	○ —		○ —

- 4. If the continuity checks do not agree with the table, replace the steering lock assembly (see page 17-27).

Gauges

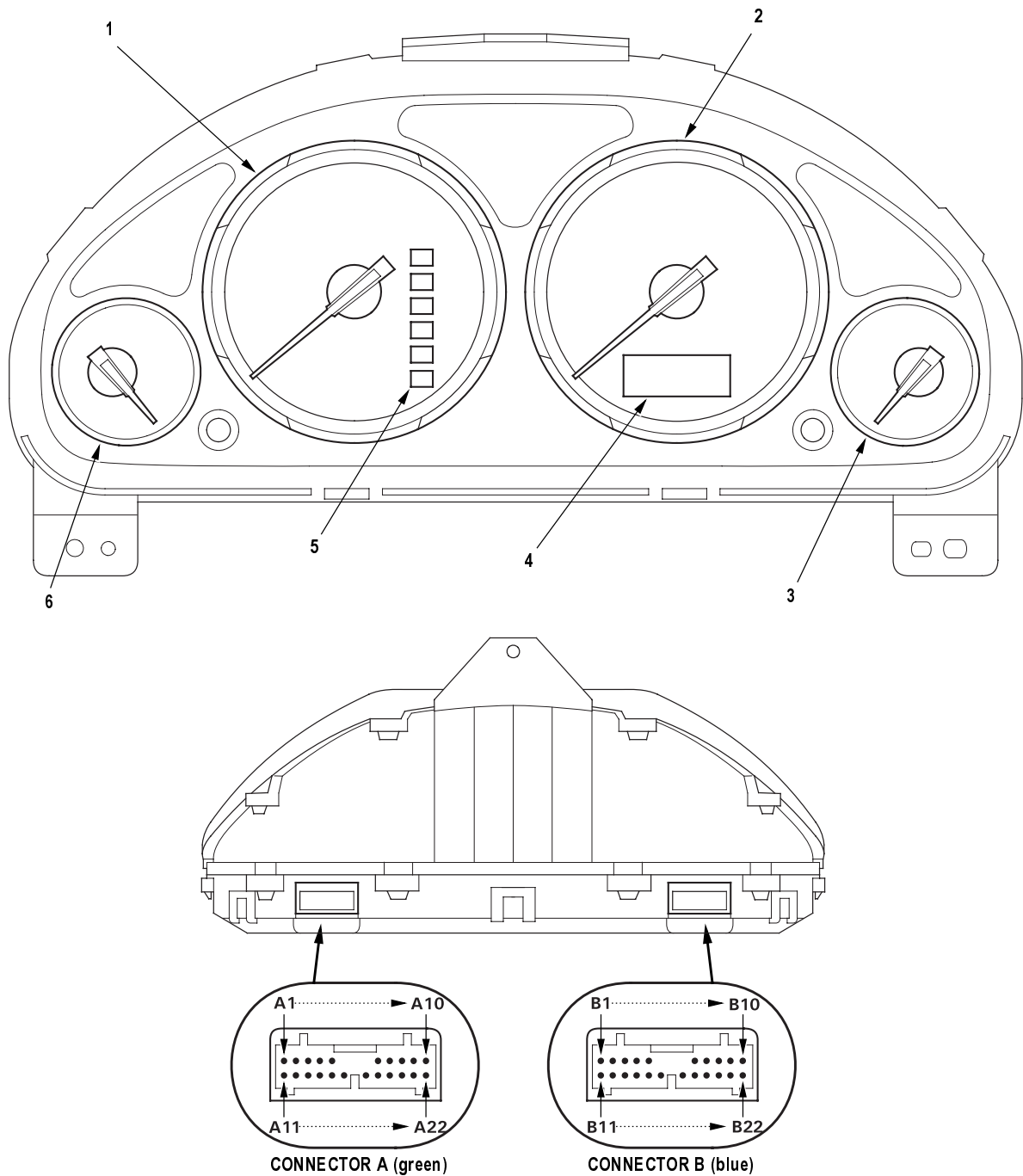
Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- |   |                                  |  |
|---|----------------------------------|--|
| 1 | PARKING BRAKE SWITCH             | <a href="#">page 19A-11</a>  |
| 2 | FUEL GAUGE SENDING UNIT          | <a href="#">page 11-173</a>  |
| 3 | GAUGE ASSEMBLY                   | Self-diagnosis Procedure, <a href="#">page 22A-66</a> ; Outside, Air Temperature Indicator Test, <a href="#">page 22A-78</a> ; Gauge Bulb Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-73</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-74</a> ; Coolant Temperature Gauge Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 22A-74</a> |
| 4 | BRAKE FLUID LEVEL SWITCH         | <a href="#">page 19A-11</a>  |
| 5 | VEHICLE SPEED SENSOR (VSS) (M/T) | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 22A-75</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-77</a>  |
| 6 | ENGINE OIL PRESSURE SWITCH       | <a href="#">page 08-4</a>  |

## Gauge/Terminal Location Index



1 TACHOMETER

2 SPEEDOMETER

3 FUEL GAUGE

4 ODO/TRIP/OUTSIDE AIR TEMPERATURE METER

5 AT GEAR POSITION INDICATOR

6 COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Vehicle Speed Signal Circuit Troubleshooting, [page 22A-75](#)

Troubleshooting, [page 11-173](#)

Troubleshooting, [page 22A-74](#)

Self-diagnostic Procedure

The gauge assembly has a self-diagnosis function that checks these circuits:

- The beeper drive circuit
- The indicator drive circuit
- The LCD segments
- The gauges drive circuit (Speedometer, Tachometer, Fuel gauge, Coolant temperature gauge)
- The communication line (the coolant temperature signal line between the gauge and the ECM/PCM)

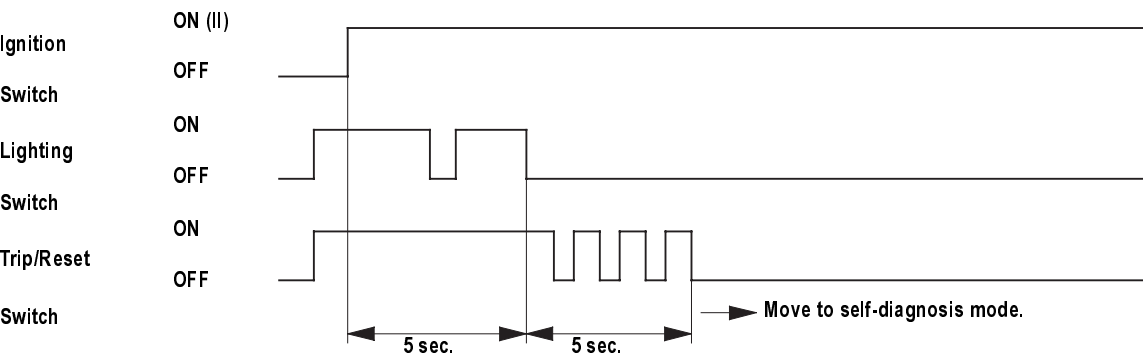
Entering the self-diagnosis function:

Before entering the self-diagnosis function, check the No. 9 (10A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box and No. 10 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

1. Push and hold the trip/reset button.
2. Turn the headlights ON.
3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
4. With in 5 sec., turn the headlights OFF, then ON and OFF again.
5. With in 5 sec., release the trip/reset button, then push and release the button four times.

Note:

- While in the self-diagnosis mode, the dash lights brightness controller operates normally.
- While in the self-diagnosis mode, the trip/reset button is used to start the Beeper Drive Circuit Test and the Gauge Drive Circuit Check.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds 1.2 mph (2 km/h) or the ignition switch is turned OFF, the self-diagnosis mode ends.



The Beeper Drive Circuit Check:

When entering the self-diagnosis mode, the beeper sounds five times.

The Indicator Drive Circuit Check:

When entering the self-diagnosis mode, these indicator lights blink:

Seat belt indicator light, Door indicator light, Brake system light, Charging system light, Low fuel indicator light, Tailgate indicator light.

A/T gear position Indicator (except [P], [R], [N])

**The LCD Segments Check:**

When entering the self-diagnosis mode, the odo/trip segments blinks five times.

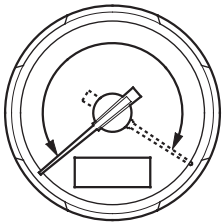
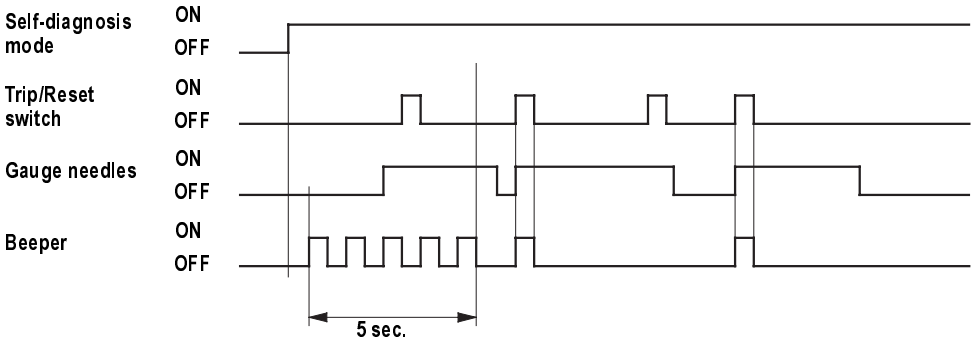
**The Gauge Drive Circuit Check:**

When entering the self-diagnosis mode, the speedometer, the tachometer, the fuel gauge, and the coolant temperature gauge needles move from the minimum position to the maximum position, then return to the minimum position.

Note:

After the beeper stops sounding and the gauge needles return to the minimum position, pushing the trip/reset button starts the Beeper Drive Circuit Check (one beep), and the Gauge Drive Circuit Check again.

The check cannot be started until the gauge needles return the minimum position.



The needles sweep from the minimum position to the maximum position, then return to the minimum position.

**The Communication Line Check:**

In the self-diagnosis mode, and after the odo/trip LCD Segments Check, the self-diagnosis starts the Communication Line Check.

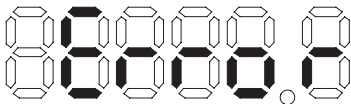
If all segments comes on, the communication line is OK.

If the word "Error" is indicated, there is a malfunction in the communication line between the gauge assembly, the multiplex control unit, and the ECM/PCM. Go to Multiplex System Troubleshooting ([see page 22A-231](#)).

Normal:



Faulty:

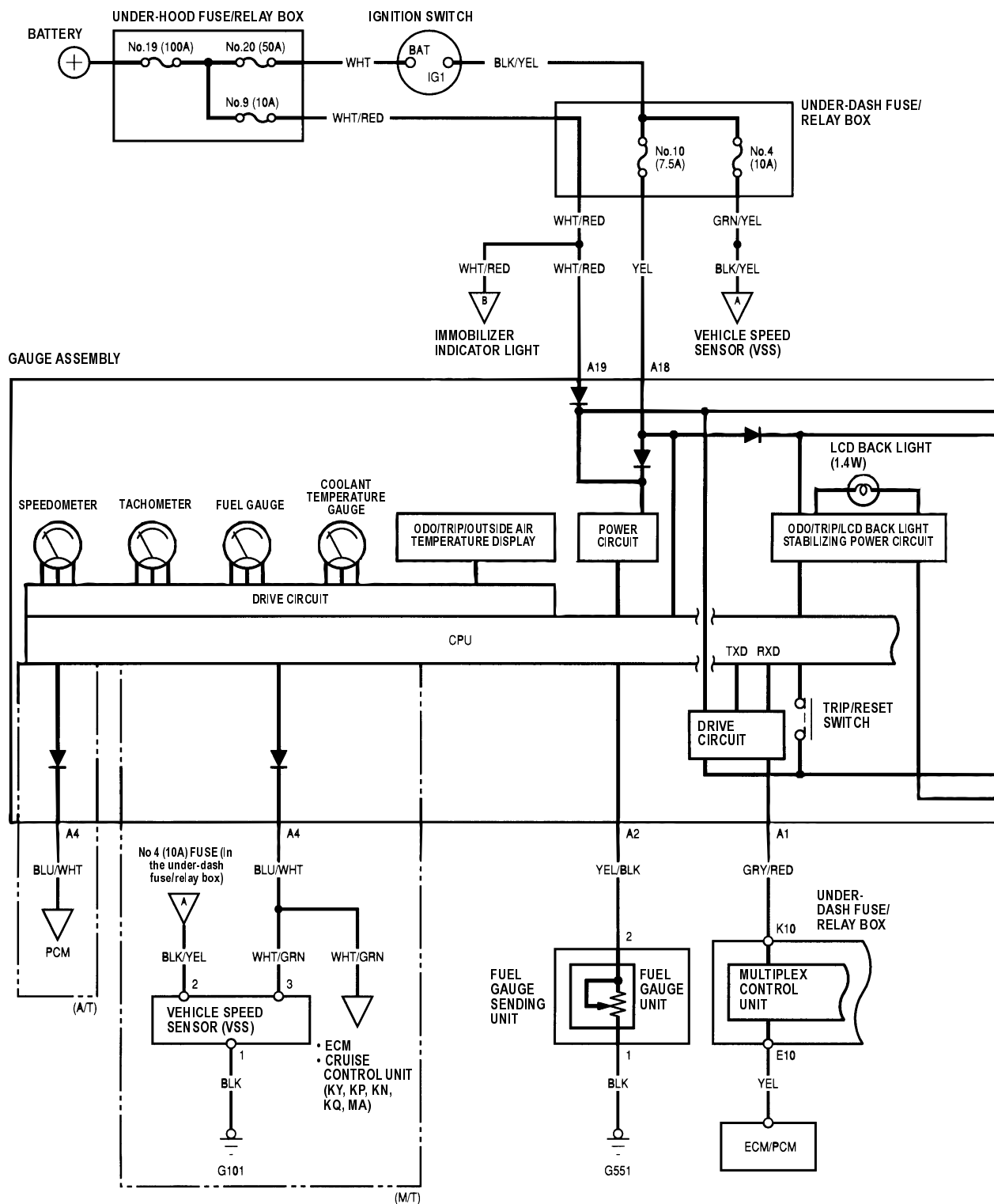


**Ending the self-diagnosis function:**

Turn the ignition switch OFF.

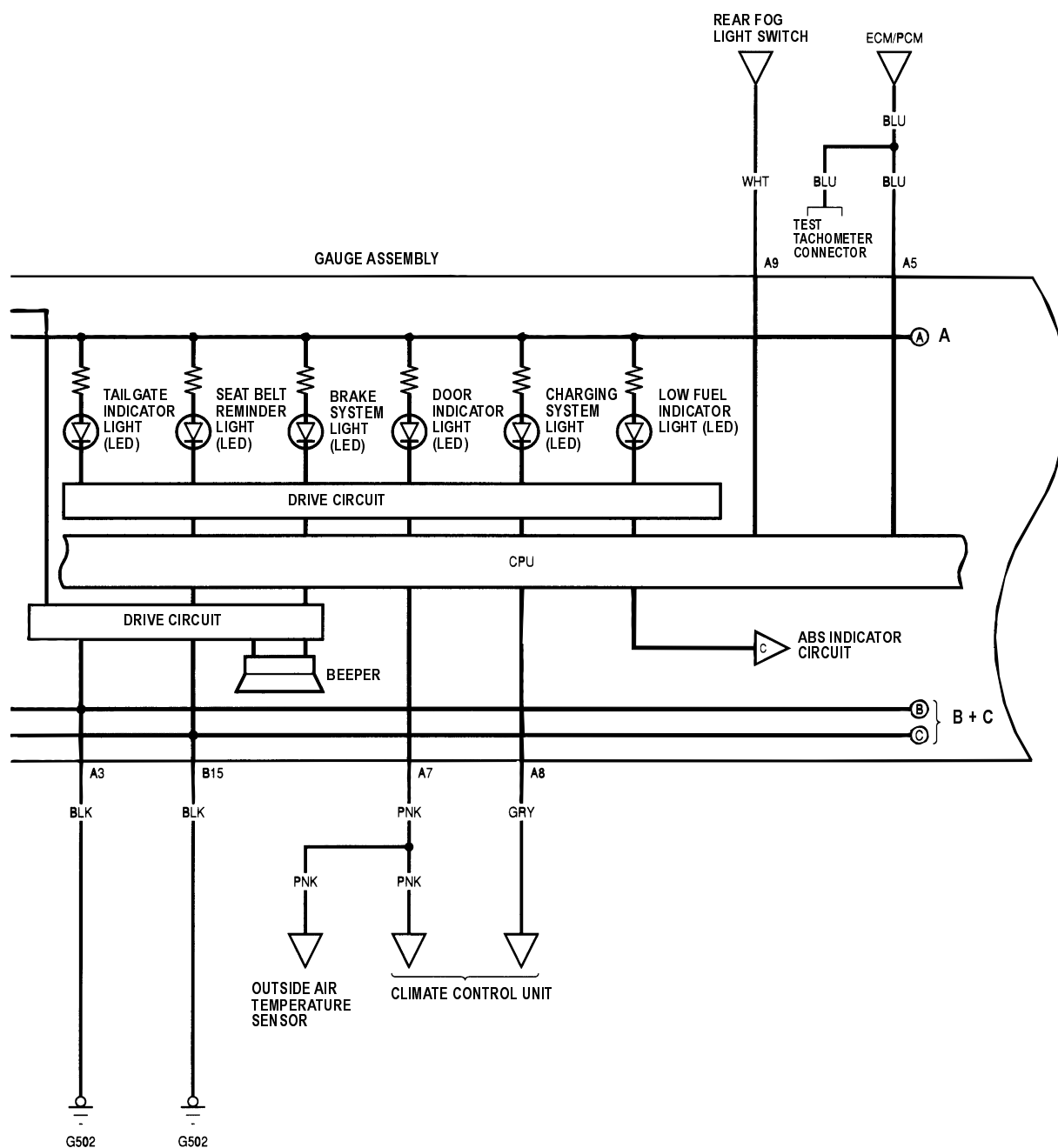
Note: If the vehicle speed exceeds 1.2 mph (2 km/h), the self-diagnosis function ends.

### Circuit Diagram



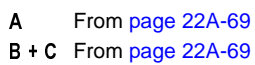


### Circuit Diagram (cont'd)



A To [page 22A-70](#)  
B + C To [page 22A-70](#)

(cont'd)

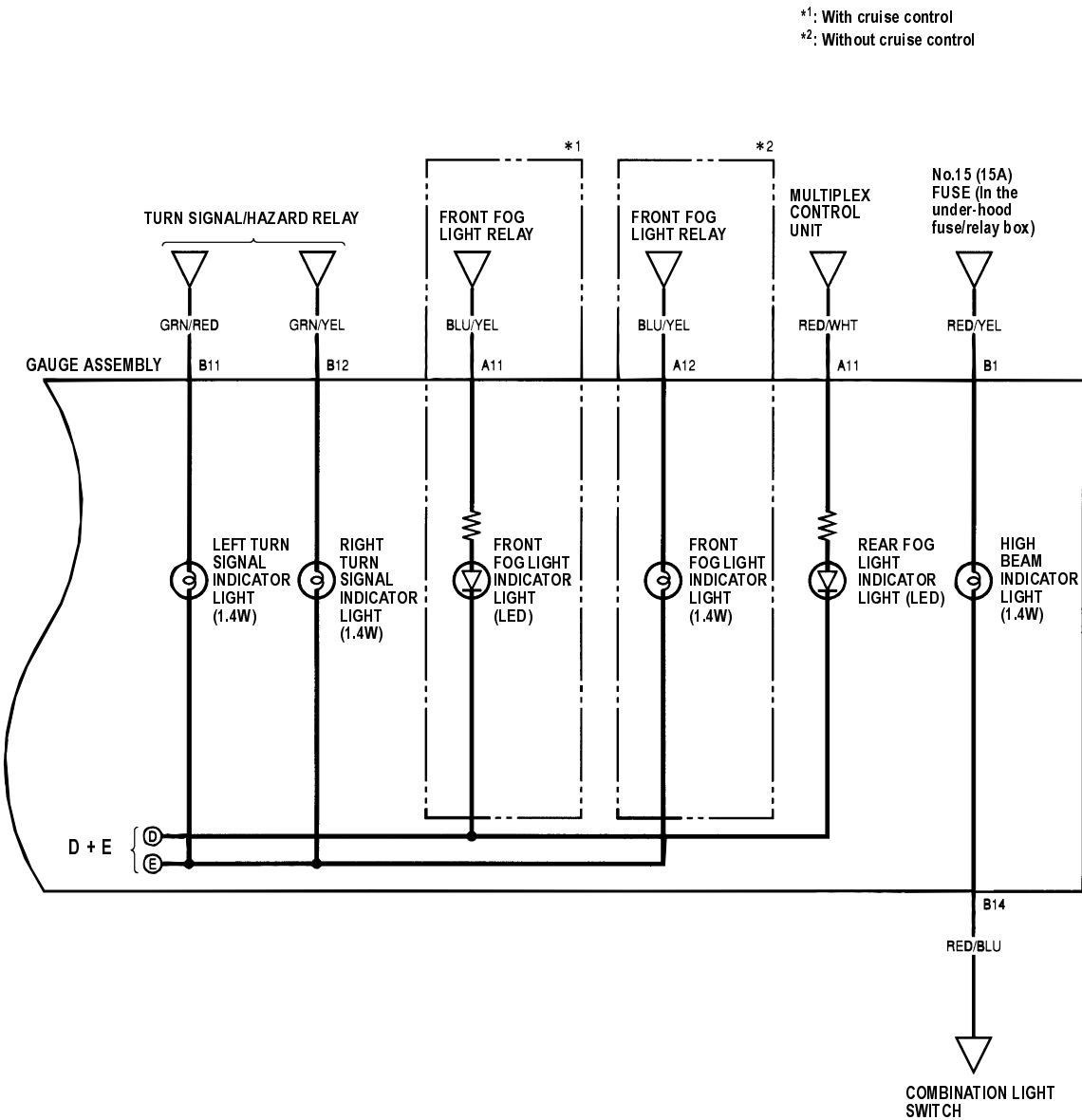


\*1: With dash lights brightness control  
\*2: Without dash lights brightness control



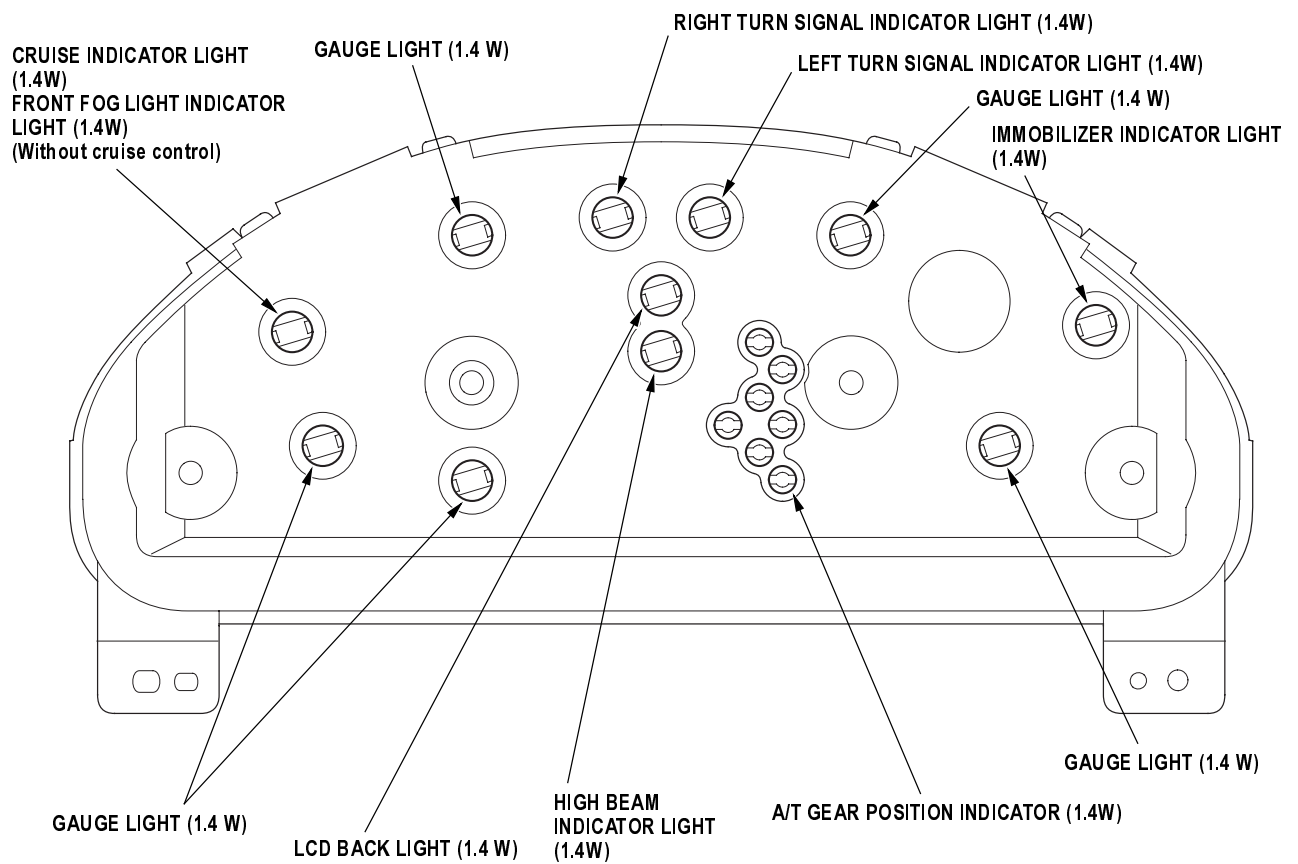
**22A-71**

Circuit Diagram (cont'd)



D + E From [page 22A-71](#)

## Gauge Bulb Replacement

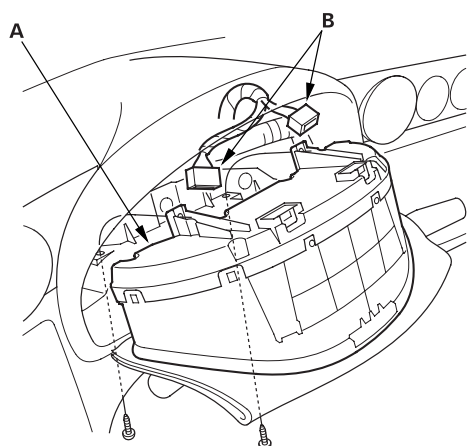


## Gauge Assembly Replacement

1. Remove the driver's dashboard lower cover (see page 20-88), then remove the instrument panel (see page 20-87).

Place a clean shop towel under the gauge assembly to prevent scratching the steering column or dashboard.

2. Remove the three mounting screws from the gauge assembly (A).



3. Disconnect the connectors (B), and remove the gauge assembly.
4. Install the gauge assembly in the reverse order of removal.

## Coolant Temperature Gauge Troubleshooting

Before testing, check the No. 9 (10A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box and the No. 10 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

1. Start the engine, and check the malfunction indicator lamp (MIL).

*Does the MIL come on and stay on?*

**Yes** Troubleshoot the cause of the ECM/PCM DTC (see page 11-62), and recheck.

**No** Go to step 2.

2. Check for a multiplex control unit DTC (see page 22A-231).

*Is a DTC indicated?*

**Yes** Troubleshooting the cause of the multiplex control unit DTC (see page 22A-231), and recheck.

**No** Go to step 3.

3. Do the communication line check with the self-diagnosis procedure (see page 22A-66).

*Is the word "Error" indicated on the odo/trip display?*

**Yes** The gauge cannot receive the signal from the multiplex control unit and the ECM/PCM. Check for an open in the GRY/RED wire (gauge connector terminal A1).

**No** Go to step 4.

4. Do the gauge drive circuit check with the self-diagnosis procedure (see page 22A-66).

*Does the temperature gauge needle sweep from the minimum position to the maximum, then return to the minimum position?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Replace the gauge assembly.■

5. Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM, and recheck.

*Did the symptom/indication go away?*

**Yes** Replace the ECM/PCM.

**No** Substitute a known-good gauge assembly. If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the gauge assembly.■

## Vehicle Speed Signal Circuit Troubleshooting

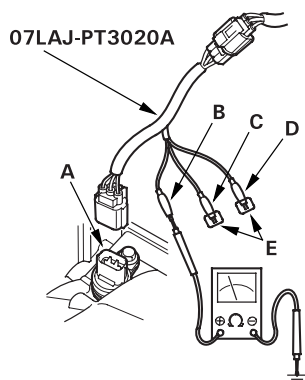
### Special Tools Required:

Test Harness 07LAJ-PT3020A

### M/T:

Before testing, inspect the No. 4 (10A) and No. 10 (7.5A) fuses in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

1. Disconnect the 3P connector from the vehicle speed sensor (VSS) (A).



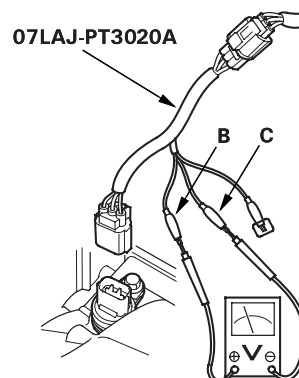
2. Connect the test harness only to the engine wire harness.
3. Connect the RED test harness clip (B) to the positive probe of an ohmmeter. Cover the white (C) and green (D) test harness leads with protective tape (E).
4. Check for continuity between the RED test harness clip and body ground.

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Repair open in the BLK wire between the VSS and G101.■

5. Connect the WHT test harness clip (B) to the positive probe of a voltmeter, and connect the RED test harness clip (C) to the negative probe.

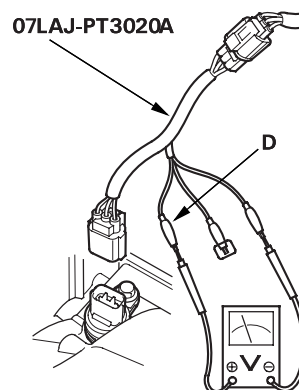


6. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).  
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 7.

**No** Repair open in the BLK/YEL wire between the VSS and the under-dash fuse/relay box.■

7. Disconnect the WHT test harness clip (B).
8. Connect the GRN test harness clip (D) to the positive probe of a voltmeter.



*Is there 5 V or battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

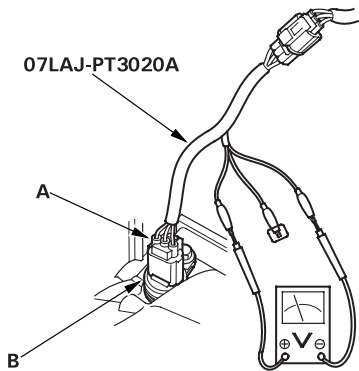
**No** Repair short or open in the BLU/WHT [WHT/GRN] wire between the VSS and the ECM.■

(cont'd)

Vehicle Speed Signal Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

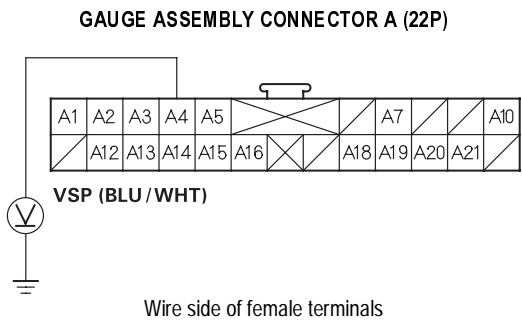
M/T: (cont'd)

- 9. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- 10. Connect the other test harness connector (A) to the VSS (B).



- 11. Raise the front of the vehicle, and make sure it is securely supported.
- 12. Put the vehicle in neutral with the ignition switch ON (II).
- 13. Slowly rotate one wheel with the other wheel blocked.  
*Does the voltage pulse from 0 to about 5 V or battery voltage?*  
**Yes** Go to step 14.  
**No** Replace the VSS.■

- 14. Disconnect the 22P connector "A" from the gauge assembly.



- 15. Touch the voltmeter positive probe to the gauge assembly A4 terminal, and connect the negative prove to body ground.
- 16. Slowly rotate one wheel with the other wheel blocked.  
*Does the voltage pulse from 0 to about 5 V or battery voltage?*  
**Yes** Replace the speedometer assembly.■  
**No** Repair open in the BLU/WHT [WHT/GRN] wire between the VSS and the speedometer.■



## A/T:

Before testing, check the No. 9 (10A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box and the No. 10 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

1. Start the engine, and check the malfunction indicator lamp (MIL).

*Does the MIL come on and stay on?*

**Yes** Troubleshoot the PCM DTC ([see page 11-62](#)), and recheck.

**No** Go to step 2.

2. Check the multiplex control unit DTC ([see page 22A-231](#)).

*Is the DTC indicated?*

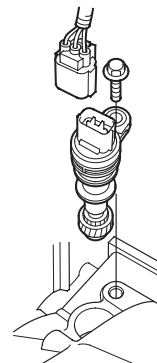
**Yes** Troubleshoot the DTC ([see page 22A-231](#)), and recheck.■

**No** Inspect the connector and socket terminals of the gauge assembly connectors. If the terminals look OK, substitute a known-good gauge assembly and reset. If the problem is fixed, replace the gauge assembly. If the problem is not fixed, replace the PCM.■

## VSS Replacement

### M/T only:

1. Remove the air cleaner ([see page 11-182](#)).
2. Disconnect the 3P connector from the vehicle speed sensor (VSS).



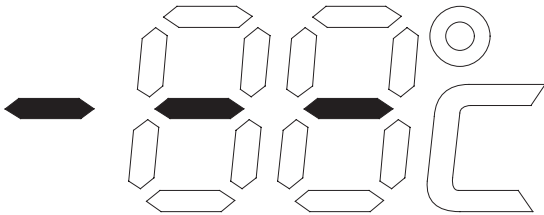
3. Remove the mounting bolt, then remove the VSS.
4. Install the VSS in the reverse order of removal.

## Outside Air Temperature Indicator Test

NOTE: To test the outside air temperature sensor (see [page 21-90](#)).

### Troubleshooting:

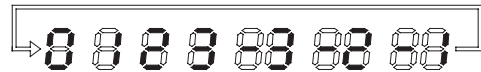
If the indicator displays "--" for more than 2 seconds after selecting the outside air temperature display mode, check for an open in the wire between the gauge and the outside air temperature sensor.



### Calibration:

The outside air temperature indicator's displayed temperature can be recalibrated  $\pm 3^\circ$  to meet the customer's expectations.

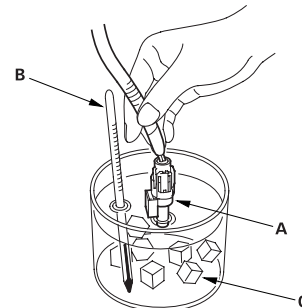
1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
2. Push and hold the trip/reset switch for 10 seconds. While you continue to hold the button, the display will scroll through temperature settings from  $+3^\circ$  to  $-3^\circ$  as shown.



3. When the desired correction value appears on the display, release the buttons, and the recalibrated outside air temperature will be displayed.

If the outside temperature indicator display is off by more than 3 degrees of the desired value, turn the ignition switch OFF and repeat steps 1-3.

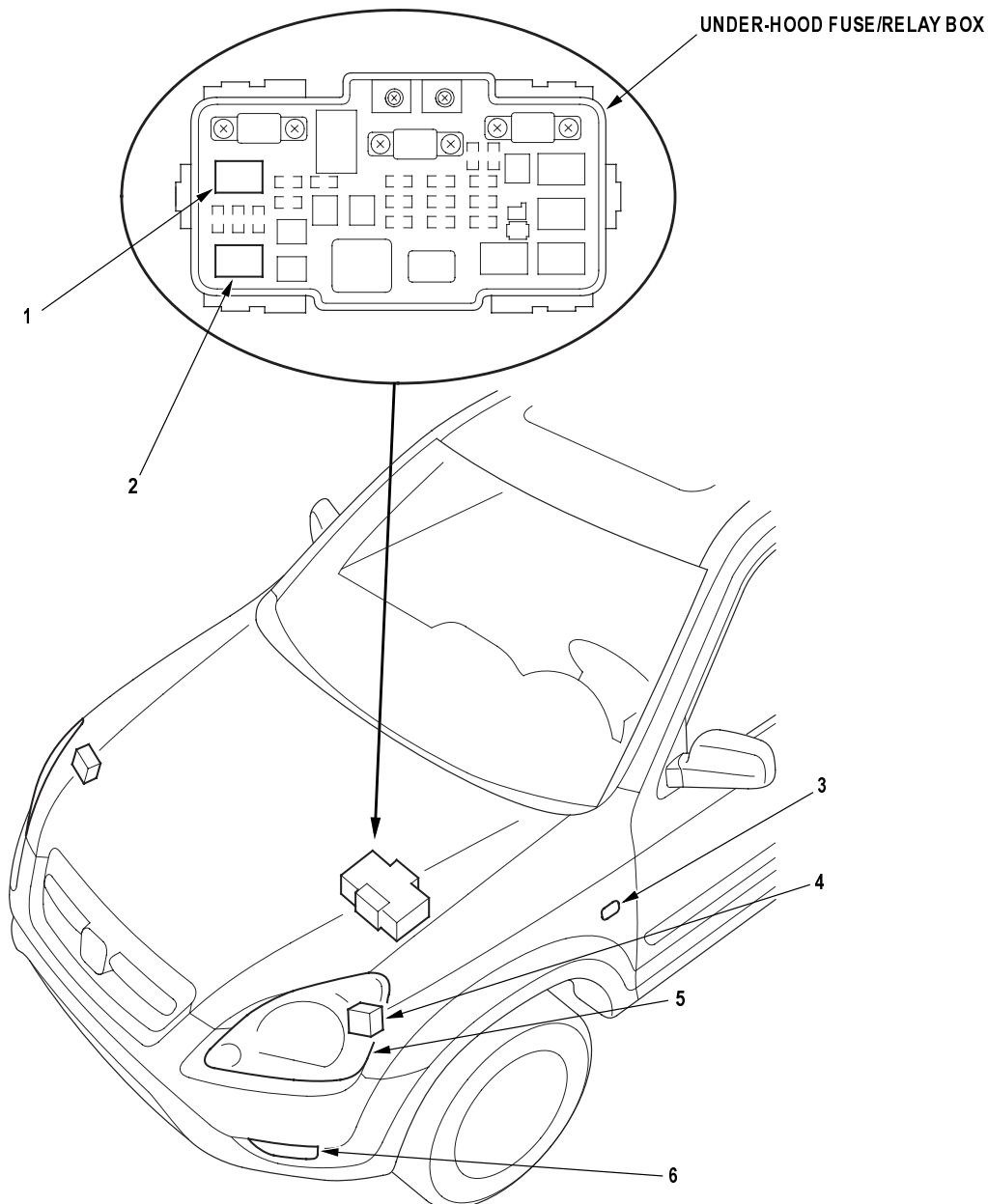
NOTE: To recalibrate the display to the true temperature, remove the outside air temperature sensor (A), but leave it connected. Submerge the sensor and a thermometer (B) in a container of ice water (C). Select the calibration mode as described above, then recalibrate the display to the true temperature.



## Exterior Lights

### Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.

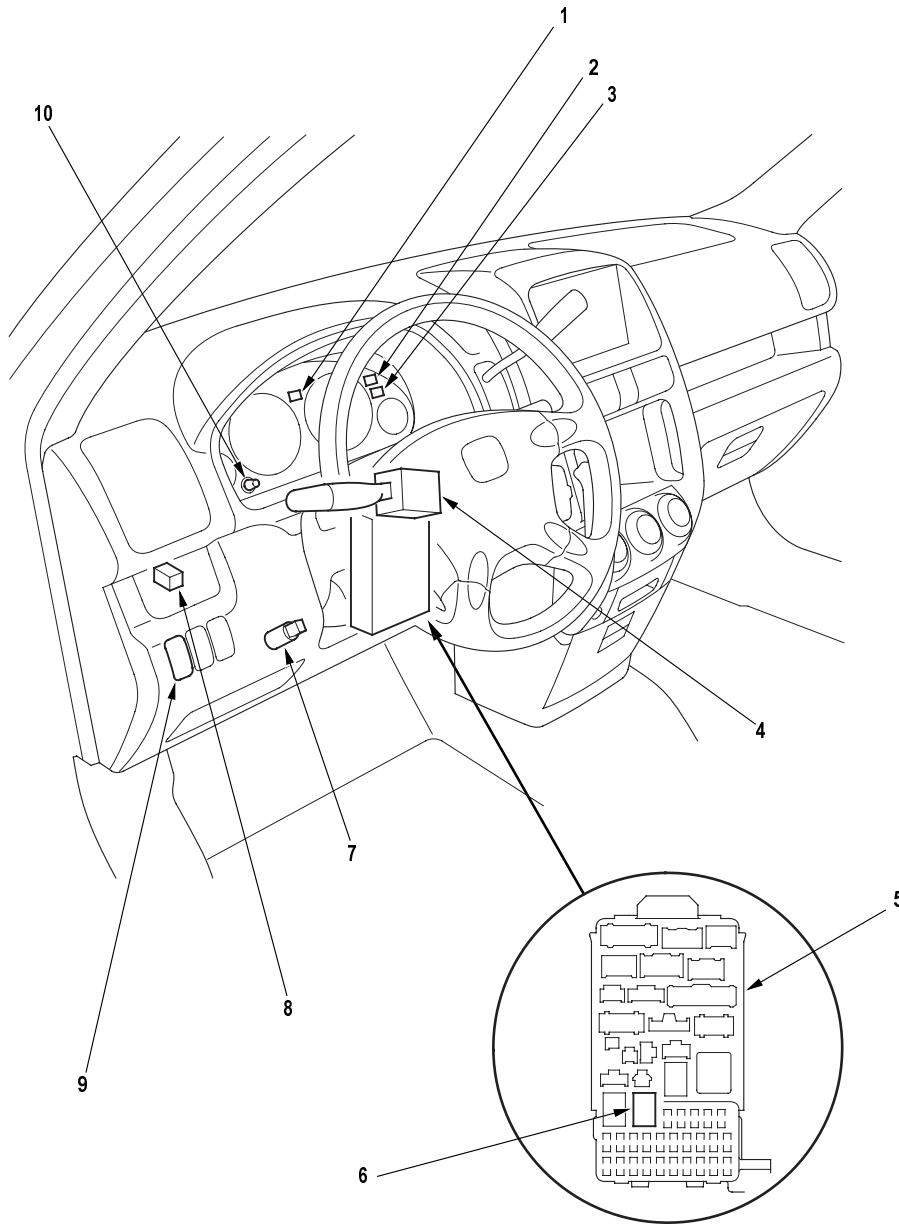


- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1 HEADLIGHT RELAY 2 (LEFT)            | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-60</a>  |
| 2 HEADLIGHT RELAY 1 (RIGHT)           | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-60</a>  |
| 3 SIDE TURN SIGNAL LIGHT              | Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-101</a>  |
| 4 HEADLIGHT ADJUSTER UNIT             | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 22A-94</a>   |
| 5 • HEADLIGHTS                        | Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-96</a> ; Adjustment, <a href="#">page 22A-96</a> ;<br>Damaged Headlight Alignment Pin Procedure, <a href="#">page 22A-97</a> |
| • FRONT PARKING LIGHT                 |  |
| • FRONT TURN SIGNAL/SIDE MARKER LIGHT |  |
| 6 FRONT FOG LIGHT                     | Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-100</a> ; Adjustment, <a href="#">page 22A-100</a>   |

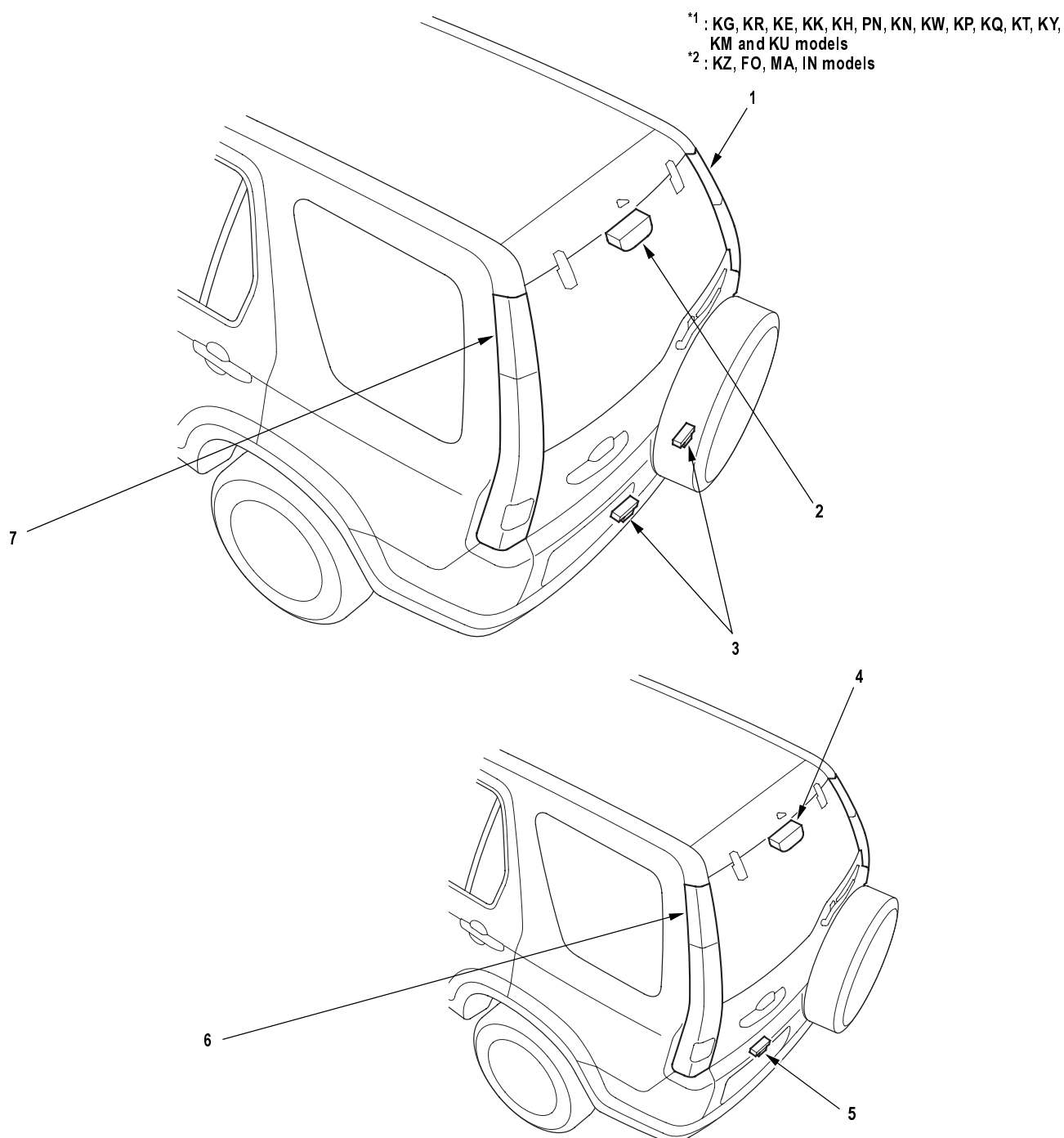
(cont'd)

### Component Location Index (cont'd)

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.

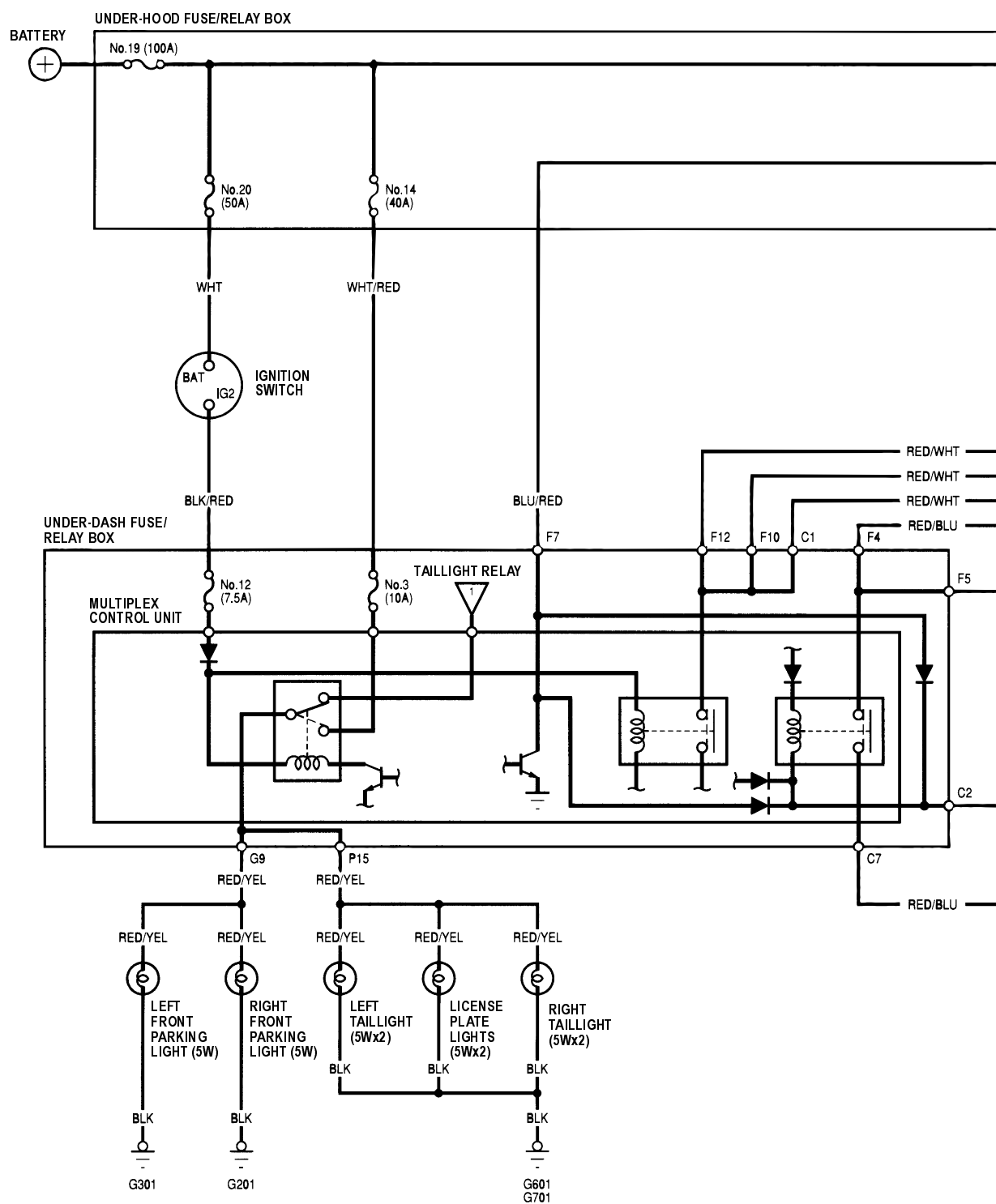


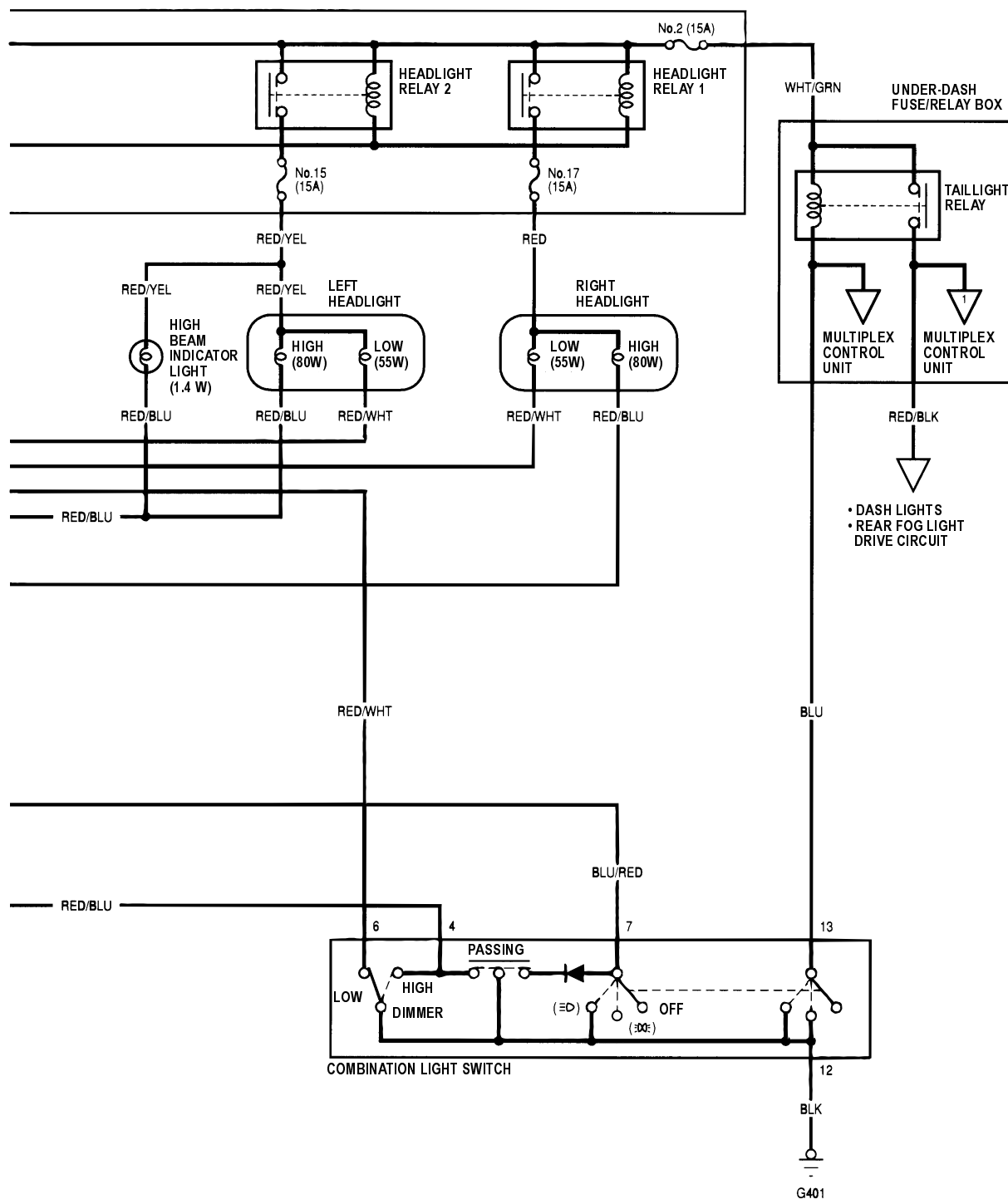
- |    |                                   |  |
|----|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1  | HIGH BEAM INDICATOR LIGHT         | Bulb Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-73</a>                                |
| 2  | REAR FOG LIGHT INDICATOR LIGHT    |  |
| 3  | FRONT FOG LIGHT INDICATOR LIGHT   | Bulb Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-73</a>                                |
| 4  | • COMBINATION LIGHT SWITCH        | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-92</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-92</a> |
|    | • FRONT FOG LIGHT SWITCH          | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-92</a>  |
|    | • REAR FOG LIGHT SWITCH           | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-92</a>  |
| 5  | UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX         |  |
| 6  | TAILLIGHT RELAY                   | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-60</a>  |
| 7  | BRAKE PEDAL POSITION SWITCH       | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-99</a>  |
| 8  | FRONT FOG LIGHT RELAY             | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-60</a>  |
| 9  | HEAD LIGHT ADJUSTER SWITCH        | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-95</a>  |
| 10 | DASH LIGHTS BRIGHTNESS CONTROLLER |  |



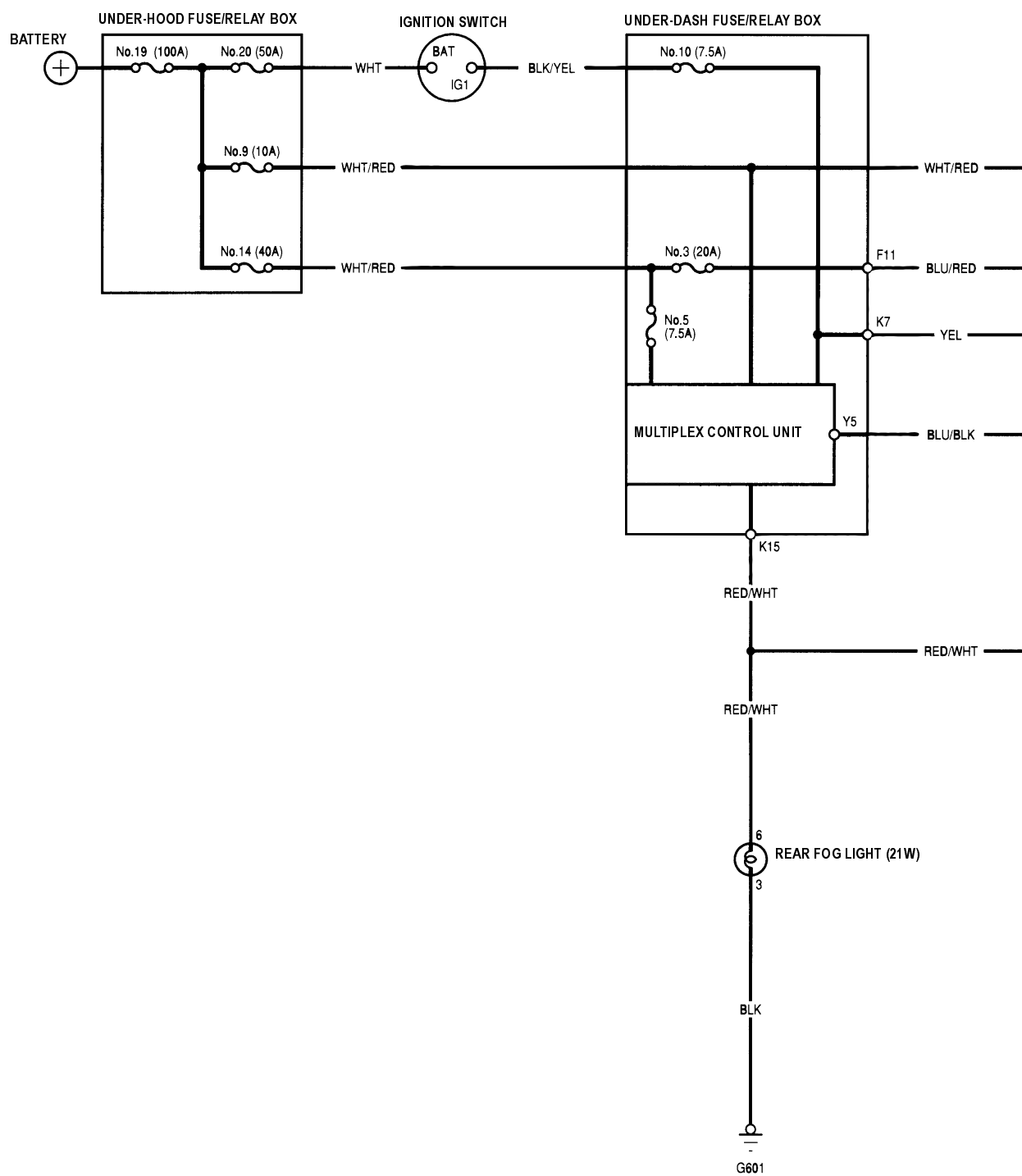
- |   |   |  |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|---|---|--|
| 1 | • TAILLIGHT/BRAKE LIGHT<br>• REAR TURN SIGNAL LIGHT<br>• BACK-UP LIGHT<br>• REAR FOG LIGHT (RHD type) | Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-98</a><br>Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-98</a><br>Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-98</a><br>Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-98</a> | 6 | • TAILLIGHT/BRAKE LIGHT<br>• REAR TURN SIGNAL LIGHT<br>• BACK-UP LIGHT                                | Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-98</a><br>Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-98</a><br>Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-98</a>   |
| 2 | HIGH MOUNT BRAKE LIGHT  | Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-98</a>   | 7 | • TAILLIGHT/BRAKE LIGHT<br>• REAR TURN SIGNAL LIGHT<br>• BACK-UP LIGHT<br>• REAR FOG LIGHT (LHD type) | Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-98</a><br>Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-98</a><br>Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-98</a><br>Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-98</a> |
| 3 | LICENSE PLATE LIGHTS* <sup>1</sup>  | Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-99</a>   |   |   |  |
| 4 | HIGH MOUNT BRAKE LIGHT  | Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-98</a>   |   |   |  |
| 5 | LICENSE PLATE LIGHT* <sup>2</sup>   | Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-99</a>   |   |   |  |

### Circuit Diagram - With Daytime Running Lights

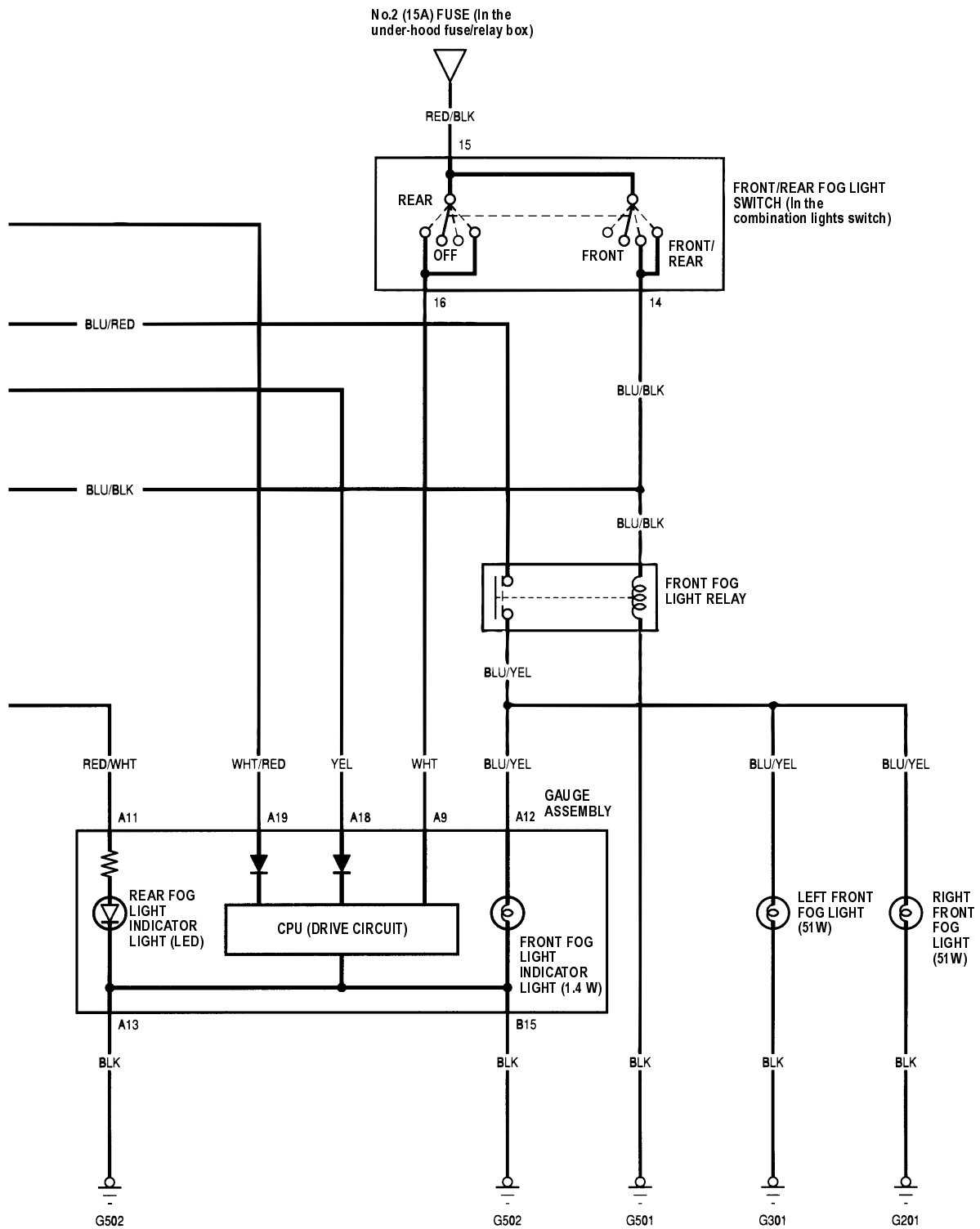




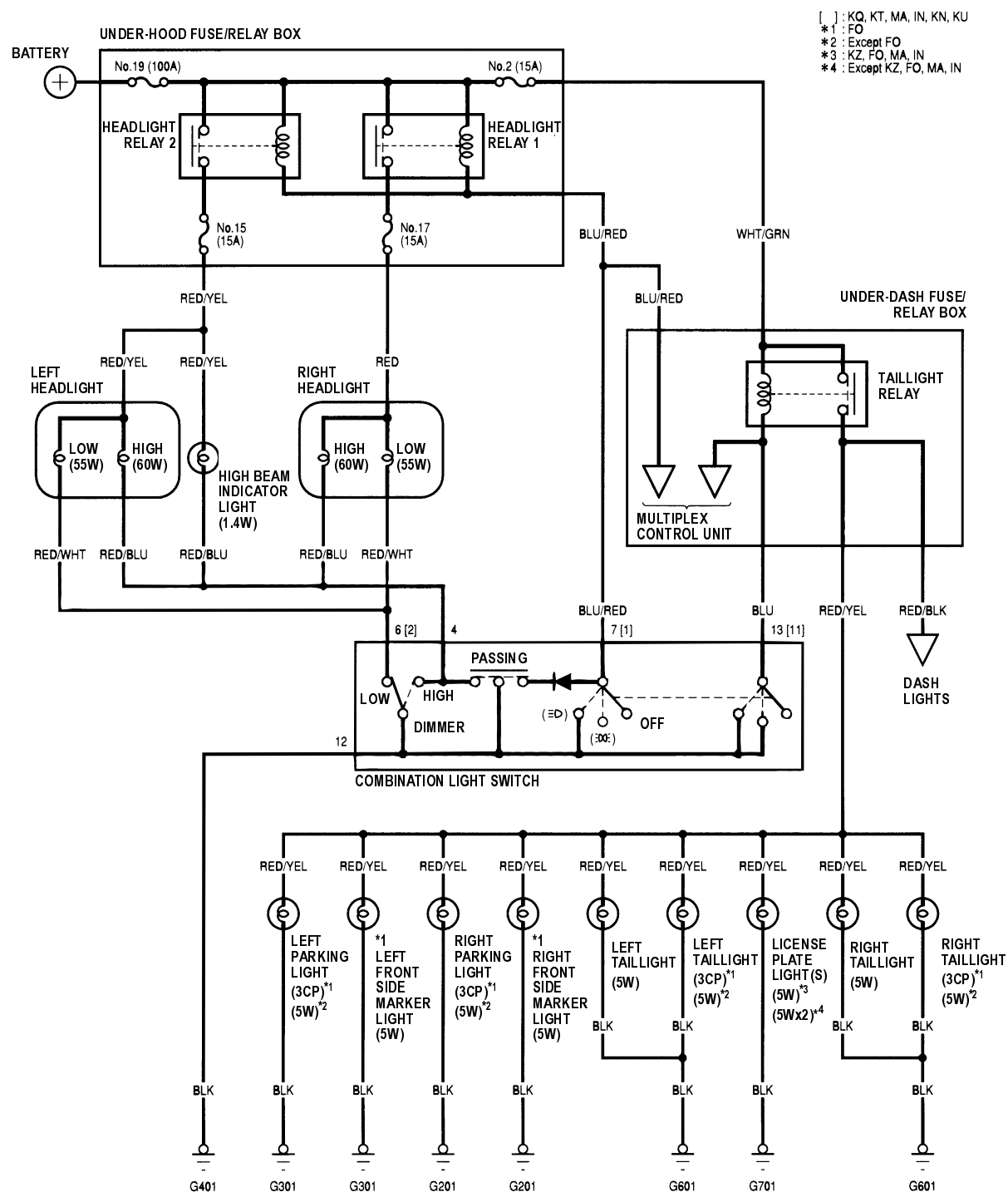
Circuit Diagram - Front/Rear Fog Lights



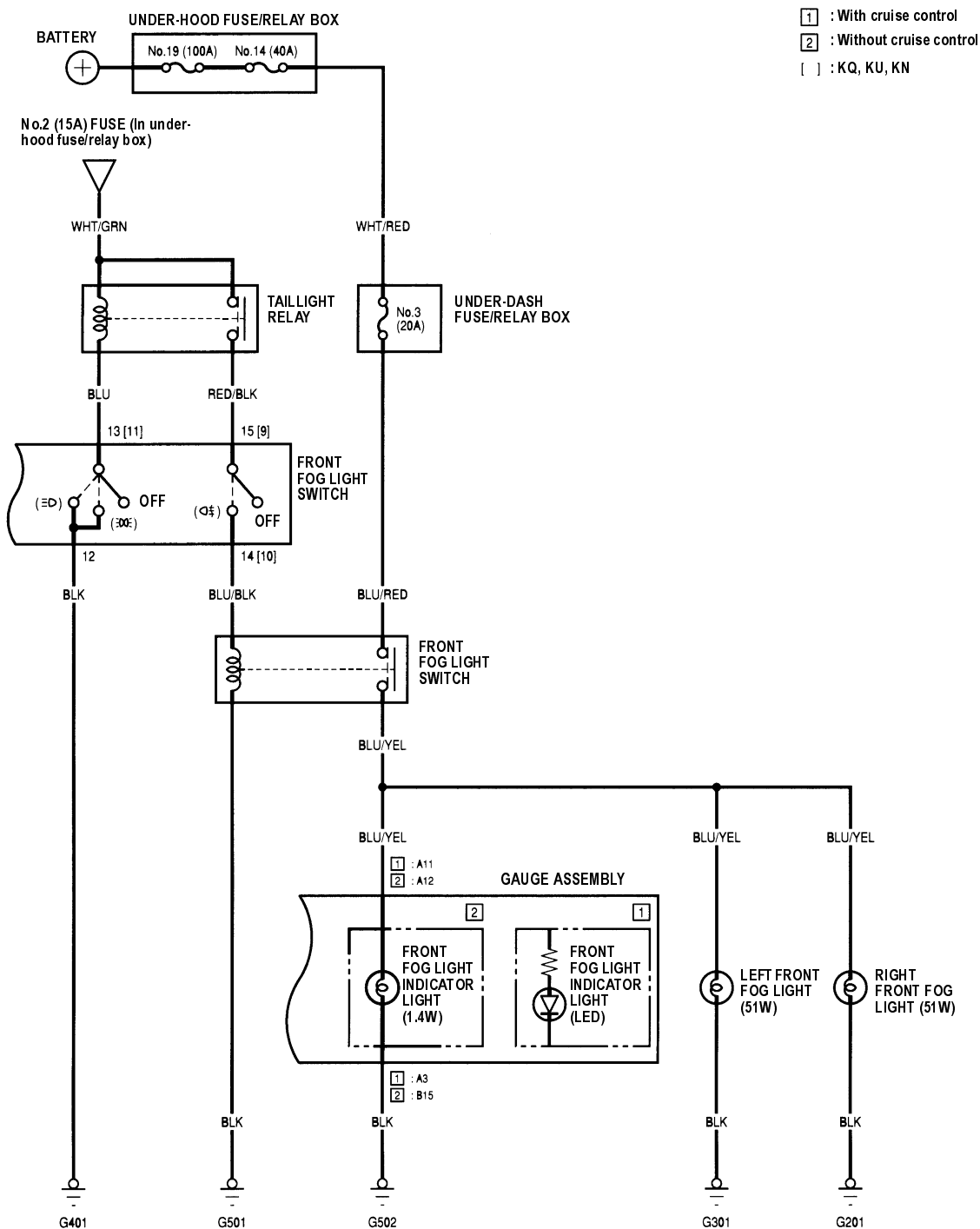




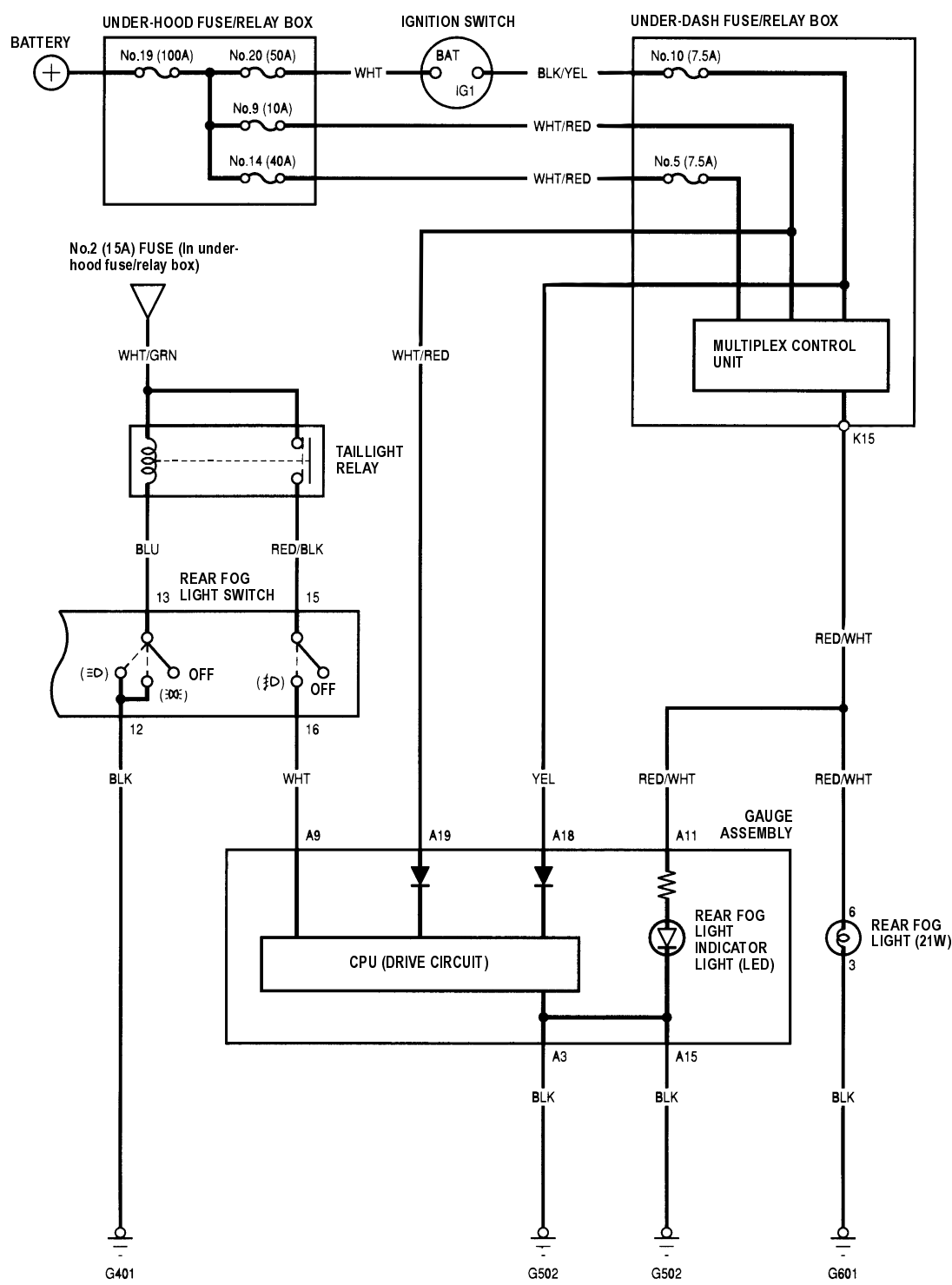
Circuit Diagram



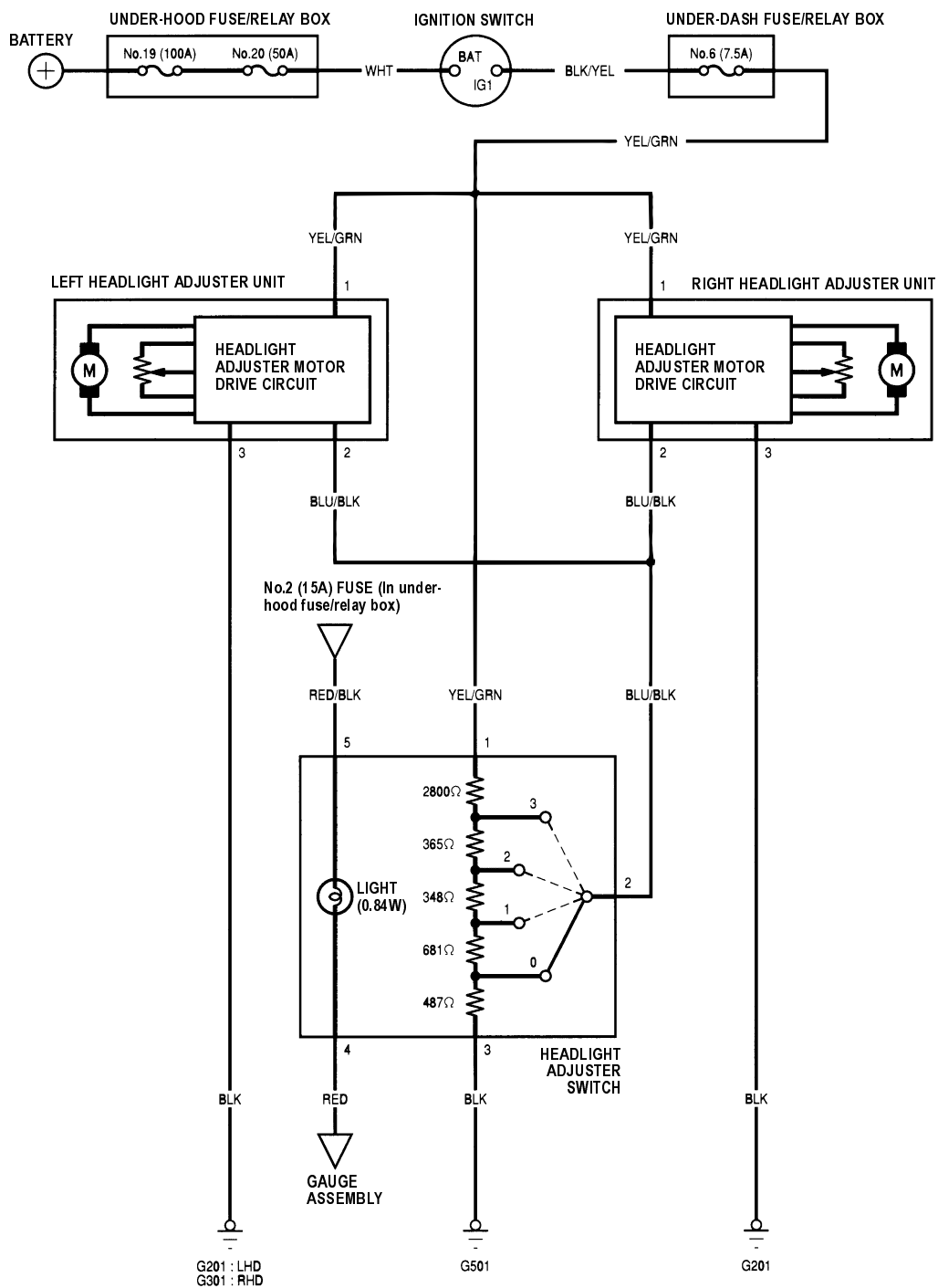
## Circuit Diagram - Front Fog Lights



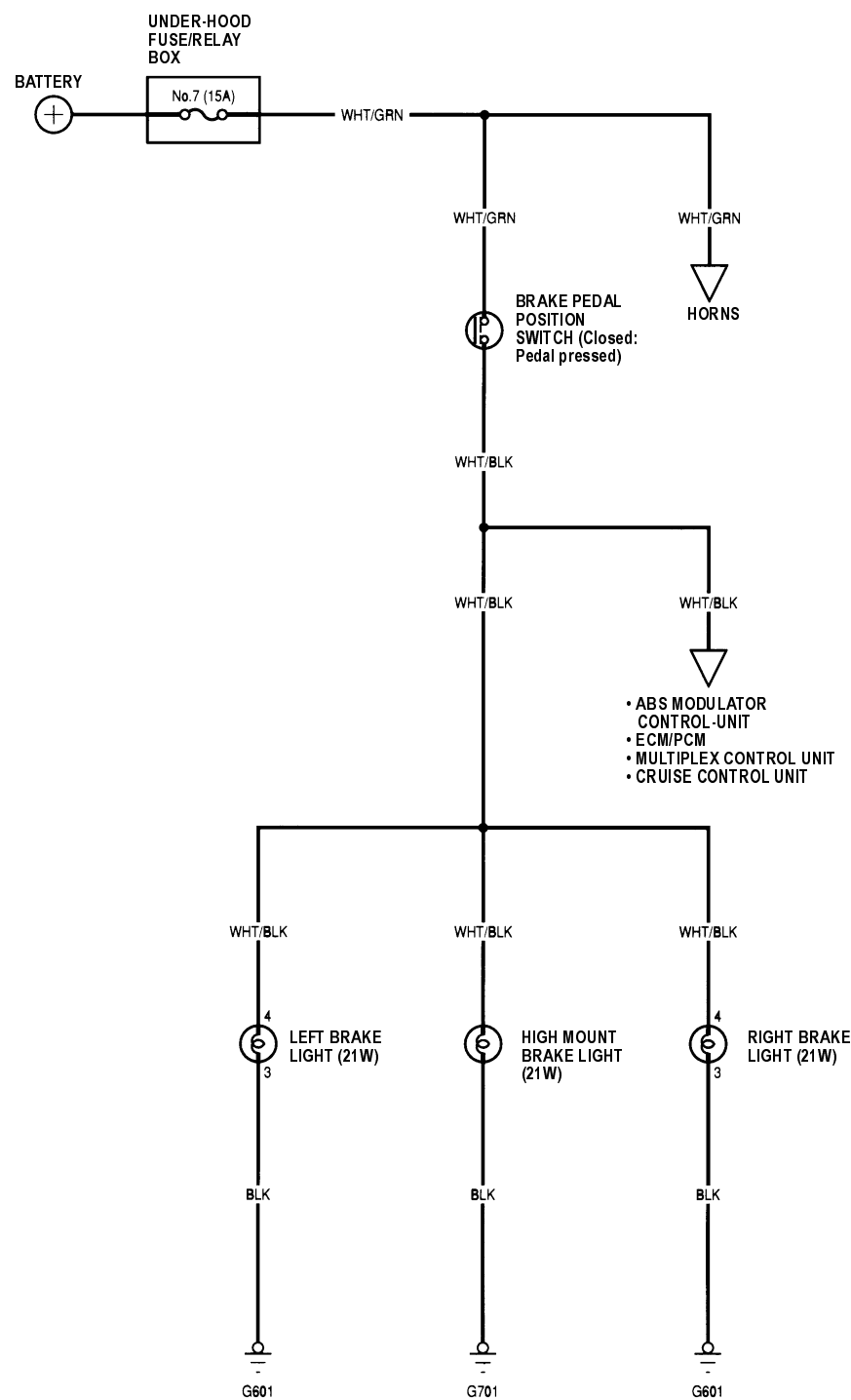
Circuit Diagram - Rear Fog Light



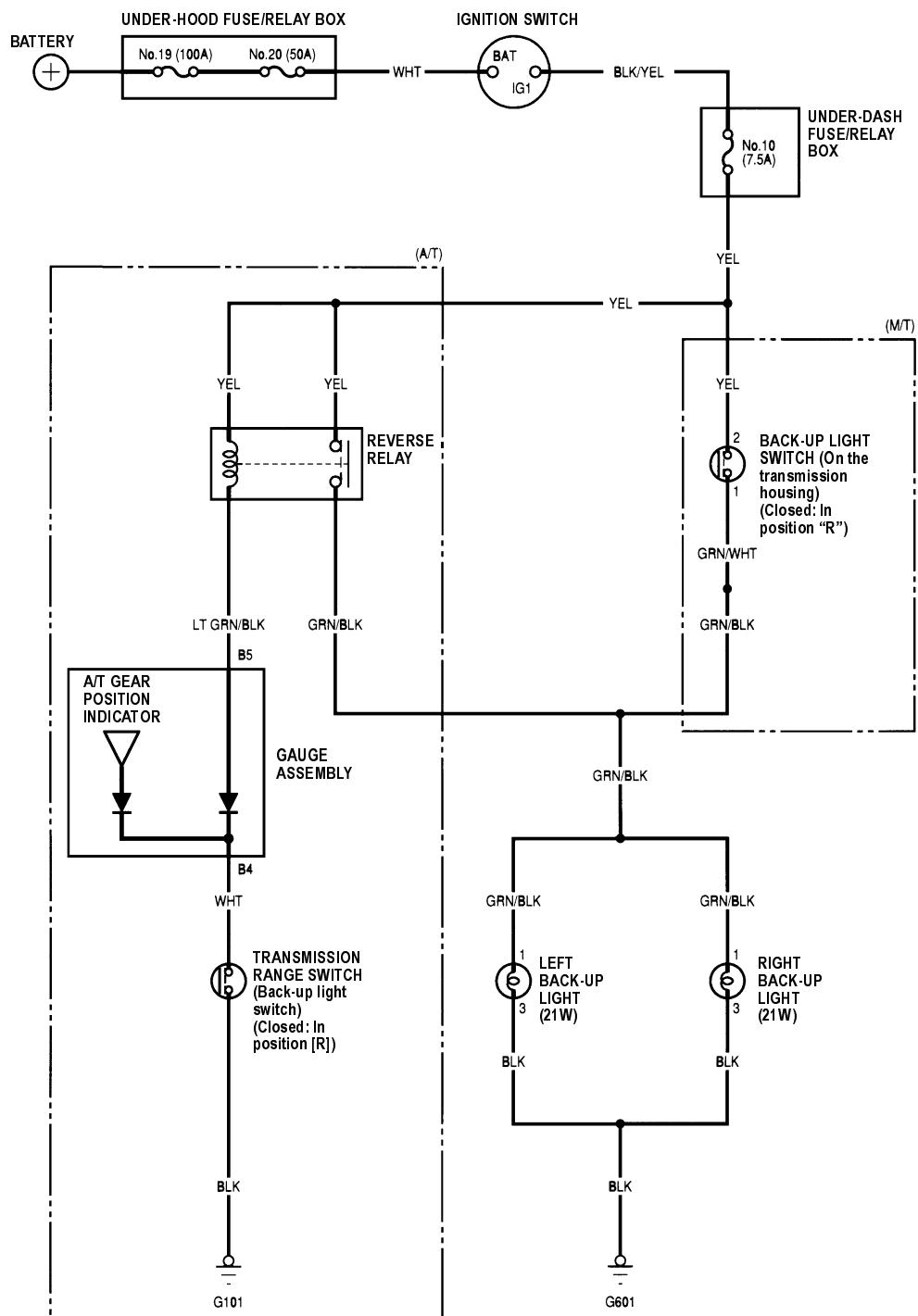
## Circuit Diagram - Headlights Adjuster



Circuit Diagram - Brake Lights



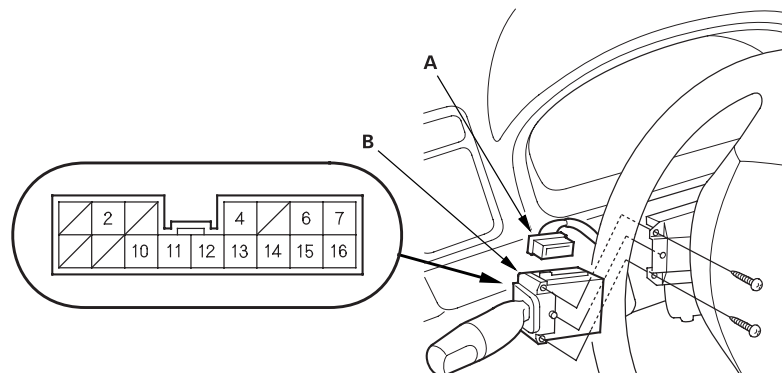
## Circuit Diagram - Back-up Lights



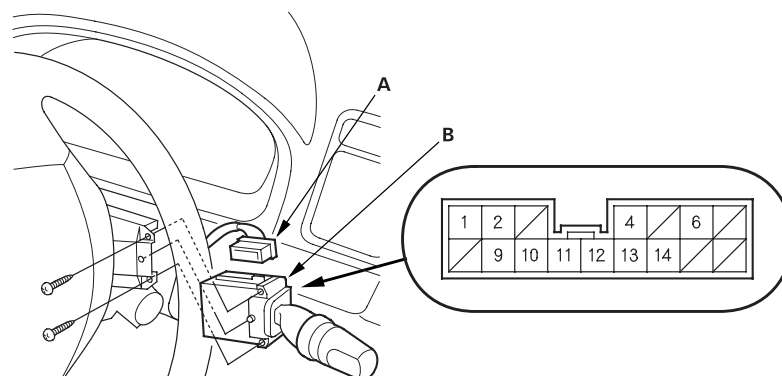
## Combination Light Switch Test/Replacement

1. Remove the steering column covers ([see page 17-24](#)).
2. Disconnect the 16P connector (A) from the combination light switch (B).

LHD type and KE model:



RHD type:



3. Remove the two screws, then slide out the combination light switch.



4. Inspect the connector terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals look OK, check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the tables.
    - If the continuity is not specified, replace the switch.

Light Switch:

Terminal		4	6 [2]	7 [1]		12	13 [11]
Position							
Headlight switch	OFF		○	—		○	
	OFF					○	○
	LOW		○	○	—	○	○
	HIGH	○	—	○	—	○	○
Passing switch	OFF						
	ON	○	—	○	▶	○	○

[ ] : RHD type

Turn Signal Switch:

Terminal		2 [13]	10 [14]	11 [6]
Position				
LEFT		○	○	
NEUTRAL				
RIGHT			○	○

[ ] : RHD type

Front/Rear Fog Lights Switch:

Terminal		14	15	16
Position				
OFF				
Front ON		○	○	
Rear ON			○	○
Front/Rear ON		○	○	○

Front Fog Lights Switch:

Terminal		14 [10]	15 [9]
Position			
OFF			
ON		○	○

[ ] : RHD type

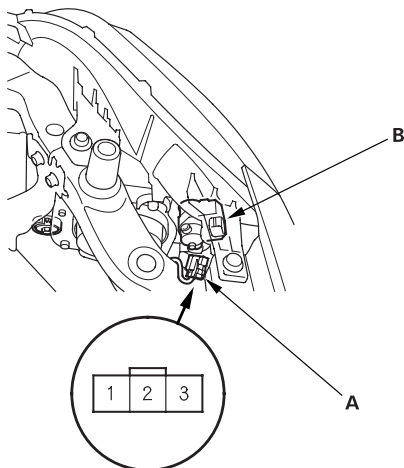
Rear Fog Lights Switch:

Terminal		15	16
Position			
OFF			
ON		○	○

## Headlight Adjuster Unit Troubleshooting

NOTE: Before testing, check for a blown No. 6 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

1. Disconnect the 3P connector (A) from the headlight adjuster unit (B).



Wire side of female terminals

2. Check for continuity between the No. 1 terminal and body ground.

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Check for these problems:■

- Repair open in the BLK wire between the headlight adjuster unit and body ground.
- Poor ground (G201, G301).

3. Check for voltage between the No. 3 terminal and body ground.

*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Repair open in the YEL/GRN wire between the headlight adjuster unit and under-dash fuse/relay box.■

4. Using an ohmmeter, measure resistance between the No. 2 terminal and body ground in position 0 of the headlight adjuster switch.

*Is there about 730  $\Omega$ ?*

**Yes** Check for frozen, stuck or improperly installed the headlight adjuster unit. If the mechanical check is OK, replace the headlight adjuster unit.■

**No** Check for these problems:■

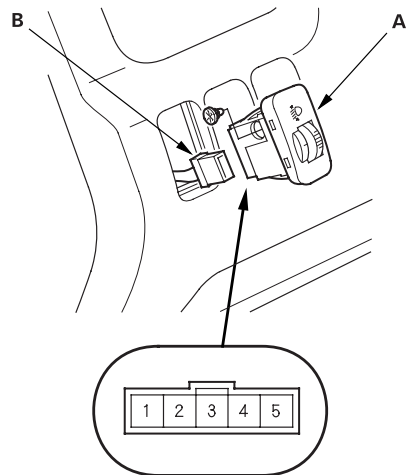
- An open in the BLU/BLK wire between the headlight adjuster unit and headlight adjuster switch.
- A faulty headlight adjuster switch.

## Headlight Adjuster Switch Test

1.

Remove the dashboard lower cover (see page 20-88).
2.

Carefully push out the headlight adjuster switch (A) from behind the dashboard.



3.

Disconnect the 5P connector (B) from the switch.
4.

Measure resistance between the No. 1 and No. 3 terminals and No. 1 and No. 2 terminals at positions 0, 1, 2, and 3 by moving the switch knob.

Between the No. 1 and No. 3 terminals:  
About 4.7 kΩ

Between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals:

Knob position	0	1	2	3
Resistance [About (kΩ)]	4.2	3.6	3.2	2.8

## Headlight Replacement

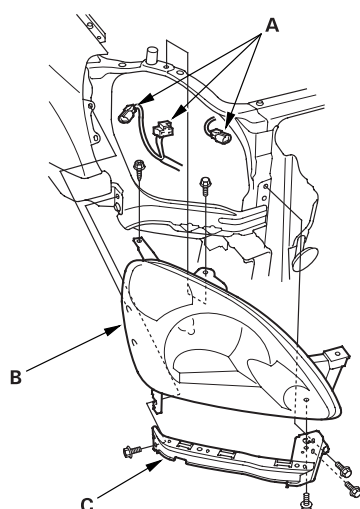
1. Remove the front bumper (see page 20-130).
2. Disconnect the connectors (A) from the headlight (B).

**Headlight: 60/55 W**

**Front Parking Light: 5 W or 3 CP**

**Front Turn Signal Light: 21 W**

**Front Turn Signal/Side Marker Light: 21 /5 W**



3. Remove the screw and mounting bolts, then remove the corner upper beam (C) and headlight assembly.
4. Install in the reverse order of removal.
5. After replacement, adjust the headlights to local requirements.

## Headlight Adjustment



### CAUTION

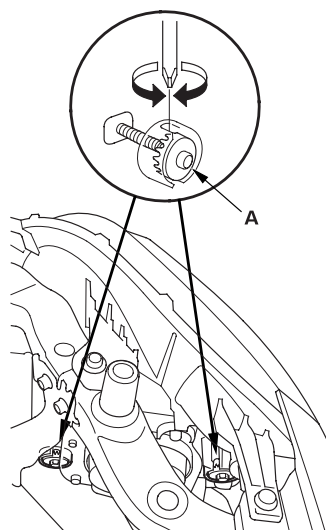


Headlights become very hot during use; do not touch them or any attaching hardware immediately after they have been turned off.

Before adjusting the headlights:

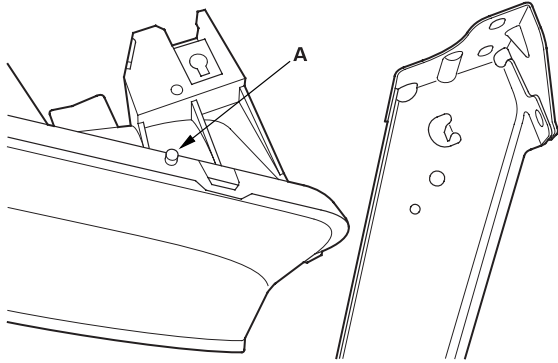
- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Make sure the tire pressures are correct.
- The driver or someone who weights the same should sit in the driver's seat.

Adjust the headlights to local requirements by turning the adjusters (A).

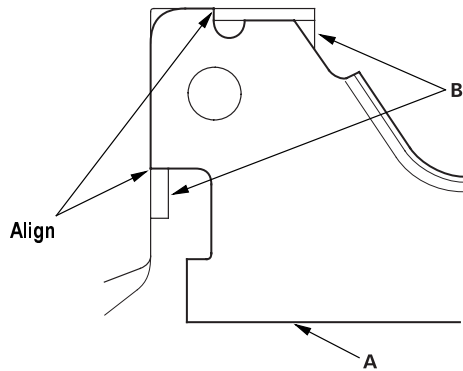


### Damaged Headlight Alignment Pin Procedure

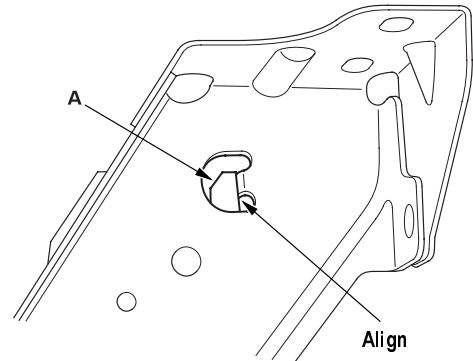
If the alignment pin (A) was broken in a collision and the headlight assembly itself was not damaged, the headlight assembly can be reused.



1. Align the corner upper beam (A) with the guides (B) on the headlight housing.



2. Align the headlight housing with the flange (A) before tightening the bolts.

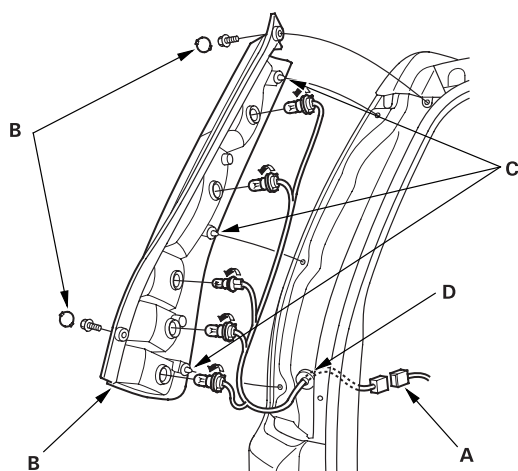


3. Reinstall the headlight assembly, and adjust the headlights to local requirements ([see page 22A-86](#)).

## Taillight Replacement

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the rear side trim panel ([see page 20-77](#)).
3. Disconnect the 6P connector (A) from the taillight.
4. Remove the mounting bolt covers from the taillight.
5. Remove the mounting bolts from the taillight.

Brake/Taillight:	21/5 W
Back-up Light:	21 W
Rear Turn Signal Light:	21 W
Taillight:	5 W or 3 CP
Rear Fog Light:	21 W



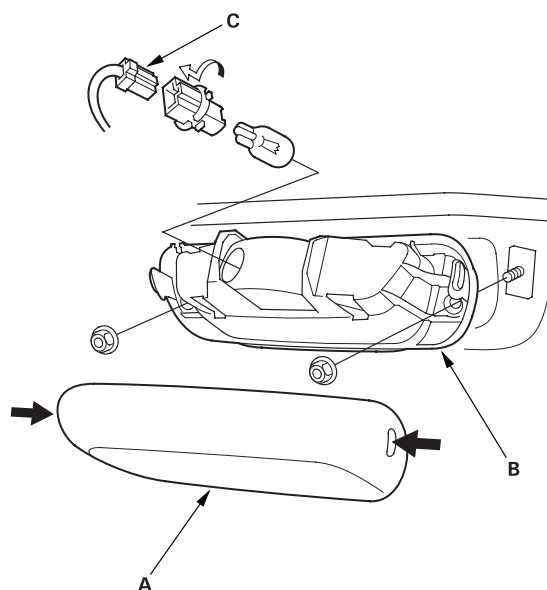
6. Pull the taillight away from the body to disengage the three clips (C).
7. Remove the taillight harness grommet (D) from the body.  
Pull the harness and the 6P connector out of the body, and disconnect the connector. Remove the taillight.
8. Turn the bulb socket 45° counterclockwise to remove the bulb socket.
9. Install the taillight in the reverse order of removal and run water over it to make sure it does not leak.

## High Mount Brake Light Replacement

1. Push in on the clips, and remove the cover (A) from the housing (B).

**High Mount Brake Light Bulb: 21 W**

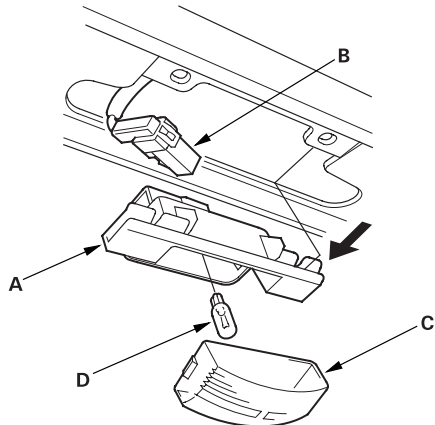
2. Disconnect the 2P connector (C).
3. Remove the mounting nuts and the housing.
4. Install the high mount brake light in the reverse order of removal.



## License Plate Light Replacement

1. Remove the license plate light (A) from the rear bumper.

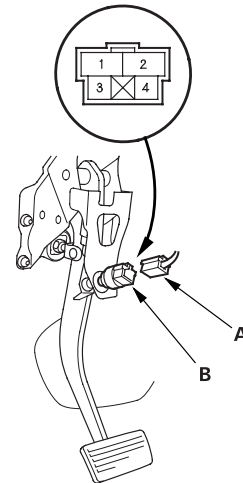
License Plate Light Bulb: 5 W



2. Disconnect the 2P connector (B) from the light.
3. Take the lens (C) off, then remove the bulb (D).
4. Install the light in the reverse order of removal.

## Brake Pedal Position Switch Test

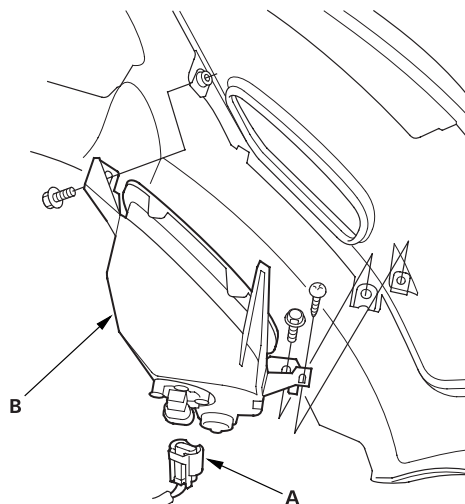
1. Remove the driver's dashboard lower cover ([see page 20-88](#)).
2. Disconnect the 4P connector (A) from the brake pedal position switch (B).



3. Check for continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals.
  - There should be continuity when the brake pedal is pressed.
  - There should be no continuity when the brake pedal is released.
4. Check for continuity between the No. 3 and No. 4 terminals (with cruise control).
  - There should be no continuity when the brake pedal is pressed.
  - There should be continuity when the brake pedal is released.
5. If necessary, adjust or replace the switch, or adjust the pedal height ([see page 19A-5](#)).

## Front Fog Lights Replacement

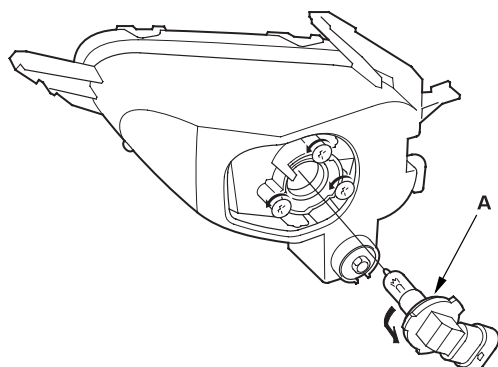
1. Remove the front bumper (see page 20-130).
2. Disconnect the 2P connector (A) from the front fog light.
3. Remove the screw and mounting bolts from the front fog light (B).



4. Turn the bulb socket (A) 45° counterclockwise to remove the bulb.

Front Fog Light:

51 W



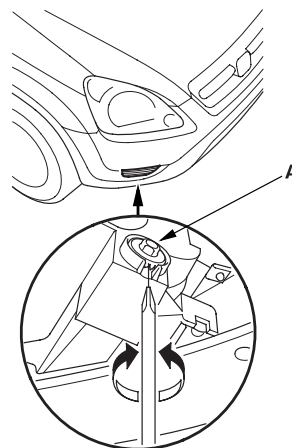
5. Install the light in the reverse order of removal.

## Front Fog Lights Adjustment

Before adjusting the fog lights:

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Make sure the tire pressures are correct.
- The driver or someone who weights the same should sit in the driver's seat.

Adjust the fog lights to local requirements by turning the adjuster (A).



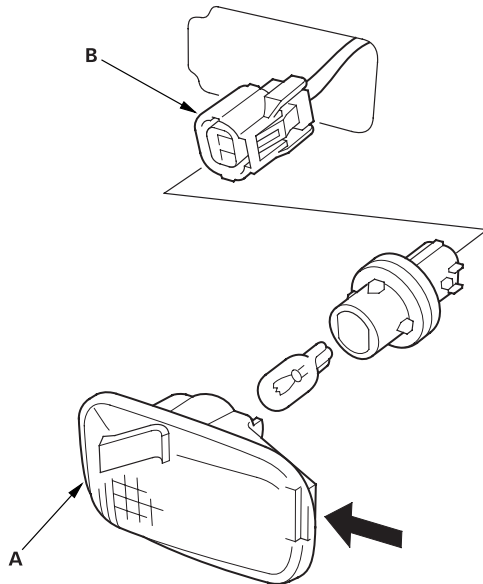


### Side Turn Signal Lights Replacement

NOTE: Be careful not to damage the fender.

1. Push the retaining spring, and remove the side turn signal light (A).

Side Turn Signal Light: 5W

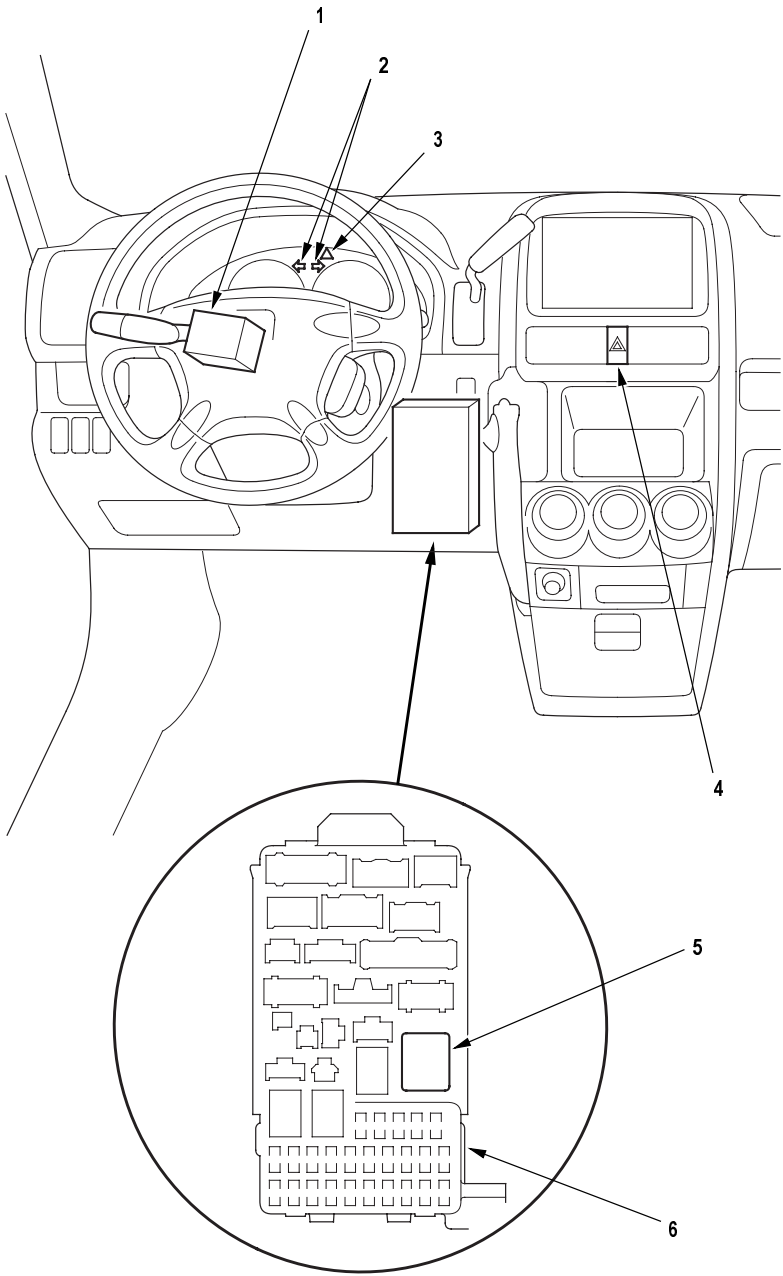


2. Disconnect the 2 P connector (B) from the light.

Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher

Component Location Index

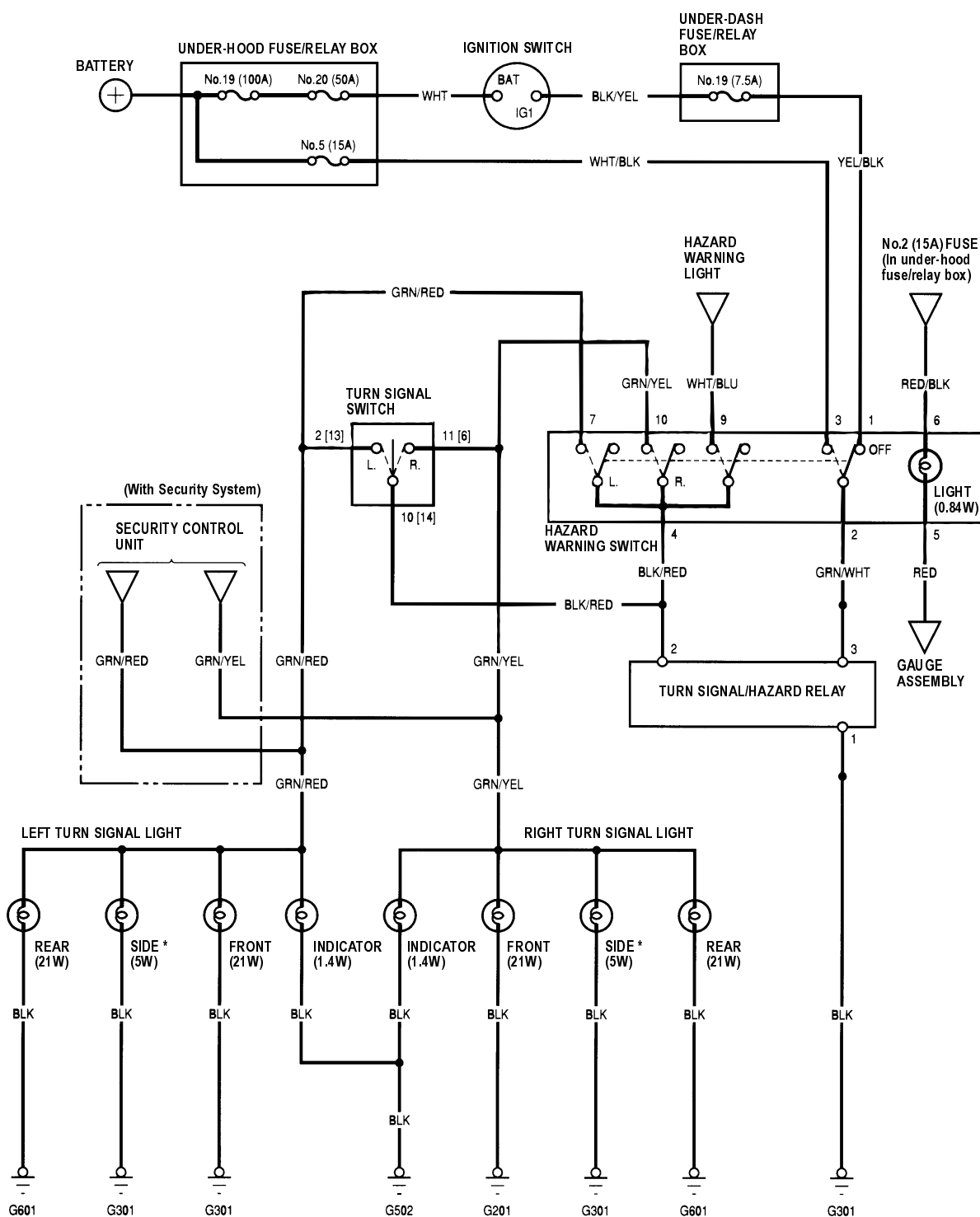
Note: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | COMBINATION LIGHT/TURN SIGNAL SWITCH                    | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-92</a>                   |
| 2 | TURN SIGNAL INDICATOR LIGHTS<br>(In the gauge assembly) | Gauge Bulb Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-73</a> |
| 3 | HAZARD WARNING LIGHT (KM and KP models)                 |   |
| 4 | HAZARD WARNING SWITCH                                   | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-105</a>                  |
| 5 | TURN SIGNAL/HAZARD RELAY                                | Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-104</a>            |
| 6 | UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX                               |   |

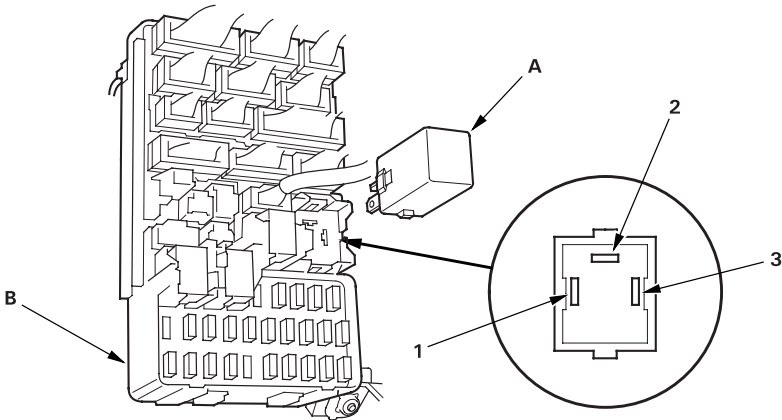
### Circuit Diagram

\* : Except FO



Turn Signal/Hazard Relay Input Test

1. Remove the turn signal/hazard relay (A) from the under-dash fuse/relay box (B).

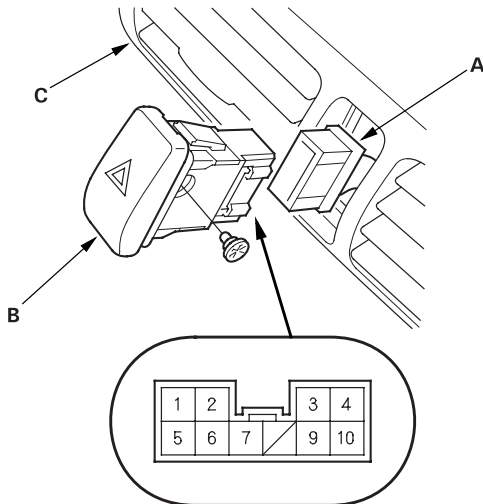


2. Inspect the relay and fuse/relay box socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
- If the terminals are bent, loose, or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals look OK, go to step 3.
3. Make these input tests at the fuse/relay box.
- If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
  - If all the input tests prove OK, the turn signal/hazard relay must be faulty; replace it.

Cavity	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
1	Under all conditions	Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Poor ground (G301)</li><li>• An open in the wire</li></ul>
3	Ignition switch ON (II) Hazard warning switch OFF	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Blown No. 19 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li><li>• Faulty hazard warning switch</li><li>• An open in the wire</li></ul>
	Hazard warning switch ON Ignition switch OFF	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Blown No. 5 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li><li>• Faulty hazard warning switch</li><li>• An open in the wire</li></ul>
2	Ignition switch ON (II) and turn signal switch in Right or Left position	Connect No. 2 terminal to No. 3 terminal: Right or left turn signal lights should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Poor ground (G201, G301, G502, G601)</li><li>• Faulty turn signal switch</li><li>• An open in the wire</li></ul>
	Hazard warning switch ON	Connect No. 2 terminal to No. 3 terminal: Hazard warning lights should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Poor ground (G201, G301, G502, G601)</li><li>• Faulty hazard warning switch</li><li>• An open in the wire</li></ul>

## Hazard Warning Switch Test

1. Remove the center panel (see page 20-89).
2. Disconnect the 10P connector (A) from the hazard warning switch (B).



3. Push out the hazard warning switch from behind the center panel (C).
4. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

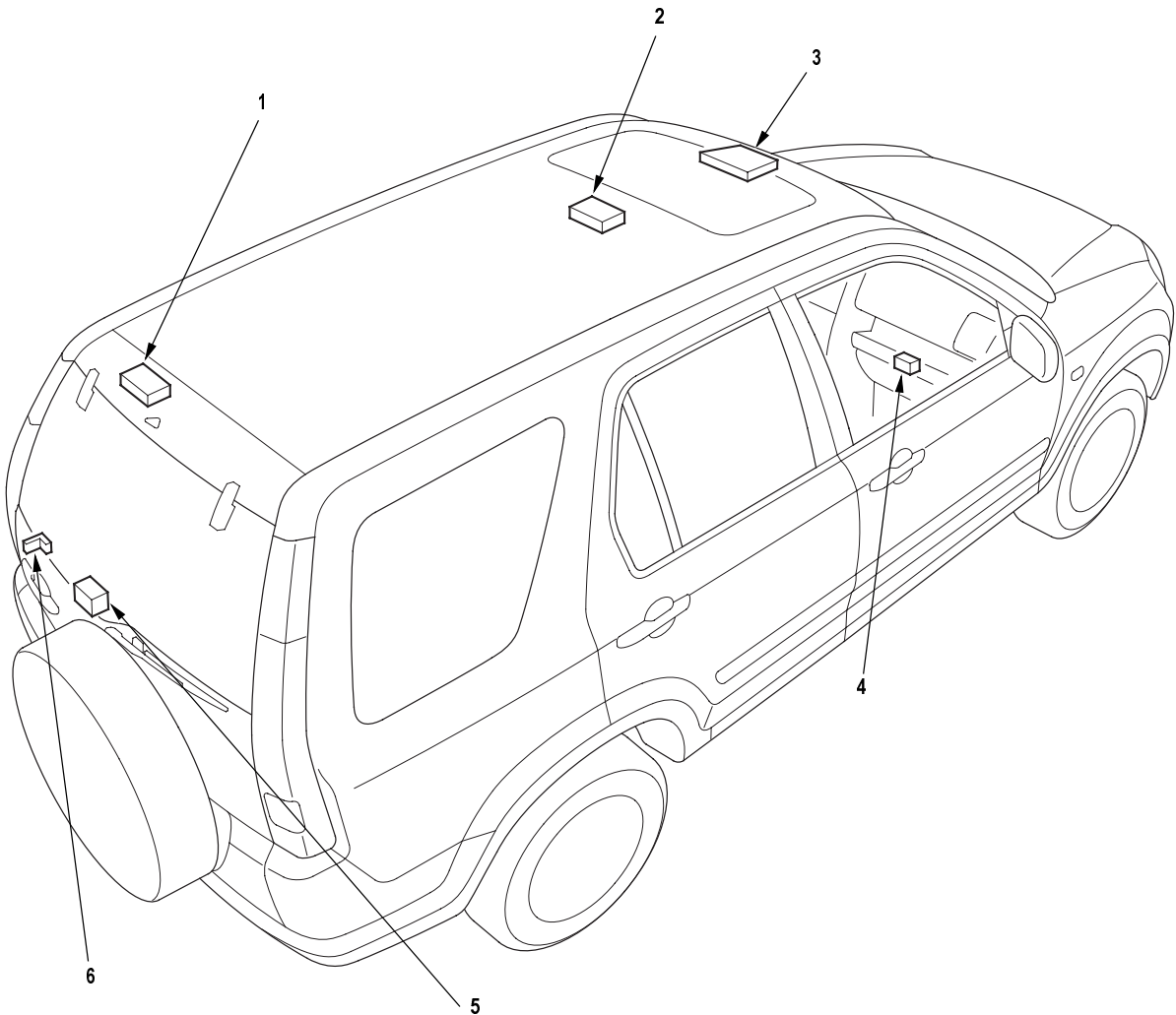
Terminal	5	6	1	2	3	4	7	9	10
Position									
OFF	○	○	○	○					
ON	○	○		○	○	○	○	○	○

5. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the illumination bulb (D) or the switch.
6. Install the switch in the reverse order of removal.

Interior Lights

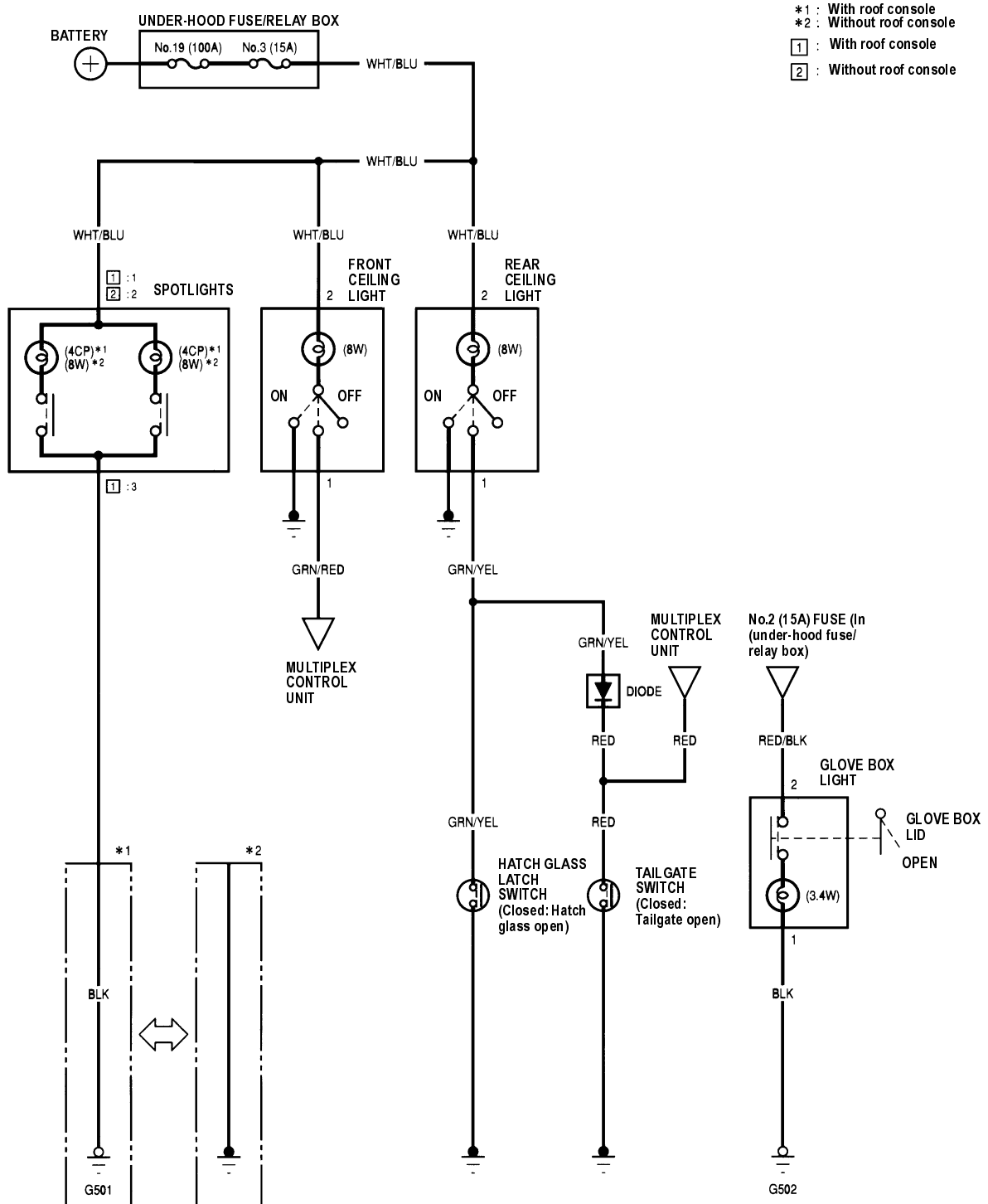
Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- |   |                          |  |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | REAR CEILING LIGHT       | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-109</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-109</a> |
| 2 | FRONT CEILING LIGHT      | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-109</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-109</a> |
| 3 | SPOTLIGHT                | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-108</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-108</a> |
| 4 | GLOVE BOX LIGHT          | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-109</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-109</a> |
| 5 | HATCH GLASS LATCH SWITCH | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-110</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-166</a>  |
| 6 | TAILGATE SWITCH          | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-110</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-110</a> |

## Circuit Diagram

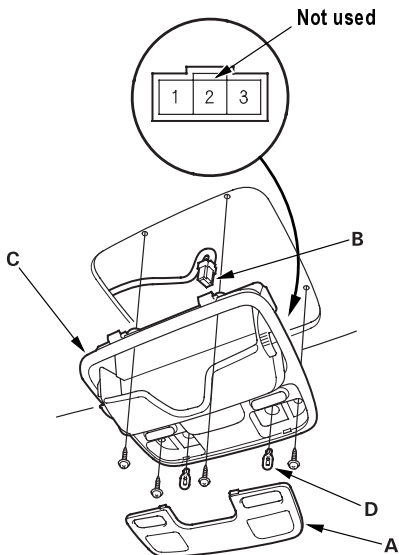


Spotlights Test/Replacement

With Roof Console:

- 1. Turn the light switch OFF.
- 2. Carefully pry off the lens (A) with a small screwdriver.

Spotlight: 4CP



- 3. Remove the four mounting screws.
- 4. Disconnect the 3P connector (B) from the housing (C).
- 5. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

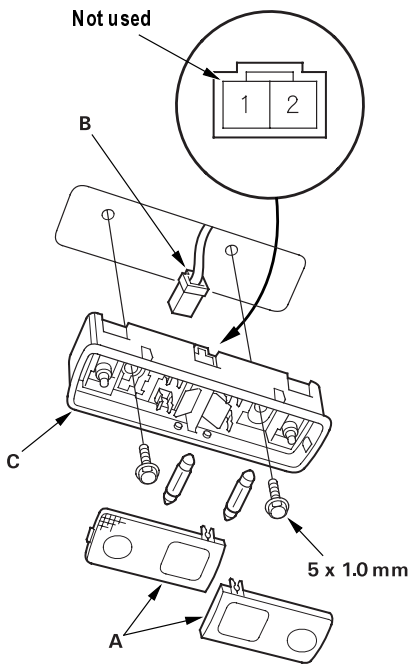
Terminal		1		3
Position				
LEFT	ON	○	⊕	○
	OFF			
RIGHT	ON	○	⊕	○
	OFF			

- 6. If the continuity is not as specified, check the bulb (D). If the bulb is OK, replace the light.

Without Roof Console:

- 1. Turn the light switch OFF.
- 2. Carefully pry off the lenses (A) with a small screwdriver.

Spotlight: 8 W x 2



- 3. Remove the two mounting bolts.
- 4. Disconnect the 2P connector (B) from the housing (C).
- 5. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

Terminal		2		Body ground
Position				
LEFT	ON	○	⊕	○
	OFF			
RIGHT	ON	○	⊕	○
	OFF			

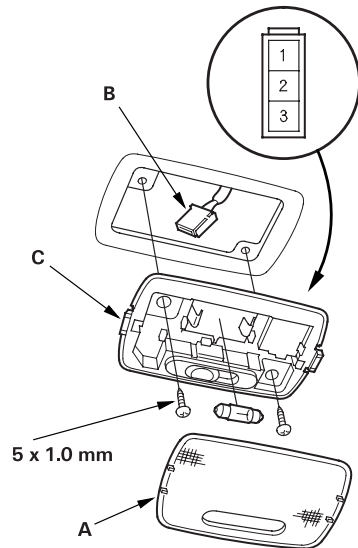
- 6. If the continuity is not as specified, check the bulb (D). If the bulb is OK, replace the light.
- 7. When installing the spotlights housing, if the threads in the ET screw are worn out, use an oversized ET screw made specifically for this application.



Ceiling Light Test/Replacement

1. Turn the light switch OFF.
2. Carefully pry off the lens (A) with a small screwdriver.

Ceiling Light: 8 W



3. Remove the two mounting screws.
4. Disconnect the 3P connector (B) from the housing (C).
5. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

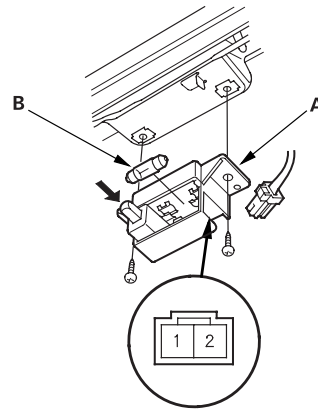
Terminal Position	1		2		Body ground
OFF					
MIDDLE	○	—	○		
ON			○	—	○

6. When installing the ceiling light housing, if the threads in the ET screw are worn out, use an oversized ET screw made specifically for this application.

Glove Box Light Test/Replacement

1. Open the glove box.
2. Disconnect the 2P connector from the glove box light (A).

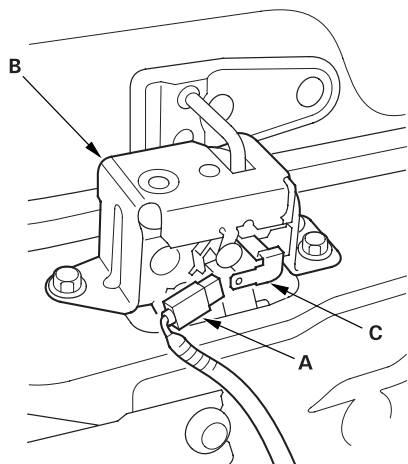
Glove Box Light: 3.4 W



3. Check for continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals.
  - There should be continuity with the switch released.
  - There should be no continuity with the switch pushed.
4. If the continuity is not as specified, check the bulb (B). If the bulb is OK, replace the light.

## Hatch Glass Latch Switch Test

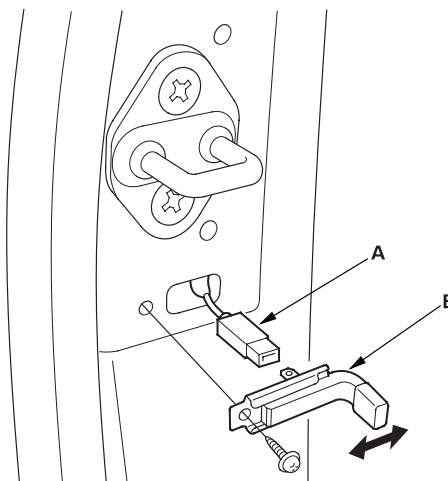
1. Remove the tailgate lower trim panel ([see page 20-80](#)).
2. Push the hatch glass opener switch, and open the hatch glass.
3. Disconnect the connector (A) from the hatch glass opener (B).



4. Check for continuity between the opener switch positive terminal (C) and body ground.
  - There should be continuity with the hatch glass opened.
  - There should be no continuity with the hatch glass closed.
5. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the hatch glass latch switch.

## Tailgate Switch Test/Replacement

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the mounting screw from the tailgate switch.
3. Disconnect the connector (A) from the tailgate switch (B).

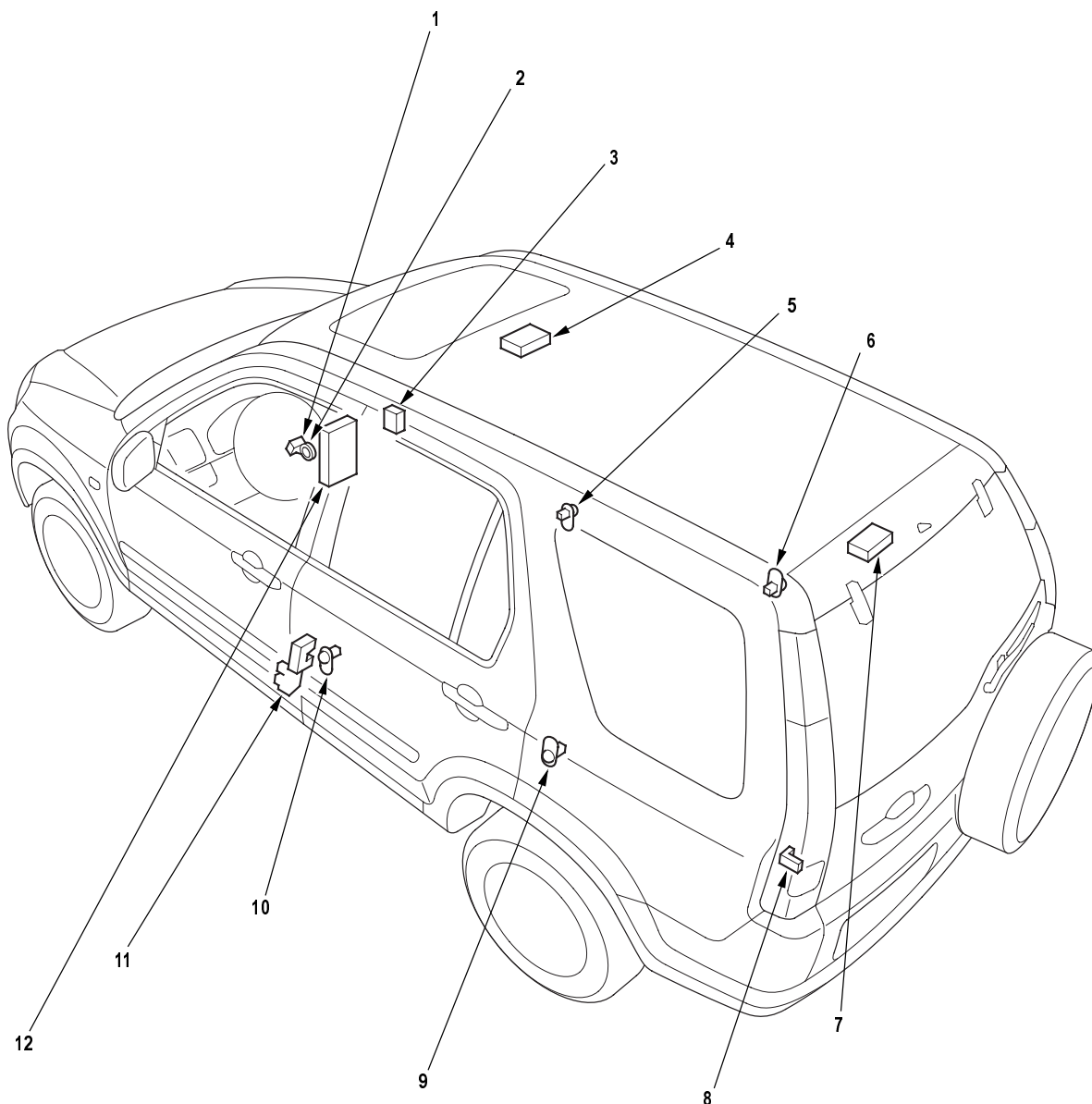


4. Check for continuity between the tailgate switch positive terminal (C) and body ground.
  - There should be continuity with the switch released (tailgate open position).
  - There should be no continuity with the switch pushed (tailgate open position).
5. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the tailgate switch.

## Entry Light Control System

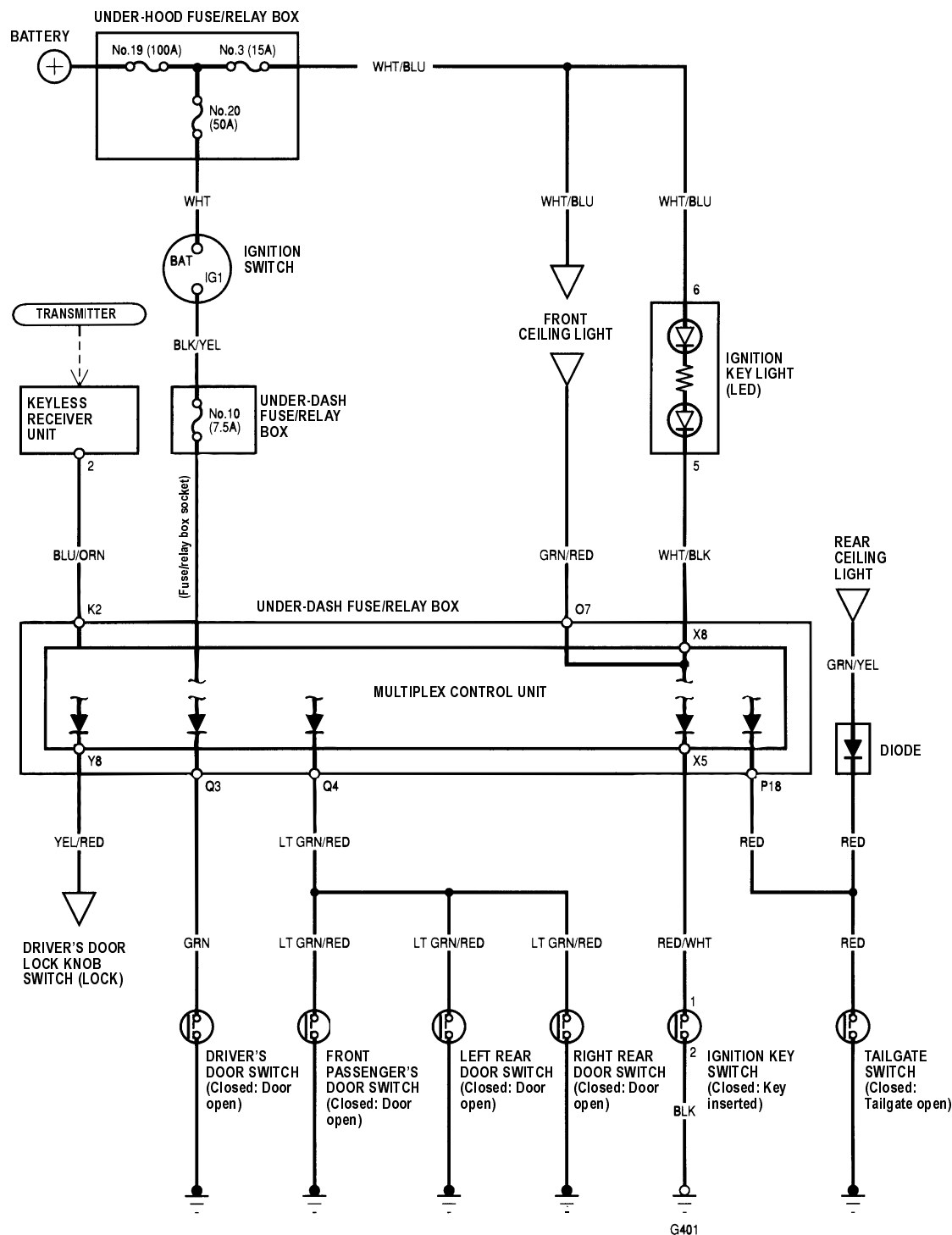
### Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- |    |                                |  |
|----|--------------------------------|--|
| 1  | IGNITION KEY SWITCH            | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-113</a>   |
| 2  | IGNITION KEY LIGHT             | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-113</a>   |
| 3  | KEYLESS RECEIVER UNIT          | Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-165</a>                                       |
| 4  | FRONT CEILING LIGHT            | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-109</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-109</a> |
| 5  | FRONT PASSENGER'S DOOR SWITCH  |  |
| 6  | RIGHT REAR DOOR SWITCH         |  |
| 7  | REAR CEILING LIGHT             | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-109</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-109</a> |
| 8  | TAILGATE SWITCH                | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-110</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-110</a> |
| 9  | LEFT REAR DOOR SWITCH          |  |
| 10 | DRIVER'S DOOR SWITCH           |  |
| 11 | DRIVER'S DOOR LOCK KNOB SWITCH | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-202</a>   |
| 12 | MULTIPLEX CONTROL UNIT         | Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-114</a>                                       |

Circuit Diagram

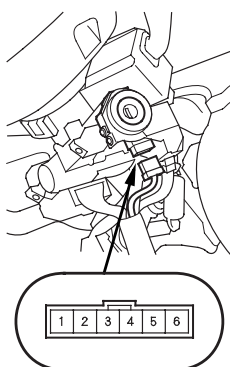


## Ignition Key Switch Test

NOTE: For more key-in beeper information, refer to the circuit diagram (see page 22A-112) and input test (see page 22A-114).

When the ignition key is in the ignition switch, the key-in beeper circuit of multiplex control unit senses ground through the closed ignition key switch. When you open the driver's door, the beeper circuit senses ground through the closed door switch. When both switches are closed (driver's door and ignition), the key-in beeper in the gauge assembly is activated.

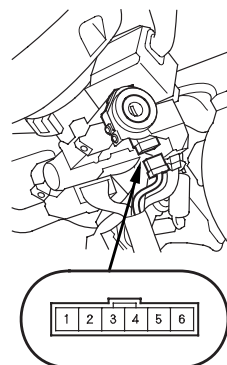
1. Remove the steering column upper and lower covers (see page 17-24).
2. Disconnect the 6P connector.



3. Check for continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals.
  - There should be continuity with the key in the ignition switch.
  - There should be no continuity with the key removed.
4. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the steering lock assembly.

## Ignition Key Light Test

1. Remove the steering column upper and lower covers (see page 17-24).
2. Disconnect the 6P connector.

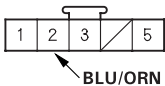


3. The LED should come on when power is connected to the No. 6 terminal and ground is connected to No. 5 terminal.

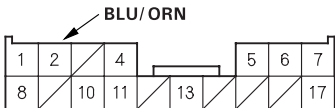
## Control Unit Input Test

1. Before testing, troubleshoot the multiplex control system ([see page 22A-235](#)).
2. Remove the dashboard lower cover.
3. Disconnect the under-dash fuse/relay box connectors.  
NOTE: All connectors are wire side of female terminals.

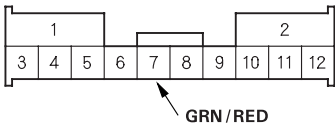
KEYLESS RECEIVER UNIT 5P CONNECTOR



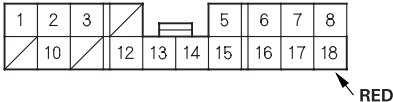
UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX CONNECTOR K (17P)



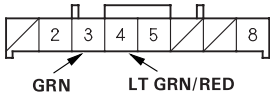
UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX CONNECTOR O (12P)



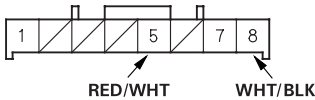
UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX CONNECTOR P (18P)



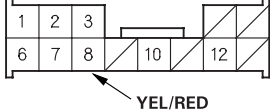
UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX CONNECTOR Q (8P)



UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX CONNECTOR X (8P)



UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX CONNECTOR Y (13P)



4. Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals look OK, go to step 5.

5. With the connectors still disconnected, make these input tests at the connector.
  - If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
  - If all the input tests prove OK, go to step 5.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
K2	BLU/ORN	Under all conditions	Check for continuity between the K2 terminal and the keyless receiver unit 5P connector No. 2 terminal: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
X8	WHT/BLK	Under all conditions	Attach to ground: Ignition key light should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 3 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty ignition key light</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>

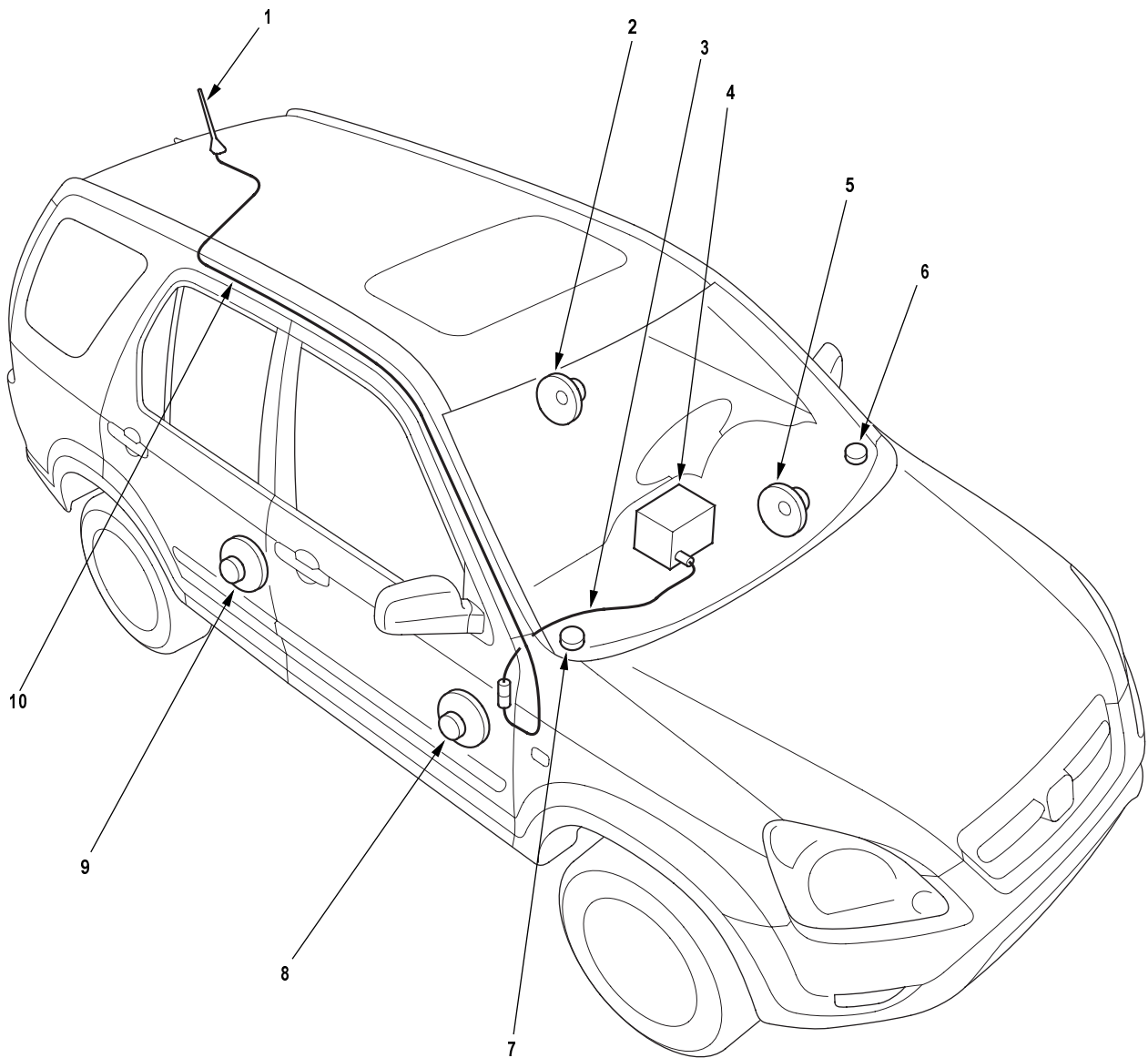
6. Reconnect the connectors to the under-dash fuse/relay box, and make sure these input tests at the appropriate connectors on the under-dash fuse/relay box.
  - If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
  - If all the input tests prove OK, the multiplex control unit must be faulty, replace the under-dash fuse/relay box assembly.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
P18	RED	Tailgate lid open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty tailgate switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Tailgate closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty tailgate switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
Q3	GRN	Driver's door open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's door switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Driver's door closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's door switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
Q4	LT GRN/RED	Front passenger's door open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty front passenger's door switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Front passenger's door closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty front passenger's door switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
		Left (right) rear door open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty left (right) rear door switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Left (right) rear door closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty left (right) rear door switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
X5	RED/WHT	Ignition key inserted into the ignition switch	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G401)</li> <li>• Faulty ignition key switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Ignition key removed from the ignition switch	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty ignition key switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
Y8	YEL/RED	Driver's door lock knob switch locked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>• Faulty driver's door lock knob switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Driver's door lock knob switch unlocked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's door lock knob switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
O7	GRN/RED	Ceiling light switch in middle position, all door closed	Attach to ground: Ceiling light(s) should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 3 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Blown bulb</li> <li>• Faulty ceiling light</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>

Stereo Sound System

Component Location Index

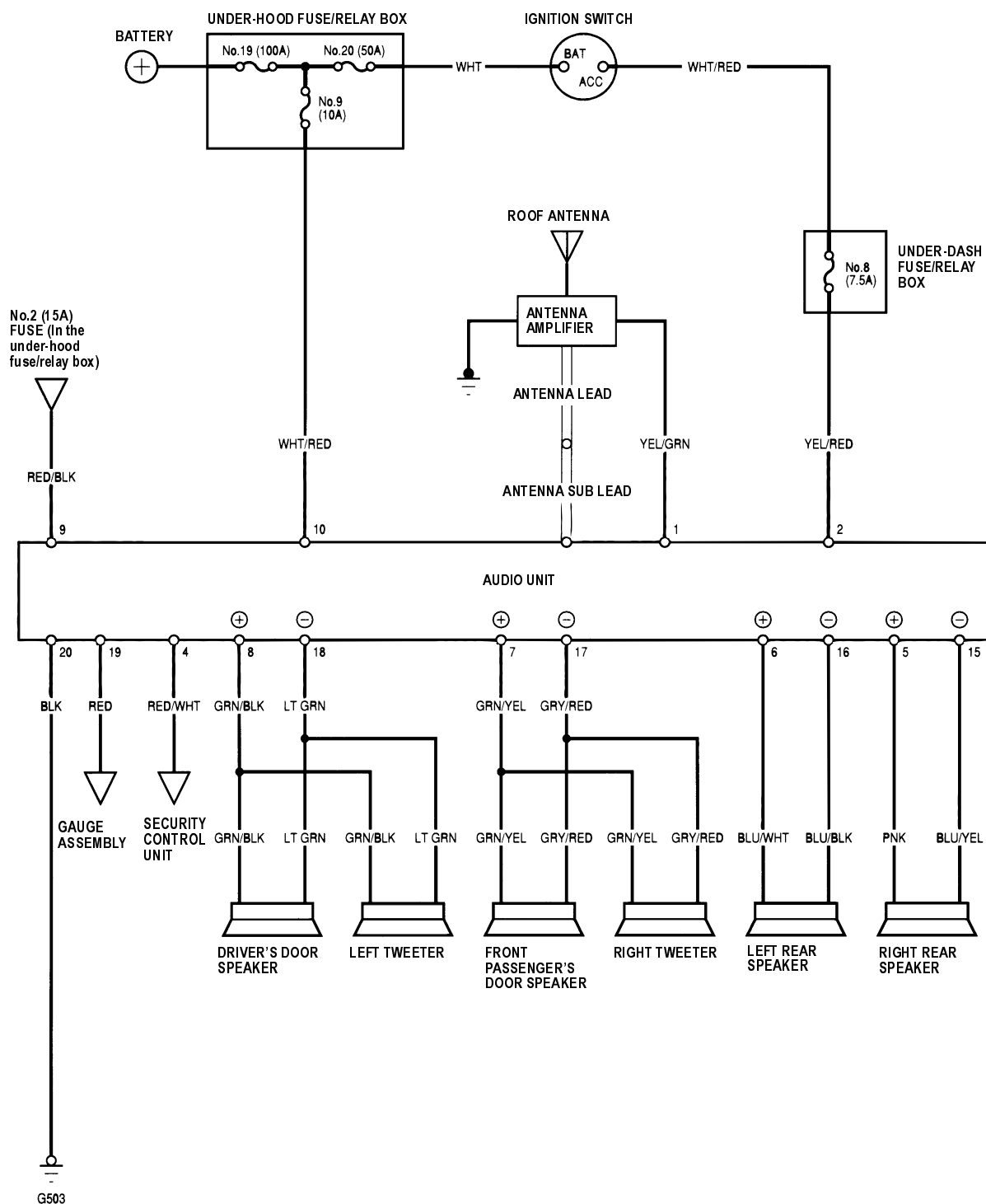
NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



1	ROOF ANTENNA	Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-121</a>
2	LEFT REAR SPEAKER	Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-120</a>
3	ANTENNA SUB-LEAD	
4	AUDIO UNIT	Removal, <a href="#">page 22A-118</a> ; Connector Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-119</a>
5	DRIVER'S DOOR SPEAKER	Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-120</a>
6	LEFT TWEETER	Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-120</a>
7	RIGHT TWEETER	Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-120</a>
8	FRONT PASSENGER'S DOOR SPEAKER	Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-120</a>
9	RIGHT REAR SPEAKER	Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-120</a>
10	ANTENNA LEAD	



## Circuit Diagram

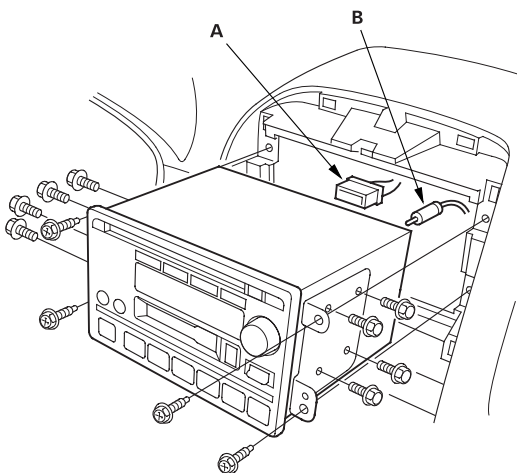


### Audio Unit Removal/Installation

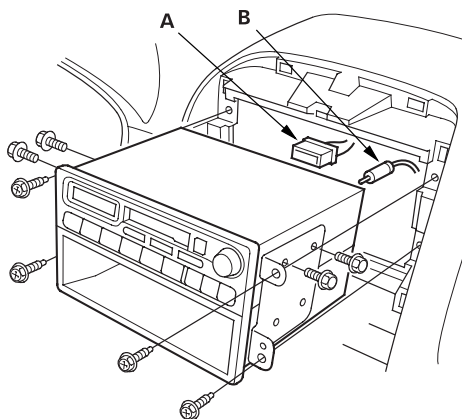
**NOTE:**

- Put on gloves to protect your hands.
  - Take care not to scratch the dashboard and related parts.
1. Make sure you have the anti-theft code for the radio, then write down the frequencies for the radio's preset buttons.
  2. Remove the dashboard center panel ([see page 20-89](#)).
  3. Remove the fore mounting bolts, then remove the audio unit.

**Type 1:**



**Type 2:**

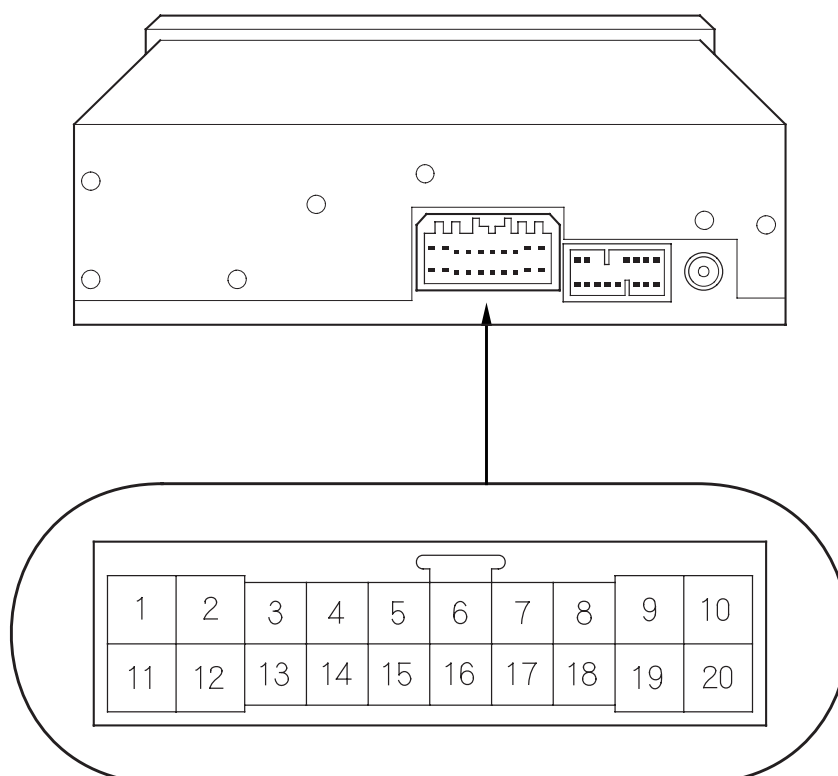


4. Disconnect the connector (A) and the antenna lead (B).
5. Install the audio unit in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Make sure the audio unit connector is plugged in properly, and the antenna lead is connected properly.
  - Enter the anti-theft code for the radio, then enter the customer's radio station presets.

## Audio Unit Connector Replacement

Cavity	Wire	Connects to
1	YEL/GRN	Roof antenna
2	YEL/RED	ACC (Main stereo power supply)
3	—	Not used
4	RED/WHT	Security input
5	PNK	Right rear speaker (+)
6	BLU/WHT	Left rear speaker (+)
7	GRN/YEL	Front passenger's door speaker (+), Right tweeter (+)
8	GRN/BLK	Driver's door speaker (+), Left tweeter (+)
9	RED/BLK	Lights-on signal
10	WHT/RED	Constant power
11	—	Not used
12	—	Not used
13	—	Not used
14	—	Not used
15	BLU/YEL	Right rear speaker (-)
16	BLU/BLK	Left rear speaker (-)
17	GRY/RED	Front passenger's door speaker (-), Right tweeter (-)
18	LT GRN	Driver's door speaker (-), Left tweeter
19	RED	Gauge assembly
20	BLK	Ground (G503)

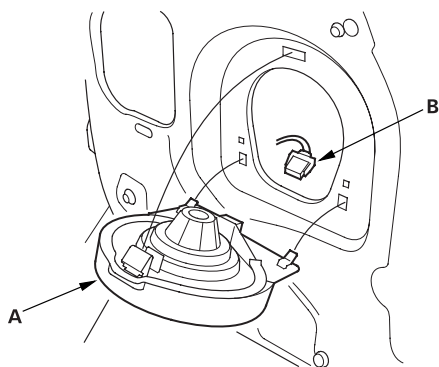
AUDIO UNIT 20P CONNECTOR



## Speaker Replacement

### Door Speaker:

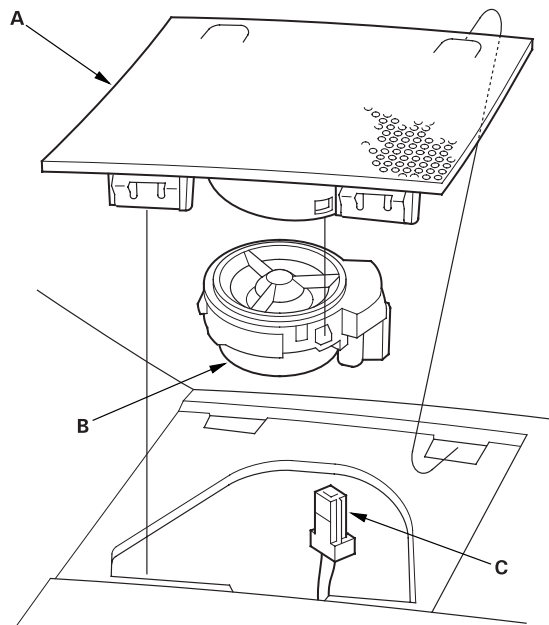
1. Remove the door panel ([see page 20-9](#)).
2. Push down on the clip, then pull the top of the speaker (A) straight out just enough to release the upper clip. If you pull the speaker out too far, you will damage the lower clips (C). Then lift the speaker straight up to release the lower clips.



3. Disconnect the 2P connector (B), and remove the speaker.
4. Install the speaker in the reverse order of removal.

### Tweeter:

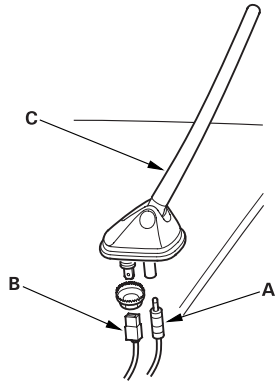
1. Remove the tweeter speaker grille (A) and tweeter (B) as an assembly.
2. Disconnect the 2P connector (C) from the tweeter.
3. Remove the tweeter speaker grille from the tweeter.



4. Install the tweeter in the reverse order of removal.

### Roof Antenna Replacement

1. Remove the rear part of headliner ([see page 20-81](#)).
2. Disconnect the antenna lead connector (A) and 1P connector (B) from the roof antenna (C).

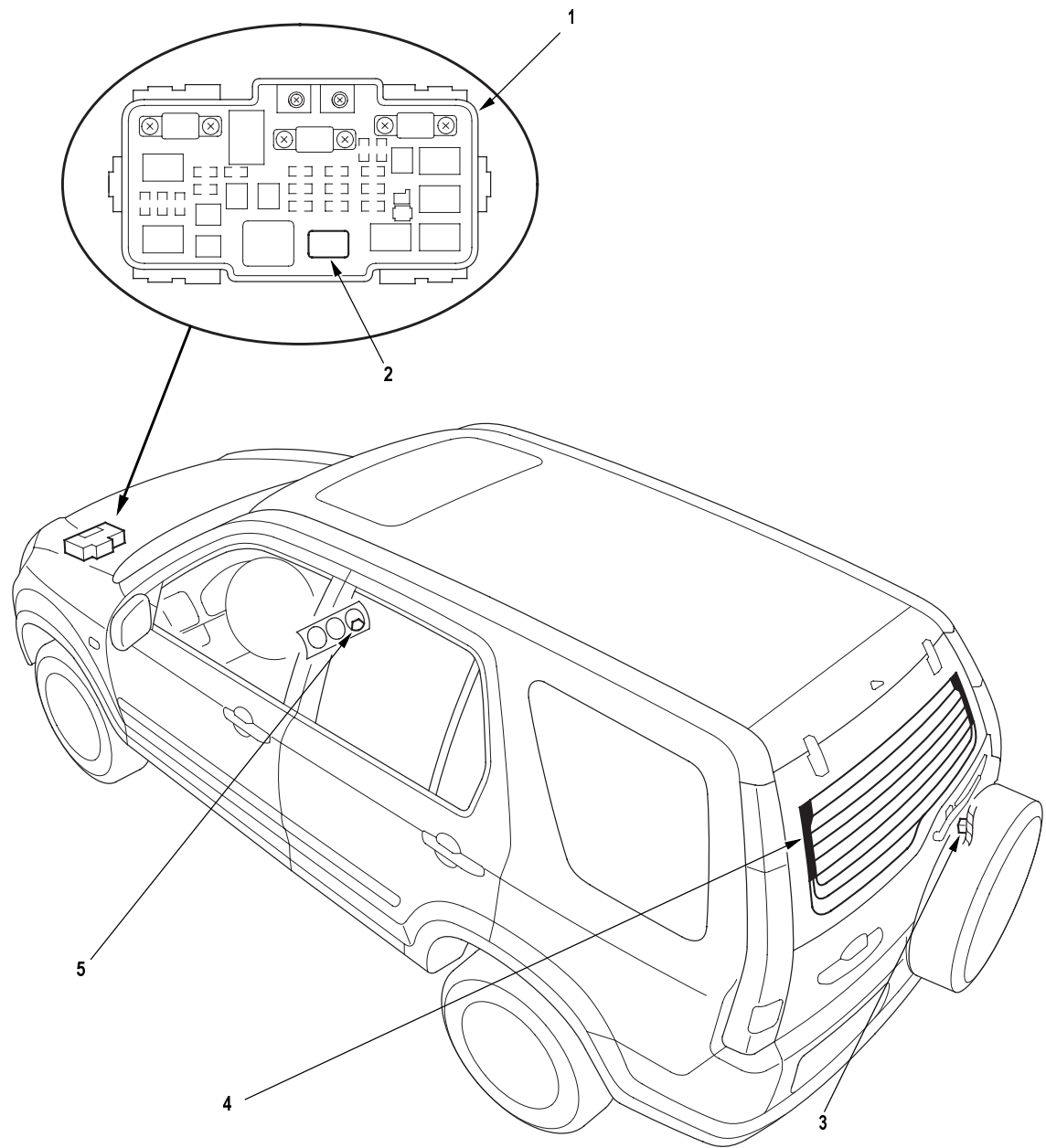


3. Remove the mounting nut and the antenna.

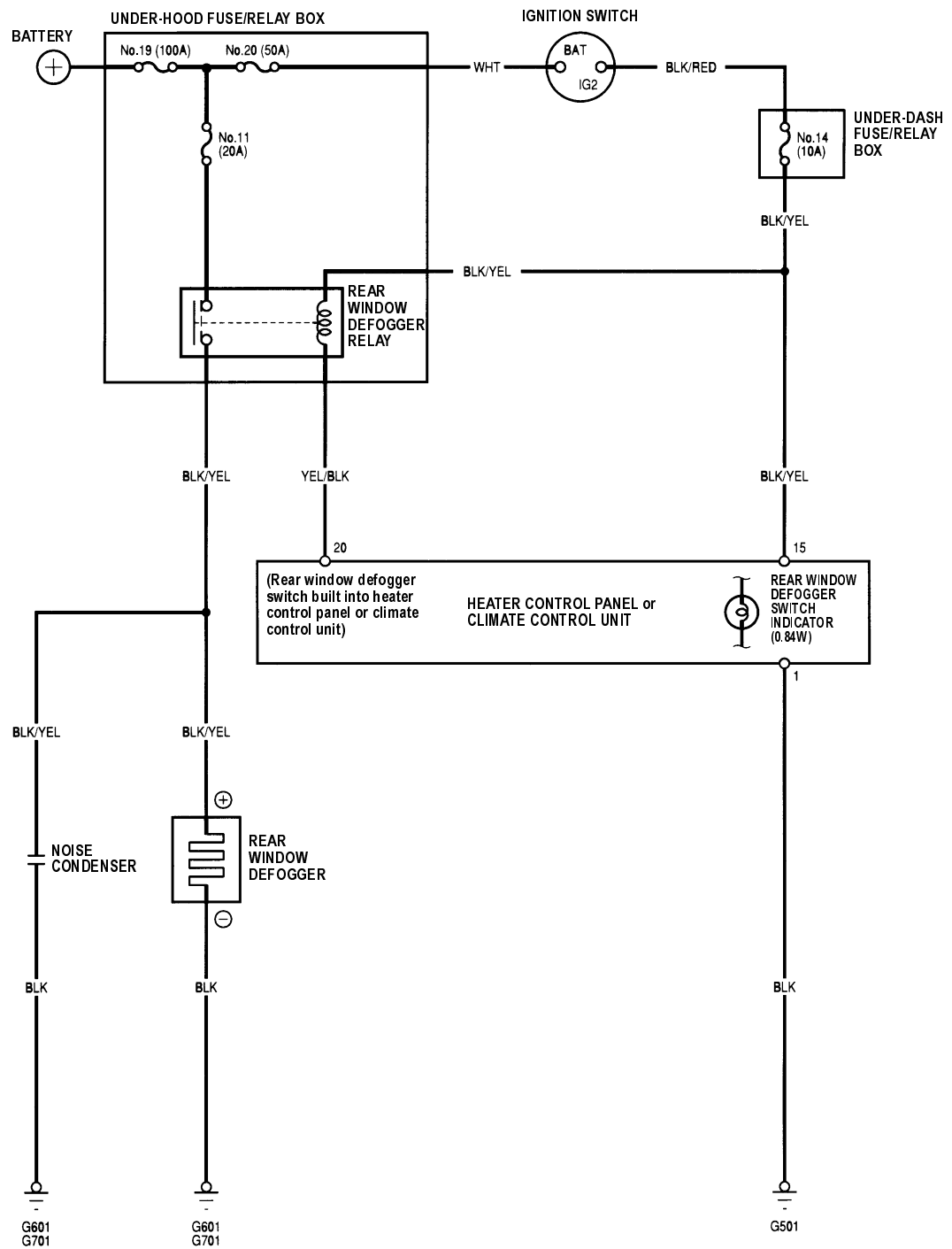
Rear Window Defogger

Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- 1 UNDER-HOOD FUSE/RELAY BOX
- 2 REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER RELAY    Test, [page 22A-60](#)
- 3 NOISE CONDENSER                    Capacity Test, [page 22A-125](#)
- 4 REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER            Function Test, [page 22A-124](#); Defogger Wire Repair, [page 22A-124](#)
- 5 REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER SWITCH  
built into the heater control panel or climate control unit



## Function Test

### NOTE:

- Be careful not to scratch or damage the defogger wires with the tester probe.
- Before testing, check the No. 11 (20A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box and No. 14 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

1. Check for voltage between the positive terminal (A) on the right side of the glass and body ground with the ignition switch and defogger switch ON.

There should be battery voltage.

- If there is no voltage, check for:
  - faulty defogger relay.
  - an open in the BLK/RED, BLK/YEL, or YEL/BLK wire.
  - faulty the heater control panel or climate control unit.
- If there is battery voltage, go to step 2.



2. Check for voltage between the positive terminal (A) and the negative terminal (B).

If there is no voltage, check for:

- an open in the BLK wire.
- Poor ground (G601 or G701).

3. Touch the voltmeter positive probe to the halfway point of each defogger wire, and the negative probe to the negative terminal.

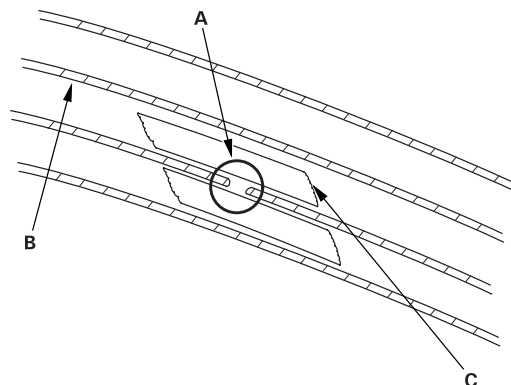
There should be about 6 V with the ignition switch and the defogger switch ON.

- If the voltage is as specified, the defogger wire is OK.
- If the voltage is not as specified, repair the defogger wire.
  - If there is battery voltage, there is a break in the negative half of the grid.
  - If it there is 0 V, there is a break in the positive half of the grid.

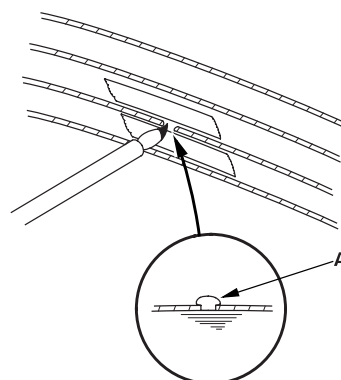
## Defogger Wire Repair

NOTE: To make an effective repair, the broken section must be no longer than 1 inch.

1. Lightly rub the area around the broken section (A) with fine steel wool, then clean it with alcohol.



2. Carefully mask above and below the broken portion of the defogger wire (B) with transparent tape (C).
3. Mix the silver conductive paint thoroughly. Using a small brush, apply a heavy coat of the paint (commercially available defogger grid repair material) extending about 1/8" on both sides of the break. Allow 30 minutes to dry. Mix the paint before use.



4. Check for continuity in the repaired wire.
5. Apply a second coat of paint in the same way. Let it dry 3 hours before removing the tape.

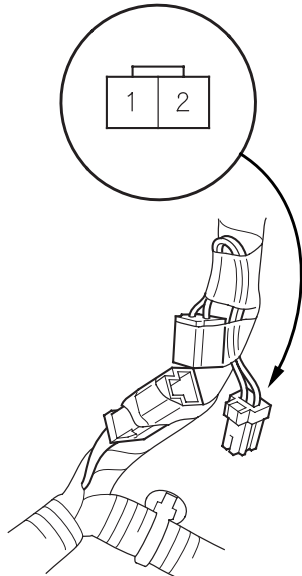


### Noise Condenser Capacity Test

1. Remove the right rear side trim panel ([see page 20-77](#)).
2. Disconnect the 2P connector (A) from the noise condenser.

**Noise Condenser capacity:  $0.47 \pm 0.09$  microfarads**

Wire side of female terminals

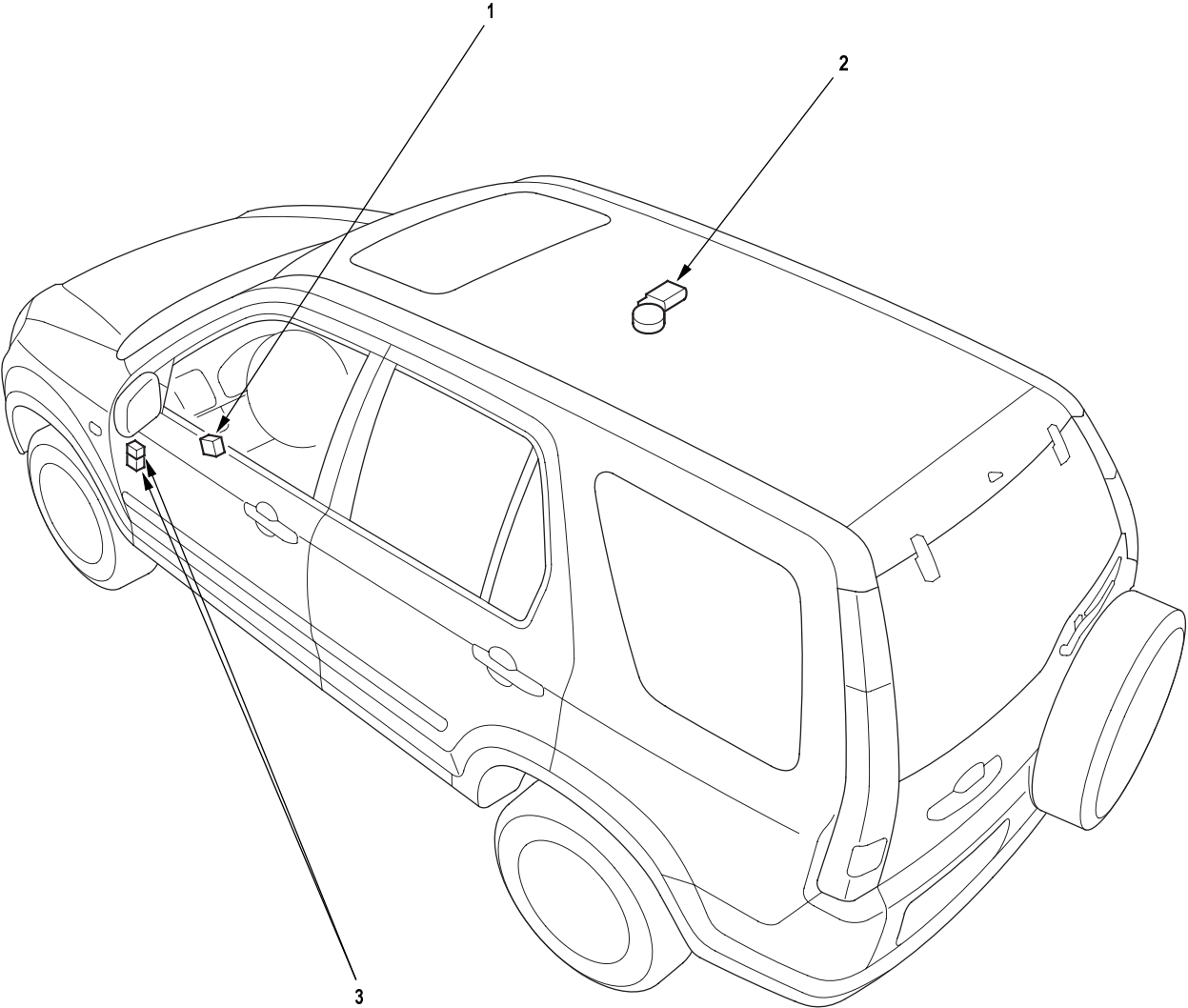


3. Use a commercially available condenser tester. Connect the condenser tester probes, and measure the condenser capacity.
4. If not within the specifications, replace the noise condenser.

Sunroof

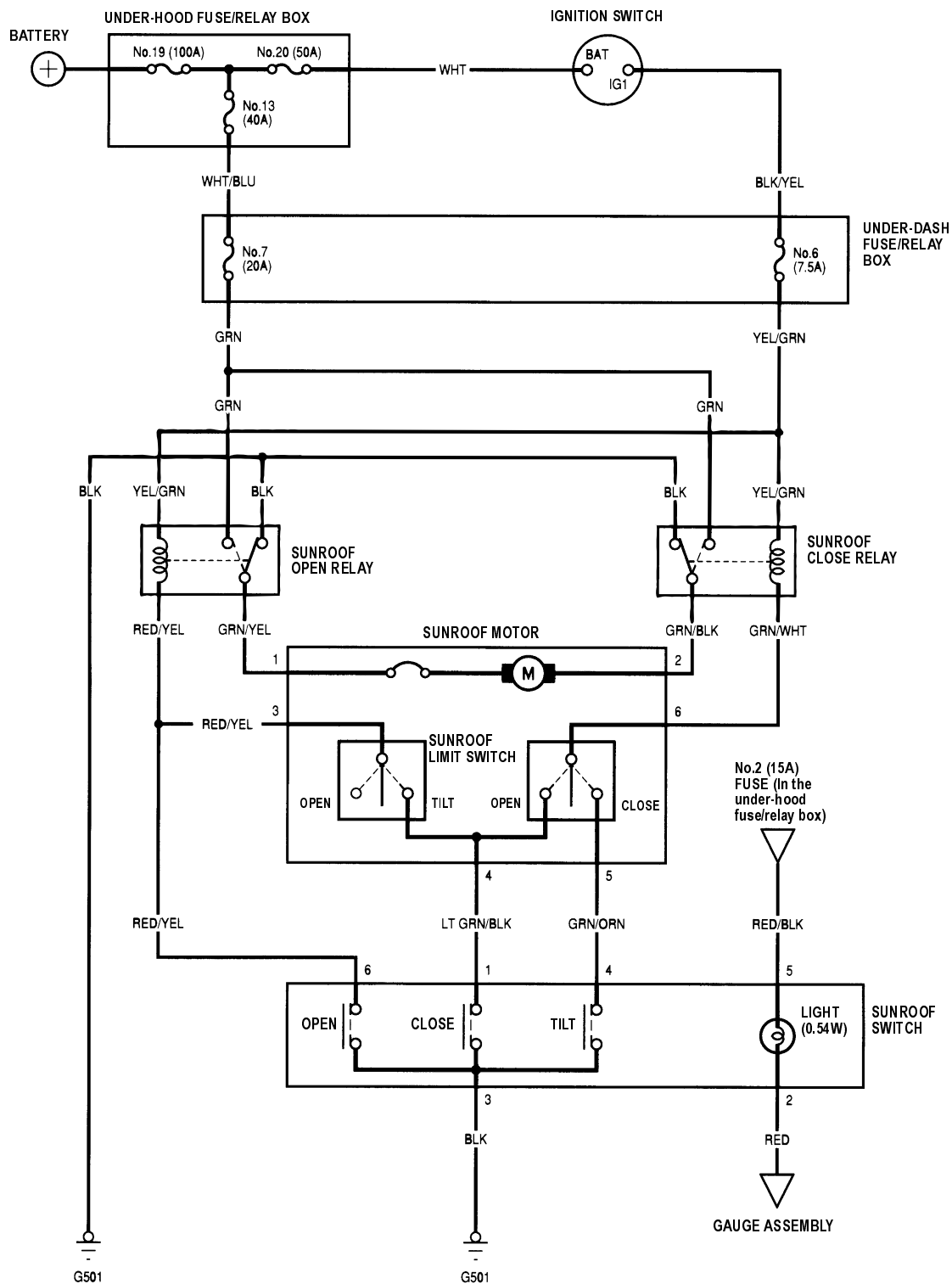
Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



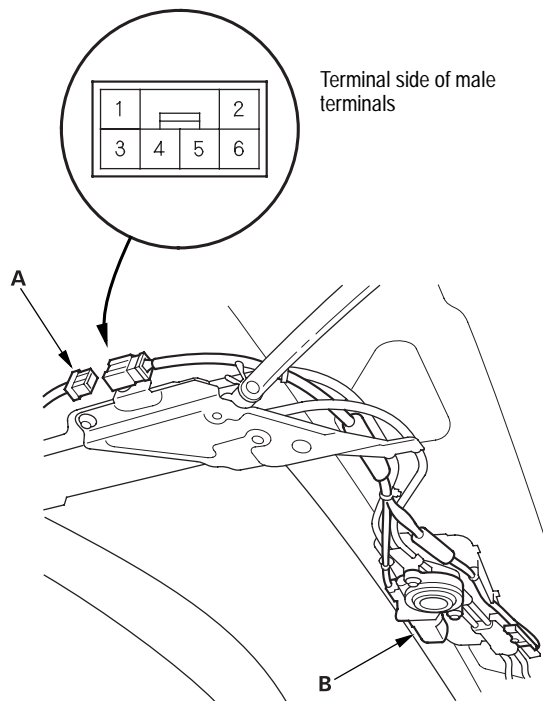
- 1 SUNROOF SWITCH      Test, [page 22A-129](#)
- 2 SUNROOF MOTOR      Test, [page 22A-128](#)  
Replacement, [page 20-68](#)
- 3 SUNROOF OPEN RELAY      Test, [page 22A-60](#)  
[Wire colors: GRN/YEL, GRN, RED/YEL, BLK and YEL/GRN]  
SUNROOF CLOSE RELAY      Test, [page 22A-60](#)  
[Wire colors: GRN/BLK, GRN, GRN/WHT, BLK and YEL/GRN]

Circuit Diagram



Motor Test

- 1. Remove the headliner (see page 20-81).
- 2. Disconnect the 6P connector (A) from the sunroof motor (B).



Motor test:

- 3. Check the motor by connecting power and ground according to the table.

Terminal	1	2
Position		
OPEN	⊕	⊖
CLOSE	⊖	⊕

- 4. If the motor does not run or fails to run smoothly, replace it.
- NOTE: See the closing force check (see page 20-74) for the motor clutch test.

Limit switch test:

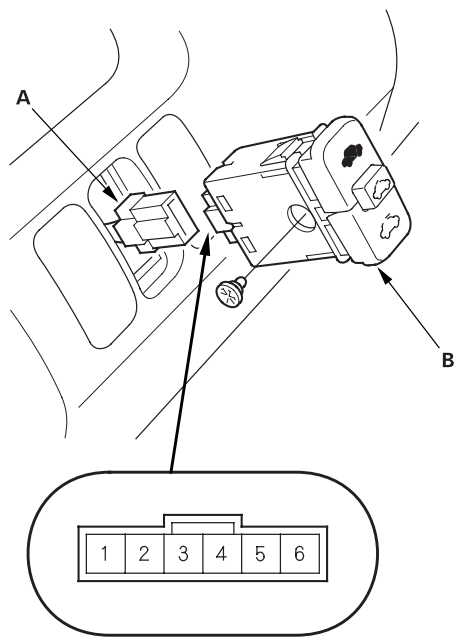
- 5. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.
- NOTE: Turn the motor by hand with the wrench.

Terminal	3	4	5	6
Position				
TILT	○	○	○	○
OPEN		○		○
CLOSE	○	○	○	○

- 6. If the continuity is not as specified, adjust the limit switch (see page 20-73), and recheck.
- 7. If the continuity is still not as specified, replace the moonroof motor.

Switch Test/Replacement

- 1. Remove the dashboard lower cover (see page 20-88).
- 2. Disconnect the 6P connector (A) from the sunroof switch (B), and remove the sunroof switch.



- 3. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

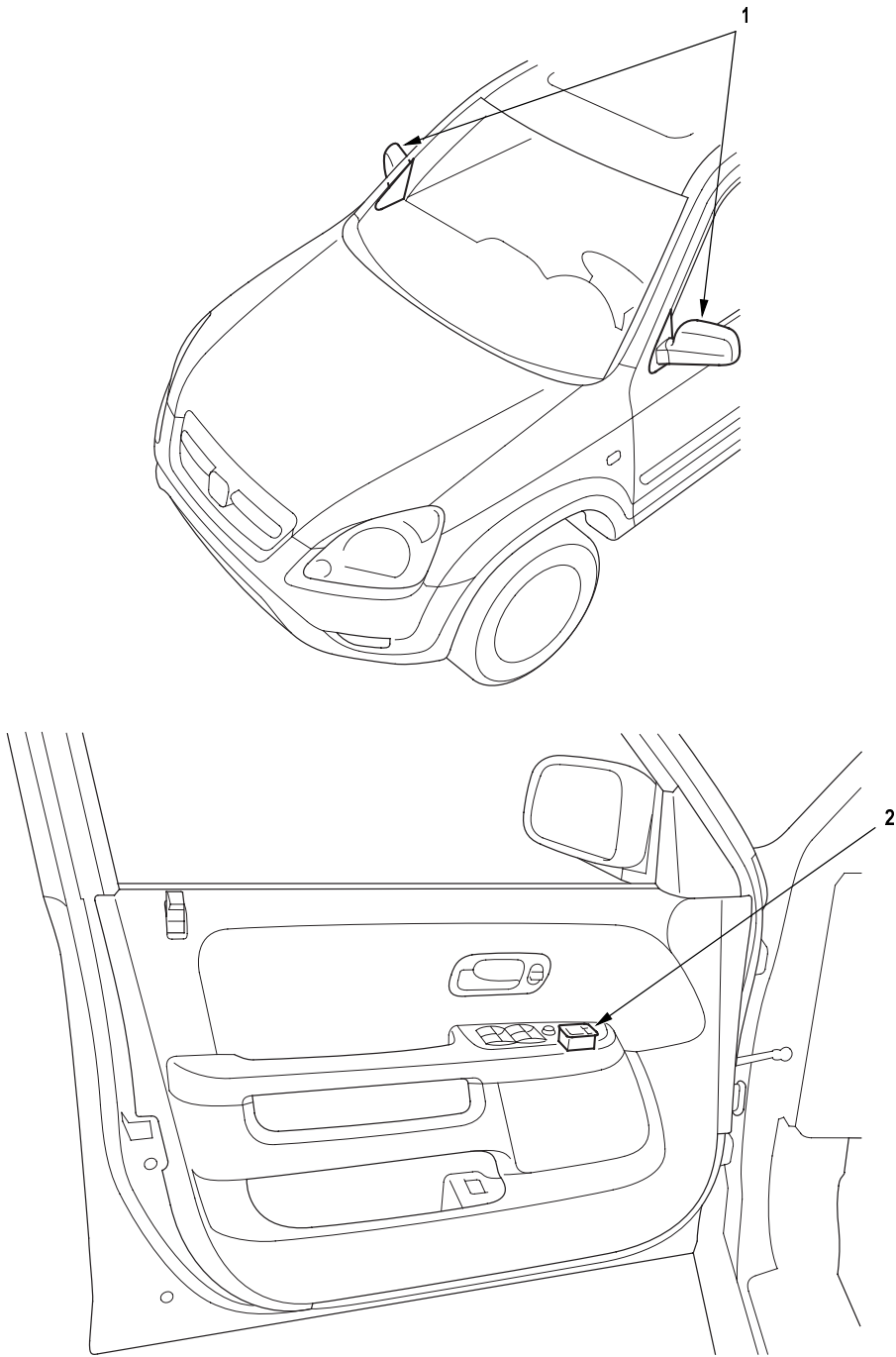
Terminal	2	5	1	3	4	6
Position						
CLOSE			○	○		
TILT	○	○		○	○	
OPEN				○		○

- 4. If the continuity is not specified, replace the bulb (C) or the switch.

Power Mirrors

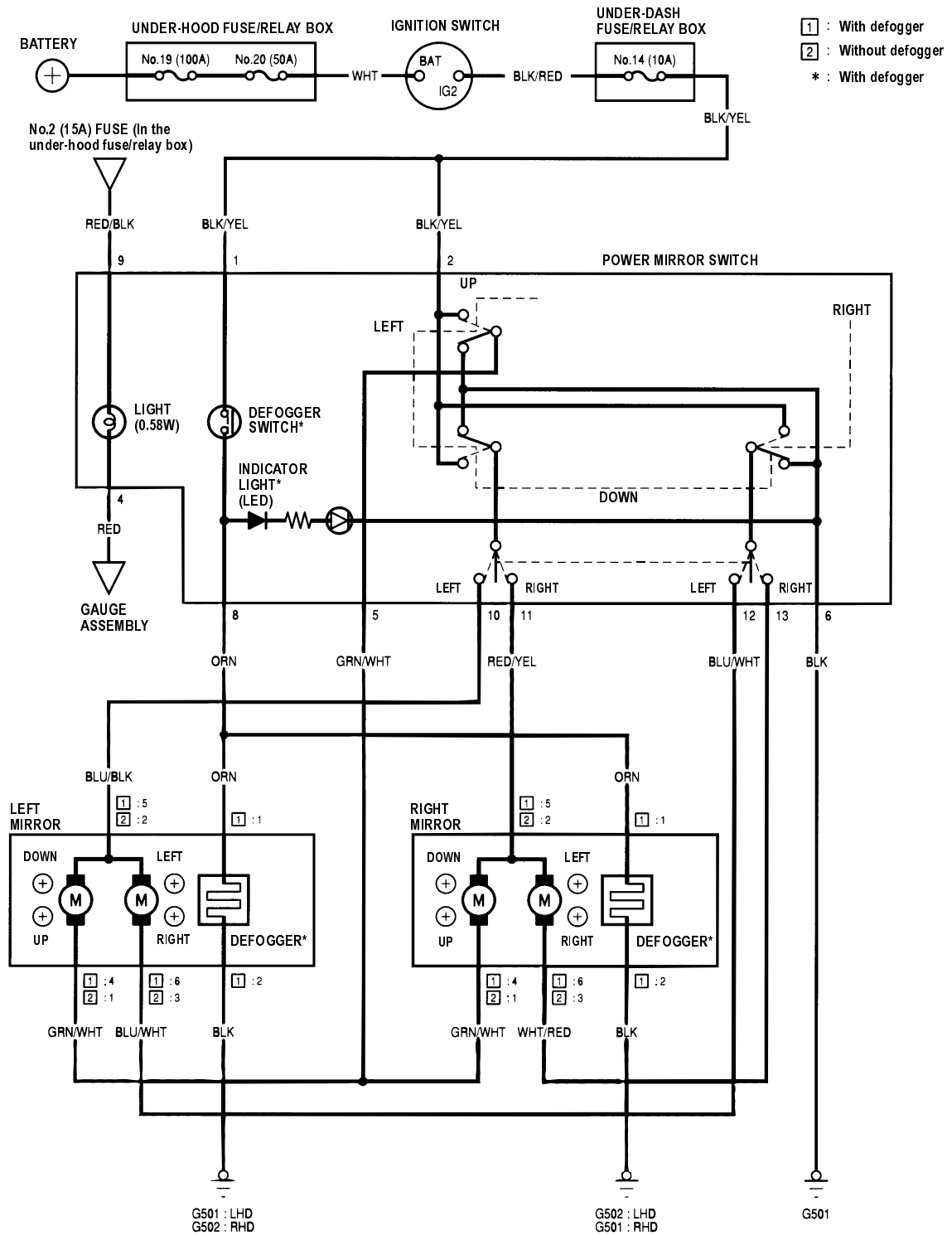
Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is symmetrical.



- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | POWER MIRRORS                              | Function Test, <a href="#">page 22A-133</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-139</a> ;<br>Mirror Actuator Test, <a href="#">page 22A-136</a> ; Mirror Actuator Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-137</a> |
| 2 | POWER MIRROR and MIRROR<br>DEFOGGER SWITCH | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-135</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-135</a>  |

# Circuit Diagram



**BATTERY**

**UNDER-HOOD FUSE/RELAY BOX**

No.19 (100A) No.20 (50A)

**IGNITION SWITCH**

BAT IG2

**UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX**

No.14 (10A)

**POWER MIRROR SWITCH**

UP DOWN

LEFT RIGHT

**GAUGE ASSEMBLY**

LIGHT (0.58W)

RETRACT (→) EXTEND (←)

**LEFT POWER MIRROR**

DOWN UP LEFT RIGHT

RETRACT ACTUATOR

**RIGHT POWER MIRROR**

DOWN UP LEFT RIGHT

RETRACT ACTUATOR

WHT

BLK/RED

BLK/YEL

RED/BLK

RED

RED/BLU

RED/WHT

GRN/WHT

RED/YEL

RED/WHT

RED/BLU

BLU/WHT

WHT/RED

BLK

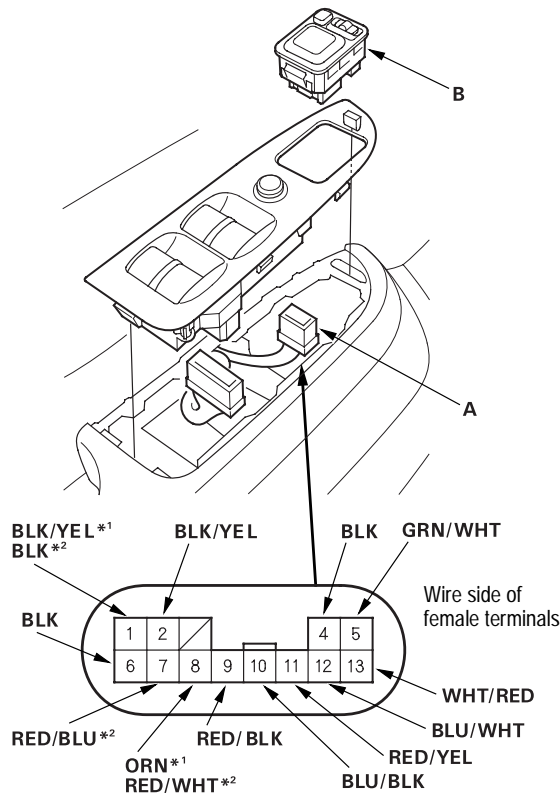
9 2 4 7 8 1 5 10 11 12 13 6

G501



## Function Test

1. Remove the driver's switch panel (A) (see page 20-9).



\*1 : With defogger  
\*2 : With retract mirror

2. Disconnect the 13P connector (A) from the switch (B).
3. Choose the appropriate test based on the symptom:
  - Both mirrors don't work, go to step 4.
  - Left mirror doesn't work, go to step 6.
  - Right mirror doesn't work, go to step 7.
  - Defoggers don't work, go to step 8.
  - Retract actuators don't work, go to step 9.

### Both mirrors

4. Check for voltage between the No. 2 terminal and body ground with the ignition switch ON (II). There should be battery voltage.
  - If there is no battery voltage, check for:
    - blown No. 14 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.
    - an open in the BLK/YEL wire.
  - If there is battery voltage, go to step 5.
5. Check for continuity between the No. 6 terminal and body ground. There should be continuity.
  - If there is no continuity, check for:
    - an open in the BLK wire.
    - poor ground (G501).
  - If there is continuity, check both mirrors individually as described in the next column.

### Left mirror

6. Connect the No. 2 terminal to the No. 10 terminal, and the No. 5 (or No. 12) terminal to No. 6 terminal with jumper wires. The left mirror should tilt down (or swing left) with the ignition switch ON (II).
  - If the mirror does not tilt down (or does not swing left), check for an open in the GRN/WHT (or BLU/WHT) wire between the left mirror and the 13P connector. If the wire is OK, check the left mirror actuator.
  - If the mirror neither tilts down nor swings left, repair the BLU/BLK wire.
  - If the mirror works properly, check the mirror switch.

### Right mirror

7. Connect the No. 2 terminal to the No. 11 terminal, and the No. 5 (or No. 13) terminal to No. 6 terminal with jumper wires. The right mirror should tilt down (or swing left) with the ignition switch ON (II).
  - If the mirror does not tilt down (or does not swing left), check for an open in the GRN/WHT (or WHT/RED) wire between the right mirror and the 13P connector. If the wire is OK, check the right mirror actuator.
  - If the mirror neither tilts down nor swings left, repair the RED/YEL wire.
  - If the mirror works properly, check the mirror switch.

(cont'd)

### Function Test (cont'd)

#### Defogger

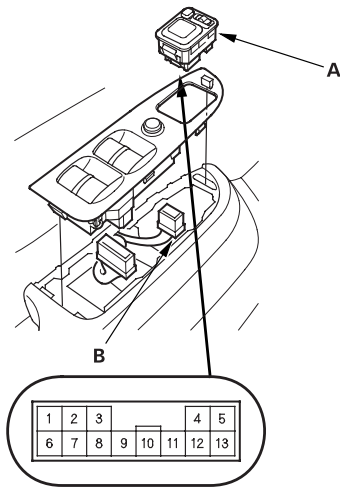
8. Connect the No. 1 and No. 8 terminals with a jumper wire, and check for voltage between the BLK wire terminal of the mirror connector and body ground. There should be battery voltage and both mirrors should warm up with the ignition switch ON (II).
  - If there is no voltage or neither warms up, check for:
    - an open in the BLK/YEL or ORN wire.
    - blown No. 14 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.
  - If only one fails to warm up, check its defogger.
    - poor ground (G501, G502).
  - If both warm up, check the defogger switch.

#### Retractable mirror

9. Connect the No. 2 terminal to the No. 7 (or No. 8) terminal with a jumper wire. The mirrors should retract (or extend) when the ignition switch is turned back and forth between ON (II) and OFF.
  - If the mirrors neither retract nor extend, check for an open in the RED/BLU or RED/WHT wire between the switch and the mirrors.
  - If one of the mirrors does not retract or extend, check the retractable mirror actuator.

Power Mirror Switch Test/Replacement

- 1. Remove the driver's switch panel (see page 20-9).
- 2. Remove the power mirror switch (A).



- 3. Disconnect the 13P connector (B) from the switch.

- 4. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

Mirror Switch:

Terminal		2	5	6	10	11	12	13
Position								
L	UP	○	○	○	○			
	DOWN	○	○	○	○			
	LEFT	○		○	○		○	
	RIGHT	○		○	○		○	
R	UP	○	○	○	○	○		
	DOWN	○	○	○	○	○		
	LEFT	○		○	○	○		○
	RIGHT	○		○	○	○		○

Defogger Switch:

Terminal		1	8
Position			
ON		○	○
OFF			

Retract Switch:

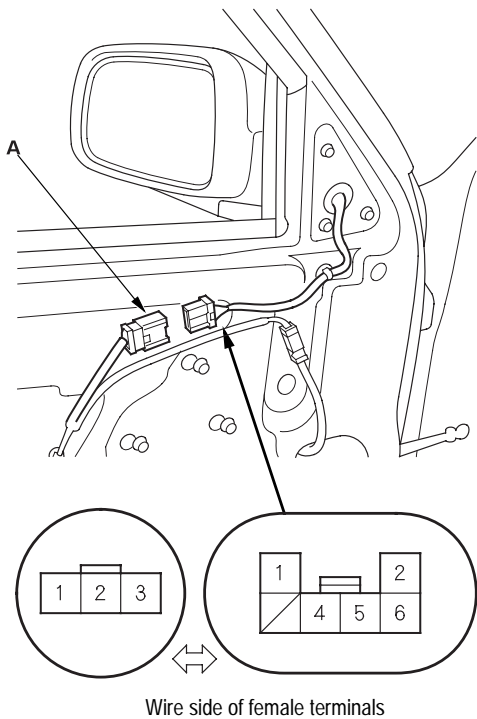
Terminal		1	2	7	8
Position					
RETRACT		○	○	○	○
EXTEND		○	○	○	○

- 5. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the switch.

Power Mirror Actuator Test

- 1. Remove the door panel (see page 20-9).
- 2. Disconnect the 6P or 3P connector (A) from the power mirror actuator.

3P connector: without defogger or retract  
6P connector: with defogger or retract



- 3. Check actuator operation by connecting battery power and ground according to the table.

Terminal	1   4	2   5	3   6
Position			
TILT UP	⊕	⊖	
TILT DOWN	⊖	⊕	
SWING LEFT		⊕	⊖
SWING RIGHT		⊖	⊕

[ ] : 6P CONNECTOR

- 4. If the mirror fails to work properly, replace the mirror actuator (see page 22A-137).

Defogger Test:

- 5. Check for continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals of the 6P connector. There should be continuity.
- 6. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the mirror actuator.

Retract Switch:

- 7. Check actuator operation by connecting battery power and ground according to the table.

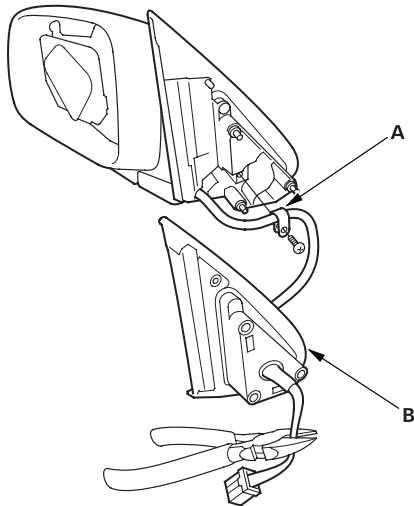
Terminal	1 [2]	2 [1]
Position		
Mirror retracts from extend position.	⊖	⊕
Mirror extends from retract position.	⊕	⊖

[ ] : Right power mirror

- 8. If the retract actuator fails to work properly, replace the mirror.

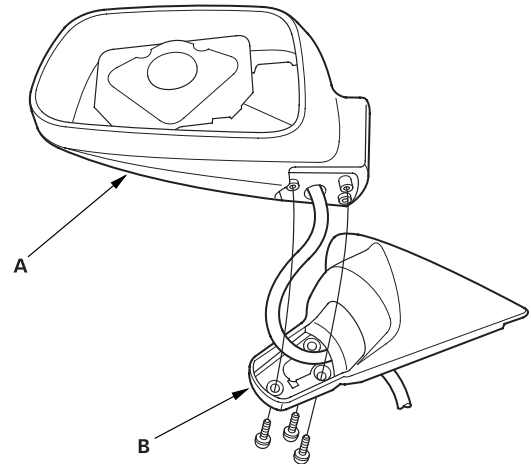
## Power Mirror Actuator Replacement

1. Remove the mirror holder, and disconnect the mirror defogger connectors \* (see page 20-40).  
\*: With defogger
2. Remove the power mirror (see page 20-39).
3. Disconnect the 3P or 6P connector from the mirror.
4. Remove the screw from the harness clip (A).

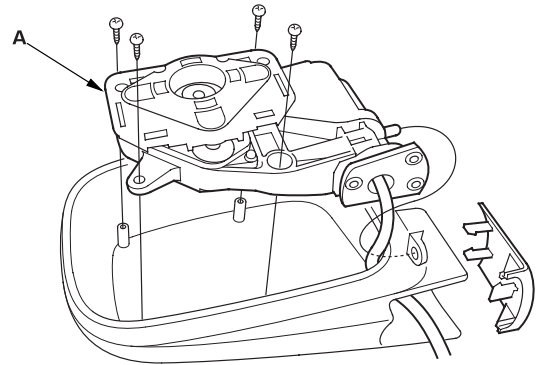


5. Cut the wire harness with cutter, and remove the gasket (B).

6. Remove the three screws, and separate the mirror housing (A) from the bracket (B).



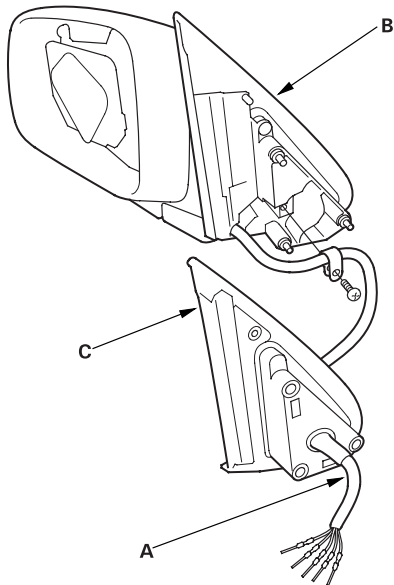
7. Remove the four screws and the actuator (A).



(cont'd)

## Power Mirror Actuator Replacement (cont'd)

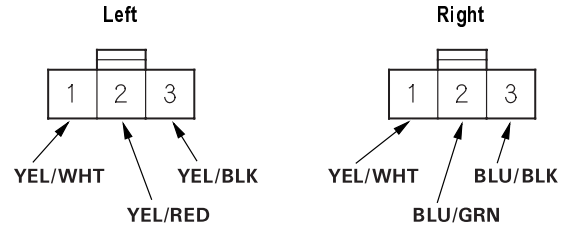
8. Route the wire harness (A) of the new actuator through the hole in the bracket (B) and gasket (C).



9. Install the actuator, bracket, harness clip, and gasket in the reverse order of removal.

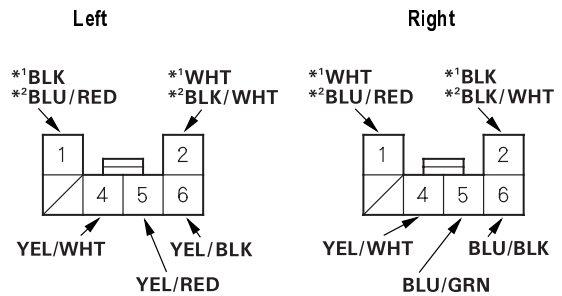
10. Insert the new actuator terminals into the connector in the original arrangement as shown below.

### 3P CONNECTOR:



Wire side of female terminals

### 6P CONNECTOR:



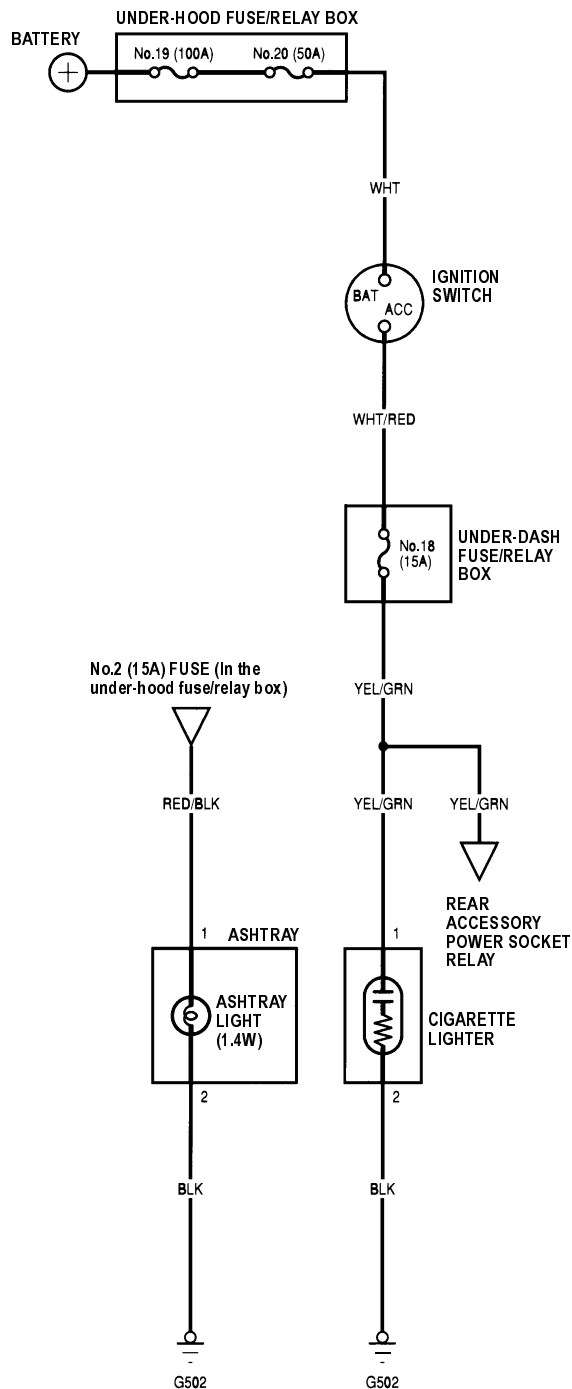
\*1 : Defogger  
\*2 : Retract

Wire side of female terminals

11. Apply tape to seal the intersection of the wire harness and the gasket.
12. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly. Be careful not to break the mirror when reinstalling it to the actuator (see page 20-40).
13. Reinstall the mirror assembly to the door.
14. Operate the power mirror to ensure smooth operation.

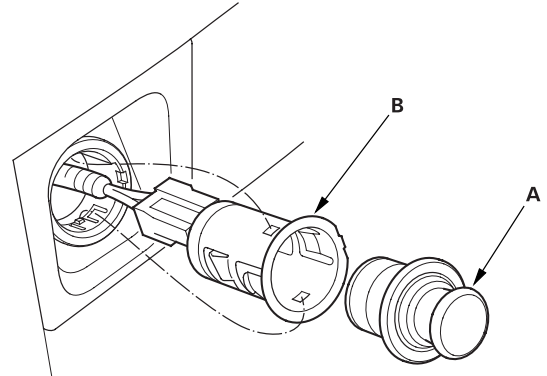
## Cigarette Lighter

### Circuit Diagram

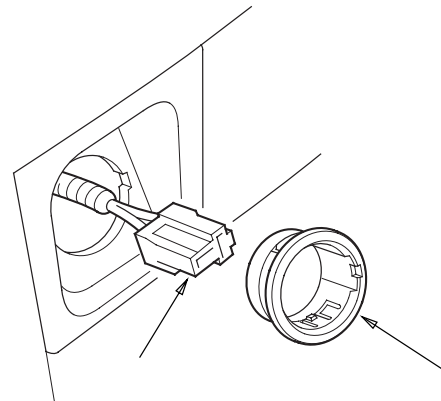


### Replacement

1. Remove the cigarette lighter (A) and socket (B).



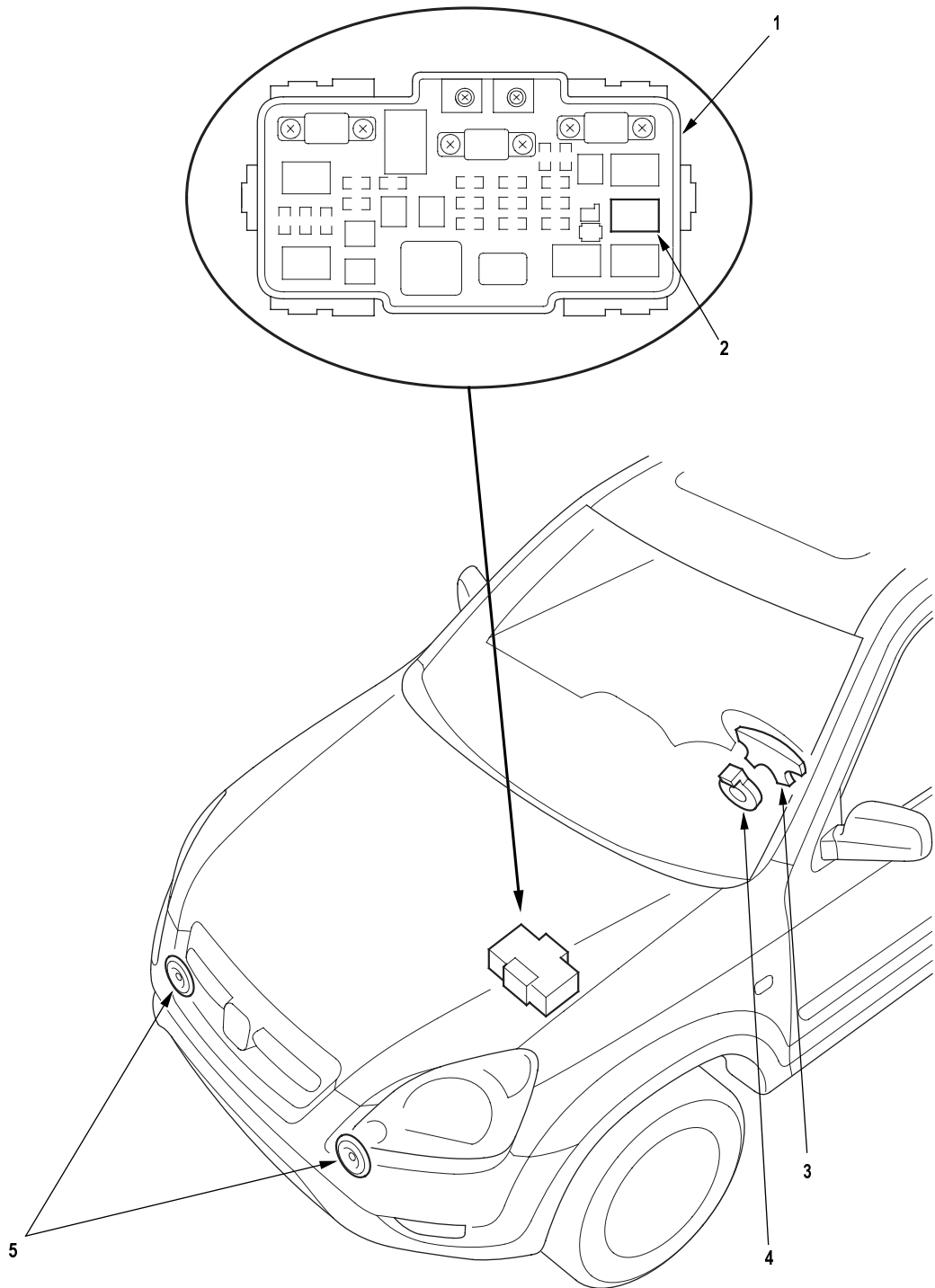
2. Disconnect the 2P connector (A) from the socket.
3. Remove the ring (B) from the dashboard.



Horns

Component Location Index

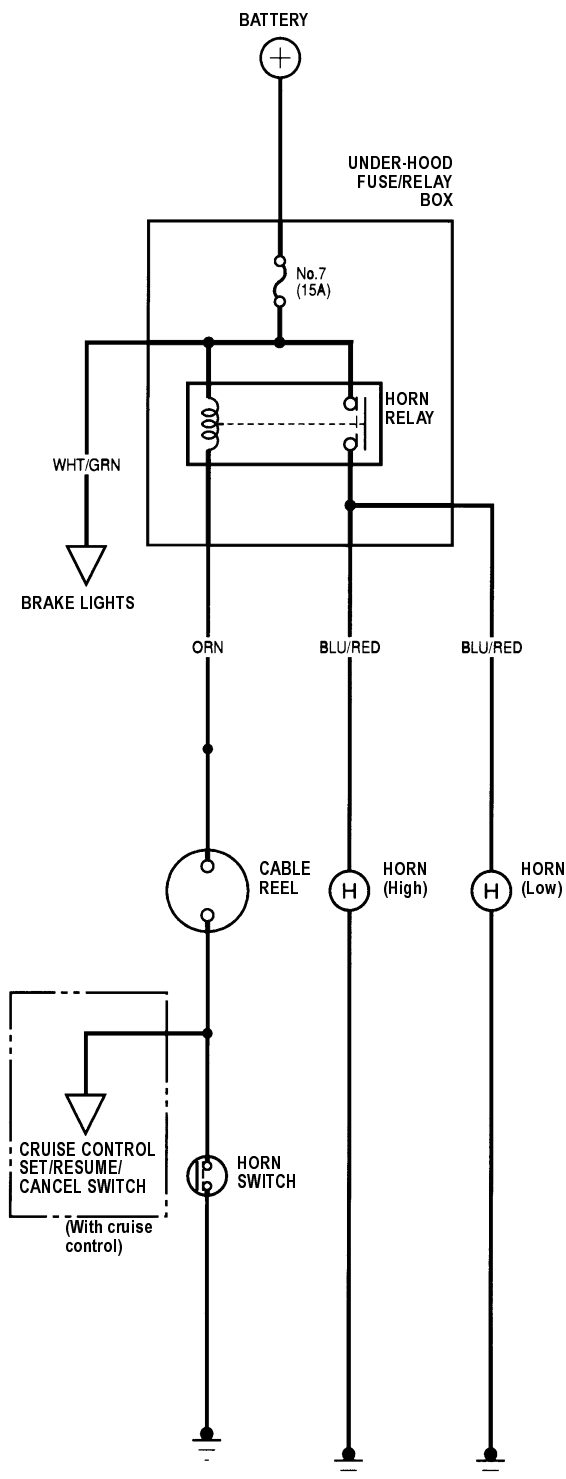
NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- 1 UNDER-HOOD FUSE/RELAY BOX
- 2 HORN RELAY      Test, [page 22A-60](#)
- 3 HORN SWITCH      Test, [page 22A-142](#)
- 4 CABLE REEL      Replacement, [page 23-141](#)
- 5 HORN      Test, [page 22A-141](#); Replacement, [page 22A-141](#)

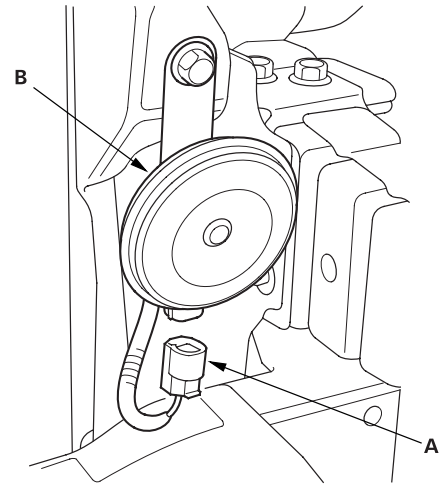


### Circuit Diagram

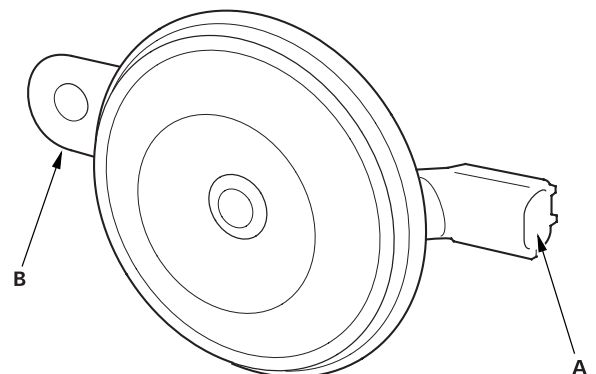


## Horn Test/Replacement

1. Remove the front bumper (see page 20-130).
2. Disconnect the 1P connector (A), and remove the horn (B).

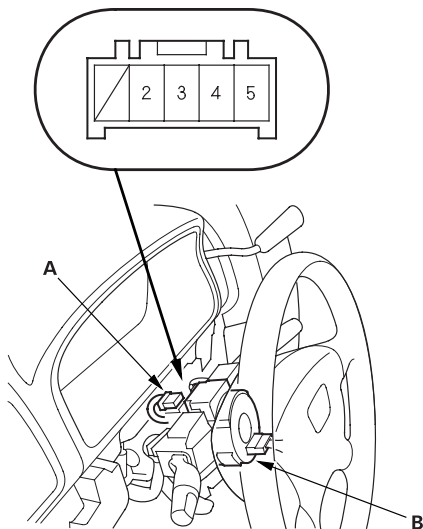


3. Test the horn by connecting battery power to the terminal (A) and ground to the bracket (B). The horn should sound.



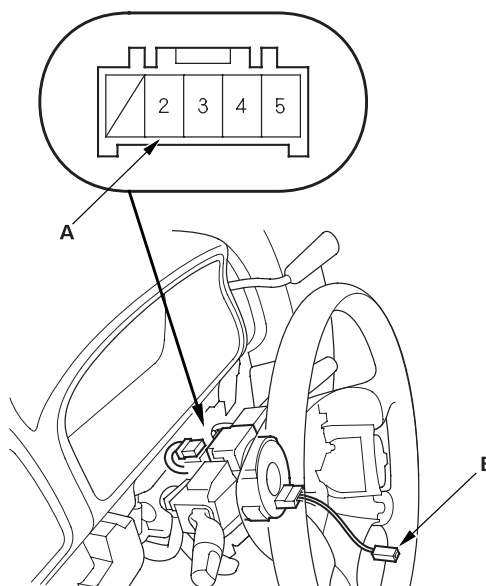
### Horn Switch Test

1. Remove the steering column covers (see page 17-24).
2. Disconnect the dashboard wire harness B 5P connector (A) from the cable reel (B).



3. Check for continuity between the cable reel No. 2 terminal and body ground with the horn switch pushed. There should be continuity. If there is no continuity, go to step 4.

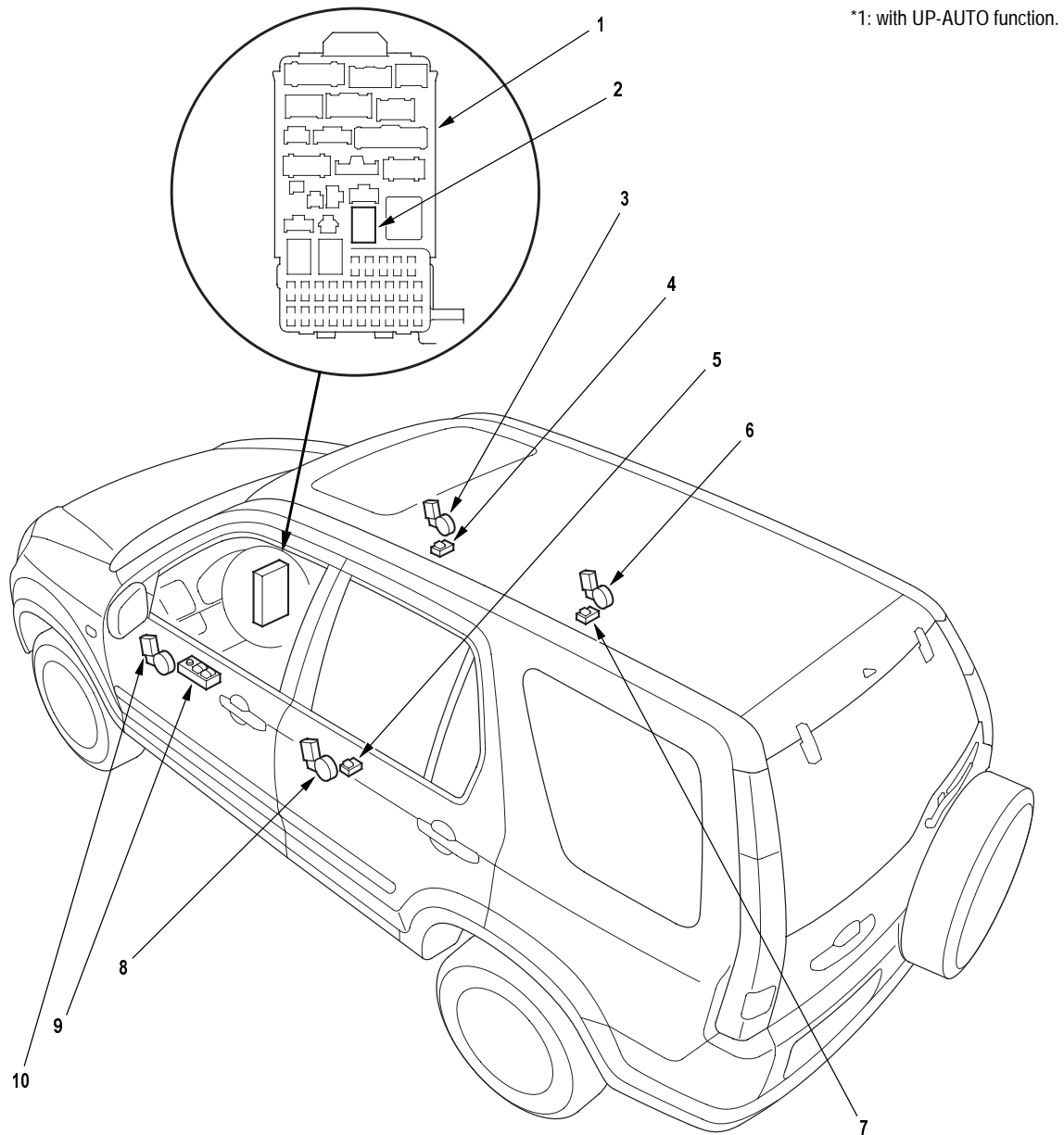
4. Remove the driver's airbag assembly (see page 23-135).
5. Disconnect the horn switch positive terminal 1P connector.
6. Check for continuity between the cable reel No.2 terminal (A) and the horn switch positive terminal (B).
  - If there is no continuity, replace the cable reel (see page 23-141).
  - If there is continuity, the cable reel OK, check the steering wheel, the horn switch, and the steering column (ground path).



## Power Windows

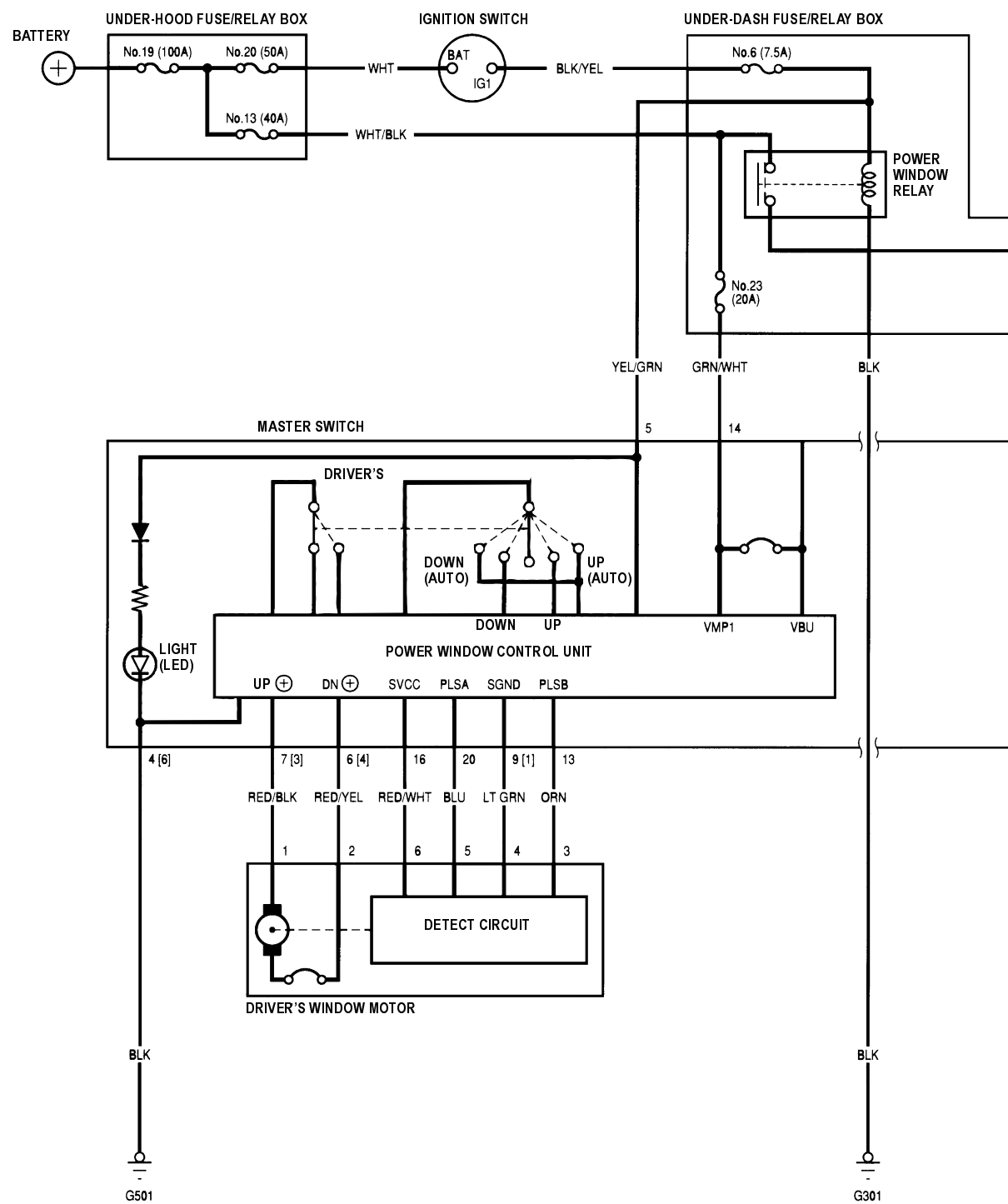
### Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.

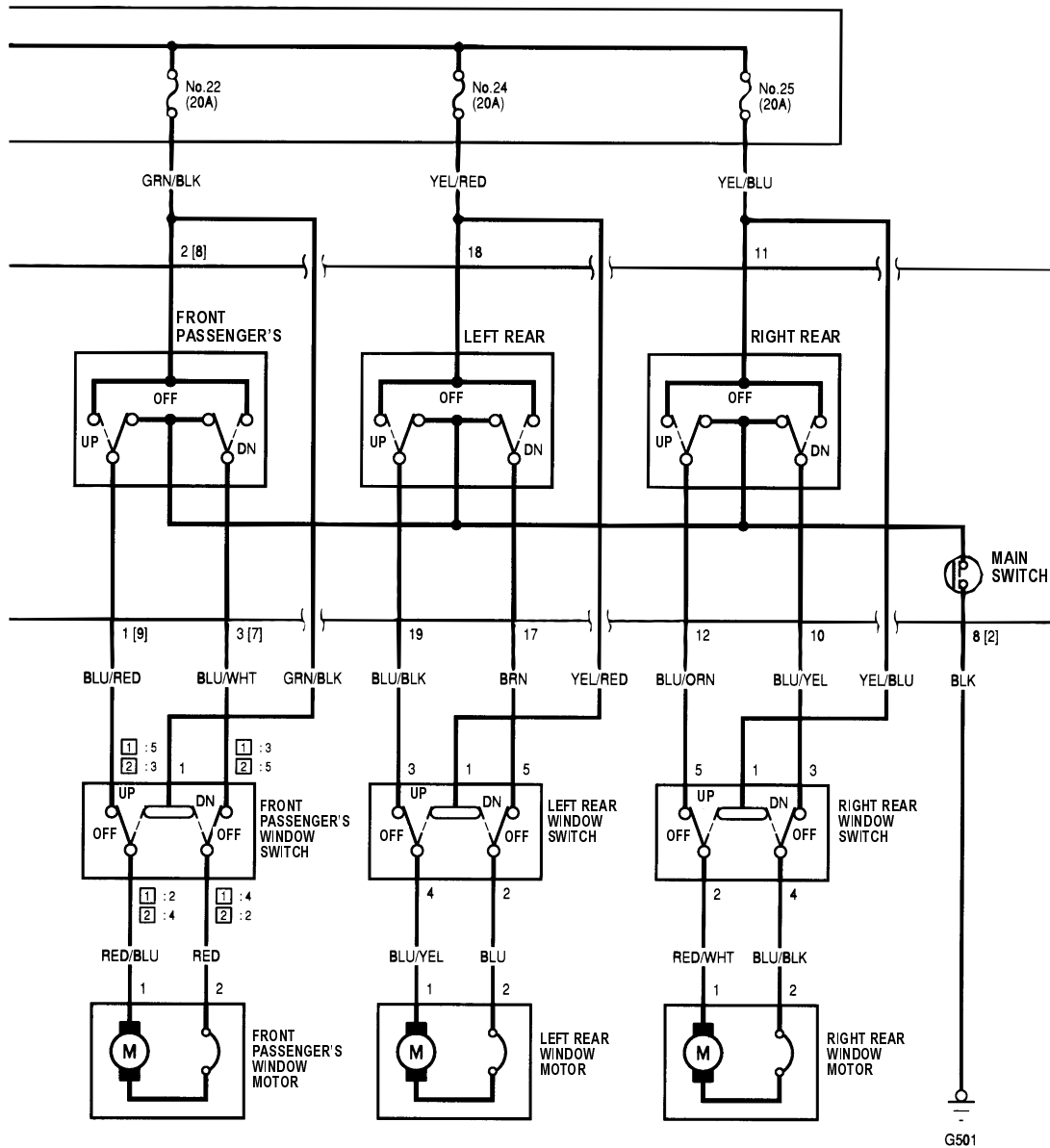


- |    |                                 |   |
|----|---------------------------------|---|
| 1  | UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX       |   |
| 2  | POWER WINDOW RELAY              | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-60</a>   |
| 3  | FRONT PASSENGER'S WINDOW MOTOR  | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-156</a>  |
| 4  | FRONT PASSENGER'S WINDOW SWITCH | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-153</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-153</a>  |
| 5  | LEFT REAR WINDOW SWITCH         | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-153</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-153</a>  |
| 6  | RIGHT REAR WINDOW MOTOR         | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-156</a>  |
| 7  | RIGHT REAR WINDOW SWITCH        | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-153</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-153</a>  |
| 8  | LEFT REAR WINDOW MOTOR          | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-156</a>  |
| 9  | POWER WINDOW MASTER SWITCH      | Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-148</a> ; Test, <a href="#">page 22A-152</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-148</a> |
| 10 | DRIVER'S WINDOW MOTOR           | *1 Resetting the Power Window Control Unit, <a href="#">page 22A-157</a><br>Test, <a href="#">page 22A-154</a>            |

Circuit Diagram - With UP-AUTO Function

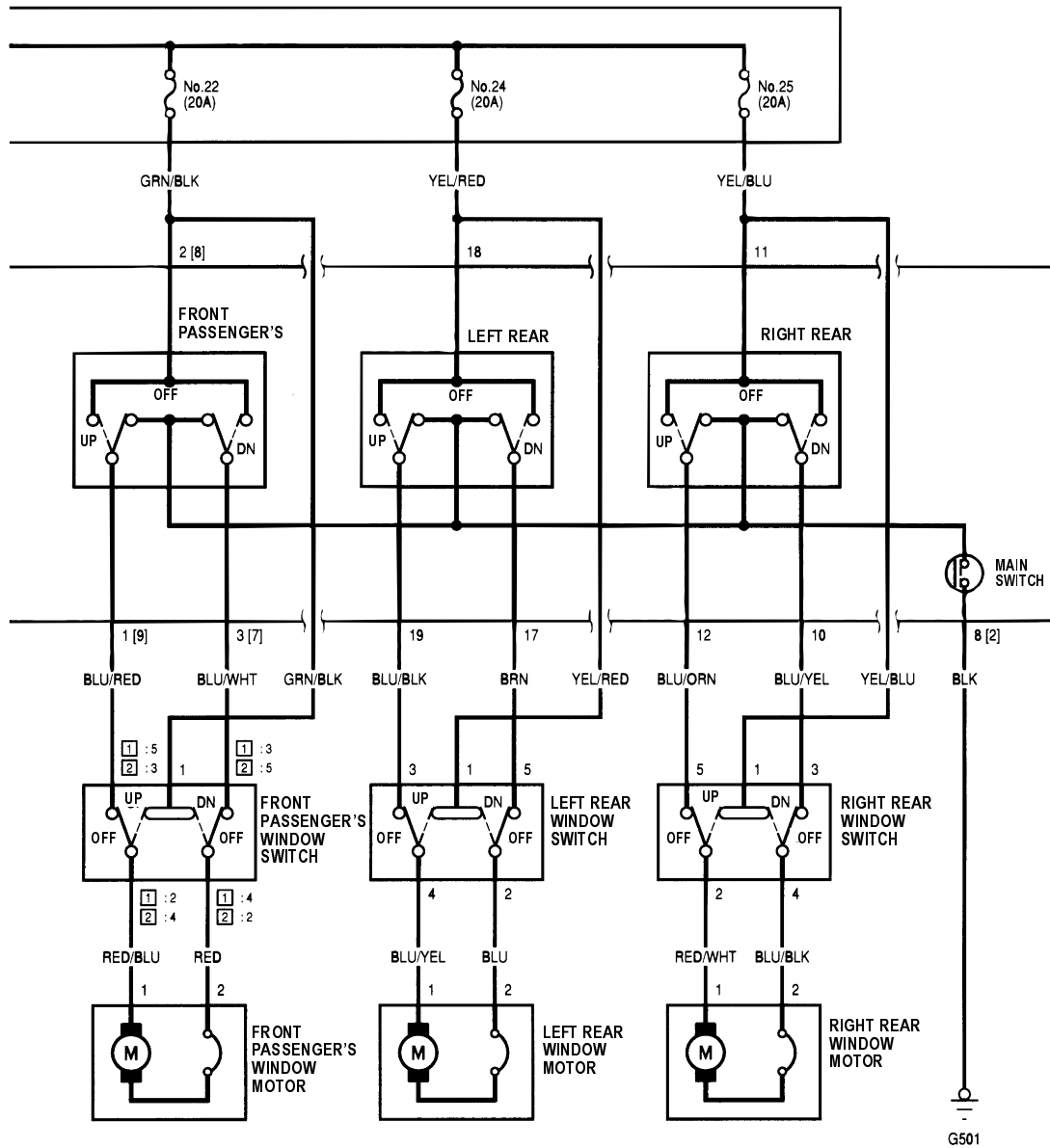


[ ] : RHD type  
 DN : DOWN  
 1 : LHD type  
 2 : RHD type





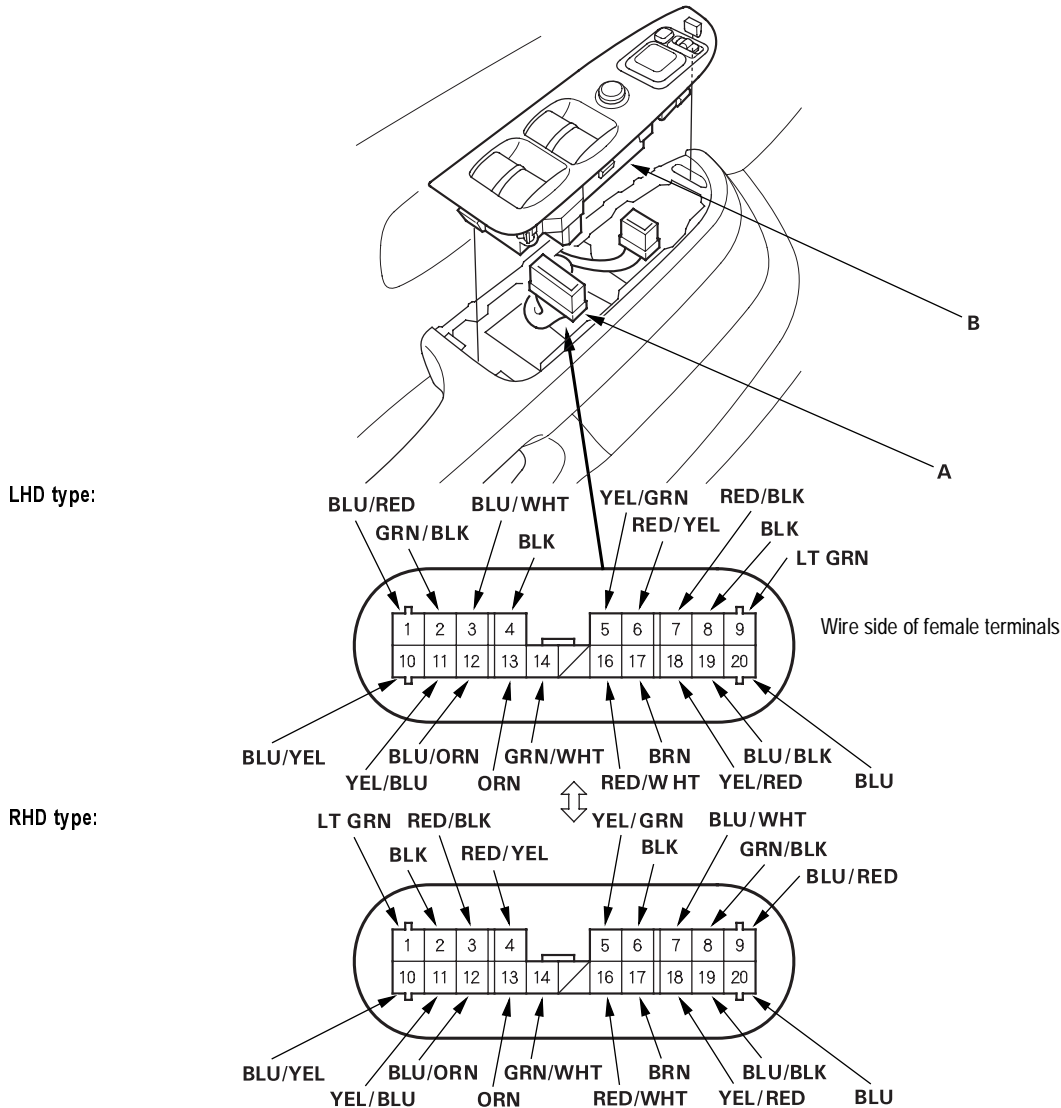
[ ] : RHD type  
 DN : DOWN  
 1 : LHD type  
 2 : RHD type



## Master Switch Input Test - With UP-AUTO Function

NOTE: The power window control unit is built into the power window master switch, and it only controls the driver's window operations.

1. Remove the switch panel from the door panel ([see page 20-9](#)).
2. Disconnect the 20P connector (A) from the master switch (B).



3. Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals look OK, make the following input tests at the connector.
    - If a test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
    - If all the input tests prove OK, go to step 4.



4. Reconnect the 20P connector to the switch, and perform the following input tests.

- If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
- If all the input tests prove OK, go to step 5.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
4[6] 8[2]	BLK	Ignition switch ON (II), and the master switch ON	Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
14	GRN/WHT	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 23 (20A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
5	YEL/GRN	Ignition switch ON (II)	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 6 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Blown No. 22, 24 or 25 (20A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty power window relay</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
2[8]	GRN/BLK			
18	YEL/RED			
11	YEL/BLU			
6[4] 7[3]	RED/YEL RED/BLK	Connect the No. 14 and No. 6 [No. 4] terminals, and the No. 7 [No. 3] and No. 4 [No. 6] terminals, and turn the ignition switch ON (II).	Check for driver's window motor operation: It should run (the driver's window moves down).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's window motor</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
1[9] 3[7]	BLU/RED BLU/WHT	Connect the No. 2 and No. 3 [No. 7] terminals, and the No. 1 [No. 9] and No. 8 [No. 2] terminals, and turn the ignition switch ON (II).	Check for front passenger's window motor operation: It should run (the front passenger's window moves down).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty front passenger's window motor</li> <li>• Faulty front passenger's window switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
19 17	BLU/BLK BRN	Connect the No. 18 and No. 17 terminals, and the No. 19 and No. 8 [No. 2] terminals, and turn the ignition switch ON (II).	Check for left rear window motor operation: It should run (the left rear window moves down).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty left rear window motor</li> <li>• Faulty left rear window switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
12 10	BLU/ORN BLU/YEL	Connect the No. 11 and No. 10 terminals, and the No. 12 and No. 8 [No. 2] terminals, and turn the ignition switch ON (II).	Check for right rear window motor operation: It should run (the right rear window moves down).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty right rear window motor</li> <li>• Faulty right rear window switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>

5. Disconnect the 20P connector from the switch connector, and make these input tests at the connector.

- If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
- If all the input tests prove OK, the control unit must be faulty; replace the power window master switch.

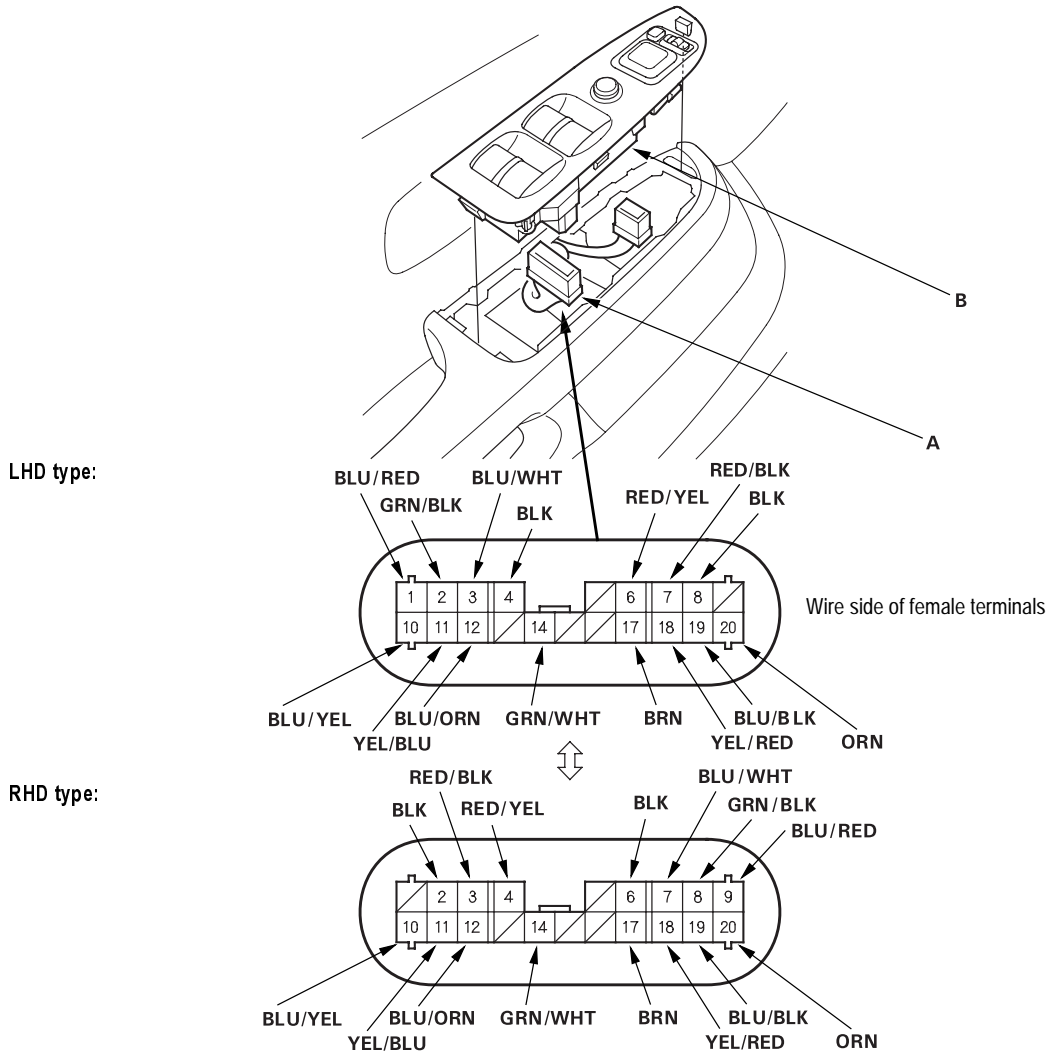
Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
16	RED/WHT	Ignition switch ON (II)	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty power window master switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
9[1]	LT GRN	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
20	BLU	Ignition switch ON (II), and the driver's window switch AUTO DOWN	Check for voltage between the No. 20 and No. 4 [No. 1] terminals: There should be 0 V - about 5 V - 0 V - about 5 V repeatedly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 23 (20A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty power window relay</li> <li>• Faulty power window master switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
13	ORN	Ignition switch ON (II), and the driver's window switch AUTO DOWN	Check for voltage between the No. 13 and No. 4 [No. 1] terminals: There should be 0 V - about 5 V - 0 V - about 5 V repeatedly.	

[ ]:RHD type

## Master Switch Input Test - Without UP-AUTO Function

NOTE: The power window control unit is built into the power window master switch, and it only controls the driver's window operations.

1. Remove the switch panel from the door panel ([see page 20-9](#)).
2. Disconnect the 20P connector (A) from the master switch (B).



3. Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals look OK, make the following input tests at the connector.
    - If a test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
    - If all the input tests prove OK, go to step 4.



4. With the connector still disconnected, make these input tests at the connector.
- If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
  - If all the input tests prove OK, go to step 5.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
4[6]	BLK	Under all condition	Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
8[2]				
14	GRN/WHT	Ignition switch ON (II)	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 6 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Blown No. 22, 24 or 25 (20A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty power window relay</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
2[8]	GRN/BLK			
18	YEL/RED			
11	YEL/BLU			
6[4]	RED/YEL	Connect the No. 14 and No. 6 [No. 4] terminals, and the No. 7 [No. 3] and No. 4 [No. 6] terminals, and turn the ignition switch ON (II).	Check for driver's window motor operation: It should run (the driver's window moves down).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's window motor</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
7[3]	RED/BLK			
1[9]	BLU/RED	Connect the No. 2 and No. 3 [No. 7] terminals, and the No. 1 [No. 9] and No. 8 [No. 2] terminals, and turn the ignition switch ON (II).	Check for front passenger's window motor operation: It should run (the front passenger's window moves down).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty front passenger's window motor</li> <li>• Faulty front passenger's window switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
3[7]	BLU/WHT			
19	BLU/BLK	Connect the No. 18 and No. 17 terminals, and the No. 19 and No. 8 [No. 2] terminals, and turn the ignition switch ON (II).	Check for left rear window motor operation: It should run (the left rear window moves down).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty left rear window motor</li> <li>• Faulty left rear window switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
17	BRN			
12	BLU/ORN	Connect the No. 11 and No. 10 terminals, and the No. 12 and No. 8 [No. 2] terminals, and turn the ignition switch ON (II).	Check for right rear window motor operation: It should run (the right rear window moves down).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty right rear window motor</li> <li>• Faulty right rear window switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
10	BLU/YEL			

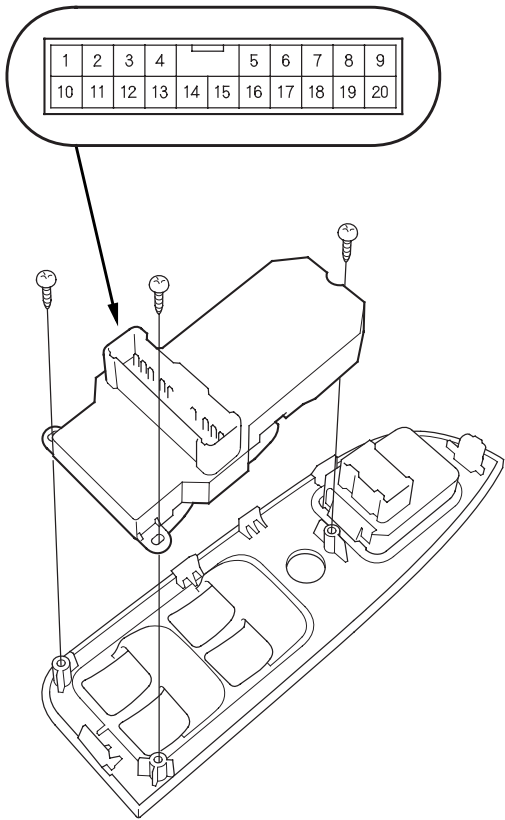
5. Reconnect the 20P connector to the switch, and perform the following input tests.
- If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
  - If all the input tests prove OK, the control unit must be faulty; replace the power window master switch.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
20	RED/WHT	Connect the No. 14 and No. 6 [No. 4] terminals, and the No. 7 [No. 3] and No. 4 [No. 6] terminals, and turn the ignition switch ON (II).	Check for voltage between the No. 20 and No. 4 [No. 6] terminals: About 6 V should be indicated while the driver's window motor running.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's window motor</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>

[ ]:RHD type

Master Switch Test/Replacement

- 1. Remove the power window master switch.
- 2. Disconnect the 20P connector from the switch.



Driver's Switch:

The driver's switch is combined with the control unit so you cannot isolate the switch to test it. Instead, run the master switch input test procedures on [page 22A-148](#). If the tests are normal, the driver's switch must be faulty.

Front Passenger's Switch:

Position	Terminal	1	2	3	8
	Main Switch	[9]	[8]	[7]	[2]
OFF	ON	○	○	○	○
	OFF	○	○	○	
UP	ON	○	○	○	○
	OFF	○	○		
DOWN	ON	○	○	○	○
	OFF		○	○	

Left Rear Switch:

Position	Terminal	19	18	17	8
	Main Switch				[2]
OFF	ON	○		○	○
	OFF	○		○	
UP	ON	○	○		○
	OFF	○	○		
DOWN	ON	○	○	○	○
	OFF		○	○	

Right Rear Switch:

Position	Terminal	11	12	10	8
	Main Switch				[2]
OFF	ON		○	○	○
	OFF		○	○	
UP	ON	○	○		○
	OFF	○	○		
DOWN	ON	○		○	○
	OFF	○		○	

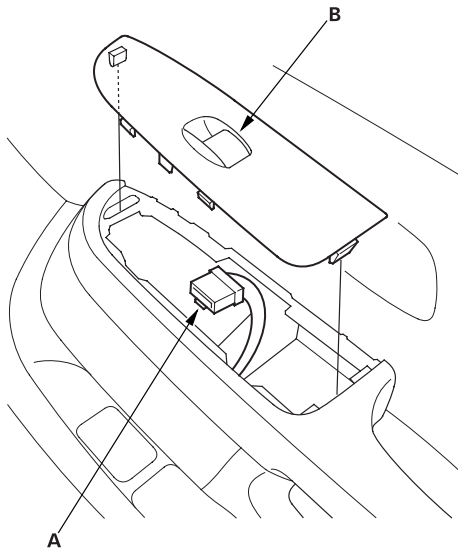
[ ] :RHD type

- 3. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the switch.

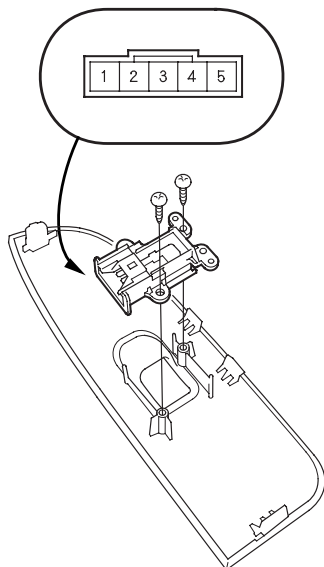


Passenger's Window Switch Test/Replacement

1. Remove the switch panel from the door panel (see [page 20-9](#)).
2. Disconnect the 5P connector (A) from the power window switch (B).



3. Remove the two screws and the passenger's power window switch.



4. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

Front passenger's (LHD type):

Terminal Position	1	2	3	4	5
UP	○	○	○	○	
OFF		○	○	○	○
DOWN	○	○		○	○

Front passenger's (RHD type):

Terminal Position	1	2	3	4	5
UP	○	○		○	○
OFF		○	○	○	○
DOWN	○	○	○	○	

Left Rear Window:

Terminal Position	1	2	3	4	5
UP	○	○		○	○
OFF		○	○	○	○
DOWN	○	○	○	○	

Right Rear Window:

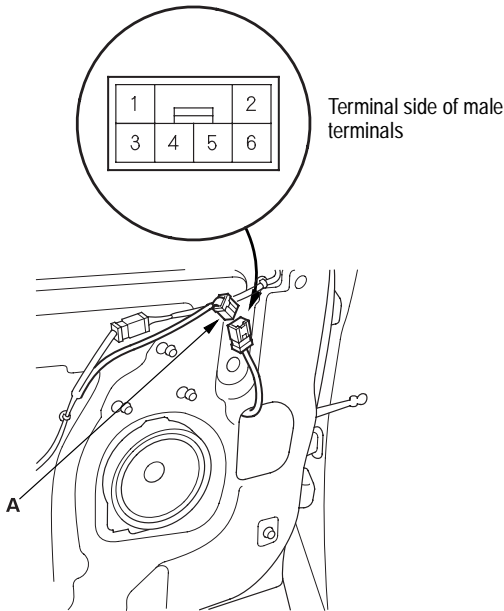
Terminal Position	1	2	3	4	5
UP	○	○	○	○	
OFF		○	○	○	○
DOWN	○	○		○	○

5. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the switch.

Driver's Window Motor Test - With UP-AUTO Function

Motor Test:

- 1. Remove the driver's door panel (see page 20-9).
- 2. Disconnect the 6P connector (A) from the driver's window motor.



- 3. Test the motor in each direction by connecting battery power and ground according to the table.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the motor, disconnect one lead as soon as the motor stops running.

Terminal	1	2
Direction		
UP	⊕	⊖
DOWN	⊖	⊕

- 4. If the motor does not run or fails to run smoothly, replace it.

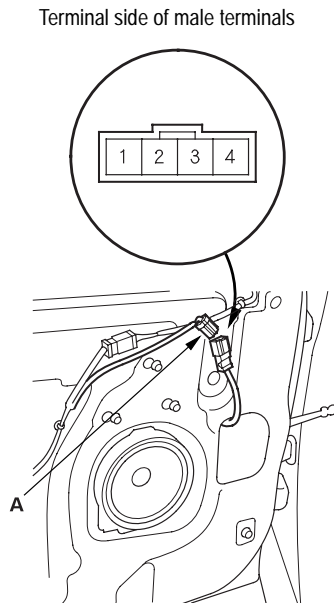
Pulser Test:

- 1. Reconnect the 6P connector to the window motor, and reconnect the 14P connector to the power window master switch.
- 2. Check for voltage between the terminals.
  - There should be battery voltage between the No. 6 (+) and No. 4 (-) terminals when the ignition switch is turned ON (II).
  - Connect an analog voltmeter between the No. 5 (+) and No. 4 (-) terminals, and run the window motor down or up. The voltmeter needle should move back and forth alternately between 0 V and about 5 V (a digital voltmeter should show about 2.5 V).
  - Connect an analog voltmeter between the No. 3 (+) and No. 4 (-) terminals, and run the window motor down or up. The voltmeter needle should move back and forth alternately between 0 V and about 5 V (a digital voltmeter should show about 2.5 V).

Driver's Window Motor Test - Without UP-AUTO Function

Motor Test:

- 1. Remove the door panel (see page 20-9).
- 2. Disconnect the 4P connector (A) from the driver's window motor.



- 3. Test the motor in each direction by connecting battery power and ground according to the table.

**NOTICE**

To prevent damage to the motor, disconnect one lead as soon as the motor stops running.

Terminal	1	2
Direction		
UP	—	+
DOWN	+	—

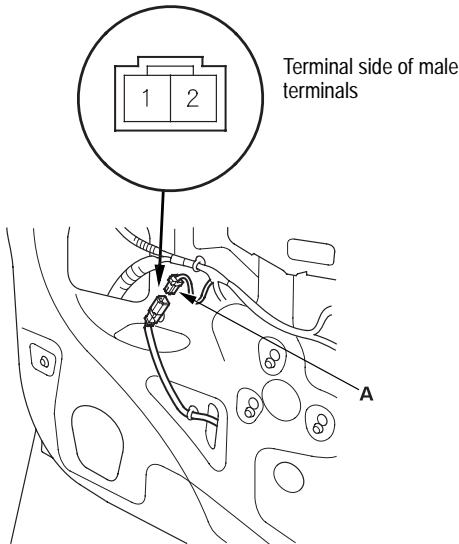
- 4. If the motor does not run or fails to run smoothly, replace it.

Pulser Test:

- 1. Remove the 4P connector to the driver's window motor, and reconnect the 20P connector to the power window master switch.
- 2. Connect the test leads of a voltmeter to the No. 3 and No. 4 terminals of the driver's window motor 4P connector.
- 3. Run the motor by connecting power and ground to the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals. The voltmeter should read about 6 V.
- 4. If the voltage is not as specified, check for an open in the wires. If the wires are OK, replace the driver's window motor.

Passenger's Window Motor Test

- 1. Remove the passenger's door panel (see page 20-9).
- 2. Disconnect the 2P connector (A) from the passenger's power window motor.



- 3. Test the motor in each direction by connecting battery power and ground according to the table.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the motor, disconnect one lead as soon as the motor stops running.

Terminal	1	2
Direction		
UP	+	-
DOWN	-	+

- 4. If the motor does not run or fails to run smoothly, replace it.





### Resetting the Power Window Control Unit

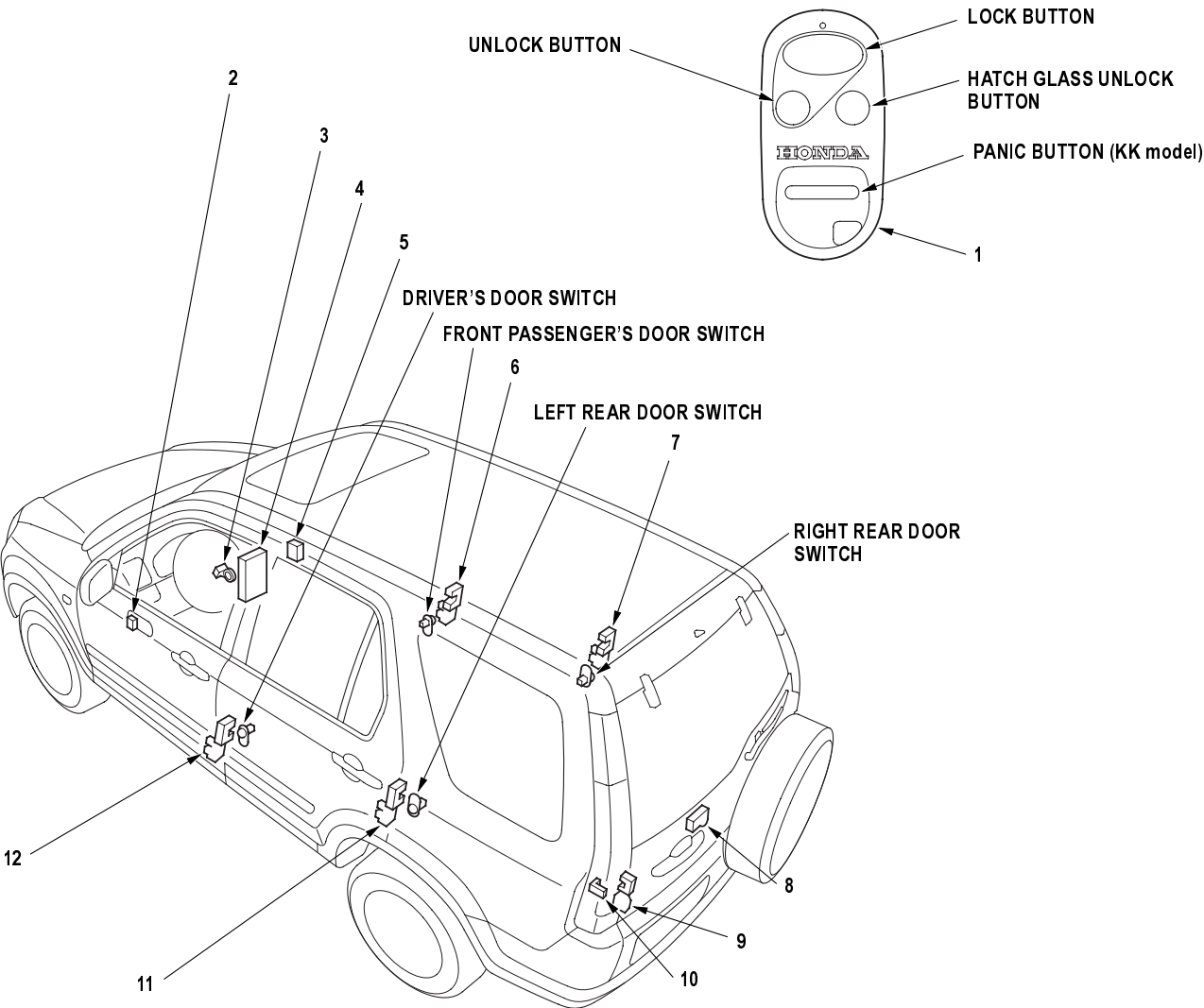
Resetting the power window control unit is required after performing the following procedures:

- Loss of battery power
  - Loss of power from the No. 6 (7.5A) and/or the No. 23 (20A) fuses in the under-dash fuse/relay box
  - Open circuit caused by disconnecting the 20P connector from the power window master switch
  - Removal of the regulator, glass, or glass run channel
1. Make sure the glass is installed properly.
  2. Close the driver's door.
  3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
  4. Remove the No. 23 (20A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.
  5. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
  6. After 1 second, turn the ignition switch OFF.
  7. After 5 seconds, install the No. 23 (20A) fuse to the under-dash fuse/relay box.
  8. Make sure the driver's window does not work in AUTO with the ignition switch ON (II).
  9. Start the engine.
  10. Move the driver's window all the way down using the manual DOWN function of the driver's power window switch.
  11. Move the driver's window all the way up using the manual UP function of the driver's power window switch, and hold it for 1 second after the window reaches the closed position.
  12. If the window does not work in AUTO, repeat steps 2 through 12.

Keyless/Power Door Lock System

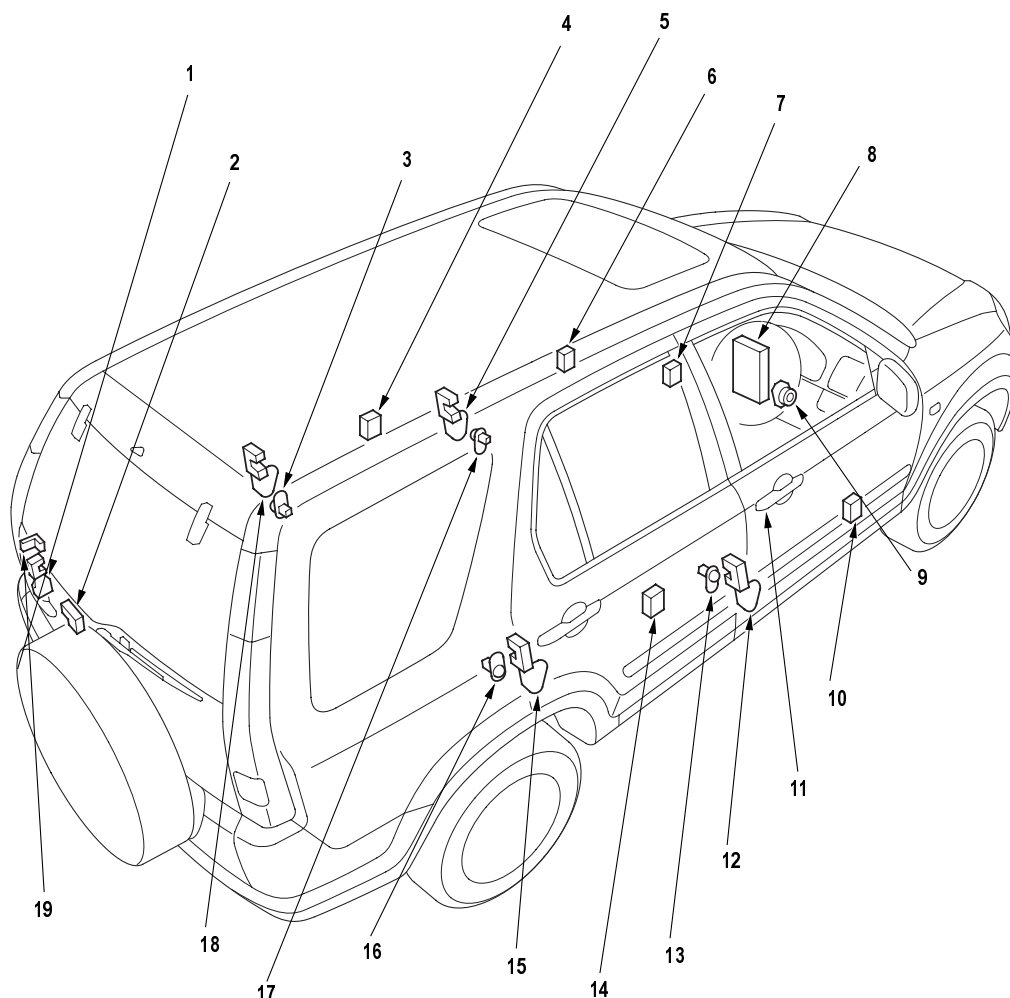
Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



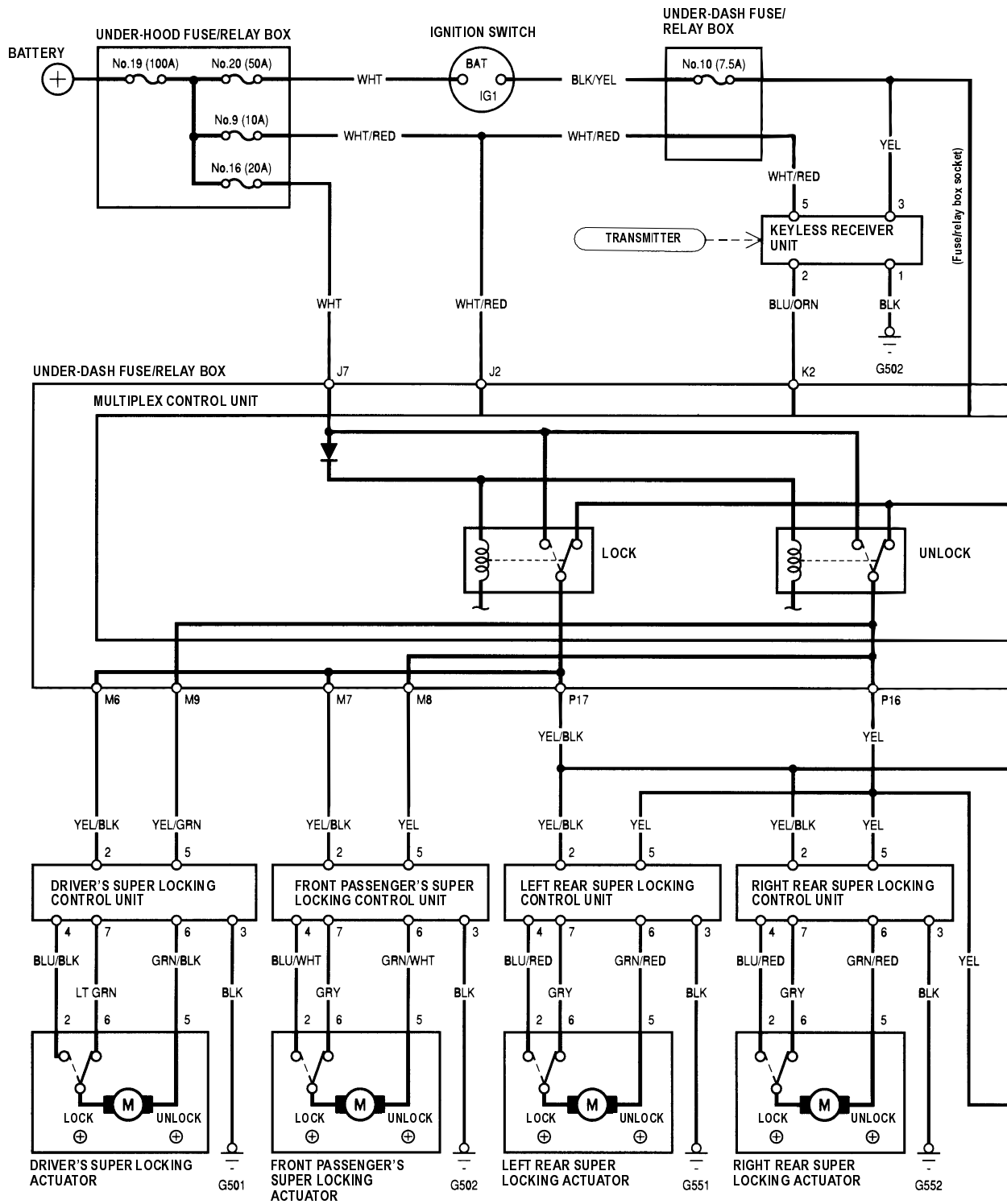
1	TRANSMITTER	Test, <a href="#">page 22A-176</a> Programming, <a href="#">page 22A-176</a>	7	RIGHT REAR DOOR LOCK ACTUATOR	Test, <a href="#">page 22A-174</a>
2	DRIVER'S DOOR LOCK SWITCH	Test, <a href="#">page 22A-177</a>	8	HATCH GLASS OPENER ACTUATOR	Test, <a href="#">page 22A-178</a>
3	IGNITION KEY SWITCH	Test, <a href="#">page 22A-113</a>	9	TAILGATE LOCK ACTUATOR	Test, <a href="#">page 22A-178</a>
4	MULTIPLEX CONTROL UNIT	Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-166</a>	10	TAILGATE SWITCH	Test, <a href="#">page 22A-110</a> Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-110</a>
5	KEYLESS RECEIVER UNIT	Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-165</a>	11	LEFT REAR DOOR LOCK ACTUATOR	Test, <a href="#">page 22A-174</a>
6	FRONT PASSENGER'S DOOR LOCK ACTUATOR	Test, <a href="#">page 22A-174</a>	12	DRIVER'S DOOR LOCK ACTUATOR/KNOB SWITCH	Actuator Test, <a href="#">page 22A-174</a> Knob Switch Test, <a href="#">page 22A-202</a>

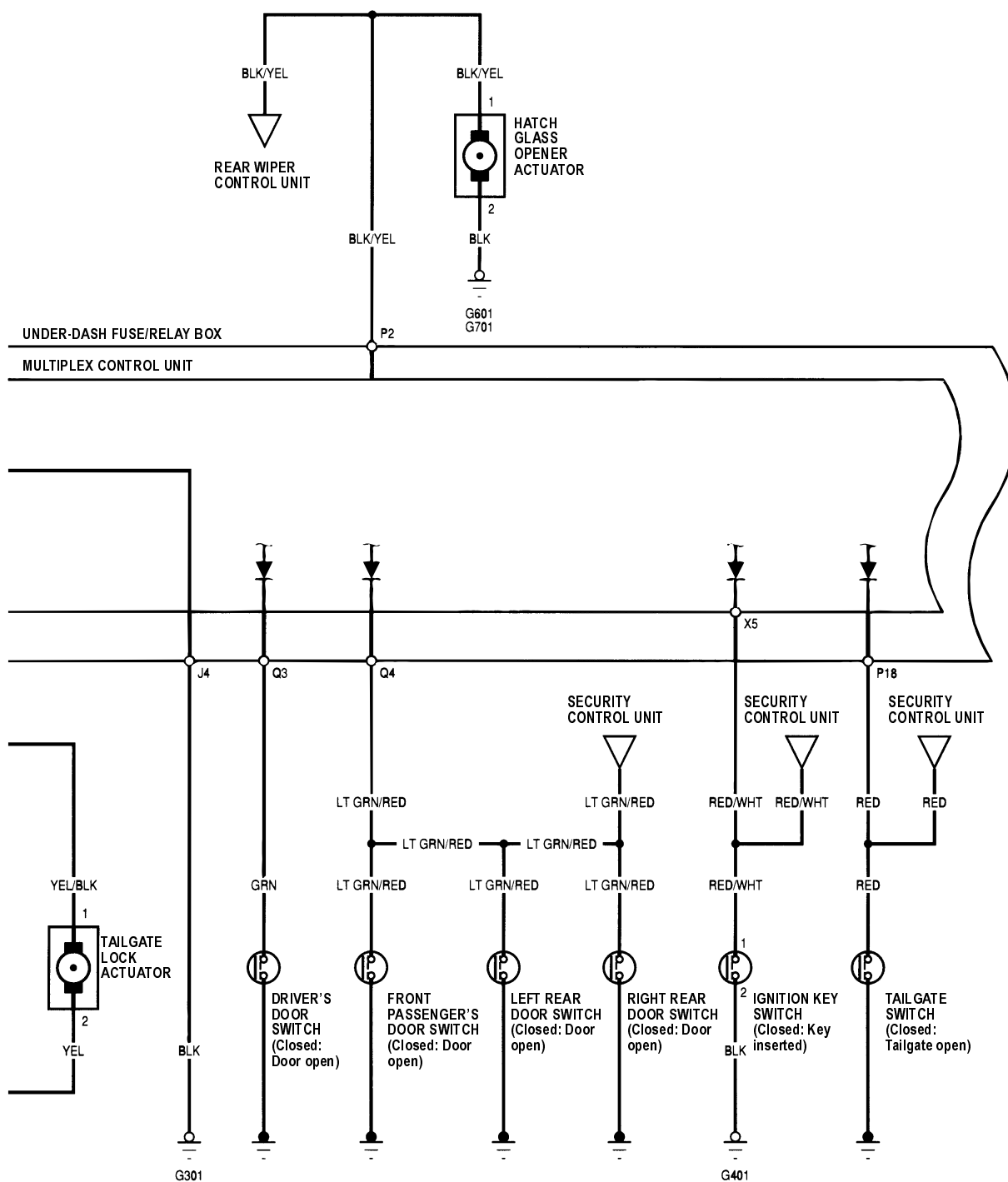
KE model:



1	TAILGATE LOCK ACTUATOR	Test, <a href="#">page 22A-178</a>	10	DRIVER'S SUPER LOCKING CONTROL UNIT	Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-172</a>
	TAILGATE KNOB SWITCH	Test, <a href="#">page 22A-205</a>	11	DRIVER'S DOOR KEY CYLINDER SWITCH	Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-204</a>
2	HATCH GLASS OPENER ACTUATOR	Test, <a href="#">page 22A-178</a>	12	DRIVER'S SUPER LOCKING ACTUATOR/KNOB SWITCH	Actuator Test, <a href="#">page 22A-174</a> Knob Switch Test, <a href="#">page 22A-202</a>
3	LEFT REAR DOOR SWITCH		13	DRIVER'S DOOR SWITCH	
4	LEFT REAR SUPER LOCKING CONTROL UNIT	Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-172</a>	14	RIGHT REAR SUPER LOCKING CONTROL UNIT	Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-172</a>
5	FRONT PASSENGER'S SUPER LOCKING ACTUATOR/KNOB SWITCH	Actuator Test, <a href="#">page 22A-174</a> Knob Switch Test, <a href="#">page 22A-202</a>	15	RIGHT REAR SUPER LOCKING ACTUATOR/KNOB SWITCH	Actuator Test, <a href="#">page 22A-174</a> Knob Switch Test, <a href="#">page 22A-202</a>
6	FRONT PASSENGER'S SUPER LOCKING CONTROL UNIT	Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-172</a>	16	RIGHT REAR DOOR SWITCH	
7	KEYLESS RECEIVER UNIT	Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-165</a>	17	FRONT PASSENGER'S DOOR SWITCH	
8	MULTIPLEX CONTROL UNIT	Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-166</a>	18	LEFT REAR SUPER LOCKING ACTUATOR/KNOB SWITCH	Actuator Test, <a href="#">page 22A-174</a> Knob Switch Test, <a href="#">page 22A-202</a>
9	IGNITION KEY SWITCH	Test, <a href="#">page 22A-113</a>	19	TAILGATE SWITCH	Test, <a href="#">page 22A-110</a> Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-110</a>

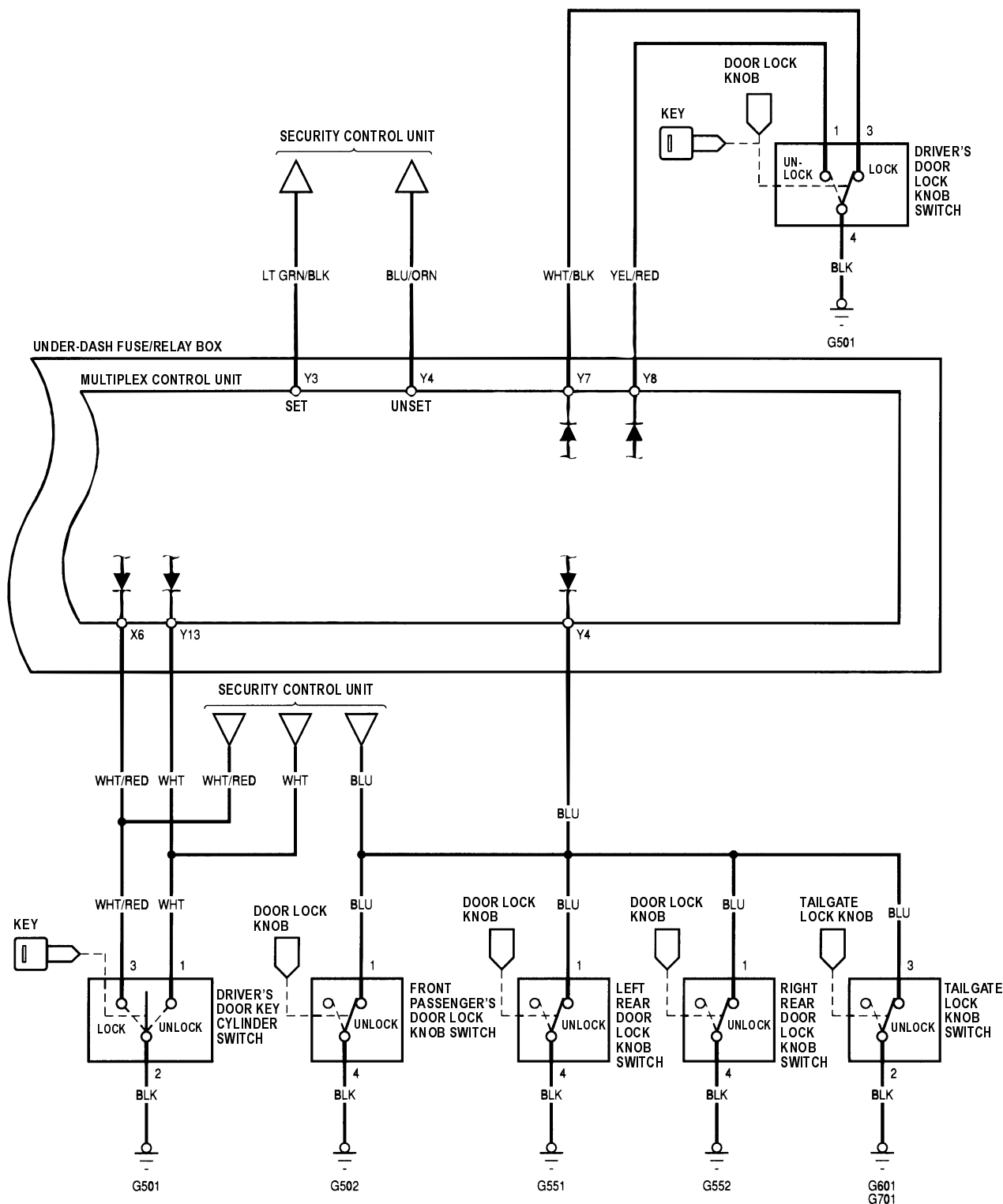
## Circuit Diagram - With Super Locking





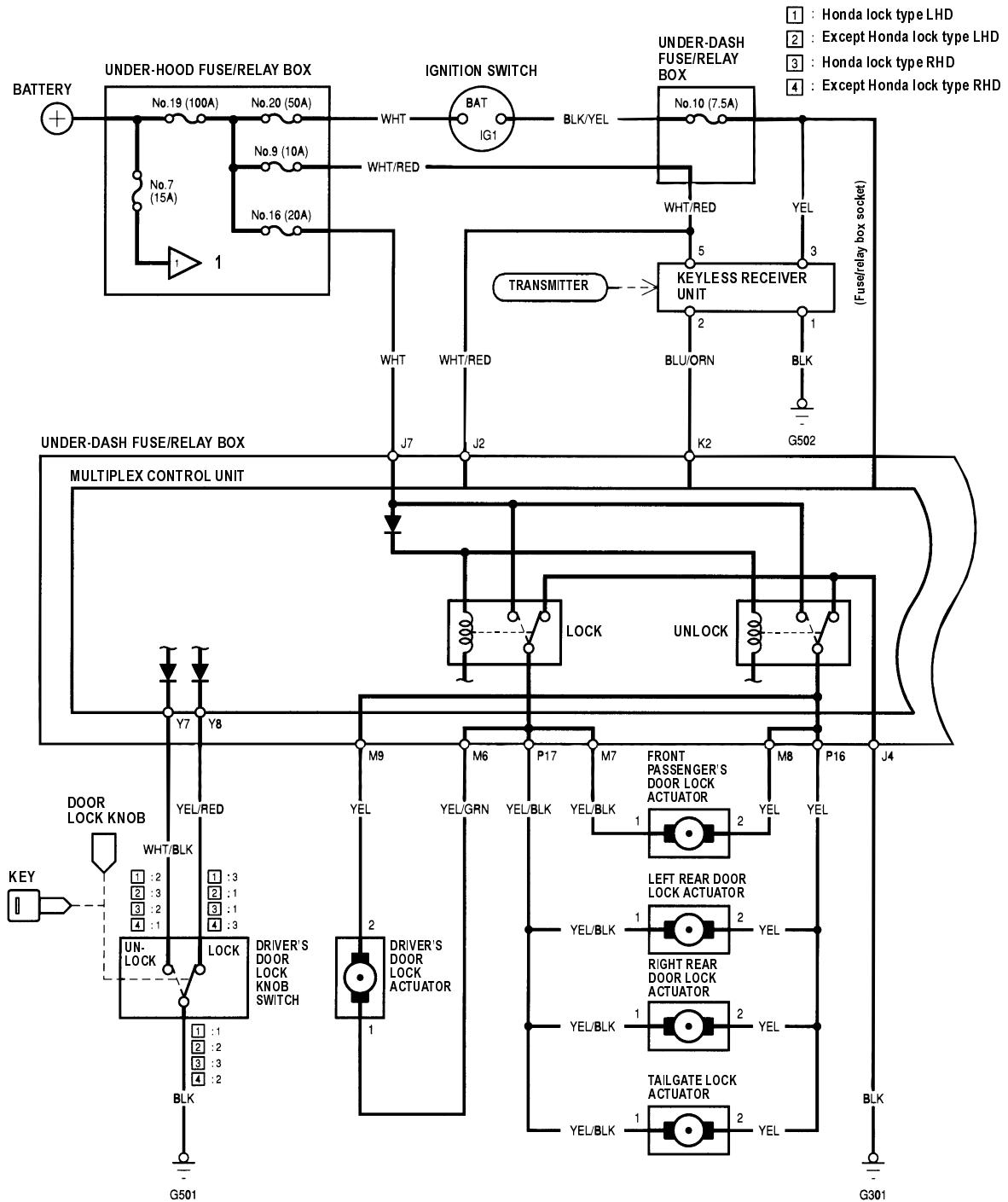
(cont'd)

Circuit Diagram - With Super Locking (cont'd)

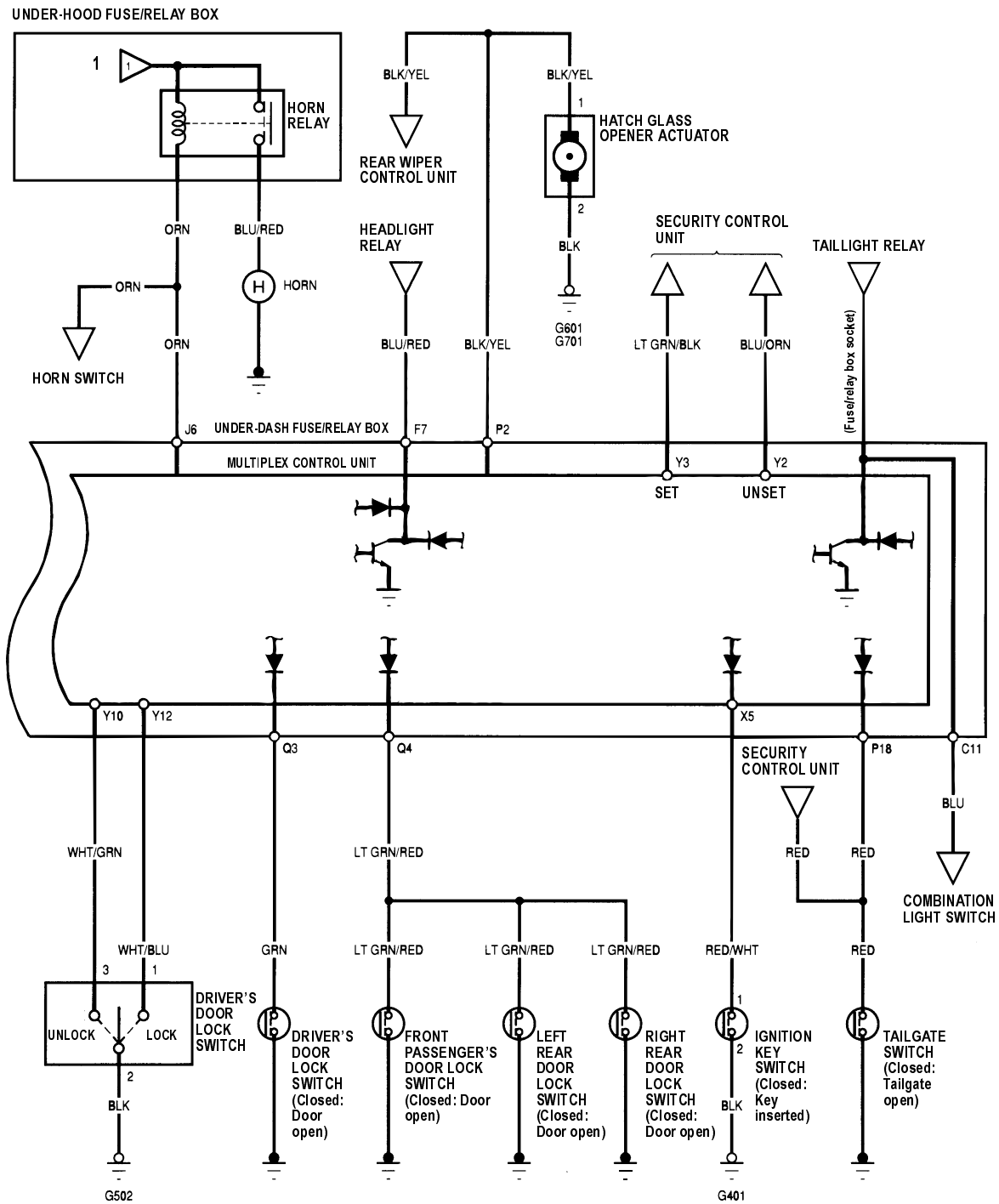




## Circuit Diagram - Without Super Locking



## Circuit Diagram - Without Super Locking (cont'd)

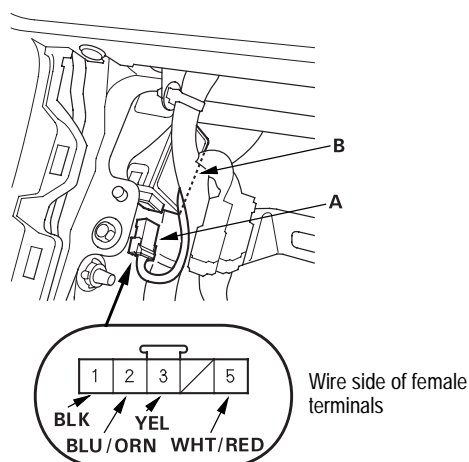


1 No.7 (15A) FUSE From [page 22A-163](#)



## Keyless Receiver Unit Input Test

1. Remove the heater control panel or climate control unit (see page 21-24).
2. Disconnect the 5P connector (A) from the keyless receiver unit (B).



3. Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals are OK, go to step 5.
4. Reconnect the connector, and make these input tests at the connector.
  - If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
  - If all the input tests prove OK, go to step 5.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
1	BLK	Under all conditions	Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G502)</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
3	YEL	Ignition switch ON (II)	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 10 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Ignition switch OFF	Check for voltage to ground: There should be no voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Short to power on No. 10 (7.5A) fuse circuit</li> </ul>
5	WHT/RED	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 9 (10A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>

5. Disconnect the connector, and make this input test at the connector.
  - If the test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
  - If the input test prove OK, replace the keyless receiver unit.

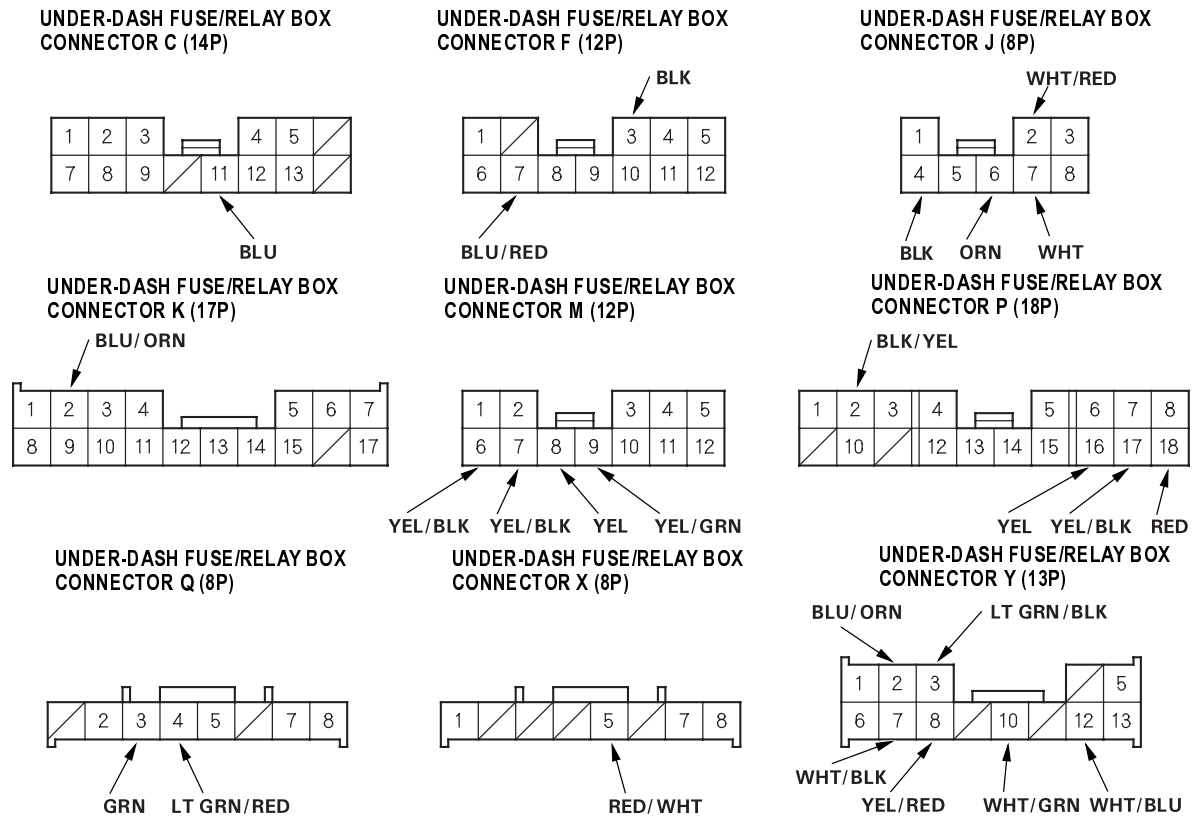
Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
2	BLU/ORN	Ignition switch OFF, under-dash fuse/relay box connector K (17P) disconnected	Check for continuity between the No. 2 terminal and the No. 2 terminal of the under-dash fuse/relay box connector K (17P). There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An open in the wire</li> <li>• A short to ground in the wire</li> </ul>
			Check for continuity between the No. 2 terminal and body ground: There should be no continuity.	

### Control Unit Input Test - Without Super Locking

NOTE: For the hatch glass unlock button test, refer to the rear wiper control unit input test (see page 22A-220).

1. Before testing, troubleshoot the multiplex control system (see page 22A-231).
2. Remove the dashboard lower cover.
3. Disconnect the under-dash fuse/relay box connectors.

NOTE: All connectors are wire side of female terminals.



4. Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals look OK, go to step 5.



5. With the connectors still disconnected, make these input tests at the connector.
- If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
  - If all the input tests prove OK, go to step 6.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
J4	BLK	Under all conditions	Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G301)</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
J2	WHT/RED	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 9 (10A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
J7	WHT	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 16 (20A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
M7	YEL/BLK	Connect J7 terminal to M6 [or M9] terminal, and M9 [or M6] terminal to F3 terminal.	Check actuator operation: The driver's door lock actuator should lock [or unlock].	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 16 (20A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty driver's door lock actuator</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
M9	YEL/GRN			
M6	YEL/BLK	Connect J7 terminal to M7 [or M8] terminal, and M8 [or M7] terminal to F3 terminal.	Check actuator operation: The front passenger's door lock actuator should lock [or unlock].	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 16 (20A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty front passenger's door lock actuator</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
M8	YEL			
P16	YEL	Connect J7 terminal to P17 [or P16] terminal, and P16 [or P17] terminal to F3 terminal.	Check actuator operation: The both rear door lock actuator should lock [or unlock].	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 16 (20A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty left or right door lock actuator</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
P17	YEL/BLK			
K2	BLU/ORN	Under all conditions	Check for continuity between the K2 terminal and the keyless receiver unit 5P connector No. 2 terminal with 5P connector disconnected: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
Y2*	BLU/ORN	Under all conditions	Check for continuity between the Y2 terminal and the security control unit A17 terminal with the security control unit 20P connector disconnected: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
Y3*	LT GRN/BLK	Under all conditions	Check for continuity between the Y3 terminal and the security control unit A6 terminal with the security control unit 20P connector disconnected: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>

\*: With security system

(cont'd)

## Control Unit Input Test - Without Super Locking (cont'd)

6. Reconnect all connections to the under-dash fuse/relay box, and make sure these input tests at the appropriate connectors on the under-dash fuse/relay box.

- If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
- If all the input tests prove OK, the multiplex control unit must be faulty, replace the under-dash fuse/relay box assembly.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
P18	RED	Tailgate open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G601 or G553)</li> <li>• Faulty trunk or tailgate switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Tailgate closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty trunk switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
Q3	GRN	Driver's door open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's door switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Driver's door closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's door switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
Q4	LT GRN/ RED	Passenger's door open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty passenger's door switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Passenger's door closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty passenger's door switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
X5	RED/WHT	Ignition key inserted into the ignition switch	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G401)</li> <li>• Faulty ignition key switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Ignition key removed from the ignition switch	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty ignition key switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
Y7	WHT/BLK	Driver's door lock knob switch unlocked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>• Faulty driver's door lock knob switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Driver's door lock knob switch locked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's door lock knob switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
Y8	YEL/RED	Driver's door lock knob switch locked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>• Faulty driver's door lock knob switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Driver's door lock knob switch unlocked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's door lock knob switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
Y10	WHT/GRN	Driver's door lock switch unlocked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>• Faulty driver's door lock switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Driver's door lock switch in neutral	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's door lock switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
Y12	WHT/BLU	Driver's door lock switch locked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>• Faulty driver's door lock switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Driver's door lock switch in neutral	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's door lock switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
P2	BLK/YEL	Press the keyless transmitter hatch glass unlock button	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage for a moment.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G601, G701)</li> <li>• Faulty hatch glass opener actuator</li> <li>• An open in a wire</li> </ul>
C11	BLU	Under all conditions	Attach to ground: Parking, side marker, license plate lights and taillights should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 2 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty taillight relay</li> <li>• Faulty under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
F7	BLU/RED	Under all conditions	Attach to ground: Headlights should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 15 or 17 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty headlight relay 1 or 2</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
J6	ORN	Under all conditions	Attach to ground: The horn should sound.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 7 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty horn relay</li> <li>• Faulty horn</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>

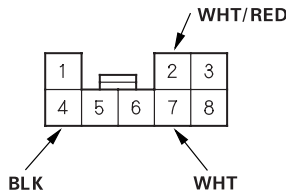
## Control Unit Input Test - With Super Locking

NOTE: For the hatch glass unlock button test, refer to the rear wiper control unit input test (see page 22A-220).

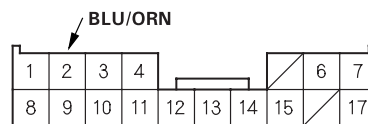
1. Before testing, troubleshoot the multiplex control system (see page 22A-231).
2. Remove the dashboard lower cover.
3. Disconnect the under-dash fuse/relay box connectors.

NOTE: All connectors are wire side of female terminals.

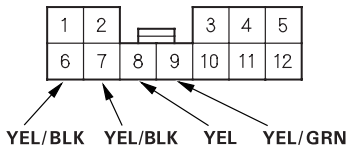
UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX  
CONNECTOR J (8P)



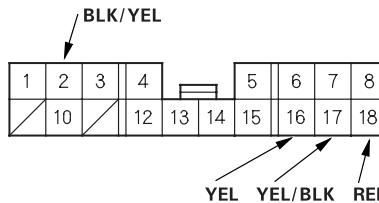
UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX  
CONNECTOR K (17P)



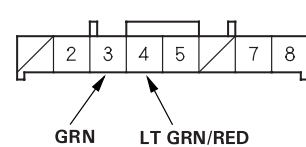
UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX  
CONNECTOR M (12P)



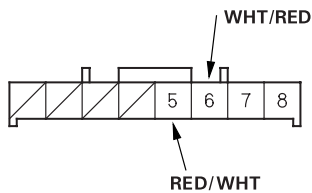
UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX  
CONNECTOR P (18P)



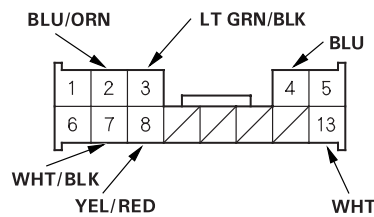
UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX  
CONNECTOR Q (8P)



UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX  
CONNECTOR X (8P)



UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX CONNECTOR Y (13P)



4. Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals look OK, go to step 5.

(cont'd)

### Control Unit Input Test - With Super Locking (cont'd)

5. Reconnect the connectors, and make these input tests at the connector.
- If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
  - If all the input tests prove OK, go to step 6.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
J2	WHT/RED	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 9 (10A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
J7	WHT	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 16 (20A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
K2	BLU/ORN	Under all conditions	Check for continuity between the K2 terminal and the keyless receiver unit 5P connector No. 2 terminal with the 5P connector disconnected: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
M6	YEL/BLK	Connect J7 terminal to M7 [or M8] terminal, and M8 [or M7] terminal to F3 terminal.	Check actuator operation: The front passenger's door lock actuator should lock [or unlock].	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 16 (20A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty actuator</li> <li>• Faulty super locking control unit</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
M8	YEL			
M7	YEL/BLK	Connect J7 terminal to M6 [or M9] terminal, and M9 [or M6] terminal to F3 terminal.	Check actuator operation: The driver's door lock actuator should lock [or unlock].	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 16 (20A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty actuator</li> <li>• Faulty super locking control unit</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
M9	YEL/GRN			
P17	YEL/BLK	Connect J7 terminal to P17 [or P16] terminal, and P16 [or P17] terminal to F3 terminal.	Check actuator operation: The left rear door, right rear door and tailgate lock actuator should lock [or unlock].	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 16 (20A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty actuator</li> <li>• Faulty left rear or right rear super locking control unit.</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
P16	YEL			
J4	BLK	Under all conditions	Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G301)</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>

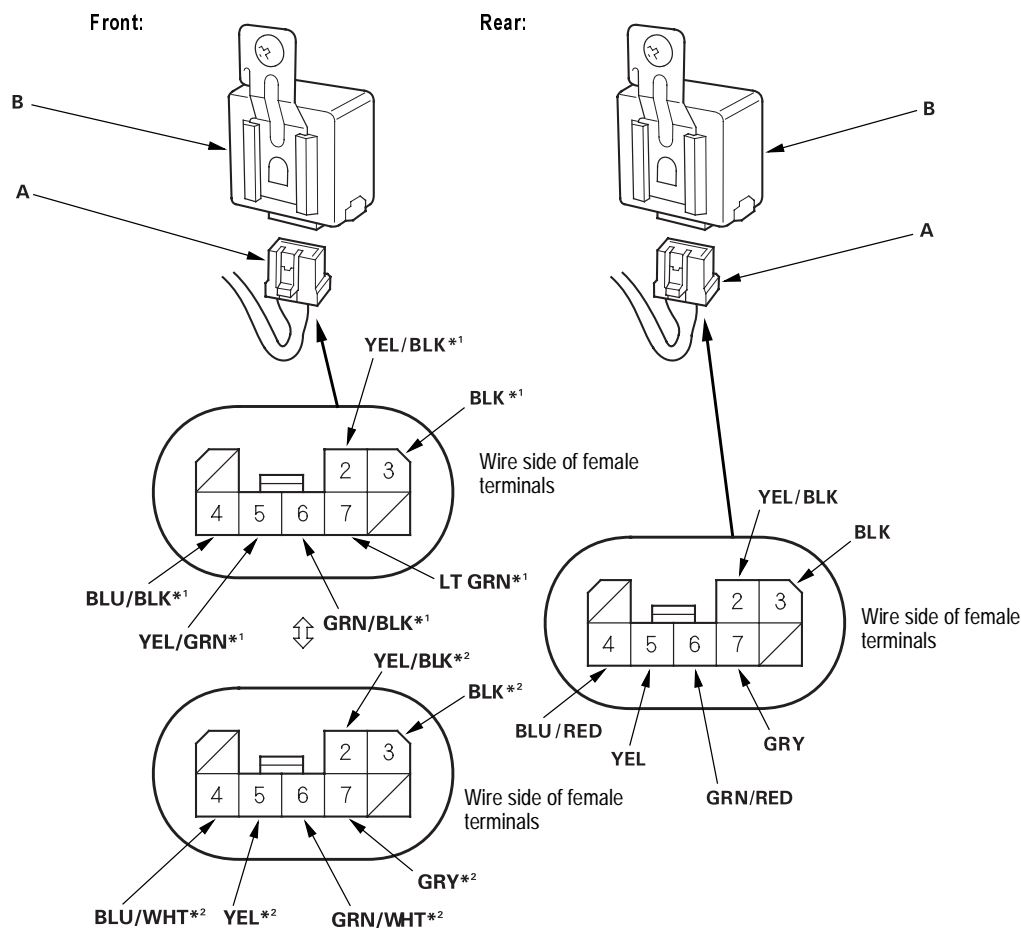


6. Reconnect all connector to the under-dash fuse/relay box, and make sure these input tests at the appropriate connectors on the under-dash fuse/relay box.
  - If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
  - If all the input tests prove OK, the multiplex control unit must be faulty, replace the under-dash fuse/relay box assembly.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
P18	RED	Tailgate open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Poor ground (G601)</li> <li>Faulty tailgate latch switch</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Tailgate closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
X5	RED/WHT	Ignition key inserted into the ignition switch	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Poor ground (G401)</li> <li>Faulty ignition key switch</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Ignition key removed from the ignition switch	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
Q3	GRN	Driver's door open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty driver's door switch</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Driver's door closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
Q4	LT GRN/RED	Passengers door open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty passenger's door switch</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Passenger's door closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
Y4	BLU	Front passenger's, tailgate, left rear or right rear door lock knob switch unlocked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty front passenger's, tailgate, left rear or right rear door lock knob switch</li> <li>Poor ground (G502, G551, G552, G601, G701)</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
X6	WHT/RED	Driver's door key cylinder switch lock	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty driver's door key cylinder switch</li> <li>Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Driver's door key cylinder switch in neutral	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
Y13	WHT	Driver's door key cylinder switch unlocked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty driver's door key cylinder switch</li> <li>Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Driver's door key cylinder switch in neutral	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
Y7	WHT/BLK	Driver's door lock knob switch unlocked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>Faulty driver's door lock knob switch</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Driver's door lock knob switch locked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
Y8	YEL/RED	Driver's door lock knob switch locked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>Faulty driver's door lock knob switch</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Driver's door lock knob switch unlocked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
Y2	BLU/ORN	Under all conditions	Check for continuity between the Y2 terminal and the security control unit A17 terminal with the security control unit 20P connector disconnected: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
Y3	LT GRN/BLK	Under all conditions	Check for continuity between the Y3 terminal and the security control unit A6 terminal with the security control unit 20P connector disconnected: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
P2	BLK/YEL	Press the keyless transmitter hatch glass unlock button	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage for a moment.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Poor ground (G601, G701)</li> <li>Faulty hatch glass opener actuator</li> <li>An open in a wire</li> </ul>

## Super Locking Control Unit Input Test

1. Remove the each door panel (see page 20-6).
2. Disconnect the 8 P connector (A) from the super locking control unit (B).
3. Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals look OK, make the following input tests at the connector.
    - If a test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
    - If all the input tests prove OK, the control unit must be faulty, replace it.



\*1: Driver's

\*2: Front passenger's





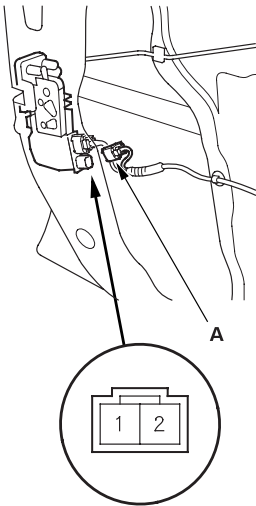
Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
3	BLK	Under all conditions	Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Poor ground (G501, G502, G551, G552)</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
2	YEL/BLK	Connect the No. 2 terminal to the No. 7 terminal and the No. 6 terminal to the No. 3 terminal momentarily with ignition switch ON (II)	Check actuator operation: The actuator should lock.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty door lock actuator</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
7	LT GRN [GRY]			
5	YEL/GRN [YEL]		Check actuator operation: The actuator should unlock.	
6	GRN/BLK [GRN/WHT or GRN/RED]	Connect the No. 5 terminal to the No. 6 terminal and the No. 7 terminal to the No. 3 terminal momentarily with ignition switch ON (II)		
4	BLU/BLK [BLU/WHT or BLU/RED]	Under all conditions	Check for continuity between the No. 4 terminal and No. 2 terminal of the actuator. There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>

[ ]: Passenger's

Door Lock Actuator Test

Driver's Door without Super Locking:

- 1. Remove the driver's door panel (see page 20-9).
- 2. Disconnect the 2P connector (A) from the actuator.



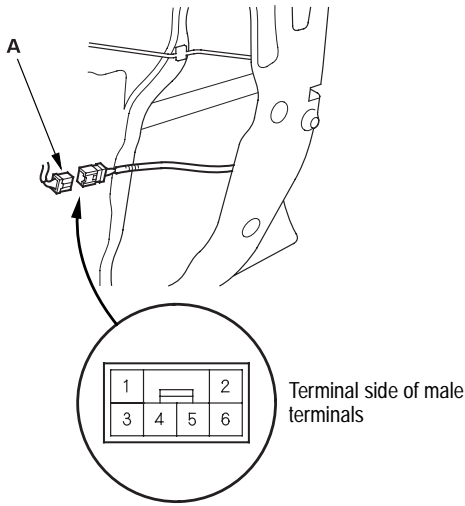
- 3. Check actuator operation by connecting power and ground according to the table. To prevent damage to the actuator, apply battery voltage only momentarily.

Terminal Position	1	2
LOCK	⊕	⊖
UNLOCK	⊖	⊕

- 4. If the actuator does not work as specified, replace it.

Driver's Door with Super Locking:

- 1. Remove the driver's door panel (see page 20-9).
- 2. Disconnect the 6P connector (A) from the actuator.



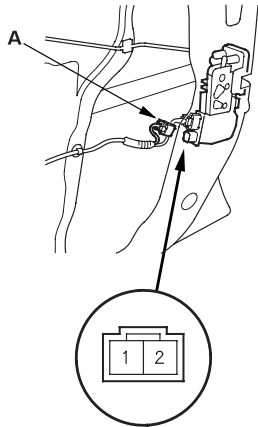
- 3. Check actuator operation by connecting power and ground according to the table. To prevent damage to the actuator, apply battery voltage only momentarily.

Terminal Position	5	6
LOCK	⊖	⊕
UNLOCK	⊕	⊖

- 4. If the actuator does not work as specified, replace it.

### Passenger's Door without Super Locking:

- 1. Remove the passenger's door panel (see page 20-9).
- 2. Disconnect the 2P connector (A) from the actuator.



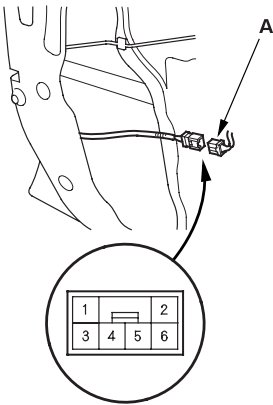
- 3. Check actuator operation by connecting power and ground according to the table. To prevent damage to the actuator, apply battery voltage only momentarily.

Terminal	1	2
Position		
LOCK	+	-
UNLOCK	-	+

- 4. If the actuator does not work as specified, replace it.

### Passenger's Door with Super Locking:

- 1. Remove the passenger's door panel (see page 20-9).
- 2. Disconnect the 6P connector (A) from the actuator.



- 3. Check actuator operation by connecting power and ground according to the table. To prevent damage to the actuator, apply battery voltage only momentarily.

Terminal	5	6
Position		
LOCK	-	+
UNLOCK	+	-

- 4. If the actuator does not work as specified, replace it.

## Transmitter Test

### NOTE:

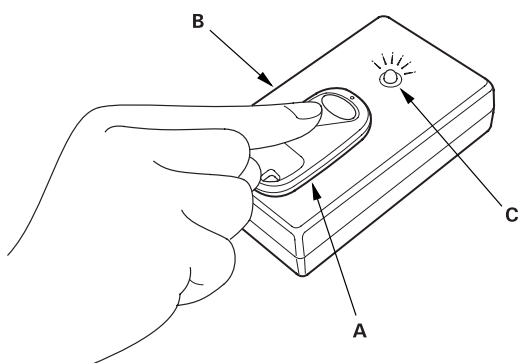
- If the doors unlock or lock with the transmitter, but the LED on the transmitter does not come on, the LED is faulty; replace the transmitter.
- If any door is open, you cannot lock the door with the transmitter.
- If you unlocked the doors with the transmitter, but do not open any of the doors within 30 seconds, the doors relock automatically.
- The doors do not lock or unlock with the transmitter if the ignition key is in the ignition switch.

Using a keyless entry checker (07MAJ-SP00300):

Put the transmitter (A) on the keyless entry checker (B) and press the button.

- If the ray indicator light (C) does not come on, check for:
  - a dead or low battery.
  - faulty transmitter.
- If the ray indicator light comes on, the transmitter is OK.

NOTE: When the transmitter battery was replaced, aim the transmitter at the receiver, and press the transmitter button six times. The receiver is located behind the center lower panel. Confirm you can hear the sound of the door lock actuators when you press the sixth time.



## Transmitter Programming

### Storing transmitter codes:

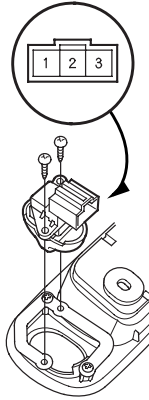
The codes of up to three transmitters can be programmed into the keyless receiver unit memory. (If a fourth code is stored, the code that was programmed first will be erased.)

NOTE: It is important to maintain the time limits between the steps. Make sure the doors and the tailgate are closed.

1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
2. Within 1 to 4 seconds, push the transmitter lock or unlock button.
3. Within 1 to 4 seconds, turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Within 1 to 4 seconds, turn the ignition switch ON (II).
5. Within 1 to 4 seconds, push the transmitter lock or unlock button.
6. Within 1 to 4 seconds, turn the ignition switch OFF.
7. Within 4 seconds, turn the ignition switch ON (II).
8. Within 1 to 4 seconds, push the transmitter lock or unlock button.
9. Within 1 to 4 seconds, turn the ignition switch OFF.
10. Within 4 seconds, turn the ignition switch ON (II).
11. Within 1 to 4 seconds, push the transmitter lock or unlock button.
12. Confirm you can hear the sound of the door lock actuators. Within 1 to 4 seconds, push the transmitter lock or unlock button again.
13. Within 10 seconds, press the transmitter lock or unlock buttons on the two additional transmitters. Confirm that you can hear the sound of the door lock actuators after each transmitter code is stored.
14. Turn the ignition switch OFF, and remove the key.
15. Confirm proper operation of the transmitters.

### Door Lock Switch Test

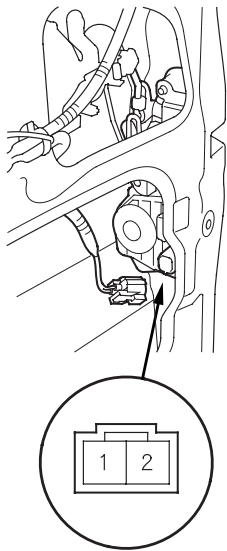
1. Remove the door panel ([see page 20-9](#)).
2. Remove the two mounting screws and the door lock switch.



3. Check for continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals:
  - There should be continuity when the door lock switch is in the LOCKED position.
  - There should be no continuity when the door lock switch is in the UNLOCKED position.
4. Check for continuity between the No. 2 and No. 3 terminals:
  - There should be continuity when the door lock switch is in the UNLOCKED position.
  - There should be no continuity when the door lock switch is in the LOCKED position.
5. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the door lock switch.

Tailgate Lock Actuator Test

- 1. Remove the tailgate lower trim panel (see page 20-80).
- 2. Disconnect the 2P connector from the actuator.



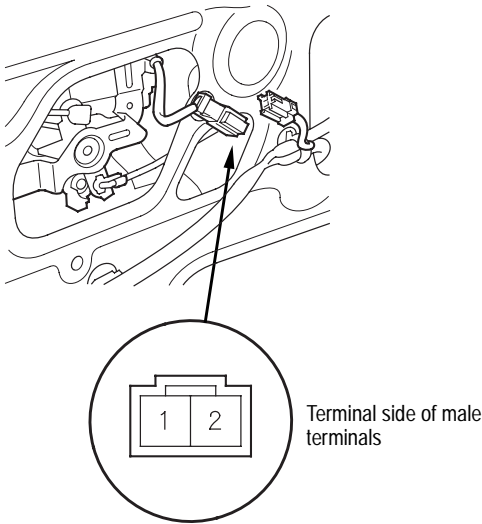
- 3. Check actuator operation by connecting power and ground according to the table. To prevent damage to actuator, apply battery voltage only momentarily.

Terminal	1	2
Position		
LOCK	+	-
UNLOCK	-	+

- 4. If the actuator does not operate as specified, replace it.

Hatch Glass Opener Actuator Test

- 1. Remove the tailgate lower trim panel (see page 20-80).
- 2. Disconnect the 2P connector from the actuator.

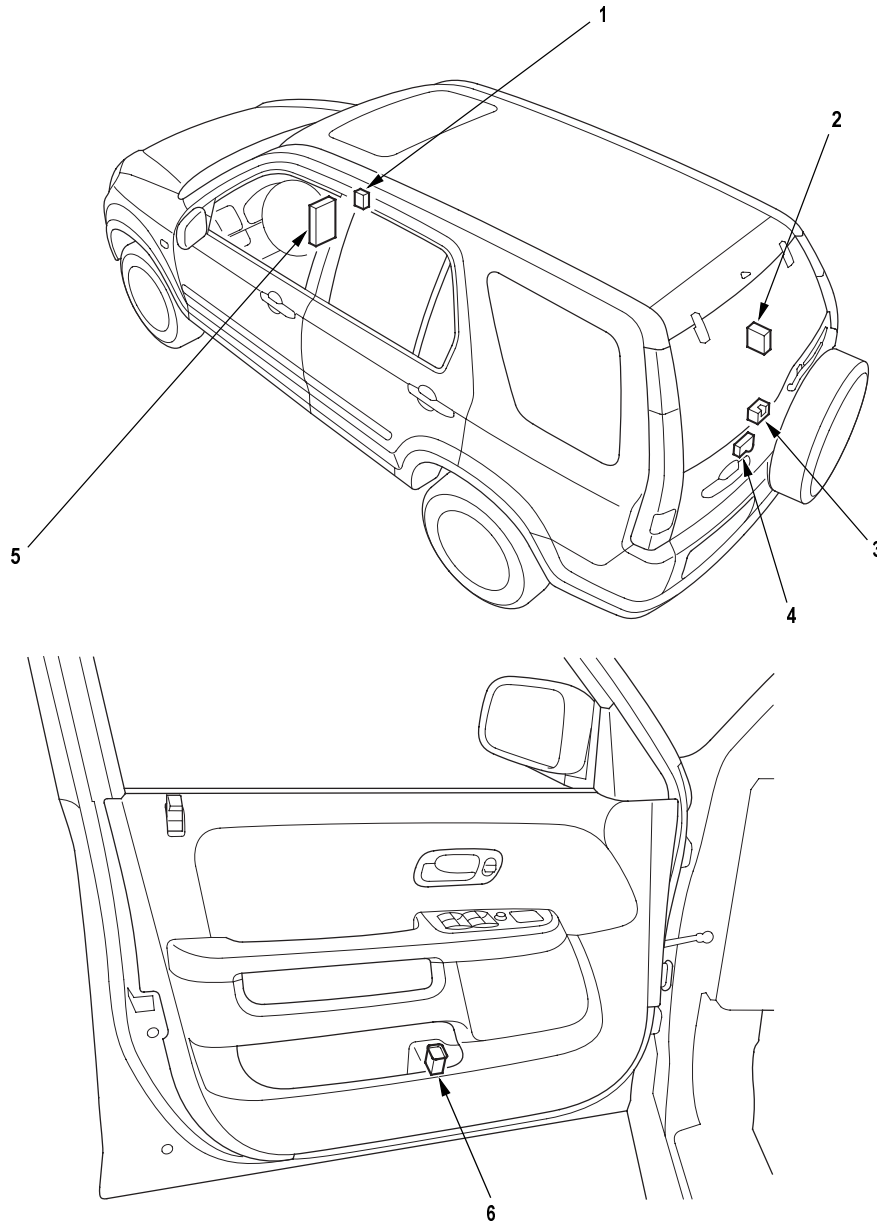


- 3. Connect power to the No. 1 terminal and ground to the No. 2 terminals momentarily. The actuator should operate.
- 4. If the actuator does not operate as specified, replace it.

## Hatch Glass Opener

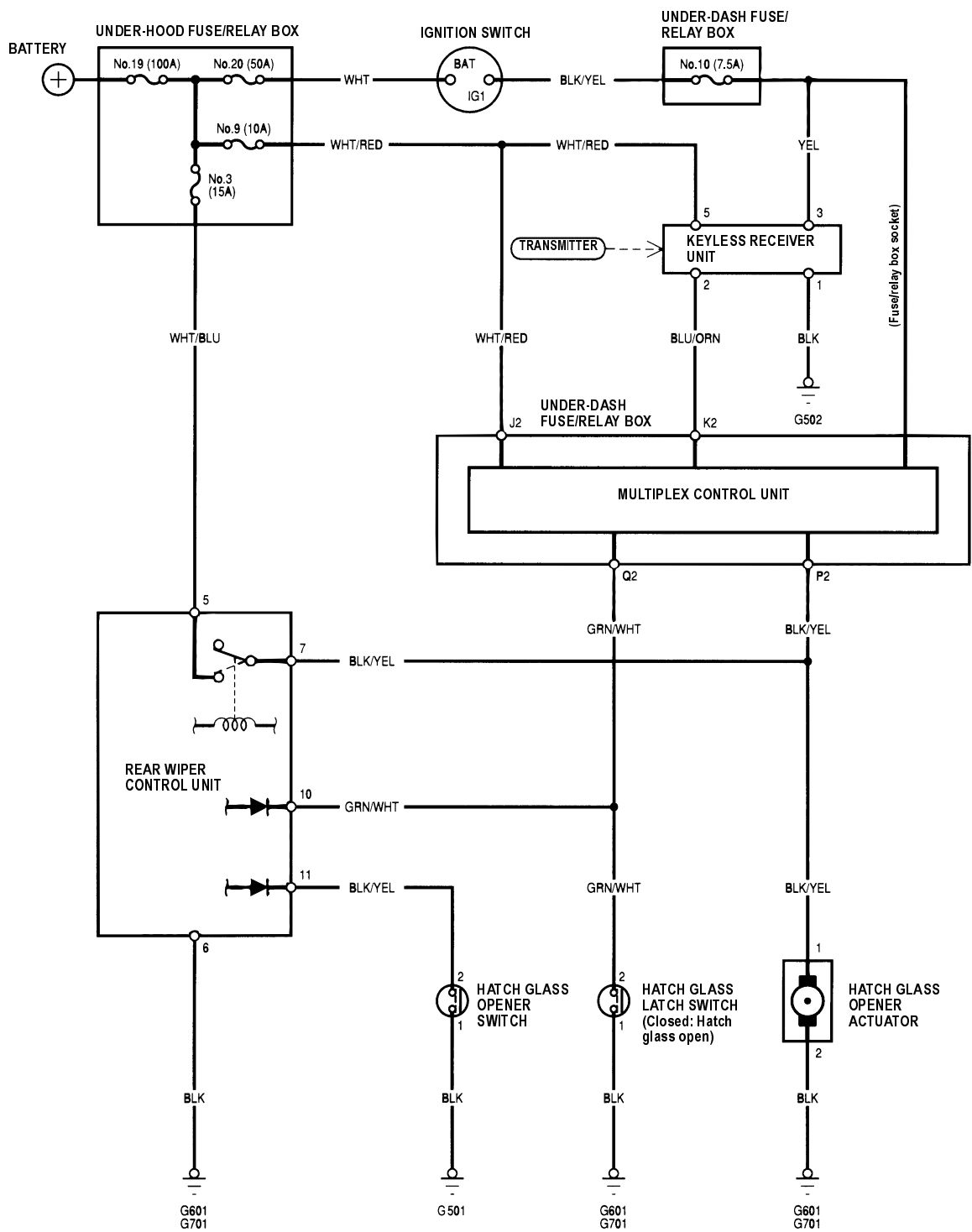
### Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- |   |                             |   |
|---|-----------------------------|---|
| 1 | KEYLESS RECEIVER UNIT       | Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-165</a>  |
| 2 | REAR WIPER CONTROL UNIT     | Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-220</a>  |
| 3 | HATCH GLASS LATCH SWITCH    | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-181</a>  |
| 4 | HATCH GLASS OPENER ACTUATOR | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-178</a>  |
| 5 | MULTIPLEX CONTROL UNIT      | Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-235</a>  |
| 6 | HATCH GLASS OPENER SWITCH   | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-181</a><br>Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-181</a> |

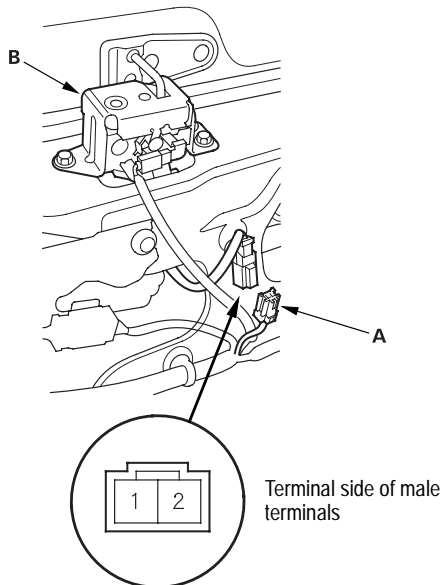
Circuit Diagram





## Hatch Glass Latch Switch Test

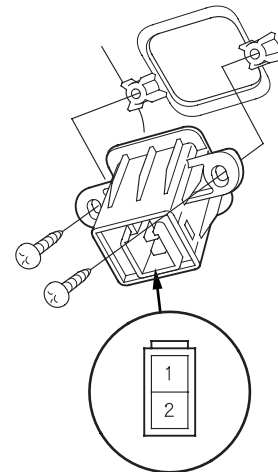
1. Remove the tailgate lower trim panel ([see page 20-80](#)).
2. Disconnect the 2P connector (A) from the latch switch (B).



3. Check for continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals.
  - There should be continuity when the hatch glass is open.
  - There should be no continuity when the hatch glass is closed.
4. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the latch switch.

## Hatch Glass Opener Switch Test/Replacement

1. Remove the driver's door panel ([see page 20-76](#)).
2. Disconnect the 2P connector from the opener switch.

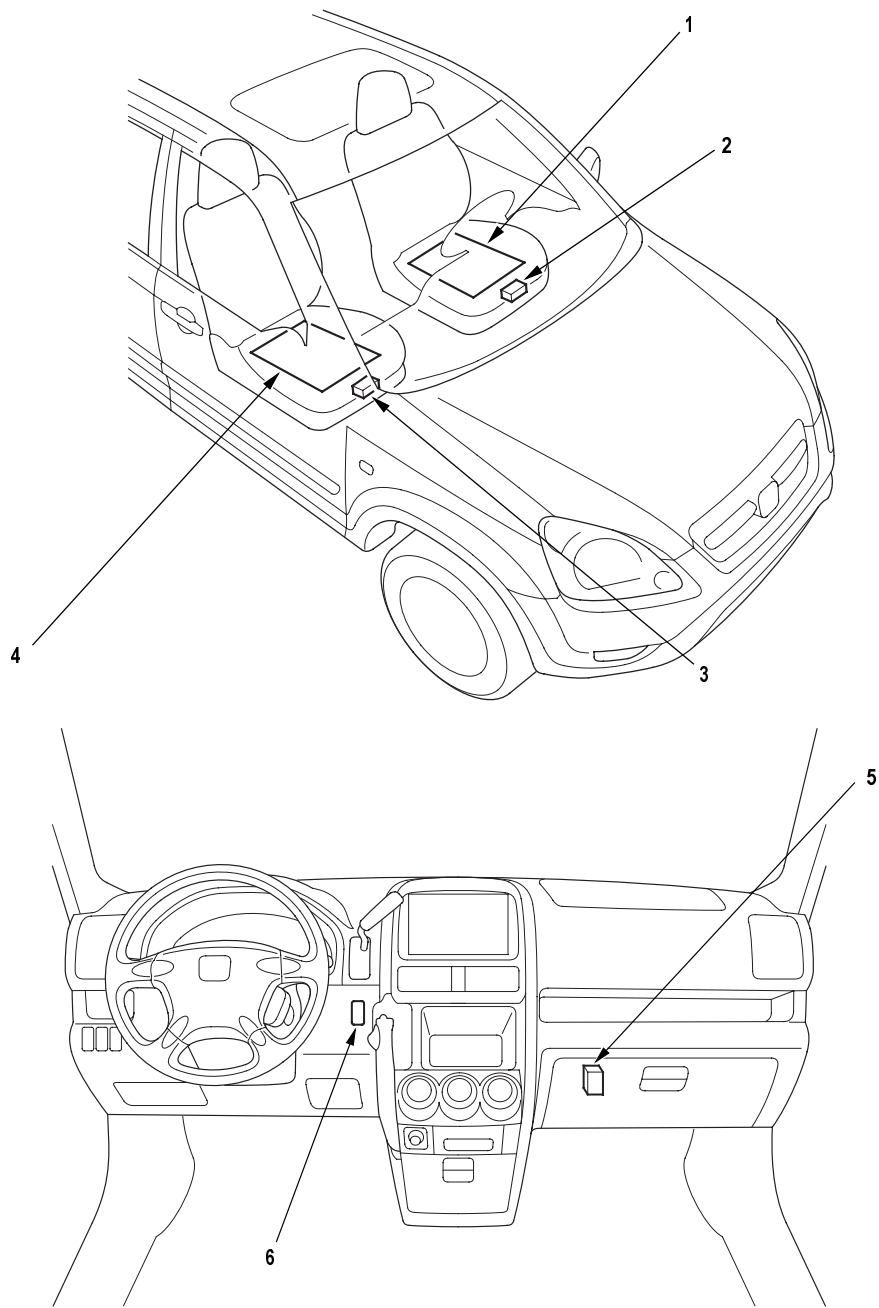


3. Check for continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals.
  - There should be continuity when the opener switch is pushed.
  - There should be no continuity when the opener switch is released.
4. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the opener switch.

Seat Heaters

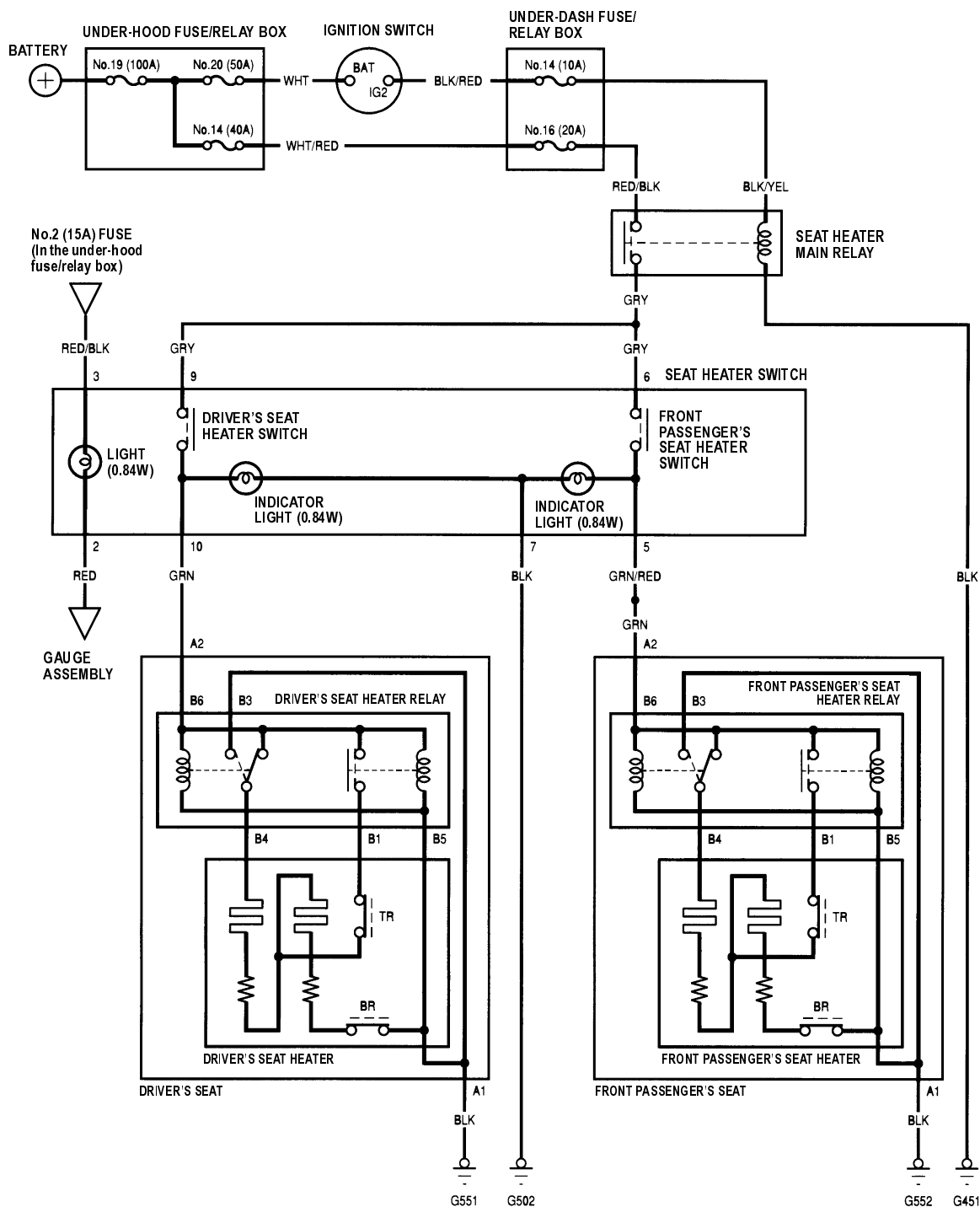
Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 DRIVER'S SEAT CUSHION HEATER  | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-184</a>  |
| 2 DRIVER'S SEAT HEATER RELAY  | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-184</a>  |
| 3 FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT HEATER RELAY                                 | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-184</a>  |
| 4 FRONT PASSENGER'S SEAT CUSHION HEATER                               | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-184</a>  |
| 5 SEAT HEATER MAIN RELAY<br>[Wire colors: GRY, RED/BLK, BLK, BLK/YEL] | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-60</a>   |
| 6 SEAT HEATER SWITCH  | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-185</a><br>Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-185</a> |

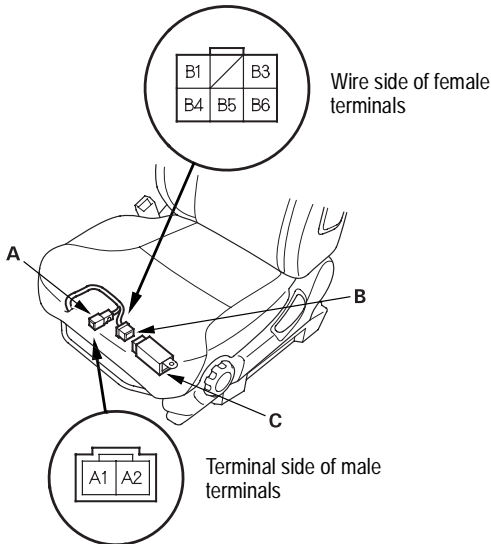
## Circuit Diagram



BR : BREAKER [OFF 45 - 55° C (133 - 131°F) ON 25 - 35° C (77 - 95°F)]  
 TR : THERMOSTAT [OFF 35 - 45°C (95 - 113°F) ON 15 - 25°C (59 - 77°F)]

### Seat Heater Test

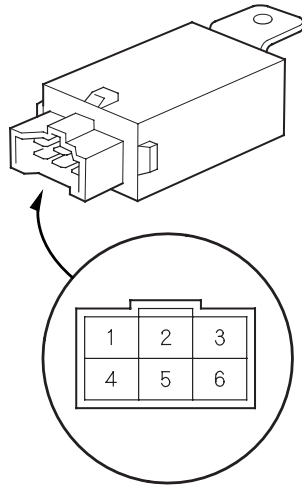
1. Remove the front seat ([see page 20-103](#)).
2. Disconnect the seat heater harness 2P connector (A) from the seat sub-harness and the 6P connector (B) from the seat heater relay (C).



3. Check for continuity between the A1 and B3 terminals, and A2 and B6 terminals. There should be continuity.  
If there is no continuity, replace the seat cushion ([see page 20-108](#)).
4. Check for continuity between the B1 and B4 terminals, and B1 and B5 terminals. There should be continuity.  
If there is no continuity, replace the seat cushion ([see page 20-108](#)).

### Seat Heater Relay Test

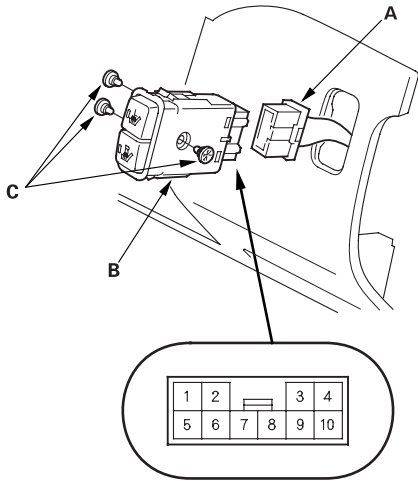
1. Remove the front seat ([see page 20-103](#)).
2. Disconnect the 6P connector from the seat heater relay (A).



3. Check for continuity between the No. 6 and No. 5 terminals, and No. 6 and No. 4 terminals. There should be continuity.  
If there is no continuity, replace the seat heater relay.
4. Check for continuity between the No. 1 and No. 6 terminals, and No. 3 and No. 4 terminals when power and ground are connected to the No. 6 and No. 5 terminals. There should be continuity.  
If there is no continuity, replace the seat heater relay.

Seat Heater Switch Test/Replacement

- 1. Remove the dashboard lower cover (see page 20-88).
- 2. Disconnect the 10P connector (A) from the seat heater switch (B), and remove the seat heater switch.



- 3. Check for continuity in each switch position according to the table.

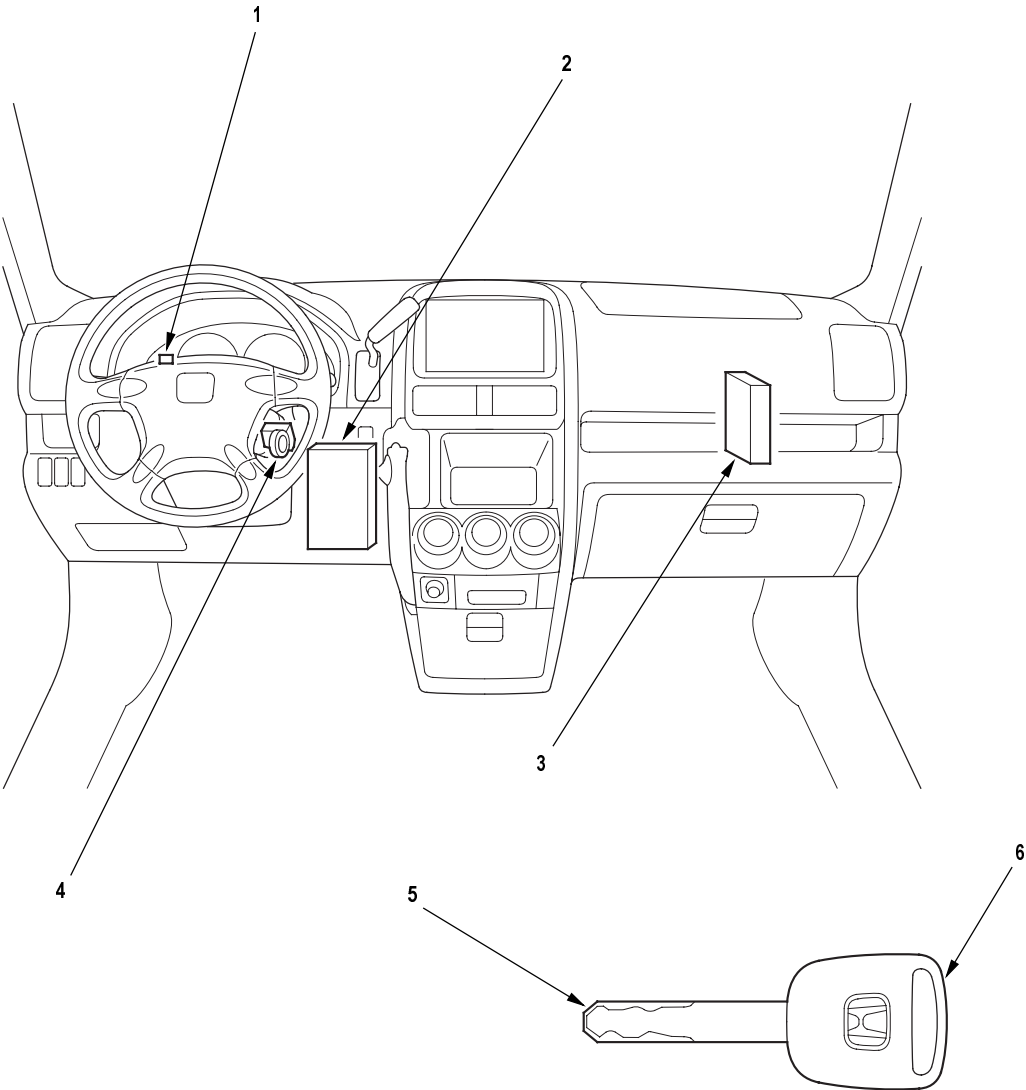
Terminal	2	3	5	6	7	9	10
Position							
ON							
OFF							

- 4. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the bulbs (C) or the switch.

Immobilizer System

Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



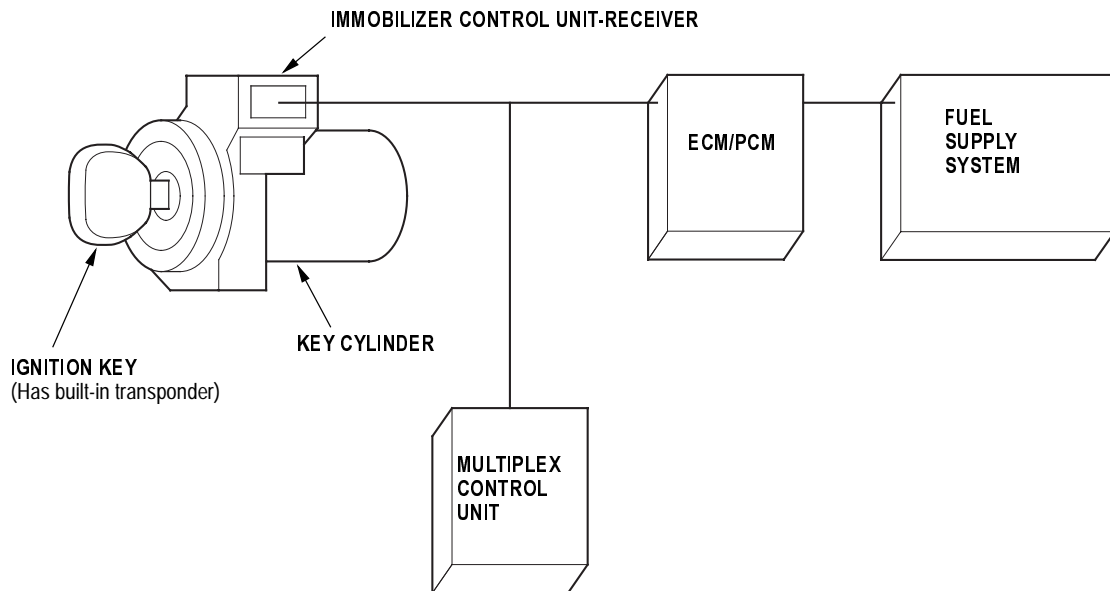
- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | IMMOBILIZER INDICATOR LIGHT                  | Bulb Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-73</a>   |
| 2 | MULTIPLEX CONTROL UNIT                       | Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-235</a>  |
| 3 | ECM/PCM                                      | Replacement, <a href="#">page 11-4</a> ; Substitute known-good for testing, <a href="#">page 11-5</a> |
| 4 | IMMOBILIZER CONTROL UNIT-RECEIVER            | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 22A-190</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-191</a>             |
| 5 | IGNITION KEY                                 |   |
| 6 | TRANSPONDER<br>(Built into the ignition key) |   |

### System Description

The vehicle is equipped with an immobilizer system (Type III) that will disable the vehicle unless the proper ignition key is used.

This system consists of a transponder located in the ignition key, an immobilizer control unit-receiver, an indicator light, the multiplex control unit, and the ECM/PCM.

When the key is inserted in the ignition switch and turned to the (II) position, the immobilizer control unit-receiver sends power to the transponder in the ignition key. The transponder then sends a coded signal back through the immobilizer control unit-receiver to the ECM/PCM. The ECM/PCM then energizes the fuel supply system.

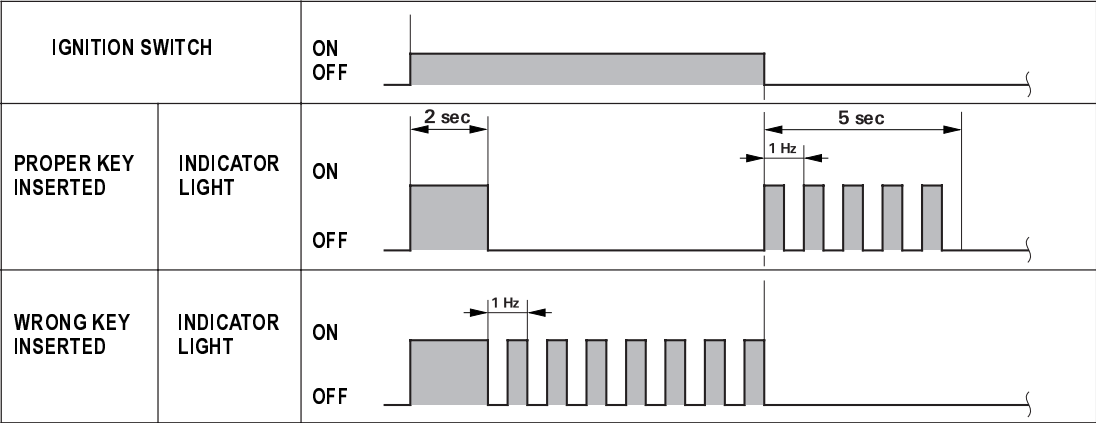


(cont'd)

System Description (cont'd)

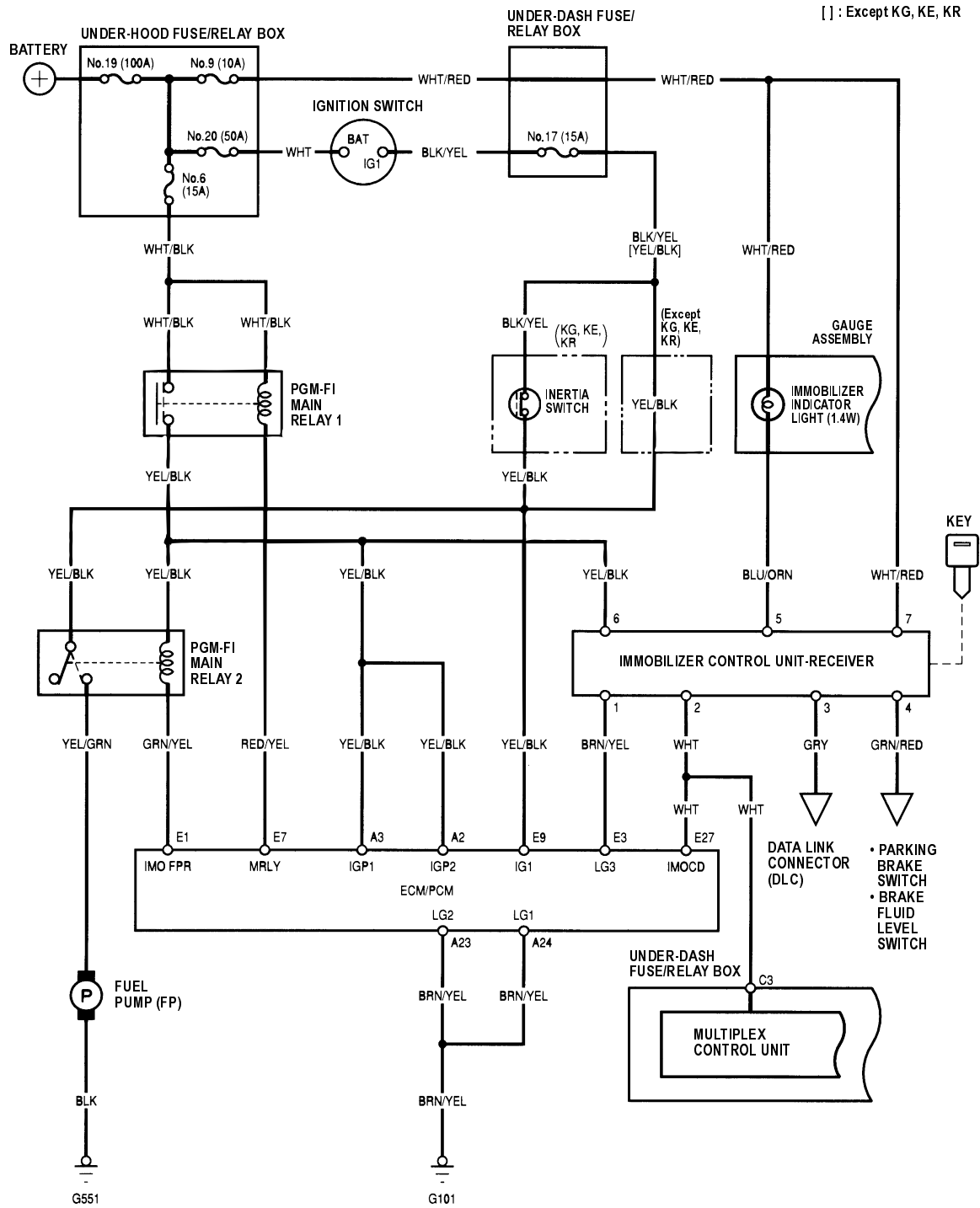
- If the proper key has been used, the immobilizer indicator light will come on for about 2 seconds, then go off.
- If the wrong key has been used whose code was not received or recognized by the unit, the indicator light will come on for about 2 seconds, then it will blink until the ignition switch is turned OFF. The engine will crank but not start.
- If the ignition switch is turned OFF, the indicator will blink for about 5 seconds to signal that the unit has been set correctly, then the indicator will go off.
- If the customer has lost his key, and cannot start the engine, contact Honda Customer Relations.

IMMOBILIZER INDICATOR LIGHT BLINKING PATTERN:





## Circuit Diagram



## Troubleshooting

Before troubleshooting the immobilizer system, troubleshoot any ECM/PCM with diagnostic trouble codes (DTCs) (see page 11-62), and make sure the ECM/PCM has no malfunction.

Note these items before troubleshooting:

- Due to the action of the immobilizer system, the engine takes slightly more time to start than on a vehicle without an immobilizer system.
- When the system is normal, and the proper key is inserted, the indicator light comes on for 2 seconds, then it will go off.
- If the indicator starts to blink after 2 seconds, or if the engine does not start, repeat the starting procedure. If the engine still does not start, continue with this procedure.

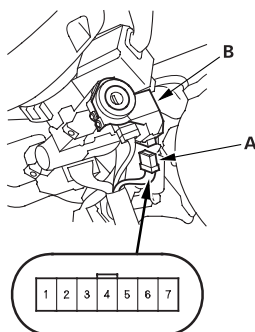
1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II) with programmed key.
2. Check to see if the immobilizer indicator light comes on.

*Does the indicator light blink?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Check for these problems:■

- Blown No. 9 (10A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.
  - An open in the BLU/ORN wire between the gauge assembly and the immobilizer control unit-receiver.
  - A faulty immobilizer indicator light.
  - An open in the WHT/RED wire between the gauge assembly and the under-hood fuse/relay box.
3. Remove the steering column covers (see page 17-24).
  4. Disconnect the 7P connector from the immobilizer control unit-receiver.



5. Check for voltage between the immobilizer control unit-receiver 7P connector No. 7 terminal and body ground.

*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Check for these problems:■

- Blown No. 9 (10A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.
  - An open in the WHT/RED wire.
6. Check for voltage between the immobilizer control unit-receiver 7P connector No. 6 terminal and body ground with the ignition switch ON (II).

*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 7.

**No** Check for these problems:

- Blown No. 6 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.
  - Faulty PGM-FI main relay 1.
  - An open in the YEL/BLK wire.
7. Check for voltage between the immobilizer control-unit receiver 7P connector No. 4 terminal and body ground with the parking brake lever pulled, then released.

*Is there 1 V or less, then 5 V or more?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Check for these problems:■

- Faulty parking brake switch or a poor body ground of the parking brake switch.
- Faulty brake fluid level switch.
- An open in the GRN/RED wire.



8. Check for continuity between the immobilizer control unit-receiver 7P connector No. 1 terminal and body ground.

*Is there voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Check for these problems:■

- Poor ground (G101).
- Faulty ECM/PCM.
- An open in the BRN/YEL wire.

9. Check for continuity between the immobilizer control unit-receiver 7P connector No. 2 terminal and ECM/PCM terminal E27.

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 10.

**No** Repair open in the WHT wire.■

10. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

11. Disconnect the ECM/PCM connector E.

12. Check for continuity between the immobilizer control unit-receiver 7P connector No. 2 terminal and body ground.

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short to ground in the WHT wire.■

**No** Go to step 13.

13. Check for continuity between the immobilizer control unit-receiver 7P connector No. 4 terminal and the multiplex control unit (under-dash fuse/relay box connector terminal C3).

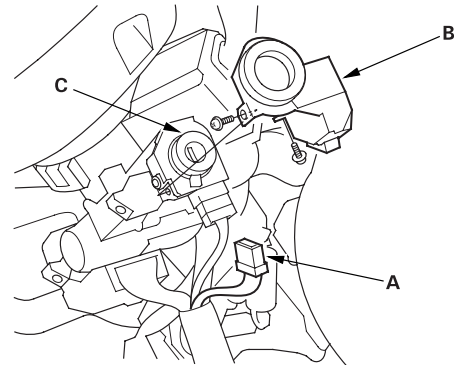
*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Replace the immobilizer control unit-receiver. After replacing the immobilizer control unit-receiver, rewrite the unit with a Honda PGM-Tester.■

**No** Repair open in the WHT wire. If the harness is OK, check to see if there is any Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) for the multiplex control unit. If it is, troubleshoot the multiplex control unit ([see page 22A-231](#)), then recheck.■

## Immobilizer Control Unit-Receiver Replacement

1. Remove the dashboard lower cover.
2. Remove the steering column covers ([see page 17-24](#)).
3. Disconnect the connector (A) from the immobilizer control unit-receiver (B).

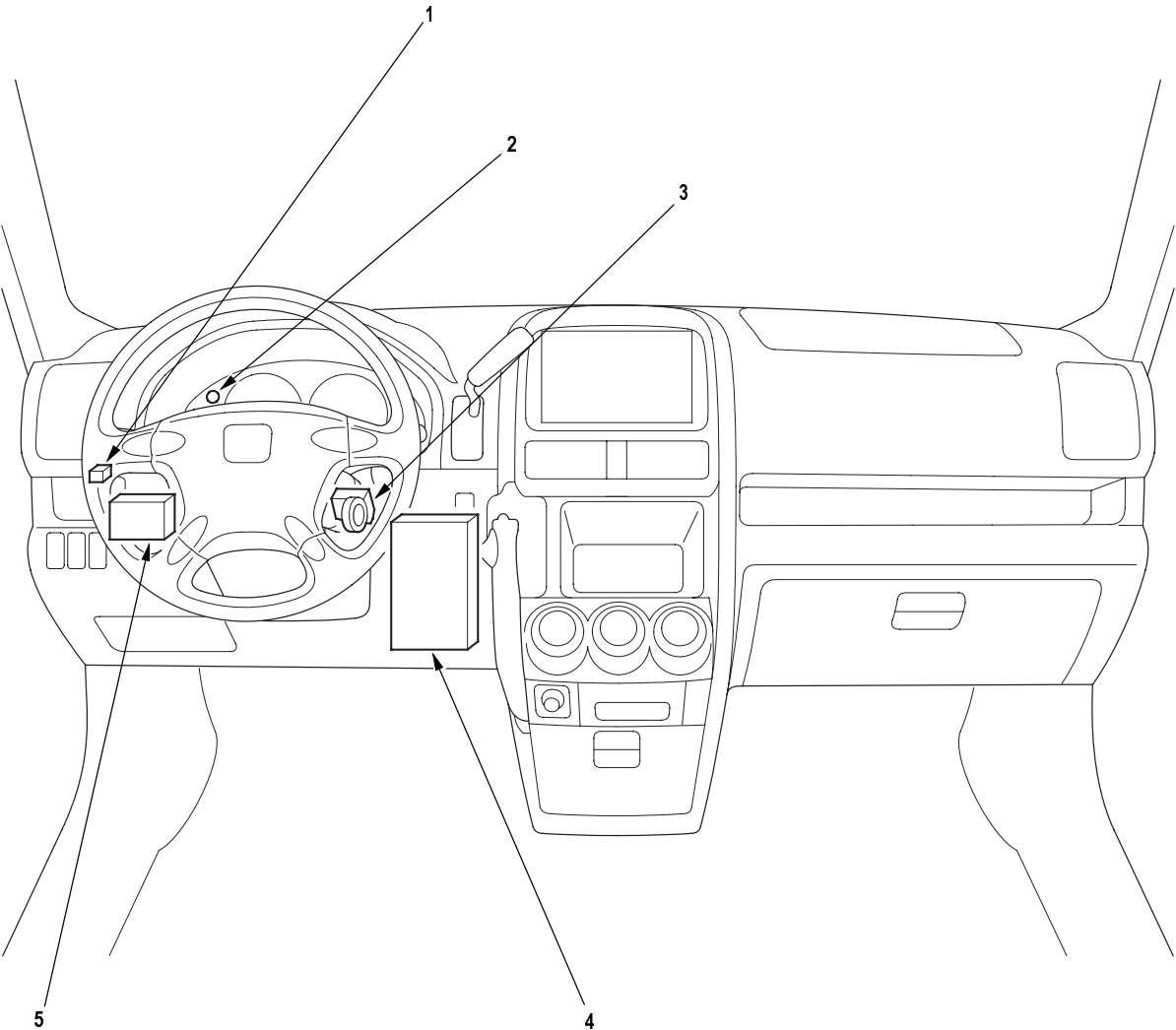


4. Remove the two screws and the immobilizer control unit-receiver from the ignition key cylinder (C).
5. Install the immobilizer control unit-receiver in the reverse order of removal.
6. After replacement, register the immobilizer control unit-receiver with PGM-Tester, then check the immobilizer system.

Security Alarm System

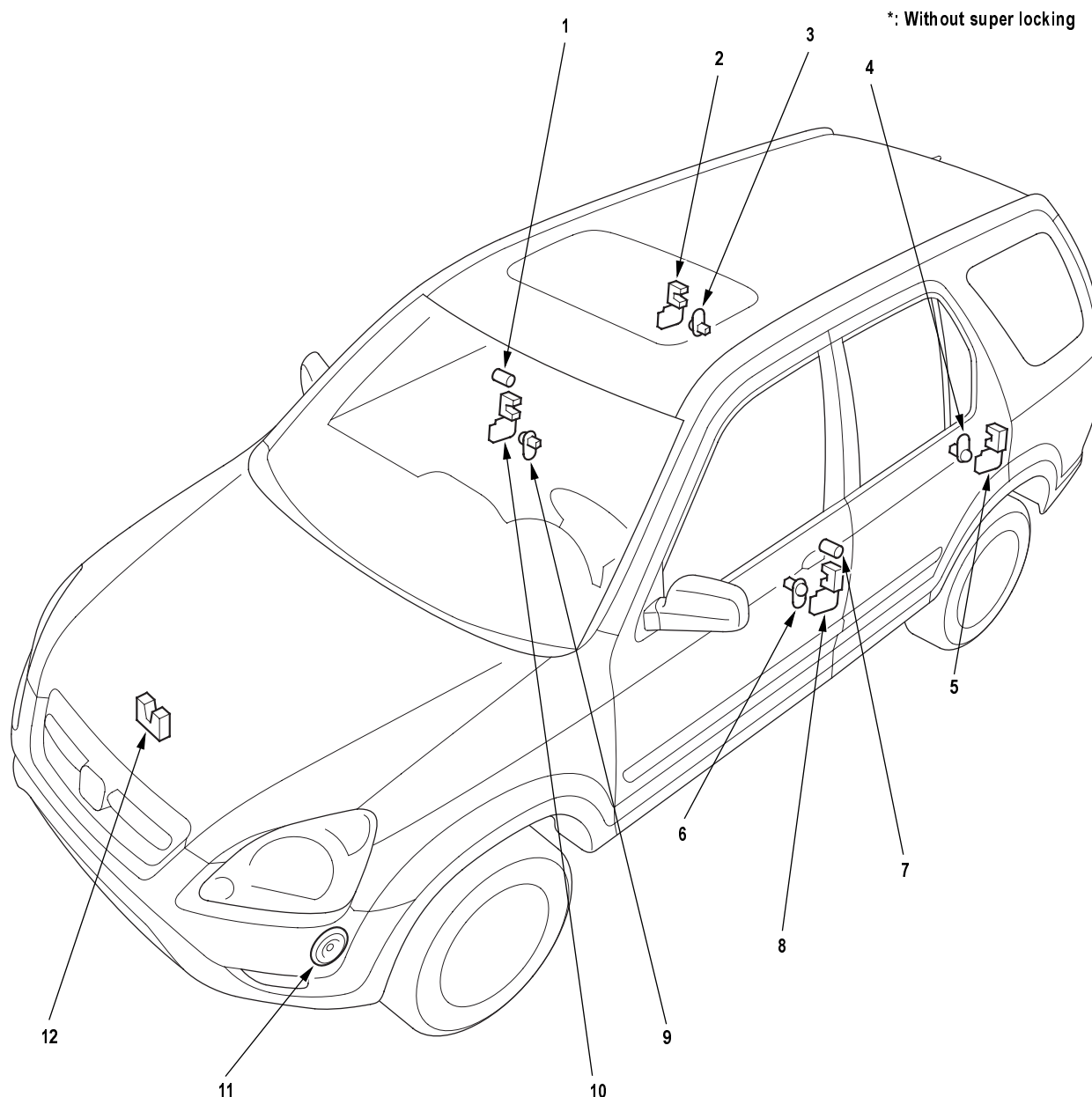
Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- |   |                          |  |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | SECURITY HORN RELAY      | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-60</a><br>[Wire colors: BLU/ORN, WHT/GRN, WHT/GRN and GRN]    |
| 2 | SECURITY INDICATOR LIGHT |  |
| 3 | IGNITION KEY SWITCH      | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-113</a>   |
| 4 | MULTIPLEX CONTROL UNIT   | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 22A-231</a> ; Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-166</a> |
| 5 | SECURITY CONTROL UNIT    | Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-199</a>   |

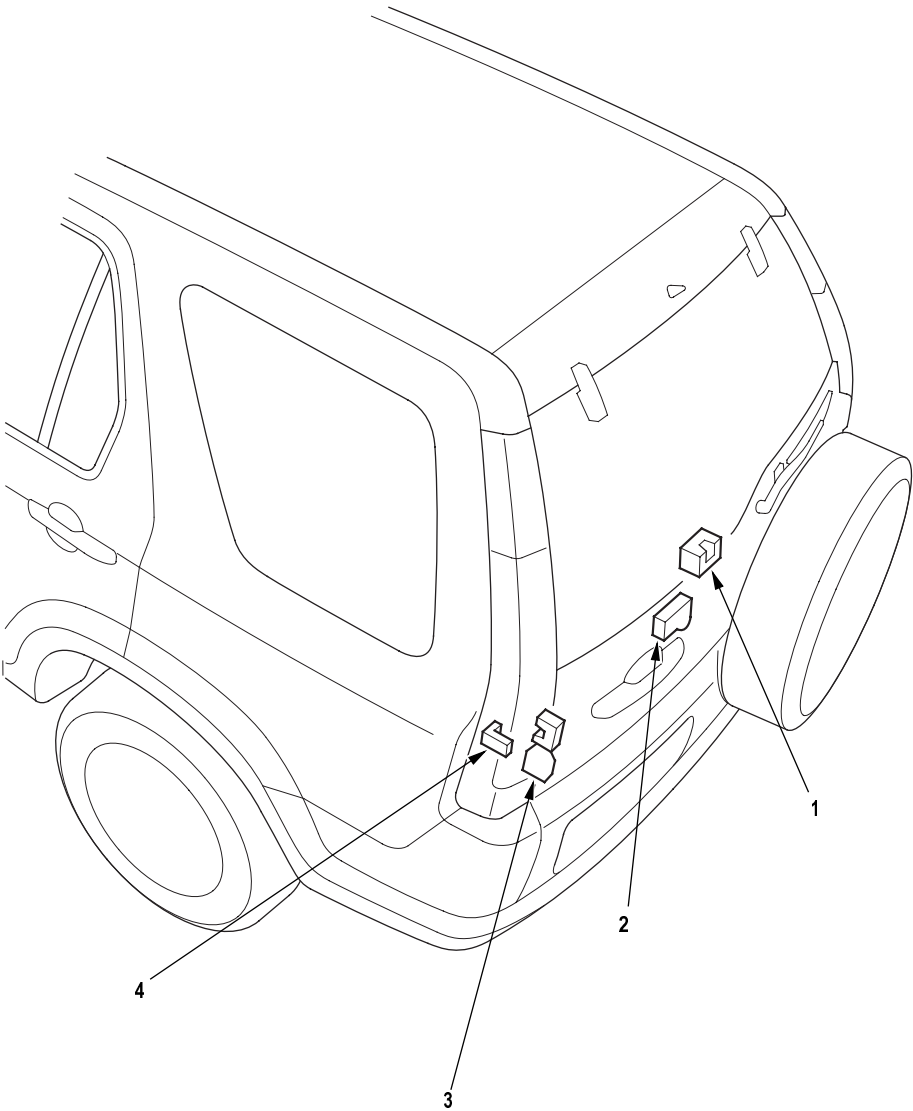
NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- |    |  |                                    |
|----|--|------------------------------------|
| 1  | FRONT PASSENGER'S DOOR KEY CYLINDER SWITCH* <sup>1</sup> | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-204</a> |
| 2  | RIGHT REAR DOOR LOCK KNOB SWITCH                         | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-202</a> |
| 3  | RIGHT REAR DOOR SWITCH                                   |                                    |
| 4  | LEFT REAR DOOR SWITCH                                    |                                    |
| 5  | LEFT REAR DOOR LOCK KNOB SWITCH                          | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-202</a> |
| 6  | DRIVER'S DOOR SWITCH                                     |                                    |
| 7  | DRIVER'S DOOR KEY CYLINDER SWITCH                        | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-204</a> |
| 8  | DRIVER'S DOOR LOCK KNOB SWITCH                           | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-202</a> |
| 9  | FRONT PASSENGER'S DOOR SWITCH                            |                                    |
| 10 | FRONT PASSENGER'S DOOR LOCK KNOB SWITCH                  | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-202</a> |
| 11 | SECURITY HORN  | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-205</a> |
| 12 | HOOD SWITCH  | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-204</a> |

(cont'd)

Component Location Index (cont'd)



- |   |                             |  |
|---|-----------------------------|--|
| 1 | HATCH GLASS LATCH SWITCH    | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-181</a>   |
| 2 | HATCH GLASS OPENER ACTUATOR | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-178</a>   |
| 3 | TAILGATE KNOB SWITCH        | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-205</a>   |
| 4 | TAILGATE SWITCH             | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-110</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-110</a> |



## System Description

### Security Alarm System

The security alarm system is armed automatically after the doors, hood, and trunk or tailgate are closed and locked. The security indicator on the gauge assembly flashes after the system is armed.

The system is set off when any of these things occur.

- A door is forced open
- A door is unlocked without using the key or the transmitter
- The trunk lid or tailgate is opened without using the key
- The hood is opened
- The engine starter circuit and battery circuit are bypassed by breaking the ignition switch (KH, PH and KK models)

When the system is set off, the alarm sounds and the exterior lights (headlights, parking lights and taillights: FO model or turn signal lights: except (FO model) flash for 2 minutes (FO model) or 30 seconds (Except FO model) or until the system is disarmed by unlocking either door with the key or the transmitter.

For the system to arm, the ignition switch must be off and the key removed. Then, the security control unit must receive signals that the doors, hood, and trunk lid or tailgate are closed and locked. When everything is closed and locked, none of the control unit inputs are grounded.

The door switches, hood switch, trunk latch switch or tailgate latch switch, door lock knob switches, and door lock key cylinder switches are all open,. 10 seconds after the doors are locked with the key or the lock knob, or immediately after locking the doors with the remote transmitter, the system arms.

If anything is opened or improperly unlocked after the system is armed, the control unit gets a ground signal from that switch, and the system is set off.

If one of the switches is misadjusted or there is a short in the system, the system will not arm. As long as the control unit continues to get a ground signal, it thinks the vehicle is not closed and locked and will not arm.

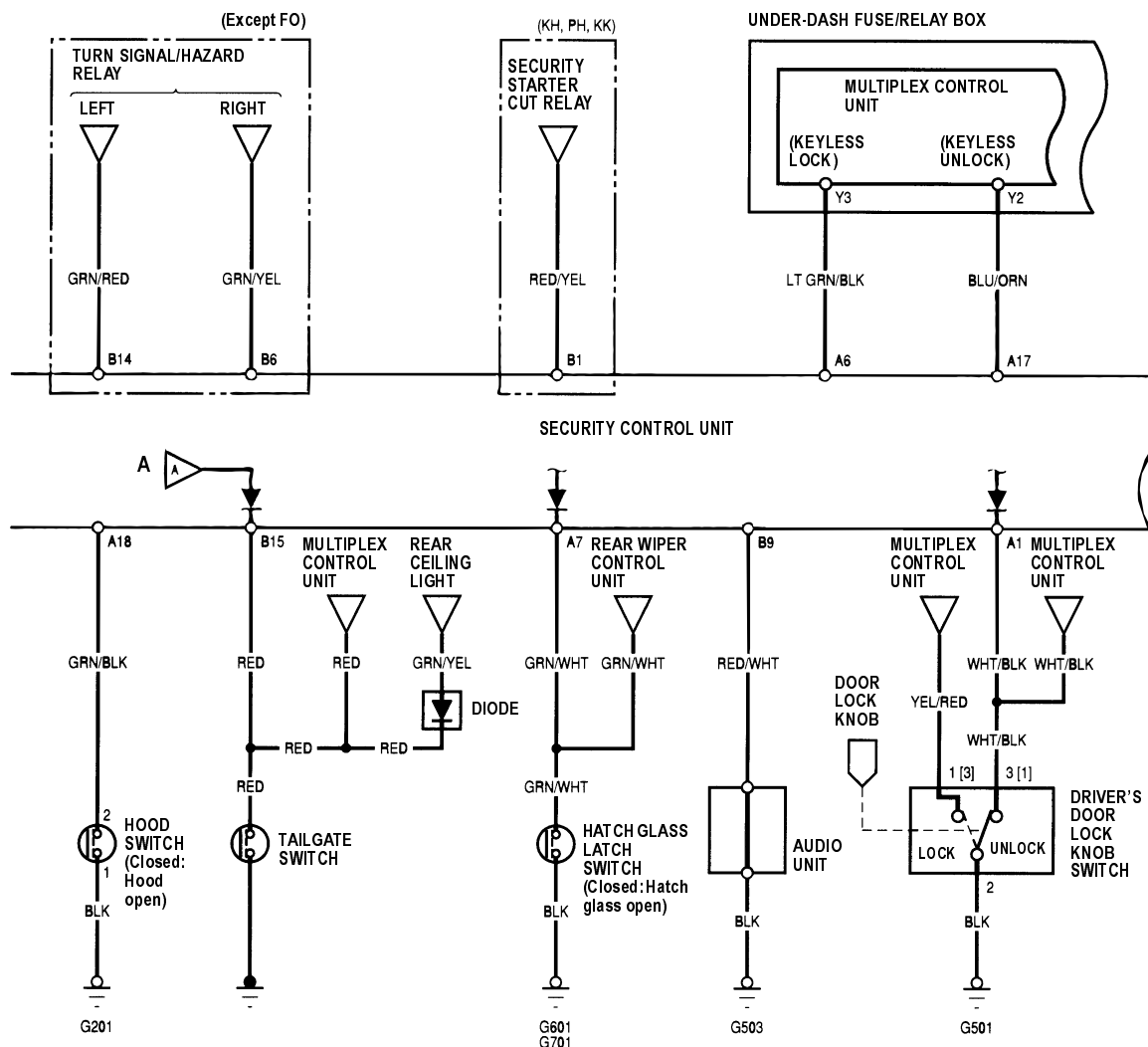
An alarm that sounds for no apparent reason may have been set off by switch that is on the threshold of misadjustment. In this case, it may only take a significant change in outside temperature, the vibration of a passing truck, or someone bumping into the vehicle to make the alarm sound.

\*1 : Except FO





## Circuit Diagram (cont'd)

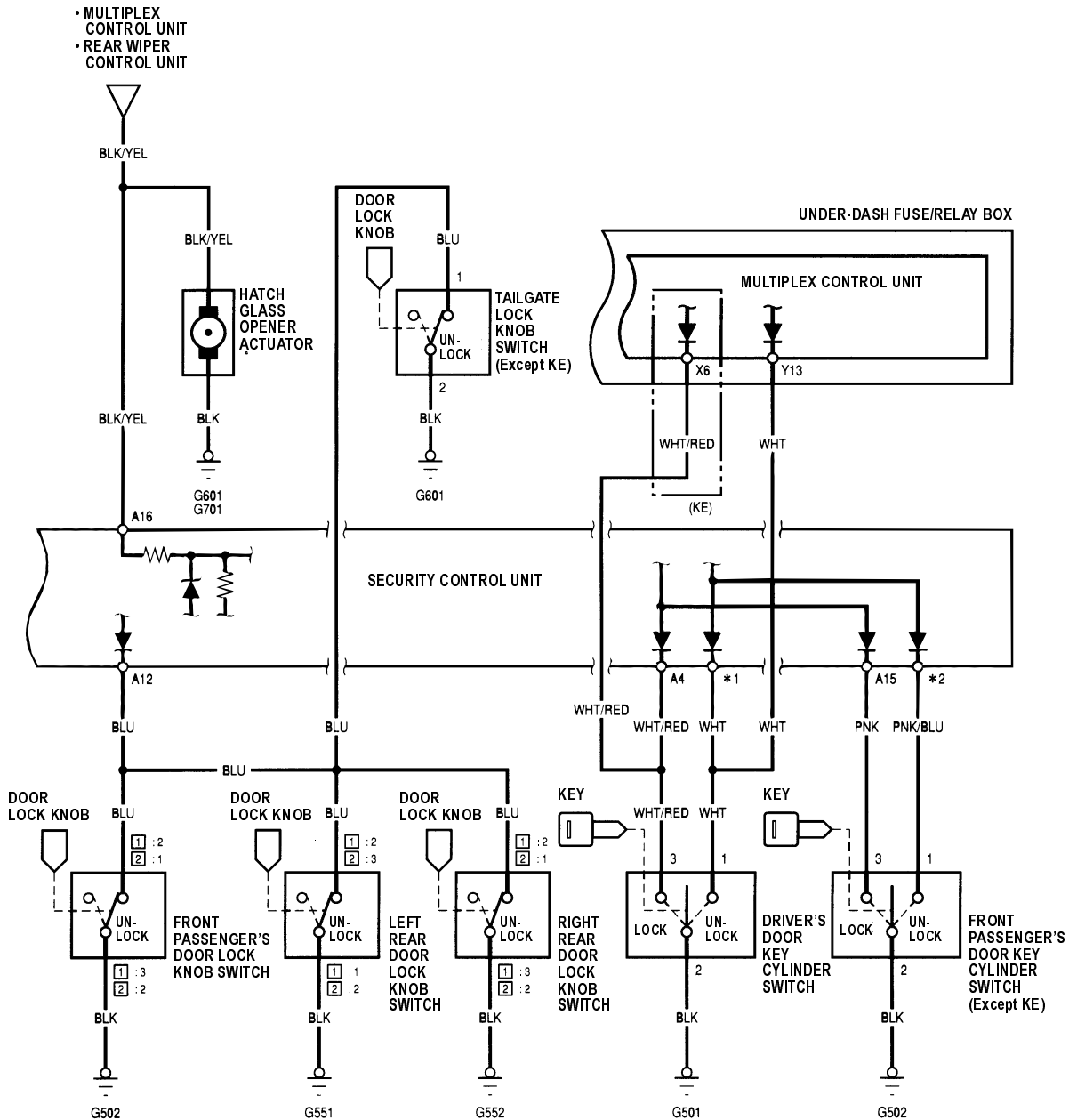


A From [page 22A-196](#)

(cont'd)

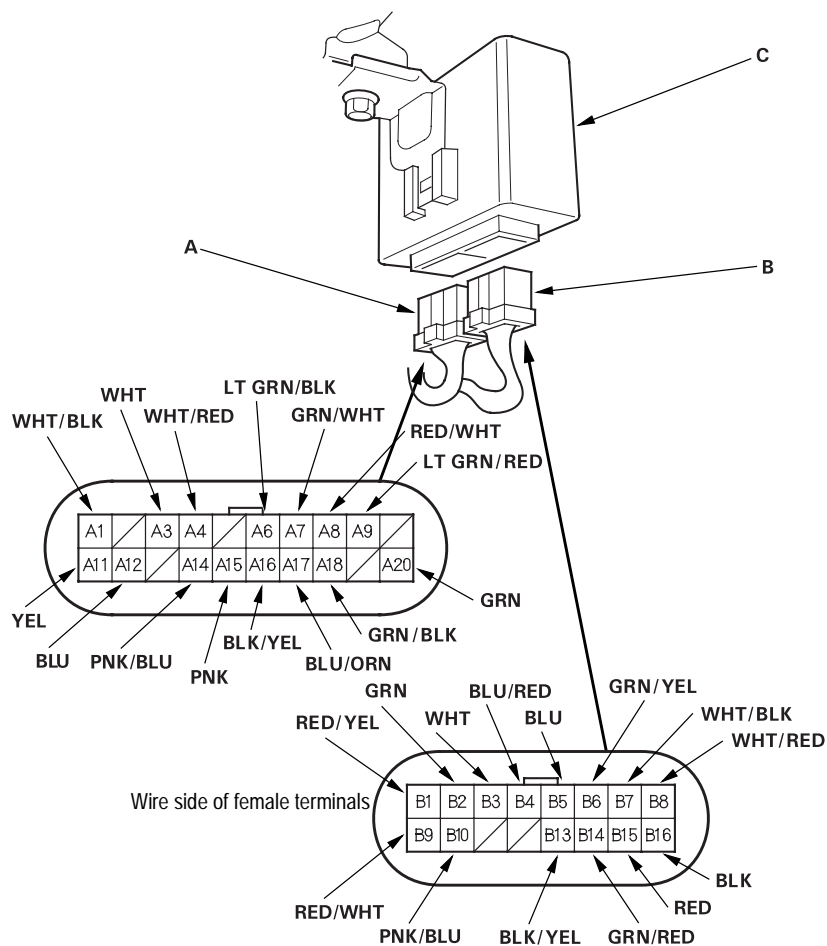
## Circuit Diagram (cont'd)

- \*1 A3 : KH, KK, FO, PH
- B3 : KE
- \*2 A14 : KH, KK, FO, PH
- B10 : KE
- [1] : Honda lock type
- [2] : Except Honda lock type



## Security Control Unit Input Test

1. Remove the dashboard lower cover (see page 20-88).
2. Disconnect the 20P connector (A) and 16P connector (B) from the control unit (C).
3. Inspect the all connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals look OK, go to step 4.



(cont'd)

## Security Control Unit Input Test (cont'd)

### 4. If any tests indicate a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.

- If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
- If all the input tests prove OK, go to step 5.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
B8	WHT/RED	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 9 (10A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
B7	WHT/BLK	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 5 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
A11	YEL	Ignition switch ON (II)	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 10 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
B16	BLK	Under all conditions	Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
B13	BLK/YEL	Under all conditions	Attach to ground: The security indicator should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 10 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty gauge assembly</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
B2	GRN	Under all conditions	Attach to ground: Security horn should sound.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 7 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty security horn relay</li> <li>• Faulty security horn</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
B4	BLU/RED	Under all conditions	Attach to ground: Headlights should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty headlight relay 1 or 2</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
B5	BLU	Under all conditions	Attach to ground: The taillights should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty taillight relay</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
B9	RED/WHT	Under all conditions	Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G503)</li> <li>• Faulty audio unit</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
A6	LT GRN/BLK	Under all conditions	Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
A17	BLU/ORN	Under all conditions	Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
B1	RED/YEL	Ignition switch START (III)	Starting the engine	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty security starter cut relay</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
B14	GRN/RED	Ignition switch OFF	Attach to ground: The turn signal lights should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 5 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty turn signal switch</li> <li>• Faulty turn signal/hazard relay</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
B6	GRN/YEL	Ignition switch OFF		

### 5. Reconnect the connectors to the security control unit, and perform the following input tests at the appropriate connector.

- If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
- If the input tests prove OK, the security control unit internal circuit must be faulty.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
A20	GRN	Driver's door open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's door switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Driver's door closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
A9	LT GRN/RED	Passenger's door open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty passenger's door switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Passenger's door closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
B15	RED	Tailgate open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty tailgate switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Tailgate closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
A7	GRN/WHT	Hatch glass open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G601, G701)</li> <li>• Faulty hatch glass latch switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Hatch glass closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	

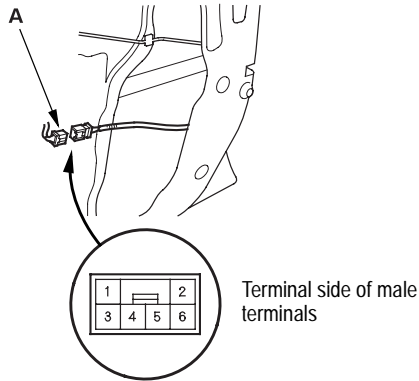


Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
A8	RED/WHT	Ignition key is in the ignition switch	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Poor ground (G401)</li> <li>Faulty ignition key switch</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Ignition key is out of the ignition switch	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
A18	GRN/BLK	Hood open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty hood switch</li> <li>Poor ground (G201)</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Hood closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
A1	WHT/BLK	Driver's door lock knob unlocked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty driver's door lock knob switch</li> <li>Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Driver's door lock knob locked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
A12	BLU	Front passenger's door lock knob unlocked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty front passenger's door lock knob switch</li> <li>Poor ground (G502)</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Front passenger's door lock knob locked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
		Left rear door lock knob unlocked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty left rear door lock knob switch</li> <li>Poor ground (G551)</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Left rear door lock knob locked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
		Right rear door lock knob unlocked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty right rear door lock knob switch</li> <li>Poor ground (G552)</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Right rear door lock knob locked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
		Tailgate lock knob unlocked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty tailgate lock knob switch</li> <li>Poor ground (G601)</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Tailgate lock knob locked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
A16	BLK/YEL	Hatch glass open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty hatch glass opener actuator</li> <li>Poor ground (G601, G701)</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Hatch glass closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
A4	WHT/RED	Driver's door key cylinder locked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty driver's door key cylinder switch</li> <li>Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> <li>A short to ground</li> </ul>
		Driver's door key cylinder in neutral	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
A3 • B3	WHT	Driver's door key cylinder unlocked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	
		Driver's door key cylinder in neutral	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
A15	PNK	Front passenger's door key cylinder locked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty front passenger's door key cylinder switch</li> <li>Poor ground (G502)</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> <li>A short to ground</li> </ul>
		Front passenger's door key cylinder in neutral	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
A14 • B10	PNK/BLU	Front passenger's door key cylinder unlocked	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	
		Front passenger's door key cylinder in neutral	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	

### Door Lock Knob Switch Test

#### Driver's Door (With Super Locking System):

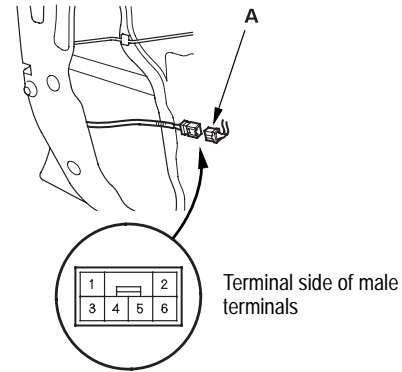
1. Remove the driver's door panel ([see page 20-9](#)).
2. Disconnect the 6P connector (A) from the super locking actuator.



3. Check for continuity between the terminals.
  - There should be continuity between the No. 3 and No. 4 terminals when the door lock knob switch is LOCK position.
  - There should be continuity between the No. 1 and No. 4 terminals when the door lock knob switch is UNLOCK position.
4. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the super locking actuator.

#### Passenger's Door (With Super Locking System):

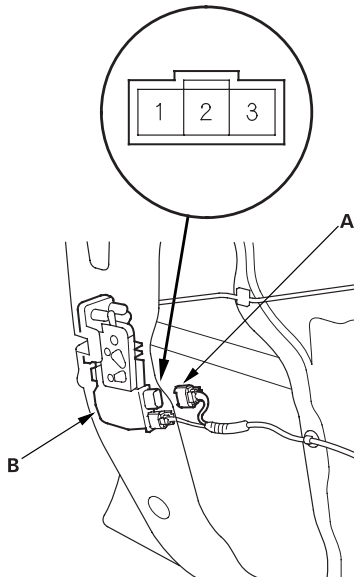
1. Remove the passenger's door panel ([see page 20-9](#)).
2. Disconnect the 6P connector (A) from the super locking actuator.



3. Check for continuity between the terminals.
  - There should be continuity between the No. 1 and No. 4 terminals when the door lock knob switch is UNLOCK position.
4. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the super locking actuator.

## Driver's Door (Without Super Locking System):

1. Remove the driver's door panel (see page 20-9).
2. Identify the type of door lock actuator (see page 20-14).
3. Disconnect the 3P connector (A) from the actuator (B).



4. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

Honda lock type:

Terminal Position	1 [3]	2	3 [1]
LOCK	○		○
UNLOCK	○	○	

[ ]: RHD type

Except Honda lock type:

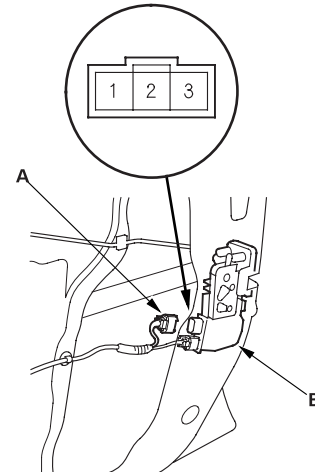
Terminal Position	1 [3]	2	3 [1]
LOCK	○	○	
UNLOCK		○	○

[ ]: RHD type

5. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the door lock actuator.

## Passenger's Door (Without Super Locking System):

1. Remove the passenger's door panel (see page 20-9).
2. Identify the type of door lock actuator (see page 20-14).
3. Disconnect the 3P connector (A) from the actuator.



4. Check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the table.

Front passenger's

Terminal Position	2 [1]	3 [2]
LOCK		
UNLOCK	○	○

Left rear:

Terminal Position	1 [2]	2 [3]
LOCK		
UNLOCK	○	○

Right rear:

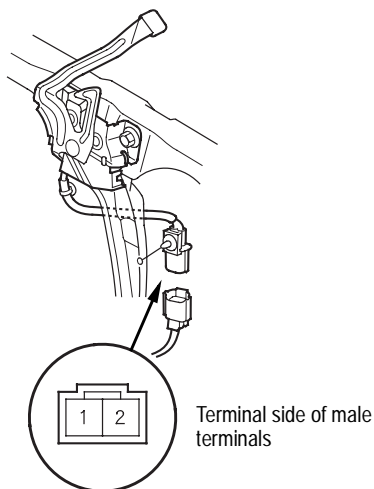
Terminal Position	2 [1]	3 [2]
LOCK		
UNLOCK	○	○

[ ]: except Honda lock type

5. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the door lock actuator.

## Hood Switch Test

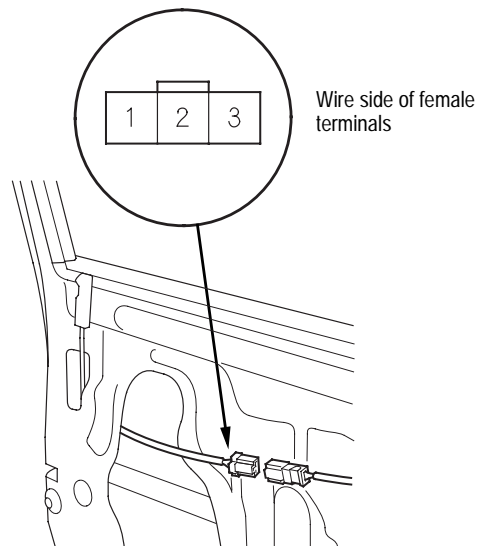
1. Open the hood.
2. Disconnect the 2P connector from the hood switch.



3. Check for continuity between the terminals.
  - There should be continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals when the hood is opened. (lever released).
  - There should be no continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals when the hood closed. (lever pushed down).

## Door Key Cylinder Switch Test

1. Remove the door panel ([see page 20-9](#)).
2. Disconnect the 3P connector from the key cylinder switch.

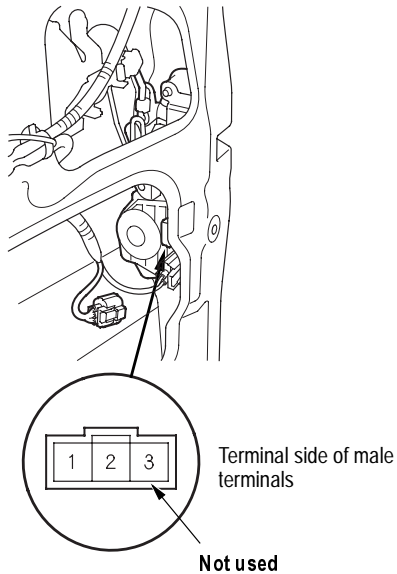


3. Check for continuity between the terminals.
  - There should be continuity between the No. 2 and No. 3 terminals when the door key cylinder switch is LOCK position.
  - There should be continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals when the door key cylinder switch is UNLOCK position.



## Tailgate Lock Knob Switch Test

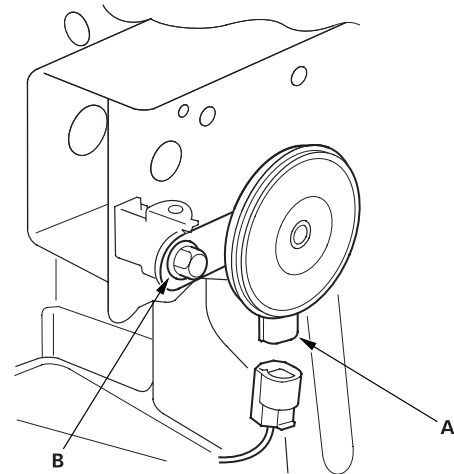
1. Open the tailgate and remove the tailgate trim panel (see page 20-80).
2. Disconnect the 3P connector (A) from the tailgate knob switch (B).



3. Check for continuity between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals.
  - There should be continuity with the tailgate knob switch is UNLOCK.
  - There should be no continuity with the tailgate knob switch is LOCK.

## Security Horn Test

1. Remove the front bumper (see page 20-130).
2. Disconnect the 1P connector from the horn.

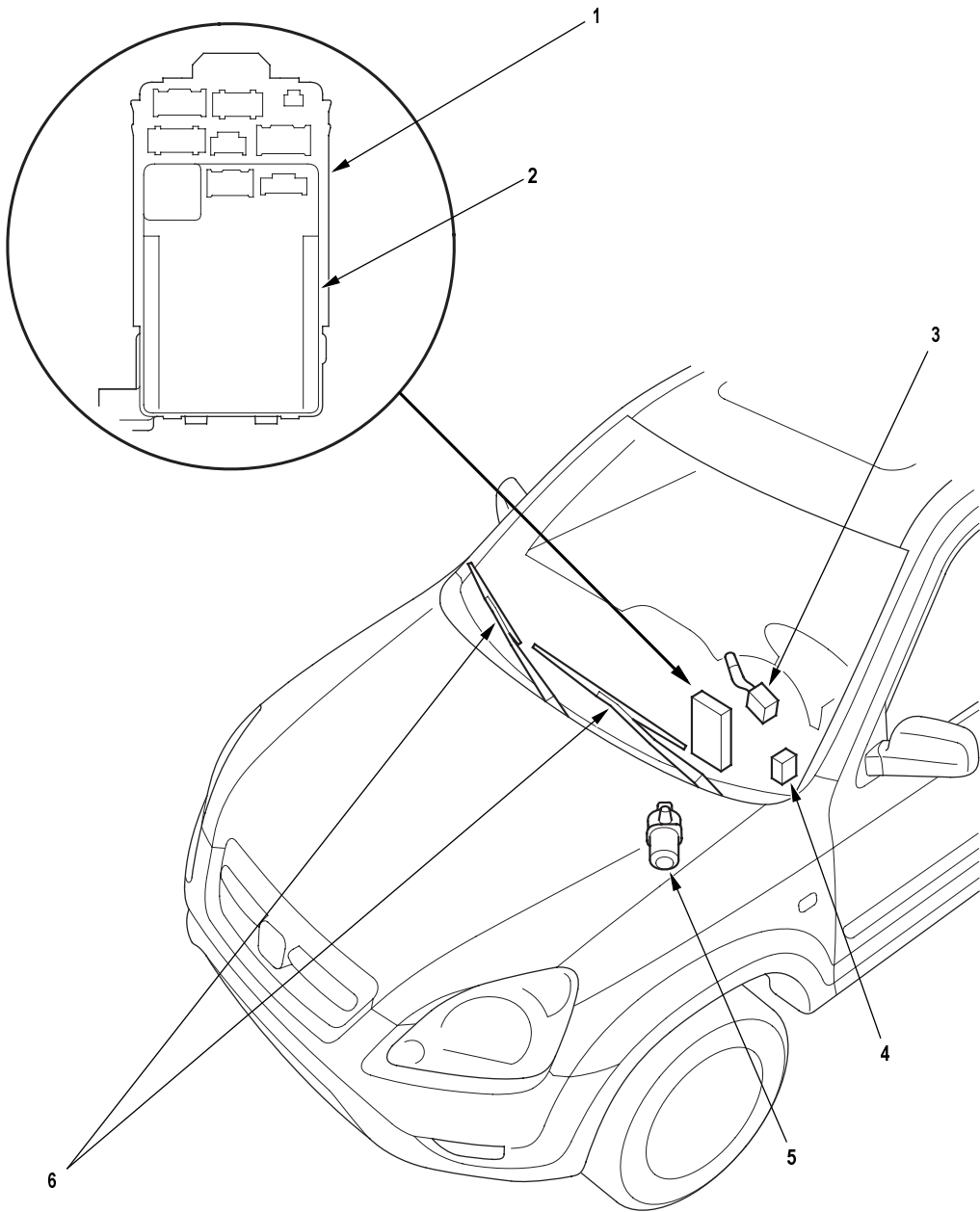


3. Test the horn by connecting battery power to the terminal (A) and grounding the body ground (B). The horn should sound.
4. If the horn fails to sound, check for.
  - faulty security horn relay.
  - faulty mounting bolt.

Wipers/Washers

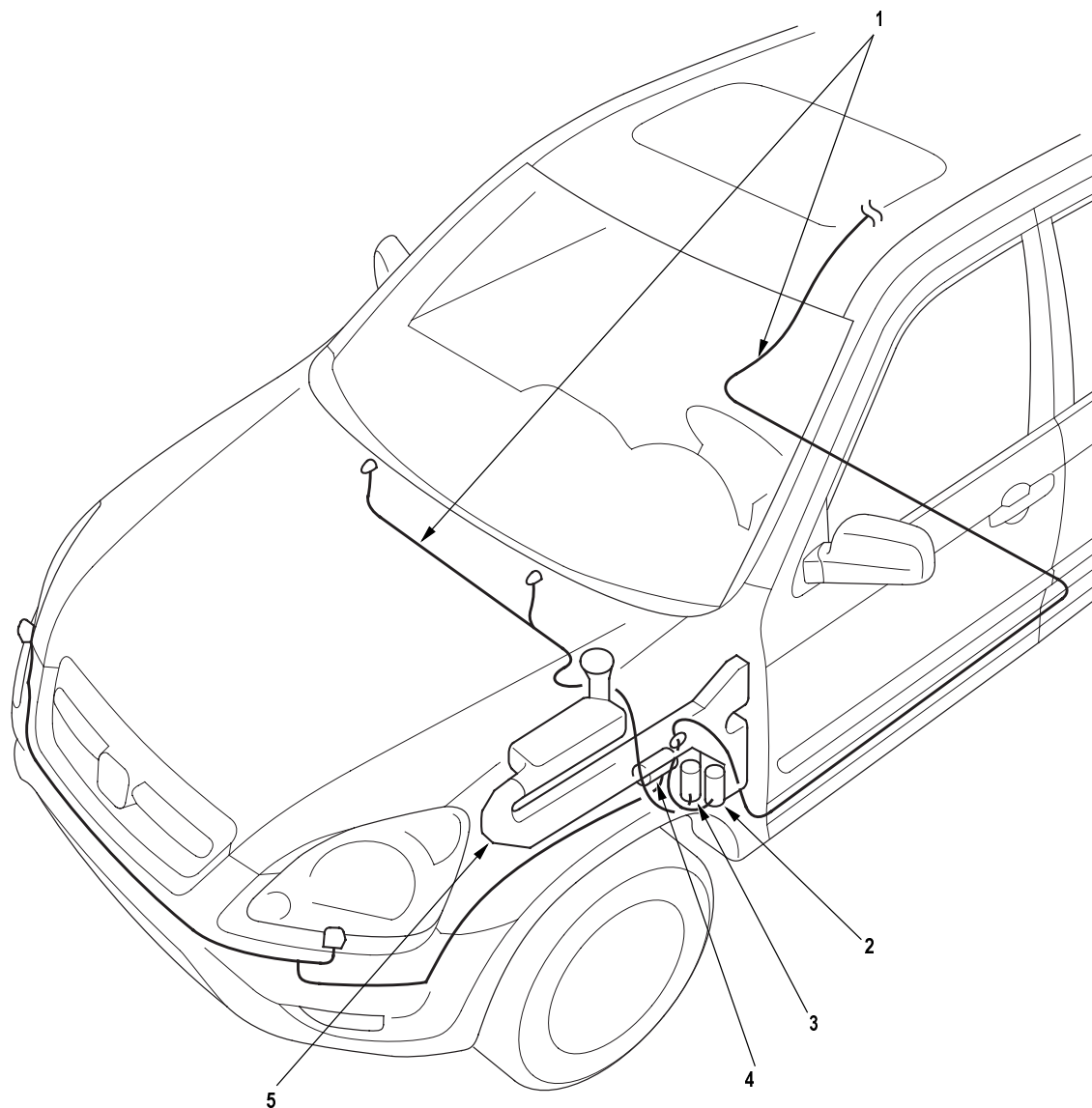
Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY BOX   |  |
| 2 | INTERMITTENT WIPER RELAY CIRCUIT<br>(in the multiplex control unit) | Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-216</a>                                       |
| 3 | WIPER/WASHER SWITCH   | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-214</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-214</a> |
| 4 | HEADLIGHT WASHER CONTROL UNIT                                       | Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-218</a>                                       |
| 5 | WINDSHIELD WIPER MOTOR  | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-222</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-223</a> |
| 6 | WINDSHIELD WIPER ARMS and LINKAGE                                   | Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-223</a>                                      |

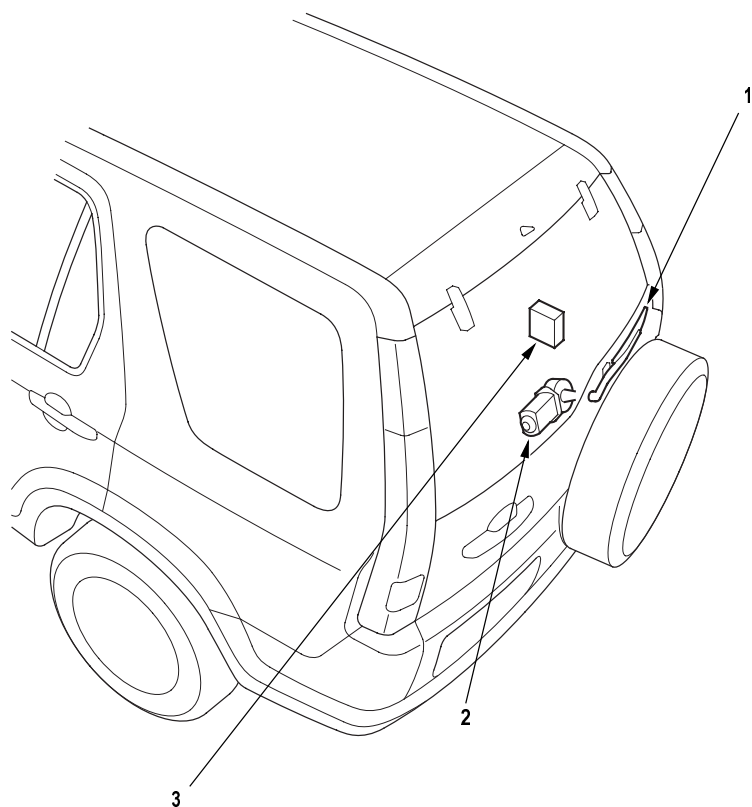
NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- |   |                          |   |
|---|--------------------------|---|
| 1 | WASHER TUBE              | Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-225</a> |
| 2 | REAR WINDOW WASHER MOTOR | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-213</a>        |
| 3 | WINDSHIELD WASHER MOTOR  | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-213</a>        |
| 4 | HEADLIGHT WASHER MOTOR   | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-213</a>        |
| 5 | WASHER RESERVOIR         | Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-224</a> |

(cont'd)

Component Location Index (cont'd)



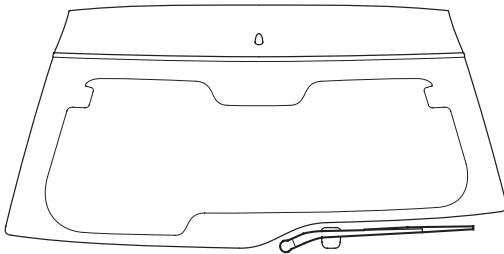
- |   |                                |  |
|---|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 | REAR WIPER ARM/LINKAGE         | Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-223</a>                                      |
| 2 | REAR WINDOW WIPER MOTOR        | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-222</a> ; Replacement, <a href="#">page 22A-223</a> |
| 3 | REAR WINDOW WIPER CONTROL UNIT | Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-220</a>                                       |

### System Description

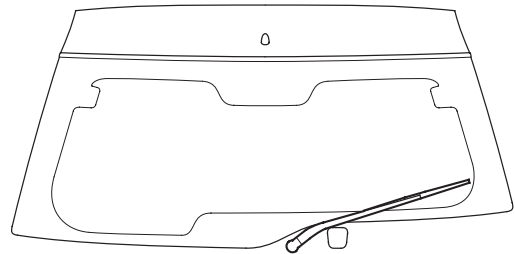
#### Intermittent operation:

Rear window wiper switch ON: The wiper operates every seven seconds after completing two sweeps.

Rear window wiper switch OFF: The wiper returns to the park position.



REAR WINDOW WIPER PARK POSITION



REAR WINDOW WIPER STAND-BY POSITION

#### Washer/Wiper combined system:

Rear window wiper switch ON: The wiper operates continuously while the washer switch is ON.

Rear window wiper switch OFF: After switching OFF the washer switch, the wiper returns to the park position after completing two sweeps.

#### Failsafe Function:

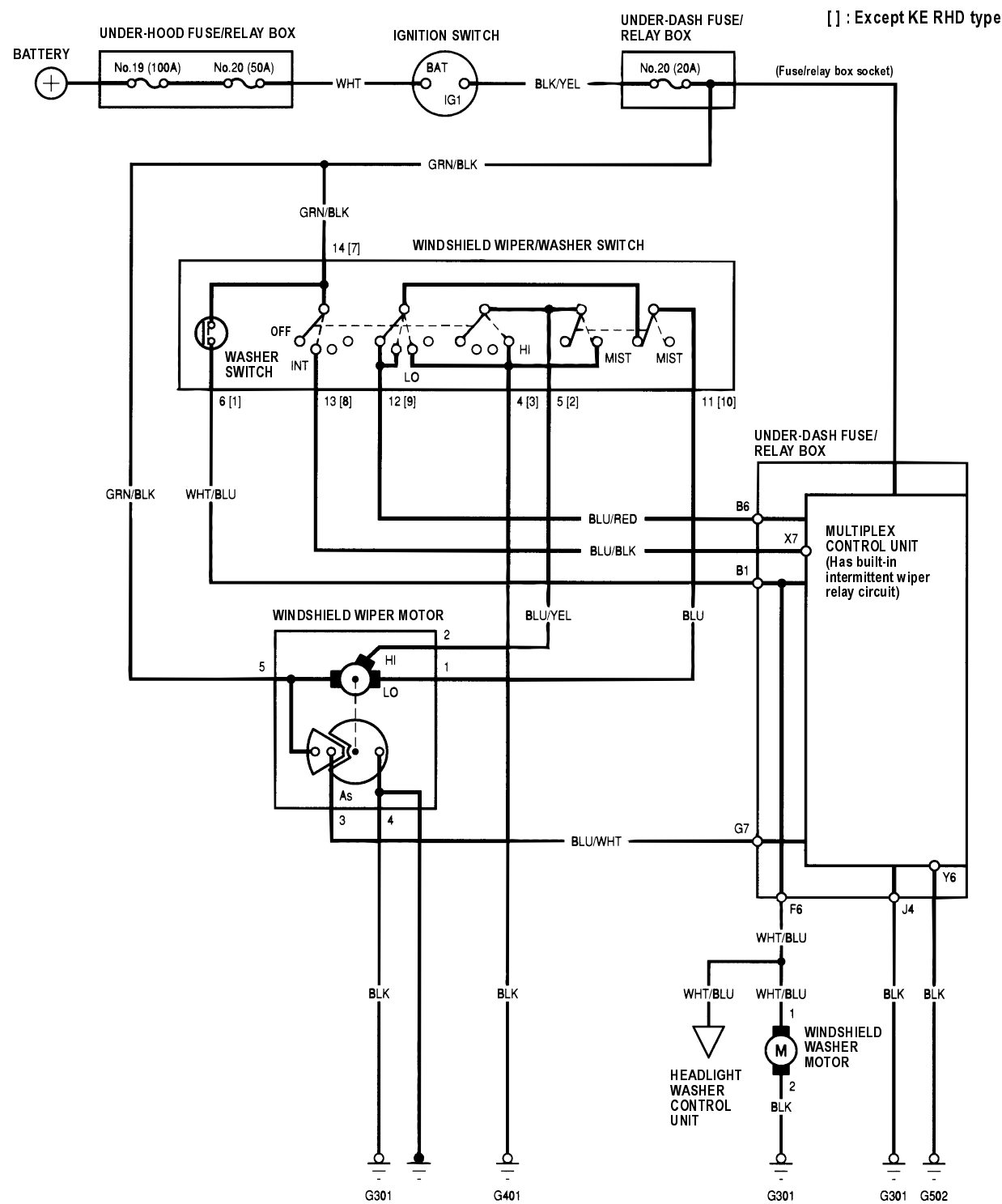
Lock Function: The rear window wiper will not operate if the hatch glass is open.

Emergency Stop Function: If the hatch glass is opened while the rear window wiper is operating, it will automatically stop.

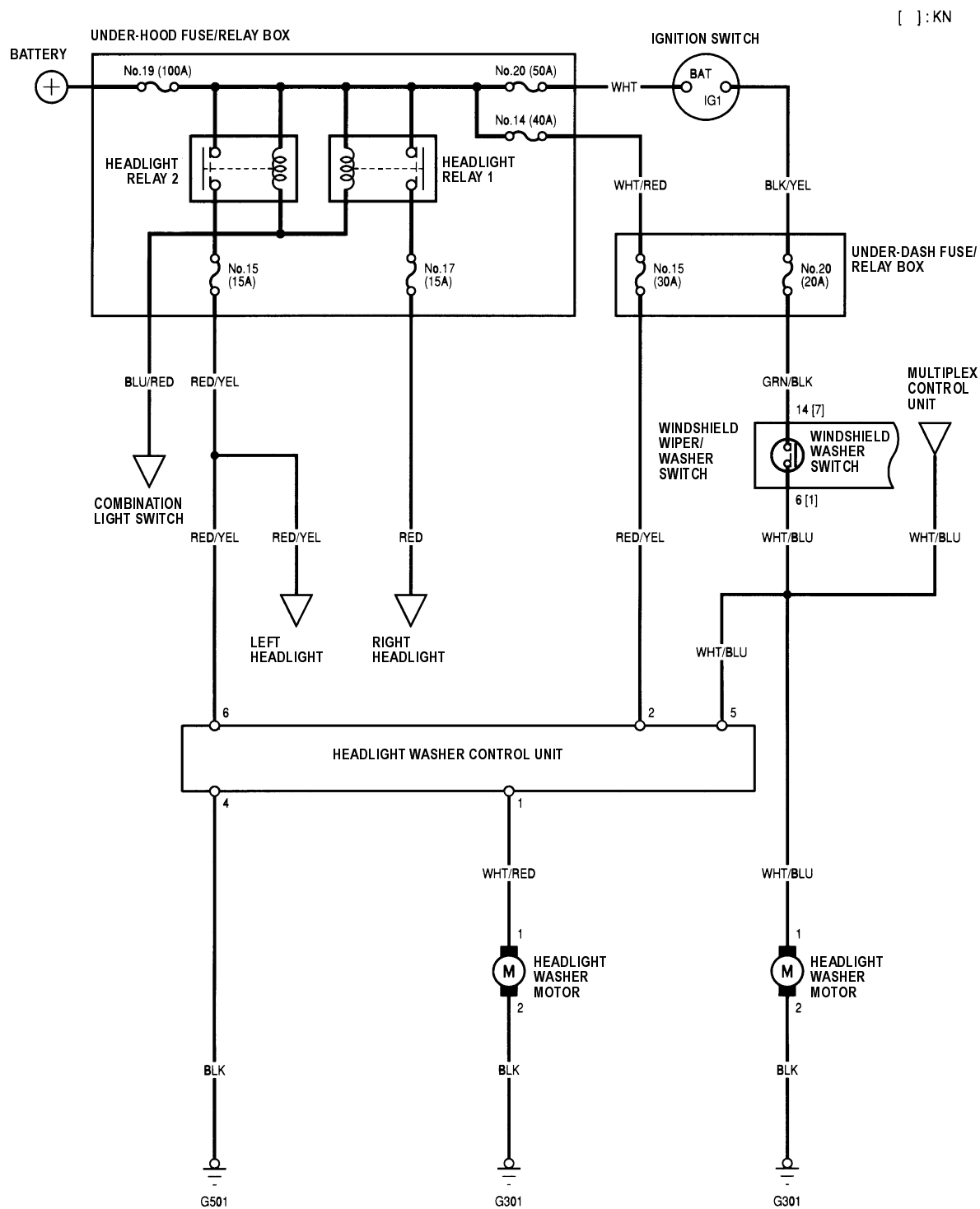
Automatic Park Function: If the ignition switch is turned OFF while the rear window wiper is operating, the wiper will return to the park position.

NOTE: To avoid interference with the vehicle's spare tire, the rear wiper does not fold out as on previous models.

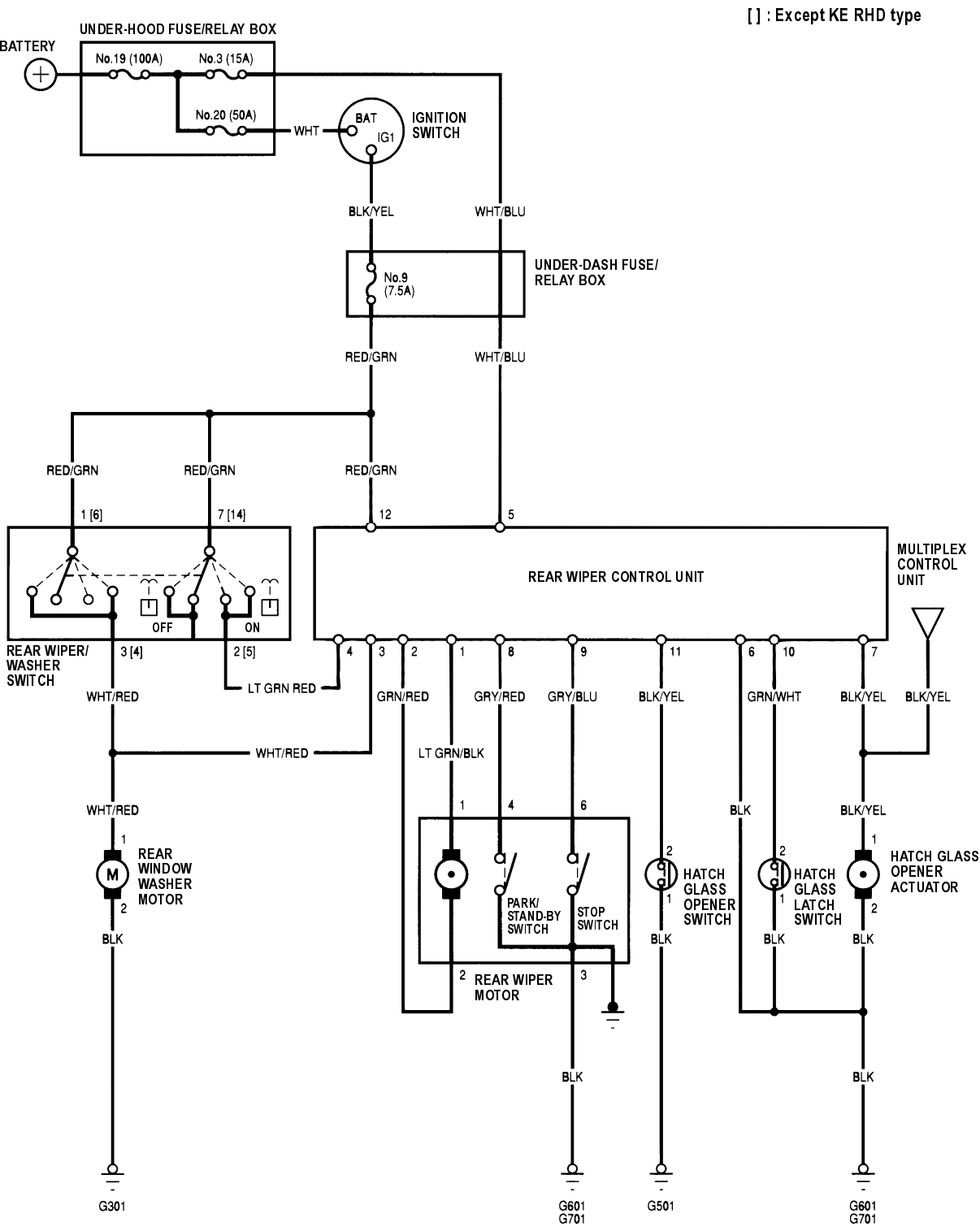
Circuit Diagram - Windshield



# Circuit Diagram - Headlight Washer



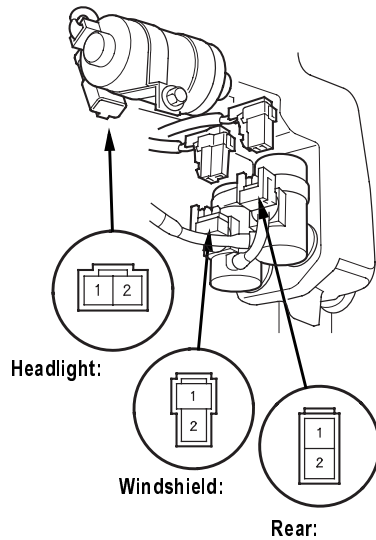
Circuit Diagram - Rear Window





### Washer Motor Test

1. Remove the left inner fender ([see page 20-155](#)).
2. Disconnect the 2P connector (A) from the washer motor (B).

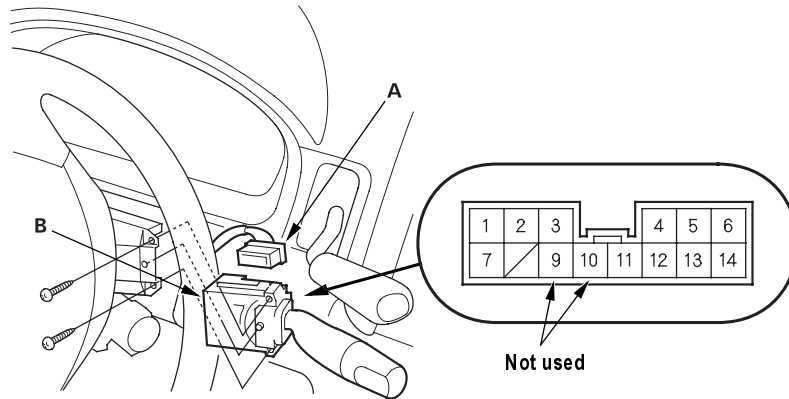


3. Test the motor by connecting battery power to the No. 1 terminal and ground the No. 2 terminal of the washer motor. The motor should run.
  - If the motor does not run or fails to run smoothly, replace it.
  - If the motor runs smoothly, but little or no washer fluid is pumped, check for a disconnected or blocked washer hose, or a clogged pump outlet in the motor.

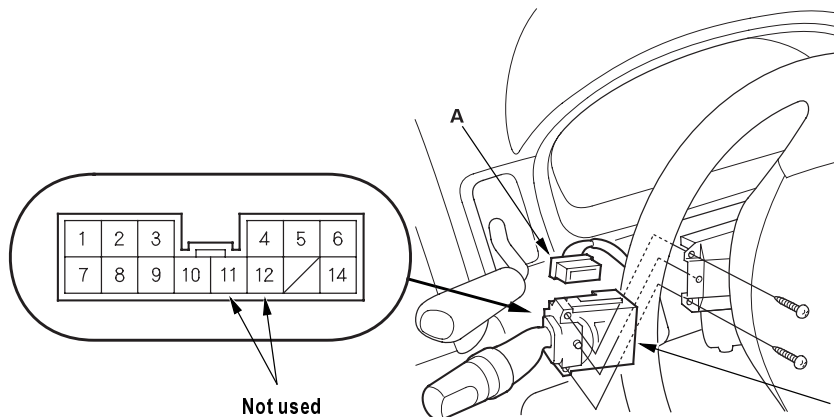
### Wiper/Washer Switch Test/Replacement

1. Remove the driver's dashboard lower cover (see page 20-88).
2. Remove the steering column covers (see page 17-24).
3. Disconnect the 14P connector (A) from the wiper/washer switch (B).

LHD type and KE model:



RHD type:



4. Remove the two screws, then pull out the wiper/washer switch.

5. Inspect the connector terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals look OK, check for continuity between the terminals in each switch position according to the tables. If the continuity is not as specified, replace the switch.

## Windshield:

Terminal Position	4 [3]	5 [2]	6 [1]	11 [10]	12 [9]	13 [8]	14 [7]	9 [12]		10 [11]
OFF				○ — ○						
INT				○ — ○		○ — ○				
LO	○ — ○			○						
HI	○ — ○									
Mist switch ON	○ — ○									
Washer switch ON			○ — ○				○			

## Rear Window:

Terminal Position	1 [6]	2 [5]	3 [4]	7 [14]
Washer switch ON and wiper switch OFF	○ — ○			
OFF				
ON		○ — ○		○
Wiper and Washer switch ON	○ — ○	○ — ○	○ — ○	○ — ○

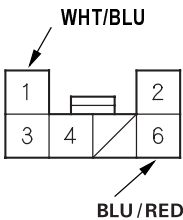
[ ] : RHD type

Control Unit Input Test

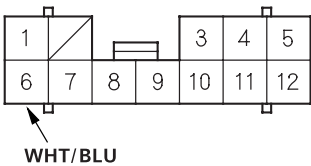
- 1. Before testing, troubleshoot the multiplex control system (see page 22A-231).
- 2. Remove the dashboard lower cover.
- 3. Disconnect the under-dash fuse/relay box connectors B, F, G, J, X and Y.

NOTE: All connectors are wire side of female terminals.

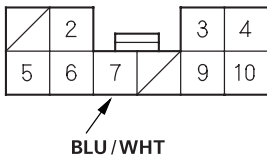
UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY  
BOX CONNECTOR B (6P)



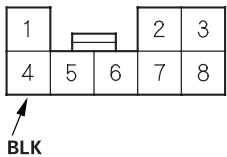
UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY  
BOX CONNECTOR F (12P)



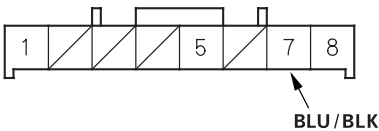
UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY  
BOX CONNECTOR G (10P)



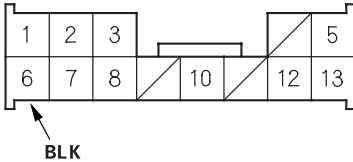
UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY  
BOX CONNECTOR J (8P)



UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY  
BOX CONNECTOR X (8P)



UNDER-DASH FUSE/RELAY  
BOX CONNECTOR Y (13P)



- 4. Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals are OK, go to step 5.

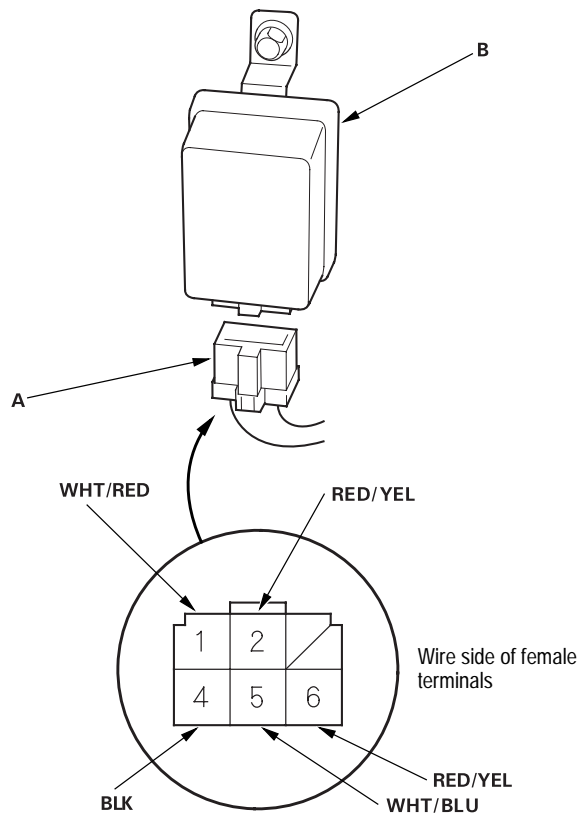


5. Reconnect the connectors, and make these input tests at the connector.
  - If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
  - If all the input tests prove OK, go to step 6.
  - If all the input tests prove OK, the multiplex control unit must be faulty; replace the under-dash fuse/relay box assembly.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
J4	BLK	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G301)</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
Y6	BLK	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G502)</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
B1 • F6	WHT/BLU	Ignition switch ON (II) and washer switch ON	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. Check windshield washer motor operation: The washer motor should run.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G301)</li> <li>• Blown No. 20 (20 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty wiper/washer switch</li> <li>• Faulty windshield washer motor</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
B6	BLU/RED	Ignition switch ON (II), wiper switch in OFF or INT, jump B6 to ground.	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage. Check wiper motor operation: The wiper motor should run at low speed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 20 (20 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty wiper/washer switch</li> <li>• Faulty windshield wiper motor</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
G7	BLU/WHT	Ignition switch ON (II) and wipers in park position.	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 20 (20 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty windshield wiper motor</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
X7	BLU/BLK	Ignition switch ON (II) and wiper switch in INT	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 20 (20 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty wiper/washer switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>

### Headlight Washer Control Unit Input Test

1. Remove the dashboard lower cover.
2. Disconnect the 6P connector (A) from the headlight washer control unit (B).



3. Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals look OK, go to step 4.

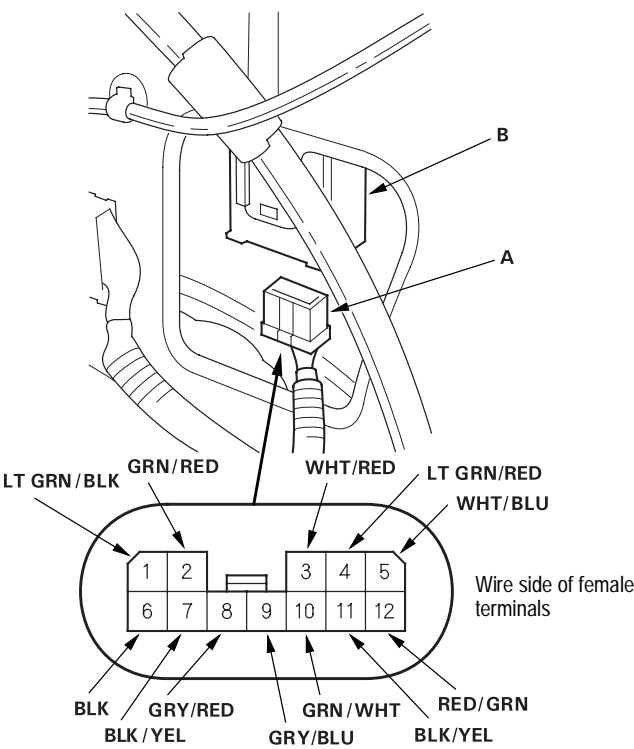


4. With the connector still disconnected, make these input tests at the connector.
  - If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
  - If all the input tests prove OK, replace the headlight washer control unit.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
2	RED/YEL	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 14 (40A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Blown No. 15 (30A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
5	WHT/BLU	Ignition switch ON (II) and washer switch ON	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 20 (20A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty washer switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
6	RED/YEL	Headlight switch ON	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 15 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• Faulty headlight relay 2</li> <li>• Faulty combination light switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
4	BLK	Under all conditions	Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
1	WHT/RED	Connect the No. 1 terminal to the No. 2 terminal with a jumper wire.	Check motor operation: The headlight washer motor should run.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty headlight washer motor</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>

Rear Wiper Control Unit Input Test

- 1. Remove the right rear side trim panel (see page 20-77).
- 2. Disconnect the 12P connector (A) from the control unit (B).



- 3. Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals look OK, go to step 4.
- 4. Reconnect the connector, and make these input tests at the connector.
  - If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
  - If all the input tests prove OK, go to step 5.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
6	BLK	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Poor ground (G601, G701)</li><li>• An open in the wire</li></ul>
5	WHT/BLU	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Blown No. 3 (15 A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li><li>• An open in the wire</li></ul>
12	RED/GRN	Ignition switch ON (II)	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Blown No. 9 (7.5 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li><li>• An open in the wire</li></ul>



Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
4	LT GRN/ RED	Ignition switch ON (II) and rear wiper switch ON	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown No. 9 (7.5 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>Faulty wiper/washer switch</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
8	GRY/RED	Rear wiper in park position	Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Poor ground (G601, G701)</li> <li>Faulty rear wiper motor</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Rear wiper in stand by position		
9	GRY/BLU	Rear wiper in park position	Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V.	
		Rear wiper in stand by position	Check for no voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	
10	GRN/WHT	Hatch glass open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Poor ground (G601, G701)</li> <li>Faulty hatch glass latch switch</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Hatch glass closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Short to ground</li> <li>Faulty hatch glass latch switch</li> </ul>
11	BLK/YEL	Hatch glass opener switch pushed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Poor ground (G501)</li> <li>Faulty hatch glass opener switch</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Hatch glass opener switch released	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Short to ground</li> <li>Faulty hatch glass opener switch</li> </ul>

5. Disconnect the connector, and make these input tests at the connector.

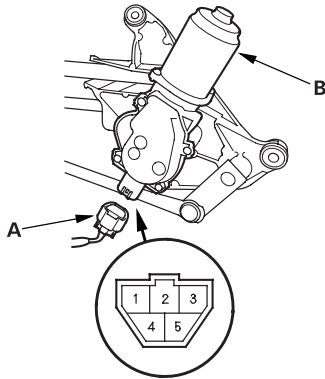
- If all the input tests prove OK, the control unit must be faulty; replace the rear wiper control unit.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
3	WHT/RED	Connect the No. 5 terminal to No. 3 terminal	Check rear washer motor operation: The rear washer should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown No. 3 (15 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>Poor ground (G301)</li> <li>Faulty rear washer motor</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
1	LT GRN/ BLK	Connect the No. 3 terminal to No. 2 terminal, and No. 1 terminal to No. 6 terminal	Check rear wiper motor operation: The rear wiper should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown No. 3 (15 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box</li> <li>Poor ground (G601, G701)</li> <li>Faulty rear wiper motor</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
2	GRN/RED			
7	BLK/YEL	Rear wiper park position, connect the No. 5 terminal to No. 7 terminal	Check hatch glass opener actuator operation: The hatch glass should open.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Poor ground (G601, G701)</li> <li>Faulty hatch glass opener actuator</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>

## Wiper Motor Test

### Windshield:

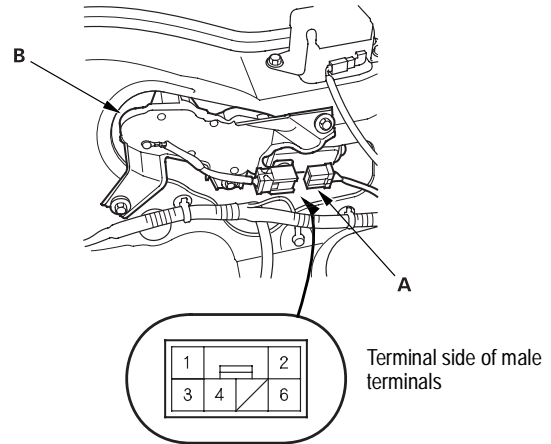
1. Remove the wiper arms, hood seals, and cowl covers (see page 22A-223).
2. Disconnect the 5P connector (A) from the wiper motor (B).



3. Test the motor by connecting battery power to the No. 5 terminal and ground the No. 1 terminal of the wiper motor 5P connector. The motor should run. If the motor does not run or fails to run smoothly, replace the motor.
4. Connect an analog voltmeter between the No. 3 (+) and No. 4 (-) terminals, and run the motor at low or high speed. The voltmeter should indicate 12 V and 4 V or less alternately.

### Rear Window:

1. Open the tailgate, and remove the tailgate lower trim panel (see page 20-9).
2. Disconnect the 4P connector (A) from the wiper motor (B).

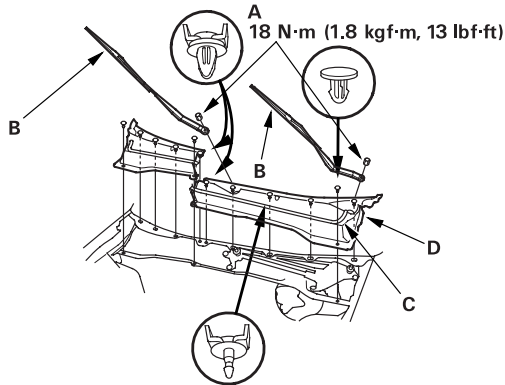


3. Test the motor by connecting battery power to the No. 2 terminal and ground the No. 1 terminal of the wiper motor. The motor should run. If the motor does not run or fails to run smoothly, replace the motor.
4. Connect an ohmmeter between No. 3 and No. 6 terminal and between No. 3 terminal and No. 4 terminal.  
There should be continuity when the wiper is in the park position.
5. Connect an ohmmeter between No. 3 terminal and No. 6 terminal.  
There should be no continuity when the wiper is in the stand-by position.
6. Connect an ohmmeter between No.3 terminal and No. 4 terminal.  
There should be continuity when the wiper is in the stand-by position.

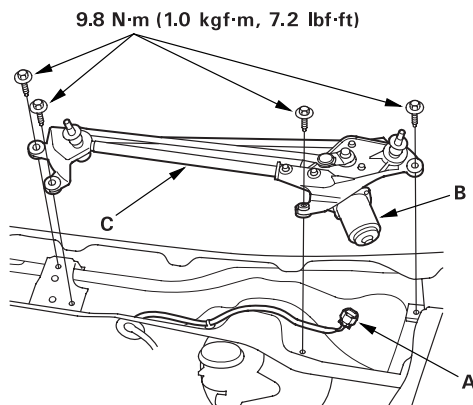
## Wiper Motor Replacement

### Windshield Wiper Motor:

1. Open the hood. Remove the nuts (A) and the windshield wiper arms (B).

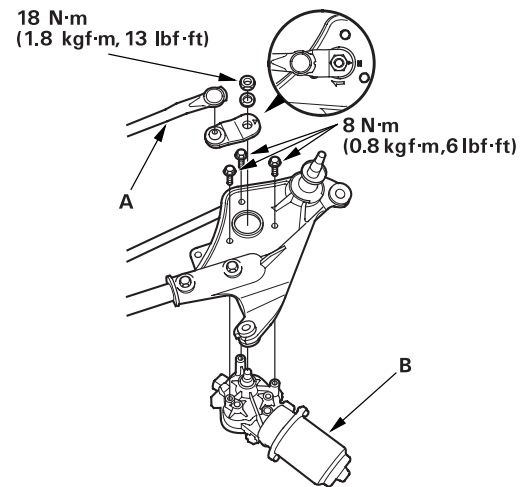


2. Remove the hood seals (C) and cowl covers (D).
3. Disconnect the 5P connector (A) from the wiper motor (B).



4. Remove the four bolts and wiper linkage assembly (C).

5. Remove the three mounting bolts and nut from the wiper linkage (A) to remove the wiper motor (B).

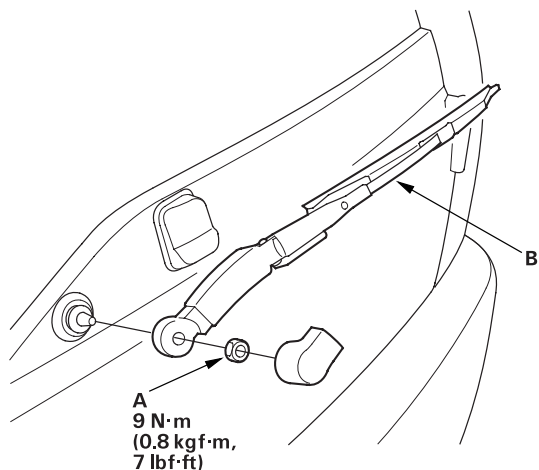


6. Install in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Grease the moving parts.
  - Before reinstalling the wiper arms, turn the wiper switch ON, then OFF to return the wiper shafts to the park position.
  - If necessary, replace any damaged clips.
  - Check the wiper motor operation.

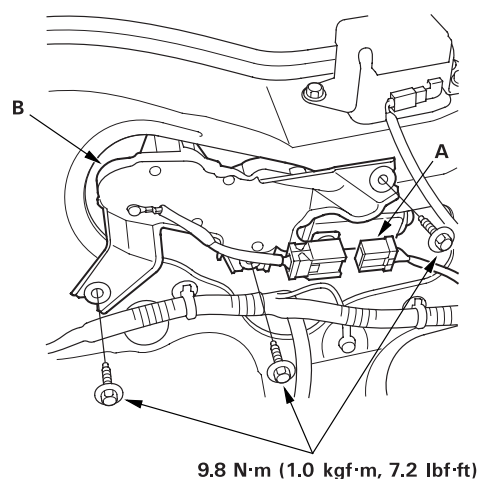
## Wiper Motor Replacement (cont'd)

### Rear Window Wiper Motor:

1. Remove the mounting nut (A) and the wiper arm (B).



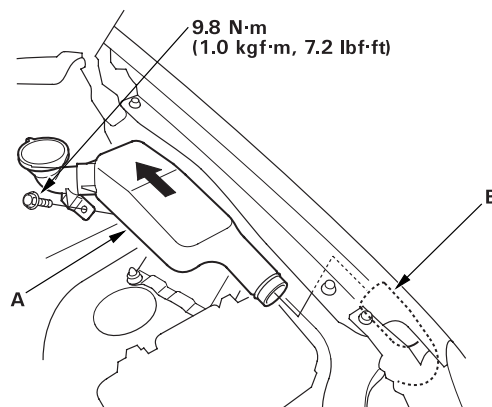
2. Disconnect the 6P connector (A) from the wiper motor (B).



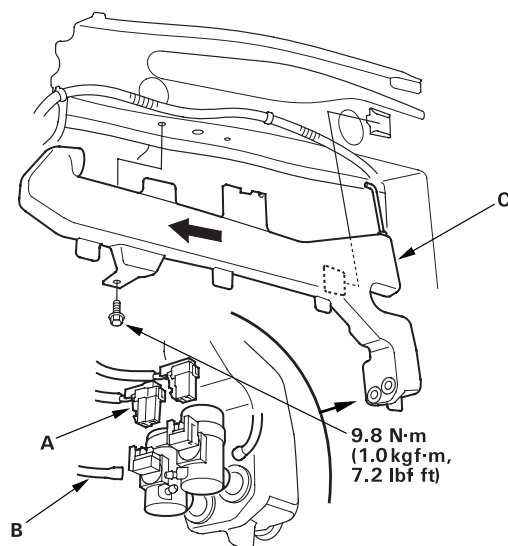
3. Remove the three bolts and the wiper motor.
4. Install in the reverse order of removal. Check the wiper motor operation.

## Washer Reservoir Replacement

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the bolt, then separate and remove the filler neck (A) from the washer reservoir (B).



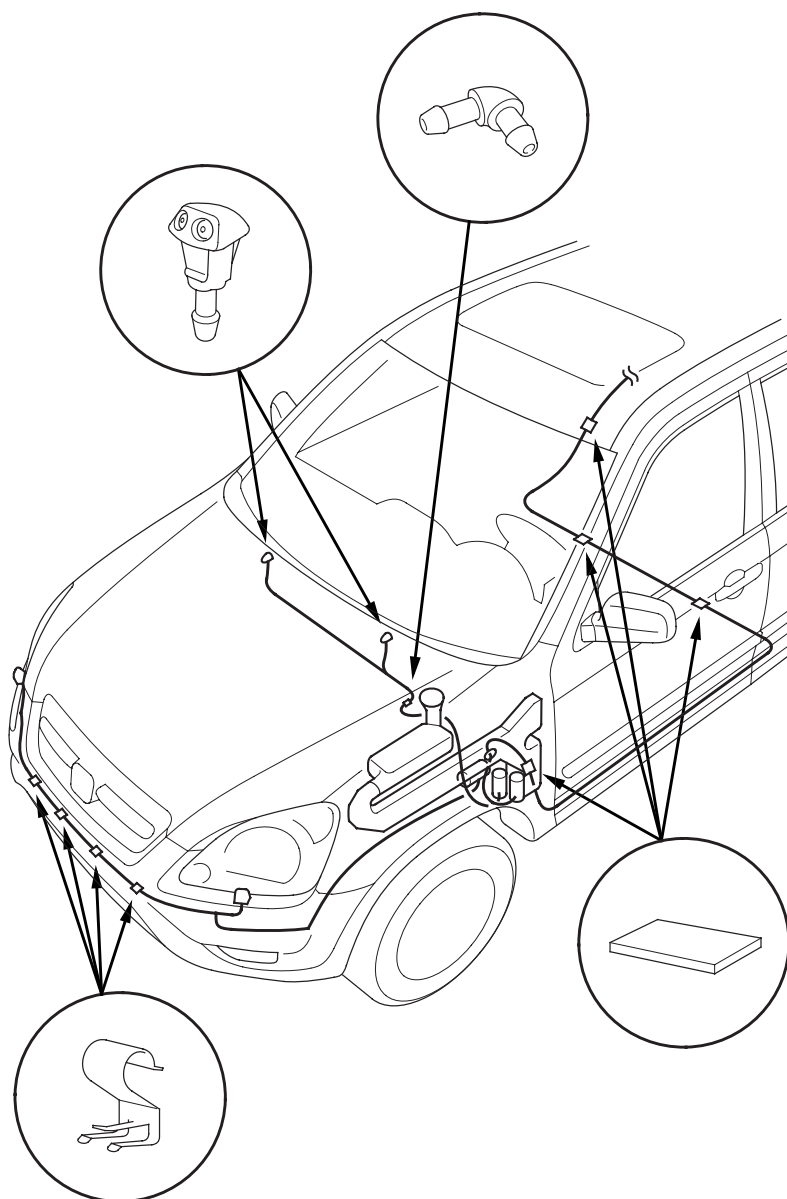
3. Remove the left inner fender ([see page 20-155](#)).
4. Disconnect the 2P connectors (A) and washer tubes (B).



5. Remove the bolt and washer reservoir (C).
6. Install the reservoir in the reverse order of removal. Check the the washer motor operation.

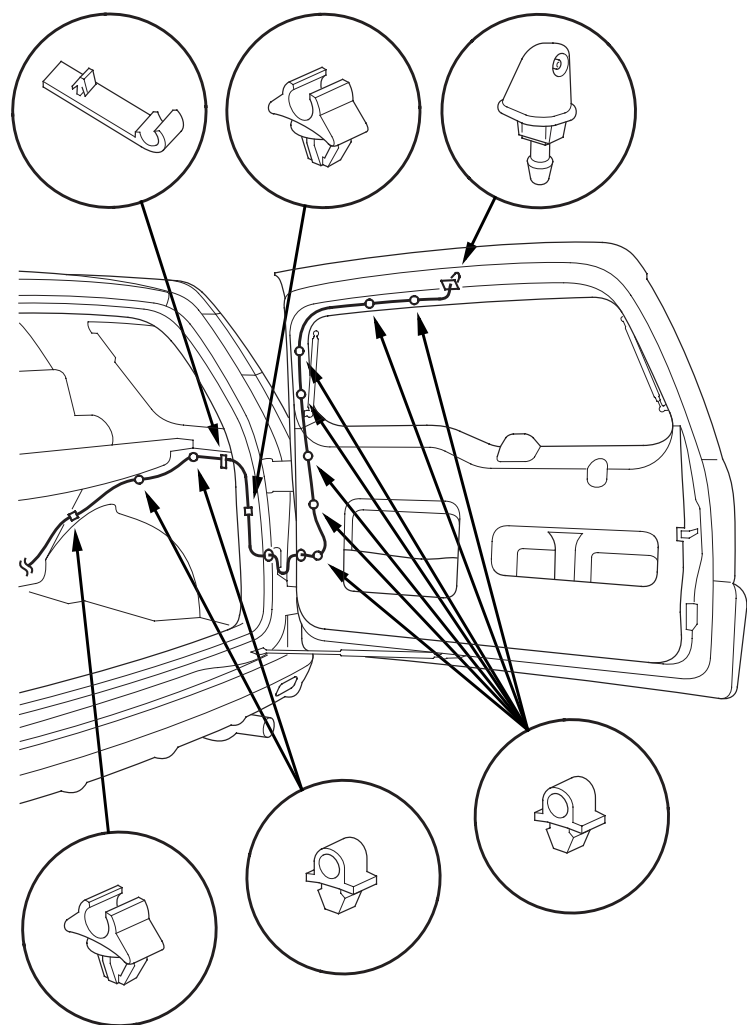
### Washer Tubes Replacement

1. Remove the left inner fender ([see page 20-155](#)).
2. Remove the windshield washer nozzles and clips, then remove the tubes.



(cont'd)

Washer Tubes Replacement (cont'd)

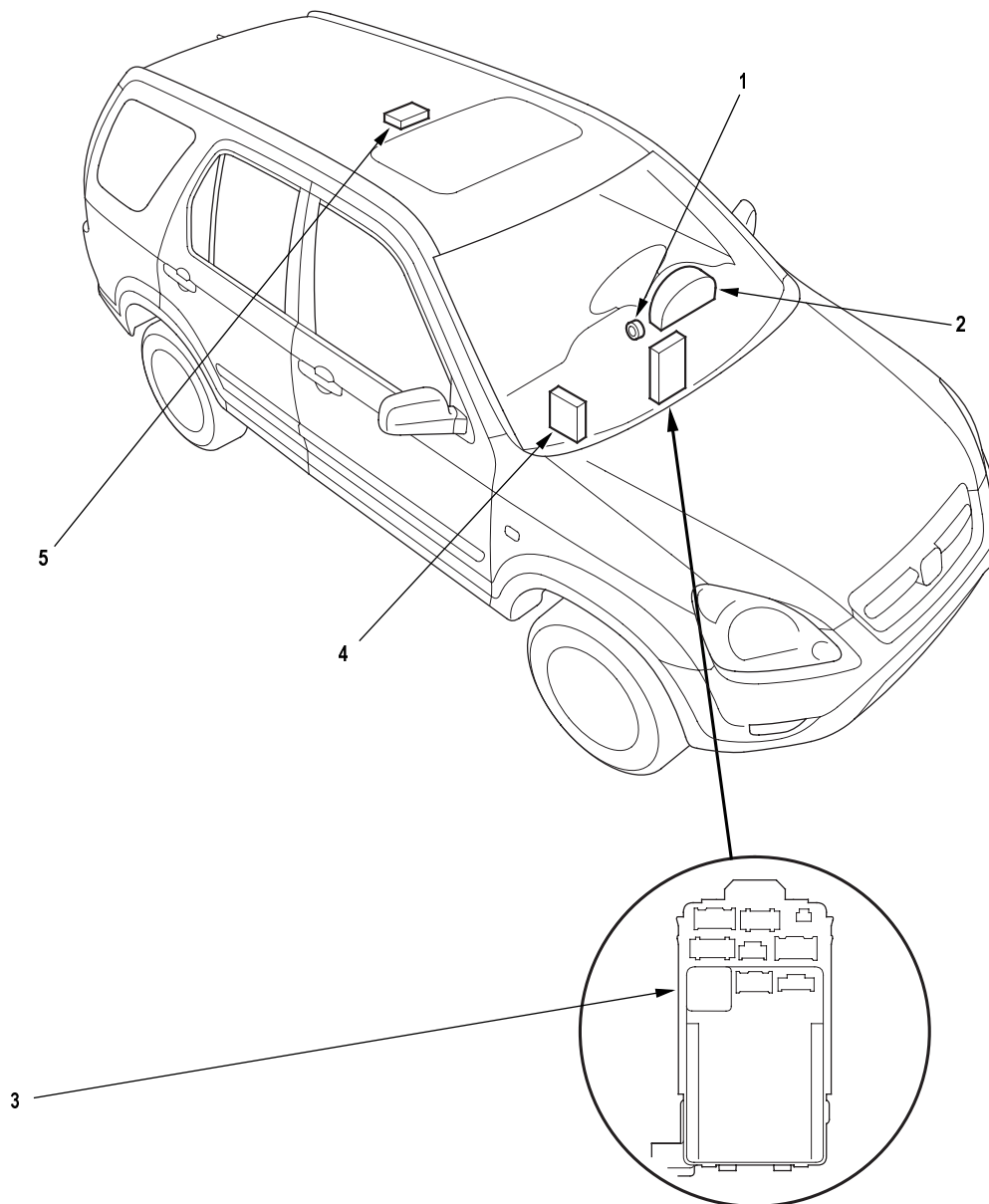


- 3. Install in the reverse order of removal. Take care not to pinch the washer tubes. Check the windshield washer operation.

## Multiplex Control System

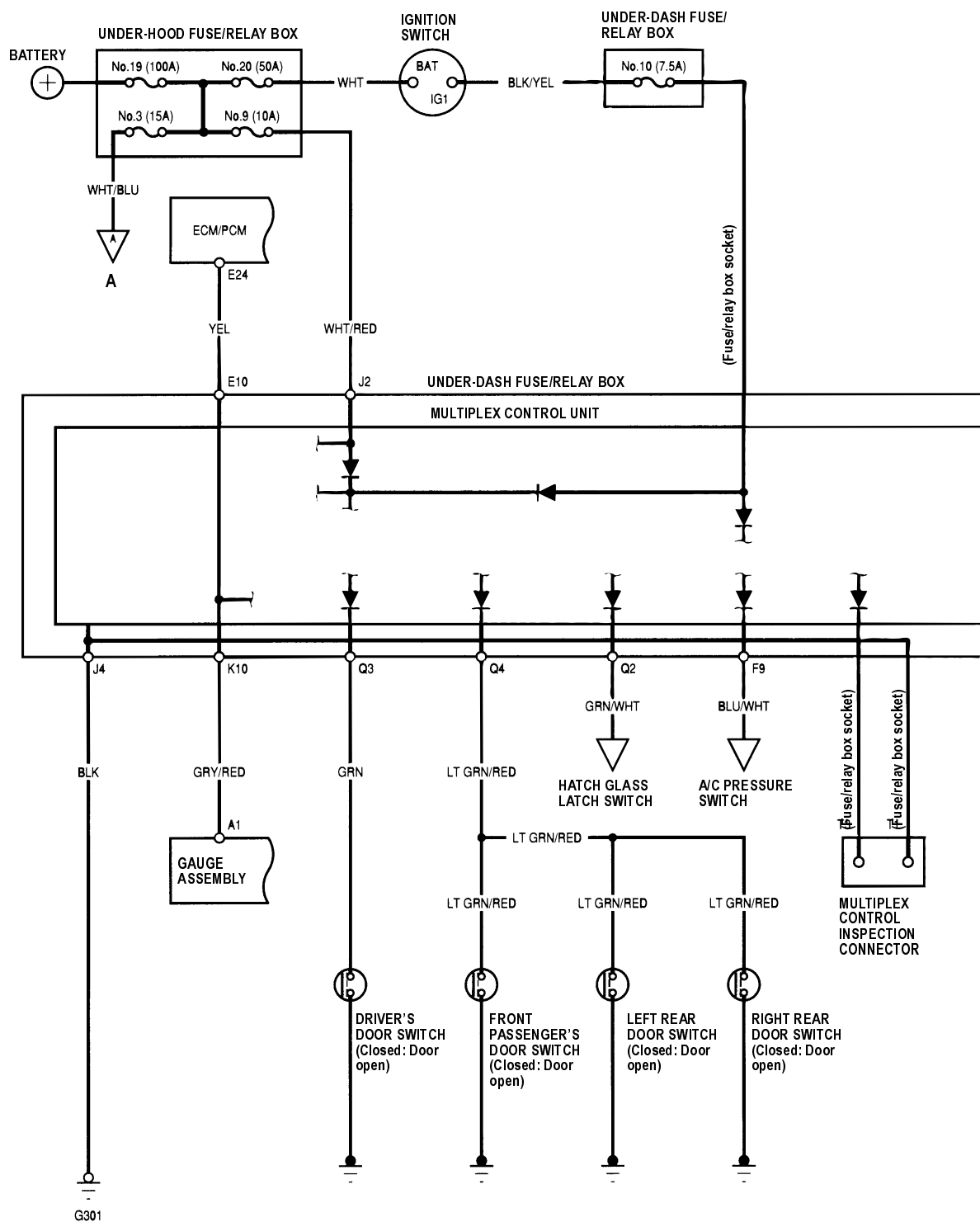
### Component Location Index

NOTE: LHD type is shown, RHD type is similar.



- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | IGNITION KEY LIGHT   | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-113</a>   |
| 2 | GAUGE ASSEMBLY   |  |
| 3 | MULTIPLEX CONTROL UNIT<br>(Built into the under-dash fuse/relay box) | Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 22A-231</a> ; Input Test, <a href="#">page 22A-235</a> |
| 4 | ECM/PCM  |  |
| 5 | FRONT CEILING LIGHT  | Test, <a href="#">page 22A-109</a>   |

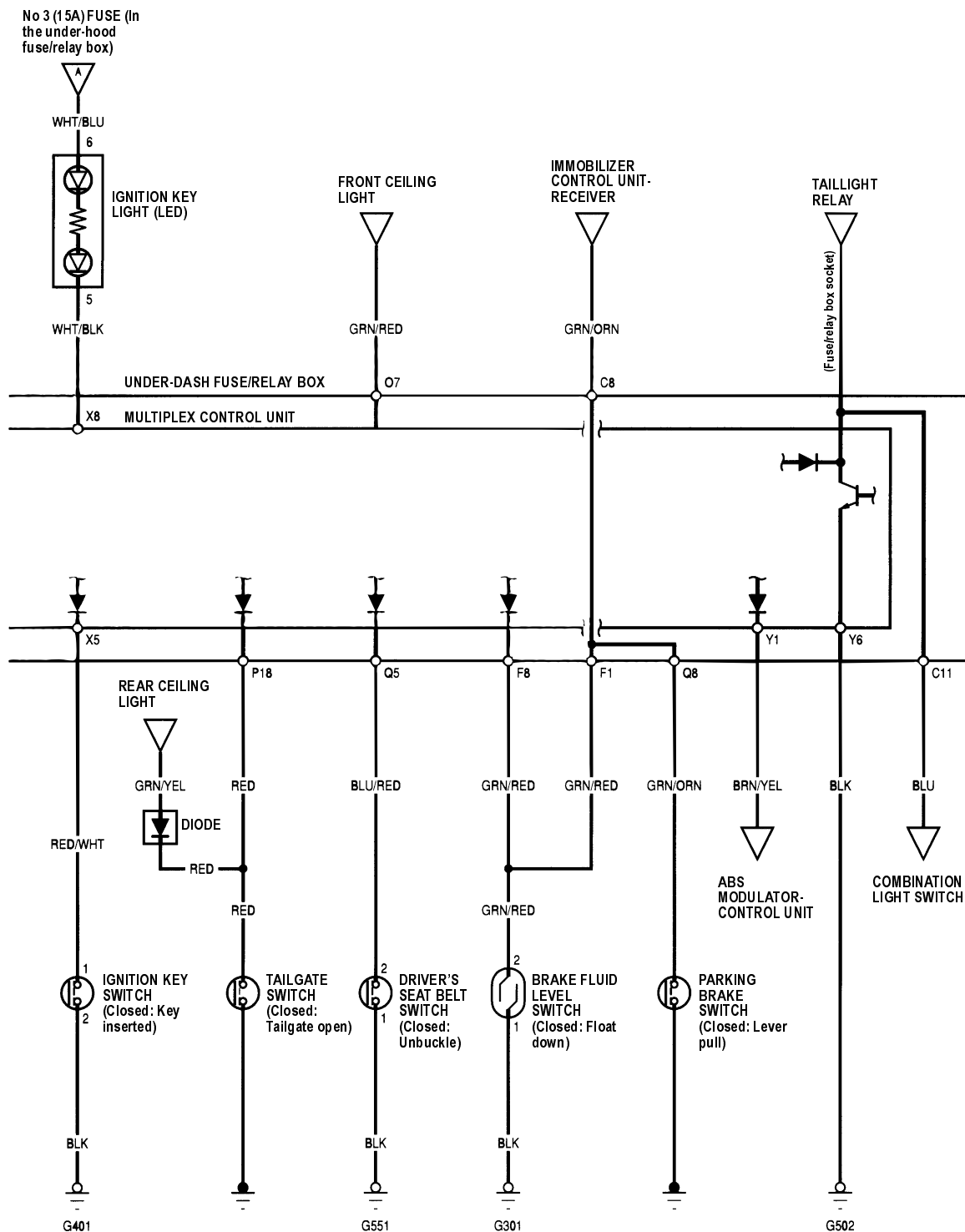
Circuit Diagram



A IGNITION KEY LIGHT To [page 22A-229](#)



## Circuit Diagram (cont'd)



## System Description

The multiplex Control System has four internal functions:

- Multiplexing (send multiple signals over shared wires)
- Wake up/sleep (runs at full power only on demand to reduce battery draw)
- Fail-safe (fixes or ignores faulty signals)
- Self-diagnosis (Mode 1 for system DTCs, Mode 2 for input lines)

The system controls the function of these circuits:

- Entry light control (ignition key light and ceiling light)
- Wiper/washer (intermittent wipe and park functions)
- Interlock system
- Keyless/power Door Lock
- Meter assembly, temperature gauge, and indicator lights
- HVAC (Compressor and fan control)
- Key-in reminder
- Lights-on reminder
- Seat belt reminder
- Daytime running lights
- Rear fog light

## Multiplex Communication

To reduce the number of wire harnesses, digital signals are sent via shared multiplex communication lines rather than sending normal electrical signals through individual wires.

- The input signals from each switch are converted to digital signals at the central processing unit (CPU).
- The digital signals are sent from the transmitting unit to the receiving unit as serial signals.
- The transmitted signal is converted to a switch signal at the receiving unit, and it operates the related component or monitors a switch.
- There are exclusive communication lines between the ECM/PCM, the gauge assembly, and the under-dash fuse/relay box.

## Wake-up and Sleep

The multiplex control system has "wake-up" and "sleep" functions to decrease parasitic draw on the battery when the ignition switch is OFF.

- In the sleep mode, the multiplex control unit stops functioning (communication and CPU control) when it is not necessary for the system to operate.
- As soon as any operation is requested (for example, a door is unlocked), the related control unit in the sleep mode immediately wakes up and begins to function.
- When the ignition switch is turned OFF, and the driver's or front passenger's door is opened, then closed, there is about a 40 second delay before the control unit goes from the wake-up mode to the sleep mode.
- If any door is open, the sleep mode will not function.
- If a key is in the ignition switch, the sleep mode will not function.
- When in sleep mode, the draw is reduced from 70-80 mA to less than 10 mA.

## Fail-safe

To prevent improper operation, the multiplex control system has a fail-safe function. In the fail-safe mode, the output signal is fixed when any part of the system malfunctions (for example a faulty control unit or communication line).

Each control unit has a hardware fail-safe function that fixes the output signal when there is any CPU malfunction, and a software fail-safe function that ignores the signal from the malfunctioning control unit and allows the system to operate normally.

## Troubleshooting

### Special Tool Required:

MPCS Service Connector 07WAZ-0010100

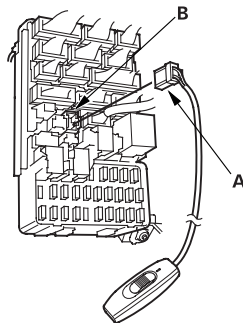
1. Check the No. 9 (10 A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box and the No. 10 (7.5 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

*Are the fuses OK?*

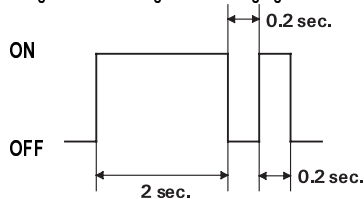
**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Find and repair the cause of the blown fuse.■

2. Remove the driver's dashboard lower cover (see page 20-88).
3. Switch the ceiling light to the middle position. Close all doors. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).  
If the driver's seatbelt is unbuckled, the beeper will beep five times.
4. Check self-diagnosis function Mode 1 for a diagnostic trouble code (DTC) by connecting the special tool (A) to the multiplex control inspection connector (B). After about 5 seconds, the ignition switch light and ceiling light should come on for 2 seconds, go out, then blink once for 0.2 second. This means that you are in Mode 1 of the self-diagnosis function.



Mode 1: Ignition switch light and ceiling light



*Did the blinking lights confirm that you are in model?*

**Yes** Count the blinks, then go to step 5.

**No** See if the SCS circuit is working properly. Go to step 6.

5. If there is a DTC, it will blink, pause, then repeat the DTC as long as the ignition switch is ON (II).

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Count the blinks, then go to step 8.

**No** Go to step 9.

6. Check for continuity between the inspection connector T1 and body ground.

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Go to step 7.

7. Check for continuity between the connector J of under-dash fuse/relay box No. 4 terminal and body ground.

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Faulty under-dash fuse/relay box. Replace and check for DTCs.

**No** Repair the open in the wire, and recheck for DTCs.■

(cont'd)

Troubleshooting (cont'd)

8. About 1 second after you go into self-diagnosis mode 1, the ceiling light will indicate the DTC, and repeat it every 3 seconds. If there is more than one DTC, the system will indicate them in ascending order, beginning from the DTC with the lowest numerical value. Troubleshoot the DTCs as indicated below:
- DTC 1, 2, and 3 (ECM/PCM P0600) simultaneously: Check for a short to body ground in the YEL wire between multiplex control unit terminal E10 and ECM/PCM terminal E24, and in the GRY/RED wire between multiplex control unit terminal K10 and gauge assembly terminal A1. If both wires are OK, substitute a known-good multiplex control unit, gauge assembly, and ECM/PCM one at a time, in that order, and recheck for the DTCs after each substitution.
  - DTC 2 and 5 simultaneously: Check for an open in the YEL wire between multiplex control unit terminal E10 and ECM/PCM terminal E24. If the wire is OK, substitute a known-good multiplex control unit, gauge assembly, and ECM/PCM one at a time, in that order, and recheck for the DTCs after each substitution.
  - DTC 1, and 6 simultaneously: Check for an open in the GRY/RED wire between multiplex control unit terminal K10 and gauge assembly terminal A1. If the wire is OK, substitute a known-good multiplex control unit, gauge assembly, and ECM/PCM one at a time, in that order, and recheck for the DTCs after each substitution.
  - DTC 1 only (no other DTCs present): Substitute a known-good multiplex control unit, and a gauge assembly one at a time, in that order, and recheck for the DTCs after each substitution.
  - DTC 2 only (no other DTCs present): Substitute a known-good multiplex control unit and a ECM/PCM one at a time, in that order, and recheck for the DTCs after each substitution.
  - DTC 3 only (no other DTCs present): Substitute a known-good multiplex control unit, and recheck for the DTC.
  - DTC 5 only (no other DTCs present): Substitute a known-good gauge assembly, and recheck for the DTC.

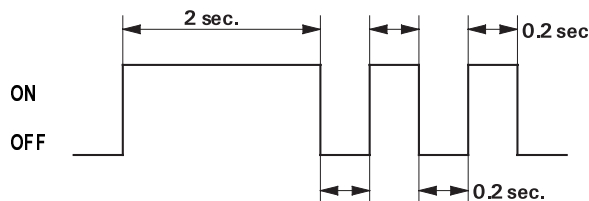
- DTC 6 only (no other DTCs present): Update the ECM/PCM if it does not have the latest software, or substitute a known-good ECM/PCM, then recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away with a known-good ECM/PCM, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

DTC	Cause
1	The multiplex control unit cannot receive signals from the gauge assembly.
2	The multiplex control unit cannot receive signals from the ECM/PCM.
3	The multiplex control unit cannot receive signals from itself.
5	The gauge assembly cannot receive signals from multiplex control unit and the ECM/PCM.
6	The ECM/PCM cannot receive signals from multiplex control unit and the gauge assembly.



9. From Mode 1, disconnect the special tool from the multiplex control inspection connector for about 5 to 10 seconds, then reconnect it. The ceiling light should come on for 2 seconds, then blink twice more at 0.2 second intervals. This means the system has gone from Mode 1 to Mode 2.

## MODE 2: Ceiling Light Blinking Pattern



NOTE: To cancel Mode 2, disconnect the SCS service connector from the multiplex control inspection connector for more than 10 seconds or turn the ignition switch OFF.

10. Look in the following table for the switches most closely related to the problem. While still in Mode 2, operate the switches and the control unit. If the circuit is OK, the spotlight and ceiling light should blink once. If the circuit is faulty, there will be no indication.

*Does the ceiling light blink?*

**Yes** Go to step 12.

**No** Go to step 11.

In each table below is a list of circuits that can be checked in Mode 2.

Taillight relay
Windshield washer switch (ON)
Windshield wiper motor (INT, Auto stop)
Driver's door switch (door opened)
Front passenger's door switch (door opened)
Left rear door switch (door opened)
Right rear door switch (door opened)
Ignition key switch (key in switch)
Tailgate switch (tailgate opened)
Parking brake switch (ON)
Driver's door lock knob switch (LOCK/UNLOCK)
Passenger's door lock knob switch (UNLOCK)(KE model)
Left rear door lock knob switch (UNLOCK)(KE model)
Right rear door lock knob switch (UNLOCK)(KE model)
Driver's door key cylinder switch (LOCK/UNLOCK)
Driver's door lock switch (LOCK/UNLOCK)
Front passenger's door key cylinder switch (LOCK/UNLOCK)
Driver's seat belt switch (UNLATCH)
A/C switch (with fan switch ON)
Combination light switch
ECM/PCM communication line
Gauge assembly communication line
ABS communication
Front fog light switch (KE model)
Hatch glass (open)

11. Check two or three other circuits listed above.

*Does the spotlight and ceiling light blink for each circuit?*

**Yes** The additional circuits are OK. Repair the short or open in the circuit that failed the test in step 10.■

**No** Multiplex failed circuits can mean that the control unit has failed, but without triggering a DTC. Test a few more circuits. If they also fail, test the multiplex control unit inputs ([see page 22A-235](#)). If all the input test are OK, substitute a known-good control unit, gauge assembly, or ECM/PCM, one at a time, then recheck. If the system works properly, the original control unit is faulty; replace it. If there is still a malfunction, substitute a known-good control unit for the next most likely faulty control unit, then recheck. If the system works properly, that control unit is faulty; replace it.■

(cont'd)

Troubleshooting (cont'd)

12. Shift to the sleep mode:  
Turn the ignition switch OFF, and remove the key.  
If the control unit receivers no inputs from the inputs listed below, it will go into the sleep mode after about 20 seconds.

Multiplex Control Unit
Taillight relay (combination switch OFF)
Driver's door switch (door closed)
Front passenger's door switch (door closed)
Left rear door switch (door closed)
Right rear door switch (door closed)
Tailgate switch (tailgate closed)
Driver's door key cylinder switch (LOCK/UNLOCK)
Hatch glass (glass closed)

13. Confirm the sleep mode:  
Check for voltage on the YEL and WHT/GRN wires. There should be battery voltage in the sleep mode. Check the parasitic draw at the battery while shifting into the sleep mode. Amperage should change from about 70 through 80 mA to less than 10 mA.

14. Shift to the wake up mode:  
When the ignition switch is turned ON (II), the multiplex control unit, gauge assembly, and ECM/PCM wake up at the same time without "talking" to each other through the communication lines. When any switch in the multiplex system is turned on, it wakes up its related control unit which, in turn, wakes up the other units.

After confirming the sleep mode, look in the following table for the switch most closely related to the problem. Operate that switch and see if its control unit wakes up.

NOTE: If any control unit is faulty and will not wake up, several parts of the system will malfunction at the same time.

In the table below, the control unit is followed by a list of the switches and input signals that can wake it up.

Multiplex Control Unit No. 9 (10 A) under-hood fuse
Communication lines (ECM/PCM, Gauge assembly)
Taillight relay (combination switch ON)
Driver's door switch (door open)
Front passenger's door switch (door open)
Left rear door switch (door open)
Right rear door switch (door open)
Driver's door key cylinder switch (LOCK/UNLOCK)
Driver's door lock knob switch (LOCK/UNLOCK)
Driver's door lock switch (LOCK/UNLOCK)
Front passenger's door key cylinder switch (UNLOCK)
Ignition key switch (key in switch)
Tailgate switch (tailgate open)

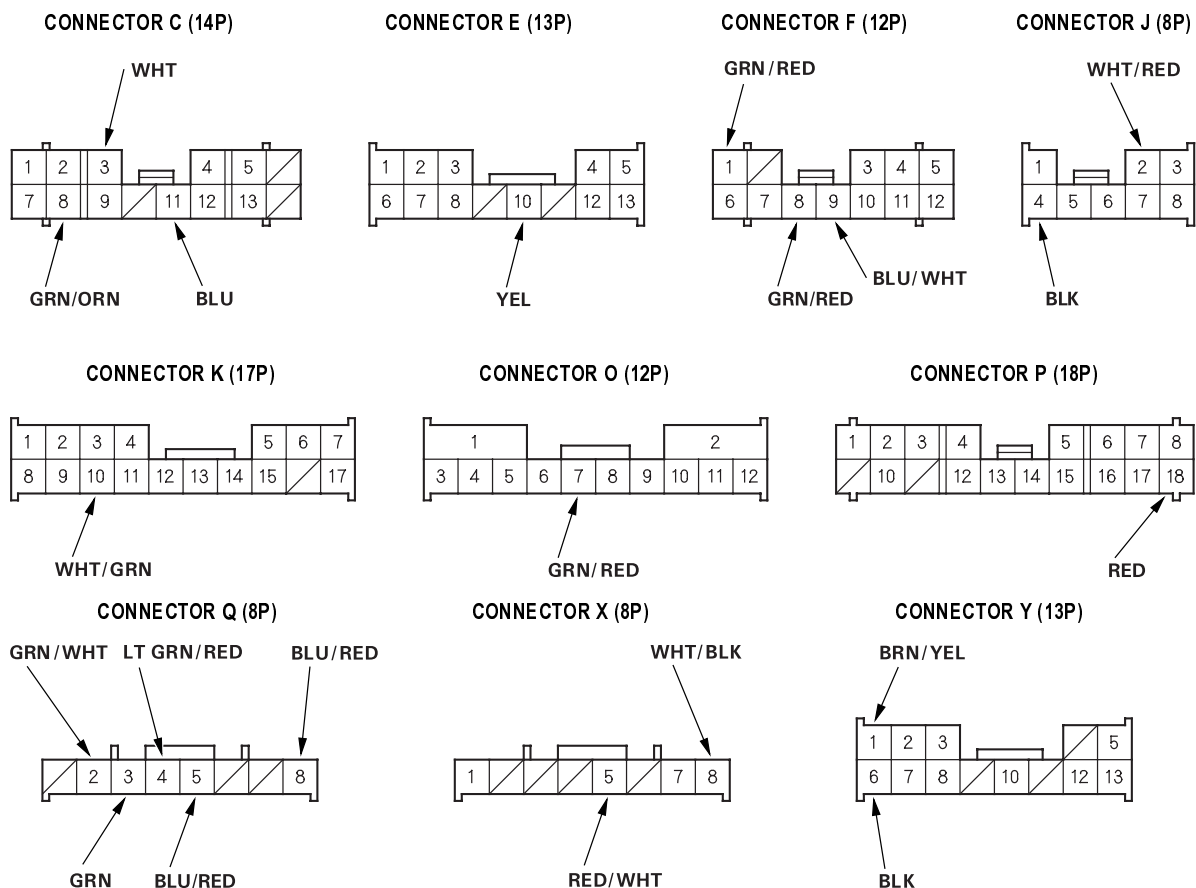
Is the wake-up function OK?

- Yes Intermittent failure; the system is OK at this time.
- No Test the multiplex control unit inputs (see page 22A-235).

## Multiplex Control Unit Input Test

1. Remove the dashboard under cover ([see page 20-95](#)).
2. Disconnect the under-dash fuse/relay box connectors C, E, F, J, K, O, P, Q, X and Y.

NOTE: All connectors are wire side of female terminals.



3. Inspect the connector and socket terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals look OK, go to step 4.

(cont'd)

## Multiplex Control Unit Input Test (cont'd)

4. Reconnect the connectors to the under-dash fuse/relay box, and make sure these input tests at the appropriate connectors on the under-dash fuse/relay box.

- If any test indicates a problem, find and correct the cause, then recheck the system.
- If all the input tests prove OK, the multiplex control unit must be faulty, replace the under-dash fuse/relay box assembly.

Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
J4	BLK	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G301)</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
Y6	BLK	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poor ground (G502)</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
J2	WHT/RED	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blown No. 9 (10A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
Q3	GRN	Driver's door open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's door switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Driver's door closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's door switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
Q4	LT GRN/RED	Passenger's door open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty passenger's door switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Passenger's door closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty passenger's door switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
Q8 • C8 • F1	GRN/ORN • GRN/RED	Parking brake lever pulled	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty parking brake switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Parking brake lever released	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty parking brake switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
Q5	BLU/RED	Ignition switch ON (II) Driver's seat belt is unbuckled.	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's seat belt switch</li> <li>• Poor ground (G551)</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Ignition switch ON (II) Driver's seat belt is buckled.	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty driver's seat belt switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
P18	RED	Tailgate open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty tailgate switch</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Tailgate closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty tailgate switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
X5	RED/WHT	Ignition key is in the ignition switch	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty ignition key switch</li> <li>• Poor ground (G401)</li> <li>• An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Ignition key is out of the ignition switch	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Faulty ignition key switch</li> <li>• Short to ground</li> </ul>
F9	BLU/WHT	Under all conditions	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An open or short in the wire</li> </ul>
C3	WHT	Under all conditions	Check for continuity to ground: There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An open or short in the wire</li> </ul>

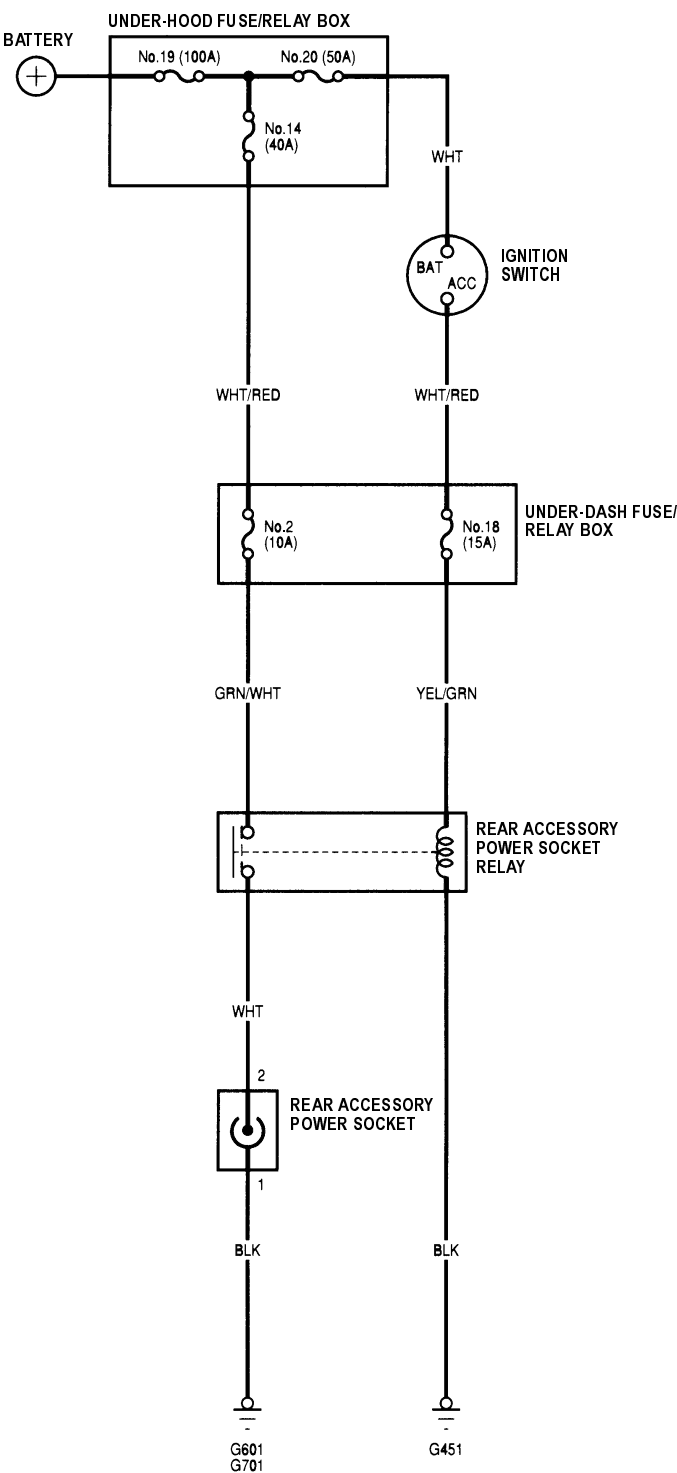




Cavity	Wire	Test condition	Test: Desired result	Possible cause if result is not obtained
X8	WHT/BLK	Under all conditions	Attach to ground: The ignition key light should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown No. 3 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>Blown LED</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
O7	GRN/RED	Ceiling light switch in the middle position, all doors closed	Attach to ground: The ceiling light, spotlights should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown No. 3 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>Faulty ceiling light or spotlights</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
C11	BLU	Under all conditions	Attach to ground: Dash lights should come on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blown No. 2 (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box</li> <li>Faulty taillight relay</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
F8	GRN/RED	Disconnect the brake fluid level switch 2P connector, and jump the GRN/RED and BLK	Check for voltage to ground: There should be less than 1 V.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty brake fluid level switch</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Brake fluid level switch connector disconnected, jumper wire removed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty brake fluid level switch</li> <li>Short to ground</li> </ul>
E10	YEL	All doors, tailgate and hatch glass closed, ignition key removed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage in the sleep mode and 3-7 volts when awake.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An open or short in the wire</li> </ul>
K10	GRY/RED	All doors, tailgate and hatch glass closed, ignition key removed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be battery voltage in the sleep mode and 3-7 volts when awake.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An open or short in the wire</li> </ul>
Y1	BRN/YEL	Under all conditions	Check for continuity between the Y1 terminal and the No. 13 terminal of the ABS modulator-control unit. There should be continuity.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
Q2	GRN/WHT	Hatch glass open	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 1 V or less.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Poor ground (G601, G701)</li> <li>Faulty hatch glass latch switch</li> <li>An open in the wire</li> </ul>
		Hatch glass closed	Check for voltage to ground: There should be 5 V or more.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Faulty hatch glass latch switch</li> <li>Short to ground</li> </ul>

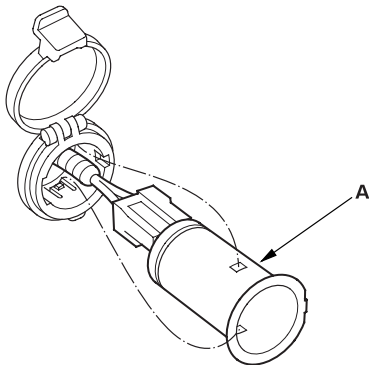
Accessory Power Socket

Circuit Diagram

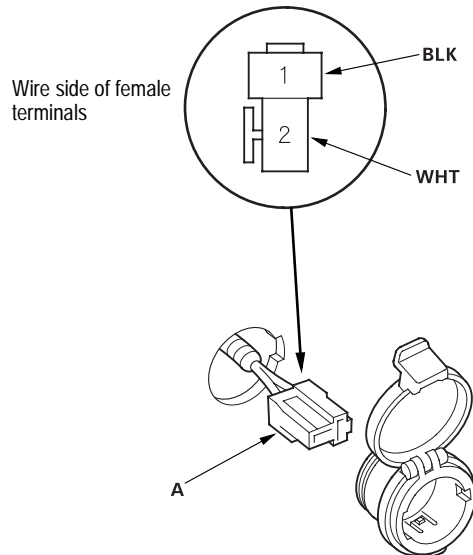


## Test/Replacement

1. Carefully pry the accessory power socket (A) out from the left rear side trim panel.



2. Disconnect the 2P connector (A) from the socket.



3. Inspect the connector terminals to be sure they are all making good contact.
  - If the terminals are bent, loose or corroded, repair them as necessary, and recheck the system.
  - If the terminals look OK, go to step 4.
4. Turn the ignition switch to ACC (I), and check for voltage between the No. 1 and No. 2 terminals.
  - There should be battery voltage.
  - If there is no battery voltage, check for:
    - poor ground (G451, G601, G701).
    - an open in the wire.
    - blown No. 18 (15A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.
    - blown No. 2 (10 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.
    - faulty rear accessory power socket relay.





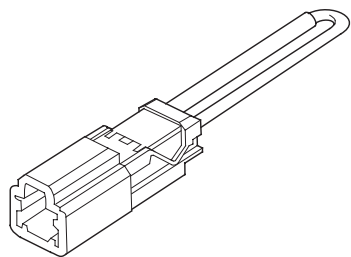
## Navigation System

Special Tools .....	22B-2
Component Location Index .....	22B-3
General Troubleshooting Information .....	22B-4
Symptom Troubleshooting Index.....	22B-6
System Description .....	22B-7
Circuit Diagram .....	22B-15
Symptom Troubleshooting .....	22B-16
Picture Diagnosis Test .....	22B-20
Forced Starting of Display .....	22B-25
DVD-ROM Replacement .....	22B-25
AVN Unit Removal/Installation .....	22B-26
GPS Antenna Removal/Installation.....	22B-26
Clock Display Size and Location Adjustment.....	22B-27



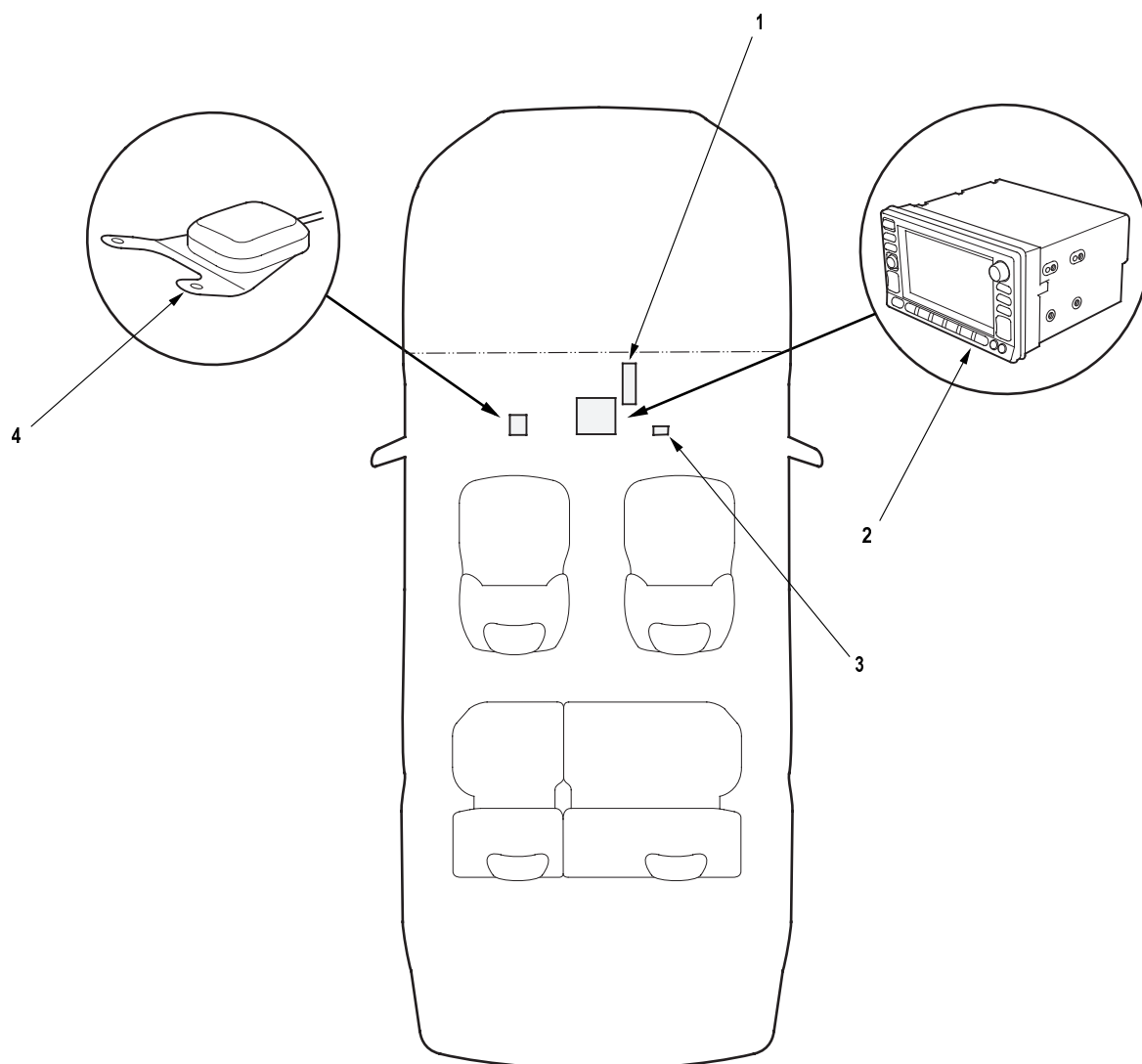
Special Tools

Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07PAZ-0010100	SCS Short Connector	1



1

## Component Location Index



1 PCM (For Vehicle Speed Pulse (VSP))

2 AVN UNIT

3 NAVIGATION SERVICE CHECK CONNECTOR

4 GPS ANTENNA

Removal/Installation, [page 22B-26](#)

Forced starting of display, [page 22B-25](#)

Removal/Installation, [page 22B-26](#)

## General Troubleshooting Information

### General Operation

Refer to the Honda Navigation System Owner's manual for the navigation system operating procedures.

### Anti-theft Feature

The navigation system has a coded theft protection circuit. Be sure to get the customer's five-digit security code number before;

- disconnecting the battery
- disconnecting navigation unit connector A (12P)
- removing the No. 9 (10A) fuse from the under-hood fuse/relay box

After service, reconnect power to the navigation unit, and turn the ignition switch ON (II). Enter the five-digit security code.

When replacing the navigation unit, be sure to give the customer the new anti-theft security code.

### Symptom Diagnosis

Certain circumstances and system limitations will result in occasional vehicle positioning errors. Some customers may think this indicates a problem with the navigation system when, in fact, the system is normal. Keep the following items in mind when interviewing customers about navigation system symptoms.

### Self-Inertial Navigation Limitations

The limitations of the self-inertial portion of the navigation system (the yaw rate sensor and the vehicle speed signal) can cause some discrepancies between the vehicle's actual position and the indicated vehicle position (GPS vehicle position). However, if GPS signals cannot be received, you must tune the vehicle position manually.

The following circumstances may cause vehicle positioning errors:

- Moving the vehicle with the engine stopped, such as by ferry or tow truck, or if the vehicle is spun on a turn table

- Tire slippage, changes in tire rolling diameters, and some driving situations may cause discrepancies in travel distances. Examples of this include:
  - Continuous tire slippage on a slippery surface
  - Driving with snow chains mounted
  - Abnormal tire pressure
  - Incorrect tire size
  - Frequent lane changes across a wide highway
  - Continuous driving on a straight or gently curving highway
- Tolerances in the system and map inaccuracies sometimes limit how precisely the vehicle position is indicated. Examples of this include:
  - Driving on roads not shown on the map (map matching is not possible)
  - Driving on a road that winds in one direction, such as a loop bridge, an interchange, or a spiral parking garage
  - Driving on a road with a series of sharp hair-pin turns
  - Driving on one of two close parallel roads
  - After making many 90 degree turns

### Global Positioning System (GPS) Limitations

The GPS cannot detect the vehicle's position during the following instances:

- For the first 5 to 10 minutes after reconnecting the battery
- When the satellite signals are blocked by tall building, mountains, tunnels, large trees, or large trucks
- When the GPS antenna is blocked by something on the dashboard
- When there is no satellite signal output (Signal output is sometimes stopped for satellite servicing)
- When the satellite signals are blocked by the operation of some electronic after market accessories.

The accuracy of GPS is reduced during these instances:

- When only two satellite signals can be received (Three satellite signals are required for accurate positioning)
- When the satellite control centers are experiencing problems





### LCD Display Unit Limitations

- In cold temperatures, the display may stay dark for the first 2 or 3 minutes until it warms up.
- When the display is too hot because of direct summer sunlight, it will remain dark until the temperature drops.
- When the humidity is high and the interior temperature is low, the display may appear cloudy. The display will clear up after some use.

### Symptom Duplication

- When the symptom can be duplicated, follow the self-diagnostic procedures (picture diagnosis mode) and the appropriate troubleshooting procedures.
- When the symptom does not reappear or only reappears intermittently, ask the customer about the conditions when the symptom occurred.
  - Try to establish if outside interference may have been the cause.
  - Try to duplicate the symptom under the same conditions the customer was experiencing.
  - Vibration, temperature extremes, and moisture (dew, humidity) are factors that are difficult to duplicate.

### Service Precautions

- Before disconnecting the battery, make sure you have the anti-theft codes for the radio and the navigation system, and write down the frequencies for the radio's preset buttons.
- After servicing, park the vehicle in an area where the GPS satellite signals will be unobstructed, and check the satellite mark on the display.
- When the battery is disconnected, the clock is reset to "0:00". The clock will reset to the correct time after the system receives the GPS satellite signals.
- After reconnecting the battery, you have to wait to get the initial signal from the satellite. It will take about ten minutes.

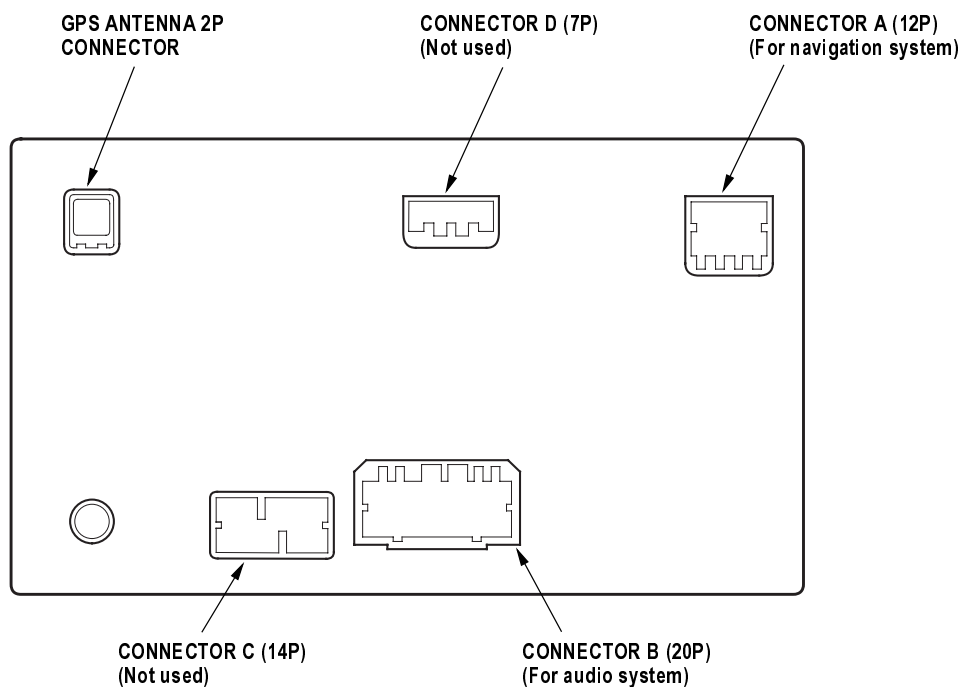
Symptom Troubleshooting Index

Symptom	Diagnostic procedure	Also check for
No picture is shown on the display	Troubleshooting <a href="#">(see page 22B-16)</a>	
The picture is missing a color or tone	Troubleshooting <a href="#">(see page 22B-17)</a>	
AVN unit buttons do not work	Replace the AVN unit.	
Satellite mark in the GPS mark is not indicated	Troubleshooting <a href="#">(see page 22B-18)</a>	Electronic after market accessories
Audio driving instructions cannot be heard	Troubleshooting <a href="#">(see page 22B-18)</a>	Vehicle position does not move on the map
Vehicle position does not move on the map	Troubleshooting <a href="#">(see page 22B-19)</a>	

## System Description

### Connector Locations

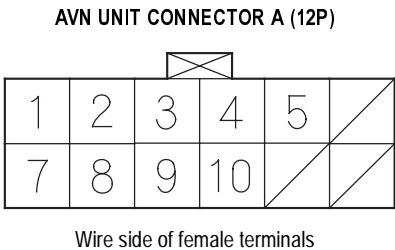
#### AVN unit



(cont'd)

System Description (cont'd)

AVN Unit Inputs and Outputs for Connector A (12P)

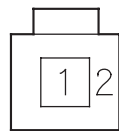


Terminal number	Wire color	Terminal	Terminal name	Description
1	WHT/RED	+B	+B power source	Continuous power source
2	YEL/RED	ACC	Accessory	Power source for accessory
3	WHT/BLU	CHG	Charge	Engine ON signal
4	BLK	GND	Ground	Ground for AVN unit
5	RED/BLK	ILL (+)	Illumination positive	Power source for illumination
7	GRN/BLK	BACK LT	Back light	Reverse signal of select lever
8	BLU/WHT	VSP	Vehicle speed pulse	Vehicle speed pulse signal
9	GRN/RED	DIAG (+)	Diagnosis positive	Signal for forced starting of display
10	GRN/YEL	DIAG (-)	Diagnosis negative	Signal for forced starting of display



AVN Inputs and Outputs for GPS antenna 2P Connector

GPS ANTENNA 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

Terminal number	Wire color	Terminal	Terminal name	Description
1	—	GPS	GPS	GPS signal
2	—	GPS GND	GPS ground	Ground for GPS antenna

(cont'd)

System Description (cont'd)

Overview

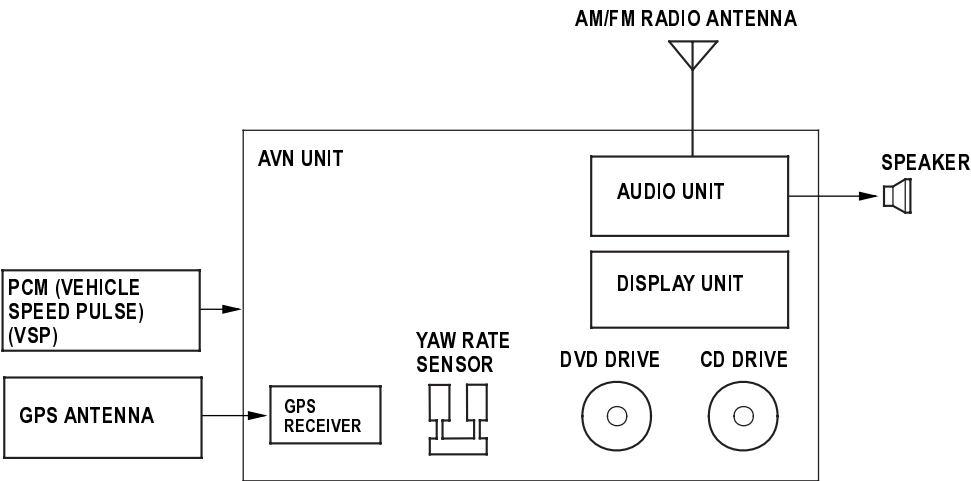
The Honda Navigation System is a highly-sophisticated, hybrid locating system that uses satellites and a map database to show you where you are and to help guide you to a desired destination.

The Navigation System receives signals from the Global Positioning System (GPS), a network of 24 satellites in orbit around the earth. By receiving signals from several of these satellites, the Navigation System can determine the latitude and longitude of the vehicle. In addition, signals from the system's yaw rate sensor and the vehicle speed pulse (VSP) sensor enable the system to keep track of the vehicle's direction and speed of travel.

This hybrid system has advantages over a system that is either entirely self-contained or one that relies totally on the GPS. For example, the self-contained portion of the system can keep track of vehicle position even when satellite signals cannot be received, and the GPS can keep track of the vehicle position even when the vehicle is transported by ferry.

The Navigation System applies all this location, direction, and speed information to the maps and calculates a route to the destination entered. As you drive to that destination, the system provides both visual and audio guidance.

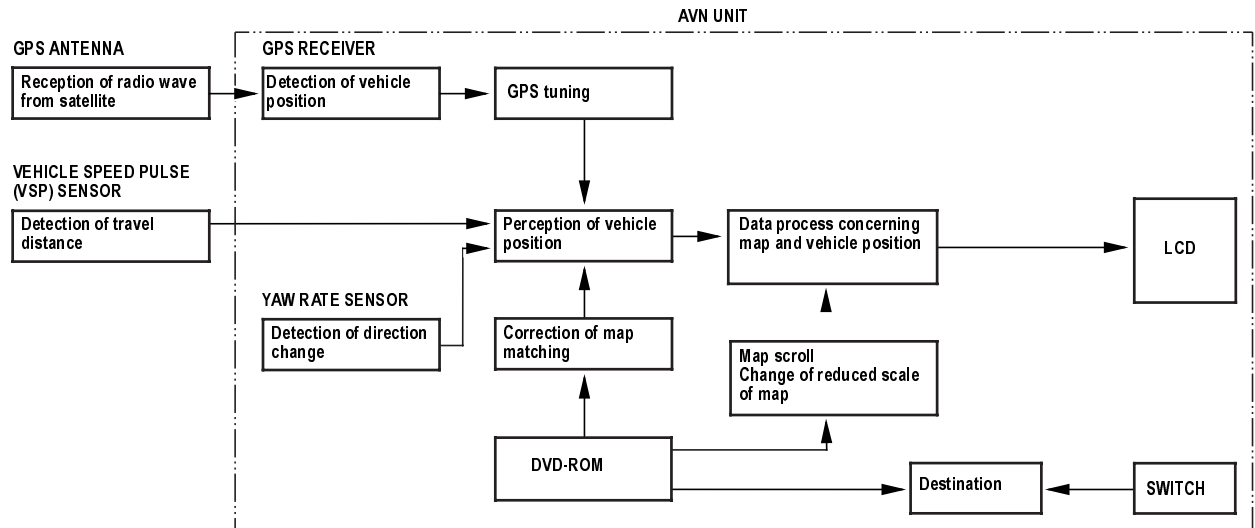
System Diagram



## Navigation Function

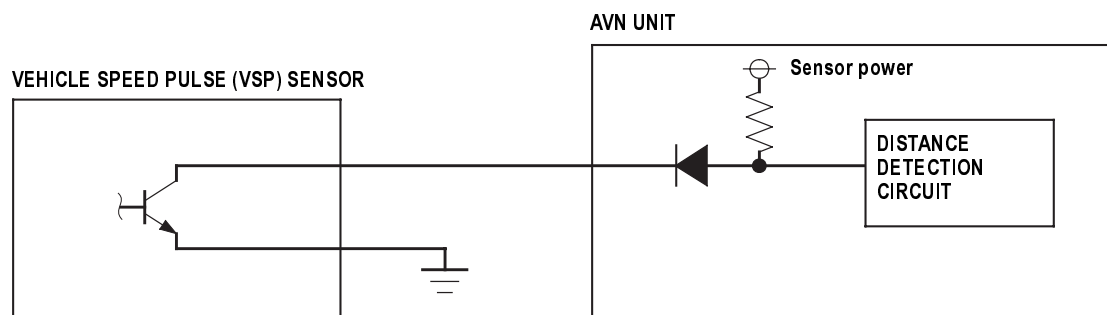
The navigation system is composed of the AVN unit, the PCM vehicle speed pulse (VSP) signal, the GPS antenna.

### Function Diagram



### Vehicle Speed Pulse (VSP)

The vehicle speed pulse (VSP) is outputted by the PCM. The PCM receives the signal from the countershaft speed sensor, then the PCM processes the signal and transmits it to the speedometer and other systems.



### Yaw Rate Sensor

The yaw rate sensor detects the direction change (angular speed) of the vehicle. The sensor is oscillation gyro built into the AVN unit.

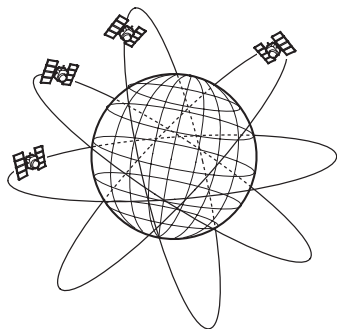
(cont'd)

System Description (cont'd)

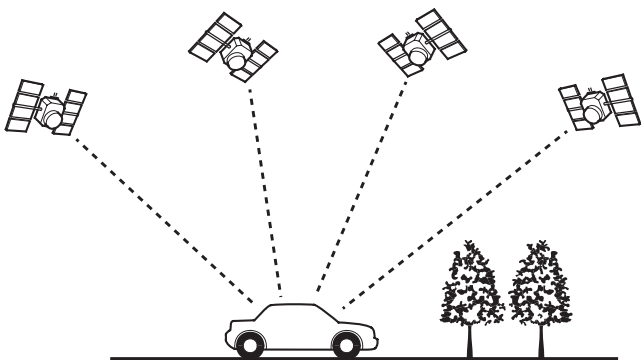
Global Positioning System (GPS)

The Global Positioning System (GPS) enables the navigation system to determine the current position of the vehicle by using the electronic waves transmitted from the satellites in orbit around the earth. The satellites transmit the satellite identification signal, orbit information, transmission time signal, and other information. When the GPS receiver receives the electronic waves from three or more satellites simultaneously, it calculates the current position of the vehicle based on the distance to each satellite and the satellite positions on their respective orbits.

Position detection Image with GPS satellite






NOTE: Four satellites on each of six orbits



Precision of GPS

The precision of the GPS varies according to the number of satellites from which electronic waves are received and the control condition. The precision is indicated by the GPS mark shown on the upper left of the display.

GPS MARK	No. of SATELLITES	CONDITION	DESCRIPTION
No satellite mark → 	Two or less	Impossible to detect vehicle position	The GPS function is normal. The satellite electronic waves that are received by the GPS receiver are too few to determine the vehicle position.
Yellow satellite mark → 	Three	Vehicle position detectable in two dimensions	The longitude and latitude of the vehicle position can be determined. (Less precise than detection in three dimensions)
Green satellite mark → 	Four or more	Vehicle position detectable in three dimensions	The longitude, latitude and the altitude of the vehicle position can be determined. (More precise than detection in two dimensions)
Not indicate	—	Faulty	The GPS can't be used due to a faulty GPS receiver, open in the antenna wire, or other fault.

GPS Antenna

Receiving the electronic waves from the satellites, the GPS antenna amplifies and transmits them to the GPS receiver.

GPS Receiver

The GPS receiver is built in to AVN unit. It calculates the vehicle position by receiving the signal from the GPS antenna. The vehicle position and signal reception condition is transmitted from the GPS receiver to the AVN unit to adjust the vehicle position.





### AVN Unit

The AVN unit calculates the vehicle position and guides you to the destination. The unit performs map matching correction, GPS correction, and distance tuning. It also controls the menu functions and the DVD-ROM drive. With control of all these items, the AVN unit makes the navigation picture signal, then it transmits the signal to the display unit and audio driving instructions to the audio unit.

### Calculation of Vehicle Position

The AVN unit calculates the vehicle position (the driving direction and the current position) by receiving the directional change signals from the yaw rate sensor and the travel distance signals from the vehicle speed pulse (VSP) sensor.

### Map Matching Tuning

The map matching tuning is accomplished by indicating the vehicle position on the roads on the map. The map data transmitted from the DVD-ROM is checked against the vehicle position data, and the vehicle position is indicated on the nearest road. Map matching tuning does not occur when the vehicle travels on a road not shown on the map, or when the vehicle position is far away from a road on the map.

### GPS Tuning

The GPS tuning is accomplished by indicating the vehicle position as the GPS's vehicle position. The AVN unit compares its calculated vehicle position data with the GPS vehicle position data. If there is large difference between the two, the indicated vehicle position is adjusted to the GPS vehicle position.

### Distance Tuning

The distance tuning reduces the difference between the travel distance signal from the VSP and the distance data on the map. The AVN unit compares its calculated vehicle position data with the GPS vehicle position data. The AVN unit then decreases the tuning value when the vehicle position is always ahead of the GPS vehicle position, and it increases the tuning value when the vehicle position is always behind the GPS vehicle position.

### Route Guidance

The AVN unit can calculate different routes to a selected destination. You have four options:

- Direct Route - Calculate a route that is the most direct and will take the least time.
- Easy Route - Calculate a route that minimizes the number of turns needed.
- Minimize Motorways - Calculate a route that avoids motorway travel. If that is not possible, keep the amount of motorway travel to a minimum.
- Minimize Toll Roads - Calculate a route that avoids, or minimizes travel on toll roads.

### Audio Guidance

The AVN unit transmits audio driving instructions before entering an intersection or passing a junction. The audio instructions come through audio unit and the front speakers.

### DVD-ROM

The map data (including all scale rates) is stored in the DVD-ROM. The map data includes:

- Road distances, road widths, speed limits, traffic regulations, passing time at junction, distances to junctions, and the driving instructions for audio guidance.
- Latitude and longitude GPS.

(cont'd)

System Description (cont'd)

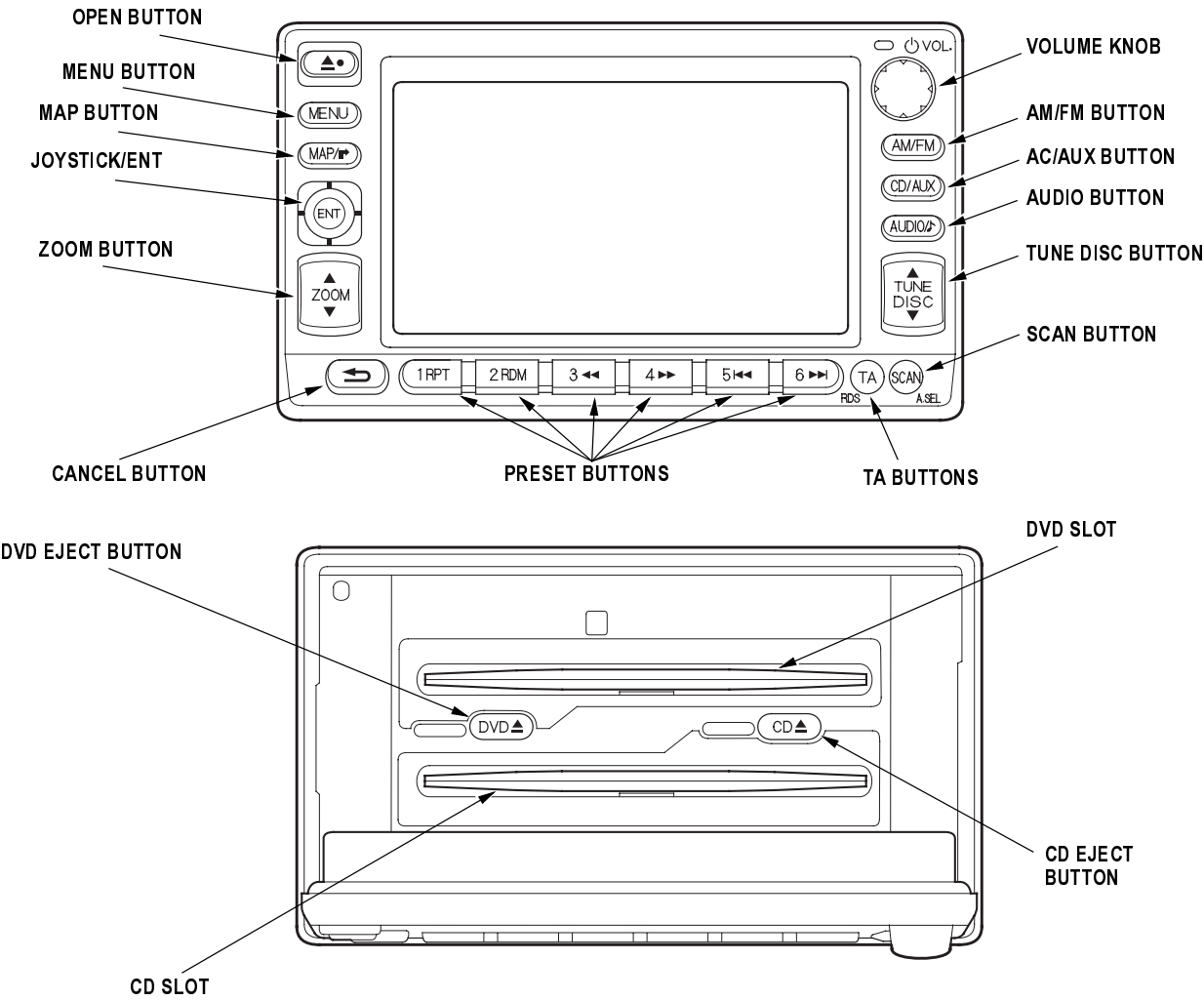
Audio Unit

The audio unit built in the AVN unit. It receives the audio driving instructions from the navigation unit and transmits the instructions through the front speakers even when the audio system is in use.

Display Unit

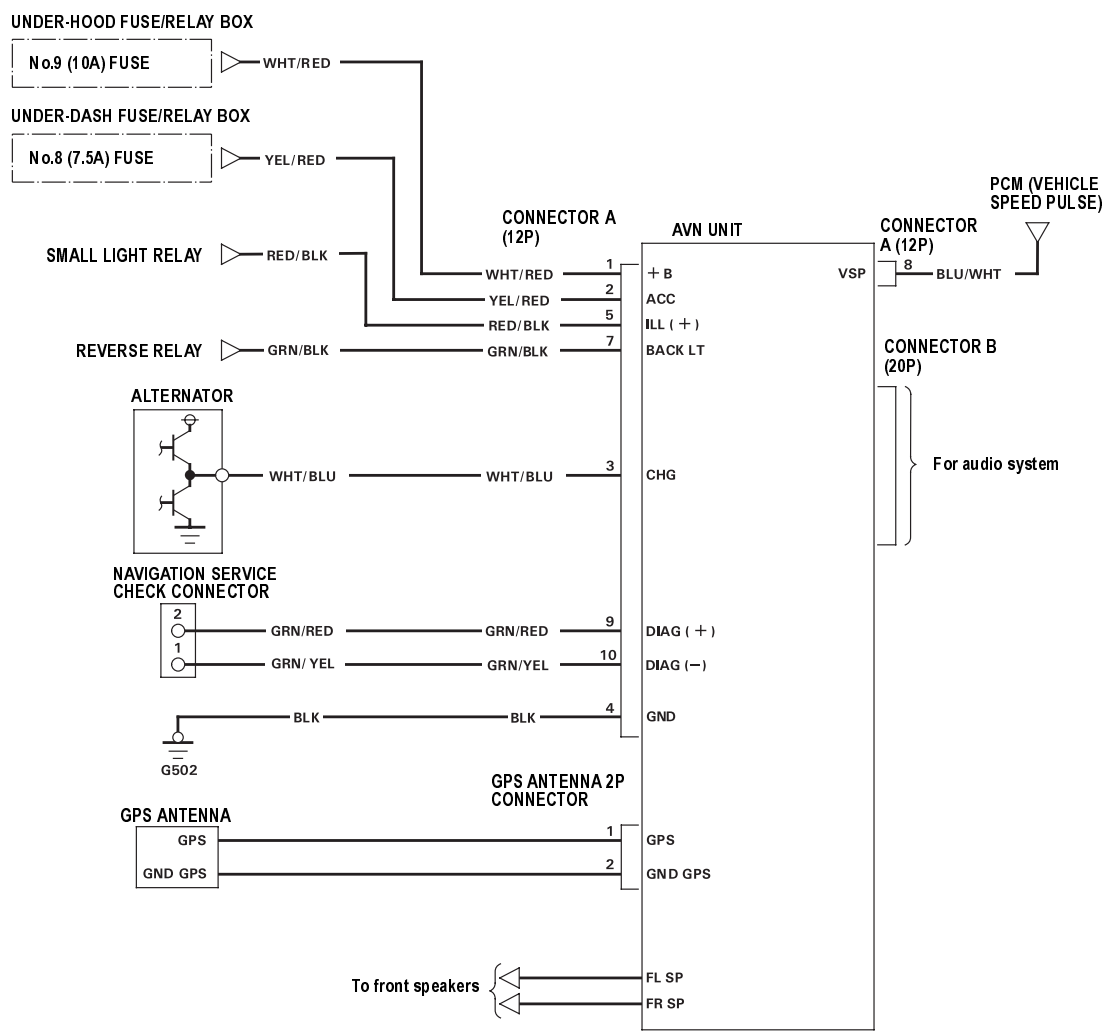
The display unit built in the AVN unit. It uses Liquid Crystal Display (LCD). The LCD is a 6-inch-wide, Thin Film Transistor (TFT), stripe type with about 280,000 picture elements. The color film and fluorescent light are laid out on the back of the liquid crystal film.

Operation keys



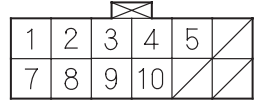


# Circuit Diagram

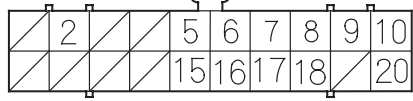


## AVN UNIT CONNECTORS

CONNECTOR A (12P)



CONNECTOR B (20P)



GPS ANTENNA 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

## Symptom Troubleshooting

### No picture is shown on the display

1. Check the No. 9 (10A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Reinstall the fuse, and go to step 2.

**No** Replace the fuse, and recheck.■

2. Check the No. 8 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

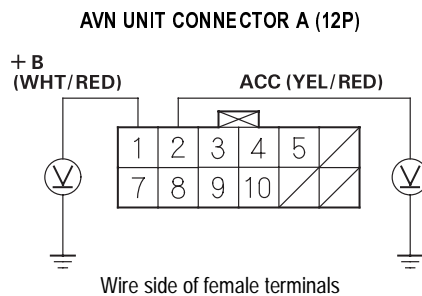
*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Reinstall the fuse, and go to step 3.

**No** Replace the fuse, and recheck.■

3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

4. Measure the voltage between body ground and AVN unit connector A (12P) terminals No. 1 and No. 2 individually.

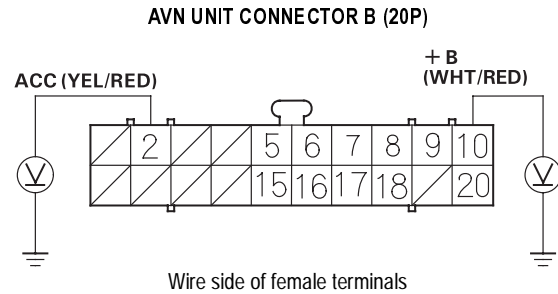


*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the fuse/relay box and the AVN unit.■

5. Measure the voltage between body ground and AVN unit connector B (20P) terminals No. 2 and No. 10.



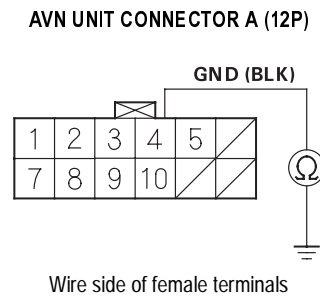
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the fuse/relay box and the AVN unit.■

6. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

7. Check for continuity between AVN unit connector A (12P) terminal No. 4 and body ground.

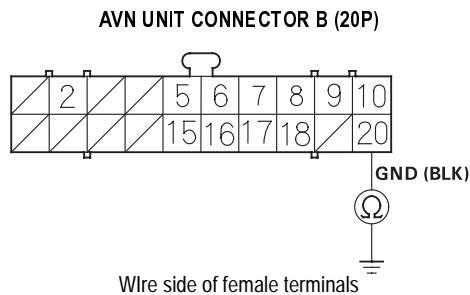


*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the AVN unit and body ground (G502).■

8. Check for continuity between AVN unit connector B (20P) terminal No. 20 and body ground.



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the AVN unit and body ground (G502).■

9. Perform the forced starting of display ([see page 22B-25](#)).

*Is the diagnosis menu of the picture diagnosis displayed?*

**Yes** Perform the System Links Test in the Picture Diagnosis Test menu ([see page 22B-20](#)).■

**No** Replace the AVN unit.■

**The picture is missing a Red, Green or Blue color or tone**

1. Perform the start-up procedure ([see page 22B-20](#)). Select the Monitor Check then select the RGB Color ([see page 22B-21](#)).

*Are the Red, Green, and Blue colored circles shown?*

**Yes** Select the Return. Select the Color Change, and then Select the Default to restore the standard color settings.■

**No** Replace the AVN unit.■

## Symptom Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### Satellite mark in the GPS mark is not indicated

1. Perform the System Link check under the picture diagnosis ([see page 22B-20](#)).  
*Is "NG" indicated?*  
**Yes** Repair as indicated by the system link check.■  
**No** Check that nothing is blocking the GPS antenna located under the dash board, and recheck where nothing can block the GPS satellite signal.■

### Audio driving instructions cannot be heard

1. Check the audio driving instructions volume setting.  
*Is it set to OFF?*  
**Yes** Set the volume to an audible level.■  
**No** Go to step 2.
2. Perform the System Link check under the picture diagnosis ([see page 22B-20](#)).  
*Can the sound be heard?*  
**Yes** The system is OK at this time.■  
**No** Go to step 3.
3. Check for open and short to body ground in the speaker circuits.  
*Are the circuits OK?*  
**Yes** Go to step 4.  
**No** Repair open or short to body ground in the wire speaker circuits.■
4. Check the speaker.  
*Is the speaker OK?*  
**Yes** Replace the AVN unit.■  
**No** Replace the speaker.■

### Vehicle position does not move on the map

1. Start the engine.
2. Perform the Car Status Test under the Picture Diagnosis Test menu ([see page 22B-20](#)).

*Is there vehicle speed pulse signal?*

**Yes** Replace the AVN unit.■

**No** Check the VSP circuit. If the circuit is OK, replace the AVN unit.■

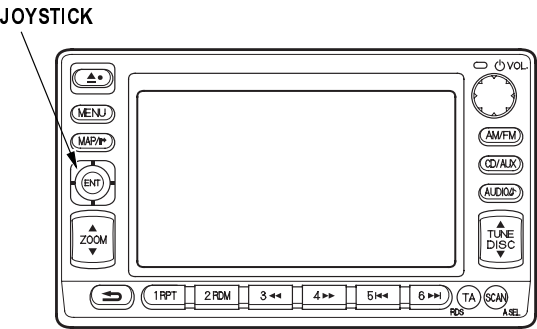
Picture Diagnosis Test

Start-up procedure

- 1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), then press and hold the keys in this order: (1) Key 1, (2) Key 2, (3) Key 6, and keep them pressed simultaneously for 5 seconds.

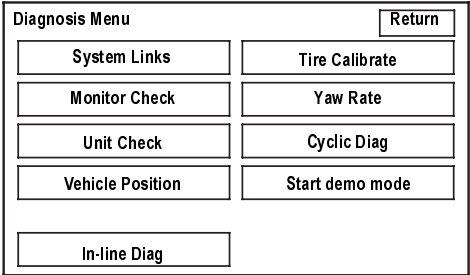
Operation keys

Joystick: Use for select the item



- 2. After the display changes to the diagnosis menu screen, select the item you want to check, and the check will start. To return to previous screen, select "Return" on the diagnosis screen.

When you quit picture diagnosis test, return to standard navigation screen and then turn the ignition switch OFF. If you turn the ignition switch OFF when the diagnosis screen displayed, the system will not work.



Diagnosis items:

- System Links
- Tire Calibrate
- Monitor Check
- Yaw Rate
- Unit Check
- Cyclic Diag
- Vehicle Position
- Start demo mode
- In-line Diag

Cyclic Diag

This test is for manufacturer's use only. In this test, the system checks the following items repeatedly:

- AVN unit check
- Monitor check

To exit this test, press the cancel key.

Vehicle Position

When moving the vehicle with the engine stopped such as ferry or tow truck and vehicle positioning error occurred, you can adjust the vehicle position using the joystick.

Start demo mode

This test is for manufacturer's use only. If the indication of this item is changed to "Stop demo mode", select this item once and make sure the indication changes to "Start demo mode".

In-line Diag

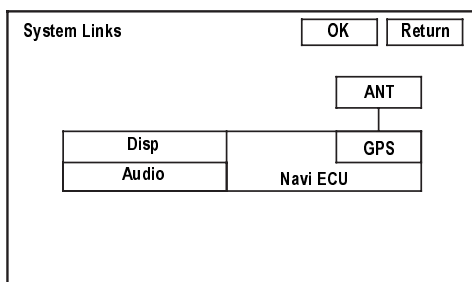
This test is for manufacturer's use only. In this test, the system checks the following items:

- System Links
- Car status
- Yaw Rate



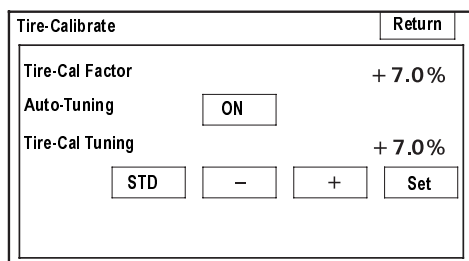
## System Links

- If the system is OK, all of the communication lines connecting the components color will not change, the screen will indicate "OK", and a tone will sound.
- If there is a problem in the system, the faulty components will change to red, the screen will indicate "NG", and tone will sound.
- If the "GPS" is in red and the screen indicates "NG", check the GPS communication line. If the line is OK, replace the GPS antenna.
- If the component except "GPS" is in red and the screen indicates "NG", replace the AVN unit.



## Tire Calibrate

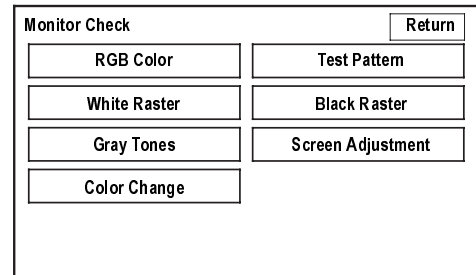
- The "Auto-Tuning" is factory-set to "ON", and it should remain ON. If you find it has been turned OFF, turn it back ON.
- The "Tire-Cal Tuning" can be used, but it is not recommended. The "AUTO TUNING" function keeps the system in better tune.



The screen shows "Tire-Cal Factor" at "+ 7.0%", "Auto-Tuning" set to "ON", and "Tire-Cal Tuning" at "+ 7.0%". At the bottom are buttons for "STD", "-", "+", and "Set". A "Return" button is at the top right.

## Monitor Check

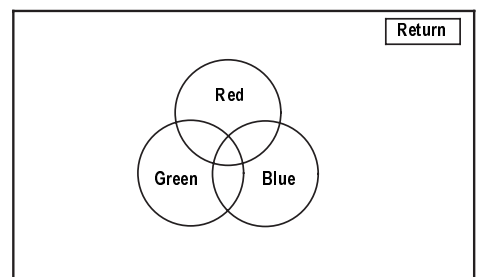
Select the item you want to check, and the check starts.



The screen has a title "Monitor Check" and a "Return" button at the top right. Below are buttons for "RGB Color", "White Raster", "Gray Tones", "Color Change", "Test Pattern", "Black Raster", and "Screen Adjustment".

## RGB Color

The three primary colors of red, green and blue must be shown.



## White Raster

The entire display must be in white.

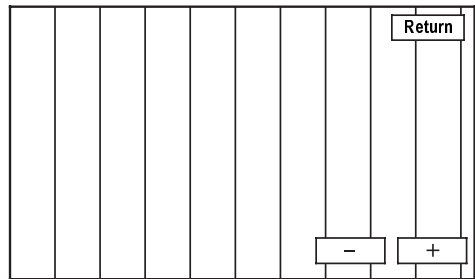


(cont'd)

Picture Diagnosis Test (cont'd)

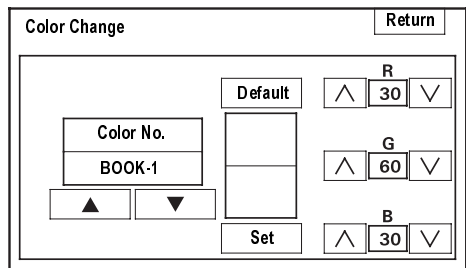
Gray Tones

The gray tone level must be changed smoothly in horizontal direction. If you want to change the contrast of the screen, select "+" or "-".



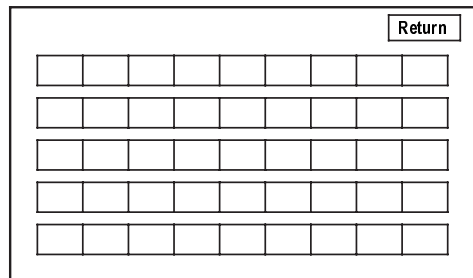
Color Change

This screen is for manufacturer's only.



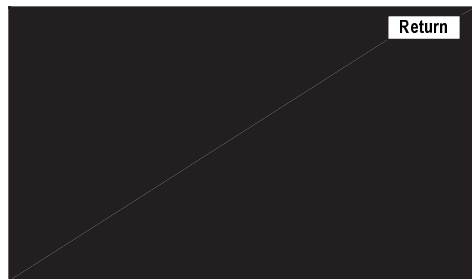
Test Pattern

The system color palette must be indicated.



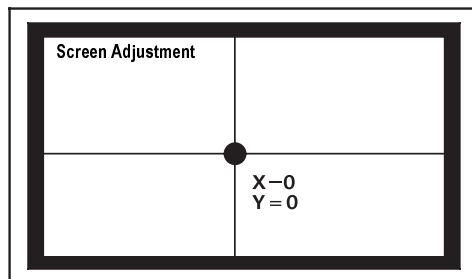
Black Raster

The entire display must be shown in black.



Screen Adjustment

In this screen, you can adjust the screen position in the display. Use the joystick to adjust the screen position.



## Unit Check

Select the item you want to check, and the check starts.

Unit Check		Return
Disp	System History	
GPS	Car Status	
Navi ECU	Backup Clear	
Force Download		

NOTE: Do not use "Backup Clear" and "Force Download". These commands are for the manufacturer's use only.

## Disp

When any item is "NG", replace the AVN unit.

Disp	OK	Return
Connection	OK	
ROM	OK	
RAM	OK	

## GPS

This screen shows the condition of the GPS reception and the vehicle position.

GPS Information		Return
Number of Satellites		
Current Position		
Latitude XX°XX'XX"		
Longitude XX°XX'XX"		
Elevation XXX ft		
'99.01.01 10:08 00		
	<input type="radio"/> In use <input type="radio"/> Search	

## Navi ECU

When any item is "NG", replace the AVN unit.

Navi ECU	OK	Return
High Tmp	XX °C	
Low Tmp	XX °C	
Flash IPL	OK [XXXX]	
Flash Application	OK [XXXX]	
RAM	OK	
VRAM Overlay	OK	
VRAM Base	OK	
Model	XX	

## System History

This screen is for manufacturer's use only.

System History	Return
LEVEL0	
LEVEL1	
LEVEL2	

(cont'd)

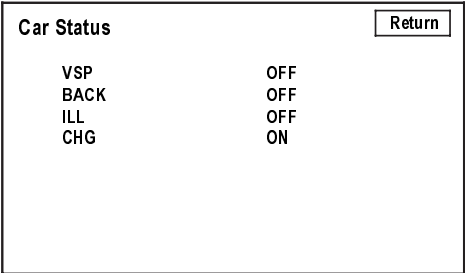
Picture Diagnosis Test (cont'd)

Car Status

Use the car status screen to check each signal.

If the indication does not match the actual vehicle status, check the applicable signal line.

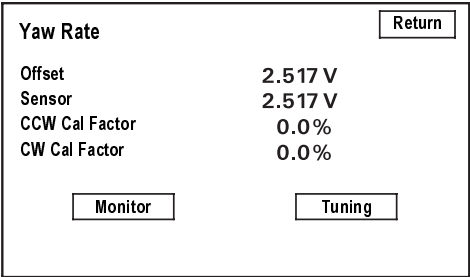
- "VSP" (vehicle speed pulse indication)
  - "OFF" when vehicle is not moving
  - "ON" when vehicle is moving
- "BACK" (reverse indication)
  - "OFF" when shift lever is in any position other than reverse
  - "ON" when shift lever is in reverse
- "ILL" (illumination indication)
  - "OFF" when parking lights or headlights are off
  - "ON" when parking lights or headlights are on
- "CHG" (charging indication)
  - "ON" when engine is running and alternator is charging
  - "OFF" when engine is off or alternator is not charging



Yaw Rate

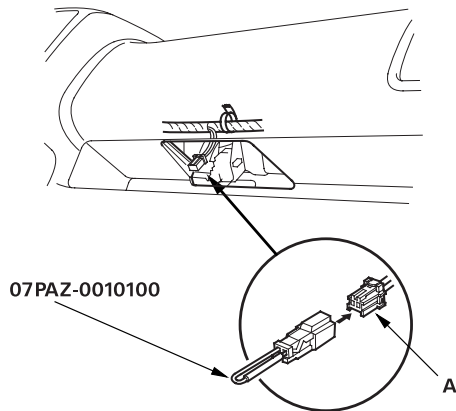
"SENSOR" indicator the voltage output from the yaw rate sensor. It should indicate 1,500 to 3,500 V with the vehicle stopped.

NOTE: Do not try to tune the yaw rate sensor unless instructed by Honda Motor Europe.

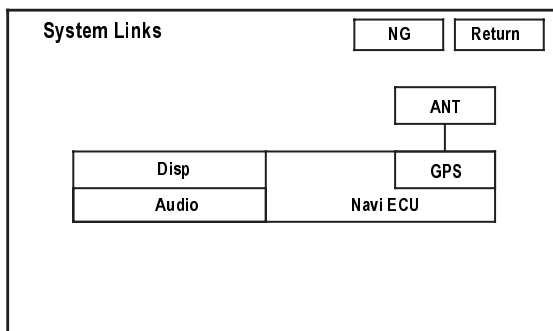


## Forced Starting of Display

1. Locate the navigation service check connector (A) upper of the data link connector.



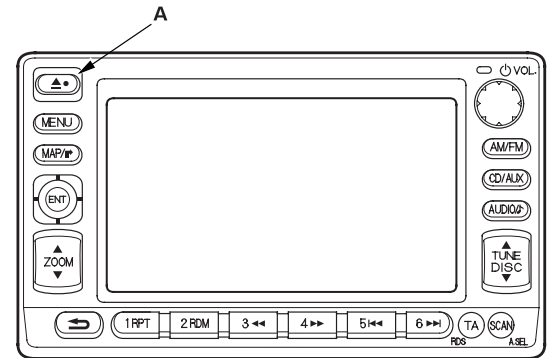
2. Connect the SCS short connector to the navigation service check connector (A).
3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).



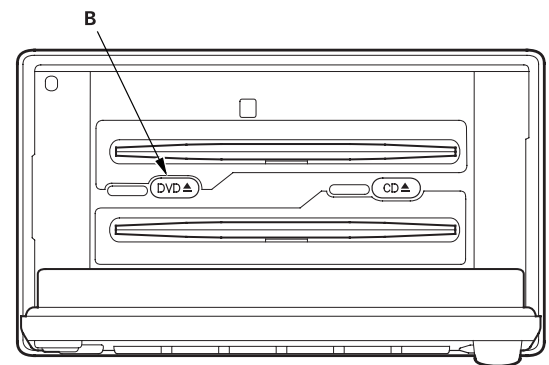
4. Check that the diagnosis menu for the picture diagnosis start up and then changes to the system link screen.

## DVD-ROM Replacement

1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
2. Push the open key (A) of the AVN unit, then open the front panel.



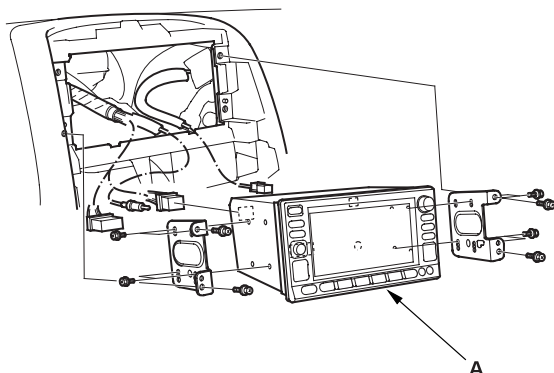
3. Push the DVD EJECT switch (B), then remove the DVD-ROM.



4. Insert the new DVD-ROM.
5. Close the front panel.

### AVN Unit Removal/Installation

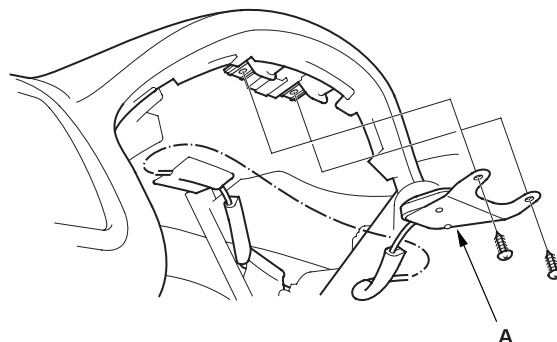
1. Remove the center panel ([see page 20-89](#)).
2. Remove the AVN unit (A).



3. Install the parts in the reverse order of removal.

### GPS Antenna Removal/Installation

1. Remove the gauge assembly ([see page 22A-74](#)).
2. Remove the GPS antenna (A).



3. Install the parts in the reverse order of removal.



### Clock Display Size and Location Adjustment

1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
2. When the disclaimer is shown on the navigation display unit, select "OK."
3. When the "Enter destination by:" screen is shown, select "Setup."
4. When the "Setup Screen" is shown, select Display "Off."
5. Select the numbers of the clock to change the clock size and location.
  - If the clock is small and in the lower right hand corner of the screen, it will increase in size and move to the center of the screen.
  - If the clock is large and in the center of the screen, it will decrease in size and move to the lower right hand corner of the screen.
6. Push the MENU button to return to the "Enter destination by:" screen. The clock display settings will be saved.





## Restraints

<b>Restraints</b> .....	<b>23-2</b>
Special Tools .....	23-2
<b>Seat Belts</b> .....	<b>23-3</b>
Component Location Index .....	23-3
Front Seat Belt Replacement .....	23-4
Rear Seat Belt Replacement.....	23-8
Inspection.....	23-12
<b>SRS</b> .....	<b>23-14</b>
Component Location Index .....	23-14
Precautions and Procedures.....	23-16
General Troubleshooting Information.....	23-25
DTC Troubleshooting Index .....	23-31
Symptom Troubleshooting Index.....	23-38
System Description .....	23-39
Circuit Diagram .....	23-41
Connectors .....	23-43
DTC Troubleshooting .....	23-45
SRS Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting .....	23-124
Component Replacement/Inspection After Deployment .....	23-134
Driver's Airbag Replacement.....	23-135
Front Passenger's Airbag Replacement.....	23-136
Side Airbag Replacement .....	23-137
Airbag Disposal .....	23-138
Cable Reel Replacement .....	23-141
SRS Unit Replacement .....	23-144
Side Impact Sensor Replacement.....	23-145
OPDS Unit Replacement .....	23-146
Front Sensor Replacement .....	23-147

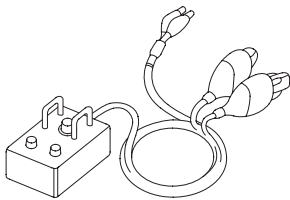


Restraints

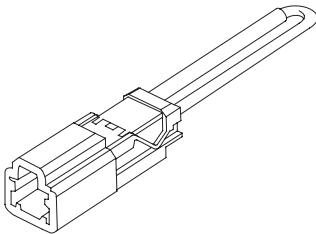
Special Tools

Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1*1	07HAZ-SG00500	Deployment Tool	1
2	07PAZ-0010100	SCS Short Connector	1
3	07SAZ-TB4011A	SRS Inflator Simulator	1
4	07TAZ-SZ5011A	SRS Simulator Lead C	1
5*2	07TAZ-001020A	Backprobe Adapter, 17 mm	2
6	07XAZ-S1A0200	SRS Simulator Lead E	1
7	07XAZ-SZ30100	SRS Simulator Lead F	1
8	07YAZ-S3A0100	SRS Simulator Lead H	1
9	07WAJ-0010100	DLC Pin Box	1

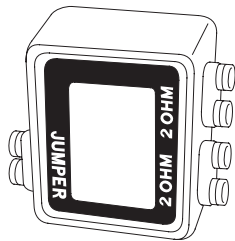
\*1: Included in SRS Tool Set 07MAZ-SM5000B  
\*2: Use with the stacking patch cords from T/N 07SAZ-001000A, Backprobe Set.



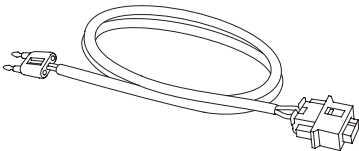
1



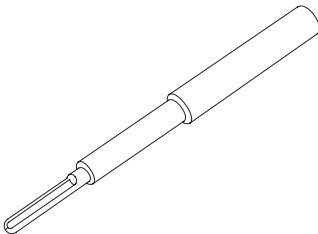
2



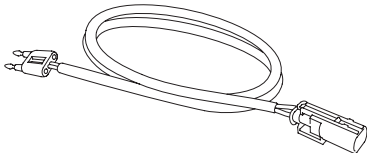
3



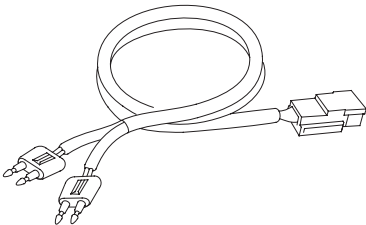
4



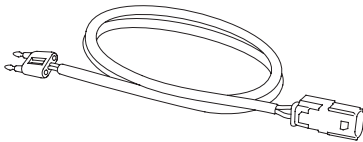
5



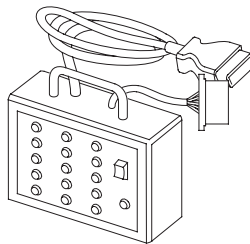
6



7



8

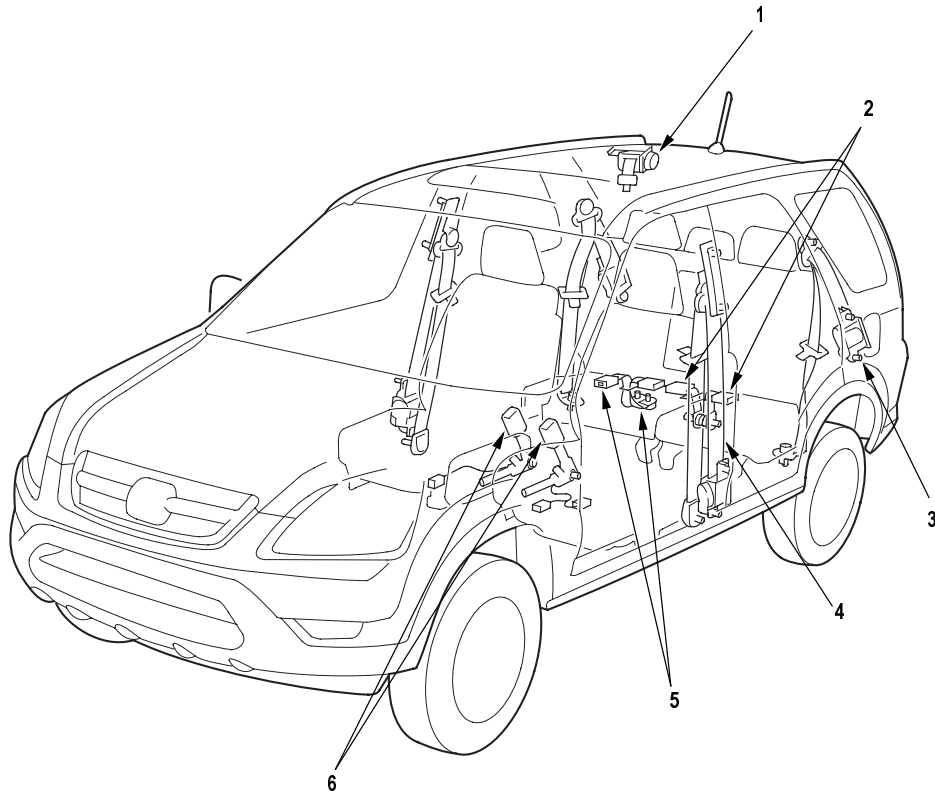


9



## Seat Belts

### Component Location Index



- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | REAR CENTER SEAT BELT (DETACHABLE ANCHOR)                               | Replacement, step 1 on <a href="#">page 23-9</a> ; Inspection, <a href="#">page 23-12</a> |
| 2 | REAR CENTER SEAT BELT BUCKLE and LEFT REAR SEAT BELT BUCKLE             | Replacement, step 1 on <a href="#">page 23-11</a>   |
| 3 | REAR SEAT BELT  | Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-8</a> ; Inspection, <a href="#">page 23-12</a>           |
| 4 | FRONT SEAT BELT   | Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-4</a> ; Inspection, <a href="#">page 23-12</a>           |
| 5 | REAR CENTER SEAT BELT/DETACHABLE ANCHOR and RIGHT REAR SEAT BELT BUCKLE | Replacement, step 1 on <a href="#">page 23-10</a>   |
| 6 | FRONT SEAT BELT BUCKLES   | Replacement, step 1 on <a href="#">page 23-6</a>  |

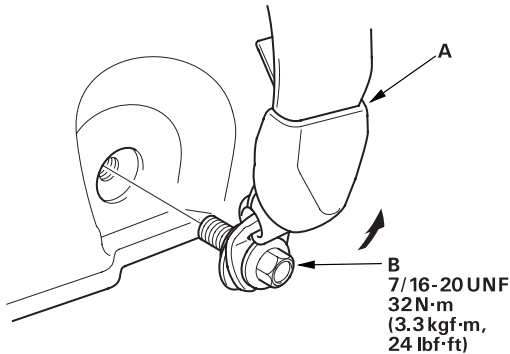
## Front Seat Belt Replacement

For some models: SRS components are located in this area. Review the SRS component locations ([see page 23-14](#)) and the precautions and procedures ([see page 23-16](#)) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

NOTE: Check the front seat belts for damage, and replace them if necessary. Be careful not to damage them during removal and installation.

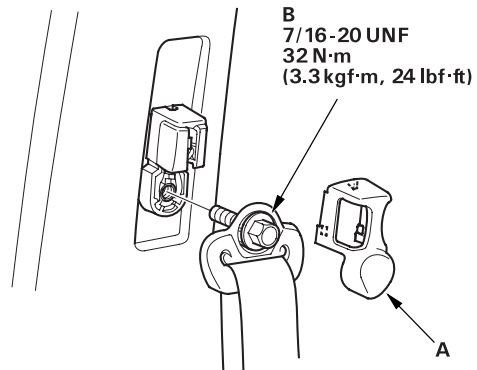
### Front Seat Belt

1. Make sure you have the anti-theft code for the radio, then write down the frequencies for the preset buttons (for some models).
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable, and wait at least 3 minutes before beginning work.
3. Slide the front seat forward fully.
4. Pull the lower anchor cover (A) back, and remove the lower anchor bolt (B).

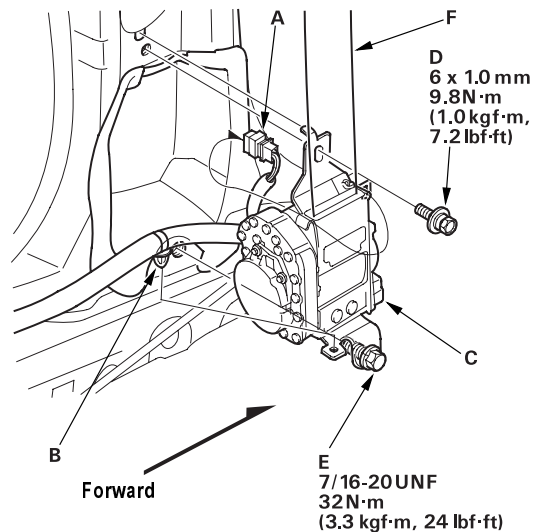


5. Remove the center pillar lower trim panel ([see page 20-76](#)).

6. Remove the upper anchor cover (A), and remove the upper anchor bolt (B).

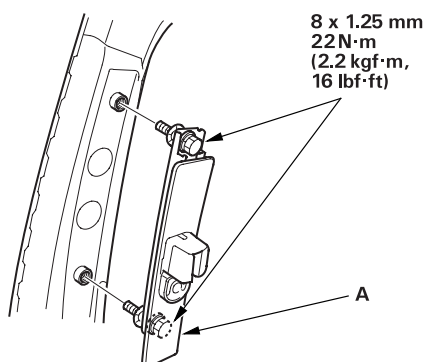


7. Disconnect the seat belt tensioner connector (A), and detach the harness clip (B) from the retractor (C). Remove the upper retractor mounting bolt (D), and the lower retractor bolt (E), then remove the front seat belt (F) and retractor.



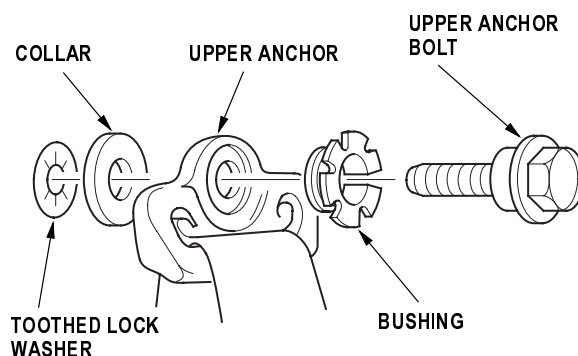


8. Remove the center pillar upper trim (see page 20-76).
9. Remove the shoulder anchor adjuster (A).

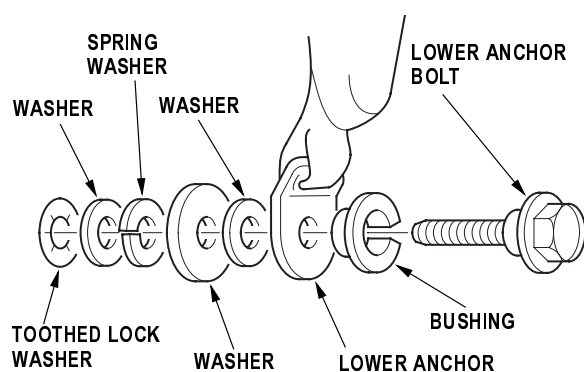


10. Install the seat belt in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Apply liquid thread lock to the upper anchor bolt before reinstallation.
  - Check that the retractor locking mechanism functions (see page 23-12).
  - Assemble the washers, collar, and bushing on the upper and lower anchor bolts as shown.
  - Before installing the anchor bolts, make sure there are no twists or kinks in the seat belt.
  - Make sure the seat belt tensioner connector is plugged in properly.
  - Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
  - Enter the anti-theft code for the radio, then enter the customer's radio station presets (for some models).

## Upper anchor bolt construction:



## Lower anchor bolt construction:



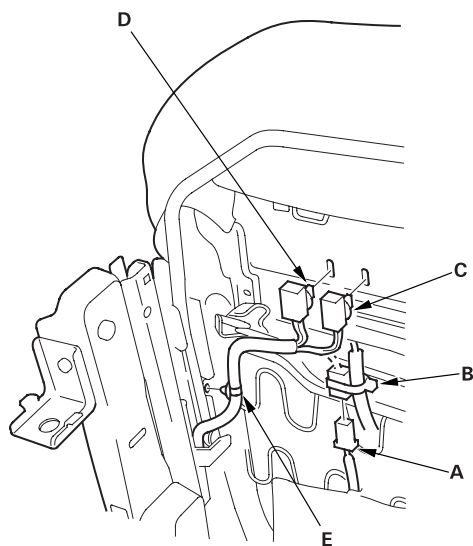
(cont'd)

### Front Seat Belt Replacement (cont'd)

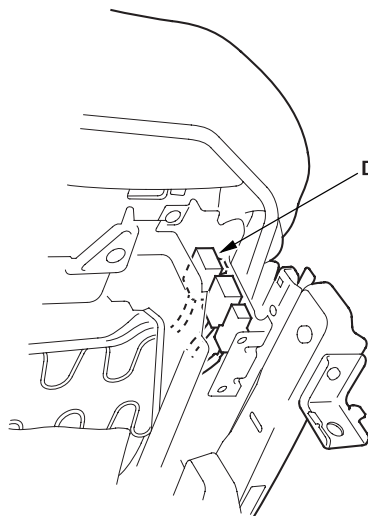
#### Seat Belt Buckle

1. If equipped with a seat belt buckle tensioner or front seat side airbag, make sure you have the anti-theft code for the radio, then write down the frequencies for the preset buttons.
2. If equipped with a seat belt buckle tensioner or front seat side airbag, disconnect the negative battery cable, and wait at least 3 minutes before beginning work.
3. Remove the front seat ([see page 20-103](#)).
4. If equipped, remove the center table ([see page 20-106](#)).
5. If equipped, remove the seat under box ([see page 20-109](#)).
6. Remove the center cover, with manual height adjustable ([see page 20-108](#)), without manual height adjustable ([see page 20-109](#)).
7. If equipped with a seat-belt switch and/or seat belt buckle tensioner, disconnect the seat subharness connector (A) (driver's with seat heater), and remove the harness band (B) (driver's with seat heater and seat belt buckle tensioner), and detach the seat belt switch connector clip (C), seat belt buckle tensioner connector clip (D), and harness clip (E). LHD is shown, RHD is symmetrical.

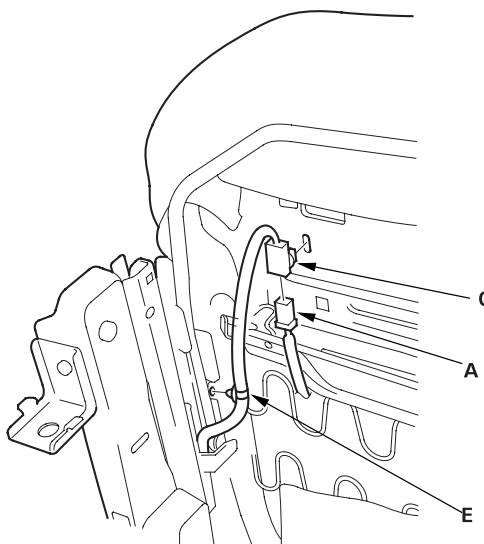
#### With seat belt buckle tensioner (driver's):



#### With seat belt buckle tensioner (passenger's):



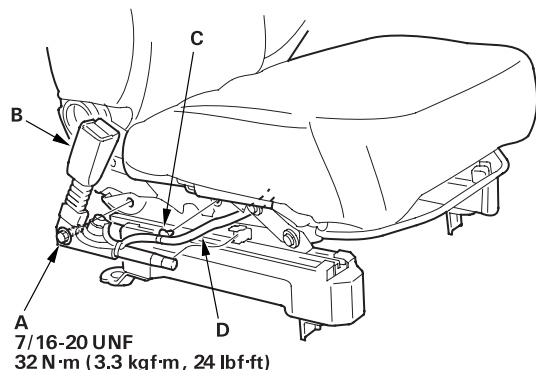
#### Without seat belt buckle tensioner (driver's):



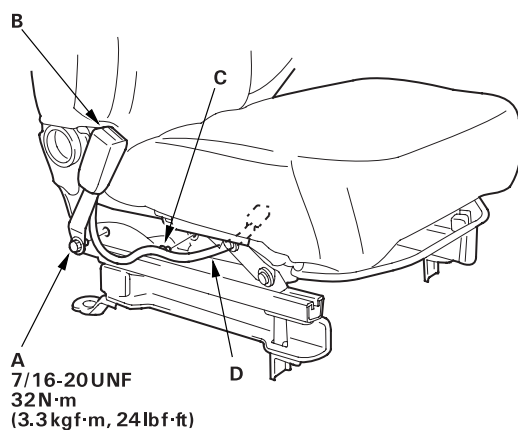


8. Remove the center anchor bolt (A), and remove the seat belt buckle (B).

**With seat belt buckle tensioner:**



**Without seat belt buckle tensioner:**

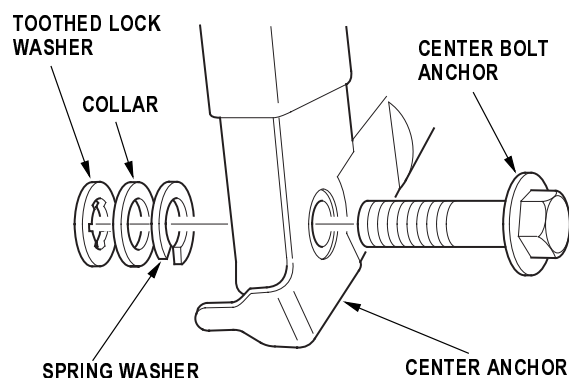


9. Detach the harness clip (C), and pull the seat belt switch/tensioner harness (D) out through the hole on the seat track.

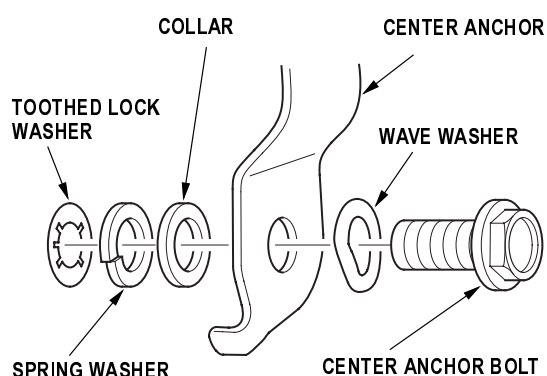
10. Install the buckle in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- If equipped with a seat belt buckle tensioner, apply liquid thread lock to the center anchor bolt before reinstallation.
- Assemble the washers on the center anchor bolt as shown.
- If equipped with a seat belt buckle tensioner or front seat side airbag, reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
- If equipped with a seat belt buckle tensioner or front seat side airbag, enter the anti-theft code for the radio, then enter the customer's radio stations presets.

**With seat belt buckle tensioner:**



**Without seat belt buckle tensioner:**

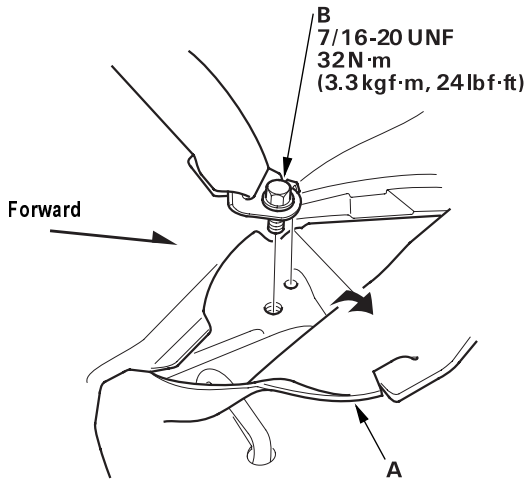


## Rear Seat Belt Replacement

NOTE: Check the rear seat belts for damage, and replace them if necessary. Be careful not to damage them during removal and installation.

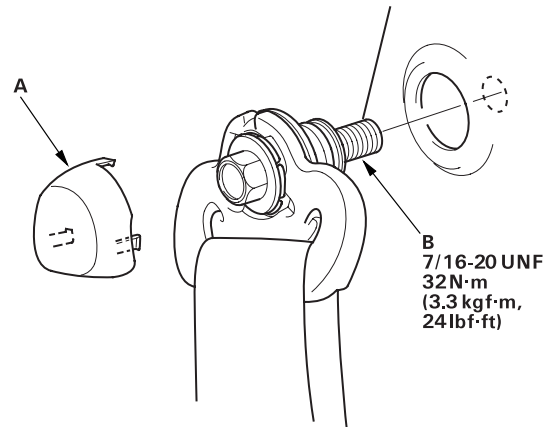
### Rear Seat Belt

1. Fold the rear seat up.
2. Pull the carpet (A) back as necessary, and remove the lower anchor bolt (B).

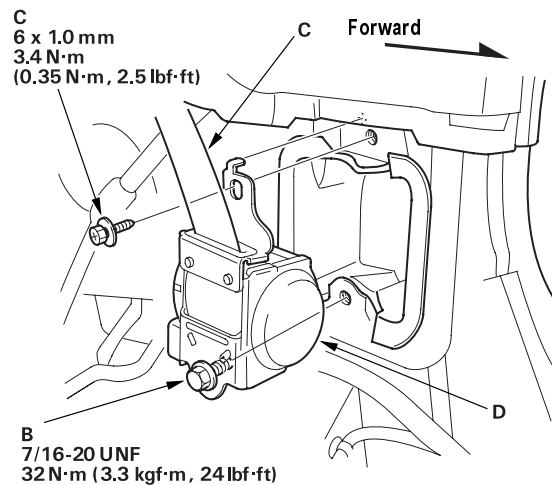


3. Remove the rear side trim panel (see page 20-77).

4. Remove the upper anchor cap (A), and remove the upper anchor bolt (B).



5. Remove the retractor mounting self-tapping ET screw (A), and the retractor bolt (B), then remove the rear seat belt (C) and retractor (D).

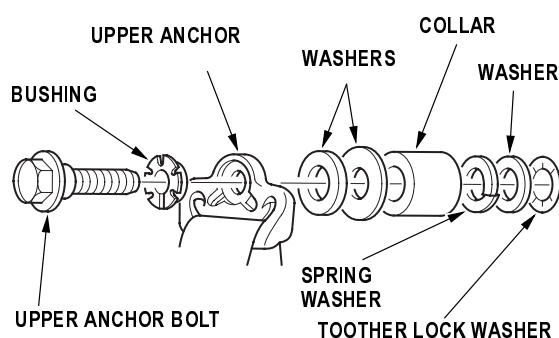






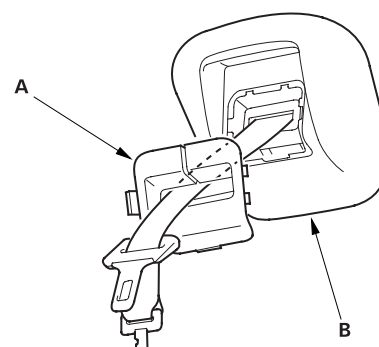
6. Install the seat belt in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - If the threads on the retractor mounting self-tapping ET screw are worn out, use an oversized self-tapping ET screw made specifically for this application.
  - Check that the retractor locking mechanism functions as described ([see page 23-12](#)).
  - Assemble the washers, collar, and bushing on the upper anchor bolt as shown.
  - Before installing the anchor bolt, make sure there are no twists or kinks in the seat belt.

## Upper anchor bolt construction:

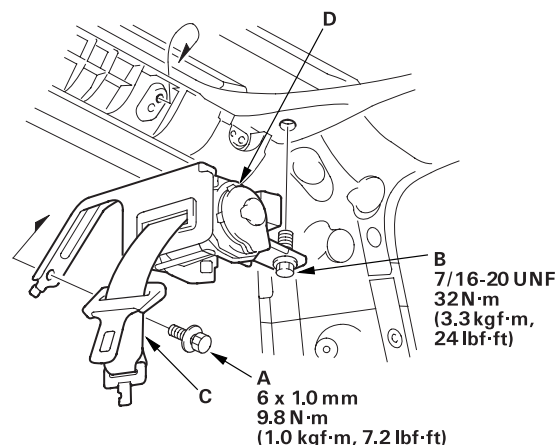


## Center Rear Seat Belt (Detachable Anchor)

1. Remove the cap (A) from the retractor cover (B).



2. Remove the headliner ([see page 20-77](#)).
3. Remove the retractor mounting bolt (A) and retractor bolt (B), then remove the center seat belt (C) and retractor (D).



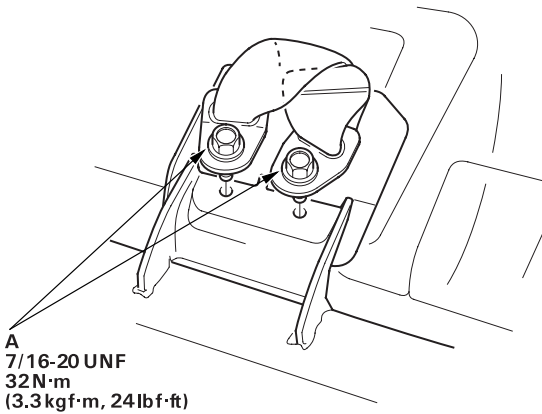
4. Install the center seat belt and retractor in the reverse order of removal, and check that the retractor locking mechanism functions ([see page 23-12](#)).

(cont'd)

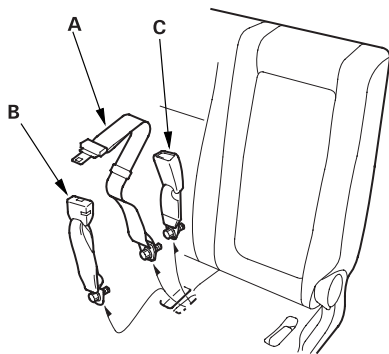
### Rear Seat Belt Replacement (cont'd)

#### Rear Center Seat Belt/Detachable Anchor and Right Rear Seat Belt Buckle

1. Remove the rear seat ([see page 20-114](#)).
2. Remove the under cover from the rear seat ([see page 20-119](#)).
3. Remove the center anchor bolts (A) from under the seat cushion.

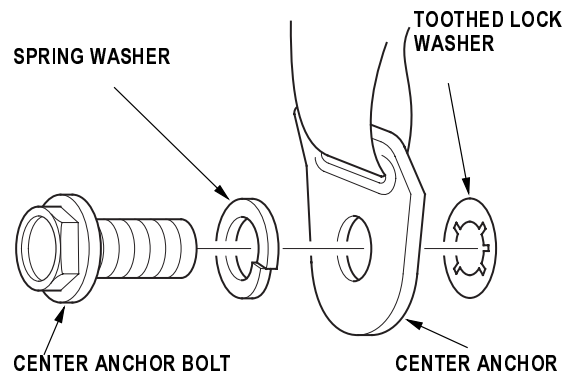


4. Pull the rear center seat belt (A) or rear center seat belt detachable anchor (B) and right rear seat belt buckle (C) out.



5. Install the center belt and buckle in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:
  - Assemble the washers on the center anchor bolt as shown.
  - Make sure there are no twists or kinks in the center belt and seat belt buckle.

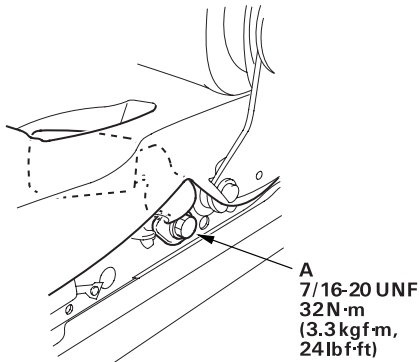
#### Center anchor bolt construction:



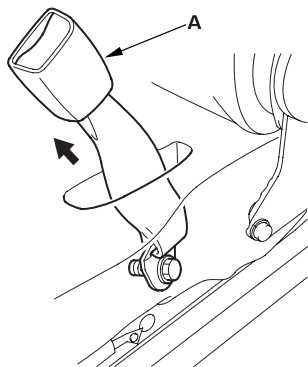


## Rear Center Seat Belt Buckle and Left Rear Seat Belt Buckle

1. Fold the rear seat up (one side).
2. Remove the center cover, right rear seat ([see page 20-119](#)), left rear seat ([see page 20-123](#)).
3. Remove the center anchor bolt (A).



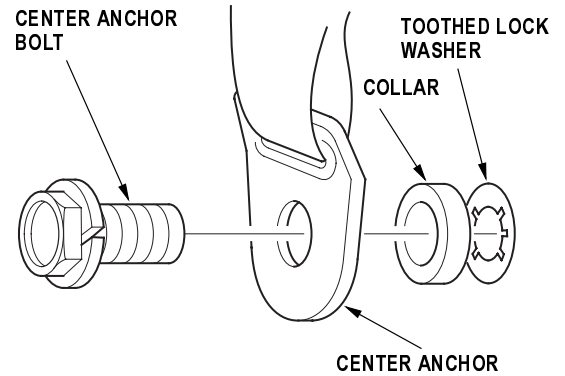
4. Pull the rear center seat belt buckle (A) (right rear seat) or left rear seat belt buckle (left rear seat) out.



5. Install the buckle in the reverse order of removal, and note these items:

- Assemble the collar and washer on the center anchor bolt as shown.
- Make sure there are no twists or kinks in the seat belt buckle.

### Center anchor bolt construction:



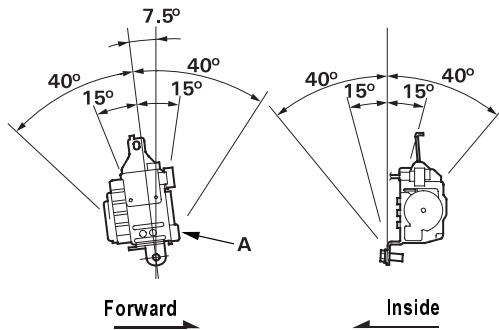
### Inspection

For front seat belt retractor with seat belt tensioner, review the SRS component locations (see page 23-14) and the precautions and procedures (see page 23-16) in the SRS section before performing repairs or service.

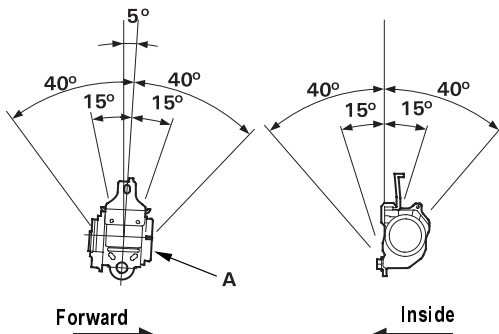
### Retractor

1. Before installing the retractor, check that the seat belt can be pulled out freely.
2. Make sure that the seat belt does not lock when the retractor (A) is leaned slowly up to 15° from the mounted position. The seat belt should lock when the retractor is leaned over 40°. Do not attempt to disassemble the retractor.

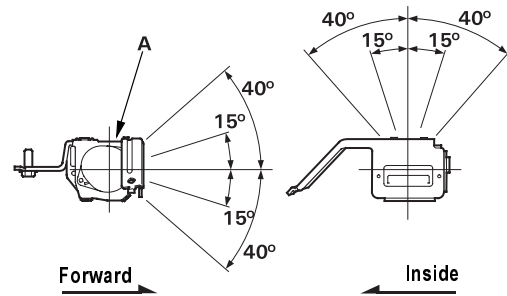
#### Front:



#### Rear:



#### Rear center:



3. Replace the seat belt with a new assembly if there is any abnormality. Do not disassemble any part of the seat belt for any reason.



### In-vehicle

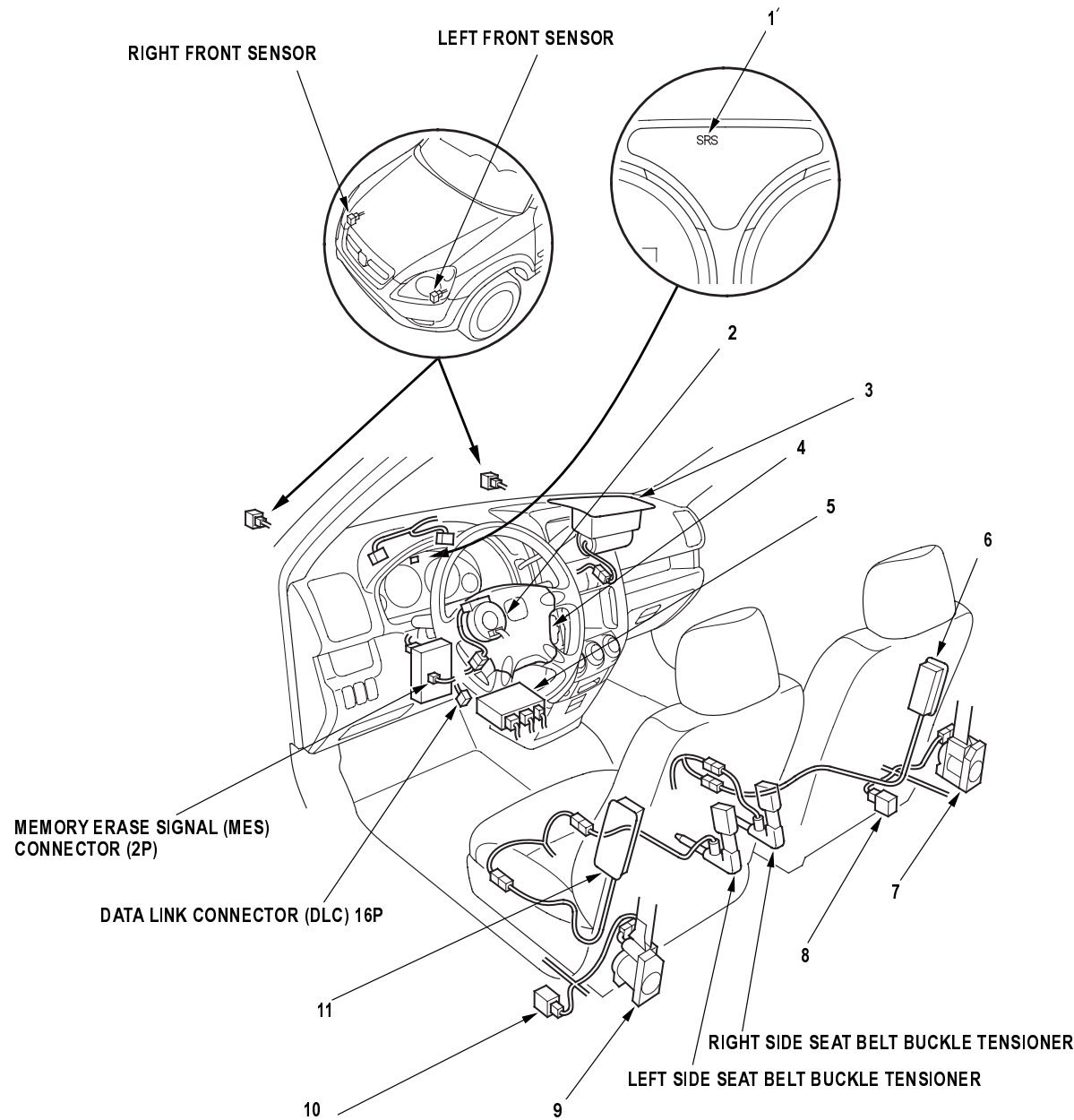
1. Check that the seat belt is not twisted or caught on anything.
2. After installing the anchors, check for free movement on the anchor bolts. If necessary, remove the anchor bolts and check that the washers and other parts are not damaged or improperly installed.
3. Check the seat belts for damage or discoloration. Clean with a shop towel if necessary. Use only soap and water to clean.  

NOTE: Dirt build-up in the metal loops of the upper anchors can cause the seat belts to retract slowly. Wipe the inside of the loops with a clean cloth dampened in isopropyl alcohol.
4. Check that the seat belt does not lock when pulled out slowly. The seat belt is designed to lock only during a sudden stop or impact.
5. Make sure that the seat belt will retract automatically when released.
6. For rear passenger's seat belt, check the seat belt retractor locking mechanism ALR (automatic locking retractor). This function is for securing child seats:
  - 1 Pull the seat belt all the way out to engage the ALR. The seat belt should retract with a ratcheting sound, but not extend. This is normal.
  - 2 To disengage the ALR, release the seat belt and allow it to fully retract, then pull the seat belt out part-way. The seat belt should retract and extend normally.
7. Replace the seat belt with a new assembly if there is any abnormality. Do not disassemble any part of the seat belt for any reason.

SRS

Component Location Index

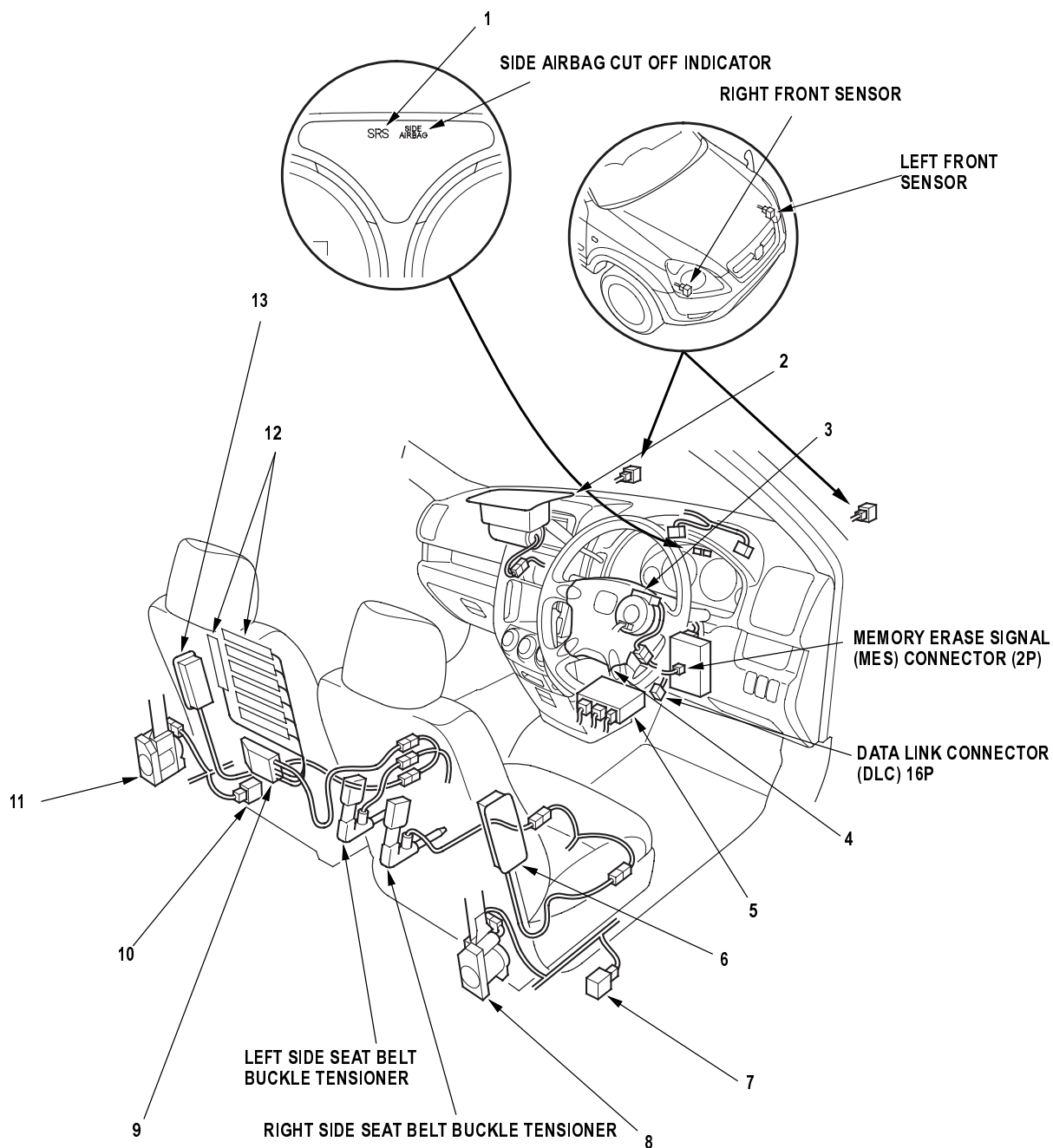
LHD:



1	SRS INDICATOR	Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 23-124</a>	7	RIGHT SIDE SEAT BELT TENSIONER	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-4</a> Disposal, <a href="#">page 23-138</a>
2	CABLE REEL	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-141</a>	8	FRONT PASSENGER'S SIDE IMPACT SENSOR	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-145</a>
3	FRONT PASSENGER'S AIRBAG	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-136</a> Disposal, <a href="#">page 23-138</a>	9	LEFT SIDE SEAT BELT TENSIONER	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-4</a> Disposal, <a href="#">page 23-138</a>
4	DRIVER'S AIRBAG	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-135</a> Disposal, <a href="#">page 23-138</a>	10	DRIVER'S SIDE IMPACT SENSOR	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-145</a>
5	SRS UNIT	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-144</a>	11	DRIVER'S SIDE AIRBAG	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-137</a> Disposal, <a href="#">page 23-138</a>
6	FRONT PASSENGER'S SIDE AIRBAG	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-137</a> Disposal, <a href="#">page 23-138</a>			



RHD



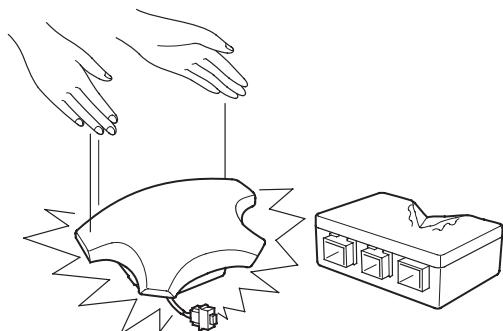
1	SRS INDICATOR	Troubleshooting, <a href="#">page 23-124</a>	8	RIGHT SIDE SEAT BELT TENSIONER	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-4</a> Disposal, <a href="#">page 23-138</a>
2	FRONT PASSENGER'S AIRBAG	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-136</a> Disposal, <a href="#">page 23-138</a>	9	OPDS UNIT (KU)	Initialization, <a href="#">page 23-30</a> Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-146</a>
3	CABLE REEL	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-141</a>	10	FRONT PASSENGER'S SIDE IMPACT SENSOR	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-145</a>
4	DRIVER'S AIRBAG	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-135</a> Disposal, <a href="#">page 23-138</a>	11	LEFT SIDE SEAT BELT TENSIONER	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-4</a> Disposal, <a href="#">page 23-138</a>
5	SRS UNIT	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-144</a>	12	OPDS SENSOR/SEAT BACK (KU)	Replacement, <a href="#">page 20-110</a>
6	DRIVER'S SIDE AIRBAG	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-137</a> Disposal, <a href="#">page 23-138</a>	13	FRONT PASSENGER'S SIDE AIRBAG	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-137</a> Disposal, <a href="#">page 23-138</a>
7	DRIVER'S SIDE IMPACT SENSOR	Replacement, <a href="#">page 23-145</a>			

## Precautions and Procedures

### General Precautions

Please read the following precautions carefully before performing airbag system service. Observe the instructions described in this manual, or the airbags could accidentally deploy and cause damage or injuries.

- Except when performing electrical inspections, always turn the ignition switch OFF, disconnect the negative cable from the battery, and wait at least 3 minutes before beginning work.  
NOTE: The memory is not erased even if the ignition switch is turned OFF or the battery cables are disconnected from the battery.
- Use replacement parts which are manufactured to the same standards and quality as the original parts. Do not install used SRS parts from another vehicle. Use only new parts when making SRS repairs.
- Carefully inspect any SRS part before you install it. Do not install any part that shows signs of being dropped or improperly handled, such as dents, cracks or deformation.



- Before removing any SRS parts (including the disconnection of connectors), always disconnect the SRS connector.
- Use only a digital multimeter to check the system. If it is not a Honda multimeter, make sure its output is 10 mA (0.01 A) or less when switched to the lowest value in the ohmmeter range. A tester with a higher output could cause accidental deployment and possible injury.
- Do not put objects on the front passenger's airbag.

### Steering-related Precautions

#### Cable Reel Alignment

- Misalignment of the cable reel could cause an open in the wiring, making the SRS system and the horns inoperative. Center the cable reel whenever the following is performed (see step 6 on [page 23-143](#)).
  - Installation of the steering wheel
  - Installation of the cable reel
  - Installation of the steering column
  - Other steering-related adjustment or installation
- Do not disassemble the cable reel.
- Do not apply grease to the cable reel.
- If the cable reel shows any signs of damage, replace it with a new one. For example, it does not rotate smoothly.



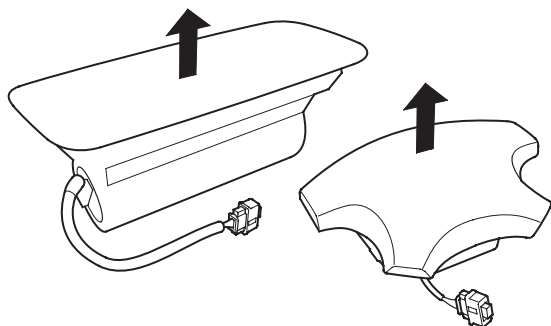


### Airbag Handling and Storage

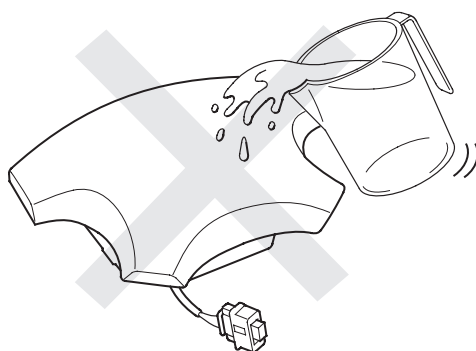
Do not disassemble an airbag. It has no serviceable parts. Once an airbag has been deployed, it cannot be repaired or reused.

For temporary storage of airbag during service, observe the following precautions.

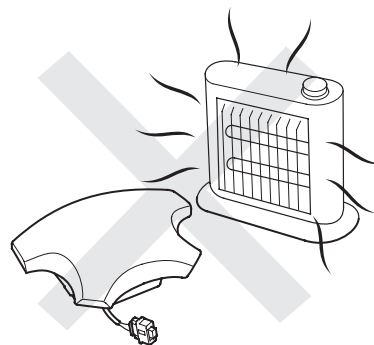
- Store the removed airbag with the pad surface up. Never put anything on the airbag.



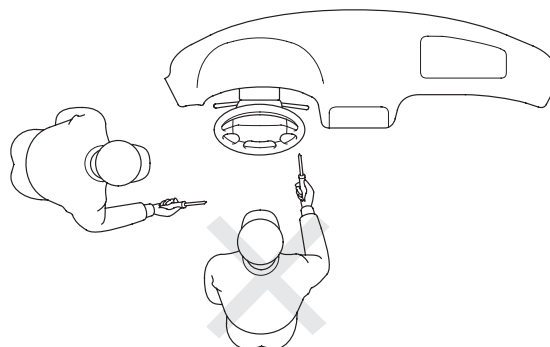
- To prevent damage to the airbag assembly, keep free from any oil, grease, detergent, or water.



- Store the removed airbag on a secure, flat surface away from any high heat source (exceeding 200°F/93°C).



- Never perform electrical inspections to the airbags, such as measuring resistance.
- Do not position yourself in front of the airbag assembly during removal, inspection, or replacement.



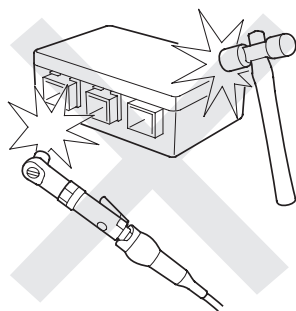
- Refer to the scrapping procedures for disposal of a damaged airbag.

(cont'd)

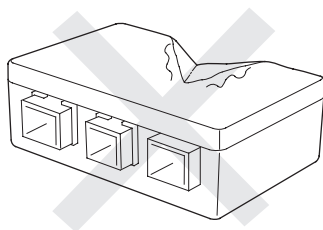
## Precautions and Procedures (cont'd)

### SRS Unit, Front Sensors and Side Impact Sensors

- Be careful not to bump or impact the SRS unit, front sensors, or the side impact sensors whenever the ignition switch is ON (II), or for at least 3 minutes after the ignition switch is turned OFF.
- During installation or replacement, be careful not to bump (by impact wrench, hammer, etc.) the area around the SRS unit, front sensors, and the side impact sensor. The airbags could accidentally deploy and cause damage or injury.



- After a collision in which any airbags or seat belt tensioners were deployed, replace the SRS unit, front sensors, and other related components ([see page 23-134](#)). After a collision in which a side airbag was deployed, replace the side impact sensor on the deployed side and the SRS unit. After a collision in which the airbags or the side airbags did not deploy, inspect for any damage or any deformation on the SRS unit, front sensors, and the side impact sensors. If there is any damage, replace the SRS unit and/or the side impact sensors.



- Do not disassemble the SRS unit or the side impact sensors.
- Turn the ignition switch OFF, disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait at least 3 minutes before beginning installation or replacement of the SRS unit, or disconnecting the connectors from the SRS unit.
- Be sure the SRS unit and side impact sensors are installed securely, with the mounting bolts torqued to 9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)
- Do not spill water or oil on the SRS unit or the side impact sensors, and keep them away from dust.
- Store the SRS unit and the side impact sensors in a cool (less than 104°F/40°C) and dry (less than 80 % relative humidity, no moisture) area.

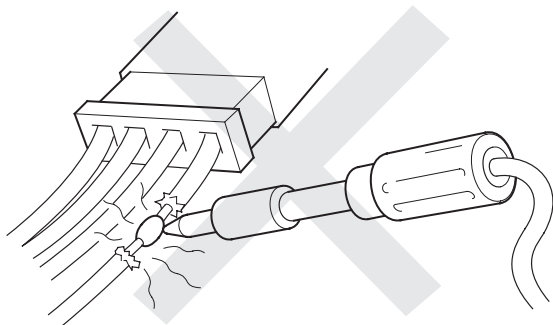


### Wiring Precautions

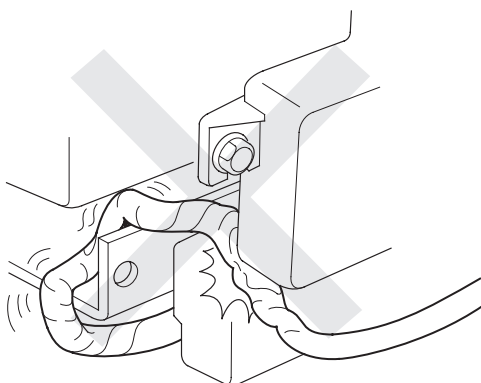
Some of the SRS wiring can be identified by special yellow outer covering, and the SRS connectors can be identified by their yellow color.

Observe the instructions described in this section.

- Never attempt to modify, splice, or repair SRS wiring. If there is an open or damage in SRS wiring, replace the harness.



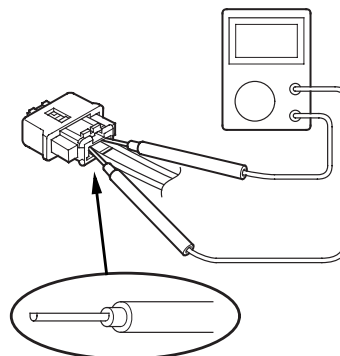
- Be sure to install the harness wires so they do not get pinched or interfere with other parts.



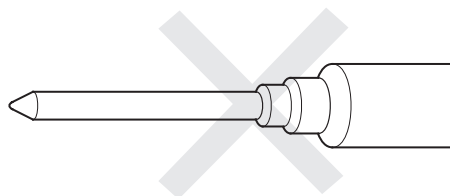
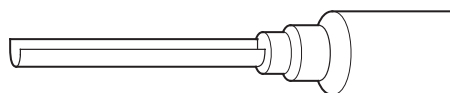
- Make sure all SRS ground locations are clean, and grounds are securely fastened for optimum metal-to-metal contact. Poor grounding can cause intermittent problems that are difficult to diagnose.

### Precautions for Electrical Inspections

- When using electrical test equipment, insert the probe of the tester into the wire side of the connector. Do not insert the probe of the tester into the terminal side of the connector, and do not tamper with the connector.



- Use a U-shaped probe. Do not insert the probe forcibly.



- Use specified service connectors in troubleshooting. Using improper tools could cause an error in inspection due to poor metal-to-metal contact.

(cont'd)

## Precautions and Procedures (cont'd)

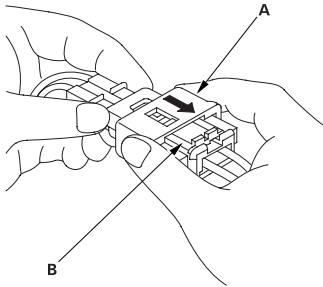
### Spring-loaded Lock Connector

Some SRS system connectors have a spring-loaded lock.

#### Front Airbag Connectors:

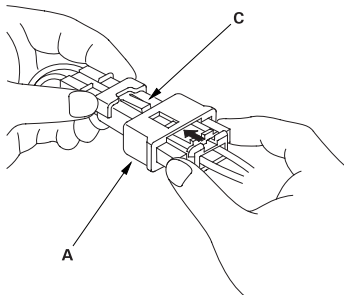
##### Disconnecting

To release the lock, pull the spring-loaded sleeve (A) toward the stop (B) while holding the opposite half of the connector. Then pull the connector halves apart. Be sure to pull on the sleeve and not on the connector.

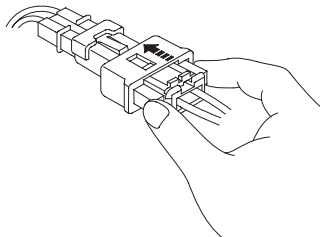


##### Connecting

1. To reconnect, hold the pawl-side connector, and press on the back of the sleeve-side connector in the direction shown. As the two connector halves are pressed together, the sleeve (A) is pushed back by the pawl (C). Do not touch the sleeve.



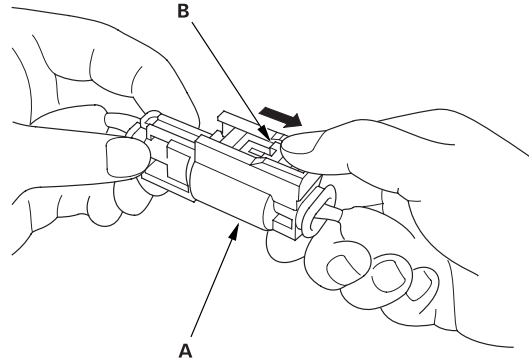
2. When the connector halves are completely connected, the pawl is released, and the spring-loaded sleeve locks the connector.



### Side Airbag Connector:

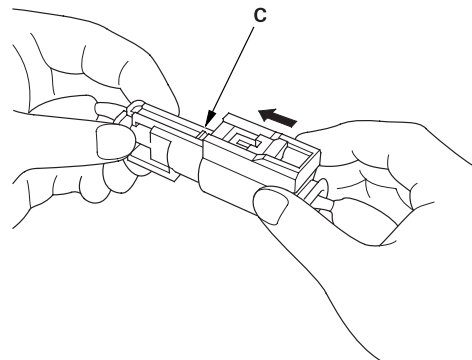
##### Disconnecting

To release the lock, pull the spring-loaded sleeve (A) and the slider (B) while holding the opposite half of the connector. Then pull the connector halves apart. Be sure to pull on the sleeve and not on the connector half.



##### Connecting

Hold both connector halves, and press them firmly together until the projection (C) of the sleeve-side connector clicks.

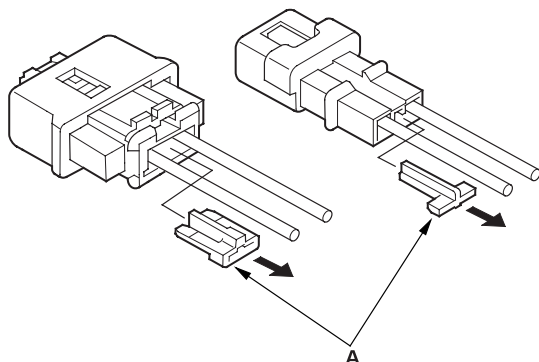




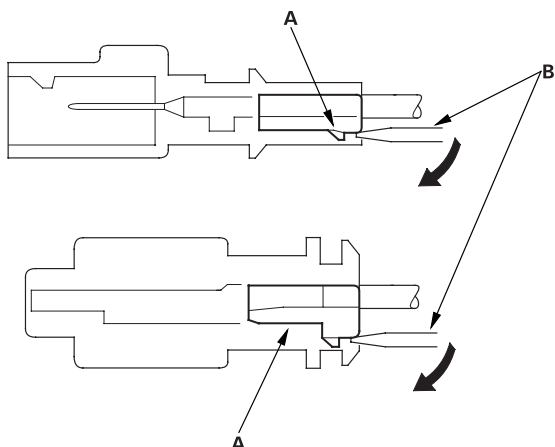
### Backprobing Spring-loaded Lock Connectors

When checking voltage or resistance on this type of connector the first time, you must remove the retainer to insert the tester probe from the wire side.

**NOTE:** It is not necessary to reinstall the removed retainer; the terminals will stay locked in the connector housing.

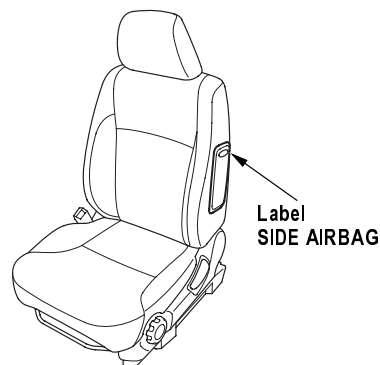


To remove the retainer (A), insert a flat-tip screwdriver (B) between the connector body and the retainer, then carefully pry out the retainer. Take care not to break the connector.



### Seats with Side Airbags

Seats with side airbags have a "SIDE AIRBAG" label on the seat-back. Because the component parts (seat-back cover, cushion, etc.) of seats with and without airbags are different, make sure you install only the correct replacement parts.



- When cleaning, do not saturate the seat with liquid, and do not spray steam on the seat.
- Do not repair a torn or frayed seat-back cover. Replace the seat-back cover.
- After a collision in which the side airbag was deployed, replace the side airbag with new parts. If the seat-back cushion is split, it must be replaced. If the seat-back frame is deformed, it must be replaced.
- Never put aftermarket accessories on the seat (covers, pads, seat heaters, lights, etc.).

(cont'd)

## Precautions and Procedures (cont'd)

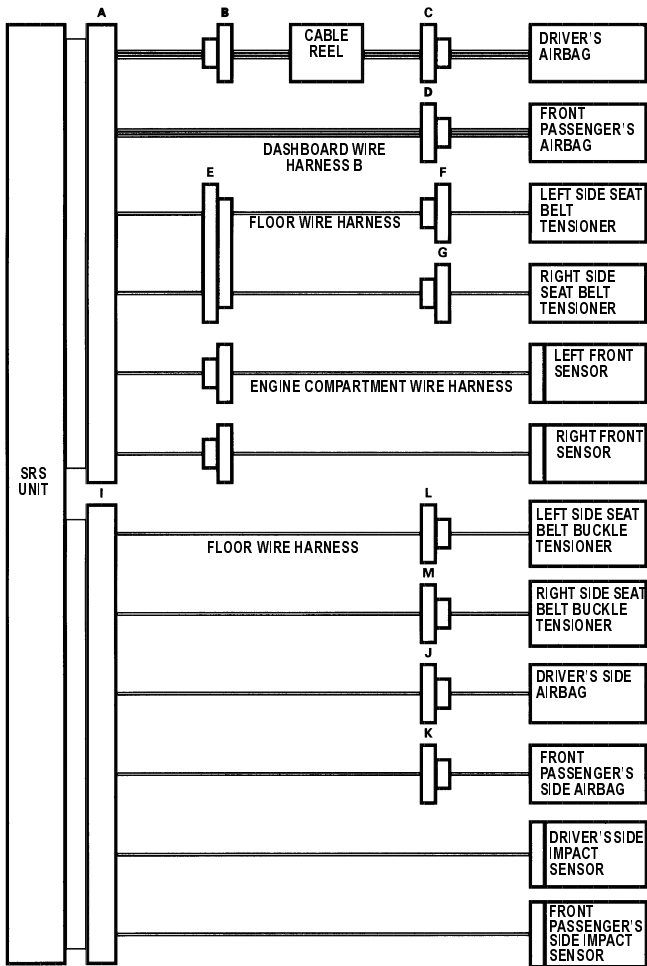
### Seats with Side Airbags (cont'd)

#### Disconnecting the Airbag Connectors, Side Airbag Connectors, Seat Belt Buckle Tensioner Connectors and Seat Belt Tensioner Connectors

Before removing a front airbag, side airbag or other SRS related devices (the SRS unit, the cable reel, the side impact sensors, the seat belt buckle tensioners and the seat belt tensioner connector), disconnecting connectors from related devices, or removing the dashboard or the steering column, disconnect the airbag connectors or the side airbag connectors to prevent accidental deployment.

Turn the ignition switch OFF and disconnect the negative cable from the battery, and wait at least 3 minutes before beginning the following procedures.

- Before disconnecting the dashboard wire harness B 18P connector (A) from the SRS unit, disconnect the driver's airbag 2P connector (C), the front passenger's airbag 2P connector (D), the left side seat belt tensioner 2P connector (F), and the right side seat belt tensioner 2P connector (G).
- Before disconnecting the floor wire harness 18P connector (I) from the SRS unit, disconnect both side airbag 2P connectors (J, K) and both seat belt buckle tensioner 4P connector (L, M).
- Before disconnecting the cable reel 4P connector (B), disconnect the driver's airbag 2P connector (C).
- Before disconnecting the floor wire harness 4P connector (E), disconnect both seat belt tensioner 2P connectors (F, G).

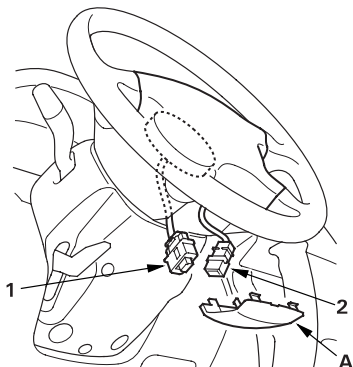




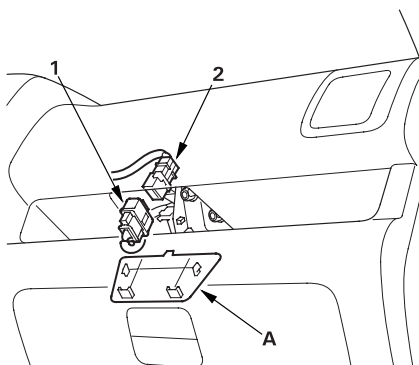
1. Disconnect the negative battery cable, and wait at least 3 minutes.

**Driver's Airbag**

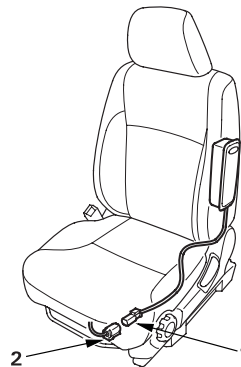
2. Remove the access panel (A) from the steering wheel, then disconnect the driver's airbag 2P connector (1) from the cable reel 2P connector (2).

**Front Passenger's Airbag**

3. Remove the access panel (A), then disconnect the front passenger's airbag 2P connector (1) from the dashboard wire harness B 2P connector (2).

**Side Airbag**

4. Disconnect both side airbag 2P connectors (1) from the floor wire harness 2P connectors (2).



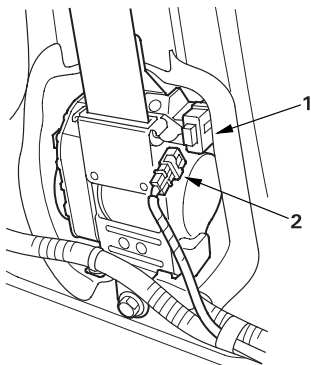
(cont'd)

## Precautions and Procedures (cont'd)

### Seats with Side Airbags (cont'd)

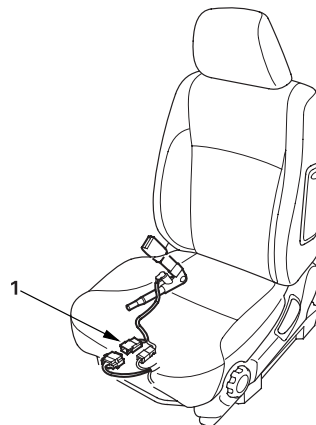
#### Seat Belt Tensioner

5. Disconnect both seat belt tensioner 2P connectors (1) from the floor wire harness 2P connector (2).



#### Seat Belt Buckle Tensioner

6. Disconnect both seat belt buckle tensioner 4P connectors (1).







## General Troubleshooting Information

### DTC (Diagnostic Trouble Codes)

The self-diagnostic function of the SRS system allows it to locate the causes of system problems and then store this information in memory. For easier troubleshooting, this data can be retrieved via a data link circuit.

- When you turn the ignition switch ON (II), the SRS indicator will come on. If it goes off after 6 seconds, the system is normal.
- If there is an abnormality, the system locates and defines the problem, stores this information in memory, and turns the SRS indicator on. The data will remain in the memory even when the ignition switch is turned off or if the battery is disconnected.
- When you connect the Honda PGM Tester to the 16P data link connector (DLC) to short the SCS terminal, and turn the ignition switch ON (II), the SRS indicator will indicate the diagnostic trouble code (DTC) by the number of blinks.
- After reading and recording the DTC, proceed with the troubleshooting procedure for this code.

### Precautions

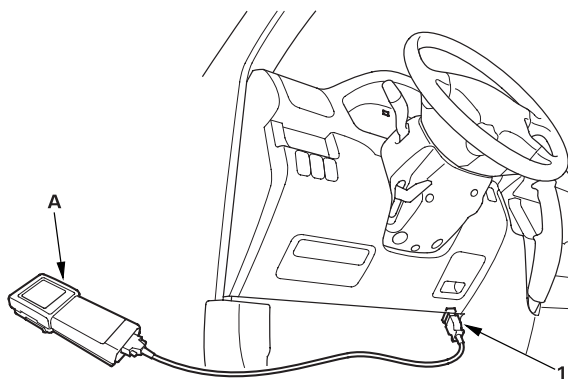
- Use only a digital multimeter to check the system. If it's not a Honda multimeter, make sure it's output is 10 mA (0.01A) or less when switched to the smallest value in the ohmmeter range. A tester with a higher output could damage the airbag circuit or cause accidental airbag deployment and possible injury.
- Whenever the ignition switch is ON (II), or has been turned OFF for less than 3 minutes, be careful not to bump the SRS unit; the airbags could accidentally deploy and cause damage or injuries.
- Before you remove the SRS main harness, disconnect the driver's airbag connector, the front passenger's airbag connector, both side airbag connectors, both seat belt buckle tensioner connectors, and both seat belt tensioner connectors.
- Make sure the battery is sufficiently charged. If the battery is dead or low, measuring values won't be correct.
- Do not touch a tester probe to the terminals in the SRS unit or harness connectors, and do not connect the terminals with a jumper wire. Use only the backprobe set and the Honda PGM Tester. Backprobe spring-loaded lock type connectors correctly.

### Reading the DTC

When the SRS indicator is on, read the DTC using either of the following methods:

#### PGM Tester "SRS" Menu Method

Connect the Honda PGM Tester (A) to the 16P Data Link Connector (DLC)(1), and follow the Tester's prompts in the "SRS" menu. If the Tester indicates no DTC, DTC 3-6 to 3-10, DTC 4-6 to 4-10, DTC 9-1, or DTC 9-2, double-check by selecting "SCS" on the display, and watching the SRS indicator.



(cont'd)

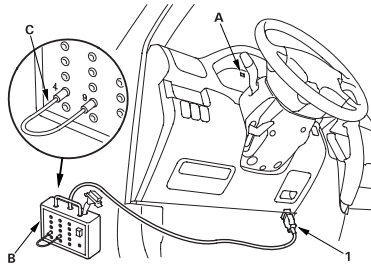
## General Troubleshooting Information (cont'd)

### DTC (Diagnostic Trouble Codes) (cont'd)

#### "SCS" Menu Method (retrieving the flash codes):

The SRS indicator (A) indicates the DTC by the number of blinks when the DTC pin box (B) is connected to the Data Link Connector (DLC) 16P (1).

1. Make sure the ignition switch is OFF, and wait for 10 seconds. Then connect the DLC pin box (A) to the Data Link Connector (DLC) 16P. If you don't wait 10 seconds, the SRS unit won't be completely reset or output DTCs.

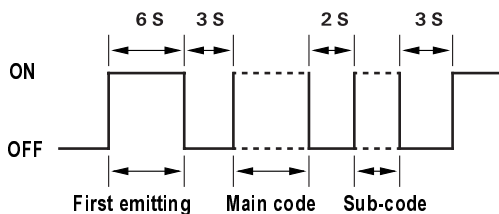


2. Connect the DLC pin box terminals No. 4 and No. 9 with a jumper wire (C), and push the operation switch.
3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II). The SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds, and then goes off. Then it will indicate the DTC.
4. Read the DTC.
5. Turn the ignition switch OFF, and wait for 10 seconds. Then disconnect the DLC pin box from the Data Link Connector (DLC) 16P.
6. Proceed with the troubleshooting procedure for this DTC.

#### Patterns of DTC Indications:

The DTC consists of a main code and sub-code

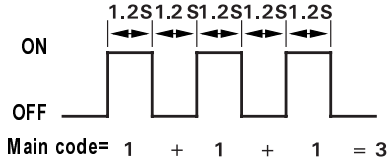
S: Second



#### Reading the main code:

In case of 1 ~ 10  
Count the number of blinks.

Example:

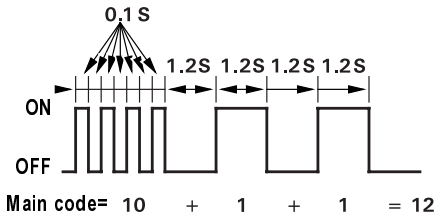


In case of 11 ~ 15

Four continuous blinks count as 10.

Add any further blinks together as shown.

Example:

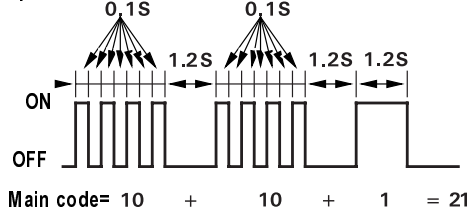


In case of 20 or more

Two sets of four continuous blinks count as 20.

Add any further blinks together as shown.

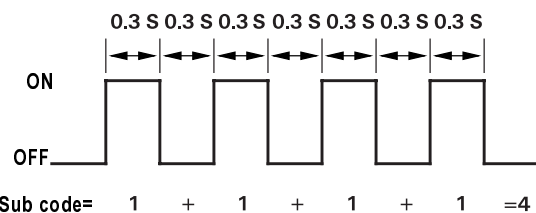
Example:



#### Reading the sub code:

Count the number of blinks.

Example:



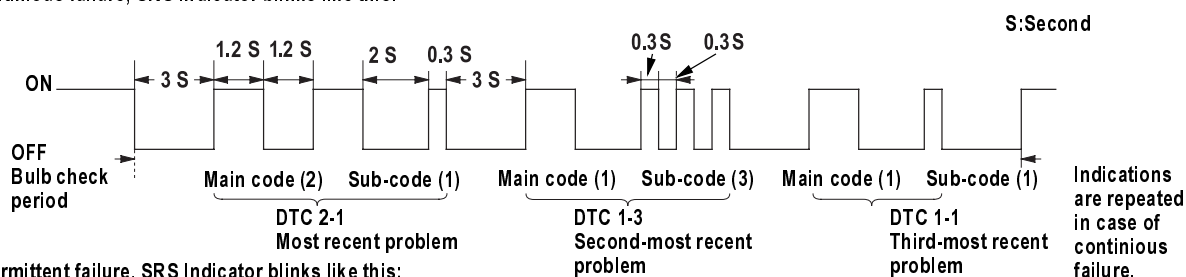
If the main code is '3', and the sub code is '4', record a DTC 3-4.



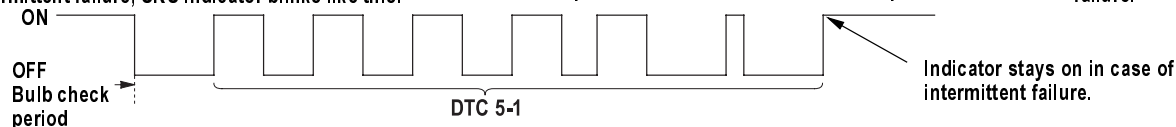
- Including the most recent problem, up to three different DTCs can be indicated (see example 1 below).
- In case of a continuous failure, the DTC will be indicated repeatedly (see example 1 below).
- In case of an intermittent failure, the SRS indicator will indicate the DTCs one time, then it will stay on (see example 2 below).
- If both a continuous and an intermittent failure occur, both DTCs will be indicated as continuous failures.
- When the system is normal (no DTCs), the SRS indicator will stay on (see example 3).
- If the SRS indicator comes on continuously without a DTC, there may be a problem with the system.
- If the SRS indicator does not come on as indicated above, always check for an open or a short to ground in the SCS circuit before troubleshooting the system.

#### Example of DTC Indications:

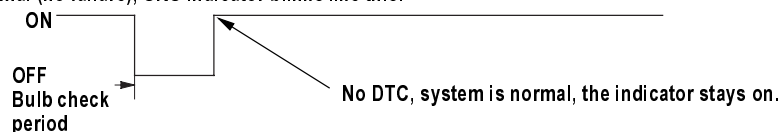
1. Continuous failure, SRS Indicator blinks like this:



2. Intermittent failure, SRS Indicator blinks like this:



3. Normal (no failure), SRS Indicator blinks like this:



(cont'd)

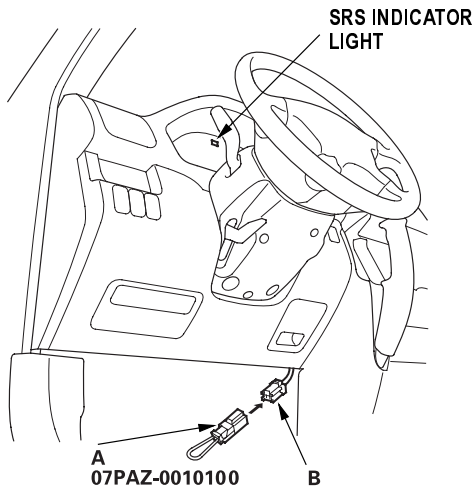
## General Troubleshooting Information (cont'd)

### DTC (Diagnostic Trouble Codes) (cont'd)

#### Reading the SRS Indicator Method (with service check connector (2P) models):

The SRS indicator indicates the DTC by the number of blinks when the SCS short connector is connected to the service check connector (2P).

1. Make sure the ignition switch is OFF, and wait for 10 seconds. Then connect the SCS short connector (A) to the service check connector (2P) (B). If you don't wait 10 seconds, the SRS unit won't be completely reset or output DTCs.



2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II). The SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds, and then goes off. Then it will indicate the DTC.
3. Read the DTC.
4. Turn the ignition switch OFF, and wait for 10 seconds. Then disconnect the SCS short connector from the service check connector (2P).



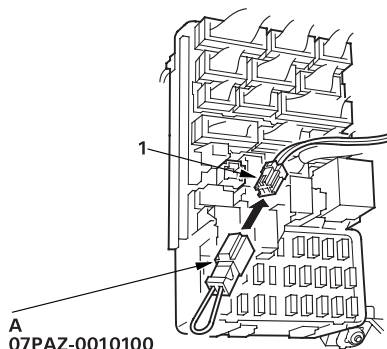
### Erasing the DTC Memory

#### Special Tools Required

SCS short connector 07PAZ-0010100

To erase the DTC(s) from the SRS unit, use a Honda PGM Tester (see the Honda PGM Tester SRS vehicle System Supplement) or the following procedure.

1. Make sure the ignition switch is OFF.
2. Connect the SCS short connector (A) to the MES connector (2P) (1). Do not use a jumper wire.



3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
4. The SRS indicator will come on for about 6 seconds, and then go off. Remove the SCS short connector from the MES connector (2P) within 4 seconds after the indicator goes off.
5. The SRS indicator will come on again. Reconnect the SCS short connector to the MES connector (2P) within 4 seconds after the indicator comes on.
6. When the SRS indicator goes off, remove the SCS short connector from the MES connector (2P) within 4 seconds.
7. The SRS indicator will blink two times indicating that the memory has been erased.
8. Turn the ignition switch OFF, and wait for 10 seconds.
9. Turn the ignition switch ON (II) again. The SRS is OK if the SRS indicator comes on for 6 seconds and then goes off.

### Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures

If there was a malfunction, but it doesn't recur, it will be stored in the memory as an intermittent failure, and the SRS indicator will come on.

After checking the DTC, troubleshoot as follows:

1. Read the DTC (see ["Reading the DTC"](#) ).
2. Erase the DTC memory (see ["Erasing the DTC Memory"](#) ).
3. With the shift lever in Park or neutral, start the engine, and let it idle.
4. The SRS indicator will come on for about 6 seconds and then go off.
5. Shake the wire harness and the connectors, take a test drive (quick acceleration, quick braking, cornering), turn the steering wheel fully left and right, and hold it there for 5 to 10 seconds. If the problem recurs, the SRS indicator will come on.
6. If you can't duplicate the intermittent failure, the system is OK at this time.

(cont'd)

## General Troubleshooting Information (cont'd)

### Initializing the OPDS (Occupant Position Detection System) Unit

#### Special Tools Required

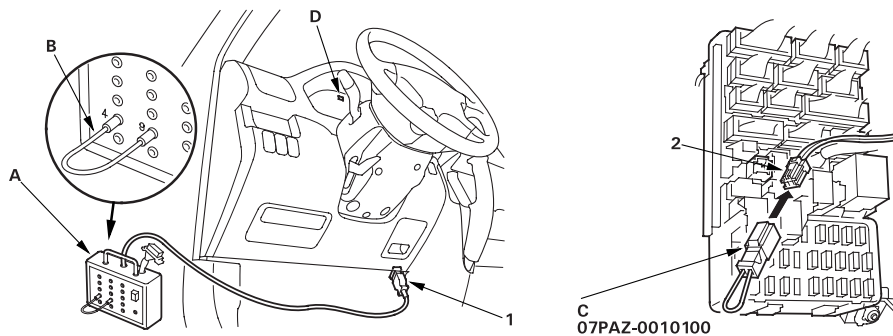
SCS short connector 07PAZ-0010100

DLC pin box 07WAJ-0010100

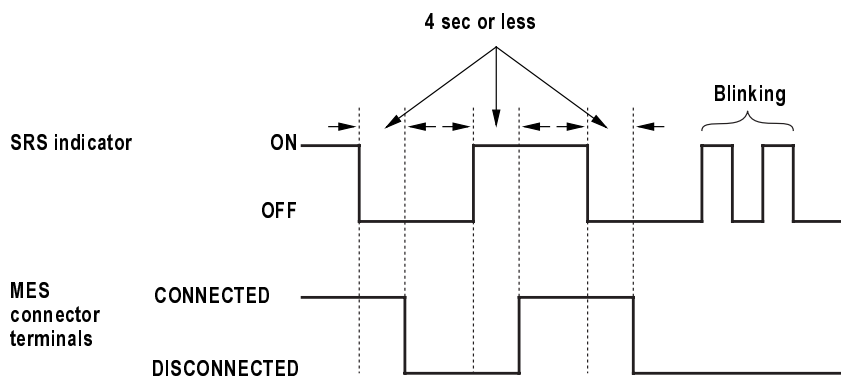
When a seat-back cover, seat-back cushion, and/or OPDS unit is replaced, initialize the OPDS by following the procedure below.

NOTE: Make sure the passenger's seat is dry. Set the seat-back in the normal position, and make sure there is nothing on the front passenger's seat.

1. Make sure the ignition switch is OFF.
2. Connect a DLC pin box (A) to the DLC (16P) (1), and connect the DLC pin box terminals No.4 and No.9 with a jumper wire (B), and push the operation switch.
3. Connect the SCS short connector (C) to the MES connector (2P) (2). Do not use a jumper wire.



4. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
5. The SRS indicator (D) comes on for about 6 seconds and goes off. Remove the SCS short connector from the MES connector within 4 seconds after the SRS indicator went off.
6. The SRS indicator comes on again. Reconnect the SCS short connector to the MES connector within 4 seconds after the SRS indicator comes on.
7. The SRS indicator goes off. Remove the SCS short connector from the MES connector within 4 seconds.
8. Watch the SRS indicator.
  - If the indicator blinks two times and then stays on, the OPDS is initialized, but the DTCs need to be erased. Go to step 9, then erase the DTCs.
  - If the indicator blinks two times and then goes off, the OPDS unit is initialized. Go to step 9.
  - If the indicator stays on without first blinking, the OPDS is not initialized. Read the DTC, and go to the appropriate page in the DTC Troubleshooting Index.
9. Turn the ignition switch off, and disconnect the DLC pin box from the DLC (16P).





## DTC Troubleshooting Index

### Without Side Airbag and Seat belt buckle tensioner Model(DENSO)

DTC	Detection Item	Notes
1-1	Open in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-45)
1-2	Increased resistance in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-45)
1-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-48)
1-4	Short to power in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-50)
1-5	Short to ground in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-52)
2-1	Open in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-54)
2-2	Increased resistance in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-54)
2-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-55)
2-4	Short to power in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-57)
2-5	Short to ground in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-58)
3-1	Open in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-60)
3-2	Increased resistance in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-60)
3-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-62)
3-4	Short to power in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-64)
3-5	Short to ground in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-66)
4-1	Open in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-74)
4-2	Increased resistance in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-74)
4-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-76)
4-4	Short to power in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-78)
4-5	Short to ground in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-80)
5-1	Internal failure of SRS unit NOTE: Before troubleshooting DTCs 5-1 through 8-6, check battery/system voltage. If the voltage is low, repair the charging system before troubleshooting the SRS.	(see page 23-88)
5-2		
5-4		
6-4		
7-1		
7-2		
7-3		
8-1		
8-2		
8-3		
8-4		
8-5		
8-6		
9-1	Internal failure of the SRS unit. If intermittent, could mean internal failure of the unit or a faulty indicator circuit. Refer to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).	(see page 23-88)
9-2	Internal failure of the SRS unit. If intermittent, could mean internal failure of the power supply (VB line). Refer to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).	
9-6	Faulty left front sensor	(see page 23-90)
9-7	Faulty right front sensor	(see page 23-93)

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting Index (cont'd)

### With Seat belt buckle tensioner, without Side Airbag Model (DENSO)

DTC	Detection Item	Notes
1-1	Open in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-45)
1-2	Increased resistance in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-45)
1-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-48)
1-4	Short to power in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-50)
1-5	Short to ground in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-52)
2-1	Open in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-54)
2-2	Increased resistance in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-54)
2-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-55)
2-4	Short to power in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-57)
2-5	Short to ground in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-58)
3-1	Open in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-60)
3-2	Increased resistance in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-60)
3-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-62)
3-4	Short to power in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-64)
3-5	Short to ground in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-66)
21-1	Open in left side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-68)
21-2	Increased resistance in left side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-68)
21-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in left side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-69)
21-4	Short to power in left side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-71)
21-5	Short to ground in left side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-72)
4-1	Open in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-74)
4-2	Increased resistance in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-74)
4-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-76)
4-4	Short to power in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-78)
4-5	Short to ground in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-80)
22-1	Open in right side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-82)
22-2	Increased resistance in right side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-82)
22-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in right side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-83)
22-4	Short to power in right side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-85)
22-5	Short to ground in right side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-86)





DTC	Detection Item	Notes
5-1	Internal failure of SRS unit NOTE: Before troubleshooting DTCs 5-1 through 8-6, check battery/system voltage. If the voltage is low, repair the charging system before troubleshooting the SRS.	(see page 23-88)
5-2		
5-4		
6-4		
7-1		
7-2		
7-3		
8-1		
8-2		
8-3		
8-4		
8-5		
8-6		
9-1	Internal failure of the SRS unit. If intermittent, could mean internal failure of the unit or a faulty indicator circuit. Refer to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).	(see page 23-88)
9-2	Internal failure of the SRS unit. If intermittent, could mean internal failure of the power supply (VB line). Refer to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).	
9-6	Faulty left front sensor	(see page 23-90)
9-7	Faulty right front sensor	(see page 23-93)

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting Index (cont'd)

### With Seat belt buckle tensioner and Side Airbag, without OPDS Unit Model (KEIHIN, SIEMENS)

DTC	Detection Item	Notes
1-1	Open or increased resistance in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-45)
1-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-48)
1-4	Short to power in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-50)
1-5	Short to ground in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-52)
2-1	Open or increased resistance in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-54)
2-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-55)
2-4	Short to power in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-57)
2-5	Short to ground in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-58)
3-1	Open or increased resistance in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-60)
3-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-62)
3-4	Short to power in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-64)
3-5	Short to ground in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-66)
21-1	Open or increased resistance in left side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-68)
21-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in left side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-69)
21-4	Short to power in left side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-71)
21-5	Short to ground in left side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-72)
4-1	Open or increased resistance in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-74)
4-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-76)
4-4	Short to power in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-78)
4-5	Short to ground in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-80)
22-1	Open or increased resistance in right side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-82)
22-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in right side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-83)
22-4	Short to power in right side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-85)
22-5	Short to ground in right side seat belt buckle tensioner	(see page 23-86)
5-1	Internal failure of SRS unit NOTE: Before troubleshooting DTCs 5-1 through 8-6, check battery/system voltage. If the voltage is low, repair the charging system before troubleshooting the SRS.	(see page 23-88)
5-2		
5-4		
5-8		
6-3		
6-4		
6-7		
6-8		
7-1		
7-2		
7-3		
8-1		
8-2		
8-3		
8-4		
8-5		
8-6		



DTC	Detection Item	Notes
9-1	Internal failure of the SRS unit. If intermittent, could mean internal failure of the unit or a faulty indicator circuit. Refer to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).	(see page 23-88)
9-2	Internal failure of the SRS unit. If intermittent, could mean internal failure of the power supply (VB line). Refer to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).	
9-6	Faulty left front sensor	(see page 23-90)
9-7	Faulty right front sensor	(see page 23-93)
10-1	Seat belt tensioners (and airbag(s)) deployed	(see page 23-88)
10-2	Left side airbag deployed	
10-3	Seat belt tensioners (and airbag(s)) and left side airbag deployed	
10-4	Right side airbag deployed	
10-5	Seat belt tensioners (and airbag(s)) and front right side airbag deployed	
10-6	Side airbags deployed	
10-7	Seat belt tensioners (and airbag(s)) and side airbags deployed	
11-1	Open or increased resistance in left side airbag inflator	(see page 23-102)
11-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in left side airbag inflator	(see page 23-103)
11-4	Short to power in left side airbag inflator	(see page 23-105)
11-5	Short to ground in left side airbag inflator	(see page 23-106)
12-1	Open or increased resistance in right side airbag inflator	(see page 23-96)
12-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in right side airbag inflator	(see page 23-97)
12-4	Short to power in right side airbag inflator	(see page 23-99)
12-5	Short to ground in right side airbag inflator	(see page 23-100)
13-1	Internal failure of the left side impact sensor	(see page 23-89)
13-2		
13-3	No signal from the left side impact sensor	(see page 23-111)
13-4	Faulty power supply to the left side impact sensor	(see page 23-112)
14-1	Internal failure of the right side impact sensor	(see page 23-89)
14-2		
14-3	No signal from the right side impact sensor	(see page 23-108)
14-4	Faulty power supply to the right side impact sensor	(see page 23-109)

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting Index (cont'd)

### Side Airbag with OPDS Unit Model (KEIHIN)

DTC	Detection Item	Notes
1-1	Open or increased resistance in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-45)
1-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-48)
1-4	Short to power in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-50)
1-5	Short to ground in driver's airbag inflator	(see page 23-52)
2-1	Open or increased resistance in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-54)
2-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-55)
2-4	Short to power in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-57)
2-5	Short to ground in front passenger's airbag inflator	(see page 23-58)
3-1	Open or increased resistance in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-60)
3-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-62)
3-4	Short to power in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-64)
3-5	Short to ground in left side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-66)
4-1	Open or increased resistance in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-74)
4-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-76)
4-4	Short to power in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-78)
4-5	Short to ground in right side seat belt tensioner	(see page 23-80)
5-1	Internal failure of SRS unit	(see page 23-88)
5-2	NOTE:	
5-4	Before troubleshooting DTCs 5-1 through 8-6, check battery/system voltage. If the voltage is low, repair the charging system before troubleshooting the SRS.	
5-8		
6-3		
6-4		
6-7		
6-8		
7-1		
7-2		
7-3		
8-1		
8-2		
8-3		
8-4		
8-5		
8-6		



DTC	Detection Item	Notes
9-1	Internal failure of the SRS unit. If intermittent, could mean internal failure of the unit or a faulty indicator circuit. Refer to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).	(see page 23-88)
9-2	Internal failure of the SRS unit. If intermittent, could mean internal failure of the power supply (VB line). Refer to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).	
9-6	Faulty left front sensor	(see page 23-90)
9-7	Faulty right front sensor	(see page 23-93)
10-1	Seat belt tensioners (and airbag(s)) deployed	(see page 23-88)
10-2	Driver's side airbag deployed	
10-3	Seat belt tensioners (and airbag(s)) and driver's side airbag deployed	
10-4	Front passenger's side airbag deployed	
10-5	Seat belt tensioners (and airbag(s)) and front passenger's side airbag deployed	
10-6	Driver's and front passenger's side airbags deployed	
10-7	Seat belt tensioners (and airbag(s)) and driver's and front passenger's side airbags deployed	
11-1	Open or increased resistance in driver's side airbag inflator	(see page 23-96)
11-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in driver's side airbag inflator	(see page 23-97)
11-4	Short to power in driver's side airbag inflator	(see page 23-99)
11-5	Short to ground in driver's side airbag inflator	(see page 23-100)
12-1	Open or increased resistance in front passenger's side airbag inflator	(see page 23-102)
12-3	Short to another wire or decreased resistance in front passenger's side airbag inflator	(see page 23-103)
12-4	Short to power in front passenger's side airbag inflator	(see page 23-105)
12-5	Short to ground in front passenger's side airbag inflator	(see page 23-106)
13-1	Internal failure of the driver's side impact sensor	(see page 23-89)
13-2		
13-3	No signal from the driver's side impact sensor	(see page 23-108)
13-4	Faulty power supply to the driver's side impact sensor	(see page 23-109)
14-1	Internal failure of the front passenger's side impact sensor	(see page 23-89)
14-2		
14-3	No signal from the front passenger's side impact sensor	(see page 23-111)
14-4	Faulty power supply to the front passenger's side impact sensor	(see page 23-112)
15-1	Faulty OPDS unit or OPDS not initialized	(see page 23-114)
15-2	Faulty side airbag cutoff indicator light circuit	(see page 23-118)
15-3	Faulty OPDS sensor	(see page 23-123)

## Symptom Troubleshooting Index

Symptom	Diagnostic procedure	Also check for
SRS indicator doesn't come on	SRS Indicator Troubleshooting ( <a href="#">see page 23-124</a> )	
SRS indicator stays on when in "SCS" menu method	SRS Indicator Troubleshooting (see step 1 on <a href="#">page 23-127</a> )	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Inability to retrieve DTCs with the PGM Tester. Retrieve the flash codes using the SCS menu method (<a href="#">see page 23-26</a>).</li> </ul>
Side airbag cutoff indicator stays on after bulb check (If the indicator stays on, it does not set a DTC)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure nothing is on the front passenger's seat.</li> <li>Make sure the front passenger's seat isn't wet. If the seat is wet, start the engine, and turn on the air conditioning system for 30 minutes to dry any moisture from the seat.</li> <li>If the side airbag cutoff indicator stays on after the ignition switch is turned ON (II), initialize the OPDS unit (<a href="#">see page 23-30</a>).               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the side airbag cutoff indicator operates normally, the system is OK.</li> <li>If the side airbag cutoff indicator stays on, replace the OPDS sensor (<a href="#">see section 20</a>). The sensor is part of the seatback pad.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	



## System Description

### SRS Components

#### Airbags

The SRS is a safety device which, when used with the seat belt, is designed to help protect the driver and front passenger in a frontal impact exceeding a certain set limit. The system consists of the SRS unit, including safing sensor and impact sensor (A), the cable reel (B), the driver's airbag (C), the front passenger's airbag (D), side airbags (E), seat belt tensioners (I), and front impact sensors (J).

#### Side Airbags

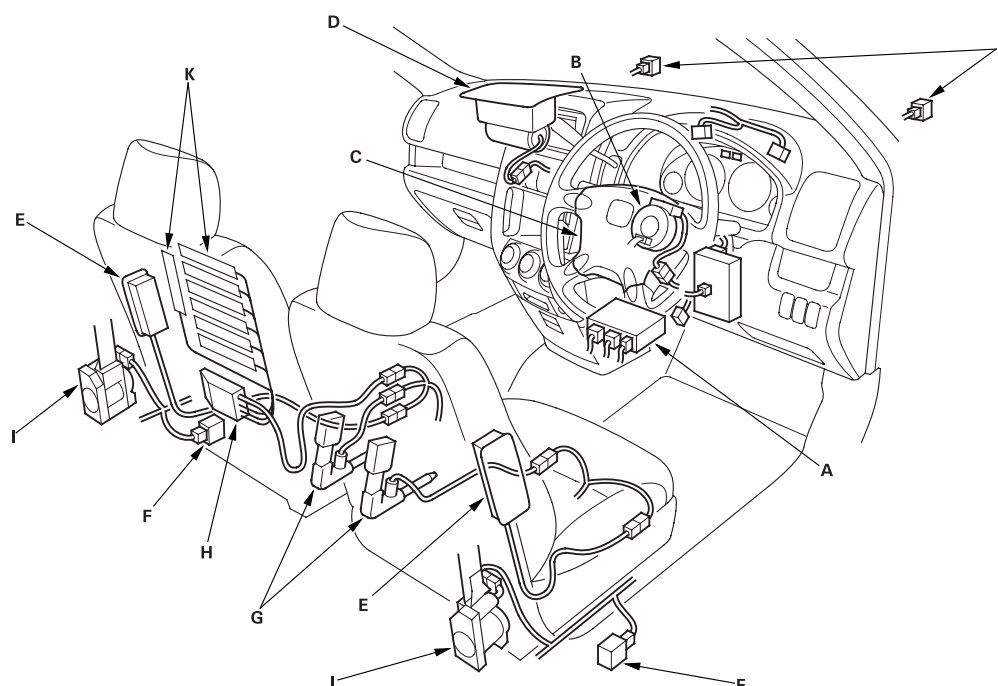
The side airbags (E) are in each front seat-back. They help protect the upper torso of the driver or front seat passenger during a moderate to severe side impact. Side impact sensors (F) in each door sill and in the SRS unit detect such an impact and instantly inflate the driver's or the passenger's side airbag. Only one side airbag will deploy during a side impact. If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side airbag will deploy even if there is no passenger.

#### Seat Belt and Seat Belt Buckle Tensioners

The seat belt and seat belt buckle tensioners (G) are linked with the SRS airbags to further increase the effectiveness of the seat belt. In a front-end collision, the tensioners instantly retract the belt and buckle firmly to secure the occupants in their seats.

#### OPDS

The side airbag system also includes an Occupant Position Detection System (OPDS). This system consists of sensors (K) and a OPDS unit (H) in the front passenger's seat-back. The OPDS unit sends occupant height and position data to the SRS unit. If the SRS unit determines that the front passenger is of small stature (for example, a child) and the front passenger is leaning into the side airbag deployment path, it will automatically disable the airbag. The SRS unit will also disable the airbag when the OPDS detects certain objects on the seat. When the side airbag is disabled, the Side Airbag Cutoff indicator on the instrument panel alerts the driver that the passenger's side airbag will not deploy in a side impact. When the object is removed, or the passenger sits upright, the Side Airbag Cutoff indicator will go off, alerting the driver that the side airbag will deploy in a side impact.



## SRS Operation

The main circuit in the SRS unit senses and judges the force of impact and, if necessary, ignites the inflator charges. If battery voltage is too low or power is disconnected due to the impact, the voltage regulator and the back-up power circuit, respectively, will keep voltage at a constant level.

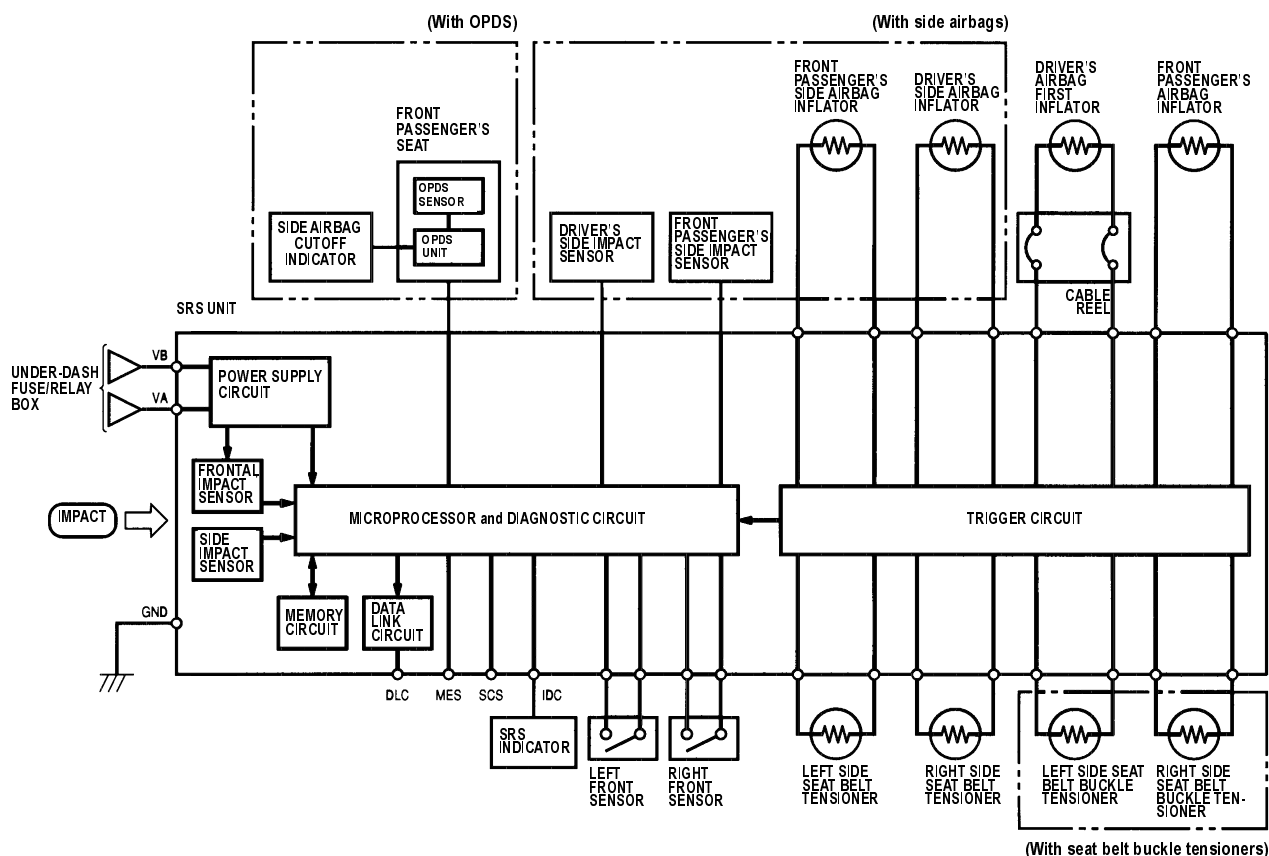
**For the SRS to operate:**

### Driver's and Front Passenger's Airbag(s)

- (1) The frontal impact sensor must activate, and send electric signals to the microprocessor.
- (2) The microprocessor must compute the signals, and depending on the severity of the collision and whether the seat belt buckle switch is ON or OFF, it sends the appropriate signals to the airbag inflator(s).
- (3) The inflators that received signals must ignite and deploy the airbag (s).

### Side Airbag(s)

- (1) The side impact sensors must activate, and send electric signals to the microprocessor.
- (2) The microprocessor must compute the signals and send them to the side airbag inflator(s). However, the microprocessor cuts off the signals to the front passenger's side airbag if the SRS unit determines that the front passenger's head is in the deployment path of the side airbag.
- (3) The inflator that received the signal must ignite and deploy the side airbag.(With Side airbags)



## Self-diagnosis System

A self-diagnosis circuit is built into the SRS unit; when the ignition switch is turned ON (II), the SRS indicator comes on and goes off after about 6 seconds if the system is operating normally.

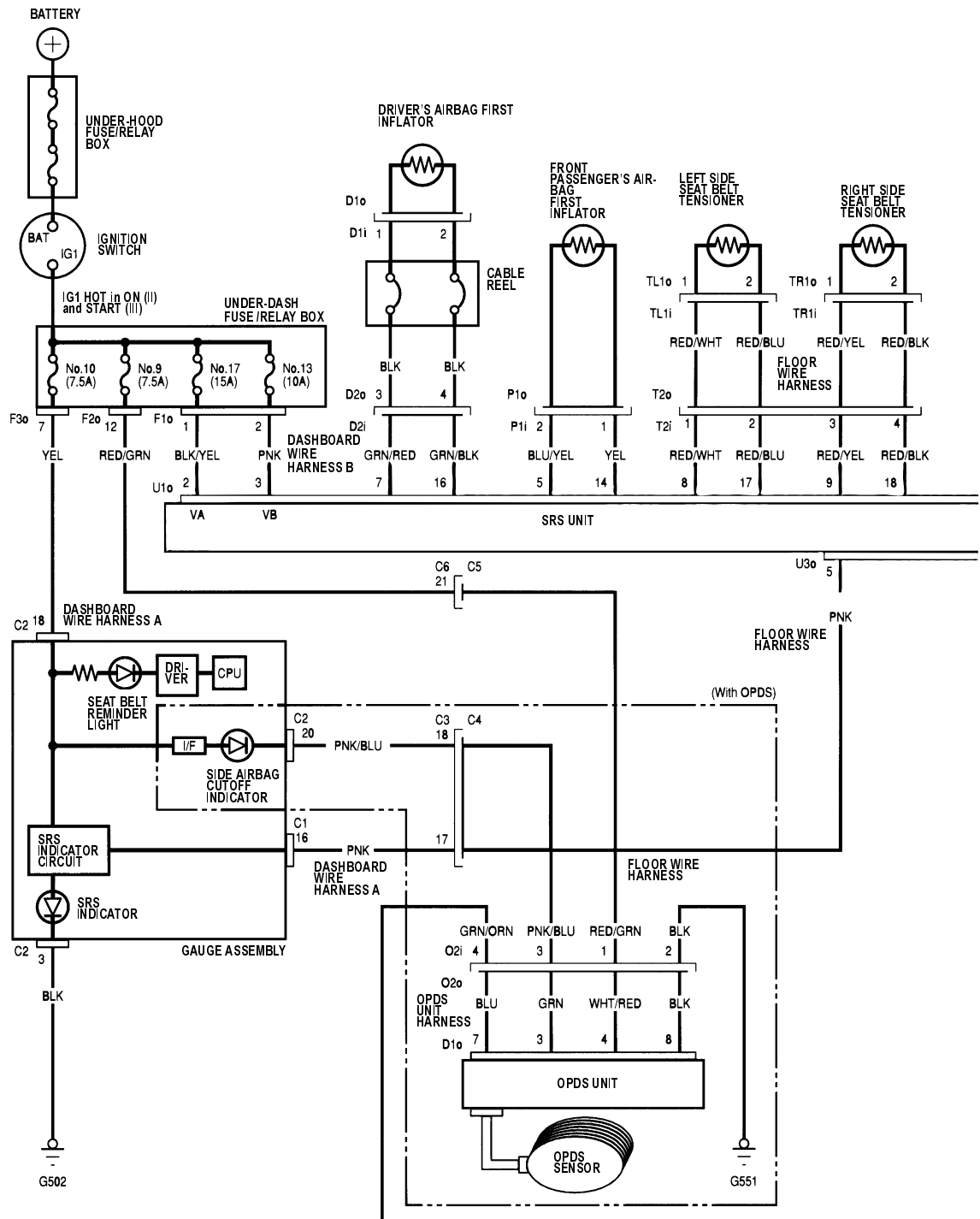
If the light does not come on, or does not go off after 6 seconds, or if it comes on while driving, it indicates an abnormality in the system. The system must be inspected and repaired as soon as possible.

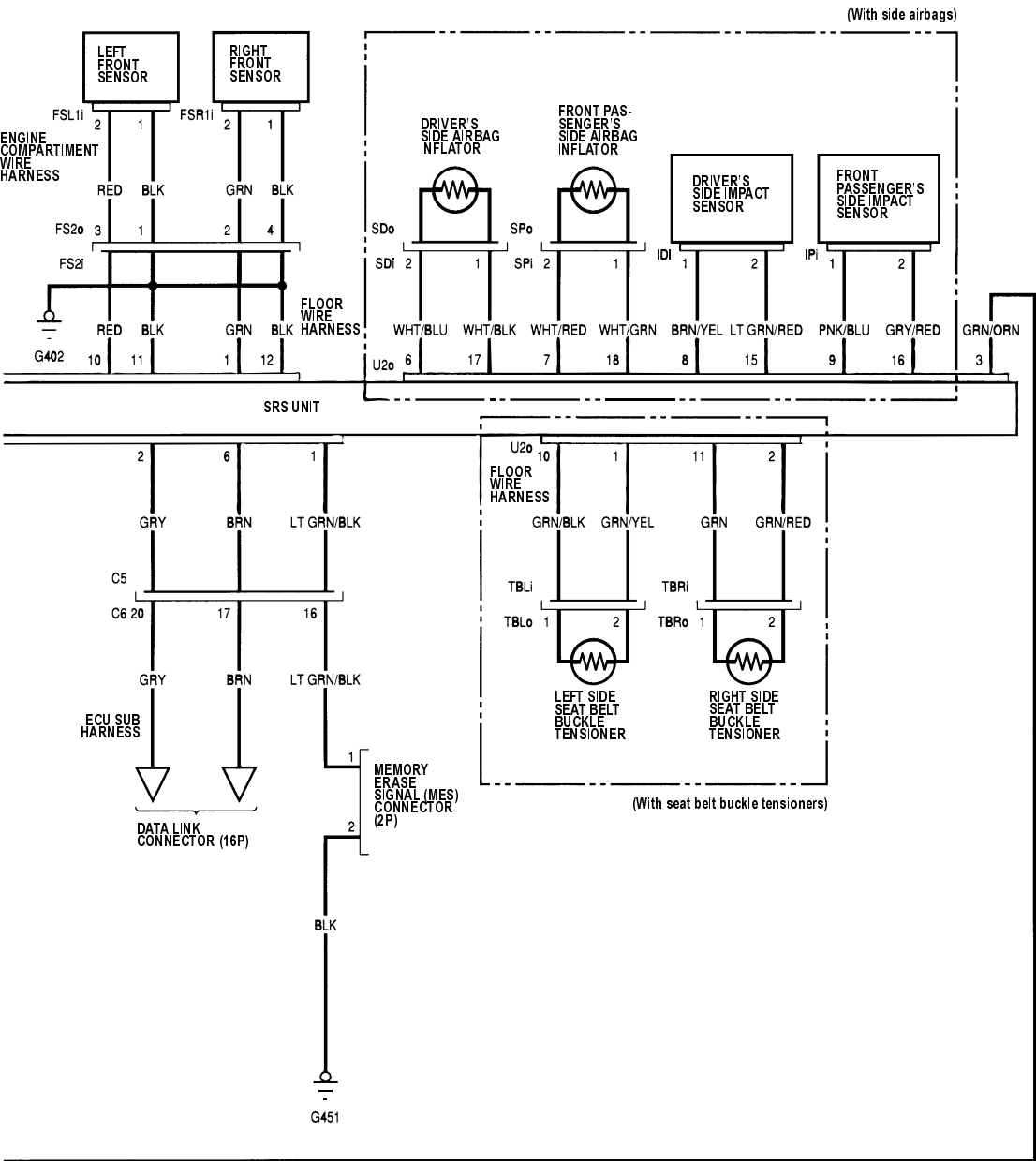
For better serviceability, the SRS unit memory stores a DTC that relates to the cause of the malfunction, and the unit is connected to the data link connector (DLC). This information can be read with the Honda PGM Tester when it is connected to the DLC (16P).





## Circuit Diagram







## Connectors

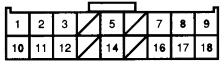
Connector No. *1		Wire harness and connector	Terminal		Note *2	Ref. No.
			Male	Female		
U1o		Dashboard wire harness B18P connector		o	(1)	1
U2o		Floor wire harness 18P connector		o	(1)	2
U3o		Floor wire harness 8P connector		o	(1)	3
F1o		Dashboard wire harness B 2P connector		o	(1)	4
F2o		Floor wire harness 18P connector		o		5
F3o		Dashboard wire harness A17P connector		o		6
D1	D1o	Driver's airbag 2P connector		o	(1)(2)	10
	D1i	Cable reel 2P connector	o			9
D2	D2o	Cable reel 4P connector		o	(1)	8
	D2i	Dashboard wire harness B 4P connector	o			7
P1	P1o	Front passenger's airbag 2P connector		o	(1)(2)	10
	P1i	Dashboard wire harness B 2P connector	o			9
TL1	TL1o	Left side seat belt tensioner 2P connector			(1)(2)	10
	TL1i	Floor wire harness 2P connector	o			9
TR1	TR1o	Right side seat belt tensioner 2P connector			(1)(2)	10
	TR1i	Floor wire harness 2P connector	o			9
T2	T2o	Floor wire harness 4P connector	o		(1)	10
	T2i	Dashboard wire harness B 4P connector		o		9
TB	TBLi	Floor wire harness 4P connector		o	(1)	8
	TBLo	Left side seat belt buckle tensioner 4P connector	o			7
	TBRi	Floor wire harness 4P connector		o		8
	TBRo	Right side seat belt buckle tensioner 4P connector	o			7
SD	SDo	Driver's side airbag 2P connector	o		(1)(2)(3)	11
	SDi	Floor wire harness 2P connector		o		12
SP	SPo	Front passenger's side airbag 2P connector	o		(1)(2)(3)	11
	SPi	Floor wire harness 2P connector		o		12
FS	FSL1i	Engine compartment wire harness 2P connector		o	(1)(3)	13
	FSR1i	2P connector		o		13
FS2	FS2o	Engine compartment wire harness 4P connector		o	(1)	8
	FS2i	Dashboard wire harness B 4P connector	o			7
IDi		Floor wire harness 2P connector		o	(1)(3)	13
IPi		Floor wire harness 2P connector		o		13
O1i		OPDS unit harness 8P connector		o		14
O2	O2o	OPDS unit harness 4P connector	o			16
	O2i	Floor wire harness 4P connector		o		15
C1		Dashboard wire harness A 22P connector		o		17
C2		Dashboard wire harness A 22P connector		o		18
C3		Dashboard wire harness A18P connector		o		19
C4		Floor wire harness A18P connector		o		20
C5		Floor wire harness 21P connector		o		21
C6		ECU wire harness 21P connector	o			22

\*1: The connector numbers are original in this section that are different from other sections.

\*2: Note

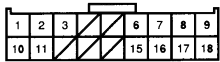
- (1) Spring loaded lock connector
- (2) With built-in short contact connector
- (3) Waterproof connector

1. U1o



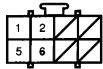
Wire side of female terminals.

2. U2o



Wire side of female terminals.

3. U3o



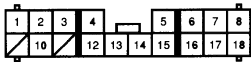
Wire side of female terminals.

4. F1o



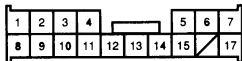
Wire side of female terminals.

5. F2o



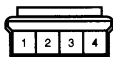
Wire side of female terminals.

6. F3o



Wire side of female terminals.

7. D2i, T2o, FS2i, TBLo, TBRo



Terminal side of male terminals.

8. D2o, T2i, FS2o, TBLi, TBRi



Terminal side of male terminals.

9. D1i, P1i, TL1i, TR1i



Terminal side of male terminals.

10. D1o, P1o, TL1o, TR1o



Wire side of female terminals.

11. SDo, SPO



Terminal side of male terminals.

12. SDi, SPI



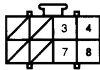
Terminal side of male terminals.

13. IDi, IPI, FSL1i, FSR1i



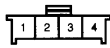
Wire side of female terminals.

14. O1i



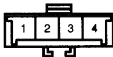
Wire side of female terminals.

15. O2i



Wire side of female terminals.

16. O2o



Terminal side of male terminals.

17. C1



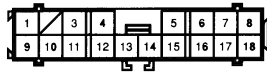
Wire side of female terminals.

18. C2



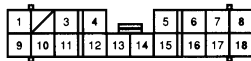
Wire side of female terminals.

19. C3



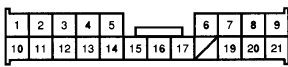
Terminal side of male terminals.

20. C4



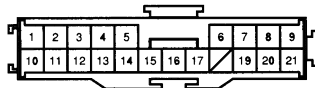
Wire side of female terminals.

21. C5



Wire side of female terminals.

22. C6



Terminal side of male terminals.



## DTC Troubleshooting

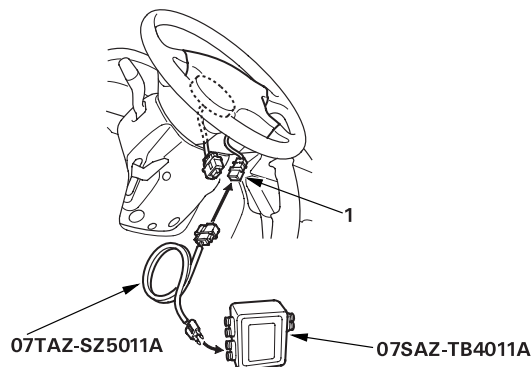
### DTC 1-1: Open in Driver's Airbag Inflator

### DTC 1-2: Increased Resistance in Driver's Airbag Inflator

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A

1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.  
*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*  
**Yes** Go to step 3.  
**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the D1o connector from the D1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2  $\Omega$  connector) to the D1i connector.

6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.

7. Erase the DTC memory.

8. Read the DTC.

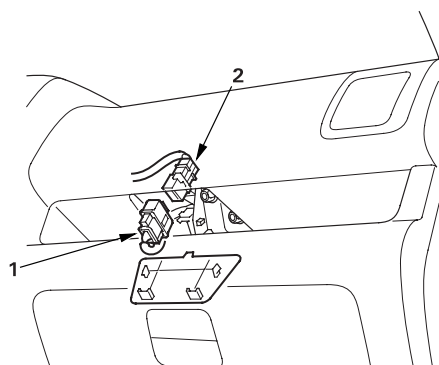
*Is DTC 1-1 or DTC 1-2 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Open or increased resistance in the driver's airbag inflator; replace the driver's airbag ([see page 23-135](#)).■

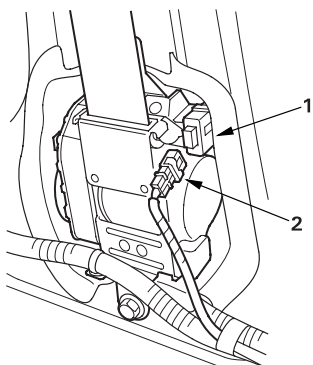
9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.

10. Disconnect the P1o connector (1) from the P1i connector (2).

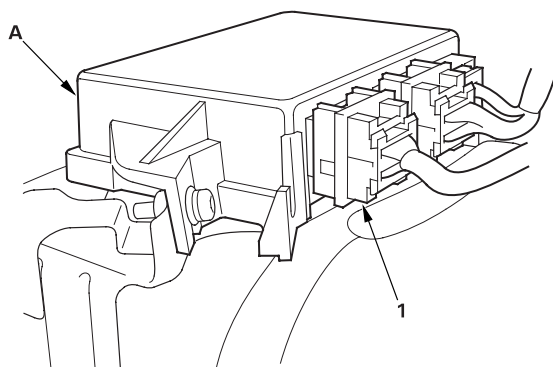




11. Disconnect the TL1o and TR1o connectors (1) from the TL1i and TR1i connectors (2).

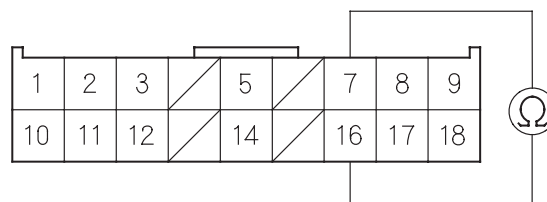


12. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



13. Check resistance between the No. 7 and the No. 16 terminals of U1o connector. There should be 2.0 - 3.0  $\Omega$ .

U1o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit or poor contact at the U1o connector and the SRS unit, check the connection between the U1o connector and the SRS unit. If the connection is OK, replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Open or increased resistance in dashboard wire harness B or the cable reel; replace dashboard wire harness B or the cable reel.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 1-3: Short to Another Wire or Decreased Resistance in Driver's Airbag Inflator

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A

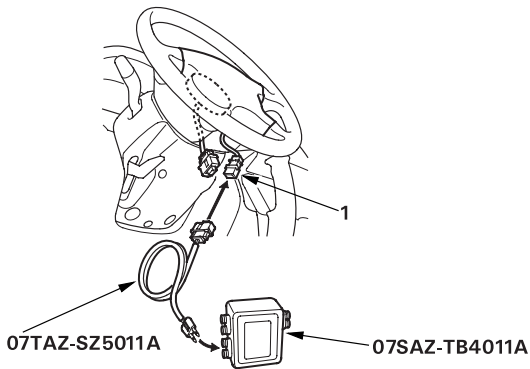
1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the D1o connector from the D1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2  $\Omega$  connector) to the D1i connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.

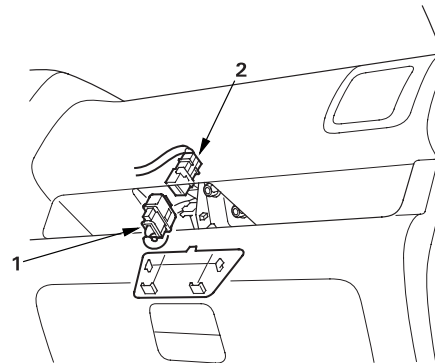
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 1-3 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short in the driver's airbag; replace the driver's airbag ([see page 23-135](#)).■

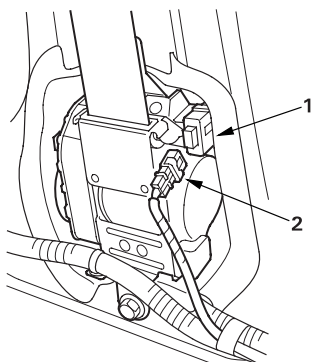
9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the P1o connector (1) from the P1i connector (2).



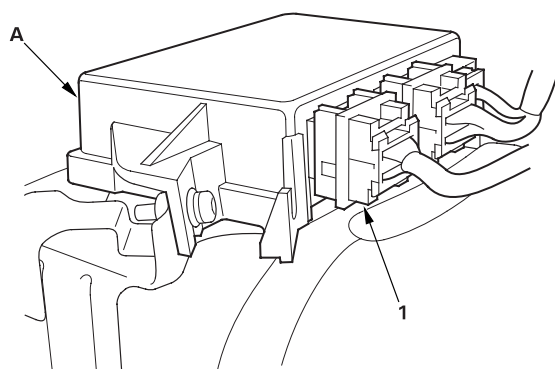




11. Disconnect the TL1o and TR1o connectors (1) from the TL1i and TR1i connectors (2).



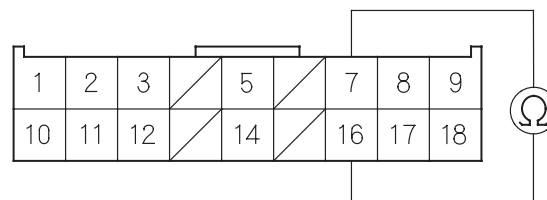
12. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



13. Disconnect the special tool from the D1i connector.

14. Check resistance between the No. 7 and the No. 16 terminals of the U1o connector. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

U1o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)). ■

**No** Go to step 15.

15. Disconnect the cable reel from dashboard wire harness B. Check resistance between the No. 7 and the No. 16 terminals of the U1o connector. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Replace the cable reel. ■

**No** Replace dashboard wire harness B. ■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 1-4: Short to Power in Driver's Airbag Inflator

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A

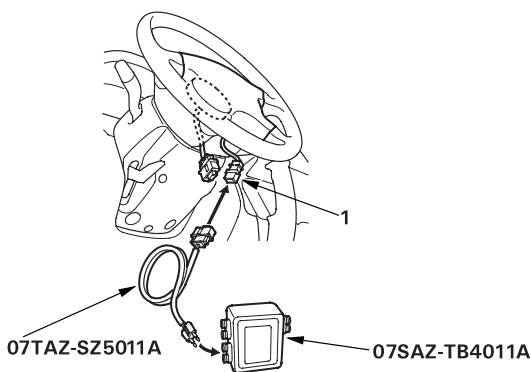
1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the D1o connector from the D1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the D1i connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.

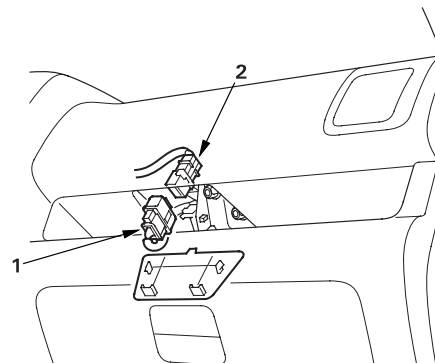
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 1-4 indicated?*

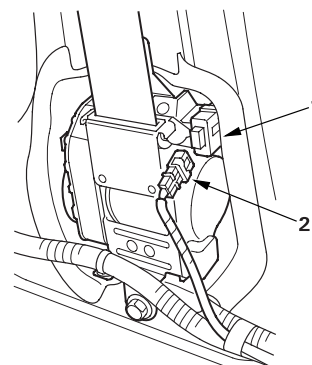
**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short to power in the driver's airbag; replace the driver's airbag ([see page 23-135](#)). ■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the P1o connector (1) from the P1i connector (2).

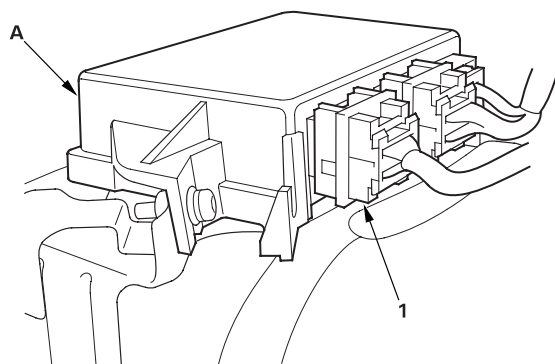


11. Disconnect the TL1o and TR1o connectors (1) from the TL1i and TR1i connectors (2).

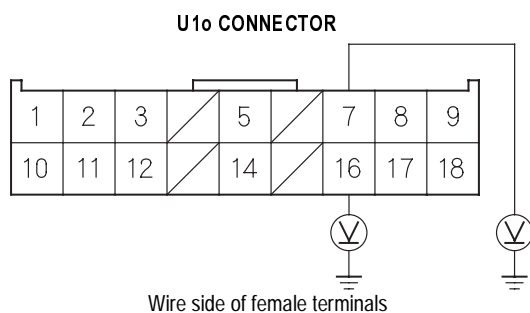




12. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



13. Disconnect the special tool from the D1i connector.  
 14. Reconnect the battery negative cable.  
 15. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).  
 16. Check for voltage between the No. 7 terminal of U1o connector and body ground, between the No. 16 terminal and body ground. There should be 0.5 V or less.



*Is the voltage as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Go to step 17.

17. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

18. Disconnect the cable reel from the dashboard wire harness.

19. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

20. Check for voltage between the No. 7 terminal of U1o connector and body ground, between the No. 16 terminal and body ground. There should be 0.5 V or less.

*Is the voltage as specified?*

**Yes** Replace the cable reel.■

**No** Replace dashboard wire harness B.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 1-5: Short to Ground in Driver's Airbag Inflator

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A

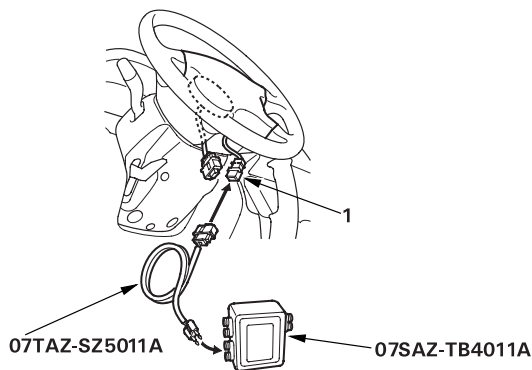
1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the D1o connector from the D1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the D1i connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.

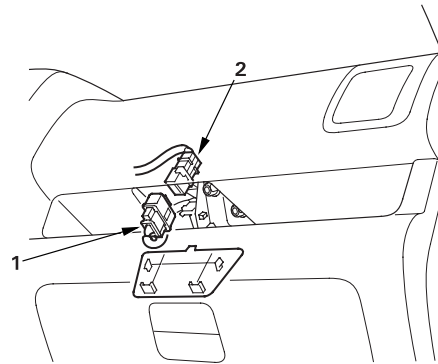
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 1-5 indicated?*

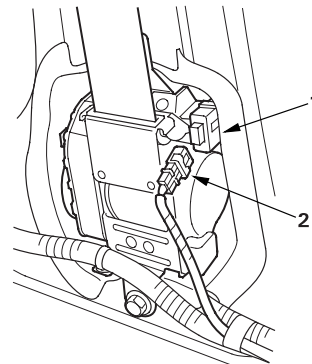
**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short to ground in the driver's airbag inflator; replace the driver's airbag ([see page 23-135](#)).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the P1o connector (1) from the P1i connector (2).

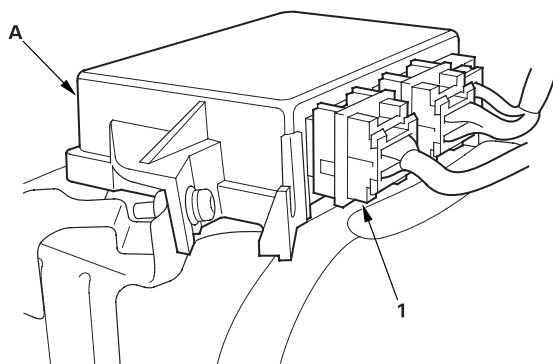


11. Disconnect the TL1o and TR1o connectors (1) from the TL1i and TR1i connectors (2).



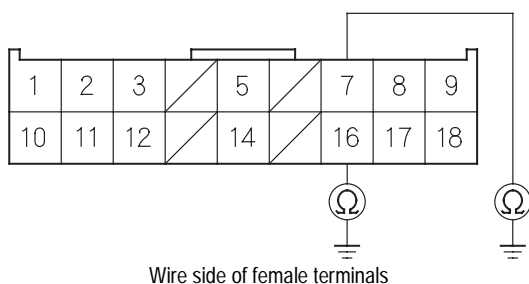


12. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



13. Disconnect the special tool from the D1i connector.
14. Check resistance between the No. 7 terminal of U1o connector and body ground, between the No. 16 terminal and body ground. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

U1o CONNECTOR



*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Go to step 15.

15. Disconnect the cable reel from the dashboard wire harness.

16. Check resistance between the No. 7 terminal of U1o connector and body ground, between the No. 16 terminal and body ground. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Replace the cable reel.■

**No** Replace dashboard wire harness B.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 2-1: Open in Front Passenger's Airbag Inflator

### DTC 2-2: Increased Resistance in Front Passenger's Airbag Inflator

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A

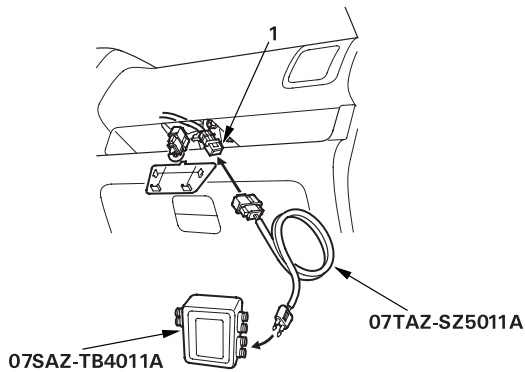
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the P1o connector from the P1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the P1i connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.

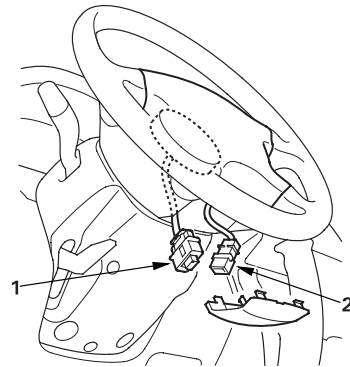
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 2-1 or DTC 2-2 indicated?*

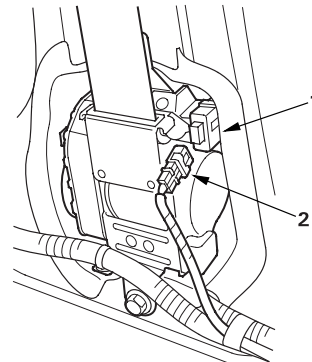
**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Open or increased resistance in the front passenger's airbag inflator; replace the front passenger's airbag (see page 23-136).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the D1o connector (1) from the D1i connector (2).

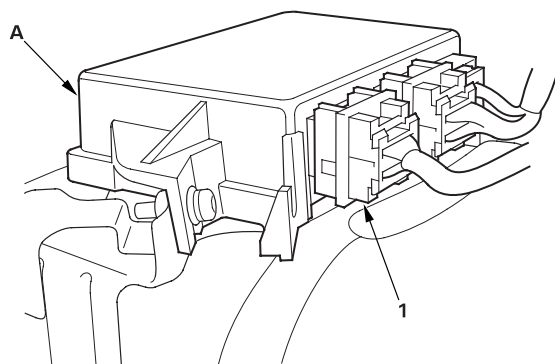


11. Disconnect the TL1o and TR1o connectors (1) from the TL1i and TR1i connectors (2).

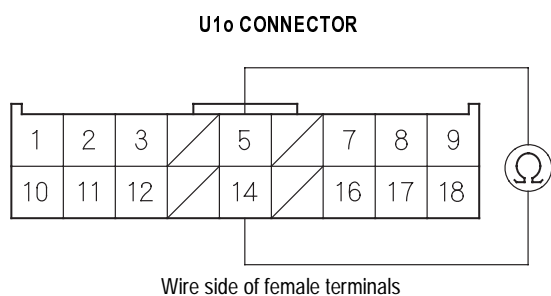




12. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



13. Check resistance between the No. 5 and No. 14 terminals of U1o connector. There should be 2.0 - 3.0  $\Omega$ .



*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit or poor contact at the U1o connector; check the connection between U1o connector and the SRS unit. If the connector is OK, replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144). ■

**No** Open or increased resistance in the dashboard wire harness B; replace dashboard wire harness B. ■

### DTC 2-3: Short to Another Wire or Decreased Resistance in Front Passenger's Airbag Inflator

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A

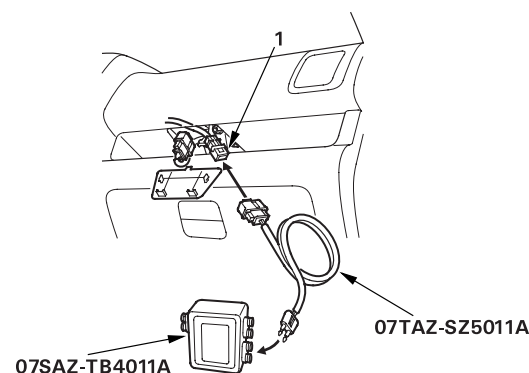
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the P1o connector from the P1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2  $\Omega$  connector) to the P1i connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

8. Read the DTC.

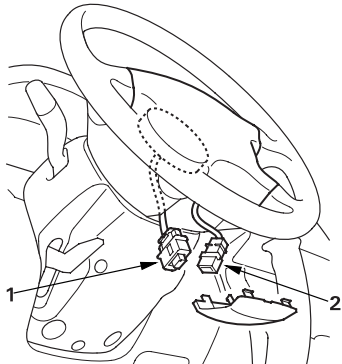
*Is DTC 2-3 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

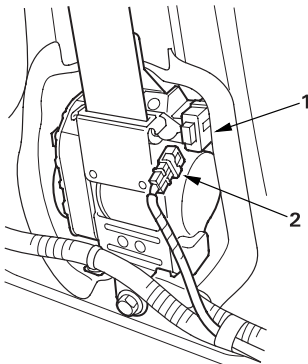
**No** Short in the front passenger's airbag inflator; replace the front passenger's airbag (see page 23-136).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.

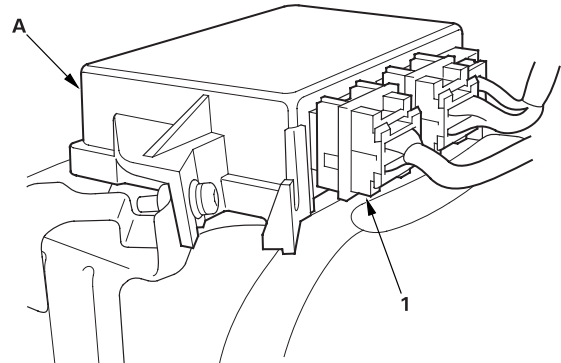
10. Disconnect the D1o connector (1) from the D1i connector (2).



11. Disconnect the TL1o and TR1o connectors (1) from the TL1i and TR1i connectors (2).



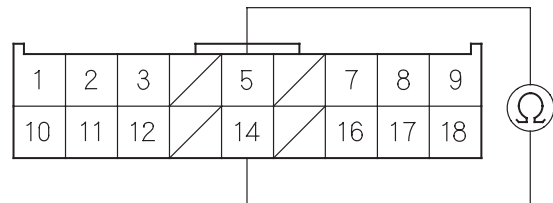
12. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



13. Disconnect the special tool from the P1i connector.

14. Check resistance between the No. 5 and No. 14 terminals of U1o connector. There should be 1  $\Omega$  or more.

U1o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144).■

**No** Short in dashboard wire harness B; replace dashboard wire harness B.■





### DTC 2-4: Short to Power in Front Passenger's Airbag Inflator

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A

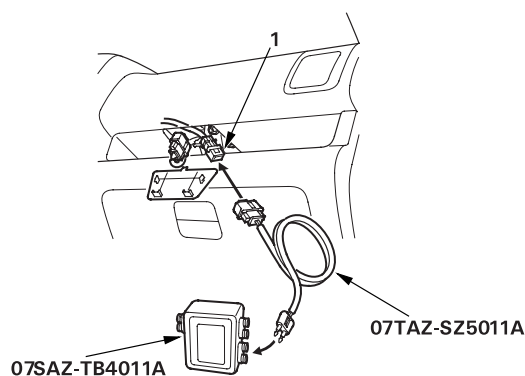
1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the P1o connector from the P1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2  $\Omega$  connector) to the P1i connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.

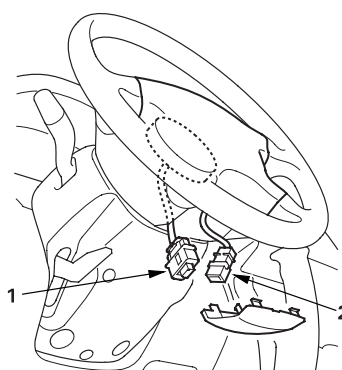
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 2-4 indicated?*

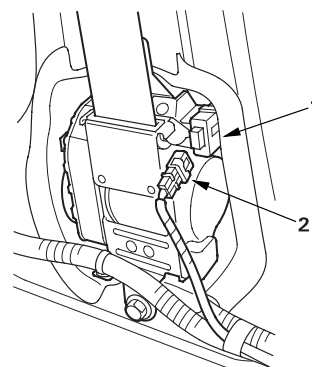
**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short to power in the front passenger's airbag inflator; replace the front passenger's airbag ([see page 23-136](#)). ■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the D1o connector (1) from the D1i connector (2).



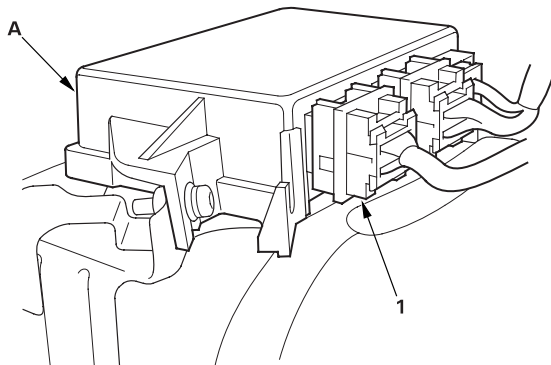
11. Disconnect the TL1o and TR1o connectors (1) from the TL1i and TR1i connectors (2).



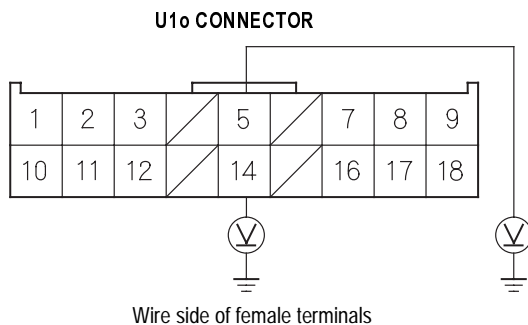
(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

12. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



13. Disconnect the special tool from the P1i connector.  
 14. Reconnect the battery negative cable.  
 15. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).  
 16. Check for voltage between the No. 5 terminal of the U1o connector and body ground, and between the No. 14 terminal and body ground. There should be 0.5 V or less.



*Is the voltage as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144).■

**No** Short to power in the dashboard wire harness B; replace the dashboard wire harness B.■

## DTC 2-5: Short to Ground in Front Passenger's Airbag Inflator

### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A

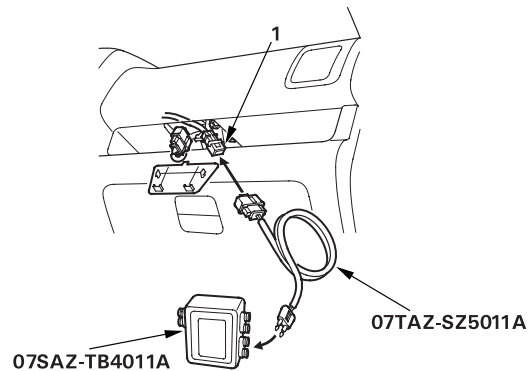
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the P1o connector from the P1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the P1i connector.



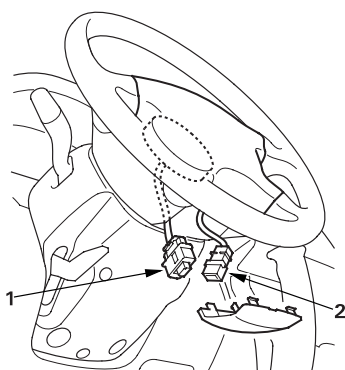
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 2-5 indicated?*

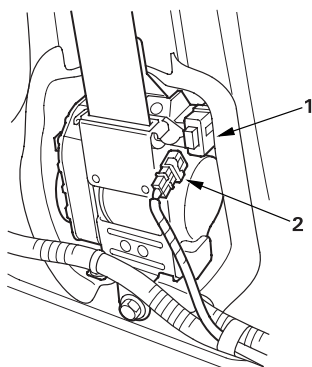
**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short to ground in the front passenger's airbag inflator; replace the front passenger's airbag (see page 23-136).■

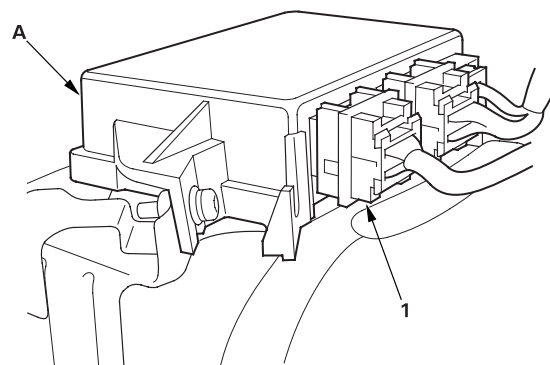
9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the D1o connector (1) from the D1i connector (2).



11. Disconnect the TL1o and TR1o connectors (1) from the TL1i and TR1i connectors (2).

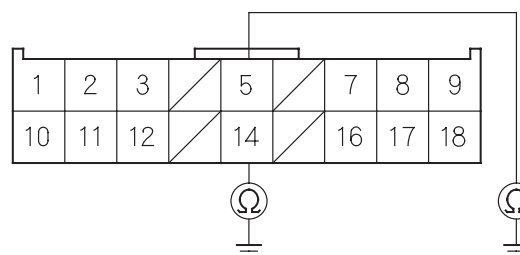


12. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



13. Disconnect the special tool from the P1i connector.
14. Check resistance between the No. 5 terminal of the U1o connector and body ground, and between the No. 14 terminal and body ground. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

U1o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144).■

**No** Short to ground in dashboard wire harness B; replace dashboard wire harness B.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 3-1: Open in Left Side Seat Belt Tensioner

### DTC 3-2: Increased Resistance in Left Side Seat Belt Tensioner

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

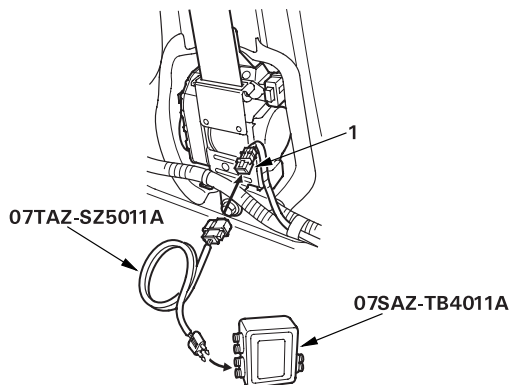
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TL1o connector from the TL1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the TL1i connector.

6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.

7. Erase the DTC memory.

8. Read the DTC.

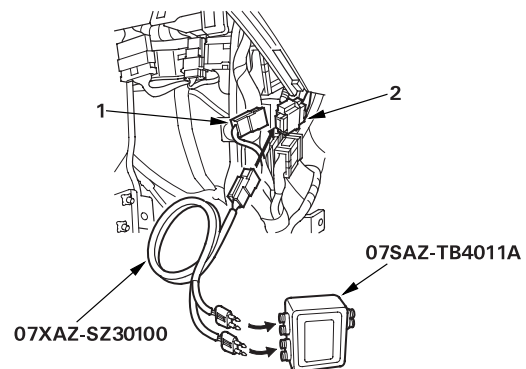
*Is DTC 3-1 or DTC 3-2 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Open or increased resistance in the left side seat belt tensioner; replace the left side seat belt (see page 23-4).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.

10. Disconnect the T2o connector (1) from the T2i connector (2).



11. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) to the T2i connector.

12. Reconnect the battery negative cable.

13. Erase the DTC memory.

14. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 3-1 or DTC 3-2 indicated?*

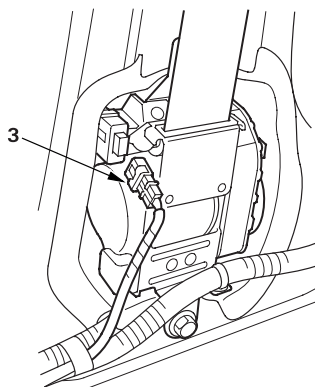
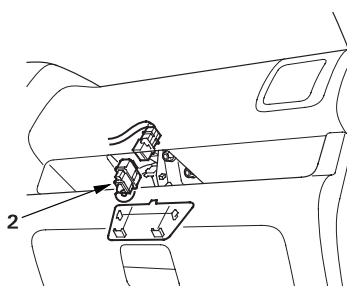
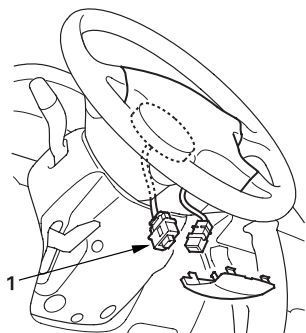
**Yes** Go to step 15.

**No** Open or increased resistance in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

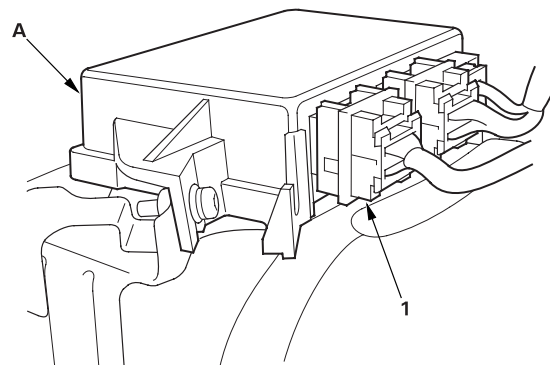
15. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.



16. Disconnect the D1o connector (1), P1o connector (2), and TR1i connector (3).

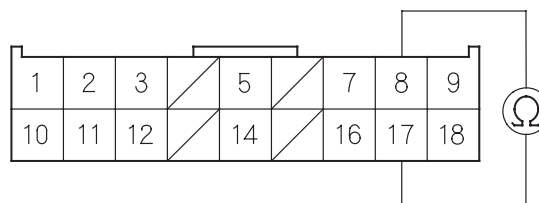


17. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



18. Check resistance between the No. 8 terminal and the No. 17 terminal of U1o connector. There should be 2.0 - 3.0  $\Omega$ .

U1o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit or poor contact at U1o connector and the SRS unit. Check the connection between the connector and the SRS unit. If the connection is OK, replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Open or increased resistance in dashboard wire harness B; replace dashboard wire harness B.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 3-3: Short to Another Wire or Decreased Resistance in Left Side Seat Belt Tensioner

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

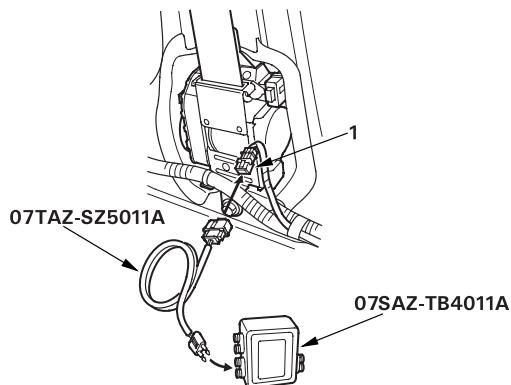
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TL1o connector from the TL1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the TL1i connector.

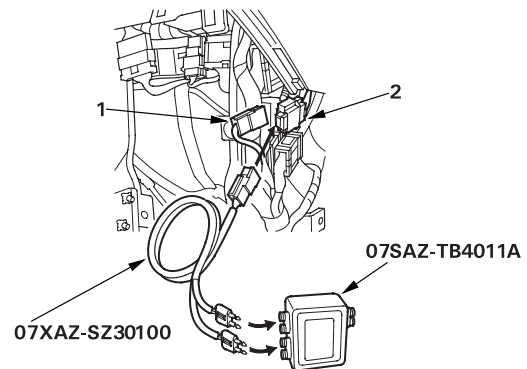
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 3-3 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short in the left side seat belt tensioner; replace the left side seat belt (see page 23-4).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the T2o connector (1) from the T2i connector (2).



11. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) to the T2i connector.
12. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
13. Erase the DTC memory.
14. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 3-3 indicated?*

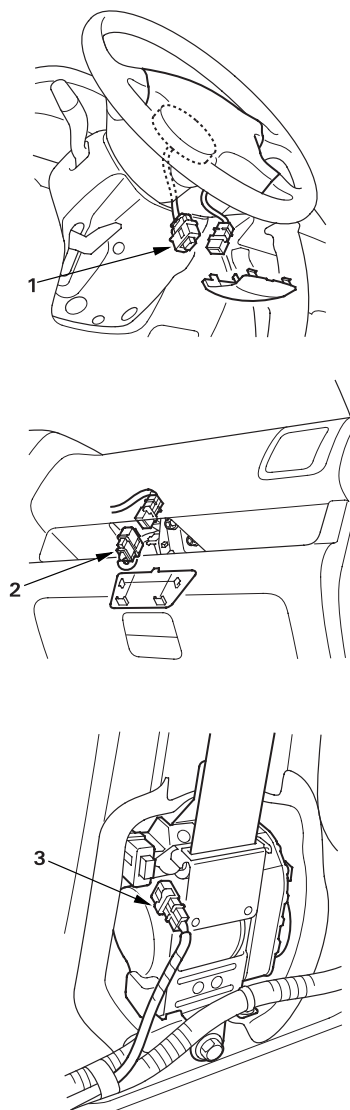
**Yes** Go to step 15.

**No** Short in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

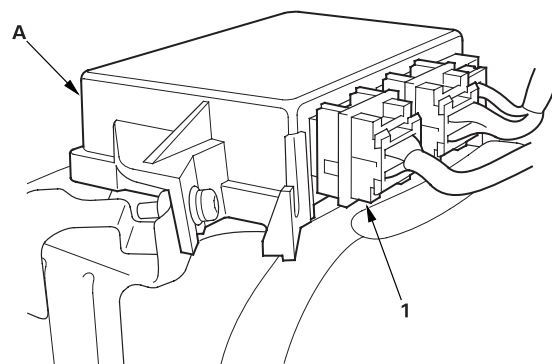
15. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.



16. Disconnect the D1o connector (1), P1o connector (2), and TR1i connector (3).



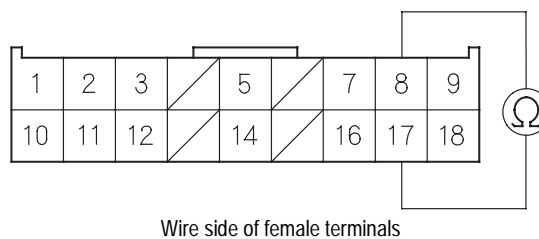
17. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



18. Disconnect the special tool from the T2i connector.

19. Check resistance between the No. 8 terminal and the No. 17 terminal U1o connector. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

U1o CONNECTOR



*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Short in dashboard wire harness B; replace dashboard wire harness B.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 3-4: Short to Power in Left side Seat Belt Tensioner

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

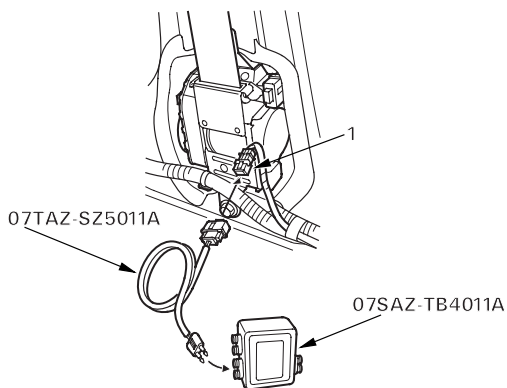
1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TL1o connector from the TL1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the TL1i connector.

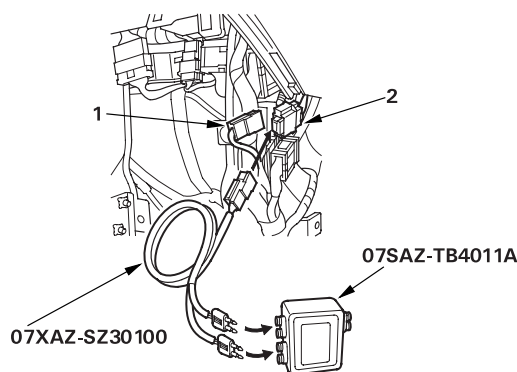
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 3-4 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short to power in the left side seat belt tensioner; replace the left side seat belt ([see page 23-4](#)).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the T2o connector (1) from the T2i connector (2).



11. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) to the T2i connector.
12. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
13. Erase the DTC memory.
14. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 3-4 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 15.

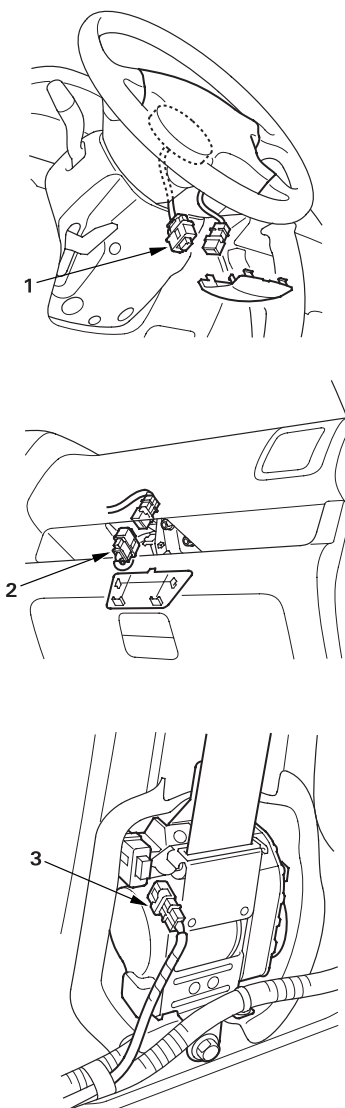
**No** Short to power in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

15. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.

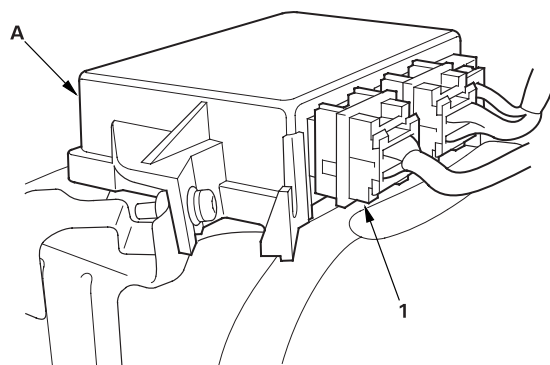




16. Disconnect the D1o connector (1), P1o connector (2), and TR1i connector (3).

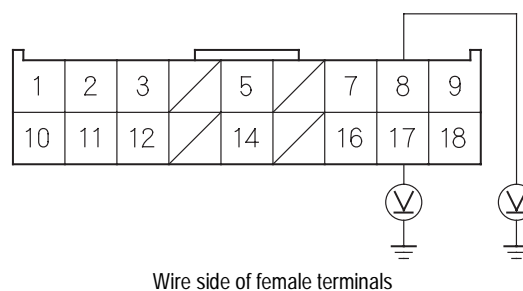


17. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



18. Disconnect the special tool ( $2\ \Omega$ ) from the T2i connector.
19. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
20. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
21. Check for voltage between the No. 8 terminal of U1o connector and body ground, and between the No. 17 terminal and body ground. There should be 0.5 V or less.

U1o CONNECTOR



*Is the voltage as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Short to power in dashboard wire harness B; replace dashboard wire harness B.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 3-5: Short to Ground in Left Side Seat Belt Tensioner

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

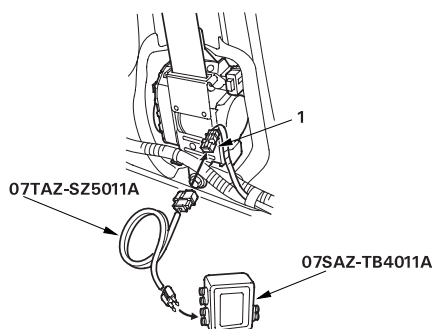
1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TL1o connector from the TL1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the TL1i connector.

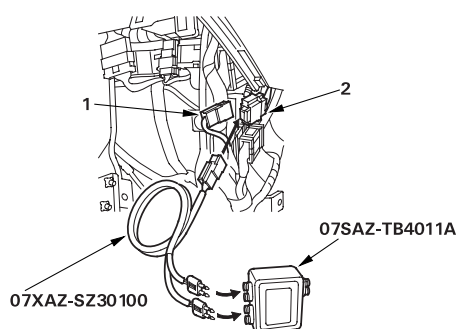
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 3-5 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short to ground in the left side seat belt tensioner; replace the left side seat belt ([see page 23-4](#)).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the T2o connector (1) from the T2i connector (2).



11. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) to the T2i connector.
12. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
13. Erase the DTC memory.
14. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 3-5 indicated?*

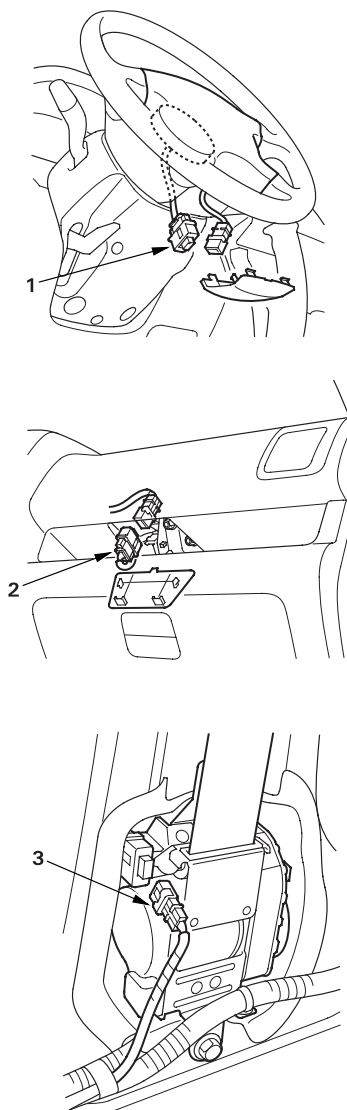
**Yes** Go to step 15.

**No** Short to ground in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

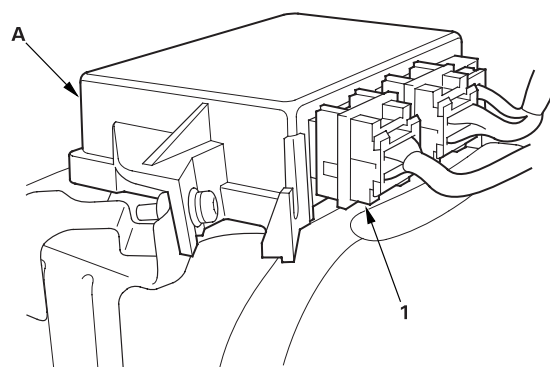
15. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.



16. Disconnect the D1o connector (1), P1o connector (2), and TR1i connector (3).

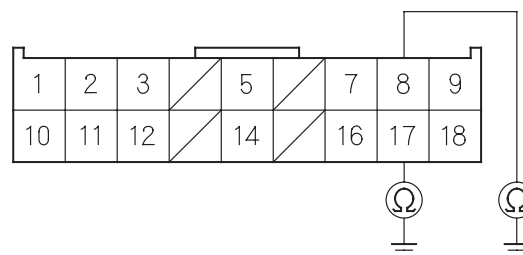


17. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



18. Disconnect the special tool from the T2i connector.
19. Check resistance between the No. 8 terminal of U1o connector and body ground, and between the No. 17 terminal and body ground. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

U1o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminal

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Short to ground in dashboard wire harness B; replace dashboard wire harness B.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 21-1: Open in Left Side Seat Belt Buckle Tensioner

### DTC 21-2: Increased Resistance in Left Side Seat Belt Buckle Tensioner

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

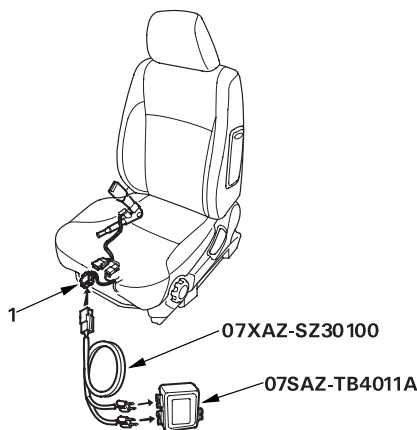
1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TBLo connector from the TBLi connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) to the TBLi connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.

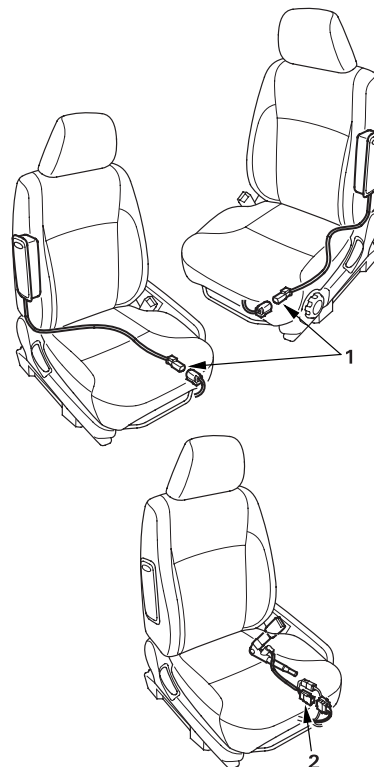
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 21-1 or DTC 21-2 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

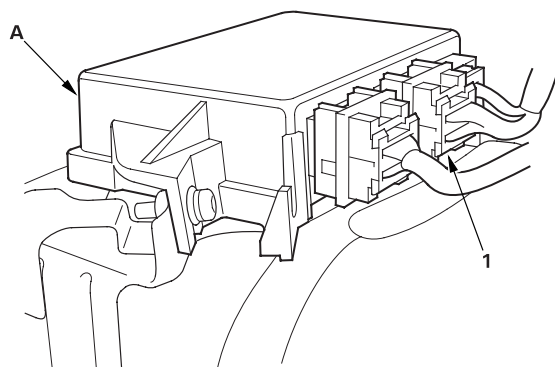
**No** Open or increased resistance in the left side seat belt buckle tensioner; replace the left side seat belt buckle.■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the SDo and SPo connectors (1) and the TBRO connector (2).



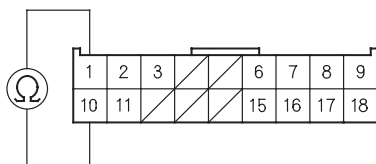


11. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



12. Check resistance between the No. 1 and No. 10 terminals of the U2o connector. There should be 2.0 - 3.0  $\Omega$ .

U2o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit or poor contact at U2o connector and at the SRS unit. Check the connection between the connector and the SRS unit. If the connection is OK, replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144).■

**No** Open or increased resistance in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

### DTC 21-3: Short to Another Wire or Decreased Resistance in Left Side Seat Belt Buckle Tensioner

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

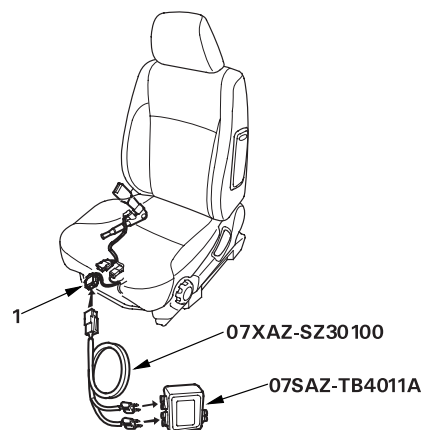
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TBLi connector from the TBLi connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2  $\Omega$  connectors) to the TBLi connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

8. Read the DTC.

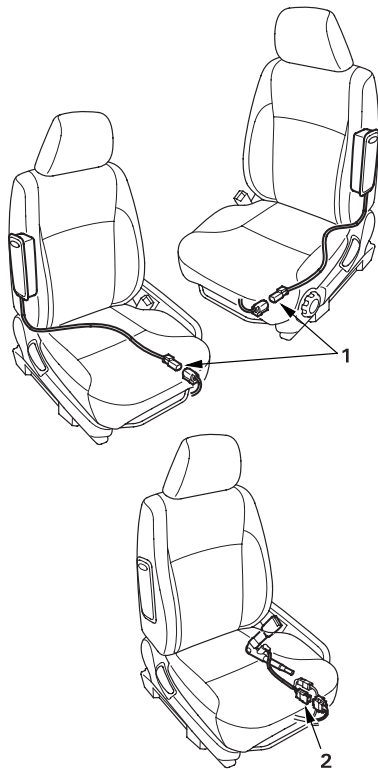
*Is DTC 21-3 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

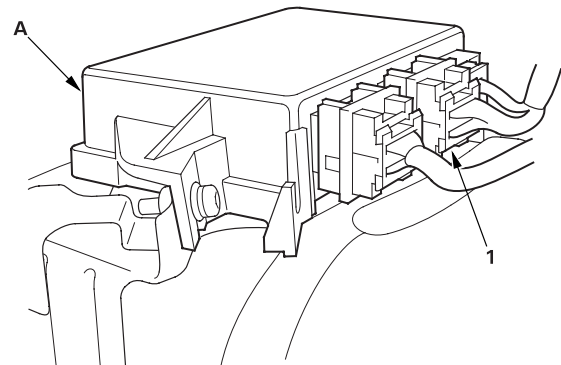
**No** Open or increased resistance in the left side seat belt buckle tensioner; replace the left side seat belt buckle.■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.

10. Disconnect the SDo and SPo connectors (1) and the TBRo connector (2).



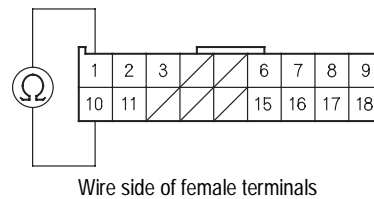
11. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



12. Disconnect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) from the TBLi connecto.

13. Check resistance between the No. 1 and No. 10 terminals of the U2o connector. There should be 2.0 - 3.0 Ω.

U2o CONNECTOR



*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit or poor contact at U2o connector and at the SRS unit. Check the connection between the connector and the SRS unit. If the connection is OK, replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Open or increased resistance in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■



### DTC 21-4: Short to Power in Left Side Seat Belt Buckle Tensioner

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

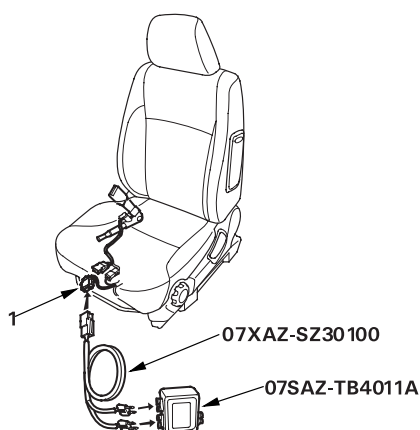
1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TBLi connector from the TBLi connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) to the TBLi connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.

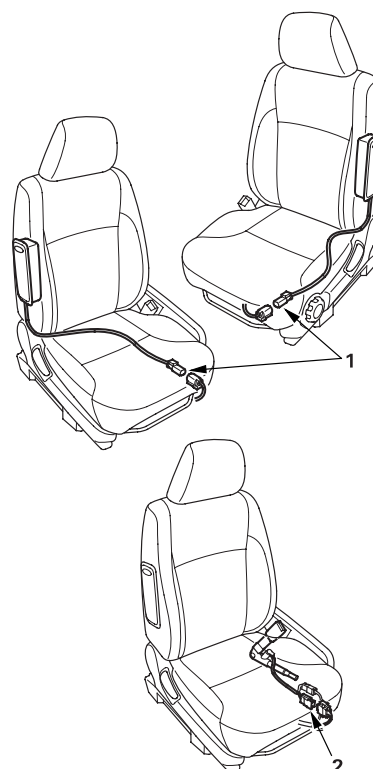
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 3-9 or 21-4 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short to power in the left side seat belt buckle tensioner; replace the left side seat belt buckle.■

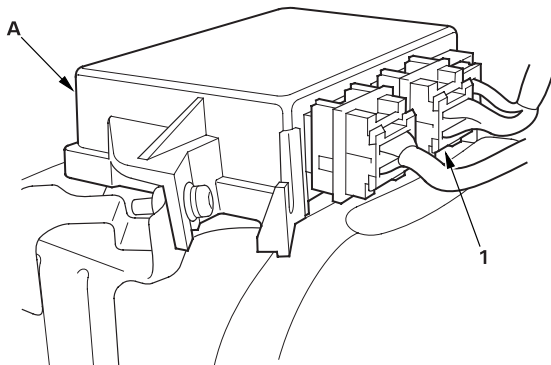
9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the SDo and SPo connectors (1) and the TBRO connector (2).



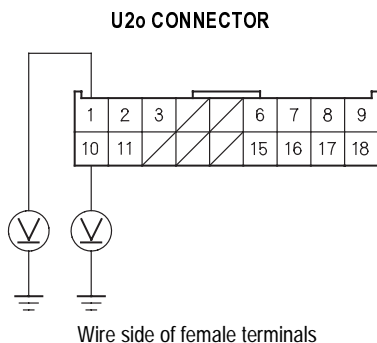
(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

11. Disconnect the U2o connector (A) from the SRS unit (A).



12. Disconnect the special tool (2  $\Omega$  connectors) from the TBLi connector.
13. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
14. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
15. Check for voltage between the No. 1 terminal of the U2o connector and body ground, and between the No. 10 terminal and body ground. There should be 0.5 V or less.



*Is the voltage as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144).■

**No** Short to power in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

## DTC 21-5: Short to Ground in Left Side Seat Belt Buckle Tensioner

### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

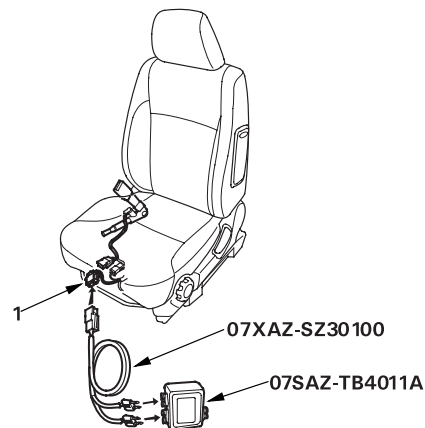
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator light comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator light stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TBLo connector from the TBLi connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2  $\Omega$  connectors) to the TBLi connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.





8. Read the DTC.

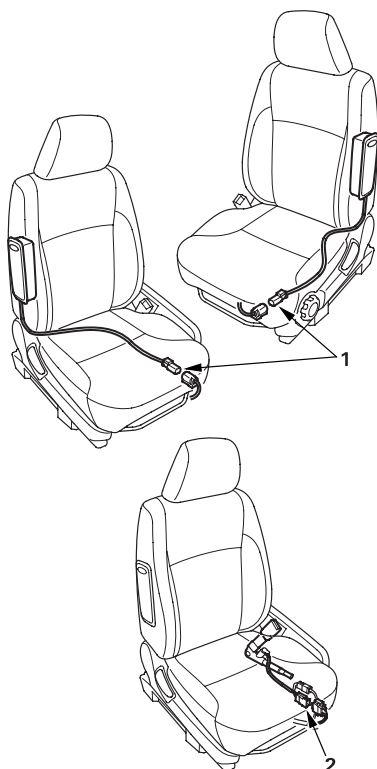
*Is DTC 21-5 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

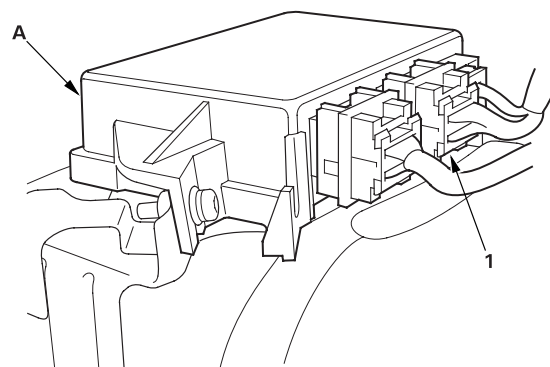
**No** Short to ground in the left side seat belt buckle tensioner; replace the left side seat belt buckle.■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.

10. Disconnect the SDo and SPo connectors (1) and the TBRo connector (2).



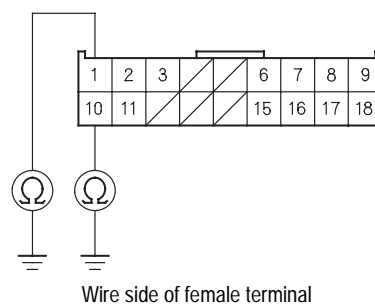
11. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



12. Disconnect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) from the TBLi connector.

13. Check resistance between the No. 1 terminal of the U2o connector and body ground. and between the No. 10 terminal and body ground. There should be 1 M Ω or more.

U2o CONNECTOR



*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Short to ground in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 4-1: Open in Right Side Seat Belt Tensioner

### DTC 4-2: Increase Resistance in Right Side Seat Belt Tensioner

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

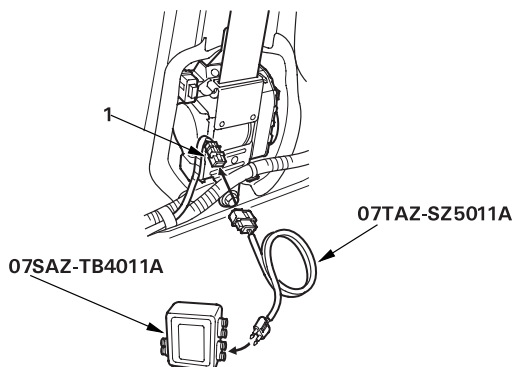
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TR1o connector from the TR1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the TR1i connector.

6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.

7. Erase the DTC memory.

8. Read the DTC.

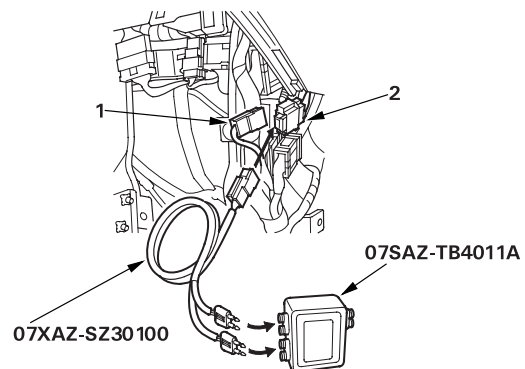
*Is DTC 4-1 or DTC 4-2 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Open or increased resistance in the right side seat belt tensioner; replace the right side seat belt (see page 23-4).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for three minutes.

10. Disconnect the T2o connector (1) from the T2i connector (2).



11. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) to the T2i connector.

12. Reconnect the battery negative cable.

13. Erase the DTC memory.

14. Read the DTC.

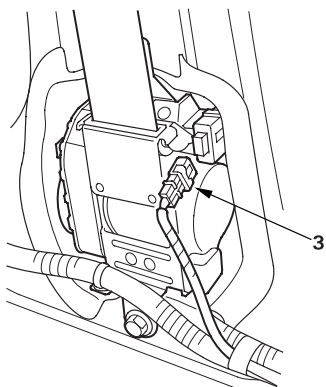
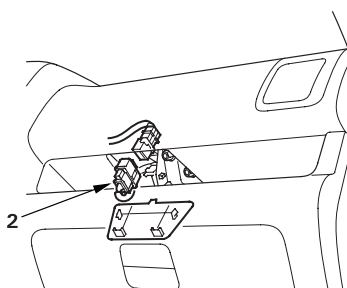
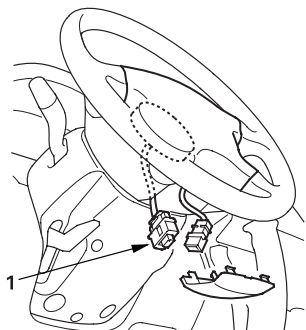
*Is DTC 4-1 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 15.

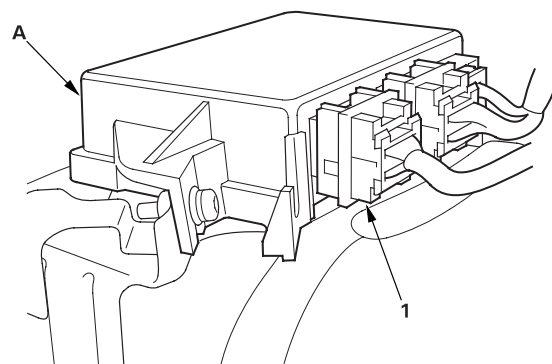
**No** Open or increased resistance in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■



15. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
16. Disconnect the D1o connector (1), P1o connector (2), and TL1i connector (3).

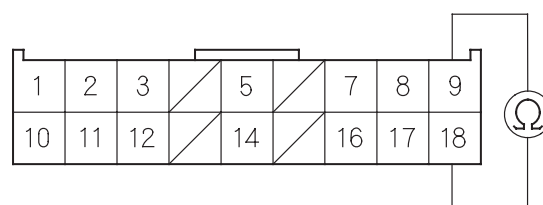


17. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



18. Check resistance between the No. 9 terminal and the No. 18 terminal of U1o connector. There should be 2.0 - 3.0  $\Omega$ .

U1o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit or poor contact at U1o connector and the SRS unit. Check the connection between connector and the SRS unit. If the connection is OK, replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Open or increased resistance in dashboard wire harness B; replace dashboard wire harness B.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 4-3: Short to Another Wire or Decreased Resistance in Right Side Seat Belt Tensioner

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

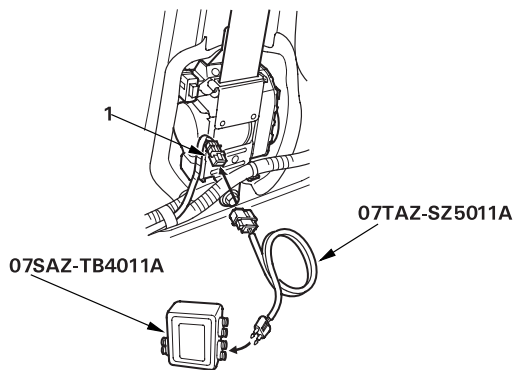
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TR1o connector from the TR1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the TR1i connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.

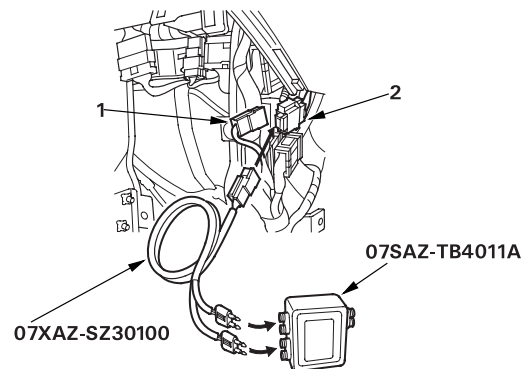
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 4-3 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short in the right side seat belt tensioner; replace the right side seat belt (see page 23-4).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the T2o connector (1) from the T2i connector (2).



11. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) to the T2i connector.

12. Reconnect the battery negative cable.

13. Erase the DTC memory.

14. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 4-3 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 15.

**No** Short in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

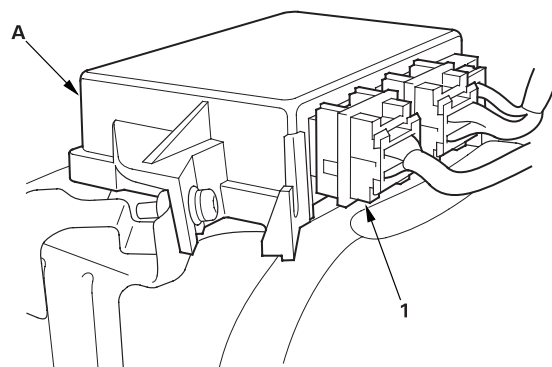
15. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.



16. Disconnect the D1o connector (1), P1o connector (2), and TL1i connector (3).



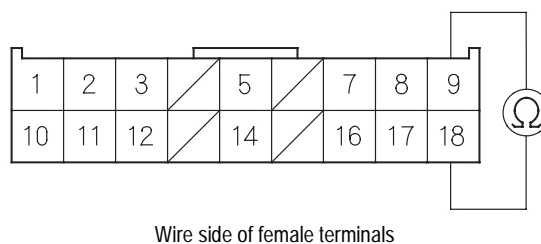
17. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



18. Disconnect the special tool from the T2i connector.

19. Check resistance between the No. 9 terminal and the No. 18 terminal of U1o connector. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

U1o CONNECTOR



*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Short in dashboard wire harness B; replace dashboard wire harness B.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 4-4: Short to Power in Right Side Seat Belt Tensioner

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

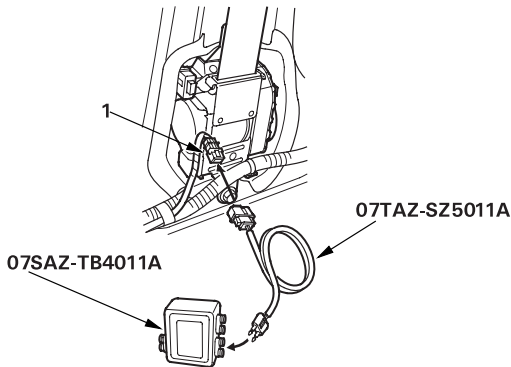
1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TR1o connector from the TR1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the TR1i connector.

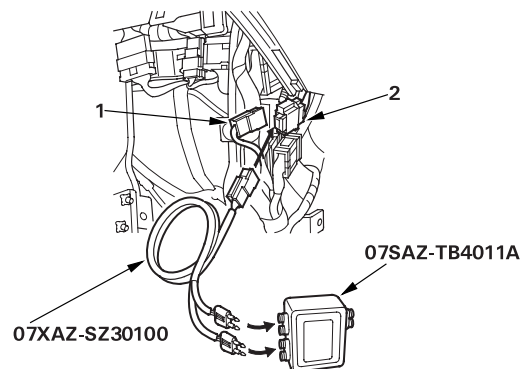
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 4-4 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short to power in the right side seat belt tensioner; replace the right side seat belt ([see page 23-4](#)).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the T2o connector (1) from the T2i connector (2).



11. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) to the T2i connector.
12. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
13. Erase the DTC memory.
14. Read the DTC.

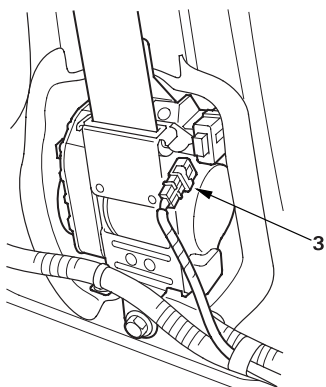
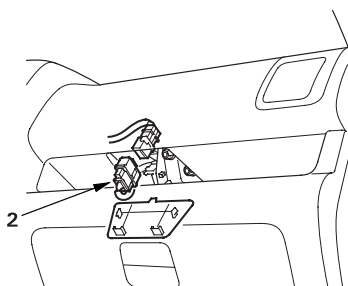
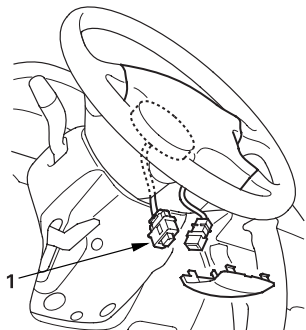
*Is DTC 4-4 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 15.

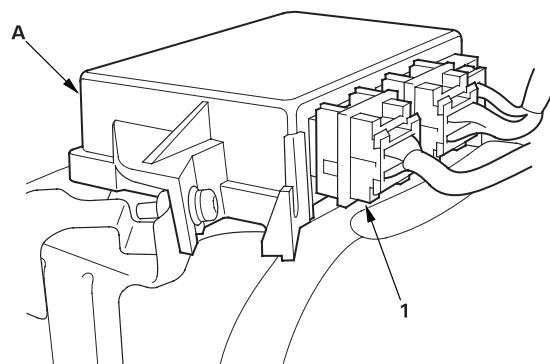
**No** Short to power in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■



15. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
16. Disconnect the D1o connector (1), P1o connector (2), and TL1i connector (3).

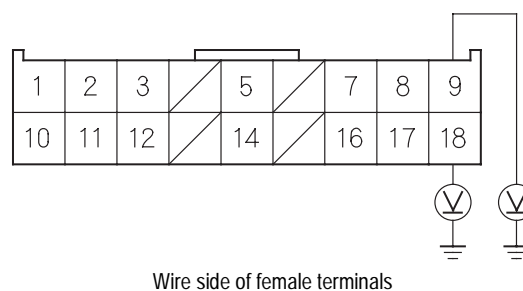


17. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



18. Disconnect the special tool from the T2i connector.
19. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
20. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
21. Check for voltage between the No. 9 terminal of U1o connector and body ground, and between the No. 18 terminal and body ground. There should be 0.5 V or less.

U1o CONNECTOR



*Is the voltage as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Short to power in dashboard wire harness B; replace dashboard wire harness B.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 4-5: Short to Ground in Right Side Seat Belt Tensioner

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead C 07TAZ-SZ5011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

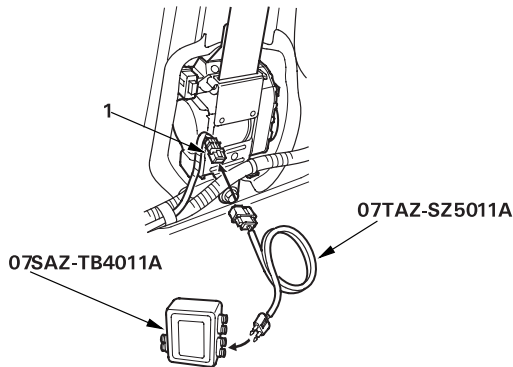
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TR1o connector from the TR1i connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the TR1i connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.

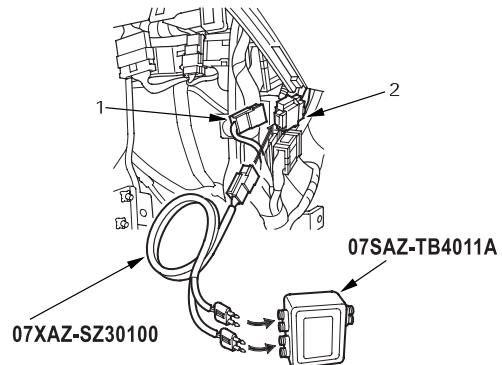
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 4-5 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short to ground in the right side seat belt tensioner; replace the right side seat belt (see page 23-4).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the T2o connector (1) from the T2i connector (2).



11. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) to the T2i connector.
12. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
13. Erase the DTC memory.

14. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 4-5 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 15.

**No** Short to ground in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

15. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.

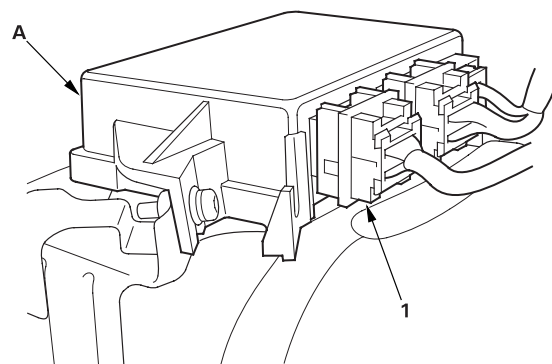




16. Disconnect the D1o connector (1), P1o connector (2), and TL1i connector (3).

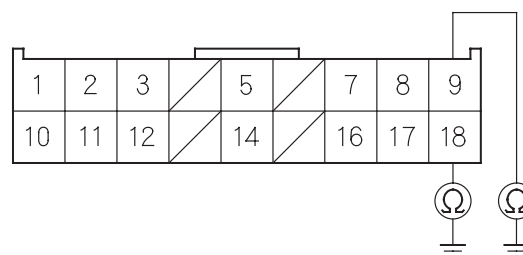


17. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



18. Disconnect the special tool (2 Ω) from the T2i connector.
19. Check resistance between the No. 9 terminal of U1o connector and body ground, and between the No. 18 terminal and body ground. There should be 1 M Ω or more.

U1o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Short to ground in dashboard wire harness B; replace dashboard wire harness B.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 22-1: Open in Right Side Seat Belt Buckle Tensioner

### DTC 22-2: Increased Resistance in Right Side Seat Belt Buckle Tensioner

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

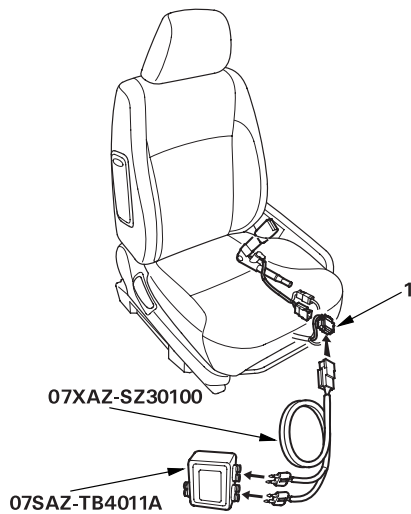
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TBRo connector from the TBRi connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) to the TBRi connector.

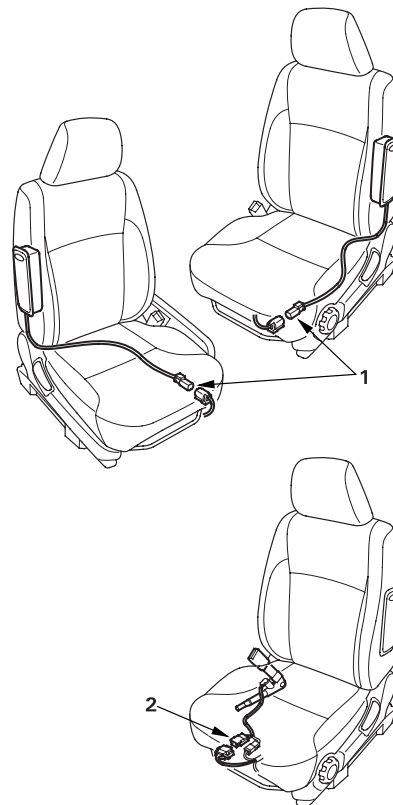
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 22-1 or DTC 22-2 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

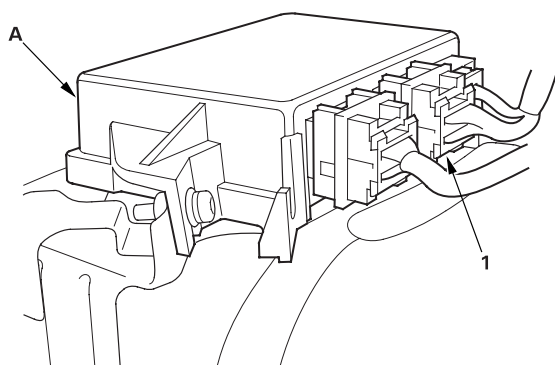
**No** Open or increased resistance in the right side seat belt buckle tensioner; replace the right side seat belt buckle.■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the SDo and SPo connectors (1) and the TBLo connector (2).



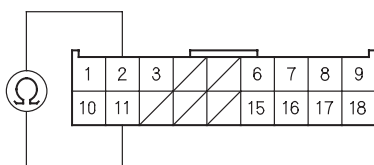


11. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



12. Check resistance between the No. 2 and No. 11 terminals of the U2o connector. There should be 2.0 - 3.0  $\Omega$ .

U2o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit or poor contact at U2o connector and at the SRS unit. Check the connection between connector and the SRS unit. If the connection is OK, replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144).■

**No** Open or increased resistance in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

### DTC 22-3: Short to Another Wire or Decreased Resistance in Right Side Seat Belt Buckle Tensioner

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

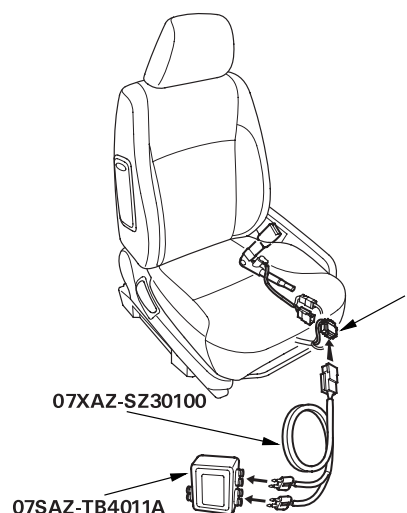
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TBRO connector from the TBRI connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2  $\Omega$  connectors) to the TBRI connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

8. Read the DTC.

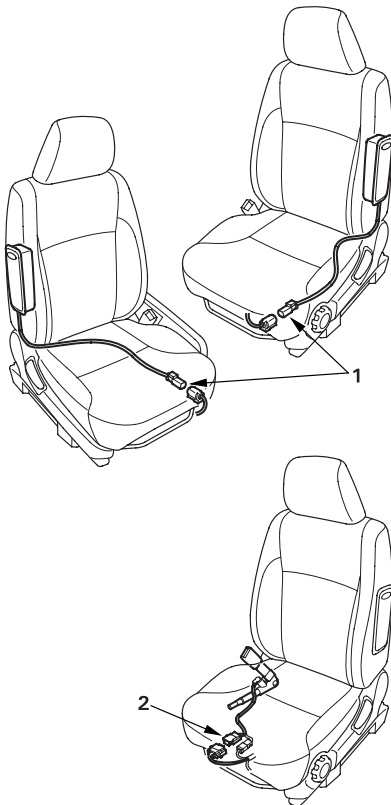
*Is DTC 22-3 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

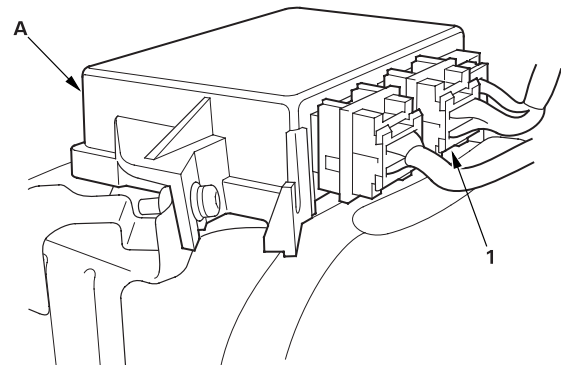
**No** Short in the light side seat belt buckle tensioner; replace the light side seat belt buckle.■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.

10. Disconnect the SDo and SPo connectors (1) and the TBLo connector (2).



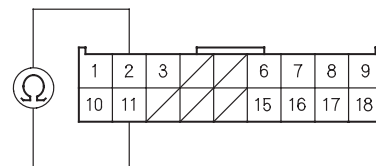
11. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



12. Disconnect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) from the TBRe connector.

13. Check resistance between the No. 2 and No. 11 terminals of the U2o connector. There should be 1 M Ω or more.

U2o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminal

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Short in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■



### DTC 22-4: Short to Power in Right Side Seat Belt Buckle Tensioner

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

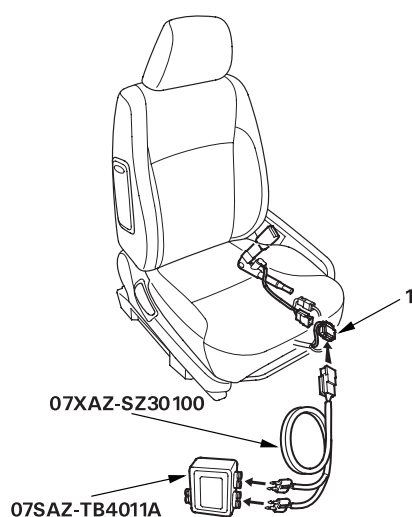
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TBRo connector from the TBRi connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) to the TBRi connector.

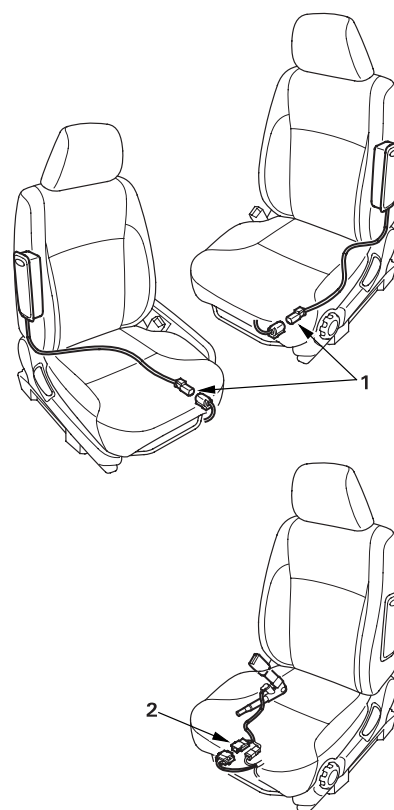
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 22-4 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short to power in the right side seat belt buckle tensioner; replace the right side seat belt buckle.■

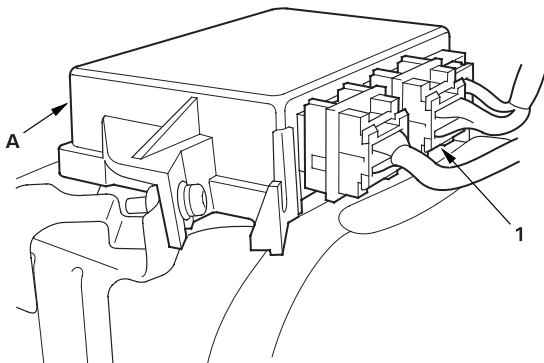
9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the SDo and SPo connectors (1) and the TBLo connector (2).



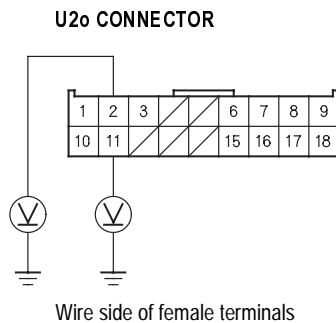
(cont'd)

## DTC TROUBLESHOOTING (cont'd)

11. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



12. Disconnect the special tool (2  $\Omega$  connectors) from the TBRI connector.
13. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
14. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
15. Check for voltage between the No. 2 terminal of the U2o connector and body ground, and between the No. 11 terminal and body ground. There should be 0.5 V or less.



*Is the voltage as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144).■

**No** Short to power in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

## DTC 22-5: Short to Ground in Right Side Seat Belt Buckle Tensioner

### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead F 07XAZ-SZ30100

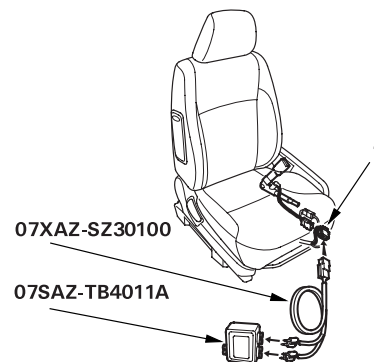
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator light stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the TBRO connector from the TBRI connector (1).



5. Connect the special tool (2  $\Omega$  connectors) to the TBRI connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.



8. Read the DTC.

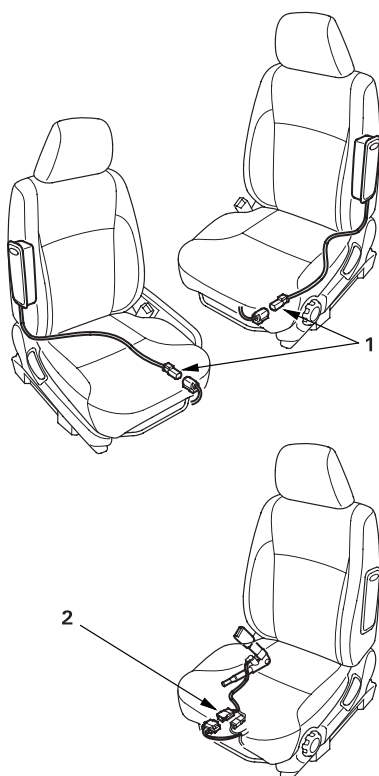
*Is DTC 22-5 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

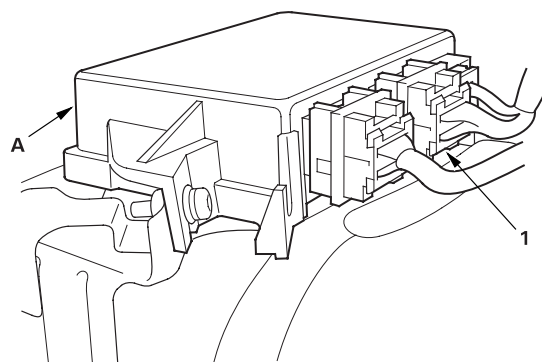
**No** Short to ground in the right side seat belt buckle tensioner; replace the right side seat belt buckle. ■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.

10. Disconnect the SDo and SPo connectors (1) and the TBLo connector (2).



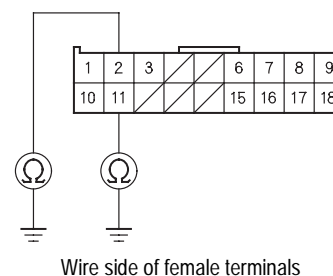
11. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



12. Disconnect the special tool (2 Ω connectors) from the floor wire harness 2P connector.

13. Check resistance between the No. 2 terminal of the U2o connector and body ground, and between the No. 11 terminal and body ground. There should be 1 M Ω or more.

U2o CONNECTOR



*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)). ■

**No** Short to ground in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness. ■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 5-1, 5-2, 5-4, 5-8, 6-3, 6-4, 6-7, 6-8, 7-1, 7-2, 7-3, 8-1, 8-2, 8-3, 8-4, 8-5, 8-6, 9-1, 9-2: Internal Failure of the SRS Unit

NOTE: Before troubleshooting any of these DTCs, check the battery/system voltage. If the voltage is low, repair the charging system before troubleshooting the SRS. If the battery/system voltage is now OK, ask the customer if the battery ever went dead.

1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

### DTC 10-1, 10-2, 10-3, 10-4, 10-5, 10-6, 10-7: Airbags, Side Airbags and/or Seat Belt Tensioners Deployed

The SRS unit must be replaced after any airbags have deployed ([see page 23-144](#)).■



**DTC 13-1, 13-2: Internal Failure of the Driver's Side Impact Sensor**

1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Replace the driver's side impact sensor ([see page 23-145](#)).■

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

**DTC 14-1, 14-2: Internal Failure of the Front Passenger's Side Impact Sensor**

1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Replace the front passenger's side impact sensor ([see page 23-145](#)).■

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 9-6: Faulty Left Front Sensor

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead H 07YAZ-S3A0100

1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

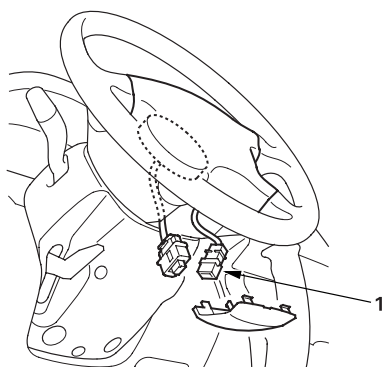
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Check the connections between U1o connector and the SRS unit, and between the engine compartment wire harness 2P connector and the left front sensor ([see page 23-147](#)).

*Are the connections OK?*

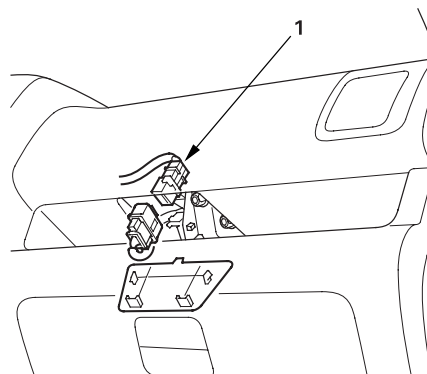
**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Repair the poor connections and retest. If DTC 9-6 still present, replace the left front sensor and retest. If the DTC is still preset, replace the SRS unit.■

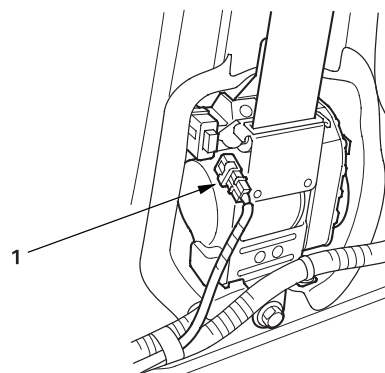
4. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
5. Disconnect the D1o connector from the D1i connector (1).



6. Disconnect the P1o connector from the P1i connector (1).

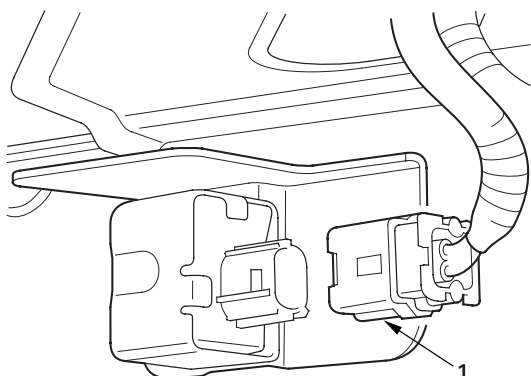


7. Disconnect the TL1o and TR1o connectors from the TL1i and TR1i connectors (1).

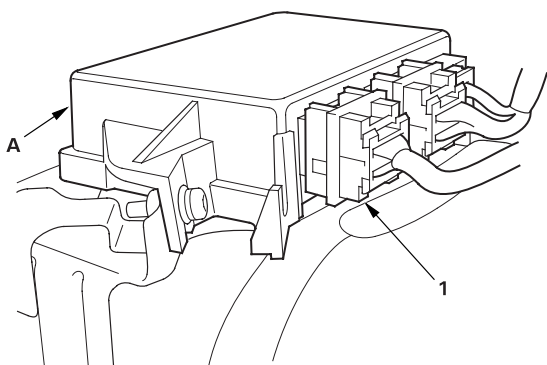




8. Disconnect the FSL1i connector (1) from the left front sensor.



9. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



10. Check resistance between the No. 10 and No. 11 terminals of U1o connector. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

U1o CONNECTOR

1	2	3		5		7	8	9
10	11	12		14		16	17	18



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Go to step 11.

**No** Short in the engine compartment wire harness or dashboard wire harness B; replace the faulty harness.■

11. Reconnect the battery negative cable.

12. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

13. Check the voltage between the No. 10 terminal of U1o connector and the body ground. There should be 1 V or less.

U1o CONNECTOR

1	2	3		5		7	8	9
10	11	12		14		16	17	18



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the voltage as specified?*

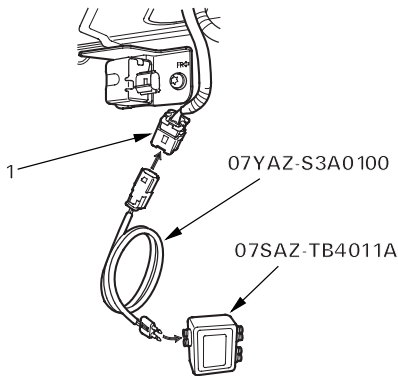
**Yes** Go to step 14.

**No** Short to power in the engine compartment wire harness or dashboard wire harness B; replace the faulty harness.■

(cont'd)

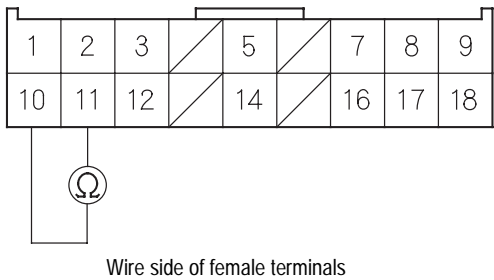
DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

- 14. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- 15. Connect the special tool (jumper connector) to the FSL1i connector (1).



- 16. Check resistance between the No. 10 and No. 11 terminals of U1o connector. There should be 1 Ω or less.

U1o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

Is the resistance as specified?

- Yes** Faulty left front sensor or SRS unit. Replace the left front sensor; if the problem is still present, replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144).■
- No** Faulty engine compartment wire harness or dashboard wire harness B; replace the faulty harness.■



### DTC 9-7: Faulty Right Front Sensor

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead H 07YAZ-S3A0100

1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

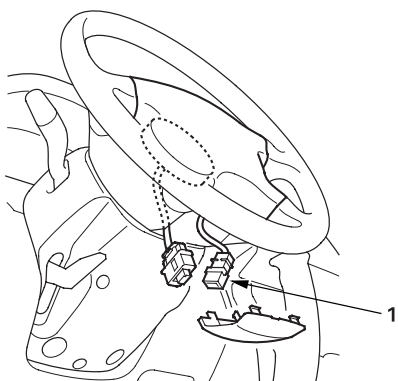
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Check the connections between the U1o connector and the SRS unit, and between the front sensor wire harness 2P connector and the right front sensor ([see page 23-147](#)).

*Are the connections OK?*

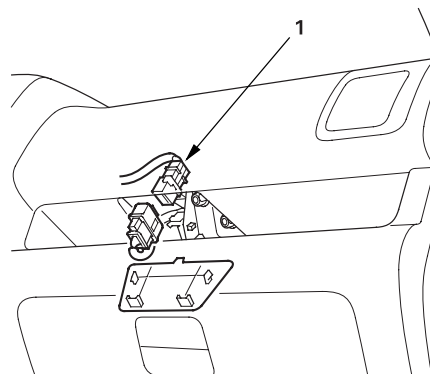
**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Repair the poor connections and retest. If DTC 9-7 still present, replace the right front sensor and retest. If the DTC is still present, replace the SRS unit.■

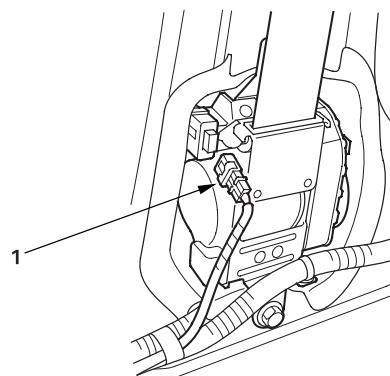
4. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
5. Disconnect the D1o connector from the D1i connector (1).



6. Disconnect the P1o connector from the P1i connector (1).



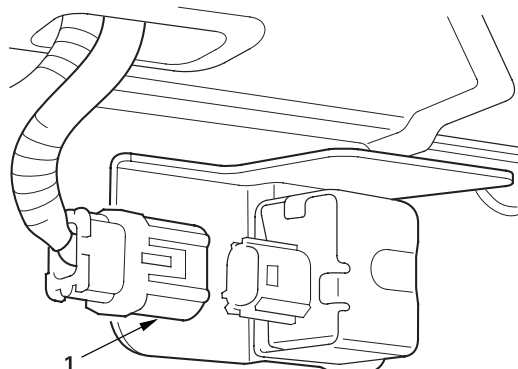
7. Disconnect the TL1o and TR1o connectors from the TL1i and TR1i connectors (1).



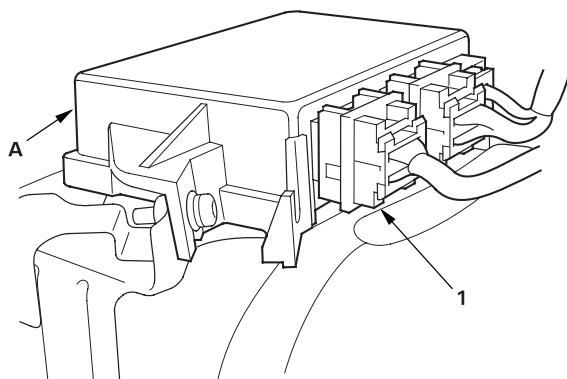
(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

8. Disconnect the FSR1i connector (1) from the right front sensor.

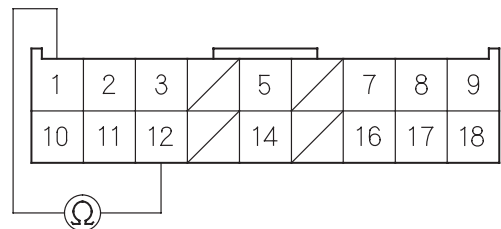


9. Disconnect the U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



10. Check resistance between the No. 1 and No. 12 terminals of U1o connector. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

U1o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Go to step 11.

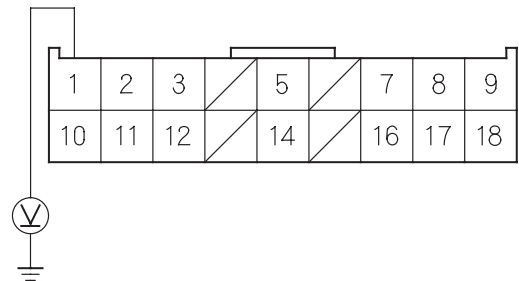
**No** Short in the engine compartment wire harness or dashboard wire harness B; replace the faulty harness.■

11. Reconnect the battery negative cable.

12. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

13. Check the voltage between the No. 1 terminal of U1o connector and body ground. There should be 1 V or less.

U1o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

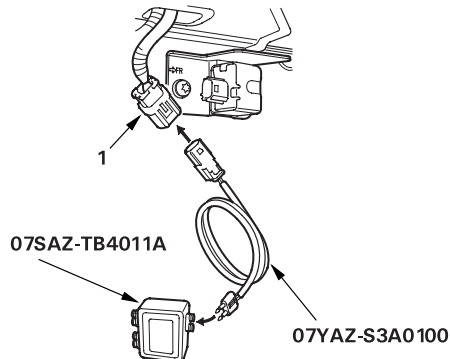
*Is the voltage as specified?*

**Yes** Go to step 14.

**No** Short to power in the engine compartment wire harness or the dashboard wire harness B; replace the faulty harness.■

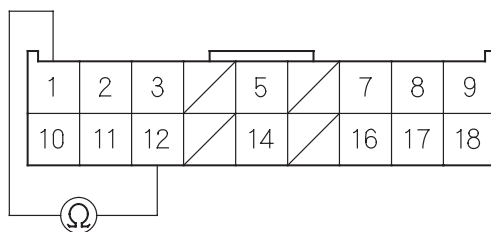


14. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
15. Connect the special tool (jumper connector) to the FSR1i connector (1).



16. Check resistance between the No. 1 and No. 12 terminals of U1o connector. There should be 1  $\Omega$  or less.

U1o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

- Yes** Faulty right front sensor or SRS unit. Replace the right front sensor; if the problem is still present, replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■
- No** Faulty engine compartment wire harness or dashboard wire harness B; replace the faulty harness.■

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

**DTC 11-1: Open or Increased Resistance in Driver's Side Airbag Inflator ((With OPDS unit model)**

**DTC 12-1: Open or Increased Resistance in Right Side Airbag Inflator (Without OPDS unit model)**

### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead E 07XAZ-S1A0200

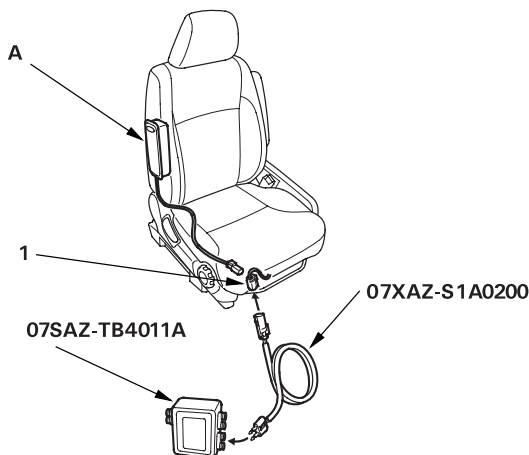
1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the SDi connector (1) from the driver's (right) side airbag (A).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the SDi connector.

6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.

7. Erase the DTC memory.

8. Read the DTC.

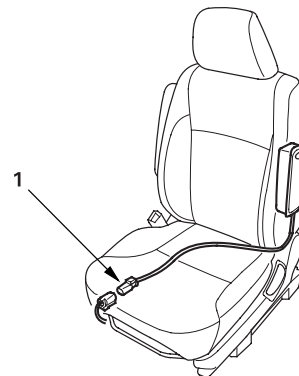
*Is DTC 11-1 or DTC 12-1 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Open or increased resistance in the driver's (right) side airbag inflator; replace the driver's (right) side airbag ([see page 23-137](#)).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.

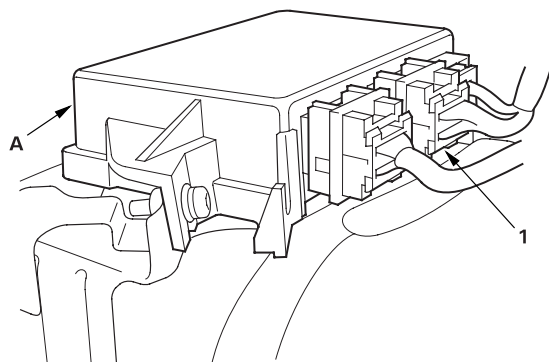
10. Disconnect the SPo connector (1).





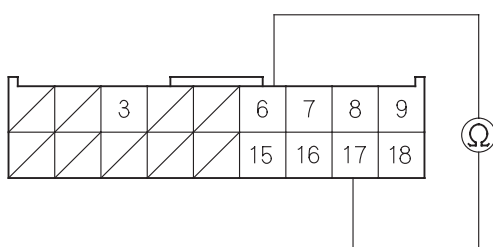


11. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A). Do not disconnect the special tool from the SDi connector.



12. Check resistance between the No. 6 and No. 17 terminals of U2o connector. There should be 2.0 - 3.0  $\Omega$ .

U2o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit or poor contact at U2o connector and the SRS unit; check the connection at the connector and SRS unit. If the connector is OK, replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144).■

**No** Open or increased resistance in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

**DTC 11-3: Short to Another Wire or Decreased Resistance in Driver's Side Airbag Inflator (With OPDS unit model)**

**DTC 12-3: Short to Another Wire or Decreased Resistance in Right Side Airbag Inflator (Without OPDS unit model)**

**Special Tools Required**

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead E 07XAZ-S1A0200

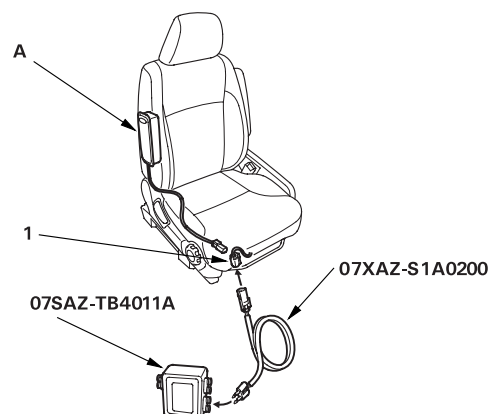
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the SDi connector (1) from the driver's (right) side airbag (A).



5. Connect the special tool (2  $\Omega$  connector) to the SDi connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

8. Read the DTC.

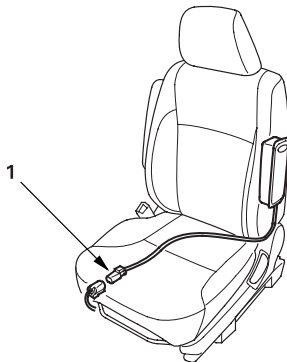
*Is DTC 11-3 or DTC 12-3 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short to another wire in the driver's (right) side airbag inflator; replace the driver's (right) side airbag.■

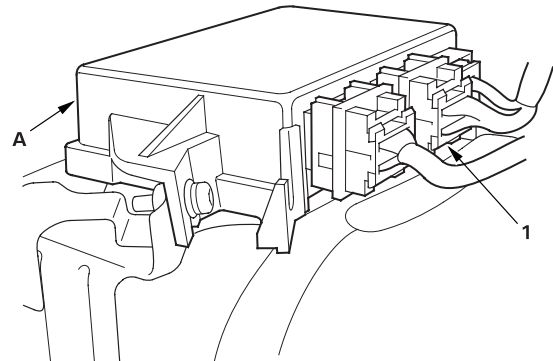
9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.

10. Disconnect the SPo connector (1).



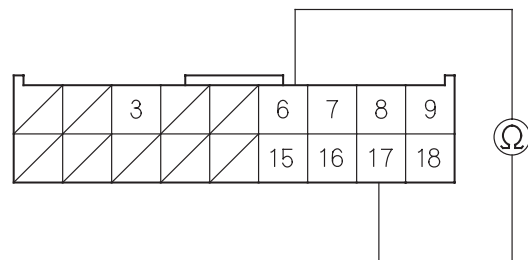
11. Disconnect the special tool from the SDi connector.

12. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



13. Check resistance between the No. 6 and No. 17 terminals of U2o connector. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

U2o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Short to another wire in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■



#### DTC 11-4: Short to Power in Driver's Side Airbag Inflator (With OPDS unit model)

#### DTC 12-4: Short to Power in Right Side Airbag Inflator (Without OPDS unit model)

##### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead E 07XAZ-S1A0200

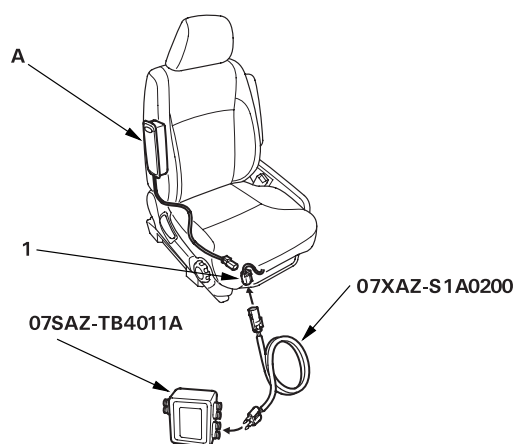
1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the SDi connector (1) from the driver's right side airbag (A).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the SDi connector.

6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.

7. Erase the DTC memory.

8. Read the DTC.

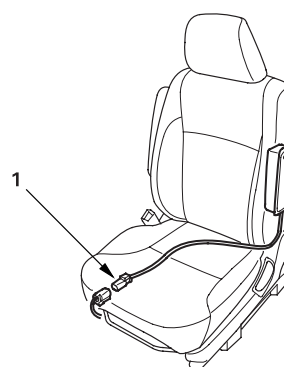
*Is DTC 11-4 or DTC 12-4 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short to power in the driver's (right) side airbag inflator; replace the driver's (right) side airbag ([see page 23-137](#)).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.■

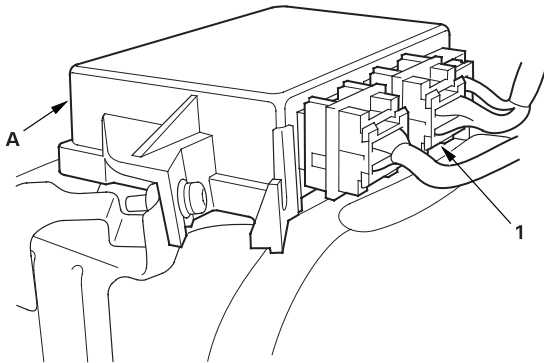
10. Disconnect the SPo connector (1).



(cont'd)

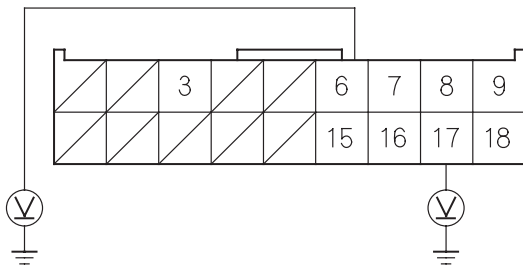
## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

11. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



12. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
13. Check for voltage between the No. 6 terminal of U2o connector and body ground, and between the No. 17 terminal and body ground. There should be 0.5 V or less.

U2o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminal

Is the voltage as specified?

- Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144).■
- No** Short to power in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

### DTC 11-5: Short to Ground in Driver's Side Airbag Inflator (With OPDS unit model)

### DTC 12-5: Short to Ground in Right Side Airbag Inflator (Without OPDS unit model)

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead E 07XAZ-S1A0200

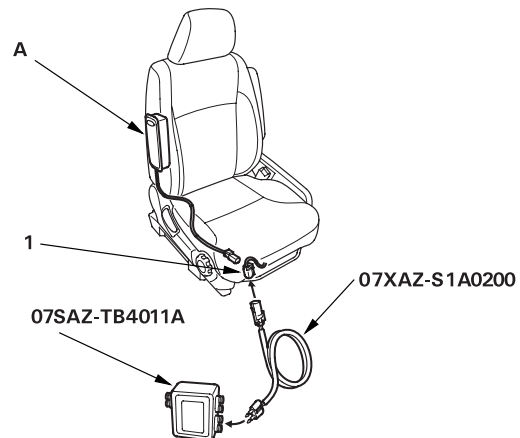
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

Does the SRS indicator stay on?

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the SDi connector (1) from the driver's (right) side airbag (A).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the SDi connector.



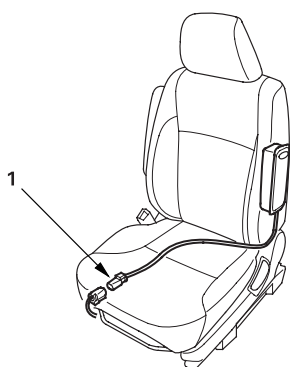
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 11-5 or DTC 12-5 indicated?*

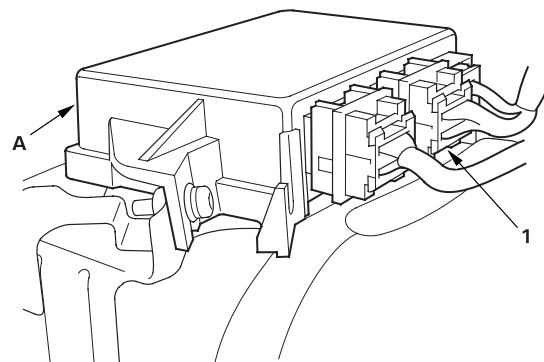
**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short to ground in the driver's side airbag inflator; replace the driver's side airbag (see [page 23-137](#)).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the SPo connector (1).

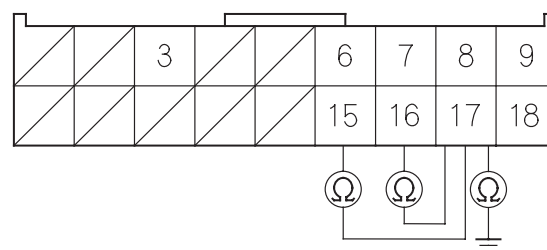


11. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



12. Check resistance between the No. 17 and No. 15 terminals of U2o connector, and between the No. 17 and No. 16 terminals. Then check resistance between the No. 17 terminal and body ground. There should be 1 MΩ or more.

U2o CONNECTOR



*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit (see [page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Short to ground in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

**DTC 12-1: Open or Increased Resistance in Front Passenger's Side Airbag Inflator(With OPDS unit model)**

**DTC 11-1: Open or Increased Resistance in Left Side Airbag Inflator(Without OPDS unit model)**

### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead E 07XAZ-S1A0200

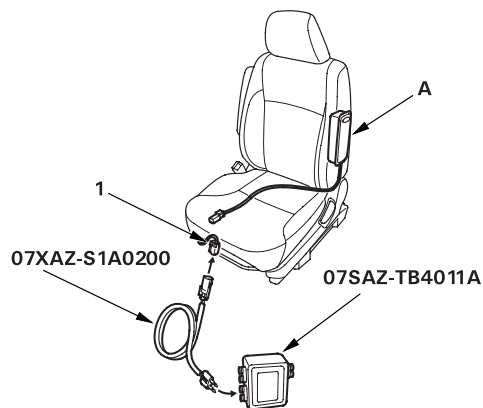
1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the SPi connector (1) from the front passenger's (left) side airbag (A).



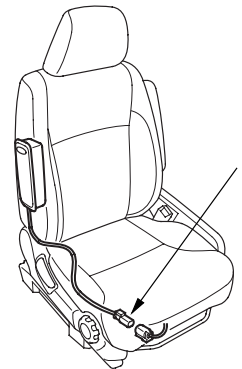
5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the SPi connector.
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 12-1 or DTC 11-1 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

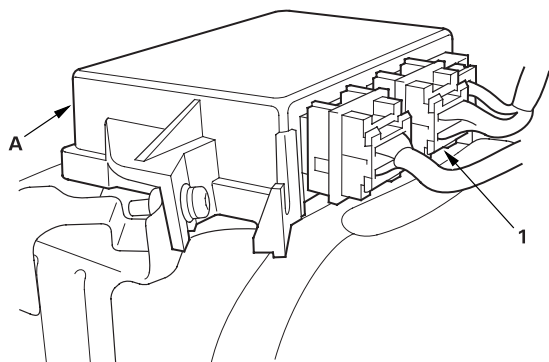
**No** Open or increased resistance in the front passenger's (left) side airbag inflator, replace the front passenger's (left) side airbag ([see page 23-137](#)).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the SDo connector (1).



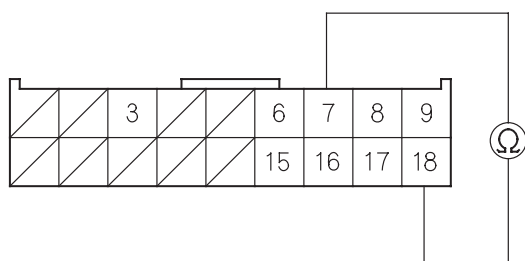


11. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A). Do not disconnect the special tool from the SPi connector.



12. Check resistance between the No. 7 and No. 18 terminals of U2o connector. There should be 2.0 - 3.0  $\Omega$ .

U2o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit or poor contact at U2o connector and the SRS unit; check the connection at the connector and SRS unit. If the connector is OK, replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144).■

**No** Open or increased resistance in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

### DTC 12-3: Short to Another Wire or Decreased Resistance in Front Passenger's Side Airbag Inflator (With OPDS unit model)

### DTC 11-3: Short to Another Wire or Decreased Resistance in Left Side Airbag Inflator (Without OPDS unit model)

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead E 07XAZ-S1A0200

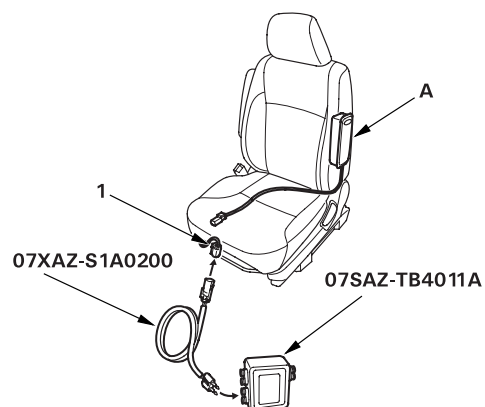
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the SPi connector (1) from the front passenger's (left) side airbag (A).



5. Connect the special tool (2  $\Omega$  connector) to the SPi connector.

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

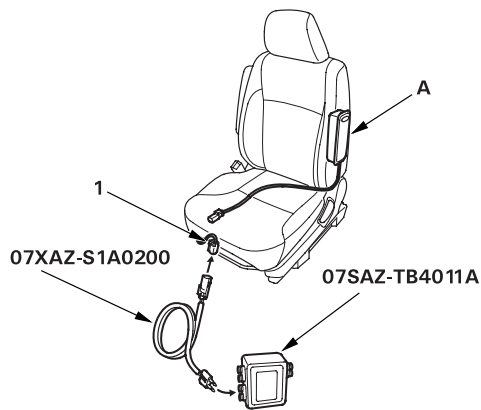
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 12-3 or DTC 11-3 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9

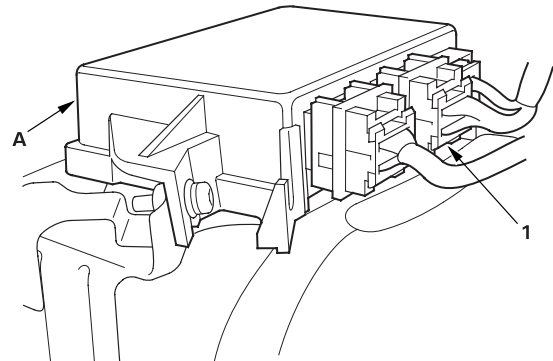
**No** Short to another wire in the front passenger's (left) side airbag inflator; replace the front passenger's (left) side airbag.■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the SDo connector (1).



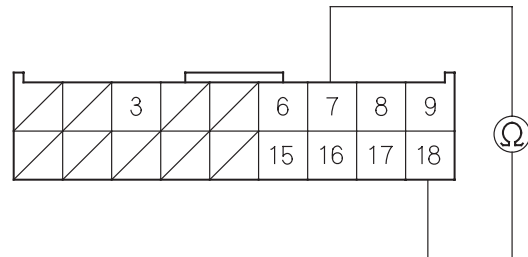
11. Disconnect the special tool from the SPi connector.

12. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



13. Check resistance between the No. 7 and No. 18 terminals of U2o connector. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

U2o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Short to another wire in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■





### DTC 12-4: Short to Power in Front Passenger's Side Airbag Inflator (With OPDS unit model)

### DTC 11-4: Short to Power in Left Side Airbag Inflator (Without OPDS unit model)

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead E 07XAZ-S1A0200

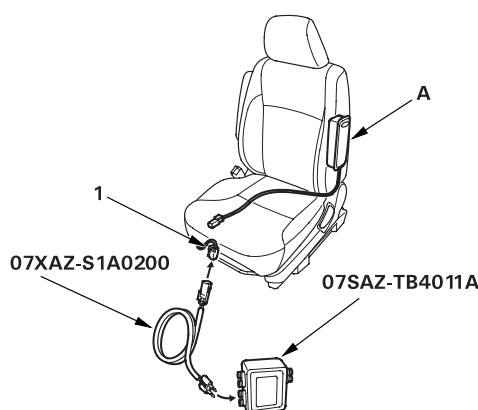
1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the SPi connector (1) from the front passenger's (left) side airbag (A).



5. Connect the special tool (2  $\Omega$  connector) to the SPi connector.

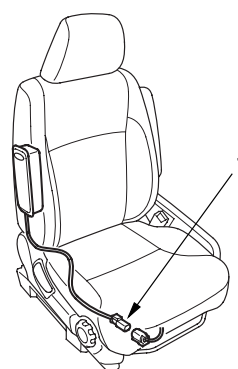
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 12-4 or DTC 11-4 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short to power in the front passenger's (left) side airbag inflator; replace the front passenger's (left) side airbag ([see page 23-137](#)).■

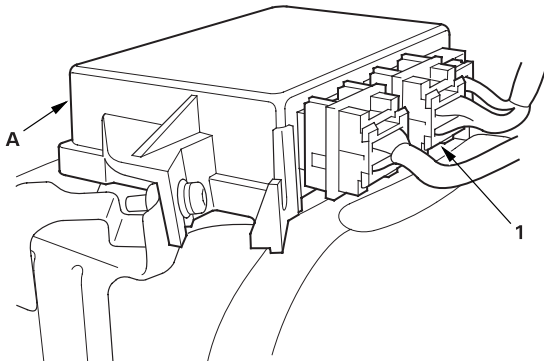
9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the SDo connector (1).



(cont'd)

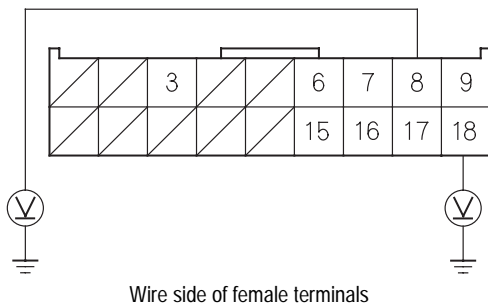
## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

11. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



12. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
13. Check for voltage between the No. 8 terminal of U2o connector and body ground, and between the No. 18 terminal and body ground. There should be 0.5 V or less.

U2o CONNECTOR



Is the voltage as specified?

- Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144).■
- No** Short to power in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

### DTC 12-5: Short to Ground in Front Passenger's Side Airbag Inflator (With OPDS unit model)

### DTC 11-5: Short to Ground in Left Side Airbag Inflator (Without OPDS unit model)

#### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead E 07XAZ-S1A0200

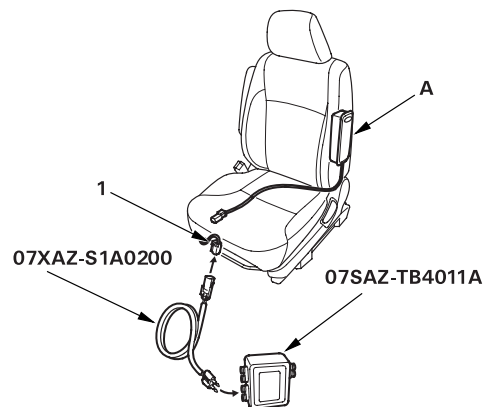
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

Does the SRS indicator stay on?

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the SPi connector (1) from the front passenger's (left) side airbag (A).



5. Connect the special tool (2 Ω connector) to the SPi connector.



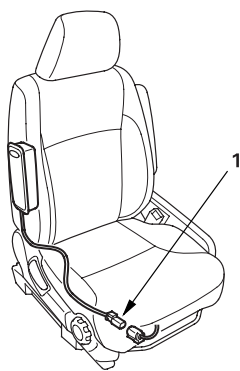
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Erase the DTC memory.
8. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 12-5 or DTC 11-5 indicated?*

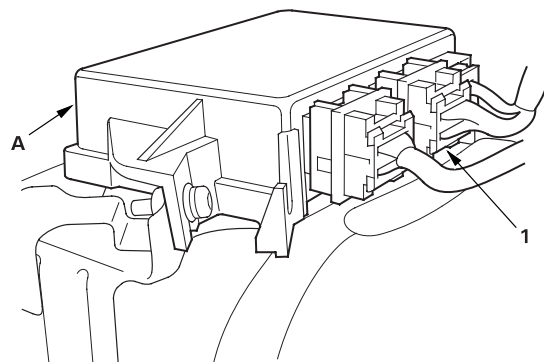
**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Short to ground in the front passenger's (left) side airbag inflator; replace the front passenger's (left) side airbag ([see page 23-137](#)).■

9. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
10. Disconnect the SDo connector (1).

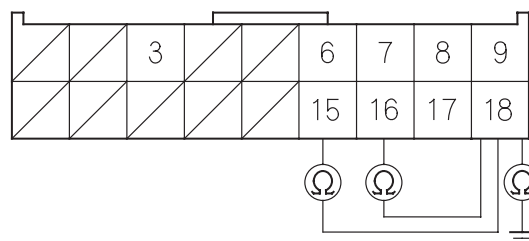


11. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



12. Check resistance between the No. 15 and No. 18 terminals of U2o connector and between the No. 16 and No. 18 terminals. Then check resistance between the No. 18 terminal and body ground. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

U2o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminal

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Short to ground in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

**DTC 13-3: No Signal from the Driver's Side Impact Sensor (With OPDS unit model)**

**DTC 14-3: No Signal from the Right Side Impact Sensor (Without OPDS unit model)**

### Special Tools Required

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead H 07YAZ-S3A0100

1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time.  
Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

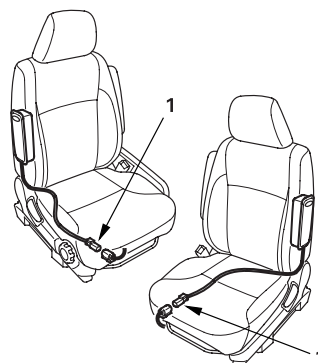
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Check the connection between the IDi connector and the driver's (right) side impact sensor.

*Is the connection OK?*

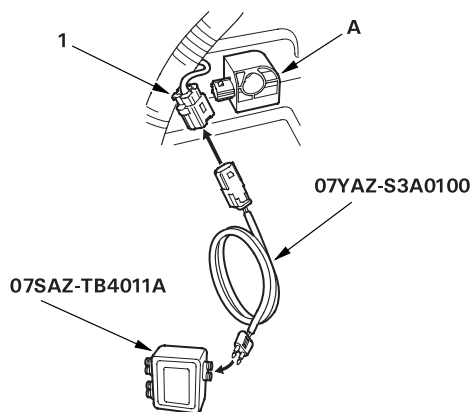
**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Replace the driver's (right) side impact sensor ([see page 23-145](#)). ■

5. Disconnect the SDo and SPo connectors (1).

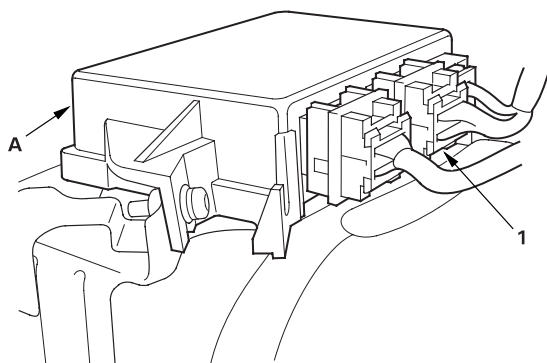


6. Disconnect the IDi connector (1) from the driver's (right) side impact sensor (A).



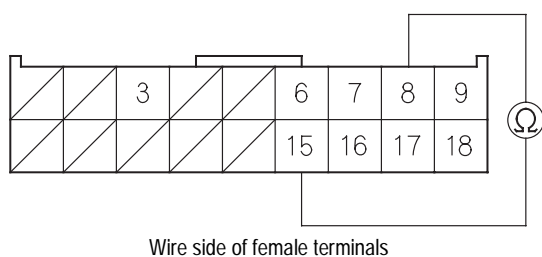


7. Connect the special tool (jumper connector) to the IDi connector.
8. Disconnect U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



9. Check resistance between the No. 8 and No. 15 terminals of U2o connector. There should be 0 - 1.0  $\Omega$ .

U2o CONNECTOR



*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty driver's (right) side impact sensor or SRS unit; replace the driver's (right) side impact sensor (see page 23-147). If the problem is still present, replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144).■

**No** Open in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

#### DTC 13-4: Faulty Power Supply to the Driver's Side Impact Sensor (With OPDS unit model)

#### DTC 14-4: Faulty Power Supply to the Right Side Impact Sensor (Without OPDS unit model)

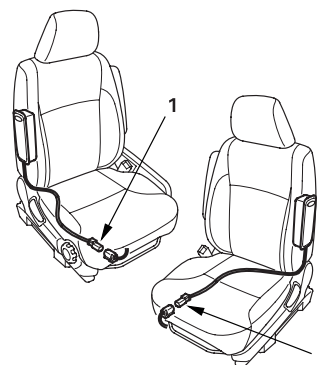
1. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

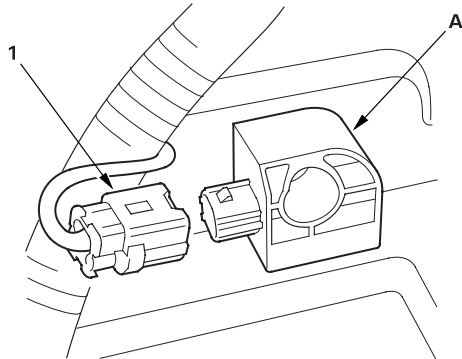
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the SDo and SPo connectors (1).



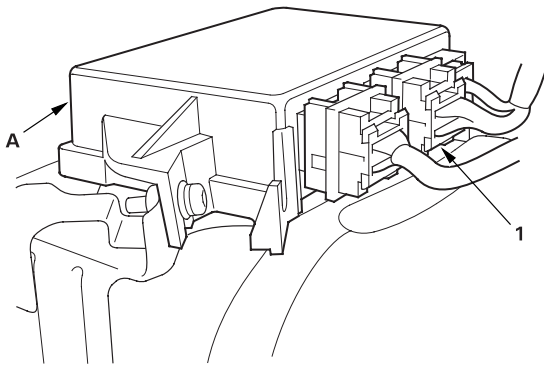
(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

5. Disconnect the IDi connector (1) from the driver's side impact sensor (A).

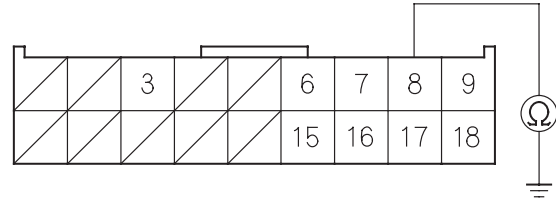


6. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



7. Check resistance between the No. 8 terminal of U2o connector and body ground. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

U2o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

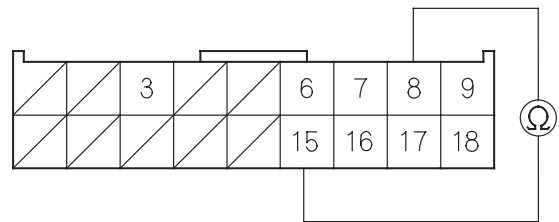
*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Short to ground in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

8. Check resistance between the No. 8 and No. 15 terminals of U2o connector. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

U2o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty driver's (right) side impact sensor or SRS unit; replace the driver's (right) side impact sensor ([see page 23-147](#)). If the problem is still present, replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Short in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■



**DTC 14-3: No Signal from the Front Passenger's Side Impact Sensor (With OPDS unit model)**

**DTC 13-3: No Signal from the Left Side Impact Sensor (Without OPDS unit model)**

**Special Tools Required**

- SRS inflator simulator 07SAZ-TB4011A
- SRS simulator lead H 07YAZ-S3A0100

1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

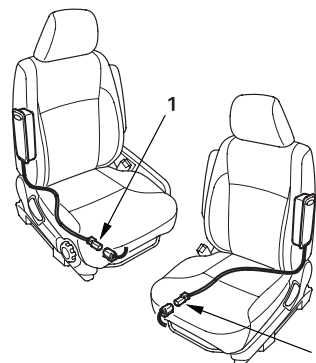
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Check the connection between the IPI connector and the front passenger's (left) side impact sensor.

*Is the connection OK?*

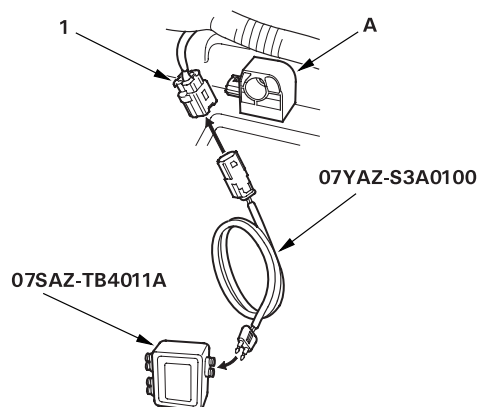
**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Poor contact between the floor wire harness 2P connector and the front passenger's (left) side impact sensor; replace the front passenger's (left) side impact sensor ([see page 23-145](#)).■

5. Disconnect the SDo and SPo connectors (1).



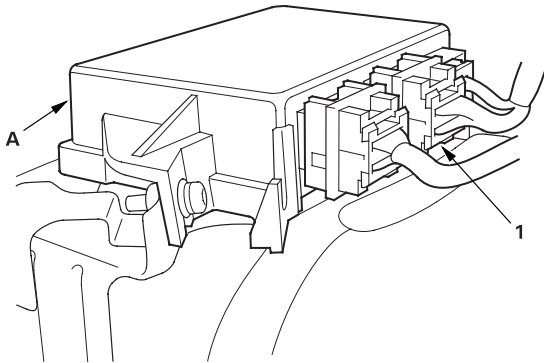
6. Disconnect the IPI connector (1) from the front passenger's (left) side impact sensor (A).



(cont'd)

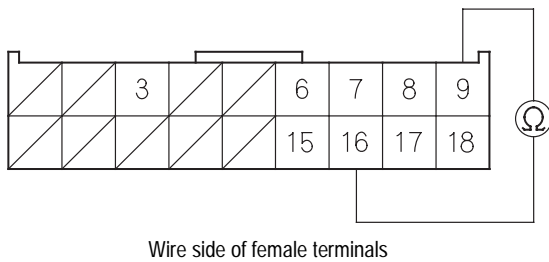
## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

7. Connect the special tool (jumper connector) to the IPi connector.
8. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



9. Check resistance between the No. 9 and No. 16 terminals of U2o connector. There should be 0 - 1.0  $\Omega$ .

U2o CONNECTOR



*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty front passenger's (left) side impact sensor or SRS unit; replace the front passenger's (left) side impact sensor ([see page 23-147](#)). If the problem is still present, replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Open in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

### DTC 14-4: Faulty Power Supply to the Front Passenger's Side Impact Sensor (With OPDS unit model)

### DTC 13-4: Faulty Power Supply to the Left Side Impact Sensor (Without OPDS unit model)

1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).
2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures ([see page 23-29](#)).

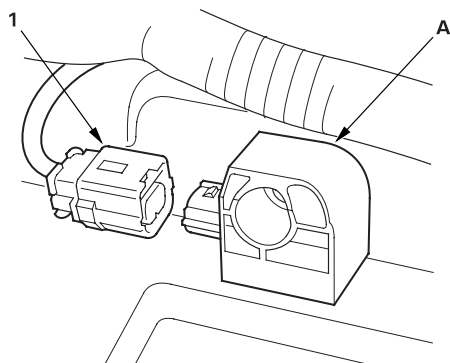
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.
4. Disconnect the SDo and SPo connectors (1).



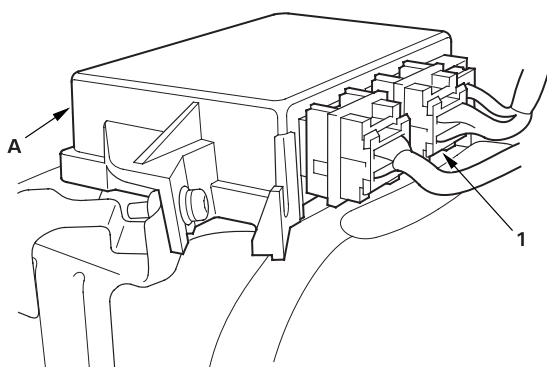




5. Disconnect the IPi connector (1) from the front passenger's (left) side impact sensor (A).

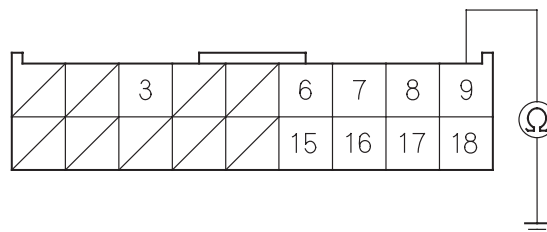


6. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



7. Check resistance between the No. 9 terminal of U2o connector and body ground. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

U2o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

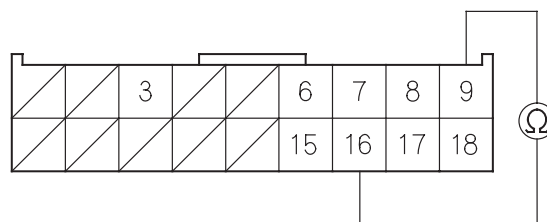
*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Short to ground in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

8. Check resistance between the No. 9 and No. 16 terminals of U2o connector. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

U2o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty front passenger's (left) side impact sensor or SRS unit; replace the front passenger's (left) side impact sensor ([see page 23-145](#)). If the problem is still present, replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Short in the floor wire harness; replace the floor wire harness.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 15-1: Faulty OPDS Unit

1. Make sure nothing is on the front passenger's seat.
2. Initialize the OPDS unit (see page 23-30).
3. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
4. Read the DTC.

*Is DTC 15-1 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time.  
Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures  
(see page 23-29).

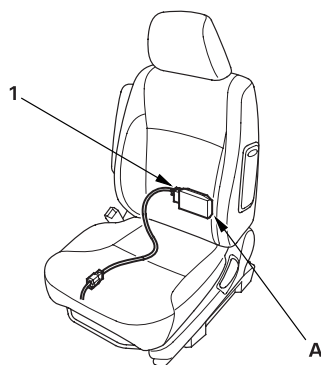
5. Check the No. 9 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Go to step 9.

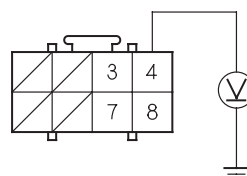
6. Disconnect the O1o connector (1) from the OPDS unit (A) (see page 23-146).



7. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

8. Check for voltage between the No. 4 terminal of the O1o connector and body ground. There should be battery voltage.

O1o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 16.

**No** Open in the floor wire harness or in the OPDS unit harness; replace the faulty harness.■

9. Replace the No. 9 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.
10. Turn the ignition switch ON (II) for 30 seconds, then turn it OFF.
11. Check the No. 9 (7.5A) fuse in under-dash fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse OK?*

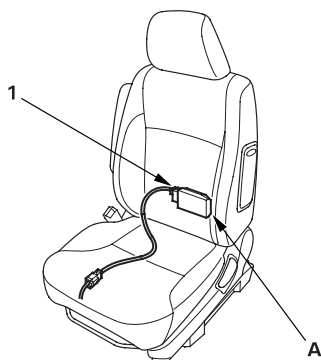
**Yes** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time.  
Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures  
(see page 23-29).

**No** Go to step 12.

12. Replace the No. 9 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.



13. Disconnect the O1o connector (1) from the OPDS unit (A).



14. Turn the ignition switch ON (II) for 30 seconds, then turn it off.

15. Check the No. 9 (7.5 A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse OK?*

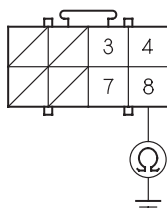
**Yes** Short to ground in the OPDS unit; replace the OPDS unit ([see page 23-146](#)).■

**No** Short to ground in the No. 9 (7.5 A) circuit.■

16. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

17. Check resistance between the No. 8 terminal of the O1o connector and body ground. There should be 0 - 1.0  $\Omega$ .

O1o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

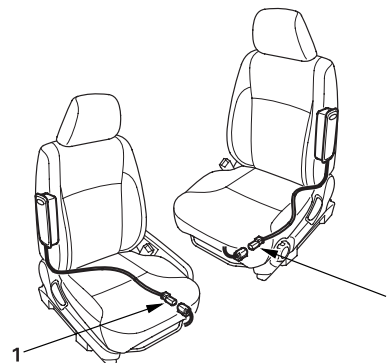
*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Go to step 18.

**No** Open in floor wire harness or OPDS unit harness, or poor ground (G551). If the G551 is OK, replace the faulty harness.■

18. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.

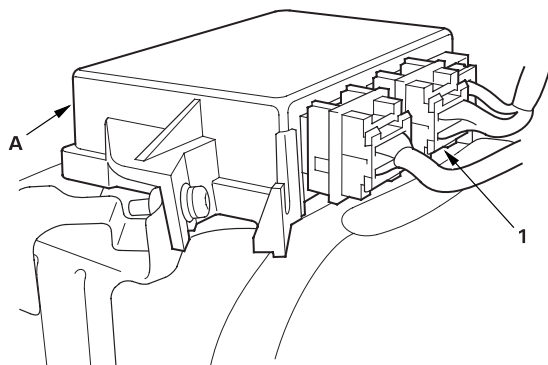
19. Disconnect the SDo and SPo connectors (1).



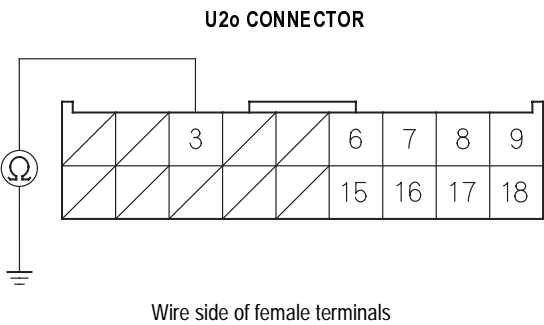
(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

20. Disconnect the U2o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



21. Check resistance between the No. 3 terminal of U2o connector and body ground. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

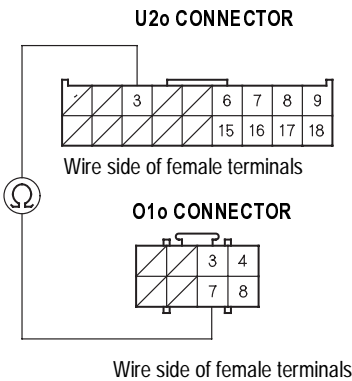


*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Go to step 22.

**No** Short to ground in the floor wire harness or OPDS unit harness; replace the faulty harness.■

22. Check resistance between the No. 3 terminal of U2o connector and the No. 7 terminal of the O1o connector. There should be 0 - 1.0  $\Omega$ .



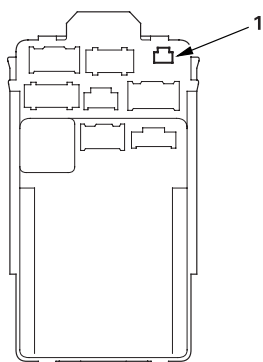
*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Go to step 23.

**No** Open in the floor wire harness or in the OPDS unit harness; replace the faulty harness.■



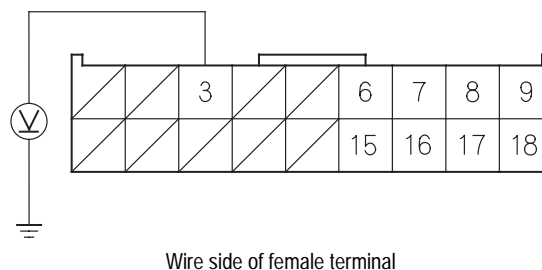
23. Disconnect the F1o connector (1) from the under-dash fuse/relay box.



24. Reconnect the negative battery cable.  
25. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

26. Check for voltage between the No. 3 terminal of U2o connector and body ground. There should be 0.5 V or less.

U2o CONNECTOR



*Is the voltage as specified?*

**Yes** Go to step 27.

**No** Short to power in the floor wire harness or in the OPDS unit harness; replace the faulty harness.■

27. Replace the OPDS unit ([see page 23-146](#)), then initialize the system ([see page 23-29](#)).

28. Erase the DTC memory, then check for DTC 15-1.

*Is DTC 15-1 indicated?*

**Yes** Replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** The system is OK.■

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### DTC 15-2: Faulty Side Airbag Cutoff Indicator Circuit

1. Make sure nothing is on the front passenger's seat.
2. Erase the DTC memory (see page 23-29).
3. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the SRS indicator stay on?*

**Yes** Turn the ignition switch OFF, go to step 4.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Go to Troubleshooting Intermittent Failures (see page 23-29).

4. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check that the side airbag cutoff indicator comes on.

*Does the side airbag cutoff indicator come on?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Go to step 6.

5. Make sure the side airbag cutoff indicator comes on for 5 seconds and then goes off.

*Does the side airbag cutoff indicator go off?*

**Yes** Faulty OPDS unit or SRS unit; replace the OPDS unit (see page 23-146). If the problem is still present, replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144).■

**No** Go to step 35.

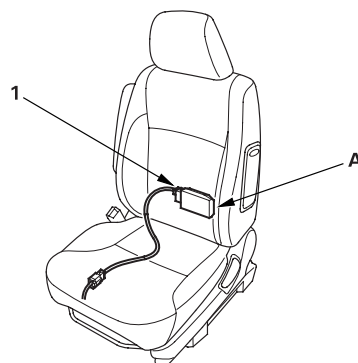
6. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
7. Check the No. 10 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

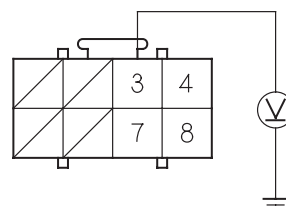
**No** Repair the short to ground in the No. 10 (7.5A) fuse circuit.■

8. Disconnect the O1o connector (1) from the OPDS unit (A) (see page 23-146).



9. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
10. Check for voltage between the No. 3 terminal of the O1o connector and body ground. There should be battery voltage.

O1o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

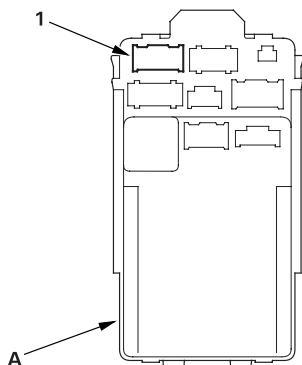
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 11.

**No** Go to step 23.

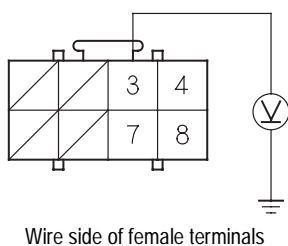


11. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
12. Disconnect the F3o connector (1) from the under-dash fuse/relay box (A).



13. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
14. Check for voltage between the No. 3 terminal of the O1o connector and body ground. There should be 0.5 V or less.

O1o CONNECTOR

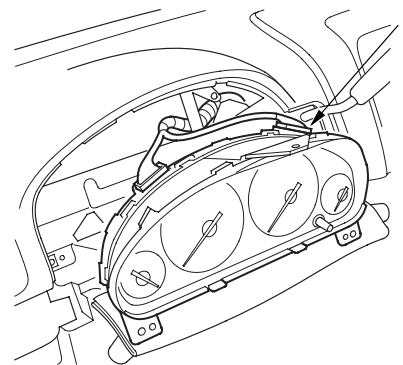


*Is the voltage as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty OPDS unit; replace the OPDS unit (see page 23-146). ■

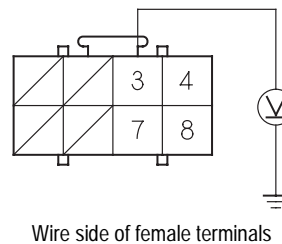
**No** Go to step 15.

15. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
16. Disconnect C2 connector (1) from the gauge assembly (see page 22A-74).



17. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
18. Check for voltage between the No. 3 terminal of the O1o connector and body ground. There should be 0.5 V or less.

O1o CONNECTOR



*Is the voltage as specified?*

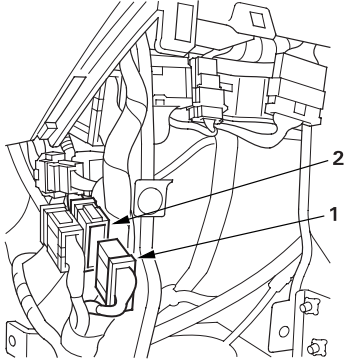
**Yes** Short to power in the gauge assembly; replace the gauge assembly. ■

**No** Go to step 19.

(cont'd)

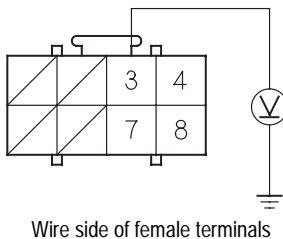
## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

19. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
20. Disconnect the C4 connector (1) from the C3 connector (2).



21. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
22. Check for voltage between the No. 3 terminal of the O1o connector and body ground. There should be 0.5 V or less.

O1o CONNECTOR

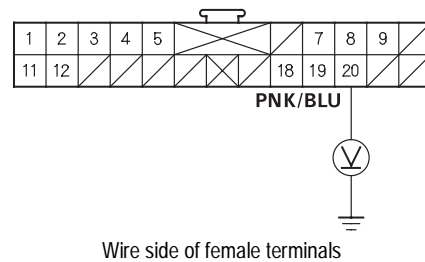


*Is the voltage as specified?*

- Yes** Short to power in the dashboard wire harness A; replace the dashboard wire harness A.■
- No** Short to power in the floor wire harness or in the OPDS unit harness; if the OPDS unit harness is OK, replace the floor wire harness.■

23. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
24. Backprobe the No. 8 terminal of C2 connector. Do not disconnect C2 connector from the gauge assembly (see page 22A-74).
25. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
26. Check for voltage between the No. 20 terminal of C2 connector B and body ground. There should be battery voltage.

C2 CONNECTOR

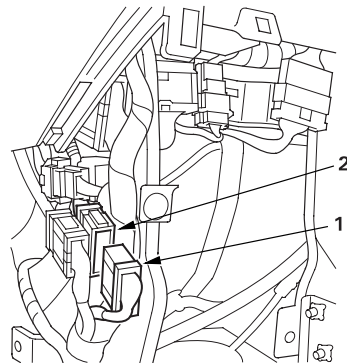


*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 27.

**No** Go to step 31.

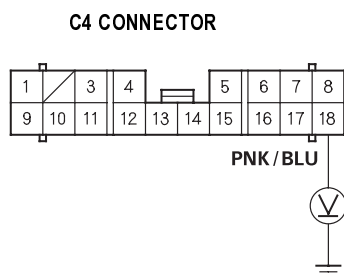
27. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
28. Disconnect the C4 connector (1) from the C3 connector (2).







29. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
30. Check for voltage between the No. 18 terminal of the C4 connector and body ground. There should be battery voltage.

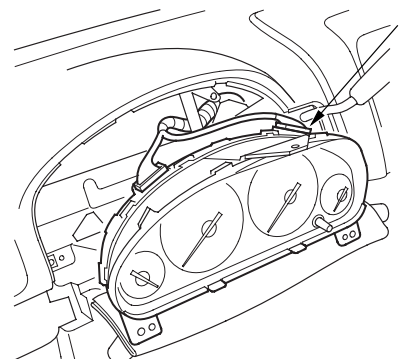


Wire side of female terminals

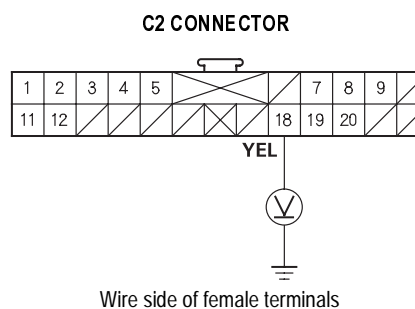
*Is there battery voltage?*

- Yes** Poor contact at the C4 and C3 connectors or an open in floor wire harness or in the OPDS unit harness. Check the connection between the C4 and C3 connectors; if the connection is OK, replace the faulty harness.■
- No** Poor contact at gauge assembly connector B (18P) or an open in dashboard wire harness A. Check C2 connector; if the connections are OK, replace dashboard wire harness A.■

31. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
32. Disconnect C2 connector (1) from the gauge assembly.



33. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
34. Check for voltage between the No. 18 terminal of C2 connector and body ground. There should be battery voltage.



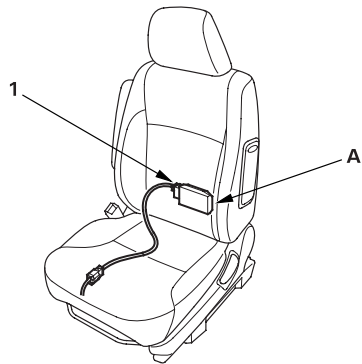
*Is there battery voltage?*

- Yes** Faulty side airbag cutoff indicator circuit; replace the gauge assembly.■
- No** Open in the dashboard wire harness; replace the dashboard wire harness.■

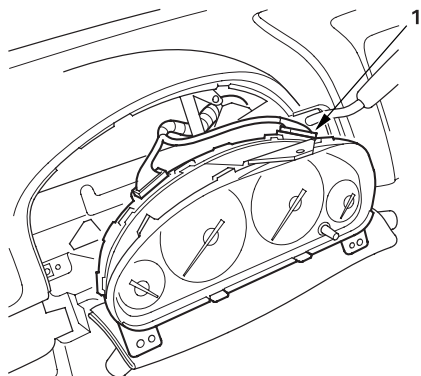
(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

- 35. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- 36. Disconnect the O1o connector (1) from the OPDS unit (A) (see page 23-146).

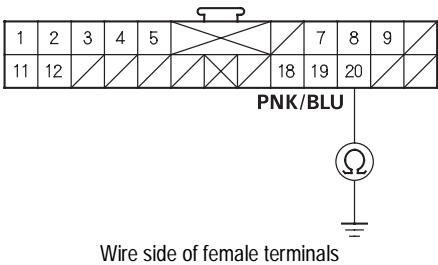


- 37. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).  
*Does the side airbag cutoff indicator come on?*  
**Yes** Go to step 38.  
**No** Faulty OPDS unit; replace the OPDS unit.■
- 38. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- 39. Disconnect C2 connector (1) from the gauge assembly (see page 22A-74).



- 40. Check resistance between the No. 20 terminal of C2 connector and body ground. There should 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

C2 CONNECTOR



- Is the resistance as specified?*
- Yes** Short to ground in the side airbag cutoff indicator circuit; replace the gauge assembly.■
  - No** Short to ground in the dashboard wire harness A, floor wire harness or OPDS unit harness; replace the faulty harness.■

**DTC 15-3: Faulty OPDS Sensor**

1. Erase the DTC memory ([see page 23-29](#)).

NOTE: Aftermarket devices (fluorescent map lights, laptop computers, etc.) Used near the front passenger's seat-back can interfere with the seat-back sensors and cause a false DTC 15-3. If one of these devices was used, erase the DTC, operate the device near the seat-back, and recheck for DTCs. If DTC 15-3 is reset, erase it, and do not use the device near the seat-back.

2. Check the connection at the OPDS sensor harness connector and the OPDS unit connector.

*Are the connections OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Reconnect the OPDS sensor harness connector, and clear the DTC.■

3. Replace the OPDS sensor/seat back foam ([see page 20-103](#)), and reinitialize the OPDS system ([see page 23-30](#)).

4. Erase the DTC memory, then check for DTC 15-3.

*Is DTC 15-3 indicated?*

**Yes** Replace the OPDS unit ([see page 23-146](#)).■

**No** System is OK.■

SRS Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting

The SRS Indicator Doesn't Come On

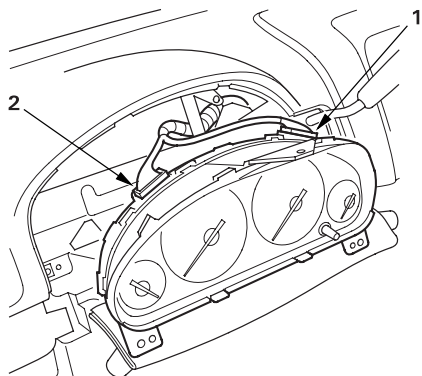
1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and check to see if the other indicators come on (brake system, etc).

*Do the other indicators come on?*

**Yes** Go to step 2.

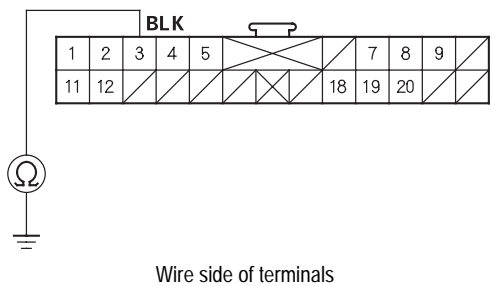
**No** Go to step 8.

2. Turn the ignition switch OFF, then disconnect C1 connector (2), and C2 connector (1) from the gauge assembly (see page 22A-74).



3. Check resistance between the No. 3 terminal of C2 connector and body ground. There should be 0 - 1.0 Ω.

C2 CONNECTOR



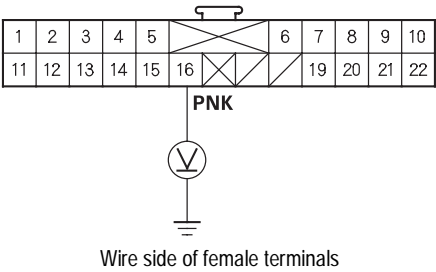
*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Open in the BLK wire of dashboard wire harness A or faulty body ground terminal (G502). If the body ground terminal is OK, replace dashboard wire harness A.■

4. Check for voltage between the No. 16 terminal of C1 connector and body ground within the first 6 seconds after turning the ignition switch ON (II). There should be 8.5 V or less.

C1 CONNECTOR



*Is the voltage as specified?*

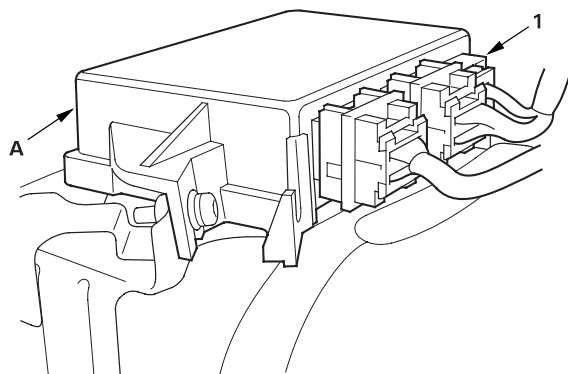
**Yes** Faulty SRS indicator circuit in the gauge assembly; replace the gauge assembly.■

**No** Go to step 5.

5. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

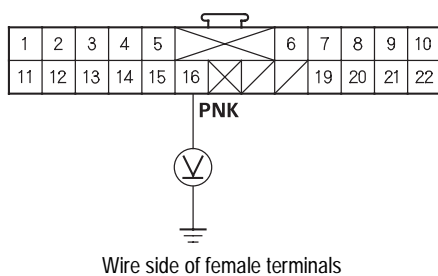


6. Disconnect the U3o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



7. Connect a voltmeter between the No. 16 terminal of C1 connector and body ground. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and measure voltage. There should be 0.5 V or less.

C1 CONNECTOR



*Is the voltage as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Short to power in the PNK wire of dashboard wire harness A or in the floor wire harness; replace the faulty harness.■

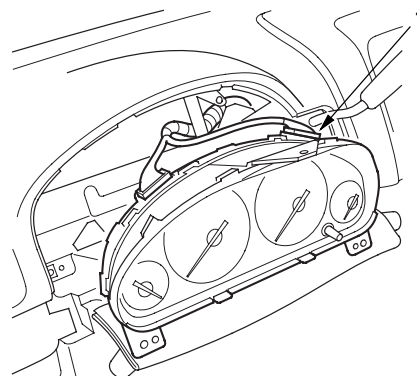
8. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Check the No. 10 (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse blown?*

**Yes** Go to step 11.

**No** Go to step 9.

9. Disconnect C2 connector (1) from the gauge assembly ([see page 22A-74](#)).

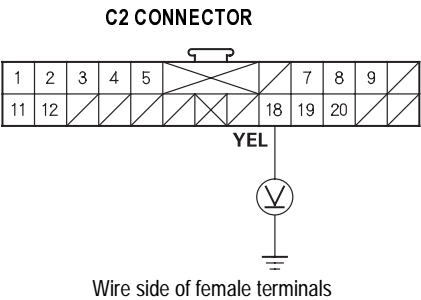


(cont'd)

SRS Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

The SRS Indicator Doesn't Come On (cont'd)

10. Connect a voltmeter between the No. 18 terminal of C2 connector and body ground. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and measure the voltage. There should be battery voltage.



Is there battery voltage?

- Yes** Faulty SRS indicator circuit in the gauge assembly or poor contact at gauge assembly C2 connector and gauge assembly; if the connection is OK, replace the gauge assembly.■
- No** Open in the under-dash fuse/relay box No. 10 (7.5A) fuse line, or open in the YEL wire of dashboard wire harness A. If the under-dash fuse/relay box is OK, replace the faulty harness.■

11. Replace the No. 10 (7.5A) fuse, then check to see if the SRS indicator comes on.

Does the SRS indicator come on?

- Yes** The system is OK at this time.■
- No** Repair the short to ground in the under-dash fuse/relay box No. 10 (7.5A) fuse line.■



### The SRS Indicator Stays On When In "SCS" Menu Method

#### NOTE:

- If you cannot retrieve DTCs with the PGM Tester using the SRS menu method, Retrieve the flash codes with the tester in SCS mode ([see page 23-26](#)).
- A new SRS unit must sense the entire system is OK before completing its initial self-test. The most common cause of an incomplete self-test is the failure to replace all deployed parts after a collision, in particular, seat belt tensioners and seat belt buckle tensioners.
- An incomplete self-test prevents the PGM Tester from retrieving DTCs, although flash codes are available in the Tester's SCS mode.

1. Erase the DTC memory with the "SRS Indicator Method" ([see page 23-29](#)).

*Does the SRS indicator go off when the DTC memory is being erased?*

**Yes** Go to step 42.

**No** Go to step 2.

2. Check the No. 13 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 19.

**No** Go to step 3.

3. Replace the No. 13 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

4. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and wait for 30 seconds. Then turn the ignition switch OFF.

5. Check the No. 13 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse OK?*

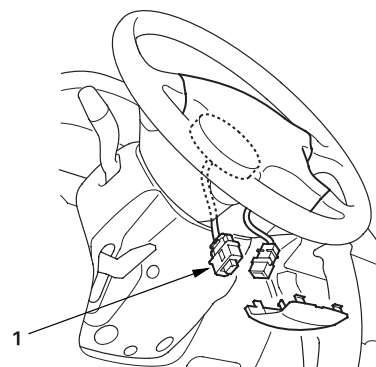
**Yes** The system is OK at this time.■

**No** Go to step 6.

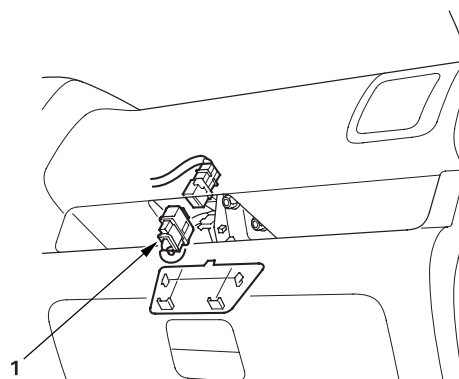
6. Replace the No. 13 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

7. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.

8. Disconnect the D1o connector (1).



9. Disconnect the P1o connector (1).

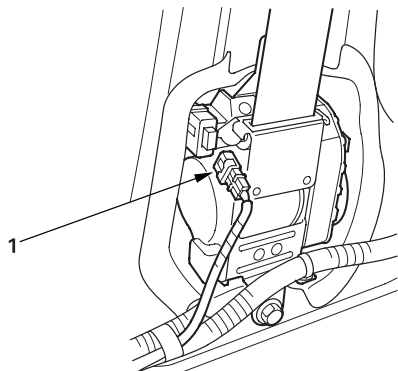


(cont'd)

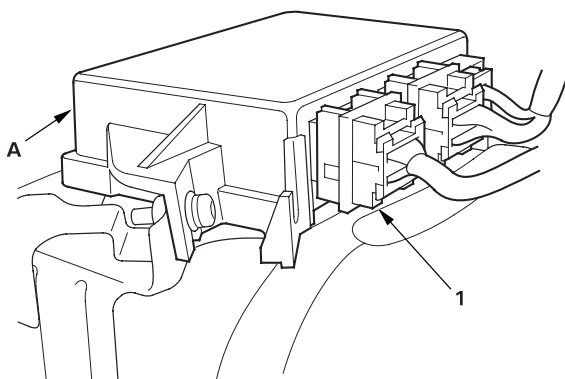
## SRS Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### The SRS Indicator Stays On When In "SCS" Menu Method (cont'd)

10. Disconnect the TL1o and TR1o connectors (1).



11. Disconnect U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



12. Reconnect the battery negative cable.

13. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and wait for 30 seconds. Then turn the ignition switch OFF.

14. Check the No. 13 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

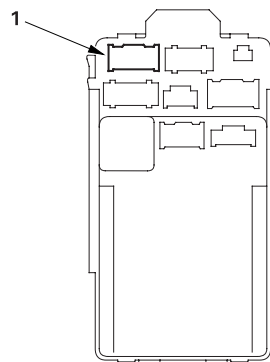
*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Short to ground in the SRS unit; replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Go to step 15.

15. Replace the No. 13 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

16. Disconnect the F3o connector (1) from the under-dash fuse/relay box.



17. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and wait for 30 seconds. Then turn the ignition switch OFF.

18. Check the No. 13 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Short to ground in dashboard wire harness A; replace dashboard wire harness A.■

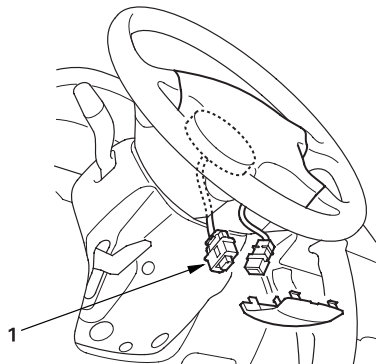
**No** Repair the short to ground in the under-dash fuse/relay box No. 13 (10A) fuse line; if the problem is still present, replace the under-dash fuse/relay box.■



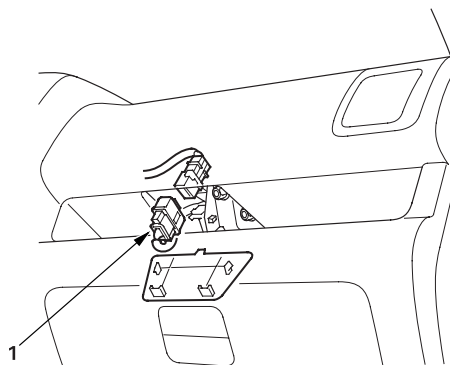


**19.** Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait for 3 minutes.

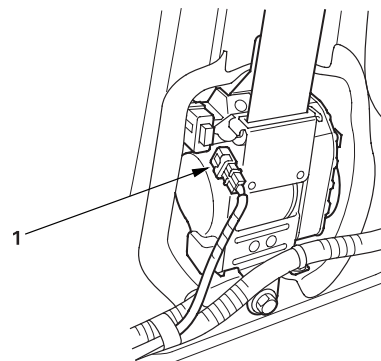
**20.** Disconnect the D1o connector (1).



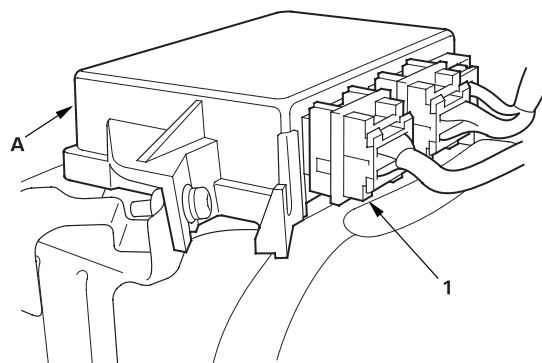
**21.** Disconnect the P1o connector (1).



**22.** Disconnect the TL1i and TR1i connectors (1).



**23.** Disconnect U1o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).

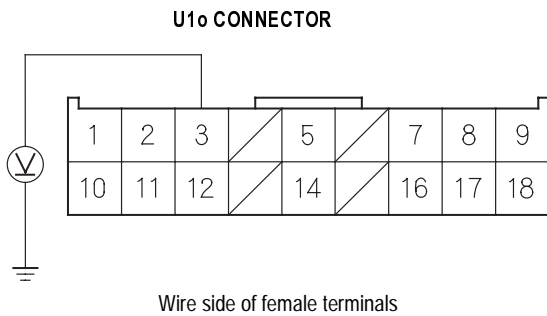


(cont'd)

## SRS Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

### The SRS Indicator Stays On When In "SCS" Menu Method (cont'd)

24. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
25. Connect a voltmeter between the No. 3 terminal of U1o connector and body ground. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and measure the voltage. There should be battery voltage.

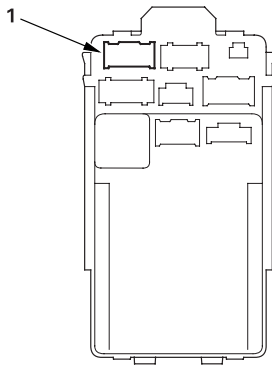


*Is there battery voltage?*

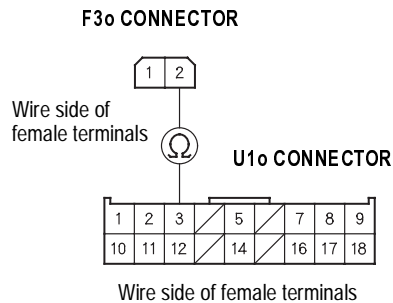
**Yes** Go to step 29.

**No** Go to step 26.

26. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
27. Disconnect the F3o connector (1) from the under-dash fuse/relay box.



28. Check resistance between the No. 3 terminal of U1o connector and the No. 2 terminal of the F3o connector. There should be 0 - 1.0  $\Omega$ .

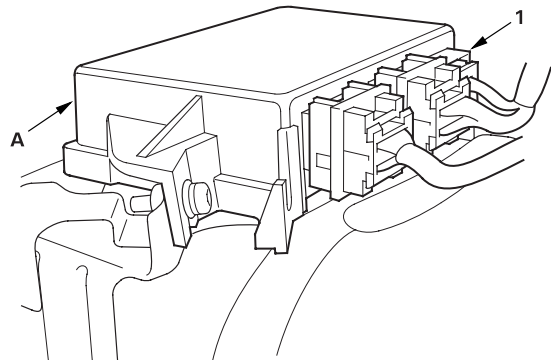


*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Open in the under-dash fuse/relay box or poor contact at the F3o connector; check the connection. If the connection is OK, replace the under-dash fuse/relay box.■

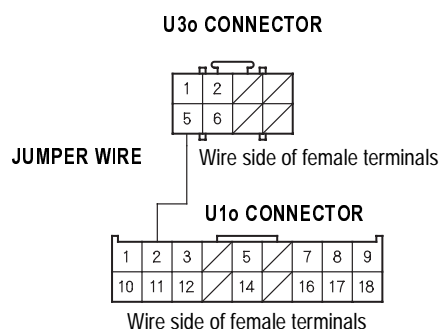
**No** Open in dashboard wire harness A; replace dashboard wire harness.■

29. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
30. Disconnect U3o unit connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



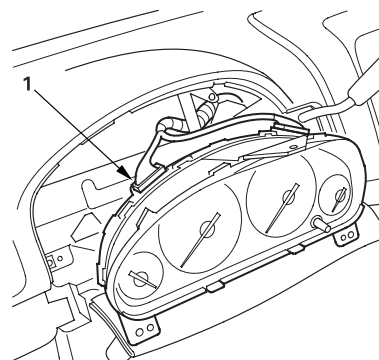


31. Connect the No. 2 terminal of U3o connector and the No. 5 terminal of the U3o connector with a jumper wire.



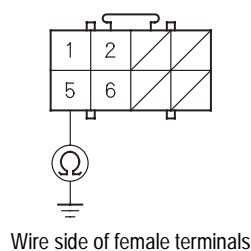
32. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
33. Check the SRS indicator.  
*Did the SRS indicator go off?*
- Yes** Faulty SRS unit; replace the SRS unit (see page 23-144). ■
- No** Go to step 34.
34. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
35. Disconnect the jumper wire between the No. 2 terminal of U1o connector and the No. 5 terminal of the U3o connector.
36. Check the No. 13 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.  
*Is the fuse OK?*
- Yes** Go to step 40.
- No** Go to step 37.
37. Replace the No. 13 (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

38. Disconnect C1 connector (1) from the gauge assembly (see page 22A-74).



39. Check resistance between the No. 5 terminal of U3o connector and body ground. There should be 1 M  $\Omega$  or more.

**U3o CONNECTOR**



*Is the resistance as specified?*

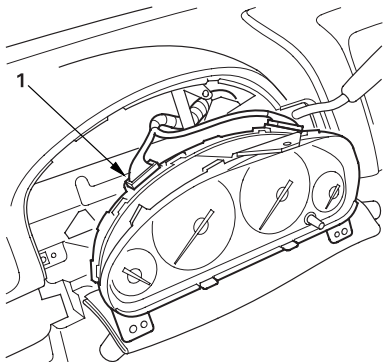
- Yes** Faulty SRS indicator circuit in the gauge assembly; replace the gauge assembly. ■
- No** Short to ground in the floor wire harness or in dashboard wire harness A; replace the faulty harness. ■

(cont'd)

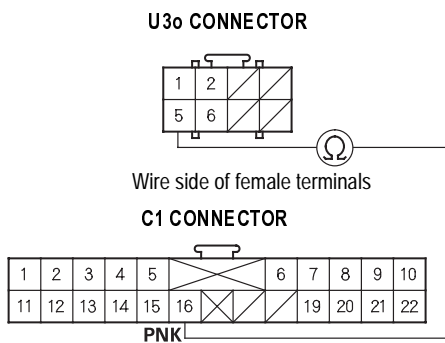
SRS Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

The SRS Indicator Stays On When In "SCS" Menu Method (cont'd)

40. Disconnect C1 connector (1) from the gauge assembly (see page 22A-74).



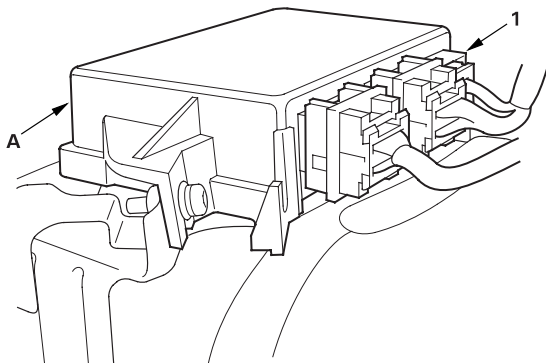
41. Check resistance between the No. 16 terminal of C1 connector and the No. 5 terminal of U3o connector. There should be 1 Ω or less.



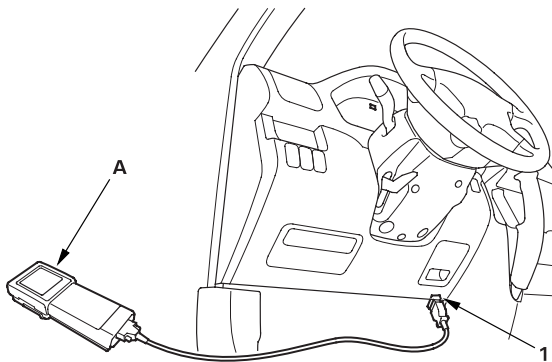
Is the resistance as specified?

- Yes** Faulty SRS indicator circuit in the gauge assembly or poor contact at the C1 connector; check the connection. If the connection is OK, replace the gauge assembly.■
- No** Open in the floor wire harness or in dashboard wire harness A; replace the faulty harness.■

42. Disconnect U3o connector (1) from the SRS unit (A).



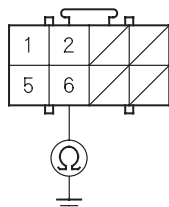
43. Connect the Honda PGM Tester (A) to the Data Link Connector (16P) (1), and follow the Tester's prompts in the "SCS" menu.





44. Check resistance between the No. 6 terminal of U3o connector and body ground. There should be 0 - 1.0  $\Omega$ .

U3o CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the resistance as specified?*

**Yes** Faulty SRS unit or poor contact at the floor wire harness 8P connector; check the connection at U3o connector and the SRS unit. If the connection is OK, replace the SRS unit ([see page 23-144](#)).■

**No** Open in the SCS line between the No. 6 terminal of U3o connector and the No. 9 terminal (BRN wire) of the Data Link Connector (DLC) (16P) or open between the No. 4 terminal of the Data Link Connector (DLC) (16P) and body ground. Repair the open wire(s).■

## Component Replacement/Inspection After Deployment

NOTE: Before doing any SRS repairs, use the PGM Tester SRS menu method to check for DTCs; refer to the DTC Troubleshooting Index for the less obvious deployed parts (seat belt tensioners, OPDS sensor, side airbag sensors, etc.)

After a collision where the frontal airbag(s) deployed, replace these items:

- SRS unit
- Deployed airbag(s)
- Seat belt tensioners
- Front sensors

After a collision where the side airbag(s) deployed, replace these items:

- SRS unit
- Deployed side airbag(s)
- Side impact sensor(s) for side(s) deployed

During the repair process, inspect these areas:

- Inspect all the SRS wire harnesses. Replace, don't repair, any damaged harnesses.
- Inspect the cable reel for heat damage. If there is any damage, replace the cable reel.

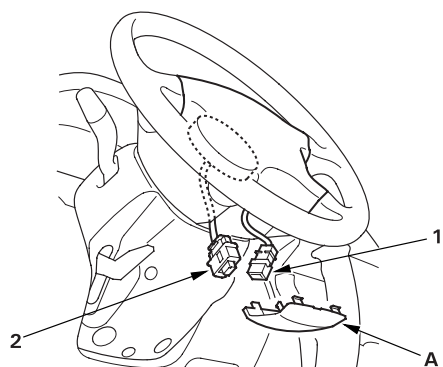
After the vehicle is completely repaired, turn the ignition switch on. If the SRS indicator comes on for about 6 seconds and then goes off, the SRS airbag system is OK. If the indicator does not function properly, use the PGM Tester SRS Menu Method to read the DTC(s). If this doesn't retrieve any codes, use the Tester's SCS menu method. If the SCS method doesn't work, you may need to install a known-good SRS unit to read the DTC(s). If you still cannot retrieve a code, go to SRS Indicator Circuit Troubleshooting.



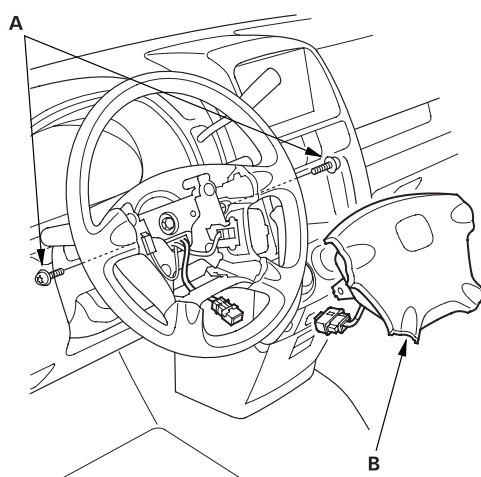
## Driver's Airbag Replacement

### Removal

1. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait at least 3 minutes before beginning work.
2. Remove the access panel (A) from the steering wheel, then disconnect the connector between the cable reel 2P connector (1) and driver's airbag 2P connector (2).



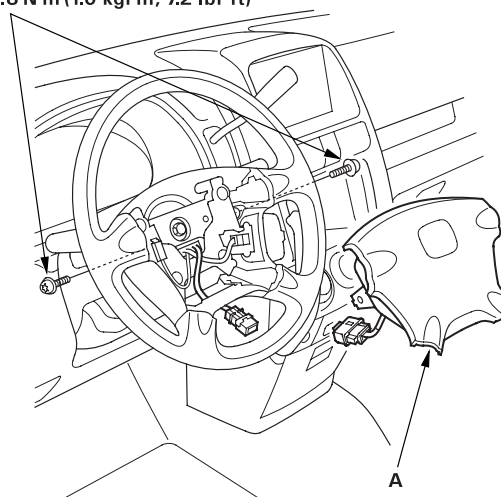
3. Remove the two Torx bolts (A) using a Torx T30 bit. Then remove the driver's airbag (B).



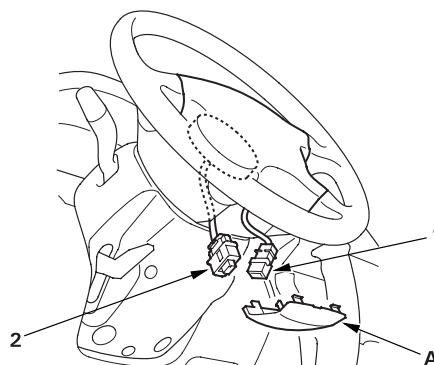
### Installation

1. Place the new driver's airbag (A) in the steering wheel, and secure it with new Torx bolts (B).

B  
9.8 N·m (1.0 kgf·m, 7.2 lbf·ft)



2. Connect the cable reel 2P connector (1) to the driver's airbag 2P connector (2), then install the access panel (A) on the steering wheel.

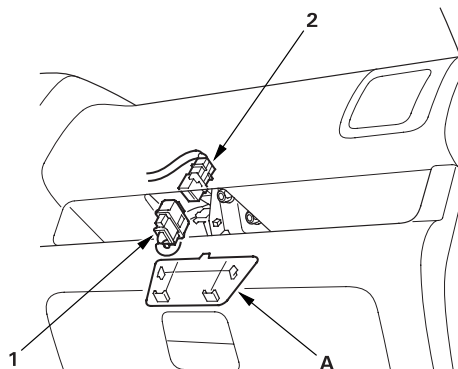


3. Connect the battery negative cable.
4. After installing the airbag, confirm proper system operation:
  - Turn the ignition switch ON (II); the SRS indicator should come on for about 6 seconds and then go off.
  - Make sure the horn button works.

## Front Passenger's Airbag Replacement

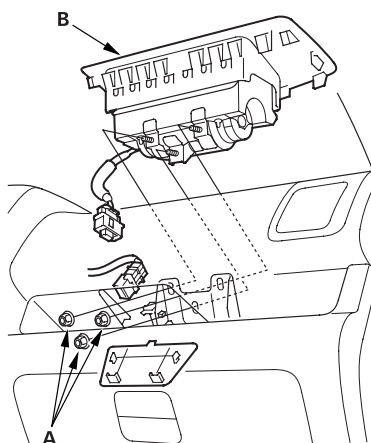
### Removal

1. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait at least 3 minutes before beginning work.
2. Remove the access panel (A) from the dashboard panel.
3. Disconnect the connector between the front passenger's airbag 2P connector (1) and the dashboard wire harness B 2P connector (2).



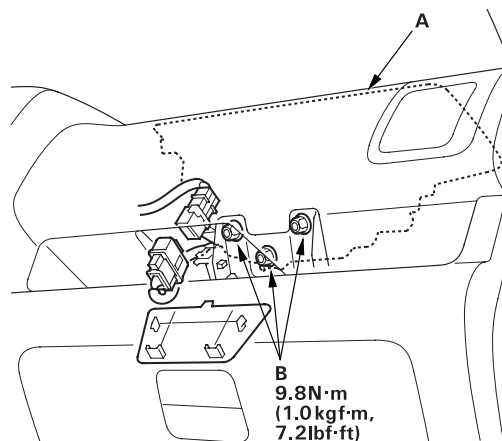
4. Remove the three mounting nuts (A) from the bracket. Cover the lid and dashboard with a cloth, and pry carefully with a screwdriver to lift the front passenger's airbag (B) out of the dashboard.

NOTE: The airbag lid has pawls on its side which attach it to the dashboard.

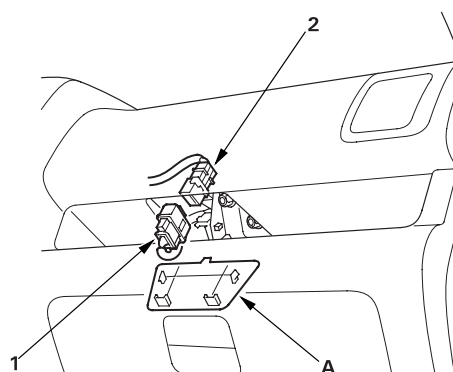


### Installation

1. Place the new front passenger's airbag (A) into the dashboard. Tighten the front passenger's airbag mounting nuts (B).



2. Connect the front passenger's airbag 2P connector (1) to the dashboard wire harness B 2P connector (2), then reinstall the access panel (A).



3. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
4. After installing the airbag, confirm proper system operation: Turn the ignition switch ON (II); the SRS indicator should come on for about 6 seconds and then go off.





## Side Airbag Replacement

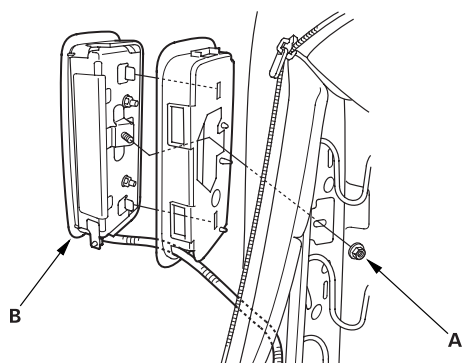
NOTE: Review the seats replacement procedure in the body section before performing repair or service.

### Removal

1. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait at least 3 minutes before beginning work.
2. Disconnect the side airbag harness 2P connector (1).



3. Remove the seat assembly (see page 20-103) and seat-back cover (see page 20-110).
4. Remove the mounting nut (A) and the side airbag (B).

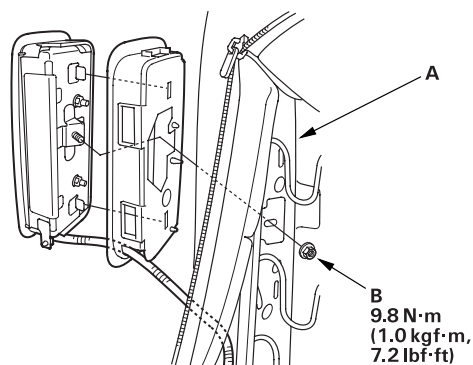


### Installation

NOTE:

- If the side airbag lid is secured by a tape, remove the tape.
- Do not open the lid of the side airbag cover.
- Use new mounting nuts tightened to the specified torque when you replace a side airbag.
- Make sure that the seat-back cover is installed properly. Improper installation may prevent proper deployment.
- Be sure to install the harness wires so that they are not pinched or interfering with other parts.

1. Place the new side airbag on the seat back-frame (A). Tighten the side airbag mounting nuts (B).



2. Install the seat-back cover (see page 20-110).
3. Install the seat assembly (see page 20-103), then connect the side airbag harness 2P connector.
4. Move the front seat and the seat-back through their full ranges of movement, making sure the harness wires are not pinched or interfering with other parts.
5. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
6. After installing the side airbag, confirm proper system operation: Turn the ignition switch ON (II); the SRS indicator should come on for about 6 seconds and then go off.

## Airbag Disposal

### Special Tool Required

Deployment tool 07HAZ-SG00500

Before scrapping any airbags, side airbags, or seat belt tensioners or seat belt buckle tensioners (including those in a whole vehicle to be scrapped), the airbags, side airbags, seat belt tensioners and seat belt buckle tensioners must be deployed. If the vehicle is still within the warranty period, the Honda Service Manager must give approval and/or special instruction before deploying the airbags, side airbags, or seat belt tensioners. Only after the airbags, side airbags, or seat belt tensioners have been deployed (as the result of vehicle collision, for example), can they be scrapped.

If the airbags, side airbags, seat belt tensioners and seat belt buckle tensioners appear intact (not deployed), treat them with extreme caution. Follow this procedure.

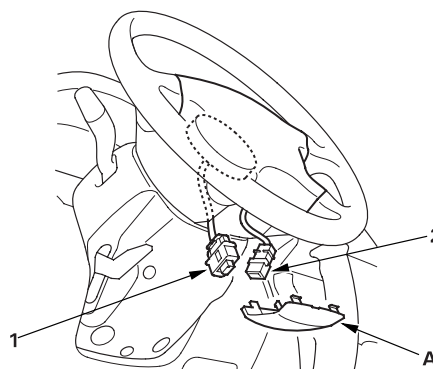
### Deploying Airbags in the Vehicle

If an SRS equipped vehicle is to be entirely scrapped, its airbags, side airbags, and seat belt tensioners should be deployed while still in the vehicle. The airbags, side airbags, seat belt tensioners and seat belt buckle tensioners should not be considered as salvageable parts and should never be installed in another vehicle.

1. Turn the ignition switch OFF, then disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait at least 3 minutes.
2. Confirm that each airbag, side airbag, or seat belt tensioner is securely mounted.
3. Confirm that the special tool is functioning properly by following the check procedure on the tool label.

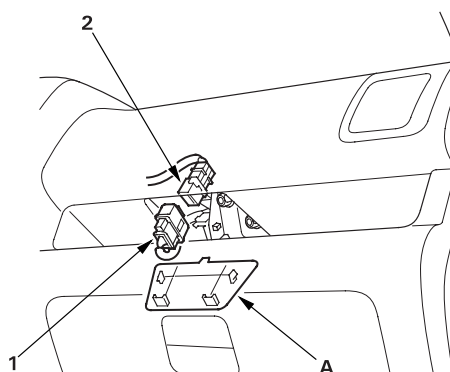
### Driver's Airbag:

4. Remove the access panel (A), then disconnect the 2P connector between the driver's airbag (1) and the cable reel (2).



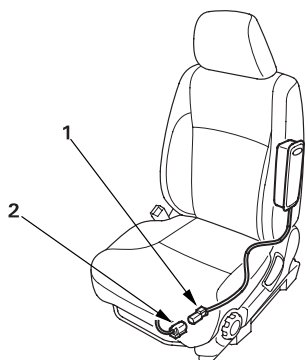
### Front Passenger's Airbag:

5. Remove the access panel (A), then disconnect the 2P connector between the front passenger's airbag (1) and dashboard wire harness (2).

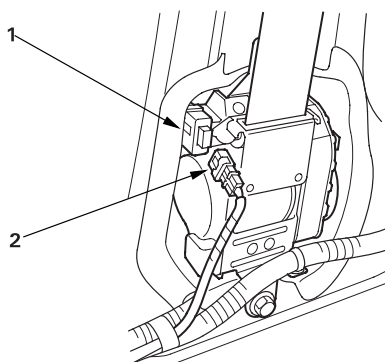


**Side Airbag:**

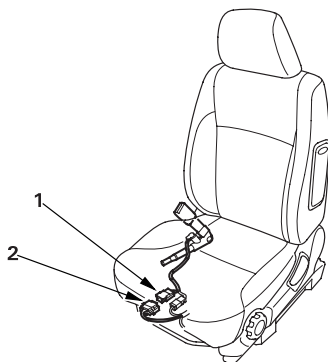
6. Disconnect the 2P connector between the side airbag (1) and the floor wire harness (2).

**Seat belt tensioner:**

7. Disconnect the 2P connector between the seat belt tensioner (1) and floor wire harness (2).

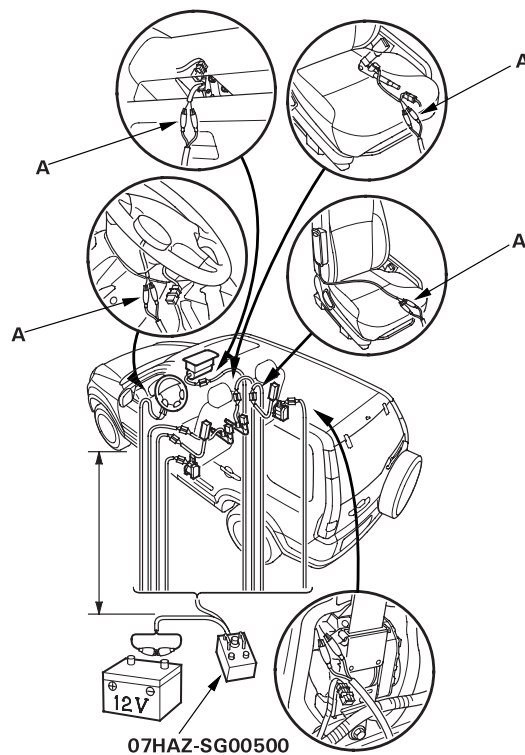
**Seat belt buckle tensioner:**

8. Disconnect the 4P connector between the seat belt buckle tensioner (1) and floor wire harness (2).



9. Pull the seat belt out all the way and cut it.

10. Cut off each connector, strip the ends of the wires, and connect the deployment tool alligator clips (A) to the wires. Place the deployment tool at least 30 feet (10 meters) away from the vehicle.



(cont'd)

## Airbag Disposal (cont'd)

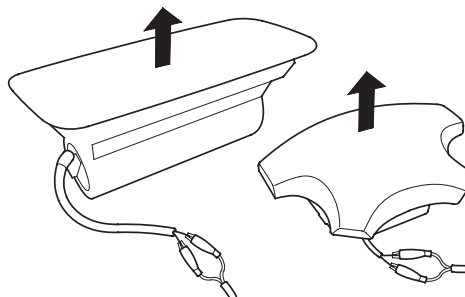
### Deploying Airbags in the Vehicle (cont'd)

11. Connect a 12 volt battery to the tool.
  - If the green light on the tool comes on, the igniter circuit is defective and cannot deploy the component. Go to Disposal of Damaged Components.
  - If the red light on the tool comes on, the component is ready to be deployed.
12. Push the tool's deployment switch. The airbags and tensioners should deploy (deployment is both highly audible and visible: a loud noise and rapid inflation of the bag, followed by slow deflation).
  - If the components deploy and the green light on the tool comes on, continue with this procedure.
  - If a component doesn't deploy, yet the green light comes ON, its igniter is defective. Go to Disposal of Damaged components.
  - During deployment the airbag can become hot enough to burn you. Wait 30 minutes after deployment before touching the airbag.
13. Dispose of the complete airbag. No part of it can be reused. Place it in a sturdy plastic bag (A), and seal it securely.



### Deploying Components Out of the Vehicle

If an intact airbag or tensioner has been removed from a scrapped vehicle, or has been found defective or damaged during transit, storage, or service, it should be deployed as follows:



1. Confirm that the special tool is functioning properly by following the check procedure on this page or on the tool label.
2. Position the airbag face up, outdoors, on flat ground, at least 30 feet (10 meters) from any obstacles or people.
3. Follow steps 9 through 11 of the in-vehicle deployment procedure.

### Disposal of Damaged Components

1. If installed in a vehicle, follow the removal procedure for the driver's airbag ([see page 23-135](#)), front passenger's airbag ([see page 23-136](#)), side airbag ([see page 23-137](#)), seat belt tensioner ([see page 23-4](#)).
2. In all cases, make a short circuit by twisting together the two inflator wires.
3. Package the component in exactly the same packaging that the new replacement part came in.
4. Mark the outside of the box "DAMAGED AIRBAG NOT DEPLOYED", "DAMAGED SIDE AIRBAG NOT DEPLOYED", "DAMAGED SEAT BELT TENSIONER NOT DEPLOYED" so it does not get confused with your parts stock.
5. Contact your Honda Service Manager for how and where to return it for disposal.

### Deployment Tool Check

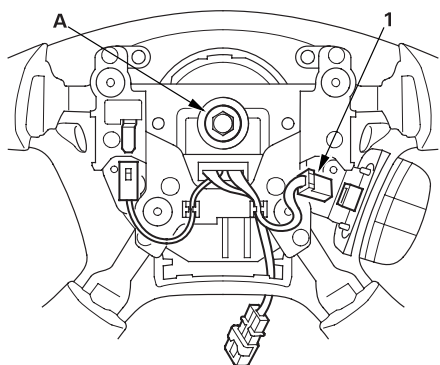
1. Connect the yellow clips to both switch protector handles on the tool; connect the tool to a battery.
2. Push the operation switch: green means the tool is OK; red means the tool is faulty.
3. Disconnect the battery and the yellow clips.



## Cable Reel Replacement

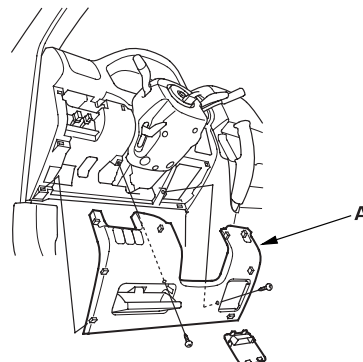
### Removal

1. Make sure the front wheels are aligned straight ahead.
2. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait at least 3 minutes.
3. Remove the driver's airbag ([see page 23-135](#)).
4. Disconnect the connector (1) from the cruise control set/resume switch, then remove the steering wheel bolt (A).

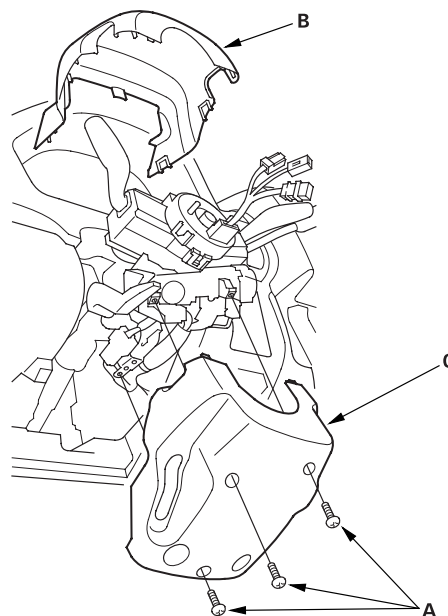


5. Remove the steering wheel with a steering wheel puller (see step 3 on [page 17-21](#)). Do not tap on the steering wheel or steering column shaft when removing the steering wheel.

6. Remove the dashboard lower cover (A).



7. Remove the column cover screws (A), then remove the column covers (B, C).

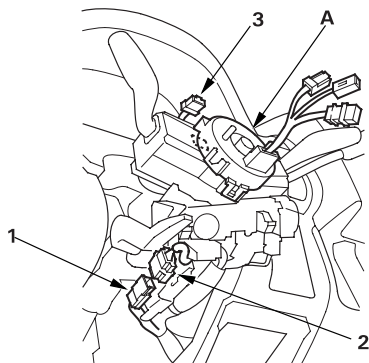


(cont'd)

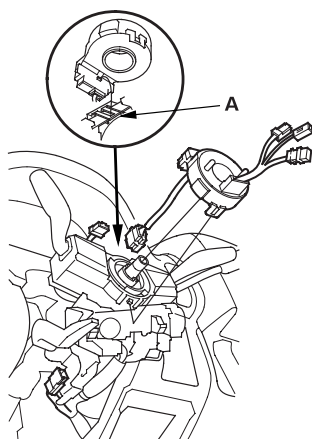
## Cable Reel Replacement (cont'd)

### Removal (cont'd)

8. Disconnect the dashboard wire harness B 4P connector (1) from the cable reel 4P connector (2), then disconnect the dashboard wire harness B 5P connector (3) from the cable reel (A).

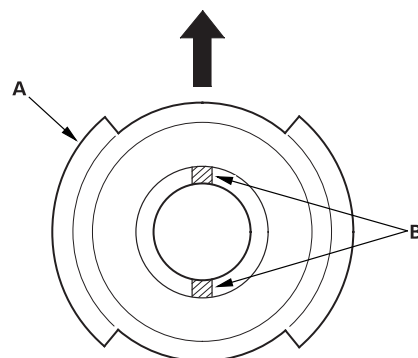


9. Release the tab (A), then remove the cable reel from the column.

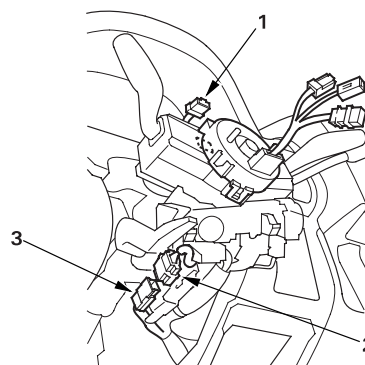


### Installation

1. Before installing the steering wheel, align the front wheels straight ahead.
2. If not already done, disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait at least 3 minutes.
3. Set the cancel sleeve (A) so that the projections (B) are aligned vertically.

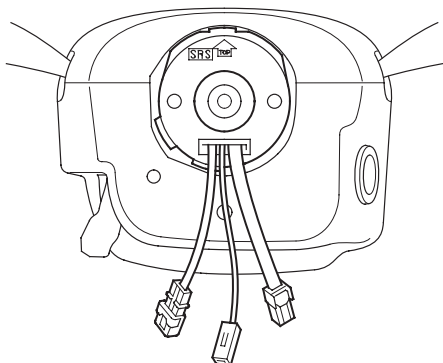


4. Carefully install the cable reel (A) on the steering column shaft. Then connect the 5P connector (1) to the cable reel, and connect the 4P connector (2) to the dashboard wire harness B 4P connector (3).

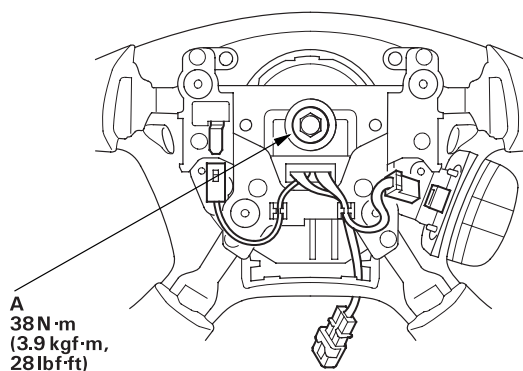




5. Install the steering column covers.
6. If necessary, center the cable reel. (New replacement cable reels come centered.) Do this by first rotating the cable reel clockwise until it stops.  
Then rotate it counterclockwise (about 2 1/2 turns) until the arrow mark on the cable reel label points straight up.



7. Align the projections on the cable reel with the holes on the steering wheel, and install the steering wheel with a new steering wheel bolt (A).

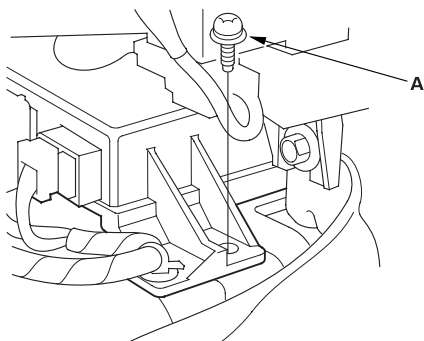


8. Install the driver's airbag ([see page 23-135](#)).
9. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
10. After installing the cable reel, confirm proper system operation:
  - Turn the ignition switch ON (II); the SRS indicator should come on for about 6 seconds and then go off.
  - After the SRS indicator has turned off, turn the steering wheel fully left and right to confirm the SRS indicator does not come on.
  - Make sure the horn button works.

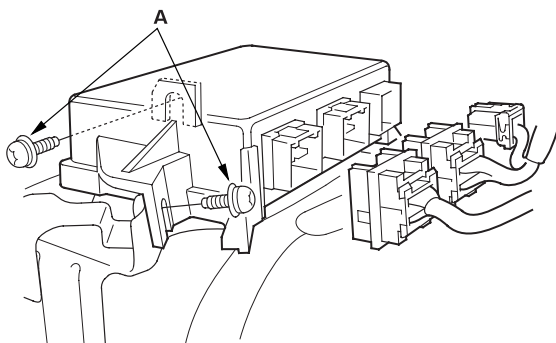
## SRS Unit Replacement

### Removal

1. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait at least 3 minutes before beginning work.
2. Disconnect the driver's and front passenger's airbag connectors (see page 23-23).
3. Disconnect the side airbag connectors (see page 23-23).
4. Disconnect both seat belt tensioner connectors (see page 23-24).
5. Remove the dashboard center lower cover (see page 20-91).
6. Pull down the carpet, then remove the Torx bolt (A) from the SRS unit.

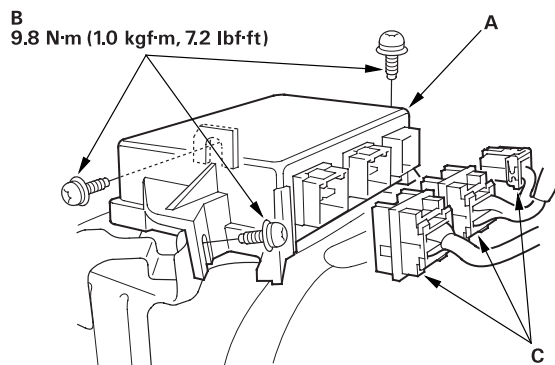


7. Disconnect the connectors and remove the two Torx bolts (A), then pull out the SRS unit from the right side.



### Installation

1. Install the new SRS unit (A) with Torx bolts (B), then connect the connectors (C) to the SRS unit; push it into position until it clicks.
- NOTE: When tightening the Torx bolts to the specified torque after replacement, be careful to turn them in so that their heads rest squarely on the brackets.



2. Reinstall the dashboard center lower cover (see page 20-91).
3. Reconnect the driver's and front passenger's airbag connectors (see page 23-23).
4. Reconnect the side airbag connectors (see page 23-23).
5. Reconnect both seat belt tensioner connectors (see page 23-24).
6. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
7. Initialize the OPDS unit (see page 23-30).
8. After installing the SRS unit, confirm proper system operation: Turn the ignition switch ON (II); the SRS indicator should come on for about 6 seconds and then go off.





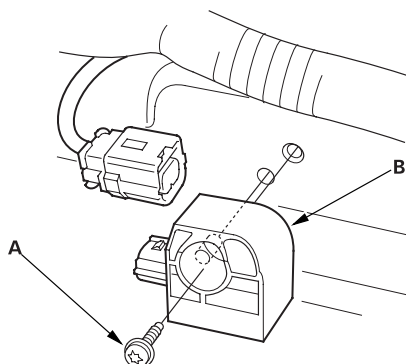
## Side Impact Sensor Replacement

### Removal

#### NOTE:

- Removal of the side impact sensor must be performed according to the precautions/procedures described before.
- Before disconnecting the side impact sensor 2P connector(s), disconnect the side airbag 2P connector(s).
- Do not turn the ignition switch ON (II), and do not connect the battery cable while replacing the side impact sensor.

1. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait at least 3 minutes before beginning work.
2. Remove the seat assembly (see page 20-103).
3. Remove the rear side trim panel (see page 20-77).
4. Disconnect the floor wire harness 2P connector from the side impact sensor.
5. Remove the Torx bolt (A) using a Torx T30 bit, then remove the side impact sensor (B).

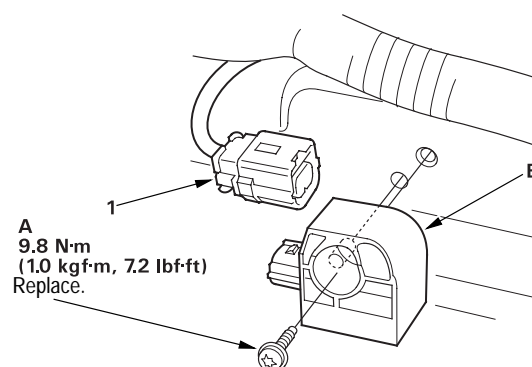


### Installation

#### NOTE:

- Be sure to install the harness wires so that they are not pinched or interfering with other parts.
- Do not turn the ignition switch ON (II), and do not connect the battery cable while replacing the side impact sensor.

1. Install the new side impact sensor with a new Torx bolt (A) then connect the floor wire harness 2P connector (1) to the side impact sensor (B).



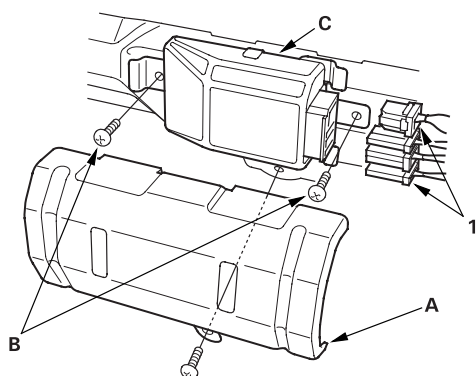
2. Reconnect the negative battery cable.
3. After installing the side impact sensor, confirm proper system operation: Turn the ignition switch ON (II): the SRS indicator should come on for about 6 seconds and then go off.

## OPDS Unit Replacement

NOTE: Review the seats replacement procedures in the body section before performing repairs or service.

### Removal

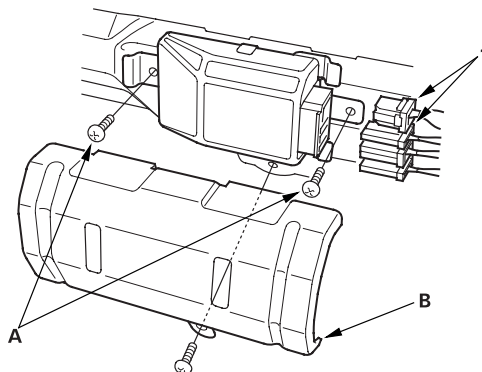
1. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait at least 3 minutes before beginning work.
2. Disconnect the side airbag harness 2P connector (see step 4 on [page 23-23](#)).
3. Remove the seat assembly ([see page 20-103](#)) and seat-back cover ([see page 20-110](#)).
4. Remove the cover (A), then disconnect the OPDS unit harness 8P and sensor connectors (1) from the OPDS unit.



5. Remove the two screws (B) and OPDS unit (C).

### Installation

1. Place the new OPDS unit on the seat-back frame. Tighten the two screws (A), and connect the OPDS unit harness 8P and sensor connector (1) to the OPDS unit. Reinstall the cover (B).



2. Install the seat-back cover ([see page 20-110](#)).
3. Install the seat assembly ([see page 20-103](#)), then connect the side airbag harness 2P connector.
4. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
5. Set the seat-back in the normal position, and make sure there is nothing on the front passenger's seat.
6. Initialize the OPDS unit ([see page 23-30](#)).
7. After installing the OPDS unit, confirm proper system operation: Turn the ignition switch ON (II); the SRS indicator should come on for about 6 seconds and then go off.



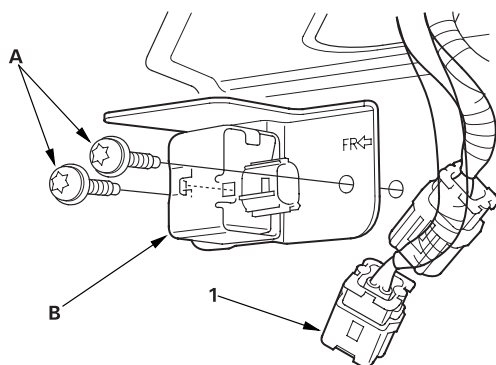
## Front Sensor Replacement

### Removal

#### NOTE:

- Removal of the front sensor must be performed according to the precautions/procedures described before.
- Before disconnecting the front sensor 2P connector(s), disconnect the driver's and front passenger's airbag 4P, both seat belt tensioner 2P connector(s).
- Do not turn the ignition switch ON (II), and do not connect the battery cable while replacing the front sensor.

1. Disconnect the battery negative cable, and wait at least 3 minutes before beginning work.
2. Remove the front inner fender (see page 20-155).
3. Disconnect the engine compartment wire harness 2P connector (1), and remove the two Torx bolts (A) using a Torx T30 bit, then remove the front sensor (B).

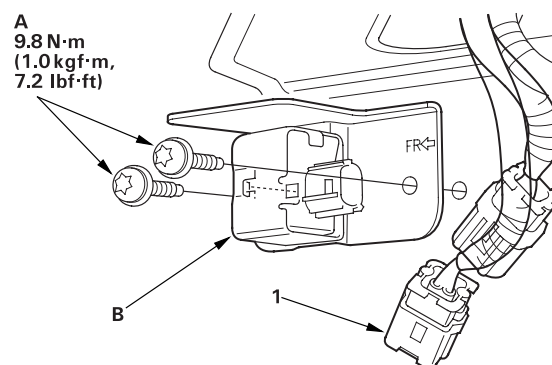


### Installation

#### NOTE:

- Be sure to install the harness wires so that they are not pinched or interfering with other parts.
- Do not turn the ignition switch ON (II), and do not connect the battery cable while replacing the front sensor.

1. Install the new front sensor with new Torx bolts (A), then connect the engine compartment wire harness 2P connector (1) to the front sensor (B).



2. Reconnect the battery negative cable.
3. After installing the front sensor, confirm proper system operation: Turn the ignition switch ON (II): the SRS indicator should come on for about 6 seconds and then go off.



# Supplement

<b>Fuel and Emissions Systems</b> .....	<b>77-2</b>
Special Tools .....	77-2
General Troubleshooting Information .....	77-3
DTC Troubleshooting Index .....	77-5
DTC Troubleshooting .....	77-6
MIL Circuit Troubleshooting .....	77-33
Throttle Body Test .....	77-45
<b>Automatic Transmission</b> .....	<b>77-46</b>
DTC with [D] Indicator Light Troubleshooting Procedures .....	77-46
DTC Troubleshooting Index .....	77-47

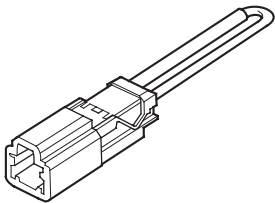
NOTE : This section contains procedures without using scantool or Honda PGM tester.



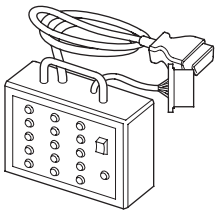
Fuel and Emissions Systems

Special Tools

Ref. No.	Tool Number	Description	Qty
1	07PAZ-0010100	SCS Short Connector	1
2	07WAJ-0010100	DLC Pin Box	1



1



2



## General Troubleshooting Information

### Intermittent Failures

The term "intermittent failure" means a system may have had a failure, but it checks OK now. If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) on the dash does not come on, check for poor connections or loose wires at all connectors related to the circuit that you are troubleshooting.

### Opens and Shorts

"Open" and "Short" are common electrical terms. An open is a break in a wire or at a connection. A short is an accidental connection of a wire to ground or to another wire. In simple electronics, this usually means something won't work at all. In complex electronics (like ECM's/PCM's) this can sometimes mean something works, but not the way it's supposed to.

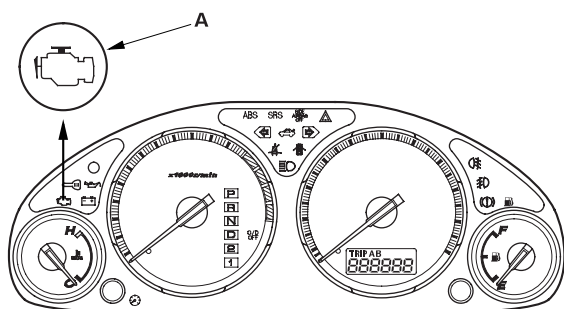
### How to Troubleshooting

#### Special Tool Required

- DLC pin box 07WAJ-0010100
- SCS short connector 07PAZ-0010100

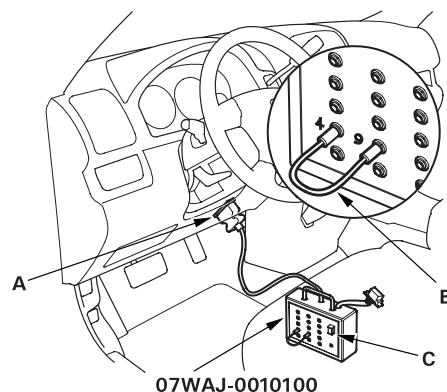
If the MIL (Malfunction Indicator Lamp) has come on

1. Start the engine and check the MIL (A).



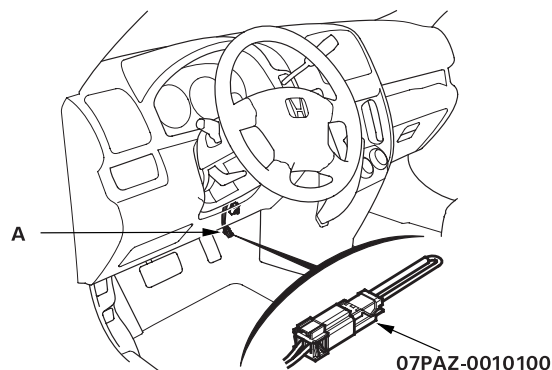
2. Except KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models:  
If the MIL stays on, jump the SCS line

- 1 Connect the DLC pin box to the 16P Data Link Connector (DLC) (A) located under the driver's side of the dashboard.
- 2 Connect the DLC pin box terminals No. 4 and No. 9 with a jumper wire (B), then push the switch (C).



3. KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models:  
If the MIL stays on, jump the SCS line

- 1 With the ignition switch OFF, connect the SCS short connector to the service check connector (2P) (A) located under the dash on the driver's side of the dashboard.



\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

(cont'd)

General Troubleshooting Information (cont'd)

How to Troubleshooting (cont'd)

- 1 Check the Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) and note it. Refer to the DTC Troubleshooting Index and begin the appropriate troubleshooting procedure.

If the MIL did not come on

If the MIL did not come on but there is a driveability problem, refer to the Symptom Troubleshooting index in this section.

If you can't duplicate the DTC

Some of the troubleshooting in this section requires you to reset the Engine Control Module (ECM)/Powertrain Control Module (PCM) and try to duplicate the DTC. If the problem is intermittent and you can't duplicate the code, do not continue through the procedure. To do so will only result in confusion and, possibly, a needlessly replaced ECM/PCM.





## DTC Troubleshooting Index

DTC (MIL indication)	Detection Item	MIL	Page
0	MIL does not come on or does not go off, no DTC stored	O	(see page 77-33)
1*4	Primary Heated Oxygen Sensor (Primary HO2S) (Sensor 1)	O	(see page 77-6)
3	Manifold Absolute Pressure (MAP) Sensor	O	(see page 77-7)
4	Crankshaft Position (CKP) Sensor	O	(see page 11-88)
6	Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) Sensor	O	(see page 77-9)
7	Throttle Position (TP) Sensor	O	(see page 77-11)
8	Top Dead Center Position (TDC) Sensor	O	(see page 11-100)
10	Intake Air Temperature (IAT) Sensor	O	(see page 77-13)
11*8	Idle Mixture Adjuster (IMA)	X	(see page 77-15)
13	Barometric Pressure (BARO) Sensor	O	(see page 11-93)
14	Idle Air Control (IAC) Valve	O	(see page 11-140)
17*2	Vehicle Speed Sensor	O	(see page 11-90)
20*6	Electrical Load Detector (ELD)	X	(see page 77-17)
21*7	VTEC System	O	(see page 11-130)
22*3	VTEC System	O	(see page 11-133)
23	Knock Sensor	O	(see page 11-87)
34	Engine Control Module (ECM)/Powertrain Control Module (PCM) Power Source Circuit Unexpected Voltage	O	(see page 11-91)
39	Serial Communication Link Malfunction	X	Refer to the Multiplex Control System Troubleshooting (see page 22A-231)
41*4	Primary Heated Oxygen Sensor (Primary HO2S) (Sensor 1) Heater	O	(see page 11-74)
45*3	Fuel Supply System	O	(see page 77-19)
56	VTC Oil Control Solenoid Valve	O	(see page 77-21)
57	Camshaft Position (CMP) Sensor	O	(see page 77-24)
61*3	Primary Heated Oxygen Sensor (Primary HO2S) (Sensor 1)	O	(see page 11-73)
63*5	Secondary Heated Oxygen Sensor (Secondary HO2S) (Sensor 2)	O	(see page 77-27)
65*5	Secondary Heated Oxygen Sensor (Secondary HO2S) (Sensor 2) Heater	O	(see page 11-78)
67*3	Catalyst System	O	(see page 11-188)
70*1	Automatic Transaxle	X	Refer to the Automatic Transmission DTC Troubleshooting Index (see page 14-7)
71*3	No.1 Cylinder Misfire	O	(see page 77-28)
72*3	No.2 Cylinder Misfire	O	(see page 77-28)
73*3	No.3 Cylinder Misfire	O	(see page 77-28)
74*3	No.4 Cylinder Misfire	O	(see page 77-28)
71*3 72 73 74	Any combination of the No.1, No.2, No.3, No.4 Cylinder Misfire	O	(see page 11-81)
92*3	Evaporative Emission (EVAP) Canister Purge Valve	O	(see page 11-193)

\*1: A/T

\*2: M/T

\*3: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models

\*4: with TWC model

\*5: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, FQ models

\*6: KG, KS, KE, KR, KU, KZ, FO, KQ, KK, KM models

\*7: except KG, KS, KE, KR, KU (Hong Kong) models

\*8: without TWC model

DTC Troubleshooting

DTC 1: Primary HO2S (Sensor 1) Circuit Malfunction

- 1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
- 2. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm (min<sup>-1</sup>) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle for at least one minute before test-driving.
- 3. Test-drive under following conditions.
  - M/T in 4th gear, A/T in 2nd position
  - accelerate using wide open throttle for at least 5 seconds, then decelerate for at least 5 seconds with the throttle completely closed.

Is the MIL on and does it indicate DTC 1?

Yes Go to step 4.

No Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) and at the ECM/PCM.■

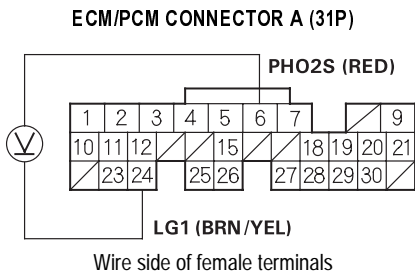
- 4. Inspect fuel pressure (see page 11-154).

Is it normal?

Yes Go to step 5.

No Check for fuel supply system.■

- 5. Let it idle for at least 1 minute before test-driving.
- 6. Open the throttle wide open, then quickly release it.
- 7. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A6 and A24.



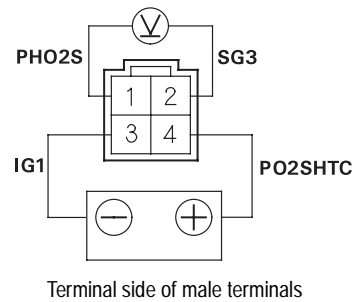
Is the voltage above 0.6 V at wide open throttle to 4,500 rpm (min<sup>-1</sup>) and below 0.4 V when the throttle is quickly released from 4,500 rpm (min<sup>-1</sup>)?

Yes Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

No Go to step 8.

- 8. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- 9. Disconnect the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) 4P connector.
- 10. At the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) harness side, connect the battery positive terminal to terminal No. 3 and battery negative terminal to terminal No. 4.
- 11. Start the engine.
- 12. After 2 minutes, measure voltage between primary HO2S (Sensor 1) 4P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2.

PRIMARY HO2S (SENSOR 1) 4P CONNECTOR



Is the voltage above 0.6 V at wide open throttle to 4,500 rpm (min<sup>-1</sup>) and below 0.4 V when the throttle is quickly released from 4,500 rpm (min<sup>-1</sup>)?

Yes Repair open or short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A6) and the primary HO2S(Sensor 1).■

No Replace the primary HO2S (Sensor 1) (see page 11-119).■



## DTC 3: MAP Sensor Circuit Malfunction

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).

2. Start the engine and let it idle.

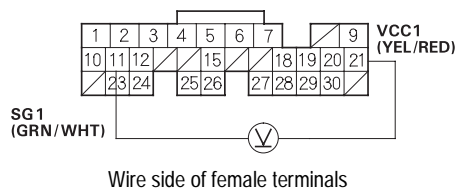
*Is the MIL on and does it indicate DTC 3?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the MAP sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
5. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A11 and A21.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

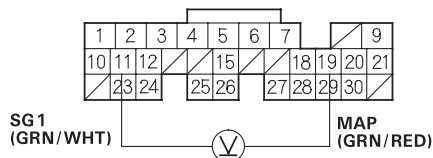
*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-4) If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

6. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A11 and A19.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

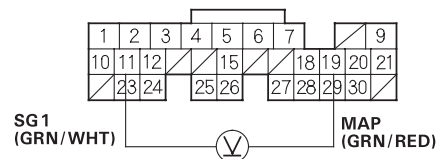
*Is there about 3 V?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Go to step 7.

7. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A11 and A19.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

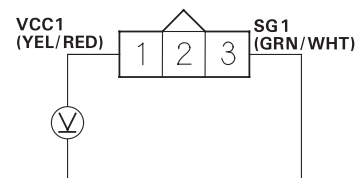
*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Go to step 13.

8. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
9. Disconnect the MAP sensor 3P connector.
10. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
11. Measure voltage between MAP sensor 3P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 3.

MAP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there about 5 V?*

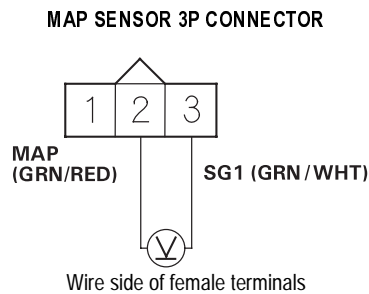
**Yes** Go to step 12.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A11) and the MAP sensor.■

(cont'd)

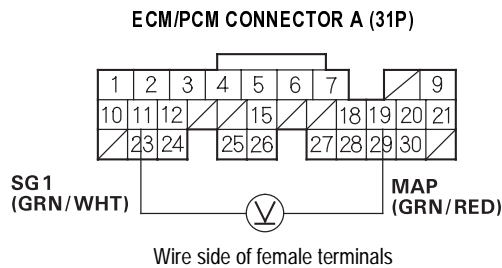
DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

12. Measure voltage between MAP sensor 3P connector terminals No. 2 and No. 3.



Is there about 5 V?

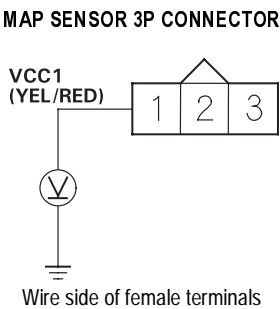
- Yes** Replace the MAP sensor.■
- No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A19) and the MAP sensor.■
13. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
14. Disconnect the MAP sensor 3P connector.
15. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
16. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A11 and A19.



Is there about 5 V?

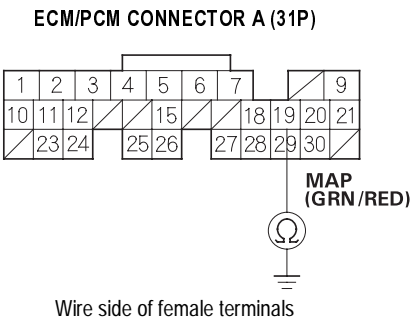
- Yes** Replace the MAP sensor.■
- No** Go to step 17.

17. Measure voltage between MAP sensor 3P connector terminals No. 1 and body ground.



Is there about 5 V?

- Yes** Go to step 18.
- No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A21) and the MAP sensor.■
18. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
19. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
20. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).
21. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal A19 and body ground.



Is there continuity?

- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A19) and the MAP sensor.■
- No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■



## DTC 6: ECT Sensor Circuit Malfunction

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).

2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

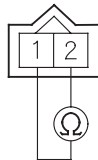
*Is the MIL on and does it indicate DTC 6?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the ECT sensor, climate control unit (with climate control), and the ECM/PCM.■

3. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.
4. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
5. Disconnect the ECT sensor 2P connector.
6. Measure resistance between ECT sensor 2P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2.

ECT SENSOR 2P CONNECTOR



Terminal side of male terminals

*Is there 200 - 400  $\Omega$  ?*

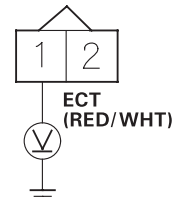
**Yes** Go to step 7.

**No** Replace the ECT sensor.■

7. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

8. At the engine wire harness side, measure voltage between ECT sensor 2P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

ECT SENSOR 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

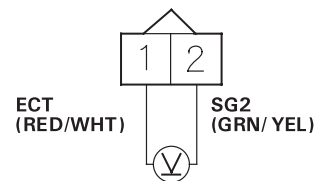
*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Go to step 10.

9. Measure voltage between ECT sensor 2P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2.

ECT SENSOR 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

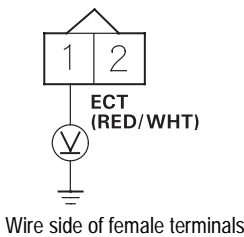
**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A10) and the ECT sensor.■

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

- 10. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- 11. Disconnect the climate control unit 30P connector.
- 12. Turn the ignition switch ON(II).
- 13. At the engine harness side, measure voltage between ECT sensor 2P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.

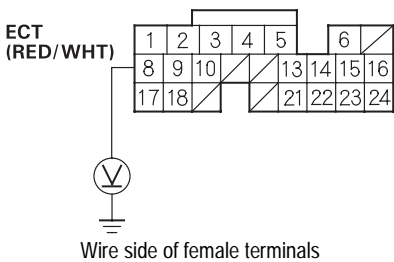
ECT SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



Is there about 5 V?

- Yes** Replace the climate control unit.■
- No** Go to step 14.
- 14. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals B8 and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR B (24P)

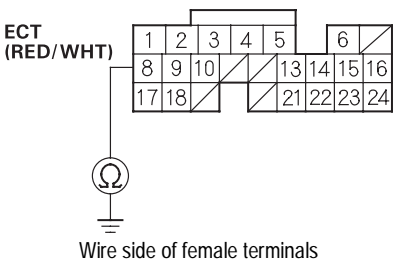


Is there about 5 V?

- Yes** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (B8) and the ECT sensor.■
- No** Go to step 15.

- 15. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
- 16. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
- 17. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).
- 18. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal B8 and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR B (24P)



Is there continuity?

- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (B8) and the ECT sensor.■
- No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■



## DTC 7: TP Sensor Circuit Malfunction

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).

2. Start the engine.

*Is the MIL on and does it indicate DTC 7?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the TP sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■

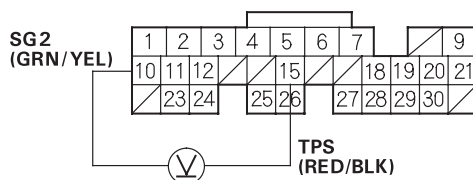
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

4. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

5. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A10 and A15.

NOTE: There should be a smooth transition as the throttle is pressed.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the voltage about 0.5 V at full close throttle, and about 4.5 V at full open throttle?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Go to step 6.

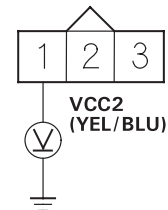
6. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

7. Disconnect the TP sensor 3P connector.

8. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

9. At the engine wire harness side, measure voltage between TP sensor 3P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

TP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

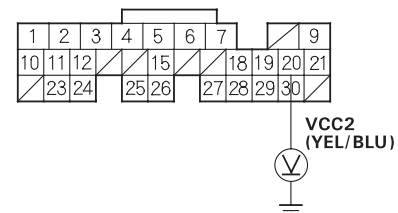
*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 11.

**No** Go to step 10.

10. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A20 and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there about 5 V?*

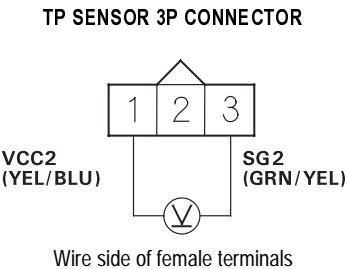
**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A20) and the TP sensor.■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

(cont'd)

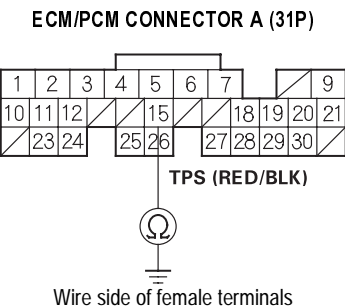
DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

11. At the engine wire harness side, measure voltage between TP sensor 3P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 3.



Is there about 5 V?

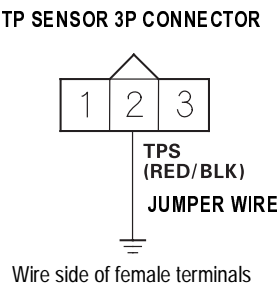
- Yes** Go to step 12.
- No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A20) and the TP sensor.■
12. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
13. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
14. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).
15. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal A15 and body ground.



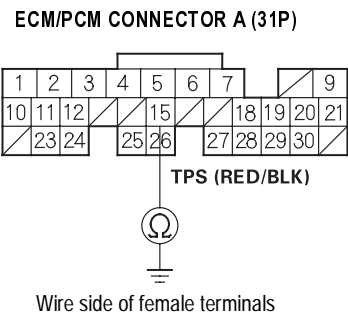
Is there continuity?

- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A15) and the TP sensor.■
- No** Go to step 16.

16. Connect TP sensor 3P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground with a jumper wire.



17. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal A15 and body ground.



Is there continuity?

- Yes** Replace the TP sensor.■
- No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A15) and the TP sensor.■





## DTC 10: IAT Sensor Circuit Malfunction

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).

2. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

*Is the MIL on and does it indicate DTC 10?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

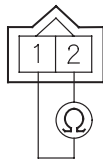
**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the IAT sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

4. Disconnect the IAT sensor 2P connector.

5. Measure resistance between IAT sensor 2P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2.

IAT SENSOR 2P CONNECTOR



Terminal side of male terminals

*Is there 0.4 - 4.0 kΩ?*

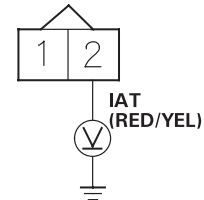
**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Replace the IAT sensor.■

6. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

7. At the engine wire harness side, measure voltage between IAT sensor 2P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.

IAT SENSOR 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

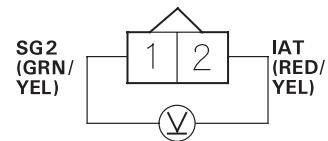
*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Go to step 9.

8. Measure voltage between IAT sensor 2P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2.

IAT SENSOR 2P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there about 5 V?*

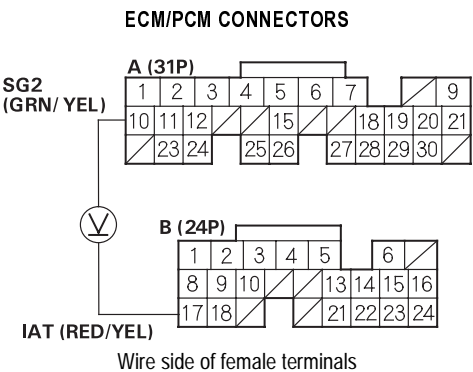
**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A10) and the IAT sensor.■

(cont'd)

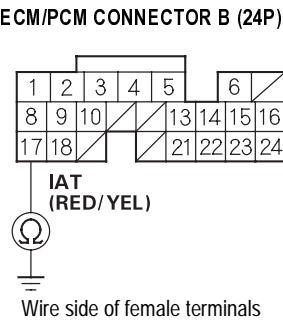
DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

9. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A10 and B17.



Is there about 5 V?

- Yes** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (B17) and the IAT sensor.■
- No** Go to step 10.
10. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
11. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
12. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).
13. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal B17 and body ground.



Is there continuity?

- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (B17) and the IAT sensor.■
- No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■



## DTC 11: IMA Circuit Malfunction

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Start the engine, then let it idle for more than 5 seconds.

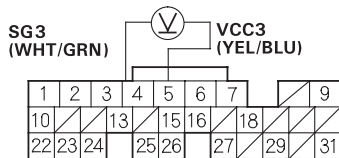
*Is the MIL on and does it indicate DTC 11?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the IMA sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■

3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
5. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals E4 and E5.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR E (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

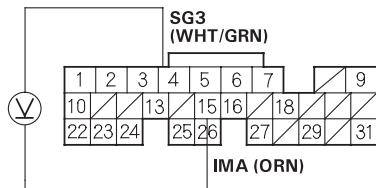
*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

6. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals E4 and E15.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR E (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

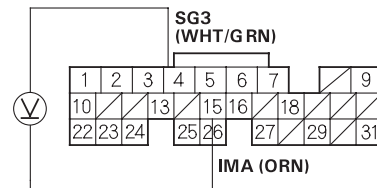
*Is there about 0.5 - 4.5 V?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Go to step 7.

7. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals E4 and E15.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR E (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

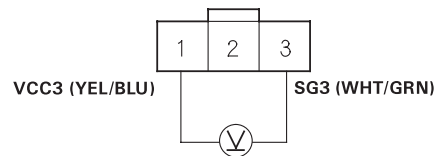
*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Go to step 13.

8. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
9. Disconnect the IMA 3P connector.
10. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
11. Measure voltage between IMA 3P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 3.

IMA 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there about 5 V?*

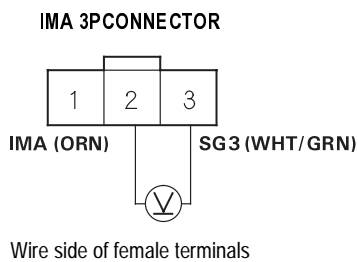
**Yes** Go to step 12.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E4) and the IMA.■

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

12. Measure voltage between IMA 3P connector terminals No. 2 and No. 3.



Is there about 5 V?

**Yes** Replace the IMA.■

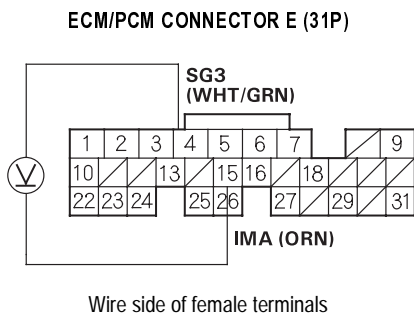
**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E15) and the IMA.■

13. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

14. Disconnect the IMA 3P connector.

15. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

16. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals E4 and E15.

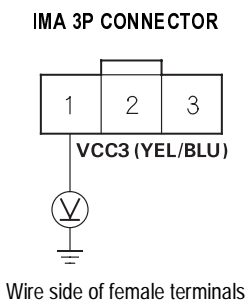


Is there about 5 V?

**Yes** Replace the IMA.■

**No** Go to step 17.

17. Measure voltage between IMA connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.



Is there about 5 V?

**Yes** Go to step 18.

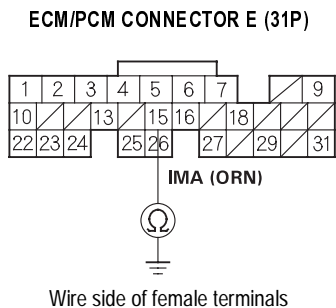
**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E5) and the IMA.■

18. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

19. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

20. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).

21. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal E15 and body ground.



Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E15) and the IMA.

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■



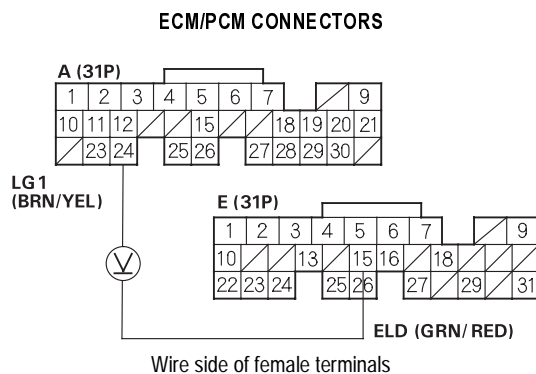
## DTC 20: ELD Circuit Malfunction

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Start the engine and keep engine speed at idle.
3. Turn the headlights on.  
*Does the MIL indicate DTC 20?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the ELD and at the ECM/PCM.■

4. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
5. Start the engine and let it idle.
6. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A24 and E15.
7. While measuring voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A24 and E15, turn the headlights on (low).



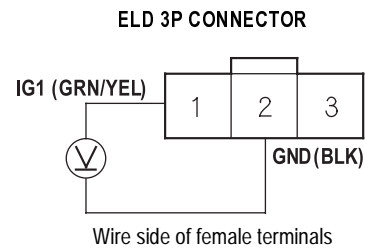
*Does the voltage drop when the headlights are turned on?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Go to step 8.

8. Turn the ignition switch and headlights OFF.
9. Disconnect the ELD 3P connector.
10. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

11. Measure voltage between ELD 3P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2.

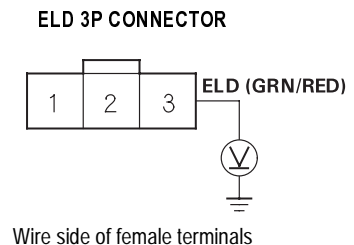


*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 12.

**No** Go to step 19.

12. Measure voltage between ELD 3P connector terminal No. 3 and body ground.



*Is there about 5 V?*

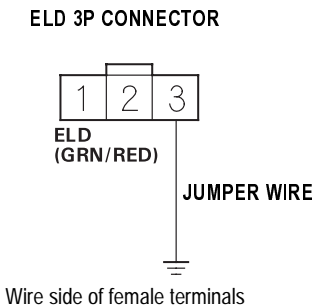
**Yes** Replace the under-hood fuse/relay box.■

**No** Go to step 13.

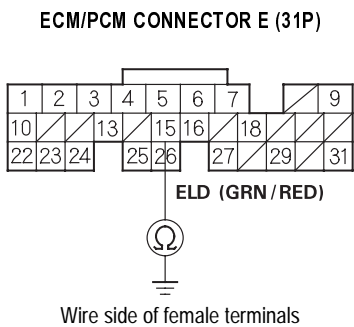
(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

- 13. Turn the ignition switch OFF
- 14. Connect ELD 3P connector terminal No. 3 and body ground with a jumper wire.



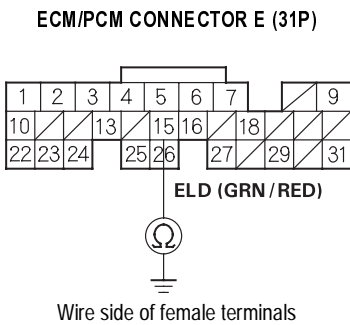
- 15. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).
- 16. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
- 17. Check for continuity between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal E15.



Is there continuity?

- Yes** Go to step 18.
- No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E15) and the ELD.

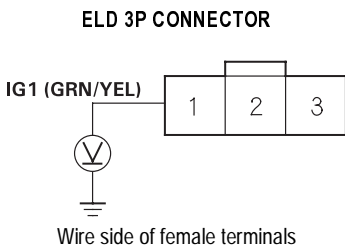
- 18. Check for continuity between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal E15.



Is there continuity?

- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E15) and the ELD.■
- No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

- 19. Measure voltage between ELD 3P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.



Is there battery voltage?

- Yes** Repair open in the wire between the ELD and G201.■
- No** Check the No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box. If the fuse is OK, repair open in the wire between No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse and the ELD.■



## DTC 45: Fuel System Malfunction

NOTE: If some of the DTCs listed below are stored at the same time as DTC 45, troubleshoot those DTCs first, then recheck for DTC 45.

### DTC 3: MAP Sensor

### DTC 41: Primary HO2S (Sensor 1) Heater

### DTC 63: Secondary (Sensor 2) HO2S

### DTC 65: Secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) Heater

### DTC 22: VTEC System

### DTC 56: VTC Oil Control Solenoid Valve

### DTC 57: CMP Sensor

1. Recheck the fuel pressure (see page 11-154).

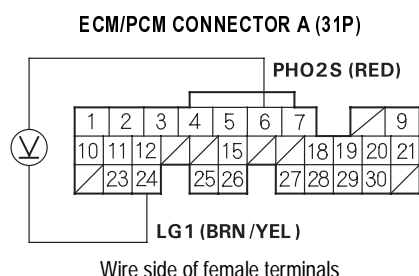
Is fuel pressure OK?

**Yes** Go to step 2.

**No** Check these items:■

- If the pressure is too high. Check the fuel pressure regulator.
- If the pressure is too low. Check the fuel pump, the fuel feed pipe, the fuel filter, and the fuel pressure regulator.

2. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on.
3. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A6 and A24.

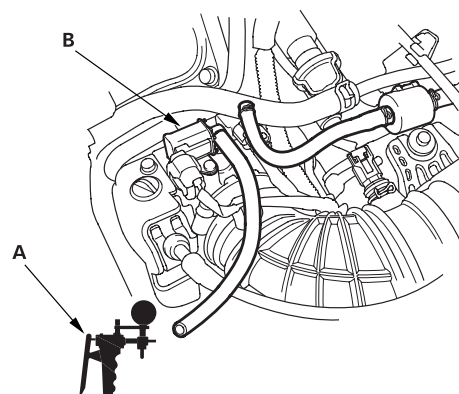


Does it stay at less than 0.3 V or more than 0.6 V?

**Yes** Replace the primary HO2S (Sensor 1).■

**No** Go to step 4.

4. With a vacuum pump, apply vacuum to the EVAP canister purge valve from the intake manifold side.



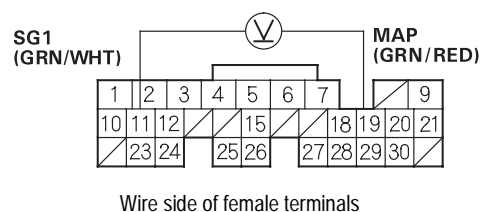
Does it hold vacuum?

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Replace the EVAP canister purge valve.■

5. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A11 and A19.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)



Is there about 3 V?

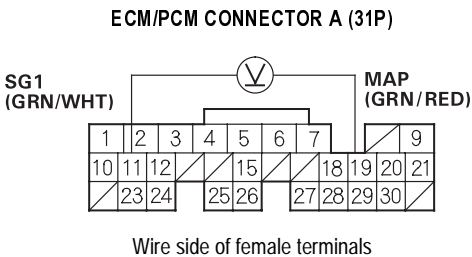
**Yes** Go to step 6.

**No** Replace the MAP sensor.■

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

- 6. Start the engine.
- 7. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals A11 and A19.



Is there 1.5 V or less within 1 second after starting the engine?

- Yes** Check the valve clearance and adjust if necessary. If the valve clearances are OK, replace the injector.■
- No** Replace the MAP sensor.■





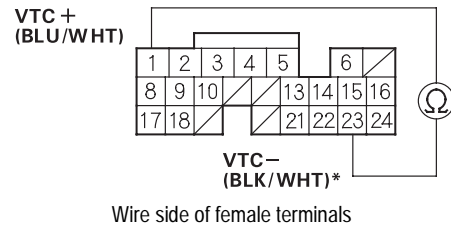
## DTC 56: VTC Oil Control Solenoid Valve Malfunction

NOTE: Information marked with asterisk (\*) applies to VTC- line

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle.  
*Is DTC 56 indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 6.  
**No** Go to step 3.
3. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on.
4. Test-drive at a steady speed between 30 - 60 km/h (20 - 40 mph) for 10 minutes.
5. Jump the SCS line (see step 2 on page 77-3).  
*Is DTC 56 indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 16.  
**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the VTC oil control solenoid valve and at the ECM/PCM.■
6. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
7. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).
8. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

9. Measure resistance between ECM/PCM connector terminal B1 and B23\*.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR B (24P)



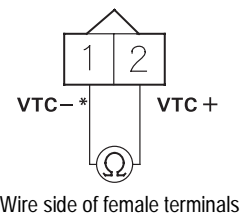
*Is there 6.75 - 8.25 Ω?*

**Yes** Go to step 14.

**No** Go to step 10.

10. Disconnect the VTC oil control solenoid valve 2P connector.
11. Measure resistance between VTC oil control solenoid valve 2P connector terminal No. 1\* and No. 2.

VTC OIL CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE 2P CONNECTOR



*Is there 6.75 - 8.25 Ω?*

**Yes** Go to step 12.

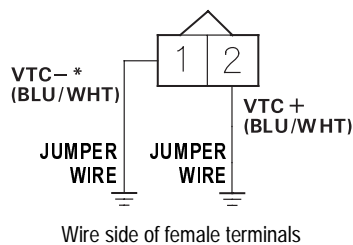
**No** Replace the VTC oil control solenoid valve.■

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

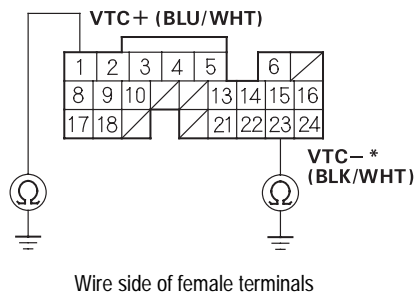
12. Connect VTC oil control solenoid valve 2P connector terminals No. 1, No. 2 and body ground with a jumper wire individually.

VTC OIL CONTROL SOLENOID VALVE 2P CONNECTOR



13. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal B1, B23 and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR B (24P)



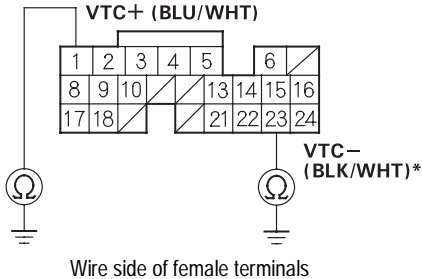
Is there continuity?

**Yes** Go to step 14.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (B1, B23\*) and the VTC oil control solenoid valve.■

14. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal B1, B23\* and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR B (24P)



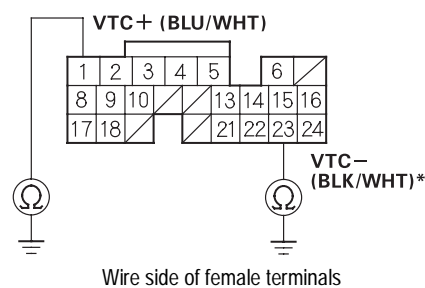
Is there continuity?

**Yes** Go to step 15.

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away with a known-good ECM/PCM, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

15. Disconnect the VTC oil control solenoid valve 2P connector.
16. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal B1, B23\* and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR B (24P)



Is there continuity?

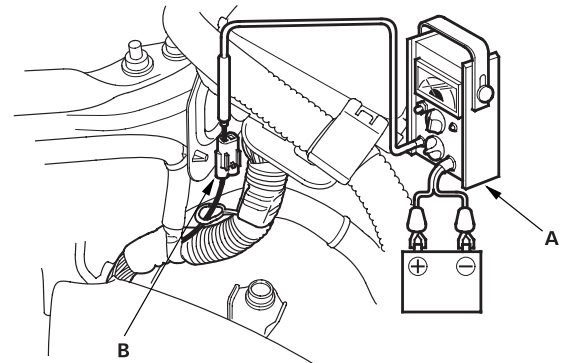
**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (B1, B23\*) and the VTC oil control solenoid valve.■

**No** Replace the VTC oil control solenoid valve.■



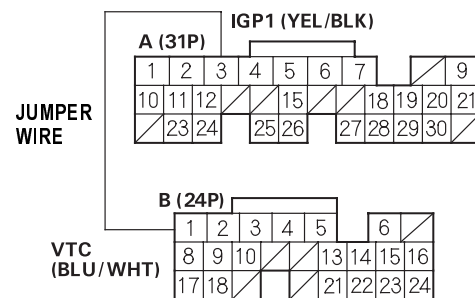
17. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
18. Watch the low oil pressure light.  
*Is the low oil pressure light on?*  
**Yes** Check the oil pressure (see page 08-4).■  
**No** Go to step 19.
19. Check the VTC oil control solenoid valve (see page 11-137).  
*Is the VTC oil control solenoid valve OK?*  
**Yes** Go to step 20.  
**No** Clean the ports of the VTC oil control solenoid valve, or replace the VTC oil control solenoid valve.■
20. Install the VTC oil control solenoid valve.

21. Connect a tachometer (A) to the test tachometer connector (B).



22. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 700 - 1,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ).
23. Connect the ECM/PCM connector terminal A3 and B1 with a jumper wire.

## ECM/PCM CONNECTORS



Wire side of female terminals

*Did the engine stall or run rough?*

- Yes** Test-drive at a steady speed between 30 - 60 km/h (20 - 40 mph) for 10 minutes. If temporary DTC P0011 is indicated, substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away with a known-good ECM/PCM, replace the original ECM/PCM.■
- No** Go to step 24.

(cont'd)

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

## 24. Check the VTC actuator (see page 06-8).

*Is the VTC actuator OK?*

**Yes** Remove the auto-tensioner (see page 04-31) and replace the VTC oil filter. Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away with a known-good ECM/PCM, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Replace the VTC actuator.■

## DTC 57: CMP Sensor Circuit Malfunction

## 1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).

## 2. Start the engine.

*Is the MIL on and does it indicated DTC 57?*

**Yes** Go to step 3.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the CMP sensor and at the ECM/PCM.■

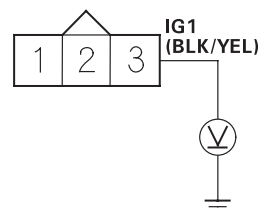
## 3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

## 4. Disconnect the CMP sensor 3P connector.

## 5. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

## 6. Measure voltage between CMP sensor 3P connector terminal No. 3 and body ground.

CMP SENSER 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

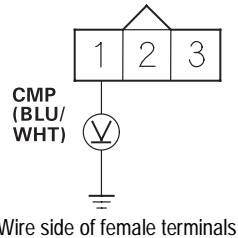
**Yes** Go to step 7.

**No** Check the No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box. If the fuse OK, repair open in the wire between the CMP sensor and No. 4 ACG (10A) fuse.■



7. Measure voltage between CMP sensor 3P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

**CMP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR**



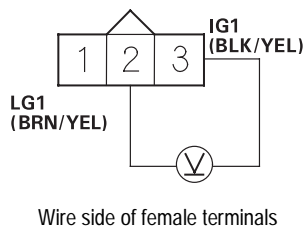
*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Go to step 8.

**No** Go to step 10.

8. Measure voltage between CMP sensor 3P connector terminals No. 2 and No. 3.

**CMP SENSOR 3P CONNECTOR**



*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 9.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the CMP sensor and G101.■

9. Substitute a known-good CMP sensor and recheck.

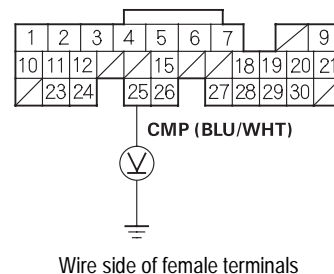
*Is the MIL on and does it indicated DTC 57?*

**Yes** Go to step 14.

**No** Replace the original CMP sensor.■

10. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal A25 and body ground.

**ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)**



*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A25) and CMP sensor.■

**No** Go to step 11.

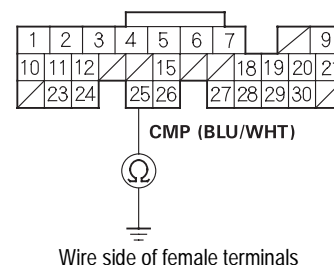
11. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

12. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

13. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).

14. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal A25 and body ground.

**ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)**



*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A25) and the CMP sensor.■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away with a known-good ECM/PCM, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

(cont'd)

**DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)**

15. Check the VTC oil control solenoid valve ([see page 11-137](#)).

*Is the VTC oil control solenoid valve OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 16.

**No** Clean the VTC oil control solenoid valve, or replace the VTC oil control solenoid valve.■

16. Remove the head cover and check the timing chain ([see page 06-15](#)).

*Is the timing chain OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 17.

**No** Replace the timing chain.■

17. Check the slack in the cam chain ([see page 06-22](#)).

*Is the cam chain OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 18.

**No** Replace the cam chain.■

18. Check the VTC actuator ([see page 06-8](#)).

*Is the VTC actuator OK?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck ([see page 11-5](#)). If the symptom/indication goes away with a known-good ECM/PCM, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Replace the VTC actuator.■



## DTC 63: Secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) Circuit Malfunction

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Jump the SCS line (see page 77-3).
3. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle for at least 1 minute before test-driving.

*Is the MIL on and does it indicate DTC 63?*

**Yes** Go to step 4.

**No** Intermittent failure, system is OK at this time. Check for poor connections or loose wires at the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) and at the ECM/PCM.■

4. Inspect fuel pressure (see page 11-154).

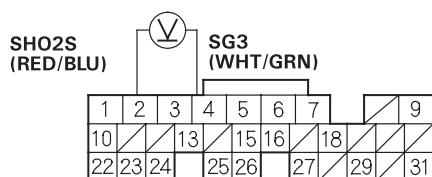
*Is it normal?*

**Yes** Go to step 5.

**No** Check for fuel supply system.■

5. Let it idle for at least 1 minute before test-driving.
6. Open the throttle wide open, then quickly release it.
7. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals E2 and E4.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR E (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

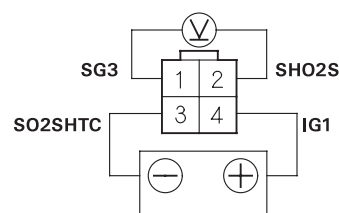
*Is the voltage above 0.6 V at wide open throttle to 4,500 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) and below 0.4 V when the throttle is quickly released from 4,500 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ )?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Go to step 7.

8. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
9. Disconnect the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) 4P connector.
10. At the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) harness side, connect the battery positive terminal to terminal No. 4 and battery negative terminal to terminal No. 3.
11. Start the engine.
12. After 2 minute, measure voltage between secondary HO2S (Sensor 2) 4P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2.

SECONDARY HO2S (SENSOR 2) 4P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is the voltage above 0.6 V at wide open throttle to 4,500 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) and below 0.4 V when the throttle is quickly released from 4,500 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ )?*

**Yes** Repair open or short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E2, E4) and the secondary HO2S (Sensor 2).■

**No** Replace the secondary HO2S (sensor 2).■

## DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

## DTC 71: No. 1 Cylinder Misfire

## DTC 72: No. 2 Cylinder Misfire

## DTC 73: No. 3 Cylinder Misfire

## DTC 74: No. 4 Cylinder Misfire

NOTE: If some of the DTCs listed below are stored at the same time as a misfire DTC, troubleshoot those DTCs first, then recheck for the misfire DTC.

1. Reset the ECM/PCM (see page 11-4).
2. Start the engine, and listen for a clicking sound at the injector at the problem cylinder.  
*Does it click?*  
**Yes** Go to step 3.  
**No** Go to step 30.
3. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
4. Exchange the ignition coil from the problem cylinder with one from another cylinder.
5. Start the engine. Hold the engine at 3,000 rpm ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ) with no load (in Park or neutral) until the radiator fan comes on, then let it idle with the headlights, rear defogger, blower fan and air conditioner turned off.
6. Jump the SCS line (see page 77-3).
7. Test-drive the vehicle several times under various conditions.  
*Is DTC 71, 72, 73 or 74 indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 8.  
**No** Intermittent misfire due to poor contact at the ignition coil connector (no misfire at this time).■

8. Determine which cylinder(s) had the misfire.  
*Does the misfire occur in the other cylinder whose ignition coil was exchanged?*  
**Yes** Replace the faulty ignition coil (see page 04-21).■  
**No** Go to step 9.
9. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
10. Exchange the spark plug from the problem cylinder with one from another cylinder.
11. Test-drive the vehicle several times under various conditions.  
*Is DTC 71, 72, 73 or 74 indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 12.  
**No** Intermittent misfire due to spark plug fouling, etc. (on misfire at that time).■
12. Determine which cylinder(s) had the misfire.  
*Does the misfire occur in the other cylinder whose spark plug was exchanged?*  
**Yes** Replace the faulty spark plug.■  
**No** Go to step 13.

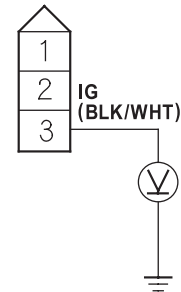




13. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
14. Exchange the injector from the problem cylinder with one from the another cylinder.
15. Let the engine idle for 2 minutes.
16. Test-drive the vehicle several times under various conditions.  
*Is DTC 71, 72, 73 or 74 indicated?*  
**Yes** Go to step 17.  
**No** Intermittent misfire due to bad contact in the injector connector (no misfire at this time).■
17. Determine which cylinder(s) had the misfire.  
*Does the misfire occur in the other cylinder whose injector was exchanged?*  
**Yes** Replace the faulty injector.■  
**No** Go to step 18.
18. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
19. Disconnect the ignition coil 3P connector from the problem cylinder.
20. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

21. Measure voltage between ignition coil 3P connector terminal No. 3 and body ground.

IGNITION COIL 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

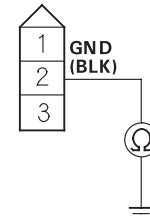
**Yes** Go to step 22.

**No** Repair open or short in the wire between the No. 1 IGN COIL (15A) fuse and the ignition coil.■

22. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

23. Check for continuity between ignition coil 3P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.

IGNITION COIL 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Go to step 24.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ignition coil and G101.■

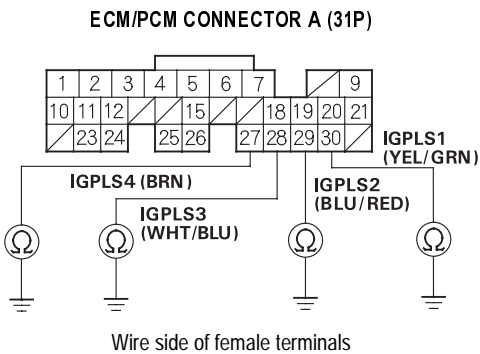
24. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

25. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

26. Check for continuity between body ground and the ECM/PCM connector terminal (see table).



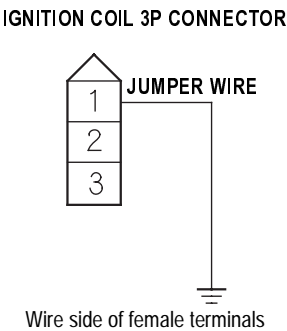
PROBLEM CYLINDER	DTC	ECM/PCM TERMINAL	WIRE COLOR
No. 1	DTC 71	A30	YEL/GRN
No. 2	DTC 72	A29	BLU/RED
No. 3	DTC 73	A28	WHT/BLU
No. 4	DTC 74	A27	BRN

Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM and the ignition coil.■

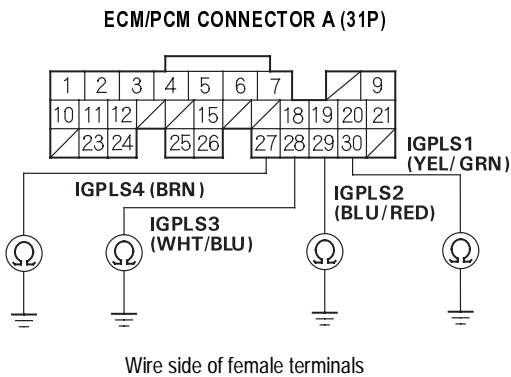
**No** Go to step 27.

27. Connect the ignition coil 3P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground with a jumper wire (see table).



PROBLEM CYLINDER	DTC	WIRE COLOR
No. 1	DTC 71	YEL/GRN
No. 2	DTC 72	BLU/RED
No. 3	DTC 73	WHT/BLU
No. 4	DTC 74	BRN

28. Check for continuity between body ground and the ECM/PCM connector terminal (see table).



PROBLEM CYLINDER	DTC	ECM/PCM TERMINAL	WIRE COLOR
No. 1	DTC 71	A30	YEL/GRN
No. 2	DTC 72	A29	BLU/RED
No. 3	DTC 73	A28	WHT/BLU
No. 4	DTC 74	A27	BRN

Is there continuity?

**Yes** Go to step 29.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM and the ignition coil.■

29. Check the engine compression.

Is the engine compression OK?

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Repair the engine.■

30. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

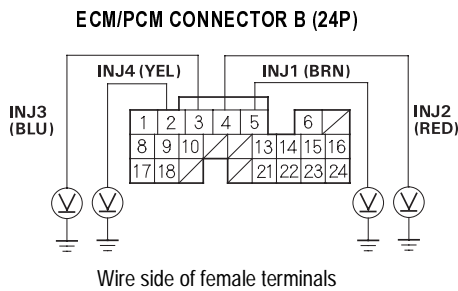
31. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector B (24P).

32. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.

33. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).



34. Measure voltage between body ground and the ECM/PCM connector terminal (see table).



PROBLEM CYLINDER	DTC	ECM/PCM TERMINAL	WIRE COLOR
No. 1	DTC 71	B5	BRN
No. 2	DTC 72	B4	RED
No. 3	DTC 73	B3	BLU
No. 4	DTC 74	B2	YEL

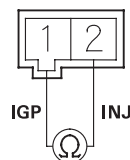
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 35.

**No** Go to step 43.

35. Turn the ignition switch OFF, and remove the engine cover.
36. Disconnect the injector 2P connector on the problem cylinder.
37. Measure the resistance between the injector 2P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 2.

**INJECTOR 2P CONNECTOR**



Terminal side of male terminals

*Is there 10Ω - 13 Ω?*

**Yes** Go to step 38.

**No** Replace the injector (see page 11-117).■

38. Exchange the injector from the problem cylinder with one from another cylinder.

39. Jump the SCS line (see page 77-3).

40. Let the engine idle for 2 minutes.

41. Test-drive the vehicle several times under various conditions.

*Is DTC 71, 72, 73 or 74 indicated?*

**Yes** Go to step 42.

**No** Intermittent misfire due to bad contact in the injector connector (no misfire at this time).■

42. Determine which cylinder(s) had the misfire.

*Does the misfire occur in the other cylinder whose injector was exchanged?*

**Yes** Replace the faulty injector.■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

43. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

44. Remove the engine cover.

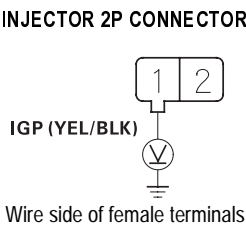
45. Disconnect the injector 2P connector on the problem cylinder.

46. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

(cont'd)

DTC Troubleshooting (cont'd)

47. Measure voltage between the injector 2P connector terminals No. 1 and body ground.



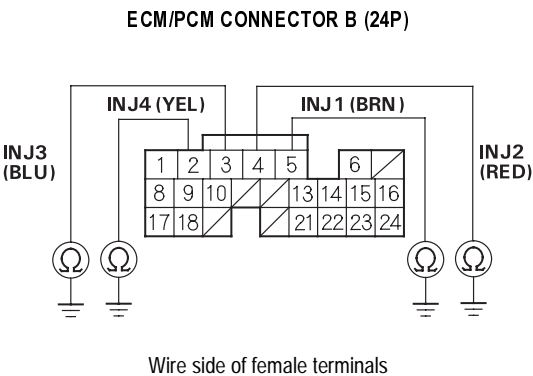
Is there battery voltage?

**Yes** Go to step 48.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the injector and the PGM-FI main relay.■

48. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

49. Check for continuity between body ground and the appropriate ECM/PCM connector terminal (see table).



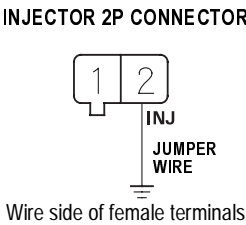
PROBLEM CYLINDER	DTC	ECM/PCM TERMINAL	WIRE COLOR
No. 1	DTC 71	B5	BRN
No. 2	DTC 72	B4	RED
No. 3	DTC 73	B3	BLU
No. 4	DTC 74	B2	YEL

Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM and the injector.■

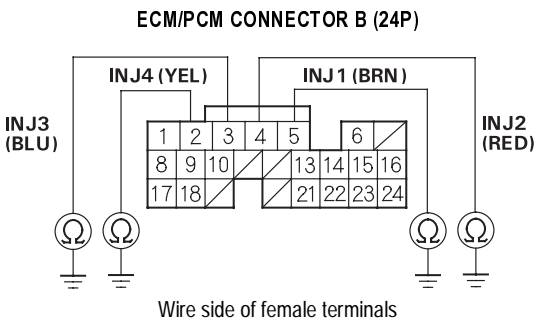
**No** Go to step 50.

50. Connect the appropriate injector 2P connector terminal No. 2 to body ground with a jumper wire (see table).



PROBLEM CYLINDER	DTC	WIRE COLOR
No. 1	DTC 71	BRN
No. 2	DTC 72	RED
No. 3	DTC 73	BLU
No. 4	DTC 74	YEL

51. Check for continuity between body ground and the appropriate ECM/PCM connector terminal (see table).



PROBLEM CYLINDER	DTC	ECM/PCM TERMINAL	WIRE COLOR
No. 1	DTC 71	B5	BRN
No. 2	DTC 72	B4	RED
No. 3	DTC 73	B3	BLU
No. 4	DTC 74	B2	YEL

Is there continuity?

**Yes** Replace the injector, then recheck.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between the ECM/PCM and the injector.■



## MIL Circuit Troubleshooting

1. Turn the ignition switch ON (II) and watch the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL).

*Does the MIL come on and stay on?*

**Yes** If the MIL always come on and stays on, go to step 74. But if the MIL sometimes works normally, first check for these problems:

- An intermittent short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E29) and the Data Link Connector (DLC).
- An intermittent short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (E31) and the gauge assembly.

**No** If the MIL is always off, go to step 2. But if the MIL sometimes works normally, first check for these problems:

- A loose No. 10 METER (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.
- A loose No. 20 IG (50A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- A loose No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.
- A loose No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.
- A poor connection at ECM/PCM terminal E31.
- An intermittent open in the GRN/WHT wire between the ECM/PCM (E31) and the gauge assembly.
- An intermittent short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A21) and the manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor, countershaft speed sensor (A/T).
- An intermittent short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A20) and the throttle position (TP) sensor, mainshaft speed sensor (A/T).

2. KG, KS, KE, KR models:

Turn the ignition switch OFF and press the inertia switch button.

3. KG, KS, KE, KR models:

Turn the ignition switch ON(II).

*Does the MIL come on for 2 seconds after the ignition switch is turned ON (II)?*

**Yes** Intermittent failure system is OK at this time.■

**No** Go to step 4.

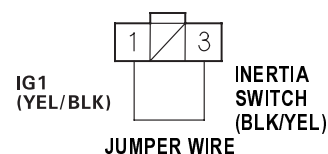
4. KG, KS, KE, KR models:

Turn the ignition switch OFF and disconnect the inertia switch 3P connector

5. KG, KS, KE, KR models:

Connect inertia switch 3P connector terminals No. 1 and No. 3 with a jumper wire.

INERTIA SWITCH 3P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

6. KG, KS, KE, KR models:

Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

*Does the MIL come on for 2 seconds after the ignition switch is turned ON (II)?*

**Yes** Replace the inertia switch.■

**No** Go to step 7.

7. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

8. Turn the ignition switch ON(II).

*Is the low oil pressure light on?*

**Yes** Go to step 11.

**No** Go to step 9.

9. Inspect the No. 10 METER (7.5A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 10.

**No** Repair short in the wire between No. 10 METER (7.5A) fuse and the gauge assembly. Also replace the No. 10 METER (7.5A) fuse.■

(cont'd)

## MIL Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

10. Inspect the No. 20 IG1 (50A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the No. 20 IG (50A) fuse and the gauge assembly. If the wires are OK, test the ignition switch (see page 22A-63).■

**No** Repair short in the wire between the No. 20 IG (50A) fuse and the under-dash fuse/relay box. Also replace the No. 20 IG (50A) fuse.■

11. Try to start the engine.

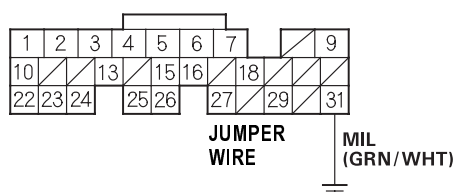
*Does the engine start?*

**Yes** Go to step 12.

**No** Go to step 14.

12. Turn the ignition switch OFF. Connect ECM/PCM connector terminal E31 and body ground with a jumper wire.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR E (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

13. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

*Is the MIL on?*

**Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Check for an open in the wires between the ECM/PCM (E31) and the gauge assembly. Also check for a blown MIL bulb. If the wires and the bulb are OK, replace the gauge assembly.■

14. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

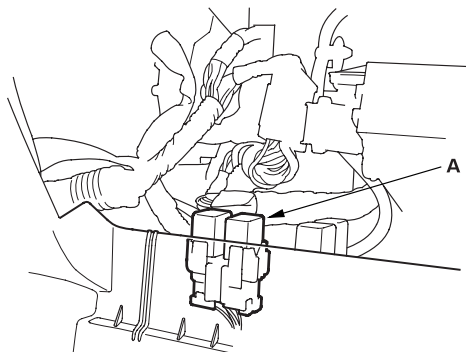
15. Remove and inspect the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 21.

**No** Go to step 16.

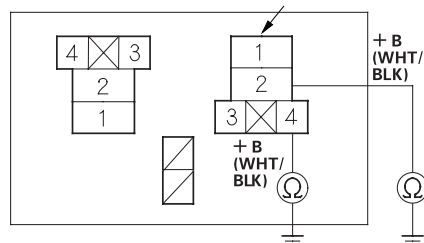
16. Remove the glove box (see page 20-95), PGM-FI main relay 1 (A).



\*:The illustration shows LHD model.

17. Check for continuity between body ground and PGM-FI main relay 1 4P connector terminals No. 2 and No. 4 individually.

PGM-FI MAIN RELAY 1 4P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

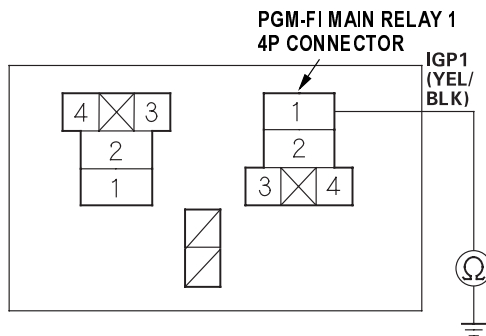
**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse and the PGM-FI main relay 1. Also replace the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse.■

**No** Go to step 18.



18. Disconnect each of the component or the connector sensors below, one at a time, and check for continuity between the PGM-FI main relay 1 4P connector terminal No. 1 and body ground.

- PGM-FI main relay 2
- ECM/PCM connector A (31P)
- Each injector 2P connector
- Idle air control (IAC) valve 3P connector
- Top dead center (TDC) sensor 2P connector
- Crankshaft position (CKP) sensor 3P connector



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

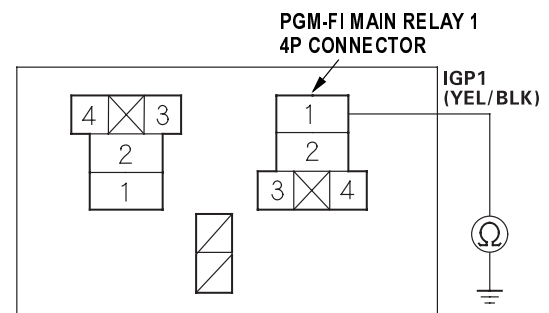
**Yes** Go to step 19.

**No** Replace the item that made continuity to body ground go away when disconnected. If the item is the ECM/PCM, substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM. Also replace the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse.■

19. Disconnect the connectors of all following items.

- PGM-FI main relay 2
- ECM/PCM connector A (31P)
- Injectors
- Idle air control (IAC) valve
- Top dead center (TDC) sensor
- Crankshaft position (CKP) sensor

20. Check for continuity between PGM-FI main relay 1 4P connector terminals No. 1 and body ground.



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between PGM-FI main relay 1 and each item. Also replace the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse.■

**No** Replace the PGM-FI main relay 1. Also replace the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse.■

21. Remove and inspect the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse in the under-dash fuse/relay box.

*Is the fuse OK?*

**Yes** Go to step 32.

**No** Go to step 22.

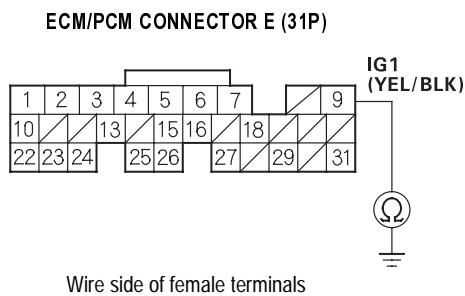
22. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

23. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).

(cont'd)

MIL Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

24. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal E9 and body ground.

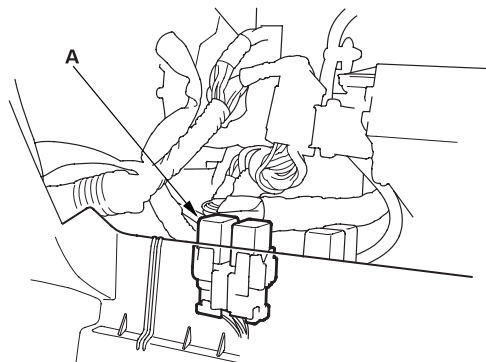


Is there continuity?

**Yes** Go to step 25.

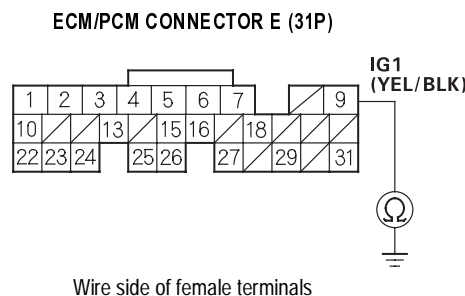
**No** Replace the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse, and substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

25. Remove the glove box (see page 20-95), PGM-FI main relay 2 (A).



\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

26. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal E9 and body ground.



Is there continuity?

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse and the ECM/PCM (E9), or the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse and the PGM-FI main relay 2. Also replace the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse.■

**No** Go to step 27.

27. Fold the rear seats forward, and pull back the carpet to expose the access panel.

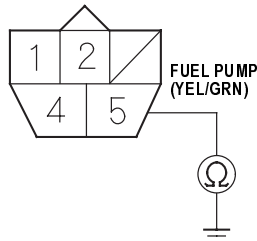
28. Remove the access panel from the floor. Disconnect the fuel pump 5P connector.





29. Check for continuity between fuel pump 5P connector terminal No. 5 and body ground.

FUEL PUMP 5P CONNECTOR



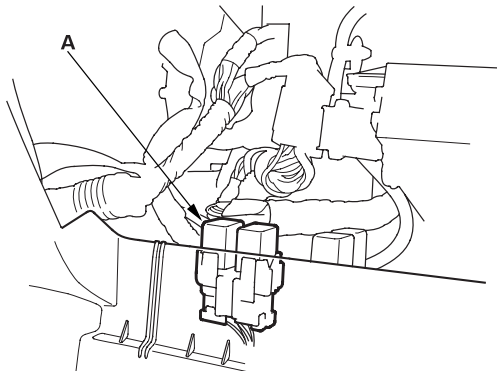
Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between the fuel pump and the PGM-FI main relay 2. Also replace the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse.■

**No** Go to step 30.

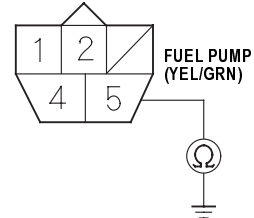
30. Reinstall PGM-FI main relay 2 (A).



\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

31. Check for continuity between fuel pump 5P connector terminal No. 5 and body ground.

FUEL PUMP 5P CONNECTOR



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Replace PGM-FI main relay 2. Also replace the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse.■

**No** Check the fuel pump, and replace it as necessary. Also replace the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse.■

32. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

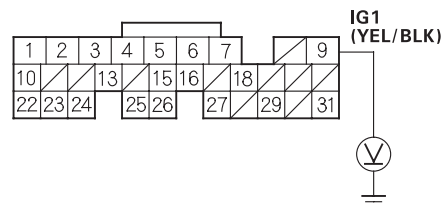
33. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).

34. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.

35. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

36. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminals E9 and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR E (31P)



Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

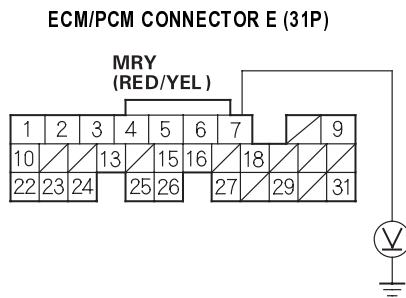
**Yes** Go to step 37.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 17 FUEL PUMP (15A) fuse and the ECM/PCM (E9).■

(cont'd)

## MIL Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

37. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal E7 and body ground.



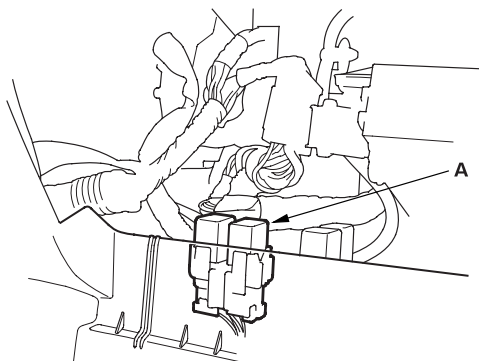
Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 41.

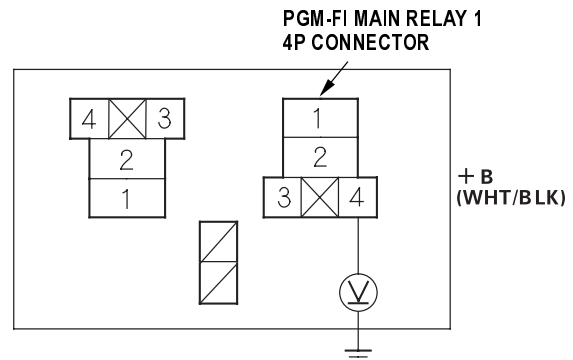
**No** Go to step 38.

38. Turn the ignition switch OFF and remove PGM-FI main relay 1 (A).



\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

39. Measure voltage between PGM-FI main relay 1 4P connector terminal No. 4 and body ground.



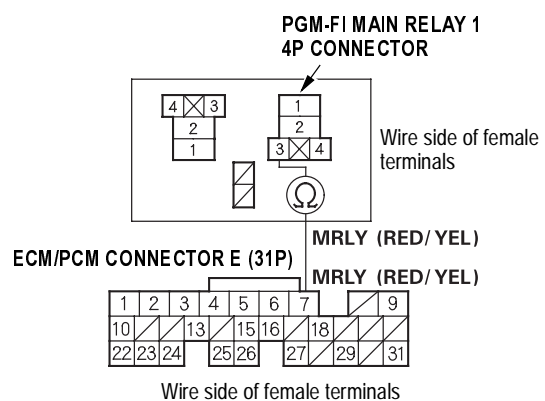
Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 40.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse and PGM-FI main relay 1.■

40. Check for continuity between PGM-FI main relay 1 4P connector terminal No. 3 and ECM/PCM connector terminal E7.



*Is there continuity?*

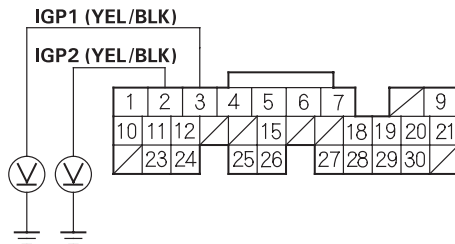
**Yes** Test PGM-FI main relay 1 (see page 22A-60). If the relay is OK, substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between PGM-FI main relay 1 and the ECM/PCM (E7).■



41. Disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
42. Reconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).
43. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
44. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
45. Measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminals A2 and A3 individually.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)



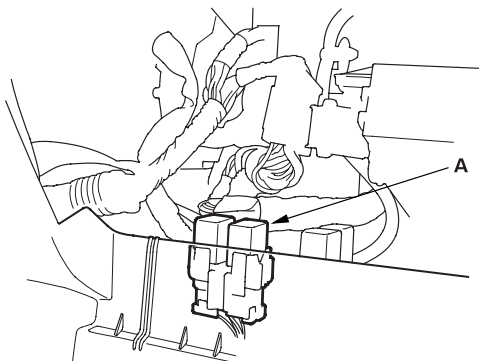
Wire side of female terminals

*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 51.

**No** Go to step 46.

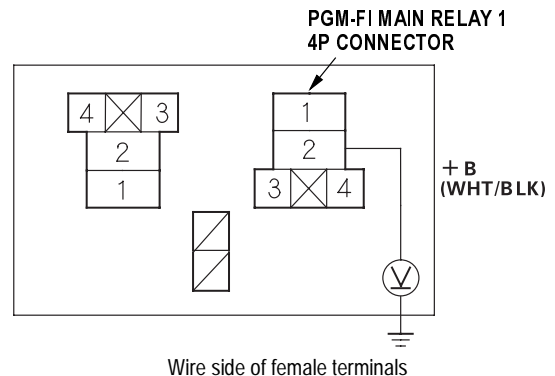
46. Turn the ignition switch OFF and remove PGM-FI main relay 1 (A).



\*: The illustration shows LHD model.

47. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

48. Measure voltage between PGM-FI main relay 1 4P connector terminal No. 2 and body ground.



Wire side of female terminals

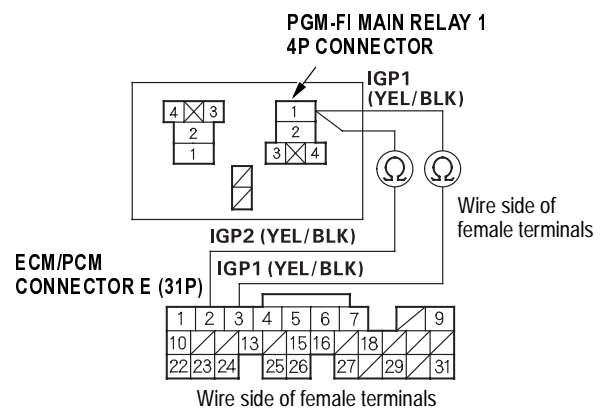
*Is there battery voltage?*

**Yes** Go to step 49.

**No** Repair open in the wire between the No. 6 ECU (ECM/PCM) (15A) fuse and PGM-FI main relay 1.■

49. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

50. Check for continuity between PGM-FI main relay 1 4P connector terminal No. 1 and ECM/PCM connector terminals A2 and A3 individually.



*Is there continuity?*

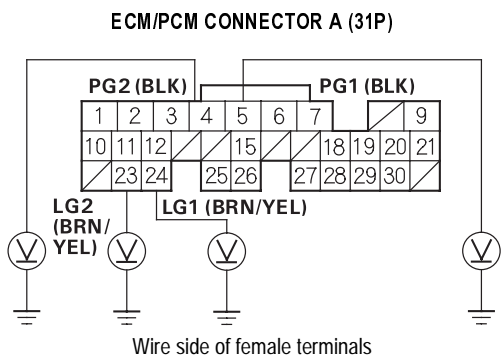
**Yes** Replace the PGM-FI main relay 1.■

**No** Repair open in the wire between PGM-FI main relay 1 and the ECM/PCM (A2, A3).■

(cont'd)

MIL Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

51. Measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminals A4, A5, A23 and A24 individually.

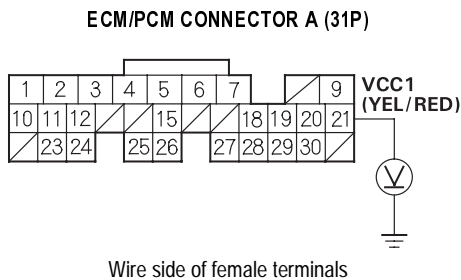


Is there less than 1.0 V?

**Yes** Repair open in the wire(s) that had more than 1.0 V between G101 and ECM/PCM (A4, A5, A23, A24).■

**No** Go to step 52.

52. Measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminals A21.



Is there about 5 V?

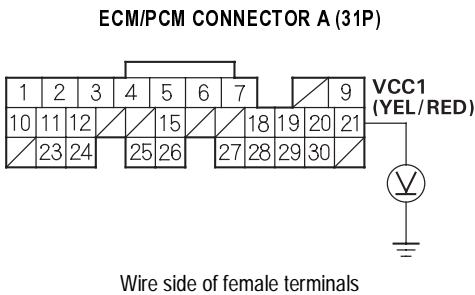
**Yes** Go to step 59.

**No** Go to step 53.

53. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

54. Disconnect the 3P connector from each of these sensors, one at a time, and measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal A21 with the ignition switch ON (II).

- Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor
- Countershaft speed sensor (A/T)



Is there about 5 V?

**Yes** Replace the sensor that restored 5 V when disconnected.■

**No** Go to step 55.

55. Turn the ignition switch OFF and disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

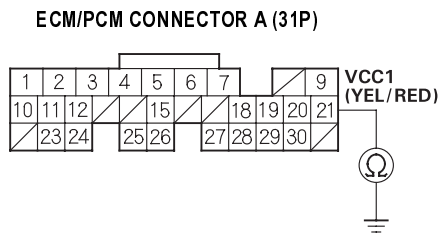
56. Disconnect the 3P connector from the following sensors.

- Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor
- Countershaft speed sensor (A/T)

57. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).



58. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal A21 and body ground.

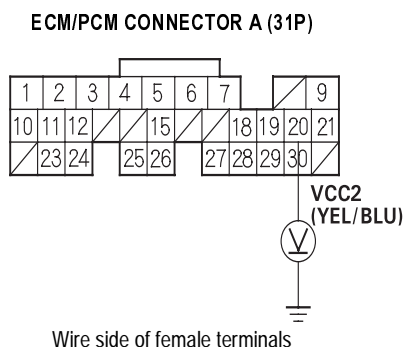


*Is there continuity?*

**Yes** Repair short in the wire between ECM/PCM (A21) and the MAP sensor, countershaft speed sensor (A/T).■

**No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■

59. Measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminals A20.



*Is there about 5 V?*

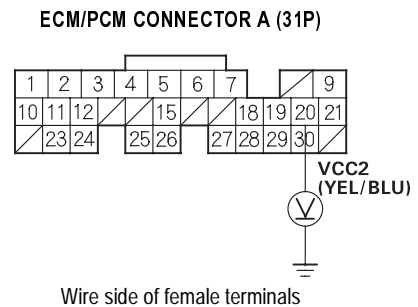
**Yes** Go to step 66.

**No** Go to step 60.

60. Turn the ignition switch OFF.

61. Disconnect the 3P connector from each of these sensors, one at a time, and measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal A20 with the ignition switch ON (II).

- Throttle position (TP) sensor
- Mainshaft speed sensor (A/T)



*Is there about 5 V?*

**Yes** Replace the sensor that restored about 5 V when disconnected.■

**No** Go to step 62.

62. Turn the ignition switch OFF and disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

63. Disconnect the 3P connector from the following sensors.

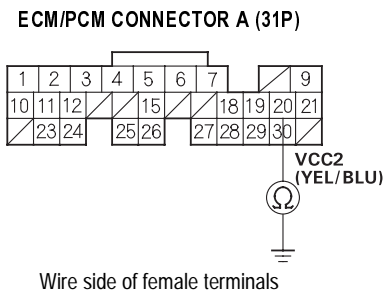
- Throttle position (TP) sensor
- Mainshaft speed sensor (A/T)

64. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector A (31P).

(cont'd)

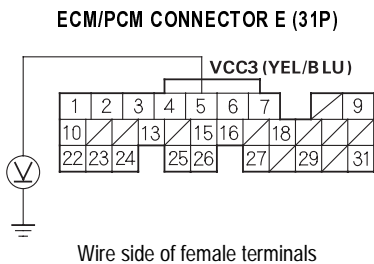
## MIL Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

65. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal A20 and body ground.



Is there continuity?

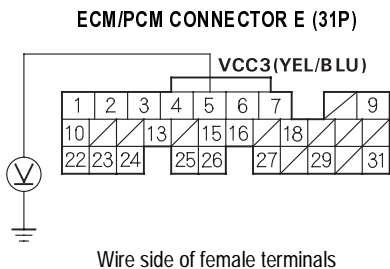
- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the ECM/PCM (A20) and the TP sensor, mainshaft speed sensor (A/T).■
- No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■
66. Measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminals E5.



Is there about 5 V?

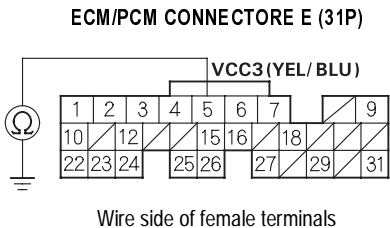
- Yes** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■
- No** Go to step 67.
67. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
68. Disconnect the idle mixture adjuster (IMA) sensor 3P connector.
69. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

70. Measure voltage between body ground and ECM/PCM connector terminal E5.



Is there about 5 V?

- Yes** Replace the IMA.■
- No** Go to step 71.
71. Turn the ignition switch OFF and disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
72. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).
73. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal E5 and body ground.



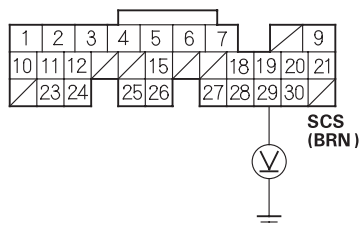
Is there continuity?

- Yes** Repair short in the wire between ECM/PCM (E5) and the IMA.■
- No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■



74. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
75. Jump the SCS line (see step 2 on [page 77-3](#)).
76. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), and read the MIL.  
*Does the OBD II scan tool/Honda PGM Tester communicate with the ECM/PCM?*  
**Yes** Go to the DTC Troubleshooting index.■  
**No** Go to step 77.
77. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal E29 and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR A (31P)



*Is there about 5 V (or battery voltage)?*

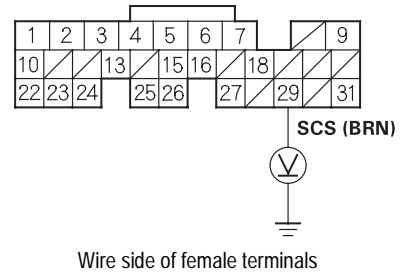
**Yes** Repair open in the wire between the DLC and the ECM/PCM (E3, E29). After repairing it, check the DTC and go to the DTC Troubleshooting Index.■

**No** Go to step 79.

78. Turn the ignition switch OFF.
79. Disconnect the DLC Terminal Box or SCS short connector.
80. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).

81. Measure voltage between ECM/PCM connector terminal E29 and body ground.

ECM/PCM CONNECTOR E (31P)



*Is there about 5 V (or battery voltage)?*

**Yes** Go to step 85.

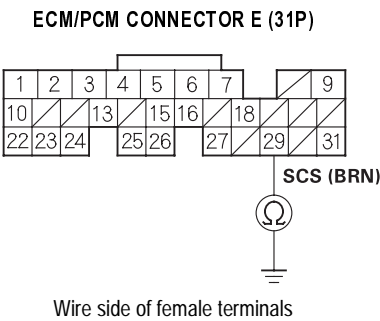
**No** Go to step 82.

82. Turn the ignition switch OFF and disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
83. Disconnect the ECM/PCM connector E (31P).

(cont'd)

MIL Circuit Troubleshooting (cont'd)

84. Check for continuity between ECM/PCM connector terminal E29 and body ground.



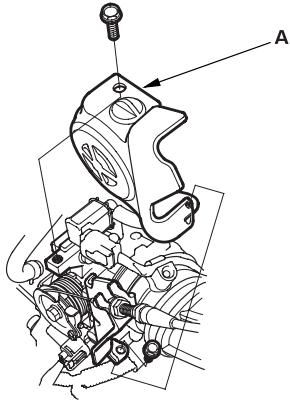
- Is there continuity?
- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the DLC and the ECM/PCM (E29).■
- No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■
85. Turn the ignition switch OFF and disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
86. Disconnect ECM/PCM connector E (31P).
87. Reconnect the negative cable to the battery.
88. Turn the ignition switch ON (II).
- Is the MIL on?
- Yes** Repair short in the wire between the gauge assembly and the ECM/PCM (E31). If the wires are OK, replace the gauge assembly.■
- No** Substitute a known-good ECM/PCM and recheck (see page 11-5). If the symptom/indication goes away, replace the original ECM/PCM.■





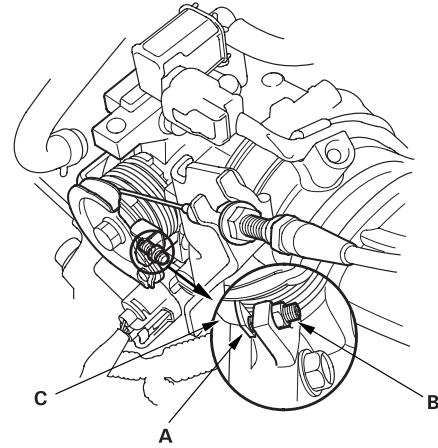
## Throttle Body Test

1. Remove the throttle linkage cover (A).



2. Check the throttle cable operation. The cable should operate without binding or sticking.
  - If the cable is OK, go to step 3.
  - If the cable binds or sticks, check the throttle cable and its routing. If it's faulty, reroute it or replace it and adjust it ([see page 11-183](#)), then go to step 3.
3. Operate the throttle lever by hand to see if the throttle valve and/or shaft are too loose or too tight.
  - If there is excessive play in the throttle valve shaft or the throttle valve binds at the fully closed position, replace the throttle body.
  - If the throttle valve and shaft are OK, go to step 4.

4. Check for clearance (A) between the throttle stop screw (B) and the throttle lever (C) at the fully closed position. If there is any clearance, replace the throttle body ([see page 11-185](#)). Do not adjust the throttle stop screw.



## Automatic Transmission

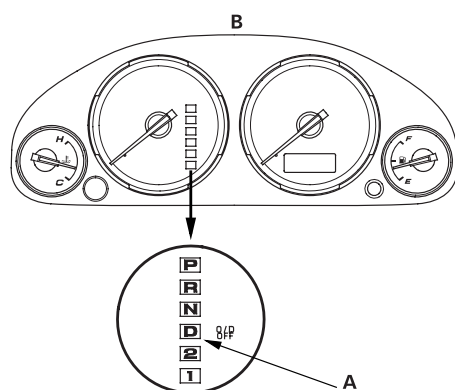
### DTC with [D] Indicator Light Troubleshooting Procedures

#### How to Check for DTCs

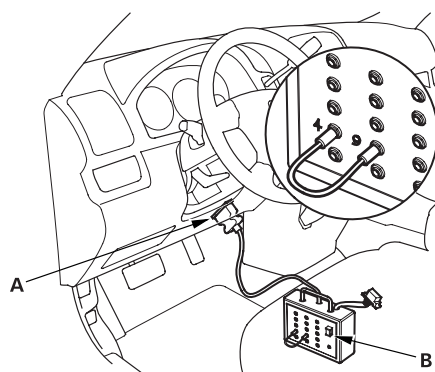
##### Special Tool Required

DLC pin box 07WAJ-0010100

When the PCM senses an abnormality in the input or output systems, the [D] indicator (A) in the gauge assembly (B) will usually blink and/or the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) may come on. When the Data Link Connector (located under the dash behind the center console) is connected with the special tool (DLC Pin Box), and the SCS signal terminal is connected to ground with the jumper wire at the special tool. The [D] indicator will blink the Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) when the ignition switch is turned ON (II).

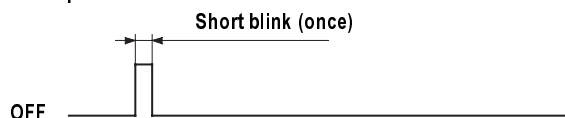


When the [D] indicator has been reported on, connect the DLC (A) with the special tool (DLC Pin Box), then connect the jumper wire between the terminals 4 and 9 at the special tool, and turn the switch (B) on. Turn the ignition switch ON (II), then observe the [D] indicator.

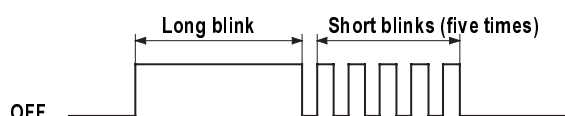


Codes 1 through 9 are indicated by individual short blinks. Code 10 and above are indicated by a series of long and short blinks. One long blink equals 10 short blinks. Add the long and short blinks together to determine the code. After determining the code, refer to the DTC Troubleshooting Index.

#### Example: DTC 1



#### Example: DTC 15



If the [D] indicator and the MIL come on at the same time, or if a driveability problem is suspected, follow this procedure:

1. Record all fuel and emission DTCs, A/T DTCs.
2. If there is fuel and emissions DTC, first check the fuel and emissions system as indicated by the DTC (except for DTC 70 on fuel and emission system, DTC 70 means there is one or more A/T DTCs, and no problems were detected in the fuel and emissions circuit of the PCM).
3. Write down the radio station presets.
4. Reset the memory by removing the No. 6 ECU fuse in the under-hood fuse/relay box for more than 10 seconds.
5. Drive the vehicle for several minutes at speeds over 30 mph (50 km/h), and then recheck for DTC. If the A/T DTC returns, go to the DTC Troubleshooting Index. If the DTC does not return, there was an intermittent problem within the circuit. Make sure all pins and terminals in the circuit are tight, and then go to step 6.
6. Reset the radio preset stations, and set the clock.



## DTC Troubleshooting Index by Number of [D] Indicator Blinking

DTC Number of [D] Indicator Blink	Detection Item	[D] Indicator	MIL	Page
5	Transmission range switch (short to ground)	Blinks	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-98)</a>
6	Transmission range switch (open)	OFF	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-102)</a>
7	Shift solenoid valve A	Blinks	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-79)</a>
8	Shift solenoid valve B	Blinks	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-81))</a>
9	Countershaft speed sensor	Blinks	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-71)</a>
15	Mainshaft speed sensor	Blinks	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-68))</a>
16	A/T clutch pressure control solenoid valve A	Blinks	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-76)</a>
22	Shift solenoid valve C	Blinks	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-83)</a>
23	A/T clutch pressure control solenoid valve B	Blinks	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-88)</a>
25	2nd clutch pressure switch	Blinks	OFF	<a href="#">(see page 14-94)</a>
26	3rd clutch pressure switch	Blinks	OFF	<a href="#">(see page 14-96)</a>
28	ATF temperature sensor	Blinks	OFF	<a href="#">(see page 14-66)</a>
29	A/T clutch pressure control solenoid valve C	Blinks	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-92)</a>
45	Mechanical problem in hydraulic control system	Blinks	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-90)</a>
61	Shift solenoid valve E	Blinks	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-85)</a>
62	Transmission range switch ([R] position circuit)	Blinks	OFF	<a href="#">(see page 14-104)</a>
70	Hydraulic control system of shift solenoid valve A circuit	Blinks	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-78)</a>
76	Hydraulic control system of A/T clutch pressure control solenoid valve A circuit	Blinks	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-75)</a>
77	Hydraulic control system of A/T clutch pressure control solenoid valve B circuit	Blinks	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-87)</a>
78	Hydraulic control system of A/T clutch pressure control solenoid valve C circuit	Blinks	ON	<a href="#">(see page 14-91)</a>

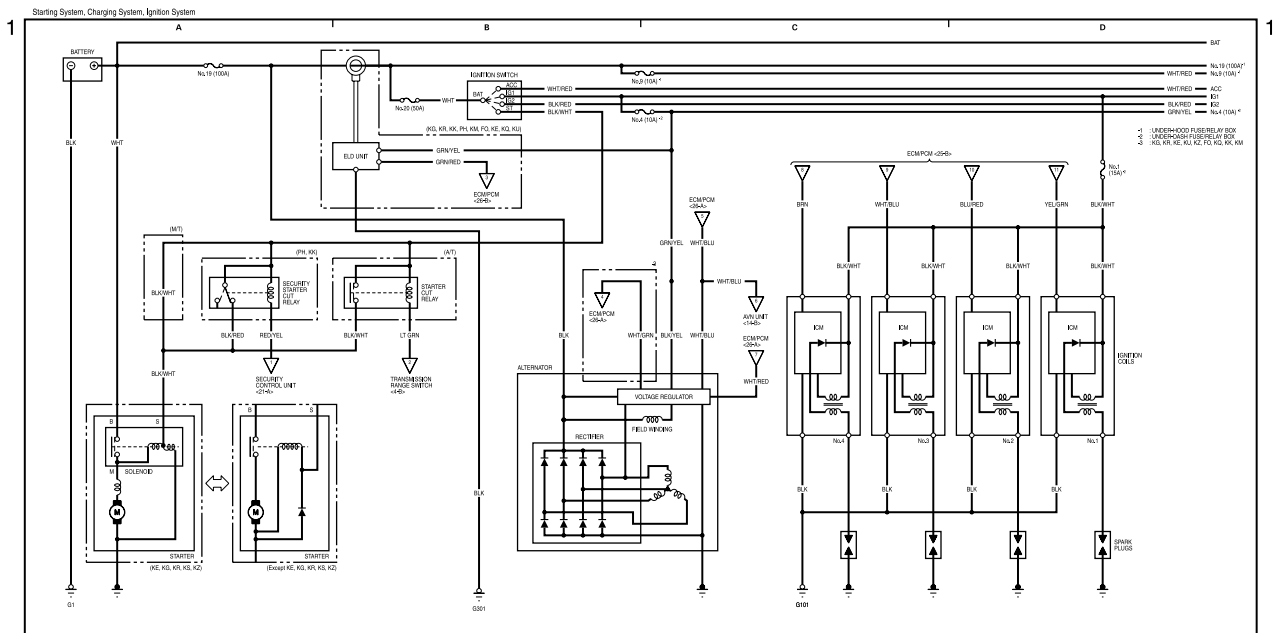


## Wiring diagrams

Starting System, Charging System, Ignition System .....	78-2
Gauge Assembly (Gauges, Indicator Lights, Dash Lights Brightness Control) .....	78-6
Gauge Assembly (Indicator Lights, Warning Lights) .....	78-10
Gauge Assembly (A/T Gear Position Indicator), Cruise Control System .....	78-14
Exterior Lights (With Front Fog Lights, Without Front Fog Lights or Rear Fog Lights) .....	78-18
Exterior Lights (With Rear Fog Lights) .....	78-22
Exterior Lights (With Front and Rear Fog Lights) .....	78-26
Exterior Lights (With Daytime Running Lights and Rear Fog Light) .....	78-30
Exterior Lights (Back-up Lights, Brake Lights, Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher) .....	78-34
Exterior Lights (Headlight Adjuster System), Interior Lights, Horns .....	78-38
Power Mirror .....	78-42
Sunroof, Power Windows .....	78-46
Power Window, Cigarette Lighter, Accessory Power Socket .....	78-50
Navigation System, Stereo Sound System .....	78-54
Seat Heater, Wipers/Washers (Headlight Washer) .....	78-58
Wipers/Washers (Windshield Rear) .....	78-62
Multiplex Control System (Fog Light Control, Immobilizer Control, Interlock Control, Intermittent Wiper Control, Entry Lights Control) .....	78-66
Keyless/Power Door Lock System (With Super locking System) .....	78-70
Keyless/Power Door Lock System (Without Super locking System) .....	78-74
Security Alarm System (With Super Locking System) .....	78-78
Security Alarm System (Without Super Locking System) .....	78-82
Interlock System, ABS .....	78-86
SRS .....	78-90
Fan Controls, HVAC .....	78-94
PGM-FI System, Immobilizer System .....	78-98
PGM-FI System .....	78-102
PGM-FI System (A/T) .....	78-106

## Wiring diagrams

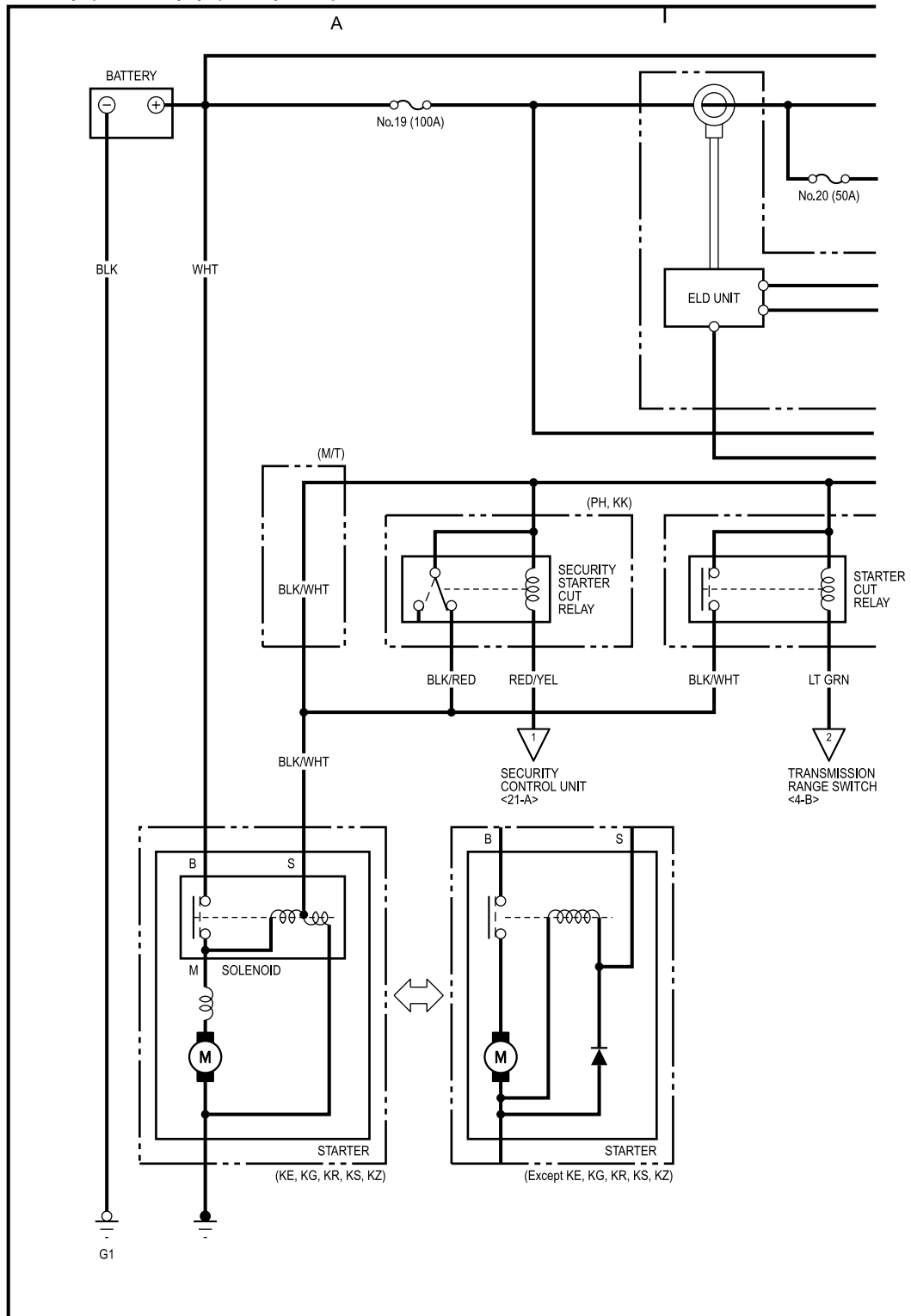
## Starting System, Charging System, Ignition System



## Starting System, Charging System, Ignition System (cont'd)

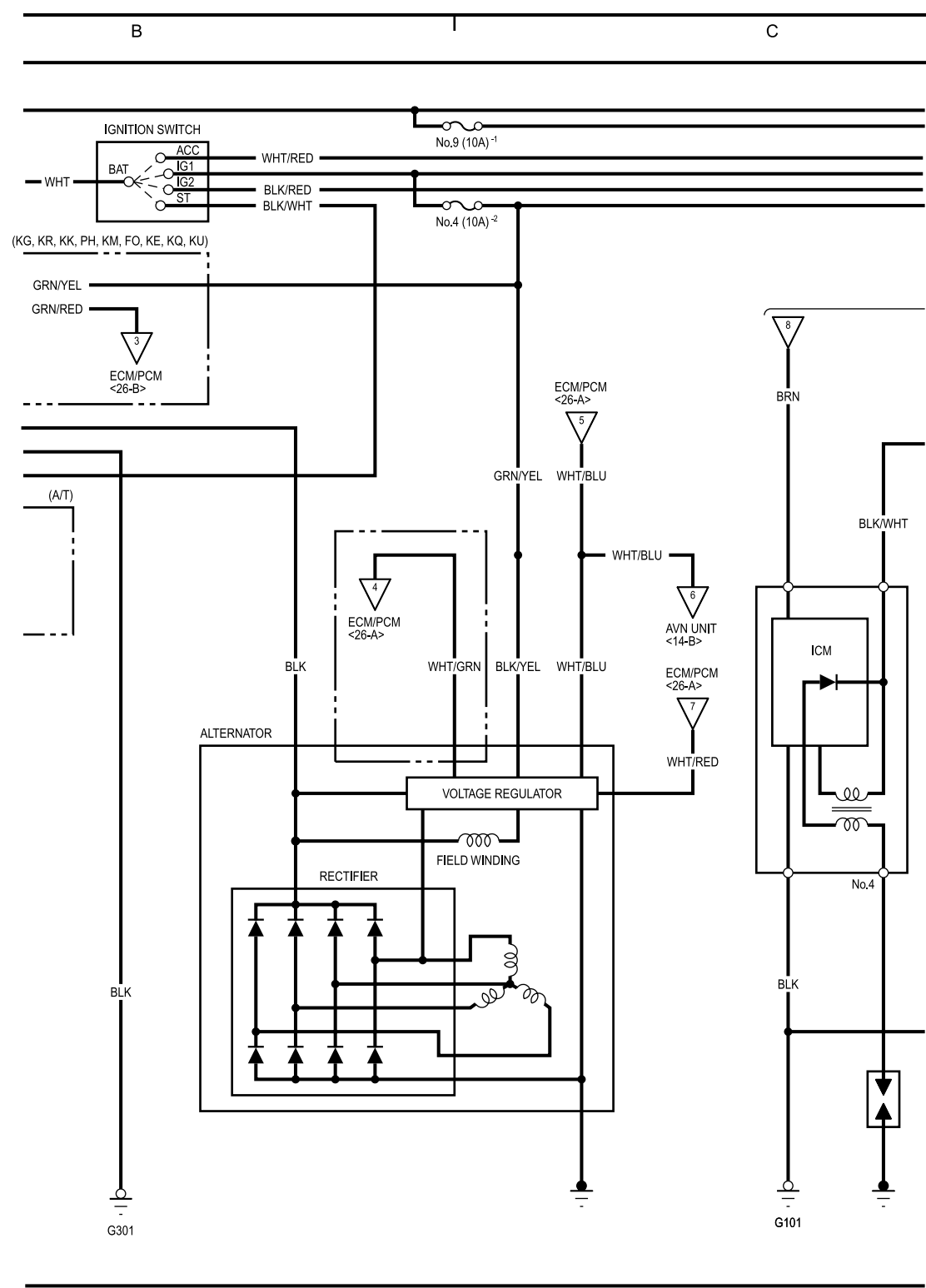
## Starting System, Charging System, Ignition System

1



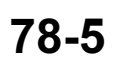
# Wiring diagrams

## Starting System, Charging System, Ignition System (cont'd)



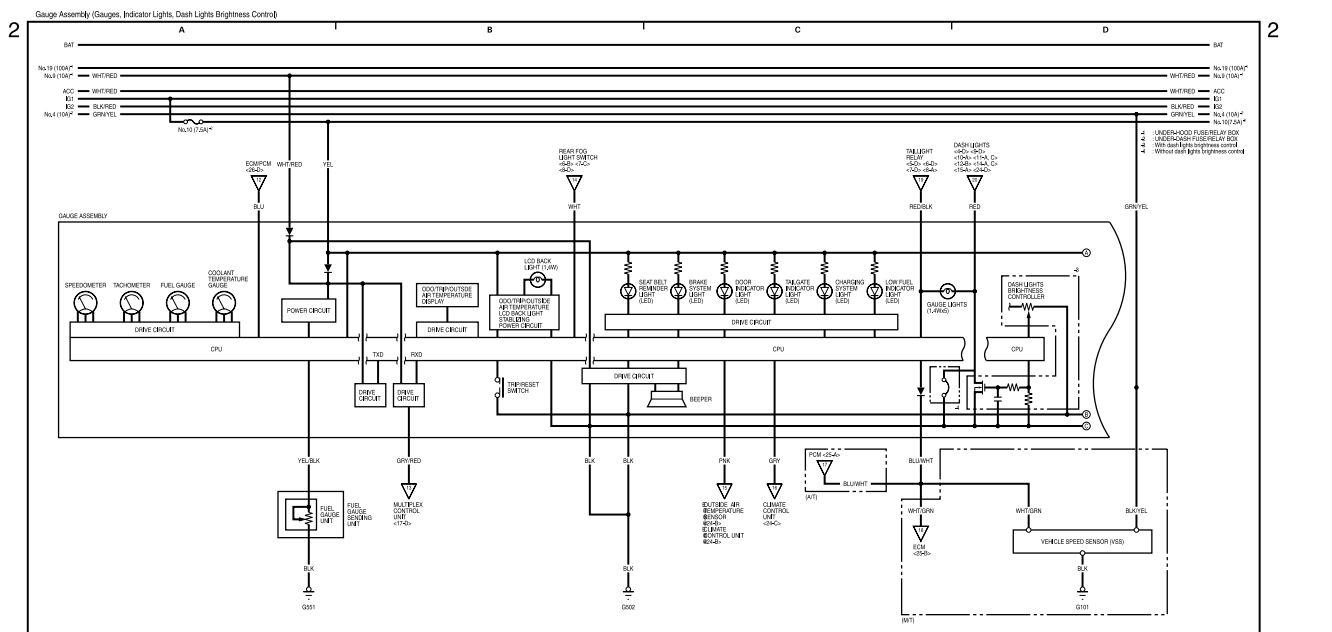


## 1



## Wiring diagrams

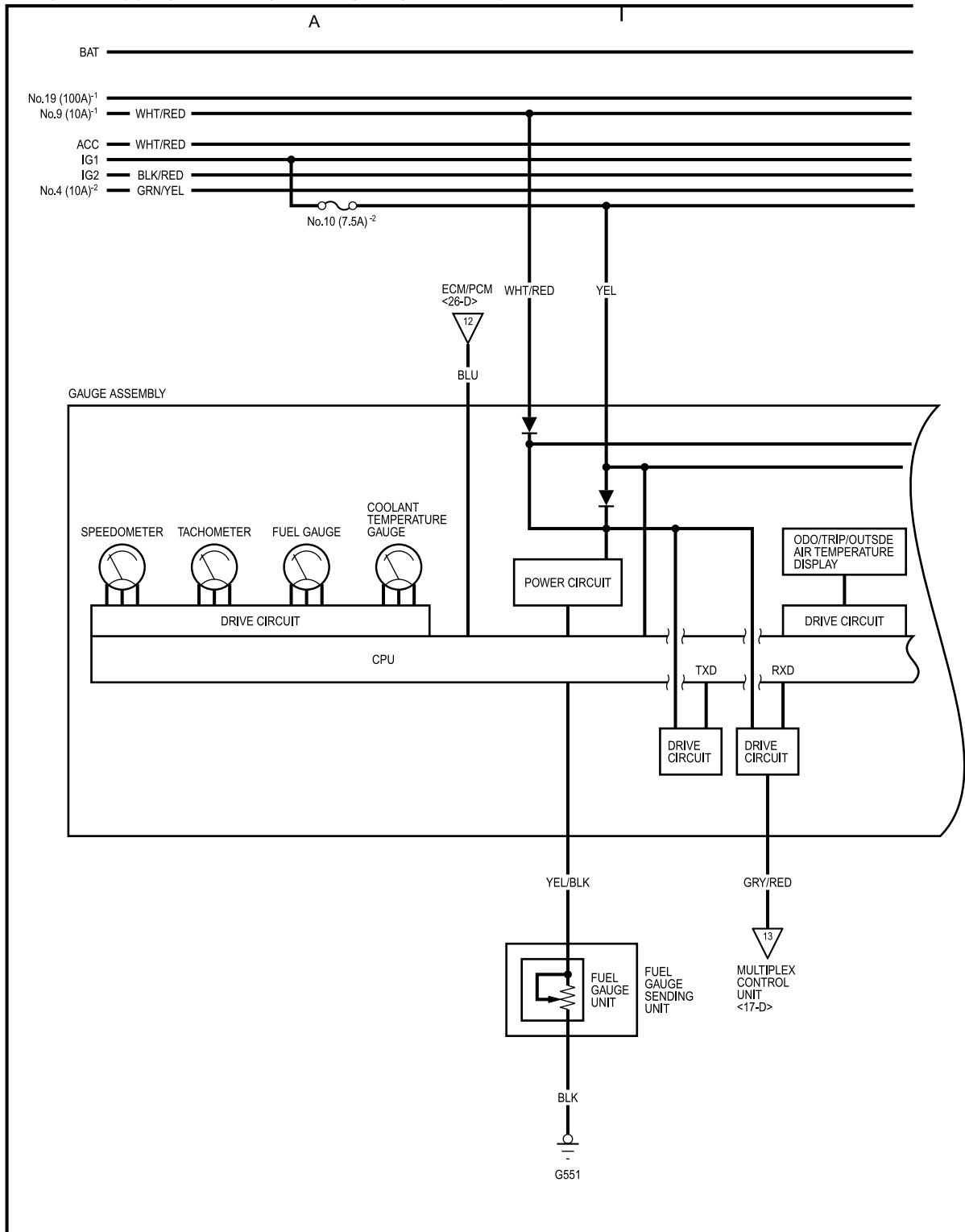
## Gauge Assembly (Gauges, Indicator Lights, Dash Lights Brightness Control)



## Gauge Assembly (Gauges, Indicator Lights, Dash Lights Brightness Control) (cont'd)

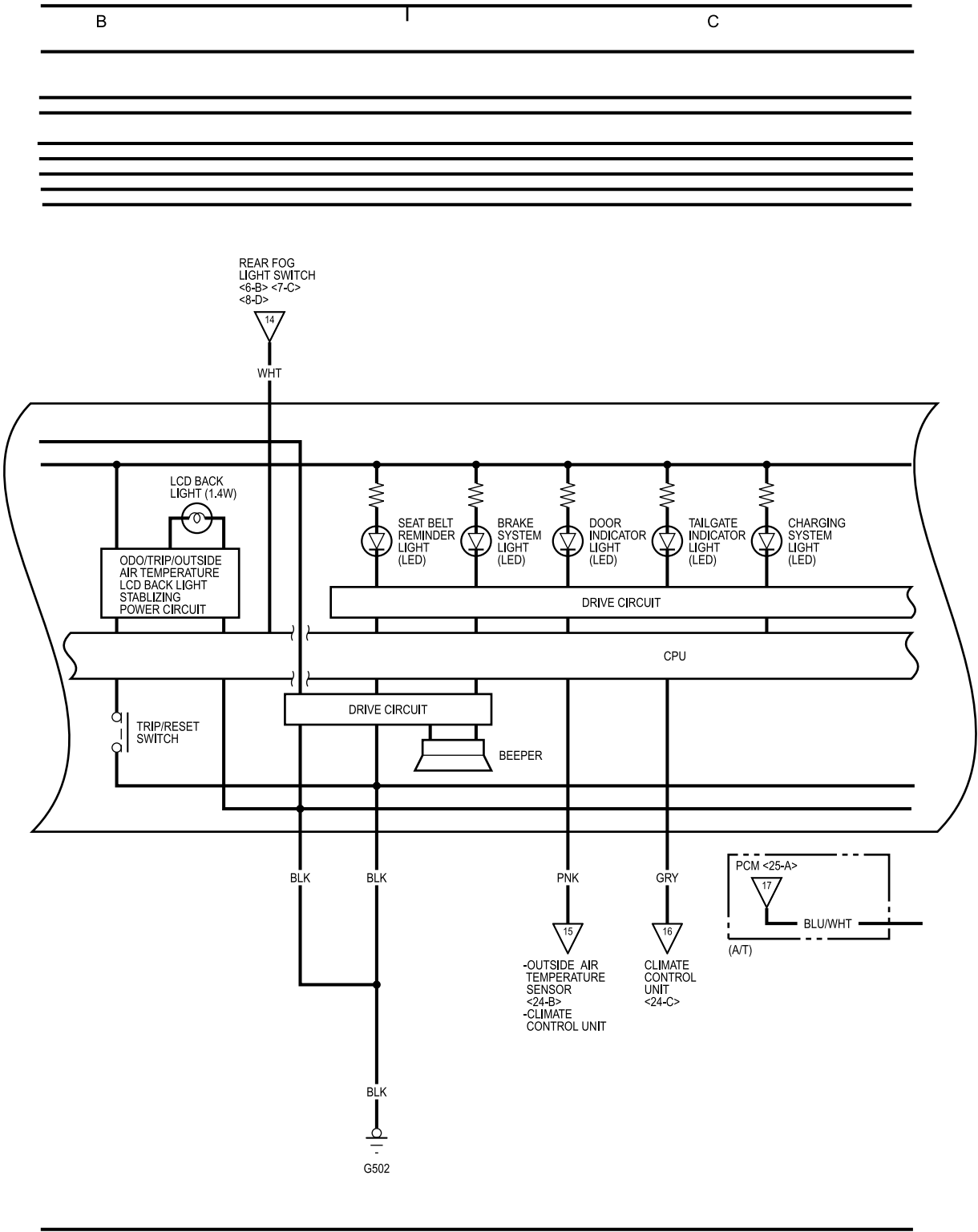
2

Gauge Assembly (Gauges, Indicator Lights, Dash Lights Brightness Control)

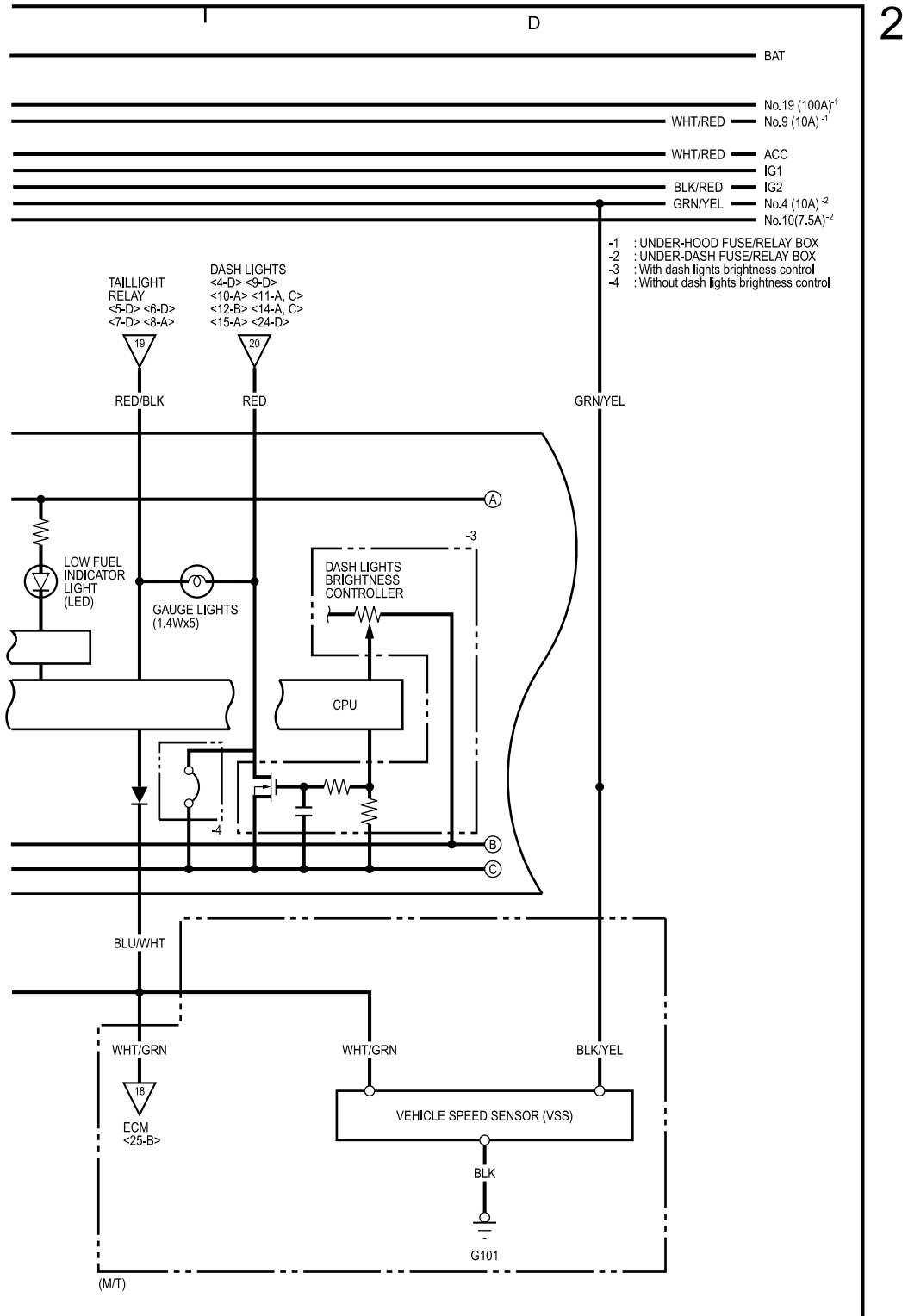


# Wiring diagrams

## Gauge Assembly (Gauges, Indicator Lights, Dash Lights Brightness Control) (cont'd)

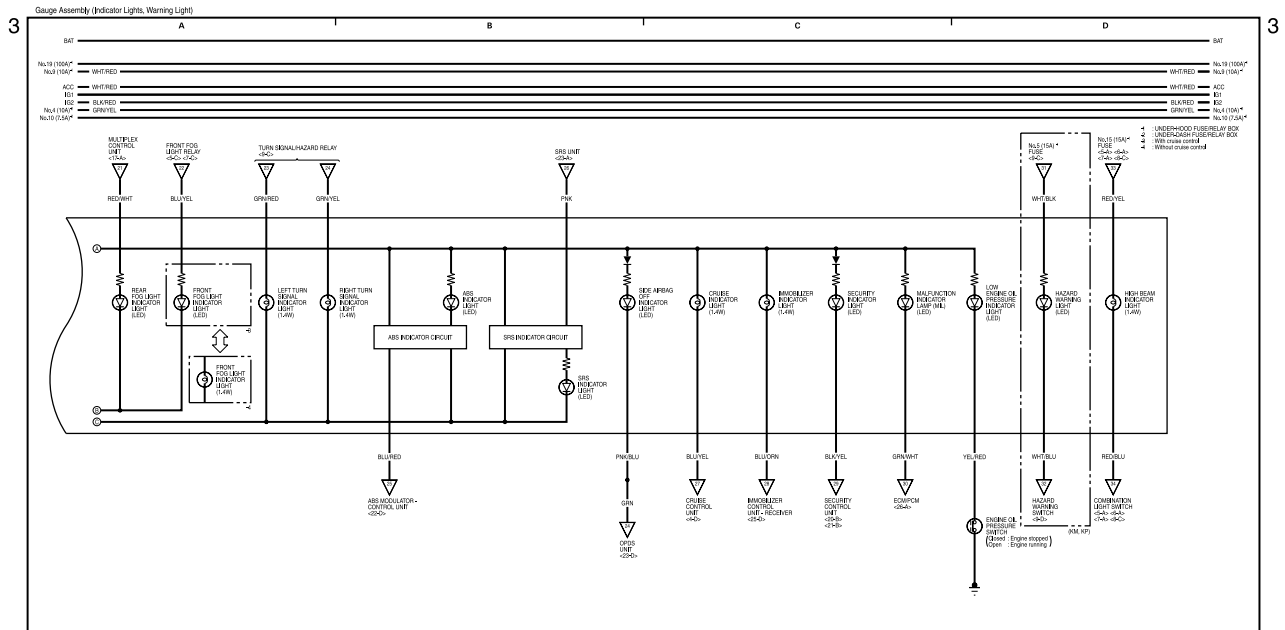


## Gauge Assembly (Gauges, Indicator Lights, Dash Lights Brightness Control) (cont'd)



## Wiring diagrams

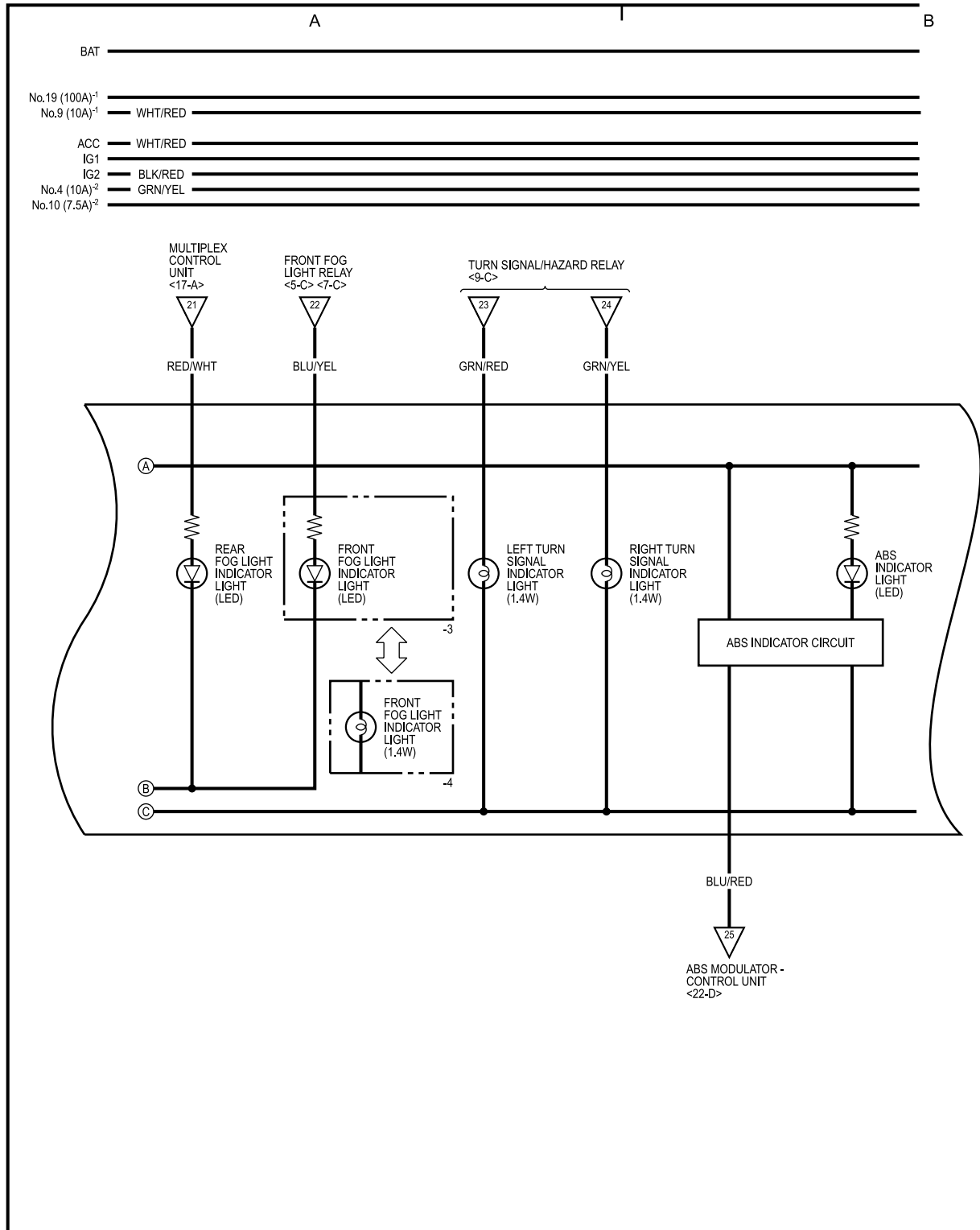
## Gauge Assembly (Indicator Lights, Warning Lights)



## Gauge Assembly (Indicator Lights, Warning Lights) (cont'd)

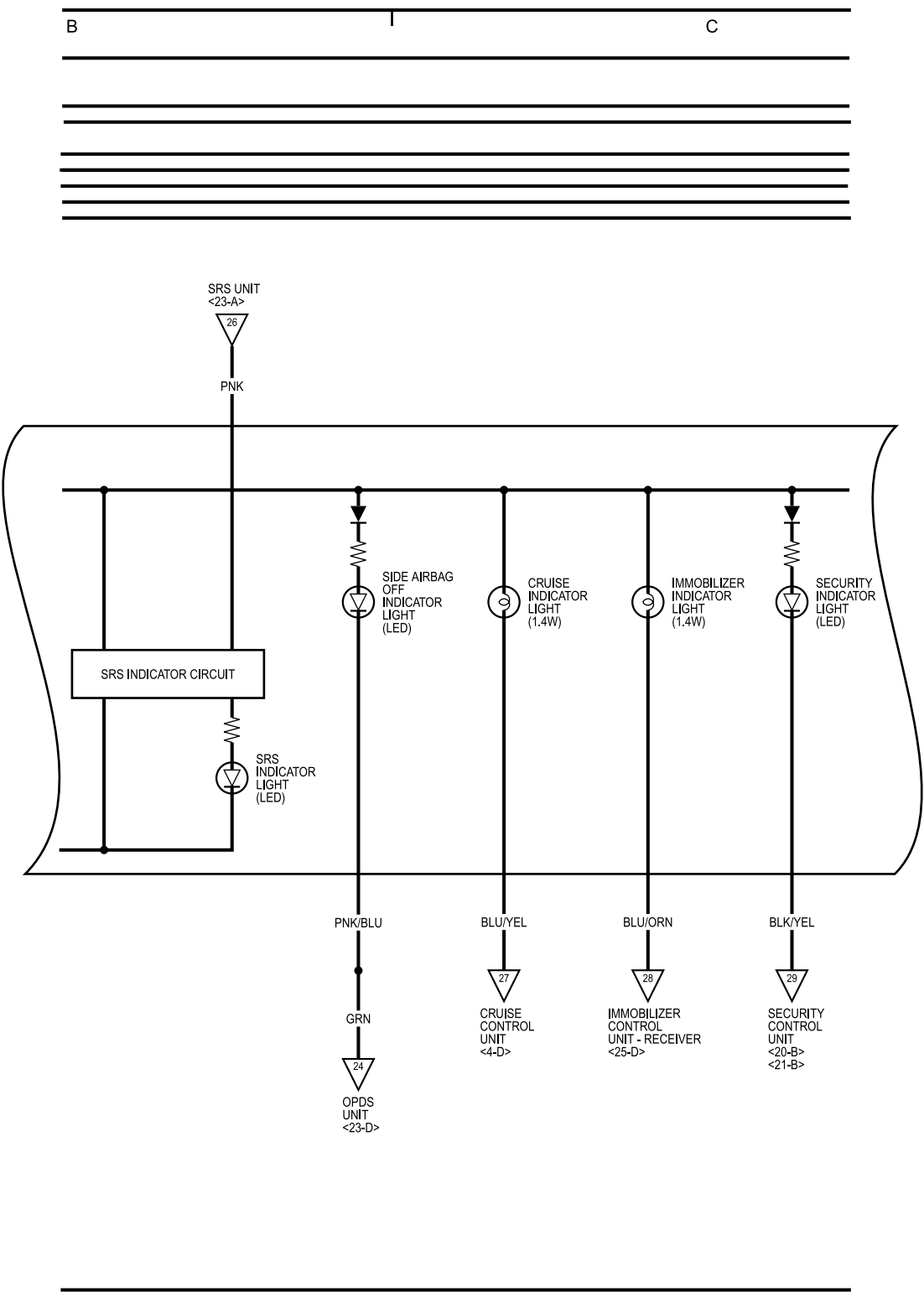
3

Gauge Assembly (Indicator Lights, Warning Light)



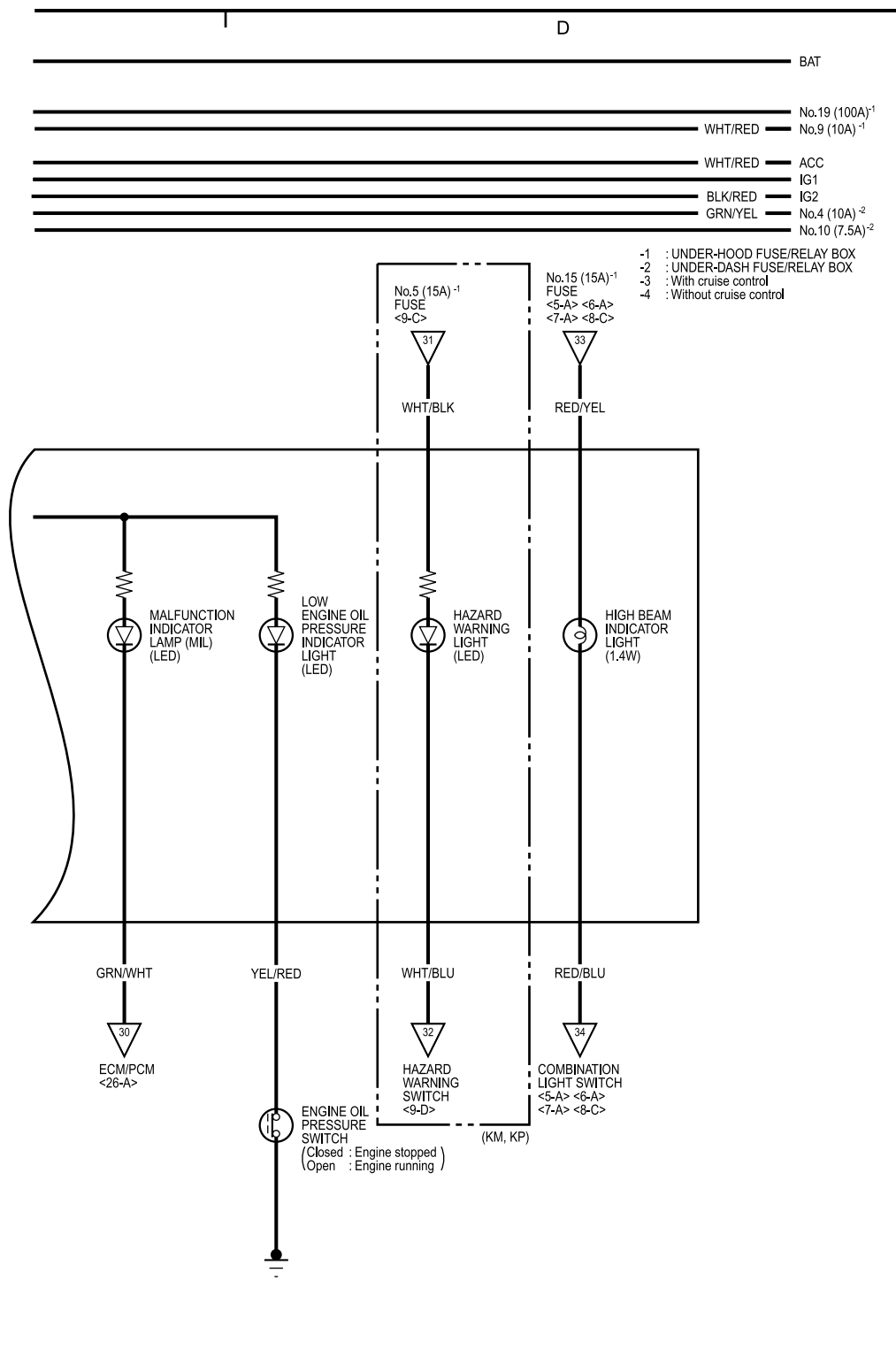
Wiring diagrams

Gauge Assembly (Indicator Lights, Warning Lights) (cont'd)



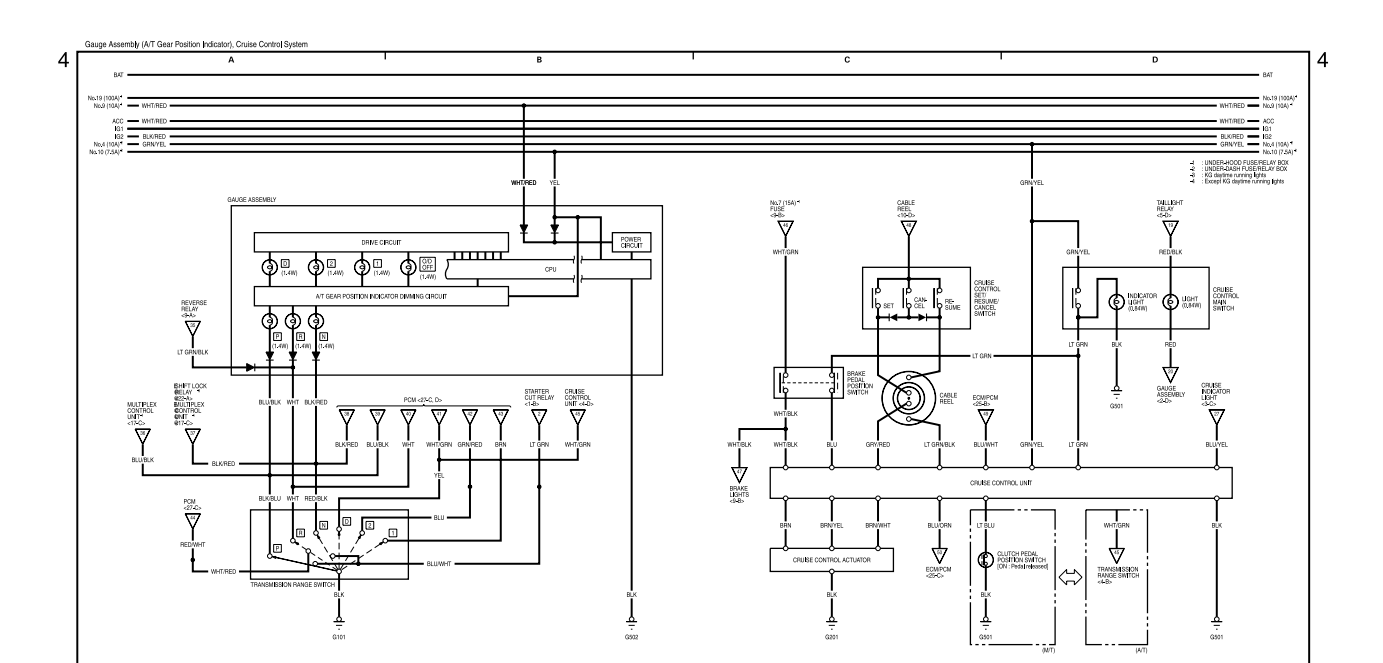


## Gauge Assembly (Indicator Lights, Warning Lights) (cont'd)



## Wiring diagrams

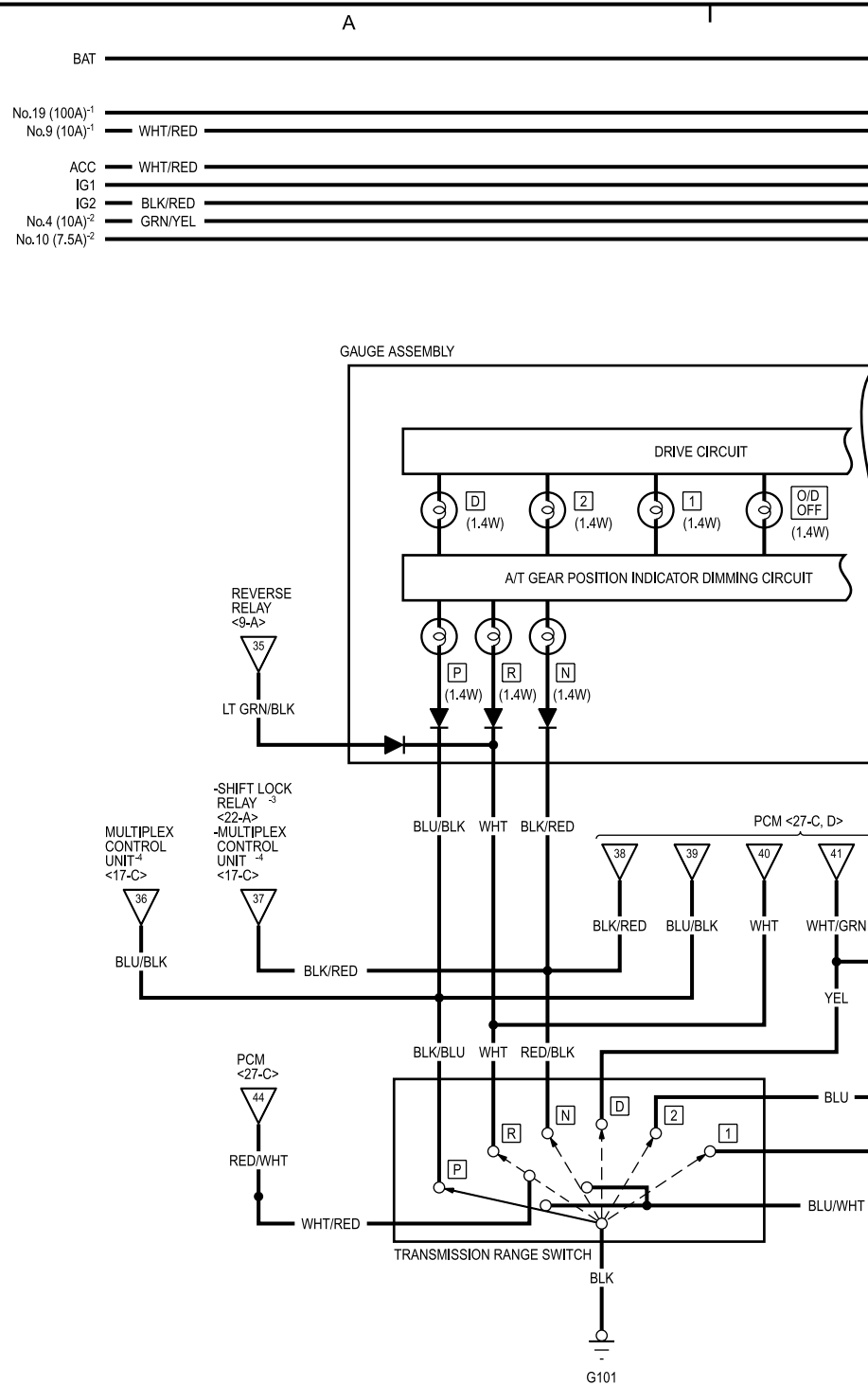
## Gauge Assembly (A/T Gear Position Indicator), Cruise Control System



# Gauge Assembly (A/T Gear Position Indicator), Cruise Control System (cont'd)

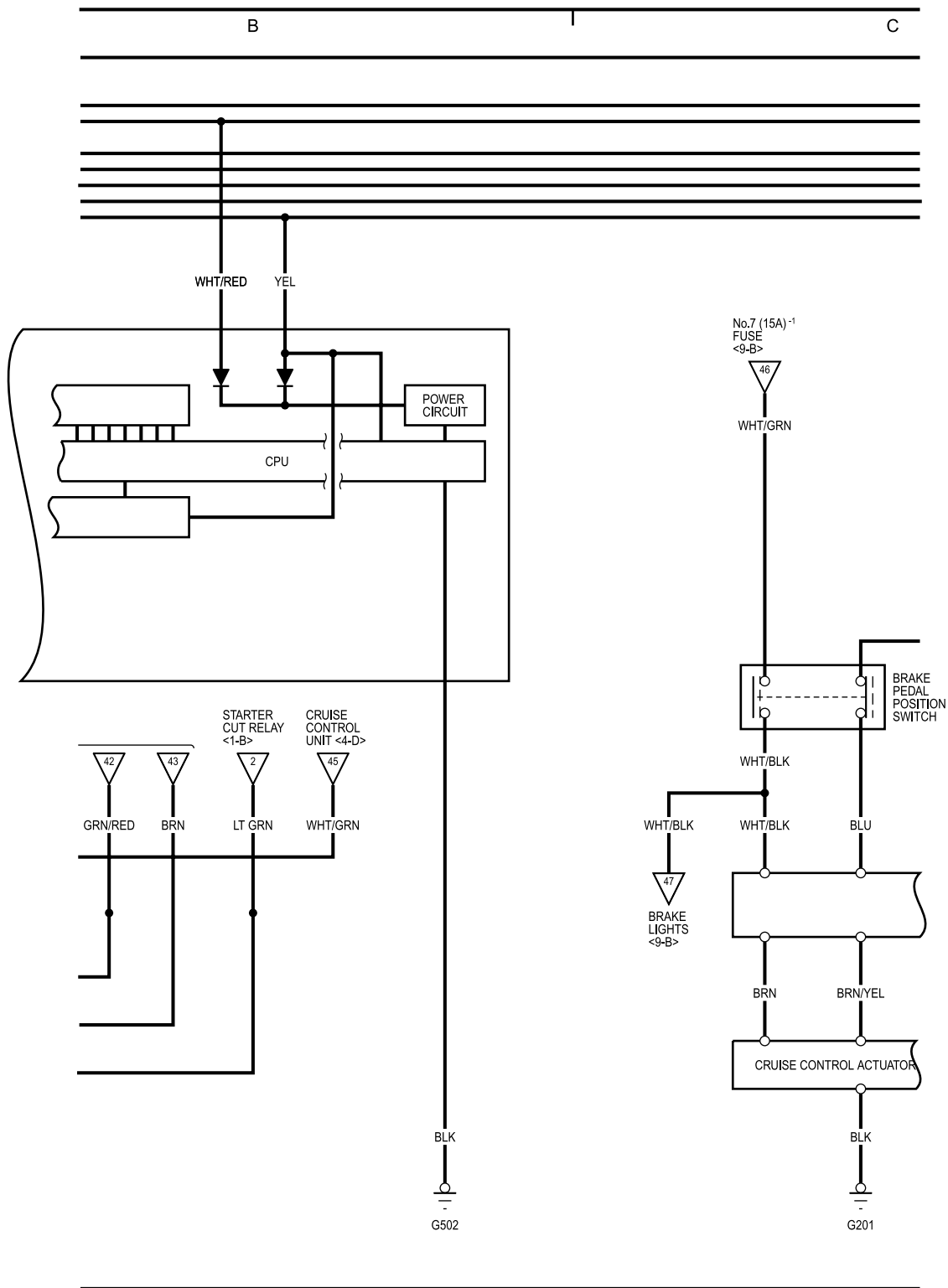
4

Gauge Assembly (A/T Gear Position Indicator), Cruise Control System

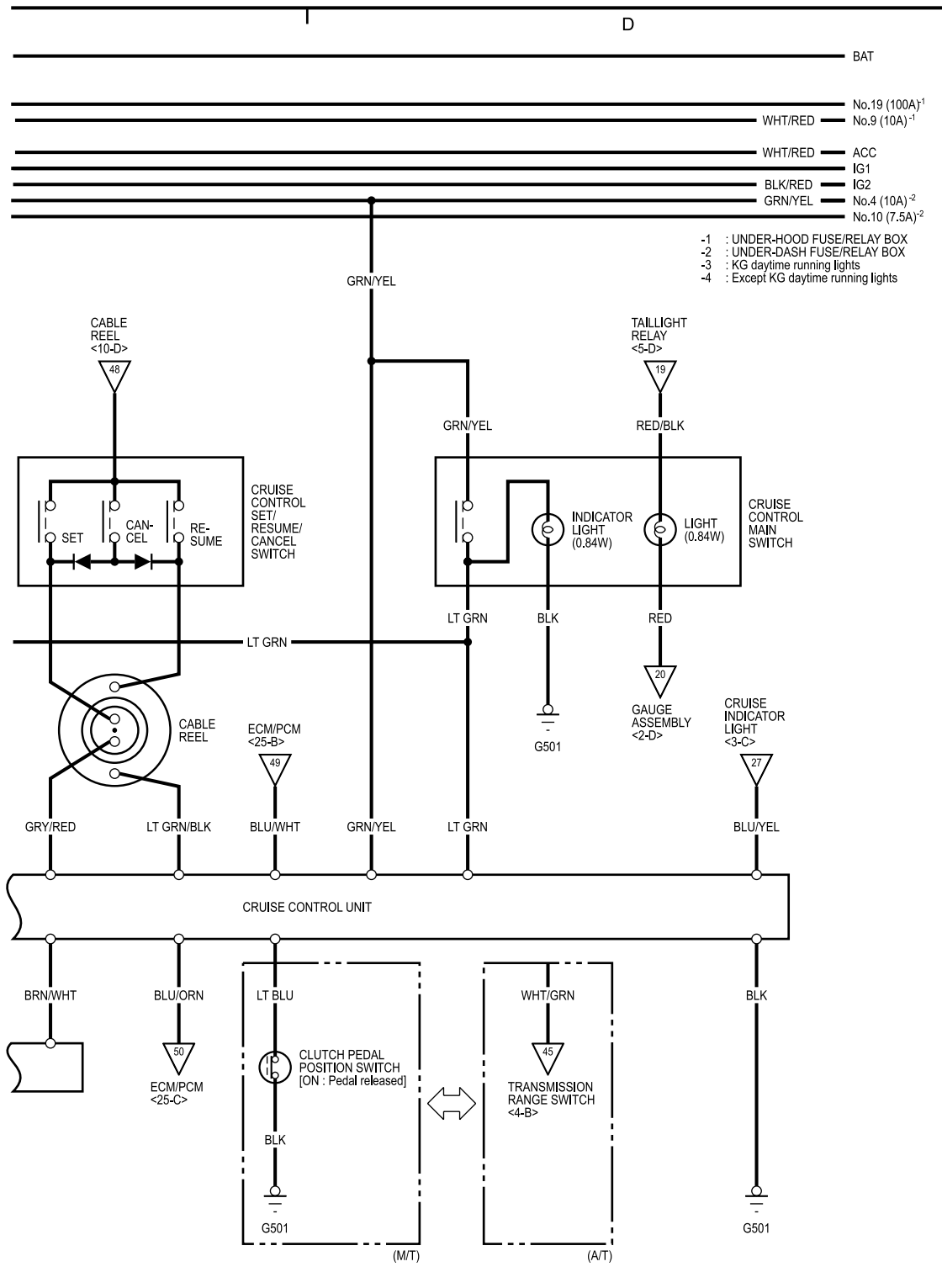


# Wiring diagrams

## Gauge Assembly (A/T Gear Position Indicator), Cruise Control System (cont'd)

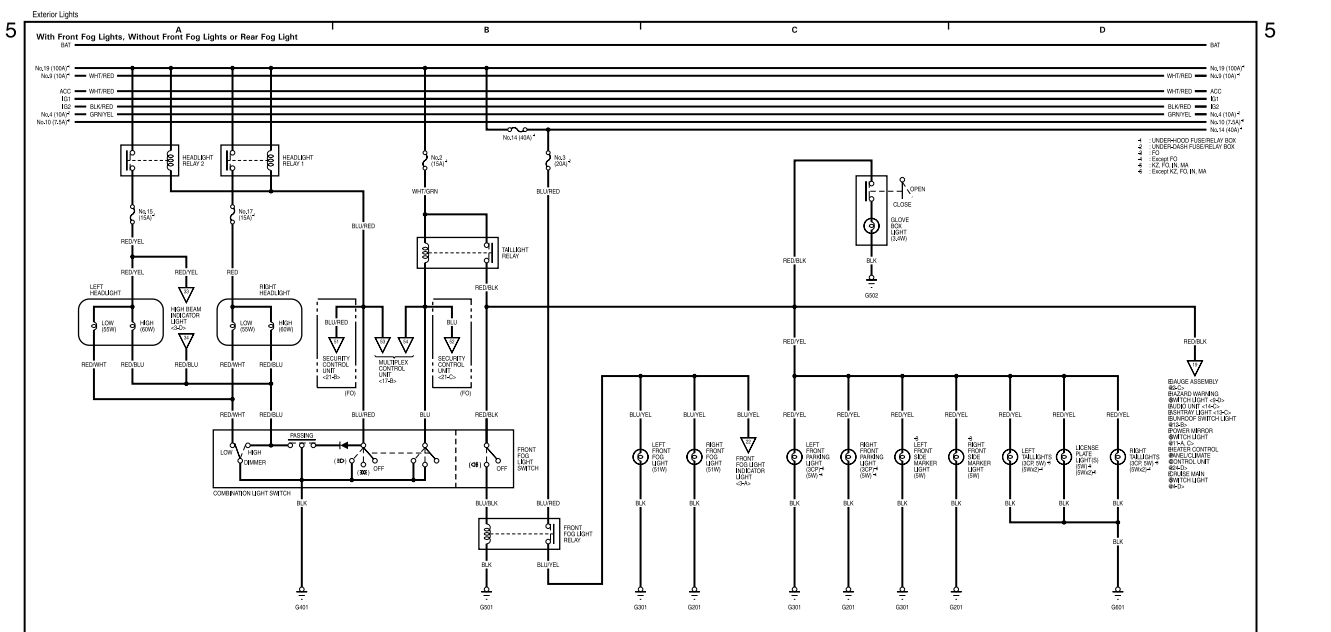


## Gauge Assembly (A/T Gear Position Indicator), Cruise Control System (cont'd)

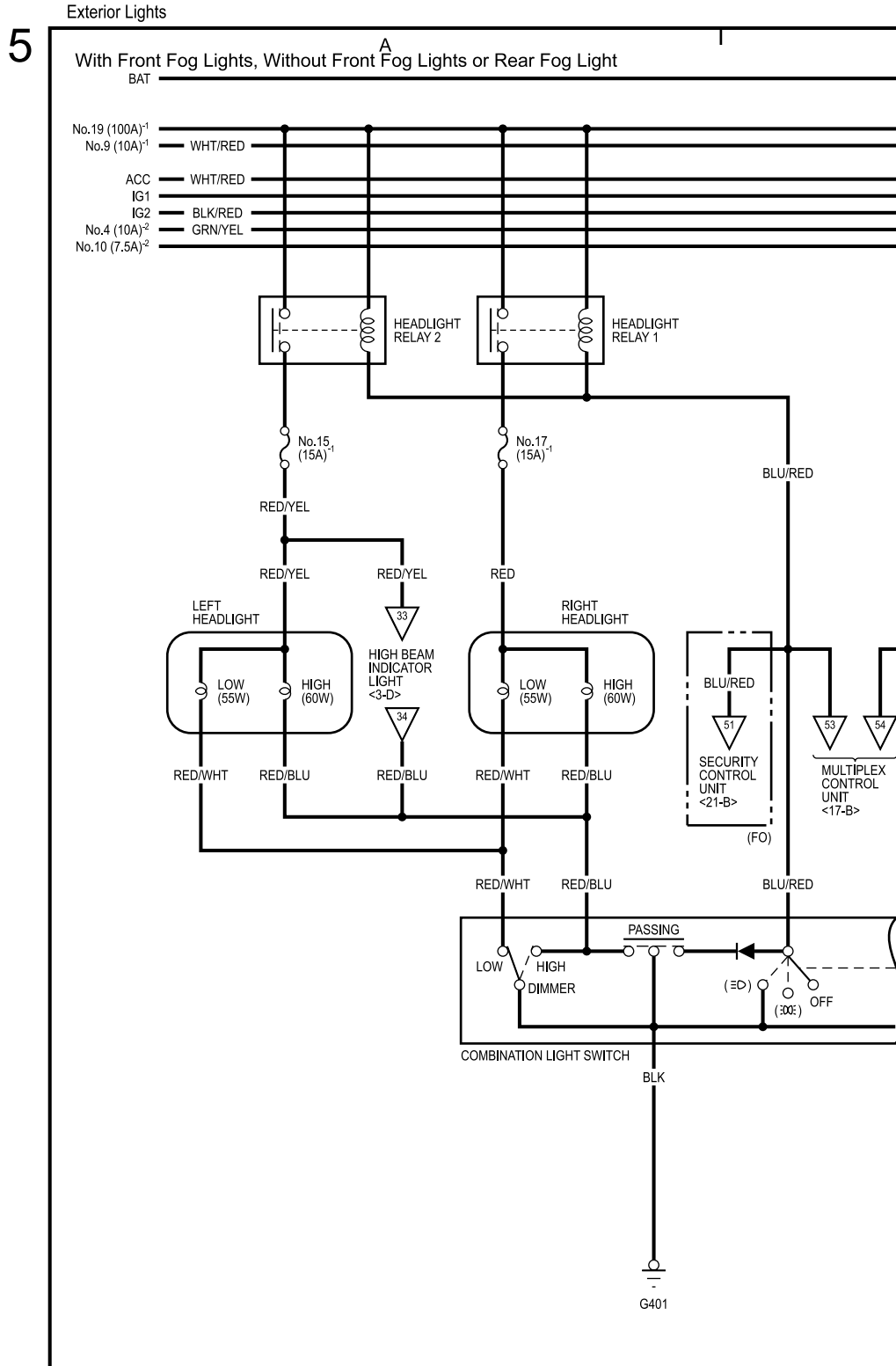


## Wiring diagrams

### Exterior Lights (With Front Fog Lights, Without Front Fog Lights or Rear Fog Lights)

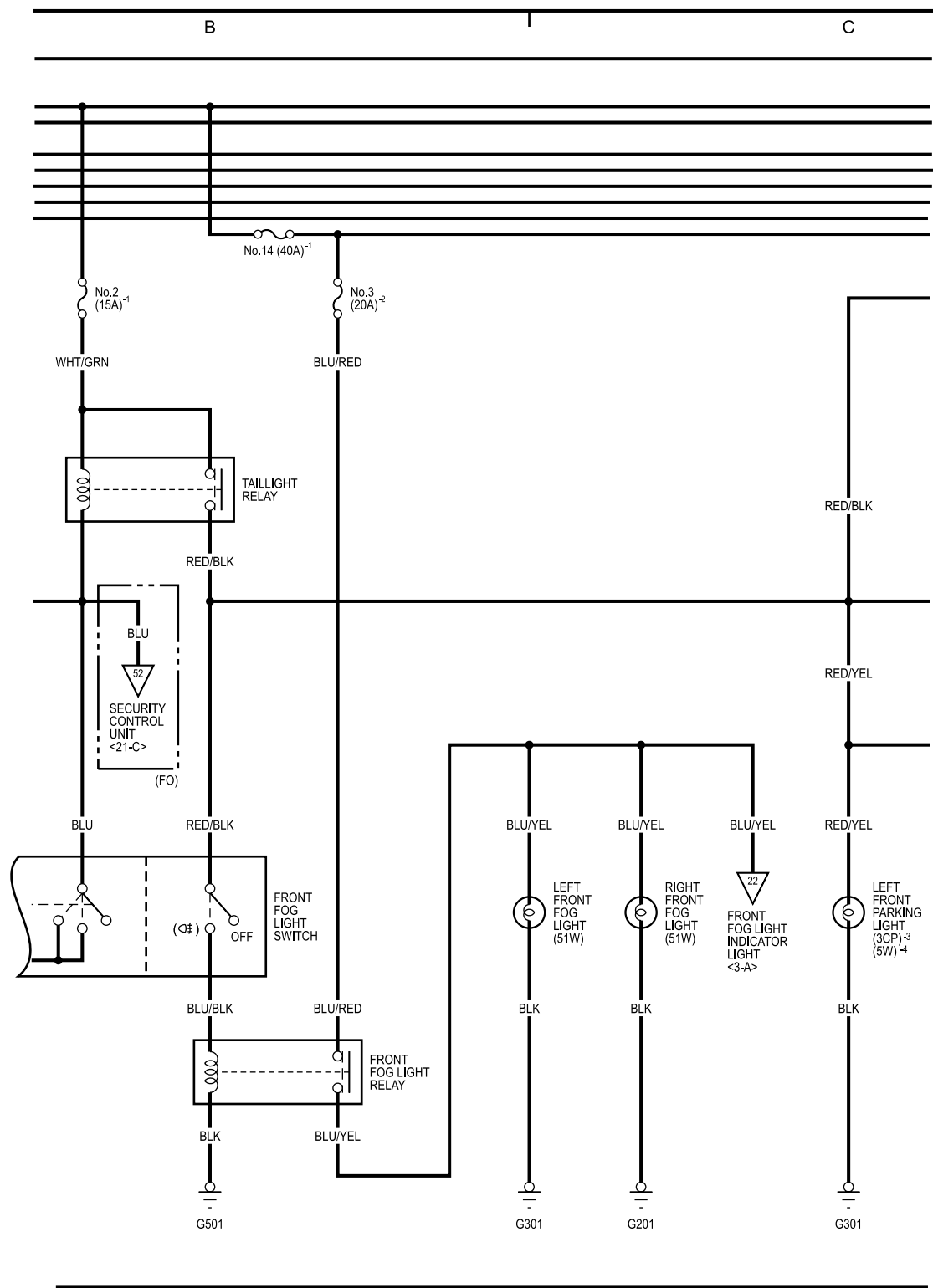


# Exterior Lights (With Front Fog Lights, Without Front Fog Lights or Rear Fog Light) (cont'd)



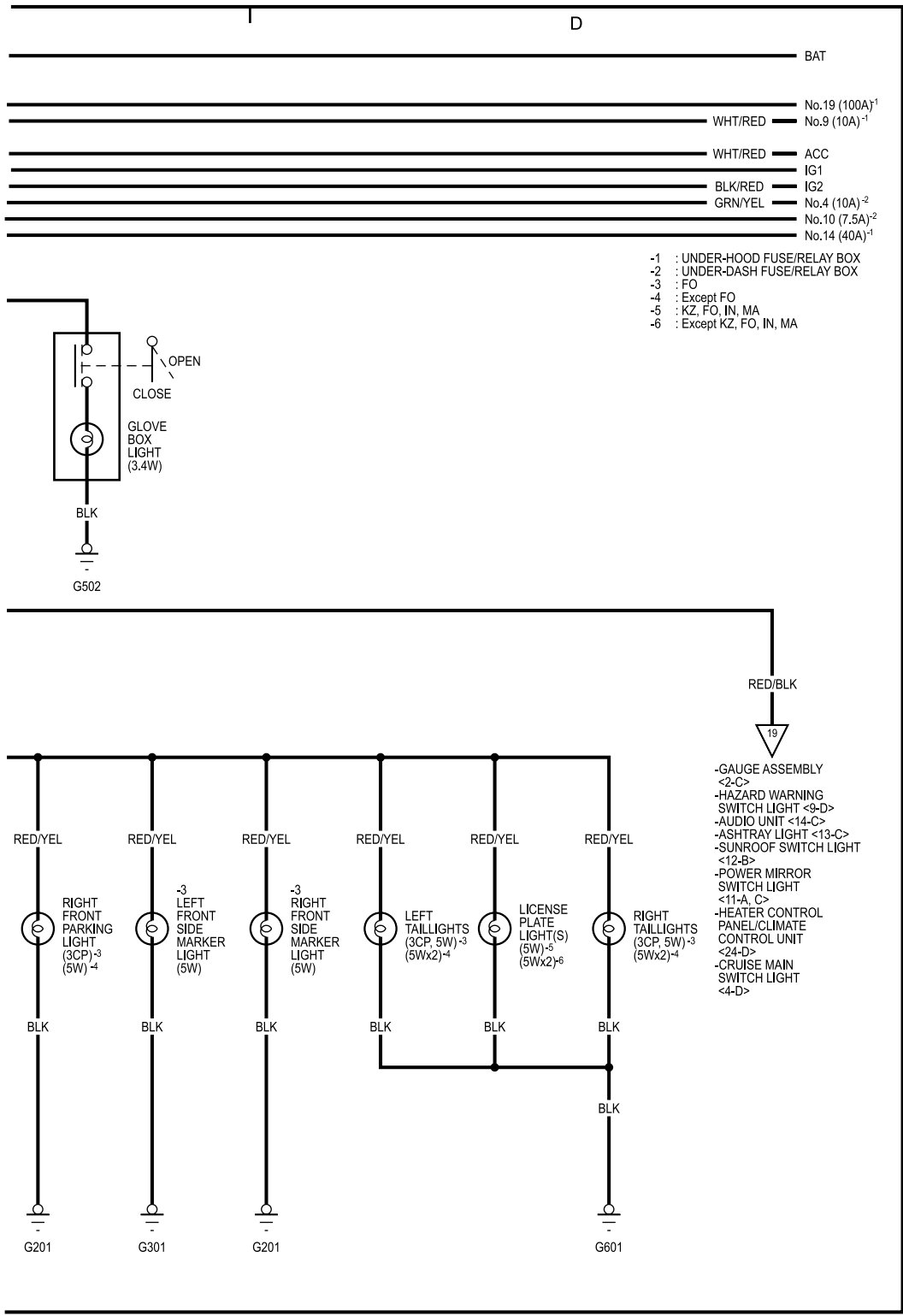
# Wiring diagrams

## Exterior Lights (With Front Fog Lights, Without Front Fog Lights or Rear Fog Light) (cont'd)



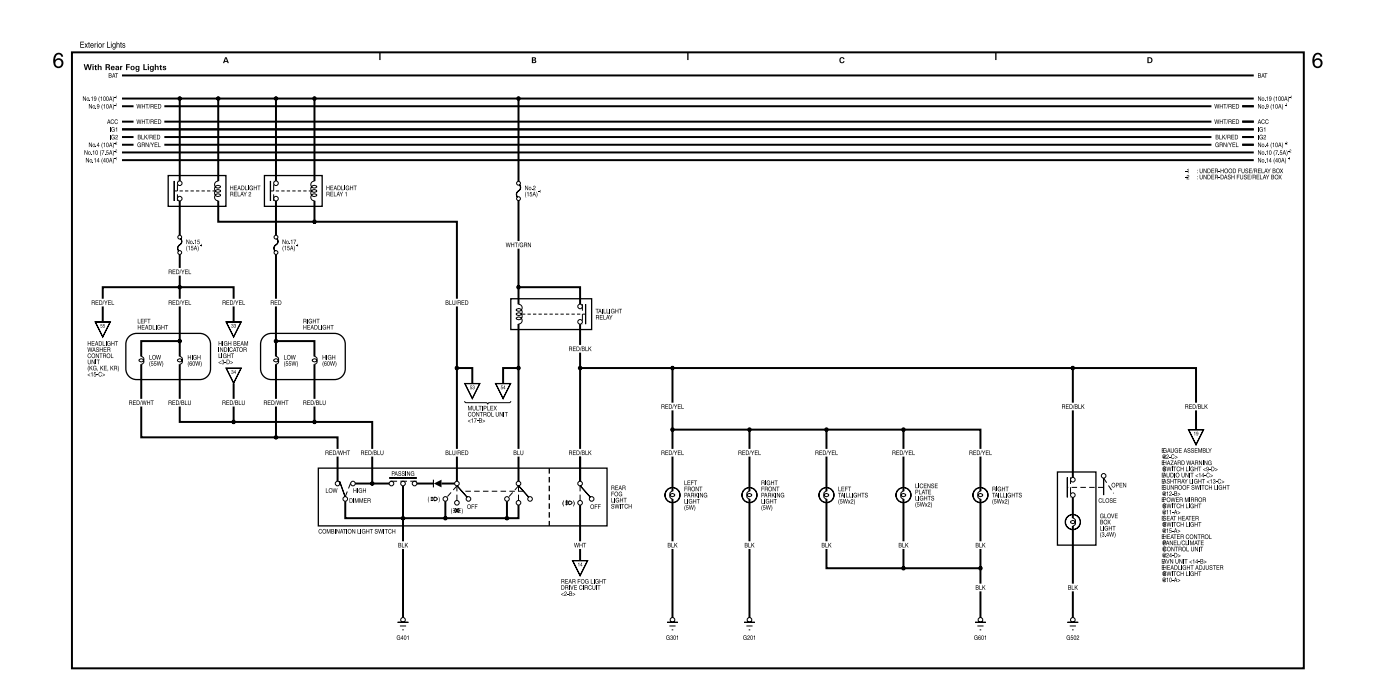


Exterior Lights (With Front Fog Lights, Without Front Fog Lights or Rear Fog Light) (cont'd)



## Wiring diagrams

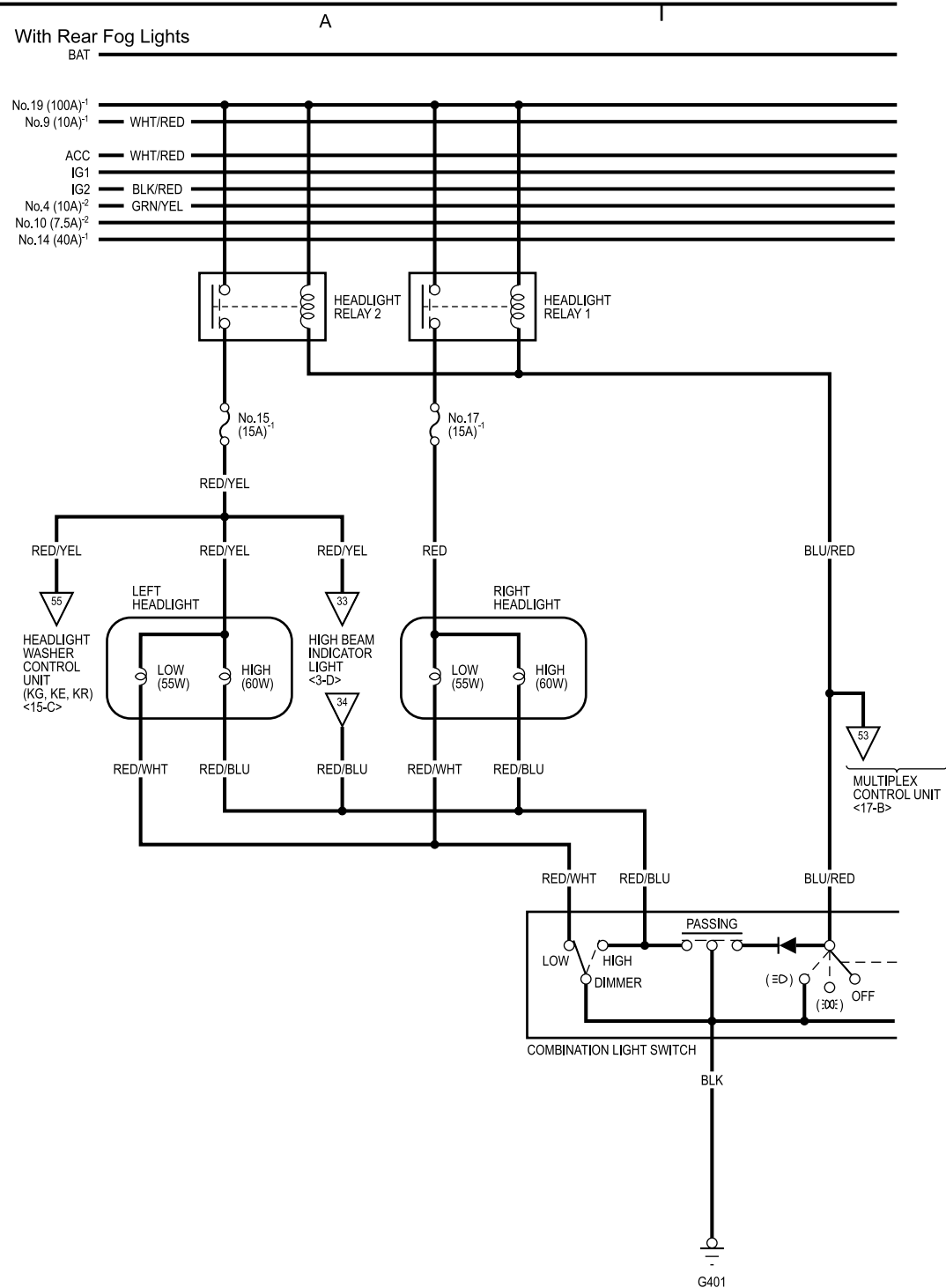
### Exterior Lights (With Rear Fog Lights)



## Exterior Lights (With Rear Fog Lights) (cont'd)

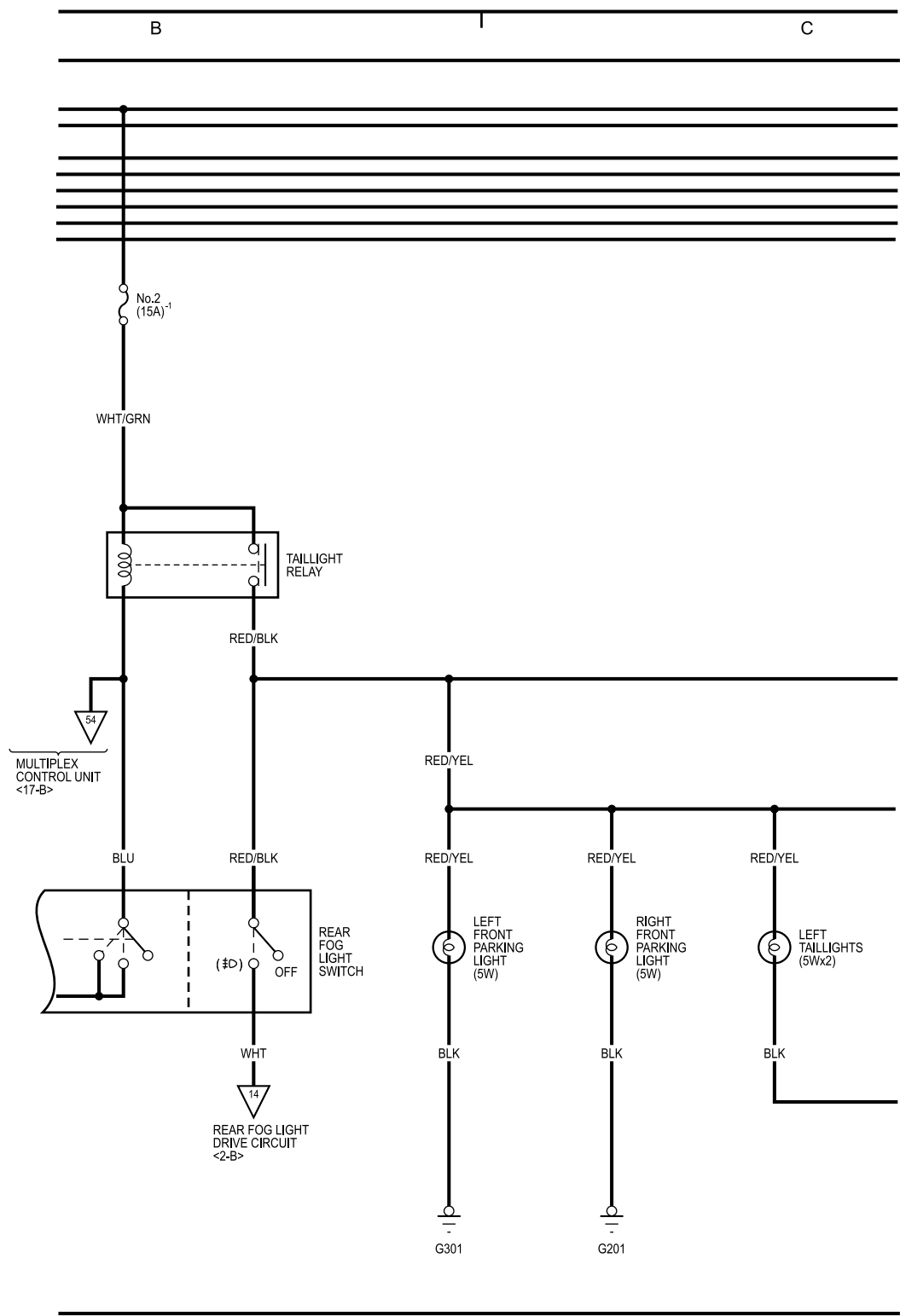
## 6

## Exterior Lights

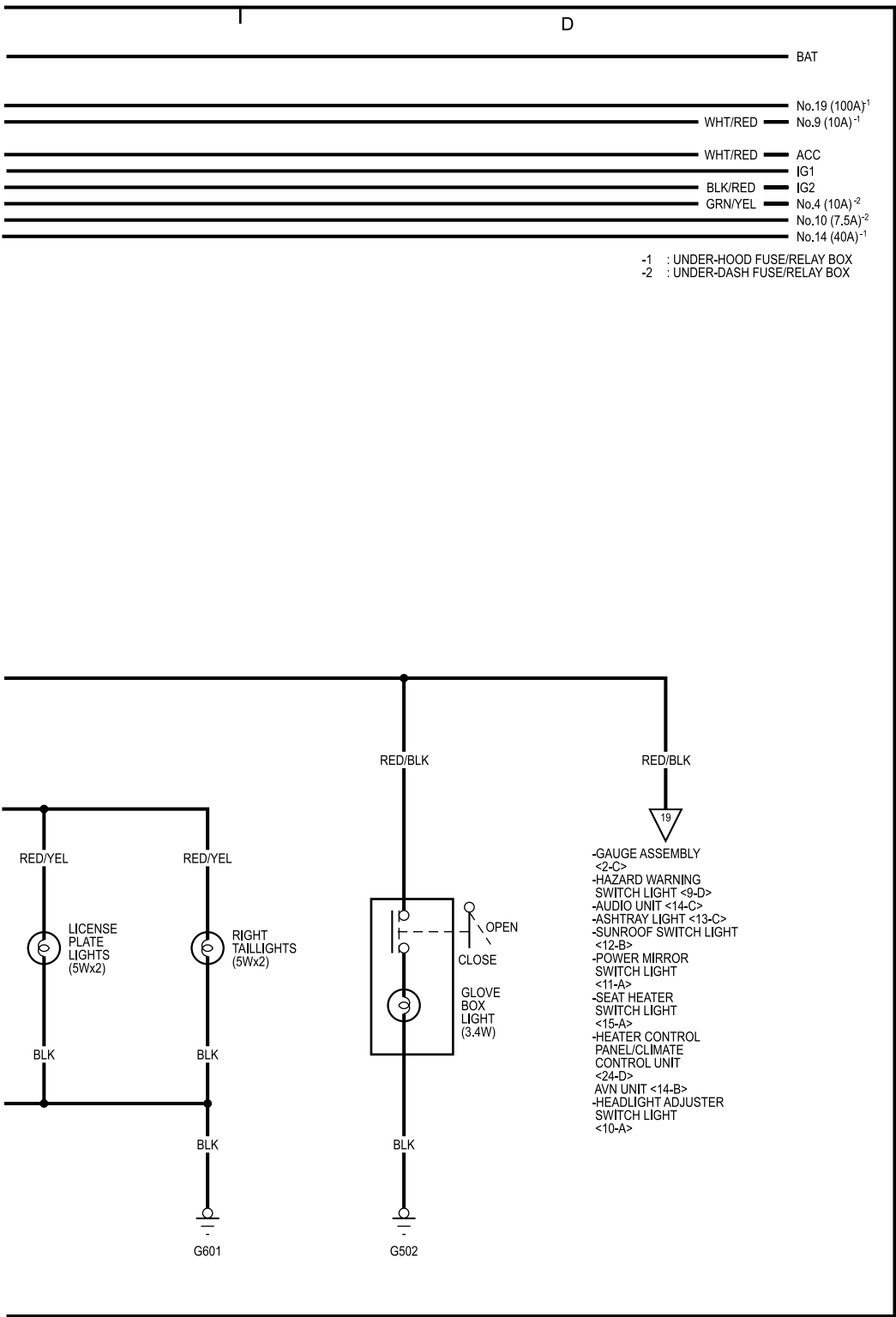


# Wiring diagrams

## Exterior Lights (With Rear Fog Lights) (cont'd)



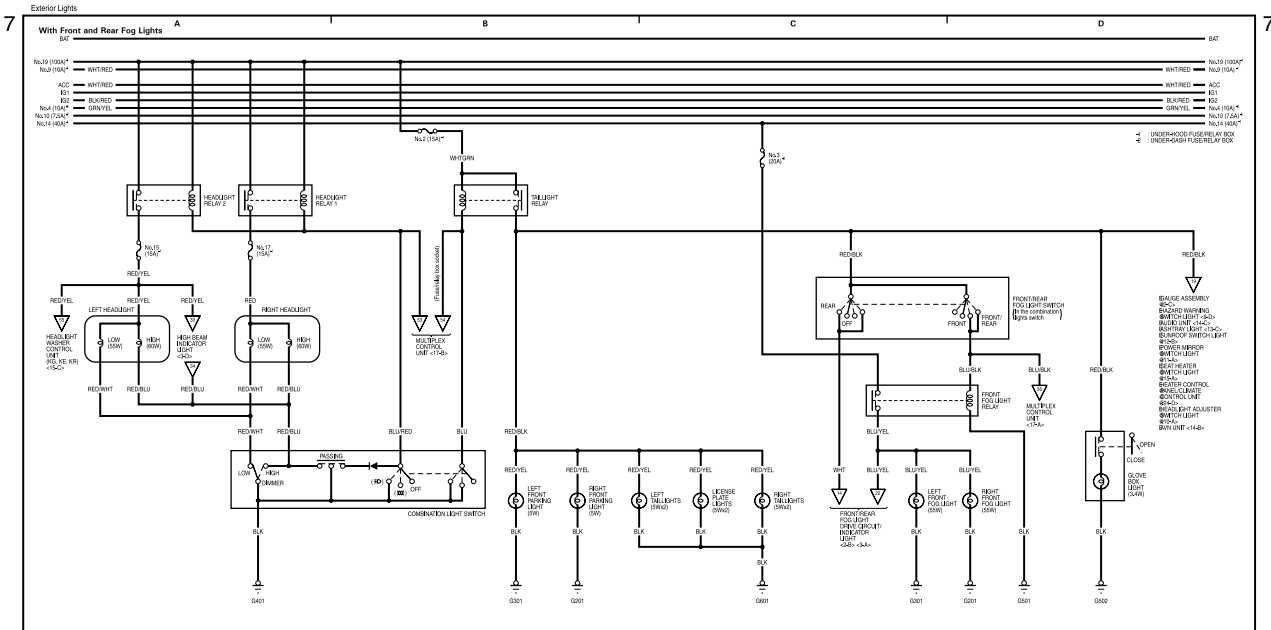
Exterior Lights (With Rear Fog Lights) (cont'd)



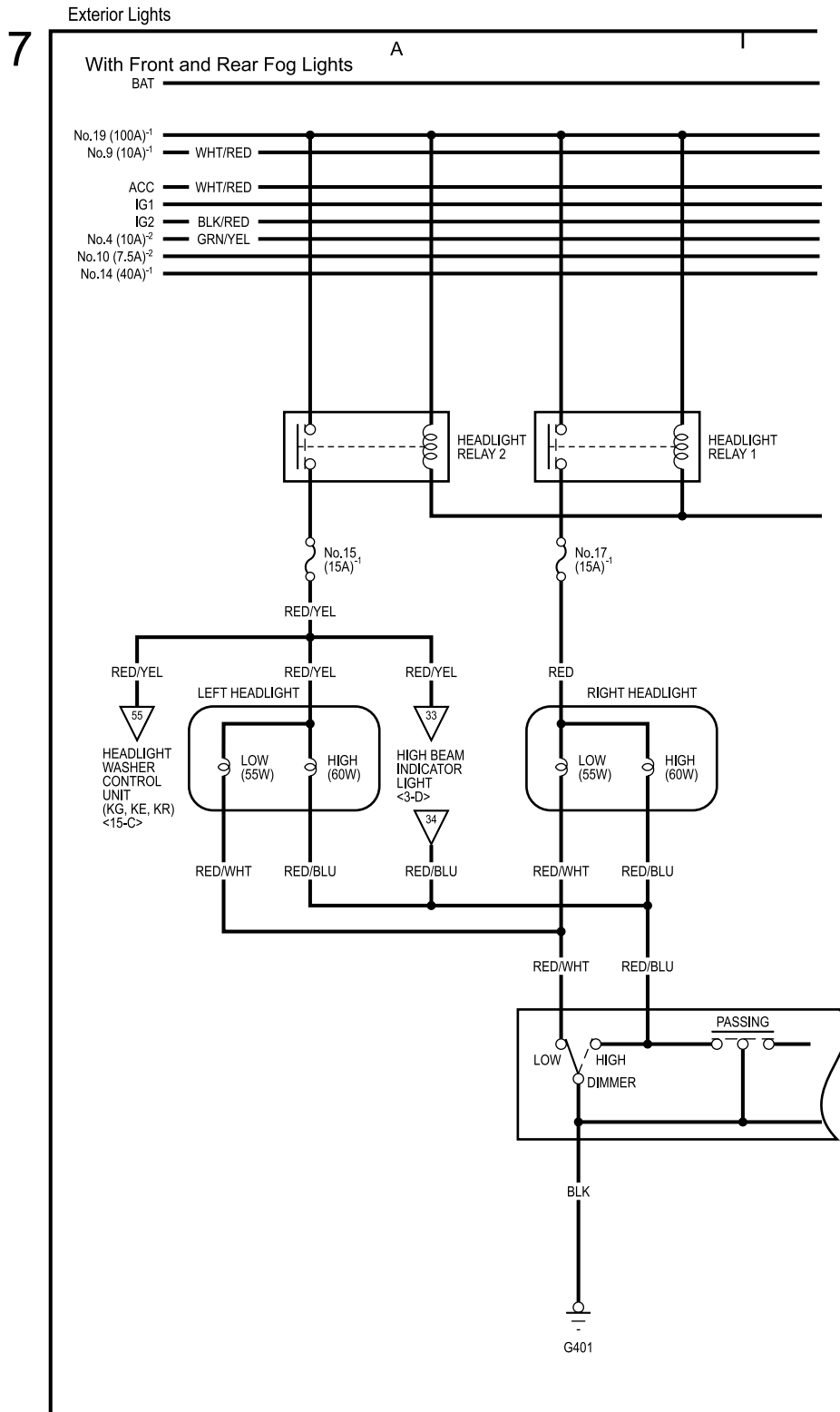
6

## Wiring diagrams

### Exterior Lights (With Front and Rear Fog Lights)

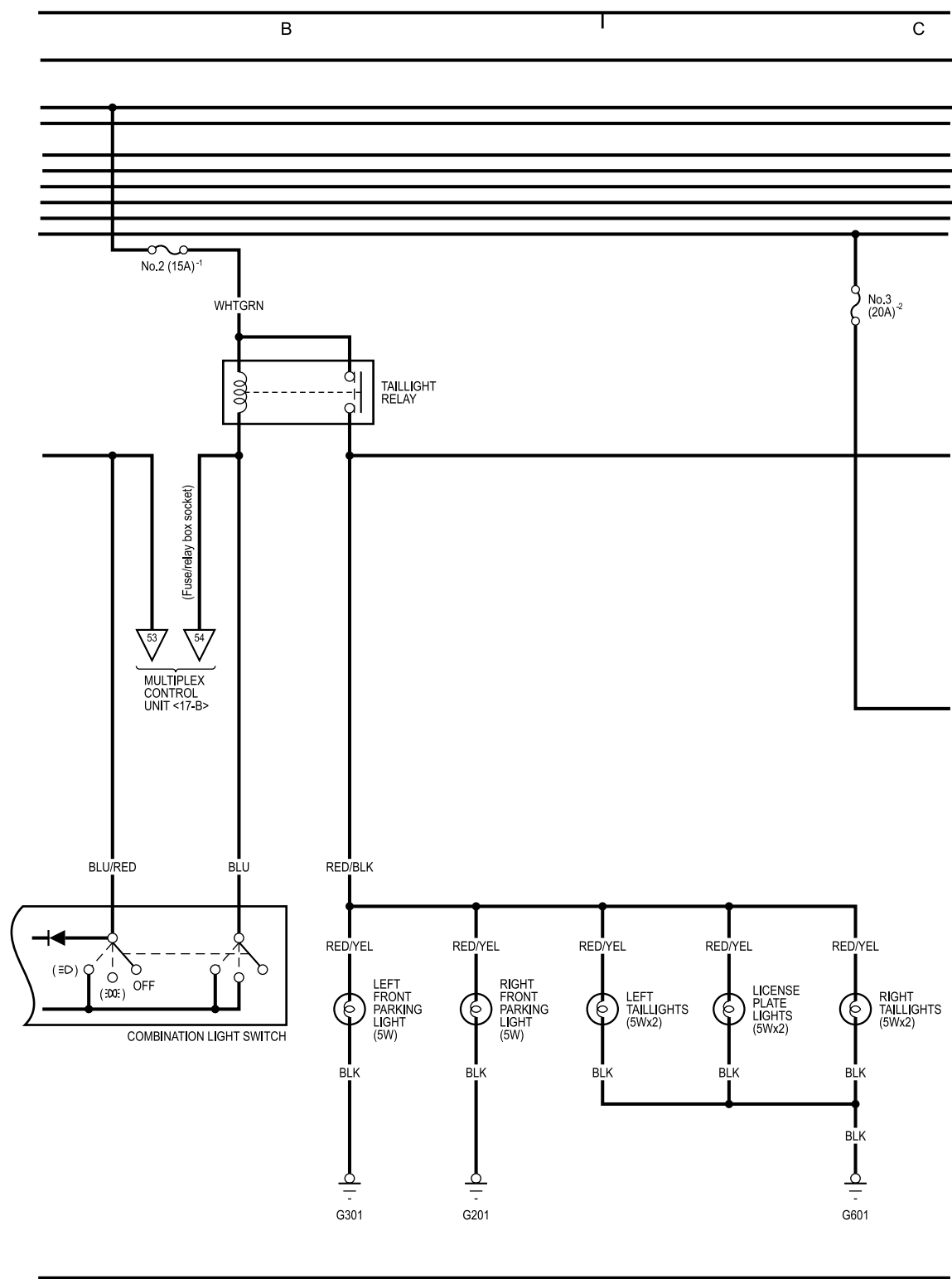


## Exterior Lights (With Front and Rear Fog Lights) (cont'd)



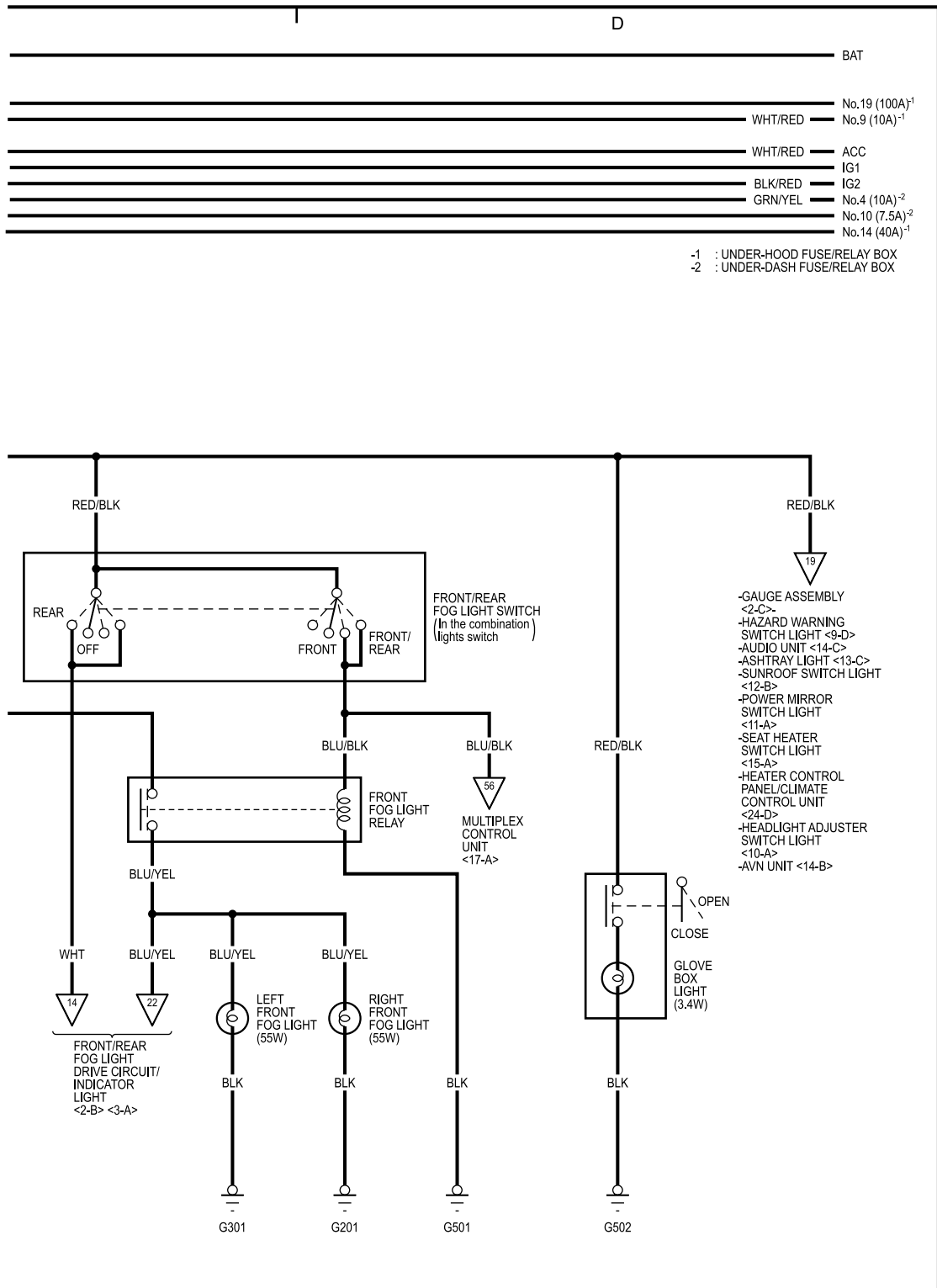
# Wiring diagrams

## Exterior Lights (With Front and Rear Fog Lights) (cont'd)



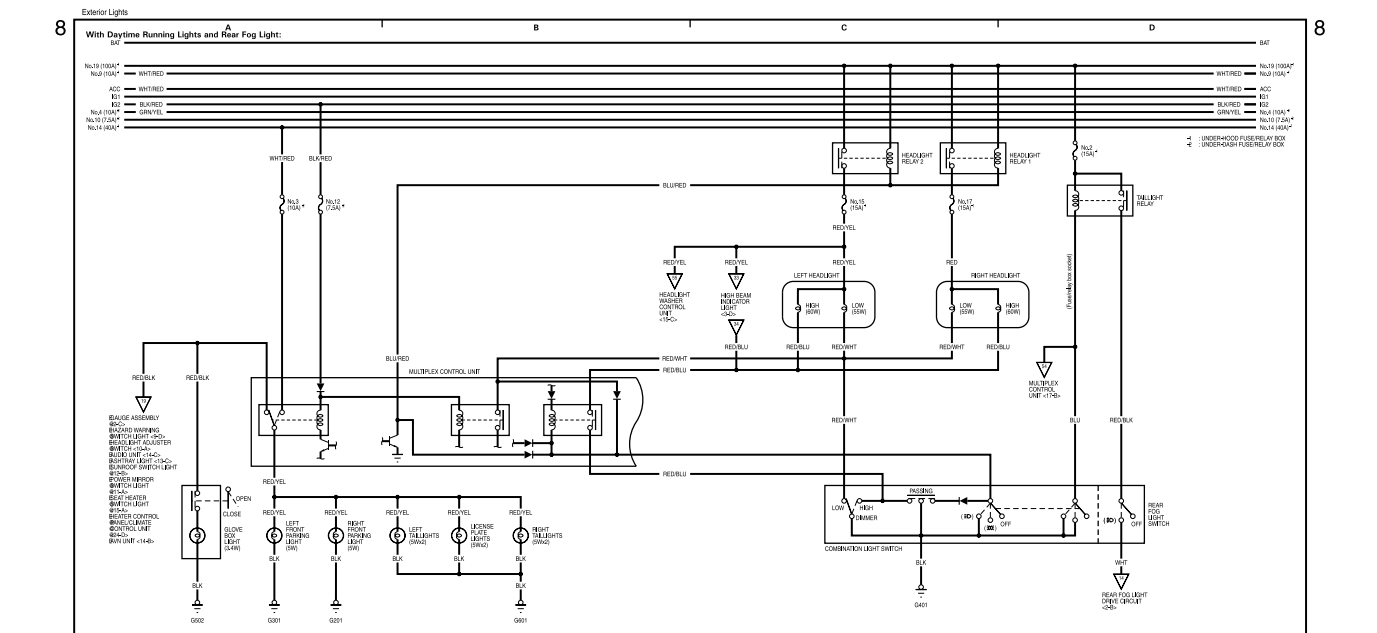


## Exterior Lights (With Front and Rear Fog Lights) (cont'd)

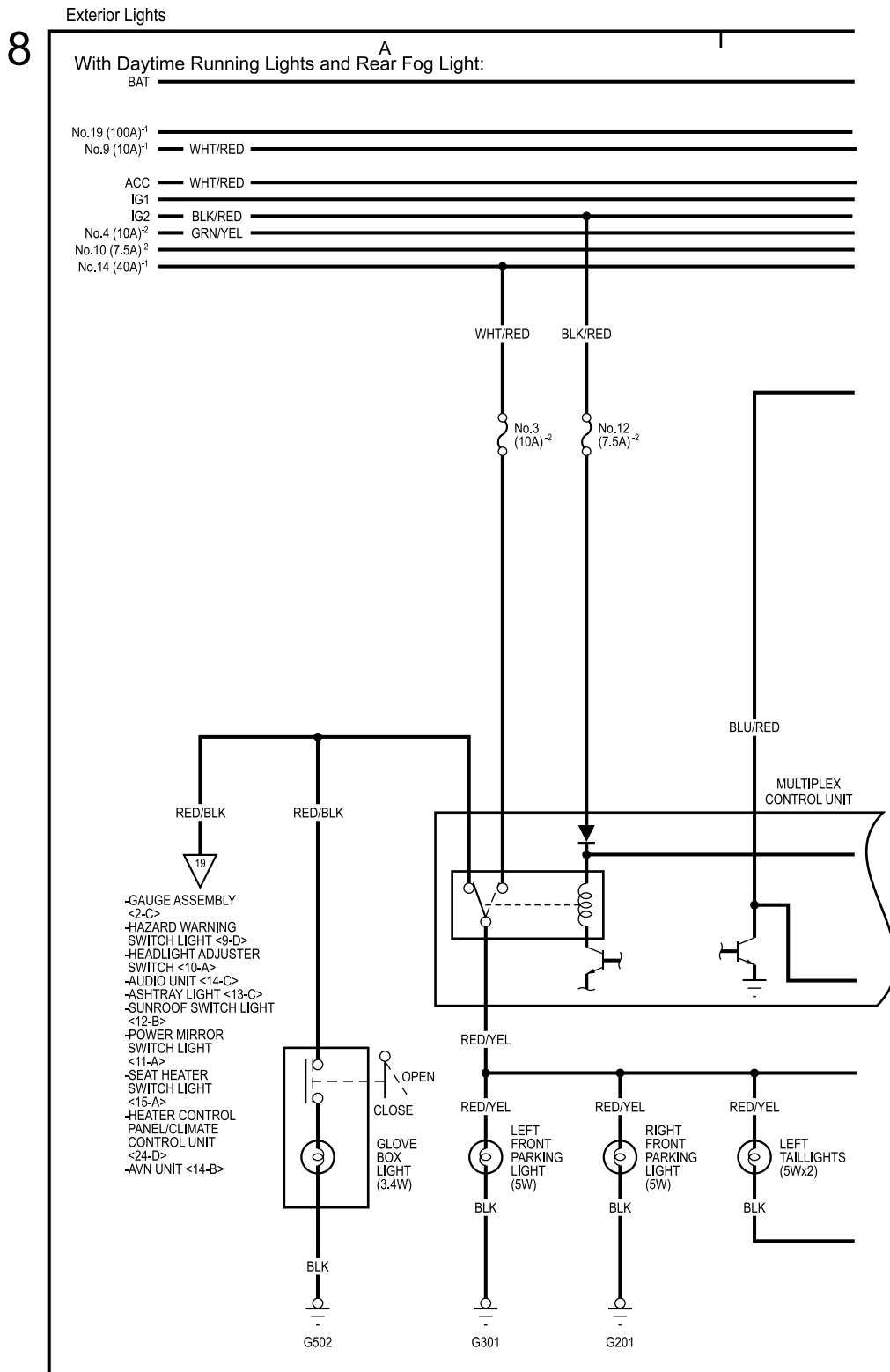


## Wiring diagrams

### Exterior Lights (With Daytime Running Lights and Rear Fog Light)

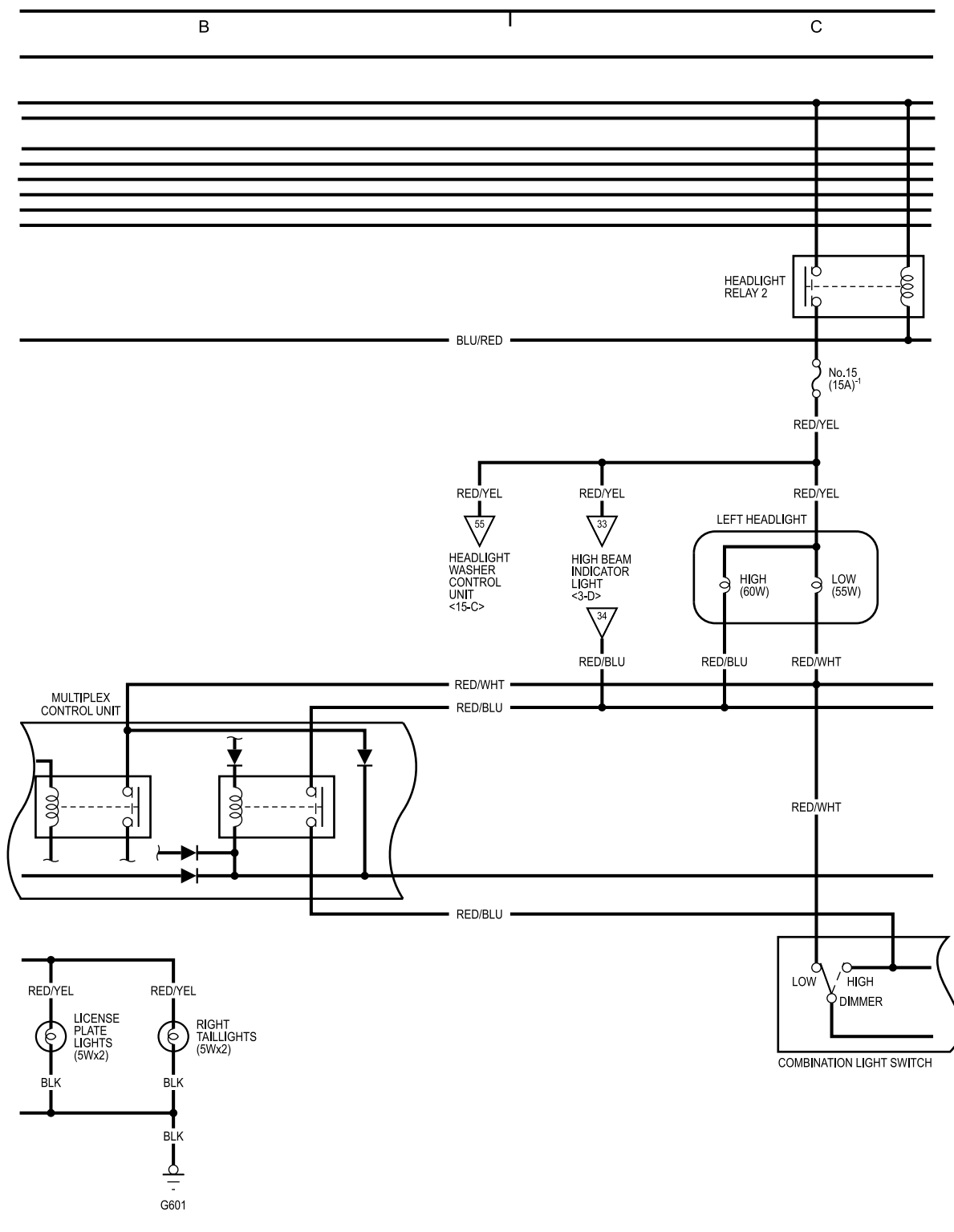


## Exterior Lights (With Daytime Running Lights and Rear Fog Light) (cont'd)

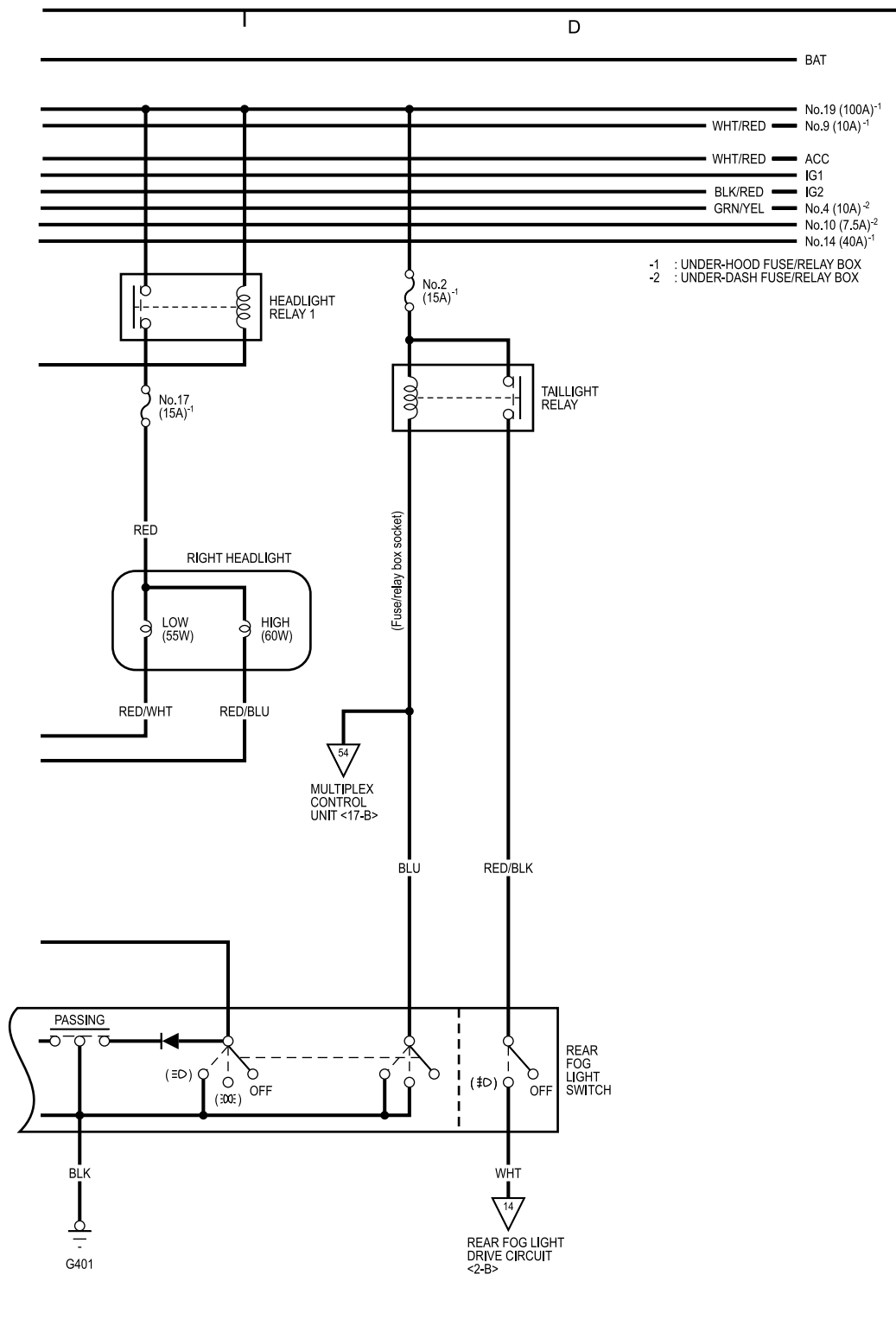


## Wiring diagrams

## Exterior Lights (With Daytime Running Lights and Rear Fog Light) (cont'd)



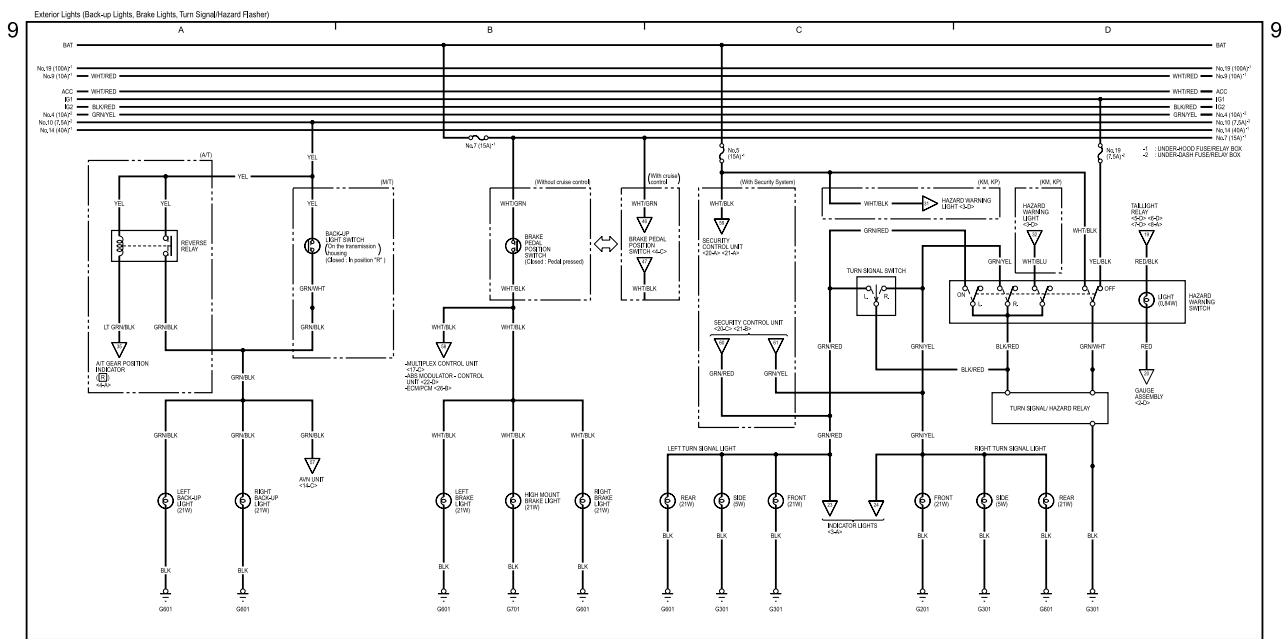
## Exterior Lights (With Daytime Running Lights and Rear Fog Light) (cont'd)



8

# Wiring diagrams

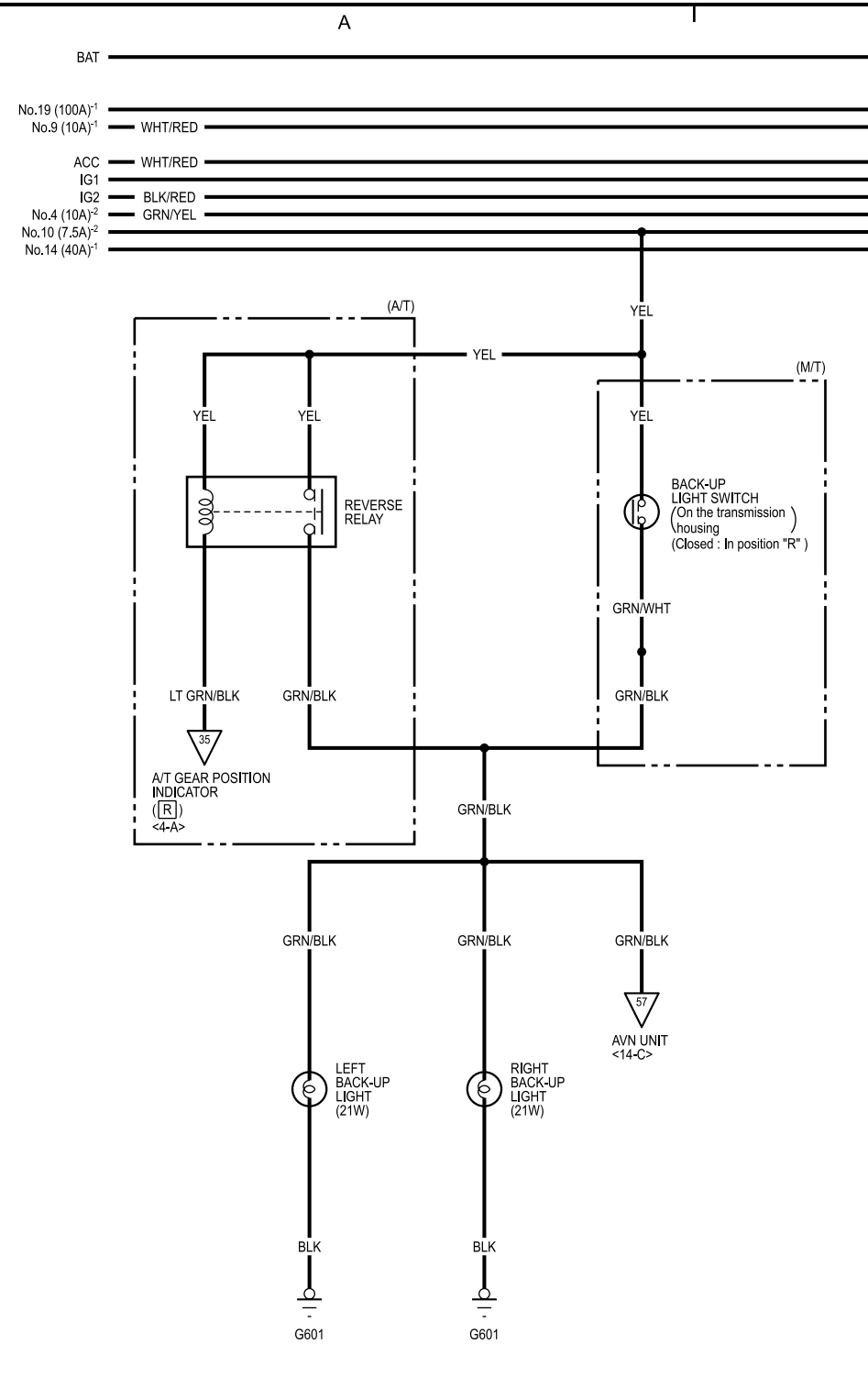
## Exterior Lights (Back-up Lights, Brake Lights, Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher)



## Exterior Lights (Back-up Lights, Brake Lights, Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher) (cont'd)

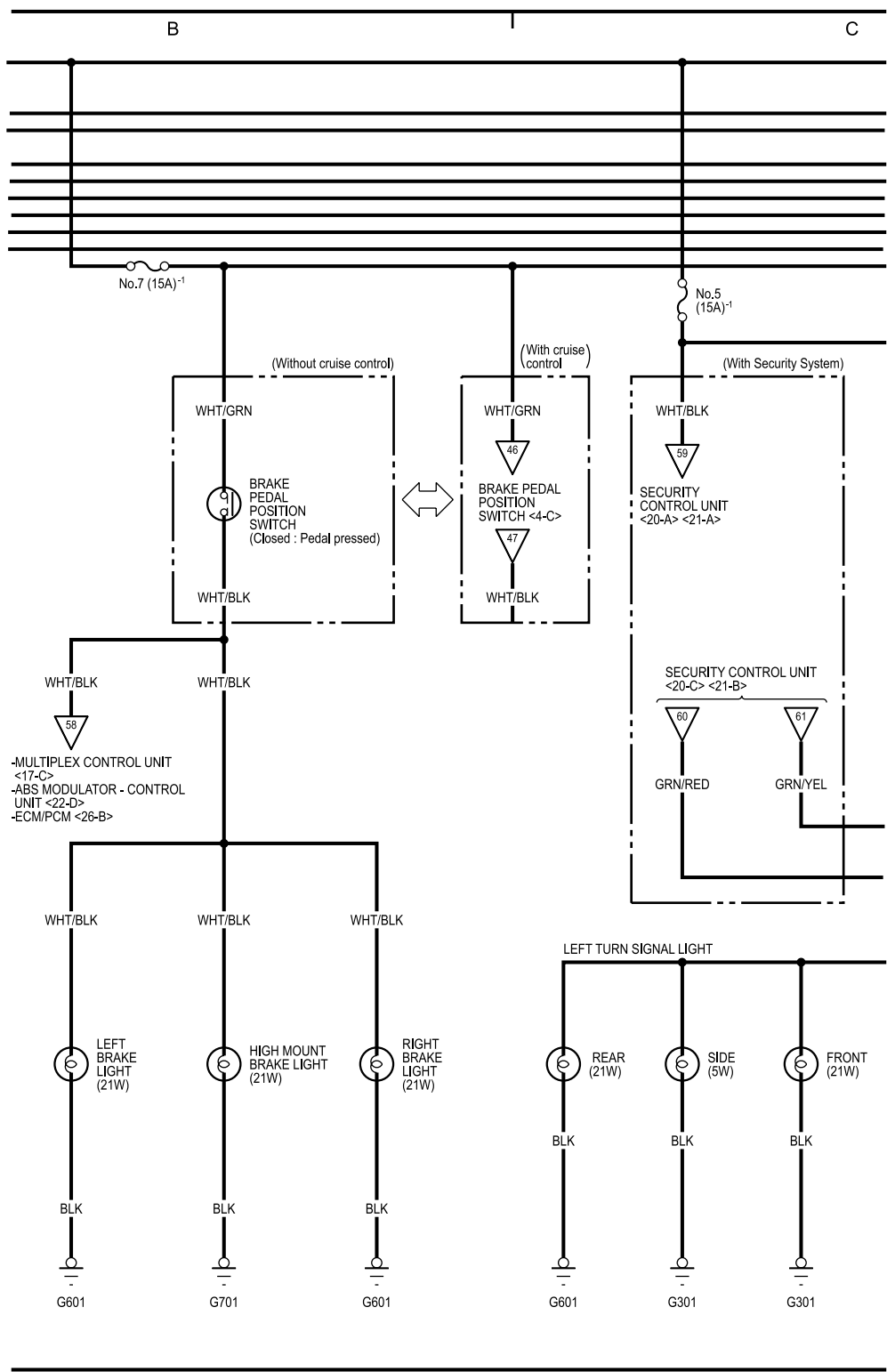
9

Exterior Lights (Back-up Lights, Brake Lights, Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher)



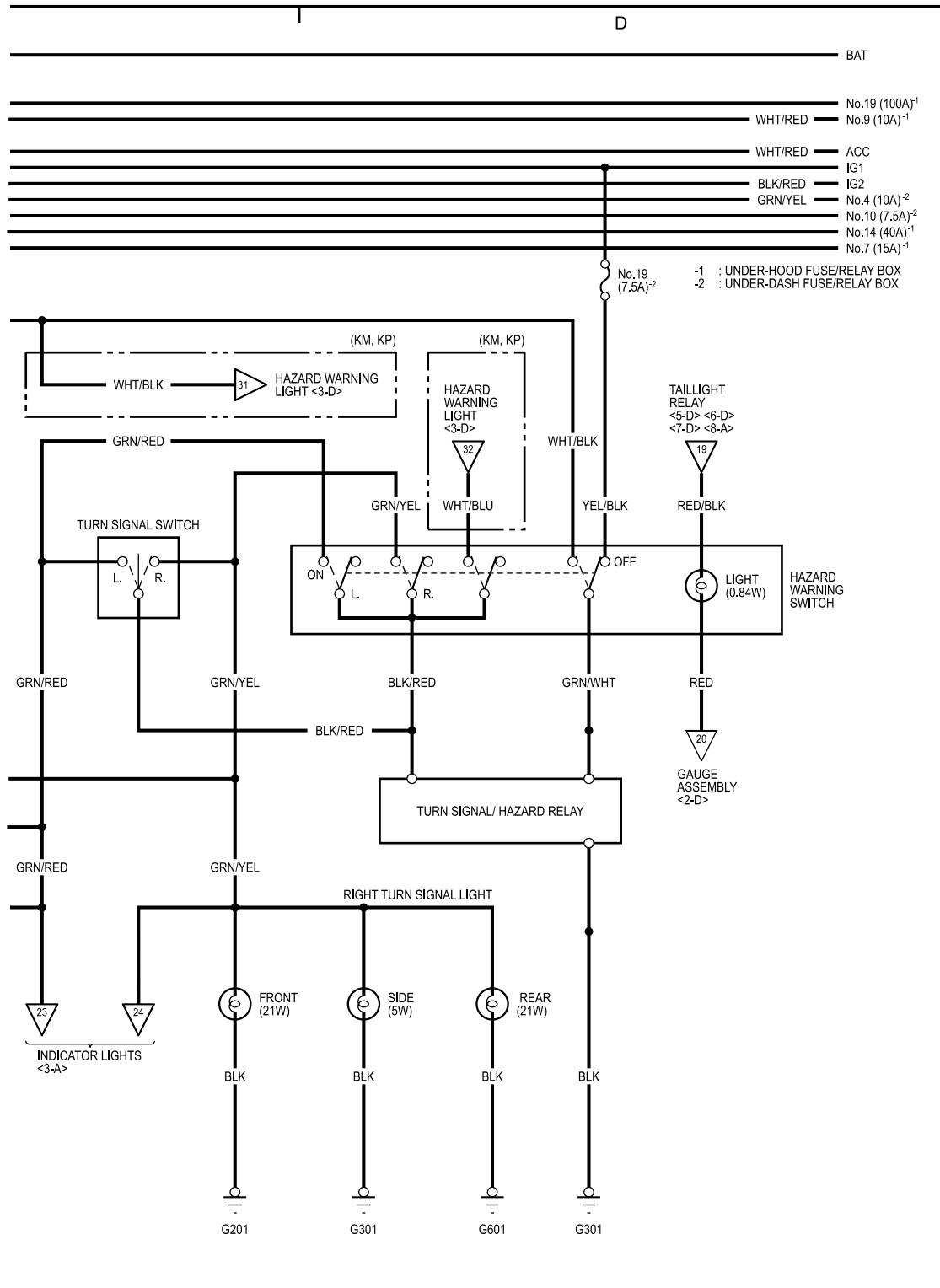
# Wiring diagrams

## Exterior Lights (Back-up Lights, Brake Lights, Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher) (cont'd)



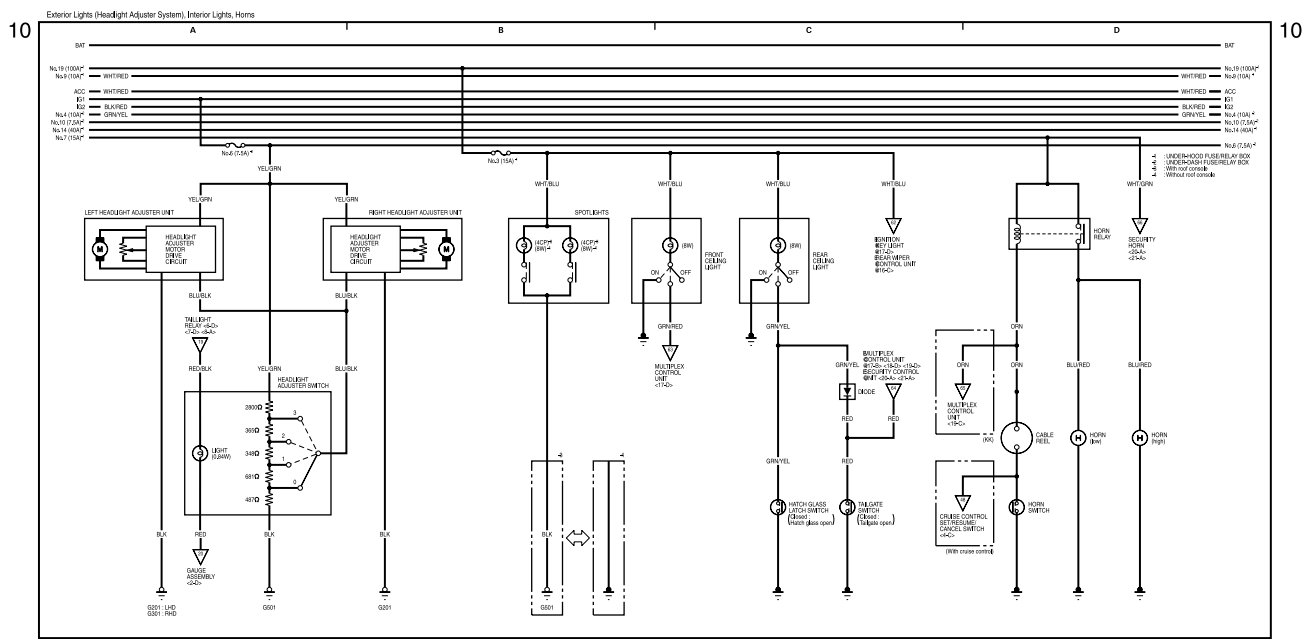


## Exterior Lights (Back-up Lights, Brake Lights, Turn Signal/Hazard Flasher) (cont'd)



# Wiring diagrams

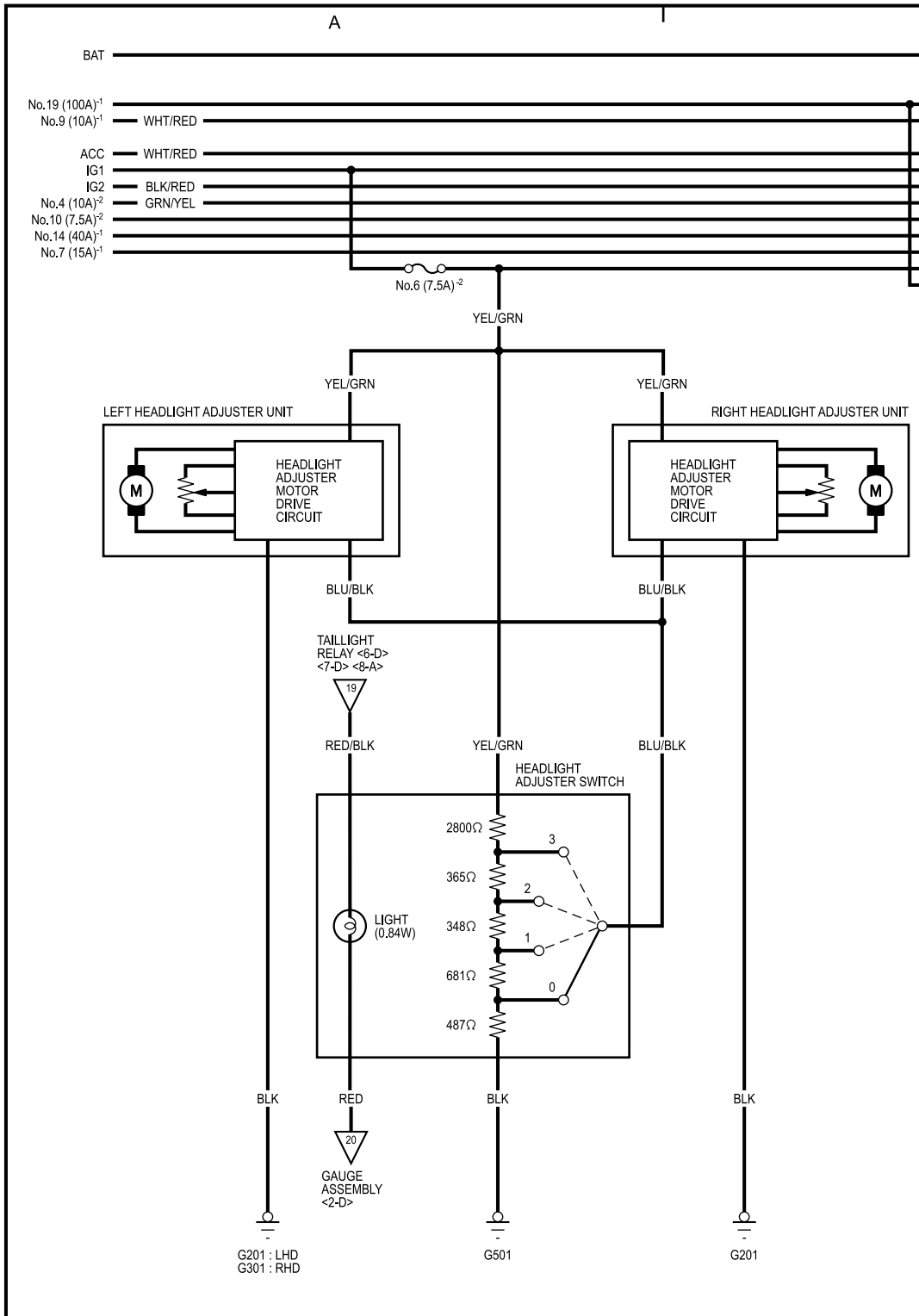
## Exterior Lights (Headlight Adjuster System), Interior Lights, Horns



## Exterior Lights (Headlight Adjuster System), Interior Lights, Horns (cont'd)

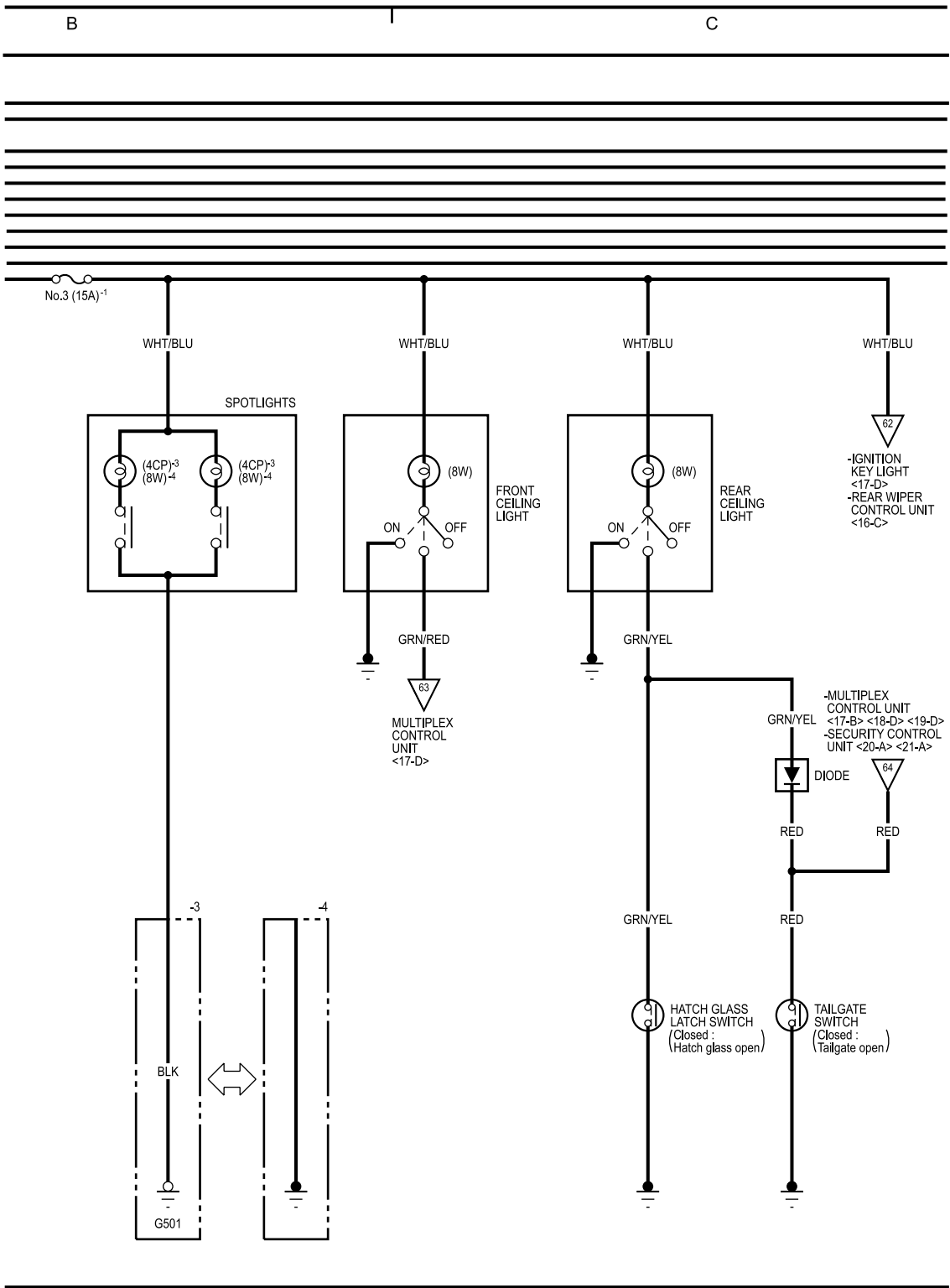
10

Exterior Lights (Headlight Adjuster System), Interior Lights, Horns

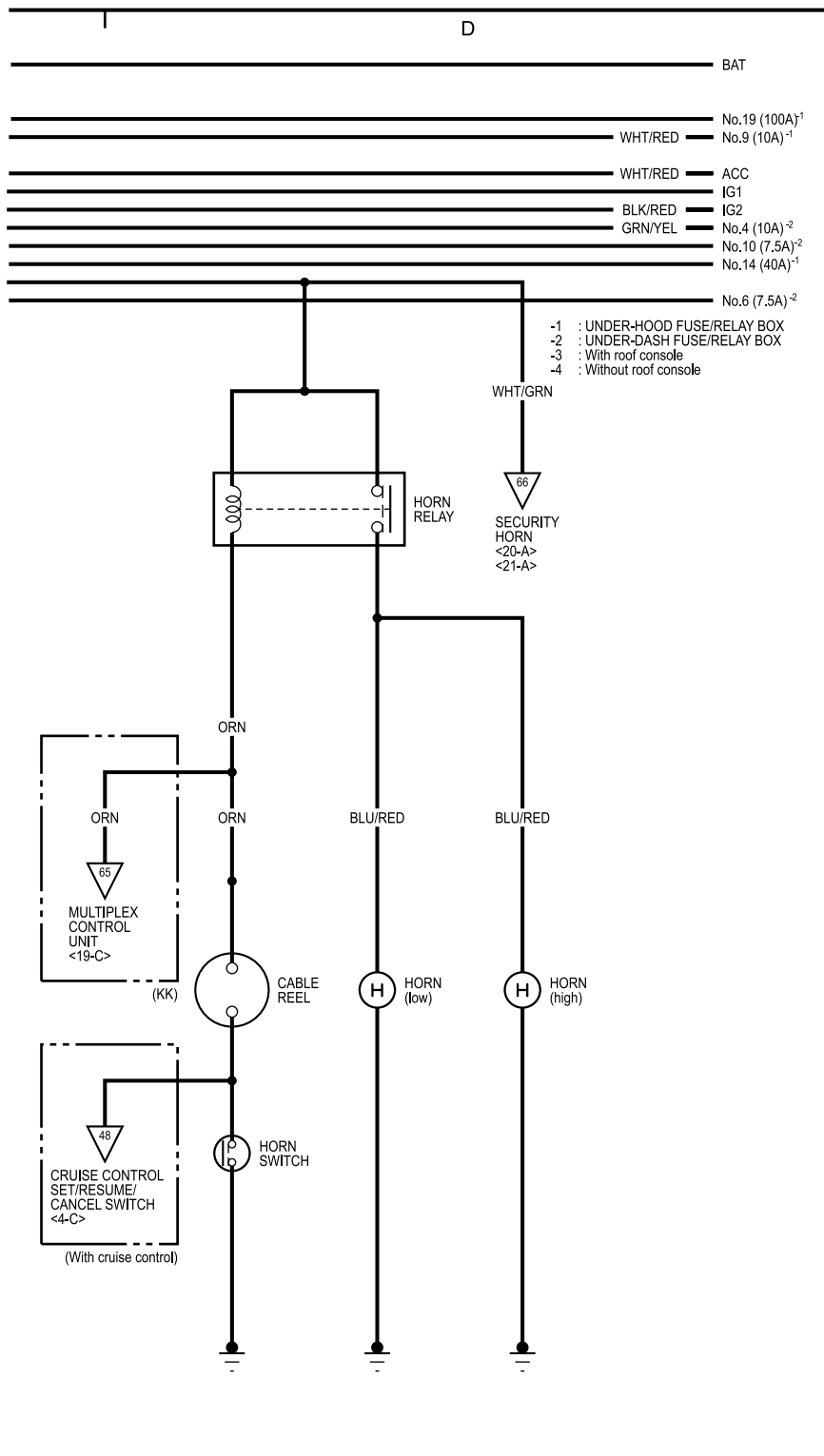


# Wiring diagrams

## Exterior Lights (Headlight Adjuster System), Interior Lights, Horns (cont'd)



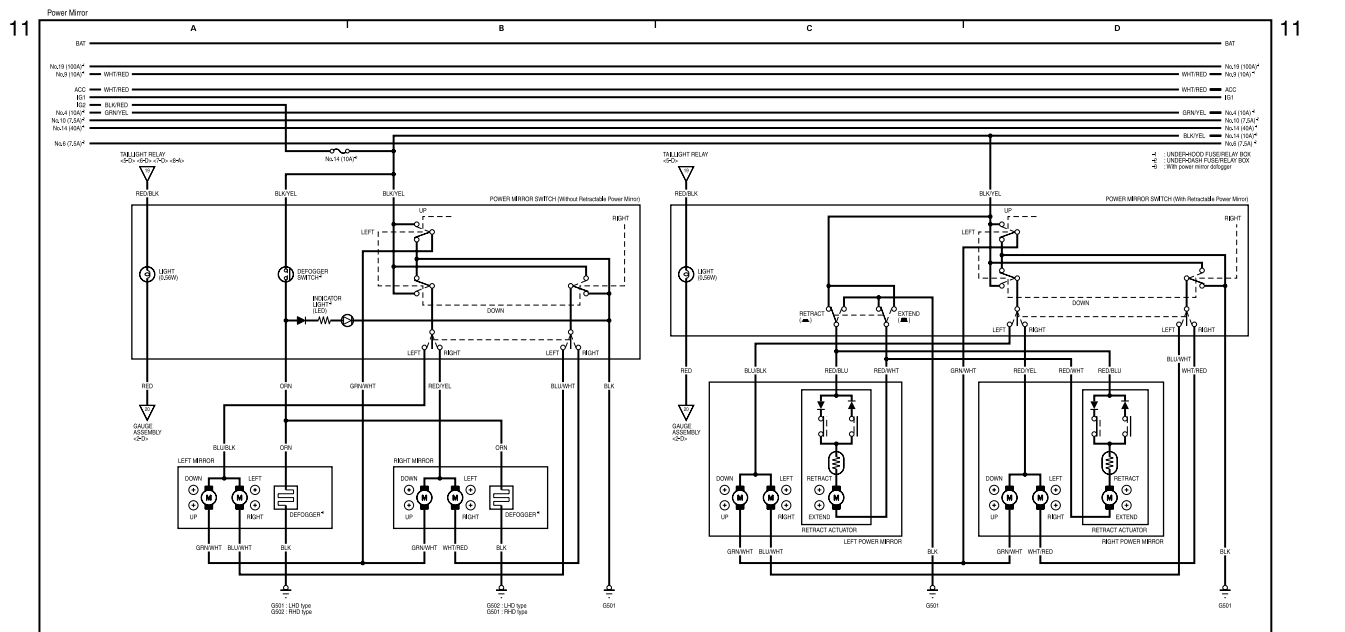
## Exterior Lights (Headlight Adjuster System), Interior Lights, Horns (cont'd)



10

## Wiring diagrams

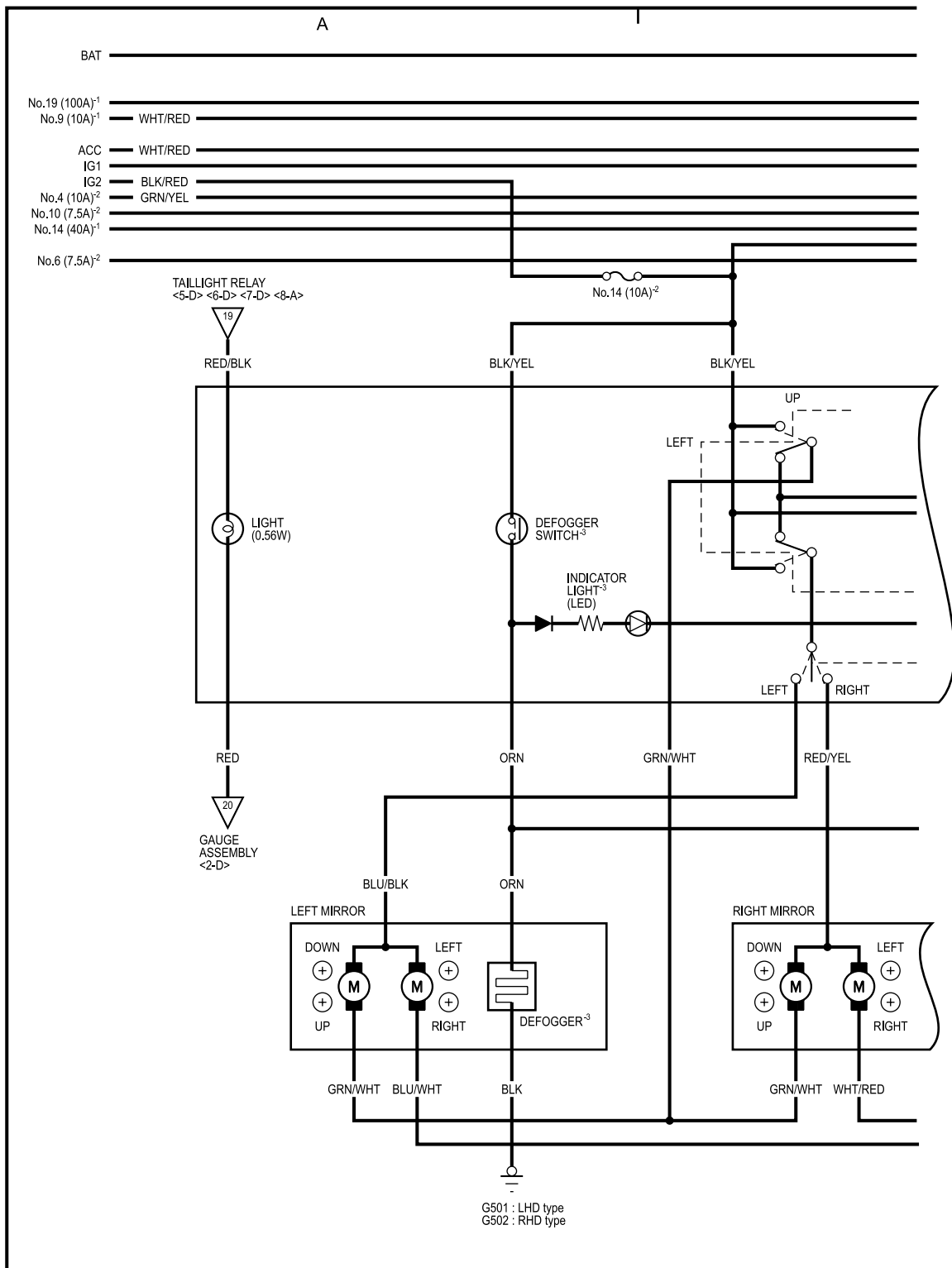
## Power Mirror



## Power Mirror (cont'd)

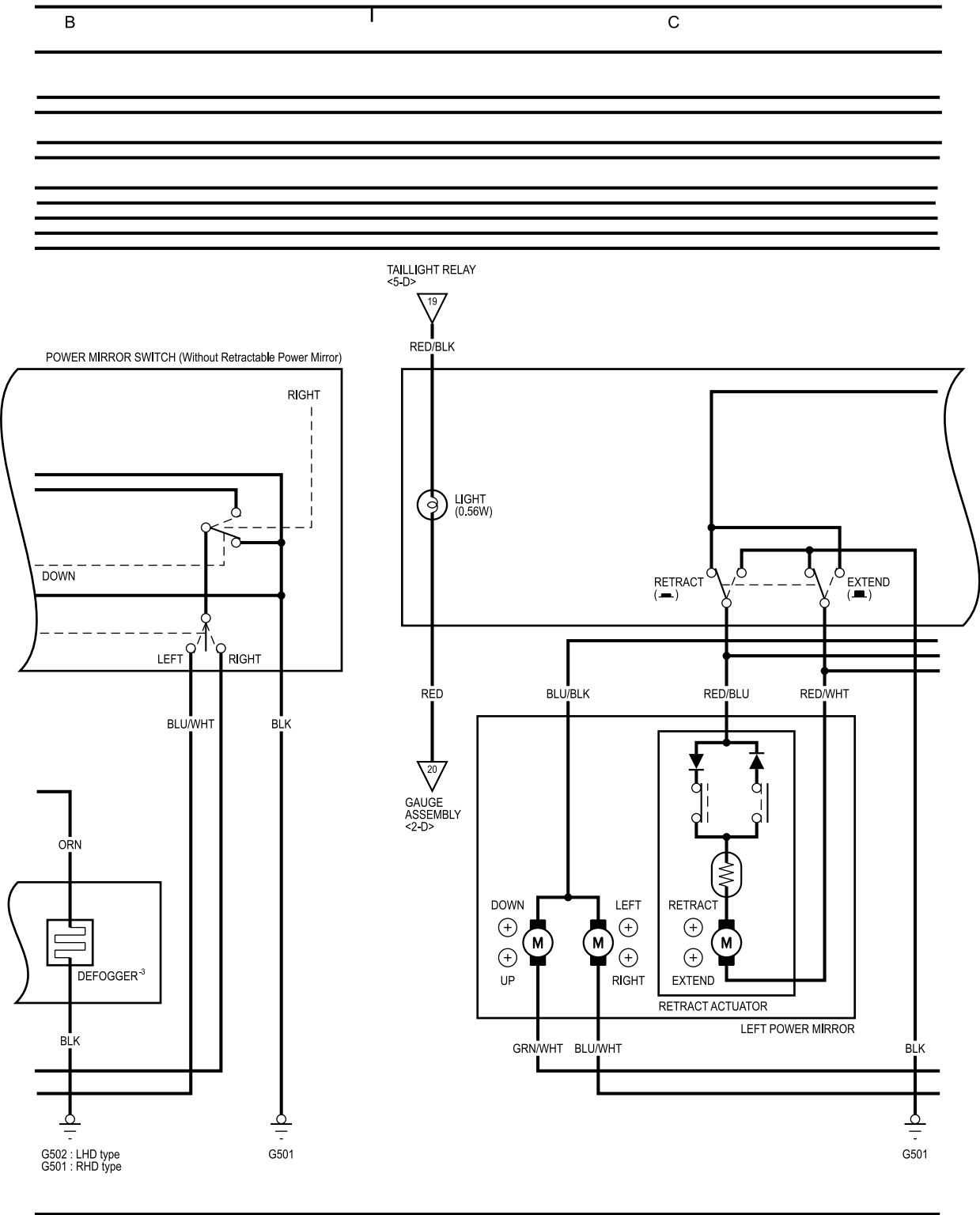
11

Power Mirror



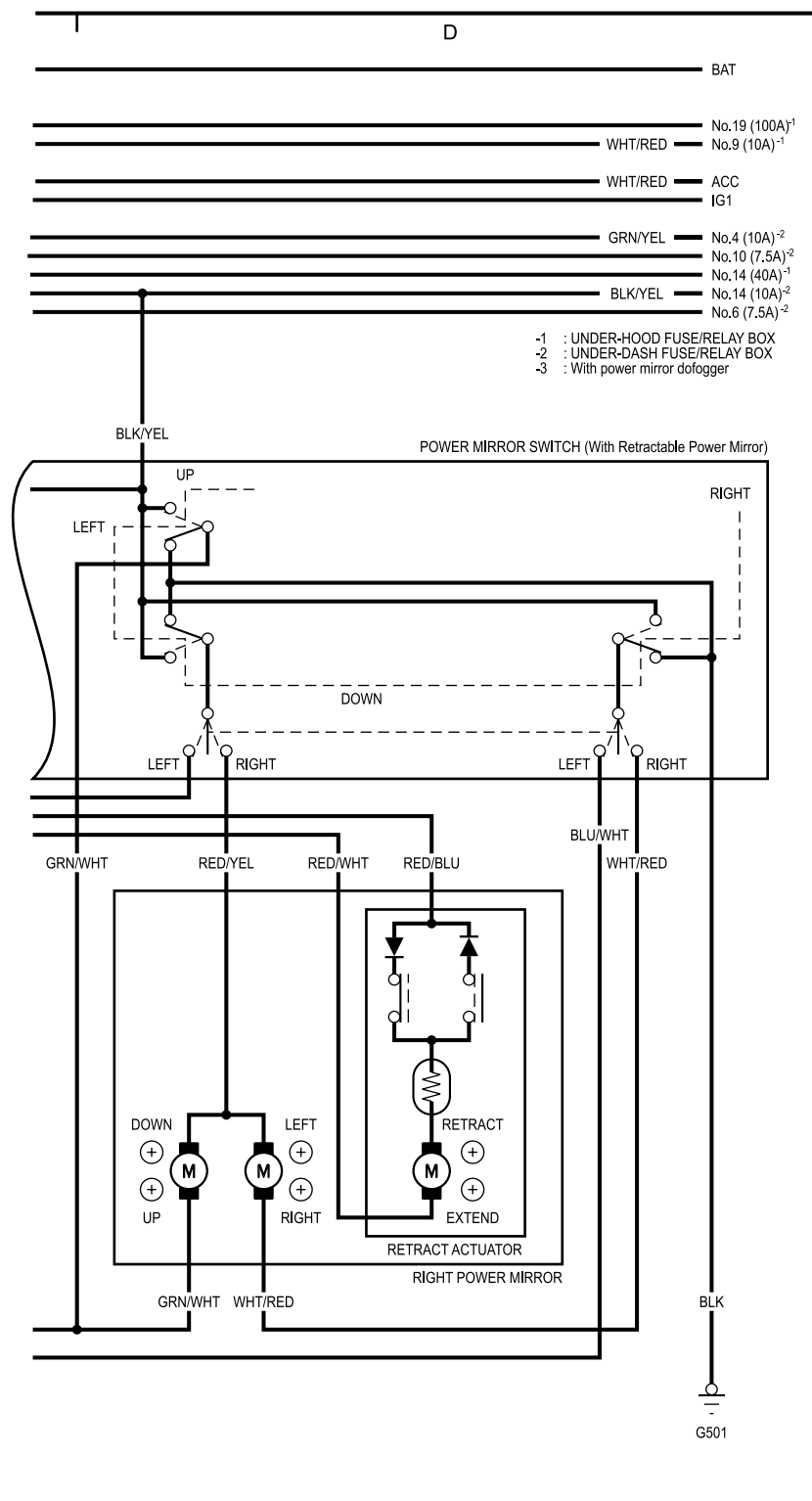
# Wiring diagrams

## Power Mirror (cont'd)





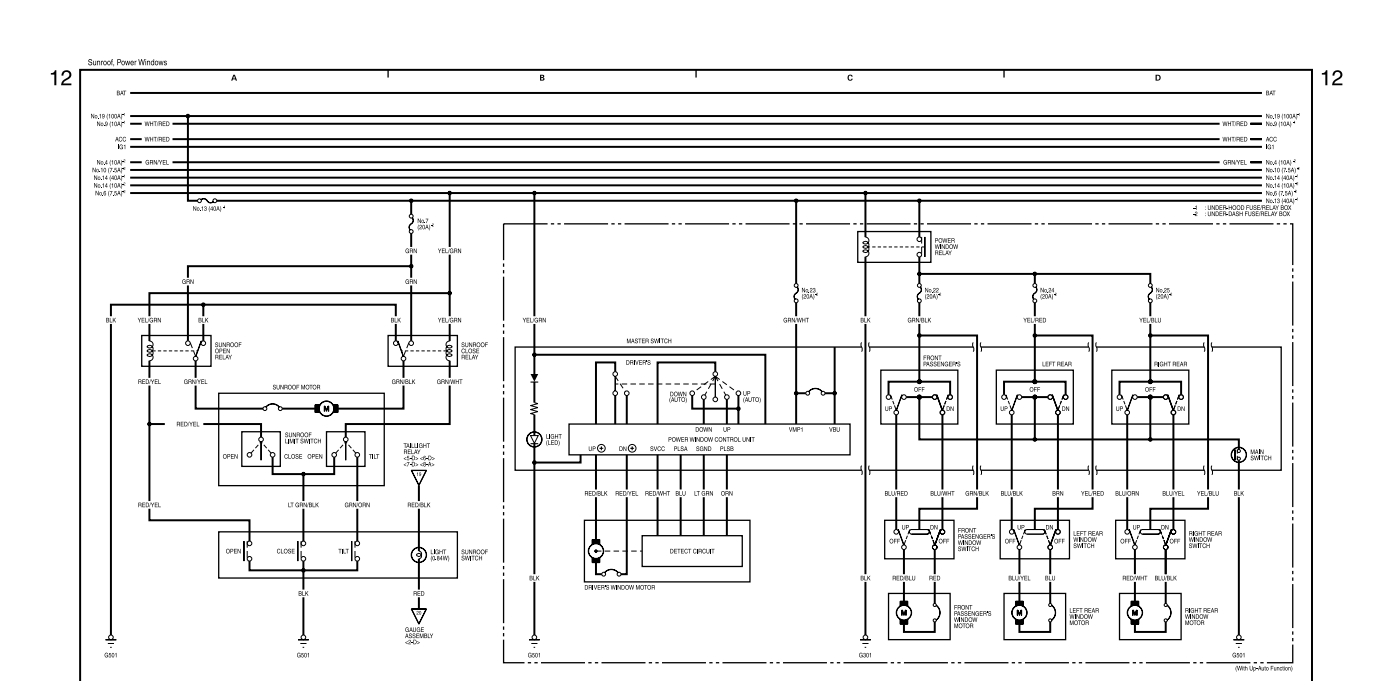
## Power Mirror (cont'd)



11

## Wiring diagrams

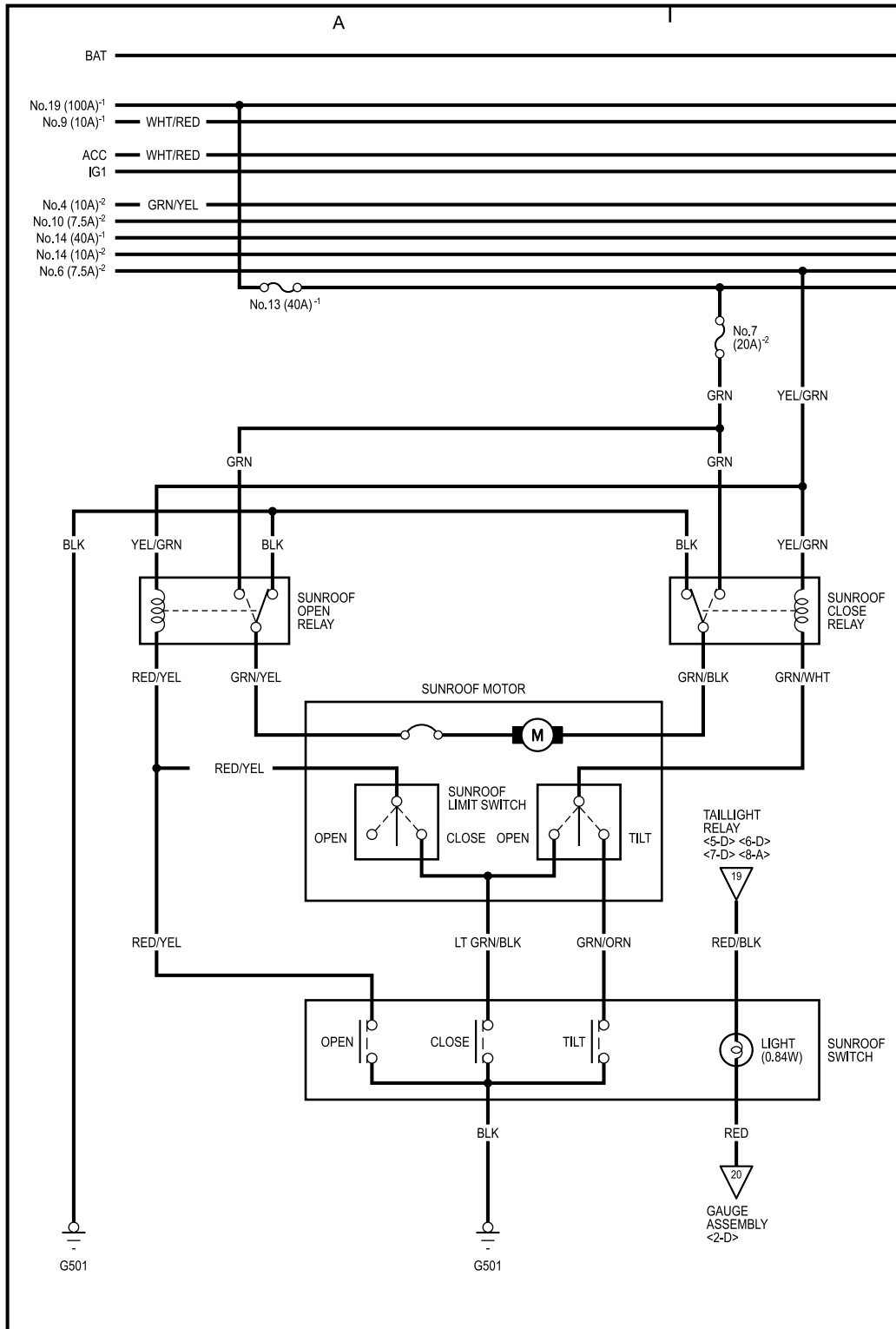
**Sunroof, Power Windows**



## Sunroof, Power Windows (cont'd)

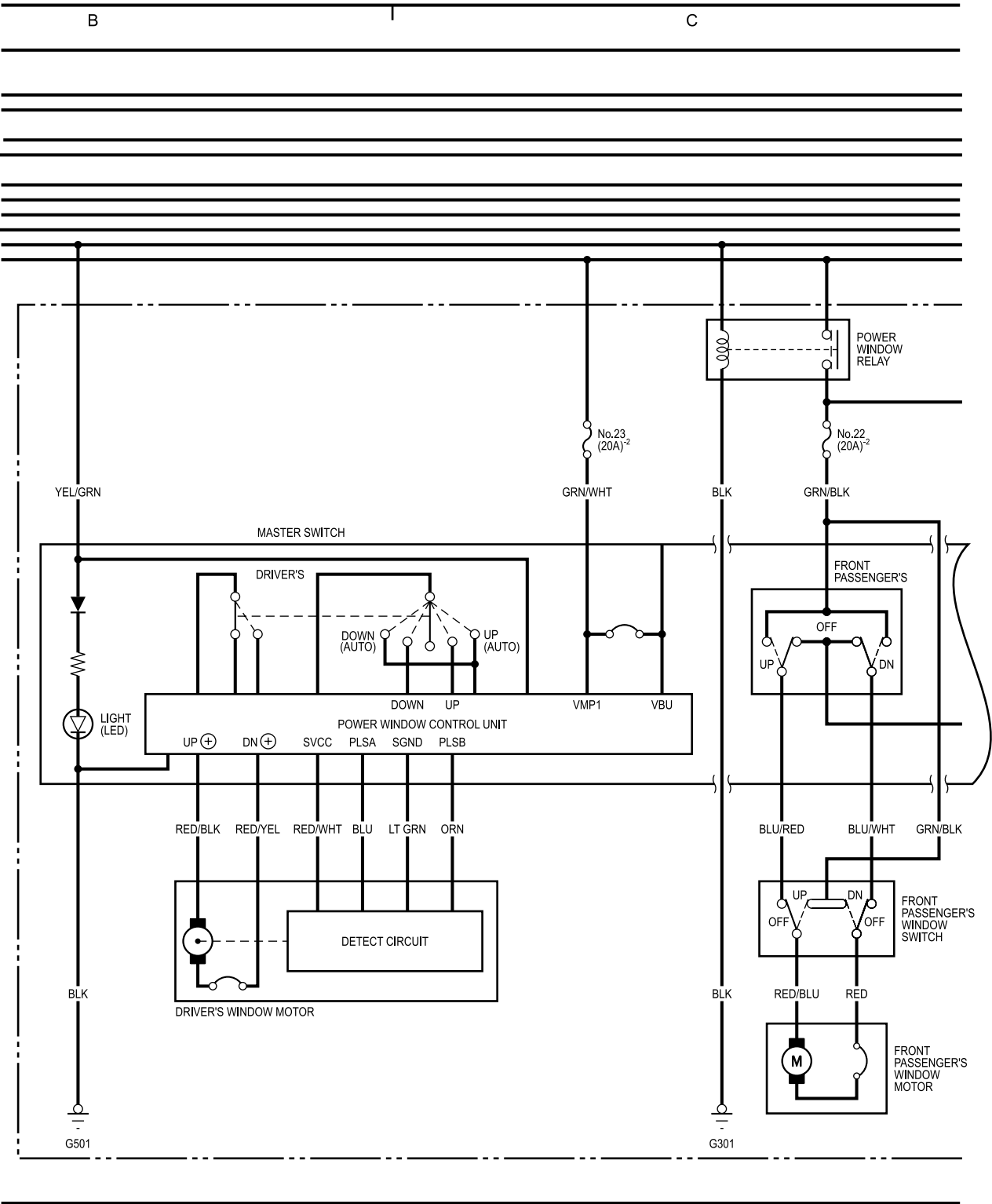
12

Sunroof, Power Windows



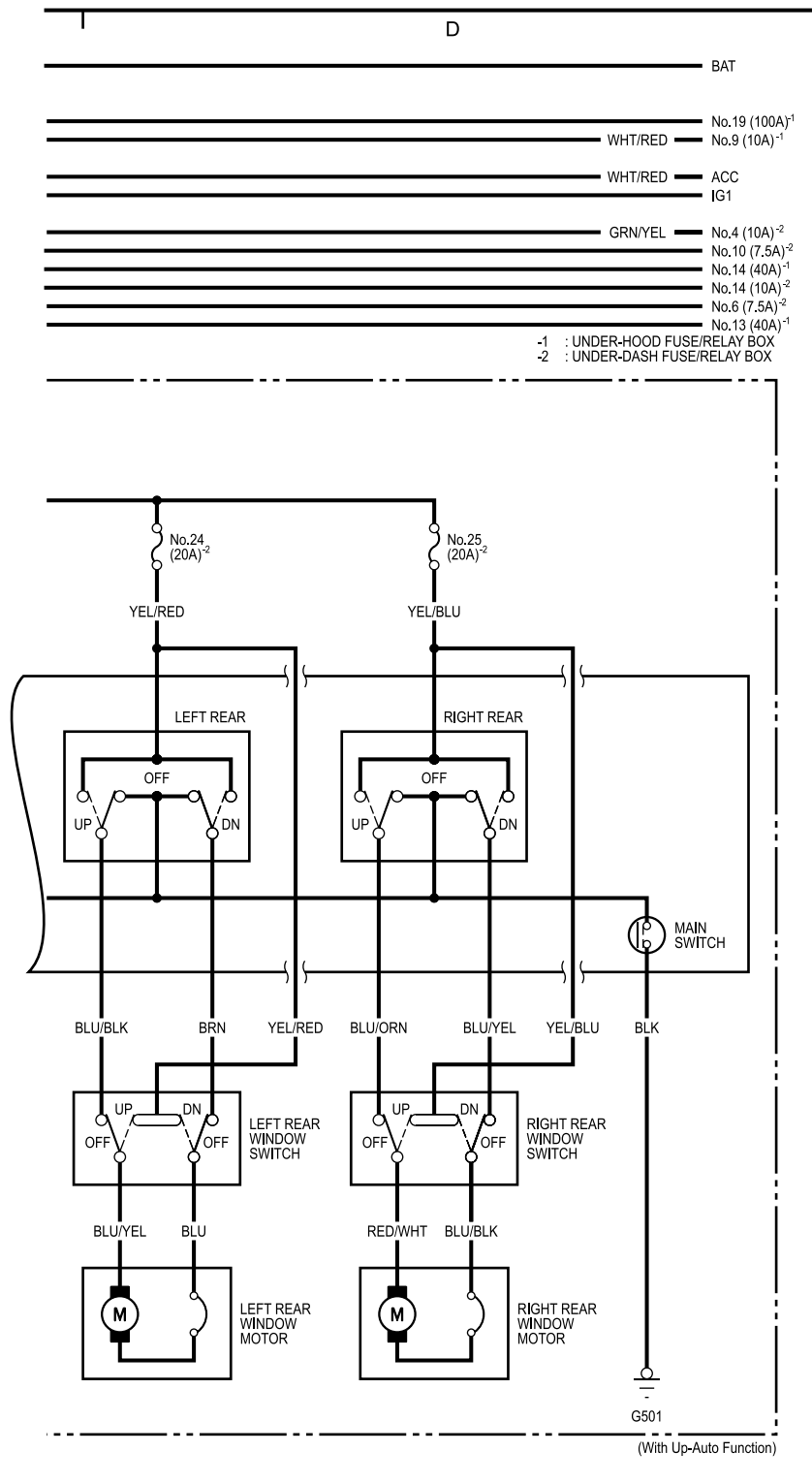
# Wiring diagrams

## Sunroof, Power Windows (cont'd)



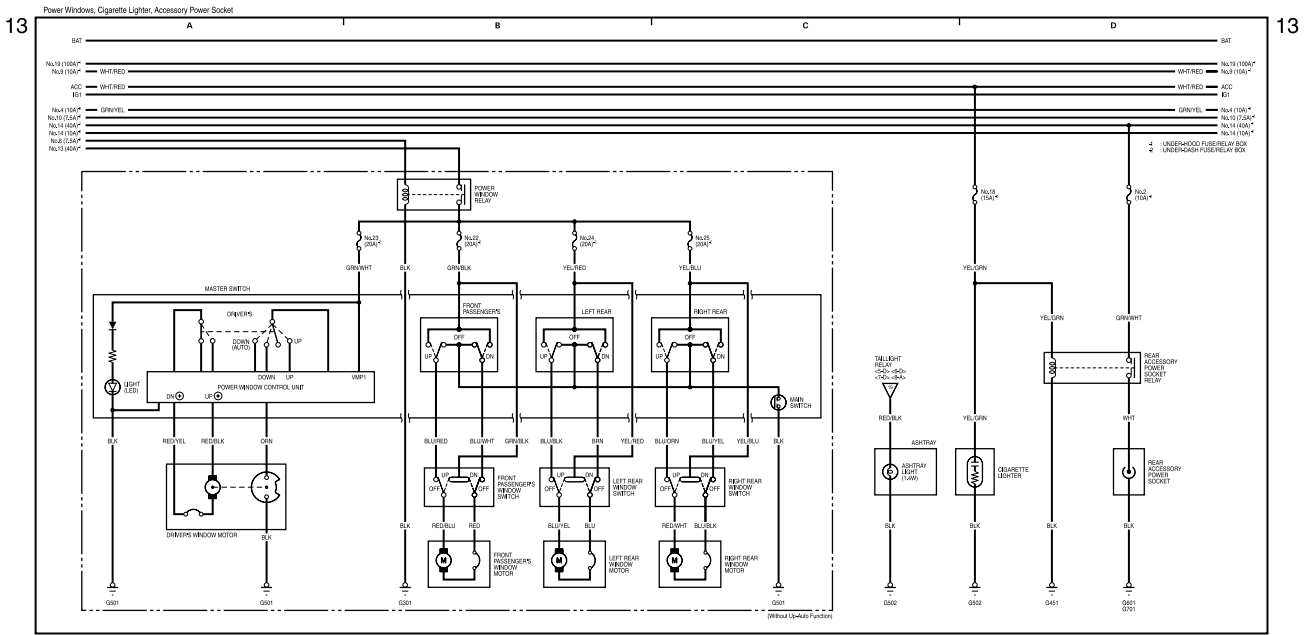
## Sunroof, Power Windows (cont'd)

12



## Wiring diagrams

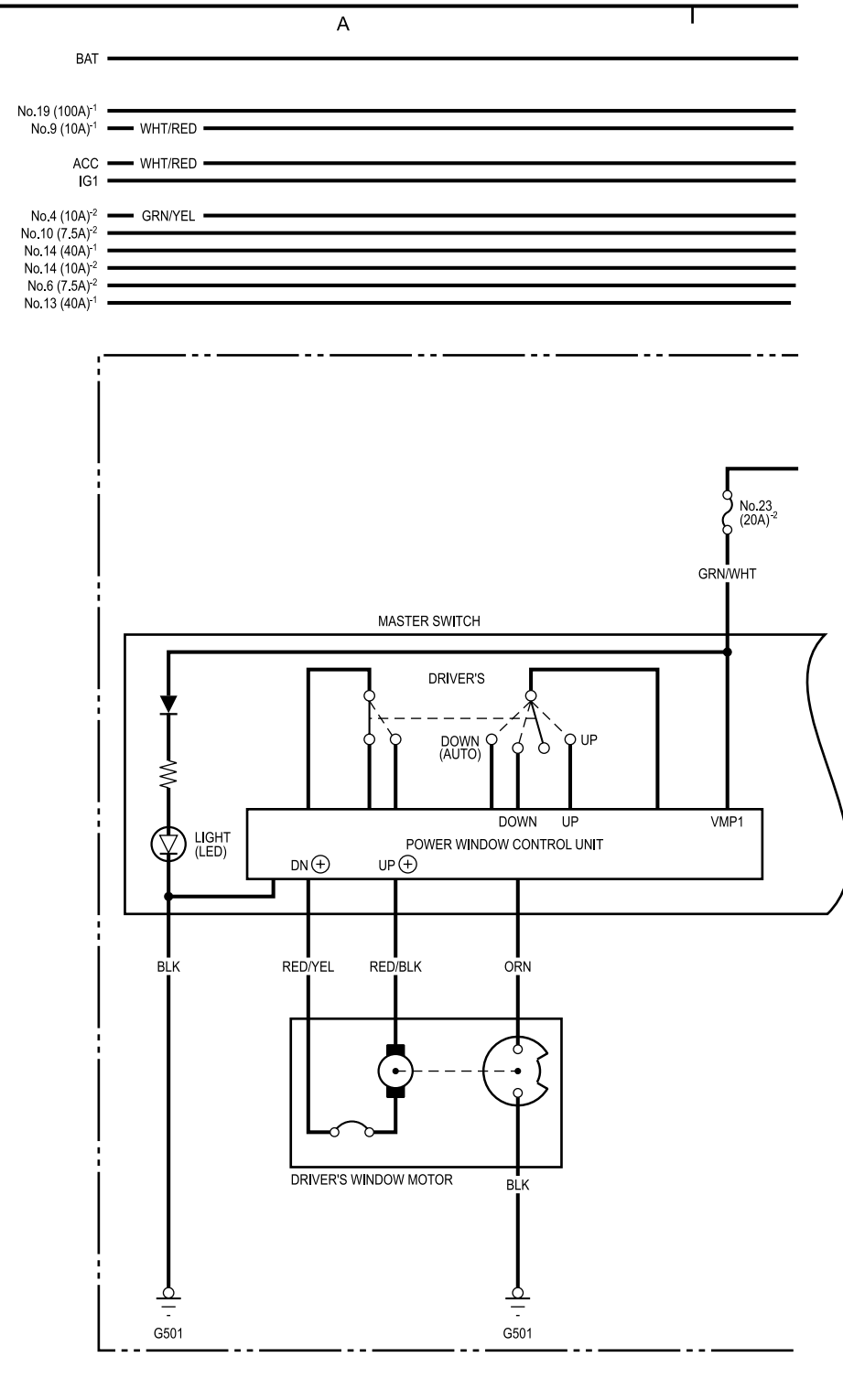
## Power Window, Cigarette Lighter, Accessory Power Socket



## Power Window, Cigarette Lighter, Accessory Power Socket (cont'd)

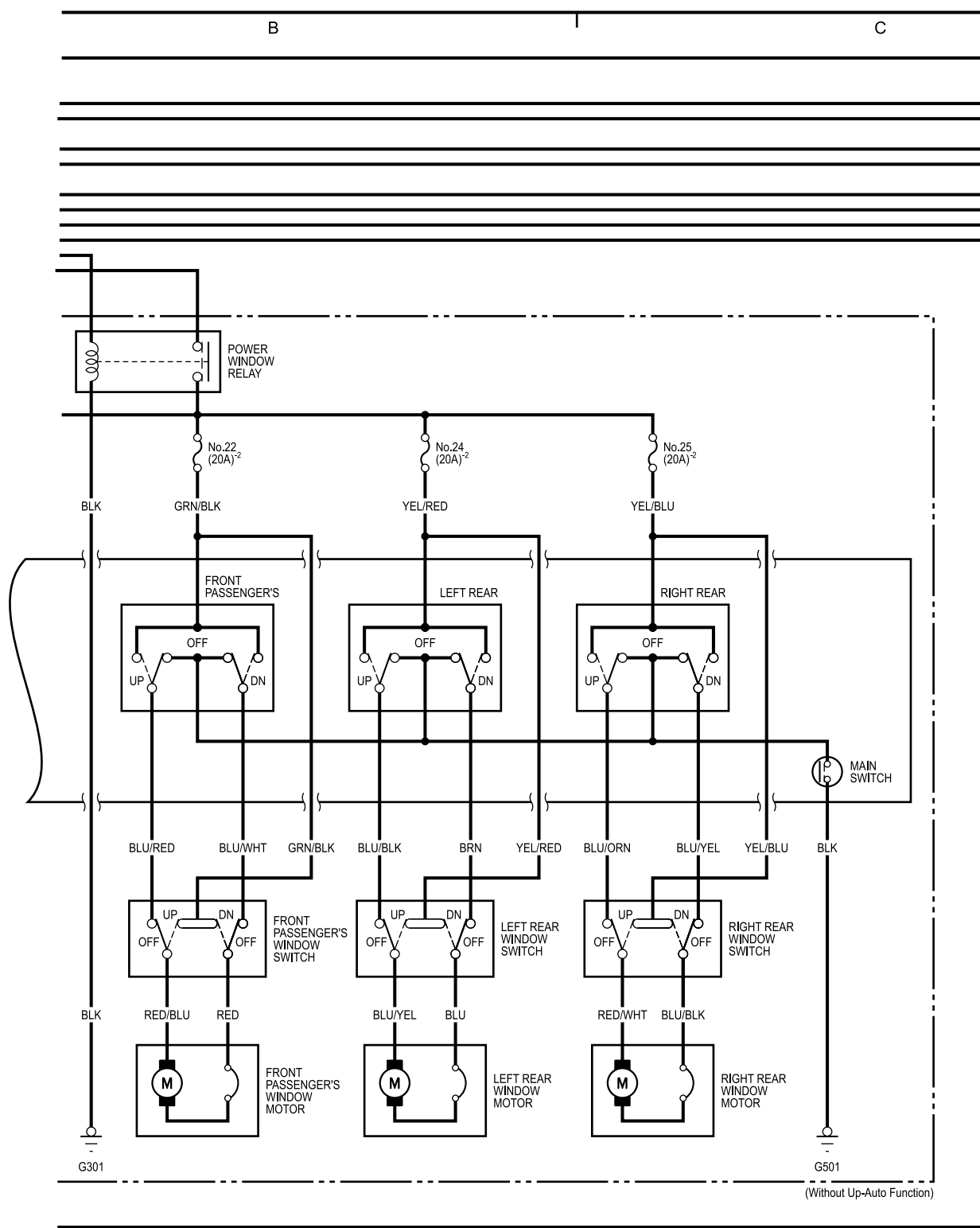
13

Power Windows, Cigarette Lighter, Accessory Power Socket



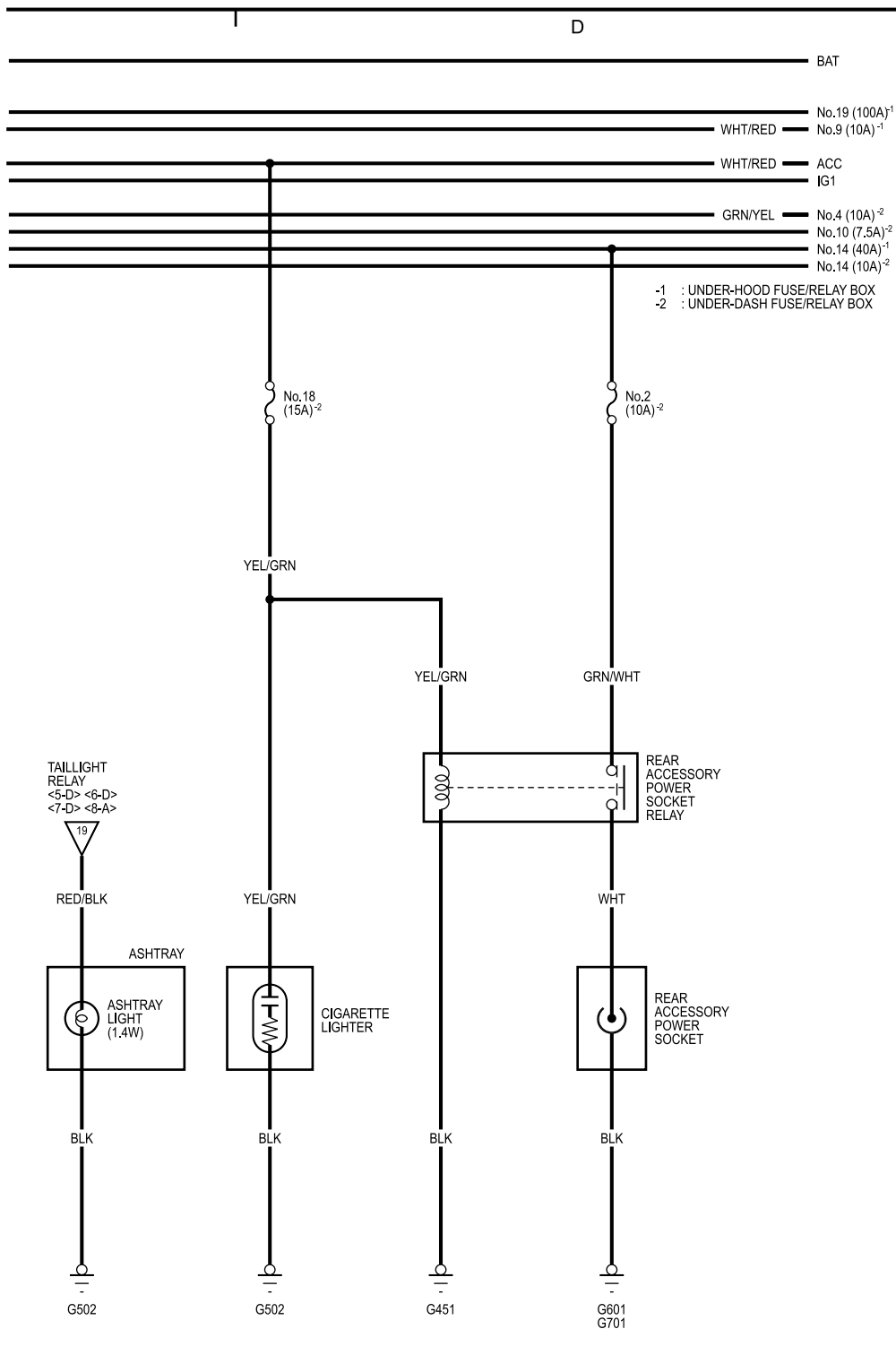
# Wiring diagrams

## Power Window, Cigarette Lighter, Accessory Power Socket (cont'd)





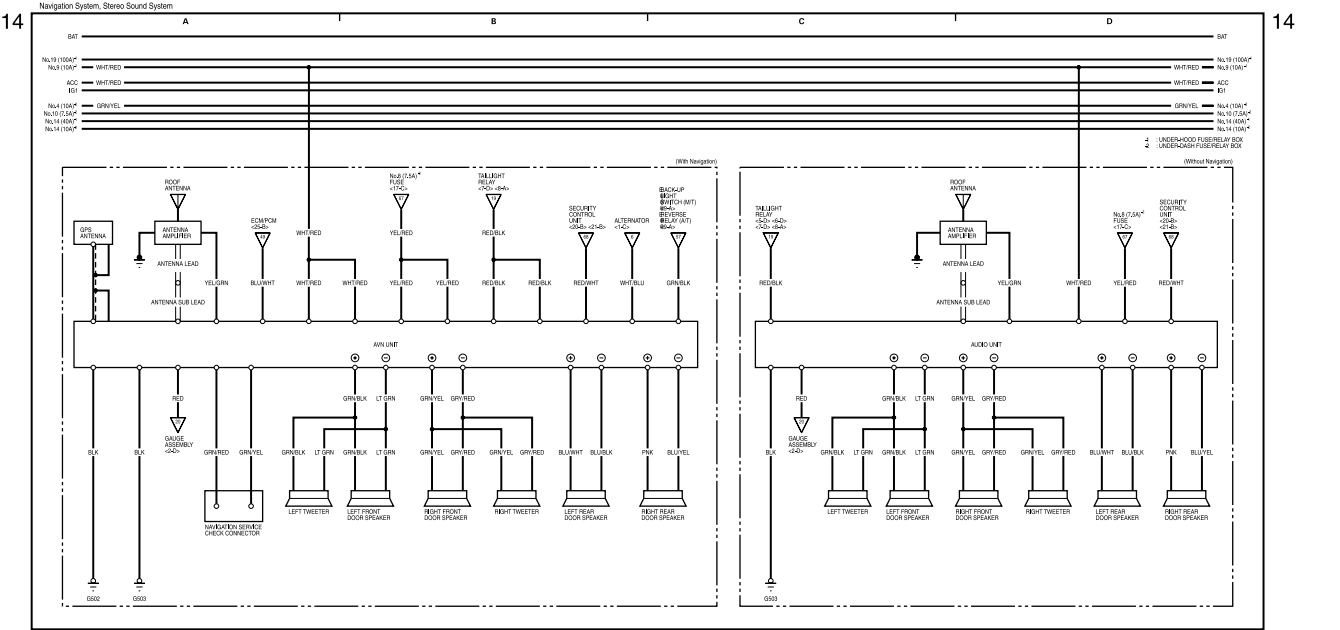
## Power Window, Cigarette Lighter, Accessory Power Socket (cont'd)



13

# Wiring diagrams

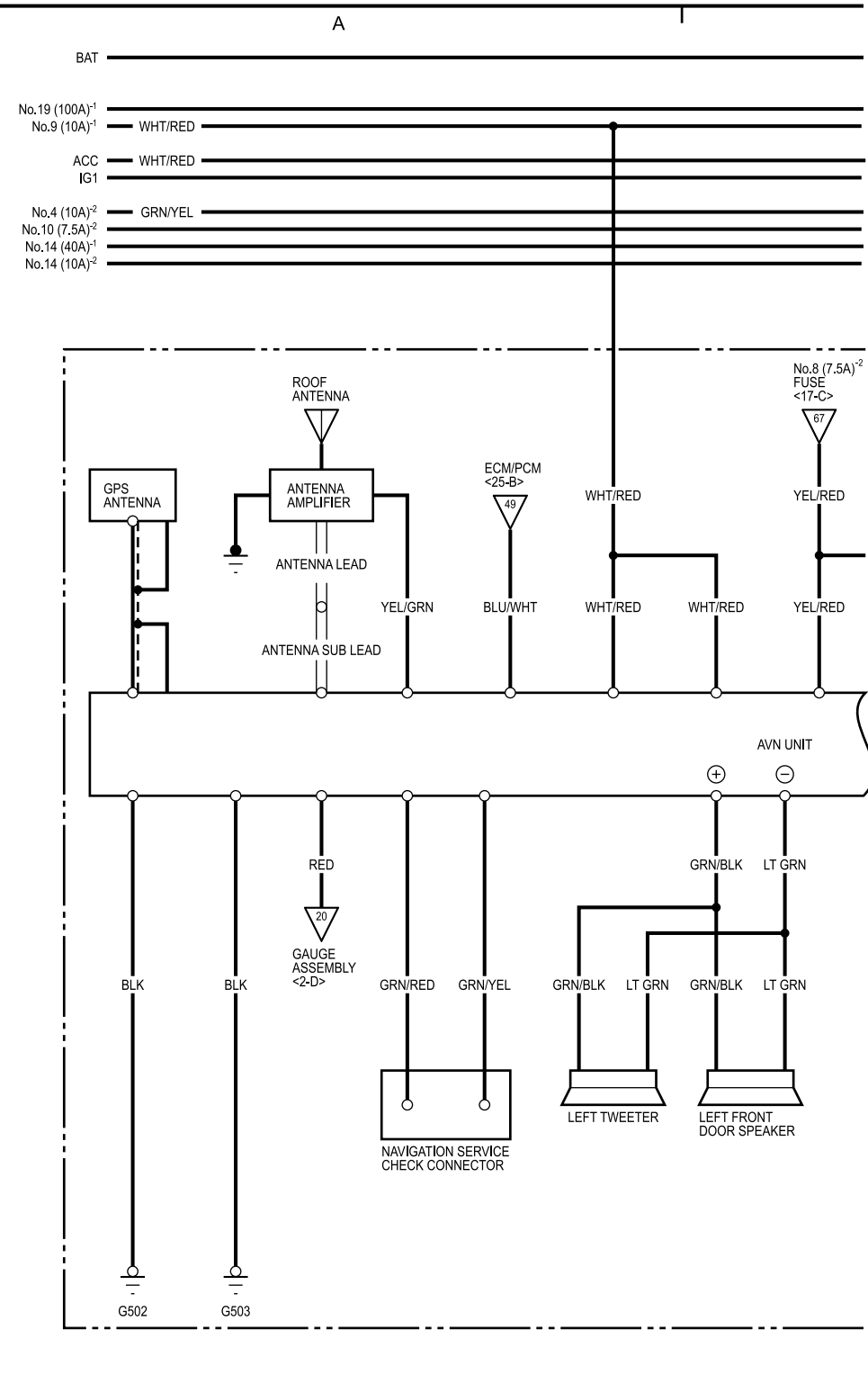
## Navigation System, Stereo Sound System



## Navigation System, Stereo Sound System (cont'd)

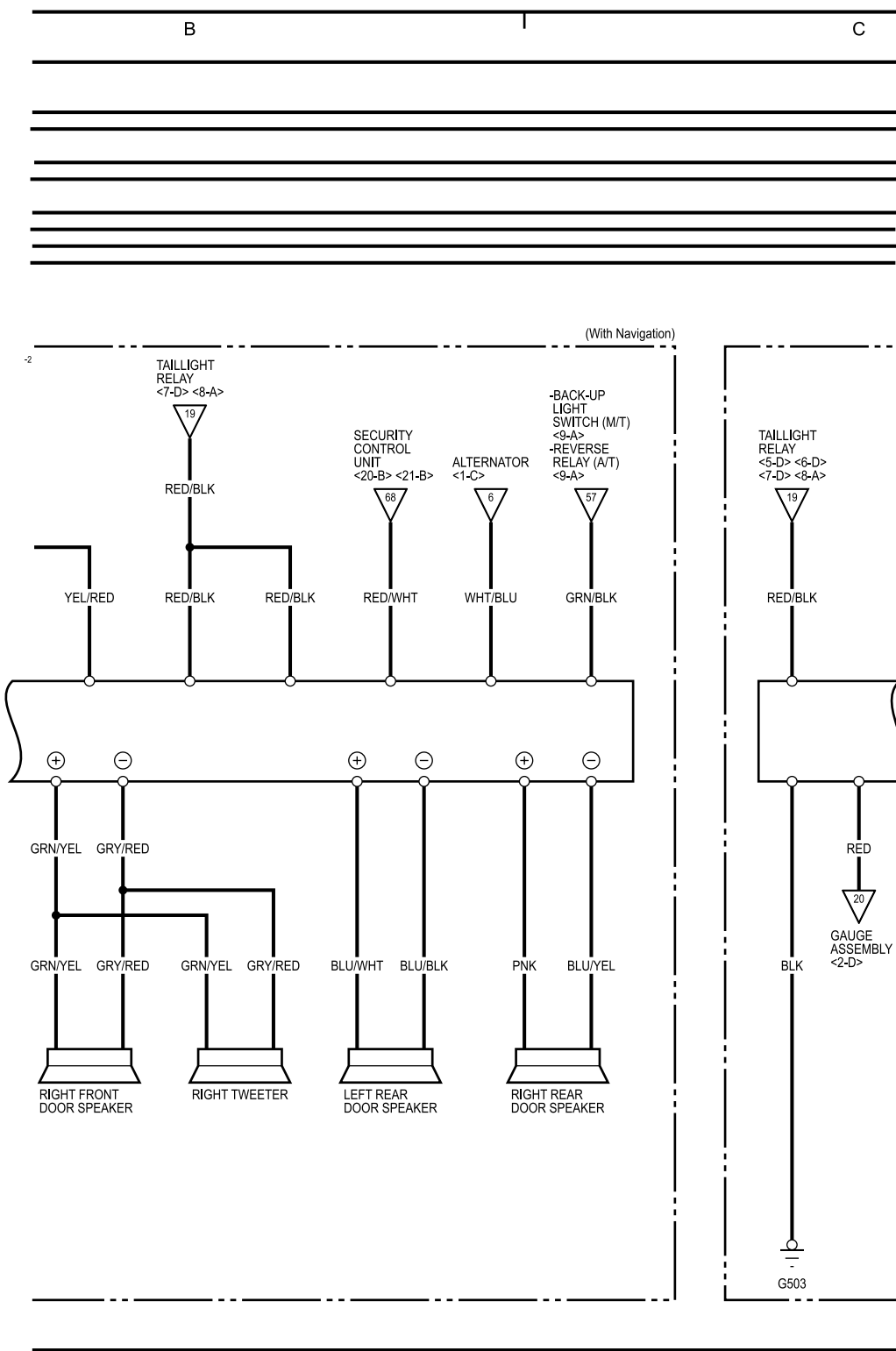
14

Navigation System, Stereo Sound System

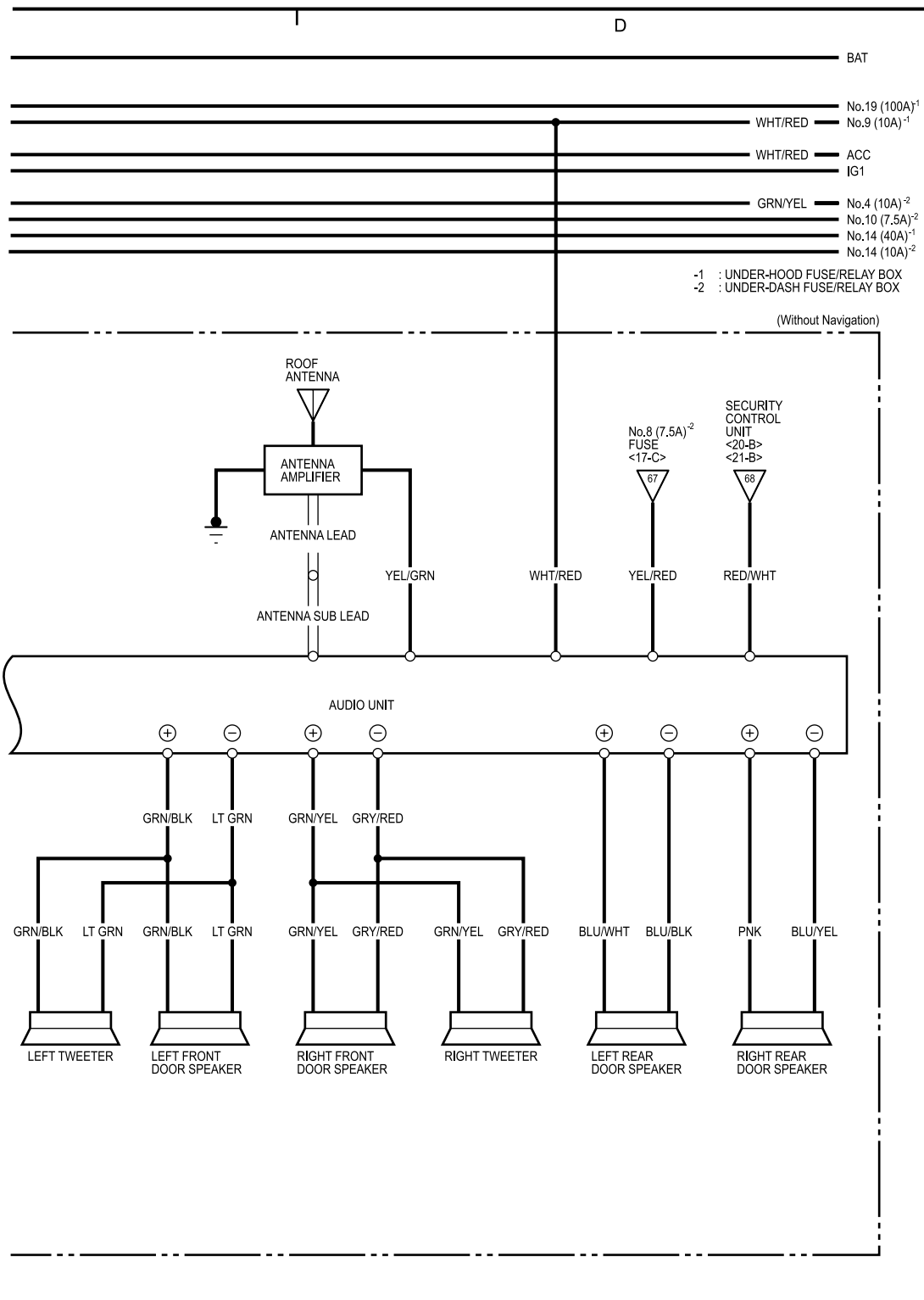


# Wiring diagrams

## Navigation System, Stereo Sound System (cont'd)



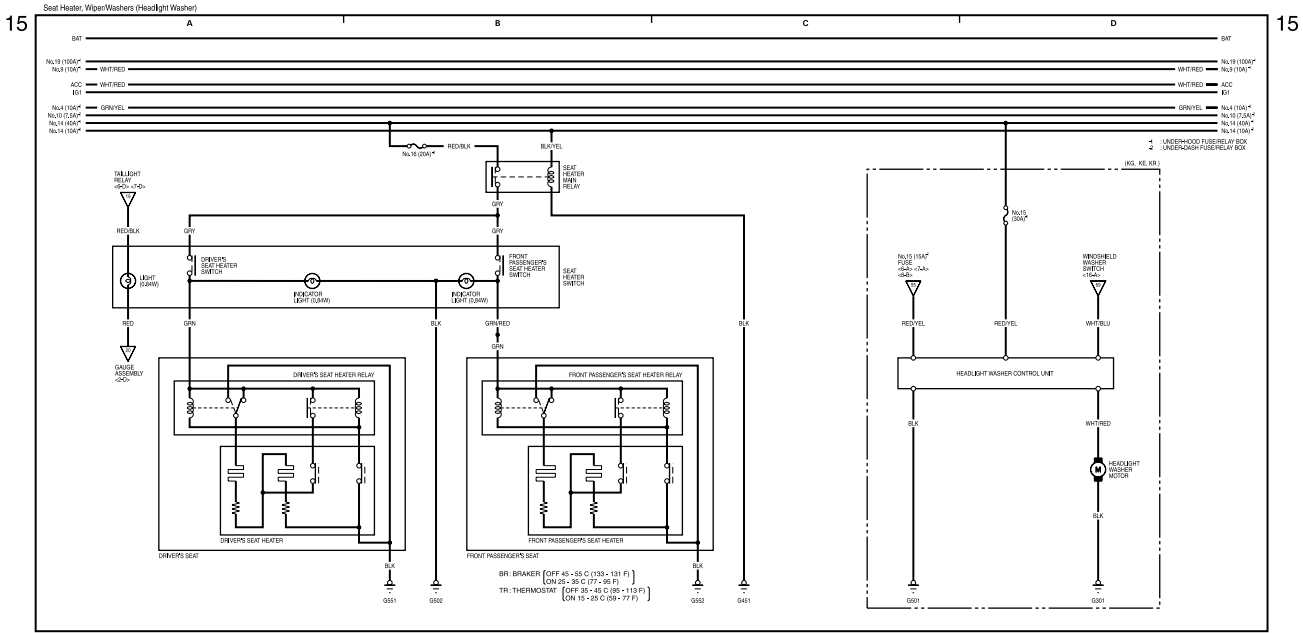
## Navigation System, Stereo Sound System (cont'd)



14

## Wiring diagrams

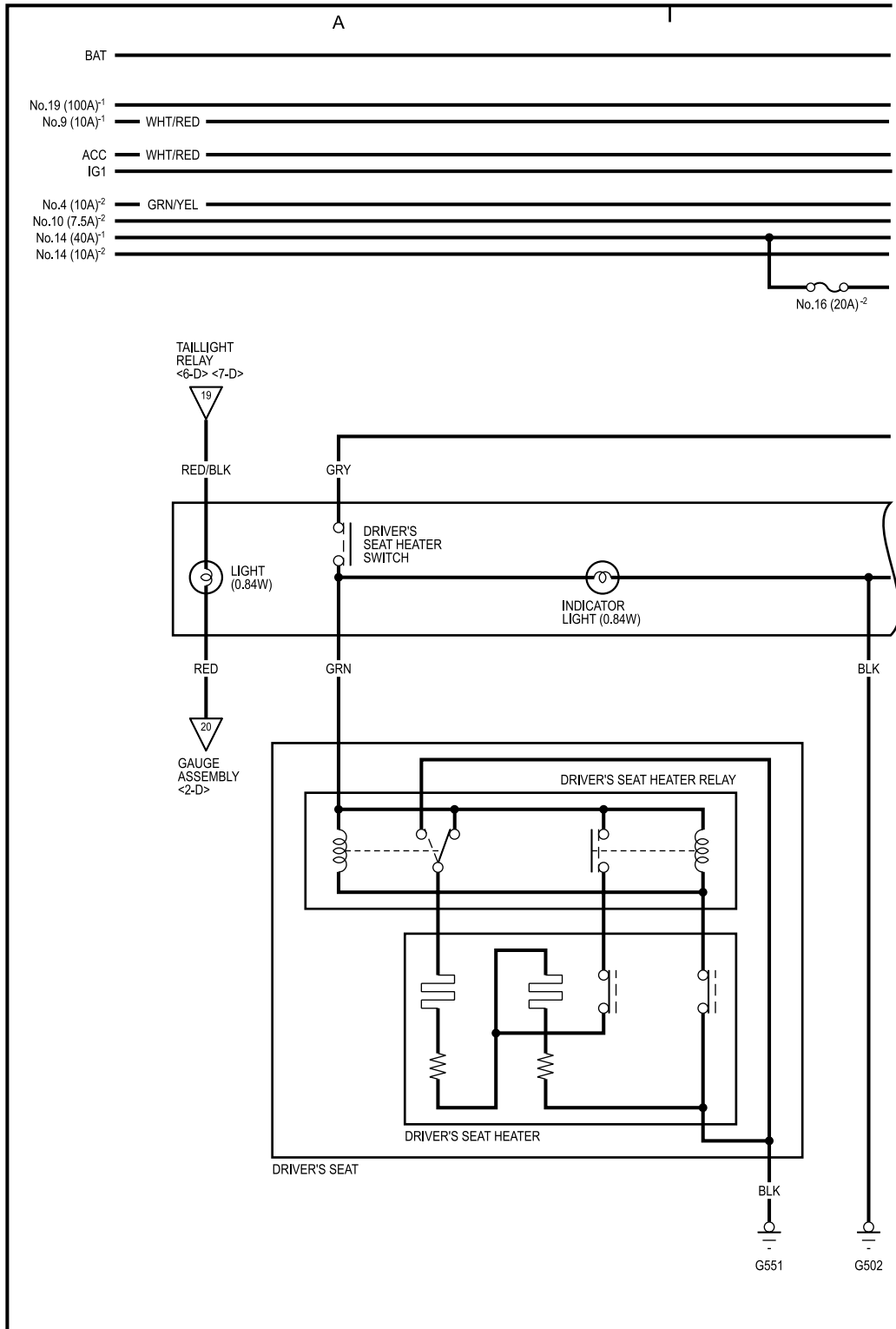
## Seat Heater, Wipers/Washers (Headlight Washer)



## Seat Heater, Wipers/Washers (Headlight Washer) (cont'd)

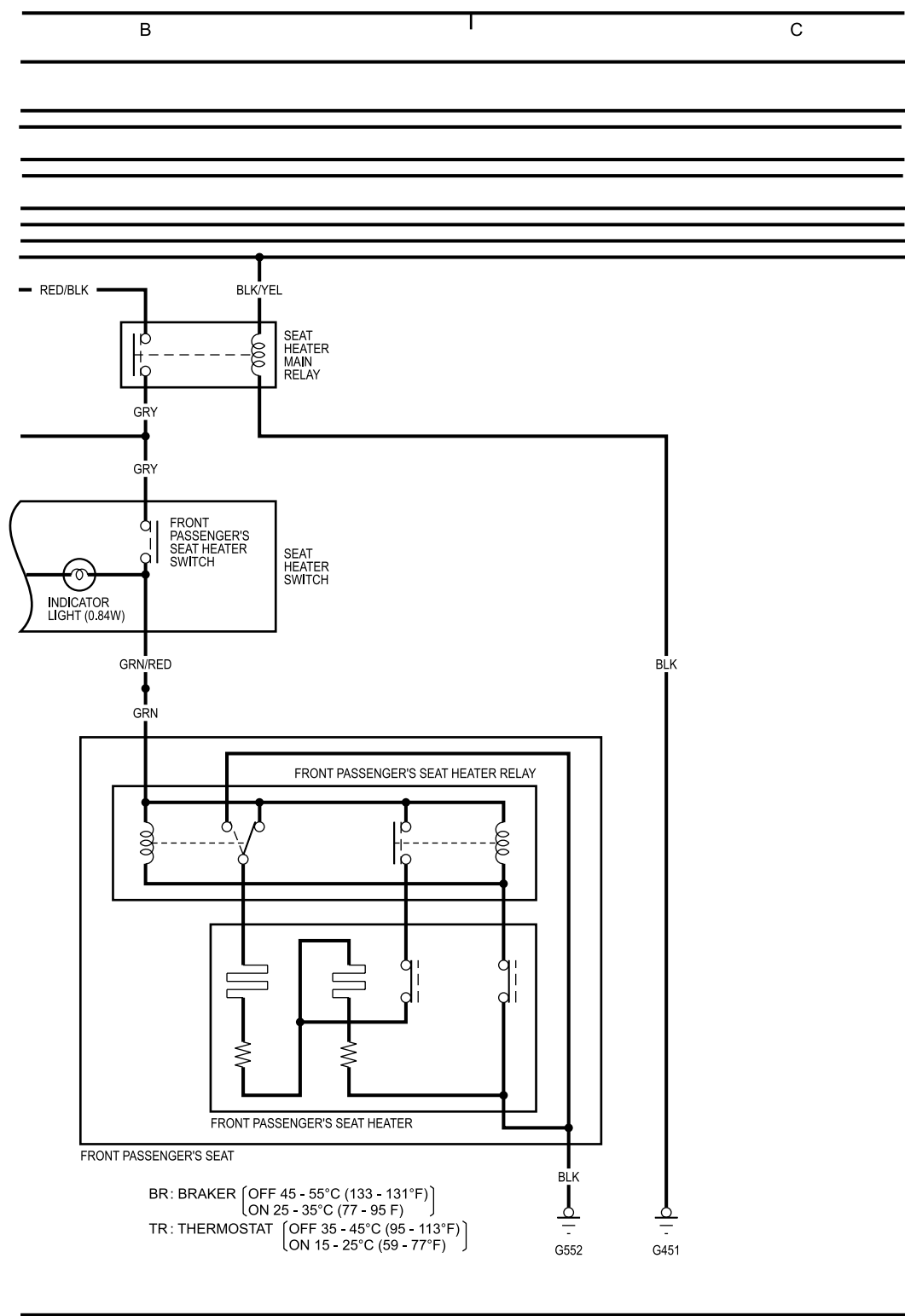
15

Seat Heater, Wiper/Washers (Headlight Washer)



# Wiring diagrams

## Seat Heater, Wipers/Washers (Headlight Washer) (cont'd)



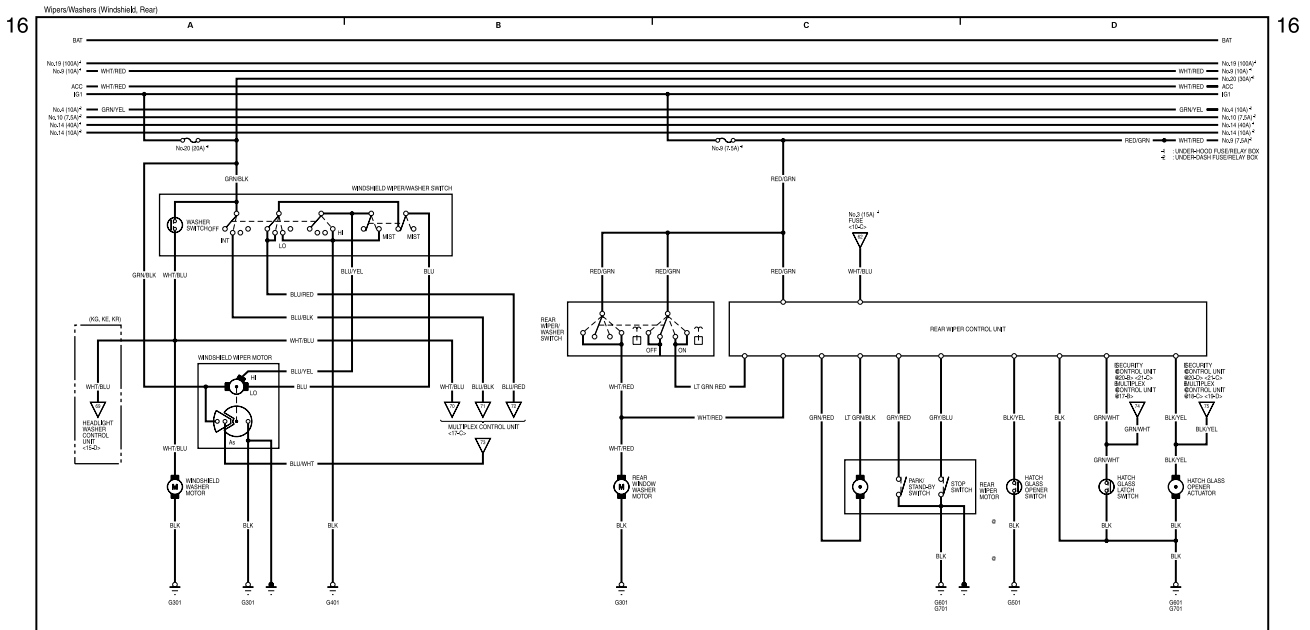


## 15



## Wiring diagrams

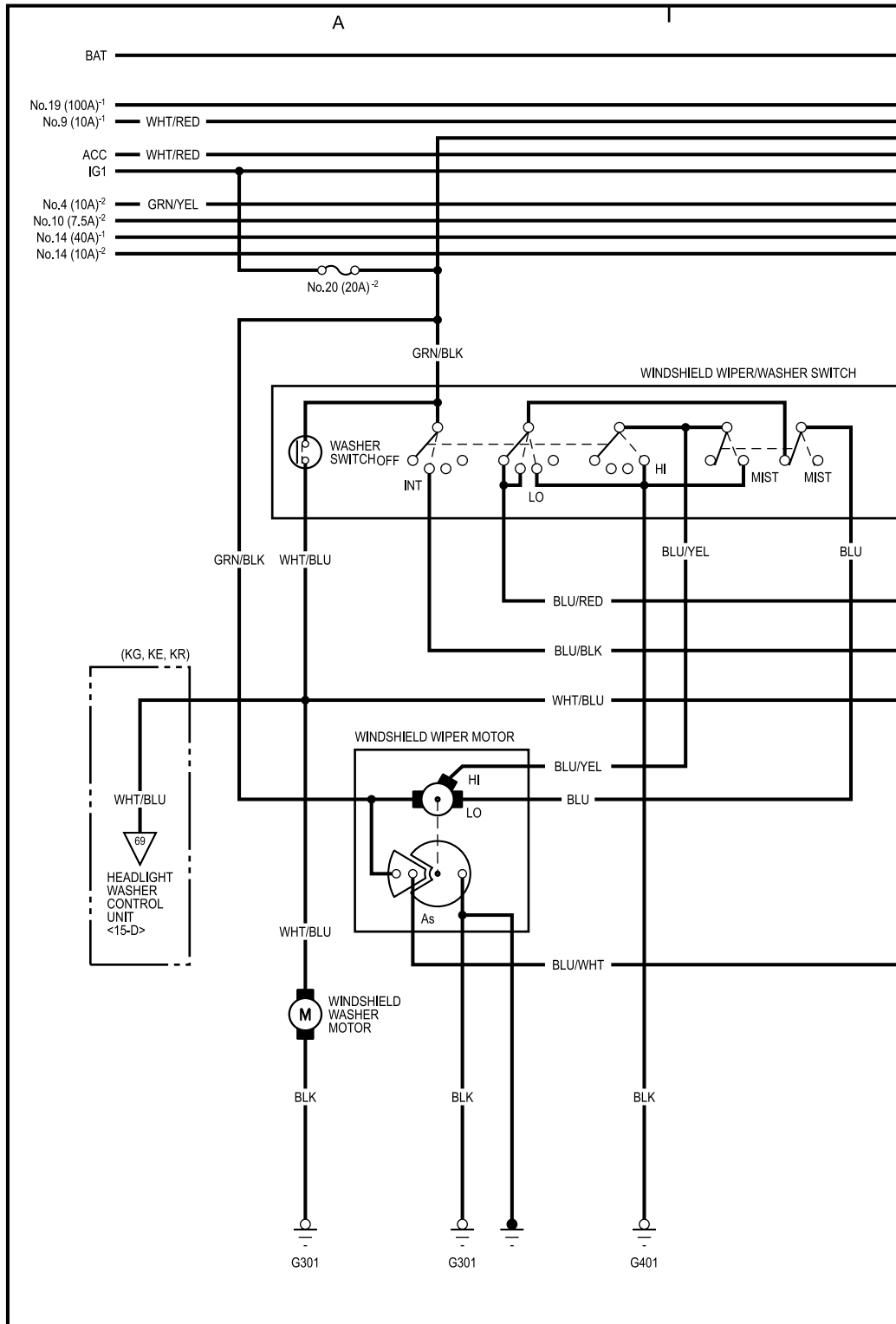
### Wipers/Washers (Windshield Rear)

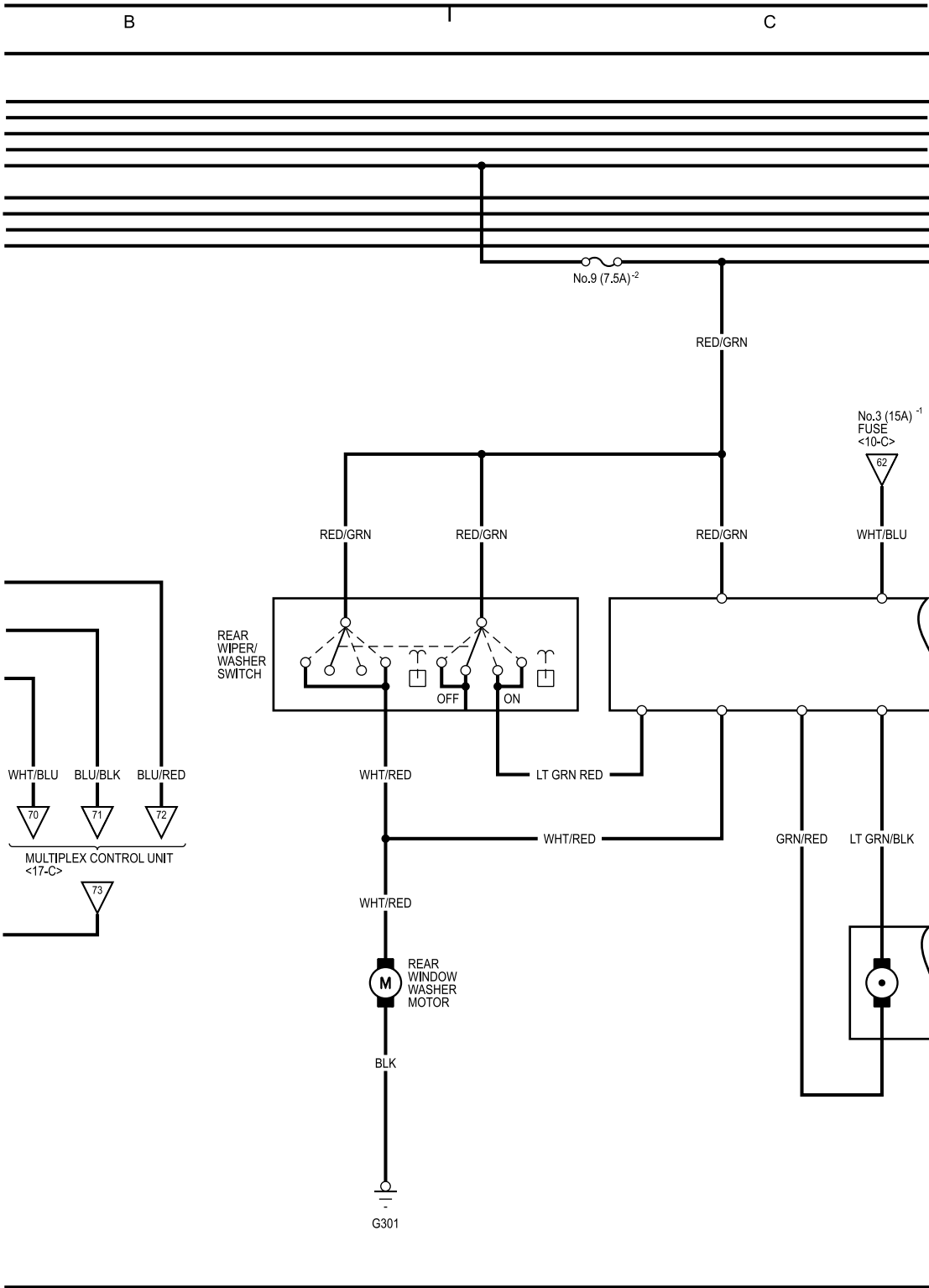


## Wipers/Washers (Windshield Rear) (cont'd)

16

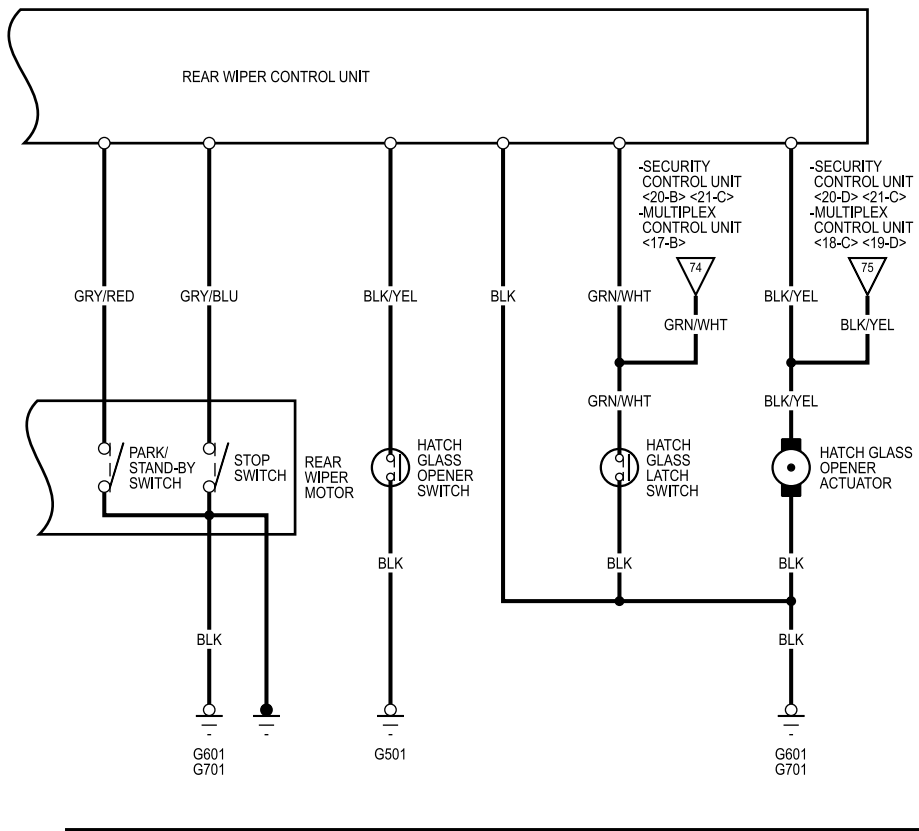
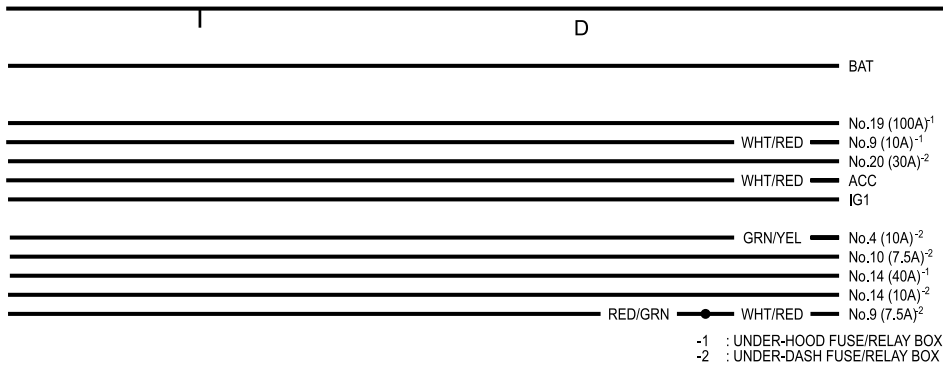
Wipers/Washers (Windshield, Rear)





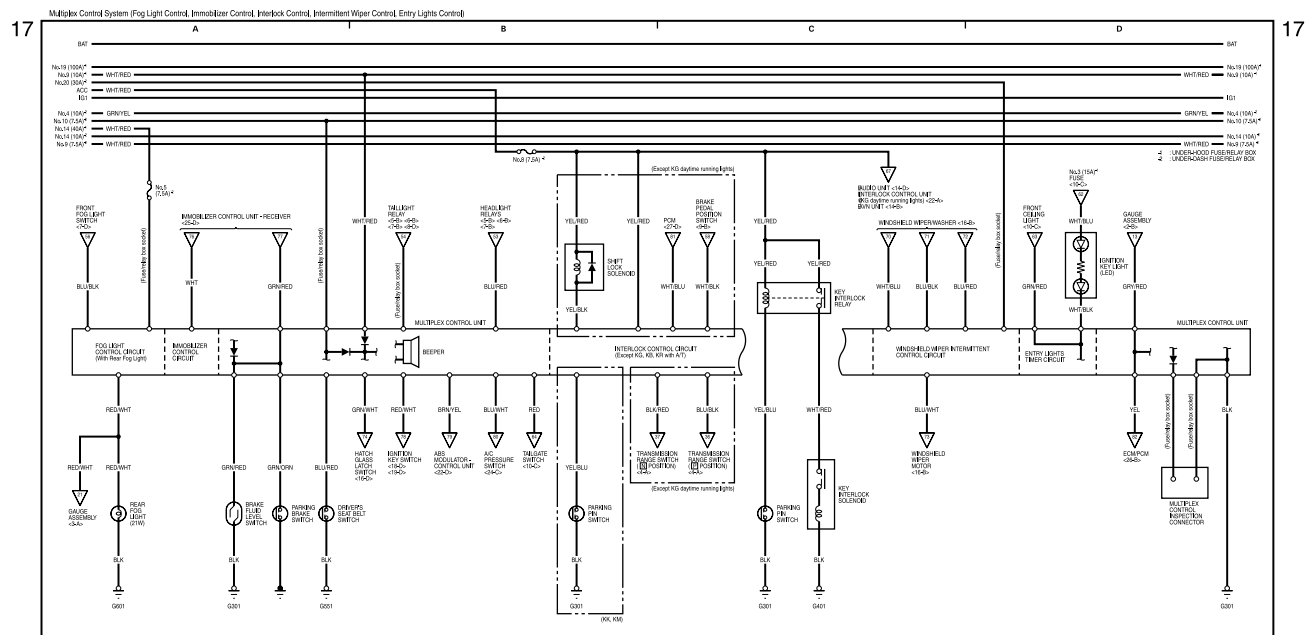
Wipers/Washers (Windshield Rear) (cont'd)

16



# Wiring diagrams

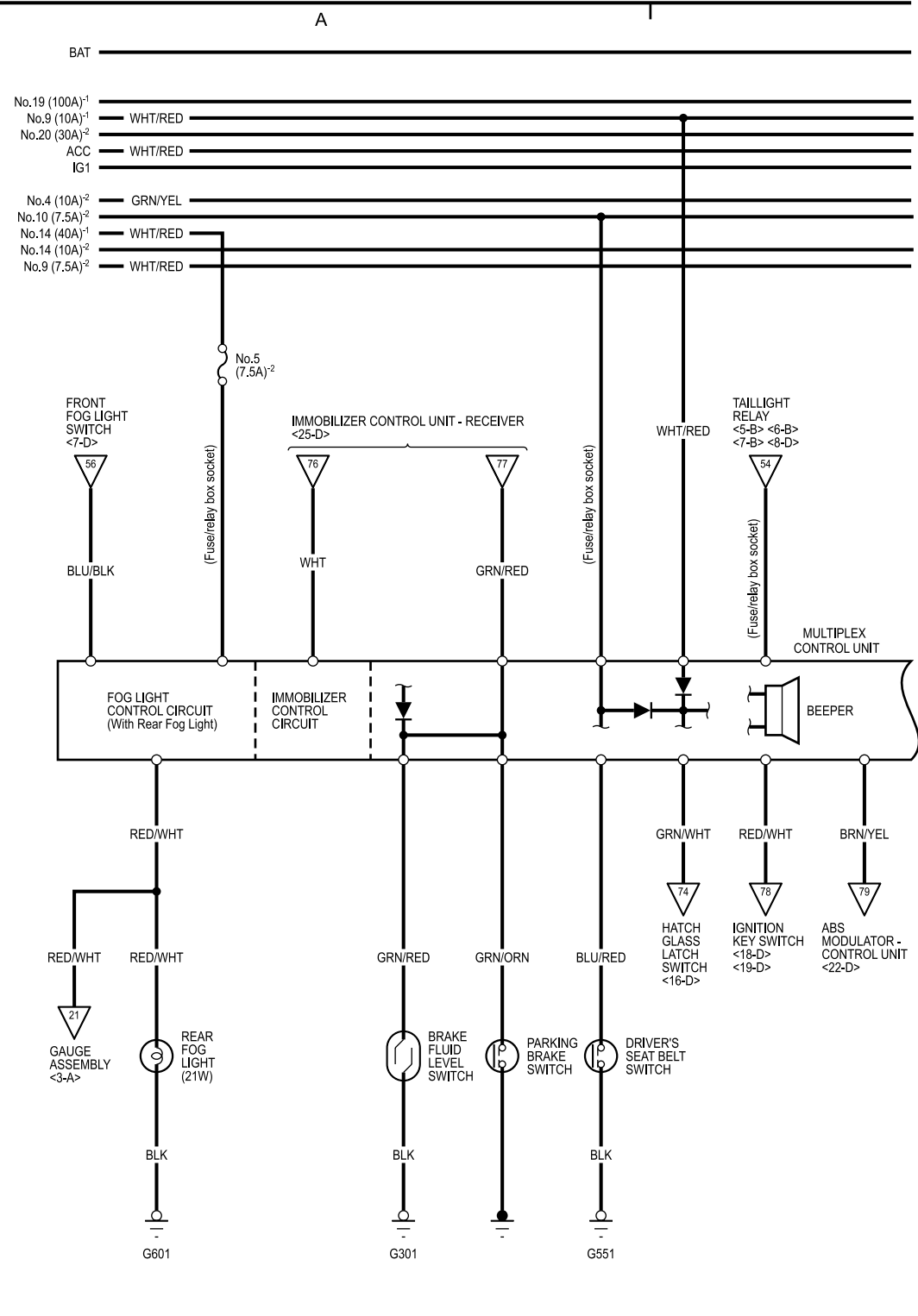
## Multiplex Control System (Fog Light Control, Immobilizer Control, Interlock Control, Intermittent Wiper Control, Entry Lights Control)



# Multiplex Control system (Fog Light Control, Immobilizer Control, Interlock Control, Intermittent Wiper Control, Entry Lights Control) (cont'd)

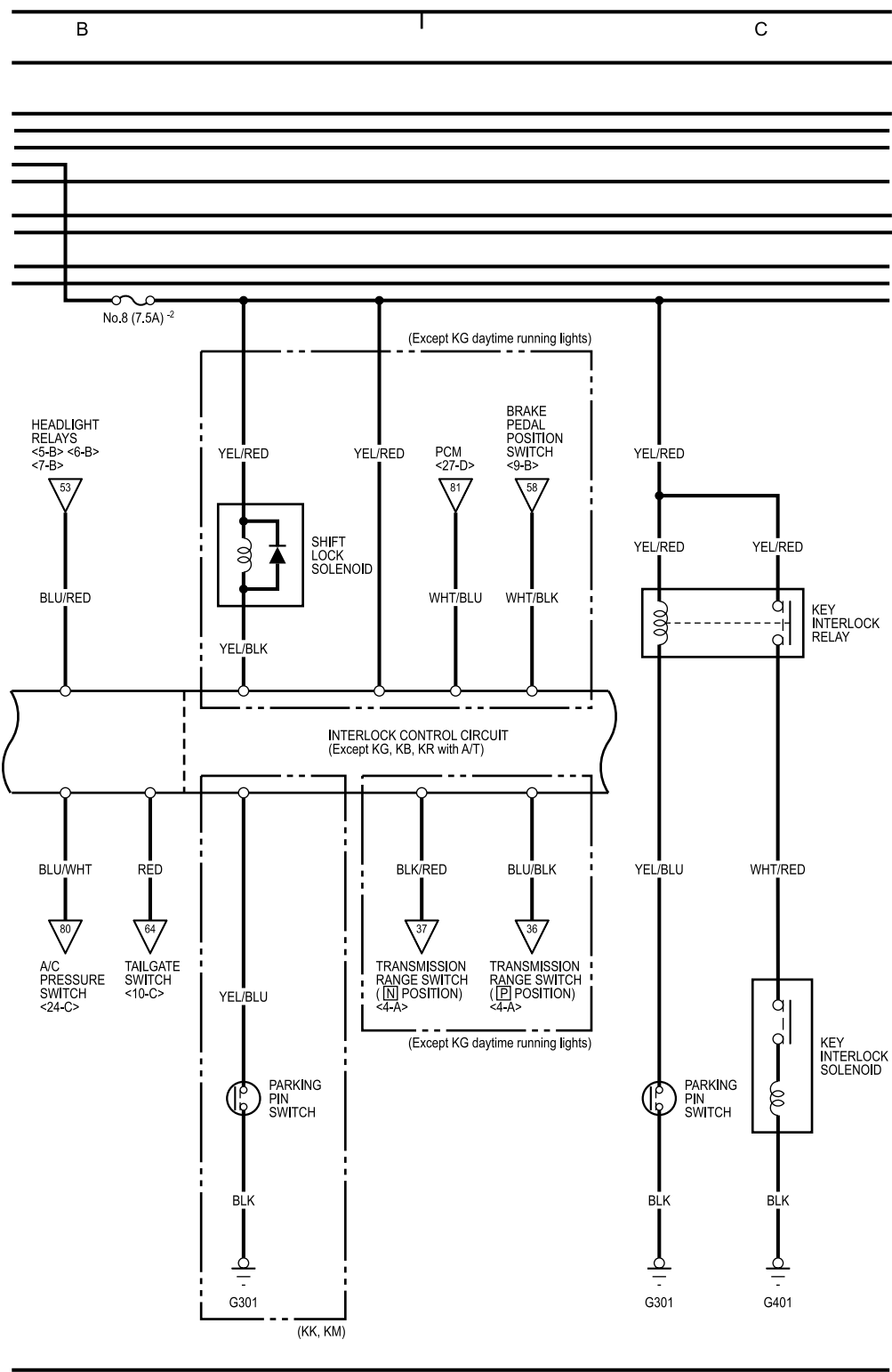
17

Multiplex Control System (Fog Light Control, Immobilizer Control, Interlock Control, Intermittent Wiper Control, Entry Lights Control)



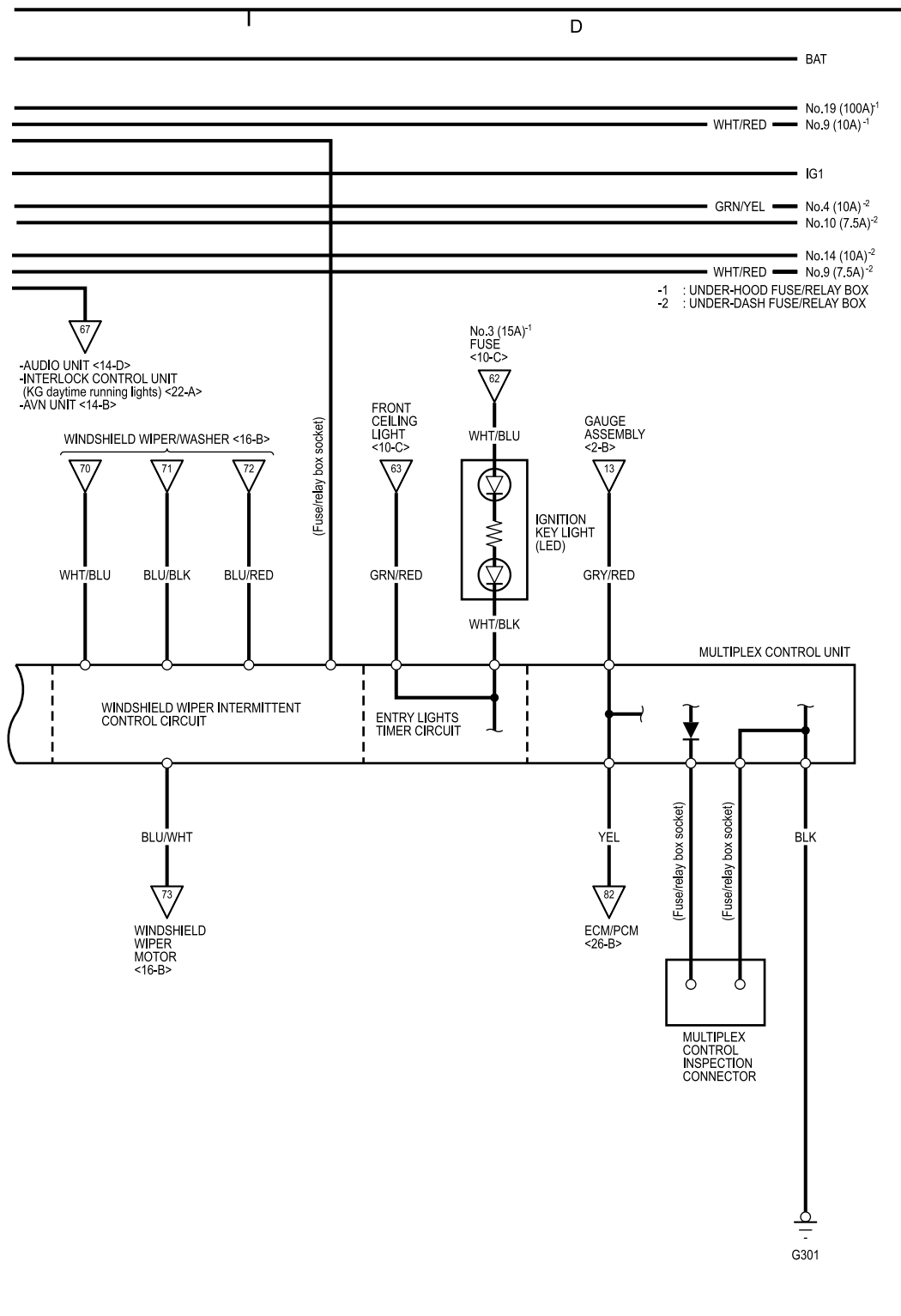
# Wiring diagrams

## Multiplex Control system (Fog Light Control, Immobilizer Control, Interlock Control, Intermittent Wiper Control, Entry Lights Control) (cont'd)



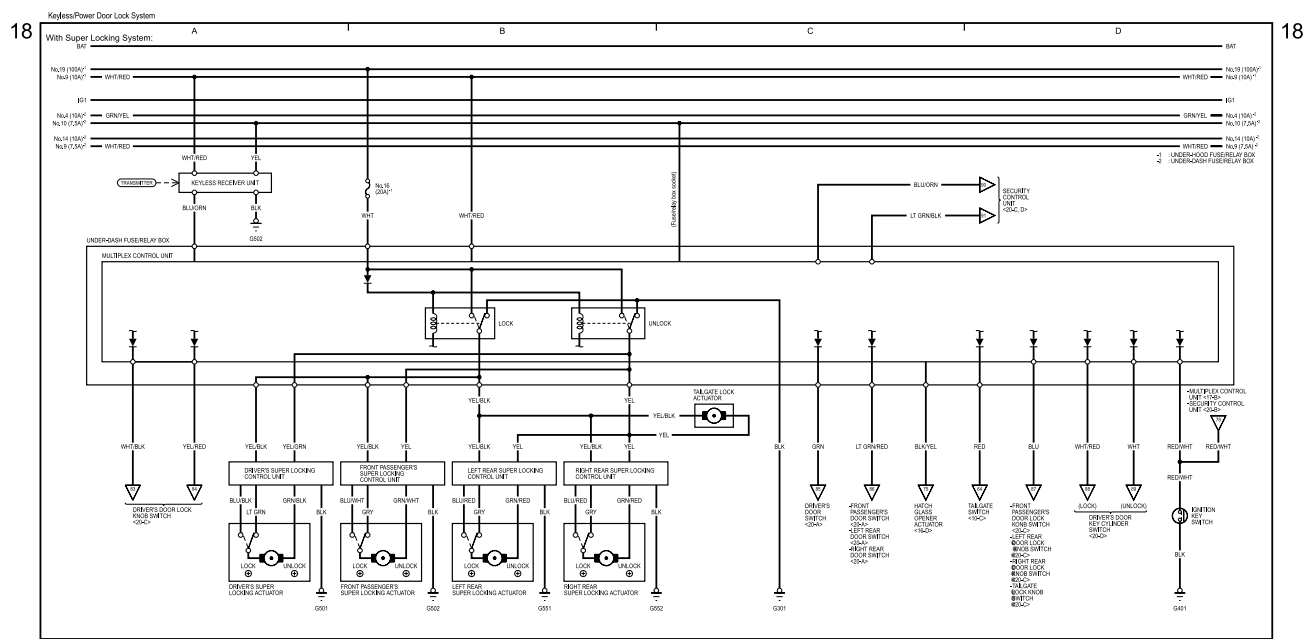


## Multiplex Control system (Fog Light Control, Immobilizer Control, Interlock Control, Intermittent Wiper Control, Entry Lights Control) (cont'd)



# Wiring diagrams

## Keyless/Power Door Lock System (With Super locking System)

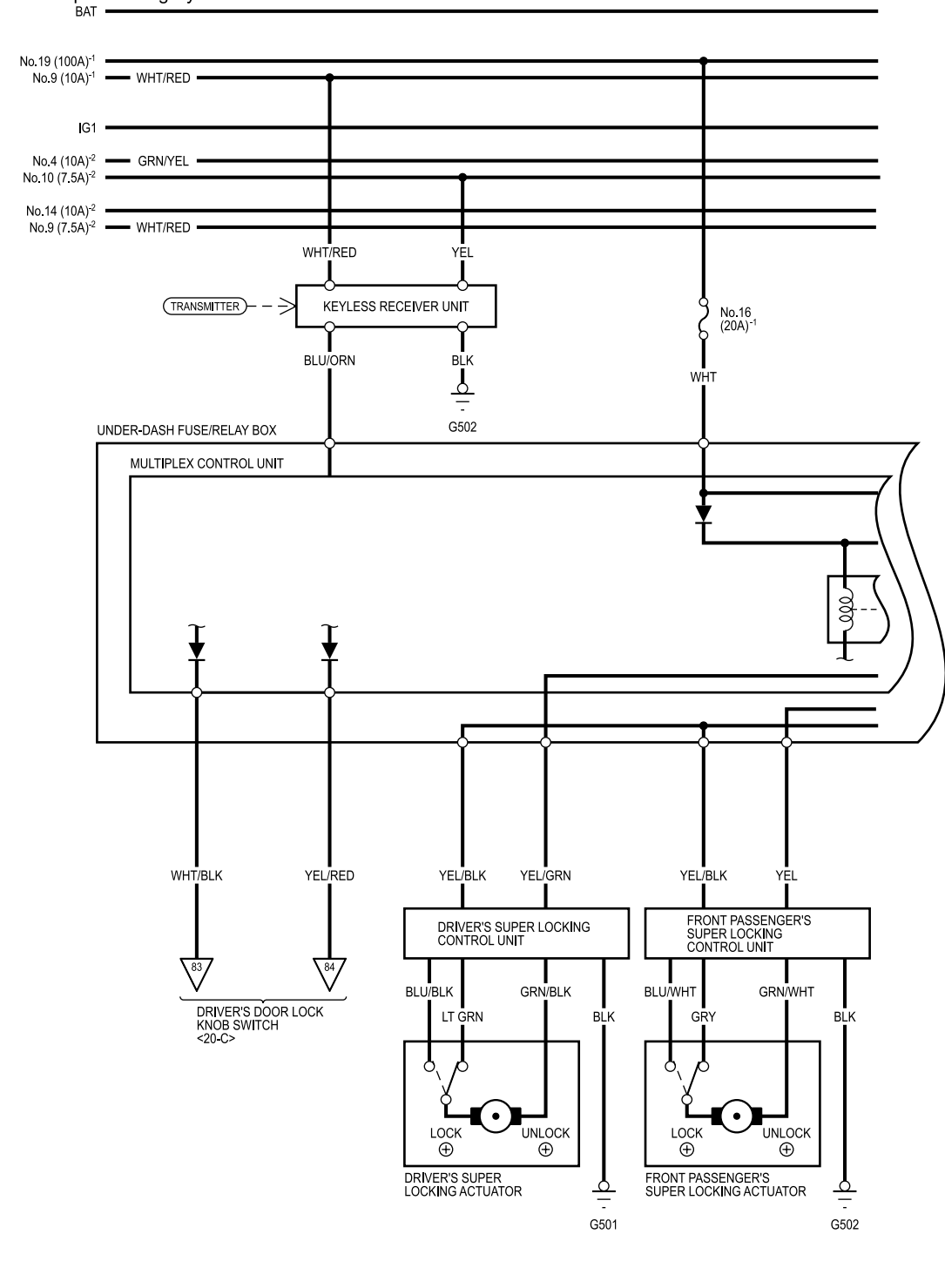


# Keyless/Power Door Lock System (With Super locking System) (cont'd)

18

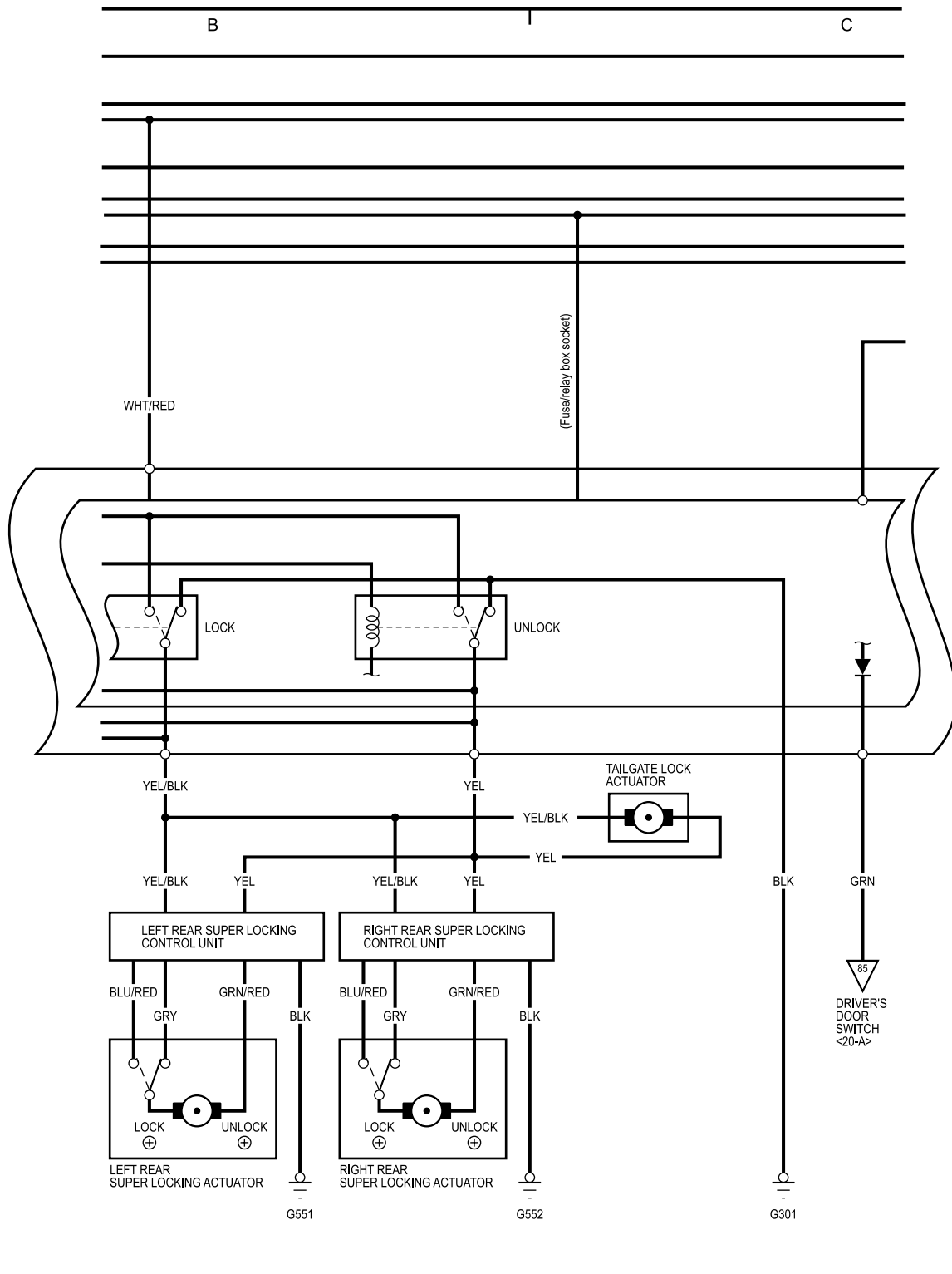
Keyless/Power Door Lock System

With Super Locking System:

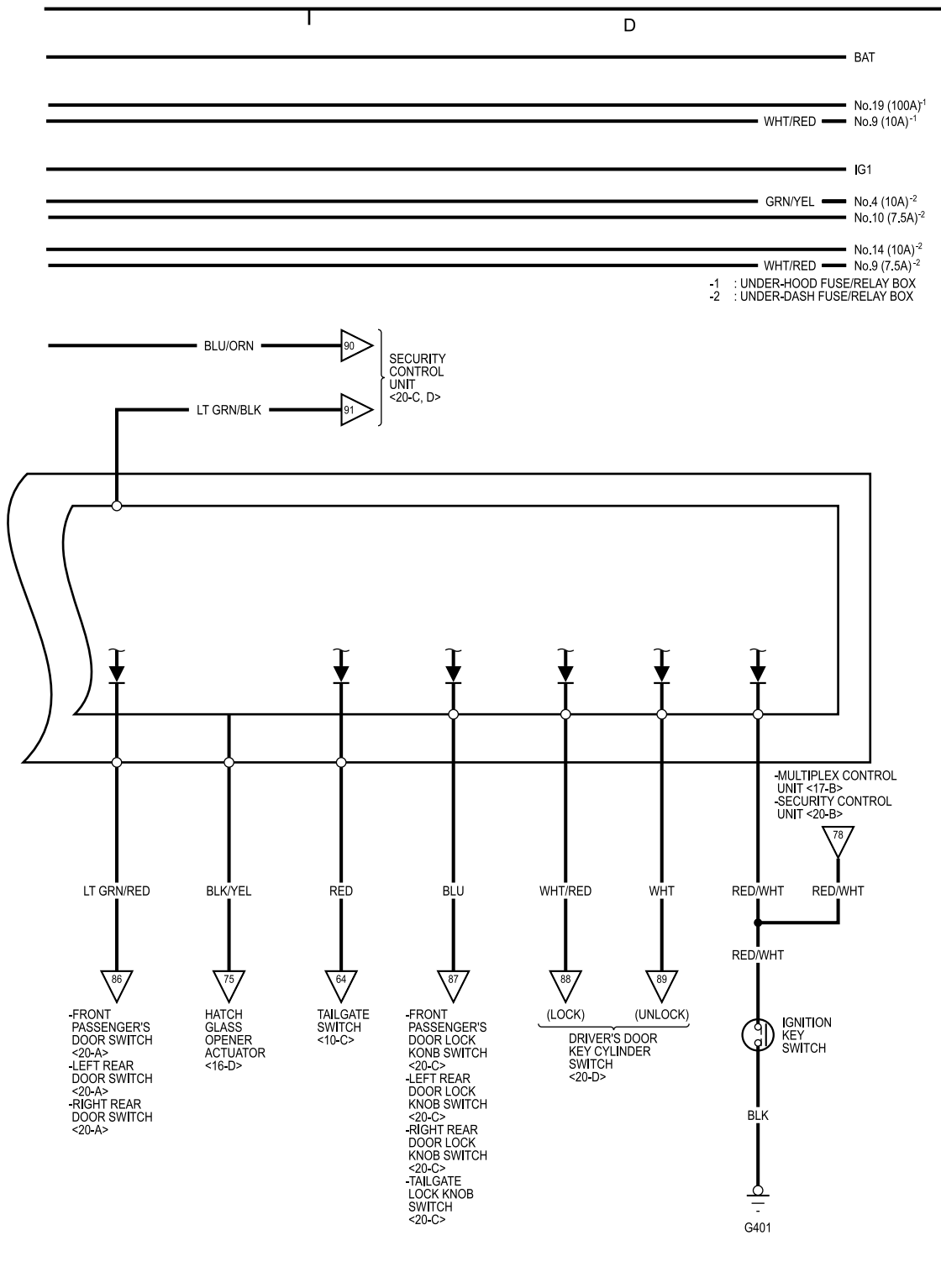


## Wiring diagrams

### Keyless/Power Door Lock System (With Super locking System) (cont'd)

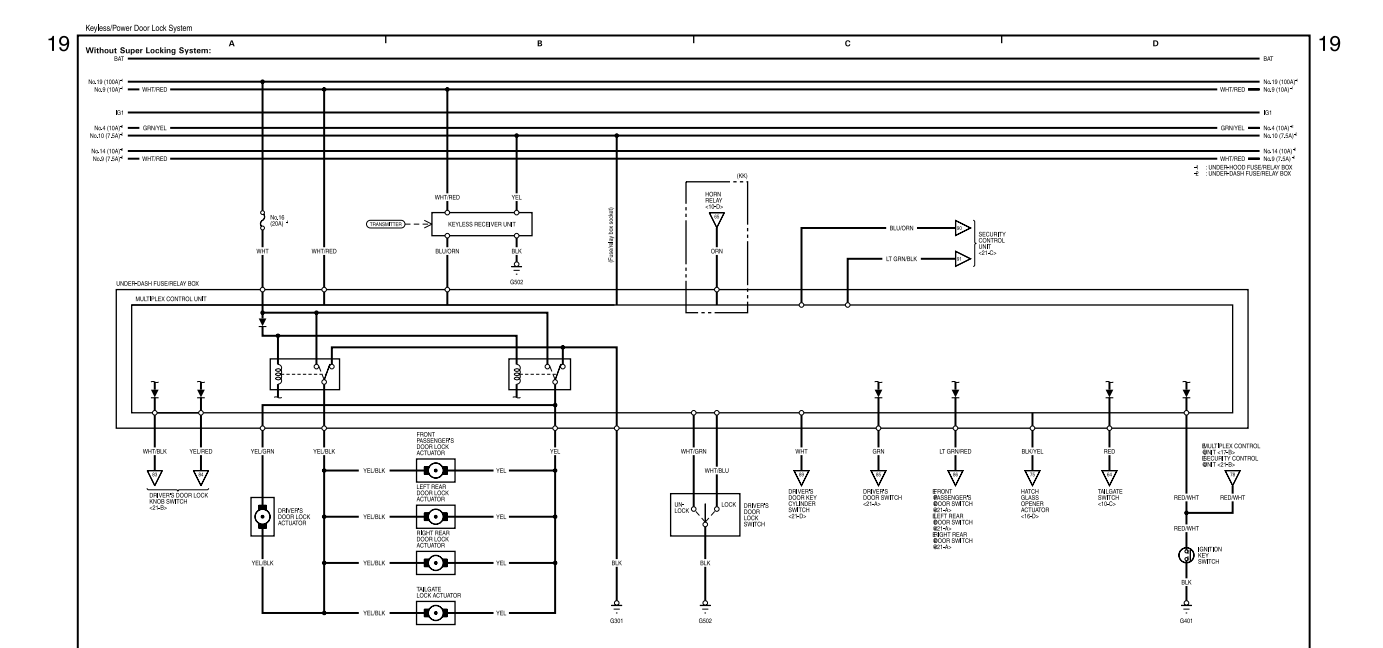


## Keyless/Power Door Lock System (With Super locking System) (cont'd)



## Wiring diagrams

### Keyless/Power Door Lock System (Without Super locking System)

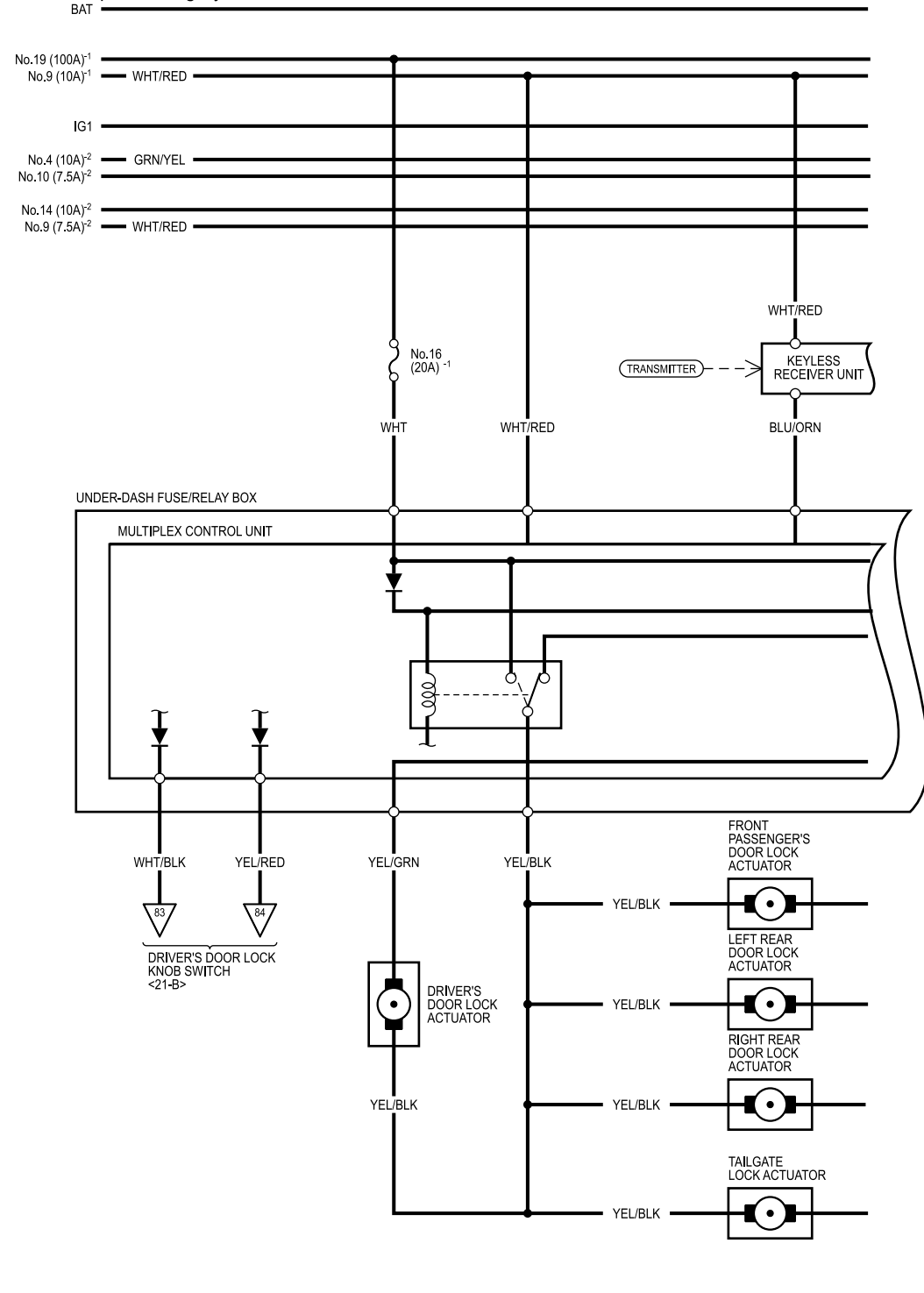


## Keyless/Power Door Lock System (Without Super locking System) (cont'd)

19

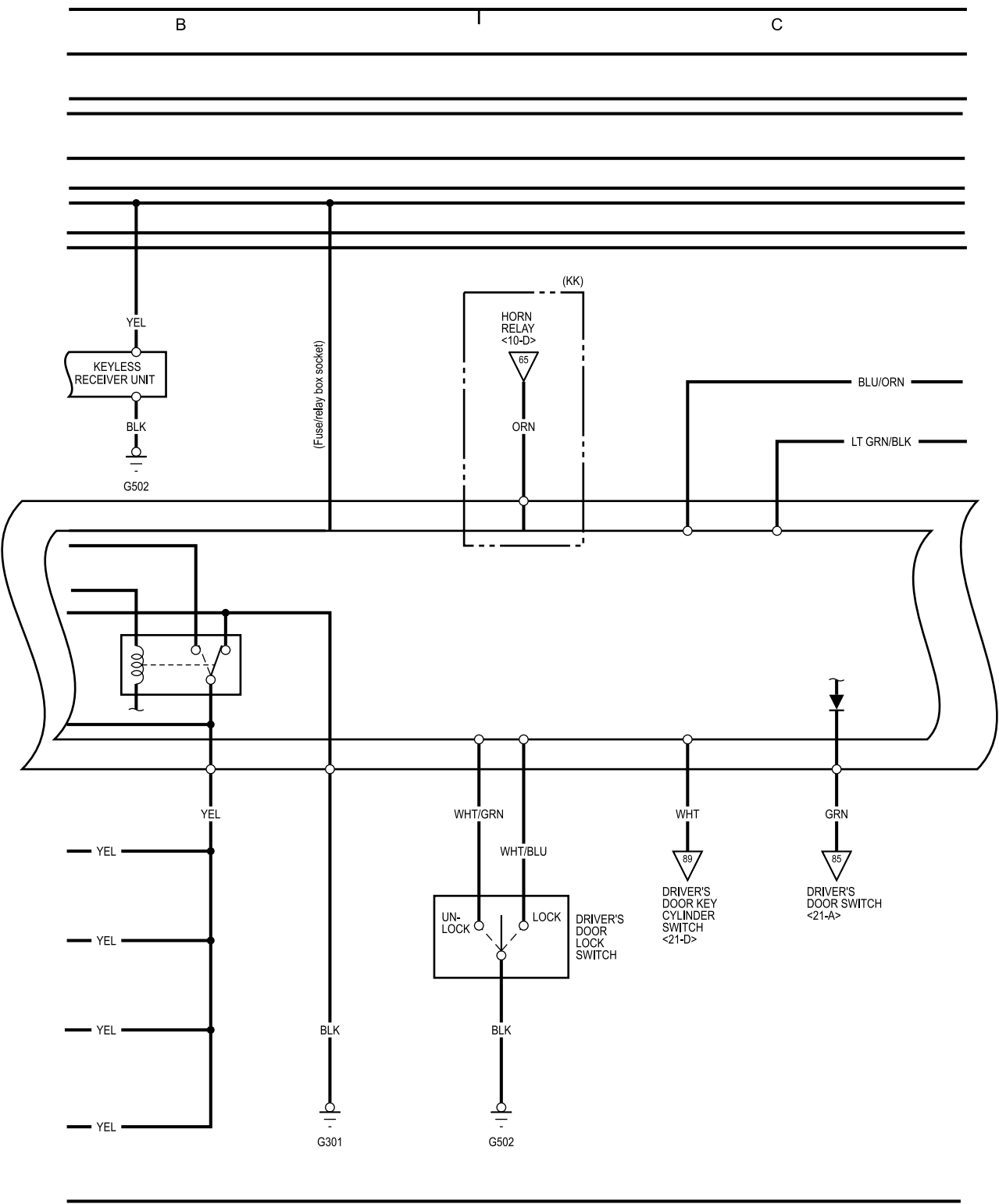
Keyless/Power Door Lock System

Without Super Locking System:



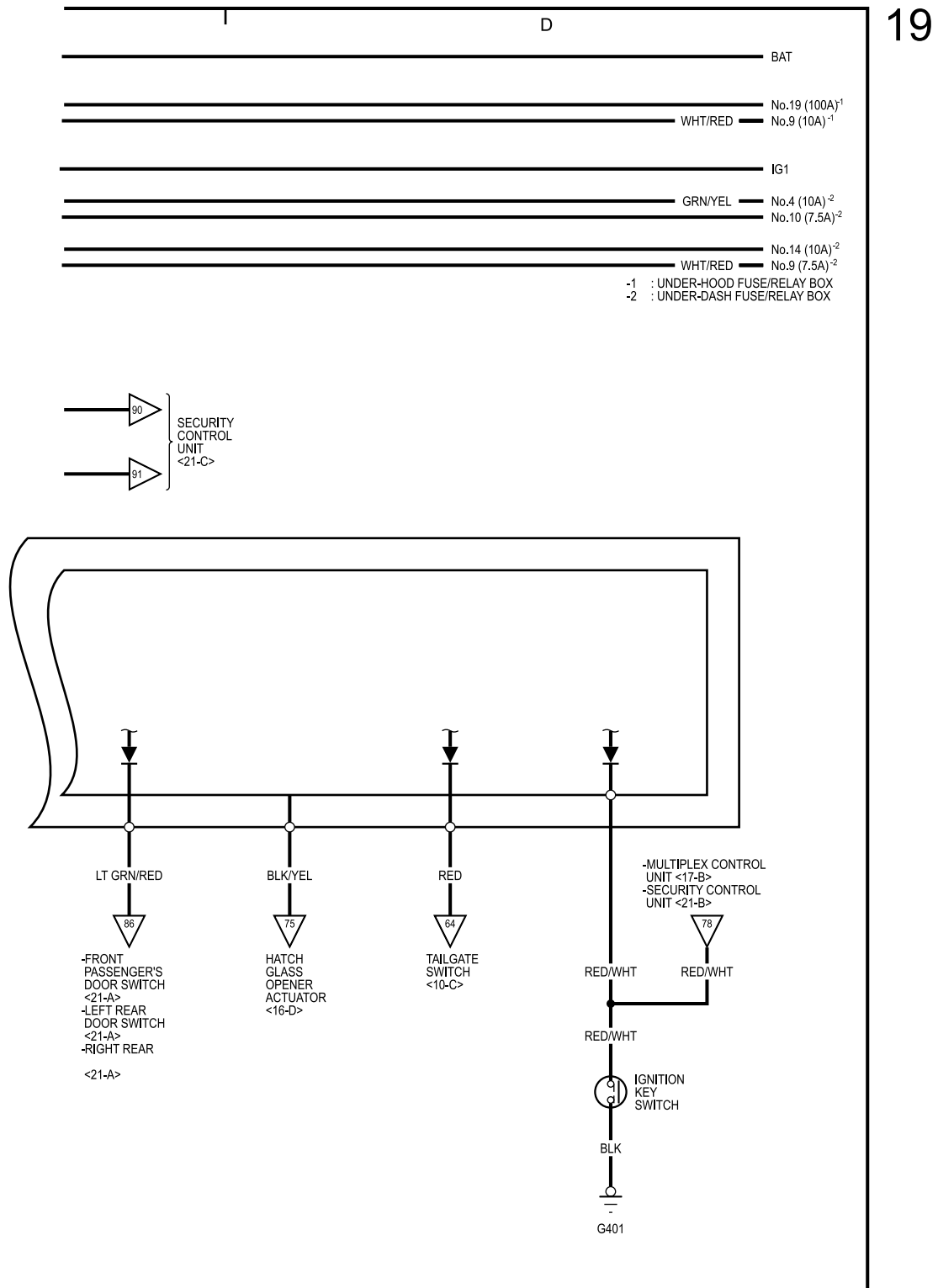
# Wiring diagrams

## Keyless/Power Door Lock System (Without Super locking System) (cont'd)



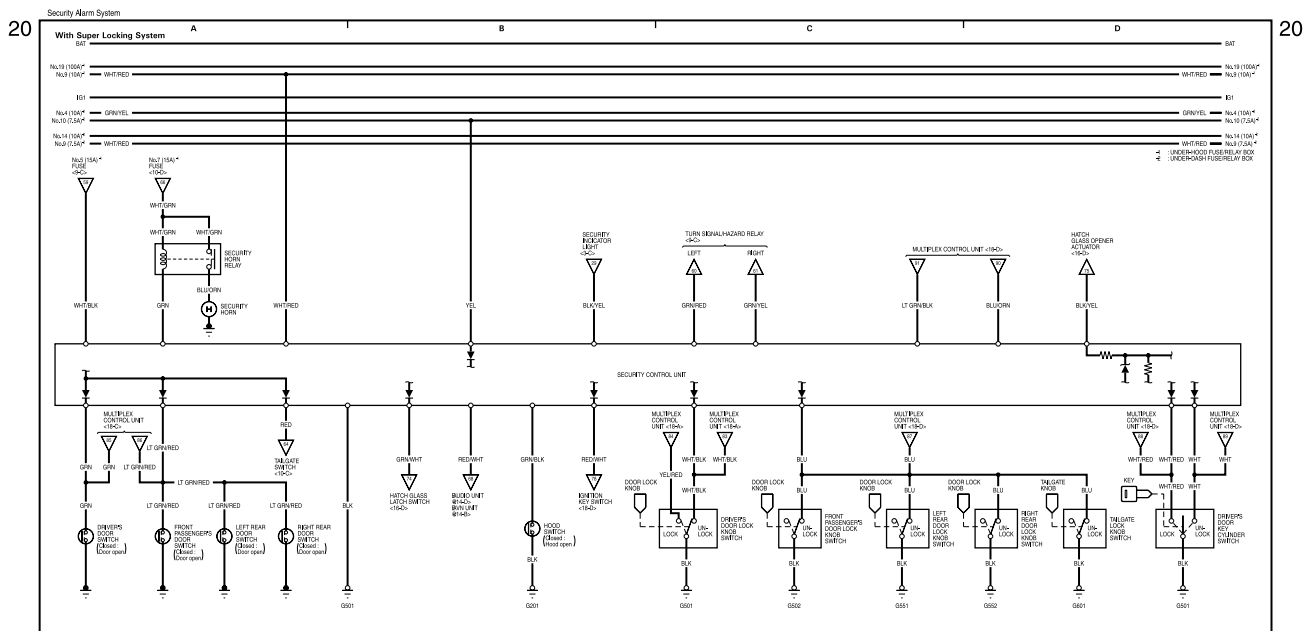


## Keyless/Power Door Lock System (Without Super locking System) (cont'd)



## Wiring diagrams

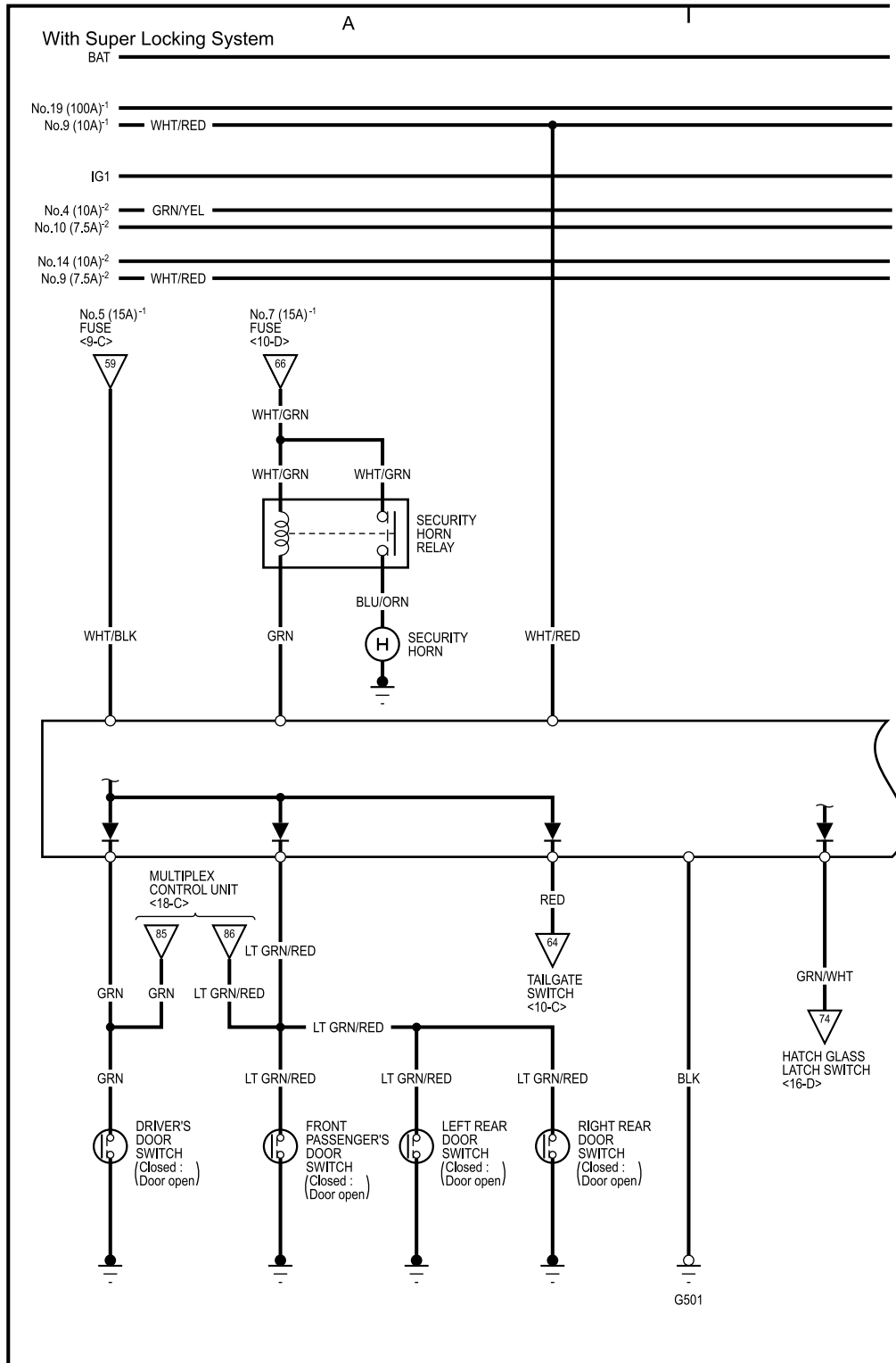
## Security Alarm System (With Super Locking System)



## Security Alarm System (With Super Locking System) (cont'd)

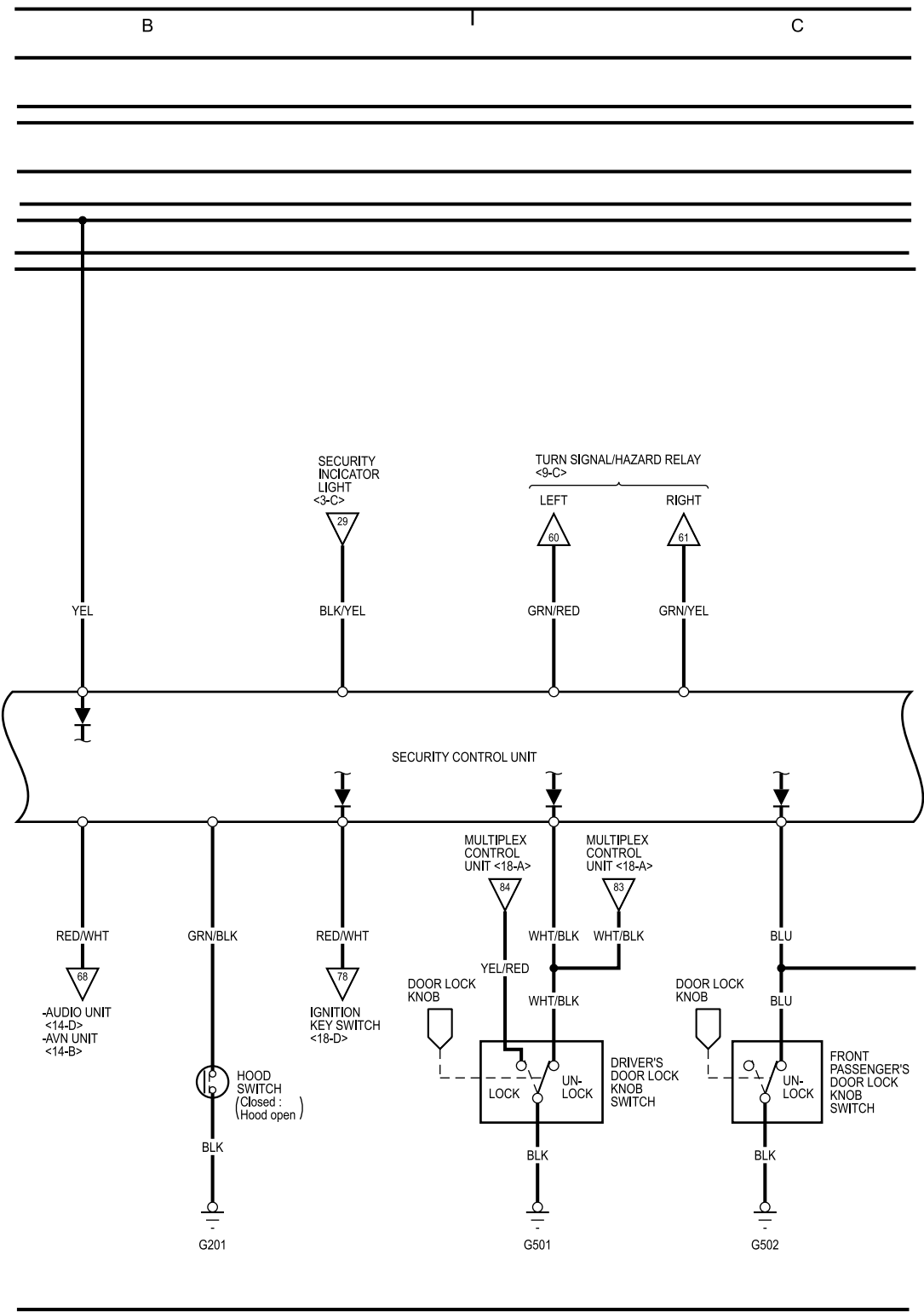
20

Security Alarm System



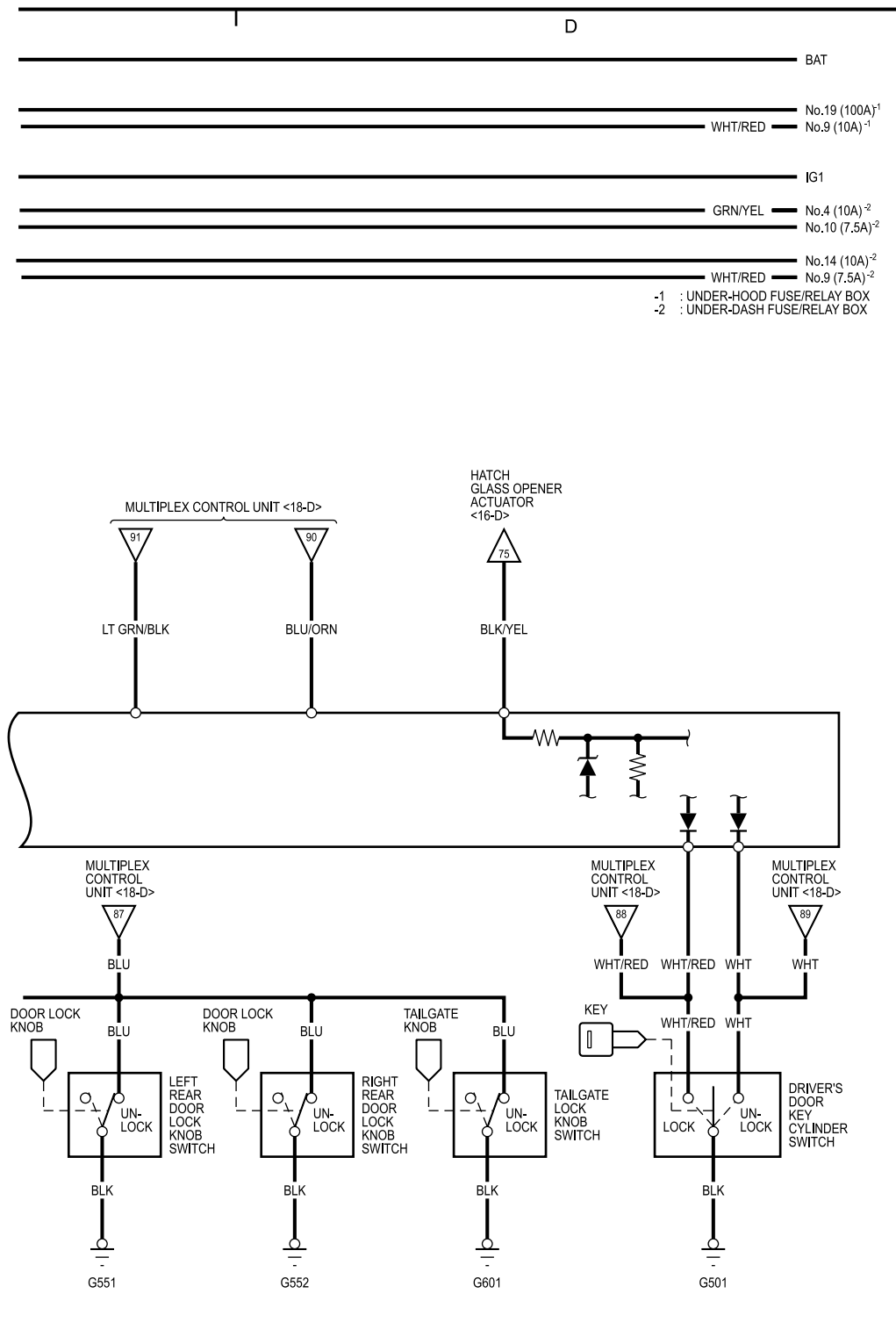
# Wiring diagrams

## Security Alarm System (With Super Locking System) (cont'd)



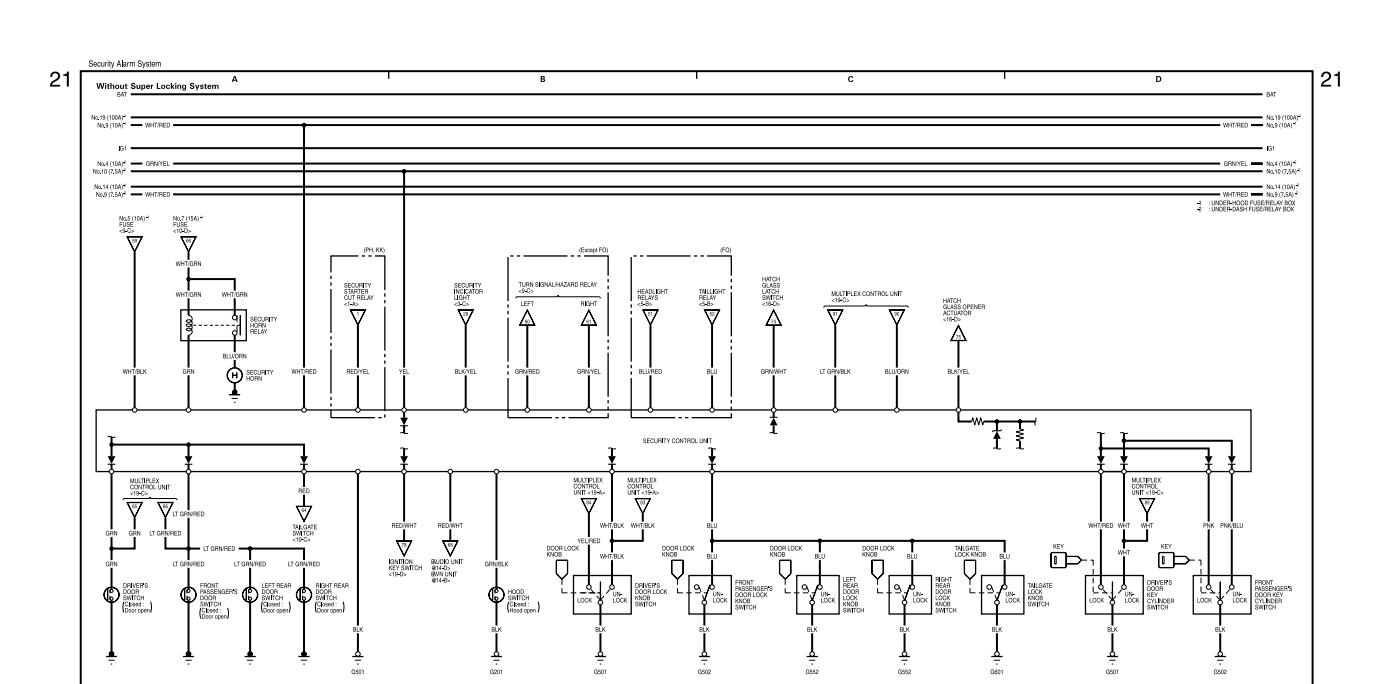
## Security Alarm System (With Super Locking System) (cont'd)

20



## Wiring diagrams

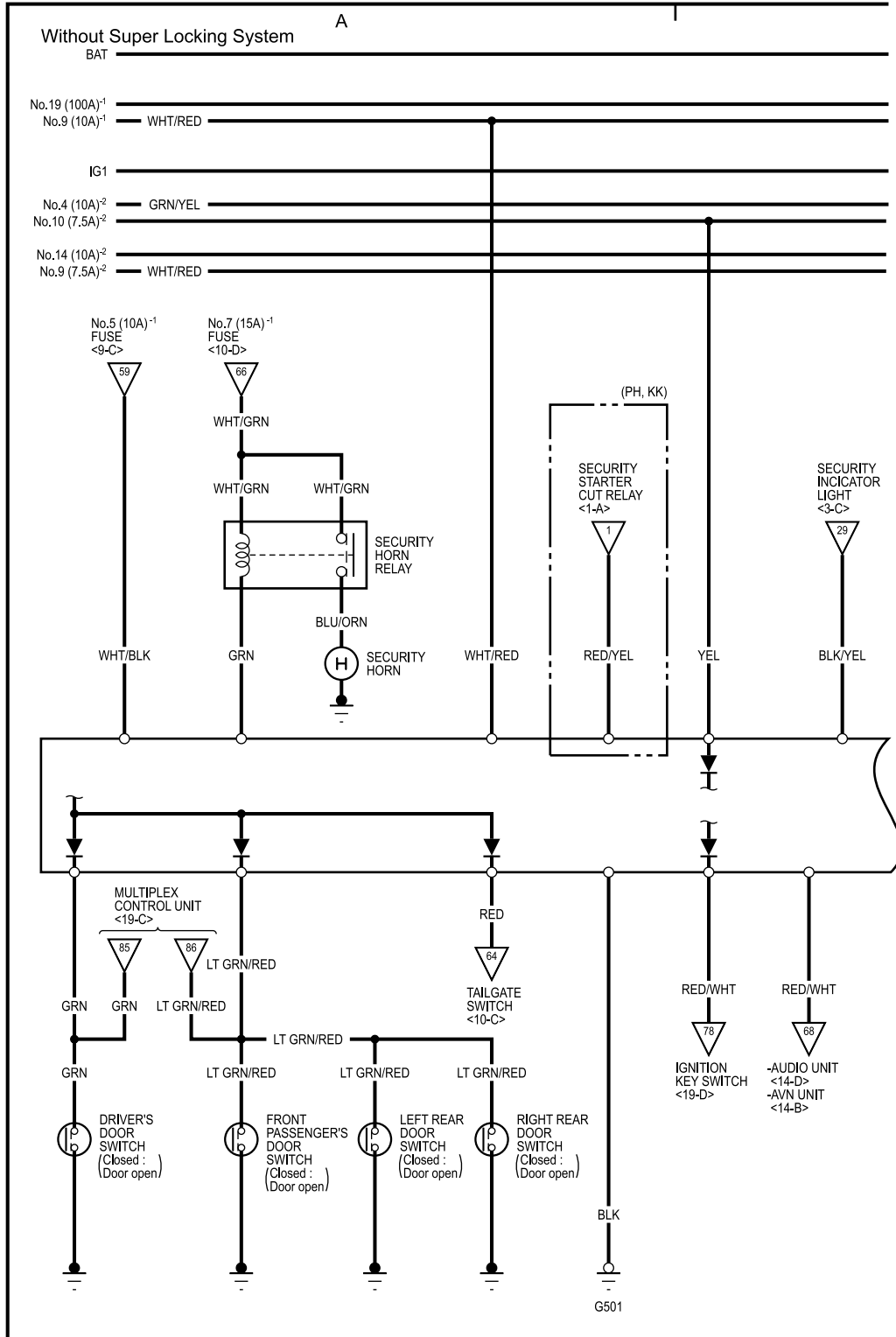
### Security Alarm System (Without Super Locking System)



## Security Alarm System (Without Super Locking System) (cont'd)

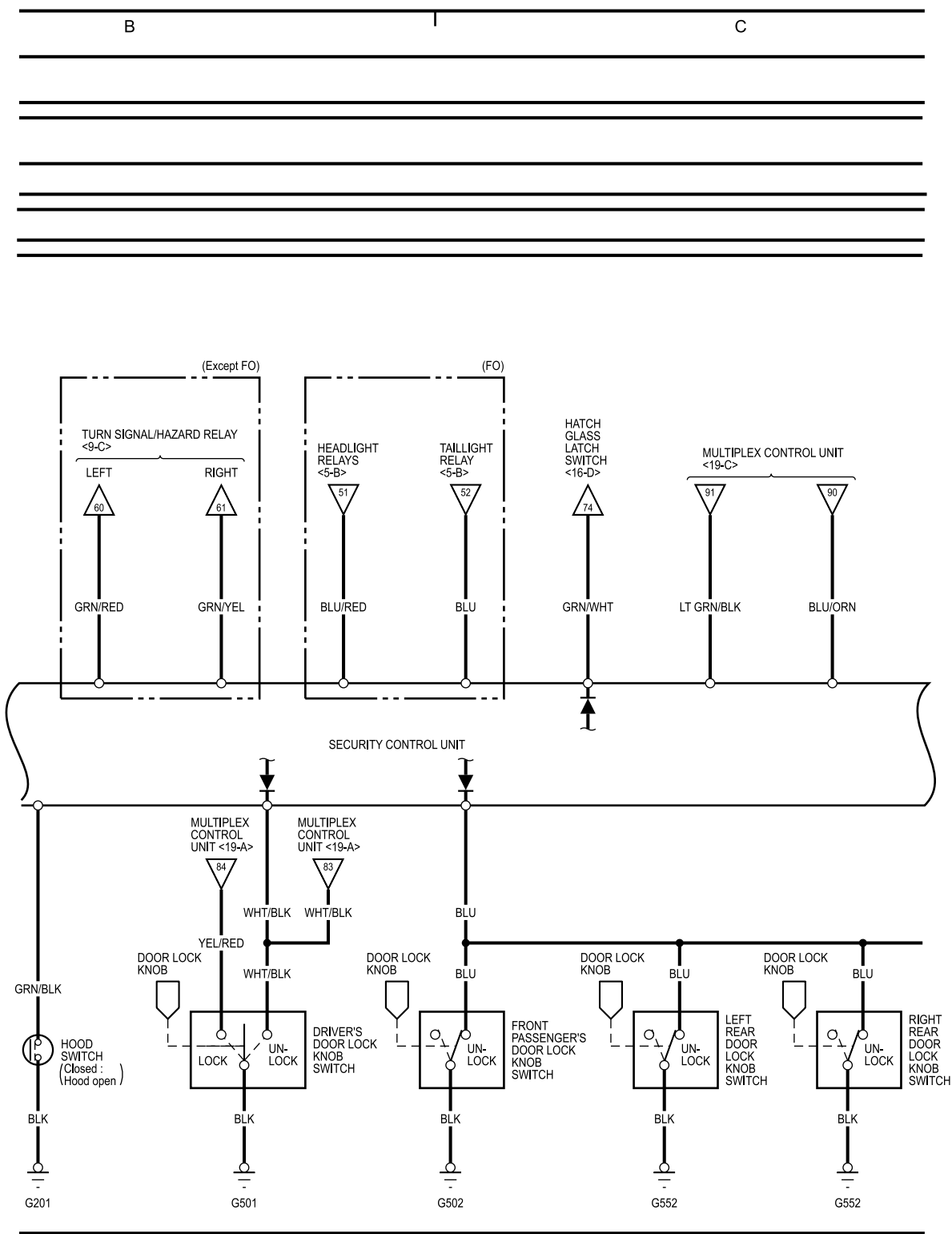
## 21

## Security Alarm System



Wiring diagrams

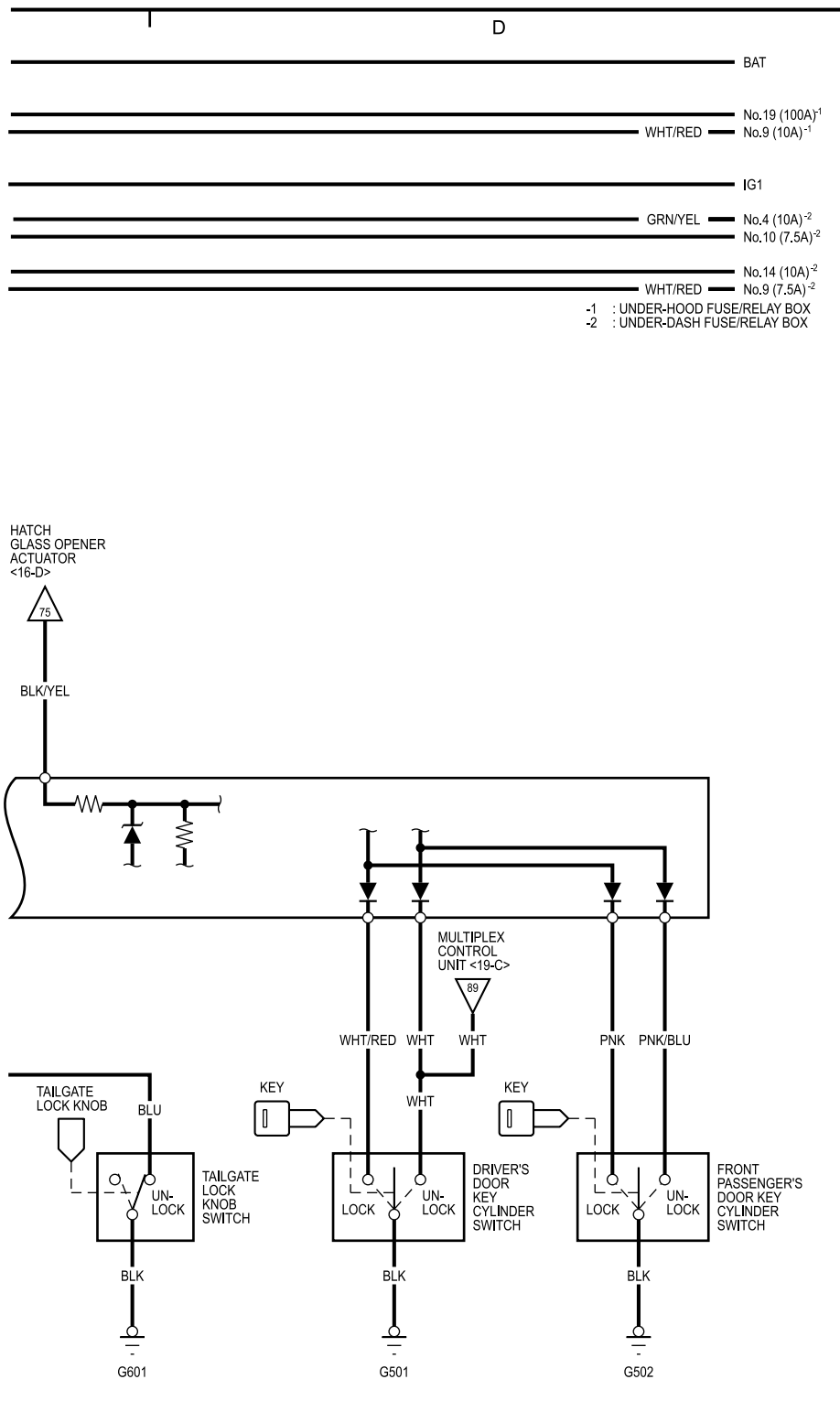
Security Alarm System (Without Super Locking System) (cont'd)





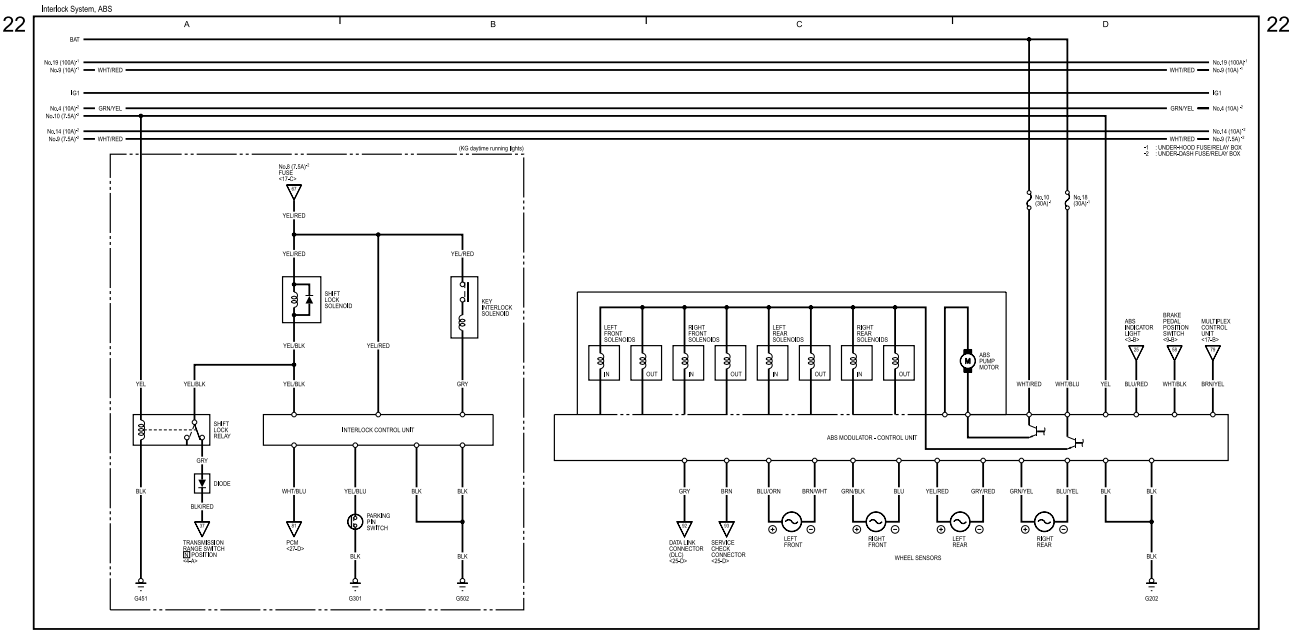
### Security Alarm System (Without Super Locking System) (cont'd)

21



# Wiring diagrams

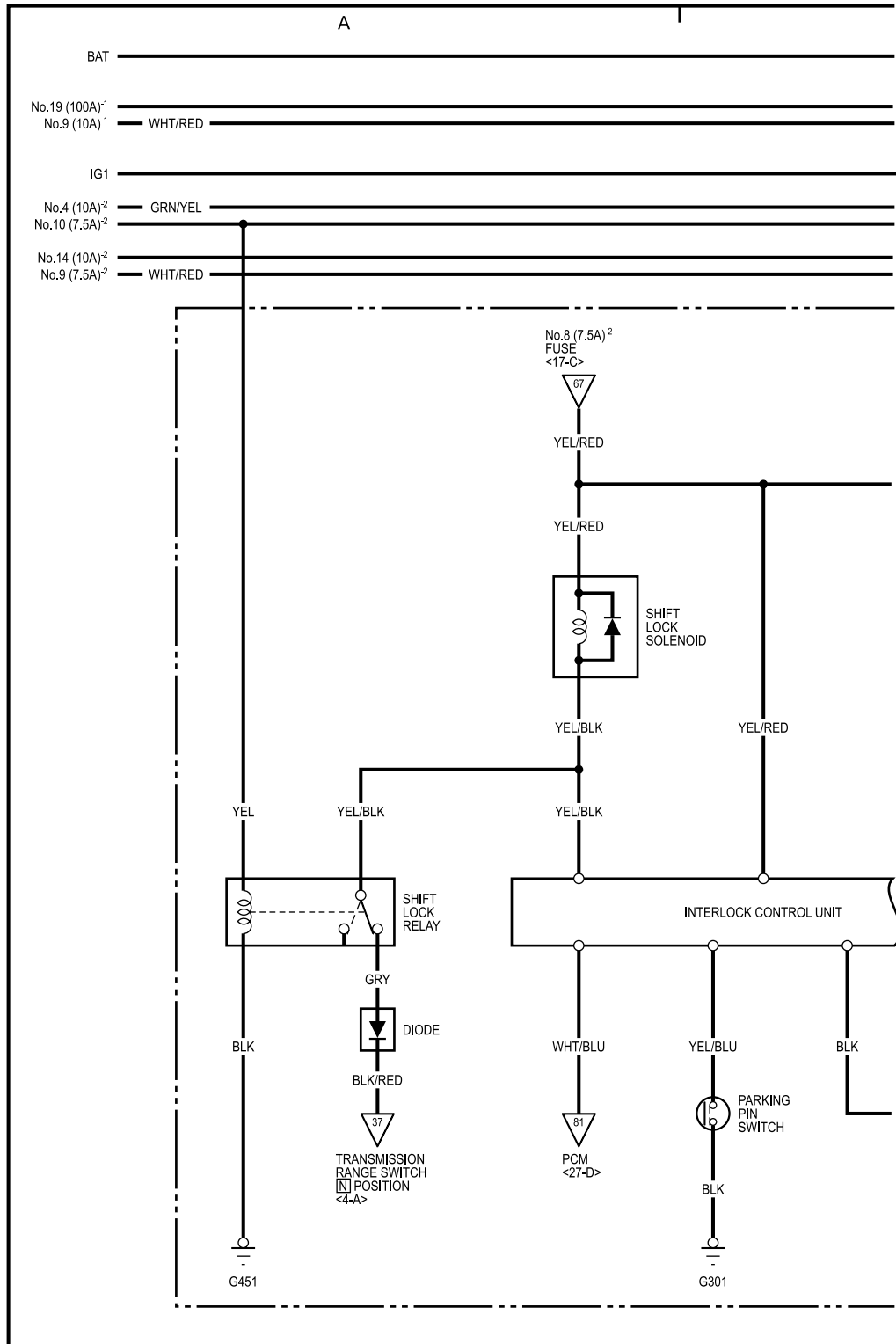
## Interlock System, ABS



## Interlock System, ABS (cont'd)

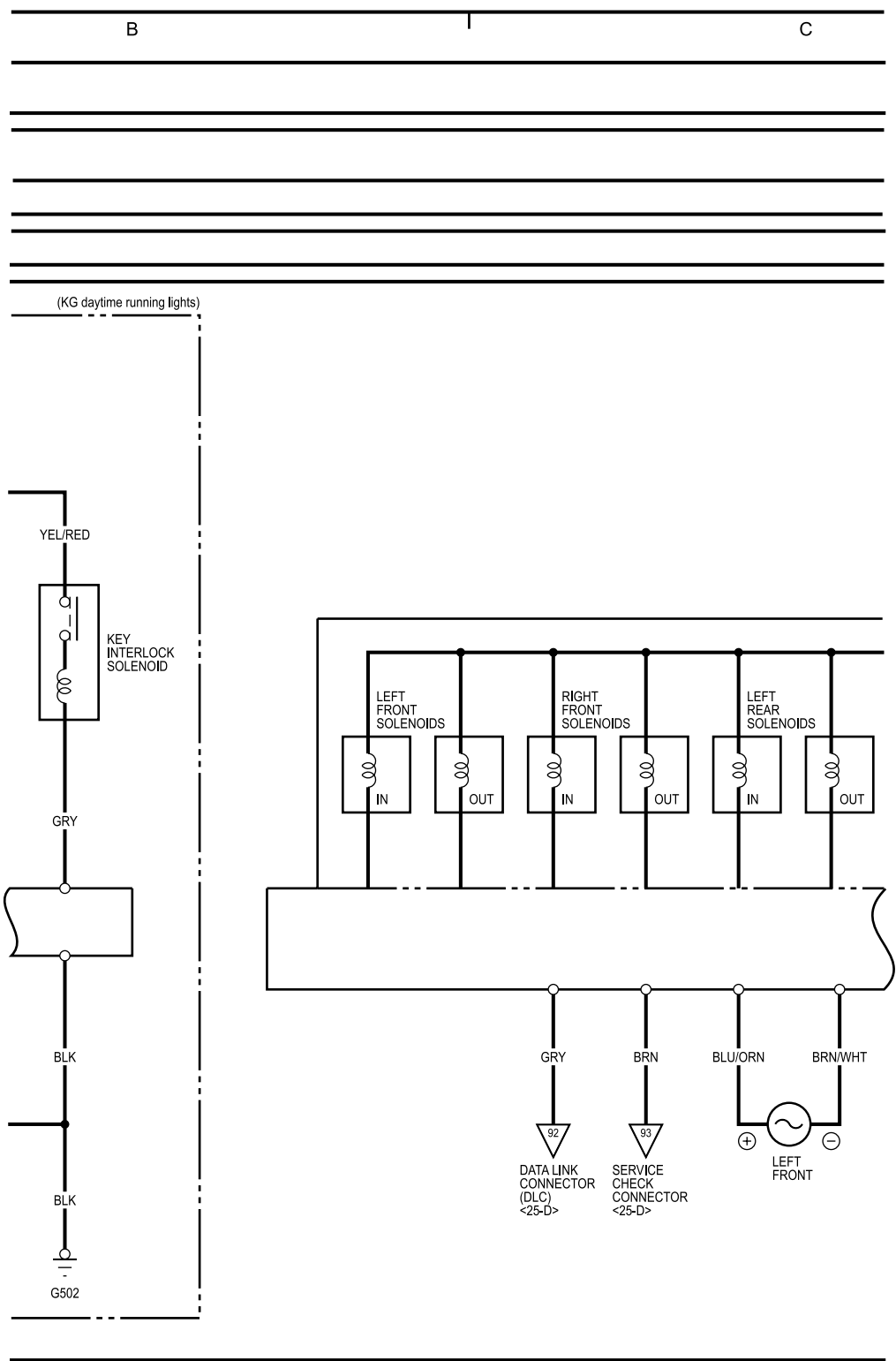
22

Interlock System, ABS

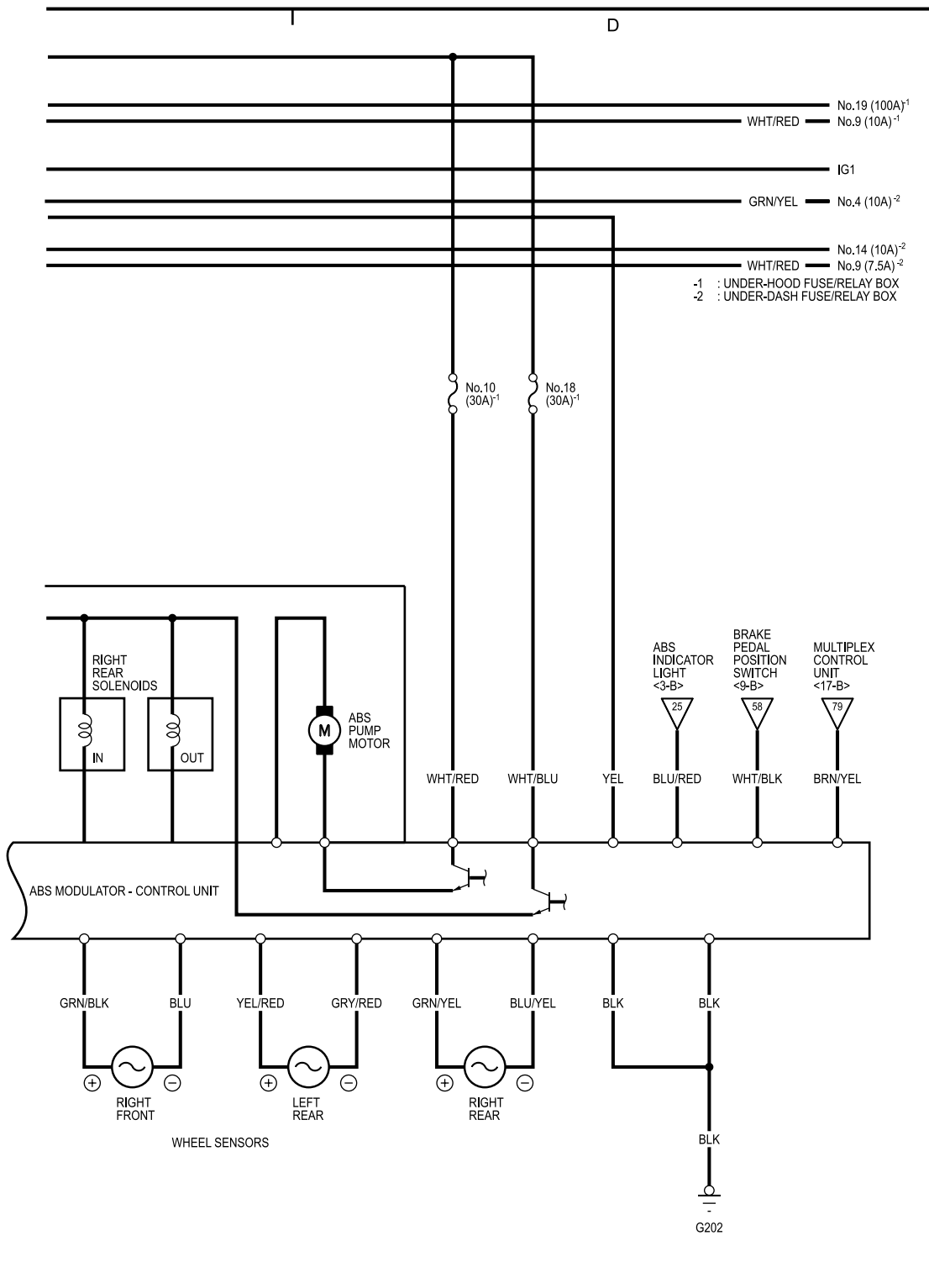


# Wiring diagrams

## Interlock System, ABS (cont'd)



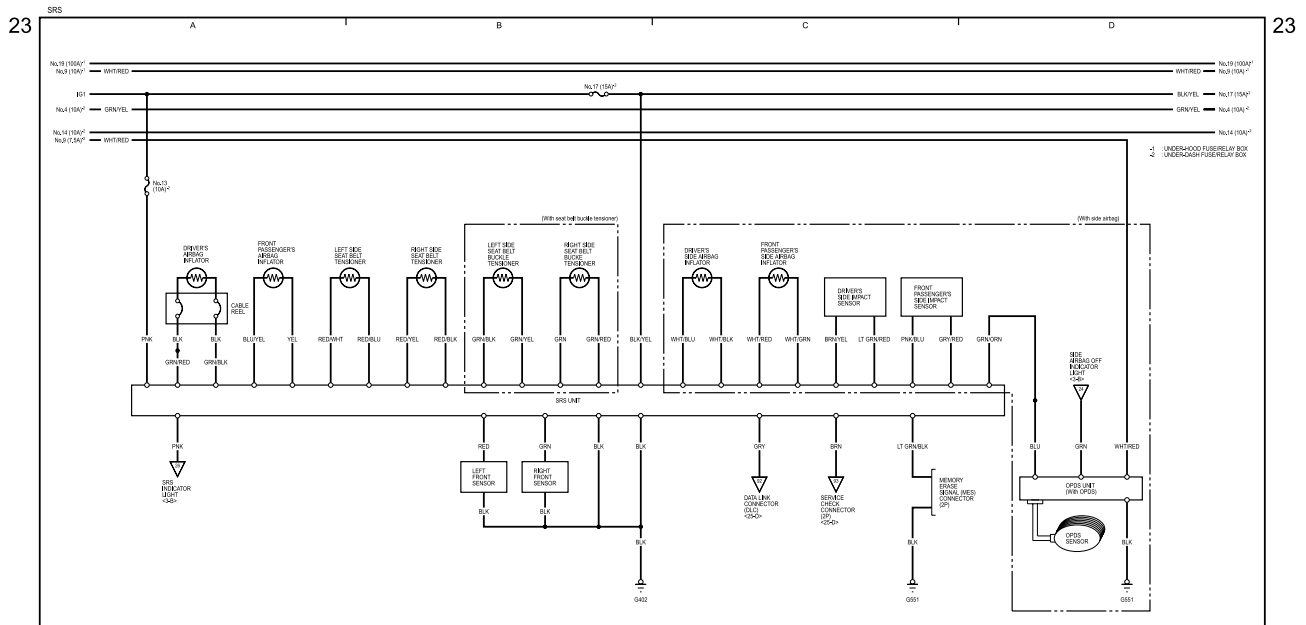
## Interlock System, ABS (cont'd)



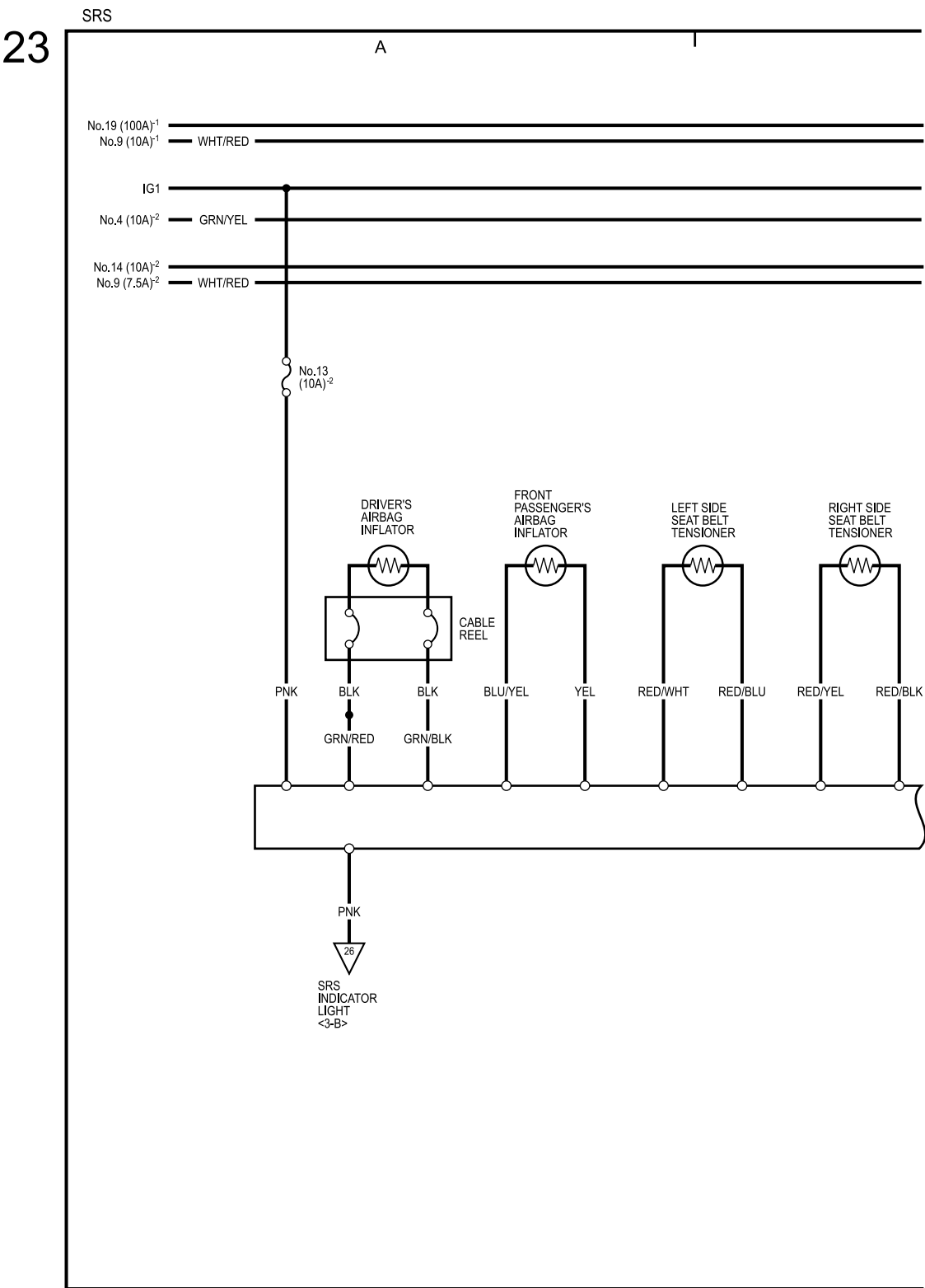
22

## Wiring diagrams

## SRS

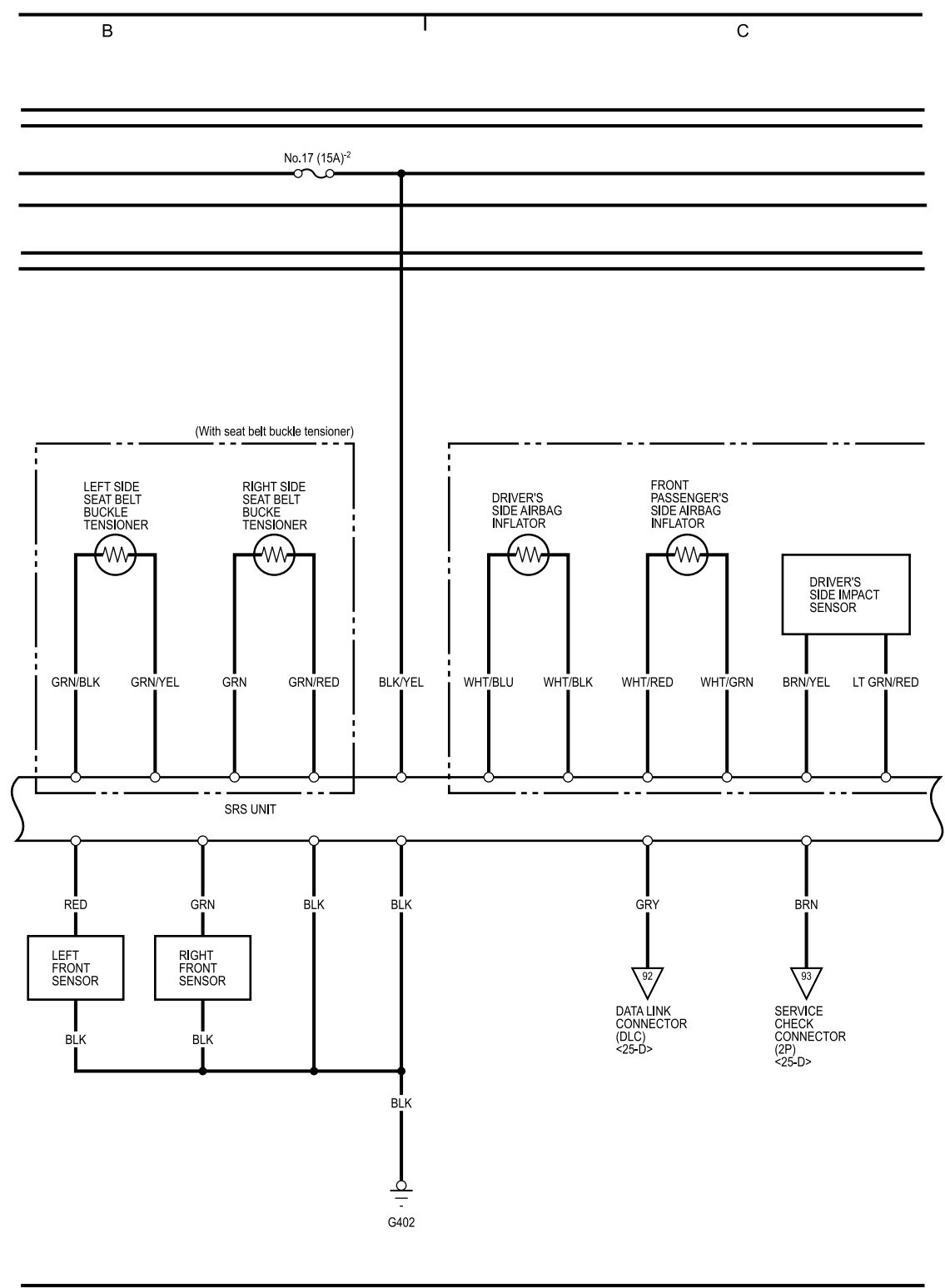


SRS (cont'd)

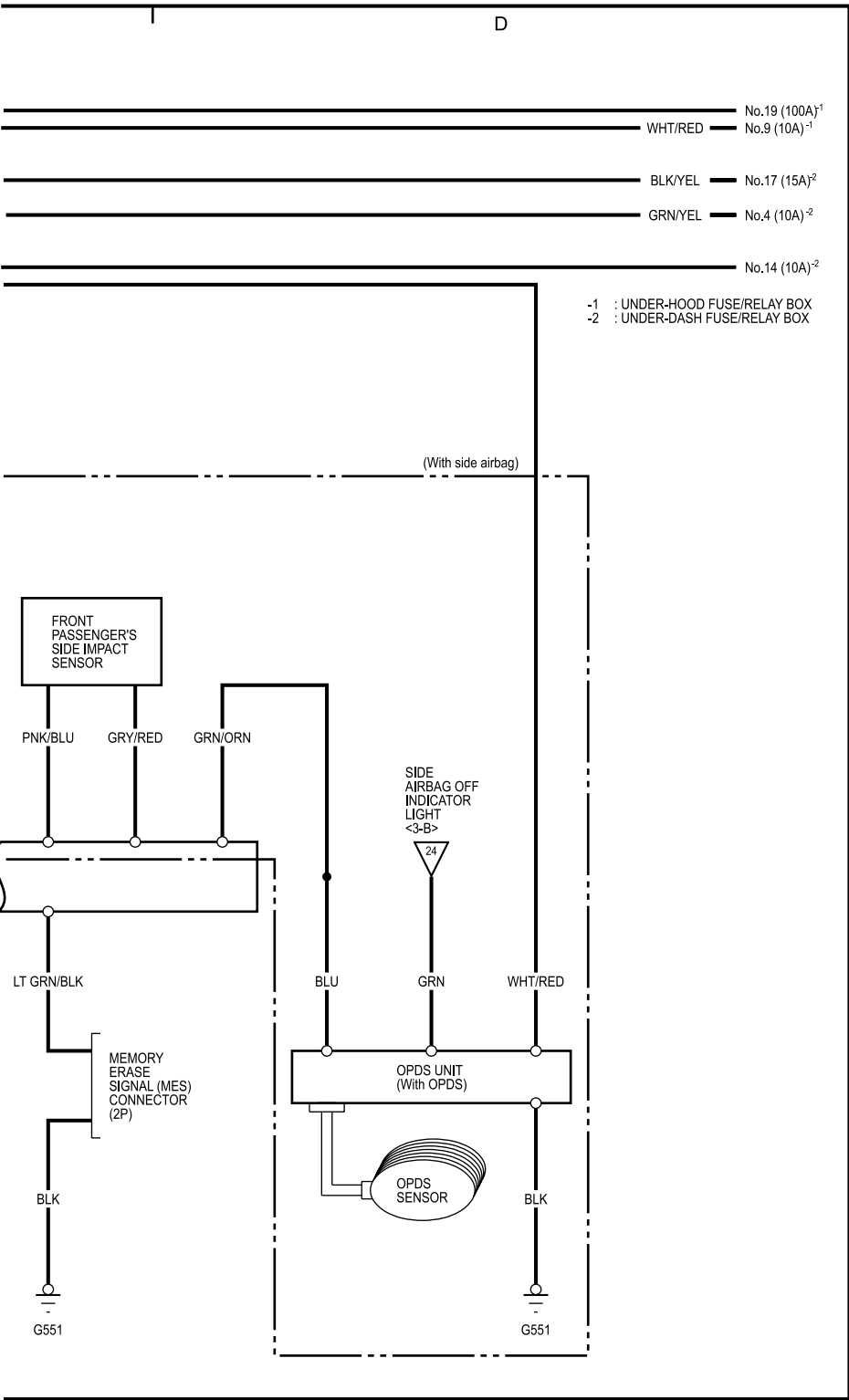


# Wiring diagrams

## SRS (cont'd)

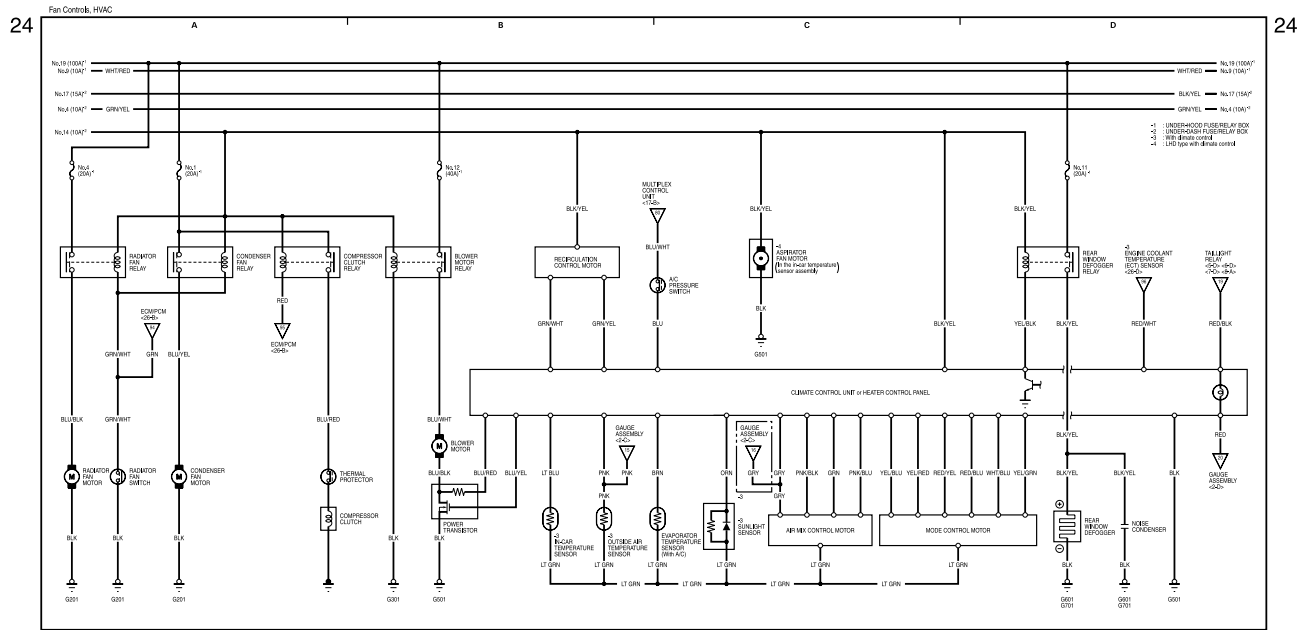






# Wiring diagrams

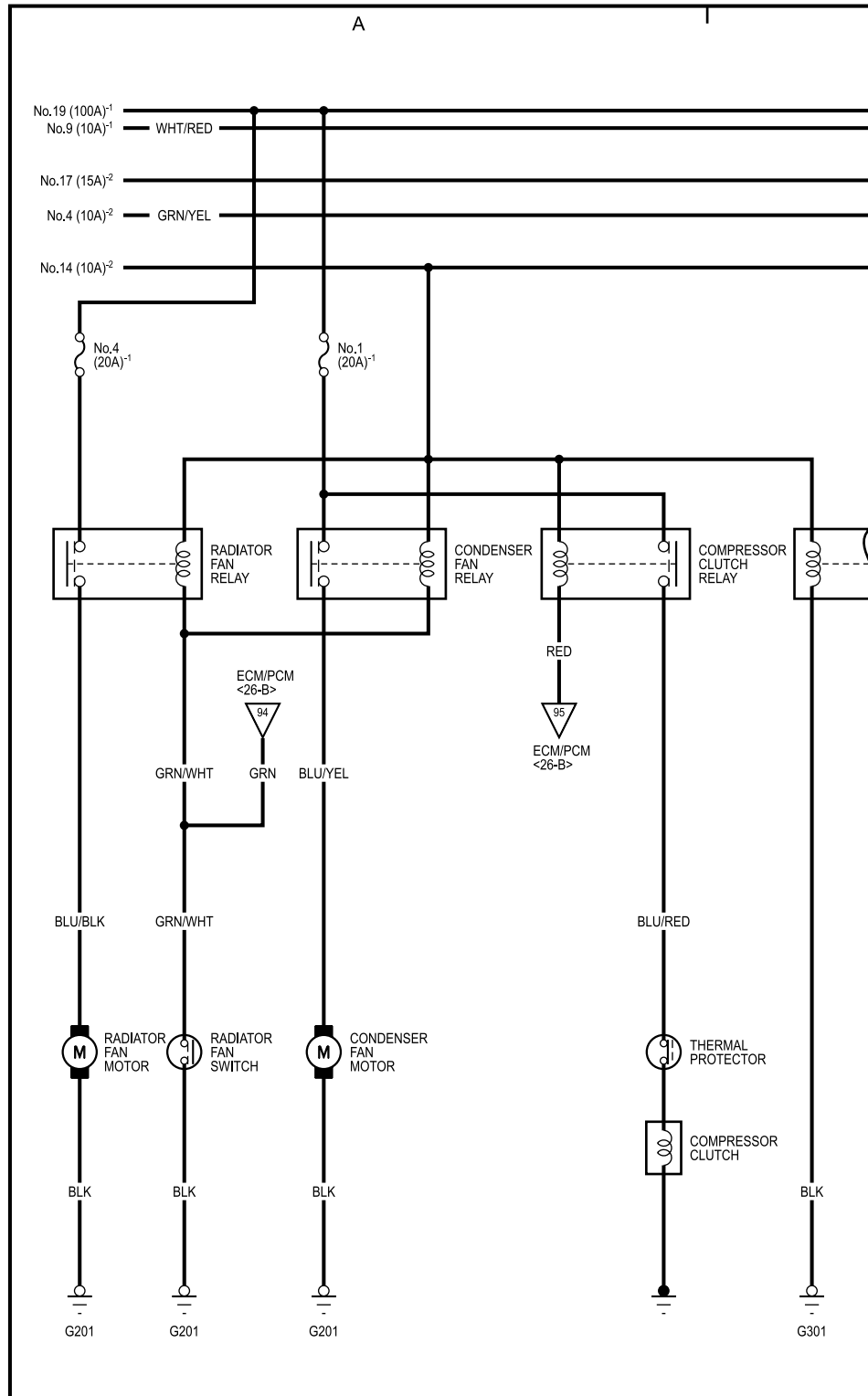
## Fan Controls, HVAC



## Fan Controls, HVAC (cont'd)

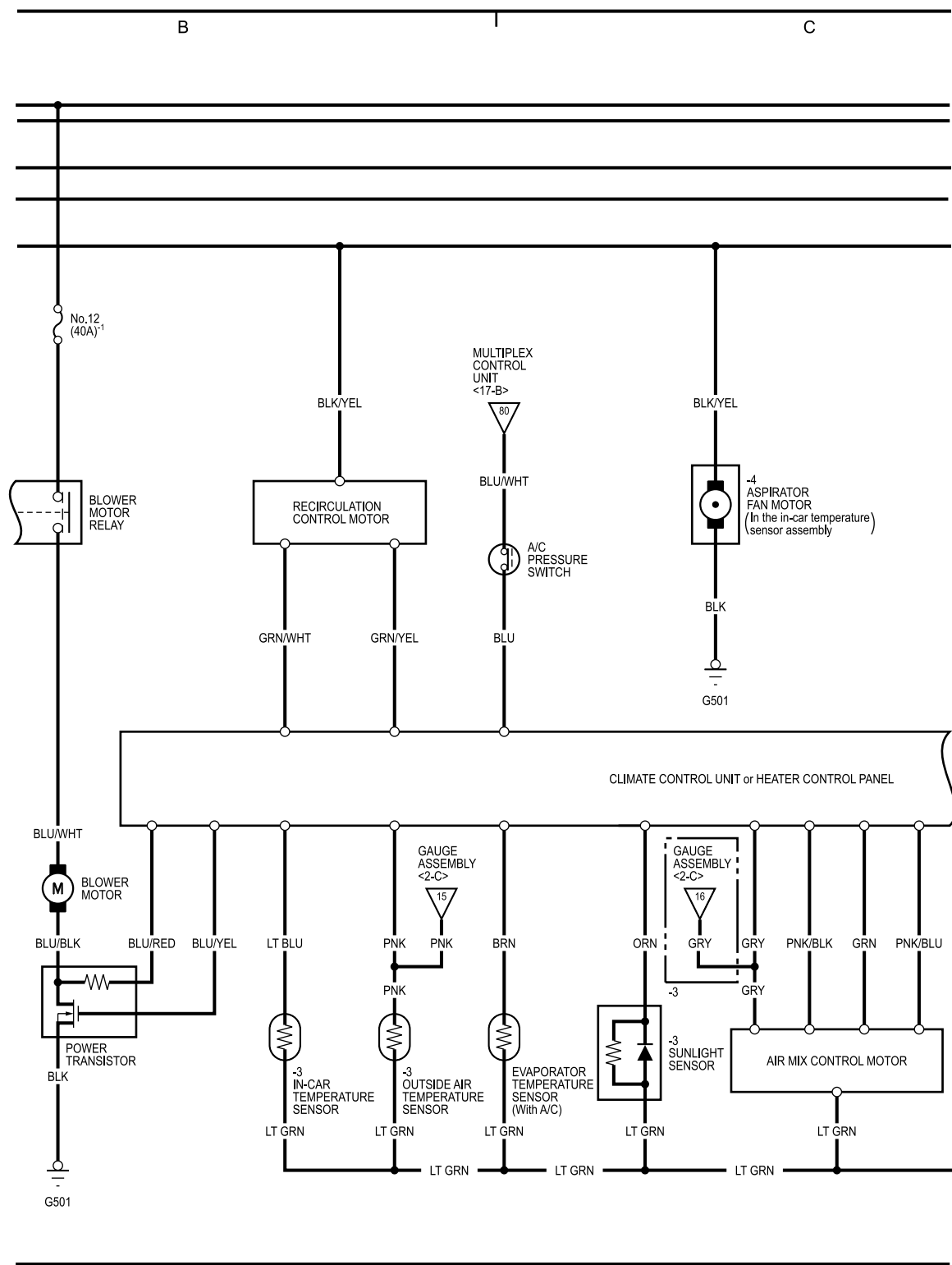
24

Fan Controls, HVAC

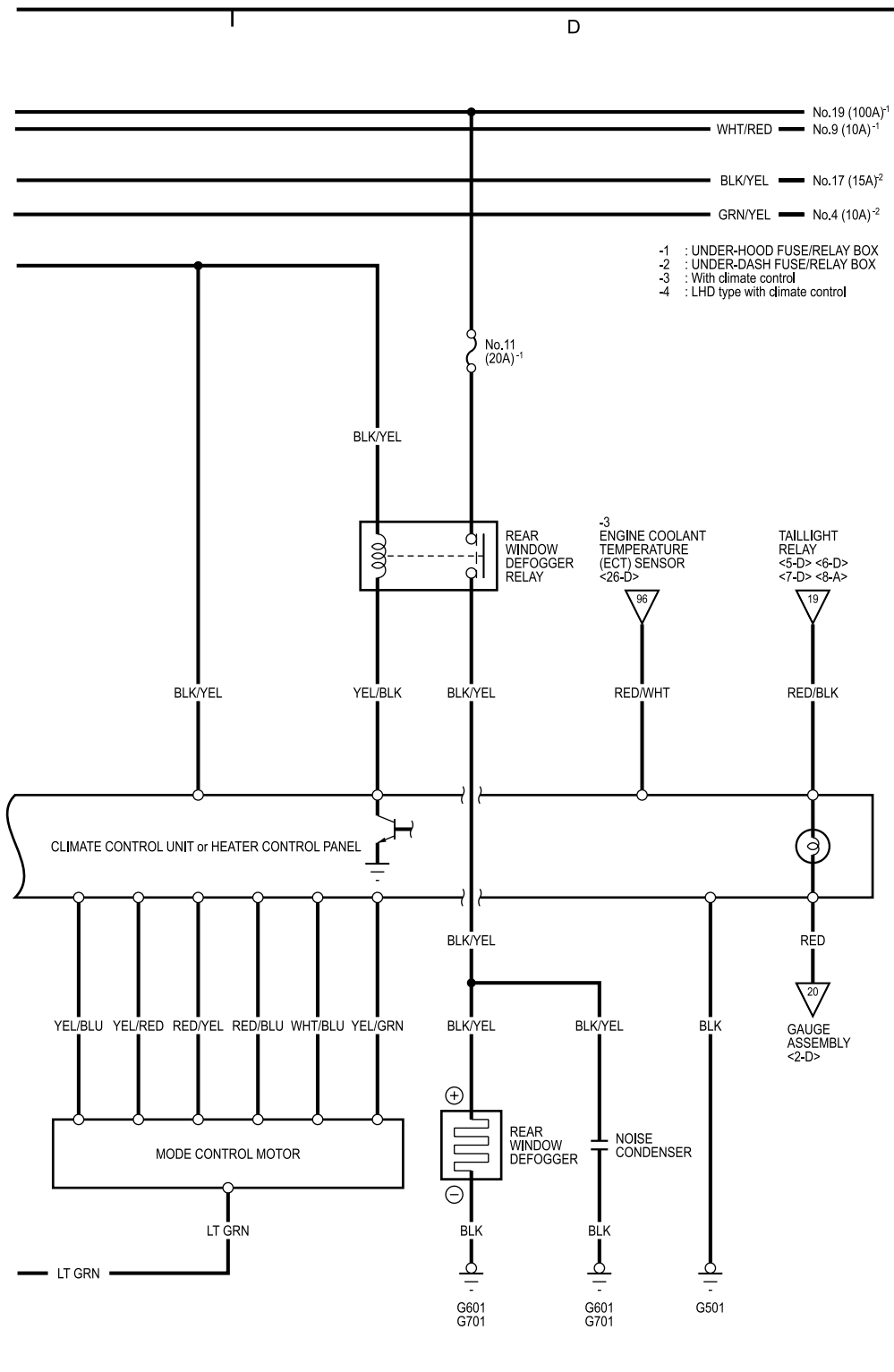


# Wiring diagrams

## Fan Controls, HVAC (cont'd)

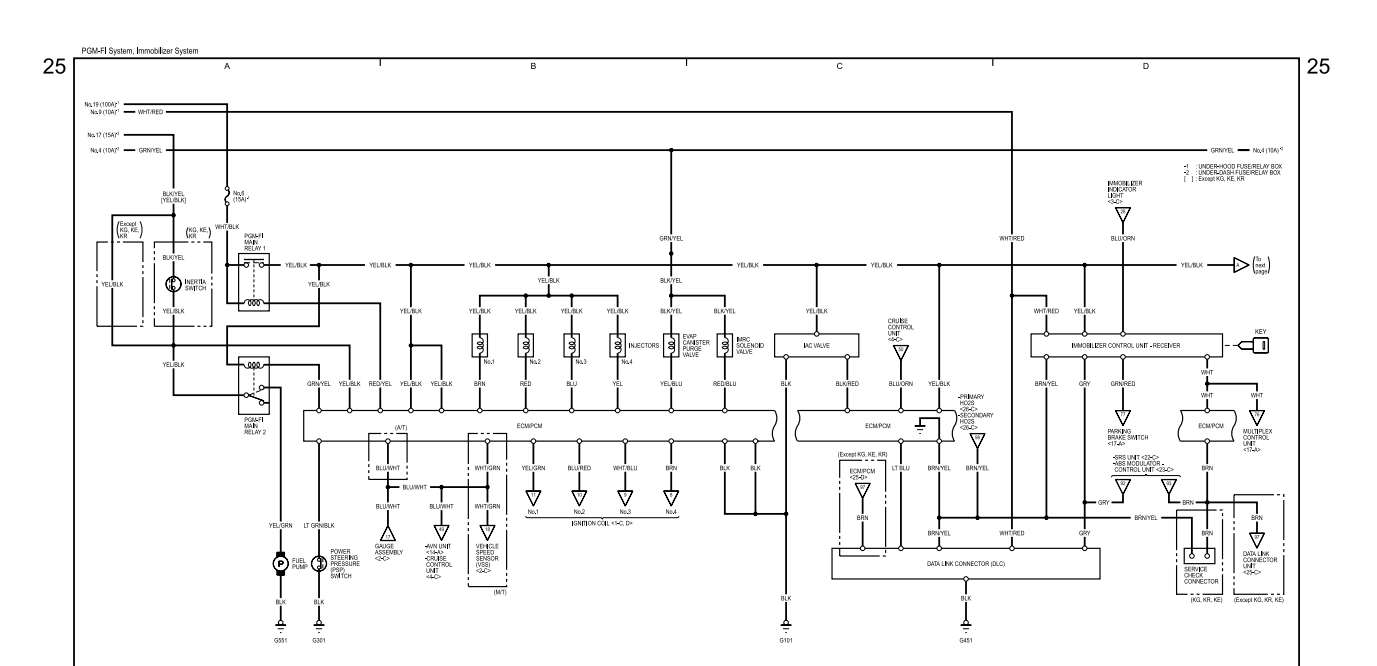


## Fan Controls, HVAC (cont'd)



## Wiring diagrams

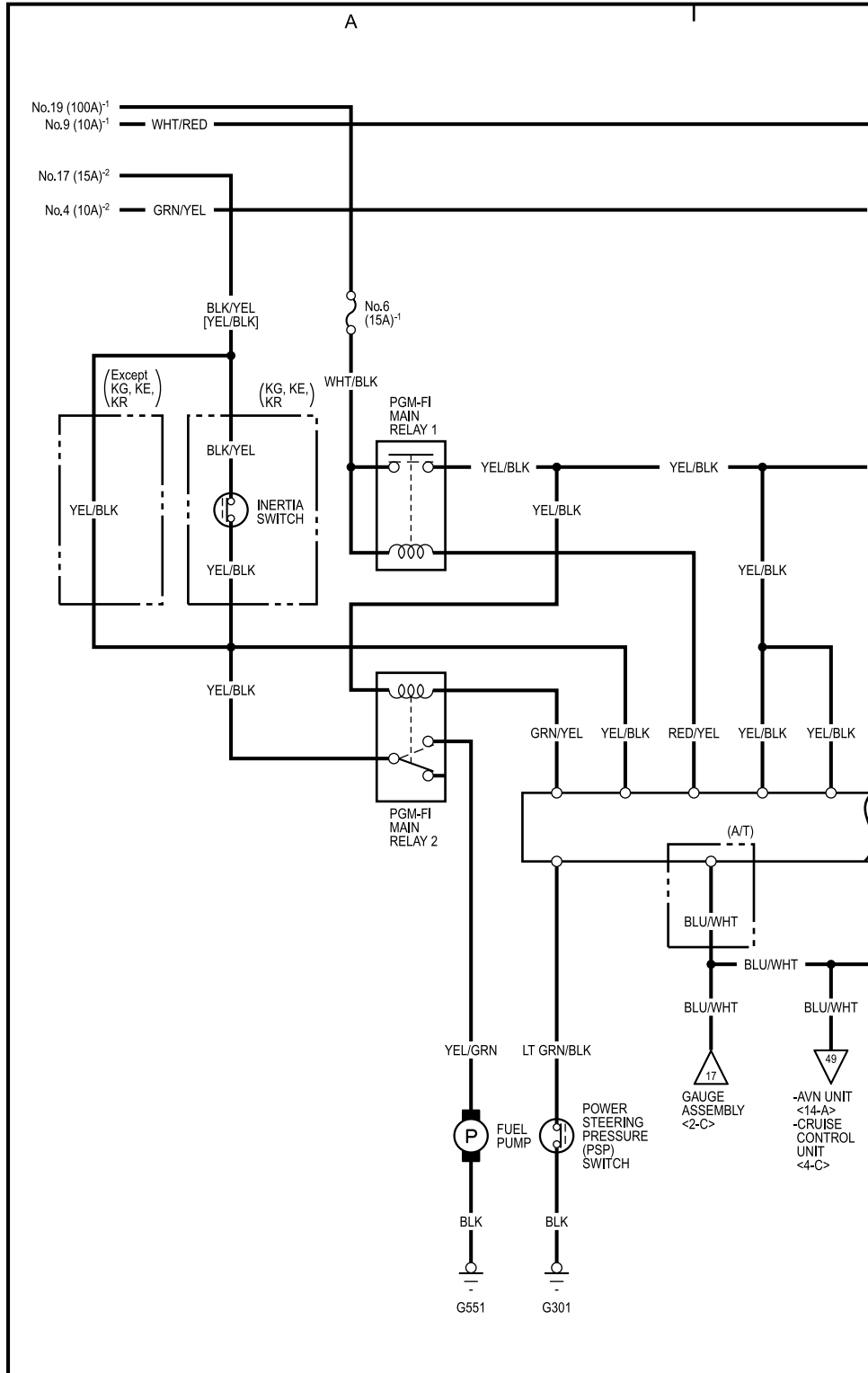
## PGM-FI System, Immobilizer System



## PGM-FI System, Immobilizer System (cont'd)

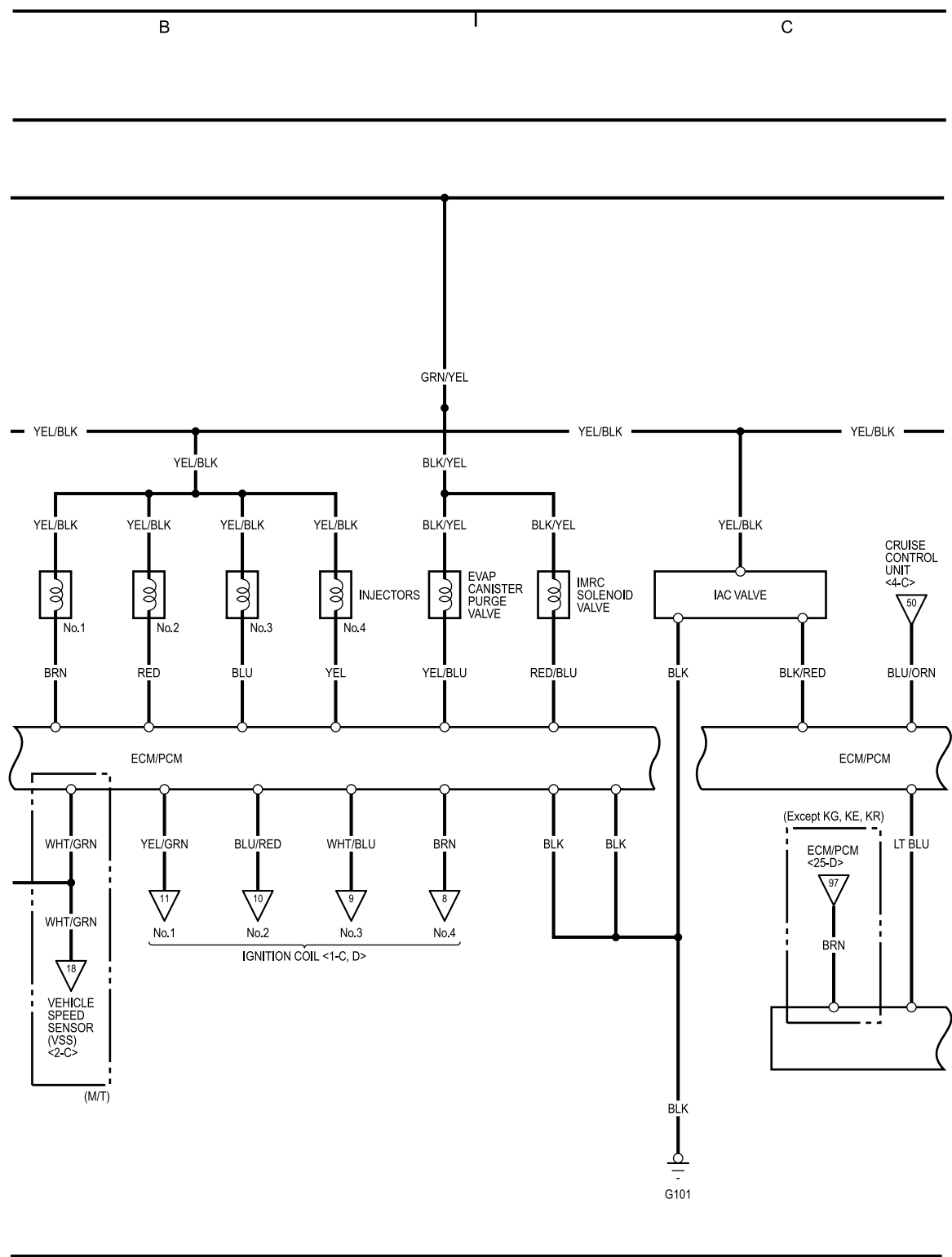
25

PGM-FI System, Immobilizer System



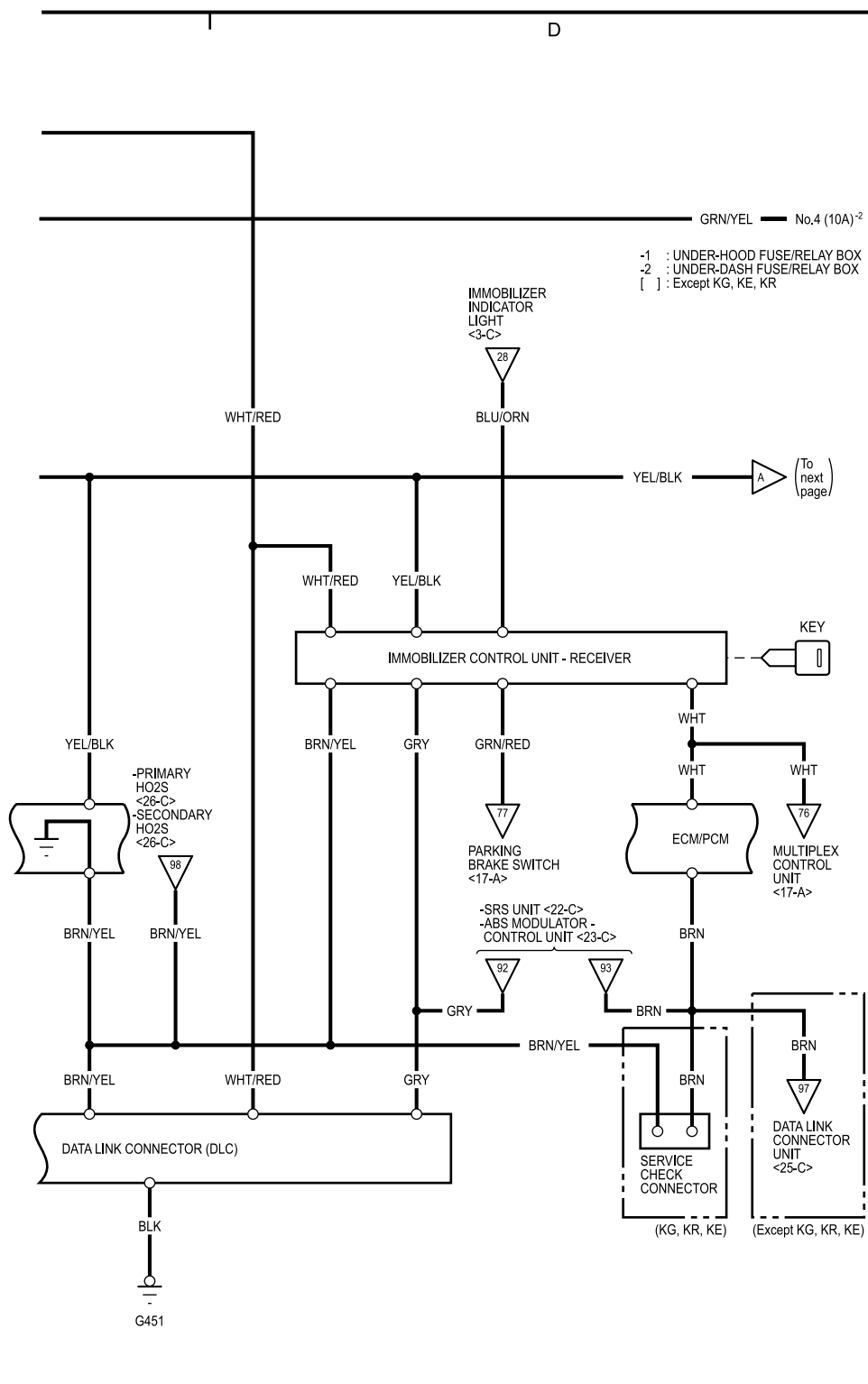
# Wiring diagrams

## PGM-FI System, Immobilizer System (cont'd)



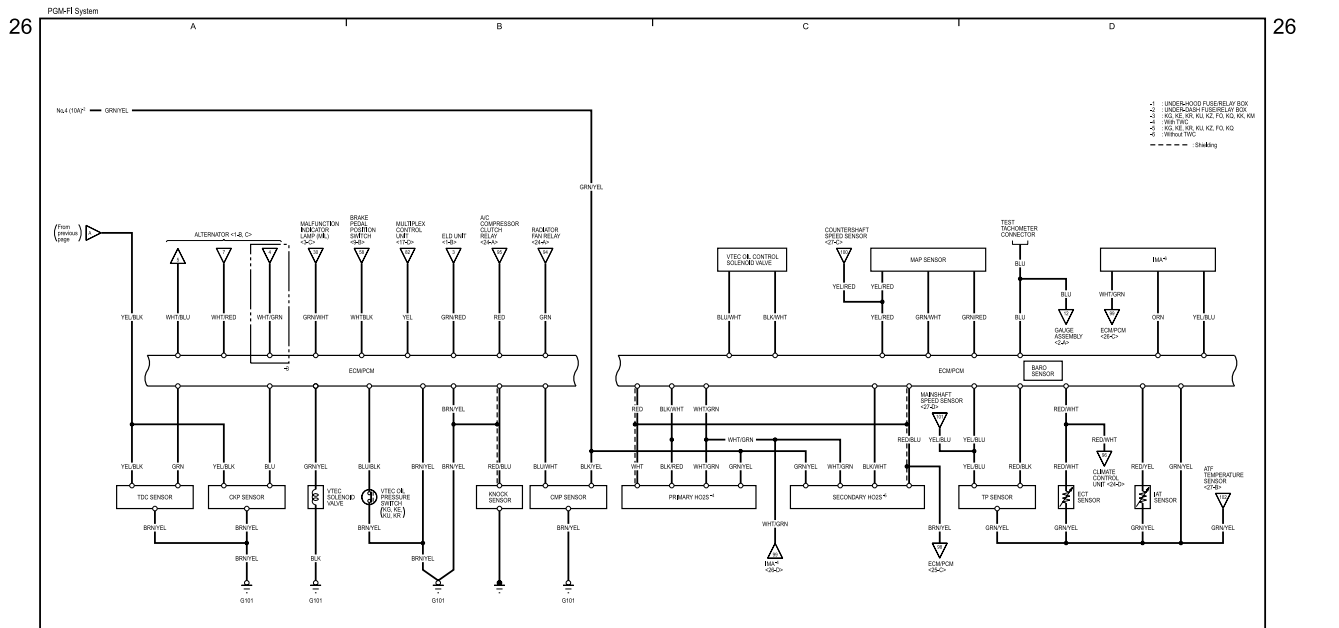


## PGM-FI System, Immobilizer System (cont'd)



## Wiring diagrams

## PGM-FI System

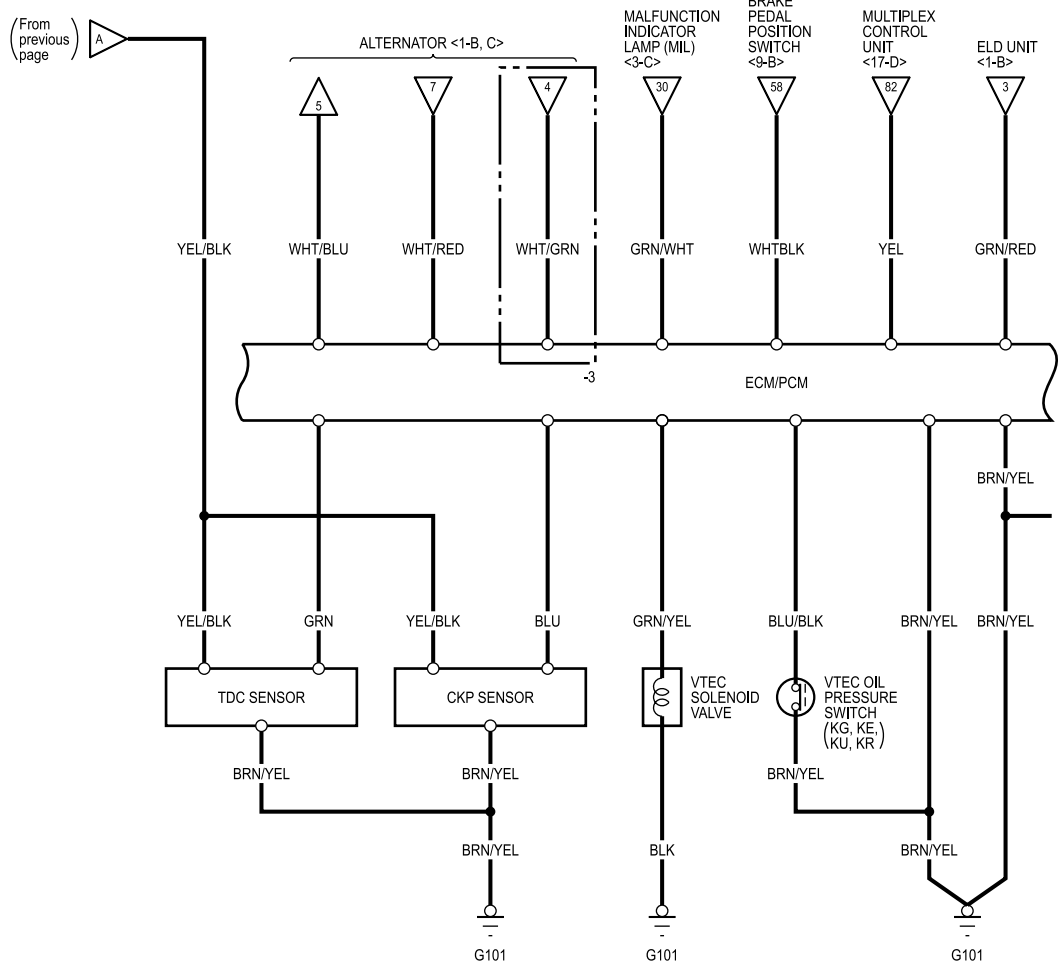


## PGM-FI System (cont'd)

26

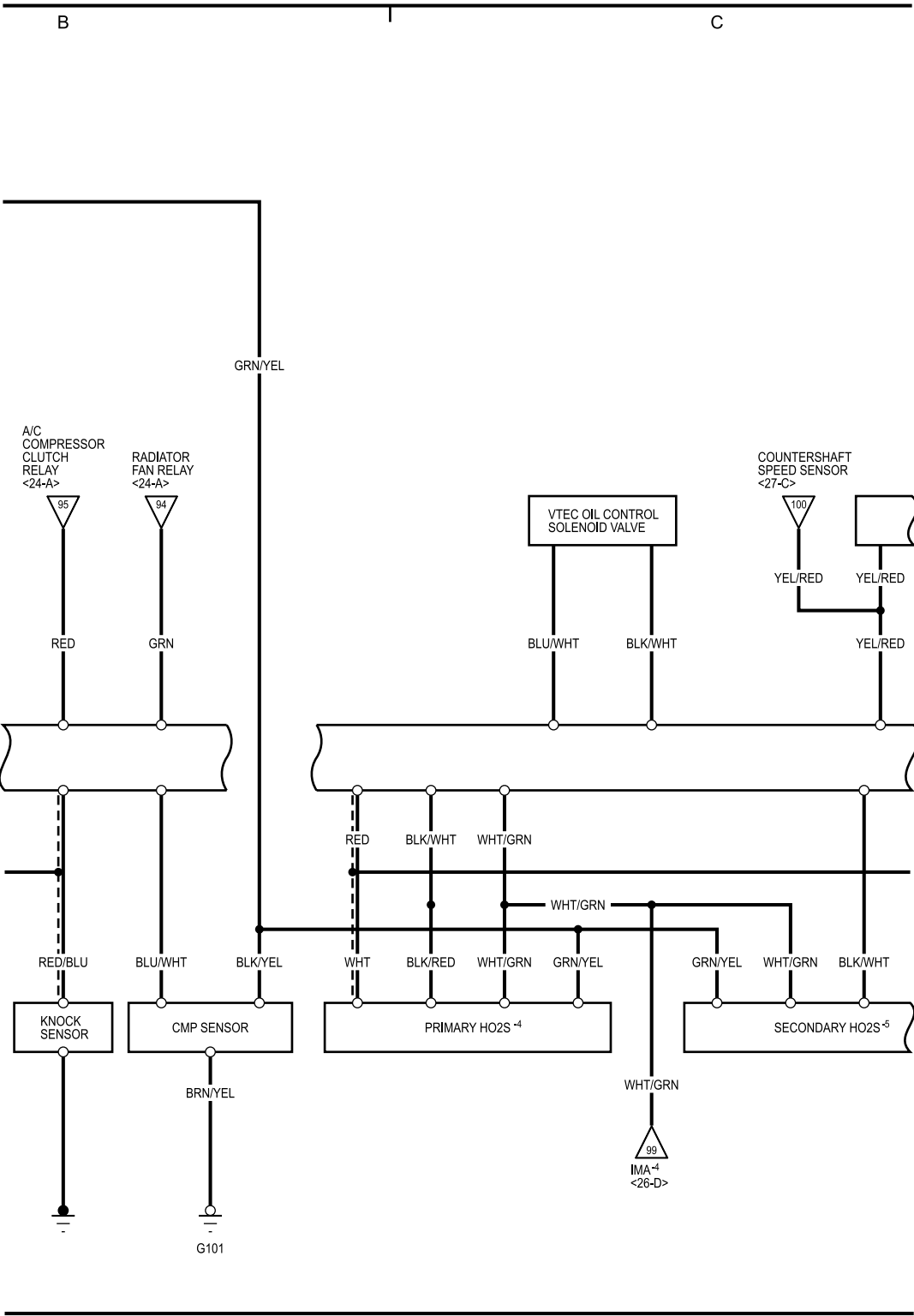
PGM-FI System

No.4 (10A)<sup>2</sup> — GRN/YEL



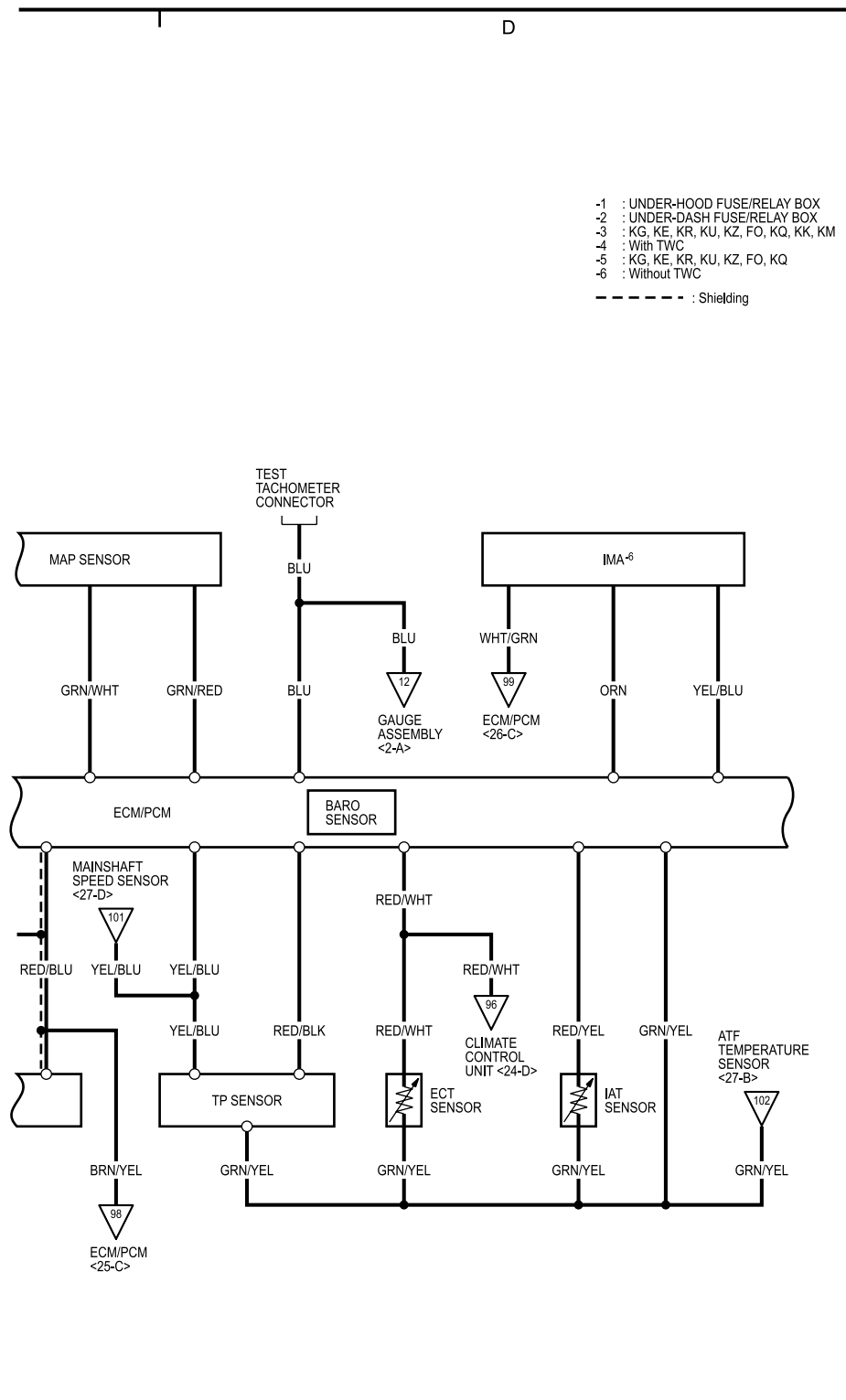
# Wiring diagrams

## PGM-FI System (cont'd)

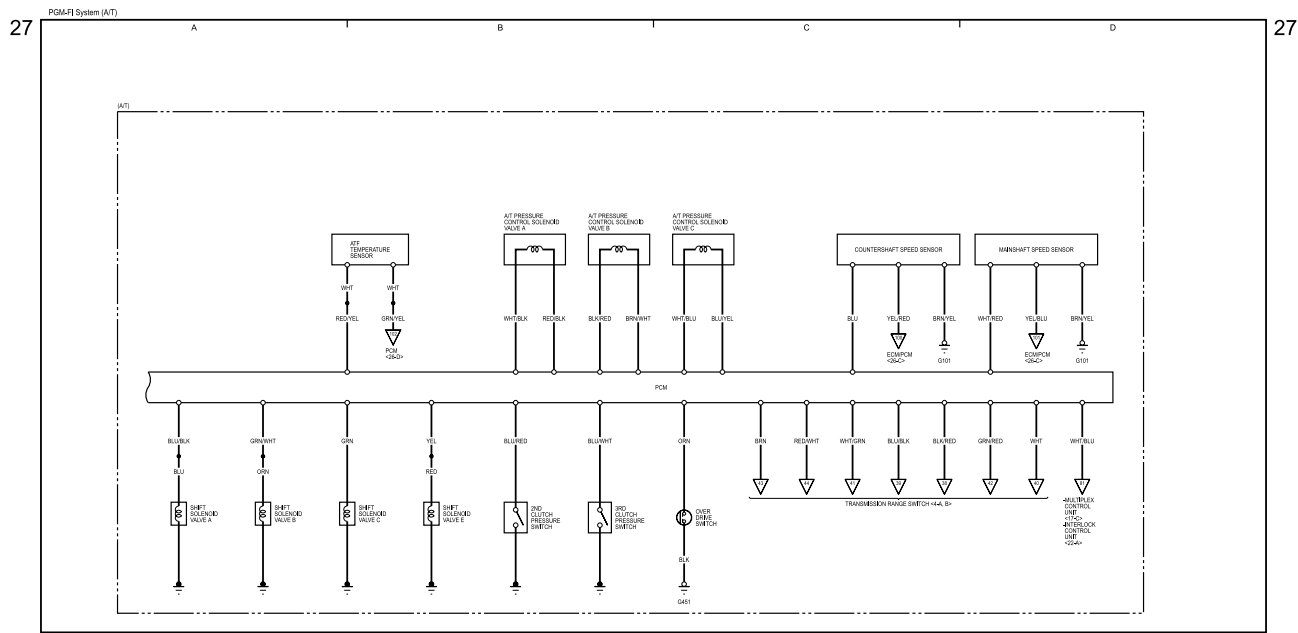


## PGM-FI System (cont'd)

26



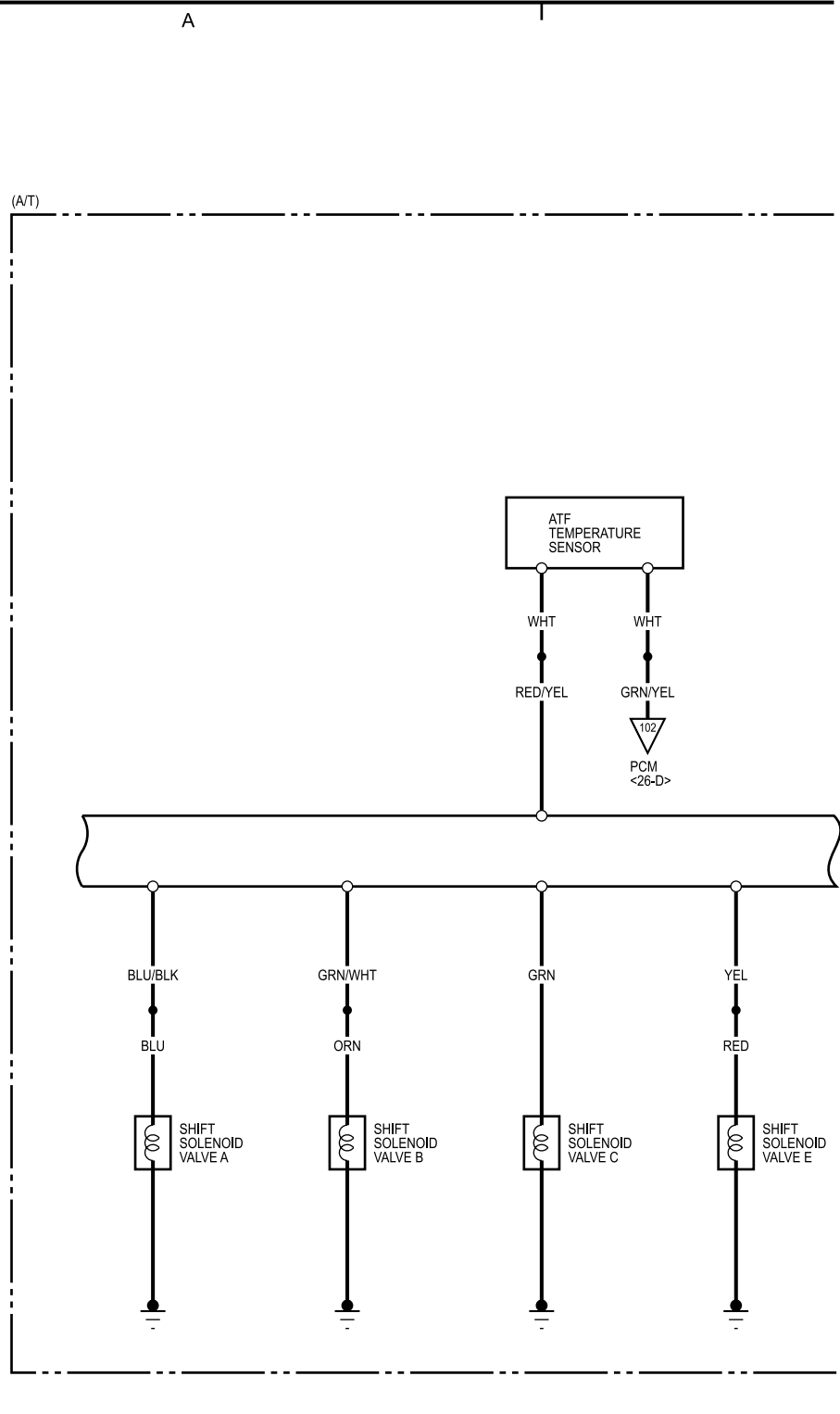
PGM-FI System (A/T)



## PGM-FI System (A/T) (cont'd)

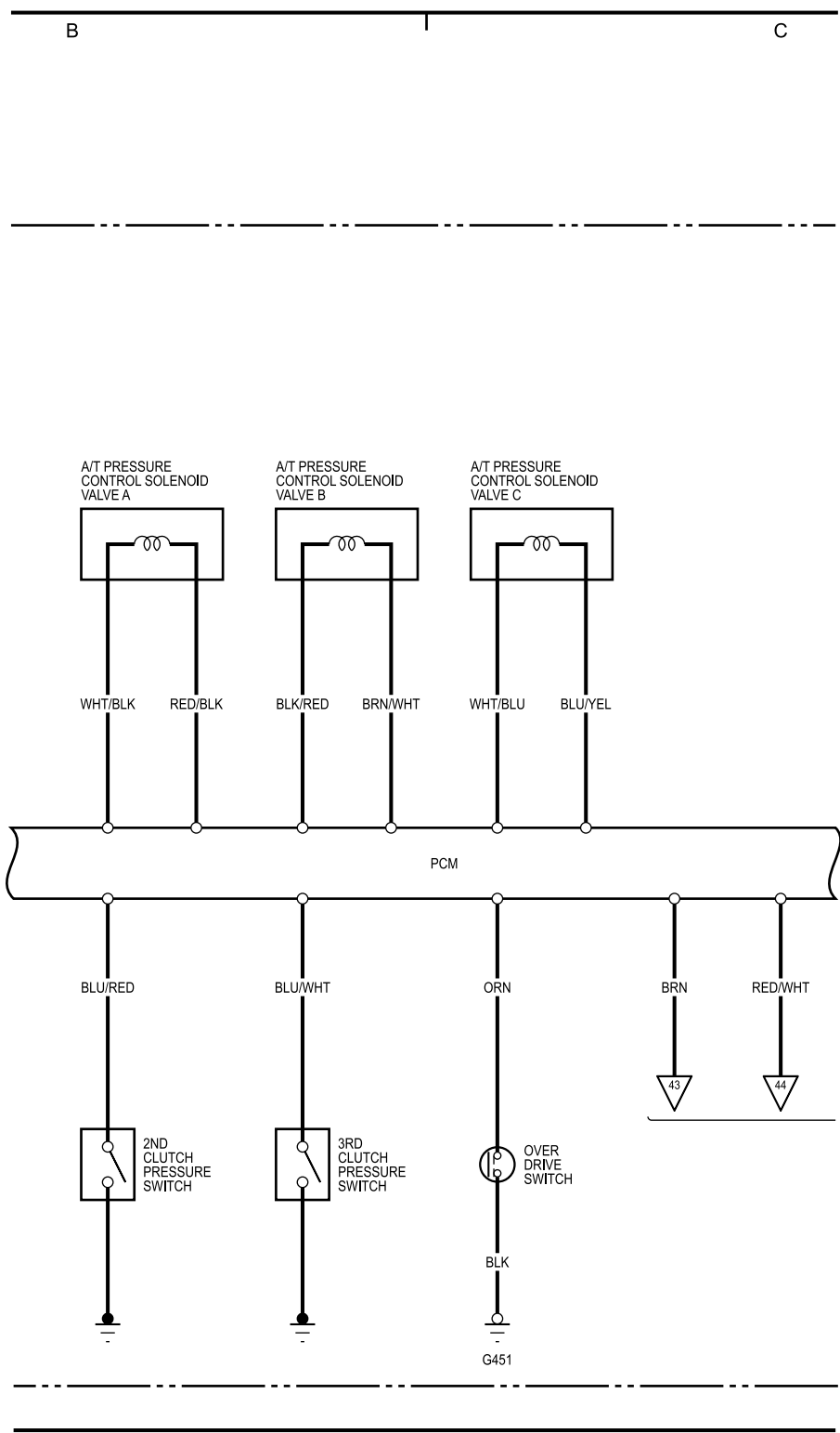
27

PGM-FI System (A/T)



Wiring diagrams

PGM-FI System (A/T) (cont'd)





## PGM-FI System (A/T) (cont'd)

